

T H E  
P O E T I C A L W O R K S  
O F  
G E O F F R E Y C H A U C E R.

Containing

CANTERBURY TALES,  
ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE,  
TROIUS AND CRESCIDE,  
THE COURT OF LOVE,  
THE COMPLAINT OF PITEE,  
ANNELIDA AND FALSE ARCITE,  
THE ASSEMBLEE OF FOULES,  
THE COMPLAINT OF THE BLACK KNIGHT,

THE BOOK OF THE DUCHESSE,  
CHAUCER'S A, B, C,  
THE HOUSE OF FAME,  
CHAUCER'S DREME,  
THE FLOUR AND THE LEFE,  
THE LEGENDE OF GOODE WOMEN,  
THE COMPLAINT OF MARS AND VENUS,  
THE CUCKOO AND THE NIGHTINGALE,

&c. &c. &c.

To which is prefixed

*THE LIFE OF THE AUTHOR.*

---

Old CHAUCER, like the *morning star*,  
To us discovers day from far;  
His light those mists and clouds dissolv'd,  
Which our dark nation long involv'd;  
But he descending to the shades,  
Darkness again the age invades.

DENHAM'S VERSES ON THE DEATH OF COWLEY.

---

EDINBURGH:

PRINTED BY MUNDELL AND SON, ROYAL BANK CLOSE

Anno 1793.



## P R E F A C E.

The plan of this edition, so happily conceived, was more ample than the execution. comprehending all the English poets of reputation from Chaucer to the present. It was unaccountably limited to a list of *fifty-three* authors, beginning with Cowley and with Lyttleton; all of whom appear in Mr. Bell's edition, except Rochester, Otway, Dorset, Ste. Walsh, Duke, Sprat, Halifax, and Blackmore; who are displaced, to make room for Chaucer, Spenser, Donne, Armstrong, R. West, Cunningham, and Churchill.

The managers of this edition are liable to some censure, for admitting so few of our older classics in a work which bore so close a relation to the honour of the nation, and which, from its elegance and magnitude, afforded the happiest opportunity of uniting our poets, both ancient and modern, in one comprehensive view, and of combining their respective excellencies in one common interest. Ancient poetry, in thus being exhibited to the public eye, would soon have made good her claims to notice, and of herself recovered the long-lost verdure of her bays; whilst the justice of that latitude which is commonly assigned to later improvements, from a fair opportunity of a comparative examination, might have been more strictly ascertained.

It is well known, that the ostensible editor was ever glad to escape the censure which the work had fallen under, by alleging, that, with the exception of Pomfret, Yalden, Blackmore, and Watts, he had nothing to do with the selection; he had engaged himself only to furnish a set of Lives to such a list as the booksellers, who were the responsible publishers of the work, should think proper.

Dr. Johnson gave up his life to the literature of his country; a portion of it would not have been thrown away, had it been dedicated to the completion of such an undertaking. In the esteem of the booksellers, he stood very high, perhaps higher than any man of his age, and there cannot be a doubt but that the management of the work, on the least desire intimated by him, would have been vested in his hands, with the utmost gratitude and confidence.

As the matter stands, it is difficult to guess the reason why the managers of this edition admitted some authors, while others of similar character were rejected. In an edition of poetry, where some of the "wits of Charles's days, the mob of gentlemen who wrote with ease," and the heroes of the "Dunciad," are to be found, we rather wonder at not finding others; where Rochester, Roscommon, Sprat, Halifax, Stepney, and Duke, were received, why Carew, Sedley, Hopkins, Marvell, and Oldham, were refused, one is puzzled to guess; and where Pomfret, Yalden, and Blackmore, are preferred to Eusden, Welford, and Hill, it is not easy to account for the preference. When the publication was undertaken, Armstrong and Langhorne, poets of superior rank, were living; their works, consequently, could not be properly inserted; but Churchill, Smart, and Goldsmith, were dead, and their works certainly had a just claim to admission.

When Dr. Johnson engaged to furnish the booksellers with a "Preface" to the works of each author, it was his intention to have allotted to each poet, an "Advertisement" like those which are found in the French Miscellanies, containing a few dates and a general character. That he was led beyond his intention, "by the honest desire of giving useful pleasure," will be always a subject of congratulation to every reader of taste. That he passed some partial judgments in his "Lives," that he was sometimes blinded by prejudice, that he occasionally saw through the medium of party or religion; and that, without the taste which would enable him to decide, he rashly determined from abstract reasoning, and the examination of a philosopher, where philosophy was an inadequate judge, must be allowed: But, as fine pieces of nervous writing, pregnant with valuable detached opinions, happy illustrations, nice discussions, and a variety of curious incidental information, they will ever be regarded as the richest, most beautiful, and, indeed, most perfect production of his pen.

In 1790, a new edition of this elegant collection was published, in 75 volumes 8vo, which gave the proprietors an opportunity of adding the works of Moore, Cawthorne, Churchill, Falconer, Lloyd, Cunningham, Green, Goldsmith, P. Whitehead, Armstrong, Langhorne, Johnson, W. Whitehead, and Jenyns, and of supplying some deficiencies in the works of the authors printed in the former edition.

"Of the authors now first added," says the Advertisement, "some are inserted, in compliance with the repeated calls of the public; some, in deference to the opinions of persons whose taste cannot be disputed; and some have found a place from the favourable sentiments expressed concerning them to the publishers, from various quarters. In this selection, the proprietors have not been in-



## P R E F A C E.

influenced by any partiality of their own towards the authors selected; they have endeavoured to obtain the best opinions, and they have implicitly followed them."

This edition is superior to the former, both in elegance and magnitude, and reflects much honour on the taste and liberality of the proprietors; but it is equally deficient in the works of our older classics, and affords similar instances of caprice in the admission to literary honours.

As it was thought necessary to admit P. Whitehead and Jenyns, it seems reasonable to expect that some reason had been given for showing them a distinction which has been denied to Wilkie, Gains-ger, Smollet and Scott, and above all, to the immortal Spenser.

Of the fourteen authors added to the former list of English classics, concise accounts are given, upon Dr. Johnson's original plan; which, happily for both himself and his readers, he relinquished; as it would have conferred not much reputation on the writer, nor have communicated much information to his readers. Accordingly, a few dates and facts are only set down, in the manner of the French *Motives Littéraires*, with occasionally a general character.

When such inconsiderable advances towards bringing forward to notice the older poets, were made by those who, from their situation and influence, were best suited to the task; when our great poetical biographer was not only remiss in restoring them to popularity, but, by his neglect and silence, seemed to insinuate they were undeserving of it; the solicitude of the present editor for their fate, and the attempt now made by him to do them that justice which has been denied them by his predecessors, can require no apology.

In 1792, Mundell and Son, printers in Edinburgh, having resolved to republish the Collection of English poetry, which goes under the name of Dr. Johnson, in the manner of Dr. Knox's "Elegant Extracts in Verse," in six volumes large octavo, he took occasion to recommend a collection, upon an enlarged plan, which might unite the works of the ancient and modern poets in one comprehensive view, and exhibit the progress of our national poetry, corresponding with the gradual refinement of language and of manners, from the rudeness and simplicity of a remote period, to the polish and elegance of modern times.

The proprietors, with a liberal spirit of enterprise, worthy of an association of opulent booksellers, readily adopted the plan he recommended, though with some limitations as to the ancient poetry, and resolved to extend their collection to twelve volumes, upon his promising to furnish them with a *Biographical and Critical Preface* to the works of each author; an undertaking in which he engaged with more rashness than prudence, amidst cares and avocations of a far different and more important nature, and without a suitable provision of materials.

The list of the works of the older poets, which he originally recommended for republication, comprehended those of Chaucer, Langland, Gower; the best parts of Lydgate, Barclay, Harvey; the best parts of Skelton, Surrey, Wyatt; the best parts of Warner, Sydney, Sackville, Spenser, Marlowe, Davies, Shakspeare, Drayton, Daniel, Jonson, Donne, Hall, Drummond, Stirling, Browne, P. Fletcher, G. Fletcher; the best parts of Quarles, King, Carew, Suckling, Crashaw, Davenant, and the translations of Fairfax, Sandys, and May. The works of the authors printed in Italics were, on due consideration, omitted; it being thought safer to allure curiosity into this unfrequented track of reading, by a republication of the works of those authors, who, though not either universally read or understood (as must ever be the case with the best elder poets of every country), are notwithstanding familiar to us in conversation, and constantly appealed to in controverted points of poetical taste, than to run the risk of suppressing it totally, by a bulky republication of all or the better parts of the works of those unfortunate authors, who still remain unpopular, merely from the want of being read. The classical compositions of Barbour, James I. Henry the Minstrel, Dunbar, Douglas and Lindsay, being written in the Scottish language, could not be received into an edition of English poetry.

The list of the works of the modern poets which he originally recommended for republication, comprehended the works of Marvell, G. Cotton, Sedley, Hopkins, Oldham, Parnell, Hill, Eusden, Walford, Sewall, Blair, Hamilton, Harte, Boyse, Thompson, Cooper, Brown, Ganger, Smollet, Wilkie, Doddley, Menles, Jenner, Kirkpatrick, Smart, Bruce, Chatterton, Graze, Glover, Shaw, Lovibond, Penrose, Mickle, Jago, Scott, Logan, N. Cotton, and Blacklock. He was afterwards obliged to abridge this list, and to exclude the authors printed in Italics, on account of the arrangements which the proprietors had made relative to the extent of the collection.



# P R E F A C E.

Notwithstanding these limitations, which, on the part of the editor, were unavoidable, it is with some degree of confidence, that he offers to public inspection a Collection of English poetry, which contains the works of *one hundred and fourteen* authors, of whom *forty-nine* are not to be found in the last edition of the "Works of the English Poets," commonly called Dr. Johnson's edition; and *forty-five* are now, for the first time, received into an edition of English poetry.

In the works of the authors already collected, especially the later authors, some deficiencies have been supplied in the present edition. In the works of *Langborne*, in particular, the additions are numerous and important. They are such as a reader of English poetry will readily distinguish, and therefore unnecessary to be pointed out.

Though the editor has exerted himself with considerable attention, to render the works of the authors now first collected, as complete as possible; yet copies of *Surrey's* translation of the *second* and *fourth* books of the *Æneid*, *Davies's Epigrams*, *P. Fletcher's* Latin and English poem on the *Jesuits* and *Sicilides*, a Piscatory drama, *Harte's Essay on Reason*, *Shaw's Four Farthing Candles*, *Brown's Liberty*, and some pieces of other authors, have eluded his diligence. The works of *Chatterton* might have been enlarged by additions from Mr. Barret's "History of Bristol," and "Supplement to Chatterton's Miscellanies," which could not be obtained in due time. *Gray's Sonnet on Sir William Williams*, *Mickle's Prophecy of Queen Emma*, *Johnson's Marmor Norfoliense*, and some other little pieces, happened to be overlooked at the press.

The editor does not wish to be understood as having performed more than he has actually done. For the selection of the authors, he is solely responsible. What pleased himself he has ventured to recommend to others; a task of such difficulty requires the candid allowance of the reader, for the unavoidable differences of taste and judgment. The recommendation of the proper editions of the works to be reprinted, belonged to the editor; with the exception of the works of *Chaucer*, in the *first* volume, and the works of the several authors in the *fifth* volume, in which he had no concern.

For the correctness of the text, he is not answerable, as he had no concern in the revision of any part of these volumes, except the *Biographical and Critical Prefaces*, and occasionally some *additions, notes, and illustrations* in the course of the work. The chronological arrangement which he recommended has not been strictly observed, on account of the proportion which it was thought necessary to observe, in the size of the volumes. The engraved title-page, bearing to be "A Complete Edition of the Poets of Great Britain," was improperly copied by the proprietors, in the *first* volume, from Mr. Bell's edition, and retained in the subsequent volumes, for the sake of uniformity.

In so complicated and extensive a work, typographical errors may be expected to occur. The editor hopes they are not very numerous, and will, he thinks, be entitled to the pardon of every candid reader. Several mistakes of this kind, he is sorry to acknowledge, remain uncorrected in his part of the work, particularly in the *Lives of Wilkie, Johnson*, and some others in the *eleventh* volume, which he desires may be attributed, not to neglect, but want of experience in affairs of this nature, and to the precipitation with which the work proceeded through the press; all the *Prefaces* having been written in little more than two years, and sent to the press, in portions, as they were wanted, without any previous revision.

There is one alteration in the present collection which the editor believes will need no apology. This is the arrangement of the poetical translations of entire works in a separate volume. To render the works of *Homer* and *Pindar* more complete, Mr. Hole's *Hymn to Ceres*, and Mr. Pye's *Six Olympic Odes*, are added to the translations of *Pope* and *West*; and the deficiencies in *Dryden's Juvenal* are supplied by the versions of those who were originally associated with him in that performance. A supplemental volume of Translations, making the *thirteenth*, has been printed, and another is still wanting to complete the arrangement, with a volume of Fugitive Poetry.

Of the *Lives* here offered to the public, nearly one half have been already written by Dr. Johnson, with such felicity of performance, that the editor might perhaps more properly have contented himself with subjoining a few corrections and additions to his elegant narratives; but that new *Lives* were thought necessary to the uniformity of this collection.

As the undertaking was occasional and unforeseen, Dr. Johnson must be supposed to have engaged in it with less provision of materials than might have been accumulated by longer premeditation.



Of the later writers, at least, he might, by attention and inquiry, have gleaned many particulars which would have diversified and enlivened his biography; but he was not actuated by an enthusiasm for his employment. He could not encounter weariness, perplexity, and disgust. The labour of literature was a task from which he always wished to escape. From Spence's Collections, communicated by the Duke of Newcastle, he received great assistance. In what he relates, though there is, in many articles, little, except the manner in which it is told, that is new (a deficiency which was not always in his power to remedy), yet his narration affords a luminous proof of the vigour of his mind in all its faculties, whether memory, judgment, or imagination. What he has to say on every subject is always worth hearing. Though the turn of his mind cannot be considered as peculiarly qualifying him for a critic of subjects which require more imagination than judgment, yet the lustre of his great mind seldom beamed on any thing, without lighting us to some new truth, latent trait of character, or peculiarity hitherto unobserved. Even the acrimony of his poetical censures, is, in a great measure, compensated by the force and originality of his reflections, and the elegance and correctness of his language.

In the present undertaking, the editor has not the presumption to suppose himself qualified to complete what Dr. Johnson has left unfinished, nor the temerity to court a comparison. Neither the style nor the manner are here the principal object of attention. With a view to popular information, he has endeavoured to collect what is diffused, to glean in spots which have been sometimes neglected, and sometimes forgotten, and to relate with clearness and simplicity, what is known of the personal history and literary productions of each author, whose works are associated in this collection, digested in the form of a chronicle, subjoining an estimate of his character, a critical examination of his compositions, and, by quotation, the testimonies of contemporary writers, and the judgments of the most respectable critics.

In the course of this undertaking, he has endeavoured to avail himself of the various biographical collections already in the hands of the public. Of these collections, it was necessary to form a right idea, to select from them whatever was conducive to his design, and carefully to avoid their errors, at the same time that he preserved their excellencies. What use he has made of them will be obvious, as well as what is entirely his own.

In the Lives of the authors of a remote period, the instances are numerous which stand in need of emendations and corrections, for retrenching superfluities, supplying deficiencies, and rectifying the mistakes in dates and facts, which may unintentionally have been committed, and transmitted from writer to writer without examination. The editor has exerted himself, in this respect, with considerable attention.

In the Lives of the modern authors, especially of those lately deceased, of whom there are no written memorials, the difficulty under which the editor laboured will be evident; from the want of proper information, the prejudices of friends or admirers, the calumnies of enemies, and the suggestions of envy, to which eminent characters are peculiarly liable. Time overcomes most of these impediments, except the first, which it evidently, in many cases, increases.

An accurate investigation into the powers and varieties of the human mind, is of all studies the most important; and a faithful narration of the principles, conduct, and writings of eminent men, might, perhaps, afford the surest basis for such researches; but it is almost unreasonable to expect from human intellect and virtue, sufficient discernment, discrimination and impartiality, to qualify for so difficult and delicate a task.

As far as relates to himself, the editor has endeavoured, as much as possible, to relate the circumstances of the Lives of the authors from the most authentic information, and to give an account of their writings with real impartiality. His aim has been to rise above narrow prejudices, and to record the vices and virtues, the excellencies and defects of authors, with fidelity and freedom. The well-known adage, *de mortuis nil nisi bonum*, seems to have been dictated by tenderness and humanity. Errors are diminished when once the grave has interposed, and the good qualities are proportionably magnified. The generous feelings add to the unwillingness to blame, and every liberal mind feels it an act of cowardice to attack those who cannot defend themselves. The best propensities of the human mind are thus engaged to repel censure and invite praise. Without violating the rights of humanity, the wish of the editor has been to speak of the dead with liberal, but not indiscriminate



## P R E F A C E.

praise. Hence, truth, he trusts, will appear in its fairest garb, and impartiality appear almost like praise.

In the representation of facts, and the delineation of characters, the editor has endeavoured to do full justice to the conduct and principles of men of every profession and party. But he apprehends that a philosophical liberality of mind does not imply in it, that he has no sentiments of his own. He scruples not to declare his attachment to the great interests of mankind, and his enmity to bigotry, superstition, and tyranny. A work of this nature, that is conducted without any regard to the chief privileges of human nature, without a philosophical liberality of mind, and without feelings, especially of the moral kind, would be deprived of much of its utility.

With respect to the strictures on the works of the various authors, the editor is far from being over-anxious to make others adopt his sentiments. If erroneous criticism may be sometimes suspected, who can hope that, in matters of taste, all shall agree? He will think it sufficient, if his remarks should engage the reader to review his own opinions, or recal his attention to some latent beauty, some fascinating line, or some happy expression, which, on a first perusal, had escaped him. Where he has presumed to differ from the most respectable authorities, he would be rather understood to propose a doubt than to offer a contradiction. If his praises have been sometimes, as he fears they have, too lavishly bestowed, he trusts, that the candid reader will ascribe them to a solicitude which made him more willing to recommend beauties than to expose blemishes; rather earnest to do justice to the author's merit, than to raise an admiration of his own judgment.

The obligations which the editor has received, have extended, in several cases, to the communication of entire articles, and to occasional assistance: For the life of *Spenser*, and the lives of *Milton*, *Cowley*, *Waller*, *Butler*, and *Denham*, he is indebted to two gentlemen of learning and abilities, who have not indulged him with the liberty of mentioning their names. They were solicited and obtained by the proprietors, to expedite the publication, and never seen by the editor till they were printed. He knows not whether any apology will be deemed needful for inserting them. They are composed, it must be acknowledged, with little care or diligence, and with a compendious brevity, which, though compatible with accuracy of narration, and vigour of description, precludes a critical account both of events and writings. As these articles comprehend some of the first names in English poetry, it is the intention of the editor to write them over again, for a separate edition of the *Lives*, corrected and enlarged, which it is in contemplation with the proprietors to publish.

With respect to occasional assistance, the editor has been favoured with various biographical information concerning *Moore*, *Blair*, *Wilkie*, *Bruce*, and *Logan*, from the Rev. Mr. Toulmin of Taunton, the Rev. Dr. Robertson of Dalmeny, the Rev. Dr. William Thomson of London, the Rev. Dr. Blair, the Rev. Dr. Baird, the Rev. Dr. Hardy, and Professor Dalzel of Edinburgh, to whom he begs leave to make his acknowledgments. To all these gentlemen he esteems himself much indebted for their kindness and attention. From them arises the principal assistance he has to boast of. He has many reasons to flatter himself, that his information would have been much enlarged from other quarters, if a diffidence of his abilities for the undertaking had not deterred him from solicitation.

The editor cannot conclude, without an apology to the reader, which he is sorry to be under the necessity of making. In his endeavours to render these volumes worthy of attention, he has been thwarted by a situation peculiarly unfavourable for such pursuits: the libraries of Oxford and Cambridge, the British Museum, the repositories, museums, and libraries of the curious, from whence only adequate materials are to be drawn, he has had no access to. His chief resource has been a small private collection, and the libraries of the University, and of the Faculty of Advocates in Edinburgh, neither of which is rich in old English literature.

The mention of these valuable repositories naturally reminds the editor, that he should be deficient in gratitude, if he omitted to notice the readiness with which he was allowed the free use of whatever they contained, in the service of this work.

The communication of some scarce miscellaneous collections, by Alexander Frazer Tytler, Esq. of Woodhouselee, Robert Arbuthnot, Esq. Secretary to the Trustees for Fisheries, Manufactures and Improvements, and George Farquhar, Esq. of South Frederick-Street, the editor considers as a favour worthy of public acknowledgment.



## P R E F A C E.

How far the present work is calculated to answer what the public has a right to demand, the editor is afraid to reflect on. It was begun solely from public considerations, without any regard to personal advantage, and has been carried on through many difficulties, much ill health, and with many real doubts of his ability to finish it in such a manner as to merit applause. He has not been seduced by vanity, so far as not to perceive the many errors and defects which will be found in his part of these volumes. He is truly sensible of them; but can, at the same time, declare, they have not been caused by any relaxation of his endeavours to render the work as perfect as he was able, consistent with his attention to more important avocations. Every work of this kind is, by its nature, deficient. To those who may be dissatisfied with the manner in which it is conducted, he can only say, that the undertaking appeared to him much easier, before he engaged in it, than he found afterwards in its progress through the press. He had but an imperfect conception of the difficulties to be surmounted, the disappointments to be incurred, the books to be procured and waited for, the dates to be settled, the facts to be ascertained, and the various irritating minutiae of the press. He may safely rely on the candour of those who have experienced the trouble and difficulty attending such extensive literary undertakings.

Whatever is the determination concerning it (though the subject is what he acknowledges himself to feel some anxiety about), the editor professes himself not to have the slightest inclination to dispute the propriety of any censure which may be passed on his labours, either in part or in the whole. Perfectly satisfied with the pleasure he has received in the course of the work, he has no expectation of emolument, or wish for fame on account of his concern in it.

To do justice to neglected merit; to extend the honour of our national poetry, as far as possible, both abroad and at home; to enlarge, however little, the boundaries of literary biography and elegant criticism; to strengthen and co-operate with the taste for poetical antiquities, which, for some time past, has been considerably advancing; to hold out an incentive to the love of fame and the cultivation of the mind; to diversify the materials of common reading, and to open fresh sources of useful instruction and innocent amusement, are ends which, though to attain be beyond his powers, the honest ambition of the editor is something gratified by the attempt alone.

ROBERT ANDERSON.

EDINBURGH,        ?  
November 25. 1795.    \

THE  
POETICAL WORKS  
OF  
GEOFFREY CHAUCER.

Containing

CANTERBURY TALES,  
ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE,  
TROIUS AND CRESCIDE,  
THE COURT OF LOVE,  
THE COMPLAINT OF PITEE,  
ANNELIDA AND FALSE ARCITE,  
THE ASSEMBLEE OF FOULES,  
THE COMPLAINT OF THE BLACK KNIGHT,

THE BOOK OF THE DUCHESSE,  
CHAUCER'S A, B, C,  
THE HOUSE OF FAME,  
CHAUCER'S DREME,  
THE FLOUR AND THE LEFE,  
THE LEGENDE OF GOODE WOMEN,  
THE COMPLAINT OF MARS AND VENUS,  
THE CUCKOO AND THE NIGHTINGALE,

&c. &c. &c.

To which is prefixed

THE LIFE OF THE AUTHOR.

---

Old CHAUCER, like the *morning star*,  
To us discovers day from far;  
His light those mists and clouds dissolv'd,  
Which our dark nation long involv'd;  
But he descending to the shades,  
Darkness again the age invades.

DENHAM'S VERSES ON THE DEATH OF COWLEY.

---

EDINBURGH:

PRINTED BY MUNDELL AND SON, ROYAL BANK CLOSE

Anno 1793.





---

## THE LIFE OF CHAUCER.

---

In the beginning of the eleventh century, our vernacular poetry received from the Normans, the rudiments of that cultivation which it has preserved to the present times.

In the two succeeding centuries, the principal efforts of our yet untutored versifiers, were rhyming chronicles and metrical romances, the style of which was rough, and the harmony of the numbers very defective.

In the reign of Edward I., the character of our poetical composition was considerably changed, by the introduction and increase of the tales of chivalry, and the popular fables of the troubadours of Provence.

Fictitious adventures were then substituted by the minstrels in the place of historical and traditional facts, and a taste for ornamental and exotic expression gradually prevailed over the rude simplicity of the native English phraseology.

These fabulous narratives, afterwards enlarged by kindred fancies, derived from the crusades, and enriched by the marvellous machinery of the Italian poets, formed the taste, and awakened the imagination of GEOFFREY CHAUCER, the illustrious ornament of the reign of Edward III. and of his successor Richard II., the father of the English heroic verse, and the first English versifier who wrote poetically.

Of the great poet, with whose compositions this collection of classical English poetry commences, the curiosity which his reputation must excite, will require more ample information than can now be given. His contemporaries, who revered his genius, recorded few particulars of his life; and all who have since written of him, relate nothing beyond what casual mention, uncertain tradition, and discordant conjecture, have supplied.

This meagre narration, therefore, scarcely merits the title that is given to it; but the materials for a fuller account are not to be found, without supplying the deficiency of facts by the comments and inventions of his biographers, which have nothing to recommend them to credit but the single circumstance of being often repeated.

The birth of Chaucer, in 1328, has been settled, from the inscription on his tomb-stone, signifying that he died in 1400, in the 72d year of his age.

Of the place of his nativity there is no memorial, any more than of his parents. Bale says he was a Berkshireman; Pits would entitle Woodstock in Oxfordshire to his birth; and Camden affirms that London was his birth-place: "Edmund Spenser," says he, "a Londoner, was so smiled on by the Muses at his birth, that he excelled all the English poets that went before him, if we except only his fellow citizen Chaucer." But Chaucer himself seems to have determined the point. In his *Testament of Love*, he calls himself a *Londonois* or Londoner, and speaks of the city of London as the place of his *engendring*.

His descent has been variously assigned. Leland says that he was of a noble stock; Pits, that he was the son of a knight; Speght, that his father was a vintner; and Hearne, that he was a merchant.

This difference of opinion shews, that nothing can be said with any tolerable assurance of his family; but the patronymic name seems to indicate, that it came originally from Normandy; and there is somewhat more probability of his being the son of a gentleman rather than of a tradesman.



# THE LIFE OF CHAUCER.

His biographers are as much in the dark about the place of his education. They tell us that he received the rudiments of his education in Solere's Hall, Cambridge, where he wrote his *Court of Love*; and afterwards completed his studies in Merton College, Oxford.

In his *Court of Love*, he speaks of himself under the name and character of "Philogenet—of Cambridge, Clerk." This is by no means a decisive proof that he was really educated at Cambridge; but it may be admitted as a strong argument, that he was not educated at Oxford, as Leland has supposed, without the shadow of proof. The biographers, however, instead of weighing one of these accounts against the other, have adopted both, and tell us very gravely that he was first at Cambridge, and afterwards removed from thence to complete his education at Oxford.

After he left the university, he is supposed to have added to his accomplishments by travelling into France and the Low Countries; but when he went abroad, or at what time he returned, are circumstances not determined.

His biographers agree, that on his return, he entered himself of the Inner Temple, and prosecuted for some time the study of the law. Speght has given us a record in the Inner Temple (which he says a Mr. Buckley had seen), where "Geoffrey Chaucer was fined two shillings, for beating a Franciscan friar in Fleet-street." It were to be wished that he had given the date. Leland says, "*Collegia Leguliciorum frequentavit*, after his travels in France, and perhaps before." These travels in France rest entirely on the authority of Leland, whose account is full of inconsistencies.

He appears to have been early conversant with the court, and particularly attached to the service of the king's son, John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, by whose favour he obtained in marriage Philippa, daughter of Sir Payne, or Pagan Rouet, a native of Hainault, and sister of the famous Catherine Swynford, the duke's mistress, and afterwards his wife.

As the credit of the Duke of Lancaster increased with his father, Chaucer's also rose in a like proportion; and the liveliness of his parts, and the native gaiety of his disposition, rendered him a very popular and acceptable character in the English court, at that time the most gay and splendid in Europe.

That he had distinguished himself before this time by his poetical performances, is almost certain; and there is a tradition supported by some passages in his *Dream*, and *Cuckoo and Nightingale*, that when he attended the court at Woodstock, he resided at a square stone house near the park stile, which still retains his name.

The first authentic memorial of Chaucer, is the patent in Rymer, 41. Edward III. by which the king grants to him an annuity of 20 marks, by the title of *Valetus noster*. He was then in the 39th year of his age. How long he had served the king in that or any other station, and what particular merits were rewarded by this royal bounty, are points equally unknown. There is, however, no ground for supposing that this mark of his Majesty's favour was a reward of Chaucer's poetical merits. If it is considered that a few years after (48. Edward III.), the king appointed him Comptroller of the Wool, &c. in the port of London, with the following injunction in the patent: "So that the said Geoffrey write with his own hand his rolls, touching the said office, and continually reside there, and do and execute all things pertaining to the said office in his own proper person, and not by his substitute;"—it should seem that Edward, though adorned with many royal and heroic virtues, had not the gift of discerning and patronizing a great poet: a gift which, like that of genuine poetry, is only bestowed on the chosen few, by the peculiar favour of Heaven;

neque enim, nisi carus ab ortu

Diis superis, poterit magno fuisse poetæ.

MILT. MANSUS.

From this time Chaucer is frequently mentioned in various public instruments. In the 46. Edward III., [Rymer] the king appoints him Envoy (with two others) to Genoa, by the title of *Scutifer noster*. This embassy might probably have afforded him an opportunity of visiting Petrarch at Padua, where he tells us, in the prologue to the *Clerkes Tale*, he learned from him the story of Griselda. But it is uncertain whether he ever went upon the embassy; and the biographers of Petrarch, who died the year following (1374), have not recorded the reverential visit of the English envoy.

## THE LIFE OF CHAUCER.

"Some write," says Speght, "that he, with Petrarke, was present at the marriage of Lionell Duke of Clarence, with Violante, daughter of Galeasius Duke of Millain; yet Paulus Jovius nameth not Chaucer, but Petrarke, he sayeth, was there." It appears from an instrument in Rymer [42. Edward III.], that the Duke of Clarence passed from Dover to Calais in his way to Milan, in the spring of 1368, with a retinue of 457 men and 1280 horses. That Chaucer might have attended the Duke upon this occasion, is not impossible; but his name does not appear among the "Grandi Signori Baroni Inghilese," who were "Com. Messere Lionell in compagnia" [Muratori]. In the 48. Edward III., he has a grant for life of a pitcher of wine daily [Rymer]. In the 49. Edward III. the king grants to him the wardship of Sir Edmond Staplegate's heir [Rymer], for which he received 104 l.; and, in the next year, some forfeited wool, to the value of 71 l. 4s. 6d. [Urr. Life of Ch.]. In the last year of Edward III., he was sent to France with Sir Guichard D'Angle and Richard Stan [or Sturry], to treat of a marriage between Richard Prince of Wales, and a daughter of the French king [Froissart].

In the next year, 1. Richard II., his annuity of 20 marks was granted to him in lieu of the pitcher of wine daily. In his *Testament of Love*, he alludes to the misfortunes brought upon him by his *wedding* in the disturbances which happened in London in the 7. Richard II. What the real designs of John Comberton, commonly called John of Northampton, and his party, were, and how a trifling city-riot came to be treated as a rebellion, are points of great obscurity. There is good ground to believe that Comberton, in his endeavours to reform the city, according to the advice given by Wickliffe, was countenanced by the Duke of Lancaster, which may account for Chaucer's engagement with that party. When Chaucer fled to Holland, to avoid being examined in relation to these disturbances (as he says, *Test. of Love*) he was probably superseded in his office of Comptroller. It is probable, too, that he was confirmed in it on his return, though the instrument has not been produced. In the 11. Richard II., he had the king's license to surrender his two grants of 20 marks, in favour of John Scalby. This surrender was probably occasioned by his distressed circumstances. In the 13. Richard II., he appears to have been Clerk of the works at Westminster, &c., and in the following year at Windsor. In the 17. Richard II. the king granted him a new annuity of 20 l. [Rymer.] If he was ever possessed of Dunnington Castle in Berkshire (as his biographers suppose), he must have purchased it about this time; for it appears to have been in the possession of Sir Richard Adderbury, in the 17. Richard II. [Monast. Ang. ii. 474]. But there is no proof of any such purchase; and the situation of his affairs makes it highly improbable. The tradition of an oak in Dunnington park, called Chaucer's oak, may be sufficiently accounted for, without supposing that it was planted by Chaucer himself, as the castle was undoubtedly in the possession of Thomas Chaucer, who is supposed to be his son, for many years.

In the 21. Richard II. the king granted him his protection for two years [Rymer]; and in 22, a pipe of wine annually [*ibid*]. In the next year, the 1. Henry IV., his two grants of the annuity of 20 l., and of the pipe of wine, were confirmed to him [Rymer]; and at the same time, he had an additional grant of 40 marks, [*ibid*]. It appears that he received an annuity of 10 marks on account of his wife. He died, according to the inscription on his tombstone, in the 2. Henry IV., on the 25th of October 1400, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. A monument was erected to his memory in 1556, by Mr. Nicholas Brigham of Oxford, upon which he caused his picture to be painted, from the original of Occleve, in the illuminated manuscript of his treatise *De regimine Principis*, together with the following inscription, which still remains.

M.S.

Qui fecit Anglorum vates noster maximus olim.

GALFRIDUS CHAUCER conditur hoc tumulo :

Annum si quæras Domini, si tempora vitæ,

Ecce notæ subsunt quæ tibi cuncta notant.

25 Octobris 1400.

Ærumnarum requies mors.

N. Brigham hos fecit Musarum nomine sumptus.

1556.



These are the principal facts in Chaucer's life, which are attested by authentic evidences. In his *Treatise on the Astrolabe*, he informs us that he had a son called Lewis, who was ten years of age in 1391. There is no account in what station he lived, or when he died. The relation of Thomas Chaucer to him has not been ascertained. Speght says, "that some held opinion, that Thomas Chaucer was not the son of Geoffrey;" and there are certainly many circumstances which render that opinion probable. He married Maude, daughter of Sir John Burghershe, resided chiefly at Ewelme in Oxfordshire, passed through several public stations, and died on the 28th of April 1434.

The poetical compositions of Chaucer, particularly his *Canterbury Tales*, obtained him the highest place of distinction among his contemporaries. The tales, it is probable, were composed at different periods of his life. He connected them together in that admirable dramatic structure in which they are at present, about the year 1383. They were first printed by our meritorious countryman William Caxton, the first English printer, as Ames supposes, about 1475 or 1476, and again in 1491. Subsequent editions were printed by Wynken de Worde, in 1495, and by Pynson in 1491, and 1526, which was the first that included his miscellaneous pieces. The next edition was printed by Godfrey in 1532, with Mr. William Thynne's dedication to Henry VIII., and a great number of pieces never before published. This edition was many times reprinted, as the standard edition of Chaucer's works, till the appearance of the editions of Stowe and Speght in 1561, 1597, and 1602; and of the edition undertaken by Urry, which was published some years after his death, in 1721, with a preface by Mr. Timothy Thomas. An edition of the *Canterbury Tales* was published by Thomas Tyrwhitt, Esq., in 4 vols. 8vo, 1775, to which was added, in 1778, a fifth volume, containing an "Essay on the Language and Versification of Chaucer," "an Introductory Discourse to the *Canterbury Tales*, and "a Glossary."

The present edition of the *Canterbury Tales* is printed from Tyrwhitt's incomparable edition, and his learned and valuable Glossary is copied with little variation, except in the omission of the numerical references. The *Plowman's Tale*, *Tale of Gamelyn*, *Adventure of Pardoner and Tapestry*, and the *Merchant's second Tale*, omitted by Tyrwhitt, have been retained, though all evidence, internal and external, is against the supposition of their being the production of Chaucer.

The genuine *miscellaneous pieces* of Chaucer are printed from Urry's edition, exclusive of those pieces which are known to be the production of other authors, and the anonymous compositions, which, from time to time, have been added to Chaucer's, in the several editions, without any evidence whatever. Besides these more considerable works, it appears that he had composed many *Balades*, *Roundels*, *Virelays*, and that he had *made many a Lay and many a Thing*. A few pieces of this sort are still extant, and inserted here as they stand in the editions.

The works of Chaucer in prose are, a translation of Boethius *de consolatione Philosophiae*, which he has mentioned himself in the *Legende of Goode Women*, *A Treatise on the Astrolabe*, addressed to his son Lewis in 1391, and the *Testament of Love*, which is evidently an imitation of Boethius *de Consolatione Philosophiae*.

The private character of Chaucer appears to have been as respectable as his literary character was truly illustrious. In his manners he was mild and gentle; in his disposition he was open and ingenuous. He was a fine gentleman, an agreeable companion, and a learned writer. His contemporaries and disciples, Gower, Occleve, and Lydgate, are lavish in his praise. With Wickliffe, the father of the Reformation, he concurred in sentiments of religion, and co-operated in his most valuable designs; so natural is the connection between genius and the love of liberty.

On the literary character of Chaucer it is the less necessary to enlarge, as it has within these few years been so accurately and amply displayed by Mr. Warton, the learned historian of the English poetry, whose death is an irreparable loss to English literature, and Mr. Tyrwhitt, whose edition of the *Canterbury Tales* is the most curious, erudite, and valuable publication that has yet appeared in this country.

Chaucer is usually characterised as the Reformer of the English language, and the father of English poetry. He undoubtedly critically cultivated his native tongue, that he might reform its irregularities, and establish an English style; and he was certainly the first person in England to whom the appellation of a poet, in its genuine lustre, could be applied. He has attempted every spe-

eties of poetry, from an epigram to an epic poem, and has succeeded in all. If, however he appears pre-eminent in any one poetical department, it is in the descriptive. The *Canterbury Tales*, his greatest production, exhibit a wonderful variety of talents; for they abound with the sublime and the pathetic, with admirable satire, genuine humour, and an uncommon knowledge of life. They were probably composed in imitation of the "Decameron" of Boccace, though upon a different and improved plan. The general plan may be learned from the prologue he has prefixed to them. He supposes there, that a company of pilgrims going to Canterbury, assemble at an inn in Southwark, and agree, that for their common amusement on the road, each of them shall tell at least one tale in going to Canterbury, and another in coming back from thence; and that he who shall tell the best tales, shall be treated by the rest with a supper, upon their return to the same inn. It appears also that he designed to describe their journey, and all the remenant of their pilgrimage, including probably their adventures at Canterbury, as well as upon the road; but this extensive and difficult undertaking has been left imperfect; and more than one half of the tales he intended to give is wanting. The characters of the pilgrims are as various as at that time could be found in the departments of middle life; and the stories are exactly suited to their characters, and clearly evince, that Chaucer, notwithstanding the aids he derived from his acquaintance with Italian literature, was possessed of a noble invention, and a fruitful imagination.

*The Knight's Tale*, *The Wife of Bath's Tale*, *Tale of the Nun's Priest*, *Flower and the Leaf*, and *The Character of a Good Parson*, have been thought worthy of imitation and revival by Dryden, whose paraphrases, particularly of the *Knight's Tale*, and of the *Flower and the Leaf*, are the most animated and harmonious pieces of versification in the English language. Pope has imitated the *Merchant's Tale*, *The Wife of Bath's Prologue*, and *The House of Fame*, with his usual elegance of diction and harmony of versification. Mr. Betterton has translated the *Reeve's Tale* and the *Characters of the Pilgrims*; and a collection of "The Canterbury Tales Modernized," was published by Mr. Ogle, in 3 vol. 8vo, 1741.

The *Squire's Tale* is considered by Mr. Warton as Chaucer's capital poem; and he has admirably explained the origin of the fictions with which it abounds. With like ingenuity and learning he illustrates the various poems of Chaucer; and with regard to those which had a foreign original, shews how far the productions which gave rise to them have been copied, altered, and improved. The comparison turns out in many respects to the advantage of the English poet.

"Chaucer," says he, "was a man of the world; and from this circumstance we are to account, in a great measure, for the many new embellishments conferred on our poetry. The descriptions of splendid processions and gallant carousals, with which his works abound, are a proof that he was conversant with the practice and diversions of polite life. His travels likewise enabled him to cultivate the Italian and Provençal poetry with the greatest success, and induced him to polish the asperity, and enrich the sterility of his native versification, with softer cadences, and a more copious and variegated phraseology."

Concerning the licentious passages that are to be met with in Chaucer's poems, the same ingenious and learned writer observes, that they are in a great measure to be imputed to the age in which they were written. "We are apt," says he, "to form romantic and exaggerated notions about the moral innocence of our ancestors. Ages of ignorance and simplicity are thought to be ages of purity. The direct contrary I believe is the case. Rude periods have that grossness of manners, which is not less friendly to virtue than luxury itself. In the middle ages, not only the most flagrant violations of modesty were frequently practised and permitted, but the most infamous vices. Men are less ashamed as they are less polished. Great refinement multiplies criminal pleasures, but at the same time prevents the actual commission of many enormities, at least it preserves public decency, and suppresses public licentiousness."

In delineating Chaucer's talent for humour, Mr. Warton agrees with Dr. Hurd, who, in his "Letters on Chivalry," supposes that the *Rime of Sir Thopas*, was intended to expose the leading absurdities of the old romance. That this was Chaucer's aim appears from the following lines.



from *Isambart*, *Libeaus Desconus*, and other romances, in the same style, which are still extant; and therefore the tale may justly be called a prelude to *Don Quixotte*.

From Mr. Warton's survey of the poems of Chaucer, these conclusions are deduced concerning him:—That in cultivation and elegance, in harmony and perspicuity of versification, he surpasses his predecessors in an infinite proportion; that his genius was universal, and adapted to themes of unbounded variety; that his merit was not less in painting familiar manners with humour and propriety, than in moving the passions, and in representing the beautiful, or the grand objects of nature, with grace and sublimity; and that he appeared with all the lustre of a true poet, in an age which compelled him to struggle with a barbarous language, and a national want of taste; and when to write verses at all was a singular qualification.

# X G 6

## THE CANTERBURY TALES.

### THE PROLOGUE.

WHANNE that April with his shoures sote  
The droughte of March hath perced to the rote,  
And bathed every veine in swiche licour,  
Of whiche vertue engendred is the flour;  
Whan Zephirus eke with his sote brethe  
Enspired hath in every holt and hethe  
The tendre croppes, and the yonge sonne  
Hath in the Ram his halfe cours yronne,  
And smale foules maken melodie,  
That slepen alle night with open eye,  
So priketh hem nature in hir corages,  
Than longen folk to gon on pilgrimages,  
And palmeres for to seken strange strondes;  
To serve halwes couthe in sondry londes;  
And specially from every shire's ende  
Of Englelond to Canterbury they wende,  
The holy blisful martyr for to seke  
That hem hath holpen whan that they were seke.

Befelle that in that seson on a day,  
In Southwerk at the Tabard as I lay,  
Redy to wenden on my pilgrimage  
To Canterbury with devoute courage,  
At night was come into that hostelrye  
Wel nine-and-twenty in a compaignie  
Of sondry folk, by aventure yfalle  
In felawship, and pilgrimes were they alle  
That toward Canterbury wolden ride.  
The chambres and the stables weren wide;  
And wel we weren esed atte beste.

And shortly when the sonne was gon to reste,  
So hadde I spoken with hem everich on,  
That I was of hir felawship anon,  
And made forword erly for to rise,  
To take oure way ther, as I you devise.

But natheles while I have time and space,  
Or that I forther in this tale pace,  
Me thinketh it accordant to reson  
To tellen you alle the condition  
Of eche of hem, so as it semed me;  
And whiche they weren, and of what degre,  
And eke in what araie that they were inne;  
And at a knight than wol I firste beginne.

A Knight ther was; and that a worthy man,  
That fro the time that he firste began  
To riden out, he loved chivalrie,  
Trouthe and honour, fredom and curtesie.  
Ful worthy was he in his lordes werre,  
And therto hadde he riden, no man ferre  
As well in Cristendom as in Hethenesse,  
And ever honoured for his worthinesse.

At Alifandre he was whan it was wonne  
Ful often time he hadde the bord begonne †  
Aboven alle nations in Pruce:  
In Lettowe hadde he reysed and in Ruce,  
No Cristen man so ofte of his degre:  
In Gernade at the sieghe eke hadde he be  
Of Algesir, and ridden in Belmarie:  
At Leyes was he; and at Satalie,  
Whan they were wonne; and in the Grete See  
At many a noble armee hadde he be.  
At mortal batailles hadde he ben fiftene,  
And foughten for our faith at Tramissene  
In listes thries, and ay slain his fo.

This ilke worthy Knight hadde ben also

\* Alexandria in Egypt was won (and immediately after abandoned) in 1365 by Pierre de Lusignan King of Cyprus.

† He had been placed at the head of the table, the usual compliment to extraordinary merit, as the commentators very properly explain it.

Some time with the Lord of Palatie\*  
 Agen another Hethen in Turkie,  
 And evermore he hadde a fovereine pris,  
 And though that he was worthy, he was wise,  
 And of his port as meke as is a mayde.  
 He never yet no vilanie ne sayde  
 In alle his lif unto no manere wight:  
 He was a veray parfit gentil Knight.

But for to tellen you of his araie,  
 His hors was good, but he ne was not gaie.  
 Of fustian he wored a gipon  
 Alle besmetred with his habergeon,  
 For he was late ycome fro his viage,  
 And wente for to don his pilgrimage.

With him ther was his sone, a yonge *Squier*,  
 A lover and a lusty bacheler,  
 With lockes crull as they were laide in presse;  
 Of twenty yere age he was, I gesse.  
 Of his stature he was of even lengthe,  
 And wonderly deliver, and grete of strengthe;  
 And he hadde be sometime in chevachie  
 In Flaunders, in Artois, and in Picardie,  
 And borne him wel, as of so litel space,  
 In hope to stonden in his ladies grace.

Embrouded was he, as it were a mede  
 Alle full of freshe floures white and rede:  
 Singing he was or floyting alle the day:  
 He was as freshe as is the moneth of May:  
 Short was his gowne, with sleeves long and wide;  
 Wel coude he sitte on hors, and fayre ride:  
 He coude songes make, and wel endite.  
 Juste and eke dance, and wel pourtraie and write:  
 So hote he loved, that by nightertale  
 He slep no more than doth the nightingale:

Courteis he was, lowly and servisable,  
 And carf before his fader at the table.

A *Teman* hadde he, and servantes no mo  
 At that time, for him luste to ride so,  
 And he was cladde in cote and hode of grene;  
 A shef of peacock arwes bright and kene  
 Under his belt he bare full thriftily:  
 Wel coude he dresse his takel yemanly:  
 His arwes drouped not with fetheres lowe,  
 And in his hond he bare a mighty bowe.

A not-hed hadde he, with a broune visage:  
 Of wood-craft coude he wel alle the usage:  
 Upon his arme he bare a gaie bracer,  
 And by his side a swerd and a bokeler,  
 And on that other side a gaie daggere,  
 Harneised wel, and sharp as point of spere:  
 A Cristofre on his brest of silver shene.  
 An horne he bare, the baudrik was of grene:  
 A forster was he sothely, as I gesse.

With her was also a Nonne, a *Prioresse*,  
 That of hire smiling was ful simple and coy,  
 Hire gretest othe n'as but by Seint Eloy,  
 And she was cleped Madam Eglentine;  
 Ful wel she sange the service devine,  
 Entuned in hire nose ful swetely;  
 And Frenche she spake ful fayre and fetisly,  
 After the scole of Stratford atte Bowe,  
 For Frenche of Paris was to hire unknowe:  
 At meke was she wel taughte withalle,  
 She letter no morsel from hire lippes falle,

Ne wette hire fingres in hire saute depe;  
 Wel coude she carie a morsel, and wel kepe,  
 Thatte no drope ne fell upon hire brest:  
 In curtesie was sette ful moche hire lest:  
 Hire over lippe wiped she so clene,  
 That in hire cuppe was no ferthing fene  
 Of grese when she dronken hadde hire draught:  
 Full semely after hire mete she raught:  
 And likerly she was of grete disport,  
 And ful pleasant and amiable of port,  
 And peined hire to contrefet an chere  
 Of court and ben estatelich of manere,  
 And to ben holden digne of reverence.

But for to speken of hire conscience,  
 She was so charitable and so pitous  
 She wolde wepe if that she saw a mous  
 Caughte in a trappe if it were ded or bledd;  
 Of smale houndes hadde she, that she fedde  
 With rosted flesh, and milk, and wastel brede,  
 But fore wept she if on of hem were dede,  
 Or if men smote it with a yerde smert;  
 And all was conscience and tendre herte.

Ful semely hire wimple ypinched was,  
 Hire nose tretis, hire eyen grey as glas;  
 Hire mouth full smale, and therto soft and red;  
 But likerly she hadde a fayre forehed:  
 It was almost a spanne brode I trowe,  
 For hardily she was not undergrowe.

Ful fetise was hire cloke, as I was ware.  
 Of smale corall aboute hire arm she bare  
 A pair of bedes gauded all with grene,  
 And thereon heng a broche of gold ful shene  
 On whiche was first ywritten a crowned A,  
 And after *Amor vincit omnia*.

Another *Nonne* also with hire hadde she  
 That was hire chapelleine, and *Preesles* thre.

A *Monk* ther was, a fayre for the maistrie,  
 An out-rider that loved venerie;  
 A manly man to ben an abbott able;  
 Ful many a deinte hors hadde he in stable,  
 And whan he rode, men mighte his bridel here  
 Gingeling in a whistling wind, as clere  
 And eke as loude as doth the chapell belle  
 Ther as this lord was keeper of the celle.

The reule of Seint Maure and of Seint *Beneity*  
 Because that it was olde and somdele streit,  
 This ilke monk lette olde thinges pace,  
 And helde after the newe world the trace.  
 He yave not of the text a pulled hen  
 That faith that hunters ben not holy men,  
 Ne that a monk whan he is rekkeles  
 Is like to a fish that is waterles;  
 This is to say, a monk out of his cloistre;  
 This ilke text held he not worth an oistre;  
 And I say his opinion was good,  
 What! shulde he studie and make himselven wood,  
 Upon a book in cloistre alway to pore,  
 Or fwinken with his hondes, and laboure,  
 As Austyn bit? how shal the world be served?  
 Let Austyn have his fwink to him reserved:  
 Therefore he was a prickasoure a right.  
 Greihoundes he hadde as swift as soyl of flight,  
 Of pricking and of hunting for the hare  
 Was all his lust; for no cost wolde he spare.

I saw his sleeves purfild at the hond  
 With gris, and that the finest of the lond;

\* Palathia in Anatolia.



## THE PROLOGUE.

And for to fasten his hood under his chinne  
 He hadde of gold ywrought a curious pinne;  
 A love-knotte in the greter ende ther was:  
 His hed was balled, and shone as any glas;  
 And eke his face, as it hadde ben anoint;  
 He was a lord ful fat, and in good point:  
 His eyen stepe, and rolling in his hed,  
 That stemed as a forneis of a led;  
 His bootes souple, his hors in gret estat;  
 Now certainly he was a fayre prelat:  
 He was not pale as a forpined gost;  
 A fat swan loved he best of any roost:  
 His palfrey was as brounc as is a bery.

A *Frere* ther was, a wanton and a mery,  
 A limitour, a ful solempne man:  
 In all the ordres four is non that can  
 So moche of daliance and fayre langage.  
 He hadde ymade ful many a mariage  
 Of yonge wimmen at his owen cost;  
 Until his ordre he was a noble post.  
 Ful wel beloved and familier was he  
 With frankleins over all in his contree,  
 And eke with worthy wimmen of the Toun,  
 For he had power of confession,  
 As faide himselfe, more than a curat,  
 For of his ordre he was a licenciat.  
 Ful swetely herde he confession,  
 And plesant was his absolution.  
 He was an esy man to give penance  
 Ther as he wiste to han a good pitance,  
 For unto a poure ordre for to give  
 Is signe that a man is wel yshrive;  
 For if he gave he dorste make avant  
 He wiste that a man was repentant;  
 For many a man so hard is of his herte,  
 He may not wepe although him fore smerte;  
 Therefore in stede of weping and praieres  
 Men mote give silver to the poure freres.

His tippet was ay farsed ful of knives  
 And pinnes for to given fayre wives:  
 And certainly he hadde a mery note;  
 Wel coude he singe and plaien on a rote.  
 Of yeddinges\* he bare utterly the pris;  
 His nekke was white as the flour de lis;  
 Therto he strong was as a champion,  
 And knew wel the tavernes in every toun,  
 And every hosteler and gay tapstere,  
 Better than a lazar or a beggere;  
 For unto swiche a worthy man as he  
 Accordeth nought, as by his faculte  
 To haven with like lazars acquaintance:  
 It is not honest, it may not avance,  
 As for to delen with no swiche pouraille,  
 But all with riche and sellers of vitaille.

And over all, ther as profit shuld arise  
 Curteis he was, and lowly of servise:  
 Ther n'as no man no wher so vertuous;  
 He was the beste begger in all his hous,  
 And gave a certaine ferme for the grant  
 Non of his bretheren came in his haunt:  
 For though a wilewe hadde but a shoo,  
 (So plesant was his *In principio*)

\* This word, being not understood, has been changed in some copies into *tidings* and *weddings*. It probably means a kind of song, from the Saxon *geadign* or *giddian*, to sing.

Yet wold he have a ferthing or he went;  
 His purchas was wel better than his rent:  
 And rage he coude as it hadde ben a whelp  
 In lovedayes ther coude he moche help;  
 For ther was he nat like a cloisterere,  
 With thredbare cope, as is a poure scolere,  
 But he was like a maister or a pope:  
 Of double worsted was his semicope,  
 That round was as a belle out of the presse.  
 Somwhat he lisped for his wantonnesse  
 To make his English swete upon his tonge;  
 And in his harping, whan that he hadde song  
 His eyen twinkeled in his hed a right  
 As don the sterres in a frosty night.  
 This worthy limitour was cleped Huberd.

A *Merchant* was ther with a forked berd;  
 In mottelee, and highe on hors he sat,  
 And on his hed a Faundrish bever hat.  
 His bootes claped fayre and fetisly;  
 His resons spake he ful solempnely,  
 Souning alway the encrese of his winning:  
 He wold the see were kept\* for any thing  
 Betwixen Middelburgh and Orewell.  
 Wel coude he in eschanges sheldes selle.  
 This worthy man ful wel his wit besette;  
 Ther wiste no wight that he was in dette,  
 So stedfastly didde he his governance  
 With his bargeines and with his chevissance.  
 Forsothe he was a worthy man withalle,  
 But soth to sayn I n'ot how men him calle.

A *Clerk* ther was of Oxenford also,  
 That unto logike hadde long ygo.  
 As leue was his hors as is a rake,  
 And he was not right fat I undertake,  
 But looked holwe, and therto soberly.  
 Ful thredbare was his overest courtepy,  
 For he hadde geten him yet no benefice,  
 Ne was nought worldly to have an office;  
 For him was lever han at his beddes hed  
 Twenty bokes clothed in blake or red  
 Of Aristotle and his philosophie  
 Then robes riche, or fidel or sautrie:  
 But all be that he was a philosophre  
 Yet hadde he but litel gold in cofre,  
 But all that he might of his frendes hente  
 On bokes and on lerning he it spente,  
 And besily gan for the foules praie  
 Of hem that yave him wherwith to scolaie.  
 Of studie toke he moste cure and hede;  
 Not a word spake he more than was nede,  
 And that was said in forme and reverence,  
 And short and quike, and ful of high sentence:  
 Souning in moral vertue was his speche,  
 And gladly wolde he lerne and gladly teche.

A *Sergeant of the Lawe* ware and wise,  
 That often hadde yben at the paruis,  
 Ther was also, ful riche of excellence;  
 Discrete he was, and of grete reverence;  
 He semed swiche, his words were so wise:  
 Justice he was ful often in assise  
 By patent and by pleine commissioun:  
 For his science and for his high renoun

\* i. e. guarded. The old subsidy of tonnage or poundage was given to the king "pur la sauvgarde et custodie del mer," 12 Edw. IV. c. 3.

## THE PROLOGUE.

Of fees and robes had he many on :  
 So grette a pourchafour was no wher non :  
 All was fee simple to him in effect,  
 His pourchasing might not ben in suspect :  
 No wher so besy a man as he ther n'as;  
 And yet he semed besier than he was.  
 In termes hadde he cas and domes alle  
 That fro the tyme of King Will, weren falle ;  
 Therto he coude endite and make a thing ;  
 Ther coude no wight pinche at his writing ;  
 And every statute coude he plaine by rote.  
 He rode but homely in a medlee cote  
 Girt with a seint of silk with barres smale.  
 Of his array tell I no lenger tale.

A *Frankelcin* was in this compaignie ;  
 White was his berd as is the dayesie ;  
 Of his complexion he was sanguin ;  
 Wel loved he by the morwe a sop in win :  
 To liven in delit was ever his wone,  
 For he was Epicure's owen sone,  
 That held opinion that plein delit  
 Was veraily felicite parfite.  
 And housholder, and that a grette was he ;  
 Seint Julian he was in his contree.  
 His brede, his ale, was alway after on ;  
 A better envyned man was no wher non.  
 Withouten bake mete never was his hous-  
 Of fish and flesh, and that so plenteous  
 It shewed in his house of mete and drinke  
 Of alle deintees that men coud of thinke.  
 After the sondry seasons of the yere  
 So changed he his mete and his sounpere.  
 Ful many a fat patrich hadde he in mewe,  
 And many a breme, and many a luce in wewe.  
 Wo was his coke but if his sauce were  
 Poymant and sharpe, and redy all his gere.  
 His table dormant in his halle alway  
 Stode redy covered alle the longe day.

At sessions there was he lord and fire ;  
 Full often time he was knight of the shire.  
 An anelace and a gipciere all of silk  
 Heng at his girdel white as morwe milk.  
 A shereve hadde he ben and a countour ;  
 Was no wher swiche a worthy vavasour \*.

An *Haberdaşer*, and a *Carpenter*,  
 A *Webbe*, a *Deyer*, and a *Tapiser*,  
 Were alle yclothed in o livere  
 Of a solemne and grette fraternite.  
 Ful freshe and newe hir gere ypiked was ;  
 Hir knives were ychaped not with bras,  
 But all with silver wrought ful ciene and wel,  
 Hir girdeles and hir pouches every del :  
 Wel semed eche of hem a fayre burgeis  
 To sitten in a gild halle on the deis :  
 Everich for the wisdom that he can  
 Was shaplich for to ben an alderman.  
 For catel hadden they ynough and rent,  
 And eke hir wives wolde it wel assent ;  
 And elles certainly they were to blame :  
 It is ful fayre to ben ycleped Madame,

And for to gon to vigiles all before,  
 And have a mantel reallich ybore.

A *Coke* they hadden with hem for the ones,  
 To boile the chikenes and the marie boies,  
 And poudre marchant, turt and galingale.  
 Wel coude he knowe a draught of London ale,  
 He coude roste, and sethe, and broile, and frie,  
 Maken mortrewes, and wel bake a pie ;  
 But gret harm was it, as it thoughte me,  
 That on his shinne a mormal hadde he.  
 For blanc manger that made he with the best.

A *Shipman* was ther woned fer by west ;  
 For ought I wote he was of Dertemouth :  
 He rode upon a rounce, as he couthe,  
 All in a gowne of falding to the knec.  
 A dagger hanging by a las hadde hee  
 About his nekke under his arm adoun ;  
 The hote sommer hadde made his hewe all broun :  
 And certainly he was a good felaw ;  
 Ful many a draught of win he hadde draw  
 From Burdeux ward while that the chapmen slepe :  
 Of nice conscience toke he no kepe.  
 If that he faught and hadde the higher hand,  
 By water he sent hem home to every land.  
 But of his craft to reken wel his tides,  
 His streames and his strandes him besides,  
 His herberwe, his mone, and his lodemanage,  
 Ther was non swiche from Hull unto Cartage.  
 Hardy he was, and wise, I undertake ;  
 With many a tempest hadde his berd be shake :  
 He knew wel alle the havens as they were  
 Fro Gotland to the Cape de Finistere,  
 And every creke in Bretagne and in Spaine ;  
 His barge ycleped was the Magdelaine.

With us ther was a *Dofour of Phisike* ;  
 In all this world ne was ther non him like  
 To speke of phisike and of surgerie,  
 For he was grounded in astronomie.  
 He kept his patient a ful gret del  
 In houres by his magike naturel :  
 Wel coude he fortunen the ascendent  
 Of his images for his patient.

He knew the cause of every maladie,  
 Were it of cold, or hote, or moist, or drie,  
 And wher engendred, and of what humour :  
 He was a veray parfite practisour.  
 The cause yknowe, and of his harm the rote,  
 Anon he gave to the sike man his bote.  
 Ful redy hadde he his apothecaries  
 To send him dragges and his lettuaries,  
 For eche of hem made other for to winne :  
 Hir frendship n'as not newe to beginne.  
 Wel knew he the old Esculapius,  
 And Dioscorides and eke Rufus,  
 Old Hippocras, Hali, and Gallien,  
 Serapion, Rasis, and Avicen,  
 Averrois, Damascene, and Constantin,  
 Bernard, and Gatifden, and Gilbertin.  
 Of his diete mesurable was he ;  
 For it was of no superfluitee,  
 But of gret nourishing and digestible :  
 His studie was but litel on the Bible.  
 In sanguin and in perfe he clad was alle  
 Lined with taffata and with sendalle.

\* The precise import of this word is often as obscure as its original. See *Du Cange* in v. In this place it should perhaps be understood to mean the whole class of middling landholders.

# THE PROLOGUE.

And yet he was but esy of dispence;  
He kepte that he wan in the pestilence;  
For gold in phisike is a cordial,  
Therefore he loved gold in special.

A good *Wif* was ther of beside *Batbe*,  
But she was som del dese, and that was scathe.  
Of cloth making she hadde swiche an haunt,  
She passed hem of Ipres and of Gaunt.  
In all the parish wif ne was ther non  
That to the offring before hire shulde gon,  
And if tyme cam, certain so wroth was she,  
That she was out of alle charitee.  
Hire coverchiefs weren ful fine of ground;  
I dorste swere they weyeden a pound  
That on the Sunday were upon hire hede:  
Hire hosen weren of fine scarlet rede,  
Ful strete yteyed, and shoon ful moist and newe;  
Bold was hire face, and fayre and rede of hew.  
She was a worthy woman all hire live;  
Housbondes at the chirche dore had she had five,  
Withouten other compaignie in youthe,  
But therof nedeth not to speke as nouthe;  
And thries hadde she ben at Jerusalem;  
She hadde passed many a strange strete:  
At Rome she hadde ben, and at Boloine,  
In Galice at Seint James, and at Coloine:  
She coude moche of wandring by the way;  
Gat-tothed was she, sothly for to say;  
Upon an ambler esily she sat,  
Ywimpled wel, and on hire hede an hat  
As brode as is a bokeler or a targe,  
A fote mantel about hire hippes large,  
And on hire fete a pair of spores sharpe.  
In felawship wel coude she laughe and carpe;  
Of remedies of love she knew parchance,  
For of that arte she coude the olde dance.

A good man ther was of religioun  
That was a poure *Parson* of a town,  
But riche he was of holy thought and werk;  
He was also a lerned man, a Clerk,  
That Cristes gospel trewely wolde preche;  
His parishens devoutly wolde he teche;  
Benigne he was, and wonder diligent,  
And in adversite ful patient,  
And swiche he was yprevd often times;  
Ful loth were him to cursen for his tithes,  
But rather wolde he yeven out of doute  
Unto his poure parishens aboute  
Of his offring, and eke of his substance;  
He coude in litel thing have suffisance;  
Wide was his parish, and houses fer asonder,  
But he ne left nought for no rain ne thonder,  
In sikenesse and in mischief to visite  
The ferrest in his pariss moche and lite  
Upon his fete, and in his hand a staf:  
This noble ensample to his shepe he yaf,  
That first he wrought and afterward he taught,  
Out of the gospel he the wordes caught,  
And this figure he added yet thereto  
That if gold ruste, what shuld iron do  
For if a preest be foule on whom we trust  
No wonder is a lewed man to rust;  
And shame it is if that a preest take kepe  
To see a flittren shephard and clene shepe:

Wel ought a preest ensample for to yeve  
By his clenefesse how his shepe shulde live.

He sette not his benefice to hire,  
And lette his shepe accombred in the mire,  
And ran unto London unto Seint Poules  
To seken him a chanterie for soules,  
Or with a brotherhede to be withhold,  
But dwelt at home and kepte wel his fold,  
So that the wolf ne made it not miscarie:  
He was a shephard and no mercenarie;  
And though he holy were and vertuous  
He was to sinful men not dispitous,  
Ne of his speche dangerous ne digne,  
But in his teching discrete and benigne.  
To drawen folk to heaven with fairenesse;  
By good ensample, was his besinesse;  
But it were any persone obstinat,  
What so he were of highe or low estat,  
Him wolde he snibben sharply for the nones;  
A better preest I trowe that no wher non is,  
He waited after no pompe ne reverence,  
Ne made him no spiced conscience  
But Cristes lore, and his apostles twelve  
He taught, but first he solwed it himselfe.

With him ther was a *Plowman*, was his brother,  
That hadde ylaide of dong ful many a fother;  
A true swinker and a good was he,  
Living in pees and parfite charitee;  
God loved he beste with alle his herte  
At alle times, were it gain or smerte,  
And than his neighebour right as himselfe.  
He wolde thresh, and therto dike and delve,  
For Cristes sake, for every poure wight  
Withouten hire, if it lay in his might.

His tithes paied he ful fayre and wel  
Both of his propre swinke and his catel.  
In a tabard he rode upon a mere.

Ther was also a *Reve*, and a *Millere*,  
A *Sompnour*, and a *Pardoner* also,  
A *Manciple*, and myself; ther n'ere no mo.

The *Miller* was a stout carl for the nones,  
Ful bigge he was of braun and eke of bones,  
That proved wel, for over all ther he came,  
At wrastling he wolde bere away the ram.  
He was short shuldered, brode, a thikke gnarre,  
Ther n'as no dore that he n'olde heve of barre  
Or breke it at a renning with his hede;  
His berd as any sowe or fox was rede,  
And therto brode as though it were a spade.  
Upon the cop right of his nose he hade  
A wert, and theron stode a tuste of heres  
Rede as the bristles of a sowes eres:  
His nose-thirles blacke were and wide:  
A swerd and bokeler bare he by his side;  
His mouth as wide was as a forneis:  
He was a jangler and a Goliardeis,  
And that was most of sinne and harlotries:  
Wel coude he stelen corne and tollen thries;  
And yet he had a thornib of gold parde,  
A white cote and a blew hode wered he:  
A baggepipe wel coude he blowe and seune,  
And therewithall he brought out of toun.

A gentil *Manciple* was ther of a temple,  
Of which achateours mighten take ensample



## THE PROLOGUE.

For to ben wife in bying of vitaille,  
For whether that he paide or toke by taille  
Algate he waited so in his achate  
That he was ay before in good estate :  
Now is not that of God a ful fayre grace  
That swiche a lewed mannes wit shal pace  
The wisdom of an hepe of lered men ?

Of maisters had he mo than thries ten  
That were of lawe expert and curious,  
Of which ther was a dofein in that hous  
Worthy to ben stewardes of rent and lond  
Of any lord that is in Englelond,  
To maken him live by his propre good  
In honour detteles, but if he were wood,  
Or live as scarfly as him list desire,  
And able for to helpen all a shire  
In any cas that mighte fallen or happe ;  
And yet this Manciple sette hir aller cappe.

The Reve was a slendre colerike man,  
His berd was shave as neighe as ever he can :  
His here was by his eres round yshorne ;  
His top was docked like a preest beforne :  
Ful longe were his legges and ful lene,  
Ylike a staff ; ther was no calf yfene :  
Wel coude he kepe a garner and a binne ;  
Ther was non auditour coude on him winne ;  
Wel wiste he by the drought and by the rain  
The yelding of his seed and of his grain.  
His lordes shepe, his nete, and his deirie,  
His swine, his hors, his store, and his pultrie,  
Were holly in his Reves governing,  
And by his covenant yave he rekening,  
Sin that his lord was twenty yere of age ;  
Ther coude no man bring him in arerage.  
Ther n'as bailliff, ne herde, ne other hine,  
That he ne knew his sleight and his covine ;  
They were adradde of him as of the deth.  
His wonning was ful fayre upon an heth ;  
With grene trees yshadewed was his place ;  
He coude better than his lord pourchace :  
Ful riche he was ystored privily :  
His lord wel coude he plesen subtilly  
To yeve and lene him of his owen good,  
And have a thank and yet a cote and hood.  
In youthe he lerned hadde a good mistere ;  
He was a wel good wright, a carpentere.  
This Reve fate upon a right good stot  
That was all pomelee grey, and highte Scot :  
A long surcote of perse upon he hade,  
And by his side he bare a rusty blade.  
Of Norfolk was this Reve of which I tell,  
Beside a toun men clepen Baldefwell.  
Tucked he was, as is a frere aboute,  
And ever he rode the hindereft of the route.

A Sampnour was ther with us in that place  
That hadde a fire-red cherubennes face,  
For fausefleme he was, with eyen narwe ;  
As hote he was and likerous as a sparwe,  
With scalled browes blake and pilled berd ;  
Of his visage children were fore aferd.  
Ther n'as quicksilver, litarge, ne brimston,  
Boras, ceruse, ne oile of tartre non,  
Ne oinement, that wolde clense or bite,  
That him might helpen of his whelkes white,

Ne of the knobbes sitting on his chekes :  
Wel loved he garlike, onions, and lekes,  
And for to drinke strong win as rede as blood,  
Than wolde he speke and crie as he wer wood ;  
And whan that he wel dronken had the win,  
Than wold he speken no word but Latin :  
A fewe termes coude he, two or three,  
That he had lerned out of som decree ;  
No wonder is, he heard it all the day :  
And eke ye knowen wel how that a iay  
Can clepen watte as wel as can the pope :  
But who sh wolde in other thing him grope  
Than hadde he spent all his philosophie ;  
Ay *Questio quid juris ?* wolde he crie.

He was a gentil harlot \* and a kind ;  
A better felaw shulde a man not find :  
He wolde suffre for a quart of wine  
A good felaw to have his concubine  
A twelvemonth, and excuse him at the full :  
Ful prively a finch eke coude he pull ;  
And if he found o where a good selawe  
He wolde techen him to have non awe  
In swiche a cas of the archedekenes curse,  
But if a mannes soule were in his purse,  
For in his purse he shulde ypunished be ;  
Purse is the archedekens helle, said he,  
But wel I wote he lied right in dede ;  
Of cursing ought eche gilty man him drede,  
For curse wol sle right as affoiling saveth,  
And also ware him of a *sermificavit*.

In danger hadde he at his owen gife  
The yonge girles of the diocise,  
And knew hir counfeil and was of hir rede.  
A gerlond hadde he sette upon his hede  
As gret as it were for an alestake ;  
A bokeler hadde he made him of a cake.

With him ther rode a gentil *Pardoner*  
Of Rouncevall, his ffend and his compere,  
That streit was comen from the court of Rome ;  
Ful loude he sang, Come hither love to me.  
This Sompnour bare to him a stiff burdoun ;  
Was never trompe of half so gret a soun.  
This Pardoner had here as yelwe as wax.  
But smoth it heng as doth a strike of flax ;  
By unces heng his lokkes that he hadde,  
And therwith he his sholders overspradde :  
Full thinne it lay, by culpons on and on,  
But hode for jolite ne wered he non.  
For it was trussed up in his wallet.  
Him thought he rode all of the newe get,  
Dishevele, sauf his cappe, he rode all bare :  
Swiche glaring eyen hadde he as an hare :  
A vernicle hadde he sewed upon his cappe ;  
His wallet lay beforne him in his lappe  
Bret-ful of pardon come from Rome al hote :  
A vois he hadde as smale as hath a gote :  
No berd hadde he, ne never non shulde have ;  
As smothe it was as it were newe shave :  
I trowe he were a gelding or a mare.

But of his craft, fro Berwike unto Ware

\* The name of harlot was anciently given to men, as well as women.

Ne was ther swiche an other Pardonere,  
 For in his male he hadde a pilwebere  
 Which, as he saide, was oure Ladies viel :  
 He saide he hadde a gobbet of the seyl  
 Thatte Seint Peter had whan that he went  
 Upon the see till Jesu Crist him hent :  
 He had a crois of laton ful of stones,  
 And in a glas he hadde pigges bones.  
 But with these relikes whanne that he fond  
 A poure persone dwelling up on lond,  
 Upon a day he gat him more moneie  
 Than that the persone gat in monethes tweie ;  
 And thus with fained flattering and japes  
 He made the persone and the peple his apes.

But trewely to tellen atte last,  
 He was in chirche a noble ecclesiast :  
 Wel coude he rede a lesson or a storie,  
 But alderbest he sang an offertorie ;  
 For wel he wiste whan that song was songe  
 He muste preache and wel afile his tonge  
 To winne silver, as he right wel coude,  
 Therefore he sang the merier and loude.

Now have I told you shortly in a clause  
 Th' estat, th' araie, the nombre, and eke the cause,  
 Why that assembled was this compaignie  
 In Southwerk at this gentil hostelrie  
 That highte The Tabard, fast by the Belle.  
 But now is time to you for to telle  
 How that we baren us that ilke night  
 Whan we were in that hostelrie alight ;  
 And after wol I tell of our viage,  
 And all the remenant of our pilgrimage.

But firste I praie you of your curtesie  
 That ye ne arette it not my vilanie,  
 Though that I plainly speke in this matere,  
 To tellen you hir wordes and hir chere,  
 Ne though I speke hir words proprely ;  
 For this ye knowen al so wel as I,  
 Who so shall telle a Tale after a man  
 He moste reherse as neighe as ever he can  
 Everich word, if it be in his charge,  
 All speke he never so rudely and so large,  
 Or elles he moste tellen his Tale untrewely,  
 Or feinen thinges, or finden wordes newe :  
 He may not spare although he were his brother ;  
 He moste as wel sayn o word as an other.  
 Crist spake himself ful brode in holy writ,  
 And wel ye wote no vilanie is it :  
 Eke Plato sayeth, who so can him rede,  
 The wordes most ben cosin to the dede.

Also I praie you to forgive it me  
 All have I not sette folk in hir degree  
 Here in this Tale as that they shulden stonde :  
 My wit is short ye may well understonde.

Gret chere made our Hoste us everich on,  
 And to the soper sette he us anon.  
 And served us with vitaille of the beste ;  
 Strong was the win, and wel to drink us leste.  
 A femely man our Hoste was with alle  
 For to han ben a marshal in an halle ;  
 A large man he was, with eyen stepe ;  
 A fairer burgeis is ther none in Chepe :  
 Bold of his speche, and wise, and wel ytaught,  
 And of manhood eluked right him naught.

Eke therto was he right a mery man,  
 And after soper plaien he began,  
 And spake of mirthes and of other thinges.  
 Whan that we hadden made our rekeninges  
 And saide thus ; Now Lordinges, trewely  
 Ye ben to me welcome right hertily,  
 For by my trouthe, if that I shal not lie,  
 I saw nat this yere swiche a compaignie  
 At ones in this herberwe as is now ;  
 Fayn wolde I do you mirthes and I wiste how ;  
 And of a mirthes I am right now bethought.  
 To don you ese, and it shall coste you nought,  
 Ye gon to Canterbury ; God you spede,  
 The blisful martyr quite you your mede ;  
 And wel I wot as ye gon by the way  
 Ye shapen you to talken and to play ;  
 For trewely comfort ne mirthes is non  
 To riden by the way dombe as the ston ;  
 And therefore wold I maken you disport,  
 As I said erst, and don you some comfort.  
 And if you liketh alle by on assent  
 Now for to stonden at my jugement,  
 And for to werchen as I shal you say  
 To-morwe, whan ye riden on the way,  
 Now by my faders soule that is ded  
 But ye be mery, smiteth of my hed :  
 Hold up your hondes withouten more speche.

Our counseil was not long for to seche ;  
 Us thought it was not worth to make it wise,  
 And granted him withouten more avise,  
 And bad him say his verdit as him leste.

Lordinges, (quod he) now herkeneth for the boote.  
 But take it nat, I pray you, in disdaine ;  
 This is the point, to speke it plat and plain,  
 That eche of you to shorten with youre way  
 In this viage shal tellen Tales tway,  
 To Canterbury ward I mene it so,  
 And homeward he shall tellen other two,  
 Of adventures that whilom han befallen.  
 And which of you that bereth him best of alle,  
 That is to sayn, that telleth in this cas  
 Tales of best sentence and most solas,  
 Shall have a soper at youre aller cost  
 Here in this place sitting by this post,  
 Whan that ye comen agen from Canterbury.  
 And for to maken you the more mery  
 I wol my selven gladly with you ride,  
 Right at min owen cost, and be your gide.  
 And who that wol my jugement withsay  
 Shal pay for alle we spenden by the way.  
 And if ye vouchesauf that it be so,  
 Telle me anon withouten wordes mo,  
 And I wol erly shapen me therfore.

This thing was granted, and our othes sworn  
 With ful glad herte, and praiden him also  
 That he wold vouchesauf for to don so,  
 And that he wolde ben our governour,  
 And of our Tales juge and reportour,  
 And sette a soper at a certain pris,  
 And we wol reuled ben at his devise  
 In highe and lowe\* : and thus by on assent  
 We ben accorded to his jugement ;

\* In, or, De alto et basso, barb Lat. Haut et bas, Fr. werg

## THE PROLOGUE.

And therupon the win was sette anon :  
We dronken, and to reste wenten eche on  
Withouten any lenger taryng.

A morwe whan the day began to spring  
Up rose our Heste, and was our aller cok,  
And gaderd us togeder in a flok,  
And forth we riden a litel more than pas  
Unto the watring of Seint Thomas,  
And ther our Heste began his hors areft,  
And said, Lordes, herkeneth if you lest :  
Ye wete your forword, and I it record :  
If even song and morwe song accord,  
Let se now who shal telle the first Tale :  
As ever mote I drinken win or ale  
Who so is rebel to my jugement  
Shal pay for alle that by the way is spent.  
Now draweth cutte or that ye forther twinne ;  
He which that hath the shortest shal beginne.  
Sire Knight, (quod he) my maister and my lord,  
Now draweth cutte, for that is min accord.

Cometh nere (quod he) my Lady Prioreffe  
And ye sire Clerk ; let be your shamefastneff,  
Ne studieth nought : lay hand to every m<sup>an</sup>.  
Anon to drawen every wight began,  
And shortly for tellen as it was,  
Were it by aventure, or fort, or cas,  
The sothe is this, the cutte fell on the Knight,  
Of which ful blith and glad was every wight ;  
And tell he must his Tale as was reson,  
By forword and by composition,  
As ye han herd ; what nedeth w<sup>ord</sup> ~~more~~.  
And whan this good man saw that it was so,  
As he that wife was and obedient  
To kepe his forword by his free assent,  
He saide ; Sithen I shal begin this game,  
What, welcome be the cutte a Goddes name.  
Now let us ride, and hearkeneth what I say.  
And with that word we riden forth our way  
And he began with a right mery chere  
His Tale anon, and saide as ye shal here.



## THE KNIGHTES TALE.

WHILOM, as olde stories tellen us,  
 Ther was a duk that highte Theseus;  
 Of Athenes he was lord and governour,  
 And in his time swiche a conquerour,  
 That greter was ther non under the sonne;  
 Ful many a riche contree had he wonne.  
 What with his wisdom and his chevalrie  
 He conquerd all the regne of Feminie,  
 That whilom was ycleped Scythia,  
 And wedded the freshe quene Ipolita,  
 And brought hire home with him to his contree  
 With moche glorie and great solempnitee,  
 And eke hire yonge suster Emelië.  
 And thus with victorie and with melodie  
 Let I this worthy duk to Athenes ride,  
 And all his host in armes him beside.

And certes, if it n'ere to long to here,  
 I wolde have told you fully the manere  
 How wonnen was the regne of Feminie  
 By Theseus and by his chevalrie,  
 And of the grete bataille for the nones  
 Betwix Athenes and the Amafones,  
 And how assaged was Ipolita,  
 The faire hardy quene of Scythia,  
 And of ~~the feste that was~~ at hire wedding,  
 And of the temple at hire home coming;  
 But all this thing I mooste as now forbere:  
 I have, God wot, a large feld to ere,  
 And weke ben the oxen in my plow:  
 The remenant of my Tale is long ynow.  
 I wil not letten eke non of this route;  
 Let every felaw telle his Tale aboute,  
 And let se now who shal the souper winne.  
 Ther as I left I will agen beginne.

This duk, of whom I made mentoun,  
 Whan he was comen almost to the toun,  
 In all his wele and in his mooste pride,  
 He was ware, as he cast his eye aside,  
 Wher that ther kneled in the highe wey  
 A compaignie of ladies tway and tway,  
 Eche after other, clad in clothes blake;  
 But swiche a crie and swiche a wo they make,  
 That in this world n'is creature living  
 That ever herd swiche another waimenting;  
 And of this crie ne wolde they never stenten  
 Till they the reines of his bridel henten.

What folk be ye that at min home coming  
 Perturben so my feste with crying?  
 Quod Theseus; have ye so grette envie  
 Of min honour, that thus complaine and crie?  
 Or who hath you misboden or offended?  
 Do telle me, if that it may be amended,

And why ye be thus clothed all in blake?  
 The oldest lady of hem all than spake,  
 Whan she had fwouned with a dedly chere,  
 That it was reuthe for to seen and here.  
 She sayde, Lord, to whom Fortune hath yeven  
 Victorie, and as a conqueror to liven,  
 Nought greveth us your glorie and your honour,  
 But we beseeke you of mercie and socour:  
 Have mercie on our woe and our distresse:  
 Some drope of pitee thurgh thy gentillesse  
 Upon us wretched wimmen let now falle;  
 For certes, Lord, ther n'is non of us alle  
 That she n'hath ben a duchesse or a quene;  
 Now be we caitives, as it is wel sene:  
 Thanked be Fortune and hire false whele  
 That non estat ensureth to be wele.

And certes, Lord, to abiden your presence,  
 Here in this temple of the goddesse Clemence,  
 We han ben waiting all this fourtenight:  
 Now helpe us, Lord, for it lieth in thy might.

I wretched wight, that wepe and waile thus,  
 Was whilom wif to King Capaneus  
 That starfe at Thebes, curfed be that day;  
 And alle we that ben in this aray,  
 And maken all this lamentation,  
 We listen all our husbondes at that toun,  
 While that the siege therabouten lay:  
 And yet now the olde Creon, wala wa!  
 That lord is now of Thebes the citee,  
 Fulfilled of ire and of iniquitee,  
 He for despit, and for his tyrannie,  
 To don the ded bodies a vilanie,  
 Of alle our lordes, which that ben yflawe,  
 Hath alle the bodies on an hepe ydrawe,  
 And will not suffren hem by non assent  
 Neyther to ben yberied ne ybrent,  
 But maketh houndes etc hem in despite.

And with that word, withouten more respite,  
 They fallen groff, and crien pitously,  
 Have on us wretched wimmen som mercy,  
 And let our sorwe sinken in thin herte.

This gentil duk down from his courser sterte  
 With herte piteous whan he herd hem speke;  
 Him thoughte that his herte wolde all to-breke  
 When he saw hem so pitous and so mate  
 That whilom weren of so gret estate,  
 And in his armes he hem all up hente,  
 And hem comforted in ful good entente,  
 And swore his oth, as he was trewe knight,  
 He wolde don so ferforthly his might  
 Upon the tyrant Creon hem to wreke.  
 That all the peple of Grece shulde speke

How Creon was of Theseus yferved,  
As he that hath his deth ful wel deserved.

And right anon, withouten more abode,  
His banner he displaide, and forth he rode  
To Thebes ward, and all his host beside :  
No ner Athenes n'olde he go ne ride,  
Ne take his ese fully half a day,  
But onward on his way that night he lay,  
And sent anon Ipolita the quene,  
And Emelie hire younge suster shene,  
Unto the toun of Athenes for to dwell ;  
And forth he rit ; ther n'is no more to tell.

The red statue of Mars, with spere and targe,  
So shineth in his white banner large,  
That all the felde gliteren up and down ;  
And by his banner borne is his penon  
Of gold ful riche, in which that ther was ybete  
The Minotaure which that he flew in Crete.  
Thus rit this duk, thus rit this conquerour,  
And in his host of chevalrie the flour,  
Til that he came to Thebes, and alight  
Fayre in a feld, ther as he thought to fight.  
But shortly for to speken of this thing,  
With Creon, which that was of Thebes king  
He fought, and flew him manly as a knight  
In plaine bataille, and put his folk to flight ;  
And by assaut he wan the citee after,  
And rent adoun bothe wall, and sparre, and rafter ;  
And to the ladies he restored again  
The bodies of hir housbondes that were slain,  
To don the obsequies, as was tho the gise.

But it were all to long for to devise  
The grete clamour and the waimenting  
Whiche that the ladies made at the brenning  
Of the bodies, and the gret honour  
That Theseus, the noble conquerour,  
Doth to the ladies whan they from him wente ;  
But shortly for to telle is min entente.

Whan that this worthy duk, this Theseus,  
Hath Creon slain and wonnen Thebes thus,  
Still in the feld he toke all night his reste ;  
And did with all the countree as him leste :  
To ranfak in the tas of bodies dede,  
Hem for to stripe of harneis and of wede,  
The pillours dide hir besinesse and cure,  
After the bataille and discomfiture ;  
And so befell that in the tas they found,  
Thurgh girt with many a grevous bloody wound,  
Two yonge knightes ligging by and by,  
Bothe in on armes wrought ful richely ;  
Of whiche two Arcita highte that on,  
And he that other highte Palamon.  
Not fully quik ne fully ded they were,  
But by hir cote armure and by hir gere  
The heraudes knew him wel in special,  
As tho that weren of the blod real  
Of Thebes and of sustren two yborne.  
Out of the tas the pillours han hem torne,  
And han hem carried soft unto the tente  
Of Theseus, and he ful sone hem sente  
To Athenes, for to dwellen in prison  
Perpetuel, he n'olde no raunson.  
And whan this worthy duk had thus ydon,  
He toke his host, and home he rit anon,

With laurel crowned as a conquerour,  
And ther he liveth in joye and in honour  
Terme of his lif ; what nedeth wordes mo ?  
And in a tour in anguish and in wo  
Dwellen this Palamon and eke Arcite  
For everme, ther may no gold hem quite.

Thus passeth yere by yere, and day by day  
Till it fell ones in a morwe of May  
That Emelie, that fayrer was to sene  
Than is the lilie upon his stalke,  
And fresher than the May with floures new,  
(For with the rose colour stros hire hewe ;  
I n'ot which was the finer of hem two)  
Er it was day, as she was wont to do,  
She was arisen, and all redy dight,  
For May wol have no slogardie a night ;  
The sefon priketh every gentil herte,  
And maketh him out of his slepe to sterte,  
And sayth, Arise, and do thin obervance.

This maketh Emelie han remembrance  
To don honour to May, and for to rise ;  
Yclothed was she freshe for to devise,  
Hire yelwe here was broided in a tresse  
Behind hire back, a yerde long I gesse ;  
And in the gardin at the sonne uprist  
She walketh up and doun wher as hire list :  
She gathereth floures, partie white and red,  
To make a fotel gerlond for hire hed ;  
And as an angel hevenlich she song.  
The grete tour that was so thikke and strong,  
Which of the castel was the chef dongeon,  
(Wher as these knightes weren in prison,  
Of which I tolde you, and tellen shal)  
Was even joinant to the gardin wall,  
Ther as this Emelie had hire playing. [ing

Bright was the sonne and clere that morwen-  
And Palamon, this woful prisoner,  
As was his wone, by leve of his gayler  
Was risen, and romed in a chambre on high,  
In which he all the noble citee sigh,  
And eke the gardin, ful of branches grenc,  
Ther as this freshe Emelia the shene  
Was in hire walk, and romed up and doun.

This forweful prisoner, this Palamon,  
Goth in his chambre roming to and fro,  
And to himselfe complaining of his wo :  
That he was borne ful oft he sayd Alas !

And so befell, by aventure or cas,  
That thurgh a window thikke of many a barre  
Of yren gret, and square as any sparre,  
He cast his eyen upon Emelia,  
And therwithal he blent \* and cried A !

As though he stongen were unto the herte :  
And with that crie Arcite anon up sterte,  
And saide, Cofin min, what eyleth thee  
That art so pale and dedly for to see ?  
Why cridest thou ? who hath thee don offence ?  
For Goddes love take all in patience

\* This word has various senses in Chaucer, as it is derived from blinnan, *cessare*; blindan, *cœcare*; or blendan, *miscere*. It seems here to be used in a fourth sense, the same in which Shakespeare uses the verb to blench, i. e. to shrink or start aside. *Johnson's Dict.* in v. *Blench*. See Gloss. in v. *Blent*, part. of *Blench*.

Our prizon, for it may non other be;  
 Fortune hath yeven us this adversite:  
 Som wikke aspect or disposition  
 Of Saturne, by som constellation,  
 Hath yeven us this, although we had it sworn:  
 So stood the heven; whan that we were born:  
 We mooste endure; this is the short and plain.

This Palamon answerde, and sayde again,  
 Cosin, forsoth of this opinion  
 Thou hast a yaine imagination:  
 This prizon causeth me not for to crie,  
 But I was hurt right now thurghout min eye  
 Into min herte, that wol my bane be:  
 The fayrnesse of a lady that I se  
 Yond in the gardin roming to and fro  
 Is cause of all my crying and my wo:  
 In'ot whe'r she be woman or goddesse,  
 But Venus is it sothly as I gesse.

And therewithall on knees adoun he fill,  
 And sayde; Venus, if it be your will  
 You in this gardin thus to transfigure,  
 Before me forweful wretched creature,  
 Out of this prizon helpe that we may scape;  
 And if so be our destine be shape  
 By eterne word to dien in prizon,  
 Of our lignage have some compassion,  
 That is so low ybrought by tyrannie.

And with that word Arcita gan espie  
 Wher as this lady romed to and fro,  
 And with that sight hire beaute hurt him so,  
 That if that Palamon were wounded fore  
 Arcite is hurt as moche as he or more:  
 And with a sigh he sayde pitously,  
 The freshe beaute sleth me sodenly  
 Of hire that rometh in the yonder place;  
 And but I have hire mercie and hire grace,  
 That I may see hire at the leste way,  
 I n'am but ded; ther n'is no more to say.

This Palamon, whan he these wordes hard,  
 Dispitously he loked, and answerd,  
 Whether sayest thou this in earnest or in play?

Nay, quod Arcite, in earnest by my fay;  
 God helpe me so, me lust full yvel play.

This Palamon gan knit his browes twey.  
 It were, quod he, to thee no gret honour  
 For to be false, ne for to be trayteur  
 To me, that am thy cosin and thy brother  
 Ysworne ful depe, and eche of us to other,  
 That never for to dien in the peine  
 Til that the deth departen shal us tweine,  
 Neyther of us in love to hindre other,  
 Ne in non other cas, my leve brother;  
 But that thou shuldest trewely forther me  
 In every cas as I shuld forther thee.  
 This was thin oth, and min also certain;  
 I wot it wel thou darst it not withfain:  
 Thus art thou of my conseil out of doute,  
 And now thou woldest falsly ben aboute  
 To love my lady whom I love and serve,  
 And ever shal til that min herte sterve.

Now certes, false Arcite, thou shalt not so:  
 I loved hire firste, and tolde thee my wo.  
 As to my conseil, and my brother sworne  
 To forther me as I have told beforne,

For which thou art ybounden as a knight  
 To helpen me, if it lie in thy might,  
 Or elles art thou false I dare wel fain.

This Arcita full proudly spake again.  
 Thou shalt, quod he, be rather false than I,  
 And thou art false, I tell thee utterly;  
 For *par amour* I loved hire first or thou.  
 What wolt thou sayn? thou wifest nat right now  
 Whether she were a woman or a goddesse:  
 Thin is affection of holinesse,  
 And min is love as to a creature,  
 For which I tolde thee min aventure,  
 As to my cosin and my brother sworne.

I pose that thou lovedest hire beforne:  
 Wolt thou not wel the olde clerkes sawe †,  
 That who shall give a lover any lawe?  
 Love is a greter lawe by my pan  
 Then may be yeven of any erthly man;  
 And therfore positif lawe and swiche decree  
 Is broken all day for love in eche degree.  
 A man mooste nedes love maugre his hed;  
 He may not fleen it though he shuld be ded,  
 All be she maid, or widewe, or elles wif.

And eke it is not likely all thy lif  
 To stonden in hire grace, no more shal I;  
 For wel thou wolt thy selven veraily  
 That thou and I be damned to prizon  
 Perpetuel; us gaineth no raunson.

We strive as did the houndes for the bone,  
 They fought all day, and yet hir part was none:  
 Ther came a kyte, while that they were so wrothe,  
 And bare away the bone betwix hem bothe.  
 And therfore at the kinges court, my brother,  
 Eche man for himself, ther is non other.  
 Love if thee lust, for I love, and ay shal;  
 And sothly, leve brother, this is al.  
 Here in this prizon mosten we endure,  
 And everich of us take his aventure.

Gret was the strif, and long betwix him tw  
 If that I hadde leiser for to sey:  
 But to th' effect. It happed on a day,  
 (To tell it you as shortly as I may)  
 A worthy duk that highte Perithous,  
 That felaw was to this duk Theseus  
 Sin thilke day that they were children lite,  
 Was come to Athenes his felaw to visite,  
 And for to play as he was wont to do,  
 For in this world he loved no man so,  
 And he loved him as tendrely again:  
 So wel they loved, as olde bokes fain,  
 That whan that on was dede, sothly to tell,  
 His felaw wente and fought him down in hell:  
 But of that storie list me not to write.

Duk Perithous loved wel Arcite,  
 And had him knowe at Thebes yere by yere:  
 And finally, at request and praier  
 Of Perithous, withouten any raunson,  
 Duk Theseus him let out of prizon,

† The olde clerk is Boethius, from whose book *De Consolatione*, Chaucer has borrowed largely in many places. The passage alluded to is in l. ii. met. 12.

Quis legem det amantibus?  
 Major lex amor est sibi.



Frely to gon wher that him list over all,  
In swiche a gise as I you tellen shall.

This was the forword, plainly for to endite,  
Betwixen Theseus and him Arcite;  
That if so were that Arcite were yfound  
Ever in his lif, by day or night, o stound  
In any countree of this Theseus,  
And he were caught, it was accorded thus,  
That with a swerd he shulde lese his hed;  
Ther was non other remedie ne rede;  
But taketh his leve, and homeward he him spedde;  
Let him beware, his nekke lieth to wedde.

How gret a sorwe suffereth now Arcite?  
The deth he feleth thurgh his herte smite;  
He wepeth, waileth, crieth pitously,  
To flee himself he waiteth prively.  
He said, Alas the day that I was borne!  
Now is my prison werse than beforne;  
Now is me shape eternally to dwelle  
Not only in purgatorie but in helle.  
Alas! that ever I knew Perithous,  
For elles had I dwelt with Theseus,  
Yfetered in his prison evermo;  
Than had I ben in blisse and not in wo:  
Only the sight of hire whom that I serve,  
Though that I never hire grace may deserve,  
Wold have sufficed right ynough for me.

O dere cosin Palamon, quod he,  
Thin is the victorie of this aventure;  
Ful blisful in prison maigest thou endure  
In prison? certes nay, but in pyradise.  
Wel hath Fortune yturned thee the disce,  
That hast the sight of hire and I th' absence.  
For possible is, sin thou hast hire presence,  
And art a knight, a worthy and an able,  
That by some cas, sin Fortune is changeable,  
Thou maigest to thy desir somtime atteine:  
But that I am exiled, and barreine  
Of alle grace, and in so gret despaire,  
That ther n'is erthe, water, fire, ne aire,  
Ne creature, that of hem maketh is,  
That may me hele or don comfort in this,  
Wel ought I sterve in wanhope and distresse.  
Farewel my lif, my lust, and my gladnesse.

Alas! why plainen men so in commune  
Of purveiance of God or of Fortune,  
That yeveth hem ful oft in many a gise  
Wel better than they can hemself devise?  
Som man desireth for to have richesse,  
That cause is of his murdre or gret siknesse;  
And som man wold out of his prison fayn,  
That in his house is of his meynie slain.  
Infinite harmes ben in this matere:  
We wote not what thing that we praien here.  
We faren as he that dronke is as a mous:  
A drunken man wot wel he hath an hous,  
But he ne wot which is the right way thider,  
And to a drunken man the way is slider,  
And certes in this world so faren we.

We seken fast after felicite,  
But we go wrong ful often trewely.  
Thus we may seyn alle, and namely I,  
That wende, and had a gret opinion,  
That if I might escapen fro prison

Than I had ben in joye and parfitte heie,  
Ther now I am exiled fro my wele.  
Sin that I may not seen you Emelie  
I n'am but ded; ther n'is no remedie.

Upon that other side Palamon,  
Whan that he wist Arcita was agon,  
Swiche sorwe he maketh, that the grette tour  
Refouned of his yelling and clamour.  
The pure fetters on his shinnes grette  
Were of his bitter salte teres wete.

Alas! quod he, Arcita, cosin,  
Of all our strif, God wot, the frute is thin.  
Thou walkest now in Thebes at thy large,  
And of my wo thou yevest litel charge.  
Thou maist, sith thou hast wisdom and manhede,  
Assemblen all the folk of our kinrede,  
And make a merre so sharpe on this contrée,  
That by som aventure or som tretée  
Thou maist have hire to lady and to wif  
For whom that I must nedes lese my lif.  
For as by way of possibilté,  
Sith thou art at thy large of prison free,  
And art a lord, gret is thin advantage,  
More than is min, that sterve here in a cage:  
For I may wepe and waile while that I live,  
With all the wo that prison may me yeve,  
And eke with peine that love me yeveth also,  
That doubleth all my tourment and my wo.

Therwith the fire of jalousie up sterte  
Within his brest, and hent him by the herte  
So woody, that he like was to behold  
The box-tree, or the ashen ded and cold.  
Then said he; O cruel Goddes! that governe  
This world with binding of your word eterne,  
And writen in the table of athamant  
Your parlement and your eterne grant,  
What is mankind more unto yhold  
Than is the shepe that rouketh in the fold?  
For flain is man right as another beest,  
And dwelleth eke in prison and arrest,  
And hath siknesse and gret adversite,  
And often times gilteles parde.

What governance is in this prescience  
That gilteles turmenteth innocence?  
And yet encreaseth this all my penance,  
That man is bounden to his observance  
For Goddes sake to leten of his will,  
Ther as a beest may all his lust fulfill,  
And when a beest is ded he hath no peine;  
But man after his deth mote wepe and pleine,  
Though in this world he have care and wo:  
Withouten doute it maye flonden so.

The answer of this lete I to divines,  
But wel I wote that in this world gret pine is.  
Alas! I see a serpent or a thefe,  
That many a trewe man hath do meschefe,  
Gon at his large, and wher him lust may turn.  
But I mooste ben in prison thurgh Saturn,  
And eke thurgh Juno, jalous and eke wood  
That hath wel noye destrued all the blood  
Of Thebes, with his waste walls wide.  
And Venus sleeth me on that other side  
For jalousie, and fere of him Arcite.

Now wol I sent of Palamon a lite.

And leten him in his prifon ftill dwelle,  
And of Arcite forth I wol you telle.

The fommeer paffeth, and the nightes long  
Encrefen double wife the peines ftrong  
Both of the lover and of the prifoner;  
I for which hath the wofuller miftre  
For shortly for to fa, this Palamon  
Perpetuelli is damned to prifon,  
In chaines and in fetters to ben ded  
And Arcite is exiled on his hed  
For evermore as of that contree,  
Ne never more he fhall his lady fee.

You lovers axe I now this queftion,  
Who hath the werfe, Arcite or Palamon?  
That on my fe his lady day by day,  
But in prifon moft he dwellen alway:  
That other wher him luft may ride or go,  
But fen his lady fhall he never mo.  
Now demeth as you lifte, ye that can,  
For I wil tell you forth as I began.

When that Arcite to Thebes comen was,  
Ful oft a day he fwelt and faid Alas!  
For fen his lady fhall he never mo.  
And shortly to concluden all his wo,  
So mochel forwe hadde never creature  
That is or fhall be while the world may dure.  
His flepe, his mete, his drinke, is him byraft,  
That lene he wex, and drie as is a shaft.  
His eyen holwe, and grisly to behold,  
His hewe falwe, and pale as afhen cold,  
And folitary he was, and ever alone,  
And wailing all the night, making his mone:  
And if he herde fong or instrument,  
Than would he wepe, he mighte not be ftent.  
So feble were his spirites, and fo low,  
And changed fo, that no man coude know  
His fpeche ne his vois, though men it herd.  
And in his gere, for all the world he fend  
Nought only like the lovers maladie,  
Of Ercos, but rather ylike manie,  
Engendred of humours melancolike,  
Before he hed in his celle fantaftike.  
And shortly turned was all up fo doun  
Both habit and eke difpofitioun  
Of him, this woful lover Dan Arcite,  
What fhuld I all day of his wo endite?

Whan he endured had a yere or two  
This cruel torment, and this peine and wo,  
At Thebes, in his contree, as I faid,  
Upon a night in flepe as he him laid,  
Him thought how that the winged god Mercury  
Before him ftood, and bad him to be mery.  
His flepy yerde in hond he bare upright;  
An hat he wered upon his heres bright:  
Arraied was this god (as he toke kepe)  
As he was whan that Argus toke his flepe,  
And faid him thus; To Athenes fhalt thou wende;  
Ther is thee fhapen of thy wo an ende.

And with that word Arcite awoke and ftert.  
Now trewely how fore that ever me fmert.  
Quod he, to Athenes right now wol I fare;  
Ne for no drede of deth fhall I not spare  
To fe my lady, that I love and ferve;  
In hire prefence I rekke not to fterve.

And with that word he caught a gret mirrour,  
And faw that changed was all his colour,  
And faw his vifage all in another kind:  
And right anon it ran him in his mind,  
That fith his face was fo diffigured  
Of maladie the which he had endured,  
He mighte wel, if that he bare him lowe,  
Live in Athenes evermore unknowe,  
And fen his lady wel nigh day by day.  
And right anon he changed his aray,  
And clad him as a poure labourer.  
And all alone, fave only a fquier,  
That knew his privite and all his cas,  
Which was difguifed pourely as he was,  
To Athenes is he gone the nexte way.  
And to the court he went upon a day,  
And at the gate he proffered his fervice,  
To drugge and draw what fo men wold devife.  
And shortly of this matere for to fayn,  
He fell in office with a chamberlain,  
The which that dwelling was with Emelie,  
For he was wife, and coude fone espie  
Of every fervent which that ferved hire:  
Wel coude he hewen wood, and water bere,  
For he was yonge and mighty for the nones,  
And therto he was ftrong and big of bones  
To don that any wight can him devife.

A yere or two he was in this fervice,  
Page of the chambre of Emelie the bright,  
And Philostrate he fayde that he hight.  
But half fo wel beloved a man as he  
Ne was ther never in court of his degre.  
He was fo gentil of conditioun,  
That thurghout all the court was his renoun.  
They fayden that it were a charite  
That Thefeus wold enhaunfe his degre,  
And putten him in worfhipful fervice,  
Ther as he might his vertues exercife.  
And thus within a while his name is fpronge  
Both of his dedes and of his good tonge,  
That Thefeus had taken him fo ner  
That of his chambre he made him a fquier,  
And gave him gold to mainteine his degre;  
And eke men brought him out of his contree  
Fro yere to yere ful prively his rent;  
But honeftly and fleightly he it fpend,  
That no man wondred how that he it hadde.  
And thre yere in this wife his lif he ladde,  
And bare him fo in pees and eke in werre  
Ther n'as no man that Thefeus hath derre.  
And in this bliffe let I now Arcite,  
And fpeke I wol of Palamon a lite.

In derkenesse and horrible and ftrong prifon  
This seven yere hath fitten Palamon,  
Perpined, what for love and for diftreffe.  
Who feleth double forwe and hevinesse  
But Palamon? that love diftrafneth fo,  
That wood out of his wit he goth for wo,  
And eke therto he is a prifonere  
Perpetuell, not only for a yere.

Who coude time in Englifh properly  
His martirdom? forfoth it am not I,  
Therefore I paffe as lightly as I may.  
It fell that in the seventh yere, in May

The thridde night, (as olde bokes sayn,  
That all this storie tellen more plain)  
Were it by aventure or destinee,  
(As when a thing is shapen it shal be)  
That sone after the midnight Palamon,  
By helping of a frend, brake his prison,  
And fleeth the cite faste as he may go,  
For he had yeven drinke his gayler so,  
Of a clarre made of a certain wine,  
With narcotikes and opie of Thebes fine, [shake,  
That all the night though that men wold him  
The gailer slept, he mighte not awake :  
And thus he fleeth as faste as ever he may.

The night was short, and faste by the day,  
That nedes coft he moite himselven hide;  
And to a grove faste ther beside  
With dredful foot than stalketh Palamon :  
For shortly this was his opinion,  
That in that grove he wold him hide all day,  
And in the night than wold he take his way  
To Thebes ward, his frendes for to preie  
On Theseus to helpen him werreie :  
And shortly, eyther he wold lese his lif  
Or winnen Emelie unto his wif.  
This is the effect, and his entente plein.

Now wol I turnen to Arcite agein,  
That litel wist how neighe was his care,  
Till that Fortune had brought him in the snare.  
The besy lark, the messager of day,  
Salewith in hire song the morwe gray,  
And firy Phebus riseth up so bright,  
That all the orient laugheth of the sight,  
And with his stremes drieth in the greves  
The silver dropes hanging on the leves.  
And Arcite, that is in the court real  
With Theseus the squier principal,  
Is risen, and loketh on the mery day;  
And for to don his observance to May,  
Remembring on the point of his desire,  
He on his courser, sterling as the fire,  
Is ridden to the felde him to pley,  
Out of the court, were it a mile or twey;  
And to the grove of which that I you told  
By aventure his way he gan to hold,  
To maken him a gerlond of the greves,  
Were it of woodbind or of hauthorn leves,  
And loud he song agen the sonne shene.

Maye, with all thy flours and thy grene,  
Right welcome be thou faire freshe May,  
I hope that I some grene here gotten may.  
And from his courser with a lusty herte  
Into the grove ful hastily he sterre,  
And in a path he romed up and down,  
Ther as by aventure this Palamon  
Was in a bush, that no man might him se,  
For fore afered of his deth was he.  
Nothing ne knew he that it was Arcite :  
God wot he wold have trowed it ful lite.  
But soth is said, gon sithen are many yeres,  
That feld hath eyen, and the wood hath eres,  
It is ful faire a man to bere him even  
For al day mete? men at unset steven.  
Ful litel wote Arcite of his felaw,  
That was so neigh to herken of his saw,

For in the bush he sitteth now ful still.

Whan that Arcite had romed all his fill,  
And songen all the roundel lustily,  
Into a studie he fell sodenly,  
As don these lovers in hir queinte geres,  
Now in the crop, and now down in the breres.  
Now up, now down, as boket in a well.  
Right as the Friday, sothly for to tell,  
Now shineth it, and now it raineth fast;  
Right so can gery Venus overcast  
The hertes of hire folk, right as the day  
Is gerfull, right so change the aray.  
Selde is the Friday all the weke ylike.

Whan Arcite hadde yfonge, he gan to fike,  
And fet him down withouten any more;  
Alas! (quod he) the day that I was bore!  
How longe, Juno, thurgh thy crueltee  
Wilt thou werreien Thebes the citee?  
Alas! ybrought is to confusion  
The blood real of Cadme and Amphion :  
Of Cadmus, which that was the firste man  
That Thebes built, or firste the toun began,  
And of the citee firste was crowned king,  
Of his linage am I, and his ofspring  
By veray line, as of the stok real;  
And now I am so caitif and so thral,  
That he that is my mortal enemy  
I serve him as his squier pourely.  
And yet doth Juno me wel more shame,  
For I dare not beknowe min owen name,  
But ther as I was wont to highte Arcite,  
Now highte I Ahilostat not worth a mite,  
Alas! thou fell Mars, alas! thou Juno,  
Thus hath your ire our linage all fordo,  
Save only me and wretched Palamon,  
That Theseus martireth in prison.  
And over all this, to fien me utterly,  
Love hath his firy dart forebrenningly  
Ystiked thurgh my trewe careful hert,  
That shapen was my deth erst than my shert.  
Ye fien me with your eyen Emelie;  
Ye ben the cause wherfore that I die.  
Of all the remenant of min other care  
Ne set I not the mountance of a tare,  
So that I coude don ought to your pleance.

And with that word he fell down in a trance  
A longe time, and afterward up sterre.  
This Palamon, that thought thurghout his herte  
He felt a colde swerd sodenly glide;  
For ire he quoke, no longer wolde he hide;  
And whan that he had herd Arcites tale,  
As he were wood, with face ded and pale,  
He sterre him up out of the bushes thikke  
And fayde; Falso Arcite, falso traitour wicke,  
Now art thou hent, that lovest my lady so,  
For whom that I have all this peine and wo,  
And art my blood, and to my conseil sworn,  
As I ful oft have told thee herebeforn,  
And hast beiaped here Duk Theseus,  
And falsely changed hast thy name thus;  
I wol be ded, or elles thou shalt die :  
Thou shalt not love my lady Emelie,  
But I wol love hire only and no mo,  
For I am Palamon thy mortal fe.



And though that I no wepen have in this place,  
 But put of prison am aſtert by grace,  
 I drede nought that eyther thou ſhalt die  
 Or thou ne ſhalt nat loven Emelie;  
 Cheſe which thou wolt, for thou ſhalt not aſterte.

This Arcite, tho with ful diſpitous herte,  
 When he him knew, and had his tale herd,  
 As as a leon pulled out a ſwerd,  
 And ſayde thus; By God that ſitteth above,  
 Nere it that thou art ſike and wood for love,  
 And that thou no wepen haſt in this place,  
 Thou ſhuldeſt never out of this grove pace,  
 That thou ne ſhuldeſt dien of min hond;  
 For I deſie the ſuretee and the bond  
 Which that thou ſaiſt that I have made to thee.  
 What! veray fool, thinke wel that love is free,  
 And I wol love hire maugre all thy might.  
 But for thou art a worthy gentil knight,  
 And wilneſt to darraine hire by bataille,  
 Have here my trowth, to morwe I will not faille,  
 Withouten weting of any other wight,  
 That here I wol be founden as a knight,  
 And bringen harneis right ynough for thee,  
 And cheſe the beſte, and leve the werſte for me.  
 And mete and drinke this night wol I bring  
 Ynough for thee, and cloathes for thy bedding;  
 And if ſo be that thou my lady win,  
 And fle me in this wode, ther I am in,  
 Thou maiſt wel have thy lady as for me.

This Palamon answered, I grant it thee:  
 And thus they ben departed till a morwe.  
 When eche of hem hath laid his ſaith to borwe.

O Cupide! out of alle charitee,  
 O regne! that wolt no felaw have with thee,  
 Ful ſoth is ſayde, that love ne lordſhip  
 Wol nat his thankes have no felawſhip.  
 Wel finden that Arcite and Palamon.

Arcite is ridden anon to the toun,  
 And on the morwe, or it were day light,  
 Ful prively two harneis hath he dight,  
 Both ſuffiſant and mete to darreine  
 The bataille in the field betwix hem tweine;  
 And on his hors, alone as he was borne,  
 He carieth all this harneis him beforne;  
 And the grove, at time and place yſette,  
 This Arcite and this Palamon ben mette.  
 Tho changen gan the colour in hir face,  
 Right as the hunter in the regne of Trace  
 That ſtondeth at a gappe with a ſpere,  
 When hunted is the lion or the bere,  
 And hereth him come ruſhing in the groves,  
 And breking bothe the boughes and the leves.  
 And thinketh here cometh my mortal enemy,  
 Withouten faille he muſt be ded or I:  
 For eyther I mote ſlain him at the gappe,  
 Or he mote ſlen me if that me miſhappe.  
 So ſerden they in changing of hir hewe,  
 As ſer as eyther of hem other knewe.  
 Ther n' as no good day, ne no ſalving,  
 But ſtreit withouten wordes reherſing  
 Everich of hem halpe to armen other  
 As frendly as he were his owen brother;  
 And after that with ſharpe ſperes ſtrong  
 They foineden eche at other wonder long.

Thou mighteſt wenen that this Palamon  
 In his fighting were as wood leon,  
 And as a cruel tigre was Arcite:  
 As wilde bores gan they togeder ſmite,  
 That frothen white as ſome for ire wood;  
 Up to the ancle foughte they in hir blood;  
 And in this wiſe I let hem fighting dwelle,  
 And forth I wol of Theſeus you telle.

The deſtinee, miniſtre general,  
 That executeth in the world over al  
 The purveiance that God hath ſen beforne,  
 So ſtrong it is, that though the world hath ſworne  
 The contrary of a thing by ya or nay,  
 Yet ſomtime it ſhall fallen on a day  
 That falleth nat eſte in a thouſand yere  
 For certainly our appetites here,  
 Be it of werre, or pees, or hate, or love,  
 All is this ruled by the fight above.  
 This mene I now by mighty Theſeus,  
 That for to hunt is ſo deſirous,  
 And namely at the grete hart in May,  
 That in his bed ther daweth him no day  
 That he n'is clad, and redy for to ride  
 With hunte and horne, and houndes him beſide;  
 For in his hunting hath he ſwicke delite,  
 That it is all his joye and appetite  
 To ben himſelf the grete harts bane;  
 For after Mars he ſerveth now Diane.

Clere was the day, as I have told or this,  
 And Theſeus, with alle joye and blis,  
 With his Ipolitia, the fayre quene,  
 And Emelie, yclothed all in grene,  
 On hunting ben thy ridden really:  
 And to the grove, that ſtood ther faſte by,  
 In which ther was an hart as men him told,  
 Duk Theſeus the ſtreite way hath hold,  
 And to the launde he rideth him ful right,  
 Ther was the hart ywont to have his flight,  
 And over a brooke, and ſo forth on his wey.  
 This duk wol have a cours at him or twey  
 With houndes, ſwicke as him luſt to commande.  
 And when this duk was comen to the launde,  
 Under the ſonne he loked, and anon  
 He was ware of Arcite and Palamon,  
 That foughten breme, as it were bolles two;  
 The brighte ſwerdes wenten to and fro  
 So hidouſly that with the leſte ſtroke  
 It ſemed that it wolde felle an oke,  
 But what they weren nothing he ne wote:  
 This duk his courſer with his ſporres ſmote,  
 And at a ſtert he was betwix hem two,  
 And pulled out a ſwerd and cried, Ho!  
 No more, up peine of leſing of your hed;  
 By mighty Mars he ſhall anon be ded  
 That ſmiteth any ſtroke that I may ſen!  
 But telleth me what miſtere men ye ben,  
 That ben ſo hardy for to fighten here  
 Withouten any juge or other officere,  
 As though it were in liſtes really.

This Palamon answered haſtily  
 And ſaide; Sire, what nedeth wordes mo?  
 We have the deth deſerved bothe two:  
 Two woful wretches ben we, two caitives,  
 That ben accombred of our owen lives.

And as thou art a rightful lord and juge  
 Ne yeve us neyther mercie ne refuge;  
 Add fle me first for seinte charitee,  
 But fle my felaw eke as wel as me;  
 Or fle him first, for though thou know it lite,  
 This is thy mortal fo, this is Arcite,  
 That fro thy lond is banished on his hed,  
 For which he hath deserved to be ded;  
 For this is he that came unto thy gate,  
 And sayde that he highte Philostrate.  
 Thus hath he japed thee ful many a yere,  
 And thou hast makid him thy chief squiere,  
 And this is he that loveth Emelie.

For sith the day is come that I shal die  
 I make plainly my confession,  
 That I am thilke woful Palamon  
 That hath thy prison broken wilfully:  
 I am thy mortal fo, and it am I  
 That loveth so hot Emelie the bright.  
 That I wold dien present in hire sight,  
 Therefore I axe deth and my iewise,  
 But fle my felaw in the same wise,  
 For both we have deserved to be slain.

This worthy duk answerd anon again,  
 And sayd, This is a short conclusion;  
 Your owen mouth, by your confession,  
 Hath damned you, and I wol it recorde;  
 It nedeth not to pine you with the corde:  
 Ye shul be ded by mighty Mars the Rede.

The quene anon for veray womanhede  
 Gan for to wepe, and so did Emelie,  
 And all the ladies in the compaignie.  
 Gret pite was it, as it thought hem alle,  
 That ever swiche a chance shulde befall,  
 For gentil men they were of gret estat,  
 And nothing but for love was this debat;  
 And sawe hir bloody woundes wide and fore,  
 And alke criden bothe lesse and more,  
 Have mercie Lord upon us wimmen alle,  
 And on hir bare knees adoun they falle,  
 And wold have kist his feet ther as he stood,  
 Till at the last assaked was his mood;  
 (For pitee renneth sone in gentil herte)  
 And though he first for ire quoke and sterre,  
 He had considered shortly in a claufe  
 The trespass of hem both, and eke the cause;  
 And although that his ire hir gilt accused,  
 Yet in his reson he hem both excused;  
 As thus; he thoughte wel that every man  
 Wol helpe himself in love if that he can,  
 And eke deliver himself out of prison;  
 And eke his herte had compassion  
 Of wimmen, for they wepten ever in on,  
 And in his gentil herte he thoughte anon,  
 And soft unto himself he sayed, Fie  
 Upon a lord that wol have no mercie,  
 But be a leor both in word and dede,  
 To hem that be in repentance and drede,  
 As wel as to a proud dispitous man  
 That wol maineinen that the first began.  
 That lord hath litel of discretion  
 That in swiche cas can no division,  
 That in swiche cas can no division.

He gan to loken up with eyen light,  
 And spake these same wordes all on hight.

The god of Love, a *benedicite*!  
 How mighty and how grete a lord is he?  
 Again his might ther gainen non obstacles,  
 He may be cleped a God for his miracles,  
 For he can maken at his owen gife  
 Of everich herte as that him list devise.

Lo here this Arcite, and this Palamon,  
 That quitely weren out of my prison,  
 And might have lived in Thebes really,  
 And weten I am hir mortal enemy,  
 And that hir deth lith in my might also,  
 And yet hath love, maugre hir eyen two,  
 Ybrought hem hither both for to die;  
 Now loketh, is not this an heigh folie?  
 Who may ben a fool, but if that be love?  
 Behold for Goddes sake that sitteth above,  
 So how they blede! be they not wel araied?  
 Thus hath hir lord, the god of Love, hem paid  
 Hir wages, and hir fees for hir service,  
 And yet they wenen for to be ful wise  
 That serven Love for ought that may befall.  
 And yet is this the beste game of alle,  
 That shie for whom they have this jolite  
 Con hem therefore as mochel thank as me.  
 She wot no more of alle this hote fare,  
 By God, than wot a cuckow or an hare.  
 Eat all mote ben assaied hote or cold;  
 A man mote ben a fool other yonge or old;  
 I wot myself ful yore agon,  
 For in my time a servant was I on;  
 And therefore sith I know of loves peine,  
 And wot how sore it can a man destreine,  
 As he that oft hath been caught in his las,  
 I you foryeve all holly this trespass,  
 At request of the quene that kneleth here,  
 And eke of Emelie, my *Tuster dere*,  
 And ye shul both anon unto me swere  
 That never mo ye shul my contree dere,  
 Ne maken werre upon me night ne day,  
 But ben my frendes in alle that ye may.  
 I you foryeve this trespass every del.  
 And they him sware his axing fayr and wel,  
 And him of lordship and of mercie praid,  
 And he hem granted grace, and thus he said:  
 To speke of real linage and richeffe,  
 Though that she were a quene or a princeffe,  
 Eche of you bothe is worthy douteles  
 To wedden whan time is, but matheles,  
 I speke as for my suster Emelie,  
 For whom ye have this strif and jalousie,  
 Ye wot yourself she may not wedden two  
 At ones, though ye fighten evermo;  
 But on of you, al be him loth or lefe,  
 He mot gon pipen in an ivy lefe:  
 This is to say, she may not have you bothe,  
 Al he ye never so jalous ne so wrothe,  
 And forthy I you put in this degree,  
 That eche of you shal have his destinee  
 As him is shape, and herkneth in what wise:  
 Lo here your ende of that I shal devise.  
 My will is this for plat conclusion

that you liketh, take it for the beste,  
 That everich of you shal gon wher him leste  
 Freely withouten raunson or dangere.  
 And this day fifty wekes, ferre ne nere,  
 Everich of you shal bring an hundred knightes,  
 Armed for listes up at alle rightes,  
 Alle redy to darrein hire by bataille.\*  
 And this behete I you withouten faille  
 Upon my trouth, and as I am a knight,  
 That whether of you bothe hath that might,  
 This is to sayn, ~~that~~ whether he or thou  
 May with his hundred, as I spake of now,  
 Sle his contrary, or out of listes drive,  
 Him shall I yeven Emelie to wive  
 To whom that Fortune yeveth so fayr a grace.

The listes shal I maken in this place,  
 And God so wisly on my soule rewe,  
 As I shal even juge ben and trewe.  
 Ye shal non other ende with me maken  
 That on of you ne shall be ded or taken;  
 And if you thinketh this is wel ysaid,  
 Saith your avis, and holdeth you apaid :  
 This is your ende and your conclusion,

Who loketh lightly now but Palamon ?  
 Who springeth up for joye but Arcite ?  
 Who coud it tell, or who coud it endite,  
 The joye that is makid in the place  
 Whan Theseus hath don so fayre a grace ?  
 But down on knees went every manere wight,  
 And thanked him with all hir hertes might,  
 And namely these Thebanes often sith.

And thus with good hope and with herte blith  
 They taken hir leve, and homeward gan they ride  
 To Thebes, with his olde walles wide.

I trowe men wolde deme it negligence  
 If I foryete to tellen the dispence  
 Of Theseus, that goth so besily  
 To maken up the listes really,  
 That swiche a noble theatre as it was  
 I dare wel sayn in all this world ther n'as :  
 The circuite a mile was aboute  
 Wailed of stone, and ditched all withoute;  
 Round was the shape, in manere of a compas  
 Ful of degrees, the hight of sixty pas,  
 That whan a man was set on o degree  
 He letted not his felaw for to see.  
 Eastward ther stood a gate of marbel white,  
 Westward right swiche another in th' opposite;  
 And shortly to concluden, swiche a place  
 Was never in erthe in so litel a space,  
 For in the lond ther n'as no craftes man  
 Than geometrie or arismetrike can,  
 Ne portreieur, ne kerver of images,  
 That Theseus ne gaf him mete and wages  
 The theatre for to maken and devise.

And for to don his rite and sacrifice  
 He estward hath upon the gate above,  
 In worship of Venus goddesse of Love,  
 Don make an auter and an oratorie,  
 And westward, in the minde and in memorie  
 Of Mars he makid hath right swiche another,  
 That coste largely of gold a fother :  
 And northward, in a touret on the wall,  
 Of alabastr white and red corall

An oratorie riche for to see,  
 In worship of Diane of chastitee,  
 Hath Theseus don wrought in noble wise.

But yet had I foryeten to devise  
 The noble kerving and the portreitures,  
 The shape, the contenance, of the figures  
 That weren in these oratories three.

First in the temple of Venus maist thou see  
 Wrought on the wall, ful pitous to beholde,  
 The broken slepes, and the sikkes colde,  
 The sacred teres, and the waimentinges,  
 The firy strokes of the desiringes,  
 That Loves servantes in this lif enduren,  
 The othes that hir covenants assuren.  
 Plesance and Hope, Desire, Foolhardinesse,  
 Beaute and Youthe, Baudrie and Richeffe,  
 Charmes and Force, Lesinges and Flaterie,  
 Dispence, Besinesse, and Jalousie,  
 That wered of yelwe goldes a gerlond,  
 And hadde a cuckow sitting on hire hond,  
 Festes, instruments, and caroles and dances,  
 Lust and array, and all the circumstances  
 Of Love, which that I reken and reken shall,  
 By ordre weren peinted on the wall,  
 And mo than I can make of mention :  
 For sothly all the mount of Citheron,  
 Ther Venus hath hire principal dwelling,  
 Was shewed on the wall in purtreying,  
 With all the gardin, and the lustinesse :  
 Nought was foryeten the porter Idelinesse,  
 Ne Narcissus the fayre of yore agon,  
 Ne yet the folie of King Salomon,  
 Ne yet the grete strengthe of Hercules.  
 Th' enchantment of Medea and Circes,  
 Ne of Turnus the hardy fiere corage,  
 The riche Cresus caitif in servage.  
 Thus may ye seen that wisdom ne richesse,  
 Beaute ne sleighte, strengthe ne hardinesse,  
 Ne may with Venus holden champartie,  
 For as hire liste the world may she gie.  
 Lo, all these folk so caught were in hire las:  
 Til they for wo ful often said Alas!  
 Sufficeth here ensamples on or two,  
 And yet I coude reken a thousand mo.

The statue of Venus, glorious for to see;  
 Was naked fleting in the large see,  
 And fro the navel down all covered was  
 With waves grene, and bright as any glas.  
 A citole in hire right hand hadde she,  
 And on hire hed, ful semely for to see,  
 A rose gerlond fresh and wel smelling;  
 Above hire hed hire doves fleckering :  
 Before hire stood hire sone Cupido,  
 Upon his shoulders winges had he two,  
 And blind he was, as it is often sene;  
 A bow he bare and arwes bright and kene.

Why shulde I not as wel eke tell you all  
 The purtreiture that was upon the wall  
 Within the temple of mighty Mars the Rede ?  
 All peinted was the wall in length and brede  
 Like to the estres of the grisly place  
 That highte the gret temple of Mars in Trace,  
 In thilke colde and frosty region,  
 Ther as Mars hath his sovereyn mansion.



First on the wall was painted a forest,  
In which ther wonneth neyther man ne best,  
With knotty, knarry barrein trees old  
Of stubbes sharpe and hidous to behold,  
In which ther ran a romble and a swough,  
As though a storme shuld bresten every bough;  
And downward from an hill under a bent  
Ther stood the temple of Mars Armipotent,  
Wrought all of burned stele, of which th' entree  
Was longe and streite, and ghastly for to see;  
And thereout came a rage and swiche a vise  
That it made all the gates for to rise.  
The northern light in at the dore shone,  
For window on the wall ne was ther none  
Thurgh which men mighten any light discernen:  
The dore was all of athamant sterne,  
Yelenced overthwart and endelong  
With yren tough, and for to make it strong,  
Ever piler the temple to sustene  
Was tonne-gret, of yren bright and shene.

Ther saw I first the derke imagining  
Of Felonie, and alle the compassing;  
The cruel ire, red as any glode,  
The pikepurse, and eke the pale drede,  
The smiler with the knif under the cloke,  
The shepen-brenning with the blake smoke,  
The treson of the mording in the bedde,  
The open werre, with woundes all bebledde;  
Conteke with bloody knif and sharp manace:  
All full of chirking was that sorry place.  
The fleer of himself yet saw I there,  
His herte blood hath bathed all his here;  
The naile ydriven in the shode on hight,  
The cold deth, with mouth gaping upright.  
Amiddes of the temple fate Mischance,  
With discomfort and sorry contenance;  
Yet saw I Woodnesse laughing in his rage,  
Armed Complaint, Outhees, and fires Outrage;  
The carraine in the bush, with throte ycorven;  
A thousand slain, and not of qualme ystorven;  
The tirant, with the prey by force yraft;  
The toun destroyed, ther was nothing laft:  
Yet saw I brent the shippes hoppesteres,  
The hunte ystrangled with the wilde beres;  
The sow fretting the child right in the cradel,  
The coke yscalled for all his long ladel:  
Nought was foryete by th' infortune of Marte  
The carter overridden with his carte;  
Under the wheel ful low he lay adoun.

Ther were also of Martes division  
Th' armerer and the bowyer, and the smith,  
That forgeth sharp swardes on his stith;  
And all above depeinted in a tour  
Saw I a Conquest, sitting in gret honour,  
With thilke sharp sward over his hed  
Yhanging by a subtil twined thred.  
Depeinted was the slaughter of Julius,  
Of gret Nero and of Antonius:  
All be that thilke time they were unborne,  
Yet was hir deth depeinted ther beforne,  
By menacing of Mars, right by figure,  
So was it shewed in that purtreiture  
As is depeinted in the cercles above,  
Who shal be slaine or elles ded for love.

Sufficeth on ensample in stories olde;  
I may not reken hem alle though I wolde.

The statue of Mars upon a carte stood  
Armed, and loked grim as he were wood,  
And over his hed ther shinen two figures  
Of sterres that ben cleped in scriptures,  
That on Puella, that other Rubeus.  
This god of Armes was araied thus;  
A wolf ther stood beforne him at his fete  
With eyen red, and of a man he ete:  
With subtil pensil painted was this storie,  
In redouting of Mars and of his glorie.

Now to the temple of Diane the chaste  
As shortly as I can I wol me haste,  
To tellen you of the description,  
Depeinted by the walles up and down,  
Of hunting and of shamefast chastitee.  
Ther saw I how woful Calisto,  
Whan that Diane agreved was with here,  
Was turned from a woman til a bere,  
And after was she made the lodesterre:  
Thus was it peinted, I can say no ferre;  
Hire some is eke a sterre as men may see.  
Ther saw I Diane yturned til a tree,  
I mene not hire the goddesse Diane,  
But Penens daughter, which that highte Dane.  
Ther saw I Atteon an hart ymaked,  
For vengeance that he saw Diane all naked:  
I saw how that his houndes have him caught,  
And freten him, for that they knew him naught.  
Yet peinted was a litel forthermore  
How Athalante hunted the wilde bore,  
And Meleagre, and many another mo,  
For which Diane wroughte hem care and wo.  
Ther saw I many another wonder storie,  
The which me liste not drawen to memorie.

This goddesse on an hart ful heye fete,  
With smale houndes all about hire fete,  
And underne the hire feet she hadde a mone,  
Wexing it was, and shulde wanen sone.  
In gaudy grene hire statue clothed was,  
With bow in hond, and arwes in a cas.  
Hire eyen caste she ful low adoun,  
Ther Pluto hath his derke regioun.  
A woman travailling was hire beforne,  
But for hire childe so longe was unborne  
Ful pitoussly Lucina gan she call,  
And sayed; Helpe, for thou mayest beste of all.  
Wel coude he peinten listly that it wrought,  
With many a florein he the hewes bought.

Now ben these listes made, and Theseus  
That at his grete cost arraied thus  
The temples, and the theatre everidel,  
Whan it was don him liked wonder wel.  
But stint I wol of Theseus a lite,  
And speke of Palamon and of Arcite.

The day approacheth of hir returning,  
That everich shuld an hundred knightes bring,  
That bataille to derreine, as I you told;  
And til Athenes hir covenant for to hold,  
Hath everich of hem brought an hundred knightes  
Wel armed for the werre at alle rightes.  
And likerly ther trowed many a man  
That never sithen that the world began,

As for to speke of knighthood of hir hond,  
 As fer as God hath meked see and lond,  
 As of so fewe so noble a compaignie;  
 For every wight that loved chevalrie,  
 And wold his thankes han a passant name,  
 Hath praied that he might ben of that game,  
 And wel was him that therto chosen was,  
 For if ther fell to-morwe such a cas,  
 Ye knowen wel that every lusty knight  
 That loveth *par amour*, and hath his might,  
 Were it in Englelond or elleswher,  
 They wold hir thankes willen to be ther.  
 To fight for a lady, a *benedicite*!  
 It were a lusty fighte for to se.

And right so ferden they with Palamon.  
 With him ther wenten knightes many on;  
 Som wol ben armed in an habergeon,  
 And in a brest plate, and in a gipon;  
 And som wol have a pair of plates large,  
 And som wol have a Prace shield or a targe;  
 Som wol ben armed on his legges wele,  
 And have an axe, and some a mace of stele.  
 Ther n'is no newe guise that it n'as old.  
 Armed they weren as I have you told,  
 Everich after his opinion.

Ther maist thou se coming with Palamon  
 Licurge himself, the grete King of Trace;  
 Blake was his berd, and manly was his face;  
 The cerles of his eyen in his hed  
 They gloweden betwixen yelwe and red,  
 And like a griffon loked he about,  
 With kemped heres on his browes stout;  
 His limmes gret, his braunes hard and stronge,  
 His shouldres brode, his armes round and longe;  
 And as the guise was in his contree,  
 Ful highe upon a char of gold stood he.  
 With foure white bolles in the trais.  
 Insteede of cote armure on his harnais,  
 With mayles yelwe, and bright as any gold,  
 He hadde a beres ikin, cole-blake for old.  
 His longe here was kempt behind his bak,  
 As any ravenes fether it shone for blake.  
 A wreth of gold arm-gret, of huge weight,  
 Upon his hed sate ful of stones bright,  
 Of fine rubins and of diamants.  
 About his char ther wenten white alauns,  
 Twenty and mo, as gret as any stere,  
 To huntun at the leon or the dere,  
 And folwed him, with mesel fast ybound,  
 Colored with gold, and torettes filed round.  
 An hundred lordes had he in his route  
 Armed full wel, with hertes sterne and stoute.

With Arcita, in stories as men find,  
 The gret Emetrius the King of Inde,  
 Upon a stede bay, trapped in stele,  
 Covered with cloth of gold diapred wele,  
 Came riding like the god of armes Mars;  
 His cote armure was of a cloth of Tars,  
 Couched with perles white, and round, and grete;  
 His fadel was of brent gold new ybete;  
 A mantelet upon his shouldres hanging  
 Bret-ful of rubies red, as fire sparkling;  
 His crispe here like ringes was yronne,  
 And that was valua, and elitered as the sonne.

His nose was high, his eyen bright citrin,  
 His lippes round, his colour was sanguin,  
 A fewe fraknes in his face yspreint,  
 Betwixen yelwe and blake somdel ymeint,  
 And as a leon he his loking caste,  
 Of five-and-twenty yere his age I caste;  
 His berd was wel begonnen for to spring,  
 His vois was as a trompe thondering;  
 Upon his hede he wered of laurer grene,  
 A gerlond freshe and lusty for to sene;  
 Upon his hond he bare for his deduit  
 An egle tame, as any lily whit;  
 An hundred lordes had he with him there,  
 All armed save hir hedes in all hir gere,  
 Ful richely in alle manere thinges;  
 For trusteth wel that erles, dukes, kinges,  
 Were gathered in this noble compaignie,  
 For love and for encrese of chevalrie.  
 About this king ther ran on every part  
 Ful many a tame leon and leopart.

And in this wise these lordes all and some  
 Ben on the Sonday to the citee come  
 Abouten prime, and in the toun alight.

This Theseus, this duk, this worthy knight,  
 Whan he had brought hem into his citee,  
 And inned hem everich at his degree,  
 He festeth hem, and doth so gret labour  
 To esen hem, and don hem all honour,  
 That yet men wenen that no mannes wit  
 Of non estat ne coud amenden it.  
 The ministralcie, the service at the feste,  
 The grete yestes to the most and leste,  
 The riche array of Theseus paleis,  
 Ne who sate first ne last upon the deis,  
 What ladies fayrest ben or best dancing,  
 Or which of hem can carole best or sing,  
 Ne who most felingly speketh of love,  
 What haukes sitten on the perche above,  
 What houndes ligen on the floor adoun,  
 Of all this now make I no mentioun.  
 But of the effect, that thinketh me the beste;  
 Now cometh the point, and herkeneth if you leste.

The Sonday nighte or day began to spring,  
 Whan Palamon the larke herde sing,  
 Although it n'ere not day by houres two,  
 Yet sang the larke, and Palamon right tho  
 With holy herte, and with an high corage  
 He rose, to wenden on his pilgrimage  
 Unto the blisful Citherea benigne,  
 I mene Venus, honourable and digne.  
 And in hire houre he walketh forth a pas  
 Unto the listes, ther hire temple was,  
 And doun he kneleth, and with humble chere  
 And herte fore he sayde as ye shul here:

Fayrest of fayre, o lady min Venus,  
 Daughter to Jove, and spouse of Vulcanus,  
 Thou glader of the Mount of Citheron!  
 For thilke love thou haddest to Adon,  
 Have pitee on my bitter teres smert,  
 And take myn humble prair at thin herte,

Alas! I ne have no langage to tell  
 The effecte ne the torment of min hell;  
 Min herte may min harmes not bewrey;  
 I am so confusd that I cannot say.



But mercy, lady bright ! that knowest wele  
My thought, and seest what harmes that I fele :  
Consider all this, and rue upon my fore,  
As wisely as I shal for evermore  
Emforth my might thy trewe servant be,  
And holden werre alway with chastite ;  
That make I min avow so ye me helpe,  
I kepe nought of armes for to yelpe,  
Ne axe I nat to-morwe to have victorie,  
Ne renoun in this cas, ne vaine glorie  
Of pris of armes, blowen up and douny,  
But I wold have fully possessioun  
Of Emelie, and die in her servise ;  
Find thou the manere how, and in what wise.  
I rekke not but it may better be  
To have victorie of hem, or they of me  
So that I have my lady in min armes ;  
For though so be that Mars is god of Armes,  
Your vertue is so grete in heaven above,  
That if you liste I shal wel have my love.  
Thy temple wol I worship evermo,  
And on this auter, wher I ride or go,  
I wol don sacrifice, and fires bete.  
And if ye wol not so, my lady swete !  
Than pray I you to-morwe with a spere  
That Arcita me thurgh the herte bere ;  
Than rekke I not when I have lost my lif  
Though that Arcita win hire to his wif.  
This is the effecte and ende of my praier,  
Yeve me my love thou blisful lady dere !

When the orison was don of Palamon  
His sacrifice he did, and that anon,  
Ful pitously, with alle circumstances,  
All tell I not as now his observances.  
But at the last the statue of Venus shoke,  
And made a signe whereby that he toke  
That his praier accepted was that day ;  
For though the signe shewed a delay,  
Yet wist he wel that granted was his bone,  
And with glad herte he went him homw ful sone.

The thridde hour inequal that Palamon  
Began to Venus temple for to gon.  
Up rose the sonne, and up rose Emelie,  
And to the temple of Diane gan hie.  
Hire maydens that she thider with hire ladde  
Ful redily with hem the fire they hadde,  
Th' encense, the clothes, and the remenant all,  
That to the sacrifice longen shall,  
The hornes ful of mede, as was the gife ;  
Ther lakked nought to don hire sacrifice.  
Smoking the temple, ful of clothes sayre,  
This Emelie with herte debonaire  
Hire body weshe with water of a well,  
But how she did hire rite I dare not tell,  
But it be any thing in general,  
And yet it were a game to heren all ;  
To him that meneth wel it n'ere no charge ;  
But it is good a man to ben at large.  
Hire bright here kembd was, untressed all ;  
A coroune of a grene oke cerial  
Upon hire hed was set ful sayre and mete :  
Two fires on the auter gan she bete,  
And did hire thinges as men may behold  
In Stace of Thebes, and these bokes old.

Whan kindled was the fire, with pitous chere  
Unto Diane she spoke as ye may here :

O chaste goddesse of the wodes grene,  
To whom both heaven, and erthe, and see, is sene,  
Queene of the regne of Pluto derke and lowe,  
Goddesse of maydens, that min herte hast knowe  
Ful many a yere, and wost what I desire,  
As kepe me fro thy vengeance and thin ire,  
That Atteon aboughte cruelly !  
Chast goddesse ! wel wotest thou that I  
Desire to ben a mayden all my lif,  
Ne never wol I be no love ne wif :  
I am (thou wost) yet of thy compaignie,  
A mayde, and love hunting and venerie,  
And for to walken in the wodes wilde,  
And not to ben a wif and be with childe ;  
Nought wol I knowen compaignie of man ;  
Now helpe me, Lady, sith you may and can,  
For though three formes that thou hast in thee :  
And Palamon that hath swiche love to me,  
And eke Arcite, that loveth me so fore,  
This grace I prae the withouten more,  
As sende love and pees betwix em two,  
And fro me torne away hir hertes lo,  
That all hir hote love and hir desire,  
And all hir besy torment and hir fire  
Be queinte, or torned in another place.  
And if so be thou wolt not do me grace,  
Or if my destinee be shapen so  
That I shal nedes have on of hem two,  
As sende me him that most desireth me.

Beholde, goddesse of clene Chastite,  
The bitter teres that on my chekes fall :  
Sin thou art mayde, and keper of us all,  
My maydenhede thou kepe and well conservg,  
And while I live a mayde I wol thee serve.

The fires brenne upon the auter clere  
While Emelie was thus in hire praier,  
But sodenly she saw a fighte queinte ;  
For right anon on of the fires quiente  
And quiked again, and after that anon  
That other fire was queinte and all agon,  
And as it queinte it made a whisteling  
As don these brondes wet in hir brenning ;  
And at the brondes ende outran anon  
As it were bloody dropes many on ;  
For which so fore agast was Emelie,  
That she was wel neigh mad, and gan to crie.  
For she ne wiste what it signified,  
But only for the fere thus she cried  
And wept, that it was pitee for to here.

And there withall Diane gan appere  
With bowe in hond, right as an huntresse,  
And sayde, Doughter, stint thin bewinnesse.  
Among the goddes highe it is affermed,  
And by eterne word written and confermed,  
Thou shalt be wedded unto on of the  
That han for thee so mochel care and wo,  
But unto which of hem I may not tell.  
Farewel, for here I may no longer dwell ;  
The fires which that on min auter brenne  
Shal thee declaren er that thou go henne  
Thin aventure of love as in this cas.

And with that word the armes in the car





Of the goddesse clatteren fast and ring,  
 And forth she went and made a vanishing,  
 For which this Emelie astonied was,  
 And sayde, What amounteth this, alas!  
 I putte me in thy protection  
 Diane, and in thy disposition.  
 And home she goth anon the nexte way.  
 This is the effecte; ther n'is no more to say.

The nexte houre of Mars folwing this  
 Arcite unto the temple walked is  
 Of fierce Mars, to don his sacrifice  
 With all the rites of his payen wife.  
 With pitous herte and high devotion  
 Right thus to Mars he sayde his orison:

O stronge God, that in the regnes cold  
 Of Truce honoured art, and lord yhold,  
 And hast in every regne and every lond  
 Of armes all the bridel in thin hond,  
 And hem fortunest as thee list devise,  
 Accept of me my pitous sacrifice!  
 If so be that my youthe may deserve,  
 And that my might be worthy for to serve  
 Thy godhed, that I may ben on of thine,  
 Than praie I thee to rewe upon my pine,  
 For thilke peine and thilke hote fire  
 In which thou whilom brendest for desire  
 Whanne that thou usedest the beautee  
 Of fayre yonge Venus freshe and free,  
 And haddest hire in armes at thy wille;  
 Although the ones on a time misfille,  
 When Vulcanus had caught thee in his las,  
 And fond thee ligging by his wif, alas!  
 For thilke sorwe that was tho in thin herte  
 Have reuthe as wel upon my peines smerte.

I am yonge and unkonning as thou wost,  
 And, as I trow, with love offended most  
 That ever was ony lives creature;  
 For she that doth me all this wo endure  
 Ne recceth never whether I sinke or flete;  
 And wel I wot or she me mercy hete  
 I wolste with strengthe win hire in the place;  
 And wel I wot withouten helpe or grace  
 Of thee ne may my strengthe not availle;  
 Than helpe me, Lord, to-morwe in my bataille,  
 For thilke fire that whilom brenned thee,  
 As wel as that this fire now brenneth me,  
 And do, that I to-morwe may han victorie;  
 Min be the travaille and thin be the glorie.  
 Thy severaine temple wol I most honouren  
 Of ony place, and alway most labouren  
 In thy plesance and in thy craftes strong;  
 And in thy temple I wol my baner hong,  
 And all the armes of my compaignie,  
 And evermore until that day I die  
 Eterne fire I wol beforne thee find;  
 And eke to this avow I wol be bind.  
 My berd, my here that hangeth long adoun,  
 That never yet felt non offensoun  
 Of rasour ne of shere I wol thee yeve,  
 And ben thy trewe servant while I live.  
 Now, Lord, have reuthe upon my forwes fore;  
 Yeve me the victorie; I axe thee no more.

The praier stint of Arcite the stronge,  
 The ringes on the temple dore that hong,  
 And eke the dore, clatterden ful fast,  
 Of which Arcite somewhat him agast.

The fires brent upon the auter bright  
 That it gan all the temple for to light;  
 A swete smell anon the ground up yaf,  
 And Arcite anon his hond up haf,  
 And more ensense into the fire he cast,  
 With other rites mo, and at the last  
 The statue of Mars began his hauberke ring,  
 And with that soun he herd a murmuring  
 Ful low and dim, that said thus, Victorie;  
 For which he yaf to Mars honour and glorie.

And thus with joye and hope wel to fare  
 Arcite anon unto his inne is fare  
 As fayn as foul is of the brighte sonne.

And right anon swiche strif ther is begonne  
 For thilke granting in the heven above  
 Betwixen Venus the goddesse of Love,  
 And Mars the sterne god Armipotent,  
 That Jupiter was besy it to stent,  
 Til that the pale Saturnus the Colde,  
 That knew so many of adventures olde,  
 Fond in his olde experience and art  
 That he ful sone hath plesed every part.  
 As sooth is sayd, elde hath gret advantage;  
 In elde is both wisdom and usage:  
 Men may the old out-renne but not out-redde.

Saturne anon, to stenten strif and drede,  
 Albeit that it is again his kind,  
 Of all this strif he gan a remedy find.

My dere doughtere Venus! quod Saturne,  
 My cours that hath so wide for to turne  
 Hath more power than wot any man.  
 Min is the drenching in the see so wan,  
 Min is the prison in the derke cote,  
 Min is the strangel and hanging by the throte,  
 The murmure, and the cherles rebelling,  
 The groyning, and the prive empoysoning.  
 I do vengeance and pleine correction  
 While I dwell in the signe of the Leon.  
 Min is the ruine of the highe halles,  
 The falling of the toures and of the walles  
 Upon the minour or the carpenter;  
 I slew Samson in shaking the piler.  
 Min ben also the maladies colde,  
 The derke trefons and the castes olde:  
 My loking is the fader of Pestilence.  
 Now wepe no more, I shal do diligence  
 That Palamon, that is thin owen knight,  
 Shal have his lady, as thou hast him right.  
 Though Mars shal help his knight yet natheles,  
 Betwixen you ther mot sometime be pees:  
 All be ye not of o complexion  
 That causeth all day swiche division.  
 I am thin ayel, redy at thy will;  
 Wepe now no more, I shal thy lust fulfill.

Now wol I stenten of the goddes above,  
 Of Mars and of Venus goddesse of Love,  
 And tellen you as plainly as I can  
 The gret effect for which that I began.

Gret was the feste in Athenes thilke day,  
 And eke the lusty feson of that May  
 Made every wight to ben in swiche plesance,  
 That all that Monday justen they and dance.  
 And spenden it in Venus highe servise;  
 But by the cause that they shulden rise

Erly a-morwe for to seen the fight,  
Unto hir rehte wenten they at night.  
And on the morwe whan the day gan spring  
Of hors and harnais noise and clattering  
Ther was in the hostelryes all aboute,  
And to the paleis rode ther many a route  
Of lordes upon stedes and palfreis.

Ther mayest thou see devising of harnais  
So uncouth and so riche, and wrought so wele  
Of goldsmithry, of brouding and of stele;  
The sheldes brighte, testeres, and trappures,  
Gold-hewen helmes, hauberkes, cote armures;  
Lordes in parementes on hir courferes,  
Knightes of retenue, and eke squieres,  
Nailing the spures, and helmes bokeling,  
Guiding of sheldes, with lainers lacing;  
Ther as nede is they weren nething idel:  
The fomy stedes on the golden bridel  
Gnawing, and fast the armures also  
With file and hammer priking to and fro;  
Yemen on foot, and communes many on  
With shorte staves, thicke as they may gon;  
Pipes, trompes, nakeres, and clariounes,  
That in the battaille blowen bloody sounes;  
The paleis ful of peple up and down,  
Here thre, ther ten, holding hir questoun,  
Devining of these Theban knightes two,  
Som sayden thus, som sayde it shall be so;  
Som helden with him with the blacke berd,  
Som with the balled, som with the thick herd;  
Som saide he looked grim, and wolde fighte;  
He hath a sparth of twenty pound of wighte.

Thus was the halle full of devining  
Long after that the sonne gan up spring.  
The gret Theseus that of his slepe is waked  
With minstrelle and noise that was maked,  
Held yet the chambre of his paleis riche,  
Til that the Theban knightes bothe yliche  
Honoured were, and to the paleis sette.

Duk Theseus is at a window sette.  
Araied right as he were a god in trone:  
The peple preseth thiderward ful sone,  
Him for to seen and don high reverence,  
And eke to herken his heste and his sentence.

An heraud on a scaffold made an O,  
Til that the noise of the peple was ydo,  
And whan he saw the peple of noise al still  
Thus shewed he the mighty dukes will.

The lord hath of his high discretion  
Considered that it were destruction  
To gentil blood to fighten in the gise  
Of mortal bataille now in this emprise;  
Wherefore to shapen that they shul not die,  
He wol his firste purpos modifie.

No man therefore, up peine of losse of lif,  
No maner shot ne pollax ne short knif  
Into the listes send or thider bring,  
Ne short swerd for to stike with point biting,  
No man ne draw ne bere it by his side;  
Ne no man shal unto his felaw ride  
But o cours, with o sharpe ygrounden spere;  
Foin if him list on foot, himself to were:  
And he that is at meschief shal be take,  
And not slaine, but be brought unto the stake

That shal ben ordeined on eyther side;  
Thider he shal by force, and ther abide:  
And if so fall the chevetain be take  
On eyther side, or elles sleth his make,  
No longer shal the tourneying ylast:  
God spede you; goth forth and lay on fast:  
With longe swerd and with mafe fighteth your fill  
Goth now your way; this is the lordes will.

The vois of the peple touched to the heaven,  
Se loude crieden they with mery steven,  
God save swiche a lord that is so good,  
He wilneth no destruction of blood.

Up gon the trompes and the melodie,  
And to the listes rit the compaignie  
By ordinance, thurghout the cite large,  
Hanged with cloth of gold and not with saige.  
Ful like a lord this noble duk gan ride,  
And these two Thebans upon eyther side,  
And after rode the quene and Emelie,  
And after that another compaignie  
Of on and other after hir degree;  
And thus they passen thurghout the citee,  
And to the listes comen they be time:  
It n'as not of the day yet fully prime.

Whan fet was Theseus ful riche and hie,  
Ipolita the quene, and Emelie,  
And other ladies in degrees aboute,  
Unto the fetes preseth all the route.  
And westward thurgh the gates under Mart  
Arcite, and eke the hundred of his part,  
With baner red, is entred right anon;  
And in the selve moment Palamon  
Is, under Venus, estward in the place,  
With baner white, and hardy chere and face.  
In all the world to seken up and down,  
So even without variatioun  
Ther n'ere swiche compaignies never twey;  
For ther was non so wise that coude sey  
That any hadde of other advantage  
Of worthinesse, ne of estat ne age,  
So even were they chosen for to gesse:  
And in two renges sayre they hem dresse.  
Whan that hir names red were everich on,  
That in her nombre gile were ther non,  
Tho were the gates shette, and cried was loude,  
Do now your devoir, yonge knightes proude.

The heraudes left hir priking up and down,  
Now ringin trompes loud and clarioun.  
Ther is no more to say, but est and west  
In gon the speres sadly in the rest;  
In goth the sharpe spore into the side:  
Ther see men who can juste and who can ride:  
Ther shiveren shaftes upon sheldes thicke;  
He seleth thurgh the herte spothe the pricke:  
Up springen speres twenty foot on highte;  
Out gon the swerdes as the silver brighte:  
The helmes they to-hewen and to-shrede;  
Out brest the blod with sterne stremes rede:  
With mighty maces the bones they to-breste;  
He thurgh the thickest of the throng gan threste;  
Ther stomblen stedes strong, and down goth all;  
He rolleth under foot as doth a ball:  
He foineth on his foo with a tronchoun,  
And he him hurtleth with his hors adoun:



Though the body is hurt, and sith ytake  
 Juge his hed, and brought unto the stake,  
 As forword was, right ther he must abide;  
 Another lad is on that other side:  
 And somtime doth hem Theseus to rest,  
 Hem to refresh and drinken if hem lest.  
 Ful oft a day han thilke Thebanes two  
 Togeder met and wrought eche other wo:  
 Unhorsed hath eche other of hem twey.  
 Ther n'as no tigre in the vale of Galaphey,  
 Whan that hire whelpe is stole whan it is lite,  
 So cruel on the hunt as is Arcite  
 For jealous herte upon this Palamon;  
 Ne in Belmarie ther n'is so fell leon  
 That hunted is, or for his hunger wood,  
 Ne of his prey desireth so the blood,  
 As Palamon to sleen his foo Arcite:  
 The jealous strokes on hir helmes bite;  
 Out renneth blood on both her sides rede.  
 Somtime an ende ther is of every dede;  
 For er the sonne unto the reste went  
 The strong King Emetrius gan hent  
 This Palamon, as he fought with Arcite,  
 And made his swerd depe in his flesh to bite;  
 And by the force of twenty is he take  
 Unyolden, and ydrawen to the stake:  
 And in the rescous of this Palamon  
 The stronge King Licurge is borne adoun;  
 And King Emetrius for all his strengthe  
 Is borne out of his fadel a fwerdes lengthe,  
 So hitte him Palamon or he were take:  
 But all for nought, he was brought to the stake:  
 His hardy herte might him helpen naught;  
 He moſte abiden whan that he was caught  
 By force and eke by composition.

Who forweth now but woful Palamon,  
 That moſte no more gon again to fight?  
 And whan that Theseus had seen that fight  
 Unto the folk that foughten thus eche on  
 He cried, Ho! no more, for it is don.  
 I wol be trewe juge and not partie.  
 Arcite of Thebes shal have Emelie,  
 That by his fortune hath hire fayre ywonne.

Anon ther is a noise of peple begonne  
 For joye of this so loud and high withall  
 It seemed that the listes shulden fall.

What can now fayre Venus done above?  
 What saith she now? what doth this quene of Love  
 But wepeth so for wanting of hire will  
 That hire teres in the listes fill:  
 She sayde, I am ashamed doutelees.

Saturnus sayde, Daughter, hold thy pees:  
 Mars hath his will, his knight hath all his bone,  
 And by min hed thou shalt ben cſed fone.

The trompoures with the loud minstrelcie,  
 The heraudes, that so loude yell and crie,  
 Ben in hir joye for wele of Dan Arcite.  
 But herkeneth me, and stenteth noise a lite,  
 Whiche a miracle ther befell anon.

This fierce Arcite hath of his helme ydon,  
 And on a courſer for to shew his face  
 He priketh endelong the large place,  
 Loking upward upon this Emelie,  
 And she again him cast a frendlich eye,

(For women, as to spoken in commune,  
 They folwen all the favour of Fortune)  
 And was all his in chere as his in herte.  
 Out of the ground a Fury infernal sterte,  
 From Pluto sent, at requeste of Saturne,  
 For which his hors for fere gan to turne,  
 And lepte aside, and foundred as he lepe;  
 And er that Arcite may take any kepe  
 He pight him on the pomel of his hed,  
 That in the place he lay as he were deſt,  
 His brest to-brosten with his fadel bow;  
 As blake he lay as any cole or crow,  
 So was the blood yronnen in his face.

Anon he was yborne out of the place,  
 With herte fore, to Theseus paleis:  
 Tho was he corven out of his harnais,  
 And in a bed ybrought ful fayre and blive,  
 For he was yet in memorie and live,  
 And alway crying after Emelie.  
 Duk Theseus with all his compaignie  
 Is comen home to Athens his citee  
 With alle blisse and gret solempnite.  
 Al be it that this aventure was falle  
 He n'olde not discomforten hem alle.  
 Men sayden eke that Arcite shal not die,  
 He shal ben heled of his maladie.  
 And of another thing they were as fayn,  
 That of hem alle was ther non yslain,  
 Al were they fore yhurt, and namely on,  
 That with a spere was thirled his brest bone.  
 To other woundes and to broken armes  
 Som hadden salves and some hadden charmes;  
 And fermacies of herbes, and eke save.  
 They dronken, for they wold hir lives have:  
 For which this noble duk, as he wel can,  
 Comforteth and honoureth every man,  
 And made revel all the longe night  
 Unto the strange lordes, as was right.  
 Ne ther n'as holden no discomforting  
 But as at justes or a tourneying;  
 For sothly ther n'as no discomfiture,  
 For falling n'is not but an aventure:  
 Ne to be lad by force unto a stake  
 Unyolden, and with twenty knightes take,  
 O person all alone, withouten mo,  
 And haried forth by armes, foot, and too,  
 And eke his stede driven forth with staves,  
 With footmen, bothe yemen and eke knaves,  
 It was aretted him no vilanie;  
 Ther may no man clepen it cowardie.  
 For which anon Duk Theseus let crie,  
 To stenten alle rancour and envie,  
 The gree as wel of o side as of other,  
 And eyther side ylike, as others brother;  
 And yave hem giftes after hir degree,  
 And helde a feste fully dayes three;  
 And conveyed the kinges worthily  
 Out of his toun a jounnee largely;  
 And home went every man the righte way;  
 Ther n'as no more but Farewel, Have good day.  
 Of this bataille I wol no more endite,  
 But speke of Palamon and of Arcite.

Swelleth the brest of Arcite, and the fore  
 Encreſeth at his herte more and more.



The clotered blood for any leche-craft  
 Corrumpeth, and is in his bouke ylast,  
 That neyther veine-blood ne ventousing,  
 Ne drinke of herbes, may ben his helping.  
 The vertue expulsif or animal,  
 Frothilke vertue cleped natural,  
 Ne may the venime voiden ne expell;  
 The pipes of his longes gan to swell,  
 And every lacerte in his brest adoun  
 Is shent with venime and corruption.  
 Him gaineth neyther for to get his lif  
 Vomit upward ne downward laxatif:  
 All is to-brosten thilke region;  
 Nature hath now no domination:  
 And certainly ther nature wol not werche.  
 Farewel physike; go bere the man to cherche.  
 This is all and son, that Arcite mooste die;  
 For which he sendeth after Emelie,  
 And Palamon, that was his cosin dere;  
 Than sayd he thus, as ye shuln after here.

Nought may the woful spirit in myn herte  
 Declare o point of all my forwes smerte  
 To you my lady, that I love most,  
 But I bequethe the service of my gost  
 To you aboven every creature,  
 Sin that my lif ne may no longer dure.

Alas the wo! alas the peines strong,  
 That I for you have suffered, and so longe!  
 Alas the deth! alas min Emelie!  
 Alas departing of our compaignie!  
 Alas min hertes quene! alas my wif!  
 Min hertes ladie, ender of my lif!  
 What is this world? what axen men to have?  
 Now with his love, now in his colde grave  
 Alone withouten any compaignie.  
 Farewel my swete, farewel min Emelie!  
 And softe take me in your armes tway  
 For love of God, and herkeneth what I sey.

I have here with my cosin Palamon  
 Had strif and rancour many a day agon  
 For love of you, and for my jalousie;  
 And Jupiter so wis my soule gie,  
 To speken of a servant proprely,  
 With alle circumstances trewely,  
 That is to sayn, trouth, honour, and knightede,  
 Wisdom, humbleesse, estat, and high kinrede,  
 Freedom, and all that longeth to that art,  
 So Jupiter have of my soule part,  
 As in this world right now ne know I non  
 So worthy to be loved as Palamon,  
 That serveth you, and wol don all his lif;  
 And if that ever ye shal ben a wif,  
 Forgyete not Palamon, the gentil man.

And with that word his speche faille began;  
 For from his feet up to his brest was come  
 The cold of deth that had him overnorne;  
 And yet moreover in his armes two  
 The vital strength is lost and all ago;  
 Only the intellekt, withouten more,  
 That dwelled in his herte like and sore,  
 Gan failen whan the herte felte deth;  
 Dusked his eyen two, and failed his breth:  
 But on his ladie yet cast he his eye;  
 His laste word was, Mercy, Emelie!

His spirit changed hous, and wente ther  
 As I cam never I cannat tellen wher;  
 Therefore I stent, I am no divinistre;  
 Of soules find I not in this registre:  
 Ne me lust not th' opinions to telle  
 Of hem, though that they written wher they dwell.  
 Arcite is cold, ther Mars his soule gie.  
 Now wol I speken forth of Emelie.

Shright Emelie, and houleth Palamon,  
 And Theseus his suster toke anon  
 Swouning, and bare her from the corps away.  
 What helpeth it to tarien forth the day,  
 To tellen how she wep both even and morwe?  
 For in swiche cas wimmen have swiche sorwe,  
 Whan that hir housbonds ben fro hem ago,  
 That for the more part they forwen so,  
 Or elles fallen in swiche maladie,  
 That atte laste certainly they die.

Infinite ben the forwes and the teres  
 Of olde folk and folk of tendre yeres  
 In all the toun for deth of this Theban;  
 For him ther wepeth bothe child and man:  
 So gret a weping was ther non certain  
 Whan Hector was ybrought all fresh yslain  
 To Troy: alas! the pitee that was there;  
 Cratching of chekes, rending eke of here.  
 Why woldest thou be ded? thise women crie,  
 And haddest gold ynough and Emelie.

No man might gladen this Duk Theseus  
 Saving his olde fader Egeus,  
 That knew this worldes transmutation,  
 As he had seen it chaungen up and down,  
 Joye after wo, and wo after gladnesse,  
 And shewed him ensample and likenesse.  
 Right as ther died never man (quod he)  
 That he ne lived in erth in som degree,  
 Right so ther lived never man (he seyde)  
 In all this world that somtime he ne deyde:  
 This world n'is but a thurghfare ful of wo,  
 And we ben pilgrimes passing to and fro:  
 Deth is an end of every worldes fore.

And over all this yet said he mochel more  
 To this effect, ful wisely to enhort  
 The peple that they shuld hem recomfort.

Duk Theseus with all his besy cure  
 He casteth now wher that the sepulture  
 Of good Arcite may best ymaked be,  
 And eke most honourable in his degree;  
 And at the last he toke conclusion  
 That ther as first Arcite and Palamon  
 Hadden for love the bataille hem between,  
 That in that selve grove, fote and grene,  
 Ther as he hadde his amorous desires,  
 His complaint, and for love his hote fires,  
 He wolde make a fire, in which the office  
 Of funeral he might all accomplise;  
 And let anon commande to hack and hewe  
 The okes old, and lay hem on a rew  
 In culpons, wel araied for to brenne.  
 His officers with swifte feet they renne  
 And ride anon at his commandement.  
 And after this, this Theseus hath sent  
 After a bere, and it all overspradde  
 With cloth of gold the richest that he hadde,

And of the same suit he cladde Arcite.  
 His hondes were his gloves white,  
 His hed a croune of laurer grene,  
 And in his hond a swerd ful bright and kene.  
 He laid him bare the visage on the bere,  
 Therwith he wept that pitee was to here;  
 And for the peple shulde seen him alle,  
 Whan it was day he brought him to the halle,  
 That roreth of the crying and the soun.  
 Tho came this woful Theban Palamon  
 With flotery berd and ruggy ashy heres,  
 In clothes blake, ydropped all with teres,  
 And (passing over of weping Emelie)  
 The yufullest of all the compaignie.  
 And in as much as the service shuld be  
 The more noble and riche in his degree,  
 Dukk Thefeus let forth three stedes bring,  
 That trapped were in stele all glittering,  
 And covered with the armes of Dan Arcite;  
 And eke upon these stedes gret and white  
 Ther saten folk, of which on bare his sheld,  
 Another his spere up in his hondes held;  
 The thridde bare with him his bow Turkeis,  
 Of brent gold was the cas and the harneis;  
 And riden forth a pas with sorweful chere  
 Toward the grove, as ye shal after here.  
 The noblest of the Grekes that ther were  
 Upon hir shuldres carrieden the bere,  
 With slacke pas, and eyen red and wete,  
 Thurghout the citee, by the maister strete,  
 That sprad was all with black, and wonder hie  
 Right of the same is all the strete ywrie.  
 Upon the right hand went olde Egeus,  
 And on that other side Duk Thefeus,  
 With vessels in hir hond of gold ful fine,  
 All ful of hony, milk, and blood, and wine;  
 Eke Palamon with ful gret compaignie;  
 And after that came woful Emelie  
 With fire in hond, as was that time the gise,  
 To don the office of funeral service.

High labour and ful gret apparailing  
 Was at the service of that fire making,  
 That with his grene top the heaven raught,  
 And twenty fadom of brede the armes straught;  
 This is to sayn, the boughes were so brode.  
 Of stre first there was laied many a lode.

But how the fire was maked up on highte,  
 And eke the names how the trees highte,  
 As oke, fir, birch, aspe, alder, holm, poplere,  
 Willow, elm, plane, ash, box, chestein, lind, laurere,  
 Maple, thorn, beche, hasel, ew, whipultre,  
 How they were feld, shal not be told for me;  
 Ne how the goddes rannen up and down  
 Disherited of hir habitatioun,  
 In which they woneden in rest and pees,  
 Nimphes, Faunes, and Amidriades;  
 Ne how the bestes and the briddes alle  
 Fledden for fere whan the wood gan falle;  
 Ne how the ground agast was of the light,  
 That was not wont to see, the sonne bright;  
 Ne how the fire was couched first with stre,  
 And then with drie stickes cloven a-thre,  
 And than with grene wood and spicerie,  
 And than with cloth of gold and with perrie.

And getlonds hanging with ful many a flour,  
 The mirre, the encense also with swete odour;  
 Ne how Arcita lay among all this,  
 Ne what richesse about his body is;  
 Ne how that Emelie, as was the gise,  
 Put in the fire of funeral service;  
 Ne how she swooned whan she made the fire,  
 Ne what she spake, ne what was hire desire;  
 Ne what Jewelles men in the fire caste,  
 Whan that the fire was gret and brente faste;  
 Ne how som cast hir sheld and som hir spere,  
 And of hir vestimentes which they were,  
 And cuppes full of wine, and mlk, and blood,  
 Into the fire, that brent as it were wood;  
 Ne how the Grekes with a huge route  
 Three times riden all the fire aboute  
 Upon the left hond, with a loud shouting,  
 And thries with hir speres clatering,  
 And thries how the ladies gan to crie;  
 Ne how that led was homeward Emelie;  
 Ne how Arcite is brent to ashen cold;  
 Ne how the liche-wake \* was yhold  
 All thilke night; ne how the Grekes play;  
 The wake-plaies ne kepe I not to say;  
 Who wrestled best naked, with oile enoint,  
 Ne who that bare him best in no disjoint:  
 I woll not tellen eke how they all gon  
 Home till Athenes whan the play is don,  
 But shortly to the point now wol I wende,  
 And maken of my longe Tale an ende.

By processe and by lengthe of certain yerres  
 All stenten is the mourning and the teres  
 Of Grekes by on general assent:  
 Than semeth me ther was a parlement  
 At Athenes upon certain points and cas;  
 Amonges the which points yspoken was  
 To have with certain contrees alliance,  
 And have of Thebanes fully obeisance:  
 For which this noble Thefeus anon  
 Let senden after gentil Palamon.  
 Unwist of him what was the cause and why:  
 But in his blacke clothes sorwefully  
 He came at his commandment on hie;  
 Tho sente Thefeus for Emelie.

Whan they were set, and husht was al the place,  
 And Thefeus abiden hath a space,  
 Or any word came from his wife brest  
 His eyen fet he ther as was his lest,  
 And with a sad visage he fiked still,  
 And after that right thus he sayd his will.

The firste Mover of the cause above,  
 Whan he firste made the sayre chains of love,  
 Gret was th' effect, and high was his entent;  
 Well wist he why and what therof he ment;  
 For with that sayre chaine of love he bond  
 The fire, the air, the watre, and the lond,  
 In certain bondes, that they may not flee:  
 That same prince and Mover eke (quod he)

\* The custom of watching with dead bodies (*liec. Sax.*) is probably very ancient in this country. It was abused, as other wakes and vigils were. See *Du Cange* in v. *Virgilianae*. "In vigiliis circa corpora mortuorum vetantur choreae et cantilenae, seculares ludi et alii turpes et fastidiosi." *Synod. Wigorn. an. 1240, c. 5.*



Hath stablisht, in this wretched world adoun,  
 Certain of dayes and duration  
 To all that are engendred in this place,  
 Over the which day they ne mow not pace,  
 Al mow they yet the dayes well abrege.  
 Ther nedeth non autoritee allege,  
 For it is preved by experience,  
 But that me lust declaren my sentence.  
 Than may men by this ordre wel discerne  
 That thilke Mover stable is and eterne;  
 Wel may men knowen, but it be a fool,  
 That every part deriveth from his hool;  
 For Nature hath not taken his beginning  
 Of no partie ne cantel of a thing,  
 But of a thing that parfit is and stable,  
 Descending so til it be corruptible;  
 And therefore of his wise purveyance  
 He hath so wel beset his ordinance,  
 That speces of thinges and progressions  
 Shullen enduren by successions,  
 And not eterne, withouten any lie;  
 This maiest thou understand and seen at eye.  
 Lo the oke, that hath so long a norishing  
 Fro the time that it ginneth first to spring,  
 And hath so long a lif, as ye may see,  
 Yet at the laste wasted is the tree.  
 Considereth eke how that the harde stone  
 Under our feet, on which we trede and gon,  
 It wasteth as it lieth by the wey;  
 The brode river sometime wexeth drey;  
 The grete tounes see we wane and wende;  
 Than may ye see that all thing hathe an ende.  
 Of man and woman see we wel also,  
 That nedes in on of the termes two,  
 That is to sayn, in youthe or elles age,  
 He mote be ded the king as shall a page;  
 Som in his bed, som in the depe see,  
 Som in the large feld, as ye may see:  
 Ther helpeth nought, all goth that ilke wey;  
 Than may I sayn that alle thing mote dey.  
 What maketh this but Jupiter the King,  
 The which is prince and cause of alle thing,  
 Converting alle unto his propre wille,  
 From which it is derived, soth to telle?  
 And here-againes no creature on live  
 Of no degree availleth for to strive.  
 Than is it wisdom, as it thinketh me,  
 To maken vertue of necessite,  
 And take it wel that we may not eschewe,  
 And namely that to us all is dewe;  
 And whoso grutcheth ought he doth folie,  
 And rebel is to him that all may gie.  
 And certainly a man hath most honour  
 To dien in his excellence and flour,  
 Whan he is liker of his goode name;  
 Than hath he don his frend ne him no shame;  
 And glader ought his frend ben of his deth,  
 Whan with honour is yolden up his breth,

Than whan his name appalled is for age,  
 For all foryetten is his vassalage:  
 Than is it best as for a worthy fame,  
 To dein whan a man is best of name.  
 The contrary of all this is wilfulnesse.  
 Why grutchen we? why have we hevinesse,  
 That good Arcite, of chivalry the flour,  
 Departed is, with dutee and honour,  
 Out of this foule prison of this lif?  
 Why grutchen here his cosin and his wif  
 Of his welfare, that loven him so wel?  
 Can he hem thank? nay, God wot, never a del,  
 That both his foule and eke himself offend,  
 And yet they mow her lustres not amend.

What may I conclude of this longe serie,  
 But after sorwe I rede us to be merie,  
 And thanken Jupiter of all his grace;  
 And er that we departen from this place,  
 I rede that we make of sorwes two  
 O parfit joye lasting evermo:  
 And loketh now wher most sorwe is herein,  
 Ther wol I firste amenden and begin.

Sister, (quod he) this is my full assent,  
 With all th' avis here of my parlement,  
 That gentil Palamon, your owen knight,  
 That serveth you with will, and herte, and might,  
 And ever hath don sin you first him knew,  
 That ye shall of your grace upon him rew,  
 And taken him for husbond and for lord:  
 Lene me your hand, for this is oure accord.

Let see now of your womanly pitee:  
 He is a kinges brothers some pardee;  
 And though he were a poure bachelere,  
 Sin he hath served you so many a yere,  
 And had for you so gret adversite,  
 It mooste ben considered, leveth me,  
 For gentil mercy oweth to passen right.

Than sayd he thus to Palamon the Knight;  
 I trow ther nedeth litel sermoning  
 To maken you assenten to this thing.

Cometh ner, and take your lady by the hond,

Betwixen hem was maked anon the bond  
 That highte Matrimoine or Mariage,  
 By all the conseil of the baronage;  
 And thus with alle blisse and melodie  
 Hath Palamon ywedded Emelie;  
 And God, that all this wide world hath wrought,  
 Send him his love that hath it dere ybought.  
 For now is Palamon in alle wele,  
 Living in blisse, in richesse, and in hele,  
 And Emelie him loveth so tendrely,  
 And he hire serveth all so gentilly,  
 That never was ther no word hem betwene  
 Of jalousie, ne of non other tene.

Thus endeth Palamon and Emelie,  
 And God save all this fayre compaignie,



## THE MILLERES PROLOGUE.

WHAN that the Knight had thus his Tale told,  
In all the compaignie n'as ther young ne old  
That he ne said it was a noble storie,  
And worthy to be drawn to memorie,  
And namely the gentiles everich on.  
Our Hoste lough and swore, So mote I gon  
This goth aright; unboked is the male;  
Let see now who shall tel another Tale,  
For trewely this game is wel begonne:

Now telleth ye first Monk, if that ye conne,  
Somewhat to quiten with the Knightes Tale.

The Miller, that for-dronken was all pale,  
So that unnethe upon his hors he sat,  
He n'old avalen neither hood ne hat,  
Ne abiden no man for his curtesie,  
But in Pilates vois he gan to crie,  
And swore by armes, and by blood, and bones,  
I can a noble Tale for the nones,  
With which I will now quite the Knightes Tale.  
Our Hoste saw that he was dronken of ale,  
And sayd, abide, Robin, my leve brother,  
Some better man shall tell us first another;  
Abide, and let us werken thriftily.

By Goddes soule (quod he) that wol not I,  
For I wol speke, or elles go my way.

Our Hoste answered, Tell on a devil way;  
Thou art a fool; thy wit is overcome.

Now herkeneth, quod the Miller, all and some:  
But first I make a protestacioun  
That I am dronke, I know it by my foun,  
And therefore if that I misspeke or say  
Wite it the ale of Southwerk I you pray;  
For I woll tell a legend and a lif  
Both of a carpenter and his wif,  
How that a clerk has let the wrightes cappe.

The Reve answerd and saide, Stint thy clappe;  
Let be thy lewed dronken harlotrie.  
It is a sinne and eke a gret folie  
To apeiren any man, or him defame,  
And eke to bringen wives in swiche a name;

Thou mayst ynough of other thinges fain,  
This dronken Miller spake ful sone again,  
And sayde, Leve brother Osewold,  
Who hath no wif he is no cokewold;  
But I say not therefore that thou art on;  
Ther ben ful goode wives many on\*.  
Why art thou angry with my Tale now?  
I have a wif parde as wel as thou,  
Yet n'olde I for the oxen in my plough  
Taken upon me more than ynough  
As demen of myself that I am on;  
I wol beleven wel that I am non.  
An husbond shuld not be inquisitif  
Of Goddes privite ne of his wif:  
So he may finden Goddes foison there  
Of the remenant nedeth not to enquire.

What shuld I more say, but this Millere  
He n'olde his wordes for no man forbere,  
But told his cherles Tale in his manere,  
Me thinketh that I shal reherse it here;  
And therefore every gentil wight I pray,  
For Goddes love, as deme not that I say  
Of evil entent, but that I mote reherse  
Hir Tales alle, al be they better or werse,  
Or elles falsen som of my matere;  
And therefore who so list it not to here  
Turne over the leef, and chese another Tale,  
For he shal find ynow bothe grete and smale,  
Of storial thing that toucheth gentillese,  
And eke moralite and holinesse.  
Blameth not me if that ye chese amis;  
The Miller is a cherl, ye know well this,  
So was the Reve, (and many other mo)  
And harlotrie they tolden bothe two.  
Aviseth you now, and put me out of blame;  
And eke men shuld not make ernest of game.

\* After this verse the two following are found in so many mss. that perhaps they ought to have been inserted in the text.

And ever a thousand good ageins on badde,  
That knowest thou wel but if thou be madde,

## THE MILLER'S TALE\*.

WHILOM ther was dwelling in Oxenforde  
A riche gnof, that gestes helde to borde,  
And of his craft he was a carpenter.  
With him ther was dwelling a poor scoles,  
Had lerned art, but all his fantasie  
Was turned for to lerne astrologie,  
And coude a certain of conclusions  
To demen by interrogations,  
If that men asked him in certain houres  
Whan that men shulde have drougt or elles  
Or if men asked him what shulde falle [shoures;  
Of every thing, I may not reken alle.

This clerk was cleped Hendy Nicholas;  
Of derne love he coude and of solas;  
And therto he was flie and ful prive,  
And like a maiden meke for to se.  
A chambre had he in that hostelrie  
Alone, withouten any compaignie,  
Ful fetilly ydight with herbes sote,  
And he himself was swete as is the rote,  
Of licoris, or any fetewale.

His almageste, and bokes gret and smale,  
His astrelabre, longing for his art,  
His augrim stones †, layen faire apart  
On shelves couched at his beddes hed,  
His presse ycovered with a falding red;  
And all above ther lay a gay fautrie,  
On which he made on nightes melodie  
So swetely, that all the chambre rong,  
And *Angelus ad Virginem* he song;  
And after that he song the kinges note:  
Ful often blessed was his mery throte,  
And thus this swete clerk his time spent  
After his frendes finding and his rent.

This carpenter had wedded new a wif  
Which that he loved more than his lif:  
Of eightene yere she was I gessie of age.  
Jalous he was, and held hire narwe in cage,  
For she was wild and yonge, and he was old,  
And demed himself belike a cokewold.  
He know not Caton, for his wit was rude,  
That bade a man shudde wedde his similitude;  
Men shulden wedden after hir estate,  
For youthe and elde is often at debate;  
But sithen he was fallen in the snare  
He most endure (as other folk) his care.

Fayre was this yongue wif, and therewithal  
As any wifel hire body gent and smal.  
A feint she wered, barred all of silk,  
A barne-cloth eke as white as morwe milk

\* Nicholas, a scholar of Oxford, practiseth with Alison, the carpenter's wife of Ousey, to deceive her husband, but in the end is rewarded accordingly. This is one of those Tales that Lydgate (in his Prologue to *The Story of the Siege of Thebes*) says are of ribauldrie.

† To makin laughtir in the company.  
So, reader, you know what you are to expect; read or forbear as you think fitting. *Urry.*

‡ *Augrim* is a corruption of *algorithm*, the Arabian term for numeration. *Augrim stones* therefore were the pebbles or counters which were anciently used in numeration.

Upon hire lendes, ful of many a gore;  
White was hire smok, and brouded all before  
And eke behind on hire colere aboute  
Of cole-black silk within and eke withoute:  
The tapes of hire white volupere  
Were of the same fuit of hire colere;  
Hire fillet brode of silk, and set full hye;  
And sikerly she had a likerous cye:  
Ful smal ypullid were hire browes two,  
And they were bent, and black as any so:  
She was wel more blisful for to see  
Than is the newe perienete tree,  
And softer than the wolfe is of a wether.

And by hire girdel heng a purse of lether  
Tasseled with silk and perled with latoun,  
In all this world to seken up and down  
Ther n'is no man so wise that coude thenche  
So gay a popelet or swiche a wenche.  
Ful brighter was the shining of hire hewe  
Than in the Tour the noble yforged newe;  
But of hire song, it was as loud and yerne  
As any swalow sitting on a berne.  
Thereto she coude skip and make a game  
As any kid or calf folowing his dame.  
Hire mouth was swete as braket or the meth,  
Or hord of apples laid in hay or beth.  
Winning she was as is a joly colt,  
Long as a mast, and upright as a bolt.  
A broche she bare upon hire low colere,  
As brode as is the boffe of a bokelere.  
Hire shoon were laced on hire legges hie;  
She was a primerole, a piggesnie,  
For any lord to ligen in his bedde,  
Or yet for any good yemen to wedde.

Now fire, and eft fire, so befell the cas,  
That on a day this Hendy Nicholas  
Fel with this yonge wif to rage and pleye,  
While that hire husbond was at Ofeney,  
As clerkes ben ful subtil and ful queint,  
And prively he caught hire by the queint,  
And sayde, Ywis but if I have my will  
For derne love of thee, lemman, I spill;  
And helde hire faste by the hanche bones,  
And sayde, Lemman, love me werat ones,  
Or I wol dien, al so God me save.

And she sprong as a colt doth in the trave  
And with hire hed she writied faste away,  
And sayde, I wol not kisse thee by my fay.  
Why, let be, (quod she) let be, Nicholas,  
Or I wol crie out Harow and Alas!  
Do way your hondes for your curtesie.

This Nicholas gan mercy for to crie,  
And spake so faire, and profered him so fast,  
That she hire love him granted at the last,  
And swore hire oth by Seint Thomas of Kent,  
That she wold ben at his commandement  
Whan that she may hire leiser wel espie.  
Myn husbond is is so ful of jalousie

That but ye waiten wel and be prive  
I am right wel I nam but ded, quod she;  
And shal be ful derne as in this cas.

Nay, therof care you not, quod Nicholas:  
A clerk hath litherly beset his while  
But in he coude a carpenter begile.  
And thus they were accorded and ysworne  
To waite a time, as I have said before.  
Whan Nicholas had don thus every del,  
And thacked hire about the lendes wel,  
He kised hire swete, and taketh his sautrie,  
And plaith fast, and maketh melodie.

Than fell it thus, that to the parish cherche  
(Of Cristes owen werkes for to werche)  
His good wif went upon a holy day;  
Hire forehed shone as bright as any day,  
So was it washen whan she lete hire werk.

Now was ther of that chirche a parish clerk  
Which that was ycleped Absolon.  
Crulle was his here, and as the gold it shon,  
And stroued as a fanne large and brode;  
Ful streight and even lay his joly shode:  
His rode was red, his eyen grey as goos,  
With Poules windowes corven on his shoos:  
In hosen red he went ful fetilly:  
Glad he was ful smal and proprely  
All in a kirtel of a light waget \*;  
Ful faire and thicke ben the pointes set;  
And therupon he had a gay surplise,  
As white as is the blosme upon the rise.

A mery childe he was, so God me save;  
Wel coude he leren blod, and clippe and shave,  
And make a chartre of lond and a quitance:  
In twenty manere coude he trip and dance,  
(After the scole of Oxenforde tho)  
And with his legges casten to and fro;  
And playen fouges on a smal ribble;  
Therto he song somtime a loud quynible:  
And as wel coude he play on a giterne.  
In all the toun n'as brewhous ne taverne  
That he ne visited with his folas,  
Ther was that any gaillard tapstere was;  
But soth to say he was sondeel squamous  
Of farting, and of speche dangerous.

This Absolon, that joly was and gay,  
Goth with a censer on the holy day,  
Censing the wif of the parish salte,  
And many a lovely loke he on hem caste,  
And namely on this carpenteres wif;  
To-Jesse on hire him thought a mery lif;  
She was so propre, and swete, and likerous,  
I dare wel sain if she had been a mous  
And he a cat, he wolde hire hente anon.

This parish clerk, this joly Absolon,  
Hath in his herte swiche a love longing,  
That of no wif toke he non offering;  
For curtesie, he sayd, he n'olde non.

The moone at night ful clere and brighte shon,  
And Absolon his giterne hath take,  
For paramours he thoughte fer to wake;

\* Or watchet. Skinner explains watchet to mean a colour, a whitish blue; but in this place it seems rather to mean some kind of cloth, denominated perhaps from the town of Watchet in Somersetshire. Instead of light some MSS. read *fin*, and MS. *A. rebis*. This last epithet would be quite inconsistent with Skinner's explanation.

And forth he goth jolif and amorous,  
Til he came to the carpenteres hous,  
A litel after the cockes had ycrow,  
And dressed him up by a shot window  
That was upon the carpenteres wal.  
He singeth in his vois gentil and smal,  
Now, dere Lady—if thy wille be,  
I pray you that ye—wol rewe on me;  
Ful wel accordant to his giterning.

This carpenter awoke, herd him sing,  
And spake unto his wif, and said anon,  
What, Alifon! heres thou not Absolon,  
That chanteth thus under our boures wal?  
And the answerd hire husband therwithal,  
Yes, God wot, John, I here him every del.

This passeth forth; what wol ye bet than wel?  
Fro day to day this joly Absolon  
So loveth hire that him is wo-begon:  
He waketh all the night, and all the day  
He kembeth his lockes brode, and made him gay.  
He woeth hire by menes and brocage,  
And swore he wolde ben hire owen page:  
He singeth brokking as a nightingale;  
He sent her pinnes, methen, and spiced ale,  
And wafres piping hot out of the glede;  
And for she was of toun he profered mede;  
For som folk wol be wonnen for richesse,  
And som for strokes, and some with gentillesse.

Sometime to shew his lightnesse and maistrise  
He plaith Herode on a skaffold hie.  
But what availeth him as in this cas?  
So loveth she this Hendy Nicholas,  
That Absolon may blow the buckes horne;  
He ne had for his labour but a scorne:  
And thus she maketh Absolon hire ape,  
And all his earnest tourneth to a jape.  
Ful soth is this proverbe, it is no lie;  
Men say right thus alway, The neighe flie  
Maketh of time the fer leef to be lothe:  
For though that Absolon be wood or wrothe,  
Because that he fer was from hire sight,  
This neighe Nicholas stood in his light.

Now bere thee wel, thou Hendy Nicholas,  
For Absolon may waile and sing alas.

And so befell that on a Saturday  
This carpenter was gon to Ofenay,  
And Hendy Nicholas and Alifon  
Accorded ben to this conclusion,  
That Nicholas shal shapen him a wif  
This sely jalous husband to begile;  
And if so were the game went aright  
She shuld slepe in his armes alle night,  
For this was hire desire and his also.  
And right anon, withouten wordes mo,  
This Nicholas no lenger wold tarie,  
But doth ful soth unto his chambre carie  
Both mete and drinke for a day or tway.  
And to hire husband bad her for to sey,  
If that he axed after Nicholas  
She shulde say she n'iste not wher he was;  
Of all the day she saw him not with eye;  
She trowed he was in som maladie,  
For for no cris hire maiden coude him calle,  
He n'olde answer for nothing that might falle.  
Thus passeth forth all thiske Saturday,  
That Nicholas still in his chambre lay,



And etc, and slept, and dide what him list,  
Til Sondag that the sonne gothe to rest.

This fely carpenter hath gret mervaille  
Of Nicholas, or what thing might him aile,  
And said, I am adrad by Seint Thomas  
It stondeth not aright with Nicholas;  
God shilde that he died sodenly;  
This world is now ful tikel fikerly:  
I saw to-day a corps yborne to cherche  
That now on Monday last I saw him werche.

Go up (quod he unto his knave) anon,  
Clepe at his dore, or knocke with a stou;  
Loke how it is, and telle me boldely.

This knave got him up ful sturdely,  
And at the chambre dore while that he stood  
He cried and knocked as that he were wood;  
What? how? what do ye, Maister Nicholas?  
How may ye slepen all the longe day?  
But all for nought, he herde not a word.  
An hole he fond ful low upon the bord,  
Ther as the cat was wont in for to crepe,  
And at that hole he loked in ful depe,  
And at the last he had of him a sight.

This Nicholas sat ever gaping upright,  
As he had kyked on the newe mone.

Adoun he goth, and telleth his maister sone  
In what array he saw this ilke man.

This carpenter to blissen him began,  
And said, Now helpe us Seinte Frideswide!  
A man wote litel what shal him betide.  
This man is fallen with his astronomie  
In som woodnesse or in som agonie.  
I thought ay wel how that it shulde be;  
Men shulde not knowe of Goddes privetee.  
Ya, blessed be alway a lewed man,  
That nought but only his beleve can.  
So ferd another clerk with astronomie;  
He walked in the felde for to prie  
Upon the sterres, what ther shuld befall,  
Til he was in a marlepit yfalle.  
He saw not that. But yet by Seint Thomas  
Me reweth fore of Hendy Nicholas:  
He shal be rated of his studying,  
If that I may, by Jesus, heven king.

Get me a staff, that I may underfpoore  
While that thou, Robin, hevest of the dore:  
He shal out of his studying as I gesse.  
And to the chambre dore he gan him dresse.  
His knave was a strong carl for the nones,  
And by the happe he haf it of at ones:  
Into the flore the dore fell anon.

This Nicholas sat ay as stille as ston,  
And ever he gaped upward into the eire.

This carpenter wond he were in despeire,  
And hent him by the shulders mightily,  
And shoke him hard, and cried spitously;  
What, Nicholas? what, how? man? loke adoun;  
Awake, and thinke on Cristes passioun.  
I crouche thee from elves and from wightes.  
Therwith the nightspel said he anon rightes  
On foure halves of the hous aboute  
And on the threswold of the dore withoute:  
Jesu Crist and Seint Benedight  
Blisse this hous from every wicked wight,

Fro the nightes mare, the wite Pater-noster?  
Wher wonest thou Seint Peters sulter?

And at the last this Hendy Nicholas  
Gan for to fiken fore, and said, alas!  
Shal all the world be lost eftsones now?

This carpenter answered, What saiest thou?  
What? thinke on God, as we do, men that swinke.

This Nicholas answered, Fetch me a drinke  
And after wol I speke in privetee  
Of certain thing that toucheth thee and me:  
I wol tell it non other man certain.

This carpenter goth down and cometh again,  
And brought of mighty ale a large quart;  
And whan that eche of hem had dronken his part,  
This Nicholas his dore faste shette,  
And down the carpenter by him he sette,  
And saide, John, min hoste lese and dese,  
Thou shalt upon thy trouthe swere me here  
That to no wight thou shalt my counseil wene.  
For it is Cristes counseil that I say,  
And if thou tell it man thou art forlore,  
For this vengeance thou shalt have therfore,  
That if thou wreye me thou shalt be wood.

Nay, Crist forbode it for his holy blood,  
Quod tho this fely man: I am no labbe,  
Ne though I say it I n'am not lese to gabbe.  
Say what thou wolt, I shall it never telle  
To child ne wif, by him that harwed helle.

Now, John, (quod Nicholas) I wol not lie,  
I have yfounded in min astrologie,  
As I have loked in the moone bright,  
That now on Monday next, at quarter night,  
Shal fal a rain, and that so wild and wood,  
That half so gret wos never Noes flood:  
This world (he said) in lesse than in an houre  
Shal all be dreint, so hidous is the shoure:  
Thus shal mankinde drenche and lese hir lif.

This carpenter answered, Alas my wif!  
And shal she drenche? alas min Alisoun!  
For forwe of this he fell almost adoun,  
And said, Is ther no remedy in this cas?

Why yes, for God, quod Hendy Nicholas;  
If thou wolt werken after lore and rede,  
Thou maist not werken after thin owen hede;  
For thus saith Salomon, that was ful trewe,  
Werke all by conseil, and thou shalt not rewe.  
And if thou werken wolt by good conseil  
I undertake, withouten mast or seyl,  
Yet shall I saven thee, and thee and me.  
Hast thou not herd how saved was Noe,  
Whan that our Lord had warned him before,  
That all the world with water shuld be lorne?

Yes, (quod this carpenter) ful yore ago.

Hast thou not herd (quod Nicholas) also  
The forwe of Noe with his felawship,  
Or that he might get his wif to ship?  
Him had be lever, I dare wel undertake,  
At thilke time, than all his wethers blake,  
That she had had a ship hire self alone;  
And therefore wolt thou what is best to done?  
This axeth hast, and of an hastif thing  
Men may not preche and maken tarying.  
Anon go get us fast into this in  
A kneding trough or elles a kemelyn

For þeche of us; but loke that they ben large,  
 In which we mowen swimme as in a barge;  
 And have therin vitaille suffisant  
 But for a day; fie on the remenant;  
 The water shall aflake and gon away  
 Abouten prime upon the nexte day.  
 But Robin may not wete of this thy knave,  
 Ne eke thy mayden Gille I may not save:  
 Axe not why; for though thou axe me,  
 I wol not tellen Goddes privetee.  
 Sufficeth thee, but if thy wittes madde,  
 To have as gret a grace as Noe hadde.  
 Thy wif shal I wel save out of doute.  
 Go now thy way, and spede thee hereabout.  
 But whan thou hast for hire, and thee, and me,  
 Ygeten us these kneding tubbes thre,  
 Than shalt thou hang hem in the roose ful hie,  
 That no man of our purveyance espie:  
 Whan thou hast don thus as I have said,  
 And hast our vitaille faire in hem ylaide,  
 And eke an axe to smite the cord a-two  
 Whan that the water cometh, that we may go  
 And breke an hole on high upon the gable  
 Unto the gardin ward, over the stable,  
 That we may frely passen forth our way,  
 Whan that the grete shoure is gon away,  
 Than shalt thou swim as mery, I undertake,  
 As doth the white doke after hire drake;  
 Than wol I clepe, How, Alison! how, John!  
 Be mery, for the flood wol passe anon.  
 And thou wolt fain, Haile! Maister Nicholay,  
 Good morwe! I see thee wel, for it is day.  
 And than shall we be lordes all our lif  
 Of all the world, as Noe and his wif.  
 But of o thing I warne thee ful right,  
 Be wel avised on that ilke night,  
 That we ben entred into shippes bord,  
 That non of us ne speke not o word,  
 Ne clepe ne crie, but be in his praier,  
 For it is Goddes owen heste dere.

Thy wif and thou moſte hangen fer a-twinne,  
 For that betwixen you shal be no sinne,  
 No more in loking than ther shall in dede.  
 This ordinance is said; go, God thee spede.  
 To morwe at night, whan men ben all aslepe,  
 Into our kneding tubbes wol we crepe,  
 And sitten ther, abiding Goddes grace.  
 Go now thy way, I have no lenger space  
 To make of this, no lenger formoning:  
 Men ſain thus, Send the wife, and ſay nothing:  
 Thou art ſo wife it nedeth thee nought teche.  
 Go, ſave our lives, and that I thee beſeche.

This ſely carpenter goth forth his way,  
 Ful oft he ſaid Alas! and Wala wa!  
 And to his wif he told his privatee,  
 And ſhe was ware, and knew it bet than he  
 What all this queinte caſt was for to ſey;  
 But natheles ſhe ferde as ſhe wold dey,  
 And ſaid, Alas! go forth thy way anon;  
 Helpe us to ſcape, or we be ded eche on:  
 I am thy trewe veray wedded wif;  
 Go, dere ſponſe! and helpe to ſave our lif.  
 Lo, what a gret thing is affection!  
 Men may die of imagination,

So depe may impreſſion be take.  
 This ſely carpenter beginneth quake;  
 Him thinketh veraily that he may ſee  
 Noes flood comen walwing as the ſee  
 To drenchen Alifon, his honey dere:  
 He wepeth, waileth, maketh ſory chere;  
 He ſiketh, with ful many a ſory ſwough.  
 He goth and geteth him a kneding trough,  
 And after a tubbe and a kemelin,  
 And prively he ſent hem to his in,  
 And heng hem in the roof in privatee.  
 His owen hond than made he ladders three†,  
 To climben by the rences and the ſtalles  
 Unto the tubbes honging in the balkes;  
 And hem vitailled, kemelin, trough, and tubbe,  
 With bred and cheſe, and good ale in a jubbe,  
 Sufficing right ynow as for a day.

But er that he had made all this array  
 He ſent his knave, and eke his wenche alſo,  
 Upon his nede to London for to go.  
 And on the Monday, whan it drew to night,  
 He ſhette his dore, withouten candel light,  
 And dreſſed all thing as it ſhulde bee;  
 And ſhortly up they clomben alle three.  
 They ſitten ſtille wel a furlong way.  
 Now, *Pater-noſter*, Clum, ſaid Nicholay,  
 And Clum, quod John, and Clum, ſaid Alifon;  
 This carpenter ſaid his devotion,  
 And ſtill he ſit, and biddeth his praier,  
 Awaiting on the rain, if he it here.

The dede ſlepe, for wery beſineſſe,  
 Fell on this carpenter, right as I geſſe,  
 Abouten curfew time, or litel more.  
 For travaille of his goſt he groneth ſore,  
 And eft he routeth, for his hed miſlay.  
 Doun of the ladder ſtalketh Nicholay,  
 And Alifon ful ſoft adoun hire ſpedde.  
 Withouten wordes mo they went to bedde;  
 Ther as the carpenter was wont to lie;  
 Ther was the revel and the melodie.  
 And thus lith Alifon and Nicholas  
 In beſineſſe of mirthe and in ſolas,  
 Til that the bell of *laudes* gan to ring,  
 And freres in the chancel gon to ſing.

This pariſh clerk, this amorous Abſolon,  
 That is for love alway ſo wo-begon,  
 Upon the Monday was at Oſenay  
 With compaignie, him to diſport and play,  
 And asked upon cas a cloiſterer  
 Ful prively after John the carpenter;  
 And he drew him apart out of the chirche.  
 He ſaid, I no't, I ſaw him not here wirche  
 Sith Saturday; I trow that he be went  
 For timbre ther our abbot hath him ſent;  
 For he is wont for timbre for to go,  
 And dwellen at the Grange a day or two;  
 Or elles he is at his hous certain:  
 Wher that he be I cannot ſothly ſain.

This Abſolon ful joly was and light,  
 And thoughte, now is time to wake al night,

† With his own hand. So Gower, *Conf. Amant.* fol. 76. b.  
 The craſte Mynerve of wolfe ſonde,  
 And made cloth her owen hande,



For likerly I saw him nat stiring  
 About his dore sin day began to spring.  
 So mote I thrive I shal at cockes crow  
 Ful prively go knocke at his window,  
 That stant full low upon his boures wall :  
 To Alifon wol I now tellen all  
 My love longing ; for yet I shal not misse  
 That at the leste way I shal hire kisse.  
 Some maner comfort shal I have parfay,  
 My mouth hath itched al this longe day ;  
 That is a signe of kissing at the leste :  
 All night me mette eke I was at a feste :  
 Therfore I wol go slepe an houre or twey,  
 And all the night than wol I wake and pley.

Whan that the firste cock hath crowe, anon  
 Up rist this joly lover Absolon,  
 And him arayeth gay, at point devise ;  
 But first he cheweth grein and licorise,  
 To smellen sote or he had spoke with here.  
 Under his tonge a trewe love he bere,  
 For therby wend he to ben gracious.  
 He cometh to the carpenteres hous,  
 And still he stant under the shot window ;  
 Unto his brest it raught, it was so low ;  
 And soft he cougheth with a semifoun.

What do ye, honycombe, swete Alifoun,  
 My faire bird, my swete sinamome !  
 Awaketh, lemman min, and speketh to me.  
 Ful litel thinken ye upon my wo,  
 That for your love I swete ther as I go.  
 No wonder is though that I swelte and swete ;  
 I mourne as doth a lamb after the tete.  
 Ywis, lemman, I have swiche love longing  
 That like a turtel trewe is my mourning.  
 I may not ete no more than a maid.

Go fro the window, jacke fool, she said :  
 As helpe me God it wol not be, compame.  
 I love another, or elles I were to blame,  
 Wel bet than thee by Jesu, Absolon.  
 Go forth thy way, or I wol cast a ston ;  
 And let me slepe ; a twenty divel way.

Alas ! (quod Absolon) and wala wa !  
 That trewe love was ever so yvel belette :  
 Than kisse me, sin that it may be no bette,  
 For Jesus love, and for the love of me.

Wilt thou than go thy way therwith ? quod she.  
 Ya certes, lemman, quod this Absolon.  
 Than make thee redy, (quod she) I come anon.

This Absolon down set him on his knees,  
 And saide, I am a lord at all degrees :  
 For after this I hope ther cometh more ;  
 Lemman, thy grace, and, swete bird ! thyn ore.

The window she undoth, and that in haste.  
 Have don, (quod she) come of, and spede thee faste,  
 Lest that our neighbours thee espie.

This Absolon gan wipe his mouth ful drie.  
 Derke was the night as pitch or as the cole,  
 And at the window she put out hire hole,  
 And Absolon him felle ne bet ne wers,  
 But with his mouth he kist hire naked ers  
 Ful favorly, er he was ware of this.

Abak he sterte, and thought it was amis,  
 For wel he wist a woman hath no berd.  
 He felt a thing all rowe, and long ylerd,

And saide, *Fy*, alas ! what have I do ?

Te he, quod she, and clapt the window to  
 And Absolon goth forth a sory pas.

A berd, a berd ! saide Hendy Nicholas ;  
 By Goddes *corpus* this goth faire and wel.

This fely Absolon herd every del,  
 And on his lippe he gan for anger bite,  
 And to himself he said I shal thee quite.  
 Who rubbeth now, who froteth now his lippes  
 With dust, with sond, with straw, with cloth, with  
 But Absolon ? that saith full oft Alas ! (chippes,  
 My soule betake I unto Sathanas  
 But me were lever than all this toun (quod he)  
 Of this despit awroken for to be.

Alas ! alas ! that I ne had yblent.  
 His hote love is cold and all yqueint ;  
 For fro that time that he had kist hire ers  
 Of paramours ne raught he not a kers,  
 For he was heled of his maladie ;  
 Ful often paramours he gan desie,  
 And wepe as doth a child that is ybete.  
 A softe pas he went him over the stret  
 Until a smith nian callen Dan Gerveis,  
 That in his forge smithed plow-harneis ;  
 He sharpeth share and cultre besily.  
 This Absolon knocketh all esily,  
 And said, Undo, Gerveis, and that anon.

What, who art thou ? It am I Absolon.  
 What, Absolon ? what, Cristes swete tre,  
 Why rise ye so rath ? ey *benedicite* !  
 What eileth you ? some gay girle, God it wote,  
 Hath brought you thus upon the viretote :  
 By Seint Neote ye wote wel what I mene.

This Absolon ne raughte not a bene  
 Of all his play ; no word again he yaf :  
 He hadde more tawe on his distaf  
 Than Gerveis knew, and saide, Frend so dere,  
 That hote culter in the cheminee here  
 As lene it me, I have therwith to don ;  
 I wol it bring again to thee ful soone.

Gerveis answered, Certes were it gold,  
 Or in a poke nobles all untold,  
 Thou shuldest it have, as I am trewe smith.  
 Ey, Cristes foot, what wol ye don therwith ?  
 Therof, quod Absolon, be as be may,  
 I shal wel tellen thee another day ;  
 And caught the culter by the colde stele.  
 Ful soft out at the dore he gan to stele,  
 And went unto the carpenteres wall ;  
 He coughed first, and knocked therwithall  
 Upon the window, right as he did er.

This Alifon answered, Who is ther  
 That knocketh so ? I warrant him a thefe.

Nay, nay, (quod he) God wot, my swete lese,  
 I am thin Absolon, thy dereling.  
 Of gold (quod he) I have thee brought a ring ;  
 My mother yave it me, so God me save,  
 Ful fine it is, and therto wel ygrave ;  
 This wol I yeven thee if thou me kisse.

This Nicholas was risen for to pisse,  
 And thought he wolde amenden all the jape,  
 He shulde kisse his ers that he scape ;  
 And up the window did he hastily,  
 And out his ers he putteth privily



Over the buttoke, to the hanche bon;  
And therewith spake this clerk, this Absolon,  
Speke swete bird, I n'ot not wher thou art.

This Nicholas anon let seen a fart  
As gret as it had been a thonder dint,  
That with the stroke he was wel nie yblint;  
And he was redy with his yren hote,  
And Nicholas amid the ers he smote.

Off goth the skinne an hondbrede al aboute.  
The hote culter brenned so his tonte,  
That for the smert he wened for to die;

As he were wood for wo he gan to crie  
Helpe, water, water! help for Goddes herte!

This carpenter out of his slumber sterte,  
And herd on crie Water as he were wood,  
And thought, alas! now cometh Noes flood.

He set him up withouten wordes mo,  
And with his axe he smote the cord atwo,  
And down goth all; he fond neyther to selle  
Ne need ne ale til he came to the selle,  
Upon the flore, and ther aswoune he lay.

Upsterten Alifoun and Nicholas,  
And crieden, Out and harrow! in the strete.

The neighhoures bothe smale and grete  
In rannen for to gauren on this man,  
That yet aswoune lay bothe pale and wan,

For with the fall he brosten hath his arm.  
But stonden he must unto his owen harm,  
For whan he spake he was anon bore doun  
With Hendy Nicholas and Alifoun..

They tolden every man that he was wood,  
He was agaste so of Noes flood  
Thurgh fantastic, that of his vanitee  
He had ybought him kneding tubbes three,  
And had hem honged in the roof above,  
And that he praied hem for Goddes love  
To sitten in the roof *par compaignie*.

The folk gan laughen at his fantasie.  
Into the roof they kyken and they gape,  
And turned all his harm into a jape.  
For what so that this carpenter answerd  
It was for nought, no man his reson herd.  
With othes gret he was so sworne adoun  
That he was holden wood in all the toun,  
For everich clerk anon right held with othe;  
They said the man was wood, my leve brother,  
And every wight gan laughen at this strif.

Thus swived was the carpenteres wif  
For all his keping and his jalousie,  
And Absolon hath kist hire nether eye,  
And Nicholas is scalded in the tonte.  
This Tale is don, and God save all the route.

THE REVES PROLOGUE.

WHAN folk han laughed at this nice cas  
Of Absolon and Hendy Nicholas,  
Diverse folk diversely they saide,  
But for the more part they lought and plaide;  
Ne at this Tale I saw no man greve  
But it were only Ofewold the Reve;  
Because he was of carpenteres craft  
A litel ire is in his herte ylast;  
He gan to grutch and blamen it a lite.  
Se the ik, quod he, ful wel coude I him quite  
With blering of a proude milleres eye,  
If that he list to speke of ribaudrie.  
But ik am olde; me list not play for age;  
Gras time is don, my foddre is now forage;  
This white top writeth mine old yeres;  
Min herte is also moulded as min heres;  
But if I fare as doth an open ers,  
That ilke fruit is ever lenger the wers  
Til it be roten in mullok or in stre.  
We olde men, I drede, so faren we;  
Til we be roten can we not be ripe;  
We hoppe alway while that the world wol pipe;  
For in our will ther stiketh ever a nayl,  
To have an hore hed and a grene tayl,  
As hath a leke; for though our might be gon  
Our will desireth folly ever in on;  
For whan we may not don than wol we speken,  
Yet in our athen cold is fire yreken.  
Four gledes han we which I shal devise,  
Avaunting, lying, anger, and covetise;  
These fourc sparkes longen unto elde;  
Our olde limes mow wel ben unwelde,  
But will ne shall not failen that is sothe;  
And yet have I alway a coltes tothe,  
As many a yere as it passed henne  
Sin that my tappe of lif began to renne.\*

For fikerly whan I was borne anon  
Deth drow the tappe of lif and let it gon;  
And ever sith hath so the tappe yronne,  
Til that almost all empty is the tonne;  
The streame of lif now droppeth on the chimbe\*  
The fely tonge may wel ringe and chimbe  
Of wretchednesse that passed is ful yore:  
With olde folk save dotage is no more.  
Whan that our Hoste had herd this sermoning,  
He gan to speke as lordly as a king,  
And sayde, What amounteth all this wit?  
What, shall we speke all day of holy writ?  
The devil made a Reve for to preche,  
Or of a fouter a shipman or a leche.  
Say forth thy Tale, and tary not the time;  
Lo Depesford, and it is half way prime:  
Lo Grenewich, ther many a shrew is inne:  
It were al time thy Tale to beginne.  
Now, fires, quod this Ofewold the Reve,  
I pray you alle that ye not you greve  
Though I answere, and somdel set his howve,  
For lesul is with force force off to showve.  
This dronken Miller hath ytold us here  
How that begiled was a carpentere,  
Paraventure in scorne, for I am on;  
And by your leve I shal him quite anon:  
Right in his cherles termes wol I speke;  
I pray to God his necke mote to breke.  
He can wel in min eye seen a stalk,  
But in his owen he cannot seen a balk.

\* *Kime*, Teut. means the prominency of the flaves beyond the head of the barrel. The imagery is very exact and beautiful.

## THE REVES TALE\*.

At Trompington, not fer fro Cantebrigge;  
 Ther goth a brook; and over that a brigge,  
 Upon the whiche brook ther stont a melle;  
 And this is veray sothe that I you telle.  
 A miller was ther dwelling many a day,  
 As any peacock he was proude and gay:  
 Pipen he coude, and fishe, and nettes bete,  
 And turnen cuppes, and wraßten wel and shete.  
 Ay by his belt he bare a long pavade,  
 And of a sward ful trenchant was the blade:  
 A joly popper bare he in his pouche.  
 Ther n'as no man for peril dorst him touche.  
 A Shesfeld thwitel bare he in his hofe:  
 Round was his face, and camuse was his nose:  
 As pilled as an ape was his skull:  
 He was a market-beter at the full.  
 Ther dorste no wight hond upon him legge,  
 That he ne swore he shuld anon abegge.  
 A thefe he was forsoth of corne and mele,  
 And that a flie, and usant for to flele:  
 His name was hoten Deinous Simekin †.  
 A wif he hadde comen of noble kin:  
 The person of the toun hire father was:  
 With hire he yaf ful many a panne of bras  
 For that Simkin shuld in his blood allie:  
 She was yfostered in a nonnerie;  
 For Simkin wolde no wif, as he sayde,  
 But she were wel ynourished and a mayde,  
 To faven his estat of yemanrie:  
 And she was proud and pert as is a pie.  
 A ful faire sight was it upon hem two.  
 On holy dayes beforen hire wold he go  
 With his tipet ybounde about his hed,  
 And she came after in a gite of red,  
 And Simkin hadde hosen of the same.  
 Ther dorste no wight clepen her but Dame:

\* Denyse Simkin, the miller of Trompington, deceiveth two clarkes of Soller's hall in Cambridge in stealing their corn, but they so manage their matters that they revenge the wrong to the full. This Tale is imitated from Boccace, Novel the 6th, Day the 9th.—This you may pass over if you please. Urry.

† His name was Simon, of which Simekin is the diminutive, and from his disdainful insolent manners he had acquired the surname of *Deinous*, just as Nicholas, in the former tale, was cleped *Hendy* from the very opposite behaviour. A great number of our surnames have been derived from qualities of the mind, and it is reasonable to suppose that at the beginning they were merely personal, like what we call nicknames. It is probable that the use of hereditary surnames was not even in Chaucer's time fully established among the lower classes of people.

Was non so hardy, that went by the way,  
 That with hire dorste rage or ones play,  
 But if he wolde be slain of Simikin  
 With pavade, or with knif or bodekin;  
 (For jalous folk ben perilous evermo,  
 Algate they wold hir wives wenden so.)  
 And eke, for she was sōmdel smotérlich,  
 She was as digne as water in a dich,  
 And al so ful of hoker and of bismare,  
 Hire thoughte that a ladie shuld hire spare,  
 What for hire kinrede and hire nortehric  
 That she had lerned in the nonnerie.

A doughter hadden they betwix hem two  
 Of twenty yere, withouten any mo,  
 Saving a child that was of half yere age;  
 In cradle it lay, and was a propre page.  
 This wenche thicke and wel ygrowen was,  
 With camuse nose and eyen grey as glas;  
 With buttokes brode, and brestes round and hie,  
 But right faire was hir here, I wol not lie.

The person of the toun, for she was faire,  
 In purpos was to maken hire his haire  
 Both of his catel and of his mesuage,  
 And strange he made it of hire mariage.  
 His purpos was for to bestow hire hie  
 Into some worthy blood of ancestrie,  
 For holy chirches good mote ben despended  
 On holy chirches blood that is descended;  
 Therefore he wolde his holy blood honoure  
 Though that he holy chirche shuld devoure.

Gret soken hath this miller out of doute  
 With whete and mak of all the land aboute,  
 And namely ther was a gret college  
 Men clep the Soller hall at Cantebrege,  
 Ther was hir whete and eke hir malte yground.  
 And on a day it happed in a stound  
 Sike lay the manciple on a maladie,  
 Men wengen wisly that he shulde die;  
 For which this miller stāle both mele and corn  
 An hundred times more than beforn,  
 For therbeforn he stāle but curteisly,  
 But now he was a thefe outrageously,  
 For which the wardein chidde and made fare,  
 But therof set the miller not a tare;  
 He craked boht, and swore it n'as not so,

Than were ther yonge poure scolores two  
 That dwelten in the halle of which I say;  
 Testif they were, and lusty for to play,



And only for hir mirth and revelrie  
Upon the wardein besily they crie  
To yeve hem leve but a little stound  
To gon to mille and seen hir corn yground;  
And hardily they dorsten lay hir necke  
The miller shuld not stele hem half a pecke  
Of corn by sleighte, ne by force him reve.

And at the last the wardein yave hem leve.  
John highte that on, and Alein highte that other;  
Of a toun were they born that highte Strother,  
Fer in the north, I cannot tellen where.

This Alein maketh redy all his gere,  
And on a hors the sak he cast anon:  
Forth goth Alein the clerk, and also John,  
With good swerd and with bokeler by hir side.  
John knew the way, him neded not no guide,  
And at the mille the sak adoun he laith.

Alein spake first; All haile, Simond, in faith,  
How fares thy faire daughter and thy wif?

Alein, welcome (quod Simkin), by my lif,  
And John also. How now, what do ye here?  
By God, Simond (quod John), nede has no pere;  
Him behoves serve himself that has na swain,  
Or elles he is a fool, as clerkes fain.

Our manciple I hope he wol be ded,  
Swa werkes ay the wanges in his hed;  
And therefore is I come, and eke Alein,  
To grind our corn and cary it hame agein;  
I pray you spede us henen that ye may.

It shal be don (quod Simkin) by my fay.  
What wol ye don while that it is in hand?  
By God, right by the hopper wol I stand,  
(Quod John) and seen how that the corn gas in;  
Yet saw I never by my fader kin  
How that the hopper wagges til and fra.

Alein answered, John, and wolt thou swa?  
Than wol I be benethe by my croun,  
And see how that the mele fallas adoun  
In til the trogh; that shal be my disport;  
For, John, in faith I may ben of your fort:  
I is as ill a miller as is ye.

This miller smiled at hir nicetee,  
And thought all this n'is don but for a wile.  
They wenen that no man may hem begile,  
But by my thrift yet shal I blere hir eie  
For all the sleighte in hir philosophie.  
The more queinte knakkes that they make,  
The more wol I stele whan that I take.  
In stede of flour yet wol I yeve hem bren.  
The grettest clerkes ben not the wisest men,  
As whilom to the wolf thus spake the mare:  
Of all hir art ne count I not a ture.

Out at the dore he goth ful prively  
Whan that he saw his time softely.  
He loketh up and doun, til he hath found  
The clerkes hors ther as he stood ybound  
Behind the mille under a levestell,  
And to the hors he goth him faire and well,  
And stripeth of the bridel right anon.  
And whan the hors was laus he gan to gon  
Toward the fen ther wilde mares renne,  
And forth with wehee thurgh thick and thinne.  
This miller goth again, no word he said,  
But doth his note, and with these clerkes plaid,

Till that hir corn was faire and wel yground.  
And whan the mele is sacked and ybound,  
This John goth out and fint his hors away,  
And gan to crie Harow and wala wa!  
Our hors is lost: Alein, for Goddes banes  
Step on thy feet; come of, man, al at ones:  
Alas! our wardein has his palfrey torn.

This Alein al forgot both mele and corn;  
Al was out of his mind his husbandrie:  
What, whilke way is he gon? he gan to crie.

The wif came leping inward at a renne;  
She sayd, Alas! youre hors goth to the fenne  
With wilde mares as fast as he may go.  
Unthank come on his hand that bond him so,  
And he that better shuld have knit the rein.

Alas! (quod John) Alein, for Cristes peir  
Lay doun thy swerd, and I shal min alswa;  
I is ful wight, God wate, as is a ra.

By Goddes saule he shal not scape us bathe.  
Why ne had thou put the capel in the lathe?  
Ill haile, Alein, by God thou is a sonne.

These sely clerkes han ful fast yronne  
Toward the fen, bothe Alein and eke John;  
And whan the miller saw that they were gon  
He half a bushel of hir flour hath take,  
And bad his wif go knede it in a cake.  
He sayd, I trow the clerkes were aserde:  
Yet can a miller make a clerkes berde  
For all his art. Ye, let hem gon hir way.  
Lo wher they gon. Ye, let the children play:  
They get him not so lightly by my croun.  
These sely clerkes rennen up and doun  
With Kepe, kepe; Stand, stand; joffa, warderere.  
Ga whistle thou, and I shal kepe him here.  
But shortly, till that it was veray night  
They coude not, though they did all hir might,  
Hir capel catch, he ran alway so fast,  
Til in a dicke they caught him at the last.

Wery and wet, as bestes in the rain,  
Cometh sely John, and with him cometh Alein.  
Alas (quod John) the day that I was borne!  
Now are we driven til hething and til scorne.  
Our corn is stolne, men wol us sounes calle,  
Both the wardein and eke our felawes alle,  
And namely the miller, wala wa!

Thus plaineth John as he goth by the way  
Toward the mille, and Bayard in his hond.  
The miller sitting by the fire he fond,  
For it was night, and forther might they nought,  
But for the love of God they him besought  
Of herberwe and of ese, as for hir peny.

The miller saide agen, If ther be any,  
Swiche as it is yet shal ye have your part.  
Myn house is freit, but ye have lerned art;  
Ye can by arguments maken a place  
A mile brode of twenty foot of space.  
Let see now if this place may fuffice,  
Or make it rourne with speche, as is your gife.  
Now, Simond (said this John), by Seint Cuthberd  
Ay is thou mery, and that is faire answerd.  
I have herd say man shal take of twa thinges,  
Slike as he findes, or slike as he bringes.  
But specially I pray thee, hoste dore,  
Gar us have mete and drinke, and make us chere,

And we sal paien trewely at the full :  
With empty hand men may na haukes tull,  
So here our silver redy for to spend.

This miller to the toun his doughter fend  
For ale and bred, and rosted hem a goos,  
And bond hir hors he shuld no more go loos,  
And in his owen chambre hem made a bedde,  
With shetes and with chalons faire yspredde,  
Nat from his owen bed ten foot or twelve :  
His doughter had a bed all by hire selve,  
Right in the same chambre by and by :  
It mighte be no bet, and cause why,  
Ther was no roumer herberwe in the place.  
They soupen, and they speken of solace,  
And drinken ever strong ale at the best.  
Abouten midnight wente they to rest.

Wel hath this miller vernished his hed,  
Ful pale he was, for-dronken, and nought red.  
He yoweth, and he speketh thurgh the nose,  
As he were on the quakke or on the pose.  
To bed he goth, and with him goth his wif;  
As any jay she light was and jolif;  
So was hire joly whistle wel ywette.  
The cradel at hire beddes feet was sette  
To rocken, and to yeve the child to souke.  
And whan that drunken was all in the crouke  
To bedde went the doughter right anon,  
To bedde goth Alein and also John.  
Ther n'as no more; nedeth hem no dwale.  
This miller hath so wisly bibbed ale,  
That as an hors he snorteth in his slepe,  
Ne of his tail behind he toke no kepe.  
His wif bare him a burdon a ful strong,  
Men might hir routing heren a furlong.  
The wenche routeth eke *par compaignie*.

Alein the clerk, that herd this melodie,  
He poketh John, and sayde, Slepest thou?  
Herdest thou ever slike a song er now?  
Lo whilke a complin is ymell hem alle;  
A wilde fire upon hir bodies falle,  
Wha herkned ever slike a ferly thing?  
Ye, they shall have the flour of yvel ending.  
This lange night ther tides me no resse;  
But yet na force, all shal be for the beste.  
Fer, John (sayd he), as ever mote I thrive,  
If that I may yon wenche wol I swive.  
Som esement has lawe yshapen us;  
For, John, ther is a lawe that saieth thus,  
That if a man in o point be agreved  
That in another she shal be releved.  
Our corn is stolue, sothly it is na nay,  
And we han had an yvel fit to-day;  
And sin I shal have nan amendement  
Again my losse I wol have an esement :  
By Goddes saule it shal nan other be.

This John answered, Alein, avise thee;  
The miller is a perilous man, he sayde,  
And if that he out of his slepe abraide,  
He mighte don us bathe a vilanie.  
Alein answered, I count him nat a flie.  
And up he rist, and by the wenche he crept.  
This wenche lay upright, and faste slept,  
Til he so nigh was, er she might espie,  
That it had ben to late for to crie :

And shortly for to say, they were at on.  
Now play Alein, for I wol speke of John.

This John lith still a furlong way or two,  
And to himself he maketh routh and wo.  
Alas ! (quod he) this is a wicked jape;  
Now may I say that I is but an ape.  
Yet has my felaw somewhat for his harme;  
He has the millers doughter in his arme :  
He aunted him, and hath his nedes spedde,  
And I lie as a draf fak in my bedde;  
And whan this jape is tald another day  
I shal be halden a daffe or a cokenay :  
I wol arise and aunte it by my fay :  
Unhardy is unfely, thus men say.

And up he rose, and softly he went  
Unto the cradel, and in his hand it hent,  
And bare it soft unto his beddes fete.  
Sone after this the wif hire routing lete,  
And gan awake, and went hire out to pisse,  
And came again, and gan the cradel misse,  
And groped here and ther, but she fond non.  
Alas (quod she) ! I had almost misgon;  
I had almost gon to the clerkes bedde :  
Ey *benedicite* ! than had I foule yspedde.  
And forth she goth til she the cradel fond.  
She gropeth alway forther with hire hond,  
And fond the bed, and thoughte nat but good,  
Because that the cradel by it stood,  
And n'iste wher she was, for it was derk,  
But faire and wel she crept in by the clerk,  
And lith ful still, and wold han caught a slepe.  
Within a while this John the clerk up lepe,  
And on this goode wif he laieth on fore;  
So mery a fit ne had she nat ful yore :  
He priketh hard and depe as he were mad.

This joly lif han these two clerkes lad  
Til that the thridde cok began to sing.  
Alein wex werie in the morwening,  
For he had swonken all the longe night,  
And sayd, Farewel, Malkin, my swete wight :  
The day is come, I may no longer bide,  
But evermo wher so I go or ride  
I is thin awen clerk, so have I hele.  
Now, dere lemman, quod she, go, farewele;  
But or thou go, o thing I wol thee tell.  
Whan that thou wendest homeward by the mell,  
Right at the entree of the dore behind  
Thou shalt a cake of half a bushel  
That was ymaked of thin ower  
Which that I halpe my fader for to hele :  
And, goode lemman, God thee save and kepe.  
And with that word she gan almost to wepe.

Alein uprist, and thought er that it daw,  
I wol go crepen in by my felaw;  
And fond the cradel at his hand anon.  
By God, thought he, all wrang I have misgon :  
My hed is tottie of my fwink to night,  
That maketh me that I go nat aright.  
I wot wel by the cradel I have misgo;  
Here lith the miller and his wif also.  
And forth he goth a twenty divel way  
Unto the bed, ther as the miller lay.  
He wend have copen by his felaw John,  
And by the miller in he crept anon,

And caught him by the necke, and gan him shake,  
 And sayd, 'Thou John, thou swineshed, awake  
 For Cristes saule, and here a noble game;  
 For by that lord that called is Seint Jame,  
 As I have thries as in this short night  
 Swived the millers doughter bolt upright  
 While thou hast as a coward ben agast.

Ye, false harlot, quod the miller, hast?  
 A, false traitour, false clerk (quod he),  
 Thou shalt be ded by Goddes dignitee,  
 Who dorste be so bold to disparage  
 My doughter, that is come of swiche linage.  
 And by the throte-bolle he caught Alein,  
 And he him hent despitously again,  
 And on the nose he smote him with his fist;  
 Doun ran the bloody streame upon his brest:  
 And in the flore with nose and mouth to-broke  
 They walwe, as don two pigges in a poke.  
 And up they gon, and doun again anon,  
 Til that the miller sporned at a ston,  
 And doun he fell backward upon his wif,  
 That wiste nothing of this nice strif:  
 For she was fall aslepe a litel wight  
 With John the clerk, that waked had all night,  
 And with the fall out of hire slepe she braide.  
 Helpe, holy cross of Bromeholme! (she sayde)  
*In manus tuas, Lord, to thee I call.*  
 Awake, Simond, the fend is on me fall;  
 Myn herte is broken; helpe; I n'am but ded;  
 Ther lith on up my wombe and up myn hed;  
 Helpe, Simkin, for the false clerkes fight.  
 This John stert up as fast as ever he might,

And graspeth by the walles to and fro  
 To find a staf, and she stert up also,  
 And knew the estres bet than did this John,  
 And by the wall she toke a staf anon,  
 And saw a litel shemering of a light,  
 For at an hole in shone the mone bright,  
 And by that light she saw hem bothe two,  
 But likerly she n'iste who was who,  
 But as she saw a white thing in hire eye;  
 And whan she gan this white thing espie  
 She wend the clerk had wered a volupere,  
 And with the staf she drow ay nere and nere,  
 And wend han hit this Alein atte full,  
 And smote the miller on the pilld skull,  
 That doun he goth, and cried, Harrow! I die.  
 Thise clerkes bete him wel, and let him lie,  
 And greithen hem, and take hir hors anon,  
 And eke hir mele, and on hir way they gon;  
 And at the mille dore eke they toke hir cake  
 Of half a bushel flour ful wel ybake.

Thus is the proude miller wel ybette,  
 And hath ylost the grinding of the whete,  
 And paid for the souter every del  
 Of Alein and of John that bete him wel;  
 His wif is swived and his doughter als;  
 Lo, swiche it is a miller to be fals:  
 And therefore this proverb is sayd ful soth,  
 Him thar not winnen wel that evil doth;  
 A gilour shal himself begiled be;  
 And God, that siteth hie in magestee,  
 Save all this compaignie gret and smale,  
 Thus have I quit the miller in my Tale.



THE COKES PROLOGUE.

THE Coke of London, while the Reve spake,  
For joye (him thought) he clawed him on the bak :  
A ha (quod he) for Cristes passion,  
This miller had a sharpe conclusion  
Upon this argument of herbergage.  
Wel sayde Salomon in his langage  
Ne bring not every man into thin hous,  
For herberwing by night is perilous.  
Wel ought a man avised for to be  
Whom that he brought into his privetee.  
I pray to God so yeve me forwe and care  
If ever, sithen I highte Hodge of Ware,  
Herd I a miller bet yfette a-werk ;  
He had a jape of malice in the dork.

But God forbede that we stinten here,  
And therefore if ye vouchen sauf to here  
A Tale of me that am a poure man,  
I wol you tell as wel as ever I can  
A litel jape that fell in our citee.

Our Hoste answerd and sayde, I grant it thee :

Now tell on, Roger, and loke that it be good,  
For many a pastee hast thou letten blood,  
And many a Jacke of Dover hast thou sold  
That hath been twies hot and twies cold :  
Of many a pilgrim hast thou Cristes curse,  
For of thy perseele yet fare they the werse,  
That they han eten in thy stoble goos,  
For in thy shop goth many a flie loos.  
Now tell on, gentil Roger by thy name,  
But yet I pray thee be not wroth for game ;  
A man may say ful soth in game and play.

Thou sayst ful soth, quod Roger, by my fay ;  
But soth play *quade spel*, as the Fleming saith,  
And therefore, Herry Bailly, by thy faith  
Be thou not wroth, or we departen here,  
Though that my Tale be of an hostelere :  
But natheles, I wol not telle it yet,  
But er we part ywis thou shalt be quit.  
And therewithal he lough and made chere  
And sayd his Tale, as ye shal after here.

THE COKES TALE\*.

A PRENTIS whilom dwelt in our citee,  
And of a craft of vitailers was he :  
Gaillard he was as goldfinch in the shawe,  
Bronne as a bery, a propre short felawe,  
With lokkes blake kemberd ful fetilly :  
Dancen he coude so wel and jolily,  
That he was cleped Perkin Revelour :  
He was as ful of love and paramour  
As is the hive ful of honey swete ;  
Wel was the wenche with him mighte mete,

\* The description of an unthrifty prentice given to dice, women, and wine, waiting thereby his master's goods, and purchasing to himself Newgate. The most part of this Tale is lost, or never finished by the Author.

At every bridale would he sing and hoppe ;  
He loved bet the tavernne than the shoppe ;  
For whan ther any riding was in Chepe  
Out of the shoppe thider wold he lepe,  
And til that he had all the sight ysein,  
And dancd wel, he wold not come agein ;  
And gadred him a meinie of his sort  
To hoppe and sing, and maken swiche disport ;  
And ther they setten steven for to mete  
To plain at the dice in swiche a strete ;  
For in the Toun ne was ther no prentis  
That fairer coude caste a pair of dis  
Than Perkin coude, and thereto he was fre  
Of his dispençe, in place of privetee ;

## THE COKE S T A L E.

That fond his maister wel in his chaffere,  
For often time he fond his box ful bare.

For sothly a prentis, a revelour,  
That haunteth dis, riot and paramour,  
His maister shal it in his shoppe abie,  
Al have he no part of the minstrelcie;  
For thest and riot they ben convertible,  
Al can they play on giterne or ribible.  
Revel and trouth, as in a low degree,  
They ben ful wroth all day, as men may see.

This joly prentis with his maister abode,  
Til he was neigh out of his prentishode,  
Al were he snibbed bothe erly and late,  
And somtime lad with revel to Newgate :  
But at the last his maister him bethought,  
Upon a day whan he his paper sought,  
Of a proverbe that saith this same word,  
Wel bet is roten appel out of hord

Than that it rote alle the remenant :  
So fareth it by a riotous fervant ;  
It is wel lasse harm to let him pace  
Than he shende all the servants in the place :  
Therefore his maister gaf him a quittance,  
And bad him go, with sorwe and with meschance,  
And thus this joly prentis had his leve :  
Now let him riot all the night or leve.

And for ther n'is no these without a louke  
That helpeth him to wasten and to souke  
Of that he briben can or borwe may,  
Anon he sent his bed and his array  
Unto a compere of his owen fort  
That loved dis, and riot, and disport,  
And had a wif that held for countenance  
A shoppe, and swived for hire sustenance.

\* \* \* \* \*

THE MAN OF LAWES PROLOGUE.

Our Hoste saw wel that the brighte sonne  
The ark of his artificial day had renne  
The fourthe part and half an houre and more;  
And though he were not depe expert in lore,  
He wiste it was the eighte-and-twenty day  
Of April, that is messager to May,  
And saw wel that the shadow of every tree  
Was as in lengthe of the same quantitee  
That was the body erect that caused it,  
And therefore by the shadow he toke his wit  
That Phebus, which that shone so clere and bright,  
Degrees was five-and-forty clombe on hight;  
And for that day, as in that latitude,  
It was ten of the klok he gan conclude,  
And sodenly he plight his hors aboute.

Lordings, quod he, I warne you all this route  
The fourthe partie of this day is gon:  
Now for the love of God and of Seint John  
Lefeth no time, as ferforth as ye may.  
Lordings, the time it wasteth night and day,  
And steleth from us, what prively sleping,  
And what thurgh negligence in our waking,  
As doth the streame, that turneth never again,  
Descending fro the montagne into a plain.  
Wel can Senek and many a philosophre  
Bewailen time more than gold in coffre;  
For losse of catel may recovered be,  
But losse of time shendeth us, quod he.  
It wol not come again withouten drede,  
No more than wol Malkins maidenhede  
When she hath lost it in hire wantonneffe:  
Let us not moulen thus in idlennesse.

Sire Man of Lawe, quod he, so have ye blis,  
Tel us a Tale anon, as forword is.  
Ye ben submittid thurgh your free assent  
To stonde in this cas at my jugement.  
Acquitteth you now, and holdeth your behest;  
Than have ye don your devoir at the lest.

Hoste, quod he, *de par dieux jeo assente*,  
To breken forword is not min entente.  
Behest is dette, and I wold hold it fayn  
All my behest, I can no better fayn.  
For swiche lawe as man yeveth another wight  
He shuld himselven usen it by right.  
Thus wol our text; but natheles certain  
I can right now no thrifty Tale fain,  
But Chaucer (though he can but lewdely  
On metres and on riming craftily)  
Hath sayd hem in swiche English as he can  
Of olde time, as knoweth many a man;

And if he have not sayd hem, leve brother,  
In o book, he hath sayd hem in another:  
For he hath told of lovers up and down  
Mo than Ovide made of mentioun  
In his *Epistolis*, that ben ful olde.  
What shuld I tellen hem sin they ben tolde?  
In youthe he made of Ceyes and Alcyon,  
And sithen hath he spoke of everich on  
Thise noble wives, and thise lovers eke,  
Who so that wol his large volume seke  
Cleped The Seintes Legende of Cupide:  
Ther may he se the large woundes wide  
Of Lucrece, and of Babylon Thisbe;  
The swerd of Dido for the false Enee;  
The tree of Phillis for hire Demophon;  
The plaint of Deianire and Hermion,  
Of Adriane and Ysiphilee;  
The barrene ile stonde in the see;  
The dreint Leandre for his fayre Hero;  
The teres of Heleine, and eke the wo  
Of Briseide and of Ladmia;  
The crueltee of thee, Queene Medea,  
Thy litel children hanging by the hals  
For thy Jafon, that was of love so fals:  
O Hipermeestra, Penelope, Alceste!  
Your wif hood he commendeth with the beste.

But certainly no word ne writeth he  
Of thilke wicke ensample of Canace,  
That loved hire owen brother sinfully;  
(Of all swiche cursed stories I say Fy)  
Or elles of Tyrius Appolonious,  
How that the cursed king Antiochus  
Berafte his doughter of hire maidenhede,  
That is so horrible a tale for to rede,  
Whan he hire threw upon the pavement.  
And therefore he of ful avisement  
N'old never write in non of his sermons  
Of swiche unkinde abhominations:  
Ne I wol non reherse, if that I may,  
But of my Tale how shal I don this day?  
Me were loth to be likened douteles  
To Muses that men clepe Pierides,  
(*Metamorphoseos* wrote what I mene)  
But natheles I recche not a bene  
Though I come after him with hawebake;  
I speke in prose, and let him rimes make,  
And with that word he with a sobre chere  
Began his Tale, and sayde as ye shull here.



## THE MAN OF LAWES TALE.

O SCATHFUL harm, condition of poverté,  
With thirst, with cold, with hunger, so confounded,  
To asken helpe thee shameth in thine herte,  
If thou non ask, so fore art thou ywounded,  
That veray nede unwrappeth al thy wound hid.  
Maugre thin hed thou most for indigence  
Or stele or begge, or borwe thy dispenche.

Thou blamest Crist, and sayst ful bitterly,  
He misdeparteth richesse temporal;  
Thy neighebour thou witest sinfully,  
And sayst thou hast to litel and he hath all:  
Parfay (sayst thou) sometime he reken shall,  
Whan that his tayl shal brennen in the glede,  
For he nought helpeth needful in hir nede.

Herken what is the sentence of the wise,  
Bet is to dien than have indigence,  
Thy selve neighebour wol thee despise;  
If thou be poure farewell thy reverence.  
Yet of the wise man take this sentence,  
Alle the dayes of poure men ben wicke;  
Beware therfore or thou come to that pricke.

If thou be poure, thy brother hateth thee,  
And all thy frendes seen fro thee, alas!  
O riche marchants! ful of wele ben ye,  
O noble, o prudent folk! as in this cas,  
Your bagges ben not filled with ambes as,  
But with fis cink, that renneth for your chance;  
At Cristenmasse mery may ye dance.

Ye seken lond and see for your winninges;  
As wise folk ye knowen all th' estat  
Of regnes; ye ben fathers of tidinges  
And tales both of pees and of debat:  
I were right now of tales desolat,  
N'ere that a marchant, gon is many a yere,  
Me taught a Tale which that ye shull here.

In Surrie whilom dwelt a compaignie  
Of chapmen rich, and therto sad and trewe,  
That wide were senten hir spicerie,  
Clothes of gold; and fatins riche of hewe:  
Hir chaffare was so thrifty and so newe,  
That every wight hath deintee to chaffare  
With hem, and eke to sellen hem hir ware.

Now fell it that the maisters of that sort  
Han shapen hem to Rome for to wende,  
Were it for chapmanhood or for disport,  
Non other messlage wolde they thider sende,  
But comen hemself to Rome, this is the ende;  
And in swiche place as thought hem advantage  
For hir entente they taken hir herbergage.

Sojourned han these marchants in that toun  
A certain time, as fell to hir plesance:  
And so befell that the excellent renoun  
Of the emperoures doughter, Dame Custance,  
Reported was with every circumstance  
Unto these Surrien marchants in swiche wise  
Fro day to day as I shall you devise.

This was the commun vois of every man:  
Our emperour of Rome, God him se,  
A doughter hath that fin the world began,  
To reken as wel hire goodnesse as beaute,  
N'as never swiche another as is she;  
I pray to God in honour hire sustene,  
And wold she were of all Europe the quene.

In hire is high beaute withouten pride,  
Youthe withouten grenehed or folie:  
To all hire werkes vertue is hire guide;  
Humbleste hath slaien in hire tyrannie:  
She is mirrour of alle curtesie,  
Hire herte is veray chambre of holinesse,  
Hire hond ministre of fredom for almesse.

And al this vois was soth, as God is trewe;  
But now to purpos let us turne agein.  
These marchants han don fraught hir shippes newe,  
And whan they han this blisful maiden sein  
Home to Surrie ben they went ful fayn,  
And don hir nedes, as they han don yore,  
And liven in wele; I can say you no more.

Now fell it that these marchants stood in grace  
Of him that was the Soudan of Surrie;  
For whan they came from any strange place  
He wold of his benigne-curtesie  
Make hem good chere, and besily espie  
Tidings of fundry regnes, for to lere  
The wonders that they mighte seen or here.

Amonges other thinges specially  
These marchants han him told of Dame Custance  
So gret nobleste, in earnest seriously,  
That this Soudan hath caught so gret plesance  
To han hire figure in his remembrance,  
That all his lust and all his besy cure  
Was for to love hire while his lif may dure.

Paraventure in thilke large book  
Which that men clepe the Heven ywritten was  
With sterres, whan that he his birthe took,  
That he for love shuld han his deth, alas!  
For in the sterres, clerer than is glas,  
Is writen, God wot, who so coud it rede,  
The deth of every man withouten drede.

In sterres many a winter therbeforen  
Was writ the deth of Hector, Achilles,  
Of Pompey, Julius, or they were born;  
The strif of Thebes, and of Hercules,  
Of Sampson, Iurnus, and of Socrates  
The deth; but mennes wittes ben so dull  
That no wight can wel rede it at the full.

This Soudan for his prive councel sent,  
And shortly of this matere for to pace,  
He hath to hem declared his entent,  
And sayd hem certain, but he might have grace  
To han Custance, within a litel space  
He n'as but ded, and charged hem in hie  
To shapen for his lif som remedie.

Diverse men diverse things saiden;  
They argumentes casten up and down;  
Many a subtil reson forth they laiden;  
They speken of magike and abusoun;  
But finally, as in conclusion,  
They cannot seen in that non advantage,  
Ne in non other way save mariage.

Than saw they therein swiche difficultee  
By way of reson, for to speke all plain,  
Because ther was swiche diversitee  
Betwene hir bothe lawes, that they sayn  
They trowen that no Cristen prince wold sayn  
Wedden his childe under our law swete,  
That us was yeven by Mahound our prophete.

And he answered, Rather than I lese  
Custance I wol be cristened doubteles:  
I mote ben hires, I may non other chese,  
I pray you hold your arguments in pees;  
Saveth my lif, and beth not reccheles  
To geten hire that hath my life in cure,  
For in this wo I may not long endure.

What nedeth greter dilatation?  
I say by tretise and ambassatric,  
And by the Popes mediatioun,  
And all the chirche, and all the chevalrie,  
That in destruction of Maumetrie,  
And in encrese of Cristes lawe dere,  
They ben accorded so as ye may here:  
How that the Soudan and his baronage,  
And all his lieges, shuld ycristened be,  
And he shal han Custance in mariage,  
And certain gold, I n'ot what quantitee,  
And hereto finden sufficient suretee.  
The same accord is sworise on eyther side;  
Now, fair Custance, almighty God thee gide.

Now wolden som men waiten, as I gesse,  
That I shuld tellen all the purveiance  
The which that the Emperour of his noblesse  
Hath shapen for his daughter Dame Custance.  
Wel may men know that so gret ordinance  
May no man tellen in a litel claufe  
As was arraied for so high a cause.

Bishopes ben shapen with hire for to wende,  
Lordes, ladies, and knightes of renoun,  
And other folk ynow; this is the end:  
And notified is thurghout all the toun  
That every wight with gret devotioun  
Should prayen Crist that he this mariage  
Receive in gree, and spede this viage.

The day is comen of hire departing,  
I say the woful day fatal is come  
That ther may be no longer tarying,  
But forward they hem dresen all and some.  
Custance, that was with sorwe all overcome,  
Ful pale arist, and dresseth hire to wende,  
For wel she seth ther n'is non other ende.

Alas! what wonder is it though she wept,  
That shal be sent to strange nation  
Fro frendes that so tendrely hire kept,  
And to be bounde under subjection  
Of on she knoweth not his condition?  
Housbondes ben all good, and han ben yore,  
That knowen wives, I dare say no more.

Fader, (she said) thy wretched child Custance,  
Thy yonge doughter, fostered up so soft,  
And ye, my moder, my soveraine plesance  
Over all thing, (out taken Crist on loft)  
Custance your child hire recommendeth oft  
Unto your grace, for I shal to Surrie,  
Ne shal I never seen you more with eye.

Alas! unto the Barbare nation  
I muste gon, for that it is your will;  
But Crist, that starfe for our redemption,  
So yeve me grace his hestes to fulfill,  
I wretched woman no force though I spill:  
Women are borne to thraldom and penance,  
And to ben under mannes governance.

I trow at Troye whan Pirrus brake the wall  
Or Ilion brent, or Thebes the citee,  
Ne at Rome for the harm thurgh Hanniball,  
That Romans hath venqueshed times thre,  
N'as herd swiche tendre weping for pitee  
As in the chambre was for hire parting;  
But forth she mote wheder she wepe or sing.

O firste moving cruel firmament!  
With thy diurnal swegh that croudest ay,  
And hurtlest all from est til occident,  
That naturally wold hold another way,  
Thy crouding set the heven in swiche array  
At the beginning of this fierce viage  
That cruel Mars hath slain this marriage.

Infortunat ascendent tortuous,  
Of which the lord is helpeles fall, alas!  
Out of his angle into the derkest hous,  
O Mars, o Atyzar! as in this cas;  
O feble Mone! unhappy ben thy pas,  
Thou knittest thee ther thou art not received,  
Ther thou were wel fro thennes art thou weived

Imprudent Emperour of Rome, alas!  
Was ther no philosophre in al thy toun?  
Is no time bet than other in swiche cas?  
Of viage is ther non electioun,  
Namely to folk of high conditioun,  
Nat whan a rote is of a birth, yknowe?  
Alas! we ben to lewed or to slow.

To ship is brought this woful faire maid  
Solempnely, with every circumstance:  
Now Jesu Crist be with you all, she said,  
Ther n'is no more, but Farewel, fair Custance.  
She peineth hire to make good countenance;  
And forth I let hire sayle in this manere,  
And turne I wol againe to my matere.



The mother of Soudan, well of vices,  
Espied hath hire fones pleine entente,  
How he wol lete his old sacrifices;  
And right anon she for her conseil sente,  
And they ben comen to know what she mente;  
And whan assembled was this folk in fere,  
She set hire down, and sayd as ye shul here:

Lordes, (she sayd) ye known everich on  
How that my sone in point is for to lete.  
The holy lawes of our Alkaron,  
Yeven by Goddes Messager Mahomete;  
But on avow to grete God I hete,  
The lif shal rather out of my body sterte  
Than Mahometes lawe out of myn herte.

What shuld us tiden of this newe lawe  
But thraldom to our bodies and penance,  
And afterward in helle to ben drawe,  
For we reneied Mahound our creance?  
But, Lordes, wol ye maken assurance,  
As I shal say, assenting to my lore?  
And I shal make us sauf for evermore.

They sworn and assented every man  
To live with hire and die, and by hire stond;  
And everich on, in the best wise he can,  
To strengthen hire shal all his frendes fond.  
And she hath this emprise ytaken in hond  
Which ye shull heren that I shal devise,  
And to hem all she spake right in this wise.

We shul first sein us Cristendom to take;  
Cold water shal not greve us but a lite;  
And I shal swiche a feste and revel make  
That, as I trow, I shal the Soudan quite:  
For tho his wif be cristened never so white  
She shal have nede to wash away the rede  
Though she a font of water with hire lede.

O Soudanne! rote of iniquitee,  
Virago thou Semyramee the second,  
O serpent under femininitee,  
Like to the serpent depe in helle ybound,  
O feined woman! all that may confound  
Vertue and innocence, thurgh thy malice  
Is bred in thee, as nest of every vice.

O Sathan envious! sin thilke day  
That thou were chased from our heritage,  
Wel knowest thou to woman the olde way:  
Thou madest Eva bring us in servage,  
Thou wolt fordon this Cristen mariage:  
Thin instrument so (wala wa the while!)  
Makest thou of women whan thou wolt begile.

This Soudanne, whom I thus blame and warrie,  
Let prively hire conseil gon hir way:  
What shuld I in this Tale longer tarie?  
She rideth to the Soudan on a day,  
And sayd him that she wold reinic hire lay,  
And Cristendom of prestes hondes fong,  
Repenting hire she Hethen was so long;

Beseching him to don hire that honour  
That she might han the Cristen folk to fest;  
To plesen hem I wol do my labour.  
The Soudan faith, I wol don at your hest,  
And kneeling thanked hire of that request;  
So glad he was ne n'iste not what to say,  
She kist hire sone, and home she goth hire way.

Arrived ben these Cristen folk to lond  
In Surrie, with a gret solempne route,  
And hastily this Soudan sent his fond  
First to his mother and all the regne aboute,  
And sayd his wif was comen out of doute,  
And praide hem for to riden again the queene,  
The honour of his regne to sustene.

Gret was the presse, and riche was th' array  
Of Surriens and Romanes met in fere.  
The mother of the Soudan riche and gay  
Received hire with all so glad a chere  
As any mother might hire doughter dere;  
And to the nexte citee ther beside  
A softe pas solempnely they ride.

Nought trow I the triumph of Julius,  
Of which that Lucan maketh swiche a boost,  
Was realler or more curious  
Than was th' assemblee of this blisful host;  
Butte this scorpion, this wicked gost,  
The Soudanne, for all hire flattering  
Cast under this ful mortally to sting.

The Soudan cometh himself sone after this  
So really, that wonder is to tell,  
And welcometh hire with alle joy and blis.  
And thus in mirth and joye I let hem dwell;  
The fruit of this matere is that I tell.  
Whan time came, men thought it for the best  
That revel stint, and men go to hir rest.

The time come is this olde Soudanne  
Ordeined hath the feste of which I tolde,  
And to the feste Cristen folk him dresse  
In general, ya, bothe yonge and olde.  
Ther may men fest and realtee beholde,  
And deintees mo than I can you devise;  
But all to dere they bought it or they rise.

O soden wo, that ever art successour  
To worldly blis! spreint is with bitternesse  
Th' ende of the joye of our worldly labour:  
Wo occupieth the fyn of our gladnesse.  
Herken this conseil for thy sikernesse,  
Upon thy glade day have in thy minde  
The unware wo of harme that cometh behinde.

For shortly for to tellen at a word,  
The Soudan and the Cristen everich on  
Ben all to-hewe and stiked at the bord  
But it were only Dame Custance alone.  
This old Soudanne, this cursed crone,  
Hath with hire frendes don this cursed dede,  
For she hireself wold all the contree lede.

Ne ther was Surrien non that was converted,  
That of the conseil of the Soudan wot,  
That he n'as all to-hewe er he asterted;  
And Custance han they taken anon fote-hot,  
And in a ship all steeles (God wot)  
They han hire fet, and bidden hire lerne sayle  
Out of Surrie againward to Itaille.

A certain tresor that she thither ladde,  
And soth to sayn vitaille gret plentee,  
They han hire yeven, and clothes eke she hadde,  
And forth she sayleth in the salte see.  
O my Custance! ful of benignitee,  
O Emperoures yonge doughter dere!  
He that is Lord of fortune be thy stee.



She bleffeth hire, and with ful pitious vois  
 Unto the crois of Crist thus fayde she :  
 O clere, o weleful auter, holy-crois !  
 Red of the Lambes blood ful of pitee,  
 That wesi the world fro the old iniquitee,  
 Me fro the fende and fro his clawes kepe  
 That day that I shal drenchen in the depe.  
 Victorious tree, protection of trewe,  
 That only worthy were for to bere  
 The King of heven with his woundes newe,  
 The white Lamb, that hurt was with a spere ;  
 Flemer of fendes out of him and here  
 On which thy limmes faithfully extenden,  
 Me kepe, and yeve me might my lif to amenden.

Yeres and dayes fleet this creature  
 Thurghout the see of Grece, unto the Straite  
 Of Maroc, as it was hire aventure :  
 On many a fory mele now may she baite ;  
 After hire deth ful often may she waite,  
 Or that the wilde waves wol hire drive  
 Unto the place ther as she shal arrive.

Men mighten asken why she was not slain ?  
 Eke at the feste who might hire body save ?  
 And I answer to that demand again,  
 Who saved Daniel in the horrible cave,  
 Ther every wight save he, master or knave,  
 Was with the leon fette or he asterte ?  
 No wight but God, that he bare in his herte.

God list to shew his wonderful miracle  
 In hire, for we shuld seen his mighty werkes :  
 Crist, which that is to every harm triacle,  
 By certain menes oft, as knewen clerkes,  
 Doth thing for certain ende that ful derke is  
 To mannes wit, that for our ignorance  
 Ne can nat know his prudent purveiance.

Now sith she was not at the feste yslawe,  
 Who kepte hire fro the drenching in the see ?  
 Who kept Jonas in the fishes mawe,  
 Til he was spouted up at Ninevee ?  
 Wel may men know it was no wight but he  
 That kept the peple Ebraike fro drenching,  
 With drye feet thurghout the see passing.

Who bade the foure spirits of tempest,  
 That power han to anoyen lond and see,  
 Both north and south, and also west and est,  
 Anoyen nether see, ne lond, ne tree ?  
 Sothly the commander of that was he  
 That fro the tempest ay this woman kepte  
 As wel whan she awoke as whan she slepte.

Wher might this woman mete and drinke have ?  
 Three yere and more how lasteth hire vitaille ?  
 Who fed the Egyptian Mary in the cave  
 Or in desert ? no wight but Crist *sans faille*.  
 For the thousand folk it was a gret marvaille  
 With loves five and fishes two to fede :  
 God sent his soyson at hire grete nede.

She driveth forth into our ocean  
 Thurghout our wide see, til at the last  
 Under an hold, that nempen I ne can,  
 Fer in Northumberlond, the wave hire cast,  
 And in the sand hire ship stiked so fast  
 That thennes wolde it not in all a tide :  
 The wille of Crist was that she shulde abide.

The Constable of the castle down is fare  
 To seen this wrecke, and al the ship he fought,  
 And fond this very woman ful of care ;  
 He fond also the tresour that she brought :  
 In hire langage mercy she besought,  
 The lif out of hire body for to twinne,  
 Hire to deliver of wo that she was inne.

A maner Latin corrupt was hire speche,  
 But algate therby was she understood.  
 The Constable, whan him list no longer seche,  
 This woful woman brought he to the lond.  
 She kneleth down, and thanketh Goddes fond ;  
 But what she was she woide no man seye  
 For soule ne faire, though that ye shulde deye.

She said she was so mased in the see  
 That she forgate hire minde, by hire trouth.  
 The Constable hath of hire so gret pitee,  
 And eke his wif, that they wepen for routh :  
 She was so diligent withouten slouth  
 To serve and plesen everich in that place,  
 That all hire love that token in hire face.

The Constable and Dame Hermegild his wif  
 Were Payenes, and that contree every wher ;  
 But Hermegild loved Custance as hire lif ;  
 And Custance hath so long sojourned ther  
 In orisons, with many a bitter tere,  
 Til Jesu hath converted thurgh his grace  
 Dame Hermegild, Constableffe of that place.

In all that lond no Cristen dorste route ;  
 All Cristen folk ben fled fro that contree  
 Thurgh Payenes, that conquereden all aboute  
 The plages of the north by lond and see.  
 To Wales fled the Christianitee  
 Of olde Bretons dwelling in this ile ;  
 Ther was hir refuge for the mene while.

But yet n'ere Cristen Bretons so exiled  
 That ther n'ere som which in hir privitee  
 Honoured Crist, and Hethen folk begiled,  
 And neigh the castle swiche ther dwelten three :  
 That on of hem was blind, and might not see,  
 But it were with thilke eyen of his minde,  
 With which men mowen see whan they ben blinde.

Bright was the sonne as in that sommers day,  
 For which the Constable and his wif also,  
 And Custance, han ytake the righte way  
 Toward the see a furlong way or two,  
 To plaien and to romen to and fro,  
 And in hir walk this blinde man they mette,  
 Croked and olde, with eyen fast yshette.

In the name of Crist, (cried this blinde Breton)  
 Dame Hermegild, yeve me my sight again.  
 This lady wexe afraied of that soun,  
 Lest that hire husband, shortly for to sain,  
 Wold hire for Jesu Cristes love have slain,  
 Till Custance made hire bold, and bad hire werche  
 The will of Crist, as doughter of holy cherche.

The Constable wexe abashed of that sight,  
 And sayde, What amounteth all this fare ?  
 Custance answered, Sire, it is Cristes might,  
 That helpeth folk out of the fendes snare :  
 And so ferforth she gan our lay declare,  
 That she the Constable, or that it were eve,  
 Converted, and on Crist made him beleve.

This Constable was not lord of the place  
Of which I speke, ther as he Custance fond,  
But kept it strongly many a winter space  
Under Alla King of Northumberland,  
That was ful wise, and worthy of his hond  
Againe the Scottes, as men may wel here;  
But tourne I wol againe to my matere.

Sathan, that ever us waiteth to begile,  
Saw of Custance all hire perfectioun,  
And cast anon how he might quite hire while,  
And made a yonge knight, that dwelt in that toun,  
Love hire so hote of foule affectioun,  
That veraily him thought that he shuld spille  
But he of hire might ones han his wille.

He woeth hire, but it availeth nought;  
She wolde do no sinne by no wey;  
And for despit he compassed his thought  
To maken hire on shameful deth to dey:  
He waiteth whan the Constable is away,  
And privily upon a night he crepte  
In Hermegildes chambre while she slepte.

Wery, forwaked in hire orisons,  
Slepeth Custance, and Hermegilde also.  
This knight, thurgh Sathanes temptations,  
All softly is to the bed ygo,  
And cut the throte of Hermegilde atwo,  
And layd the bloody knif by Dame Custance,  
And went his way, ther God yeve him mischance.

Sone after cometh this Constable home again,  
And eke Alla, that king was of that lond,  
And saw his wife despitously yslain,  
For which ful oft he wept and wrong his hond;  
And in the bed the bloody knif he fond  
By Dame Custance. Alas! what might she say!  
For veray wo hire wit was all away.

To King Alla was told all this mischance,  
And eke the time, and wher, and in what wise,  
That in a ship was fonden this Custance,  
As here before ye han herd me devise:  
The kinges herte of pitee gan agrise  
Whan he saw so benigne a creature  
Fall in disese and in misaventure.

For as the lamb toward his deth is brought,  
So stant this innocent befor the king:  
This false knight, that hath this treson wrought,  
Bereth hire in hond that she hath don this thing:  
But natheles there was gret murmuring  
Among the peple, and sayn they cannot gesse  
That she had don so great a wickednesse;

For they han seen hire ever so vertuous,  
And loving Hermegild right as hire lif.  
Of this bare witnesse everich in that hous,  
Save he that Hermegild slaw with his knif.  
This gentil king hath caught a gret motif  
Of this witness; and thought he wold enquire  
Deper in this cas, trouthe for to lere.

Alas! Custance, thou hast no champion,  
Ne fighten canst thou not, so wala wa!  
But he that starf for our redemption,  
And bond Sathan, and yet lith ther he lay,  
So be thy stronge champion this day:  
For but if Crist on thee miracle kithe,  
Withoung gilt thou shalt be slain as swithe.

Immortal God! that savedst Susanne  
Fro false bleme, and thou merciful mayde,  
Mary I mene, doughter to Seint Anne,  
Beforn whos child angels singen Ofanne.  
If I be gilteles of this felonie  
My focour be, or elles shal I die.

Have ye not seen somtime a pale face  
(Among a prees) of him that hath ben lad  
Toward his deth, where as he getteth no grace,  
And swiche a colour in his face hath had,  
Men mighten know him that was so bestad  
Amonges all the faces in that route,  
So stant Custance, and loketh hire aboute.

O quenes living in prosperitee,  
Duchesses, and ye ladies everich on!  
Haveth som routhe on hire adversitee,  
An emperoures doughter stant alone;  
She hath no wight to whom to make hire mone.  
O blood real, that stondest in this drede,  
Fer ben the frendes in thy grette nede!

This Alla king hath swiche compassioun,  
As gentil herte is ful filled of pitee,  
That fro his eyen ran the water down.  
Now hastily do fecche a book, quod he,  
And if this knight wol sweren how that she  
This woman slaw, yet wol we us avise,  
Whom that we wol that shal ben our justice.

A Breton book, written with Evangiles,  
Was fet, and on this book he swore anon  
She giltif was, and in the mene whiles  
An hond him smote upon the nekke bone,  
That doun he fell at ones as a stone,  
And both his eyen brost out of his face  
In sight of every body in that place.

A voice was herd, in general audience,  
That sayd, Thou hast desclandered gilteles  
The doughter of holy chirche in high presence  
Thus hast thou don, and yet hold I my pees.  
Of this mervaille agast was all the prees;  
As mased folk they stonden everich on  
For drede of wreche, save Custance alone.

Gret was the drede and eke the repentance  
Of hem that hadden wronge suspicion  
Upon this sely innocent Custance:  
And for this miracle, in conclusion,  
And by Custances mediation,  
The king, and many another in that place,  
Converted was, thanked be Cristes grace.

This false knight was slain for his untrouthe  
By judgement of Alla hastily;  
And yet Custance had of his deth gret routhe;  
And after this Jesus of his mercy  
Made Alla wedden ful solempnely  
This holy woman, that is so bright and shene,  
And thus hath Crist ymade Custance a quene.

But who was woful (if I shall not lie)  
Of this wedding but Donegild, and no mo,  
The kinges mother, full of tyrannie?  
Hire thoughte hire cursed herte braut atwo;  
She wolde not that hire sone had do so:  
Hire thoughte a despit that he shulde take  
So strange a creature unto his make.

Me list not of the chaf ne of the stre  
Maken sadementale of the stre

# THE MAN OF LAWES TALE.

Of this marriage, or which cours goth befor,  
Who bloweth in a trompe or in an horn?  
The fruit of every tale is for to say;  
They ete and drink, and dance, and sing, and play.

They goa to bed, as it was skill and right,  
For though that wives ben ful holy thinges,  
They mosten take in patience a night  
Swiche maner necessaries, as ben plesinges  
To folk that han ywedded hem with ringes.  
And lay a lite hir holiness aside  
As for the time, it may no bet betide.

On hire he gat a knave childe anon,  
And to a bishop, and his Constable eke,  
He toke his wif to kepe, when he is gon  
To Scotland ward, his fomen for to seke.  
Now faire Custance, that is so humble and meke,  
So long is gen with childe til that still  
She halt hire chambre, abiding Cristes will.

The time is come, a knave child she bere;  
Mauricius at the fontstone they him calle.  
This Constable doth forth come a messager,  
And wrote unto his king that cleped was Alle,  
How that this blisful tiding is befall,  
And other tidings spedeful for to say.  
He hath the lettre, and forth he goth his way.

This messager, to don his advantage,  
Unto the kinges mother rideth swithe,  
And salueth hire ful faire in his langage.  
Madame, quod he, ye may be glad and blithe,  
And thanken God an hundred thousand fithes;  
My lady quene hath child, withouten doute,  
To joy and blisse of all this regne aboute.

Lo here the lettre seled of this thing,  
That I most bere in all the hast I may:  
If ye wol ought unto your sone the king,  
I am your servant bothe night and day.  
Donegilde answerd, As now at this time nay;  
But here I wol all night thou take thy rest,  
To-morwe wol I say thee what me left.

This messager drank fadly ale and wine,  
And stolen were his lettres prively  
Out of his box, while he slept as a swine;  
And contrefeted was ful subtilly  
Another lettre, wrought ful sinfully,  
Unto the king directe of this matere  
Fro his Constable, as ye shal after here.

This lettre spake, the quene delivered was  
Of so horrible a fendliche creature,  
That in the castle non so hardy was  
That any while dorst therein endure:  
The mother was an elf by aventure  
Ycome, by charmes or by forcerie,  
And everich man hateth hire compaignie.

• We was this king when he this lettre had sein.  
But to no wight he told his sorwes fore,  
But of his owen hand he wrote again;  
Welcome the sonde of Crist for evermore  
To me, that am now lerned in his lore:  
Lord, welcome be thy lust and thy plesance;  
My lust I put all in thyn ordinance.

• Kepeth this child, al be it foule or faire,  
And eke my wif, unto min home coming:  
Crist whan him list may senden me an heire  
More agreeable than this to my liking.  
This lettre he seled, prively weping.

Which to the messager was taken sone,  
And forth he goth, there is no more to done.

O messager fulfilled of dronkenesse!  
Strong is thy breth, thy limmes faitren ay,  
And thou bewreiest alle fecrenesse;

Thy mind is lorne, thou janglest as a jay;  
Thy face is tourned in a new array:  
Ther dronkenesse regneth in any route  
Ther is no conseil hid withouten doute.

O Donegild! I ne have non English digne  
Unto thy malice and thy tyrannie,  
And therefore to the fende I thee resign.  
Let him enditen of thy traitorie.

Fy, mannish, fy! o nay, by God I lie;  
Fy, fendliche spirit! for I dare well telle,  
Though thou here walke, thy spirit is in helle.

This messager cometh fro the king again,  
And at the kinges modres court he light,  
And she was of this messager ful fayn,  
And plesed him in all that ever she might.  
He dranke and wel his girdel underpight;  
He slepeth and he snoreth in his gise  
All night until the sonne gan arise.

Eft were his lettres stolen everich on,  
And contrefeted lettres in this wise.  
The king commanded his Constable anon,  
Up peine of hanging and of high jewise,  
That he ne shulde soffran in no wise  
Custance within his regne for to abide  
Three daies and a quarter of a tide;

But in the same ship as he hire fond.  
Hire and hire yonge sone, and all hire gere,  
He shulde put, and croude hire fro the lond,  
And charge hire that she never eft come there.  
O my Custance! wel may thy ghost have fere,  
And sleping in thy dreame ben in penance,  
Whan Donegild cast all this ordinance.

This messager on morwe whan he awoke  
Unto the castel halt the nexte way,  
And to the Constable he the lettre toke;  
And whan that he this pitous lettre sey  
Ful oft he sayd Alas, and wala wa!  
Lord Christ, quod he, how may this world endure,  
So ful of sinne is many a creature?

O mighty God! if that it be thy will,  
Sin thou art rightful juge, how may it be  
That thou wolt soffren innocence to spill,  
And wicked folk regne in prosperitee?  
A! good Custance, alas! so wo is me,  
That I mote be thy turmentour, or dey  
On shames deth, ther is non other wey.

Wepen both yonge and olde in all that place  
Whan that the king this cursed lettre sent:  
And Custance with a dedly pale face  
The fourthe day toward the ship she went;  
But natheless she taketh in god entent  
The will of Crist, and kneeling on the strond  
She sayde, Lord, ay welcome be thy sond.

He that me kepte fro the false blame,  
While I was in the lond amonges you,  
He can me kepe fro harme and eke fro shame  
In the salt see, although I se not how:  
As strong as ever he was he is yet now:  
In him trust I, and in his mother dere,  
That is to me my lif and my honour.



Hire litel child lay weping in hire arm,  
And kneling pitouſly to him ſhe ſaid,  
Pees, litel ſone, I wol do thee no harm :  
With that hire couverchief of hire hed ſhe braid,  
And over his litel eyen ſhe it laid,  
And in hire arme ſhe lulleth it ful faſt,  
And into the heven hire eyen up ſhe caſt.

Mother, quod ſhe, and mayden, bright Marie !  
Soth is that thurgh womanes eggement  
Mankind was lorne, and damned ay to die,  
For which thy child was on a crois yrent :  
Thy bliſful eyen ſaw all his turment,  
Than is ther no compariſon betwene  
Thy wo and any woman may ſuſtene.

Thou ſaw thy child yſlain before thin eyen,  
And yet now liveth my litel child parſay :  
Now, Lady bright ! to whom all woful crien,  
Thou glory of womanhed, thou faire May !  
Thou haven of refute, bright ſterre of day !  
Rew on my child, that of thy gentilleſſe  
Reweſt on every rewful in diſtreſſe.

O litel child, alas ! what is thy gilt,  
That never wroughteſt ſinne as yet parde ?  
Why wol thin harde father have thee ſpilt ?  
O mercy, dere Conſtable ! (quod ſhe)  
As let my litel child dwell here with thee ;  
And if thou darſt not ſaven him fro blame,  
So kiſſe him ones in his ſadres name.

Therwith ſhe loketh backward to the lond,  
And ſaide, Farewel, houſbond routhes !  
And up ſhe riſt, and walketh down the ſtound  
Toward the ſhip ; hire ſoloweth all the pees :  
And ever ſhe praieth hire child to hold his pees,  
And taketh hire leve, and with an holy entent  
She bleſſed hire, and into the ſhip ſhe went.

Vitailed was the ſhip, it is no drede,  
Habundantly for hire a ful long ſpace ;  
And other neceſſaries that ſhuld nede  
She had ynow, heried be Goddes grace :  
For wind and wether, almighty God purchace,  
And bring hire home, I can no better ſay,  
But in the ſee ſhe driveth forth hire way.

Alla the king cometh home ſone after this  
Unto his caſtel, of the which I told,  
And asketh wher his wif and his child is ;  
The Conſtable gan about his herte cold,  
And plainly all the matere he him told  
As ye han herd, I can tell it no better,  
And ſhewed the king his ſele and his letter ;

And ſaide, Lord, as ye commanded me  
Up peine of deth, ſo have I don certain.  
This meſſager turmented was til he  
Meſte beknewe, and tellen plat and plain  
Fro night to night in what place he had lain :  
And thus by wit and subtil enqueriſh  
Imagined was by whom this harm gan ſpring.

The hand was knowen that the lettre wrote,  
And all the venime of this curſed dede,  
But in what wiſe certainly I n'ot.  
The effect is this, that Alla out of drede  
His moder ſlew, that moun men plainly rede,  
For that ſhe traitour was to hire ligeance.  
Thus ended this old Donegild with meſchance.  
The ſorwe that this Alla night and day

Maketh for his wif and for his child alſo,  
Ther is no tonge that it tellen may.  
But now wol I agen to Cuſtance go,  
That ſeteth in the ſee in peine and wo  
Five yere and more, as liked Criſtes ſorde,  
Or that hire ſhip approched to the londe.

Under an Hethen caſtel at the laſt,  
(Of which the name in my text I not find)  
Cuſtance and eke hire child the ſee up caſt.  
Almighty God, that ſaved all mankind,  
Have on Cuſtance and on hire child ſom mind  
That fallen is in Hethen hond eſtſone  
In point to ſpill, as I ſhal tell you ſone.

Doun fro the caſtel cometh ther many a wight  
To gauren on this ſhip and on Cuſtance :  
But ſhortly fro the caſtel on a night,  
The lordes ſteward, (God yere han meſchance)  
A theef that had reneyed eur creance,  
Came into the ſhip alone, and ſaid he wolde  
Hire lemman be whether ſhe wolde or n'olde.

Wo was this wretched woman tho begon ;  
Hire child cried, and ſhe cried pitouſly ;  
But bliſful Mary halpe hire right anon,  
For with hire ſtrogling wel and mightily  
The theef fell over bord all ſodenly,  
And in the ſee he drenched for vengeance ;  
And thus hath Criſt unwemmed kept Cuſtance.

O ſoule luſt of luxurie ! lo thin ende,  
Not only that thou fainteſt mannes mind,  
But veraily thou wolt his body ſhende.  
Th' ende of thy werk, or of thy luſtes blind,  
Is complaining : how many may men find  
That not for werk ſometime, but for th' entent  
To don this ſinne, ben eyther ſlain or ſhent ?

How may this weke woman han the ſtrength  
Hire to defend again this renegade ?  
O Goliath ! unmeſurable of length,  
How mighte David maken thee ſo mate ?  
So yonge, and of armure ſo deſolate,  
How dorſt he loken upon thy dredful face ?  
Wel may men ſeen it was but Goddes grace.

Who yaf Judith corage or hardineſſe  
To ſleen him Holofernes in his tent,  
And to deliver out of wretchedneſſe  
The peple of God ? I ſay for this entent,  
That right as God ſpirit of vigour ſent  
To hem, and ſaved hem out of meſchance,  
So ſent he might and vigour to Cuſtance.

Forth goth hire ſhip thurghout the narwe mouth  
Of Jubaltre and Septe, driving alway,  
Sometime weſt, and ſometime north and ſouth,  
And ſometime eſt, ful many a wery day,  
Til Criſtes moder (bleſſed be ſhe ay)  
Hath ſhapen thurgh hire endeles goodneſſe  
To make an end of all hire hevineſſe.

Now let us ſkint of Cuſtance but a throw,  
And ſpeke we of the Romane emperour,  
That out of Surrie hath by lettres knowe  
The ſlaughter of Criſten folk, and diſhonour  
Don to his doughter by a falſe traitour,  
I mene the curſed wicked Soudanneſſe,  
That at the feſt let ſleen both more and leſſe.

For which this emperour hath ſent anon  
His ſenatour, with real ordinance,

And other lordes, God wote, many on,  
On Surriens to taken high vengeance :  
They brennen, fleen, and bring hem to meschance,  
Ful many a day : but shortly this is th' ende,  
Homward to Rome they shapen hem to wende.

This senatour repaireth with victorie  
To Rome ward, sayling ful really,  
And met the ship driving, as saith the storie,  
In which Custance sitteth ful pitously :  
Nothing ne knew he what she was, ne why  
She was in swiche array, ne she wil sey  
Of hire estat, though that she shulde dey.

He bringeth hire to Rome, and to his wif  
He yaf hire, and hire yonge sonne also,  
And with the senatour she lad hire lif.  
Thus can our Lady bringen out of wo  
Woful Custance, and many another mo :  
And longe time dwelled she in that place  
In holy werkes ever, as was hire grace.

The senatoures wif hire aunte was,  
But for all that she knew hire never the more :  
I wol no longer tarien in this cas,  
But to King Alla, which I spake of yore,  
That for his wif wipeth and liketh fore,  
I wol returne, and let I wol Custance  
Under the senatoures governance.

King Alla, which that had his moder slain,  
Upon a day fell in swiche repentance,  
That if I shortly tellen shal and plain,  
To Rome he cometh to receive his penance,  
And putte him in the Popes ordinance  
In high and low, and Jesu Crist besought  
Foryeve his wicked werkes that he had wrought.

The same anon thurghout the toun is born,  
How Alla king shal come on pilgrimage,  
By herbergeours that wenten him befor,  
For which the senatour, as was usage,  
Rode him againe, and many of his linage,  
As wel to shewn his high magnificence  
As to don any king a reverence.

Gret chere doth this noble senatour  
To King Alla, and he to him also :  
Everich of hem doth other gret honour ;  
And so befell that in a day or two  
This senatour is to King Alla go  
To fest, and shortly, if I shal not lie,  
Custances sone went in his compaignie.

Som men wold sain at requeste of Custance  
This senatour hath lad this childe to feste :  
I may not tellen every circumstance ;  
Be as be may ther was he at the leste :  
But soth is this, that at his mothers heste  
Beforn Alla, during the metes space,  
The child stood, loking in the kinges face.

This Alla king hath of this child gret wonder,  
And to the senatour he said anon,  
Whos is that faire child that stondeth yonder ?  
I n'ot, quod he, by God, and by Seint John ;  
A moder he hath, but fader hath he non  
That I of wote : but shortly in a stound  
He told Alla how that this child was found.

But God wot, quod this senatour also,  
So vertuous a liver in all my lif  
Ne saw I never as she, ne herd of mo

Of worldly woman, maiden, widewe or wif :  
I dare wel sayn hire hadde lever a knif  
Thurghout hire brest than ben a woman wikke ;  
Ther is no man coude bring hire to that prikke.

Now was this child as like unto Custance  
As possible is a creature to be :  
This Alla hath the face in remembrance  
Of Dame Custance, and theron mused he,  
If that the chilles moder were aught she  
That is his wif, and prively he fighte,  
And sped him fro the table that he mighte.

Parfay, thought he, fantome is in min hed ;  
I ought to deme of skilful judgement  
That in the salte see my wif is ded.  
And afterward he made his argument ;  
What wot I if that Crist have hider sent  
My wif by see, as wel as he hire lent  
To my contree, fro thennes that she went ?

And after noon home with the senatour  
Goth Alla, for to see this wonder chance.  
This senatour doth Alla gret honour,  
And hastily he sent after Custance ;  
But trusteth wel hire luste not to dance :  
Whan that she wiste wherfore was that sonde  
Unnethe upon hire feet she mighte stonde.

Whan Alla saw his wif faire he hire grette,  
And wept that it was routhe for to see ;  
For at the firste look he on hire sette  
He knew wel veraily that it was she ;  
And she for sorwe as domb stant as a tree :  
So was hire herte shette in hire distresse  
Whan she remembered his unkindenesse.

Twies she swouneth in his owen sight ;  
He wepeth and him excuseth pitously :  
Now God, quod he, and all his halwes bright,  
So willy on my soule as have mercy,  
That of your harme as gilteles am I  
As is Maurice my sone, so like your face,  
Elles the fend me fetche out of this place.

Long was the sobbing and the bitter peine  
Or that hir woful hertes mighten cese ;  
Gret was the pitee for to here hem pleine,  
Thurgh whiche pleintes gan hir wo encrese.  
I pray you all my labour to relese,  
I may not tell hir wo until to-morwe,  
I am so wery for to speke of sorwe.

But finally, whan that the soth is wist,  
That Alla gilteles was of hire wo,  
I trow an hundred times han they kist,  
And swiche a blisse is ther betwix hem two,  
That, save the joye that lasteth evermo,  
Ther is non like that any creature  
Hath seen or shal while that the world may dure.

Tho praied she hire husband mekely.  
In releef of hire longe pitous pine,  
That he wold pray hire fader specially  
That of his magestee he wolde encline  
To vouchesauf som day with him to dine ;  
She praied him eke he shulde by no way  
Unto hire fader no word of hire say.

Som men wold sayn how that the child Maurice  
Doth this message until this emperour ;  
But as I gesse Alla was not so nice,  
To him that is so sovereign of his

As he that is of Cristen folk the flour,  
Send any child, but it is bet to deme  
He went himself, and so it may wel seme.

This emperour hath granted gentilly  
To come to dinner as he him beloughte;  
And wel rede I he looked besily  
Upon this child, and on his daughter thought.  
Alla goth to his inne, and as him ought  
Arraied for this feste in every wise  
As ferforth as his conning may suffice.

The morwe came, and Alla gain him dresse,  
And eke his wif, this emperour to mete;  
And forth they ride in joye and in gladnesse;  
And whan she saw hire fader in the strete,  
She light adoun and falleth him to sete.  
Fader, quod she, your yonge child Custance  
Is now ful cene out of your remembrance.

I am your doughter, your Custance, quod she,  
That whilom ye han sent into Surrie;  
It am I, fader, that in the salte see  
Was put alone, and dampned for to die:  
Now, goode fader, I you mercie crie;  
Send me no more into non Hethenisse,  
But thanketh my lord here of his kindnesse.

Who can the pitous joye tellen all  
Betwix hem thre sin they ben thus ymette?  
But of my Tale make an ende I shal,  
The day goth faste, I wol no longer lette.  
Thise glade folk to dinner ben yfette;  
In joye and blisse at mete I let hem dwell,  
A thousand fold wel more than I can tell.

This child Maurice was fithen Emperour  
Made by the Pope, and lived Christenly;  
To Cristes chirche did he gret honour:  
But I let all his storie passen by;  
Of Custance is my Tale specially;

In the olde Romane gestes men may find  
Maurices lif, I here it not in mind.

This King Alla, when he his time sey,  
With his Custance, his holy wif so swete,  
To Englonde ben they come the righte wey,  
Ther as they live in joye and in quiete:  
But litel while it lasteth I you hete;  
Joye of this world for time wol not abide,  
Fro day to night it changeth as the tide.

Who lived ever in swiche delite o day  
That him ne moved eyther conscience,  
Or ire, or talent, or som kin assray,  
Envie, or pride, or passion, or offence?  
I ne say but for this end this sentence,  
That litel while in joye or in plesance  
Lasteth the blisse of Alla with Custance.

For Deth, that taketh of his lowe nis rente,  
Whan passed was a yere, even as I gesse,  
Out of this world this King Alla he hente,  
For whom Custance hath ful gret hevenesse;  
Now let us praien God his soule blese:  
And Dame Custance, finally to say,  
Toward the town of Rome goth hire way.

To Rome is come this holy creature,  
And findeth ther hire frendes hole and found;  
Now is she scaped all hire aventure:  
And whan that she hire fader hath yfound,  
Doun on hire knees falleth she to ground,  
Weping for tenderesse in herte blithe,  
She herieth God an hundred thousand fithe.

In vertue and in holy almesse dede  
They liven alle, and never asonder wende;  
Till deth departeth hem this lif they lede:  
And fareth now wel, my Tale is at an ende.  
Now Jesu Crist, that of his might may sende  
Joye after wo, governe us in his grace,  
And kepe us alle that ben in this place.



THE WIF OF BATHES PROLOGUE\*.

EXPERIENCE, though non actoritee  
Were in this world, is right ynough for me  
To speke of wo that is in mariage;  
For, Lordings, sin I twelf yere was of age  
(Thanked be God that is eterne on live)  
Husbondes at chirche dore have I had five,  
(If I so often might han wedded be)  
And all were worthy men in hir degree.  
But me was told, not longe time agon is,  
That sithen Crist ne went never but onis  
To wedding in the Cane of Galilee,  
That by that ilke ensample taught he me  
That I ne shulde wedded be but ones.  
Lo, herke eke, which a sharp word for the nones,  
Beside a welle Jesu God and man  
Spake in represe of the Samaritan;  
Thou hast yhadde five husbonds, sayde he,  
And thilke man that now hath wedded thee  
Is not thyn husband. Thus said he certain;  
What that he ment therby I can not sain;  
But that I aske why that the fifthe man  
Was non husband to the Samaritan?  
How many might she have in mariage?  
Yet herd I never tellen in min age  
Upon this noumbre diffinitoun;  
Men may devine and glosen up and down.  
But wel I wot expresse withouten lie,  
God bad us for to wex and multiplie;  
That gentil text can I wel understond:  
Eke wel I wot he sayd that min husband

\* The want of a few verses to connect this Prologue with the preceding Tale was perceived long ago, and the defect was attempted to be supplied by the author of the following lines, which in ms. B. are prefixed to the common Prologue;

Oure Oost gan tho to loke up anon.  
Gode men, quod he, herkeneth everich one,  
As evere mote I drynke wyn or ale  
This Marchant hath itold a mery Tale,  
Howe Januarie hadde a lither jape,  
His wyf put in his hood an ape.  
But hereof I wil leve off as now.  
Dame Wyf of Bathe, quod he, I pray you  
Telle us a Tale now nexte after this.  
Sir Oost, quod she, so God my soule blis  
As I, fully thereto wil consente,  
And also it is myn hole entente  
To done yow alle disporte as that I can.  
But holde me excused; I am a woman:  
I can not reherse as these clerkes kune.  
And riyt anon the hath hir Tale bygunne.  
Experience, &c.

These lines are printed here as a justification for not inserting them in the text.

Shuld leve fader and moder and take to me;  
But of no noumbre mention made he  
Of bigamie or of octogamie;  
Why shuld men than speke of it vilanie?  
Lo here the wise King, Dan Salomon,  
I trowe he hadde wives mo than on,  
(As wolde God it leful were to me  
To be refreshed half so oft as he)  
Which a gift of God had he for alle his wives?  
No man hath swiche that in this world on live is.  
God wot this noble king, as to my witte,  
The firste night had many a mery fitte  
With eche of hem, so wel was him on live.  
Blessed be God that I have wedded five;  
Welcome the sixthe whan that ever he shall;  
For sith I wol not kepe me chaste in all,  
Whan min husband is fro the world ygone  
Som Cristen man shal wedden me anon;  
For than the apostle saith that I am fre  
To wedde a' Goddes half wher it liketh me;  
He saith that to be wedded is no sinne;  
Better is to be wedded than to brinne.

What rekketh me though folk say vilanie  
Of shrewed Lamech and his bigamie?  
I wot wel Abraham was an holy man,  
And Jacob eke, as fer as ever I can,  
And eche of hem had wives mo than two,  
And many another holy man also.  
Wher can ye seen in any maner age  
That highe God defended mariage  
By expresse word? I pray you telleth me,  
Or wher commanded he virginitee?

I wot as wel as ye, it is no drede,  
The apostle, whan he spake of maidenhede,  
He said that precept thereof had he non;  
Men may conseille a woman to ben on,  
But conseilling is no commandement;  
He put it in our own jugement.

For hadde God commanded maidenhede,  
Than had he dampned wedding out of drede;  
And certes if ther were no fede yfowe  
Virginitee than whereof shuld it growe?

Poule dorste not commanden at the lest  
A thing of which his maister yaf non best.  
The dart is sette up for virginitee,  
Catch who so may, who reenneth best let see.

But this word is not take of every wight,  
 But ther as God wol yeve it of his might,  
 I wot wel that the apostle was a maid,  
 But natheles, though that he wrote and said  
 He wold that every wight were swiche as he,  
 All n'is but conseil to virginitee.  
 And for to ben a wif he yaf me leve,  
 Of indulgence, so n'is it non repreve  
 To wedden me, if that my make die,  
 Without exception of bigamie;  
 All were it good no woman for to touche,  
 (He ment as in his bed or in his couche)  
 For peril is both fire and tow to assemble;  
 Ye know what this ensample may resemble.

This is all and som, he held virginitee  
 More parfit than wedding in freelte:;  
 (Freelte, clepe I, but if that he and she  
 Wold lede hir lives all in chastitee)  
 I graunt it wel, I have of non envie  
 Who maidenhed preferre to bigamie;  
 It liketh hem to be cleene in body and gost:  
 Of min estat I wol not maken host.

For wel ye know a lord in his houshold  
 Ne hath nat every vessell all of gold;  
 Sam ben of tree, and don hir lord service.  
 God clepeth folk to him in sondry wise,  
 And everich hath of God a propre gift,  
 Som this, som that, as that him liketh shift.  
 Virginitee is gret perfection,  
 And continence eke with devotion;  
 But Crist, that of perfection is welle,  
 Ne bade not every wight he shuld go felle  
 All that he had and yeve it to the poure,  
 And in swiche wife follow him and his lore:  
 He spake to hem that wold live parfitly,  
 And, Lordings, (by your leve) that ara nat I:  
 I wol bestow the flour of all myn age  
 In th' actes and the fruit of mariage.

Tell me also to what conclusion  
 Were membres made of generation,  
 And of so parfit wise a wight ywrought?  
 Trusteth me wel they were nat made for nought.  
 Glose who so wol, and say bothe up and down,  
 That they were made for purgatioun.  
 Of urine, and of other thinges smalle,  
 And eke to know a female from a male:  
 And for non other cause? say ye no?  
 The experience wot wel it is not so.  
 So that the clerkes be not with me wroth;  
 I say this, that they maked ben for both;  
 This is to sayn, for office and for ese  
 Of engendrure, ther we not God displese.  
 Why shuld men elles in hir bookes sette  
 That man shal yelden to his wif hire dette?  
 Now wherwith shuld he make his payement  
 If he ne used his sely instrument?  
 Than were they made upon a creature  
 To purge urine, and eke for engendrure.

But I say not that every wight is hold,  
 That hath swiche harneis as I to you told,  
 To gon and usen hem in engendrure;  
 Than shuld men take of chastitee no cure.  
 Crist was a maide, and shapen as a man,  
 And many a seint, sith that this world began,

Yet lived they ever in parfit chastitee;  
 I n'ill envie with no virginitee.  
 Let hem with bred of pure whete be fed,  
 And let us wives eten barly bred:  
 And yet with barly bred, Mark tellen can,  
 Our Lord Jesu refreshed many a man.  
 In swiche estat as God hath cleped us  
 I wol persever, I n'am not precious.  
 In wifhode wol I use min instrument  
 As frely as my Maker hath it sent.  
 If I be dangerous, God yeve me sorwe,  
 Min husband shal it have both even and morwe,  
 Whan that him list come forth and pay his dette.  
 An husbond wol I have, I wol not lette,  
 Which shal be both my detour and my thrall,  
 And have his tribulation withall.  
 Upon his flesh, while that I ax his wif.  
 I have the power during all my lif  
 Upon his propre body, and nat he;  
 Right thus the apostle told it unto me,  
 And bad our husbonds for to love us wel:  
 All this sentence me liketh every del.

Up stert the Pardoner, and that anon;  
 Now, Dame, quod he, by God and by Seint John  
 Ye ben a noble prechour in this cas:  
 I was about to wed a wif, alas!  
 What? shuld I bie it on my flesh so dere?  
 Yet had I lever wed no wif to-yere.

Abide, quod she, my Tale is not begonne;  
 Nay, thou shalt drinken of another tonne,  
 Er that I go, shall favor worse than ale:  
 And whan that I have told thee forth my Tale  
 Of tribulation in mariage,  
 Of which I am expert in al min age,  
 (This is to sayn myself hath ben the whippe)  
 Than maiest thou chesen wheder thou wolt sippe  
 Of thilke tonne that I shal abroche:  
 Beware of it er thou to neigh approche,  
 For I shal tel ensamples mo than ten.  
 Who so that n'ill beware by other men  
 By him shal other men corrected be:  
 Thise same wordes writeth Ptholomee,  
 Rede in his Almajestie, and take it there.

Dame, I wold pray you, if your will it were,  
 Sayde this Pardoner, as ye began  
 Tell forth your Tale, and spareth for no man,  
 And techeth us yonge men of your practike.  
 Gladly, quod she, in that it may you like,  
 But that I pray to all this compaignie,  
 If that I speke after my fantasie,  
 As taketh not a greese of that I say,  
 For min entente is non but for to play.

Now, Sires, than wol I tell you forth my Tale.  
 As ever mote I drinken win or ale  
 I shal say soth, the husbondes that I had  
 As three of hem were good and two were bad.  
 The three were goode men and riche and olde;  
 Unnethes mighten they the statute holde  
 In which that they were bounden unto me;  
 Ye wot wel what I mene of this parde.  
 As God me helpe I laugh whan that I thinke  
 How pitoussly a-night I made hem swinke,  
 But by my fay I tolde of it no store:  
 They had me yeven hir lond and hir trefore;

Me neded not do lenger diligence  
 To win hir love or don hem reverence.  
 They loved me so wel, by God above,  
 That I ne tolde no deintee of hir love.  
 A wise woman wol besie hire ever in on  
 To geten hir love ther as she hath non.  
 But sith I had hem holly in min hond,  
 And that they hadde yeven me all hir lond,  
 What shuld I taken kepe hem for to plesse,  
 But it were for my profit or min ese?  
 I set hem so a-werke by my fay,  
 That many a night they songen Wala wa!  
 The bacon was not fet for hem I trow  
 That som men have in Essex at Donmow.  
 I governed hem so wel after my lawe  
 That eche of hem ful blisful was and fawe  
 To bringen me gay thinges fro the feyre:  
 They were ful glade whan I spake him fayre;  
 For God it wot I chidde hem spitously.  
 Now herkeneth how I bare me proprely.  
 Ye wise wives, that can understond,  
 Thus shul ye speke, and bere hem wrong on hond,  
 For half so boldely can ther no man  
 Sweren and lien as a woman can.  
 (I say not this by wives that ben wise,  
 But it be whan they hem misavise.)  
 A wise wif, if that she can hire good,  
 Shal beren hem on hond the cow is wood,  
 And taken witnesse of hire owen mayd  
 Of hir assent; but herkeneth how I sayd.  
 Sire olde Kaynard, is this thin aray?  
 Why is my neighbores wif so gay?  
 She is honoured over al wher she goth;  
 I sit at home, I have no thrifty cloth.  
 What dost thou at my neighbores hous?  
 Is she so faire? art thou so amorous?  
 What, rownest thou with our maide? *benedicite!*  
 Sire olde Lechour, let thy japes be.  
 And if I have a gossib or a frend,  
 (Withouten gilt) thou chidest as a fend  
 If that I walke or play unto his hous.  
 Thou comest hom as drunken as a mous,  
 And prechest on thy benche with evil prefe:  
 Thou sayst to me, it is a gret meschiese  
 To wed a poure woman for costage;  
 And if that she be riche of high parage,  
 Than sayst thou that it is a tourmentrie  
 To soffre hire pride and hire melancolie:  
 And if that she be faire, thou veray knave,  
 Thou sayst that every holour wol hire have;  
 She may no while in chastitee abide  
 That is assailed upon every side.  
 Thou sayst som folk desire us for richeffe,  
 Som for our shap, and som for our fairnest;  
 And som for she can eyther sing or dance,  
 And som for gentilleffe and daliance,  
 Som for hire hondes and hire armes smale:  
 Thus goth all to the devil by thy tale.  
 Thou sayst men may not kepe a castel wal,  
 It may so long assailed be over al.  
 And if that she be foul, thou sayst that she  
 Coveteth every man that she may see;  
 For as a spanile she wol on him lepe  
 Til she may finden som man hire to chepe.

Ne non so grey goos goth ther in the lake  
 (As sayst thou) that wol ben without a make:  
 And sayst it is an hard thing for to welde  
 A thing that no man wol his thankes helde.  
 Thus sayst thou, lorel, whan thou gost to bed,  
 And that no wise man nedeth for to wed,  
 Ne no man that entendeth unto heaven.  
 With wilde thonder dint and fry leven  
 Mote thy welked nekke be to-broke.  
 Thou sayst that dropping houses and eke smoke,  
 And chiding wives, maken men to flee  
 Out of hir owen hous. *A, benedicite!*  
 What aileth swiche an old man for to chide?  
 Thou sayst we wives wol our vices hide  
 Til we be fast, and than we wol hem shewe.  
 Wel may that be a proverbe of a shrewe.  
 Thou sayst that oxen, asses, hors, and houndes,  
 They ben assaied at diverse stoundes,  
 Basines, lavoures, or that men hem bie,  
 Spones, stooles, and all swiche husbondrie,  
 And so ben pottes, clothes, and aray,  
 But folk of wives maken non assay  
 Til they ben wedded, olde dotard shrewe,  
 And than, sayst thou, we wol our vices shewe.  
 Thou sayst also that it displeseth me  
 But if that thou wolt preisen my beautee,  
 And but thou pore alway upon my face,  
 And clepe me Faire Dame in every place;  
 And but thou make a feste on thilke day  
 That I was borne, and make me fresh and gay;  
 And but thou do to my norice honour,  
 And to my chamberere within my bour,  
 And to my faders folk and myn allies:  
 Thus sayst thou, olde barel ful of lies.  
 And yet also of our prentis Jankin,  
 For his crispe here, shining as gold so fin,  
 And for he squiereth me both up and down,  
 Yet hast thou caught a false suspicion:  
 I wol him nat, though thou were ded to-morwe.  
 But tell me this, Why hidest thou with sorwe  
 The keies of thy chest away fro me?  
 It is my good as well as thin parde.  
 What, wenest thou make an idiot of our Dame?  
 Now by that Lord that cleped is Seint Jame,  
 Thou shalt nat bothe, though that thou were wood  
 Be maister of my body and of my good;  
 That on thou shalt forgo maugre thin eyen.  
 What helpeth it of me to enquire and spien?  
 I trow thou woldest locke me in thy cheste.  
 Thou shuldest say, Fayr wif, go where thee leste;  
 Take your disport; I wol nat leve no tales;  
 I know yot for a trewe wif, Dame Ales.  
 We love no man that taketh kepe or charge  
 Wher that we gon; we wol be at our large.  
 Of alle men yblest mote he be  
 The wise astrologien Dan Ptholomee,  
 That sayth this proverbe in his Almageste,  
 Of alle men his wisdom is higheste  
 That rekketh not who bath the world in hond.  
 By this proverbe thou shalt wel understond,  
 Have thou ynough, what thar thee rekke or care  
 How merily that other folkes fare?  
 For certes, olde dotard, by your leve,  
 Ye shullen have queint right ynough at eve.  
 D ij



He is to gret a nigard that wol werne  
A man to light a candel at his lanterne ;  
He shal have never the lesse light parde :  
Have thou ynough thee thar not plainen thee.

Thou sayst also if that we make us gay  
With clothing and with precious aray,  
That it is peril of our chastitee :  
And yet with sorwe thou enforcest thee,  
And sayst thise wordes in the apostles name ;  
In habit made with chastitee and shame  
Ye women shul appareile you, (quod he)  
And nat in tressed here and gay perrie,  
As perles, ne with gold, ne clothes riche.

After thy text ne after thy rubriche  
I wol not work as mochel as a gnat.  
Thou sayst also I walke out like a cat ;  
For who so wolde senge the cattes skin  
Than wol the cat wel dwellen in hire in ;  
And if the cattes skin be fleke and gay,  
She wol nat dwellen in hous half a day,  
But forth she wol, or any day be dawed,  
To shew hire skin and gon a caterwawed.  
This is to say, if I be gay, fire shrewe,  
I wol renne out my borel for to shewe.  
Sire olde fool, what helpeth thee to spien ?  
Though thou pray Argus with his hundred eyen  
To be my wardecorps, as he can best,  
In faith he shal not kepe me but me lest :  
Yet coude I make his berd, so mote I the.

Thou sayest eke that ther ben thinges three,  
Which thinges gretly troublen all this erthe,  
And that no wight ne may endure the ferthe :  
O lese fire shrewe, Jesu short thy lif.

Yet prechest thou, an sayst, an hateful wif  
Yrekened is for on of thise mischances.  
Be ther non other maner resemblances  
That ye may liken your parables to  
But if a fely wif be on of tho ?

Thou likenest eke womans love to helle,  
To barrein lond ther water may not dwelle.

Thou likenest it also to wilde fire ;  
The mor it brenneth, the more it hath desire  
To consume every thing that brent would be.

Thou sayest right as wormes shende a tre  
Right so a wif destroyeth hire hufbond ;  
This knowen they that ben to wives bond.

Lordings, right thus, as ye han understond,  
Bare I stify min old hufbondes on hond,  
That thus they saiden in hir dronkenesse ;  
And all was false but as I toke witnesse  
On Jankin, and upon my nece also.

O Lord ! the peine I did hem and the wo,  
Ful-giltelefs, by Goddes swete pine,  
For as an hors I coude bite and whine ;  
I coude plain, and I was in the gilt,  
Or elles oftentime I had ben spilt.

Who so first cometh to the mill first grint ;  
I plained first, so was our werre ystint.  
They were ful glad to excusen hem full blive  
Of thing the which they never agilt hir live.  
Of wenches wold I beren hem on hond  
Whan that for like unnethes might they stond,  
Yet tikeled I his herte for that he  
Wend that I had of him so gret chiertee ;

I swore that all my walking out by night  
Was for to espien wenches that he dight :  
Under that colour had I many a mirth ;  
For all swiche wit is yeven us in our birth ;  
Deccite, weping, spinning, God hath yeven  
To women kindly while that they may liven.  
And thus of o thing I may avaunten me,  
Awith' ende I had the beter in eche degree,  
By sleight or force, or by som maner thing,  
As by continual murmur or grutching,  
Namely a-bed ; ther hadden they meschance ;  
Ther wold I chide, and don hem no plesance :  
I wold no lenger in the bed abide  
If that I felt his arme over my side,  
Till he had made his raunson unto me,  
Than wold I soffre him do his nictee :  
And therfore every man this tale I tell,  
Winne who so may, for all is for to sell.  
With empty hond men may no haukes lure ;  
For winning wold I all his lust endure,  
And maken me a feined appetit,  
And yet in bacon had I never delit,  
That maketh me that ever I wold him chide ;  
For though the Pope had sitten hem beside,  
I wold not spare hem at hir owen bord,  
For by my trouthe I quitte hem word for  
As helpe me veray God omnipotent,  
Tho I right now should make my testament,  
I ne owe him not a word that it n'is quit ;  
I brought it so abouten by my wit  
That they must yeve it up as for the best,  
Or elles had we never been in rest ;  
For though he loked as a wood leon  
Yet shuld he faille of his conclusion.

Than wold I say, Now, goode lese, take kepe ;  
How mekely loketh Wilkin oure shepe !  
Come ner my spouse, and let me ba thy cheke ;  
Ye shulden be al patient and meke,  
And han a swete spiced conscience,  
Sith ye so preche of Jobes patience.  
Suffreth alway sin ye so wel can preche,  
And but ye do, certain we shall you teche  
That it is faire to han a wif in pees.  
On of us two most howen doutelees ;  
And sith a man is more ~~resonable~~ *reasonable*  
Than woman is, ye mosten ben suffrable.  
What aileth you to grutchen thus and grone ?  
Is it for ye wold have my queint alone ?  
Why take it all ; lo, have it every del ;  
Peter, I shrew you but you love it wel :  
For if I wolde sell my *bella chose*,  
I coude walke as freshe as is a rose,  
But I wol kepe it for your owen toth.  
Ye be to blame, by God I say you soth.

Swiche maner wordes hadden we on hond.  
Now wol I speken of my of fourthe hufbond.

My fourthe hufbonde was a revellour,  
This is to sayn, he had a paramour,  
And I was yonge and ful of ragerie,  
Stibborne and strong, and joly as a pie ;  
Though coude I dancen to an harpe smale,  
And sing ywis as any nightingale,  
When I had dronke a draught of swete wine.  
Mettellius, the foul cherle, the swine,

## THE WIF OF BATHES PROLOGUE.

That with a staf beraft his wif hire lif  
For ſhe drank wine, though I had been his wif  
Ne ſhuld he not have daunted me fro drinke;  
And after wine of Venus moſt I thinke;  
For al ſo fiker as cold engendreth hayl  
A likerous mouth moſt han a likerous tayl.  
In woman vinolent is no defence,  
This knowen lechours by experience.

But, Lord Criſt! whan that it remembreth me  
Upon my youth, and on my jolitee,  
It tikeleth me about myn herte rote:  
Unto this day it doth myn herte bote,  
That I have had my world as in my time.  
But age, alas! that all wol envenime,  
Hath me beraft my beautee and my pith;  
Let go, farewell, the devil go therwith!  
The flour is gon, ther n'is no more to tell;  
The bren as I beſt may now moſte I ſell.  
But yet to be right mery wol I fond,  
Now forth to tellen of my fourthe huſbond.

I ſay I had in herte gret deſpit  
That he of any other had delit:  
But he was quit by God and by Seint Joce:  
I made him of the ſame wood a croce,  
Not of my body in no ſoule manere,  
But certainly I made ſolk ſwicke chere,  
That in his owen greſe I made him frie,  
For anger and for veray jalouſie.  
By God, in crth I was his Purgatorie,  
For which I hope his ſoule be in glorie:  
For, God it wote, he ſate ſal oft and ſonge  
Whan that his ſho ful bitterly him wronge:  
Ther was no wight, ſave God and he, that wiſte  
In many a wiſe how ſore that I him twiſte.  
He died whan I came fro Jeruſalem,  
And lith ygrave under the rode-beem;  
All is his tombe not ſo curious  
As was the ſepulchre of him Darius,  
Which that Appelles wrought ſo ſotelly:  
It is but waſt to bury hem preciously.  
I et him farewell, God give his ſoule reſt,  
He is now in his grave and in his cheſt.

Now of my fifthe huſbonde wol I telle:  
God let his ſoule never come in helle:  
And yet was he to me the moſte ſhrew;  
That ſete I on my ribbes all by rew,  
And ever ſhal unto min ending day:  
But in our bed he was ſo freſh and gay,  
And therwithall he coude ſo well me gloſe,  
Whan that he wolde han my *belle choſe*,  
That though he had be bet on every bon  
He coude win agen my love anon.  
I trow I loved him the bet, for he  
Was of his love ſo dangerous to me.  
We wimmen han, if that I ſhal not lie,  
In this matere a queinte fantaſie.  
Waite, what thing we may nat lightly have,  
Therafter wol we cry all day and crave.  
Forbode us thing and that deſiren we;  
Preſe on us faſt and thanne wol we flee.  
With danger uttren we all our chaffare;  
Gret prees at market maketh dere ware,  
And to gret chepe is holden at litel priſe;  
This knoweth every woman that is wiſe

My fifthe huſbonde, God his ſoule bleſſe,  
Which that I toke for love and no richeſſe,  
He ſomtime was a clerk of Oxenforde;  
And had left ſcole, and went at home at borde  
With my goſſib, dwelling in oure toun,  
God have hire ſoule! hire name was Alifoun.  
She knew my herte and all my privetee  
Bet than our pariſh preſt, ſo mote I the:  
To hire bewried I my counſeil all,  
For had my huſbond piſſed on a wall,  
Or don a thing that ſhuld have coſt his lif,  
To hire, and to another worthy wif,  
And to my nece, which that I loved wel,  
I wold have told his counſeil every del:  
And ſo I did ful often, God it wote,  
That made his face full often red and hote  
For veray ſhame, and blamed himſelf, for he  
Had told to me ſo gret a privatee.

And ſo befell that ones in a Lent  
(So often times I to my goſſib went,  
For ever yet I loved to be gay,  
And for to walke in March, April, and May,  
From hous to hous, to heren ſundry tales)  
That Jankin clerk, and my goſſib Dame Ales,  
And I myſelf, into the felde went.  
Myn huſbond was at London all that Lent:  
I had the better leiſer for to pleie,  
And for to ſee, and eke for to be ſeie  
Of luſty folk. What wiſt I wher my grace  
Was ſhapen for to be, or in what place?  
Therefore made I my viſitations  
To vigilies and to proceſſions,  
To prechings eke, and to thiſe pilgrimages,  
To playes of miracles, and mariages,  
And wered upon my gay ſkarlet gites.  
Thiſe wormes, ne thiſe mothes, ne thiſe maites,  
Upon my paraille frett hem never a del;  
And woſt thou why? for they were uſed wel.

Now wol I tellen forth what happed me.  
I ſay that in the feldeſ walked we  
Till trewely we had ſwicke daliance,  
This clerk and I, that of my purveance  
I ſpake to him, and ſaid him how that he,  
If I were widewe, ſhulde wedden me.  
For certainly, I ſay for no bobance,  
Yet was I never without purveance  
Of mariage, ne of other thinges eke:  
I hold a mouses wit not worth a leke  
That hath but on hole for to ſterten to,  
And if that faille, than is all ydo.

I bare him on hond he had enchanted me,  
(My dame taughte me that ſubtiltee)  
And eke I ſayd I mette of him all night,  
He wold han ſlain me as I lay upright,  
And all my bed was ful of veray blood;  
But yet I hope that ye ſhuld do me good,  
For blood betokeneth gold, as me was taught,  
And al was falſe, I dreamed of him right naught,  
But as I ſolwed ay my dames lore,  
As wel of that as of other thinges more.

But now, Sire, let me ſee, what ſhall I ſain?  
A ha! by God I have my Tale again.  
Whan that my fourthe huſbonde was on bere,  
I went to London and made a ſumme ſumme



As wifes moten, for it is the usage,  
 And with my coverchefe covered my visage;  
 But for that I was purveyed of a make,  
 I wept but final, and that I undertake.  
 To chirche was myn husbond born a-morwe  
 With neighebores that for him maden sorowe,  
 And Jaukin oure clerk was on of tho:  
 As helpe me God, whan that I saw him go  
 After the bere, me thought he had a paire  
 Of legges and of feet so clene and faire  
 That all my herte I yave unto his hold.  
 He was, I trow, a twenty winter old,  
 And I was fourty, if I shal say soth,  
 But yet I had alway a coltes toth.  
 Gat-tothed I was, and that became me wele;  
 I had the print of Seint Venus sele.  
 As helpe me God, I was a lusty on,  
 And faire, and riche, and yonge, and wel begon;  
 And trewely, as min husbondes tolden me,  
 I had the beste queint that mighte be,  
 For certes I am all Venerian  
 In feling, and my herte is Martian:  
 Venus me yave my lust and likerousnesse,  
 And Mars yave me my sturdy hardinesse.  
 Min ascendent was Taure, and Mars therinne:  
 Alas, alas! that ever love was finne!  
 I folwed ay min inclination  
 By vertue of my constellation;  
 That made me that I coude nat withdraw  
 My chambre of Venus from a good felaw;  
 Yet have I Martes merke upon my face,  
 And also in another privee place:  
 For God so willy be my salvation,  
 I loved never by no discretion,  
 But ever folwed min appetit,  
 All were he shorte, longe, blacke, or white:  
 I toke no kepe, so that he liked me,  
 How poure he was, ne eke of what degree.  
 What shulde I say? but at the monthes ende  
 This joly clerk Jaukin, that was so hende,  
 Hath wedded me with gret solemnitee,  
 And to him yave I all the lond and fee  
 That ever was me yeven therbefore,  
 But afterward repented me ful fore.  
 He n'olde suffre nothing of my list:  
 By God he smote me ones with his fist,  
 For that I rent out of his book a lese,  
 That of the stroke myn ere wex all dese.  
 Stibborne I was as is a leouesse,  
 And of my tonge a veray jangleresse;  
 And walke I wold, as I had don befor,  
 Fro hous to hous, although he had it sworn,  
 For which he oftentimes wold preche,  
 And me of olde Romaine gestes teche.  
 How he Sulpitius Gallus left his wif,  
 And hire forfoke for terme of all his lif,  
 Not but for open-heded he hire say  
 Loking out at his dore upon a day.  
 Another Romaine told he me by name,  
 That for his wif was at a sommer game  
 Without his weting he forfoke hire eke.  
 And than wold he upon his Bible seke  
 That ilke proverbe of Ecclesiaste,  
 Wher he commandeth, and forbeleth faste,

Man shal not suffer his wif go roule aboute.

Than wold he say right thus withouten doute,  
 Who so that bildeth his hous all of salwes,  
 And priketh his blind hors over the falwes,  
 And suffereth his wif to go feken halwes,  
 Is worthy to be honged on the galwes.

But all for nought; I sette not an hawe  
 Of his proverbes ne of his olde sawe;  
 Ne I wold not of him corrected be.  
 I hate hem that my vices tellen me,  
 And so do mo of us (God wote) than I.  
 This made him wood with me all utterly;  
 In'olde not forbere him in no cas.

Now wol I say you soth, by Seint Thomas,  
 Why that I rent out of his book a lese,  
 For which he smote me so that I was dese.

He had a book that gladly night and day  
 For his disport he wolde it rede alway;  
 He cleped it Valerie and Theophrast,  
 And with that book he lough away ful fast.  
 And eke ther was a clerk somtime at Rome,  
 A cardinal, that highte Seint Jerome,  
 That made a book again Jovinian,  
 Which book was ther, and eke Tertullian,  
 Crisippus, Trotula, and Helowis,  
 That was abbess not fer fro Paris,  
 And eke the Paraboles of Salomon,  
 Ovides Art, and bourdes many on;  
 And alle thise were bouden in o volume.  
 And every night and day was his custume  
 (Whan he had leiser and vacation  
 From other worldly occupation)  
 To reden in this book of wikked wives:  
 He knew of hem mo legendes and mo lives  
 Than ben of goode wives in the Bible.

For trusteth wel it is an impossible  
 That any clerk wol speken good of wives,  
 (But if it be of holy seintes lives)  
 Ne of non other woman never the mo.  
 Who painted the leon, telleth me who?  
 By God if wimmen hadden written stories,  
 As clerkes han, within hir oratories,  
 They wold have writ of men more wikkednesse  
 Than all the merke of Adam may redresse.  
 The children of Mercury ~~and Venus~~  
 Ben in hir working ful contrarious.  
 Mercury loveth wisdom and science,  
 And Venus loveth riot and dispence;  
 And for hir divers disposition  
 Eche falleth in others exaltation:  
 As thus; God wote Mercury is desolat  
 In Pisces, wher Venus is exaltat,  
 And Venus falleth wher Mercury is reised,  
 Therefore no woman of no clerk is preised.  
 The clerk whan he is old, and may naught do  
 Of Venus werkes not worth his old sho,  
 Than siteth he down and writeth in his dotage  
 That wimmen cannot kepe hir mariage.  
 But now to purpos why I tolde thee  
 That I was beten for a book parde.

Upon a night Jaukin, that was our fire,  
 Red on his book as he sate by the fire,  
 Of Eva first, that for hire wickednesse,  
 Was all mankind brought to wretchednesse



## THE WIF OF BATHES PROLOGUE.

For which that Jesu Crist himself was slain,  
That bought us with his herte blood again.

Lo here expresse of wimmen may ye find  
That woman was the losse of all mankind.

Tho redde he me how Sampson lost his heres,  
Sleping his lemman kitte hem with hire sheres,  
Thurgh whiche treson lost he both his eyen,

Tho redde he me, if that I shall not lien,  
Of Hercules, and of his Deianire,  
That caused him to set himself a-fire.

Nothing forgat he the care and the wo  
That Socrates had with his wives two;

How Xantippa cast pisse upon his hed.  
This fely man sat still as he were ded;  
He wiped his hed; no more dorst he sain  
But, Ene the thonder stint ther cometh rain.

Of Pasiphae, that was the Quene of Crete,  
For shrewednesse him thought the tale swete.  
Fie! speke no more (it is a grisely thing)  
Of hire horrible lust and hire liking.

Of Clitemnestra, for hire lecherie  
That falsely made hire husbond for to die,  
He redde it with ful good devotion.

He told me eke for what occasion  
Amphiorax at Thebes lost his lif:  
My husbond had a legend of his wif  
Eriphile, that for an ouche of gold  
Hath prively unto the Grekes told  
Wher that hire husbond hidde him in a place,  
For which he had at Thebes fory grace.

Of Lima told he me, and of Lucie;  
They bothe made hir husbondes for to die,  
That on for love, that other was for hate.  
Lima hir husbond on an even late  
Enpoysoned hath, for that she was his fo:  
Lucia likerous loved hire husbond so,  
That for he shuld alway upon hire thinke,  
She yave him swiche a maner love-drinke,  
That he was ded er it were by the morwe:  
And thus algates husbondes hadden sorwe.

I han told he me how on Latumeus  
Complained to his felaw Arius,  
That in his gardin growed swiche a tree,  
On which he said how that his wives three  
~~Honged hemself for hire despitous.~~  
O leve brother! quod this Arius,  
Yeve me a plant of thilke blessed tree,  
And in my gardin plantec shal it be.

Of later date, of wives hath he redde,  
That som han slain hir husbondes in hir bedde,  
And let hir lechour dight hem all the night,  
While that the corps lay in the flore upright;  
And som han driven nailes in hir brain,  
While that they slepe, and thus they han hem slain;  
Som han hem yeven poyson in hir drink.  
He spake more harm than herte may bethinke.

And therwithall he knew of mo proverbes  
Than in this world ther growen gras or herbes.

Bet is (quod he) thin habitation  
Be with a leon or a foule dragon  
Than with a woman using for to chide.

Bet is (quod he) high in the roof abide  
Than with an angry woman down in the house.

They haten that hir husbondes loven ay.

He sayd a woman cast hire shame away  
Whan she cast of hire smock; and forther mo,  
A faire woman, but she be chaste also,  
Is like a gold ring in a sowes nose.

Who coude wene or who coude suppose  
The wo that in min herte was and the pine?  
And whan I saw he n'olde never fine  
To reden on this curfed book all night,  
Al sodenly three leves have I plight  
Out of his book, right as he redde, and eke  
I with my fist so toke him on the cheke  
That in oure fire he fell backward adoun;  
And he up sterte as doth a wood leoun,  
And with his fist he smote me on the hed,  
That in the flore I lay as I were ded.  
And whan he saw how stille that I lay  
He was agast, and wold have fled away,  
Til at the last out of my swough I brayde.  
O! hast thou slain me, false thief? I sayde,  
And for my lond thus hast thou mordred me?  
Er I be ded yet wol I kissen thee.

And nere he came, and kneled faire adoun,  
And sayde, Dere suster Alisoun!  
As helpe me God I shal thee never smite:  
That I have don it is thyself to wite;  
Foryeve it me, and that I thee beseeke.  
And yet eftsones I hitte him on the cheke,  
And sayde, Theef, thus much am I awreke.  
Now wol I die, I may no longer speke.

But at the last, with mochel care and wo,  
We fell accorded by ourselven two.  
He yaf me all the bridel in min hond  
To han the governance of hous and lond,  
And of his tonge and of his hond also,  
And made him brenne his book anon right tho.

And whan that I had gotten unto me  
By maistrie all the soverainetee,  
And that he sayd, Min owen trewe wif,  
Do as thee list the terme of all thy lif;  
Kepe thin honour, and kepe eke min estat;  
After that day we never had debat.  
God helpe me so, I was to him as kinde  
As any wif fro Denmark unto Inde,  
And al so trewe, and so was he to me:  
I pray to God that sit in majestee  
So blisse his soule, for his mercy dere.  
Now wol I say my Tale if ye wol here.

The Frere lough whan he had herd all this:  
Now, Dame, quod he, so have I joye and blis,  
This is a long preamble of a Tale.

And whan the Sompnour herd the Frere gale  
Lo (quod this Sompnour) Goddes armes two,  
A Frere wol entermete him evermo:  
Lo, goode men, a flec and eke a Frere  
Wol fall in every dish and eke matere.  
What spekest thou of preambulation?  
What? amble or trot, or pees, or go sit down:  
Thou lettest our disport in this matere.

Ye, wolt thou so, Sire Sompnour? quod the Frere;  
Now by my faith I shal, er that I go,  
Tell of a Sompnour swiche a Tale or two,

(Quod this Sompnour) and I beshrewe me  
 But if I telle Tales two or three  
 Of Freres, or I come to Sidenborne,  
 That I shal make thin herte for to morne,  
 For wel I wot thy patience is gone.  
 Our Hoste cried, Pees, and that anon ;

And sayde, Let the woman tell hire Tale ;  
 Ye fare as folk that dronken ben of ale.  
 Do, Dame, tell forth your Tale, and that is best.  
 Al redy, Sire, quod she, right as you lest,  
 If I have licence of this worthy Frere.  
 Yes, Dame, quod he, tell forth, and I wol here.

## THE WIF OF BATHES TALE \*.

In olde dayes of the King Artour,  
 Of which that Bretons speken gret honour,  
 All was this lond fulfilled of Faerie ;  
 The Elf quene with hire joly compaignie  
 Danced ful oft in many a grene mede,  
 This was the old opinion as I rede ;  
 I speke of many hundred yeres ago,  
 But now can no man see non elves mo ;  
 For now the grete charitee and prayeres  
 Of limitoures and other holy freres,  
 That serchen every land and every streme,  
 As thikke as motes in the sonne beme,  
 Blissing halles, chambres, kichens, and boures,  
 Citees and burghes, castles highe and toures,  
 Thropes and bernies, shepenes and daires,  
 This maketh that therben no Faeries :  
 For ther as wont to waken was an elf,  
 Ther walketh now the limatour himself  
 In undermeles and in morweninges,  
 And sayth his matines and his holy thinges  
 As he goth in his limitation.  
 Women may now go safely up and down,  
 In every bush, and under every tree,  
 Ther is non other Incubes but he,  
 And he ne will don hem no dishonour.

An so befell it that this King Artour  
 Had in his hous a lusty bachelor,  
 That on a day came riding fro river :  
 And happed that, alone as she was borne,  
 He saw a maiden walking him beforne,  
 Of which maid he anon, maugre hire hed,  
 By veray force beraft hire maidenhed :  
 For which oppression was swiche clamour,  
 And swiche pursuite unto the King Artour,  
 That damned was this knight for to be ded,  
 By cours of lawe, and shuld have lost his hed,  
 (Paraventure swiche was the statute tho)  
 But that the quene and other ladies mo

So longe praieden the king of grace,  
 Til he his lif him granted in the place,  
 And yaf him to the quene, all at hire will  
 To chese whether she wold him save or spill.  
 The quene thanketh the king with all hire might;  
 And after this thus spake she to the knight,  
 Whan that she saw hire time upon a day.  
 Thou standest yet (quod she) in swiche array,  
 That of thy lif yet hast thou not seuretee ;  
 I grant thee lif if thou canst tellen me  
 What thing is it that women most desiren :  
 Beware, and keppe thy nekke bone from yren.  
 And if thou canst not tell it me anon,  
 Yet wol I yeve thee leve for to gon  
 A twelvemonth and a day to seke and lere  
 And answer suffisant in this matere ;  
 And seuretee wol I have, or that thou pace,  
 Thy body for to yelden in this place.

Wo was the knight, and sorwefully he siketh :  
 But what ? he may not don all as him liketh.  
 And at the last he chese him for to wende,  
 And come agen right at the yeres ende  
 With swiche answer as God wold him purvay,  
 And taketh his leve, and ~~wendeth for his way.~~

He seketh every hous and every place.  
 Wher as he hopeth for to finden grace,  
 To lernen what thing women loven moste ;  
 But hene coude ariven in no coste  
 Wher as he mighte find in this matere  
 Two creatures according in fere.  
 Som saiden women loven best richesse,  
 Som saiden honour, som saiden jolineesse,  
 Som riche array, som saiden lust a-bedde,  
 And oft time to be widewe and to be wedde.

Some saiden that we ben in herte most esed  
 Whan that we ben yflatered and ypreised.  
 He goth ful nigh the soth, I wol not lie ;  
 A man shal winne us best with flaterie ;  
 And with attendance and with besineffe  
 Ben we ylymed bothe more and lesse.

And som men saiden that we loven best  
 For to be free, and do right as us lest,

\* A bachelor of King Arthur's court is enjoined by the Queen, upon pain of death, to tell what thing it is that women do most desire. At length he is taught it by an old

## THE WIFE OF BATHES TALE.

And that no man reprove us of our vice,  
But say that we ben wife and nothing nice :  
For trewely ther n'is non of us all,  
If any wight wol claw us on the gall,  
That we n'ill kike for that he saith us soth ;  
Assay, and he shal find it that so doth :  
For be we never so vicious withinne  
We wol be holden wise and clene of sinne.

And som saiden that gret delit han we  
For to be holden stable and eke secre,  
And in o purpos stedfastly to dwell,  
And not bewreyen thing that men us tell ;  
Bot that tale is not worth a rake-stele.  
Parde we women connen nothing hele,  
Witnesse on Mida ; wol ye here the Tale ?

Ovide, amonges other thinges smale,  
Said Mida had under his longe heres  
Growing upon his heed two asses eres,  
The whiche vice he hid, as he beste might,  
Ful subtilly from every mannes sight,  
That save his wif ther wist of it no mo ;  
He loved hire most, and trusted hire also ;  
He praied hire that to no creature  
She n'olde tellen of his disfigure.

She swore him Nex, for all the world to winne  
She nolde do that vilanie ne sinne,  
To make hire hufbond han so foule a name :  
She n'olde not tell it for hire owen shame.  
But natheles hire thoughte that she dide  
That she so longe shuld a conseil hide ;  
Hire thought it swal so fore about hire herte,  
That nedely som word hire must asterte ;  
And sith she dorst nat telle it to no man,  
Down to a mareis faste by she ran ;  
Til she came ther hire herte was a-fire :  
And as a bitore bumbleth in the mire,  
She laid hire mouth unto the water down.  
Bewrey me not, thou water, with thy foun,  
Quod she ; to thee I tell it, and no mo,  
Min hufbond hath long asses eres two.  
Now is min herte all hole, now is it out,  
I might no lenger kepe it out of dout.  
Here may ye see, though we a time abide,  
Yet out it mošte ; we can no conseil hide.  
The remembrance of the Tale, if ye wol here,  
Redeth Ovide, and ther ye may it lere.

This knight, of which my Tale is specially,  
Whan that he saw he might not come therby,  
(This is to sayn, what women loven most)  
Within his brest ful sorweful was his goft.  
But home he goth, he mighte not sojourne ;  
The day was come that homward must he turne.  
And in his way it happed him to ride,  
In all his care, under a forest side,  
Wheras he saw upon a dance go  
Of ladies foure-and-twenty, and yet mo.  
Toward this ilke dance he drow ful yerne,  
In hop that he som wisdom shulde lerne ;  
But certainly er he came fully there  
Yvanished was this dance he n'iste not wher ;  
No creature saw he that bare lif,  
Save on the grene he saw sitting a wif,  
A fouler wight ther may no man devise.  
Againe this knight this olde wif gan arise,

And saide Sire Knight, here forth ne lith no way.  
Tell me what that ye seken by your fay,  
Paraventure it may the better be :  
Thise olde folk can mochel thing, quod she.

My leve mother, quod this knight, certain  
I n'am but ded but if that I can fain  
What thing it is that women most desire :  
Coude ye me wisse I wold quite wel your hire.  
Plight me thy trouthe here in myn hond, quod she.  
The nexte thing that I requere of thee  
Thou shalt it do, if it be in thy might,  
And I wol tell it you or it be night.

Have here my trouthe, quod the knight,  
graunte.

Thanne, quod she, I dare me wel avaunte  
Thy lif is sauf, for I wol stond therby,  
Upon my lif the quene wol say as I.  
Let see which is the proudest of hem alle,  
That wereth on a kerchief or a calle,  
That dare sayn nay of that I shal you teche.  
Let us go forth withouten lenger speche.

Ther rowned she a pistel in his ere,  
And bad him to be glad, and have no fere.

Whan they ben comen to the court, this knight  
Said he had hold his day as he had hight,  
And redy was his answer, as he saide.  
Ful many a noble wif, and many a maide,  
And many a widewe, for that they ben wise,  
(The quene hireself sitting as a justice),  
Assembled ben his answer for to here,  
And afterward this knight was bode appere.

To every wight commanded was silence,  
And that the knight shuld tell in audience  
What thing that worldly women loven best.  
This knight ne stood not still as doth a best,  
But to this question anon answerd  
With manly vois, that all the court it herd.

My liege Lady, generally, quod he,  
Women desiren to han foverauntee,  
As well over hir hufbond as hir love,  
And for to ben in maistrie him above.  
This your most desire, though ye me kille ;  
Doth as you list, I am here at your wille.

In all the court ne was ther wif ne maide,  
Ne widewe, that contraried that he saide,  
But said he was worthy to han his lif.

And with that word up stert this olde wif  
Which that the knight saw sitting on the grene.  
Mercy, quod she, my foveraine lady Quene,  
Er that your court depart, as doth me right.  
I taughte this answer unto this knight,  
For which he plighte me his trouthe there,  
The firste thing I wold of him requere,  
He wold it do, if it lay in his might.  
Before this court than pray I thee, Sire, Knight,  
Quod she, that thou me take unto thy wif.  
For wel thou wost that I have kept thy lif :  
If I say false, say nay upon thy fay.

This knight answered, Alas and wala wa !  
I wot right wel that swiche was my behest.  
For Goddes love as chese a new request :  
Take all my good, and let my body go.

Nay than, quod she, I shrewe us bothe two :



For though that I be olde, foule, and pore,  
I n'olde for all the metal ne the ore  
That under erthe is grave, or lith above,  
But if thy wif I were and eke thy love.

My love! quod he; nay, my dampnation.  
Alas! that any of my nation  
Shuld ever so foule disparaged be.

But all for nought; the end is this, that he  
Constrained was he nedes must hire wed,  
And taketh this olde wif, and goth to bed.

Now wolden som men sayn paraventure,  
That for my negligence I do no cure  
To tellen you the joye and all the array  
That at the feste was that ilke day.

To which thing shortly answeren I shal:  
I say ther was no joye ne feste at al;  
Ther n'as but hevynesse and mochel sorwe;  
For prively he wedded hire on the morwe,  
And all day after hid him as an oule,  
So wo was him his wif loket so foule.

Gret was the wo the knight had in his thought  
Whan he was with his wif a-bed ybrought;  
He walweth, and he turneth to and fro.

This olde wif lay smiling evermo,  
And said, O dere husband, *benedicite*!  
Fareth ever knight thus with wif as ye?  
Is this the lawe of King Artoures hous?  
Is every knight of his thus dangerous?  
I am your owen love, and eke your wif,  
I am she which that saved hath your lif,  
And certes yet did I you never unright;  
Why fare ye thus with me this firste night?  
Ye faren like a man had lost his wit.  
What is my gilt? for Goddes love tell it,  
And it shal ben amended if I may.

Amended! quod this knight, alas! nay, nay,  
It wol not ben amended never mo;  
Thou art so lothly, and so olde also,  
And therto comen of so low a kind,  
That littel wonder is though I walwe and wind;  
So wolde God min herte wolde brest.

Is this, quod she, the cause of your unrest?  
Ye certainly, quod he, no wonder is.  
Now Sire, quod she, I coude amend all this,  
If that me list, er it were dayes three,  
So wel ye mighten bere you unto me.

But for ye speken of swiche gentillese  
As is descended out of old richeffe;  
That therefore shullen ye be gentilmen;  
Swiche arrogance n'is not worth an hen.

Loke who that is most vertuouus alway,  
Prive and apert, and most entendeth ay  
To do the gentil dedes that he can,  
And take him for the greteft gentilman.  
Crist wol we claime of him our gentillese,  
Not of our elders for hir old richeffe;  
For though they yeve us all hir heritage,  
For which we claime to ben of high parage,  
Yet may they not bequethen for no thing  
To non of us hir vertuouus living,  
That made hem gentilmen called to be,  
And bade us folwen hem in swiche degree

Wel can the wise poet of Florence,  
That highte Dant, speken of this sentence:

Lo in swiche maner rime is Dantes tale.

Ful felde up riseth by his branches smale  
Prowesse of man, for God of his goodnesse  
Wol that we claime of him our gentillese;  
For of our elders may we nothing claime  
But tempotel thing, that man may hurt and  
Eke every wight wot this as wel as I, [maime-  
If gentillese were planted naturelly  
Unto a certain lineage down the line,  
Prive and apert, than wold they never fine  
To don of gentillese the faire office;  
They mighten do no vilanie or vice.

Take fire, and bere it into the derkest howe  
Betwix this and the Mount of Cacafus,  
And let men shette the doers, and go thenne,  
Yet wol the fire as faire lie and brenne  
As twenty thousand men might it behold;  
His office naturel ay wol it hold,  
Up peril of my lif, til that it die.

Here may ye see wel how that genterie  
Is not annexed to possession,  
Sith folk ne don hir operation.  
Alway, as doth the fire, lo, in his kind:  
For God it wot men mournful often find  
A lordes sone do shame and vintie.  
And he that wol han pris of his genterie,  
For he was boren of a gentil hous,  
And had his elders noble and vertuouus,  
And n'ill himselven do no gentil dedes,  
Ne solwe his gentil auncestri; that ded is,  
He n'is not gentil, be he duk or erl,  
For vilains sinful dedes make a cherl:  
For gentillese n'is but the renomee  
Of thin auncestres for hir high bountee,  
Which is a strange thing to thy persone:  
Thy gentillese cometh fro God alone;  
Than cometh our veray gentillese of grace;  
It was no thing bequethed us with our place.

Thinketh how noble, as faith Valerius,  
Was thilke Tullius Hostilius,  
That out of poverte rose to high nobleffe.  
Redeth Senek, and redeth eke Boece,  
Ther shull ye seen expresse that it no dred is  
That he is gentil that doth gentil dedis:  
And therefore, leve husband, I thus conclude,  
Al be it that min auncestres weren rude,  
Yet may the highe God, and so hope I,  
Granten me grace to liven vertuouusly;  
Than am I gentil whan that I beginne  
To liven vertuouusly and weiven sinne.

And ther as ye of poverte me repreve,  
The highe God, on whom that we beleve,  
In wilful poverte chese to lede his lif;  
And certes every man, maiden, or wif,  
May understond that Jesus heven king  
Ne wold not chese a vicious living.

Glad poverte is an honest thing certain,  
This wol Senek and other clerkes sain.  
Who so that halt him paid of his poverte,  
I hold him rich, al had he not a sherte.  
He that coveiteth is a poure wight,  
For he wold han that is not in his might;  
But he that nought hath, ne coveiteth to have,  
Is riche, although ye hold him but a knave.

## THE WIF OF BATHES TALE.

Veray poverté is finne proprely.

Juvenal saith of poverté merily,  
The poure man whan he goth by the way,  
Beforn the theves he may sing and play.  
Poverté is hateful good ; and, as I gesse,  
A ful gret bringer out of besynesse ;  
A gret amender eke of sapience  
To him that taketh it in patience.  
Poverté is this, although it some elenge,  
Possession that no wight wol challenge.  
Poverté ful often, whan a man is low,  
Maketh his God and eke himself to know.  
Poverté a spectakel is, as thinketh me,  
Thurgh which he may his veray frendes see.  
And therefore, Sire, sin that I you not greve,  
Of my poverté no more me repreve.

Now, Sire, of elde that ye repreven me :  
And certes, Sire, though non auctoritee  
Were in no book, yet gentiles of honour  
Sain that men shuld as olde wight honour,  
And clepe him Fader, for your gentillese ;  
And auctours shal I finden, as I gesse.

Now ther ye saith that I am foule and old,  
Than drede ye not to ben a cokewold ;  
For filthe, and elde also, so mote I the,  
Ben grete wardens upon chastitee.  
But natheles, sin I know your delit,  
I shal fulfill your wordly appetit.

Chese now (quod she) on of thise thinges tway,  
To han me foule and old til that I dey,  
And be to you a trewe humble wif,  
And never you displese in all my lif ;  
Or elles wol ye han me yonge and faire,  
And take your aventure of the repaire  
That shal be to your hous because of me,  
Or in som other place it may wel be ?  
Now chese yourselven whether that you liketh.

This knight aviseth him, and fore siketh,

But at the last he said in this manere :

My lady and my love, and wif so dere,  
I put me in your wise governance,  
Cheseth yourself which may be most plesance  
And most honour to you and me also,  
I do no force the whether of the two,  
For as you liketh it sufficeth me.

Than have I got the maistere, quod she,  
Sin I may chese and governe as me lest.  
Ye certes, wif, quod he, I hold it best.

Kisse me, quod she, we be no lenger wrothe,  
For by my trouth I wol be to you bothe,  
This to sayn, ye bothe faire and good.

I pray to God that I mote sterven wood  
But I to you be al so good and trewe  
As ever was wif sin that the world was newe,  
And but I be to-morwe as faire to seen  
As any lady, emperice, or quene,  
That is betwix the est and eke the west,  
Doth with my lif and deth right as you lest.  
Cast up the curtein, loke how that it is.

And whan the knight saw veraily all this,  
That she so faire was, and so yonge chere,  
For joye he hent hire in his armes two :  
His herte bathed in a bath of blisse,  
A thousand time a-row he gan hire kisse :  
And she obeyed him in every thing  
That mighte don him plesance or liking.  
And thus they live unto hir lives ende  
In parfit joye ; and Jesu Crist us sende  
Husbondes meke and yonge, and fresch a-bed,  
And grace to overlive hem that we wed.  
And eke I pray Jesus to short hir lives  
That wol not be governed by hir wives ;  
And old and angry nigards of dispence  
God send hem sone a veray pestilence.

## THE FRERES PROLOGUE.

THIS worthy limitour, this noble Frere,  
He made alway a maner louring chere  
Upon the Sompnour, but for honestee  
No vilains word as yet to him spake he;  
But at the last he said unto the Wif,  
Dame, (quod he) God yeve you right good lif,  
Ye have here touched, all so mote I the,  
In scole matere a ful gret difficultie;  
Ye han said mochel thing right wel I say:  
But, Dame, here as we riden by the way  
Us nedeth not to speken but of game,  
And let auctoritees, in Goddes name,  
To preching and to scole eke of clergie.

But if it like unto this compaignie  
I wol you of a Sompnour tell a game;  
Forde ye may wel knowen by the name  
That of a Sompnour may no good be said;  
I pray that non of you be evil apaid:

A Sompnour is a reñner up and doun  
With mandements for fornicatioun,  
And is ybete at every tounes ende.

Tho spake our Hoste, A, Sire, ye shuld ben  
And curteis, as a man of yeur estat, [hende  
In compaignie we wiln have no debat:  
Telleth your Tale, and let the Sompnour be.  
Nay, quod the Sompnour, le him say by me  
What so him list; whan it cometh to my lot,  
By God I shal him quiten every grot;  
I shal him tellen which a gret honour  
It is to be a flatering limitour,  
And eke of many another maner crime,  
Which nedeth not reherfen at this time,  
And his office I shal him tell ywis.  
Our Hoste answered, Pees, no more of this.  
And afterward he said unto the Frere  
Tel forth your Tale min owen maister dere.

## THE FRERES TALE†.

WHILOM ther was dwelling in my contree  
An archedeken, a man of high degree,  
That holdely did execution  
In punishing of fornication,  
Of witchecraft, and eke of bauderie,  
Of defamation, and avouterie,  
Of chirche-reves, and of testaments,  
Of contracts, and of lack of sacraments,  
Of usure, and of simonie also,  
But certes lechours did he grettest wo;  
They shulden fingen if that they were hent,  
And smale titheres weren foule yshent;

† A Sompnour and the devil meeting on the way, after conference become sworn brethren, and to hell they go together. A covert invective against the bribery and corruption of the spiritual courts in those days. Urry.

If any persone wold upon hem plaine  
Ther might avert hem no pecunial peine.  
For smale tithes and smale offering  
He made the peple pitoussly to sing,  
For er the bishop hent hem with his crook  
They weren in the archedekens book;  
Than had he thurgh his jurisdiction  
Power to don on hem correction.

He had a Sompnour redy to his hond,  
A slier boy was non in Englelond;  
For subtilly he had his espaille,  
That taught him wel wher it might ought availle  
He coude spare of lechours on or two  
To techen hem to foure-and-twenty mo:  
For though this Sompnour wood be as an hare,  
To tell his harlotrie I wol not spare,



# THE FRERES TALE.

For we ben out of hir correction,  
 They han of us no jurisdiction,  
 Ne never shal have, terme of all hir lives.  
 Peter, so ben the women of the stives,  
 Quod this Sompnour, yput out of our cure?  
 Pees, with mischance and with misaventure,  
 Our Hoste said, and let him tell his Tale.  
 Now telleth forth, and let the Sompnour gale,  
 Ne spaireth not, min owen maister dere.  
 This false thief, this Sompnour, quod the Frere,  
 Had alway baudes redy to his hond,  
 As any hauke to lure in Englelond,  
 That told him all the secree that they knewe,  
 For hir acquaintance was not come of newe;  
 They weren his approvers prively:  
 He toke himself a gret profit therby,  
 His maister knew not alway what he wan.  
 Withouten mandement a lewed man  
 He coude sompne uppeine of Cristes curse,  
 And they were inly glad to fille his purse,  
 And maken him gret festes at the nale.  
 And right as Judas hadde purfes smale,  
 And was a thief, right swiche a thief was he;  
 His master hadde but half his duetee.  
 He was (if I shal yeven him his laud)  
 A thief, and eke a Sompnour, and a baud.  
 He had eke wenches at his retenue,  
 That whether that Sire Robert or Sire Hue,  
 Or Jakke or Rauf, or who so that it were  
 That lay by hem, they told it in his ere.  
 Thus was the wenche and he of on assent;  
 And he wold secche a feined mandement,  
 And sompne hem to the chapitre bothe two,  
 And pill the man and let the wenche go:  
 Than wold he say, Frend, I shal for thy sake  
 Do strike thee out of oure lettres blake;  
 Thee thar no more as in this cas travaille;  
 I am thy frend ther I may thee availle.  
 Certain he knew of bribours many mo  
 Than possible is to tell in yeres two;  
 For in this world n'is dogge for the bowe  
 That can an hurt dere from an hole yknowe  
 Bet than this Sompnour knew a flie lechour,  
 Or an avoutrer or a paramour;  
 And for that was the fruit of all his rent,  
 Therefore on it he set all his entent,  
 And so befell that ones on a day  
 This Sompnour, waiting ever on his praye,  
 Rode forth to sompne a widewe, an old ribibe,  
 Feining a cause, for he wold han a bribe;  
 And happed that he saw befor him ride  
 A gay yeman under a forest side;  
 A bow he bare, and arwes bright and kene,  
 He had upon a courtepy of grene.  
 An hat upon his hed with frenges blake.  
 Sire, quod the Sompnour, haile, and wel atake.  
 Welcome, quod he, and every good fclaw.  
 Whider ridest thou under this grene shaw?  
 (Saide this yeman) wolt thou fer to-day?  
 This Sompnour him answerd, and saide Nay.  
 Here faste by (quod he) is min entent  
 To riden, for to reisen up a rent  
 That longe h to my lordes duetee.  
 Art thou than a baillif? Ye, quod he.

(He dorste not for veray filth and shame,  
 Say that he was a Sompnour, for the name.)  
*De par dieux*, quod this yeman, leve brother,  
 Thou art a baillif, and I am another.  
 I am unknowen as in this contree;  
 Of thin acquaintance I wol prayen thee,  
 And eke of brotherhed, if that thee list.  
 I have gold and silver lying in my chift;  
 If that thee hap to come in to our shire  
 Al shal be thin right as thou wolt desire.  
*Grand mercy*, quod this Sompnour, by my faith  
 Everich in others hond his trouthe laith  
 For to be fworne brethren til they dey.  
 In daliaunce they riden forth and pley.  
 This Sompnour, which that was as ful of jangle  
 As ful of venime ben thise wariangles,  
 And ever enquering upon every thing,  
 Brother, quod he, wher is now your dwelling;  
 Another day if that I shuld you secche?  
 This yeman him answerd in softe speche,  
 Brother, quod he, fer in the north contree,  
 Wher as I hope sometime I shal thee see.  
 Or we depart I shal thee so wel wille,  
 That of min hous ne shalt thou never misse.  
 Now brother, quod this Sompnour, I you pray  
 Teche me, while that we riden by the way,  
 (Sith that ye ben a baillif as am I)  
 Som subtiltee, and tell me faithfully  
 In min office how I may moste winne;  
 And spareth not for conscience or for sinne,  
 But as my brother tell me how do ye.  
 Now by my trouthe, brother min, said he,  
 As I shal tellen thee a faithful Tale.  
 My wages ben ful streit and eke ful smale;  
 My lord is hard to me and dangerous,  
 And min office is ful laborious,  
 And therefore by extortion I leve;  
 Forsoth I take all that men wol me yeve:  
 Algates by sleighte or by violence  
 Fro yere to yere I win all my dispence:  
 I can no better tellen faithfully.  
 Now certes (quod this Sompnour) so fare I;  
 I spare not to taken, God it wote,  
 But if it be to hevy or to hote.  
 What I may gete in conseil prively  
 No maner conscience of that have I.  
 N'ere min extortion I might not liven,  
 Na of swiche japes wol I not be shriven.  
 Stomak ne conscience know I non;  
 I shrew thise shrifte faders everich on:  
 Wel be we met by God and by Seint Jame.  
 But, leve brother, tell me than thy name,  
 Quod this Sompnour. Right in this mene while  
 This yeman gan a litel for to smile.  
 Brother, quod he, wolt thou that I thee tell?  
 I am a fend, my dwelling is in hell,  
 And here I ride about my pourchasing  
 To wote wher men wol give me any thing:  
 My pourchas is th' effect of all my rent,  
 Loke how thou ridest for the same entent:  
 To winnen good thou rekest never how:  
 Right so fare I, for riden wol I now  
 Unto the worldes ende for a praye.  
 A, quod this Sompnour, *benedicite*! what say ye?

I wend ye were a yeman trewely,  
Ye have a mannes shape as wel as I:  
Have ye then a figure determinat  
In helle, ther ye ben in your estat?

Nay certainly, quod he, ther have we non,  
But whan us liketh we can take us on,  
Or elles make you wene that we ben shape  
Somtime like a man, or like an ape,  
Or like an angel can I ride or go;  
It is no wonder thing though it be so;  
A lousy jogelour can deceiven thee,  
And parde yet can I more craft than he.

Why, quod the Sompnour, ride ye than or gon  
In sondry shape, and not alway in on?

For we, quod he, wol us swiche forme make  
As most is able our preye for to take.

What maketh you to han al this labour?

Ful many a cause, leve Sire Sompnour,  
Saide this fend. But alle thing hath time;  
The day is short, and it is passed prime,  
And yet ne wan I nothing in this day;  
I wol entend to winning if I may,  
And not entend our thinges to declare;  
For, brother min, thy wit is al to bare  
To understand, although I told hem thee.  
But for thou axest why labouren we?

For somtime we be Goddes instruments,  
And menes to don his commandements,  
Whan that him list, upon his creatures,  
In divers actes and in divers figures:  
Withouten him we have no might certain,  
If that him list to stonden theragain.

And somtime at our praiere han we leve  
Only the body and not the soul to greve;  
Witnesse on Job, whom that we diden wo,  
And somtime han we might on bothe two,  
This is to sain, on soule and body eke:  
And somtime be we suffered for to seke  
Upon a man, and don his soule unreste  
And not his body, and all is for the beste.  
Whan he withstandeth our temptation  
It is a cause of his salvation,

Al be it that it was not our entente  
He shuld be sauf, but that we wold him hente.  
And somtime be we servants unto man,  
As to the Archebishop Seint Dunstan,  
And to the apostle servant eke was I.

Yet tell me, quod this Sompnour, faithfully,  
Make ye you newe bodies this alway  
Of elements? The fend answered Nay.  
Somtime we seine, and somtime we arise  
With ded bodies, in ful sondry wise,  
And speke as renably, and faire, and wel,  
As to the Phitoness did Samuel;  
And yet wol som men say it was not he:  
I do no force of your divinitee.

But o thing warne I thee, I wol not jape,  
Thou wolt algates wete how we be shape:  
Thou shalt hereafterward, my brother dere,  
Come wher thee nedeth not of me to lere,  
For thou shalt by thin owen experience

For I wol holden compaignie with thee  
Til it be so that thou forsake me.

Nay, quod this Sompnour, that shal never betide.  
I am yeman knowen is ful wide;  
My trouthe wol I hold, as in this cas;  
For though thou were the devil Sathanas  
My trouthe wol I hold to thee, my brother,  
As I have sworne, and eche of us to other,  
For to be trewe brethren in this cas,  
And bothe we gon abouten our pourchas.  
Take thou thy part, what that men wol thee yeve,  
And I shal min, thus may we both leve;  
And if that any of us have more than other  
Let him be trewe, and part it with his brother.

I graunte, quod the devil, by my fe;  
And with that word they riden forth her way,  
And right at entring of the tounes ende  
To which this Sompnour shoye him for to wende,  
They saw a cart that charged was with hay,  
Which that a carter drove forth on his way.  
Depe was the way, for which the carte stood;  
The carter smote, and cried he were wood,  
Heit Scot, heit Brok; what, spere ye for the stones?  
The fend (quod he) you fecte the body and bones,  
As ferforthly as ever ye were soled,  
So mochel wo as I have with you tholed.

The devil have al, bothe hors, and cart, and hay.  
The Sompnour sayde, Here shal we have a praye;  
And nere the fend he drow, as nought ne were,  
Ful prively, and rouned in his ere,  
Herken my brother, herken, by thy faith;  
Hereft thou not how that the carter faith?  
Hent it anon, for he nath yeve it thee,  
Both hay and cart, and eke his caples three.

Nay, quod the devil, God wot never a del!  
It is not his entente, trust thou me wel;  
Axe him thyself, if thou not trowest me,  
Or elles stint a while and thou shalt see.

This carter thakketh his hors upon the croupe,  
And they begonne to drawen and to stoupe.  
Heit now, quod he; ther, Jesu Crist you blesse,  
And all his hondes werk bothe more and lesse!  
That was wel twight, min owen Liard boy,  
I pray God save thy body and Seint Eloy.  
Now is my cart out of the flough parde.

Lo, brother, quod the fend, what told I thee?  
Here may ye seen, min owen dere brother,  
The cherl spake o thing but he thought another.  
Let us go forth abouten our viage;  
Here win I nothing upon this cariage.

Whan that they comen somwhat out of toun.  
This Sompnour to his brother gan to roun;  
Brother, quod he, here woneth an old rebekke  
That had almost as lese to lese hire nekke  
As for to yeve a peny of hire good.  
I wol have twelf pens though that she be wood,  
Or I wol somone hire to our office,  
And yet, God wot, of hire know I no vice;  
But for thou canst not as in this contree  
Winnen thy cost, take here ensample of me.

This Sompnour clappeth at the widewes gate;  
Come out, he sayd, thou olde very trate;

# THE FRERES TALE.

God save you, Sire, what is your swete will?

I have, quod he, of somons here a bill :  
Up peine of cursing loke that thou be  
To-morwe before the archedekenes knee,  
To answere to the court of certain thinges.

Now Lord, quod she, Christ Jesu, King of kinges,  
So wisely helpe me as I ne may :

I have been sike, and that full many a day :  
I may not go so fer (quod she) ne ride  
But I be ded, so priketh it in my side.  
May I not axe a libel, Sire Sompnour,  
And answere ther by my procuratour  
To swiche thing as men wold apposen me?

Yes, quod this Sompnour, pay anon, let see,  
Twelf pens to me, and I will thee acquite :

I shall no profit han therby but lite;  
My maister hath the profit and not I.  
Come of, and let me riden hastily;  
Yeve me twelf pens, I may no lenger tarie.

Twelf pens! quod she; now Lady Seint Marie  
So wisely helpe me out of care and sinne,  
This wide world though that I shuld it winne,  
Ne have I not twelf pens within my hold,  
Ye knowen wel that Ram poure and old;  
Kithe your almesse upon me poure wretche.

Nay than, quod he, the foule fend me fetch  
If I thee excuse, though thou shuldest be spilt.

-Alas! quod she, God wot I have no guilt.

Pay me, quod he, or by the swete Sainte Anne  
As I wol bere away thy newe panne  
For dette which thou owest me of old,  
Whan that thou madest thyn husbond cokewold,  
I paid at home for thy correction.

Thou liest, quod she, by my salvation;  
Ne was I never or now, widew ne wif,  
Sompned unto your court in all my lif,  
Ne never I n'as but of my body trewe.  
Unto the devil rough and blake of hewe  
Yeve I thy body and my panne also.

And whan the devil herd hire cursen so

Upon hire knees he sayd in this manere;

Now Mabily, min moder dere,  
Is this your will in earnest that ye say?

The devil, quod she, so fetch him or he dey;  
And panne and all, but he wol him repent.

Nay, olde stot, that is not min entent,  
Quod this Sompnour, for to repenten me  
For any thing that I have had of thee :  
I wold I had thy smok and every cloth.

Now brother, quod the devil, be not wroth;  
Thy body and this panne ben min by right :  
Thou shalt with me to helle yet to-night,  
Wher thou shalt known of our privetee,  
More than a maister of divinitee.

And with that word the foule fend him hent  
Body and soule : he with the devil went  
Wher as thise Sompnours han her heritage :  
And God, that maketh after his image  
Mankinde, save and gide us all and some,  
And lene this Sompnour good man to become.

Lordings, I coude have told you (quod this Frere)  
Had I had leiser for this Sompnour here,  
After the text of Crist, and Poule, and John,  
And of oure other doctours many on,  
Swiche peines that your hertes might agrife,  
Al be it so that no tonge may devise,  
Though that I might a thousand winter tell,  
The peines of thilke cursed hous of hell :  
But for to kepe us fro that cursed place  
Waketh and prayeth Jesu of his grace  
So kepe us fro the temptour Sathanas.  
Herkneth this word, beware as in this cas;  
The leon sit in his awaite alway  
To sle the innocent if that he may.  
Disposeth aye your hertes to withstand  
The fend, that you wold maken thral and bond :  
He may not tempten you over your might,  
For Crist wol be your champion and your knight ;  
And prayeth that this Sompnour him repent  
Of his misdedes, or that the fend him hent.



## THE SOMPNOURES PROLOGUE,

**T**his Sompnour in his stirops high he stood;  
Upon this Frere his hearte was so wood,  
That like an aspen leef he quoke for ire.  
Lordinge, quod he, but o thing I desire;  
I you beseeche that of your curtesie,  
Sin ye han herd this false Frere lie,  
As suffereth me I may my tale telle.

This Frere bolseth that he knoweth helle,  
And God it wot that is but litel wonder;  
Freres and fendes ben but litel asonder.

For parde ye han often time herd telle  
How that a frere-ravished was to helle  
In spirit ones by a visioun,  
And as an angel lad him up and down,  
To shewen him the paines that ther were,  
In all the place saw he not a frere:  
Of other folk he saw ynow in wo.

Unto this angel spake the frere tho;  
Now Sire, quod he, han freres swich a grace,  
That non of hem shall comen in this place?

Yes, quod this angel, many a milloun;  
And unto Sathanas he lad him down.

(And now hath Sathanas, saith he, a tayl  
Broder than of a carrike is the sayl)  
Hold up thy tayl, thou Sathanas, quod he,  
Shew forth thin ers, and let the frere see  
Wher is the nest of freres in his place.  
And ere than half a furlong way of space,  
Right so as bees out swarmer of an hive,  
Out of the devils ers ther yfollen drive  
A twenty thousand freres on a route.  
And thurghout hell they swarmed al aboute,  
And com agen, as fast as they may gon,  
And in his ers they crepen everich on:  
He clapt his tayl again, and lay ful still.

This frere, whan he loked, had his fill  
Upon this turments of this sory place;  
His spirit God restored of his grace  
Into his body agen, and he awoke;  
But nathless for fere yet he quoke,  
So was the devils ers ay in his mind,  
That is his heretage of veray kind.

God save you alle save this cursed Frere;  
My Prologue wol I end in this manere.

## THE SOMPNOURES TALE\*.

**L**ORDINGS, there is in Yorkshire, as I gesse,  
A merish contree ycalled Holderneffe,  
In which ther went a limitour aboute,  
To preach and eke to beg it is no doubte.

\* A begging friar coming to a farmer's house who lay sick, obtaineth of the sick man a certain legacy which must be equally divided among his convent. A requital to the friar, shewing their cozenage, loitering, impudent begging, and hypocritical praying.

And so befell that on a day this frere  
Had preached at a chirche in his manere,  
And specially aboven every thing  
Excited he the peple in his preching  
To trentals, and to yeve, for Goddes sake,  
Wherwith men mighten holy houses make,  
Ther as divine service is honoured,  
Not ther as it is wasted and devoured,

Ne ther it nedeth not for to be yeven,  
As to possessioners, that moven leven  
(Thanked be God) in wele end abundance.  
Trentalt, sayd he, deliveren fro penance  
Hir frendes soules as well old as yonge,  
Ye, whan that they ben hastily yfonge,  
Not for to hold a preest jolif and gay,  
He singeth not but o masse on a day.  
Delivereth out (quod he) anon the soules.  
Ful hard it is with fleshhook or with oules  
To ben yclawed, or to bren or bake.  
Now spede you hastily for Cristes sake.

And whan this frere bad said all his entent,  
With *quit un patri* forth his way he went.  
Whan folk in chirche had yeve him what hem lest  
He went his way, no lenger wold he rest.  
With scrippe and tipped staf, ytucked hie,  
In every hous he gamto pore and pris,  
And begged mele and chefe, or elles corn.  
His felaw had a staf tipped with horn,  
A pair of tables all of ivory,  
And a pointel ypolished fetisly,  
And wrote alway the names, as he stood,  
Of alle folk that yave hem any good,  
Askaunce that he woude for hem preye.  
Yeve us a bushel whete, or malt or reye,  
A Goddes kiche, or a trippe of chefe,  
Or elles what you list, we may not chefe;  
A Goddes halfpenny, or a masse peny,  
Or yeve us of your braun, if ye have any,  
A dagon of your blanket, leve Dame,  
Our suster dere, (lo, here I write your name)  
Bacon or beef, or swiche thing as ye find.

A sturdy harlot went hem ay behind,  
That was her hostes man, and bare a sakke,  
And what men yave hem laid it on his bakke.  
And whan that he was out at dore, anon  
He planed away the names everich on  
That he before had written in his tables;  
He served hem with nifles and with fables.

Nay ther thou liest, thou Sompnour, quod the  
Frere.

Pees, quod our Hoste, for Cristes moder dere  
Tell forth thy Tale, and spare it not at all.

So thrive I, quod this Sompnour, so I shall.

So long he went fro hous to hous til he  
Came to an hous ther he was wont to be  
Refreshed more than in a hundred places.  
Sike lay the husband man whos that the place  
is;

Bedred upon a couche low he lay.  
*Deus hic*, quod he; O Thomas! frend, good day,  
Sayde this frere all curtisly and soft.  
Thomas, quod he, God yelde it you, ful oft  
Have I upon this benche faren ful wele,  
Here have I eten many a mery mele.  
And fro the benche he drove away the cat,  
And laied adoun his potent and his hat,  
And eke his scrip, and fet himself adoun:  
His felaw was ywalked into toun,  
Forth with his knave, into that hostelrie  
Wher as he shope him thilke night to lie.

O dere maister! quod this-slike man,  
How have ye faren sin that March began?

I saw you not this fourtene night and more.

God wot, quod he, laboured have I full sore,  
And specially for thy salvation  
Have I sayd many a precious orison,  
And for our other frendes God hem blese.  
I have this day ben at your chirche at messe,  
And said a sermon to my simple wit,  
Not all after the text of holy writ;  
For it is hard to you as I suppose,  
And therefore wol I teche you ay the glose.  
Glosing is a ful glorious thing certain,  
For letter sleth, so as we clerkes sain;  
There have I taught hem to be charitable,  
And spend hir good ther it is reasonable;  
And ther I saw our dame; a! wher is she?

Yonder, I trow that in the yard she be,  
Sayde this man, and she wol come anon.

Ey maister, welcome be ye by Seint John,  
Sayde this wif; how fare ye hertily?

This frere ariseth up ful curtisly;  
And hire embraceth in her armes narwe,  
And kisseth hire swete, and chirketh as a sparrow  
With his tippes. Dame, quod he, right wel,  
As he that is your servant every deli.  
Thanked be God that you yaf soule and lif  
Yet saw I not this day so faire a wif  
In all the chirche, God to save me.

Ye God amende defantes, Sire, quod she,  
Algates welcome be ye, by my fay.

Grand mercy, Dame, that have I found alway.  
But of your grete goodnesse, be your leve,  
I wolde pray you that ye not you greve,  
I wol with Thomas speke a litel throw,  
Thise curates ben so negligent and slow  
To gropen tenderly a conscience.

In shrift, in preching, is my diligence  
And study, in Peters wordes and in Poules;  
I walke and fishe Cristen mennes soules,  
To yield our Lord Jesu his propre rent;  
To spred his word is set all mine entent.

Now by your faith, o dere Sire! quod she,  
Chideth him wel for Seinte Charitee:

He is ay angry as is a pissenire,  
Though that he have all that he can desire;  
Though I him wrie a-night, and make him warme,  
And over him lay my leg and eke mine arm,  
He groneth as our bore lith in our stie:  
Other disport of him right non have I;  
I may not please him in no maner cas.

O Thomas, *jeo vous die*, Thomas, Thomas!  
This maketh the fend, this muste ben amended.  
Ire is a thing that high God hath defended,  
And therof wol I speke a word or two.

Now maister, quod the wif, or that I go,  
What wol ye dine? I wol go therabout.

Now Dame, quod he, *jeo vous die sanz doute*,  
Have I not of a capon but the liver,  
And of your white bred nat but a shiver,  
And after that a roasted pigges hed,  
(But I ne wolde for me no beest were ded)  
I han had I with you homly suffisance;  
I am a man of little sustenance;  
My spirit hath his fustiring in the Bible;  
My body is ay so ready and so penible.

To waken, that my stomak is destroyed.  
I pray you, Dame, that ye be nought annoied,  
Though I so frendly you my conseil shewe;  
By God I n'old have told it but a few.

Now Sire, quod she, but o word er I go.  
My child is ded within these wekes two,  
Sone after that ye went out of this toun.

His deth saw I by revelatioun,  
Sayde this frere, at home in our dortour.  
I dare wet fain that er than half an hour  
After his deth I saw him borne to blisse  
In mine avision, so God me wisse;  
So did our sextein and our fermerere,  
That han ben trewe freres fifty yere\*;  
They may now, God be thanked of his lone,  
Maken hir jubilee, and walke alone.  
And up I arose, and all our covent eke,  
With many a tere trilling on our cheke,  
Withouten noise, or clattering of belles,  
*Te deum* was our song, and nothing elles,  
Save that to Crist I bade an orison,  
Thanking him of my revelation.  
For, Sire and Dame, trusteth me right wel  
Our orisons ben more effectuel,  
And more we seen of Cristes secret thinges,  
Than borel folk, although that they be kinges.  
We live in poverté and in abstinence,  
And borel folk in richesse and dispence  
Of mete and drinke, and in her foule delit:  
We han this worldes lust all in despit.  
Lazar and Dives lividen diversely,  
And divers guerdon hadden they therby.  
Who so wol pray, he must fast and be clene,  
And fat his foule and make his body lene.  
We fare as sayth the apostle; cloth and food  
Sufficeth us, though they be not ful good.  
The clenensse and the fasting of us freres  
Maketh that Crist accepteth our praieres.

Lo, Moises forty daies and forty night  
Fasted er that the high God ful of might  
Spake with him in the mountagne of Sinay:  
With empty wombe of fasting many a day  
Received he the lawe that was written  
With Goddes finger; and Eli, wel ye witen,  
In Mount Oreb, er he had any speche  
With highe God, that is our lives leche,  
He fasted long, and was in contemplance.

Aaron, that had the temple in governance,  
And eke the other preeftes everich on,  
Into the temple whan they shulden gon  
To praien for the peple, and do servise,  
They n'olden drinke in no maner wise  
No drinke which that might hem dronken make,  
But ther in abstinence pray and wake  
Lest that they deiden. Take heed what I say—  
But they be sobre that for the peple pray—  
Ware that I say—No more; for it sufficeth.  
Our Lord Jesu, as holy writ deviseth,  
Yave us ensample of fasting and praieres;  
Therefore we mendiaunts, we sely freres,

Ben wedded to poverté and continence,  
To charitee, humbleste, and abstinence,  
To perfecucion for rightwisnesse,  
To weping, misericorde, and to clenensse;  
And therefore may ye see that our praieres  
(I speke of us, we mendiaunts, we freres)  
Ben to the highe God more acceptable  
Than youres, with your festes at your table.

Fro Paradis first, if I shal not lie,  
Was man outchased for his glotonie;  
And chaste was man in Paradis certain.  
But herken now, Thomas, what I shal saie:  
I have no text of it as I suppose,  
But I shal find it in a maner glose;  
That specially our swete Lord Jesu  
Spake this by freres whan he sayde thus,  
Blessed be they that poure in spirit ben;  
And so forth all the gospel may ye sen,  
Whether it be liker our professioun  
Or hirs that swimmen in ~~professioun~~.  
Fie on hir pompe, and on hir glotonie,  
And on hir lewednesse! I hem desie.  
Me thinketh they ben like Iovinian,  
Fat as a whale, and walken as a swan;  
Al vinolent as botel in the spence;  
Hir praier is of ful gret reverence:  
Whan they for soules say the Psalm of David,  
Lo, but they say, *Cor meum cruciavit*.

Who foloweth Cristes gospel and his lore  
But we, that humble ben, and chaste and pore,  
Workers of Goddes word, not auditors?  
Therefore right as an hauke upon a fours  
Up springeth into the aire, right so praieres  
Of charitable and chaste besy freres  
Maken hir fours to Goddes eres two.  
Thomas, Thomas! so mote I ride or go,  
And by that lord that cleped is Seint Ive,  
N'ere thou our broder shuldest thou not thrive.  
In our chapitre pray we day and night  
To Crist, that he thee sende hele and might  
Thy body for to welden hastily.

God wot, quod he, nothing thereof fel I.  
As help me Crist, as I in fewe yeres  
Have spended upon divers maner freres  
Ful many a pound, yet fare I never the bet;  
Certain my good have I almost beset:  
Farewel my good, for it is al ago.

The frere answered, O Thomas! dost thou so?  
What nedeth you diverse freres to feche?  
What nedeth him that hath a parfit leche  
To fechen other leches in the toun?  
Your inconstance is your confusioun.  
Hold ye than me, or elles our covent,  
To pray for you ben insufficient?  
Thomas, that jape n'is not worth a mite;  
Your maladie is for we han to lite.  
A! yeve that covent half a quarter otes,  
And yeve that covent four-and-twenty gotes,  
And yeve that frere a peny and let him go:  
Nay, nay, Thomas, it may no thing be so.  
What is a ferthing worth parted on twelve?  
Lo, eche thing that is oned in himselve  
Is more strong than whan it is yscatered.  
Thomas, of me thou shalt not be yflatered,

\* See *Du Cange*, in v. *Sempetate*. Peculiar honours and immunities were granted by the rule of St. Benedict to those monks "qui quinquaginta annos in ordine exegerant, quos annum jubileum exegisse vulgo dicimus." It is probable that some similar regulation obtained in the other orders.



## THE SOMPNOURES TALE.

Thou woldest han our labour al for nought,  
 The highe God, that all this world hath wrought,  
 Saith that the workman worthy is his hire.  
 Thomas, nought of your tresor I desire  
 As for myself, but that all our covent  
 To pray for you is ay so diligent,  
 And for to bidden Cristes owen chirche.  
 Thomas, if ye wol lernen for to wirche,  
 Of bilding up of chirches may ye finde  
 If it be good in Thomas lif of Inde.  
 Ye liggen here ful of anger and of ire,  
 With which the devil set your herte on fire,  
 And chiden here this holy innocent,  
 Your wif, that is so good and patient;  
 And therefore brow me, Thomas, if thee lest,  
 Ne strive not with thy wif, as for the best.  
 And bere this word away now by thy faith,  
 Touching swiche thing, lo, what the wise saith:  
 Within thy hous ne se thou no leon,  
 To thy suggets do non oppressioun,  
 Ne make thou not this acquaintance to flee.  
 And yet, Thomas, offsones charge I thee,  
 Beware from ire that in thy bosom slepeth;  
 Ware fro the serpent that so slyly crepeth  
 Under the gras, and stingeth subtilly:  
 Beware, my sone, and herken patiently,  
 That twenty thousand men han lost hir lives  
 For itriuing with hir lemmeans and her wives.  
 Now sith ye han so holy and meek a wif,  
 What nedeth you, Thomas, to maken strif?  
 Ther n'is ywis no serpent so cruel,  
 Whan man tredeth on his tail, ne half so fel,  
 As woman is whan she hath caught an ire;  
 Veray vengeance is than all hire desire.  
 Ire is a sinne on of the grete seven,  
 Abhominable unto the God of heven,  
 And to himself it is destruction:  
 This every lewed vicar and person  
 Can say how ire engendreth homicide:  
 Ire is in soth executour of pride.  
 I coud of ire say so mochel forwe  
 My Tale shulde lasten til to-morwe;  
 And therefore pray I God both day and night  
 An irous man God send him litel might.  
 It is gret harm, and certes gret pitee,  
 To sette an irous man in high degree.  
 Whilom ther was an irous potestat,  
 As saith Senek, that during his estat  
 Upon a day outriden knightes two;  
 And, as Fortune wold that it were so,  
 That on of hem came home, that other nought.  
 Anon the knight before the judge is brought,  
 That saide thus; Thou hast thy felaw slain,  
 For which I deme thee to the deth certain.  
 And to another knight commanded he,  
 Go, lede him to the deth, I charge thee.  
 And happed as they wenten by the wey  
 Toward the place ther as he shulde dey,  
 The knight came which men wenden had be ded:  
 Than thoughten they it was the beste rede  
 To lede hem both to the jage again.  
 They saiden, Lord, the knight ne hath not slain  
 His felaw, here he stondeth hol alive.  
 Ye shuld be ded, quod he, so mot I thrive,

That is to say, both on, and two, and three.  
 And to the firste knight right thus spake he.  
 I damned thee, thou must algate be ded;  
 And thou also must nedes lese thyn hed,  
 For thou art cause why thy felaw deyeth;  
 And to the thridde knight right thus he seyeth,  
 Thou hast not don that I commanded thee,  
 And thus he did do fien hem alle three.  
 Ircus Cambises was eke dronkelew,  
 And ay delighted him to ben a shrew:  
 And so befell a lord of his meinie,  
 That loved vertuous moralitee,  
 Sayd on a day betwix hem two right thus;  
 A lord is lost if he be vicious;  
 And dronkenesse is eke a foule record  
 Of any man, and namely of a lord.  
 Ther is ful many an eye and many an ere  
 Awaiting on a lord, and he n'ot wher.  
 For Goddes love drink more attemprely:  
 Win maketh man to lesen wretchedly  
 His mind, and eke his limmes everich on.  
 The revers shalt thou see, quod he, anon,  
 And preve it by thyn owen experience  
 Than win ne doth to folk no swiche offence.  
 Ther is no win bereveth me my might  
 Of hond, ne foot, ne of myn eyen sight.  
 And for despit he dranke mochel more  
 An hundred part than he had don before,  
 And right anon this cursed irous wretche  
 This knightes sone let before him fetchen,  
 Commanding him he shuld before him stond;  
 And sodenly he took his bow in hond,  
 And up the string he pulled to his ere,  
 And with an arwe he slow the child right ther.  
 Now whether have I a fiker hond or non?  
 Quod he; is al my might and mind agon?  
 Hath win bereved me min eyen sight?  
 What shuld I tell the answer of the knight?  
 His son was slain, ther is no more to say.  
 Beth ware therfore with lordes for to play,  
 Singeth Placebo, and I shal if I can,  
 But if it be unto a poure man:  
 To a poure man men shuld his vices telle,  
 But not to a lord, though he shuld go to helle.  
 Lo, irous Cirus, thilke Persien,  
 How he destroyed the river of Gisen,  
 For that an hors of his was dreint therin,  
 Whan that he wente Babilon to win:  
 He made that the river was so smal,  
 That wimmen might it waden over al.  
 Lo, what said he, that so wel techen can?  
 Ne be no felaw to non irous man,  
 Ne with no wood man walke by the way,  
 Lest thee repent: I wol no forther say.  
 Now Thomas, leve brother, leve thin ire,  
 Thou shalt me find as just as is a squire:  
 Hold not the devils knif ay to thin herte,  
 Thin anger doth thee all to fore smerte;  
 But shew to me all thy confession.  
 Nay, quod the sick man, by Seint Simon  
 I have ben shriven this day of my curat;  
 I have him told al holly min estat.  
 Nedeth no mo to speke of it, sayth he,  
 But if me list of min humilitee.

Yeve me than of thy gold to make our cloistre,  
 Quod he, for many a muscle and many an oistre,  
 Whan other men han ben ful wel at ese,  
 Hath ben our food, our cloistre for to rese;  
 And yet, God wot, unnethe the fundament  
 Parfourmed is, ne of our pavement  
 N'is not a tile yet within our wones;  
 By God we owen forty pound for stones.  
 Now help, Thomas, for him that harwed helle,  
 For elles mote we our bokes felle,  
 And if ye lack our predication,  
 Than goth this world all to destruction;  
 For who so fro this world wold us bereve,  
 So God me save, Thomas, by your leve  
 He wold bereve out of this world the sonne;  
 For who can teche and worken as we conne?  
 And that is not of litel time (quod he)  
 But sithen Elie was and Elisee  
 Han freres ben, that find I of record,  
 In charitee, ythanked be our Lord.  
 Now Thomas, help for Seinte Charitee.

And down anon he sette him on his knee.  
 This fike man woxe wel neigh wood for ire;  
 He wolde that the frere had ben a-fire  
 With his false dissimulation.

Swiche thing as is in my possession,  
 Quod he, that may I yeve you, and non other.  
 Ye fain me thus, how that I am your brother.  
 Ye certes, quod this frere, ye trusteth wel;  
 I took our dame the letter of our seile.

Now wel, quod he, and somwhat shal I yeve  
 Unto your holy covent while I live;  
 And in thin hond thou shalt it have anon,  
 On this condition, and other non,  
 That thou depart it so, my dere brother,  
 That every frere have as moche as other:  
 This shalt thou swere on thy profession  
 Withouthen fraud or cavilation.

I swere it, quod the frere, upon my faith;  
 And therewithal his hond in his he layth.  
 Lo here my faith; in me shal be no lak.

Than put thin hond adoun right by my bak,  
 Saide this man, and grope wel behind  
 Benethe my buttok, ther thou shalt find  
 A thing that I have hid in privetee.  
 A! thought this frere, that shal go with me;  
 And down his hond he launcheth to the clifte,  
 In hope for to finden ther a gifte.

And whan this fike man felt this frere  
 About his towel gropen ther and here,  
 Amid his hond he let the frere a fart:  
 Ther n'is no capel drawing in a cart  
 That might han let a fart of swiche a soun.

The frere up flete as doth a wood leoun;  
 A! false cherl, quod he, for Goddes bones,  
 This hast thou in despit don for the nones:  
 Thou shalt abie this fart if that I may.

His meinie, which that herden this affray,  
 Came leping in, and chased out the frere,  
 And forth he goth with a ful angry chere,  
 And set his felaw ther as lay his store:  
 He loked as it were a wilde bore,  
 And grinte with his teeth, so was he wroth.  
 A sturdy pas down to the court he goth,

Wher as ther woned a man of gret honour,  
 To whom that he was alway confessor:  
 This worthy man was lord of that village,  
 This frere came, as he were in a rage.  
 Wher as this lord sat eting at his bord:  
 Unnethe might the frere speke a word,  
 Til atte laste he saide, God you see!  
 This lord gan loken, and said, *Benedicite!*  
 What? Frere John, what maner world is this?  
 I see wel that som thing ther is amis;  
 Ye loken as the wood were ful of theves.  
 Sit down anon, and tell me what your greve is,  
 And it shal ben amended if I may.

I have, quod he, had a despit to day;  
 God yelde you, adoun in your village,  
 That in this world ther n'is so poure a page,  
 That he n'olde have abhominatioun  
 Of that I have received in yure toun;  
 And yet ne greveth me nothing so fore  
 As that the olde cherl with lokkes bore  
 Blasphenied hath our holy covent eke.

Now master, quod this lord, I you beseeke.  
 No master, sire, quod he, but servitour,  
 Though I have had in seoly that honour.  
 God liketh not that man us Rabi call  
 Neither in market ne in your large hall.

No force, quod he, but tell me all your greve.  
 Sire, quod this frere, an odious mischefe  
 This day betid is to min ordre and me,  
 And so *per consequens* to eche degree  
 Of holy chirche, God amende it sone.

Sire, quod the lord, ye wot what is to don:  
 Distempere you not, ye ben my confessor;  
 Ye ben the salt of the erthe and the favour:  
 For Goddes love your patience now hold;  
 Telle me your greve. And he anon him told  
 As ye han herd before, ye wot wel what.

The lady of the hous ay stille sat  
 Til she had herde what the frere seid.

Ey, Goddes moder, quod she, blisful maid!  
 Is ther ought elles? tell me faithfully.  
 Madame, quod he, how thinketh you therby?  
 How that me thinketh? quod she; so God me spede,  
 I say a cherle had don a cherles dede.  
 What shuld I say? God let him never the;  
 His fike hed is ful of vanitee:  
 I hold him in a maner frenesie.

Madame, quod he, by God I shal not lie,  
 But I in other wise may ben awreke;  
 I shal diffame him over all ther I speke;  
 This false blasphemour, that charged me  
 To parten that wol not departed be  
 To every man ylike, with mischiefance.

The lord sat stille as he were in a trance,  
 And in his herte he rolled up and down  
 How had this cherl imaginatioun  
 To shewen swiche a probleme to the frere.  
 Never erst or now ne herd I swiche matere;  
 I trow the devil put it in his mind.  
 In all arismetrike shal ther no man find  
 Beforn this day of swiche a question.  
 Who shulde make a demonstration  
 That every man shuld han ylike his part  
 As of a soun or favour of a fart?

## THE SOMFOURES TALE.

On ice proude cherl! I shrewe his face.

Lo, Sires, quod the lord, with harde grace,  
Who ever herd of swiche a thing or now?  
To every man ylike! tell me how.

It is an impossible, it may not be:

Ey, nice cherl! God let him never the.

The rombling of a fart, and every sun,

N'is but of aire reverberatioun,

And ever it wasteth lite and lite away;

Ther n'is no man can demen, by my fay,

If that it were departed equally.

What? lo my cherl, lo yet how shrewedly

Unto my confessor to-day he spake!

I hold him certain a demoniake.

Now ete your mete, and let the cherl go play;

Let him go honge himself a devil way.

Now stood the lordes squier atte bord  
That carf his mete, and herde word by word  
Of all this thing of waich I have you sayd.

My Lord, quod he, be ye not evil apaid;

I coude telle for a gounce-cloth

To you, Sire Frere, so that ye be not wroth,

How that this fart shuld even ydeled be

Amonge your covent, if it liked thee.

Tell, quod the lord, and thou shalt have anon  
A gounce-cloth, by God and by Seint John.

My Lord, quod he, whan that the weder is

Wynouten winde or pertourbing of aire, [faire,

Let bring a cart-whele here into this hall,

But loke that it have his spokes all;

Twelf spokes hath a cart-whele comunly;

And bring me than twelf freres, wete ye why?

For threttene is a covent as I gesse:

Your confessor here for his worthinesse

Shal parfourme up the noumbre of his covent.

Than shull they knele adoun by on assent,

And to every spokes end in this manere

Ful sadly lay his nose shal a frere;

Your noble confessor, ther God him save,

Shal hold his nose upright under the nave,

Than shal this cherl, with bely stif and tought

As any tabour, hider ben ybrought;

And set him on the whele right of this cart

Upon the nave, and make him let a fart,

And ye shull seen, up peril of my lif,

By veray preef that is demonstratif.

That equally the foun of it wol wende,

And eke the stinke, unto the spokes ende,

Save that this worthy man, your confessor,

(Because he is a man of gret honour)

Shal han the firste fruit, as reson is.

The noble usage of freres yet it is

The worthy men of hem shul first be served,

And certainly he hath it wel deserved;

He hath to-day taught us so moche good,

With preching in the pulpit ther he stood;

That I may vouchesaf, I say for me,

He hadde the firste smel of fartes thre,

And so wold all his brethren hardely,

He bereth him so faire and holyly.

The lord, the lady, and eche man, save the

Sayden that Jankin spake in this matere [frere,

As wel as Euclide or elles Ptholomee.

Touching the cherl they saydan, Subtiltee

And highe wit made him speken as he spake

He n'is no fool ne no demoniake.

And Jankin hath ywonne a new gounce.

My Tale is don; we ben almost at tounce.

E iij



## THE CLERKES PROLOGUE

## THE CLERKES PROLOGUE.

SIR Clerk of Oxenforde, our Hoste said,  
 Ye ride as stille and coy as doth a maid  
 Were newe spoused, sitting at the bord;  
 This day ne herd I of your tonge a word.  
 I trow ye studie abouten som sophime;  
 But Salomon saith that every thing hath time.  
 For Goddes sake as beth of better chere,  
 It is no time for to studein here.  
 Tell us som mery Tale by your fay;  
 For what man that is entred in a play  
 He nedes most unto the play assent.  
 But precheth not, as freres don in Lent,  
 To make us for our olde sinnes wepe,  
 Ne that thy Tale make us not to slepe.  
 Tell us som mery thing of adventures;  
 Your termes, your coloures, and your figures,  
 Kepe hem in store til so be ye endite  
 Hie stile, as whan that men to kinges write.  
 Speketh so plain at this time, I you pray,  
 That we may understonden what ye say.  
 This worthy Clerk benignely answerde;  
 Hoste, quod he, I am under your yerde,  
 Ye have of us now the governance,  
 And therefore wolde I do you obeyfance,  
 As fer as reson asketh hardely:  
 I wol you tell a Tale which that I  
 Lefned at Padowe of a worthy clerk,  
 As preved by his wordes and his werk:  
 He is now ded and nailed in his chesse,  
 I pray to God so yeve his soule reste.

Fraunceis Petrark, the Laureat poete,  
 Highte this clerk, whos rethorike swete  
 Enlumined all Itaille of poetrie,  
 As Lynyan § did of philosophie  
 Or law, or other art particulere;  
 But Deth that wol not suffre us dwellen here  
 But as it were a twinkling of an eye,  
 Hem both hath slaine, and aile we shul dye.  
 But forth to tellen of this worthy man  
 That taughte me this Tale as I began,  
 I say that first he with higne stile enditeth  
 (Or he the body of his Tale writeth)  
 A proHEME, in the which describeth he  
 Piemont, and of Saluces the contree,  
 And speket of Apennin the hilles hie,  
 That ben the boundes of west Lombardie,  
 And of Mount Vesulus in special,  
 Wher as the Poo out of a welle smal  
 Taketh his firste springing and his fours,  
 That estward ay encrefeth in his cours  
 To Emelie ward, to Ferare and Venise,  
 The which a longe thing were to devise;  
 And trewely, as to my jugement,  
 Me thinketh it a thing impertinent,  
 Save that he wol, conveyen his matere:  
 But this is the Tale which that ye mow here.

§ Or *Linian*. The person meant was an eminent lawyer  
 and made a great noise (as we say) in his time.

## THE CLERKES TALE.

Ther is right at the west side of Itaille,  
Doun at the rote of Vefulus the cold,  
A lusty plain habundant of vitaille,  
Ther many a toun and tour thou maist behold,  
That founded were in time of fathers old,  
And many another delitable sighte,  
And Saluces this noble contree highte.

A markis whilom lord was of that lond,  
As were his worthy elders him before,  
And obeyfant, ay redy to his hond,  
Were all his lordes both lesse and more :  
Thus he delyt he liveth, and hath don yore,  
Beloved and drad, thurgh favour of Fortune,  
Both of his lordes and of his commune.

Therwith he was, to speken of linage,  
The gentilest yborne of Lumbardie,  
A faire person, and strong, and yong of age,  
And ful of honour and of curtesie ;  
Discret ynough, his contree for to gie,  
Sauf in sonic thinges that he was to blame,  
And Walter was this yonge lordes name.

I blame him thus, that he considered nought  
In time coming what might him betide,  
But on his lust present was all his thought,  
And for to hauke and hunt on every side ;  
Wel neigh all other cures let he slide ;  
And eke he nol'd (and that was worst of all)  
Wedden no wif for ought that might befall.

Only that point his peple bare so fore  
That flockmel on a day to him they went,  
And on of hem, that wisest was of lore,  
(Or elles that the lord wold best assent  
That he shuld tell hem what the peple ment,  
Or elles could he wel shew swiche matere)  
He to the markis said as ye shull here.

O noble Markis, your humanitee  
Assureth us and yveth us hardinesse,  
As oft as time is of necessitee  
That we to you mow tell our hevinesse ;  
Accepteth, Lord, than of your gentillesse  
That we with pitious herte unto you plaine,  
And let your eres nat my vois disdaine.

Al have I not to don in this matere  
More than another man hath in this place,  
Yet for as moch as ye, my Lord so dere,  
Han alway shewed me favour and grace,  
I dare the better aske of you a space  
Of audience to shewen our request,  
And ye, my Lord, to don right as you lest.

For certes, Lord, so wel us liketh you  
And all your werke, and ever hath don, that we  
Ne couden not ourself devisen how  
We mighten live in more felicitee,  
Save o thing, Lord, if it your wille be  
That for to be a wedded man you lest  
Than were your peple in foverain hertes rest.

Boweth your nekke under the blisful yok  
Of foveraintee, and not of any wile,  
Which that men clepen ~~Spousaille~~ or Wedlok :  
And thinketh, Lord, among your thoghtes wile,  
How that our days passe in fondry wile ;  
For though we slepe, or wake, or rome, or ride,  
Ay fleteth the time, it wol no man abide.

And though your grene youthe floure as yet,  
In crepeth age alway as still as ston,  
And deth manafeth every age, and fmit  
In eche estat, for ther escapeth non :  
And al so certain as we knowe eche on  
That we shul die, as uncertain we all  
Ben of that day whan deth shal on us fall.

Accepteth than of us the trewe entent,  
That never yet refuseden your hest,  
And we wol, Lord, if that you wol assent,  
Chese you a wif in short time at the mest  
Borne of the gentilest and of the best  
Of all this lond, so that it oughte seme  
Honour to God and you as we can deme.

Deliver us out of all this besy drede,  
And take a wif for highe Goddes sake ;  
For if it so befall, as God forbede,  
That thurgh your deth your linage shulde flake,  
And that a strange successeur shuld take  
Your heritage, o ! wo were us on live ;  
Wherefore we pray you hastily to wive.

Hir meke praiere and hir pitous chere  
Made the markis for to han pitee.  
Ye wol, quod he, min owen peple dere,  
To that I never er thought constrainen me :  
I me rejoyced of my libertee,  
That selden time is found in mariage ;  
Ther I was free I mooste ben in servage.

But natheles I see your trewe entent,  
And trust upon your wit, and have don ay ;  
Wherefore of my free will I wol assent  
To wedden me as sone as ever I may :  
But ther as ye han profred me to-day  
To chesen we a wif, I you relese  
That choise, and pray you of that profer cese,

For God it wot that children often ben  
Unlike hir worthy eldres hem before :  
Bountee cometh al of God, not of the stren  
Of which they ben ygendred and ybore :  
I trust in Goddes bountee, and therfore  
My mariage, and min estat and rest,  
I him betake ; he may don as him lest.

Let me alone in chesing of my wif ;  
That charge upon my bak I wol endure :  
But I you pray and charge upon your lif  
That what wif that I take ye me assure  
To worship hire, while that hire lif may dure,  
In word and werk both here and elles where,  
As she an emperoures doughter were.

And forthermore this shal ye swere, that ye  
Again my chois shal never grutch ne strive ;  
For fith I shal forgo my libertee  
At your request, as ever mote I thrive  
Ther as min herte is set ther wol I wive :  
And but ye wol assent in swiche manere  
I pray you speke no more of this matere.

With hertly will they sworn and assenten  
To all this thing, ther saide not o-wight nay,  
Beseeching him of grace that they wenten,  
That he wold granten hem a certain day  
Of his sponsaile as ~~long~~ as ever he may,  
For yet alway the peple somewhat dred  
Lest that this markis wolde no wif wed.

He granted hem a day, swiche as him lest,  
On which he wold be wedded fikerly,  
And said he did all this at hir request ;  
And they with humble herte ful buxumly,  
Kneling upon hir knees ful reverently,  
Him thonken all : and thus they han an end  
Of hir entente, and home agen they wend.

And hereupon he to his officeres  
Commandeth for the feste to purvay,  
And to his privee knightes and squieres  
Swiche charge he yave as hem list on hem lay,  
And they to his commandement obey,  
And eche of hem doth all his diligence  
To do unto the feste al reverence.

*Pars secunda.*

Nought fer fro thilke paleis honourable,  
Wher as this markis shope his mariage,  
Ther stood a thorpe, of sighte delitable,  
In which that poure folk of that village  
Hadden hir beites and hir herbergage,  
And of hir labour toke hir sustenance,  
After that the erthe yave hem habundance.

Among this poure folk ther dwelt a man  
Which that was holden pourest of hem all,  
But highe God somtime senden can  
His grace unto a litel oxes stall ;  
Janicola men of that thorpe him call :  
A doughter had he, faire ynough to fight,  
And Grisildis this yonge maiden hight.

But for to speke of vertuous beautee,  
Than was she on the fairest under sonne.  
Ful pourely yfostred up was she ;  
No likerous lust was in hire herte yronne :  
Wel ofter of the well than of the tonne  
She dranke ; and for she wolde vertue plesse  
She knew wel labour but non idel esse.

But though this mayden tendre were of age,  
Yet in the brest of hire virginitee  
Ther was enclosed sad and ripe corage,  
And in gret reverence and charitee  
Hire olde poure fader fostred she :  
A few sheep spinning on the feld she kept ;  
She wolde not ben idel til she slept.

And whan she homward came she wolde bring  
Wortes and other herbes times oft,  
The which she shred and sethe for hire living,  
And made hire bed ful hard and nothing soft ;  
And ay she kept hire fadres lif on loft  
With every obeisance and diligence  
That child may don to fadres reverence.

Upon Grisilde, this poure creature,  
Ful often sithe this markis sette his eye,  
As he on hunting rode paraventure ;  
And whan it fell that he might hire espie,  
He not with wanton loking of folie  
His eyen cast on hire, but in sad wise  
Upon hire chere he wold him oft avise ;

Commending in his herte hire womanhede,  
And eke hire vertue, passing any wight  
Of so yong age as wel in chere as dede :  
For though the peple have no gret in sight  
In vertue, he considered ful right  
Hire bountee, and disposed that he wold  
Wedde hire only if ever he wedden shold.

The day of wedding came, but no wight can  
Tellen what woman that it shulde be,  
For which marvaille wondred many a man,  
And saiden, whan they were in privetee,  
Wol not our lord yet leve his vanitee ?  
Wol he not wedde ? Alas, alas the while !  
Why wol he thus himself and us begile ?

But natheles this markis hath do make  
Of gemmes sette in gold and in asure  
Broches and ringes, for Grisildes sake ;  
And of hire clothing toke he the mesure  
Of a maiden like unto hire stature,  
And eke of other ornamentes all  
That unto swiche a wedding shulde fall.

The time of underne of the same day  
Approcheth that this wedding shulde be,  
And all the paleis put was in array,  
Both halle and chambres, eche in his degree,  
Houses of office stuffed with plentee ;  
Ther mayst thou see of dainteous vitaille  
That may be found as fer as lasteth itaille.

This real markis richely arraide,  
Lords and ladies in his compaignie,  
The which unto the feste weren praide,  
And of his retenue the bachelerie,  
With many a soun of sondry melodie,  
Unto the village of the which I told  
In this array the righte way they hold.

Grisilde of this (God wot) ful innocent  
That for hire shapen was all this array,  
To fetchen water at a welle is went,  
And cometh home as sone as ever she may ;  
For wel she had herd say that thilke day  
The markis shulde wedde, and if she might  
She wolde fayn han seen som of that sight.

She thought I wol with other maidens stond,  
That ben my felawes, in our dore, and see  
The markiselle, and therto wol I fond



To don at home, as sone as it may be,  
The labour which that longeth unto me,  
As d than I may at leiser hire behold,  
If she this way unto the Castel hold.

And as she wolde over the threswold gon  
The markis came and gan hire for to call,  
And she set down hire water-pot anon  
Beside the threswold in an oxes stall,  
And down upon hire knees she gan to fall,  
And with sad countenance kneleth still,  
Til she had herd what was the lordes will.

This thoughtful markis spake unto this maid  
Ful soberly, and said in this manere;  
Wher is your fader, Grisildis? he said.  
And she with reverence in humble chere  
Answered, Lord, he is al redy here.  
And in she goth withouten lenger lette,  
And to the markis she hire fader sette.

He by the hond than toke this poere man,  
And saide thus whan he him had aside;  
Janicola, I neither may ne can  
Lenger the plesance of min herte hide;  
If that thou vouchesauf, what so betide,  
Thy doughter wol I take or that I wend  
As for my wif unto hire lives end.

Thou lovest me, that wot I wel certain,  
And art my faithful liegeman ybore,  
And all that liketh me, I dare wel sain,  
It liketh thee, and specially therfore  
Tell me that point that I have said before,  
If that thou wolt unto this purpos drawe,  
To taken me as for thy son in lawe?

This soden cas this man astoned so,  
That red he wax, abaist, and al quaking  
He stood; unnethes said he wordes mo  
But only thus; Lord, quod he, my willing  
Is as ye wol, ne ageins your liking  
I wol no thing, min owen Lord so dere;  
Right as you list governeth this matere.

Than wol I, quod this markis softly,  
That in thy chambre I, and thou, and she,  
Have a collation; and wost thou why?  
For I wol ask hire if it hire wille be  
To be my wif, and reule hire after me?  
And all this shal be don in thy presence;  
I wol not speke out of thin audience.

And in the chambre, while they were aboute  
The trectee, which as ye shal after here,  
The peple came into the hous withoute,  
And wondred hem in how honest manere  
Ententifly she kept hire fader dere;  
But utterly Grisildis wonder might,  
For never erst ne saw she swiche a sight.

No wonder is though that she be astoned  
To see so gret a gest come in that place,  
She never was to non swiche gestes woned,  
For which she loked with ful pale face.  
But shortly forth this matere for to chace,  
Thise arn the wordes that the markis said  
To this benigne veray faithful maid.

Grisilde, he said, ye shuln wel understond  
It liketh to your fader and to me  
That I you wedde, and eke it may so stond,  
As I suppose, ye wol that it so be:

That sin it shall be don in hasty wise,  
Wol ye assent, or elles you avise?

I say this, be ye redy with good herte  
To all my lust, and that I freely may,  
As me best thinketh, do you laugh or smerte,  
And never ye to grutchen, night ne day,  
And eke whan I say Ya ye say Nay,  
Neither by word ne frowning countenance?  
Swere this, and here I swere our alliance.

Wondring upon this thing, quaking for drede,  
She saide, ~~Lord~~, indigne and unworthy  
Am I to thilke honour that ye me bede,  
But as ye wol yourself, right so wol I:  
And here I swere that never willingly  
In werk ne thought I n'ill you disobeie  
For to be ded, though me were loth to deie.

This is ynough, Grisilde min, quod he.  
And forth he goth with a ful sobre chere  
Out at the dore, and after than came she,  
And to the peple he said in this manere;  
This is my wif, quod he, that stondeth here;  
Honoureth her, and loveth hire, I pray,  
Who so me loveth; ther n'is no more to say.

And for that nothing of hire olde gere  
She shulde bring into his hous, he bad  
That women shuld despoilen hire right there,  
Of which thise ladies weren nothing glad  
To handle hire clothes wherin she was clad:  
But natheles this maiden bright of hew  
Fro foot to hed they clothed han all new.

Hire heres han they kempt, that lay untressed  
Ful rudely, and with hir fingres smal  
A coroune on hire hed they han ydressed,  
And sette hire ful of nouches gret and smal.  
Of hire array what shuld I make a tale?  
Unneth the peple hire knew for hire fairnesse  
Whan she transmewed was in swiche richesse.

This markis hath hire spoused with a ring  
Brought for the same cause, and than hire sette  
Upon an hors snow-white and wel ambling,  
And to his paleis, or be lenger lette,  
(With joyful peple that hire lad and mette)  
Conveyed hire; and thus the day they spende  
In revel til the sonne gan descende.

And shortly forth this tale for to chace,  
I say that to this new markifesse  
God hath swiche favour sent hire of his grace,  
That it ne semeth not by likelinessse  
That she was borne and fed in rudenessse,  
As in a cote or in an oxes stall,  
But nourished in an emperoures hall.

To every wight she waxen is so dere  
And worshipful, that folk ther she was bore,  
And fro hire birthe knew hire yere by yere,  
Unnethes trowed they, but dorst han swore  
That to Janicle, of which I spake before,  
She doughter n'as; for as by conjecture  
Hem thoughte she was another creature.

For though that ever vertuous was she,  
She was encrefed in swiche excellence  
Of thewes good, yfet in high bountee,  
And so discrete, and faire of eloquence,  
So benigne, and so digne of reverence,  
And coude so the peples herte embrace,  
That sheke hire loveth that loketh on hire face.

Not only of Saluces in the toon  
Published was the bountee of hire name,  
But eke beside in many a regioun;  
If on faith wel, another faith the fame:  
So spredeth of hire hie bountee the fame,  
That men and women, yong as wel as old,  
Gon to Saluces upon hire to behold.

Thus Walter lowly, nay but really,  
Wedded with fortunat honestee;  
In Goddes pees liveth ful esly  
At home, and grace ynough outward had he:  
And for he saw that under low degree  
Was honest vertu hid, the peple him held  
A prudent man, and that is seen ful feld.

Not only this Grisildis thurgh hire wit  
Coude all the fete of wifly homlineffe;  
But eke whan that the cas required it,  
The comune profit coude she redresse:  
Ther n'as discord, rancour, ne hevinesse,  
In all the lond that she ne coude appele,  
And wisely bring hem all in hertes ese.

Though that hire husbond absent were or non  
If gentilmen or other of that contree  
Were wroth, she wolde bringen hem at on.  
So wise and ripe wordes hadde she,  
And jugement of so grete equitee,  
That she from heaven sent was, as men wend,  
Peple to save, and every wrong to amend.

Not longe time after that this Grisilde  
Was wedded, she a doughter hath ybore,  
All had hire lever han borne a knave childe:  
Glad was the markis and his folk therefore;  
For though a maiden childe come all before,  
She may unto a knave child atteine,  
By likelyhed, for she n'is not barreine.

*Pars tertia.*

Ther fell, as it befalleth times mo,  
Whan that this childe had souked but a throwe,  
This markis in his herte longed so  
To tempt his wif, hire sadnesse for to knowe,  
That he ne might out of his herte throwe  
This marveillous desir his wif to assay:  
Nedlees, God wot, he thought hire to assay.

He had assayed hire ynough before,  
And found hire ever good: what needeth it  
Hire for to tempt, and alway more and more?  
Though some men praise it for a subtil wit;  
But as for me, I say that evil it sit  
To assay a wife whan that it is no nede,  
And putten hire in anguish and in drede.

For which this markis wrought in this manere:  
He came a-night alone ther as she lay  
With stern face and with full trouble chere,  
And sayde thus, Grisilde, (quod he) that day  
That I you toke out of your poure array,  
And put you in estat of high noblesse,  
Ye han it not forgotten, as I gesse;

I say, Grisilde, this present dignitee,  
In which that I have put you, as I trow,  
Maketh you not forgetful for to be  
That I you toke in poure estat ful low,  
For only wele ye mote yourselven know,  
Take hede of every word that I you say,  
Ther is ne wight that hereth it but we tway.

Ye wote yourself wel how that ye came here  
Into this hous, it is not long ago;  
And though to me ye be right lefs and dere,  
Unto my gentils ye be nothing so:  
They say to hem it is gret shame and wo  
For to be suggetes and ben in fervice  
To thee, that borne art of a smal linage.

And namely for thy doughter was ybore,  
Thise wordes hen they spoken douteles;  
But I desire, as I have done before,  
To live my lif with hem in rest and pees:  
I may not in this cas be recheles:  
I mote do with thy doughter for the best,  
Not as I wold, but as my gentils lest.

And yet, God wote, this is ful loath to me;  
But natheles withouten your weting  
I wol nought do; but thus wol I (quod he)  
That ye to me assenten in this thing;  
Shew now your patience in your werking  
That ye me hight and swore in your village  
The day that maked was our mariage.

Whan she had herd all this, she not amoved  
Neyther in word, in chere, ne countenance,  
(For as it semed, she was not agreved)  
She sayde, Lord, all lith in your pleafance;  
My child and I with hertely obeifance  
Ben youre all, and ye may save or spill  
Your owen thing: werketh after your will.

Ther may no thing, so God my soule save,  
Like unto you that may displese me;  
Ne I desire nothing for to have,  
Ne drede for to lese, sauf only ye:  
This will is in myn herte, and ay shall be,  
No length of time or deth may this deface,  
Ne change my courage to an other place.

Glad was this markis for hire answering,  
But yet he feined as he were not so;  
Al drery was his chere and his loking,  
Whan that he shuld out of the chamber go,  
Sone after this, a furlong way or two,  
He prively hath told all his entent  
Unto a man, and to his wif him sent.

A maner sergeant was this prive man,  
The which he faithful often founden had  
In things gret, and eke swiche folk wel can  
Don execution on things bad;  
The lord knew wel that he him loved and drad,  
And whan this sergeant wist his lordes will,  
Into the chambre he stalked him ful still.

Madame, he sayd, ye mote foryeve it me,  
Though I do thing to which I am constreined;  
Ye ben so wise, that right wel known ye  
That lordes hestes may not ben yfeined;  
They may wel be bewailed and complained,  
But men mote nedes to hir lust obey,  
And so wol I; ther n'is no more to say.

The child I am commanded for to take—  
And spake no more, but out the child he hent  
Dispitously, and gan a chere to make,  
As though he wold have slain it or he went,  
Grisildis must al suffer and al consent;  
And as a lambe she sitteth meke and still,  
And let this cruel sergeant do his will.



Suspectious was the diffame of this man,  
 Suspect his face, suspect his word also,  
 Suspect the time in which he this began :  
 Alas ! hire doughter, that she loved so  
 She wende he wold han slaen it right tho ;  
 But natheles she neither wept ne fiked,  
 Conforming hire to that the markis liked.

But at the last to speken she began,  
 And mekely she to the sergeant praid  
 (So as he was a worthie gentilman)  
 That she might kisse hire child or that it deid ;  
 And in hire harme this litel child she leid ;  
 With ful sad face, and gan the child to blisse,  
 And lulled it, and after gan it kisse.

And thus she sayd in hire benigne vois ;  
 Farewel, my child, I shal the never see,  
 But sin I have thee marked with the crois,  
 Of thilke fader yblest mot thou be  
 That for us died upon a crois of tree,  
 Thy soule, litel child, I him betake,  
 For this night shalt thou dien for my sake.

I trow that to a norice in this cas  
 It had been hard this ronthe for to see ;  
 Wel might a moder than han cried Alas !  
 But natheles so fast stedfast was she,  
 That she endured all adversitee.  
 And to the sergeant mekely she sayde,  
 Have here agen your litel yonge mayde.

Goth now (quod she) and doth my lordes heft :  
 And o thing wold I pray you of your grace,  
 But if my lord forbade you at the left,  
 Burieth this litel body in som place  
 That bestes ne no briddes it to-race.  
 But he no word to that purpos wold say,  
 But toke the child, and went upon his way.

This sergeant came unto his lord again,  
 And of Grisildes wordes and hire chere  
 He told him point for point, in short and plain,  
 And him presented with his doughter dere.  
 Somwhat this lord hath routhe in his manere,  
 But natheles his purpos held he still,  
 As lordes don whan they wol have hir will ;

And had this sergeant that he prively  
 Shulde this child ful softe wind and wrappe,  
 With alle circumstances tendrely,  
 And carry it in a cofre or in a lappe ;  
 But upon peine his hed of for to swappe  
 That no man shulde know of his entent,  
 Ne whens he came ne whider that he went ;

But at Boloigne, unto his suster dere,  
 That thilke time of Pavie was Countesse,  
 He shuld it take and shew hire this matere,  
 Beseching hire to don hire besineffe,  
 This child to fostren in all gentilleffe ;  
 And whose child that it was he bade hire hide  
 From every wight, for ought that may betide.

The sergeant goth, and hath fulfild this thing.  
 But to this marquis now retorne we ;  
 For now goth he ful fast, imagining  
 If by his wives chere he mighte see,  
 Or by hire wordes apperceive, that she  
 Were changed ; but he never could hire finde  
 But ever in on ylike sad and kinde.

As glad, as humble, as besy in service

And eke in love, as she was wont to be,  
 Was she to him in every manner wise ;  
 Ne of hire doughter not a word spake she :  
 Non accident for non adversitee  
 Was seen in hire, ne never hire doughters name  
 Ne nevened she for ernest ne for game.

*Pars quarta.*

In this estat ther passed ben foure yere  
 Er she with childe was, but as God wold,  
 A knave childe sha bare by this Waltere  
 Ful gracious, and fair for to behold ;  
 And whan that folk it to his fader told,  
 Not only he but all his contree mery  
 Was for this childe, and God they thonk and hery.

Whan it was two yere old, and from the brest  
 Departed of his norice, on a day  
 This markis caughte yet another lest  
 To tempte his wif yet ofter, if he may.  
 O ! nedeles was she tempted in assay :  
 But wedded men ne connen no mesure  
 Whan that they finde a patient creature.

Wif, quod this markis, ye han herd or this  
 My peple sikely beren our mariage,  
 And namely sin my sone yboren is,  
 Now is it werse than ever in al our age ;  
 The murmur sleth myn herte and my corage,  
 For to myn eres cometh the vois so smerte,  
 That it wel nie destroyed hath myn herte.

Now say they thus ; Whan Walter is agon,  
 Than shal the blood of Janicle succede,  
 And ben our lord, for other han we non.  
 Swiche wordes sayn my peple, it is no drede ;  
 Wel ought I of swiche murmur taken hede,  
 For certainly I drede al swiche sentence,  
 Though they not plainen in myn audience.

I worde live in pees if that I might ;  
 Wherefore I am disposed utterly,  
 As I his suster served er by night,  
 Right so thinke I to serve him prively.  
 This warne I you, that ye not sodenly  
 Out of yourself for no wo shuld outraie ;  
 Beth patient, and therof I you praie.

I have, quod she, sayd thus, and ever shal,  
 I wol no thing, ne n'ill ne thing certain,  
 But as you list : not greveth me at al  
 Though that my doughter and my sone be slain  
 At your commandement : that is to fain,  
 I have not had no part of children twein  
 But first sikeneffe and after wo and peine.

Ye ben my lord, doth with your owen thing  
 Right as you list : asketh no rede of me ;  
 For as I left at home al my clothing  
 Whan I came first to you, right so (quod she)  
 Left I my will and all my libertee,  
 And toke your clothing ; wherefore I you prey  
 Doth your plesance, I wol youre lust obey.

And certes, if I hadde prescience  
 Your will to know er ye your lust me told,  
 I wold it do withouten negligence :  
 But now I wote your lust, and what ye wold,  
 All your plesance ferme and stable I hold ;  
 For wist I that my deth might do you ese  
 Right gladely wold I dien you to ples.



Deth may not maken no comparisoun  
Unto your love. And whan this markis say  
The constance of his wif, he cast adoun  
His eyen two, and wondreth how she may  
In patience suffer al this array;  
And forth he goth with drery contenance.  
But to his herte it was ful gret plesance.

This ugly sergeant in the same wise  
That he hire doughter caughte, right so he  
(Or worse, if men can any worse devise)  
Hath hent hire sone, that ful was of beautee;  
And ever in on so patient was she  
That she no chere made of hevynesse,  
But kist hire sone, and after gan it blesse.

Save this she praied him, if that he might,  
Hire litel sone he wold in erthe grave,  
His tendre limmes, delicat to fight,  
Fro foules and fro bestes for to save.  
But she non answer of him mighte have:  
He wen his way as him no thing ne rought,  
But to Boloigne he tenderly it brought.

This markis wondereth ever lenger the more  
Upon hire patience: and if that he  
Ne hadde sothely knowen ther before  
That parfitly hire children loved she,  
He wold han wend that of som subtiltee  
And of malice, or for cruel corage,  
That she had suffred this with sad visage.

But wel he knew that next himself certain,  
She loved hire children best in every wise.  
But now of women wold I asken sayn,  
If this affaies mighten not suffice?  
What coud a sturdy husbond more devise  
To prove hire wisshood and hire stedfastnesse,  
And he continuing ever in sturdinesse?

But ther ben folk of swiche condition,  
That whan they han a certain purpos take,  
They cannot stint of hir entencion,  
But right as they were bounden to a stake,  
They wol not of hir firste purpos flake:  
Right so this markis fully hath purposed  
To tempt his wif as he was first disposed.

He waiteth if by word or contenance  
That she to him was changed of corage;  
But never coud he finden variencie;  
She was aye on in herte and in visage;  
And aye the further she was in age,  
The more trewe (if that it were possible)  
She was to him in love, and penible.

For which it semed thus, that of hem two  
Ther was but o will; for as Walter left,  
The same lust was hire plesance also;  
And God be thanked, all fell for the best.  
She shewed wel for ne wordly unrest  
A wif, as of hireself, no thing ne sholde  
Wille in effect but as hire husbond wolde.

The sclandre of Walter wonder wide spradde,  
That of a cruel herte he wikkedly,  
For he a poure woman wedded hadde,  
Hath mured both his children prively:  
Swich murmur was among hem comunly.  
No wonder is, for to the peples ere  
Ther came no word but that they mured were.

For which ther as his peple therbefore  
Had loved him wel, the sclandre of his diffam  
Made hem that they him hateden therefore:  
To ben a murtherer is an hateful name.  
But natheles for ernest ne for game  
He of his cruel purpos n'olde stente:  
To tempt his wif was sette all his entente.

Whan that his doughter twelf yere was of age  
He to the court of Rome, in subtil wise  
Enformed of his will, sent his messager,  
Commanding him swiche billes to devise  
As to his cruel purpos may suffice,  
How that the Pope, as for his peples rest,  
Bade him to wed another if him lest.

I say he bade they shulden contrefete  
The Popes bulles, making mention  
That he hath leve his firste wif to lete,  
As by the Popes dispensation  
To stinten rancour and dissention  
Betwix his peple and him. Thus spake the bull,  
The which they han published at the full.

The rude peple, as no wonder is,  
Wenden ful wel that it had ben right so;  
But whan this tidings came to Grisildis,  
I deme that hire herte was ful of wo;  
But she ylike sad for evermo  
Disposed was, this humble creature,  
The adversitee of fortune al to endure;

Abiding ever his lust and his plesance  
To whom that she was yeven herte and al,  
As to hire veray worldly suffisance.  
But shortly if this storie tell I shal,  
This markis writen hath in special  
A lettre, in which he sheweth his entente,  
And secretly he to Boloigne it sente.

To the Erl of Pavia, which that hadde the  
Wedded his suster, prayed he specially  
To bringen home agein his children two  
In honourable estat al openly;  
But o thing he him prayed utterly,  
That he to no wight, though men wold enquire,  
Shulde not tell whos children that they were.

But say the maiden shuld ywedded be  
Unto the Markis of Saluces anon.  
And as this erl was prayed, so did he;  
For at day sette he on his way is gon  
Toward Saluces, and lordes many on  
In rich arraie, this maiden for to gide,  
Hire yonge brother riding hire beside.

Arraied was toward hire mariage  
This freshe maiden, ful of gemmes clere,  
Hire brother, which that seven yere was of age,  
Arraied eke ful fresh in his manere:  
And thus in gret noblesse and with glad chere  
Toward Saluces shaping hir journey  
Fro day to day they riden in hir way.

*Pars quinta.*

Among al his, after this wicked usage,  
This markis yet his wif to tempten more  
To the uttereste prefe of hire corage,  
Fully to have experience and lore  
If that she were as stedfast as before,

# THE CLERKES TALE

He on a day in open audience  
 Ful boistouny hath said hire this sentence :  
 Certes, Grisilde, I had ynough plesance  
 To han you to my wif for your goodnesse,  
 And for your trouthe and for your obeyfance,  
 Not for your linage ne for your richesse;  
 But now know I in very sothfastnesse  
 That in gret lordship, If I me wel avise,  
 Ther is gret servitude in sondry wise.  
 I may not don as every ploughman may :  
 My peple me constreinet for to take  
 Another wif, and crien day by day ;  
 And eke the Pope, rancour for to slake,  
 Consenteth it, that dare I undertake :  
 And trewely thus moche I wol you say,  
 My newe wif is coming by the way.  
 Be strong of herte, and void anon hire place,  
 And thilke dower that ye broughten me  
 Take it agen ; I grant it of my grace.  
 Returneth to your fadres hous, (quod he)  
 No man may alway have prosperitee.  
 With even herte I rede you to endure  
 The stroke of Fortune or of aventure.  
 And she agen answerd in patience ;  
 My Lord, quod she, I wote and wist alway  
 How that betwixen your magnificence  
 And my poverté no wight ne can ne may  
 Maken comparison ; it is no nay :  
 I ne held me never digne in no manere  
 To be your wif, ne yet your chamberere.  
 And in this hous ther ye me lady made  
 (The highe God take I for my witnesse,  
 And all so willy he my soule glad)  
 I never held ne lady ne maistresse,  
 But humble servant to your worthinesse,  
 And ever shal, while that my life may dure,  
 Aboven every wordly creature.  
 That ye so longe of your benignitee  
 Han holden me in honour and nobley,  
 Wheras I was not worthy for to be,  
 That thanke I God and you, to whom I prey  
 Forgyelde it you ; ther is no more to sey.  
 Unto my fader gladly wol I wende,  
 And with him dwell unto my lives ende.  
 Ther I was fostred of a childe ful smal ;  
 Til I be ded, my lif ther wol I lede,  
 A widew clene in body, herte, and al :  
 For sith I yave to you my maidenhede,  
 And am your trewe wif, it is no drede,  
 God shilde swiche a lordes wif to take  
 Another man to husband or to make.  
 And of your newe wif God of his grace  
 So graunte you wele and prosperitee,  
 For I wol gladly yelden hire my place,  
 In which that I was blisful wont to be :  
 For sith it liketh you, my Lord, (quod she)  
 That whilom weren all myn hertes rest,  
 That I shal gon, I wol go when you lest.  
 But ther as ye me profre swiche dowaire  
 As I first brough, it is wel in my mind  
 It were my wretched clothes, nothing faire,  
 The which to me were hard now for to find.  
 O goode God ! how gentil and how kind  
 Ye semed by your speche and your visage  
 The day that maked was our marriage !

But soth is said, algate I find it trewe,  
 For in effect it preved is on me,  
 Love is not old as when that it is newe.  
 But certes, Lord, for non adversitee  
 To dein in this cas, it shal not be  
 That ever in word or werke I shal repent  
 That I you yave min herte in hole entent.  
 My Lord, ye wote that in my fadres place  
 Ye did me stripe out of my poure wede,  
 And richely ye clad me of your grace ;  
 To you brought I nought elles out of drede  
 But faith, and nakednesse, and maidenhede ;  
 And here agen your clothing I restore,  
 And eke your wedding ring, for evermore.  
 The remenant of your jeweles redy be  
 Within your chambre, I dare it fastly sain.  
 Naked out of my fadres hous (quod she)  
 I came, and naked I mote turne again.  
 All your plesance wolde I folwe fain ;  
 But yet I hope it be not your entent  
 That I smokles out of your paleis went.  
 Ye coude not do so dishonest a thing.  
 That thilke wombe, in which your children lay,  
 Shulde before the peple in my walking  
 Be seen al-bare ; wherefore I you prey  
 Let me not like a worme go by the way :  
 Remembre you, min owen Lord so dere,  
 I was your wif, though I unworthy were.  
 Wherefore in guerdoun of my maidenhede,  
 Which that I brought and not agen I bere,  
 As vouchesauv to yewe me to my mede  
 But swiche a smok as I was wont to were,  
 That I therwith may wrie the wombe of hire  
 That was your wif. And here I take my leve  
 Of you, min owen Lord, lest I you greve.  
 The smok, quod he, that thou hast on thy baks  
 Let it be still, and bere it forth with thee.  
 But wel unnethes thilke word he spake,  
 But went his way for routhe and for pitee.  
 Before the folk hireselven stripeth she,  
 And in hire smok, with foot and hed all bare,  
 Toward hire fadres hous forth is she fare.  
 The folk hire folwen weping in hir wey,  
 And Fortune ay they cursen as they gon ;  
 But she fro weping kept hire eyen drey,  
 Ne in this time word ne spak she non.  
 Hire fader, that this tiding herd anon,  
 Curseth the day and time that Nature  
 Shope him to ben a lives creature.  
 For out of doute this old poure man  
 Was ever in suspect of hire mariage ;  
 For ever he demed, sin it first began,  
 That when the lord fulfilled had his corage,  
 Him wolde thinke it were a disparage  
 To his estat so lowe for to alight,  
 And voiden hire as sone as ever he might.  
 Agein his doughter hastily goth he,  
 (For he by noise of folk knew hire coming)  
 And with hire olde cote, as it might be,  
 He covereth hire, ful forwefully weping  
 But on hire body might he it not bring.  
 For rude was the cloth, and more of age  
 By daies fele than at hire mariage.  
 Thus with hire fader for a certain space  
 Dwelleth this flour of willy patience,



That nother by hire wordes ne hire face,  
 Beforn the folk, ne eke in hir absence,  
 Ne shewed she that hire was don offence,  
 Ne of hire high estat no remembrance  
 Ne hadde she as by hire contenance.

No wonder is, for in hire gret estat  
 Hire gost was ever in pleine humilitee;  
 No tendre mouth, no herte delicat,  
 No pompe, no semblant of realtee,  
 But ful of patient benignitee,  
 Discrete, and prideles, ay honourable,  
 And to hire husbond ever meke and stable.

Men speke of Job, and most for his humbleste,  
 As clerkes whan hem list can wel endite,  
 Namely of men, but as in sothfastnesse,  
 Though clerkes preisen women but a lite,  
 Ther can no man in humbleste him acquite  
 As woman can, ne can be half so trewe  
 As women ben, but it be falle of newe.

*Pars sexta.*

Fro Boloigne is this Earl of Pavie come,  
 Of which the fame up sprang to more and lesse :  
 And to the peples eres all and some  
 Was couth eke that a newe markiseffe  
 He with him brought in swiche pomp and richesse,  
 That never was ther seen with mannes eye  
 So noble array in al West Lumbardie.

The markis, which that shope and knew all this,  
 Er that this erl was come sent his message  
 For thilke poure sely Grisildis,  
 And she with humble herte and glad visage,  
 Not with no swollen thought in hire corage,  
 Came at his heft, and on hire knees hire sette,  
 And reverently and wisely she him grette.

Grisilde, (quod he) my will is utterly  
 This maiden that shal wedded be to me  
 Received be to-morwe as really  
 As it possible is in myn hous to be;  
 And eke that every wight in his degree  
 Have his estat in sitting and service,  
 And high plesance, as I can best devise.

I have no woman sufficient certain  
 The chambres for to array in ordinance  
 After my lust, and therefore wolde I fain  
 That thin were all swiche manere governance;  
 Thou knowest eke of old all my plesance :  
 Though thin array be bad, and evil besey,  
 Do thou thy devoir at the lesse wey.

Not only, Lord, that I am glad (quoth she)  
 To don your lust, but I desire also  
 You for to serve and plesse in my degree  
 Withouten fainting, and shal evermo :  
 Ne never for no wele ne for no wo  
 Ne shal the gost within myn herte stente  
 To love you best with all my trewe entente.

And with that word she gan the hous to dight,  
 And tables for to sette, and beddes make,  
 And peined her to don all that she might,  
 Praying the chambereres for Goddes sake  
 To hasten hem, and faste swepe and shake;  
 And she, the moste serviceable of all,  
 Hath every chambre arraied and his hall.

Abouten undern gan this erl alight  
 That with him brought thise noble children twey;  
 For which the peple ran to see the sight  
 Of hir array, so richely besey;  
 And that at erst amonges hem they sey  
 That Walter was no fool, though that him left  
 To change his wif, for it was for the best.

For she is fairer, as they demen all,  
 Than his Grisilde, and more tendre of age,  
 And fairer fruit betwene hem shulde fall,  
 And more plesant, for hire high linage :  
 Hire brother eke so faire was of visage  
 That hem to seen the peple hath caught plesance,  
 Commending now the markis governance.

O stormy peple; unfad and ever untrew,  
 And undiscrete and changing as a fane,  
 Delighting ever in rombel that is newe,  
 For like the mone waxen ye and wane :  
 A ful of ciapping, dere ynough a jane,  
 Your dome is fals, your constance evil preveth;  
 Ay ful gret fool is he that on you leveth!

Thus saiden fad folk in that citee  
 Whan that the peple gased up and down,  
 For they were glad right for the noveltee  
 To have a new lady of hir toun.  
 No more of this make I now mentoun,  
 But to Grisilde agen I wol me dresse.  
 And tell hire constance and hire besinesse.

Ful besy was Grisilde in every thing  
 That to the feste was appertinent;  
 Right naught was she abaist of hire clothing,  
 Though it were rude; and somdel eke to-rent,  
 But with glade chere to the yate is went,  
 With other folk, to grete the markiseffe,  
 And after that doth forth hire besinesse.

With so glad chere his gestes she receiveth,  
 And conningly everich in his degree,  
 That no default no man apperceiveth,  
 But ay they wondren what she mighte be  
 That in so poure array was for to see,  
 And coude swiche honour and reverence,  
 And worthily they preisen hire prudence.

In all this mene while she ne stent  
 This maide and eke hire brother to commend,  
 With all hire herte in ful benigne entent,  
 So wel that no man coud hire preise amend;  
 But at the last whan that thise lordes wend  
 To sitten down to mete, she began to call  
 Grisilde, as she was besy in the hall,

Grisilde, (quod he, as it were in his play)  
 How liketh thee my wif and hire beautee?  
 Right wel, my Lord, quod she, for in good fay  
 A fairer saw I never non than she;  
 I pray to God yeve you prosperitee,  
 And so I hope that he wol to you send  
 Plesance ynough unto your lives end.

O thing beseech I you and warne also,  
 That ye ne prikke with no turmenting  
 This tendre maiden as ye han do me.  
 For she is softred in hire nourishing  
 More tendrely, and to my supposing  
 She mighte not adversitee endure  
 As coude a poure softred creature.



## THE CLERKES TALE.

And whan this Walter saw hire patience,  
Hire glad chere, and no malice at all,  
And he so often hadde hire don offence,  
And she ay fadde and constant as a wall,  
Continuing ever hire innocence over all,  
This sturdy markis gan his herte dresse  
To rewre upon hire wifly stedfastnesse.

That is ynough, Grisilde min, quod he,  
Be now no more gaste ne evil apaid;  
I have thy faith and thy benignitee,  
As wel as ever woman was, assaid,  
In gret estat and pouerlich arraid:  
Now know I dere wif, thy stedfastnesse;  
And hire armes toke, and gan to kesse.

And she for wonder toke of it go kepe;  
She herde not what thing he to hire said;  
She ferde as she had stert out of a slepe,  
Til she out of hire masednesse abraid.  
Grisilde, quod he, by God that for us deid,  
Thou art my wif; non other I ne have  
Ne never had, as God my soule save.

This is thy doughter which thou hast supposed  
To be my wif; that other faithfully  
Shal be min heir, as I have ay disposed;  
Thou bare hem of thy body trewely;  
At Boloigne have I kept hem prively:  
Take hem agin, for now maist thou not say  
That thou hast lorn non of thy children tway.

And folk that otherwise han said of me,  
I warne hem wel that I have don this dede  
For no malice ne for no crueltee,  
But for to assay in thee thy womanhede,  
And not to flee my children (God forbede)  
But for to kepe hem prively and still  
Til I thy purpos knew and all thy will.

Whan she this herd, aswouned doun she falleth  
For pitous joye; and after hire swouning  
She both hire yonge children to hire calleth,  
And in hire armes, pitously weping,  
Embraceth hem, and tendrely kissing  
Ful like a moder, with hire salte teres  
She bathed both hir visage and hir heres.

O, swiche a pitous thing it was to see  
Hire swouning, and hire humble vois to here!  
*Grand mercy!* Lord, God thank it you (quod she)  
That ye han saved me my childten dere:  
Now rekke I never to be ded right here,  
Sin I stond in your love and in your grace,  
No force of deth, ne whan my spirit pace.

O tendre, o dere, o yonge, children mine!  
Your woful mother wened stedfastly  
That cruel houndes or som foul vermine  
Had eten you; but God of his mercy  
And your benigne fader tendrely  
Hath don you kepe: and in that same stound  
Al sodenly she swapt adoun to ground.

And in hire swough so sadly holdeth she  
Hire children two, whan she gan hem embrace,  
That with gret sleight and gret difficultee  
The children from hire arm they gan arrace.

O! many a tere on many a pitous face  
Doun ran of hem that stoden hire beside;  
Unnethe abouten hire might they abide.

Walter hire gladeth, and hire forwe slaketh;  
She riseth up abashed from hire trance,

And every wight hire joye and feste maketh  
Til she bath caught agen hire contenance.  
Walter hire doth so faithfully plesance,  
That it was deintee for to seen the chere  
Betwixt hem two sin they ben met in fere.

Thise ladies, whan that they hir time sey,  
Han taken hire, and into chambre gon,  
And stripen hire out of hire rude arrey,  
And in a cloth of gold that brighte shone,  
With a coroune of many a riche stone  
Upon hire hed, they into hall hire broughte,  
And ther she was honoured as hire ought.

Thus hath this pitous day a blisful end,  
For every man and woman doth his might  
This day in mirth and revel to dispend,  
Til on the welkin shone the sterres bright;  
For more solempne in every mannes sight  
This feste was, and greter of costage,  
Than was the revel of hire mariage.

Ful many a yere in high prosperitee  
Liven thise two in concord and in rest,  
And richely his doughter married he  
Unto a lord, on of the worthiest  
Of all Itaille, and than in pees and rest  
His wives fader in his court he kepeth  
Til that the soule out of his body crepeth.

His sone succedeth in his heritage,  
In rest and pees, after his fadres day,  
And fortunat was eke in mariage,  
Al put he not his wif in gret assay:  
This world is not so strong, it is no nay,  
As it hath ben in olde times yore,  
And herkneþ what this auctour saith therfore.

This story is said, not for that wives shuld  
Folwe Grisilde as in humilitee,  
For it were importable tho they wold,  
But for that every wight in his degree  
Shulde be constant in adversitee  
As was Grisilde, therefore Petrark writeth  
This storie, which with high stile he enditeth.

For sith a woman was so patient  
Unto a mortal man, wel more we ought  
Receiven all in gree that God us sent.  
For gret skill is he preve that he wrought;  
But he ne tempteth no man that he bought,  
As saith Seint Jame, if ye his pistell rede;  
He preveth folk al day, it is no drede;

And suffreth us, as for our exercise,  
With sharpe scourges of adversitee  
Ful often to be bete in sondry wise,  
Not for to know our will, for certes he,  
Or we were borne, knew all our freeteer,  
And for our best is all his governance;  
Let us than live in vertuous suffrance.

But o word, Lordings, herkneþ or I go:  
It were ful hard to finden now adayes  
In all a toun Grisildes three or two;  
For if that they were put to swiche assayes  
The gold of hem hath now so bad alayes  
With bras, that though the coine be faire at eye  
It wolde rather brast atwo than plie.

For which here, for the Wives love of Bathe,  
Whas lif and al hire secte God maintene  
In high maistrie, and elles were it scathe,

I wol with lusty herte freshe and grene  
 Say you a song to gladen you I wene,  
 And let us stint of earnestful matere.  
 Herkneþ my song, that faith in this manere :

Grifilde is ded, and eke hire patience,  
 And both at ones buried in Itaille,  
 For which I erie in open audience,  
 No wedded man so hardy be to assaille  
 His wives patience, in trust to find  
 Grifildes, for in certain he shal faille.

O noble wives ! ful of high prudence,  
 Let non humilitee your tonges naile,  
 Ne let no clerk have cause or diligence  
 To write of you a storie of swiche mervaille  
 As of Grifildis, patient and kinde,  
 Left Chichevache you swalwe in hire entraille.

Folweth Ecco, that holdeth no silence,  
 But ever answereth at the countretaille :  
 Beth not bedaffed for your innocence,  
 But sharply taketh on you the governaille :  
 Emprereth wel this lesson in your minde

For comun profit, sith it may availle.

Ye archewives ! stondeth ay at defaile,  
 Sin ye be strong as is a gret canaille,  
 Ne suffreth not that men do you offence.  
 And sclendre wives, feble as in bataille,  
 Beth egre as is a tigre yond in Inde ;  
 Ay clappeth as a mill I you counsaile.

Ne drede hem not, doth hem no reverence,  
 For though thin husband armed be in maille,  
 The arwes of thy crabbed eloquence  
 Shal perce his brest and eke his aventaille :  
 In jalousie I rede eke thou him binde,  
 And thou shalt make him couche as doth a quaille.

If thou be faire, ther folk ben in presence,  
 Shew thou thy visage and thin aparaille ;  
 If thou be foule, be free of thy dispence ;  
 To get thee frendes ay do thy travaille :  
 Be ay of chere as light as lefe on linde,  
 And let him care, and wepe, and wringe, and  
 waille.

## THE MARCHANTES PROLOGUE.

WEPING and wailing, care, and other sorwe,  
I have ynough on even and on morwe,  
Quod the Marchant, and so have other mo  
That wedded ben; I trowe that it be so,  
For wel I wot it fareth so by me.  
I have a wif the werste that may be,  
For though the fend to hire ycoupled were,  
She wolde him overmatche, I dare wel swere.  
What shulde I you reherse in special  
Hire high malice? she is a shrew at al.  
A her is a yong and a large difference  
Betwix Grisildes grete patience  
And of my wife the passing crueltee.  
Were I unbounden, all so mote I the,  
I wolde never eft comen in the snare.  
We wedded men live in sorwe and care:

Affay it who so wol, and he shal finde  
That I say soth, by Seint Thomas of Inde,  
As for the more part, I say not alle;  
God shilde that it shulde so befall.

A, good Sire Hoste, I have ywedded be  
Thise monethes two, and more not parde;  
And yet I trowe that he that all his lif  
Wifles hath ben, though that men wolde him rise  
Into the herte, ne coude in no manere  
Tellen so much sorwe as I you here  
Coud tellen of my wives cursednesse. [blesse.

Now, quod our Hoste, Marchant, so God you  
Sin ye so mochel knowen of that art,  
Ful hertely I pray you tell us part.

Gladly, quod he, but of min owen fore,  
For fory herte I tellen may no more.

## THE MARCHANTES TALE \*.

WHILOM ther was dwelling in Lumbardie  
A worthy knight, that born was at Pavie,  
In which he lived in gret prosperitee;  
And sixty yere a wifles man was he,  
And solwed ay his bodily delit  
On women ther as was his appetit,  
As don thise fooles that ben seculere.  
And whan that he was passed sixty yere,  
Were it for holinesse or for dotage  
I cannot sain, but swiche a gret corage  
Hadde this knight to ben a wedded man,  
That day and night he doth all that he can  
To espie wher that he might wedded be,  
Praying our Lord to granten him that he  
Mighte ones knowen of that blisful lif  
That is betwix an husbond and his wif,

And for to live under that holy bond  
With which God firste man and woman bond,  
Non other lif (said he) is worth a bene;  
For wedlok is so esy and so clene  
That in this world it is a paradise.

Thus saith this olde knight that was so wise.

And certainly, as soth as God is king,  
To take a wif it is a glorious thing;  
And namely whan a man is old and hore,  
Than is a wif the fruit of his trefore;  
Than shuld he take a yong wif and a faire,  
On which he might engendren him an heire,  
And lede his lif in joye and in folas,  
Wheras thise bachelers singen alas!  
Whan that they finde any adversitee  
In love, which n'is but childish vanitee.  
And trewely it fit wel to be so  
That bachelers here often singen so



On brotel ground they bilde, and brotelnesse  
 They finden whan they wenen sikernesle :  
 They live but as a bird or as a beste,  
 In libertee and under non areste,  
 Ther as a wedded man in his estat  
 Liveth a lif blisful and ordinat,  
 Under the yoke of mariage ybound ;  
 Wel may his herte in joye and blisse abound :  
 For who can be so buxom as a wif ?  
 Who is so trewe and eke so ententif  
 To kepe him, like and hole, as is his make ?  
 For wele or wo she n'ill him not forsake ;  
 She n'is not wery him to love and serve,  
 Though that he lie bedrede til that he sterve.

And yet som clerkes sain it is not so,  
 Of which he Theophrast is on of tho.  
 What force though Theophrast list for to lie ?

Ne tak no wif, quod he, for hufbondrie,  
 As for to spare in houshold thy dispenche :  
 A trewe servant doth more diligence  
 Thy good to kepe, than doth thin owen wif,  
 For she wol claimen half part al hire lif.  
 And if that thou be like, so God me save,  
 Thy veray frendes or a trewe knave  
 Wol kepe thee bet than she, that waiteth ay  
 After thy good, and hath don many a day.

This sentence, and an hundred thinges werse,  
 Writeth this man, ther God his bones curse.  
 But take no kepe of all swiche vanitee ;  
 Desieth Theophrast, and herkeneth me.

A wif is Goddes yeste veraily ;  
 All other maner yestes hardely,  
 As londes, rentes, pasture, or commune,  
 Or mebles, all ben yestes of Fortune,  
 That passen as a shadow on the wall :  
 But drede thou not if plainly speke I shal ;  
 A wif wol last and in thin hous endure  
 Wel lenger than thee list paraventure.

Mariage is a ful grete sacrament ;  
 He which that hath no wif I hold him shent ;  
 He liveth helples and all desolat :  
 (I speke of folk in secular estat)  
 And herkneth why, I say not this for nought,  
 That woman is for mannes helpe ywrought :  
 The hight God, whan he had Adam maked,  
 And saw him al alone belly naked,  
 God of his grete goodnesse saide than,  
 Let us now make an helpe unto this man  
 Like to himself, and than he made him Eve.

Here may ye see, and hereby may ye preve,  
 That a wif is mannes helpe and his comfort,  
 His paradis terrestre, and his disport :  
 So buxom and so vertuous is she,

They mosten nedes live in untee :  
 O flesch they ben, and o flesch, as I gesse,  
 Hath but on herte in wele and in distresse.

A wif ? a ! Sainte Marie, *benedicite* !  
 How might a man have any adversite  
 That hath a wif ? certes I cannot seye.  
 The blisse the which that is betwix hem tweye  
 Ther may no tonge telle or herte thinke.  
 If he be poure, she helpeth him to swinke ;  
 She kepeth his good, and wasteth never a del ;  
 All that hire hufbond doth, hire liketh wel :

She saith not ones, Nay, whan he saith, Ye :  
 Do this, saith he ; Al redy, Sire, saith she.

O blisful ordre, o wedlok precious !  
 Thou art so mery and eke so vertuous,  
 And so commended and approved eke,  
 That every man that holt him worth a leke,  
 Upon his bare knees ought all his lif  
 Thanken his God that him hath sent a wif,  
 Or elles pray to God him for to send  
 A wif to last unto his lives end ;  
 For than his lif is set in sikernesle,  
 He may not be deceived, as I gesse,  
 So that he werche after his wives rede ;  
 Than may he boldly beren up his hede,  
 They ben so trewe, and therewithal so wise ;  
 For which, if thou wilt werchen as the wif,  
 Do alway so as women wol thee rede.

Lo how that Jacob, as thise clerkes rede,  
 By good conseil of his mother Rebekke  
 Bounde the kiddes skin about his nekke,  
 For which his fadres benison he wan.

Lo Judith, as the storie eke tell can,  
 By good conseil she Goddes peple kept,  
 And slow him Holofernes while he slept.

Lo Abigail, by good conseil how she  
 Saved hire hufbond Nabal, whan the he  
 Shuld han be slain. And loke, Hester also  
 By good conseil delivered out of wo  
 The peple of God, and made him Mardochee  
 Of Assuere enhansed for to be.

Ther n'is no thing in gree superlatif  
 (As saith Senek) above an humble wif.  
 Suffer thy wives tonge, as Caton bit ;  
 She shal command and thou shalt suffren it,  
 And yet she wol obey of curtesie.

A wif is keper of thin hufbondrie :  
 Wel may the like man bewaile and wepe  
 Ther as ther is no wif the hous to kepe.  
 I warne thee, if wisely thou wilt werche,  
 Love wel thy wif, as Crist loveth his cherche :  
 If thou lovest thyself, love thou thy wif.  
 No man hateth his flesh, but in his lif  
 He fostreth it, and therefore bid I thee  
 Cherish thy wif, or thou shalt never the.  
 Hufbond and wif, what so men jape or play,  
 Of worldly folk holden the liker way :  
 They ben so knit ther may non harm betide,  
 And namely upon the wifes side.

For which this January, of whom I told,  
 Considered hath within his dayes old  
 The lusty lif, the vertuous quite,  
 That is in mariage honey-swete,  
 And for his frendes on a day he sent  
 To tellen hem th' effect of his entent.

With face sad his tale he hath hem told :  
 He sayde, Frendes, I am hore and old,  
 And almost (God wot) on my pittes brinke,  
 Upon my soule somewhat most I thinke.  
 I have my body folily dispended,  
 Blessed be God that it shal ben amended !  
 For I wol ben certain a wedded man,  
 And that anon in all the hast I can.  
 Unto som maiden, faire and tendre of age,  
 I pray you shapeth for my mariage

All soverayn, for I wol not abide;  
 And I wol fonde to espie on my side  
 To whom I may be wedded hastily.  
 But for as moche as we ben more than I,  
 Ye shullen rather swiche a thinge espie  
 Than I, and wher me beste were to allie.  
 But oþerþing warn I you, my frendes dere;  
 I wol non olde wif han in no manere;  
 She shal not passen twenty yere certain:  
 Old fish and yonge flesh wold I have fain.  
 Bet is (quod he) a pike than a pikerel,  
 And bet that old beef is the tendre veel.  
 I wol no woman thirty yere of age;  
 It is but benefstraw and gret forage.  
 And eke thise olde widewes (God it wote)  
 They connen so moch craft on Wades bote,  
 So mochel broken harm whan that hem lete;  
 That with hem shuld I never live in rest.  
 For sondry scoles maken subtil clerkes;  
 Woman of many scoles half a clerk is.  
 But certainly a yong thing men may gie;  
 Right as men may warm wax with handes plie;  
 Wherfore I say you plainly in a clause  
 I wol no old wif han right for this cause.  
 For if I were I hadde swiche meschance,  
 That I in hire ne coude have no plesance;  
 I shuld I lede my lif in avoutrie;  
 And so streight to the devil whan I die.  
 Ne children shuld I non upon hire geten;  
 Yet were me lever houndes had me eten  
 Than that min heritage shulde fall  
 In straunge hondes; and this I tell you all.  
 I dote not, I wot the cause why  
 Men shulden wedde; and furthermore wot I  
 Ther speketh many a man of mariage  
 That wot no more of it than wot my page  
 For which causes a man shuld take a wif.  
 If he may not liven chaste his lif,  
 Take him a wif with gret devotion,  
 Because of lesful procreation  
 Of children, to the honour of God above,  
 And not only for paramour or love,  
 And for they shulden lecherie eschue,  
 And yield hir dette whan that it is due;  
 Or for that eche of hem shuld helpen oþer  
 In meschefe, as a suster shal the brother,  
 And live in chastitee ful holily.  
 But, Sires, (by your leve) than am not I,  
 For, God be thanked, I dare make avaunt,  
 I sele my limmes stark and suffisant  
 To don all that a man belongeth to:  
 I wot myselfen best what I may do.  
 Though I be hoor, I fare as doth a tre  
 That blosmeth er the fruit ywoxen be;  
 The blofmy tre n'is neither drie ne ded:  
 I sele me no wher hoor but on my hed:  
 Min herte and all my limmes ben as grene  
 As laurer thurgh the yere is for to sene.  
 And sin that ye han herd all min entent,  
 I pray you to my will ye wolde assent.  
 Diverse men diversely him told  
 Of mariage many ensamples old;  
 Som blamed it, som praised it certain:  
 But atte laste, shortly for to sain,

(As all day falleth altercation  
 Betwixen frendes and disputifon)  
 Ther fell a strif betwix his brethren two,  
 Of which that on was cleped Placebo,  
 Justinus sothly called was that oþer.  
 Placebo sayd, O January! brother,  
 Ful litel nede han ye, my lord so dere;  
 Conseil to aske of any that is here,  
 But that ye ben so ful of sapience  
 That you ne liketh for your high prudence  
 To weiven fro the word of Salomon;  
 This word, sayd he, unto us everich on,  
 Werke alle thing by conseil, thus sayd he,  
 And than ne shalt thou not repent thee.  
 But though that Salomon spake swiche a word,  
 Min owen dere brother and my lord,  
 So wisly God my soule bringe at rest;  
 I hold your owen conseil is the best.  
 For, brother min, take of me this motif;  
 I have now ben a court-man all my lif,  
 And God it wot, though I unworthy be,  
 I have stonden in ful gret degree  
 Abouten lordes of ful high estat,  
 Yet had I never with non of hem debat;  
 I never hem contraried trewely.  
 I wot wel that my lord can more than I;  
 What that he saith I holde it firme and stable;  
 I say the same, or elles thing semblable.  
 A ful gret fool is any conseilour,  
 That serveth any lord of high honour,  
 That dare presume, or ones thinke it,  
 That his conseil shuld passe his lordes wit;  
 Nay, lordes be no foolles by my say.  
 Ye han yourselven shewed here to-day  
 So high sentence, so holily, and wel,  
 That I consent, and confirme every del  
 Your wordes all, and your opinioun.  
 By God ther n'is no man in all this toun;  
 Ne in Itaille, coud bet han ysayd:  
 Crist holt him of this conseil wel appaid;  
 And trewely it is an high corage  
 Of any man that stopen is in age  
 To take a yong wif! by my fader kid  
 Your herte hongeth on a joly pin.  
 Doth now in this matere right as you list,  
 For finally I hold it for the best.  
 Justinus, that ay stille sat and herd,  
 Right in this wise he to Placebo answerd:  
 Now, brother min, be patient I pray,  
 Sin ye han said, and herkeneth what I say.  
 Senek, among his oþer wordes wise,  
 Saith that a man ought him right wel avise  
 To whom he yeveth his lond or his catel:  
 And sith I ought avisen me right wel  
 To wh. m I yeve my good away fro me,  
 Wel more I ought avisen me, parde,  
 To whom I yeve my body; for alway  
 I warne you wel it is no childe's play  
 To take a wif without avisement.  
 Men must enqueren (this is min assent)  
 Wheder she be wise and sobre or dronkelewe,  
 Or proud, or elles oþer waies a shrew;

A chidester, or a wastour of thy good,  
 Or riche or poure, or elles a man is wood :  
 Al be it so that no man finden shal  
 Non in this world that trotteth hol in al,  
 Ne manȝne beste, swiche as men can devise,  
 But natheles it ought ynough suffice  
 With any wif, if so were that she had  
 Mo good thewes than hire vices bad :  
 And all this axeth leifure to enquire ;  
 For God it wot I have wept many a tere  
 Ful prively sin that I had a wif.  
 Praise who so wol a wedded mannes lif,  
 Certain I find in it but cost and care,  
 And observances of alle blisses bare ;  
 And yet, God wot, my neigheours aboute,  
 And namely of women many a route,  
 Sain that I have the moste stedfast wif,  
 And eke the mekest on, that bereth lif :  
 But I wot best wher wringeth me my tho.  
 Ye may for me right as you liketh do.  
 Aviseþ you, ye ben a man of age,  
 How that ye entren into mariage,  
 And namely with a yong wif and a faire.  
 By him that made water, fire, erth, and aire,  
 The yongest man that is in all this route  
 Is besy ynow to bringen it aboute  
 To han his wif alone, trusteth me :  
 Ye shul not plesen hire fully yeres three ;  
 This is to sain, to don hire ful plesance :  
 A wif axeth ful many an observance.  
 I pray you that ye be not evil appaid.

Wel, quod this January, and hast thou saide ?  
 Straw for Senek, and straw for thy proverbes ;  
 I counte not a panier ful of herbes  
 Of scole termes : wiser men than thou,  
 As thou hast herd, assented here right now  
 To my purpos. Placebo, what saye ye ?

I saye it is a cursed man, quod he,  
 That letteth matrimoine likerly.  
 And with that word they risen sodenly,  
 And ben assented fully that he sholde  
 Be wedded whan him list and wher he wolde.

High fantasie and curious besinesse  
 Fro day to day gan in the foule empreffe  
 Of January about his mariage :  
 Many a faire shap and many a faire visage  
 Ther passeth thurgh his herte night by night.  
 As who so toke a mirroure polished bright,  
 And set it in a comune market place,  
 Then shuld he see many a figure pace  
 By his mirroure, and in the same wise  
 Gan January in with his thought devise  
 Of maidens which that dwelten him beside ;  
 He wiste not wher that he might abide ;  
 For if that on have beautee in hire face,  
 Another stont so in the peples grace,  
 For hire sadnesse and hire benignitee,  
 That of the peple the grettest vois hath she :  
 And som were riche and hadden a bad name ;  
 But natheles, betwix ernest and game,  
 He at the last appointed him on on,  
 And let all other from his herte gon,  
 And chees hire of his owen auctoritee,  
 For love is blind all day and may not see.

And whan that he was in his bed ~~forsoke~~  
 He purtreied in his herte and in his thought  
 Hire freshe beautee and hire age tendre,  
 Hire middel smal, hire armes long and sclendre,  
 Hire wise governance, hire gentilleffe,  
 Hire womanly bering, and hire sadnesse.

And whan that he on hire was condescended,  
 Him thought his chois it might not ben amended ;  
 For whan that he himself concluded had,  
 Him thought eche other mannes wit so bad,  
 That impossible it were to replie  
 Again his chois : this was his fantasie.

His frendes sent he to, at his instance,  
 And praied hem to don him that plesance  
 That hastily they wolden to him come ;  
 He wolde abregge hir labour all and some :  
 Neded no more to hem to go ne ride,  
 He was appointed ther he wolde abide.

Placebo came, and eke his frendes sone,  
 And alderfirst he bade hem all a bone,  
 That non of hem non argumentes make  
 Again the purpos that he hath ytake ;  
 Which purpos was plesant to God (said he)  
 And veray ground of his prosperitee.

He said ther was a maiden in the towne  
 Which that of beautee hadde gret renoun,  
 Al were it so she were of smal degree ;  
 Sufficeth him hire youth and hire beautee ;  
 Which maid (he said) he wold han to his wif,  
 To lede in ese and holinesse his life ;  
 And thanked God that he might han hire all,  
 That no wight with his blisse parten shall ;  
 And praied hem to labour in this nede,  
 And shapen that he faille not to spede :  
 For than, he sayd, his spirit was at ese ;  
 Than is (quod he) nothing may me displese,  
 Save o thing pricketh in my conscience,  
 The which I wol reharfe in your presence.

I have (quod he) herd said ful yore ago,  
 Ther may no man han parfite blisses two,  
 This is to say, in erthe and eke in heaven ;  
 For though he kepe him fro the sinnes seven,  
 And eke from every branch of thilke tree,  
 Yet is ther so parfite felicittee,  
 And so grete ese and lust, in mariage,  
 That ever I am agast, now in min age,  
 That I shal leden now somery a lif,  
 So delicat, withouten wo or strif,  
 That I shal han min heaven in erthe here ;  
 For sin that veray heaven is bought so dere,  
 With tribulation and gret penance,  
 How shuld I than, living in swiche plesance  
 As alle wedded men don with hir wives,  
 Come to the blisse ther Crist eterne on live is ?  
 This is my drede, and ye, my brethren tweie,  
 Assoileth me this question I preie.

Justinus, which that hated his folie,  
 Answerd anon right in his japerie,  
 And for he wold his long tale abregge,  
 He wolde non auctoritee allege,  
 But sayde, Sire, so ther be noth obstacle  
 Other than this, God of his hie miracle,  
 And of his mercy, may so for you werche,  
 That er ye have your rights of holy cherche



Ye may repent of wedded mannes lif,  
 In which ye sain wher is no wo ne strif;  
 And elles God forbede but if he sent  
 A wedded man his grace him to repent  
 Wel often, rather than a single man:  
 And therefore, Sire, the best rede that I can,  
 Despeire you noi, but haveth in memorie  
 Paraventure she may be your Purgatorie;  
 She may be Goddes mene and Goddes whippe,  
 Than shal you soule up unto heaven skippe  
 Swifter than doth an arow of a bow.  
 I hope to God hereafter ye shal know  
 That ther n'is non so gret felicitee  
 In mariage, ne never more shal be,  
 That you shal let of your salvation,  
 So that ye use, as skill is and reson,  
 The lustes of your wif attemprely,  
 And that ye plesse hire nat to amorously,  
 And that ye kepe you eke from other sinne.  
 My Tale is don, for my wit is but thinne.  
 Beth not agast hereof, my brother dere,  
 But let us waden out of this matere.  
 The Wif of Bathe, if ye han understond,  
 Of pitee, which ye now han in hond,  
 Declared ful wel in litel space.  
 Kureth now wel, God have you in his grace!  
 And with this word this Justine and his brother  
 Han take hir leve, and eche of hem of other.  
 And whan they saw that it must nedes be,  
 They wroughten so by sleighte and wise trectee  
 That she this maiden, which that Maius hight,  
 As hastily as ever that she might,  
 Shal wedded be unto this January.  
 I trow it were to longe you to tary,  
 If I you told of every script and bond  
 By which that she was feoffed in this lond,  
 Or for to rekken of hire rich array.  
 But, finally, ycomen is the day  
 That to the chirche both ben they went  
 For to receive the holy sacrament.  
 Forth cometh the preeft, with stole about his neckke,  
 And bade hire be like Sara and Rebekke  
 In wisdom and in trouthe of mariage;  
 And sayd his orisons, as is usage,  
 And crouched hem, and bade God shuld hem blesse,  
 And made all siker ynow with holinesse.  
 Thus ben they wedded with solemnitee;  
 And at the feste sitteth he and she,  
 With other worthy folk, upon the deis.  
 Al ful of joye and blisse is the paleis,  
 And ful of instruments, and of vitaille  
 The moste deinteous of all Itaille.  
 Beforn hem stood swiche instruments of soun  
 That Orpheus, ne of Thebes Amphion,  
 Ne maden never swiche a melodie:  
 At every cours in came loud minstrelcie,  
 That never Joab tromped for to here,  
 Ne he Theodomas yet half so clere  
 At Thebes whan the citee was in doute.  
 Bacchus the win him skinketh all aboute,  
 And Venus laugheth upon every wight,  
 (For January was become hire knight,  
 And wolde both assaien his corage  
 In libertee and eke in mariage)

And with hire firebrond in hire hond aboute  
 Danceth before the bride and all the route.  
 And certainly I dare right wel say this,  
 Ymeneus, that god of Wedding is,  
 Saw never his lif so mery a wedded man.

Hold thou thy pees, thou poet Marcian,  
 That writest us that ilke wadding mery  
 Of hire Philologie and him Mercurie,  
 And of the songes that the Muses songe;  
 To smal is both thy pen and eke thy tonge  
 For to descriven of this mariage.  
 Whan tendre Youth hath wedded stouping Age,  
 Ther is swiche mirth that it may not be writen:  
 Assaieth it yourself, than may ye witen  
 If that I lie or non in this matere.

Maius, that sit with so benigne a chere,  
 Hire to behold it semed Faerie.  
 Quene Hester looked never with swiche an eye  
 On Assuere, so meke a look hath she.  
 I may you not devise all hire beautee;  
 But this moch of hire beautee tell I may,  
 That she was like the brighte morwe of May,  
 Fulfilled of all beautee and plesance.

This January is ravished in a trance  
 At every time he loketh in hire face;  
 But in his herte he gan hire to manace  
 That he that night in armes wold hire streine  
 Harder than ever Paris did Haleine.  
 But natheles yet had he gret pitee  
 That thilke night offenden hire must he,  
 And thought, alas! o tendre creature!  
 Now wolde God ye mighten wel endure  
 All my corage; it is so sharpe and kene  
 I am agast ye shal it nat sustene!  
 But God forbede that I did all my might!  
 Now wolde God that it were waxen night,  
 And that the night wold lasten ever mo!  
 I wold that all this peple were ago!  
 And, finally, he doth all his labour,  
 As he best mighte, saving his honour,  
 To heste him fro the mete in subtil wise.

The time came that reson was to rise,  
 And after that men dance and drinken fast,  
 And spices all about the hous they cast,  
 And ful of joye and blisse is every man,  
 All but a squier that highte Damian,  
 Which carf befor the knight ful many a day:  
 He was so raviht on his Lady May,  
 That for the veray paine he was nie wood;  
 Almost he swelt, and swouned ther he stood:  
 So fore hath Venus hurt him with hire brond  
 As that she bare it dancing in hire hond;  
 And to his bed he went him hastily:  
 No more of him as at this time speke I,  
 But ther I let him wepe ynow and plaine,  
 Til freshe May wol rewen on his peine.

O perilous fire that in the bedstraw bredeth!  
 O famuler so that his servise bedeth!  
 O servant traitor, false of holy hewe,  
 Like to the nedder in bosom fle untrew,  
 God shelde us alle from your acquaintance!  
 O January! drunken in plesance  
 Of mariage, see how thy Damian,  
 Thin owen squier and thy boren man,

Entendeth for to do thee vilanie :

God grant thee thin homly so to espie,  
For in this world n'is werse pestilence  
Than homly so all day in thy presence.

Performed hath the sonne his arke diurne,  
No longer may the body of him sojourne  
On the orisont, as in that latitude ;  
Night, with his mantel that is derke and rude,  
Gan oversprede the hemisperie aboute,  
For which departed is this lusty route  
Fro January, with thank on every side.  
Home to hir houses lustily they ride,  
Ther as they don hir thinges as hem left,  
And whan they saw hir time gon to rest.

Sone after that this hastif January  
Wol go to bed, he wol no longer tary.  
He drinketh Ipocras, clarre, and Vernage,  
Of spices hot, to encrefen his corage ;  
And many a letuarie had he ful fine,  
Swiche as the curfed monk Dan Constantine  
Hath written in his book *De Coitu* ;  
To ete hem all he wolde nothing eschue :

And to his priuee frendes thus sayd he :  
For Goddes love, as sone as it may be,  
Let voiden all this hous in curteis wife.  
And they han don right as he wol devise.

Men drinken, and the travers drawe anon ;  
The bride is brought a-bed as still as ston :  
And whan the bed was with the preest yblessed  
Out of the chambre hath every wight him dressed,  
And January hath fast in armes take  
His freshe May, his paradis, his make.  
He lulleth hire, he kisseth hire ful oft ;  
With thicke bristles of his berd unsoft,  
Like to the skin of houndfish, sharp as brere,  
(For he was shave al newe in his manere)  
He rubbeth hire upon hire tendre face,  
And sayde thus ; Alas ! I mote trespace  
To you my spouse, and you gretly offend,  
Or time come that I wol down descend :  
But natheles considereth this, (quod he)  
Ther n'is no werkman, whatsoever he be,  
That may both werken wel and hastily :  
This wol be don at leiser parfitly.

It is no force how longe that we play ;  
In trewe wedlock coupled be we tway ;  
And blessed be the yoke that we ben inne,  
For in our actes may ther be no sinne.  
A man may do no sinne with his wif,  
Ne hurt himselfen with his owen knif,  
For we have leve to play us by the lawe.

Thus laboureth he til that the day gan dawne,  
And than he taketh a sop in fine clarre,  
And upright in his bed than sitteth he.  
And after that he sang ful loud and clere,  
And kist his wif, and maketh wanton chere.  
He was al coltish, ful of ragerie,  
And ful of jergon as a flecked pie.  
The slacke skin about his necke shaketh  
While that he sang, so chanteth he and craketh.  
But God wot what that May thought in hire herte  
Whan she him saw up sitting in his sherte,  
In his night cap, and with his necke lene :  
She praiseth not his playing worth a bene.

Than sayd he thus ; My reste wol I take,  
Now day is come, I may no longer wake ;  
And doun he layd his hed and slept til prime.  
And afterward, whan that he saw his time,  
Up riseth January, but freshe May  
Held hire in chambre til the fourth day,  
As usage is of wives for the beste ;  
For every labour somtime moste han reste,  
Or elles longe may he not endure ;  
This is to say, no lives creature,  
Be it of fish, or brid, or best, or man.

Now wol I speke of woful Damian,  
That langureth for love, as ye shul here,  
Therefore I speke to him in this manere.  
I say, O fely Damian, alas !

Answer to this demand as in this cas ;  
How shalt thou to thy lady freshe May  
Tellen thy wo ? she wol alway say nay ;  
Eke if thou speke she wol thy wo bewrein :  
God be thin help ! I can no better seip.

This sike Damian in Venus fire  
So brenneth that he dieth for desire,  
For which he put his lif in aventure,  
No lenger might he in this wise endure.  
But prively a penner gan he borwe,  
And in a lettre wrote he all his forwe,  
In manere of a complaint or a lay,  
Unto his faire freshe Lady May,  
And in a purse of silk heng on his sherte  
He hath it put, and layd it at his herte.

The mone that at none was thilke day  
That January hath wedded freshe May,  
In ten of Taure was into Cancer gliden,  
So long hath Maius in hire chambre abiden,  
As custome is unto thise nobles alle.  
A bride shal not eten in the halle  
Til dayes four, or thre days at the leste,  
Ypassed ben, than let hire go to feste.  
The fourthe day complete fro none to none,  
Whan that the highe messe was ydone,  
In halle sat this January and May,  
As fresh as is the brighte somers day ;  
And so besel how that this goode man  
Remembred him upon this Damian,  
And sayde, Seinte Matie, how may it be  
That Damian entendeth not to me ?  
Is he ay sike ? or how ma this betide ?

His squiers, which that stoden ther beside,  
Excused him because of his siknesse,  
Which letted him to don his besinesse ;  
Non other cause mighte make him tary.

That me forthinketh, quod this January ;  
He is a gentil squier by my trouthe,  
If that he died, it were gret harme and routhe ;  
He is as wise, discret, and as secree,  
As any man I wote of his degree,  
And therto manly and eke servisable,  
And for to ben a thrifty man right able.  
But after mete, as sone as ever I may,  
I wol myfelfe visite him, and eke May,  
To don him all the comfort that I can.  
And for that word him blessed every man,  
That of his bountee and his gentillesse  
He wolde so comforten in siknesse.

## THE MARCHANTES TALE.

His ~~lady~~, for it was a gentil dede,  
 Dame, quod this January, take good hede  
 After mete ye with your women alle,  
 (Whan that ye ben in chambre out of this halle)  
 That all ye gon to see this Damian;  
~~Whan~~ ~~him~~ ~~disple~~, he is a gentil man,  
 And telleth him that I wol him visite,  
 Have I no thing but rested me a lite:  
 And spede you faste, for I wol abide  
 Til that ye slepen faste by my side.  
 And with that word he gan unto him calle  
 A ~~squire~~ ~~that~~ ~~was~~ marshal of his halle,  
 And told him certain thinges that he wolde.  
 This freshe May hath streight hire way yhold,  
 With all hire women, unto Damian:  
 Down by his beddes side sit she than,  
 Comforting him as goodly as she may.  
 This Damian, whan that his time he say,  
 In secree wise his purse and eke his bill,  
 In which that he ywritten had his will,  
 Hath put into hire hond withouten more,  
 Save that he siked wonder depe and sore,  
 And softly to hire right thus sayd he;  
 Mercie and that ye nat discover me,  
 For I am ~~deceit~~ that this thing be kid.  
 His purse hath she in with hire bosome hid,  
 And went hire way: ye get no more of me:  
 But unto January ycome is she,  
 That on his beddes side sate ful soft.  
 He taketh hire and kisseth hire ful oft,  
 And layd him down to slepe, and that anon.  
 She feined hire as that she muste gon  
 Ther as ye wote that every wight mot nede;  
 And whan she of this bill hath taken hede,  
 She rent it all to cloutes at the last;  
 And in the privce softly it cast.  
 Who studieth now but faire freshe May?  
 Adoun by olde January she lay,  
 That slepte til the cough had him awaked.  
 Anon he prayd hire stripen hire al naked,  
 He wolde of hire, he said, have som plesance,  
 And said hire clothes did him encombrance.  
 And she obeieth him, be hire lese or loth.  
 But lest that precious folk be with me wroth,  
 How that he wrought I dare nat to you tell,  
 Or wheder hire thought it paradis or hell:  
 But ther I let hem werken in hir wise  
 Til eveesong rang, and that they must arise.  
 Were it by destinee or aventure,  
 Were it by influence or by nature,  
 Or constellation, that in swiche estat  
 The heven stood at that time fortunat,  
 As for to put a bill of Venus werkes  
 (For alle thing hath time, as sayn thise clerkes)  
 To any woman for to get hire love,  
 I cannot say but grete God above,  
 That knoweth that non act is causeles,  
 He deme of all, for I wol hold my pees.  
 But soth is this, how that this freshe May  
 Hath taken swiche impressioun that day  
 Of pitee on this like Damian,  
 That fro hire herte she ne driven can  
 The remembrance for to don him ese.  
 Certain (thought she) whom that this thing displese

I rekke not, for here I him assure  
 To love him best of any creature,  
 Though he no more hadde than his sherte.  
 Lo, pitee renneth sone in gentil herte:  
 Here may ye seen how excellent franchise  
 In women is whan they hem narwe avise.  
 Som tyraunt is, as ther ben many on,  
 That hath an herte as hard as any ston,  
 Which wold han lette him sterven in the place  
 Wel rather than han granted him hire grace.  
 And hem rejoycen in hir cruel pride,  
 And rekken not to ben an homicide.  
 This gentil May, fulfilled of pitee,  
 Right of hire hond a lettre maketh she,  
 In which she granteth him hire veray grace:  
 Ther lacked nought but only day and place  
 Wher that she might unto his lust suffice;  
 For it shal be right as he wol devise.  
 And whan she saw hire time upon a day  
 To visiten this Damian goth this May,  
 And sotilly this lettre down she threst  
 Under his pilwe, rede it if him lest.  
 She taketh him by the hond, and hard him twiss,  
 So secretly that no wight of it wist,  
 And bade him ben all hol; and forth she went  
 To January whan he for hire sent.  
 Up riseth Damian the nexte morwe,  
 Al passed was his siknesse and his sorwe,  
 He kembeth him, he proineth him and piketh;  
 He doth all that his lady lust and liketh;  
 And eke to January he goth as lowe  
 As ever did a dogge for the bowe.  
 He is so plesant unto every man,  
 (For craft is all, who so that don it can)  
 That every wight is fain to speke him good;  
 And fully in his ladies grace he stood.  
 Thus let I Damian about his nede,  
 And in my Tale forth I wol procede.  
 Some clerkes holden that felicitee  
 Stant in delit, and therefore certain he,  
 This noble January, with all his night,  
 In honest wise as longeth to a knight,  
 Shope him to liven ful deliciously.  
 His housing, his array, as honestly  
 To his degree was maked as a kinges.  
 Amonges other of his honest thinges  
 He had a gardin walled all with ston,  
 So fayre a gardin wot I no wher non;  
 For out of doute I veraily suppose  
 That he that wrote the Romant of the Rose  
 Ne coude of it the beautee wel devise;  
 Ne Priapus ne mighte not suffice,  
 Though he be God of Gardins, for to tell  
 The beautee of the gardin, and the well,  
 That stood under a laurer alway grene:  
 Ful often time he Pluto and his quene  
 Proserpina and alle hir Faerie,  
 Disporten hem and maken melodie  
 Aboute that well, and daunced, as men told.  
 This noble knight, this January the old,  
 Swiche deintee hath in it to walke and pley,  
 That he wol suffre no wight bere the key  
 Sauf he himself, for of the smal wiket  
 He bare alway of silver a cliket.



With which whan that him list he it unshette;  
 And whan that he wold pay his wifes dette  
 In somer seson thider wold he go,  
 And May his wif, and no wight but they two;  
 And thinges which that were not don a-bedde  
 He in the gardin parfoumed hem, and spedde.

And in this wise many a mery day  
 Lived this January and freshe May:  
 But worldly joye may not alway endure  
 To January ne to no creature.

O foden hap, o thou Fortune unstable!  
 Like to the scorpion so deceivable,  
 That flatrest with thy hed whan thou wolt sting;  
 The tayl is deth thurgh thin eveniming.  
 O brotel joye! o swete poyson queinte!  
 O monstre! that so sotilly canst peinte  
 Thy giftes under hewe of stedfastnesse,  
 That thou deceivest bothe more and lesse,  
 Why hast thou January thus deceived,  
 That haddest him for thy ful frend received?  
 And now thou hast beraft him both his eyen,  
 For sorwe of which desireth he to dyen.

Alas! this noble January free,  
 Amidde his lust and his prosperitee,  
 Is waxen blind, and that al fodenly.  
 He wepeth and he wailleth pitously,  
 And therewithall the fire of jalousie  
 (Lest that his wif shuld fall in som folie)  
 So brent his herte that he wolde fain  
 That som man had both him and hire yflain;  
 For nother after his deth ne in his lif  
 Ne wold he that she were no love ne wif,  
 But ever live as a widewe in clothes blake,  
 Sole as the turtle that hath lost hire make.  
 But at the last, after a moneth or tway,  
 His sorwe gan asswagen, soth to say;  
 For whan he wist it might non other be,  
 He patiently toke his adversitee;  
 Save out of doute he ne may nat forgon  
 That he n'as jalous ever more in on;  
 Which jalousie it was so outrageous,  
 That neither in halle, ne in non other hous,  
 Ne in non other place never the mo,  
 He n'olde suffre hire for to ride or go  
 But if that he had honde on hire alway;  
 For which ful often wepeth freshe May,  
 That loveth Damian so brenningly,  
 That she mooste either dien fodenly  
 Or elles she mooste han him as hire left:  
 She waited whan hire herte wold to-brest.

Upon that other side Damian  
 Becomen is the sorwefullest man  
 That ever was, for neither night ne day  
 Ne might he speke a word to freshe May,  
 As to his purpos, of no swiche matere,  
 But if that January must it here,  
 That had an hand upon hire evermo;  
 But natheles by writing to and fro,  
 And privee signes, wist he what she ment,  
 And she knew eke the fin of his entent.

O January! what might it thee availle  
 Though thou might seen as fer as shippes saille?  
 For as good as blind to deceived be  
 As be deceived whan a man may see.

Lo Argus, which that had an hundred eyen,  
 For all that ever he coude pore or prien,  
 Yet was he blent, and, God wot, so ben mo,  
 That wenen willy that it be not so.  
 Passe over is an ese; I say no more.

This freshe May, of which I spake of yere,  
 In warm wex hath enprented the cliket  
 That January bare of the smal wicket,  
 By which into his gardin oft he went,  
 And Damian, that knew all hire entent,  
 The cliket contrefeted prively:  
 Ther n'is no more to say, but hastily  
 Som wonder by this cliket shal betide,  
 Which ye shul heren if ye wol abide.

O noble Ovide! soth sayest thou, God wote,  
 What sleight is it, if Love be long and hote,  
 That he n'ill find it out in som manere?  
 By Pyramus and Thisbe may men lere;  
 Though they were kept ful long and streit over all,  
 They ben accorded, rowning thurgh a wall,  
 Ther no wight coude han founden swiche a sleighte.  
 But now to purpos. Er that daies eighte  
 Were passed of the month of Juil, befill  
 That January hath caught so gret a wille  
 Thurgh egging of his wif, him for to play  
 In his gardin, and no wight but they tway,  
 That in a morwe unto this May said he,  
 Rise up, my wif, my love, my lady free!  
 The turtles vois is herd, myn owen swete!  
 The winter is gon, with all his raines wete.  
 Come forth now with thin eyen columbine;  
 Wel fairer ben thy brests than any wine.  
 The gardin is enclosed all aboute;  
 Come forth, my white spouse, for out of doute  
 Thou hast me wounded in myn herte, o wif!  
 No spot in thee n'as never in all thy lif.  
 Come forth, and let us taken our disport;  
 I chese thee for my wif and my comfort.

Swiche olde lewed wordes used he.  
 On Damian a signe made she,  
 That he shuld go before with his cliket.  
 This Damian hath opened the wicket,  
 And in he stert, and that in swiche manere  
 That no wight might him see neyther yhere,  
 And still he sit under a bush. Anon  
 This January, as blind as is a ston,  
 With Maius in his hand, and no wight mo,  
 Into this freshe gardin is ago,  
 And clappet to the wicket fodenly.

Now wif, quod he, here n'is but thou and I,  
 That art the creature that I best love;  
 For by that Lord that sit in heaven above  
 I hadde lever dien on a knif  
 Than thee offenden, dere trewe wif.  
 For Geddes sake thinke how I thee chees,  
 Not for no covetise douteles,  
 But only for the love I had to thee.  
 And though that I be old and may not see,  
 Beth to me trewe, and I wol tell you why;  
 Certes three thinges shal ye win therby;  
 First love of Crist, and to yourself honour,  
 And all min heritage, toun and tour;  
 I yeve it you, maketh chartres as you lest;  
 This shal be don to-morwe er sonne rest.

So willeth God, ay soule bring to blisse :  
 I pray you on this covenant ye me kisse.  
 And though that I be jealous wite me nought ;  
 Ye ben so depe enprented in my thought,  
 That whan that I consider your beautee,  
 And therewithall the unlikely elde of me,  
 I may not ce-tes, though I shoulde die,  
 Forbere to ben out of your compaignie  
 For veray love ; this is withouten doute :  
 Now kisse me, wif, and let us rome aboute.

This freshe May, whan she thise wordes herd,  
 Designely to January answerd,  
 But first forwarde she began to wepe :  
 I have, quod she, a soule for to kepe  
 As wel as ye, and also min honour,  
 And of my wif hood, thilke tendre flour  
 Which that I have assured in your hond,  
 Whan that the preest to you my body bond,  
 Wherefore I wol answer in this manere,  
 With leve of you, myn owen lord so dere.

I pray to God that never daw that day  
 That I ne starve, as soule as woman may,  
 If ever I do unto my kin that shame,  
 Or elles I empeire so my name  
 That I be false ; and if I do that lakke,  
 Do tripen me and put me in a sakke,  
 And in the nexte river do me drenche :

I am a gentil woman and no wenche.  
 Why speke ye thus ? but men ben ever unfrewe,  
 And women han represe of you ay newe.  
 Ye con non other daliance, I leve,  
 But speke to us as of untrust and repreve.

And with that word she saw wher Damian  
 Sat in the bush, and coughen she began ;  
 And with hire finger a signe made she  
 That Damian shoulde climb up on a tre  
 That charged was with fruit, and up he went ;  
 For veraily he knew all hire entent,  
 And every signe that she coude make,  
 Wel bet than January her own make ;  
 For in a lettre she had told him all  
 Of this matere, how that he werken shall.  
 And thus I let him sitting in the pery,  
 And January and May roming ful mery.

Bright was the day, and blow the firmament ;  
 Nebus of gold his streames down hath sent  
 To gladen every flour with his warmnesse ;  
 He was that time in Geminis I gesse,  
 But litel fro his declination  
 Of Cancer, Joves exaltation.

And so befell in that bright morwe tide,  
 That in the gardin, on the ferther side,  
 Pluto that is the King of Faerie,  
 And many a ladie in his compaignie  
 Folwing his wif, the Quene Proserpina,  
 Which that he ravished out of Ethna,  
 While that she gadred floures in the mede,  
 (In Claudian ye may the story rede,  
 How that hire in his grisely carte he sette)  
 This King of Faerie adoun him sette  
 Upon a benche of turves freshe and grene,  
 And right anon thus said he to his quene :

My wif, quod he, ther may no wight say nay,  
 The experience so preveth it every day,

The treson which that woman doth to man :  
 Ten hundred thousand stories tell I can  
 Notable of your untrouth and brotelnesse.

O Salomon ! richest of all richesse,  
 Fulfilled of sapience and wordly glorie,  
 Ful worthy ben thy wordes to memorie  
 To every wight that wit and reson can.  
 Thus praiseth he the bountee yet of man ;  
 Among a thousand men yet fond I on,  
 But of all women fond I never non.  
 Thus saith this king, that knewe your wickednesse :  
 And Jesus, *filius* Sirach, as I gesse,  
 He speketh of you but selden reverence.  
 A wilde fire, a corrupt pestilence,  
 So fall upon your bodies yet to-night.  
 Ne see ye not this honourable knight ?  
 Because, alas ! that he is blind and old  
 His owen man shal make him cokewold :  
 Lo wher he sit, the lechour, in the tree.  
 Now wol I graunten of my majestee  
 Unto this olde blinde worthy knight,  
 That he shal have again his eyen sight  
 Whan that his wif wol don him vilanie,  
 Than shal he knowen all hire harlotrie,  
 Both in represe of hire and other mo.

Ye, Sire, quod Proserpine, and wol ye so ?  
 Now by my modre Ceres soule I swere  
 That I shal yeve hire suffisant answer,  
 And alle women after for hire sake,  
 That though they ben in any gilt ytake,  
 With face bold they shul hemselve excuse,  
 And bere hem down that wolden hem accuse :  
 For lacke of answer non of us shul dien.  
 Al had ye seen a thing with both your eyen,  
 Yet shul we so visage it hardely,  
 And wepe, and swere, and chiden, subtilly,  
 That ye shul ben as lewed, as ben gees.

What rekketh me of your auctoritees ?  
 I wote wel that this Jewe, this Salomon,  
 Fond of us women fooles many on :  
 But though that he ne fond no good woman,  
 Ther hath yfonden many an other man  
 Women ful good, and trewe and vertuous,  
 Witnesse on hem that dwelte in Cristes hous ;  
 With martyrdom they preved hir constance,  
 The Roman gestes maken remembrance  
 Of many a veray trewe wif also.  
 But, Sire, ne be not wroth al be it so,  
 Though that he said he fond no good woman ;  
 I pray you take the sentence of the man ;  
 He ment thus, that in sovereign bountee  
 N'is non but God, no, nouthur he ne she.

Ey, for the veray God that n'is but on,  
 What maken ye so moche of Salomon ?  
 What though he made a temple, Goddes hous ?  
 What though he were riche and glorious ?  
 So made he eke a temple of false goddes ;  
 How might he don a thing that more forbode is ?  
 Parde as faire as ye his name emplastre,  
 He was a lechour and an idolastre,  
 And in his elde he veray God forfoke ;  
 And if that God ne hadde (as faithe the boke)  
 Spared him for his fathers sake, he sholde  
 Han lost his regne rather than he wold.

I fete nat of all the vilanie  
That he of women wrote a boterflie.  
I am a woman; nedes moſte I ſpeke,  
Or ſwell unto that time min herte breke:  
For ſin he ſaid that we ben janglerettes,  
As ever mote I brouken hole my trefles,  
I ſhal nat ſparen for no curteſie  
To ſpeke him harm that ſayth us vilanie.

Dame, quod this Pluto, be no lenger wroth,  
I yeve it up: but ſin I ſwore min oth,  
That I wold graunten him his ſight again,  
My word ſhal ſtand, that warne I you certain:  
I am a king, it ſit me not to lie.

And I, quod ſhe, am Quene of Faerie.  
Hire anſwere ſhe ſhal han I undertake;  
Let us no more wordes of it make.

Forſoth, quod he, I wol you not contrary.

Now let us turn again to January,  
That in the gardin with his faire May  
Singeth wel merier than the poppingay;  
You love I beſt, and ſhal, and other non.

So long about the alleyes is he gon,  
Til he was comen again to thilke pery  
Wher as this Damian ſitteth ful mery  
On high, among the freſhe leves grene.

This freſhe May, that is ſo bright and ſhene,  
Can for to ſike, and ſaid, Alas, my ſide!  
Now, Sire, quod ſhe, for ought that may betide,  
I moſte have of the peres that I ſee,  
Or I moſte die, ſo ſore longeth me  
To eten of the ſmale peres grene;  
Help for hire love that is of heven quene,  
I tell you wel a woman in my plit  
May have to fruit ſo gret an appetit,  
That ſhe may dien but ſhe of it have.

Alas! quod he, that I n'adde here a knave  
That coude cligbe: alas! alas! (quod he)  
For I am blinde. Ye, Sire, no force, quod ſhe;  
But wold ye vouchesauf, for Goddes ſake,  
The pery in with your armes for to take,  
(For wel I wot that ye miſtruſten me)  
Than wold I climben wel ynough, (quod ſhe)  
So I my fote might ſetten on your back.

Certes, ſaid he, therin ſhal be no lack,  
Might I you helpen with min herte blood.

He ſtoupeth down, and on his back ſhe ſtood,  
And caught hire by a twiſt; and up ſhe goth.  
(Ladies, I pray you that ye be not wroth;  
I can nat gloſe; I am a rude man:)

And ſodenly anon this Damian  
Can pullen up the ſmock, and in he throng.

And whan that Pluto ſaw this grete wrong,  
To January he yaf again his ſight,  
And made him ſee as wel as ever he might;  
And whan he thus had caught his ſight again  
Ne was ther never man of thing ſo fain:  
But on his wiſ his thought was ever mo.

Up to the tree he caſt his eyen two,

And ſaw how Damian his wife had dreſſed  
In ſwiche manere it may not beſt expreſſed,  
But if I wolde ſpeke uncurteily;  
And up he yaf a roring and a cry,  
As doth the mother whan the child ſhal die:  
Out! helpe! alas! harow! he gan to cry.  
O ſtronge lady ſtore, what doeſt thou?  
And ſhe anſwered, Sire, what aileth you?  
Have patience and reſon in your minde,  
I have you holpen on both your eyen blinde.  
Up peril of my ſoule, I ſhal nat lien,  
As me was taught to helpen with your eyen.  
Was nothing better for to make you ſee  
Than ſtrogle with a man upon a tree:  
God wot, I did it in ful good entent.

Strogle! quod he; ye, algate in it went.  
Gode yeve you both on ſhames deth to dien;  
He ſwived thee, I ſaw it with min eyen,  
And elles be I honged by the halfe.

Than is, quod ſhe, my medicine al falſe;  
For certainly if that ye mighten ſee,  
Ye wold not ſay thiſe wordes unto me.  
Ye have ſom glimſing, and no parfit ſight.

I ſee, quod he, as wel as ever I might  
(Thanked be God) with both min eyen two,  
And by my feith me thought he did thee ſo.

Ye maſe, ye maſen, good Sire, quod ſhe;  
This thank have I for I have made you ſee:  
Alas! quod ſhe, that ever I was ſo kind.

Now Dame, quod he, let al paſſe out of mind:  
Come down, my leſe, and if I have miſſaid,  
God helpe me ſo as I am evil appaid:  
But by my fadres ſoule I wende have ſein  
How that this Damian had by thee lein,  
And that thy ſmock had lein upon his breſt.

Ye, Sire, quod ſhe, ye may wene as you leſt:  
But, Sire, a man that weketh of his ſlepe,  
He may not ſodenly wel taken kepe  
Upon a thing, ne ſeen it parfitly,  
Til that he be adawed veraily:  
Right ſo a man that lang hath blind ybe,  
He may not ſodenly ſo wel yſee,  
Firſt whan his ſight is newe comen agein.  
As he that hath a day or two yſein.  
Til that your ſight yfateled be a while,  
Ther may ful many a ſighte you begile.  
Beware, I pray you, for by heven King  
Ful many a man weneth to ſee a thing,  
And it is all another than it ſemeth:  
He which that miſconceiveth oft miſdemeth.

And with that word ſhe lep down fro the tree.  
This January who is glad but he?  
He kiſſeth hire and clippeth hire ful oft,  
And on hire wombe he ſtoketh hire ful ſoft,  
And to his paleis home he hath hire lad.  
Now, goode men, I pray you to be glad.

Thus endeth here my Tale of Januarie;  
God bleſſe us, and his moder Seinte Marie!



## THE SQUIERES PROLOGUE.

By Goddes mercy, sayde oure Hoste tho,  
 Now swiche a wif I preie God kepe me fro.  
 Lo, swiche sleighes and subtiltees  
 In women ben; for ay as besy as bees  
 Ben they us fely men for to deceive,  
 And from a sothe wol they ever weive:  
 By this Marchantes Tale it preveth wel.  
 But natheles, as-trewe as any stele  
 I h've a wif, though that she poure be,  
 Out of hire tonge a labbing threwe is she;  
 And yet she hath an hepe of vices mo.  
 Therof no force; let all swiche thinges go.  
 But wete ye what? in conseil be it seyde,  
 Me reweth fore I am unto hire teyde;  
 For and I shulde rekene every vice  
 Which that she hath, ywis I were to nice;

And cause why, it shulde reported be  
 And told to hire of som of this compaignie,  
 (Of whom it nedeth not for to declare,  
 Sin women connen-utter swiche chaffare)  
 And eke my wit sufficeth not therto  
 To tellen all; wherfore my Tale is do.

Squier, come ner, if it youre wille be,  
 And say somwhat of love, for certes ye  
 Connen theron as moche as any man.  
 Nay, Sire, quod he, but swiche thing as I can  
 With hertly wille, for I wol not rebelle  
 Agein your lust, a Tale wol I telle.  
 Have me excused if I speke amis:  
 My wille is good; and lo, my Tale is this.

## THE SQUIERES TALE\*.

At Sarra, in the lond of Tartarie,  
 Ther dwelt a king that werreied Ruffie,  
 Thurgh which ther died many a doughty man.  
 This noble king was cleped Cambuscan,  
 Which in his time was of so gret renoun,  
 That ther n'as no wher in no regioun

\* The King of Araba sendith to Cambuscan King of Sarra a horic and a sword of rare qualite, and to his daughter Canace a glas and a ring, by the virtue whereof the understandeth the language of all fowles. Much of this Tale is either lost or else never finished by Chaucer. *erry.*

So excellent a lorde in alle thing;<sup>1</sup>  
 Him lacked nought that longeth to a king,  
 As of the secte of which that he was borne.  
 He kept his lay to which he was ysworne,  
 And therto he was hardy, wise, and riche,  
 And pitous and just, and alway yliche,  
 Trewe of his word, benigne and honourable,  
 Of his corage as any centre stable,  
 Yong, fresh, and strong, in armes desirous,  
 As any bachelor of all his hous.  
 A faire person he was and fortunate,  
 And kept alway so wel real estat,

That ther n'as no wher fwicher another man.

This noble king, this Tartre Cambuscan,  
Hadde two sones by Elfeta his wif,  
Of which the eldest sone highte Algaris,  
That other was ycleped Camballo.

A doughter had this worthy king also,  
That yongest was, and highte Canace :  
But for to tellen you all hire beautee  
It lith not in my tonge ne in my conning ;  
I dare not undertake so high a thing :  
Min English eke is insufficient ;  
It muste ben a rethor excellent,  
That coude his colours longing for that art,  
If he shuld hire descriven any part :  
I am non fwicher ; I mote speke as I can.

And so befel that whan this Cambuscan  
Hath twenty winter borne his diademe,  
As he was wont fro yere to yere I deme,  
He let the feste of his nativitee  
Don crie thurghout Sarra his citee  
The last idus of March after the yere.

Phebus the sonne ful jolif was and clere,  
Fer he was nigh his exaltation  
In Martes face, and in his mansion  
In Aries, the colerike hote signe :  
Ful lusty was the wether and benigne,  
For which the soules again the sonne shene :  
What for the seson and the yonge grene  
Ful longe songen hir affections :  
Hem semed han gotten hem protections  
Against the swerd of winter kene and cold.

This Cambuscan, of which I have you told,  
In real vestiments, sit on his deis  
With diademe, ful high in paleis,  
And holt his feste so solempne and so riche,  
That in this world ne was ther non it liche,  
Of which if I shall tellen all the array,  
Than wold it occupie a somers day ;  
And eke it nedeth not for to devise  
At every cours the order of hir service :  
I wol not tellen of hir strange sewes,  
Ne of hir swannes ne hir heronsewes :  
Eke in that lond, as tellen knightes old,  
Ther is som mete that is ful deintee hold,  
That in his lond men recche of it ful smal :  
Ther n'is no man that may reporten al.  
I wol not tarien you, for it is prime,  
And for it is no fruit, but losse of time ;  
Unto my purpos I wol have recours.

And so befelle, that after the thridde cours,  
While that this king sit thus in his nobley,  
Herking his ministralles hir thinges pley,  
Before him at his bord deliciously,  
In at the halle dore al sodenly  
Ther cam a knight upon a stede of bras,  
And in his hond a brod mirrour of glas ;  
Upon his thombe he had of gold a ring,  
And by his side a naked swerd hanging ;  
And up he rideth to the highe bord.  
In all the halle ne was ther spoke a word  
For mervaille of this knight ; him to behold  
Ful besily they waiten yong and old.

This strange knight that come this sodenly,  
Al armed save his hed ful richely,

Salueth king and quene, and lordes alle,  
By order as they faten in the halle,  
With so high reverence and observance,  
As wel in speche as in his contenance,  
That Gawain with his olde curtesie,  
Though he were come agen out of Faer  
Ne coude him not amenden with a word  
And after this befor the highe bord  
He with a manly vois sayd his message,  
After the forme used in his langage,  
Withouten vice of fillable or of letter :  
And for his tale shulde seme the better,  
Accordant to his wordes was his chere,  
As techeth art of speche hem that it lere.  
Al be it that I cannot soune his stile,  
Ne cannot climben over so high a stile,  
Yet say I this, as to comun entent,  
Thus much amounteth all that ever he ment,  
If it so be that I have it in mind.

He sayd, The King of Arabie and of Inde,  
My liege Lord, on this solempne day,  
Salueth you as he best can and may,  
And sendeth you, in honour of your feste,  
By me, that am al redy at your heste,  
This stede of bras, that esily and wel  
Can in the space of a day naturel  
(This is to sayn, in four-and-twenty houres)  
Wher so you list, in drought or elles shoures,  
Beren your body into every place  
To which your herte willeth for to pace,  
Withouten wemme of you thurgh foule or faire ;  
Or if you list to fleen as high in the aire  
As doth an egle, whan him list,  
This same stede shal bere you evermore,  
Withouten harme, till ye be ther you lest,  
(Though that ye slepen on his back or rest)  
And turne again with writhing of a pin ;  
He that it wrought he coude many a gin ;  
He waited many a constellation  
Or he had don this operation,  
And knew ful many a sele and many a bond.

This mirrour eke that I have in min hond  
Hath fwicher a might that men may in it see  
Whan ther shal falle any adversitee  
Unto your regne or to yourself also,  
And openly who is your friend or fo ;  
And over all this, if any lady bright  
Hath set hire herte on any maner wight,  
If he be false, she shal his treson see,  
His newe love, and all his subtiltee,  
So openly, that ther shal nothing hide.

Wherefore again this lusty somer tide  
This mirrour and this ring, that ye may se,  
He hath sent to my Lady Canace,  
Your excellent doughter that is here.

The vertue of this ring, if ye wol here,  
Is this, that if hire list it for to were  
Upon hire thombe, or in hire purse it bere,  
Ther is no foule that fleeth under heven  
That she ne shal wel understond his steven,  
And know his mening openly and plaine,  
And answer him in his langage again ;  
And every gras that groweth upon rote  
She shal eke know, and whom it wol do hote,

All be his woundes never so depe and wide.

This naked swerd, that hangeth by my side,  
Swiche vertue hath, that what man that it smite,  
Thurghout his armure it wol kerve and bite,  
Were it as thicke as is a braunched oke;  
And what man that is wounded with the stroke  
shal never be hole, til that you list of grace  
Tooken him with the platte in thilke place  
Ther he is hurt; this is as much to sain  
Ye moten with the platte swerd again  
Stroken him in the wound and it wol close.  
This is the veray soth withouten glose:  
faileth not while it is in your hold.

And than this knight hath thus his tale told  
He rideth out of halle, and doun he light.  
His stede, which that shone as sonne bright,  
Stant in the court as stille as any ston.  
This knight is to his chambre ladde anon,  
And is unarmed, and to the mete yfette.  
Thise presents ben ful richelich yfette,  
This is to sain, the swerd and the mirrour,  
And borne anon into the highe tour  
With certain officers ordained therfore;  
And unto Canace the ring is bore  
Solempnely, ther she sat at the table.  
But sikerly, withouten any fable,  
The hors of bras, that may not be remued,  
It stant as it were to the ground yglued:  
Ther may no man out of the place it drive  
For non engine of windas or polive:  
And cause why, for they con not the craft,  
And therfore in the place they han it last  
Til that the knight hath taught hem the manere  
To voiden him, as ye shal after here.

Gret was the prees that swarmed to and fro  
To gauren on this hors that stondeth so;  
For it so high was, and so brod and long,  
So wel proportioned for to be strong,  
Right as it were a stede of Lumbardie,  
Therwith so horfly and so quick of eye  
As it a gentil Poileis courser were;  
For certes fro his tayl unto his ere  
Nature ne art ne coud him not amend  
In no degree, as all the peple wend.

But evermore hir moste wonder was  
How that it coude gon and was of bras:  
It was of Faerie, as the peple semed:  
Discrete folk diversely han demed:  
As many heds as many wittes ben.  
They murmured as doth a swarme of been,  
And made skilles after hir fantasies,  
Rehering of the olde poetries,  
And sayd it was ylike the Pegasee,  
The hors that hadde winges for to flee,  
Or elles it was the Grekes hors Sinon,  
That broughte Troye to destruction,  
As men moun in thise olde gestes rede.

Min herte (quod on) is evermore in drede;  
I trow som men of armes ben therin,  
That shapen hem this citee for to win:  
It were right good that al swiche thing were know.  
Another rownded to his felaw low,  
And sayd, He lieth, for it is rather like  
An apparence ymade by som magike,

As jogelours plaien at thise festes grete.  
Of sondry doutes thus they jangle and trete,  
As lewed peple demen comunly  
Of thinges that ben made more subtilly  
Than they can in hir lewednesse comprehende:  
They demen gladly to the badder ende.

And som of hem wondred on the mirrour  
That born was up in to the maister tour,  
How men mighte in it swiche thinges see.

Another answered and sayd, It might wel be  
Naturelly by compositions

Of angles and flie reflections;  
And saide that in Rome was swiche on.  
They speke of Alhazen and Vitellon,  
And Aristotle, that writen in hir lives  
Of queinte mirrours and of prospectives,  
As knowen they that han hir bookes herd.

And other folk han wondred on the swerd  
That wolde percen thurghout every thing;  
And fell in speche of Telephus the king,  
And of Achilles for his queinte spere,  
For he coude with it bothe hele and dere,  
Right in swiche wise as men may with the swerd  
Of which right now ye have yourselven herd.  
They speken of sondry harding of metall,  
And speken of medicines therwithall,  
And how and whan it shuld yharded be,  
Which is unknow algates unto me.

Tho speken they of Canacees ring,  
And saiden all that swiche a wonder thing  
Of craft of ringes herd they never non,  
Save that he Moises and King Salomon  
Hadden a name of conning in swiche art.  
Thus sain the peple, and drawn hem apart.

But natheles som saiden that it was  
Wonder to maken of ferne ashen glas,  
And yet is glas nought like ashen of ferne;  
But for they han yknowen it so ferne,  
Therfore ceseth hir jangling and hir wonder.

As fore wondren som on cause of thonder,  
On ebbe and flood, on gossomer and on mist,  
And on all thing til that the cause is wist.

Thus janglen they, and demen and devise,  
Til that the king gan fro his bord arise.

Phebus hath left the angle meridional,  
And yet ascending was the beste real,  
The gentil Leon, with his Aldrian,  
Whan that this Tartre king, this Cambuscan,  
Rose from his bord, ther as he sat ful hie:  
Before him goth the loude minstralcie,  
Til he come to his chambre of parements,  
Ther as they founden divers instrumentis,  
That it is like an heven for to here.

Now dauncen lusty Venus children dere,  
For in the Fish hir lady sat ful hie,  
And loketh on hem with a frendly eye.

This noble king is set upon his trone,  
This straunge knight is set to him ful sone,  
And on the daunce he goth with Canace.

Here is the reveill and the jolitee  
That is not able a dull man to devise:  
He must han knowen Love and his servise,  
And ben a feilich man, as fresh as May,  
That shulde you devisen swiche array.



Who coude tellen you the forme of daunces  
So uncouth, and so freshe contenaunces,  
Swiche subtil lokings and dissimulings,  
For dred of jalous mennes apperceivings?  
No man but Launcelot, and he is ded;  
Therefore I passe over all this lustyhed;  
I say no more, but in this jolinesse  
I lete hem til men to the souper hem dresse.

The steward bit the spices for to hie,  
And eke the win, in all this melodie;  
The ushers and the squierie ben gon,  
The spices and the win is come anon:  
They ete and drinke, and whan this had an end  
Unto the temple, as reson was, they wend:  
The service don, they soupen all by day.

What nedeth you reherfen hir array?  
Eche man wot wel that at a kinges fest  
Is plentee to the most and to the lest,  
And deintees mo than ben in my knowing.

At after souper goth this noble king  
To seen this hors of bras, with all a route  
Of lordes and of ladies him aboute.  
Swiche wondring was ther on this hors of bras,  
That fin the gret assege of Troye was  
Ther as men wondred on an hors also,  
Ne was ther swiche a wondring as was tho.  
But, finally, the king asketh the knight  
The vertue of this courser and the might,  
And praied him to tell his governaunce.

This hors anon gan for to trip and daunce.  
Whan that the knight laid hond up on his rein,  
And saide, Sire, ther n'is no more to fain,  
But whan you list to riden any where  
Ye moten trill a pin stant in his ere,  
Which I shal tellen you betwixt us two,  
Ye moten nempne him to what place also,  
Or to what contree that you list to ride.

And whan ye come ther as you list abide,  
Bid him descend, and trill another pin,  
(For therin lieth the effect of all the gin)  
And he wol down descend and don your will,  
And in that place he wol abiden still;  
Though all the world had the contrary swore,  
He shal not thennes be drawe ne be bore:  
Or if you list to bid him thennes gon,  
Trille this pin, and he wol vanish anon  
Out of the sight of every maner wight,  
And come agen, be it by day or night,  
Whan that you list to clepen him again  
In swiche a guise as I shal to you fain  
Betwixen you and me, and that ful sone.  
Ride whan you list, ther n'is no more to done.

Enfourmed whan the king was of the knight,  
And hath conceived in his wit aright  
The maner and the forme of all this thing,  
Ful glad and blith this noble doughty king  
Repaireth to his revel as beforne.  
The bridel is in to the tour yborne,  
And kept among his jewels lese and dere:  
The hors vanish, I n'ot in what manere,  
Out of hir sight, ye get no more of me:  
But thus I lete in lust and jolitee  
This Cambuscan his lordes festeying  
Til that wel nigh the day began to spring.

*Part secunda.*

The norice of digestion, the slepe,  
Gan on hem winke, and bad hem taken kepe  
That mochel drinke and labour wol have rest,  
And with a galping mouth hem all he kest,  
And said, that it was time to lie adoun,  
For blood was in his dominatioun:

Cherisheth blood, natures frend, quod he.

They thanken him galping, by two, by three;  
And every wight gan drawe him to his rest,  
As slepe hem bade; they toke it for the best.

Hir dremes shal not now be told for me:  
Ful were hir hedes of fumositee,  
That causeth dreame, of which ther is no charge:  
They slepen till that it was prime large,  
The moste part, but it were Canace;  
She was ful mesurable, as women be;  
For of hire father had she take hire leve  
To gon to rest sone after it was eve;  
Here liste not appalled for to be,  
Nor on the morwe unfechtliche for to see,  
And slept hire firste slepe, and than awoke:  
For swiche a joy she in hire herte toke  
Both of hire queinte ring and of hire mirroure,  
That twenty time she chaunged hire colour.  
And in hire slepe right for the impressioun  
Of hire mirroure she had a visioun;  
Wherefore or that the sonne gan up glide  
She clepeth upon hire maistresse hire beside,  
And saide that hire luste for to arise.

This olde woman that ben gladly wife,  
As is hire maistresse, answerd hire anon,  
And said, Madam, whider wol ye gon  
Thus erly? for the folk ben all in rest.

I wol, quod she, arisen (for me lest  
No longer for to slepe) and walken aboute.

Hire maistresse clepeth women a gret route,  
And up they risen wel a ten or twelve;  
Up riseth freshe Canace hireselve,  
As rody and bright as the yonge sonne  
That in the Ram is foure degrees yronne;  
No higher was he whan she redy was;  
And forth she walketh esily a pas,  
Arrayed after the lusty seson sote  
Lightely for to playe, and walken on fote,  
Nought but with five or sixe of hire meene  
And in a trenche forth in the park goth she.

The vapour which that fro the erthe glode  
Maketh the sonne to seme rody and brode;  
But natheles it was so faire a sight  
That it made all hir hertes for to light,  
What for the seson and the morwening,  
And for the foules that she herde sing,  
For right anon she wiste what they ment  
Right by hir song, and knew al hir entent.

The knotte why that every tale is tolde,  
If it be taried til the lust be colde  
Of hem that han it herkened after yore,  
The favour passeth ever lenger the more  
For fulsumnesse of the prolixitee;  
And by that same reson thinketh me  
I shuld unto the knotte condescende,  
And maken of hire walking sone an ende.

Amidde a tree for-dry, as white as chalk,  
 As Canace was playing in hire walk,  
 Ther sat a faucon over hire hed ful hie  
 That with a pitous vois so gan to crie,  
 That all the wood resounded of hire cry,  
 And beten had hireself so pitously  
 With both hire winges til the rede blood  
 Ran endelong the tree ther as she stood;  
 And ever in on alway she cried and shrighit,  
 And with hire bek hireselfen she so twighit,  
 That ther n'is tigre ne no cruel best  
 That dwelleth other in wood or in forest  
 That n'olde han wept, if that he wepen coude,  
 For sorwe of hire, she shrighit alway so loude.

For ther was never yet no man on live,  
 If that he coude a faucon wel describe,  
 That herde of swiche another of fayrenesse  
 As wel of plumage as of gentillese  
 Of shape, of all that might yrekened be:  
 A faucon peregrine semed she  
 Of fremde lond, and ever as she stood  
 She swouned now and now for lack of blood,  
 Til wel neigh is she fallen fro the tree.

This faire kinges doughter Canace,  
 That on hire finger bare the queinte ring,  
 Thurgh which she understood wel every thing  
 That any foule may in his leden fain,  
 And coude answer him in his leden again,  
 Hath understonden what this faucon seyde,  
 And wel neigh for the routhe almost she deyde;  
 And to the tree she goth ful hastily,  
 And on this faucon loketh pitously,  
 And held hire lap abroad, for wel she wist  
 The faucon muste fallen from the twist  
 Whan that she swouned next, for faute of blood.  
 A longe while to waiten hire she stood,  
 Til at the last she spake in this manere  
 Unto the hawk, as ye shul after here:

What is the cause, if it be for to tell,  
 That ye ben in this furial peine of hell?  
 Quod Canace unto this hawk above;  
 Is this for sorwe of deth or losse of love?  
 For as I trow thise be the causes two  
 That causen most a gentil herte wo.  
 Of other harme it nedeth not to speke,  
 For ye yourself upon yourself awreke,  
 Which preveth wel that other ire or drede  
 Mote ben encheson of your cruel dede,  
 Sin that I se non other wight you chace.  
 For the love of God as doth yourselfen grace;  
 Or what may be your helpe? for west ne est  
 Ne saw I never er now no brid ne best  
 That ferde with himself so pitously.  
 Ye fle me with your sorwe veraily,  
 I have of you so gret compassioun.  
 For Goddes love come fro the tree adoun,  
 And as I am a kinges doughter trewe,  
 If that I veraily the causes knewe  
 Of your disese, if it lay in my might  
 I wold amend it or that it were night,  
 As wisly help me the gret God of kind;  
 And herbes shal I right ynough yfind  
 To helen with your hurtes hastily.

Tho shrighit this faucon yet more pitously  
 That ever she did, and fell to ground anon,  
 And lith aswouned as ded as lith a ston.

Til Canace hath in hire lappe hire take  
 Unto that time she gan of swouned awake,  
 And after that she out of swouned abraide  
 Right in hire haukes leden thus she sayde:

That pitee renneth sone in gentil herte  
 (Feling his similitude in peines smerte)  
 Is proved alle day, as men may see  
 As wel by werke as by auctoritee,  
 For gentil herte kitheth gentillese:  
 I see wel that ye have on my distresse  
 Compassion, my faire Canace,  
 Of veray womanly benignitee  
 That Nature in your principles hath set.  
 But for non hope for to fare the bet,  
 But for to obey unto your herte free,  
 And for to maken other yware by me,  
 As by the whelpe chastised is the leon,  
 Right for that cause and that conclusion,  
 While that I have a leiser and a space,  
 Min harme I wol confessen er I pace.  
 And ever while that on hire sorwe told  
 That other wept as she to water wold,  
 Til that the faucon bad hire to be still,  
 And with a like right thus she said hire till:

Ther I was bred (alas that ilke day!)  
 And fostred in a roche of marble gray  
 So tendrely, that nothing ailed me;  
 I ne wist not what was adversitee  
 Til I coude flee full high under the skie.  
 Tho dwelled a tercelet me faste by  
 That semed welle of alle gentillese,  
 Al were he ful of trefon and falsenesse.  
 It was so wrapped under humble chere,  
 And under bew of trowth in swiche manere,  
 Under plesance, and under besy peine,  
 That no wight coud have wend he coude feine,  
 So depe in greyn he died his coloures.  
 Right as a serpent hideth him under floures,  
 Til he may see his time for to bite,  
 Right so this god of Loves hypocrite  
 Doth so his ceremonies and obeisance,  
 And kepeth in semblaunt alle his observance  
 That founeth unto gentillese of love.  
 As on a tombe is all the faire above,  
 And under is the corps, swiche as ye wote,  
 Swiche was this hypocrite both cold and hote,  
 And in this wise he served his entent,  
 That save the fend non wiste what he ment;  
 Til he so long had weped and complained,  
 And many a yere his service to me fained,  
 Til that min herte, to pitous and to nice,  
 Al innocent of his crowned malice,  
 Forfere of his deth, as thoughte me,  
 Upon his othes and his seuretee  
 Graunted him love on this condition,  
 That evermo mi<sup>h</sup> honour and renoun  
 Were saved, both privee and apert;  
 This is to say, that after his desert  
 I yave him all min herte and all my thought,  
 (God wote and he that other wayes nought)  
 And toke his herte in chaunge of min for ay.  
 But soth is said, gon sithen is many a day  
 A trewe wight and a theef thinken not on.

And whan he saw the thing so fer ygon,  
 That I had granted him fully my love,  
 In swiche a guise as I have said above,



And yeven him my trewe herte as free  
 As he swore that he yaf his herte to me,  
 Anon this tigre, ful of doublenesse,  
 Fell on his knees with so gret humbleffe,  
 With so high reverence, as by his chere,  
 So like a gentil lover of manere,  
 So ravished, as it semed, for the joye,  
 That never Jason ne Paris of Troye,  
 Jason! certes ne never other man  
 Sin Lamech was, that alderfirst began  
 To loven two, as writen folk beforne,  
 Ne never litten the first man was borne,  
 Ne coude man by twenty thousand part  
 Contrefete the sophimes of his art,  
 Ne were worthy to unboole his galoche,  
 Ther doublenesse of faining shuld approche,  
 Ne coude so thanke a wight as he did me.  
 His maner was an heven for to see  
 To any woman, were she never so wise,  
 So painted he and kempt at point devise  
 As wel his wordes as his contenance :  
 And I so loved him for his obeisance,  
 And for the trouthe I demed in his herte,  
 That if so were that any thing him smerte,  
 Al were it never so lite, and I it wist,  
 Me thought I felt deth at myn herte twist.  
 And, shortly, so forth this thing is went,  
 That my will was his willes instrument;  
 This is to say, my will obeyed his will  
 In alle thing, as fer as reson fill,  
 Keping the boundes of my worship ever :  
 Ne never had I thing so lese ne lever  
 As him, God wot, ne never shal no mo.

This lasteth lenger than a yere or two,  
 That I supposed of him nought but good :  
 But, finally, thus at the last it stood,  
 That Fortune wolde that he muste twin  
 Out of that place which that I was in.  
 Wher me was wo it is no question ;  
 I cannot make of it description :  
 For o thing dare I tellen boldely,  
 I know what is the peine of deth therby,  
 Swiche harme I felt, for he ne might byleve.

So on a day of me he toke his leve,  
 So forweful eke, that I wend veraily  
 That he had felt as moche harme as I,  
 Whan that I herd him speke and saw his hewe :  
 But natheles I thought he was so trewe,  
 And eke that he repairen shuld again  
 Within a litel while, soth for to sain,  
 And reson wold eke that he muste go  
 For his honour, as often happeth so,  
 That I made vertue of necessitee,  
 And toke it wel sin that it muste be.  
 As I best might I hid fro him my forwe,  
 And toke him by the hond, Seint John to borwe,  
 And said him thus, Lo, I am youres all,  
 Beth swiche as I have ben to you and shall.

What he answerd it nedeth not reherse ;  
 Who can say bet than he, who can do werse ?  
 Whan he hath al wel said than hath he done ;  
 Therefore behoveth him a ful long sponse  
 That shal ete with a fend ; thus herd I say.

So at the last he muste forth his way ;  
 Whan forth he fleeth, til he come ther him left.  
 Whan it came him to purpos for to rest,

I trow that he had thilke text in mind,  
 That alle thing repairing to his kind  
 Gladeth himself ; thus sain men as I gesse :  
 Men loven of propre kind newefangelnesse,  
 As briddes don that men in cages fede ;  
 For though thou night and day take of hem hede,  
 And strew hir cage faire and soft as filke,  
 And give hem sugre, hony, bred, and milke,  
 Yet right anon as that his dore is up  
 He with his feet wol spurnen down his cup,  
 And to the wood he wol and wormes ete,  
 So newefangel ben they of hir mete,  
 And loven noveltees of propre kind ;  
 No gentilleffe of blood ne may hem bind.

So ferd this tercelet, alas the day !  
 Though he were gentil borne, and fresh, and gay,  
 And goodly for to seen, and humble, and free.  
 He saw upon a time a kite flee,  
 And sodenly he loved this kite so  
 That all his love is clene from me ago,  
 And hath his trouthe falsed in this wife.  
 Thus hath the kite my love in hire service,  
 And I am lorn withouten remedy.

And with that word this faucon gan to cry,  
 And swouneth eft in Canacees barme.  
 Gret was the forwe for that haukes harme  
 That Canace and all hire women made ;  
 They n'isten how they might the faucon glade :  
 But Canace home bereth hire in hire lap,  
 And softly in plastres gan hire wrap  
 Ther as she with hir bek had hurt hireselfe.

Now cannot Canace but herbes delve  
 Out of the ground, and maken salves newe  
 Of herbes precious and fine of hewe  
 To helen with this hawk : fro day to night  
 She doth hire besinesse and all hire might.  
 And by hire beddes hed she made a mew,  
 And covered it with velouettes blew,  
 In signe of trouthe that is in woman sene,  
 And all without the mew is peinted grene,  
 In which were peinted all thise false foules,  
 As ben thise tidifes, tercelettes, and owles,  
 And pies, on hem for to cry and chide,  
 Right for despit were peinted hem beside.

Thus lete I Canace hire hawk keping :  
 I wol no more as now speke of hire ring,  
 Til it come eft to purpos for to sain,  
 How that this faucon gat bare love again  
 Repentant, as the story telleth us,  
 By mediation of Camballus ;  
 The kinges sone, of which that I you told ;  
 But hennesforth I wol my processe hold  
 To speke of adventures and of batailles,  
 That yet was never herd so gret mervailles.

First wol I tellen you of a Cambuscan,  
 That in his time many a citee wan ;  
 And after wol I speke of Algaris,  
 How that he wan Theodora to his wif,  
 For whom ful oft in gret peril he was,  
 Ne had he ben holpen by the hors of bras ;  
 And after wol I speke of Camballo,  
 That fought in listes with the brethren two  
 For Canace, er that he might hire winne,  
 And ther I left I wol again beginne.

\* \* \* \* \*



## THE FRANKLEINES PROLOGUE.

## THE FRANKLEINES PROLOGUE.

In faith, Squier, thou hast thee wel yquit,  
And gentilly : I preise wel thy wit,  
Quod the Frankelein. Considering thin youthe  
So felingly thou spekest, Sire, I aloue the  
As to my dome ther is non that is here  
Of eloquence that shal be thy pere  
If that you live : God yêve thee goode chance,  
And in vertue send thee continuance,  
For of thy speking I have gret deintee.  
I have a sone, and by the Trinitee  
It were me lever than twenty pound worth lond,  
Though it right now were fallen in my hond,  
He were a man of swiche discretion  
As that ye ben. Fie on possession  
But if a man be vertuous withal !  
I have my sone snibbed and yet shâl,  
For he to vertue listeth not to entend,  
But for to play at dis and to dispend,  
And lese all that he hath, is his usage ;  
And he had lever talken with a page  
Than to commune with any gentil wight  
Ther he might leren gentilleste aright.  
Straw for your gentilleste ! quod our Hoste.  
What ? Frankelein, parde, Sire, wel thou wost  
That eche of you mote tellen at the lest  
A Tale or two, or breken his beheft.  
That know I wel, Sire, quod the Frankelein :  
I pray you haveth me not in disdain

Though I to this man speke a word or two.  
Tell on thy Tale withouten wordes mo.  
Gladly, Sire Hoste, quod he, I wol obey  
Unto your will : now herkeneth what I sey :  
I wol you not contrarient in no wise,  
As fer as that my wittes may suffice.  
I pray to God that it may plesen you,  
Than wot I wel that is good ynow.  
Thise olde gentil Bretons in hir dayes  
Of diverse adventures maden layes  
Rimeyed in hir firste Breton tonge,  
Which layes with hire instruments they songe,  
Or elles reddeden hem for hir plesance,  
And on of hem have I in remembrance,  
Which I shall sayn with good wille as I can.  
But, Sires, because I am a borel man,  
At my beginning first I you beseeche  
Have me excused of my rude speche :  
I lerned never rhetorike certain ;  
Thing that I speke it mote be bare and plain :  
I slept never on the Mount of Parnaso,  
Ne lerned Marcus Tullius Cicero.  
Colours ne know I non, withouten drede,  
But swiche colours as growen in the mede,  
Or elles swiche as men die with or peinte ;  
Colours of rhetorike ben to me queinte ;  
My spirit feleth not of swiche matere ;  
But if you lust, my Tale shul ye here.

## THE FRANKLEINES TALE\*.

In Armorike, that called is Bretaigne,  
Ther was a knight that loved and did his peine  
To serve a ladie in his beste wife,  
And many a labour, many a gret emprise,  
He for his lady wrought or she were wonne,  
For she was on the fairest under sonne,

\* Anselmus, after much labour and cost bestowed to win the love of Derigen, another man's wife, is content in the end, through the good dealing of her and her husband, to let both his labour and cost. The scope of this Tale seemeth to be a contention of courtesy. Urry.

And eke therto comen of so high kinrede  
That wel unnethes durst this knight for drede  
Tell hire his wo, his peine, and his distresse :  
But at the last she for his worthinesse,  
And namely for his meke obeyfance,  
Hath swiche a pitee caught of his penance,  
That prively she fell of his accord  
To take him for hire husband and hire lord,  
(Of swiche lordship as men han over hir wives)  
And, for to lede the more in blisse hir lives,

Of his free will he swore hire as a knight  
That never in all his lif he day ne night  
Ne shulde take upon him no maistrie  
Agains hire will, ne kithe hir jalousie,  
But hire obey, and folwe hire will in al,  
As any lover to his lady shal,  
Save that the name of soverainetee,  
That wold he han for shame of his degree.  
She thonked him, and with ful gret humbleste  
She saide, Sire, fin of your gentilleste  
Ye profren me to have so large a reine,  
Ne wolde God never betwix us tweine,  
As in my gilt, were either werre or strif :  
Sire, I wol be your humble trewe wif,  
Have here my trouth, till that myn herte breste.  
Thus ben they both in quiete and in reste.

For o thing, Sires, fausly dare I seie,  
That frendes everich other must obeie,  
If they wol long holden compaignie :  
Love wol not be constrained by maistrie :  
Whan maistrie cometh, the god of Love anon  
Beteth his winges, and, farewell, he is gon.  
Love is a thing as any spirit free.  
Women of kind desiren libertee,  
And not to be constrained as a thral ;  
And so don men, if sothly I say shal.  
Loke, who that is most patient in love  
He is at his advantage all above.  
Patience is an high vertue certain,  
For it venquisheth, as thise clerkes fain,  
Thinges that rigour never shulde atteine.  
For every word men may not chide or pleine.  
Lerneth to suffren, or, so mote I gon,  
Ye shul it lerne whether ye wol or non ;  
For in this world certain no wight ther is  
That he ne doth or sayth somtime amis.  
Ire, siknesse, or constellation,  
Win, wo, or changing of complexion,  
Causeth ful oft to don amis or speken :  
On every wrong a man may not be wroken.  
After the time must be temperance  
To every wight that can of governance :  
And therefore hath this worthy wise knight  
(To liven in ese) suffrance hire behight,  
And she to him ful wisly gan to swere  
That never shuld ther be defaute in here.

Here may men seen an humbly wise accord ;  
Thus hath she take hire servaunt and hire lord,  
Servaunt in love and lord in mariage.  
Than was he both in lordship and servage ?  
Servage ! nay, but in lordship all above,  
Sin he hath both his lady and his love ;  
His lady certes, and his wif also,  
The which that law of love accordeth to.  
And whan he was in this prosperitee  
Home with his wif he goth to his contree,  
Not fer fro Penmark, ther his dwelling was,  
Wher as he liveth in blisse and in folas.

Who coude telle, but he had wedded be,  
The joye, the ese, and the prosperitee  
That is betwix an husbond and his wif ?  
A yere and more lasteth this blisful lif,  
Til that this knight, of which I spake of thers,  
That of Cairrud was cleped Arviragus,

Shope him to gon and dwelle a yere or twaine  
In Englelond, that cleped was eke Bretaigne,  
To seke in armes worship and honour,  
(For all his lust he set in swiche labour)  
And dwelte ther two yere : the book saith thus.

Now wol I stint of this Arviragus,  
And speke I wol of Dorigene his wif,  
That loveth hire husbond as hire hertes lif.  
For his absence wepeth she and siketh,  
As don thise noble wives whan hem liketh :  
She morneth, waketh, waileth, fasteth, pleineth :  
Desir of his presence hire so distraineth,  
That all this wide world she set at nought.  
Hire frendes, which that knew hire hevyn thought,  
Comforten hire in all that ever they may ;

hey prechen hire, they telle hire night and day  
That causeles she sleth hireself, alas !  
And every comfort possible in this cas  
They don to hire with all hire besineffe,  
Al for to make hire leve hire hevinesse.

By processe, as ye knowen everich on,  
Men mowe so longe graven in a ston  
Til som figure therin emprented be :  
So long han they comforted hire til she  
Received hath, by hope and by reson,  
The emprenting of hir consolation,  
Thurgh which hire grete sorwe gan assuage :  
She may not alway duren in swiche rage.  
And eke Arviragus, in all this care,  
Hath sent his lettres home of his welfare,  
And that he wol come hastily again,  
Or elles had this sorwe hire herte slain.

Hire frendes saw hire sorwe gan to flake,  
And preiden hire on knees, for Goddes sake,  
To come and romen in hir compaignie,  
Away to driven hire darke fantasie :  
And, finally, she granted that request,  
For wel she saw that it was for the best.

Now stood hire castel faste by the see,  
And often with hire frendes walked she,  
Hire to disporten on the bank an hie,  
Wher as she many a ship and barge sie  
Sailing hir cours wher as hem list to go :  
But than was that a parcel of hire wo,  
For to hireself ful oft, alas ! said she,  
Is ther no ship, of so many as I see,  
Wol bringen home my lord ? than were my herte  
Al warished of his bitter peines smerte.

Another time wold she sit and thinke,  
And cast hire eyen downward fro the brinke ;  
But whan she saw the grisly rockes blake,  
For veray fere so wold hire herte quake  
That on hire feet she might hire not sustene :  
Than wold she sit adoun upon the grene,  
And pitously into the see behold,  
And say right thus, with careful sikkes cold :

Eterne God ! that thurgh thy purveance  
Ledest this world by certain governance,  
In idel, as men fain, ye nothing make :  
But, Lord ! thise grisly fendly rockes blake,  
That semen rather a foule confusion  
Of werk than any faire creation  
Of swiche a parfit wif : God and stable,  
Why han ye wrought this werk unresonable ?

For by this werk north, south, ne west, ne est,  
 Ther naryfostred man, ne brid, ne best :  
 It doth to good to my wit, but anoyeth.  
 See ye not, Lord! how mankind it destroyeth?  
 An hundred thousand bodies of mankind  
 Han rockes slain, al be they not in mind,  
 Which mankind is so faire part of thy werk,  
 Made it like to thyn owen merk.  
 Than, semeth it, ye had a gret chertee  
 Toward mankind; but how than may it be  
 That ye swiche menes make it to destroyen,  
 Which menes doo no good, but ever anoyen?  
 I wote wel clerkes wol fain as hem lest,  
 By arguments, that all is for the best,  
 Though I ne can the causes nought yknow;  
 But thilke God that made the wind to blow  
 As kepe my lord; this is my conclusion;  
 To clerkes lete I all disputison:  
 But wolde God that all thise rockes blake  
 Were sonken into helle for his sake:  
 Thise rockes flee min herte for the fere.  
 Thus wold she say with many a pitous tere.  
 Hire frendes saw that it was no disport  
 To romen by the see, but discomfort,  
 And shapen hem for to plaie somwher elles.  
 They leden hire by rivers and by welles,  
 And eke in other places delitable;  
 They dancen, and they play at ches and tables.  
 So on a day, right in the morwe tide,  
 Unto a gardin that was ther beside,  
 In which that they had made hir ordinance  
 Of vitaille and of other purveance,  
 They gon and plaie hem all the longe day;  
 And this was on the sixte morwe of May,  
 Which May had peynted with his softe shoures  
 This garden ful of leves and of floures:  
 And craft of mannes hond so curiously  
 Arrayed had this gardin trewely,  
 That never was ther gardin of swiche pris,  
 But if it were the veray Paradis.  
 The odour of floures and the freshe sight  
 Wold han ymaked any herte light  
 That ever was born, but if to gret sikenesse  
 Or to gret sorwe held it in distresse,  
 So ful it was of beautee and plesance.  
 And after dinner gonne they to dance  
 And sing also, sauf Dorigene alone,  
 Which made alway hire complaint and hire mone,  
 For she ne saw him on the dance go  
 That was hire husband and hire love also:  
 But natheles she must a time abide,  
 And with good hope let hire sorwe stide.  
 Upon this dance, amanges other man,  
 Danced a squier before Dorigen  
 That fresher was and jolier of array,  
 As to my dome, than is the month of May.  
 He singeth, danceth, passing any man  
 That is or was sin that the world began;  
 Therwith he was, if men shuld him descrive,  
 On of the beste faring men on live;  
 Yong, strong, and vertuous, and riche, and wise,  
 And wel beloved, and holden in gret prise.  
 And, shortly, if the soth I tellen shal,  
 Dancynge of this Dorigene at al,

This lusty squier, servant to Venus,  
 Which that ycleped was Aurelius,  
 Had loved hire best of any creature  
 Two yere and more, as was his aventure,  
 But never dorst he tell hire his grevance:  
 Withouten cup he dranke all his penance.  
 He was dispeired; nothing dorst he say,  
 Sauf in his songes somewhat wold he wray  
 His wo, as in a general complaining;  
 He said he loved and was beloved nothing.  
 Of swiche matere made he many layes,  
 Songes, complaintes, roundels, virelayes;  
 How that he dorste not his sorwe telle,  
 But languisheth as doth a Furie in helle;  
 And die he must, he said, as did Ecco  
 For Narcissus, that dorst not tell hire wo.  
 In other manner than ye here me say  
 Ne dorst he not to hire his wo bewray,  
 Sauf that paraventure somtime at dances,  
 Ther yonge folk kepen hir observances,  
 It may wel be he loked on hire face  
 In swiche a wise as man that axeth grace;  
 But nothing wiste she of his entent.  
 Natheles it happened or they theimes went,  
 Because that he was hire neighebour,  
 And was a man of worship and honour,  
 And had yknowen him of time yore,  
 They fell in speche, and forth ay more and more  
 Unto his purpos drew Aurelius,  
 And when he saw his time he saide thus:  
 Madame quod he, by God that this world made,  
 So that I wist it might your herte glade,  
 I wold that day that your Arviragus  
 Went over see that I Aurelius  
 Had went ther I shuld never come again,  
 For wel I wot my service is in vain;  
 My guerdon n'is but bresting of min herte.  
 Madame, rueth upon my peines smerte,  
 For with a word ye may me sleen or save.  
 Here at your feet God wold that I were grave.  
 I ne have as now no leiser more to sey:  
 Have mercy, swete! or ye wol do me dey.  
 She gan to loken upon Aurelius:  
 Is this your will, (quod she) and say ye thus?  
 Never erst (quod she) ne wist I what ye ment,  
 But now, Aurelie, I know your entent.  
 By thilke God that yaf me soule and lif  
 Ne shal I never ben an untrew wif  
 In word ne werk, es fer as I have wit;  
 I wol ben his to whom that I am knit:  
 Take this for final answer as of me.  
 But after that in play thus said she:  
 Aurelie, (quod she) by high God above  
 Yet wol I granten you to ben your love,  
 (Sin I you see so pitoufully complaine.)  
 Loke, what day that endelong Bretaigne  
 Ye remue all the rockes ston by ston,  
 That they ne letten ship ne bote to gon;  
 I say, whan he han made the cost so clene  
 Of rockes that ther n'is no ston yfene,  
 Than wol I love you best of any man;  
 Have here my trowth, in all that ever I can,  
 For wel I wote that it shal never betide.  
 Let swiche folie out of your herte glide:



What deintee shuld a man have in his lif  
For to go love another mannes wif  
That hath hire body whan that ever him liketh?

Aurelius ful often fore siketh:

Is ther non other grace in you? quod he.

No, by that Lord, quod she, that maked me.

Wo was Aurelie whan that he this herd,  
And with a forweful herte he thus answerd:

Madame, quod he, this were impossible;  
Than moste I die of soden deth horrible.

And with that word the turned him anon.

Tho come hire other frendes many on,  
And in the alleys romed up and down,  
And nothing wist of this conclusioun,  
But sodenly begonnen revel newe,  
Til that the brighte sonne had lost his hewe,  
For the orizont had rest the sonne his light,  
(This is as much to sayn as it was night)

And home they gon in mirthe and in folas,

Sauf only wrecche Aurelius, alas!

He to his hous is gon with forweful herte;

He saith he may not from his deth asterte:

Him semeth that he felt his herte cold.

Up to the heven his hondes gan he held,

And on his knees bare he set him down,

And in his raving said his orisoun.

For veray wo out of his wit he braide;

He n'iste what he spake, but thus he saide;

With pitous herte his laint hath he begonne

Unto the goddes, and first unto the Sonne.

He said, Apollo! god and governour

Of every plante, herbe, tree, and flour,

That yevest after thy declination

To eche of hem his time and his seson,

As that thin herbergh changeth low and hig,

Lord Phebus! cast thy merciable eie

On wrecche Aurelie, which that am but lorne;

Lo, Lord! my lady hath my deth ysworne

Withouten gilt, but thy benigneitee

Upon my dedly herte have som pitee:

For wel I wot Lord Phebus, if you lest,

Ye may me helpen sauf my lady best.

Now voucheth sauf that I may you devise

How that I may be holpe, and in what wise.

Your blisful suster, Lucina the shene,

That of the see is chief goddesse and quene,

Though Neptunus have deitee in the see,

Yet emperice aboven him is she:

Y knowe wel, Lord, that right as hire desire

Is to be quicked and lighted of your fire,

For which she solweth you ful besily,

Right so the see desireth naturelly

To solwen hire, as she that is goddesse

Both in the see and rivers more and lesse:

Wherefore, Lord Phebus! this is my request,

Do this miracle, or do min herte brest,

That now next at this opposition,

Which in the signe shal be of the Leon,

As preyeth hire so gret a flood to bring,

That five fadome at the lest it overspring

The highest rock in Armorieke Bretaigne,

And let this flood enduren yeres twaine;

Than certes to my lady may I say,

Holdeth your hest, the rockes ben away.

Lord Phebus! this miracle doth for me,  
Prey hire she go no faster cours than ye,  
I say this, preyeth your suster that she go  
No faster cours than ye thise yeres two,  
Than shal she ben even at ful alway,  
And spring-flood lasten bothe night and day.  
And but see vouchesauf in swiche manere  
To graunten me my soveraine lady dere,  
Prey hire to sinken every rock adoun  
Into hire owen derke regioun  
Under the ground, ther Pluto dwelleth in,  
Or nevermo shal I my lady win.

Thy temple in Delphos wol I barefoot seke.

Lord Phebus! see the teres on my cheke,

And on my peine have som compassioun.

And with that word in forwe he fell adoun,

And longe time he lay forth in a trance.

His brother, which that knew of his penance,

Up caught him, and to bed he hath him broug

Dispeired in this turment and this thought

Let I this woful creature lie,

Cheste he for me whether he wol live or die.

Arviragus with hele and gret honour

(As he that was of chevalrie the flour)

Is comen home, and other worthy men:

Of blisful art thou now, thou Dorigen!

That hast thy lusty hufbond in thin armes,

The freshe knight, the worthy man of armes,

That loveth thee as his owen hertes lif.

Nothing list him to be imaginatif

If any wight had spoke while he was oute

To hire of love; he had of that no doubte:

He not entendeth to no swiche matere,

But danceth, justeth, and maketh mery chere.

And thus in joye and blisse I let him dwell,

And of the like Aurelius wol I tell.

In langour and in turment furious

Two yere and more lay wrecched Aurelius

Er any foot on erthe he mighte gon;

Ne comfort in this time ne had he non

Sauf of his brother, which that was a clerk:

He knew of all this wo and all this werk;

For to non other creature certain

Of this matere he dorste no word sain:

Under his brest he bare it more secree

Than ever did Pamphilus for Calistoe

His brest was hole withouten nor to seen,

But in his herte ay was the arwe kene,

And wel ye knowe that of a surfanure

In surgerie is perilous the cure,

But men might touch the arwe or some therb

His brother wepeth and waimeth prively,

Til at the last him fell in remembrance

That while he was at Orleunce in France,

As yonge clerkes that ben likerous

To reden artes that ben curious

Seken in every halke and every herne

Particuler sciencis for to lerne,

He him remembred that upon a day

At Orleunce in studie a book he say

Of magike naturel, which his felaw

That was that time a bachelor of law,

Al were he ther to lerne another craft,

Had prively upon his desk ylast;

Which look spake moche of operations  
 Touching the eight-and-twenty mansions  
 That longen to the mone, and swiche folie  
 As in our dayes n'is not worth a flie;  
 For howe churches feith, in our beleve,  
 Ne suffren ~~an~~ illusion us to greve.  
 And whan this look was in his remembrance  
 Anon for joye his herte gan to dance,  
 And to himself he saied prively,  
 My brother shall be warished hastily;  
 For I am fiker that ther be sciences  
 By which men maken divers apperances  
 Swiche as thise subtil tregetoures play;  
 For oft at festes have I wel herd say  
 That tregetoures, within an halle large,  
 Have made come in a water and a barge,  
 And in the halle rowen up and down;  
 Some time had semed com a grim leoun,  
 And somtime floures spring as in a mede,  
 Somtime a vine, and grapes white and rede,  
 Somtime a castel al of lime and ston,  
 And whan hem liketh voideth it anon:  
 Thus semeth it to every mannes sight.

Now than conclude I thus; if that I might  
 At Orleunce som olde felaw find  
 That hath thise mones mansions in mind,  
 Or other magike naturel above,  
 He shuld wel make my brother have his love;  
 For with an apparence a clerk may make,  
 To mannes sight, that all the rockes blake  
 Of Bretaigne were yvoided everich on,  
 And shippes by the brinke comen and gon,  
 And in swiche forme endure a day or two:  
 Than were my brother wareshed of his wo,  
 Than must the nedes holden hire behest,  
 Or elles he shal shame hire at the lest.

What shuld I make a lenger Tale of this?  
 Unto his brothers bed he comen is,  
 And swiche comfort he gaf him for to gon  
 To Orleunce, that he up stert anon,  
 And on his way forthward than is he fare,  
 In hope for to ben lissed of his care.

Whan they were come almost to that citee,  
 But if it were a two furlong or three,  
 A yonge clerk going by himself they mette,  
 Which that in Latyn thriftily hem grette:  
 And after that he sayde a wonder thing;  
 I know, quod he, the cause of your coming:  
 And or they forther any foote went  
 He told hem all that was in hir entent.

This Breton ~~clerk~~ him axed of felawes  
 The which he had yknowen in olde dawes,  
 And he answered him that they dede were,  
 For which he wept ful often many a tere.

Doun of his hors Aurelius light anon,  
 And forth with this magicien is gon  
 Home to his hous, and made hem wel at ese:  
 Nem lacked no vitaille that might hem plesse.  
 So wel arraied hous as ther was on  
 Aurelius in his lif saw never pon.

He shewed him, or they went to soupere,  
 Forestes, parkes, ful of wilde dere:  
 Ther saw he hertes with hir hornes hie,  
 The best that were ever seen with eie;

He saw of hem an hundred slain with houndes  
 And som with arwes blede of bitter woundes;  
 He saw, when voided were the wilde dere,  
 Thise fauconers upon a faire rivere  
 That with hir haukes han the heron slain.

Tho saw he knightes justen in a plain:  
 And after this he did him swiche plesance,  
 That he him shewed his lady on a dance,  
 On which himselfen danced, as him thought.  
 And whan this maister, that this magike wrought,  
 Saw it was time, he clapped his bondes two,  
 And farewell, al the revel is ago!

And yet remued they never out of the hous,  
 While they saw all thise sightes marvellous,  
 But in his studie, ther his bookes be,  
 They saten still, and no wight but they three.

To him this maister called his squier,  
 And sayd him thus, May we go to souper?  
 Almost an houre it is, I undertake,  
 Sin I you bade our souper for to make,  
 Whan that thise worthy men wenten with me  
 Into my studie ther my bookes be.

Sire, quod this squier, whan it liketh you,  
 It is al redy, though ye wol right now.

Go we than soupe, quod he, as for the best;  
 Thise amorous folk somtime most han rest.

At after souper fell they in trettee  
 What summe shuld this maisters guerdon be  
 To remue all the rockes of Bretaigne,  
 And eke from Gerounde to the mouth of Saine.

He made it strange, and swore, so God him  
 save,

Lesse than a thousand pound he wold not have,  
 Ne gladly for that summe he wol not gon.

Aurelius with blisful herte anon  
 Answered thus; Fic on a thousand pound!  
 This wide world, which that men sayn is round,  
 I wold it yeve, if I were lord of it.

This bargaine is ful drive, for we ben knit.  
 Ye shul be paied trewely, by my trowth;  
 But loketh, for non negligence or slouth  
 Ye tarie us here no lenger than to morwe.  
 Nay, quod this clerk, have here my faith to borwe.

To bed is gon Aurelius whan him lest,  
 And wel nigh all that night he had his rest.  
 What for his labour and his hope of blisse  
 His woful herte of penance had a lisse.

Upon the morwe whan that it was day  
 To Bretaigne token they the righte way,  
 Aurelie, and this magicien him beside,  
 And ben descended ther they wold abide;  
 And this was, as the bookes me remember,  
 The colde frosty selson of December.

Phebus waxe old and hewed like Laton,  
 That in his hote declination  
 Shone as the burned gold with stremes bright;  
 But now in Capricorne adoun he light,  
 Wher as he shone ful pale, I dare wel sain.  
 The bitter froste with the fleet and rain  
 Destroyed hath the grene in every yerd;  
 Janus sit by the fire with double berd,  
 And drinketh of his bugle horn the wine;  
 Beforn him stant braune of the tusked swine,



And Newel crieth every lusty man.

Aurelius in all that ever he can  
Doth to his maister chere and reverence,  
And praiceth him to don his diligence  
To bringen him out of his peines smerte,  
Or with a swerd that he wold slit his herte.

This sotil clerk swiche routh hath on this man,  
That night and day he spedeth him that he can  
To wait a time of his conclusion;

This is to sayn, to make illusion,  
By swiche an apparence or joglerie,  
(I can no termes of astrologie)  
That she and every wight shuld wene and say  
That of Bretagne the rockes were away,  
Or elles they were sonken under ground.  
So at the last he hath his time yfound  
To make his japes and his wretchednesse  
Of swiche a superstitious cursednesse.  
His tables Toletanes forth he brought,  
Ful wel corrected, that ther lacked nought,  
Nother his collect ne his expans yeres,  
Nother his rotes ne his other geres,  
As ben his centres and his argumentes,  
And his proportionel convenientes,  
For his equations in every thing :  
And by his eighte speres in his working  
He knew ful wel how fer Alnath was shove  
Fro the hed of thilke fix Aries above  
That in the ninthe spere considered is :  
Ful sotilly he calculed all this.

Whan he had found his firste mansion  
He knew the remenant by proportion,  
And knew the rising of his mone wel,  
And in whos face, and terme, and every del ;  
And knew ful wel the mones mansion  
Accordant to his operation ;  
And knew also his other observances,  
For swiche illusions and swiche meschances  
As Hethen folke used in thilke daies ;  
For which no lenger maketh he delaies,  
But thurgh his magike, for a day or tway,  
It seemed all the rockes were away.

Aurelius, which that despeired is  
Whether he shal han his love or fare amis,  
Awaiteth night and day on this miracle ;  
And whan he knew that ther was non obstacle,  
That voided were thise rockes everich on,  
Doun to his maisteres feet he fell anon,  
And sayd, I, woful wretch Aurelius,  
Thanke you, my lord, and lady min Venus,  
That me han holpen fro my cares cold.  
And to the temple his way forth hath he hold,  
Theras he knew he shuld his lady see ;  
And whan he saw his time anon right he  
With dredful herte and with ful humble chere  
Salued hath his soveraine lady dere.

My rightful Lady, quod this woful man,  
Whom I most drede and love as I best can,  
And lothest were of all this world displese,  
Ne're it that I for you have swiche disese  
That I must die here at your foot anon,  
Nought wold I tell how me is wo begon ;  
But certes other must I die or plaine ;  
Yesse me gilteles for veray peine :

But of my deth though that ye han no reth  
Aviseth you or that you breke your trouthe :  
Repenteth you, for thilke God above,  
Or ye me sie, because that I you love :  
For, Madame, wel ye wote what ye have hight ;  
Not that I chalenge any thing of right  
Of you my soveraine Lady, but of grace ;  
But in a garden yond, in swiche a place,  
Ye wote right wel what ye behighten me,  
And in myn hond your trouthe plighten ye  
To love me best : God wote ye saied so,  
Although that I unworthy be therto.  
Madame, I speke it for the honour of you,  
More than to save my hertes lif right now,  
I have don so as ye commanded me,  
And if ye vouchesauf ye may go see,  
Doth as you list, have your behest in mind,  
For quick or ded right ther ye shul me find.  
In you lith all to do me live or dey,  
But wel I wote the rockes ben away.

He taketh his leve, and she astonied stood ;  
In all hire face n'as o drope of blood :  
She wened never han come in swiche a trappe.

Alas ! quod she, that ever this should happe !  
For wend I never by possibilittee  
That swiche a monstre or mervaille might be ;  
It is again the proceffe of Nature.

And home she goth a forweful creature ;  
For veray fere unnethes may she go.  
She wepeth, waileth, all a day or two,  
And swouneth that it routhe was to see,  
But why it was to no wight tolde she,  
For out of toun was gon Arviragus ;  
But to hireself she spake, and saied thus,  
With face pale, and with ful sory chere,  
In hire complaint, as ye shul after here.

Alas ! quod she, on thee, Fortune, I plain,  
That unaware hast me wrapped in thy chain,  
Fro which to escapen wote I no soccour  
Sauf only deth or elles dishonour :  
On of thise two behoveth me to chese.  
But natheles, yet had I a lever lese  
My lif than of my body have a shame,  
Or know myselven false, or lese my name :  
And with my deth I may be quyt ywis ;  
Hath ther not many a noble, if or this,  
And many a maid, yllaine hireself, alas !  
Rather than with hire body don trespas ?  
Yes certes ; lo, thise stories bere witnesse.

Whan thirty tyrants ful of cruellnesse  
Had slain Phidon in Athens at the fest,  
They commanded his doughtren for to arrest  
And bringen hem beforne him despit  
Alnaked, to fulfil hire foule delit ;  
And in hir fadres blood they made hem dance  
Upon the pavement, God yeve hem meschance !  
For which thise woful maidens, ful of drede,  
Rather than they wold lese hir maidenhede,  
They prively ben flet into a welle,  
And dreint hemselven, as the bookes telle.

They of Messene let enquere and seke  
Of Lacedonie fifty maidens eke  
On which the wolden don hir lecherie ;  
But ther was non of all that compaignie



That she shold as flaine; and with a glad entent  
 Chees rather for to dien than assent  
 To ben oppressed of hire maidenhede.  
 Why shold I than to dein ben in drede?

Lo eke the tyrant Aristoclides,  
 That loved a may hight Stimphalides,  
 Whan that hire father flaine was on a night,  
 Unto Dianas temple goth she right,  
 And hente the image in hire handes two,  
 Fro which image wold she never go;  
 No wight her handes might it of it arrace  
 Til she was flaine right in the selve place.

Now sin that maidens hadden swiche despit  
 To be defouled with mannes foule delit,  
 Wel ought a wif rather hireselfen fle  
 Than be defouled, as it thinketh me.

What shal I sayn of Hasdrubales wif,  
 That at Cartage beraft hireself hire lif?  
 For whan she saw that Romaines wan the toun,  
 She toke hire children all, and skipt adoun  
 Into the fire, and chees rather to die  
 Than any Romain did hire valanie.

Hath not Lucrece yflaine hireself, alas!  
 At Rome, whan that she oppressed was  
 Of Tarquine? for hire thought it was a shame  
 To liven whan she hadde lost hire name.

The seven maidens of Milefie also  
 Han flaine hemself, for veray drede and wo,  
 Rather than folk of Gaule hem shuld oppresse.

Mo than a thousand stories, as I gesse,  
 Coude I now tell as touching this matere.

Whan Abradate was slain, his wif so dere  
 Hireselfen flow, and let hire blood to glide  
 In Abradates woundes depe and wide,  
 And sayd, My body at the leste way  
 Ther shal no wight defoulen if I may.

What shuld I mo ensamples hereof sain?  
 Sin that so many han hemselfen slain,  
 Wel rather than they wold defouled be,  
 I wol conclude that it is bet for me  
 To fle myself than be defouled thus:  
 I wol be trewe unto Arviragus,  
 Or elles fle myself in some manere,  
 As Did Demotiones doughter dere,  
 Because she was defouled be.

O Sedasus! it is ful yet pitee  
 To roden how thy doughtren died, alas!  
 That slowe hemselfen for swiche maner cas.

As gret a pitee was it, or wel more,  
 The Theban mayden that for Nichanore  
 Hireselfen flow right for swiche menere wo.  
 Another Theban mayden did right so,  
 For on of Macedoine had hire oppressed;  
 She with hire deth hire maidenhed redressed.

What shal I sain of Nicerates wif,  
 That for swiche cas bereft hireself hire lif?

How trewe was eke to Alcibiades  
 His love, that for to dien rather chees  
 Than for to suffre his body unburied be?  
 —, which a wif was Alceste eke? (quod she)  
 What sayth Homere of good Penelope?  
 All Greece knoweth of hire chastitee.

Parde Laodomia is wreten thus,  
 Whan at Troye was slain Prothelilaus

No lenger wolde she live after his day.

The fame of noble Portia tell I may;  
 Withouten Brutus coude she not live,  
 To whom she had all whole hire herte yewe.

The parfit wifhood of Artemisie  
 Honoured is thurghout all Barbarie.

O Teuta quene! thy wifly chastitee  
 To alle wives may a mirroure be.

Thus plained Dorigene a day or twey,  
 Purposing ever that she wolde dey;  
 But natheles upon the thriede night  
 Home came Arviragus, the worthy knight,  
 And axed hire why that she weep so fore?  
 And she gan wepen ever lenger the more.  
 Alas, quod she, that ever I was yborne!  
 Thus have I said, (quod she) thus have I sworne,  
 And told him all, as ye have herd before:  
 It nedeth not reherse it you no more.

This husbond with glad chere, in frendly wise,  
 Answerd and sayd as I shal you devise;  
 Is ther ought elles, Dorigene, but this?

Nay, nay, quod she, God, helpe me so, as wif  
 This is to much, and it were Goddes will.

Ye, wif, quod he, let slepen that is still;  
 It may be wel paraventure, yet to-day.  
 Ye shal your trouthe holden by my fay;  
 For God so wifly have mercy on me,  
 I had wel lever stiked for to be,  
 For veray love which that I to you have,  
 But if ye shuld your trouthe kepe and save:  
 Trough is the hiest thing that man may kepe.  
 But with that word he braist anon to wepe,  
 And sayd; I you forbode, on peinte of deth,  
 That never while you lasteth lif or bresth  
 To no wight tell ye this misaventure;  
 As I may best I wol my wo endure:  
 Ne make no contenance of hevynesse,  
 That folk of you may demen harme or gesse.  
 And forth he cleped a squier and a maid.  
 Goth forth anon with Dorigene, he said,  
 And bringeth hire to swiche a place anon.  
 They take hir leve, and on hir way they gon:  
 But they ne wisten why she thider went;  
 She n'olde no wight tellen hire entent.

This squier which that highte Aurelius,  
 On Dorigene that was so amorous,  
 Of aventure happed hire to mete  
 Amid the toun, right in the quickest strete,  
 As she was boun to go the way forthright  
 Toward the gardin, ther as she had hight;  
 And he was to the gardinward also,  
 For wel he spied whan she wolde go  
 Out of hire hous to any maner place:  
 But thus they met of aventure or grace,  
 And he salueth hire with glad entent,  
 And axeth of hire whiderward she went.

And she answered half as she were mad,  
 Unto the gardin, as myn husbond bad,  
 My trouthe for to hold, alas! alas!

Aurelius gan wondren on this cas,  
 And in his herte had gret compassion  
 Of hire, and of hire lamentation,  
 And of Arviragus, the worthy knight,  
 That had hire holden all that she had hight.

So loth him was his wif shuld breke hire trouthe;  
 And in his herte he caught of it gret routhe,  
 Considering the best on every side,  
 That fro his lust yet were him lever abide  
 Than do so high a cherlish wretchednesse  
 Ageins fraunchise and alle gentilleffe  
 For which in few wordes sayd he thus:

Madame, say to your Lord Arviragus  
 That sin I see the grete gentilleffe  
 Of him, and eke I see wel your distresse,  
 That him were lever have shame (and that were  
 routhe)

Than ye to me shuld breken thus your trouthe,  
 I hadde wel lever ever to suffren wo  
 Than to depart the love betwix you two.  
 I you relese, Madame; into your hond  
 Quit every seurement and every bond  
 That ye han made to me as herebeforne  
 Sin thilke time that ye were yborne.  
 Have here my trouthe, I shal you never reprove  
 Of no behest; and here I take my leve  
 As of the trewest and the beste wif  
 That ever yet I knew in all my lif.  
 But every wif beware of hire behest;  
 On Dorigene remembreth at the lest.  
 Thus can a squier don a gentil dede  
 As wel as can a knight, withouten drede.

She thanketh him upon hire knees bare,  
 And home unto hire husbond is she fare,  
 And told him all as ye han herd me sayd;  
 And, trusteth me, he was so wel apayd  
 That it were impossible me to write.

What shuld I lenger of this cas endite?  
 Arviragus and Dorigene his wif  
 In soveraine blisse leden forth hir lif,  
 Never eft ne was ther anger hem betwene;  
 He cherished hire as though she were a queene,  
 And she was to him trewe for evermore.  
 Of this two folk ye get of me no more.

Aurelius, that his cost hath all forlorne,  
 Curseth the time that ever he was borne.  
 Alas! quod he, alas that I behight  
 Of pured gold a thousand pound of wight  
 Unto this philosopre! how shal I do?  
 I see no more but that I am fordo.  
 Min heritage mote I nedes sell,  
 And ben a beggar here I n'ill not dwell,  
 And shamen all my kinrede in this place,  
 But I of him may geten better grace:  
 But natheles I wol of him assay  
 At certain daies yere by yere to pay,  
 And thanke him of his grete curtesie.  
 My trouthe wol I kepe, I wol not lie.

With herte fore he goth unto his cof  
 And broughte gold unto this philosopre  
 The value of five hundred pound I gesse,  
 And him besecheth of his gentilleffe  
 To graunt him daies of the remenaunt  
 And sayde; Maister, I dare wel make avaunt  
 I failed never of my trouthe as yet;  
 For likerly my dette shal be be quit  
 Towardes you, how so that ever I fare  
 To gon a begging in my kirtle bare:  
 But wold ye vouchen sauf upon seurttee  
 Two yere or three for to respiten me,  
 Than were I wel, for elles mote I sell  
 Min heritage; ther is no more to tell.

This philosopre sobrely answerd,  
 And saied thus, whan he thise wordes herd;  
 Have I not holden covenant to thee?

Yes, certes, wel and trewely, quod he.  
 Hast thou not had thy lady as thee liketh?  
 No, no, quod he, and forwefully he siketh,  
 What was the cause? tell me if thou can.

Aurelius his tale anon began,  
 And told him all as ye han herd before;  
 It nedeth not reherse it any more.  
 He sayd, Arviragus of gentilleffe  
 Had lever die in sorwe and in distresse  
 Than that his wif were of hire trouthe fals.  
 The sorwe of Dorigene he told him als,  
 How loth hire was to ben a wicked wif,  
 And that she lever had lost that day hire lif;  
 And that her trouth she swore thurgh innocence;  
 She never erst hadde herd speke of apparence:  
 That made me han of hire so gret pitee,  
 And right as freely as he sent hire to me  
 As freely sent I hire to him again.  
 This is all and som; ther n'is no more to sain.

The philosopre answerd; Leve brothre,  
 Everich of you did gentilly to other:  
 Thou art a squier, and he is a knight,  
 But God forbede, for his blisful might,  
 But if a clerk could don a gentil dede  
 As wel as any of you, it is no drede.

Sire, I relese thee thy thousand pound,  
 As thou right now were crope out of the ground,  
 Ne never er now ne haddest thou  
 For, Sire, I wol not take a peny of thee  
 For all my craft, ne nought for my travaille:  
 Thou hast ypaied wel for my vitaille.  
 It is ynough, and farewel, have good day.  
 And toke his hors, and forth he went his way.

Lordings, this question wold I axen now,  
 Which was the moste free, as thinketh you?  
 Now telleth me or that ye further wende,  
 I can no more, my Tale is at an ende.

## THE DOCTOURES PROLOGUE

## THE DOCTOURES PROLOGUE.

Ye, let that passen, quod our Hoste, as now.  
Sire Doctour of Physike, I prey you,  
Tell us a Tale of som honest matere.

It shal be don, if that ye wol it here,  
Said this Doctour, and his Tale began anon.  
Now, good men, quod he, herkeneth everich on.

## THE DOCTOURES TALE\*.

There was, as telleth Titus Livius,  
A knight that cleped was Virginius,  
Fulfilled of honour and worthinesse,  
And strong of frendes, and of gret richesse.  
This knight a doughter hadde by his wif;  
No children had he mo in all his lif.  
Faire was this maid in excellent beautee  
Aboven every wight that man may see,  
For Nature hath with foveraine diligence  
Yformed hire in so gret excellence  
As though she wolde sayn, Lo, I Nature,  
Thus can I forme and peint a creature,  
Whan that me list: who can me countrefete?  
Pigmalion? not though he ay forge and bete,  
Or grave, or peinte; for I dare wel sain  
Apelles, Keuxis, shulden werche in vain  
Other to grave, or peinte, or forge, or bete,  
If they presumed to countrefete:  
For he that is the former principal  
Hath maked me his vicaire general  
To forme and peinten earthly creatures  
Right as we list; and eche thing in my cure is  
Under the mone that may wane and waxe;  
And for my werk right nothing wol I axe:  
My lord and I ben ful of on accord;  
I made hire to the worship of my lord,

\* Virginius slayeth his only daughter rather than she  
shall be defiled by the lecherous judge Appian. 57.

So do I all min other creatures,  
What colour that they han or what figures,  
Thus semeth me that Nature wolde say.  
This maid of age twelf yere was and tway  
In which that nature hadde swiche delit;  
For right as she can peint a lily whit  
And red a rose, right with swiche peinture  
She peinted hath this noble creature  
Er she was borne upon hire limmes free,  
Wheras by right swiche colours shulden be;  
And Phebus died hath hire tresses grete  
Like to the stremes of his burned hete.  
And if that excellent were hire beautee,  
A thousand fold more vertuous was she.  
In hire ne lacked no condition  
That is to preise, as by discretion.  
As wel in goft as body chaf was she,  
For which she floured in virginitee  
With all humilitee and abstinence,  
With all attemperance and patience,  
With measure eke of bering and array.  
Discrete she was in answering alway,  
Though she were wise as Pallas, dare I sain,  
Hire facounde eke ful womanly and plain;  
No countrefeted terms hadde she  
To semen wise, but after hire degree  
She spake, and all hire werdes more and lesse  
Souning in vertue and in gentillesse.



Shamefast she was in maidens shamefastnesse,  
Constant in herte out of idel besinesse  
To drive hire out of idel slogardie.  
Bacchus had of hire mouth right no maistrice,  
For wine and youthe don Venus encrese,  
As men in fire wol casten oile and grese.  
And of hire owen vertue unconstrained  
She hath hireself ful often like yfeined,  
For that she wolde flee the compaignie  
Wher likely was to treten of folie,  
As is at festes, at revels, and at dances  
That ben occasions of daliances.

Swiche thinges maken children for to be  
To sone ripe and bold, as men may see,  
Which is ful perilous, and hath ben yore;  
For al to sone may she lerne lore  
Of boldnesse whan she woxen is a wif.

And ye maistresses in your olde lif,  
That lordes daughters han in governance;  
Ne taketh of my wordes displeasance:  
Thinketh that ye ben set in governinges  
Of lordes daughters only for two thinges,  
Other for ye han kept your honestee,  
Or elles for ye han fallen in freelte,  
And knowen wel ynough the olde dance,  
And han forsaken fully swiche meschance  
For evermo; therefore for Christes sake  
To teche hem vertue loke that ye ne flake.

A thief of venison, that hath forlaft  
His likerousnesse and all his olde craft,  
Can kepe a forest best of any man:

Now kepeth hem wel, for if ye wol ye can.  
Loke wel that unto no vice assent,  
Lest ye be damned for your wikke entent,  
For who so doth a traytoun is certain:  
And taketh kepe of that I shal you sein;  
Of alle tresoun soveraine pestilence  
Is whan a wight betrayeth innocence.

Ye fathers, and ye mothers eke also,  
Though ye han children, be it on or mo,  
Your is the charge of all hir surveiance,  
While that they ben under your governance:  
Beth ware that by ensample of your living.

Or by your negligence in chastising,  
That they ne perish, for I dare wel saye  
If that they don ye shul it dere abeye.  
Under a shepherd soft and negligent  
The wolf hath many a shepe and lamb to-rent,

Sufficeth this ensample now as here,  
For I mote turne agen to my matere.

This maid, of which I tell my Tale expresse,  
She kept hireself, hire heded no maistresse,  
For in hire living maidens mighten rede,  
As in a book, every good word and dede  
That longeth to a maiden vertuous:  
She was so prudent and so bounteous,  
For which the fame out sprong on every side  
Both of hire beautee and hire bountee wide,  
That thurgh the lond they preised hire ech one  
That loved vertue, sauf Envie alone,  
That fory is of other maines wele,  
And glad is of his forwe and his unhele.  
The Doctour maketh this description.

This maiden on a day went in the toun

Toward a temple, with hire mother dere,  
As is of young maidens the manere.

Now was ther than a justice in that  
That governour was of that region;  
And so befell this juge his eyen cast  
Upon this maid, avising hire ful fast  
As she came forth by ther this juge stood:  
Anon his herte changed and his mood.  
So was he caught with beautee of this maid,  
And to himself ful prively he said,  
This maiden shal be min for any man.

Anon the fend into his herte ran,  
And taught him sodenly that he by sleight  
This maiden to his purpos winnen might;  
For certes by no force ne by no mede  
Him thought the was not able for to spede;  
For she was strong of frendes; end eke she  
Confermed was in swiche soveraine bountee  
That wel he wist he might hire never winne  
As for to make hire with hire body sinne:  
For which with gret deliberation

He sent after a cherl was in the toun,  
The which he knew for sotil and for bold.  
This juge unto this cherl his tale hath told  
In secree wise, and made him to ensue  
He shulde tell it to no creature,  
And if he did he shulde lese his hede.  
And whan assented was this cursed rede,  
Glad was the juge, and maked him gret chere,  
And gaf him yestes precious and dere

Whan shapen was all hir conspiracie  
Fro point to point, how that his lecherie  
Performed shulde be ful sotilly,  
As ye shul here it after openly,  
Home goth this cherl, that highte Claudius;  
This false juge, that highte Appius,  
(So was his name, for it is no fable,  
But knowen for an historial thing notable;  
The sentence of it soth is out of doute)  
This false juge goth now fast aboute  
To hasten his delit all that he may.  
And so befell, sone after on a day  
This false juge, as telleth us the storie,  
As he was wont, sat in his confessorie,  
And gaf his domes upon sondry cas;  
This false cherl came forth a while  
And saide; Lord, if that it be your will,  
As doth me right upon this pitous bill;  
In which I plaine upon Virginus;  
And if that he wol sayn it is not thys,  
I wol it preve, and finden good witness  
That soth is that my bille is expresse.

The juge answerd, Of this in his absence  
I may not yeve diffinitif sentence.  
Let don him call, and I wol gladly here:  
Thou shalt have right and wrong as now here.  
Virginus came to wete the juges will,  
And right anon was red this cursed bill;  
The sentence of it was as ye shul here.

To you my Lord Sire Appius so dere  
Sheweth your poure servant Claudius  
How that a knight called Virginus  
Agein the lawe, agein all equitee,  
Holdeth, expresse agein the will of me.

My servant which that is my thral by right,  
Which from min hous was stolen on a night  
While this she was ful yong; I wol it preve  
By witnesse, Lord, so that it you not greve:  
She n<sup>o</sup> his doughter nought, what so he say;  
Wherefore to you, my Lord the juge, I pray;  
Yeld me my thral, if that it be your will.  
So, this was all the sentence of his bill.

Virginus gan upon the cherl behold;  
But hastily er he his tale told,  
And wold han preved it as shuld a knight,  
And eke by witnesssing of many a wight  
That all was false that said his adversary,  
This cursed juge wolde nothing tary,  
Ne here a word more of Virginus,  
But yave his jugement, and faide thus:  
I deme anon this cherl his servant have;  
Thou shalt no lenger in thin hous hire save;  
Go bring hire forth, and put hire in our ward:  
The cherl shal have his thral; thus I award.

And whan this worthy knight Virginus,  
Thurgh sentence of this justice Appius,  
Muste by force his dere doughter yeven  
Unto the juge, in lecherie to liven,  
He goth him home, and set him in his hall,  
And let anon his dere doughter call;  
And with a face ~~as~~ ashen cold  
Upon hire humble face he gan behold,  
With fadres pitee stiking thurgh his herte,  
Al wold he from his purpos not converte,

Doughter, quod he, Virginia by thy name,  
Ther ben two waies, other deth or shame,  
That thou must suffre, alas that I was bore!  
For never thou deservedest wherfore  
To dien with a swerd or with a knif.  
O dere doughter, ender of my lif!  
Which I have fostred up with swiche plesance  
That thou were never out of my remembrance;  
O doughter! which that art my laste wo,  
And in my lif my laste joye also;  
O gemme of chastitee! in patience  
Take thou thy deth, for this is my sentence;  
For love and not for hate thou must be ded;  
My pitous hond must smiten of thin hed.  
Alas that ever Appius thee say!  
Thus hath ~~the juge~~ judged thee to-day.  
And told hire all the ~~as~~ as ye before  
Han herd; it needeth not to tell it more.

O mercy, dere father! quod this maid.  
And with that word she both hire armes laid  
About his necke, as she was wont to do,  
(The tere ~~braut~~ out of his eyen two)

And said, O goode father shal I die?  
Is ther no grace? is ther no remedie?

No certes, dere doughter min! quod he.  
Than yeve me leifer, father min quod she,  
My deth for to complaine a litel space;  
For parde Jepte yave his doughter grace  
For to complaine or he hire slow, alas!  
And God it wot nothing was hire trespas,  
But for she ran hire father first to see,  
To welcome him with gret solempnitee.  
And with that word she fell afwoun anon,  
And after, whan hire swouning was agon,  
She riseth up, and to hire father said;  
Blessed be God that I shal die a maid!  
Yeve me my deth or that I have a shame;  
Doth with your child your wille a Goddes name.  
And with that word she praied him ful oft  
That with his swerd he wolde smite hire soft;  
And with that word afwoun again she fell.  
Hire father, with ful forweful herte and will,  
Hire hed of smote, and by the top it hent,  
And to the juge he gan it to present,  
As he sat yet in dome in consistorie.

And whan the juge it saw, as saith the storie,  
He bad to take him and anhang him fast;  
But right anon a thousand peple in thrast  
To save the knight for routh and for pitee,  
For knowen was the false iniquitee.

The peple anon had suspect in this thing,  
By maner of the cherles challenging,  
That it was by the assent of Appius  
They wisten well that he was lecherous;  
For which unto this Appius they gon,  
And caste him in a prison right anon,  
Whereas he slow himself; and Claudius,  
That servant was unto this Appius,  
Was demed for to hang upon a tree,  
But that Virginus of his pitee  
So prayed for him that he was exiled,  
And elles certes had he ben beguiled;  
The remenant were anhangd, more and lesse,  
That were consentant of this cursednesse.

Here men may see how sin hath his merite;  
Beth were, for no man wot whom God wol smite  
In no degrec, ne in which maner wise  
The worme of conscience may agrise  
Of wicked lif, though it so privee be  
That no man wote therof sauf God and he;  
For be he lewed man or elles lered  
He n<sup>o</sup>t how sone that he shal ben afered;  
Therefore I rede you this conseil take.  
Forlaketh sinne or sinne you forsake.

## THE PARDONERES PROLOGUE.

Our Hoste gan to swere as he were wood,  
 Harrow! (quod he) by nailes and by blood  
 This was a false cherl and a false justice.  
 As shameful deth as herte can devise  
 Come to thisse juges and hir advocas.  
 Algate this fely maide is slain, alas!  
 Alas! to dere abought she hire beautee;  
 Wherefore I say that all day man may see  
 That yestes of Fortune and of Nature  
 Ben cause of deth to many a creature.  
 Hire beautee was hire deth, I dare wel sain:  
 Alas! so pitoufly as she was slain.  
 Of bothe yestes that I speke of now  
 Men han ful often more for harm than prow.

But trewely, min owen maister dere,  
 This was a pitous Tale for to here;  
 But natheles passe over is no force.  
 I pray to God to save thy gentil corps,  
 And eke thyn urinals and thy jordanes,  
 Thin Ypocras, and eke thy Galianes,  
 And every boist ful of thy letuarie  
 God blesse hem and our Lady Seint Marie.

So mote I the thou art a propre man,  
 And like a prelat, by Seint Ronian.  
 Said I not wel? I cannot speke in terme;  
 But wel I wot thou dost min herte to erme,  
 That I have almost caught a cardiale:  
 By *corpus Domini* but I have triacle,  
 Or elles a draught of moist and corny ale,  
 Or but I here anon a mery Tale,  
 Myn herte is lost for pitee of this maid.  
 Thou *bel amy*, thou Pardoner he said,  
 Tel us som mirth of japes ~~right~~ anon.

It shal be don, quod he, by Seint Ronian.  
 But first (quod he) here at this ale-stake  
 I wol both drinke and biten on a cake.  
 But right anon thisse gentiles gan to crie;  
 Nay, let him tell us of no ribaudrie:  
 Tell us som moral thing, that we mow here  
 Som wit, and thanne wol we gladly here.  
 I graunte ywis, quod he; but I must thinke  
 Upon som honest thing while that I drinke.

## THE PARDONERES TALE\*.

LORDINGS, quod he, in chirche whan I preche,  
 I peine me to have an hautein speche,  
 And ring it out as round as goth a bell,  
 For I can all by rote that I tell.  
 My teme is alway on, and ever was,  
*Radix malorum est cupiditas.*

First I pronounce whennes that I come,  
 And than my bulles shew I alle and some:  
 Our liege lordes sele on my patente  
 That shew I first, my body to warrente,  
 That no man be so bold, ne preest ne clerk,  
 Me to disturbe of Cristes holy werk:

\* A company of riotors conspire to kill Death, who killeth them one after another. *Speight.*

And after that than tell I forth my tales.  
 Bulles of popes and of cardinales,  
 Of patriarkes and bishoppes, I shewe,  
 And in Latin I speke a wordes fewe  
 To saffron with my predication,  
 And for to stere men to devotion:  
 Than shew I forth my longe cristal stones,  
 Ycrammed ful of cloutes and of bones;  
 Relikes they ben, as wenen they echon.

Than have I in laton a shulder bone  
 Which that was of an holy lewes shepe.

Good men, say I, take of my wordes kepe;  
 If that this bone be washe in any well,  
 If cow, or calf, or shepe, or oxe, swell



That any worm hath ete, or worm ystonge,  
Take water of that well and wash his tonge,  
And this hole anon; and forthermore,  
Of pockes and of scab, and every sore,  
Shal every shepe be hole that of this well  
Drinketh a draught: take kepe of that I tell.

If that the good man that the bestes oweth  
Wol every yeke, or that the cok him croweth,  
Fasting ydrunken of this well a draught,  
As thiike holy Jew our eldres taught,  
His bestes and his store shal multiplie:  
And, Sires, also it heleth jaloufie;  
For though a man be falle in jalous rage,  
Let maken with this water his potage,  
And never shal he more his wif mistrust,  
Though he the soth of hire defeaute wist,  
Al had she taken preestes two or three.

Here is a mitaine eke that ye may see:  
He that his hand wol put in this mitaine  
He shal have multiplying of his graine,  
Whan he hath sown, be it whete or otes,  
So that he offer pens or elles grotes.

And men and women, o thing warne I you;  
If any wight be in this chirche now  
That hath don sinne horrible, so that he  
Dare not for shame of it yshriven be;  
Or any woman, be she yong or old,  
That hath ymade hire husbond cokewold,  
Swiche folk shul han no power ne no grace  
To offer to my reliques in this place:  
And who so findeth him out of swiche blame  
He wol come up and offer in Goddes name,  
And I affoyle him by the auctoritee  
Which that by bulle ygranted was to me.

By this gaude have I wonnen yere by yere  
An hundred mark sin I was Pardoniere.  
I stonde like a clerk in my pulpet,  
And whan the lewed peple is down yset  
I preche so as ye han herd before,  
And tell an hundred false japes more:  
Than peine I me to stretchen forth my necke,  
And ek and west upon the peple I becke,  
As doth a dove sitting upon a berne:  
Myn hondes and my tonge gon so yerne,  
That it is joye to see my besinesse.  
Of avarice and swiche cursednesse  
Is all my preching, for to make hem free  
To yeve hir pens, and namei unto me;  
For min entente is not but for to winne,  
And nothing for correction of sinne:  
I recke never whan that they be beried  
Though that hir soules gon a blake beried.

For certes many a predication  
Cometh oft time of evil entention;  
Som for plesance of folk and flaterie,  
To ben avanced by hypocrisie;  
And som for vaine glorie, and som for hate:  
For whan I dare non other wayes debate,  
Than wol I sting him with my tonge sinerte  
In preching, so that he shal not asterte  
To ben defamed falsly, if that he  
Hath trespassed to my brethren or to me:  
For though I telle not his propre name,  
Men shal wel knowen that it is the same

By signes, and by other circumstances.  
Thus quite I folk that don us displeances,  
Thus spit I out my venime under hewe  
Of holinesse, to seme holy and trewe.  
But shortly min entente I wol devise;  
I preche of nothing but for covetise,  
Therefore my teme is yet, and ever was,  
*Radix malorum est cupiditas.*

Thus can I preche again the same vice  
Which that I use, and that is avarice.  
But though myself be guilty in that sinne,  
Yet can I maken other folk to twinne  
From avarice, and fore hem to repente;  
But that is not my principal entente:  
I preche nothing but for covetise.  
Of this matere it ought ynough suffice.

Than tell I hem ensamples many on  
Of olde stories longe time agon,  
For lewed peple loven tales olde;  
Swiche thinges can they wel report and holde.  
What? trowen ye that whiles I may preche  
And winnen gold and silver for I teche,  
That I wol live in poverte wilfully?  
Nay, nay; I thought it never trewely:  
For I wol preche and beg in sondry londes,  
I wol not do no labour with min hondes,  
Ne make baskettes for to live therby,  
Because I wol not beggen idelly.  
I wol non of the apostles contrefete;  
I wol have money, wolle, chese, and whete,  
Al were it yeven of the pourest page,  
Or of the pourest widewe in a village,  
Al shulde hire children sterven for famine:  
Nay, I wol drinke the licour of the vine,  
And have a joly wenche in every toun.

But herkeneth, Lordings, in conclusioun,  
Your liking is that I shall tell a Tale.  
Now I have dronke a draught of corny ale,  
By God I hope I shal you tell a thing  
That shal by reson ben at your liking;  
For though myself be a ful vicious man,  
A moral Tale yet I you tellen can,  
Which I am wont to prechen for to winne.  
Now hold your pees, my Tale I wol beginne.

In Flaunders whilom was a compaignie  
Of yonge folk that haunteden folie,  
As hazard, riot, stews, and tavernes,  
Wheras with harpes, lutes, and giternes,  
They dance and plaie at dis bothe day and night,  
And ete also and drinke over hir might,  
Thurgh which they don the devil sacrifice,  
Within the devils temple, in cursed wise,  
By superfluitee abhominable.  
Hir othes ben so gret and so damnable  
That it is grisly for to here hem swere.  
Our blisful Lordes body they to-tere;  
Hem thought the Jewes rent him not ynough;  
And eche of hem at others sinne lough.

And right anon in comen tombeesters  
Fetis and smale, and yonge fruitesters,  
Singers with harpes, baudes, wasereres,  
Which ben the veray devils officeres,  
To kindle and blow the fire of lecherie,  
That is annexed unto glotonie.

The holy writ take I to my witnesse  
That luxurie is in wine and dronkenesse.

Lo, how that dronken Loth unkindely  
Lay by his daughters two unwetingly;  
So dronke he was he n'iste what he wrought.

Herodes, who so wel the stories sought,  
Whan he of wine replete was at his feste,  
Right at his owen table he yave his heste  
To sleen the Baptist John ful gilteles.

Seneca saith a good word douteles;  
He saith he can no difference find  
Betwix a man that is out of his mind  
And a man whiche that is dronkelew;  
But that woodnesse, yfallen in a shrew,  
Persevereth lenger than doth dronkenesse.

O glotonie! full of cursednesse,  
O cause first of our confusion!  
O original of our damnation!  
Til Crist had bought us with his blood again:  
Loketh how dere, shortly for to sain,  
Abought was thilke cursed vilanie:  
Corrupt was all this world for glotonie.

Adam our father, and his wif also,  
Fro Paradis to labour and to wo  
Were driven for that vice, it is no drede;  
For while that Adam fasted, as I rede,  
He was in Paradis, and whan that he  
Ete of the fruit defended on a tree,  
Anon he was out cast to wo and peine.

O glotonie! on thee wel ought us plaine.

O! wist a man how many maladies  
Folwen of excesse and of glotonies,  
He wolde ben the more mesurable  
Of his diete, sitting at his table.  
Alas! the shorte throte, the tendre mouth,  
Maketh that est and west, and north and south,  
In erthe, in air, in water, men to swinke  
To gete a gloten deintee mete and drinke.  
Of this matere, O Poule! wel canst thou trete:  
Mete unto wombe, and wombe eke unto mete,  
Shal God destroien bothe, as Paulus saith.  
Alas! a foule thing is it by my faith,  
To say this word, and fouler is the dede,  
Whan man so drinketh of the white and rede  
That of his throte he maketh his privee  
Thurgh thilke cursed superfluitee.

The apostle saith weping ful pitously,  
Ther walken many of which you told have I;  
I say it now weping with pitous vois  
That they ben enemies of Cristes crois,  
Of whiche the end is deth; womb is hir God:  
O wombe, o belly! stinking is thy cod,  
Fulfilled of dong and of corruption;  
At either end of thee foule is the foun.  
How gret labour and cost is thee to find!  
Thise cokes how they stamp, and streine, and grind,  
And turnen substance into accident,  
To fulfill all thy likerous talent!  
Out of the hardy bones knocken they  
The mary, for they casten nought away  
That may go thurgh the gullet soft and sote:  
Of spicerie, of leef, of harke, and rote,  
Shal ben his fause ymaked, by delit  
To make him yet a newer appetit:

But certes he that haunteth swiche delices  
Is ded while that he liveth in tho vices.

A lecherous thing is wine, and dronkenesse  
Is ful of striving and of wretchednesse,  
O dronken man! disfigured is thy face,  
Sour is thy breth, foul art thou to embrace,  
And thurgh thy dronken nose semeth the soun  
As though thou saidest ay Sampfoun! Sampfoun!  
And yet, God wot, Sampfoun dronk never no wine.  
Thou falest as it were a stiked swine;  
Thy tonge is lost, and all thin honest cure,  
For dronkenesse is veray sepulture  
Of mannes wit and his discretion.  
In whom that drinke hath domination  
He can no conseil kepe, it is no drede.  
Now kepe you fro the white and fro the rede,  
And namely fro the white wine of Lepe,  
That is to sell in Fishstrete and in Chepe.  
This wine of Spaigne crepeth subtilly  
In other wines growing faste by,  
Of which ther riseth swiche fumositee,  
That whan a man hath dronken draughtes three,  
And weneth that he be at home in Chepe,  
He is in Spaigne, right at the toun of Lepe,  
Not at the Rochell, ne at Burdeux toun,  
And thanne wol he say Sampfoun! Sampfoun!

But herkeneth, *Lozings*, o word, I you pray,  
That all the soveraine actes, dare I say,  
Of victories in the Olde Testament,  
Thurgh veray God that is omnipotent,  
Were don in abstinence and in prayere;  
Loketh the Bible, and there ye mow it lere.

Loke, Attila the grette conquerour  
Died in his slepe with shame and dishonour,  
Bleding ay at his nose in dronkenesse:  
A capitaine shulde live in sobrenesse.

And over all this aviseth you right wel  
What was commanded unto Lamuel;  
Not Samuel, but Lamuel, say I.  
Redeth the Bible, and find it expresly  
Of wine yeving to hem that have justice.  
No more of this, for it may wel suffice.

And now that I have spoke of glotonie,  
Now wol I you defenden hafardrie.  
Hafard is veray moder of lesinges,  
And of deceite and cursed forsweringes,  
Blaspheming of Crist, manslaughter, and wast also  
Of catel, and of time; and forthermo  
It is repreve, and contrary of honour  
For to ben hold a comun hafardour,  
And ever the higher he is of estat  
The more he is holden desolat.  
If that a prince useth hafarderie,  
In alle governance and policie  
He is, as is by comun opinion,  
Yhold the lesse in reputation.

Stilbon, that was a wise embassadour,  
Was sent to Corinth with ful gret honour  
Fro Calidone, to maken hem alliance;  
And whan he came he happed him *par sence*  
That all the grettest that were of that lond  
Yplaying atte hazard he hem fond;  
For which, as sone as that it mighte be,  
He stalle him home agein to his contree,

And sayde ther, I wol not lese my name,  
 No wol not take on me so gret defame,  
 You for to allie unto non hasardours;  
 Sendeth som other wise embassadours,  
 For by my trouthe me were liuer die  
 Than I you shuld to hasardours allie;  
 For ye, that ben so glorious in honours,  
 Shal not allie you to non hasardours,  
 As by my wille, ne as by my trectee.  
 This wise philosophe thus sayd he.

Loke eke how to the King Demetrius  
 The King of Parthes, as the book sayth us,  
 Sent him a pair of dis of gold in scorne,  
 For he had used hasard therbefore,  
 For which he held his glory and his renoun  
 At no value or reputacioun.

Lordes may finden other maner play  
 Honest enough to drive the day away.

Now wol I speke of othes false and grete  
 A word or two, as olde bookes trecte.  
 Gret swering is a thing abhominable,  
 And false swering is yet more reprevable.  
 The highe God forbad swering at al,  
 Witnesse on Mathew; but in special  
 Of swering sayth the holy Jemie,  
 Thou shalt swere soth thine othes, and not lie,  
 And swere in dome, and eke in rightwisnesse,  
 But idel swering is a cursednesse.

Behold and see that in the firste table  
 Of highe Goddes hestes honourable  
 How that the second hest of him is this,  
 Take not my name in idle or amis.  
 Lo, rather he forbedeth swiche swering  
 Than homicide or many an other thing.  
 I say that as by ordre thus it stondeth,  
 This knoweth he that his hestes understondeth  
 How that the second hest of God is that;  
 And furthermore, I wol the tell all plat  
 That vengeance shal not parten from his hous  
 That of his othes is outrageous.

By Goddes precious herte, and by his nailes;  
 And by the blood of Crist that is in Hailes,  
 Seven is my chance, and thin is cink and treye:  
 By Goddes armes if thou falsly pleye  
 This dagger shal thurghout thin herte go.  
 This fruit cometh of the bicchel bones two,  
 Forswering, ire, falsnesse, and homicide.

Now for the love of Crist, that for us dide,  
 Leteth your othes be the gret and smale.  
 But, Sires, now wol I tell you forth my Tale.

Thise riotours three of which I tell,  
 Long erst or prime rong of any bell,  
 Were set hem in a tavern for to drinke,  
 And as they sat they herd a belle clinke  
 Before a corps was caried to his grave;  
 That on of hem gan callen to his knave,  
 Go bet, quod he, and axe redily  
 What corps is this that passeth here forth by,  
 And loke that thou report his name wel.

Sire, quod this boy, it nedeth never a del;  
 It was me told or ye came here two houres;  
 He was parde an old felaw of youre,  
 And sodenly he was yslain to-night,  
 For dronke as he sat on his bench upright;

VOL. I.

Ther came a privee thief men clepen Deth,  
 That in this contree all the peple sleth,  
 And with his spere he smote his herte atwo;  
 And went his way withouten wordes mo.  
 He hath a thousand slain this pestilence;  
 And, maister, or ye come in his presence  
 Me thinketh that it were ful necessarie  
 For to beware of swiche an adversarie:  
 Beth redy for me to mete him evermore;  
 Thus taughte me my deth; I say no more.

By Sainte Marie, sayd this tavernere,  
 The child sayth soth, for he hath slain this yere.  
 Hens over a mile, within a gret village,  
 Both man and woman, child, and hyne and page,  
 I trowe his habitation be there:  
 To ben avised gret wisdom it were  
 Or that he did a man a dishonour.

Ye, Goddes armes, quod this riotour,  
 Is it swiche peril with him for to mete?  
 I shal him seke by stile and eke by strete,  
 I make a vow by Goddes digne bones.  
 Herkeneth, felawes, we three ben alle ones;  
 Let eche of us hold up his hond to other,  
 And eche of us becomen others brother,  
 And we wol slen this false traitour Deth:  
 He shal be slain, he that so many sleth,  
 By Goddes dignitee, or it be night.

Togeder han thise three hir trouthes plight  
 To live and dien eche of hem for other,  
 As though he were his owen boren brother.  
 And up they stert al drunken in this rage;  
 And forth they gon towards that village  
 Of which the taverner had spoke before,  
 And many a grisly oth than have they sworn,  
 And Cristes blessed body they to-rent,  
 Deth shal be ded, if that we may him hent.

Whan they han gon not fully half a mile,  
 Right as they wold han troden over a stile,  
 An olde man and a poure with hem mette:  
 This olde man ful mekely hem grette,  
 And sayde thus; Now, Lodes, God you see!

The proudest of thise riotours three  
 Answerd agen; What? cherl, with fery grace,  
 Why art thou all forwrapped save thy face?  
 Why livest thou so longe in so gret age?

This olde man gan loke in his visage,  
 And sayde thus; For I ne cannot finde  
 A man, though that I walked into Inde,  
 Neither in citee ne in no village,  
 That wolde change his youthe for min age;  
 And therefore mote I han min age still.  
 As longe time as it is Goddes will.  
 Ne Deth, alas! ne wil not han my lif:  
 Thus walke I like a restles carter,  
 And on the ground, which is my modres gate,  
 I knocke with my staf erlich and late,  
 And say to hire, Love mother, let me in.  
 Lo, how I vanish, flesh, and blood, and skin.  
 Alas! whan shal my bones ben at reste?  
 Mother, with you wold I changen my cheste,  
 That in my chambre longe time hath be,  
 Ye, for an heren clout to wrap in me.  
 But yet to me she wol not don that grace;  
 For which ful pale and welked is my face.



But, Sires, to you it is no curtesie  
To speke unto an olde man vilanie,  
But he trespase in word or elles in dede.  
In holy writ ye moun yourselven rede  
Ageins an olde man bore upon his hede  
Ye shuld arise : therefore I yeve you rede  
Ne doth unto an olde man non harm now,  
No more than that ye wold a man did you  
In age, if that ye may so long abide ;  
And God be with you where you go or ride :  
I mooste go thider as I have to go.

Nay, olde cherl, by God thou shalt not so,  
Sayde this other hafardour anon ;  
'Thou parteft not so lightly, by Seint John.  
'Thou spake right now of thilke traitour Deth,  
'That in this contree all our frendes sleth ;  
Have here my trowth, as thou art his espie,  
'Tell wher he is, or thou shalt it abie  
By God and by the holy sacrament,  
For sothly thou art on of his assent  
To slen us yonge folk, thou false thefe.

Now, Sires, quod he, if it be you so lese  
To finden Deth, tourne up this croked way,  
For in that grove I left him by my fay  
Under a tree, and ther he wol abide,  
Ne for your host he wol him nothing hide.  
Se ye that oke ? right ther ye shuln him find.  
God save you that bought agen mankind,  
And you amende ! Thus sayd this olde man.

And everich of thise riotoures ran  
Til they came to the tree, and ther they found  
Of Floreins fine of gold ycoined round  
Wel nigh and eighte busshels, as hem thought :  
No lenger than after Deth they fought,  
But eche of hem so glad was of the fight,  
For that the Floreins ben so faire and bright,  
That down they sette hem by the precious hord :  
The werste of hem he spake the firste word.

Brethren, quod he, take kepe what I shal say ;  
My wit is gret though that I bourde and play.  
This tresour hath Fortune unto us yeven,  
In mirth and jolitee our lif to liven,  
And lightly as it cometh so wol we spend.  
Ey, Goddes precious dignitee ! who wend  
To-day that we shuld han so faire a grace ?  
But might this gold be caried fro this place  
Home to myn hous, or elles unto youres,  
(For wel I wote that all this gold is oures)  
Thanne were we in high felicitie ;  
But trewely by day it may not be,  
Men wolden say that we were theeves strong,  
And for our owen tresour don us hong.  
This tresour must ycaried be by night  
As wisely and as sleighly as it might ;  
Wherefore I rede that cut among us alle  
We drawe, and let see wher the cut wol falle ;  
And he that hath the cut, with herte blith,  
Shal rennen to the toun, and that ful swith,  
And bring us bred and win ful prively ;  
And two of us shal kepen subtilly  
This tresour wel ; and if he wol not tarien,  
Whan it is night we wol this tresour carien  
By on assent wher as us thinketh best.

That on of hem the cut brought in his fist.

And bad him drawe, and loke wher it wold fall  
And it fell on the yongest of hem alle,  
And forth toward the toun he went anon :  
And al so sone as that he was agon  
That on of hem spake thus unto that other ;  
Thou wotest wel thou art my sworn brother,  
Thy profite wol I tell the right anon.  
Thou wost wel that our felaw is agon,  
And here is gold, and that ful gret plente,  
That shal departed ben among us three ;  
But natheles, if I can shape it so  
That it departed were among us two,  
Had I not don a frendes turn to thee ?

That other answerd, I n'ot how that may be :  
He wote wel that the gold is with us tweye.  
What shuln we don, what shuln we to him seye ?  
Shal it be conseil ? sayde the firste shrewe,  
And I shal tellen thee in wordes fewe  
What we shul don, and bring it wel about  
I grante, quod that other, out of doute,  
That by my trowth I wol thee not bewreie.

Now, quod the first, thou wost wel we ben  
And tweie of us shal strengre be than on. [tweie.  
Loke, whan that he is set thou right anon  
Arise, as though thou woldest with him play,  
And I shal rive him thurgh the sides tway  
While that thou stroglest with him as in game,  
And with thy dagger-loke thou do the same ;  
And than shal this gold departed be,  
My dere frend ! betwixen thee and me ;  
Than moun we bothe our lustes al fulfille,  
And play at dis right at our owen wille.  
And thus accorded ben thise shrewes tweye  
To slen the thridde, as ye han herde me seye.

This yongest, which that wente to the toun,  
Ful oft in herte he rolleth up and down  
The beautee of thise Floreins new and bright.  
O Lord ! quod he, if so were that I might  
Have all this tresour to myself alone,  
Ther n'is no man that liveth under the trone  
Of God that shulde live so mery as I.  
And at the last the fend our enemy  
Putte in his thought that he shuld poison beye,  
With which he mighte slen his felaws tweye :  
For why ? the fend fond him in swiche living  
That he had leve to forwe him to bring ;  
For this was outrely his ful entente,  
To slen hem both and never to repente.  
And forth he goth, no lenger wold he tary,  
Into the toun unto a potecary,  
And praied him that he wolde sell  
Some poison, that he might his ratouns quell ;  
And eke ther was a polkat in his hawe  
That, as he sayd, his capons had yslawe ;  
And fayn he wolde him wreken, if he might,  
Of vermine that destroyed hem by night.

The potecary answerd, Thou shalt have  
A thing, as wisely God my soule save,  
In all this world ther n'is no creature  
That ete or dronke hath of this confecture,  
Not but the mountance of a corne of whete,  
That he ne shal his lif anon forlete,  
Ye, sterve he shal, and that in lesse while  
Than thou wolt gon a pas not but a mile ;

This poison is so strong and violent.  
 This cursed man hath in his hond yhent  
 The poison in a box, and swithe he ran  
 Into the nexte strete unto a man,  
 And be wred of him large botelles three,  
 In the two the poison poured he;  
 The thredde he kepte cleane for his drinke,  
 For all the night he shope him for to swinke  
 In caryng of the gold out of that place.

And whan this riotour with fory grace  
 Hath filled with win his grete botelles three  
 To his felawes agen repaireth he.

What nedeth it thereof to sermon more?  
 For right as they had lost his deth before,  
 Right so they han him slain, and that anon.  
 And whan that this was don, thus spake that on;  
 Now let us sit and drinke, and make us mery.  
 And afterward we will his body bery.  
 And with that word it happed him *par cas*  
 To take the botelle ther the poison was,  
 And dronke, and yave his felaw drinke also,  
 For which anon they storven bothe two.

But certes I suppose that Avicenne  
 Wrote never in no canon ne in no fenne  
 Mo wonder signes of empoisoning  
 Than had this wretch's two or hir ending.  
 Thus ended ben this homicides two,  
 And eke the false empoisoner also.

O cursednesse of all cursednesse;  
 O traitours homicide! o wickednesse!  
 O glotonie, luxurie, and hasardrie!  
 Thou blasphemour of Crist with vilanie  
 And othes grete of usage and of pride!  
 Alas! mankinde, how may it betide  
 That to thy Creatour, which that thee wrought,  
 And with his precious herte-blood thee bought,  
 Thou art so false and so unkind? alas!

Now, good men, God foryeve you your trespas,  
 And ware you fro the sinne of avarice,  
 Min holy pardon may you all warice,  
 So that ye offre nobles or starlinges,  
 Or elles silver broches, spones, ringes.  
 Boweth your hed under this holy bulle.  
 Cometh up, ye wives, and offreth of your wolle;  
 Your names I entre here in my roll anon;  
 Into the blisse of heven shul ye gon:  
 I you assoile by min high powere,  
 You that wiln offre, as cleane and eke as clere  
 As ye were borne. Lo, Sires, thus I preche;  
 And Jesu Crist, that is our soules leche,  
 So graunte you his pardon to receive  
 For that is best, I wol you not deceive.

But, Sires, o word forgate I in my Tale;  
 I have relikes and pardon in my male  
 As faire as any man in Engelond,  
 Which were me yeven by the Popes hond.  
 If any of you wol of devotion  
 Offren, and han my absolution,  
 Cometh forth anon, and kneleth here adoun,  
 And mekely receiveth my pardoun;  
 Or elles taketh pardon as ye wende,  
 Al new and freshe at every tounes ende,  
 So that ye offren alway newe and newe  
 Nobles or pens which that ben good and trawe,  
 It is an honour to everich that is here  
 That ye moun have a sufficient Pardoner  
 To assoilen you in contree as ye ride  
 For adventures which that moun betide.  
 Paraventure ther may falle on or two  
 Doun of his hors, and breke his necke atwo.  
 Loke, which a seurtee is it to you alle  
 That I am in your felawship yfalle,  
 That may assoile you both more and lesse,  
 Whan that the soule shal fro the body passe.  
 I rede that our Hoste shal beginne,  
 For he is most enveloped in sinne.  
 Come forth, Sire Hoste, and offre first anon,  
 And thou shalt kisse the relikes everich on,  
 Ye for a grote: unbokel anon thy purse.

Nay, nay, quod he; than have I Cristes curse.  
 Let be, quod he; it shal not be, so the ich,  
 Thou woldest make me kisse thin olde brech,  
 And swere it were a relike of a seint,  
 Though it were with thy foundement depeint:  
 But by the crois which that Seint Heleine fond  
 I wolde I had thin coilons in min hond  
 Insteede of relikes or of seintuarie.

Let cut hem of, I wol thee help hem carie:  
 They shul be shrined in an hogges tord.

This Pardoner answered not a word;  
 So wroth he was no worde ne wolde he say.

Now, quod our Hoste, I wol no lenger play  
 With thee, ne with non other angry man.

But right anon the worthy knight began,  
 (Whan that he saw that all the peple lough)  
 No more of this, for it is right ynough.

Sire Pardoner, be mery and glad of chere  
 And ye, Sire Hoste, that ben to me so dere,  
 I pray you that ye kisse the Pardoner;  
 And, Pardoner, I pray thee draw thee ner,  
 And as we diden let us laugh and play.  
 Anon they kissed, and riden forth hir way.

## THE SHIPMAN'S PROLOGUE.

Our Hoste upon his stirrups stode anon,  
And saide, Good men, herkeneth everich on,  
This was a thrifty Tale for the nones.  
Sire Parish Preeft, quod he, for Goddes bones  
Tell us a Tale, as was thy forward yore;  
I see wel that ye lerned men in lore  
Can moche good, by Goddes dignitee.

The Person him answerd, *Benedicite!*  
What eileth the man so sinfully to swere?

Our Hoste answerd, O Jankin! be ye there?  
Now good men, quod our Hoste, herkeneth to me?  
I smell a Loller in the wind, quod he:  
Abideth for Goddes digne passion,  
For we shul han a predication:

This Loller here ~~wol prechen us samwel.~~

Nay, by my fathers soule, that shal he nat,  
Sayde the Shipman; here shal he nat preche;  
He shal no gospel-glosen here ne teche.  
We leven all in the gret God, quod he:  
He wolde sowen som difficultee,  
Or springen cockle in our clene corne;  
And therefore Hoste, I warne thee besorne  
My joly body shal a Talecelle,  
And I shal clinken you so merry a belle  
That I shal waken all this compaignie;  
But it shal not ben of philosophie,  
Ne of physike, ne termes queinte of lawe,  
Ther is but litel Latin in my mawe.

## THE SHIPMAN'S TALE.

A Marchant whilom dwelled at Seint Denise  
That riche was, for which men held him wise:  
A wif he had of excellent beautee,  
And compaignable and revelous was she,  
Which is a thing that causeth more dispence  
Than worth is all the chere and reverence  
That men hem don at festes and at dances:  
Swiche salutations and contenances  
Passen as doth a shadwe upon the wal;  
But wo is him that payen mote for all.  
The fely husband algate he mote pay,  
He mote us clothe and he mote us array  
All for his owen worship richely,  
In which array we dancen jolily:  
And if that he may not paraventure,  
Or elles lust not swiche dispence endure,  
But thinketh it is wasted and ylost,  
Than mote another payen for our cost,

Or lene us gold, and that is peritous.

This noble marchant held a worthy hous,  
For which he had all day so gret repaire  
For his bargeffe, and for his wif was faire,  
That wonder is. But herkeneth to my Tale.

Amonges all thise gestes gret and smale  
Ther was a monk, a faire man and a bold,  
I trow a thritty winter he was old,  
That ever in on was drawing to that place.  
This yonge monk, that was so faire of face,  
Acquainted was so with this goode man,  
Sithen that hire firste knowlege began,  
That in his hous as familier was he  
As it possible is any frend to be.  
And for as moche us this goode man  
And eke this monk of which that I began  
Were bothe two yborne in o village,  
The monk him claimeth as for cosinage,



And he again him sayd not ones nay,  
But was as glad therof as foule of day,  
For to his herte it was a gret plesance.  
Thus ben they knit with eterne alliance,  
And eche of hem gan other for to ensure  
Of brotherhed while that hir lif may dure.

Free was Dan John, and namely of dispence,  
As in that hous, and ful of diligence  
To don plesance, and also gret costage;  
He not forgate to yave the leste page  
In all that hous, but after hir degree  
He yave the lord and sithen his meinee,  
Whan that he came, som maner honest thing,  
For which they were as glad of his coming  
As foule is sayn whan that the sonne up riseth.  
No more of this as now, for it sufficeth.

But so befell this marchant on a day  
Shope him to maken redy his array  
Toward the town of Brugges for to fare,  
To byen ther a portion of ware,  
For which he hath to Paris sent anon  
A messager, and praied hath Dan John  
That he shuld come to Seint Denis, and pleie  
With him and with his wif a day or tweie,  
Or he to Brugges went, in all wise.

This noble monk, of which I you devise,  
Hath of his abbot as his list licence,  
(Because he was a man of high prudence,  
And eke an officer out for to ride  
To seen his granges and his bernes wide)  
And unto Seint Denis he cometh anon.

Who was so welcome as my Lord Dan John,  
Our dere cousin, ful of curtesie?  
With him he brought a jubbe of Malvesie,  
And eke another ful of fine Vernage,  
And volatile, as ay was his usage.  
And thus I let hem ete, and drinke, and pleye,  
This marchant and this monk, a day or tweye.

The thridde day this marchant up ariseth,  
And on his nedes sadly him aviseth,  
And up into his countour hous goth he,  
To reken with himselfen, wel may be,  
Of thilke yere how that it with him stood,  
And how that he dispended had his good,  
And if that he encrefed were or non.  
His bookes and his bagges many on  
He layeth befor him on his counting bord.  
Ful riche was his tresour and his hord,  
For which ful faste his countour dore he shet,  
And eke he n'olde no man shuld him let  
Of his accountes for the mene time;  
And thus he sit til it was passed prime.

Dan John was risen in the morwe also,  
And in the gardin walked to and fro,  
And hath his thinges sayd ful curteisly.

This goode wif came walking prively  
Into the gardin ther he walketh soft,  
And him salueth, as she hath don oft:  
A maiden child came in hire compaignie,  
Which as hire lust she may governe and gie,  
For yet under the yerde was the maide.

O dere cousin min! Dan John, she saide,  
What aileth you so rathe for to arise?

Nece, quod he, it ought ynough suffise

Five houres for to slepe upon a night,  
But it were for an olde appalled wight,  
As ben thise wedded men, that he and dare,  
As in a fourme sitteth a wery hare  
Were al forstraught with houndes gret and smale.  
But, dere nece! why be ye so pale?  
I trowe certes that our goode man  
Hath you laboured sith this night began,  
That you were nede to resten hastily.  
And with that word he tought ful merily,  
And of his owen thought he weke all red.

This faire wif gan for to shake hire hed,  
And saide thus; Ye, God wote all, quod she:  
Nay, cosin min, it stant not so with me;  
For by that God that yave me soule and lif  
In all the reame of Fraunce is ther no wif  
That lasse lust hath to that fery play,  
For I may sing alas and wala wa  
That I was borne! but to no wight (quod she)  
Dare I not tell how that it stant with me;  
Wherfore I thinke out of this lond to wende,  
Or elles of myself to make an ende,  
So ful am I of drede and eke of care.

This monk began upon this wif to stare,  
And sayd, Alas! my nece, God forbede  
That ye for any ferwe or any drede  
Fordo yourself: but telleth me your grefe,  
Paraventure I may in your mischefe  
Conseile or helpe; and therfore telleth me  
All your annoy, for it shal ben secree;  
For on my portos here I make an oth  
That never in my lif, for lese ne loth,  
Ne shal I of no conseil you bewray.

The same agen to you, quod she, I say.  
By God and by this portos I you swere,  
Though men me wolden all in pieces tere,  
Ne shall I never, for to gon to helle,  
Bewrey o word of thing that ye me tell;  
Nought for no cosinage ne alliance,  
But veraily for love and affiance.  
Thus ben they sworne, and hereupon they kiste,  
And eche of hem told other what hem liste.

Cosin, quod she, if that I had a space,  
As I have non, and namely in this place,  
Than wold I tell a legend of my lif,  
What I have suffred sith I was a wif  
With min husband, al be he your cosin.

Nay, quod this monk, by God and Seint Martin,  
He n'is no more cosin unto me  
Than is the leef that hangeth on the tree;  
I clepe him so, by Seint Denis of France,  
To han the more cause of acquaintance  
Of you, which I have loved specially  
Aboven alle women siketly;  
This swere I you on my professoun.  
Telleth your grefe, lest that he come adoun,  
And hasteth you, and goth away anon.

My dere love! quod she, to my Dan John!  
Ful lese were me this conseil for to hide,  
But out it mote, I may no lenger abide.

Myn husband is to me the werste man  
That ever was sith that the world began;  
But sith I am a wif, it fit not me  
To tellen no wight of our privetee.

Neither in bed ne in non other place ;  
 God shilde I shulde it tellen for his grace :  
 A wif ne shal not sayn of hire husbond  
 But all honour, as I can understond ;  
 Save unto you thus moch I tellen shal :  
 As helpe me God he is nought worth at all,  
 In no degre the value of a flie.  
 But yet me greveth most his nigardie :  
 And wel ye wot that women naturally  
 Desiren thinges fixe as well as I ;  
 They wolden that hir husbondes shulden be  
 Hardy, and wise, and riche, and therto free,  
 And buxome to his wif, and fresh a-bedde.  
 But by that ilke Lord that for us bledde,  
 For his honour myselven for to array,  
 A Sonday next I muste nedes pay  
 An hundred franks, or elles am I lorne ;  
 Yet were me lever that I were unborne  
 Than were don a selandre or vilanie.  
 And if min husbond eke might it espie  
 I n'ere but lost ; and therefore I you prey  
 Lene me this summe, or elles mote I dey :  
 Dan John, I say, lene me this hundred frankes ;  
 Parde I wol not faille you my thankes,  
 If that you list to do that I you pray ;  
 For at a certain day I wol you pay,  
 And do to you what plesance and service  
 That I may don, right as you list devise ;  
 And but I do God take on me vengeance  
 As foul as ever had Genelon of France.

This gentil monk answered in this manere ;  
 Now trewely, min owen lady dere !  
 I have (quod he) on you so grete a route,  
 That I you swere, and plichte you my trouthe,  
 That whan your husbond is to Flandres fare  
 I wol deliver you out of this care,  
 For I wol bringen you an hundred frankes.  
 And with that word he caught her by the flankes,  
 And hire embraced hard, and kiste hire oft.  
 Goth now your way, quod he, al stille and soft,  
 And let us dine as sone as that ye may,  
 For by my kalender it is prime of day :  
 Goth now, and beth as trewe as I shal be.

Now elles God forbede, Sire, quod she.  
 And forth she goth as joly as a pie,  
 And bad the cokes that they shuld hem hie,  
 So that men mighten dine, and that anon.  
 Up to hire husbond is this wif ygon,  
 And knocketh at his countour boldely.  
*Qui est la ?* quod he ; Peter, it am I,  
 Quod she. What, Sire, how longe wol ye fast ?  
 How longe time wol ye reken and cast  
 Your summes, and your bookes, and your thinges ?  
 The devil have part of all swiche rekeninges !  
 Ye han ynough parde of Goddes sonde.  
 Come down to-day, and let your bagges itonde.  
 Ne be ye not ashamed that Dan John  
 Shal fasting all this day elenge gon ?  
 What ! let us here a masse, and go we dine.

Wif, quod this man, litel canst thou divine  
 The curious besineffe that we have ;  
 For of us chapmen, all so God me save,  
 And by that lord that cleped is Seint Ive,  
 Scarfly amonget twenty ten shal thrive

Continuelly, lastig unto oure age.  
 We moun wel maken chere and good visage,  
 And driven forth the world as it may be,  
 And kepen oure estat in privetee  
 Til we be ded, or elles that we play  
 A pilgrimage, or gon out of the way :  
 And therefore have I gret necessitee  
 Upon this queinte world to avisen me ;  
 For evermore mote we stond in drede  
 Of hap and fortune in our chapmanhede.

To Flanders wol I go to-morwe at day,  
 And come agein as sone as ever I may,  
 For which, my dere wif ! I thee beseeke  
 As be to every wight buxom and meke,  
 And for to kepe our good becurious,  
 And honestly governe wel our hous.  
 Thou hast ynough in every maner wise  
 That to a thrifty household may suffice.  
 Thee lacketh non ~~array~~ no vitaille :  
 Of silver in thy purse shalt thou not faille.  
 And with that word his countour dore he shette,  
 And doun he goth ; no lenger wold he lette ;  
 And hastily a masse was ther saide,  
 And spedily the tables were ylaide,  
 And to the diner faste they hem spedde,  
 And richely this monk the chapman fedde.

And after diner Dan John sobrelly  
 This chapman toke apart, and prively  
 He said him thus ; Cofin, it stondeth so  
 That wel I see to Brugges ye wol go ;  
 God and Seint Austyn spede you and gide !  
 I pray you, cofin, wisely that ye ride ;  
 Governeth you also of your dicte  
 Attemprely, and namely in this hete.  
 Betwix us two nedeth no strange fare :  
 Farewel, cofin, God shilde you fro care !  
 If any thing ther be by day or night,  
 If it lie in my power and my might,  
 That ye me wol command in any wise,  
 It shal be don right as ye wol devise.

But o thing or ye go, if it may be ;  
 I wolde prayen you for to lene me  
 An hundred frankes for a weke or tweye,  
 For certain bestes that I muste beye,  
 To storen with a place that is oures,  
 (God help me so I wold that it were youres)  
 I shal not faille surely of my day,  
 Not for a thousand frankes, a mile way.  
 But let this thing be secree, I you preye ;  
 For yet to-night thise bestes mote I beye.  
 And ye now wel, min owen cofin dere !  
*Grand merci* of your cost and of your chere.

This noble marchant gentilly anon  
 Answerd and said, O cofin min, Dan John !  
 Now likerly this is a smal requeste ;  
 My gold is youres, whan that it you leste,  
 And not only my gold but my chaffare :  
 Take what you lest, God shilde that ye spare  
 But o thing is, ye know it wel ynough  
 Of chapmen that hir money is hir plough :  
 We moun creancen while we han a name,  
 But goodles for to ben it is no game.  
 Pay it agen whan it lith in your ese :  
 After my might ful fayn wold I you plesse.



## THE SHIPMAN'S TALE.

Thise hundred frankes fet he forth anon,  
And prively he toke hem to Dan John :  
No wight in al this world wist of this lone  
Saving this marchant and Dan John alone.  
They drinke, and speke, and some a while and  
Til that Dan John rideth to his abbeye. [pleye,

The morwe came, and forth this marchant rideth  
To his ward; his prentis wel him gideth  
Til he come in to Brugges merily.  
Now goth this marchant faste and besy  
About his nede, and bieth, and creanceth;  
He neither playeth at the dis ne danceth,  
But as a marchant, shortly for to tell,  
He ledeth his life; and ther I let him dwell.

The Sunday next the marchant was agon  
To Scint Denis ycomen is Dan John,  
With croune and berde all fresh and newe yhave.  
In all the hous ther n'as so litel a knave,  
Ne no wight elles, that he n'as ful fain  
For that my Lord Dan John was come again.  
And shortly to the point right for to gon,  
This faire wif accordeth with Dan John  
That for thise hundred frankes he shuld all night  
Haven hire in his armes bolt upright :  
And this accord performed was in dede.  
In mirth all night a besy lif they lede  
Til it was day, that Dan John yede his way,  
And bad the meinie farewel, have good day :  
For non of hem, ne no wight in the toun,  
Hath of Dan John right non suspectioun :  
And forth he rideth home to his abbey,  
Or yner him liste; no more of him I sey.

This marchant, whan that ended was the faire,  
To Scint Denis he gan for to repaire,  
And with his wif he maketh feste and chere,  
And telleth hire that chaffare is so dere  
That nedes muste he make a chevifance  
For he was bonde in a recognifance  
To payen twenty thousand sheldes anon :  
For which this marchant is to Paris gon  
To borwe of certain frendes that he hadde  
A certain frankes, and som with him he ladde.  
And whan that he was come in to the toun,  
For gret chiertee and gret affectioun  
Unto Dan John he goth him first to pleye,  
Not for to axe or borwe of him moneye,  
But for to wete and seen of his welfare,  
And for to tellen him of his chaffare,  
As frendes don whan they ben mette in fere.

Dan John him maketh feste and mery chere,  
And he him tolde agen ful specially  
How he had wel ybought and graciously  
(Thanked be God) all hole his marchandise,  
Save that he must in alle manere wise  
Maken a chevifance, as for his beste,  
And than he shulde ben in joye and reste.  
Dan John answered, Certes I am fain  
That ye in hole be comen home again ;  
And if that I were riche, as have I blisse,  
Of twenty thousand sheldes shuld ye not misse,  
For y<sup>e</sup> so kindly this other day  
Lente me gold, and as I can and may  
I thanke you, by God and by Scint Jame,  
But natheles I toke unto our dame,

Your wif, at home, the same gold again  
Upon your benche; she wote it wel certain,  
By certain tokenes that I can hire tell.  
Now by your leve I may no lenger dwell ;  
Our abbot wol out of this toun anon,  
And in his compaignie I muste gon.  
Grete wel our dame, min owen nece swete !  
And farewel, dere cosin ! til we mete.

This marchant, which that was ful ware and  
Crenced hath, and paide eke in Paris [wife,  
To certain Lumbardes, redy in hir hond,  
The summe of gold, and gate of hem his bond,  
And home he goth mery as a poppingay,  
For wel he knew he stood in fwiche array  
That nedes muste he winne in that viage  
A thousand frankes above all his costage.

His wif ful redy mette him at the gate,  
As she was wont of old usage algate ;  
And all that night in mirth they ben sette,  
For he was riche, and clerely out of dette.  
Whan it was day, this marchant gan embrace  
His wif all newe, and kiste hire in hire face,  
And up he goth, and maketh it ful tough.  
No more, quod she; by God ye have ynough ;  
And wantonly agen with him she plaide,  
Til at the last this marchant to hire faide :

By God, quod he, I am a litel wrothe  
With you my wif, although it be me lothe ;  
And wote ye why? by God, as that I gesse  
That ye han made a manere strangeness  
Betwixen me and my cosin Dan John.  
Ye shuld have warned me or I had gon  
That he you had an hundred frankes paide  
By redy token, and held him evil apaide  
For that I to him spake of chevifance :  
(Me femed so as by his contenance)  
But natheles, by God our heaven king  
I thoughte not to axe of him no thing.  
I pray thee, wif, ne do thou no more so :  
Tell me alway, er that I fro thee go.  
If any dettour hath in min absence  
Ypaid thee, lest thurgh thy negligence  
I might him axe a thing that he hath paide.

This wif was not aferde ne affraide,  
But boldely she said, and that anon,  
Mary ! I desie that false monk Dan John ;  
I kepe not of his tokenes never a del :  
He toke me certain gold, I wote it wel.  
What ! evil thedome on his monkes snoute ;  
For God it wot I wend withouten doute  
That he had yeve it me because of you,  
To don therwith min honour and my prow  
For cosinage and eke for *belle chere*  
That he hath had ful often times here :  
But sith I see I stonde in fwiche disjoint  
I wol answere you shortly to the point.

Ye have no slakke dettours than am I ;  
For I wol pay you wel and redily  
Fro day to day ; and if so be I faille,  
I am your wif, score it upon my taile,  
And I shal pay as sone as ever I may ;  
For by my trouth I have on min array,  
And not in waste, bestowed it every del ;  
And for I have bestowed it so wel



For your honour, for Goddes sake I say  
As beth not wrothe, but let us laugh and play :  
Ye shal my joly body han to wedde ;  
By God I n'ill not pay you but a-bedde :  
Foryeve it me, min owen spoule dere !  
Turne hitherward, and maketh better chere.  
This marchant saw ther was no remedy,  
And for to phide it n'ere but a foly,

Sith that the thing may not amended be.  
Now wif, he said, and I foryeve it thee ;  
But by thy lif be ne no more so large ;  
Kepe bet my good ; this yeve I thee in charge.  
Thus endeth now my Tale, and God us sende  
Taling ynough unto our lives ende.

## THE PRIORESSES PROLOGUE.

WEL said, by *corpus Domini*, quod our Hoste;  
 Now longe mote thou fallen by the coste,  
 Thou gentil maister, gentil marinere.  
~~So give the monke a thousand last quod yere.~~  
 A ha! felawes, beth ware of swiche a jape.  
 The monke put in the mannes hode an ape,  
 And in his wifes eke, by Seint Austyn.  
 Draweth no monkes more into your in.

But now passe over, and let us seek aboute  
 Who shall now tellen first of all this route

Another Tale: and with that word he said,  
 As curteisly as it had been a maid;

My Lady Prioress, by your leve,  
 So that I wist I shuld you not agreve,  
 I wolde demen that ye tellen shold  
 A Tale next, if so were that ye wold.  
 Now wol ye vochesauf, may Lady dere?

Gladly, quod she; and saide as ye shul here.

## THE PRIORESSES TALE\*.

O Lord our Lord! thy name how merveillous  
 Is in this large world ysprad! (quod she)  
 For not al only thy laude precious  
 Parfourmed is by men of dignitee,  
 But by the mouth of children thy bountee  
 Parfourmed is, for on the brest souking  
 Sometime shewen they thin herying.

Wherfore in laude, as I can best and may,  
 Of thee and of the white lily flour  
 Which that thee bare, and is a maide alway,  
 To tell a storie I will do my labour;  
 Not that I may encreasen hire honour,  
 For she herselfen is honour and rote  
 Of bountee, next hire sone, and foules beate.

Another maide! o maide and mother fre!  
 O bushe unbrent! brenning in Moyfes sight,  
 That ravishedest down fro the deitee,  
 Thurgh thin humbleffe, the gost that in the alight  
 Of whos vertue, whan he thin hette light,  
 Conceived was the fathers sapience,  
 Helpe me to tell it in thy reverence.

Lady! thy bountee, thy magnificence,  
 Thy vertue and thy gret humilitee,

Ther may no tongue expresse in no science;  
 For somtime, Lady! or men pray to thee  
 Thou gost befor of thy benignitee  
 And getest us the light of thy prayere  
 To giden us unto thy sone so dere.

My conning is so weke, o blisful Quene!  
 For to declare thy grette worthinesse,  
 That I ne may the weighte not sustene;  
 But as a child of twelf moneth old or lesse,  
 That can unnethes any word expresse,  
 Right so fare I, and therefore I you pray  
 Gideth my song that I shal of you say.

Ther was in Asie, in a gret citee,  
 Amonges Cristen folk a Jewerie,  
 Sustened by a lord of that contree,  
 For foule usure and lucre of vilanie  
 Hateful to Crist and to his compaignie,  
 And thurgh the strete men mighten ride and wende,  
 For it was free, and open at eyther ende.

A litel scole of Cristen folk ther stood  
 Doun at the fether end, in which ther were  
 Children an hepe comen of Cristen blood,  
 That lerned in that scole yere by yere  
 Swiche manere doctrine as men used there;

\* A miracle of a Christian child murdered by the Jews.  
 117.

This is to say, to singen and to rede,  
As smale children don in hir childhede.

Among thise children was a widewes sone,  
A litel clergion, sevene yere of age,  
That day by day to scole was his wone,  
And eke also, wheras he sey the image  
Of Cristes moder, had he in usage,  
As him was taught, to knele adoun, and say  
*Ave Marie* as he goth by the way.

Thus hath this widewe hire litel sone ytaught  
Our blisful Lady, Cristes mother dere,  
To worship ay, and he forgate it naught,  
For sely childe wol away sone lere.

But aye whan I remembre on this matere  
Seint Nicholas stant ever in my presence,  
For he so yong to Crist did reverence,

This litel childe his litel book lerning,  
As he sat in the scole at his primere,  
He *Alma Redemptoris* herde sing,  
As children lered hir antiphonere,  
And as he dorst he drow him nere and nere,  
And herkened ay the words and the note,  
Til he the firste vers coude al by rote.

Nought wist he what this Latin was to say,  
For he so yonge and tendre was of age;  
But on a day his felaw gan he pray  
To expounden him this song in his language,  
Or telle him why this song was in usage:  
This prayde he him to construe and declare  
Ful oft time upon his knees bare.

His felaw, which that elder was than he,  
Answered him thus; This song I have herd say,  
Was makid of our blisful Lady fre,  
Hire to salve, and eke hire for to prey  
To ben our help and socour whan we dey.  
I can no more expound in this matere:  
I lerne song; I can but smal grammere.

And is this song makid in reverence  
Of Cristes moder? said this innocent:  
Now certes I wol don my diligence  
To conne it all or Cristemasse be went,  
Though that I for my primer shal be shent,  
And shal be beten thries in an houre.  
I wol it conne our Ladie for to honoure.

His felaw taught him homeward prively  
Fro day to day til he coude it by rote,  
And than he song it wel and boldely  
Fro word to word according with the note:  
Twies a day it passed thurgh his throte,  
To scoleward and homeward whan he wente;  
On Cristes moder set was his entente.

As I have said, thurghout the Jewerie  
This litel child, as he came to and fro,  
Ful merily than wold he sing and crie  
*O Alma Redemptoris*! ever mo.

The swetenesse hath his herte perfed so  
Of Cristes moder, that to hire to pray  
He cannot stint of singing by the way,

Our firste so, the serpent Sathanas,  
That hath in Jewes herte his waspes nest,  
Up swale and said, O Ebraike peple, alas!  
Is this to you a thing that is honest.  
That swiche a boy shal walken as him leste  
In your despit, and sing of swiche sentence,  
Which is again our lawes reverence?

From thennesforth the Jewes han conspired  
This innocent out of this world to chace:  
And homicide thereto han they hired,  
That in an aleye had a privee place,  
And as the child gan forthby for to pace  
This cursed Jew him hent and held him fast,  
And cut his throte, and in a pit him cast.

I say that in a wardrope they him trefed  
Wher as thise Jewes purgen hir entrails,  
O cursed folk! of Herodes alle-newe,  
What may your evil entente you availle?  
Mordre wol out, certein it wol not faille;  
And namely ther the honour of God shal sprede  
The blood out crieth on your cursed dede.

O martyr fouded in virginitee!  
Now maist thou singe as solwen ever in on  
The white Lamb celestial quod she,  
Of which the gret evangelist Seint John  
In Pathmos wrote, which sayth that they that gon  
Beforen this Lamb, and sing a song al newe,  
That never fleschly woman they ne knewe.

This poure widewe awaiteth al that night  
After hire litel childe, and he came nought,  
For which as sone as it was dayes light,  
With face pale of drede and besy thought  
She hath at scole and elles wher him sought,  
Til finally she gan so fersaspie  
That he last seen was in the Jewerie.

With modres pitce in hire brest enclosed  
She goth, as she were half out of hire minde,  
To every place wher she hath supposed  
By likelihed hire litel child to finde;  
And ever on Cristes moder meke and kinde  
She cried, and at the laste thus she wrought,  
Among the cursed Jewes she him sought.

She freyneth and she praieth pitously  
To every Jew that dwelled in thilke place  
To telle hire of hire child went ought forth by;  
They sayden Nay; but Jesu of his grace  
Yave in hire thought, within a little space,  
That in that place after hire sone she cride  
Ther he was casten in a pit beside.

O grete God, that parformest thy laude  
By mouth of innocentes, lo here thy might  
This gem of chastitee, this emeraude,  
And eke of martirdome the rubie bright,  
Ther he with throte ycorven lay upright  
He *Alma Redemptoris* gan to singe  
So loude, that all the place gan to ringe.

The Cristen folk that thurgh the strete wente  
In comen for to wondre upon this thing,  
And justifi they for the provost sente:  
He came anon withouten taryng,  
And herieth Crist, that is of heaven king,  
And eke his moder, honour of mankind,  
And after that the Jewes let he binde

This child with pitous lamentation  
Was taken up, singing his song alway,  
And with honour and gret procession  
They carien him unto the next abbey;  
His moder swouning by the bere lay:  
Unnethes might the peple that was there  
This newe Rachel bringen fro his bere.

With turment and with shameful deth eche on  
This provost doth thise Jewes for to serve



That of this moder wiste, and that anon :  
 He n'olde no swiche cursednesse observe :  
 For he shal have that evil wol deserve ;  
 For with wild hors he did hem drawe,  
 And after that he heng hem by the lawe.

Upon his bere ay lith this innocent  
 Before the alter while the masse last,  
 And after that the abbot with his covent  
 Had speche of hem for to berie him ful fast.  
 And whan they holy water on him cast  
 Yet spake this child, whan spreint was the holy water,  
 And sang, *O Alma Redemptoris Mater !*

This abbot, which that was an holy man,  
 As monkies ben, or elles ought to be,  
 This yonge child to conyure he began,  
 And said ; O dere child ! I nasse thee,  
 In vertue of the holy trinitee,  
 Tell me what is thy cause for to sing,  
 Sith that thy throte is cut to my fleming.

My throte is cut unto my nekke bon,  
 Saide this child, and as by way of kinde  
 I shuld have deyde, ye longe time agon,  
 But Jesu Crist, as ye in bookes finde,  
 Wol that this glory last and be in minde,  
 And for the worship of his moder dere.  
 Yet may I sing *O Alma* loude and clere.

This welle of mercie, Cristes moder swete,  
 I loved alway, as after my conning ;  
 And whan that I my lif shulde forlete  
 To me she came, and bad me for to sing  
 This anthem veraily in my dying,

As ye han herde ; and whan that I had songe  
 Me thought she laid a grain upon my tonge.

Wherefore I sing, and sing I mote certain,  
 In honour of that blisful maiden free,  
 Til fro my tonge of taken is the grain.  
 And after that thus saide she to me ;  
 My litel child, than wol I fetchen thee,  
 Whan that the grain is fro thy tongue ytake :  
 Be not agaste, I wol thee not forsake.

This holy monk, this abbot him mene I,  
 His tonge out caught, and toke away the grain,  
 And he yave up the goft fol softely.  
 And whan this abbot had this wonder sein  
 His salte teres trilled adoun as reyne,  
 And groff he fell al platte upon the ground,  
 And still he lay as he had ben ybound.

The covent lay eke upon the pavement  
 Weping and herying Cristes moder dere ;  
 And after that they risen, and forth ben went,  
 And toke away this martir fro his bere,  
 And in a tombe of marble stones clere  
 Enclosen they his litel body swete :  
 Ther he is now God lene us for to mete.

O young Hew of Lincoln ! slain also  
 With cursed Jewes, as it is notable,  
 For it n'is but a litel while ago,  
 Pray eke for us, we sinful folk unstable,  
 That of his mercie God so merciabile  
 On us his grete mercie multiplie,  
 For reverence of his moder Marie.

## PROLOGUE TO SIRE THOPAS.

WHAN said was this miracle every man  
As sobet was that wonder was to see,  
Til that ~~our~~ Hoste to jape he began,  
And than at erst he loket upon me;  
And saide thus: What man art thou? quod he:  
Thou lokest as thou woldest find an hare,  
For ever upon the ground I see thee stare.

Approche nere, and loke up meryly.  
Now ware you, Sires, and let this man have place;  
He in the waste is shapen as well as I.  
This were a popet in an arme to embrace  
For any woman, smal and faire of face.

He semeth elvish by his contenance,  
For unto no wight doth he daliance.

Say now somewhat, sin other folk han saide;  
Tell us a Tale of mirth, and that anon.

Hoste, quod I, ~~ne be not evil apaid,~~

For other Tale certes can I non

But of a rime I lerned yore agon.

Ye, that is good, quod he; we shullen here

Som deintee thing me thinketh by thy chere.

## THE RIME OF SIRE THOPAS\*.

LISTENETH, Lordinges, in good entent,  
And I wol tel you *veramant*  
Of mirth and of solas,  
Al of a knight was faire and gent  
In bataille and in turnament,  
His name was Sire Thopas.

Yborne he was in fer contree,  
In Flandres, al beyonde the see,  
At Popering in the place:  
His father was a man ful free,  
And lord he was of that contree,  
As it was Goddes grace.

Sire Thopas was a doughty swain,  
White was his face as paindemaine,  
His lippes red as rose:  
His rudde is like scarlet in grain,  
And I you tell in good certain  
He had a semely nose.

His here, his berde, was like safroun,  
That to his girdle raught adoun;  
His shoon of Cordewane;  
Of Brugges were his hosen broun;  
His robe was of chekelatoun,  
That coste many a Jane.

\* A northern Tale of an outlandish knight, purposely altered by Chaucer in a rime and style differing from the rest, as though he himself were not the author but only the reporter of the other tales. *Urry*,

He coude hunt at the wilde dere,  
And ride on hauking for the rivere  
With grey goshawk on honde;  
Therto he was a good archere:  
Of wrastring was ther non his pere  
Ther ony ram shuld stonde.

Ful many a maide bright in bour  
They mourned for him *par amour*  
Whan hem were bet to slepe;  
But he was chaste and no lechour,  
And swete as is the bramble flour  
That bereth the red hepe.

And so it fell upon a day,  
Forsoth, as I you tellen may,  
Sire Thopas wold out ride;  
He worth upon his stede gray,  
And in his hond a launcegay,  
A long fwerd by his side.

He priketh thurgh a faire forest,  
Therin is many a wilde best,  
Ye both buck and hare;  
And as he pricked north and est,  
I telle it you, him had almesle  
Betidde a fory care.

Ther springen herbes grete and smale,  
The licoris and the setewale,  
And many a cloue gilofre,  
And notemuge to put in ale,  
Whether it be moist or stale,  
Or for to laim in colre.

The bridges fingen, it is no nay,  
The spermaut and the poppingay,  
That joye it was to here,  
The throftel cok made eke his lay,  
The wode dove upon the spray  
He sang ful loude and clere.

Sire Thopas felt his love-langing  
Al whan he herd the throftel sing,  
And priked as he were wood;  
His faire stede in his priking  
So swatte that men might him wring,  
His sides were al blood.

Sire Thopas eke so wery was  
For priking on the fofte gras,  
So fiers was his corage,  
That doun he laid him in that place  
To maken his stede fom solace,  
And yaf him good forage.

A, Seinte Mary, *benedicite*!  
What aileth this Love at me  
To binde me sofore?  
Me dremed all this night parde  
An elf quene shal my lemman be,  
And floupe under my gore.

An elf quene wol I love ywis,  
For in this world no woman is  
Worthy to be my make in toun.  
All other women I forsake,  
And to an elf quene I me take  
By dale and eke by doun.

Into his fadel he clombe anon,  
And priked over stile and ston  
An elf quene for to espie,  
Til he so long had riden and gone  
That he fond in a privee wone  
The contree of Faerie.

Wherin he foughte north and south,  
And oft he spied with his mouth  
In many a forest wilde,  
For in that contree n'as ther non  
That to him dorst ride or gon,  
Neither wif ne childe.

'Til that ther came a gret geaunt,  
His name was Sire Oliphaunt,  
A perilous men ~~of dede~~:  
He sayde, Child, by Termagaunt  
But if thou prike out of myn haunt  
Anon I flee thy fced with mace—  
Here is the Quene of Faerie,  
With harpe, and pipe, and simphonie,  
Dwelling in this place.

The child sayd, Al so mote I the  
To morwe wol I meten thee,  
Whan I have min armoure,  
And yet I hope *per me foy*  
That thou shalt with this launcegay  
Abien it ful seure: thy mawe

Sire Thopas drew abak ful fast;  
This geaunt at him stones cast  
Out of a fel staffe sling:  
But faire escaped child Thopas,  
And all it was thurgh Goddes grace,  
And thurgh his faire bering.

Yet listeneth, Lordings, to my Tale,  
Merier than the nightingale,  
For now I wol you rounse  
How Sire Thopas with sides smals,  
Priking over hill and dale,  
Is comen agein to toun.

His mery men commandeth he  
To maken him bothe game and gle,  
For nedes must he fighte  
With a geaunt with hedes three  
For paramour and jolitee  
Of on that shone ful brighte.

Do come, he sayd, my minestrales  
And gestours for to tellen tales  
Anon in min arming,  
Of romaunces that ben reales,  
Of popes and of cardinales,  
And eke of love-longing.

They set him first the swete win,  
And made eke in a maselin  
And real spicerie,  
Of ginger-bred that was ful fin,  
And licoris and eke comin,  
With sugar that is trie.

He didde next his white lere  
Of cloth of lake fin and clere  
A breche and eke a sherte,  
And next his shert an haketon,  
And over that an habergeon  
For percing of his herte;

And over that a fin hauberk  
Was all ywrought of Jewes werk,  
Ful strong it was of plate,  
And over that his cote-armoure,  
As white as is the lily floure,  
In which he wold debate.

His sheld was all of gold so red,  
And therin was a bores hed,  
A charboucle beside;  
And ther he swore on ale and bred  
How that the geaunt shuld be ded,  
Betide what so betide.

His jambuix were of cuirbouly,  
His sverdes sheth of ivory,  
His helme of latoun bright,  
His fadel was of rewel bone,  
His bridel as the sonne shone,  
Or as the mone light.

His spere was of fin cypres,  
That bodeth werre and nothing pees,  
The hed ful sharpe yground:  
His stede was all dapple gray,  
It goth an aumble in the way  
Ful softely and round in londe—  
Lo, Lordes min, here is a fit,  
If ye wol any more of it  
To telle it wol I fend.



And herkeneth to my spell;  
 Of bataille and of chevalrie,  
 Of ladies love and druerie,  
 Anon I wol you tell.

Men speken of romaunces of pris,  
 Of Hornchild and of Ipotis,  
 Of Bevis and Sire Guy,  
 Of Sire Libcux and Pleindamour,  
 But Sire Thopas he bereth the flour  
 Of real chevalrie.

His goode stede he al bestrode,  
 And forth upon his way he glode

As sparcle out of bronde;  
 Upon his crest he bare a tour,  
 And therin stiked a lily flour;  
 God shilde his corps fro shonde!

And for he was a knight auntrous  
 He n'olde slepen in non hous,  
 But liggen in his hood;

His bright helm was his wanger,  
 And by him baited his destrer  
 Of herbes fin and good.

Himself drank water of the well,  
 As did the knight Sire Percivel  
 So worthy under wede,  
 Til on a day—

## PROLOGUE TO MELIBEUS.

No more of this for Goddes dignitee,  
 Quod our Hoste, for thou makest me  
 So wery of thy veray lewednesse,  
 That al so willy God my soule bleffe  
 Min eres aken of thy draffy speche.  
 Now swiche a rime the devil I betече;  
 This may wel be rime dogerel, quod he.

Why so? quod I; why wolt thou letten me  
 More of my Tale than an other man,  
 Sin that it is the beste rime I can?

By God, quod he, for plainly at o word  
 Thy draffy riming is not worth a tord;  
 Thou hast nought elles but dispendest time.  
 Sire, at o word thou shalt no lenger rime.  
 Let see wher thou canst tellen ought in geste,  
 Or tellen in prose somewhat at the leste  
 In which ther be som mirthe or som doctrine.

Gladly, quod I; by Goddes swete pine  
 I wol you tell a litel thing in prose  
 That oughte liken you, as I suppose,  
 Or elles certes ye be to dangerous.  
 It is a moral Tale vertuous,  
 Al be it told somtime in sondry wise  
 Of sondry folk, as I shal you devise.

As thus; ye wot that every evangelist  
 That telleth us the peine of Jesu Crist  
 Ne saith not alle thing as his felaw doth;  
 But natheles hir sentence is al soth,  
 And alle accorden as in hir sentence,  
 Al be ther in hir telling difference;  
 For som of hem say more and som say lesse  
 Whan they his pitous passion expresse:  
 I mene of Mark and Mathew, Luke and John,  
 But douteles hir sentence is all on.  
 Therefore, Lordinges all, I you besече,  
 If that ye thinke I vary in my speche,  
 As thus, though that I telle som del more  
 Of proverbes than ye han herde before  
 Comprehended in this litel tretise here,  
 To enforcen with the effect of my matere,  
 And though I not the same wordes say  
 As ye han herde, yet to you alle I pray  
 Blameth me not, for as in my sentence  
 Shul ye nowher finden no difference  
 Fro the sentence of thilke tretise lite  
 After the which this mery Tale I write;  
 And therefore herkeneth what I shal say,  
 And let me tellen all my Tale I pray.

## TALE OF MELIBEUS\*.

A YONGE man called Melibeus, mighty and riche, begate upon his wif that called was Prudence a daughter which that called was Sophie.

Upon a day befell that he for his disport is went into the felde him to playe. His wif and eke his doughter hath he left within his hous, of which the dores weren fast yshette. Foure of his olde foos han it espied, and setten ladders to the walles of his hous, and by the windowes ben entred, and beten his wif, and wounded his doughter with five mortal woundes in five sondry places; this is to say, in hire feet, in hire hondes, in hire eres, in hire nose, and in hire mouth, and lesten hire for dede, and wenten away.

Whan Melibeus retorned was into his hous, and sey al this melchief, he like a madman rending his clothes gan to wepe and crie.

Prudence his wif, as fer forth as she dorste, besought him of his weping for to stinte: but not forthy he gan to crie and wepen ever lenger the more.

This noble wif Prudence remembred hire upon the sentence of Ovide, in his book that cleped is *The Remedie of Love*, wheras he saith, He is a fool that distourbeth the moder to wepe in the deth of hire childe til she have wept hire fille, as for a certain time; and than shal a man don his diligence with amiable wordes hire to reconforte, and preye hire of hire weping for to stinte. For which reson this noble wif Prudence suffred hire husband for to wepe and crie as for a certain space, and whan she saw hire time she sayde to him in this wise: Alas! my Lord, quod she, why make ye yourself for to be like a fool? forsothe it apperteineth not to a wise man to maken swiche a sorwe. Your doughter with the grace of God shal warish and escape. And al were it so that she right now were dede, ye ne ought not as for hire deth yourself to destroye. Senek saith, The wise man shal not take to gret discomfort for the deth of his children, but certes he shulde suffren it in patience, as wel as he abideth the deth of his owen propre persone.

This Melibeus answered anon and saide; What man (quod he) shulde of his weping stinte that hath so gret a cause for to wepe? Jesu Crist our Lord himself wepte for the deth of Lazarus his frend. Prudence answerd; Certes wel I wote attempre weping is nothing defended to him that sorweful is among folk in sorwe, but it is rather graunted him to wepe. The apostle Poule unto the Romaines writeth, Man shal rejoyce with hem that maken joye, and wepen with swiche folk as wepen. But though attempre weping be graunted, outrageous weping certes is ~~defended~~. Mesure of weping shulde be considered ~~after~~ the lore that techeth us Senek. Whan that thy frend is ~~dece~~ (quod he) let not thin eyen to moiste ben at teres ne to muche drie; although the teres comen to thin eyen let hem not falle. And whan thou hast forgon thy frend do diligence to get agein another frend; and this is more wisdom than for to wepe for thy frende which that thou hast loene, for therin is no bote. And therefore if ye governe you by sapience, put away sorwe out of youre herte. Remembreth you that Jesus Sirak sayth, A man that is joyous and glad in herte it him conserveth flourishing in his age; but sothly a sorweful herte maketh his bones drie. He saith eke thus, that surwe in herte sleeth ful many a man. Salomon sayth, that right as mouthes in the shepes fleese anoieth to the clothes, and the finale wormes to the tree, right so anoieth sorwe to the herte of man; wherfore us ought as wel in the deth of oure children as in the losse of our goodes temporel have patience.

Remembre you upon the patient Job; what he hadde lost his children and his temporel substance, and in his body endured and received ful many a grevous tribulation, yet sayde he thus, Oure Lord hath yave it to me, our Lord hath berast it me; right as oure Lord hath wold riht so it is don; yblessed be the name of oure Lord. To this foresaide thinges answered Melibeus unto his wif Prudence: All thy wordes (quod he) be trewe, and therto profitable, but trewely min herte is troubled with this sorwe so grevously that I n'ot what to don. Let calle (quod Prudence) thy trewe frendes alle, and thy linage, which that ben wise, and tellerh to hem your cas, and herkeneth what they saye in conseilling, and ga-

\* Prudence, the discreet wife of Melibeus, persuadeth her husband to patience, and to receive his enemies to mercie and grace. A Tale full of moralitie, wherein both high and low may learne to governe their affections. *Speght.*



verne you after hir sentence. Salomon saith, Werke all thinges by conseil and thou shalt never repente.

Than by conseil of his wif Prudence this Melibeus let callen a gret congregation of folk, as surgeons, phisiciens, olde folk and yonge, and som of his olde enemies reconciled (as by hir semblant) to his love and to his grace; and therewithal ther comen some of his neighebores that diden him reverence more for drede than for love, as it happeth oft: ther comen also ful many subtil flatterers, and wise advocats lerned in the lawe.

And whan this folk togeder assembled weren, this Melibeus in forweful wise shewed hem his cas, and by the manere of his speche it semed that in herte he bare a cruel ire, ready to don vengeance upon his foos, and sodenly desired that the werre shulde beginne, but natheles yet axed he his conseil upon this matere. A surgien, by licence and assent of swiche as weren wise, up rose, and unto Melibeus sayde as ye moun here.

Sire, (quod he) as to us surgiens apperteineth that we do to every wight the beste that we can, wher as we ben withholden, and to our patient that we do no damage, wherfore it happeth many time and ofte that whan twey men han everich wounded, other o same surgien heleth hem both, wherfore unto our art it is not pertinent to norice werre, ne parties to supporte: but certes as to the warisshing of youre doughter, al be it so that perille by she be wounded, we shuln do so entent if besynesse fro day to night, that with the grace of God she shal be hole and sound as sone as is possible. Almost right in the same wise the phisiciens answerden, save that they saiden a fewe wordes more; that right as maladies ben cured by hir contraries, right so shal man warishe werre. His neighebores ful of envie, his feined frendes that semed reconciled, and his flaterers, maden semblant of weping, and empeired and aggregated muchel of this matere, in preying gretly Melibee of might, of power, of richesse, and of frendes, despying the power of his adversaries, and saiden outrely that he anon shulde wreken him on his foos, and begynnen werre.

Up rose than an advocat that was wise, by leve and by conseil of other that were wise, and sayde; Lordinges, the nede for the which we ben assembled in this place is a ful havye thing, and heigh matere, because of the wrong and of the wikkednesse that hath be don, and eke by reason of the gret damages that in time coming ben possible to fallen for the same cause, and eke by reson of the gret richesse and power of the parties bothe, for the which resons it were a ful gret peril to erren in this matere; wherfore, Melibeus, this is oure sentence: we conseil you, aboven alle thing, that right anon thou do thy diligence in keping of thy propre persone in swiche a wise that thou ne want non espie ne watche thy body for to save: and after that we conseil that in thin hous thou sette sufficient garnison, so that they moun as wel thy body as thy hous defende; but certes for to meeven werre, ne sodenly

for to do vengeance, we moun not deme in so litel time that it were profitable; wherfore we axen leiser and space to have deliberation in this cas to deme; for the comune proverbe saith thus He that sohe demeth sone shal repente; and eke men sain that thilke juge is wise that sone understondeth a matere and jugeth by leiser: for al be it so that al tarying be anoiful, algates it is not to repreve in yeving of jugement, ne in vengeance taking, whan it is sufficient and resonable: and that shewed our Lord Jesu Crist by ensample; for whan that the woman that was taken in advoutrie was brought in his presence, to knowen what shuld be don with hire persone, al be it that he wist wel himself what that he wolde answer, yet ne wolde he not answer so deynly, but he wolde have deliberation, and in the ground he wrote twies: and by this causes we axen deliberation, and we shuln than by the grace of God conseil the thing that shal be profitable.

Up sterte than the yonge folk at ones, and the most partie of that compaignie han scorned this olde wise man, and begonnen to make noise and saiden, Right so as while that iren is hot men shulde finite, right so men shuln do wreken hir wronges while that they ben freshe and newe: and with loude voys they criden Werre! werre! Up rose tho on of this old wise, and with his hand made countenance that men shuld holde hem stille and yeve him audience. Lordinges, (quod he) ther is ful many a man that crieth Werre! werre! that wote ful litel what werre amounteth. Werre at his beginning hath so gret an entring and so large, that every wight may enter whan him liketh, and lightly find werre; but certes what end that shal befall it is not light to know; for sothly whan that werre is ones begonne there is ful many a child unborne of his moder that shal sterve yong by cause of thilke werre, other elles live in sorwe, and dien in wretchednesse; and therefore or that any werre be begonne men must have gret conseil and gret deliberation. And whan this olde man wende to enforcen his tale by resons, wel nie alle at ones begonne they to rise for to breken his tale, and bidden him ful oft his wordes for to abregge; for sothly he that preacheth to hem that listen not heren his wordes, his sermon hem anoiet; for Jesus Sirak sayth that truste in weping is a noious thing: this is to sayn, as mucke availleth to speke beforen folk to which his speche anoiet astofinge beforen him that wepeth. And whan this wise man saw that him wanted audience al shamefast he sette him down aguin: for Salomon saith, Ther as thou ne mayst have non audience enforce thee not to speke. I see wel (quod this wise man) that the comune proverbe is soth, that good conseil wanteth whan it is most nede.

Yet had this Melibeus in his conseil many folk that prively in his ere conseilled him certain thing, and conseilled him the contrary in general audience. Whan Melibeus had herd that the grettest party of his conseil were accorded that he shulde make werre, anon he consented to hire conseilling,

and fully affirmed hir sentence. Than Dame Prudence, whan that she saw how that hire husbonde shope him forto awake him on his foos, and to beginne werre, she in ful humble wise, whan she saw hire time, sayde him these wordes: My Lord, (quod she) I you beseeche, as hertly as I dare and can, ne haste you not to faste, and for alle guerdonds as yeve me audience; for Piers Alphonse \* sayth, Who so that doth to thee outhir good or harme haste thee not to quite it, for in this wise thy frend wol abide, and thin enemye shal the lenger live in drede. The proverbe sayth, He, hasteth wel that wisely can abide; and in wikked hast is no profite.

This Melibee answered unto his wif Prudence; I purpose not (quod he) to werken by thy conseil for many causes and reasons, for certes every wight wold hold me than a fool; this is to sayn, if I for thy conseil wolde change thinges that be ordained and affirmed by so many wise men. Secondly, I say that all women ben wicke, and non good of hem all; for of a thousand men, saith Salomon, I found o good man; but certes of alle women good found I never. And also, certes if I governed me by thy conseil it shulde seme that I had yeve thee over me the maistrie; and God forbode that it so were; for Jesus Sirak sayth, that if the wif have the maistrie she is contrarious to hire husbond; and Salomon sayth, Never in thy lif to thy wif, ne to thy child, ne to thy frend, ne yeve no power over thyself; for better it were that thy children axe of thee thinges that hem nedeth, than thou see thyself in the handes of thy children. And also if I wol werche by thy conseil, certes it must be somtime secree, til it were time that it be knowen, and this ne may not be if I shulde be conseilled by thee [For it is writen † The janglerie of women ne can no thing hide save that which they wote not; after the philosophre seyth, In wikked conseil women venquishen men: and for thise reasons I ne owe not to be conseilled by thee.]

Whan Dame Prudence, ful debonairly, and with gret patience, had herd all that hire husbonde liked for to say, than axed she of him licence for to speke, and sayde in this wise: My lord, (quod she) as to your first reson it may lightly ben answerd, for I say that it is no folie to chaunge conseil whan the thing is chaunged, or elles whan the thing semeth otherwise than it semed afore. And moreover, I say, though that ye have sworne and

behight to performe your emprise, and nevertheless ye weive to performe thilke same emprise by just cause, men shuld not say therefore ye were a lyer ne forsworn; for the book sayth that the wise man maketh no lesing whan he turneth his corage for the better. And al be it that your emprise be established and ordeined by gret multitude of folk, yet that you not accomplish thilke ordinance out you liketh, for the trouthe of thinges and thir profit ben rather founden in fewe folk that ben wise and ful of reson, than by gret multitude of folk ther every man cryeth and clattereth what him liketh; sothly swiche multitude is not honest. As to the second reson, wheras ye say that all women ben wicke; save your grace, certes ye despise alle women in this wise, and he that all despiseth, as saith the book, all despleth: And Senek saith, that who so wol have sapience shal no man dispise, but he shal gladly teche the science that he can without presumption or pride, and swiche thinges as he neught can he shal not ben ashamed to lere hem, and to enquire of lesse folk than himself. And, Sire, ther hath ben ful many a good woman may lightly be preved; for certes, Sire, our Lord Jesu Crist n'olde never han descended to be borne of a woman if all women had be wicked; and after that, for the gret harme that is in women, our Lord Jesu Crist, whan he was risen from deth to lif, appeared rather to a woman than to his apostles. And though that Salomon sayde he founde never no good woman, folweth not therefore that all women be wicked; for though that he ne found no good woman, certes many another man hath founde many a woman ful good and trewe: or elles, peraventure, the entent of Salomon was this, that in soveraine bountee he found no woman; this is to say, that ther is no wight that hath soveraine bountee save God alone, as he himself recordeth in his Evangelies; for ther is no creature so good that him ne wanteth somewhat of the perfection of God that is his maker. Your thridde reson is this; ye say that if that ye governe you by my conseil it shulde seme that ye had yeve me the maistrie and the lordship of your person. Sire, save your grace, it is not so; for if so were that no man shulde be conseilled but only of hem that han lordship and maistrie of his person, men n'olde not be conseilled so often; for sothly thilke man that asketh conseil of a purpos, yet hath he free chois whether he wol werke after that conseil or non. And as to your fourth reson, ~~that is to say~~ that the janglerie of women can hide thinges that they wote not, as who so sayth that a woman can not hide that she wote; Sire, this wordes ben understonde of women that ben jangleresses and wicked, of which women men fain that three thinges driven a man out of his hous, that is to say, smoke, dropping of raine, and wicked wives; and of swiche women Salomon sayth, that a man were better dwell in desert than with a woman that is riotous: and, Sire, by your leve, that am not I, for ye have ful often assaied my gret silence and my gret

\* He calls himself *Petrus Alfonsi* in his *Dialogus contra Judaeos*, ms. Harl. 3861. He there informs us, that he was himself originally a Jew, but converted and baptized in the year 1106, in July, *die natalis App. Petri et Pauli* upon which account he took the name of Peter.

† What is included between brackets is wanting in all the mss. which I have examined: it is plainly necessary to the sense, as it shews us what the fourth and fifth reasons of Melibee were to which Prudence replies: I have therefore inserted as literal a translation as I imagine Chaucer might have made of the following passage in the Fr. Melibee, ms. Reg. 19. C. vii: "Car il est escript, la janglerie des femmes ne puet riens celer fors ce qu'elles ne voient: Apris le philosophre dit, en mauvais conseil les femmes."



things that men oughten secretly to hiden. And sothly as to your fifthe reson, wheras ye say that in wicked conseil women venquished men, God wrote that thilke reson stant here in no stede; for understondeth now ye axen conseil for to do wickednesse, and if ye wol werken wickednesse, and your wif restraineth thilke wicked purpos, and overcometh you by reson and by good conseil, certes your wif ought rather to be preised than to be blamed: thus shulde ye understonde the philosophre that sayth, in wicked conseil women venquishen hir husbondes. And ther as you blamen all women and hir resons, I shal shewe you by many ensamples that many women have ben ful good, and yet ben, and hir conseil holesome and profitable. Eke som men han sayd that the conseil of women is either to dere or elles to litel of pris: but al be it so that ful many a woman be bad, and hire conseil vile and nought worth, yet han men founden ful many a good woman, and discrete and wise in conseilling. Lo Jacob, thurgh the good conseil of his mother Rebecke, wan the benison of his father and the lordship over all his brethren; Judith by hire good conseil delivered the citee of Bethulie, in which she dwelt, out of the honde of Holofern, that had it beseged, and wolde it destroye; Abigail delivered Nabal hire housbond fro David the king, that wolde han slain him, and appeased the ire of the king by hire wit and by hire good conseilling; Hester by hire conseil enhaunced gretly the peple of God in the regne of Assuerus the king; and the same bountee in good conseilling of many a good woman moun men rede and tell. And further more, whan that oure Lord had created Adam oure forme father he sayde in this wise; It is not good to be a man allone; make we to him an helpe semblable to himself. Here moun ye see that if that women weren not good, and hir conseil good and profitable, oure Lord God of heven wolde neither han wrought hem ne called hem helpe of man, but rather confusion of man. And ther sayd a clerk ones in two vers, What is better than gold? jaspre; what is better than jaspre? wisdom; and what is better than wisdom? woman; and what is better than a good woman? nothing. And, Sire, by many other resons moun ye seen that many women ben good, and hir conseil good and profitable: and therefore, Sire, if ye wol troste to my conseil, I shall restore you your doughter hole and sound, and I wol don to you so muche that ye shuin have honour in this cas.

Whan Melibee had herd the wordes of his wif Prudence, he sayd thus; I se wel that the word of Salomon is soth, for he saith that wordes that ben spoken discretly by ordinaunce ben honiecombes, for they yeven swetenesse to the soule and holesomnesse to the body: and, wif, because of thy swete wordes, and eke for I have preved and assaied thy grete sapience and thy grete trouthe, I wol governe me by thy conseil in alle thing.

Now, Sire, (quod Dame Prudence) and for that ye vouchsafe to be governed by my conseil, I wol enforme you how that ye shulde governen

in alle your werkes mekely beseechen to the heigh God that he wol be your conseilour, and shapeth you to swiche entente that he yeve you conseil and comforte, as taught Tobie his sone; At alle times thou shalt blesse God, and preie him to dresse thy wayes; and loke that alle thy counseils ben in him for evermore. Seint James eke sayth, If any of you have nede of sapience, axe it of God. And afterwarde than shullen ye take conseil in yourself, and examine wel your owen thoughtes of swiche thinges as you thinketh that ben best for your profit; and than shuin ye drive fro your herte three thinges that ben contrarious to good conseil, that is to sayn, ire, coveitise, and hastinesse.

First, he that axeth conseil of himself, certes he must be withouten ire for many causes. The first is this; he that hath gret ire and wrath in himself, he wenerth alway that he may do thing that he may not do. And, secondly, he that is irous and wroth he may not wel deme; and he that may not wel deme may not wel conseil. The thridde is this; he that is irous and wroth, as sayth Seneca, ne may not speke but blameful thinges, and with his vicious wordes he stirreth other folk to anger and to ire. And eke, Sire, ye must drive coveitise out of your herte; for the apostle sayth, that coveitise is the rote of all harmes: and trosteth wel that a coveitous man ne can not deme, ne thinke, but only to fulfille the end of his coveitise, and certes that ne may never ben accomplished; for ever the more haboundance that he hath of riches, the more he desireth. And, Sire, ye must also drive out of youre herte hastinesse; for certes ye ne moun not deme for the beste a soden thought that falleth in your herte, but ye must avise you on it ful ofte; for, as ye have herde herebeforn, the commune proverbe is this, He that sone demeth sone repenteth.

Sire, ye ne be not alway in like disposition, for certes som thing that somtime semeth to you that it is good for to do, another time it semeth to you the contrarie.

And whan ye han taken conseil in yourself, and han demed by good deliberation swiche thing as you semeth beste, than rede I you that ye kepe it secree. Bewreye not your conseil to no persone, but if so be that ye wenen likerly that thurgh youre bewreying youre condition shal ben to you more profitable; for Jesus Sirak saith, Neither to thy soo ne to thy frend discover not thy secrete, ne thy folie; for they wold yeve you audience and looking, and supportation, in your presence, and scorne you in youre absence. Another clerk sayth, that scarcely shalt thou finden any persone that may kepe thy conseil secretly. The book saith, While that thou kepest thy conseil in thin herte thou kepest it in thy prison, and whan thou bewreyest thy conseil to any wight, he holdeth thee in his snare; and therefore you is better to hiden your conseil in your herte than to preye him to whom ye han bewreyed youre conseil that he wol kepe it close and stille; for Seneca sayth, If so be that thou ne mayst not thin owen conseil hiden, how



ly that thy bewreying of thy conseil to a persone wol make thy condition to stonden in the better plight, than shalt thou telle him thy conseil in this wise. First, thou shalt make no semblant whether thee were lever pees or werre, or this or that, ne shewe him not thy will ne thin entente; for treste wel that communly these conseilours ben flaterers, namely the conseilours of grete lordes, for they enforcen hem alway rather to speken plesant wordes, enclining to the lordes lust, than wordes that ben trewe or profitable, and therefore men sayn that the riche man hath selde good conseil but if he have it of himself. And after that thou shalt consider thy frendes and thin enemies. And as touching thy frendes, thou shalt consider which of hem ben most feithful and most wise, and eldest and most appoved, in conseilung, and of hem shalt thou axe thy conseil as the cas requireth.

I say, that first ye shuln clepe to youre conseil youre frendes that ben trewe; for Salomon saith, that right as the herte of a man deliteth in favour that is swote, right so the conseil of trewe frendes yeveth swetenesse to the soule: he sayth also, Ther may nothing be likened to the trewe frend, for certes gold ne silver ben not so much worth as the good will of a trewe frend: and eke he sayth, that a trewe frend is a strong defence; who so that it findeth, certes he findeth a gret tresor. Than shuln ye eke consider if that your trewe frendes ben discrete and wise; for the book saith, Axe alway thy conseil of hem that ben wise. And by this same reson shuln ye clepen to youre conseil youre frendes that ben of age, swiche as han feyn and ben expert in many thinges, and ben appoved in conseilunges; for the book saith, In olde men is al the sapience, and in longe time the prudence: And Tullius sayth, that grete thinges ne ben not ay accomplished by strengthe ne by delivernesse of body, but by good conseil, by auctoritee of persones, and by science; the which three thinges ne ben not feble by age, but certes they enforcen and encrefen day by day. And than shuln ye kepe this for a general reule; first, ye shuln clepe to your conseil a fewe of your frendes that ben especial; for Salomon saith, Many frendes have thou, but among a thousand chese thee on to be thy conseilour. For al be it so that thou first ne telle thy conseil but to a fewe, thou mayest afterwarde tell it to mo folk if it be nede. But loke alway that thy conseilours have thilke three conditions that I have sayd before; that is to say, that they be trewe, wise, and of olde experience. And werke not alway in every nede by on conseilour allone, for somtime behoveth it to be consailed by many; for Salomon saith, Salvation of thinges is wher as ther ben many conseilours.

Now sith that I have told you of which folk ye shulde be consailed, now wol I teche you which conseil ye ought to eschue. First, ye shuln eschue the conseilung of fooles; for Salomon saith, Take no conseil of a fool, for he ne cannot consaille but after his owen lust and his affection: the book saith, The propertee of a fool is this, he troweth lightly harme of every man, and lightly troweth

all bountee in himself. Thou shalt eke eschue the conseilung of all flaterers, swiche as enforcen hem rather to preisen youre persone by flaterie, than for to tell you the sothfastnesse of thinges.

Wherefore Tullius sayth, Among alle the peple lesces that ben in frendship the grettest is flaterie; and therefore it is more nede that thou eschue and drede flaterers than any other peple. The book saith, Thou shalt rather drede and fle fro the swete wordes of flatering preisers than fro the egre wordes of thy frend that saith thee sothes: Salomon saith, that the wordes of a flaterer is a snare to cacchen innocentes: he sayth also, He that speket to his frend wordes of swetenesse and of plesance, he setteth a net before his feet to cacchen him: and therefore sayth Tullius, Eucline not thin eres to flaterers, ne take no conseil of wordes of flaterie: and Caton sayth, Avise thee wel, and eschue wordes of swetenesse and of plesance. And eke thou shalt eschue the conseilung of thin olde enemies that ben reconciled. The book saith, that no wight retourneth safely into the grace of his olde enemy: and Ysop saith, Ne trost not to hem to which thou hast somtime had werre or enmittee, ne telle hem not thy conseil: and Senek telleth the cause why; It may not be, sayth he, ther as gret fere hath long time endured that ther ne dwelleth fere vapour of warmnesse; and therefore saith Salomon, In thin olde foe trost thou never; for likerly though thin enemy be reconciled, and maketh thee chere of humiltee, and louteth to thee with his hed, ne trost him never, for certes he maketh thilke feined humiltee more for his profite than for any love of thy persone, because that he demeth to have victorie over thy persone by swiche feined contenance, the which victorie he might not have by strif of werre. And Peter Alphonse saith, Make no felawship with thin olde enemies, for if thou do hem bountee they wollen perverten it to wickednesse. And eke thou must eschue the conseilung of hem that ben thy servants, and beren thee gret reverence, for paraventure they feign it more for drede than for love; and therefore saith a philosophe in this wise, Ther is no wight parfitly trewe to him that he to fore dredeth. And Tullius sayth, Ther n'is no might so gret of any emperour that longe may endure, but if he have more love of the peple than drede. Thou shalt also eschue the conseilung of folk that ben dronkelewe, for they ne can no conseil hide; for Salomon saith, Ther n'is no privetee ther as regeth dronkenesse. Ye shuln also have in suspect the conseilung of swiche folk as consaille you o thing prively, and consaille you the contrarie openly; for Cassiodore saith, that it is a manere sleighte to hinder his enemy whan he sheweth to don a thing openly, and werketh prively the contrary. Thou shalt also have in suspect the conseilung of wicked folk, for hir conseil is alway ful of fraude. And David saith, Blisful is that man that hath not folwed the conseilung of shrewes. Thou shalt also eschue the conseilung of yonge folk, for hir conseilung is not ripe, as Salomon saith.

Now, Sire, sith I have shewed you of whiche

folk ye shullen take youre conseil, and of which folk ye shullen eschue the conseil, now wol I teche you how ye shuln examine your conseil after the doctrine of Tullius. In examining than of your conseilours, ye shuln confidre many thinges. ~~First~~ first, thou shalt confidre that in thilke thing that thou purpofest, and upon what thing that thou wolt have conseil, that veray trouthe be said and conserved; this is to say, telle trewely thy tale; for he that sayth false may not wel be consailed in that cas of which he lieth. And after this thou shalt confidre the thinges that accorden to that thou purpofest for to do by thy conseilours, if reson accord therto, and eke if thy might may atteine therto, and if the more part and the better part of thin conseilours accorden therto or no. Than shalt thou confidre what thing shal folwe of that conseil, as hate, pees, werre, grace, profite, or damage, and many other thinges, and in alle thinges thou shalt chese the beste, and weive all other thinges. Than shalt thou confidre of what roote is engendred the matere of thy conseil, and what fruit it may conceive and engendre. Thou shalt eke confidre alle the causes from whennes they ben sprongen. And whan thou hast examined thy conseil, as I have said, and which partie is the better and more profitable, and hast appproved it by many wise folk and olde, than shalt thou confidre if thou mayst performe it and maken of it a good ende; for certes reson wol not that any man shulde beginne a thing but if he mighte performe it as him oughte, ne no wight shulde take upon him so hevy a charge that he might not beren it, for the proverbe sayth, He that to muche embraceth distreineth litel; and Caton saith, Assay to do swiche thinges as thou hast power to don, lest the charge oppresse thee so sore that thee behoveth to weive thing that thou hast begonne. And if so be that thou be in doute whether thou mayst performe a thing or non, chese rather to suffre than to beginne. And Peter Alphonse sayth, If thou hast might to don a thing of which thou must repente, it is better nay than ya; this is to sayn, that thee is better to holde thy tonge stille than for to speke. Than mayst thou understonde by stronger resons, that if thou hast power to performe a werk of which thou shalt repente, than is thee better that thou suffre than beginne. Wel sayn they that defenden every wight to assaye a thing of which he is in doute whether he may performe it or non. And after whan ye han examined your conseil as I have said besorne, and knowen wel that ye moun performe your emprise, conferme it than sadly til it be at an ende. Now is it reson and time that I shewe you whan and wherfore that you maun chaunge your conseil withouten repreve. Sothly a man may change his purpos and his conseil if the cause ceseth, or whan a newe cas betideth; for the lawe saith, that upon thinges that newly betiden behoveth newe conseil; and Seneca sayth, If thy conseil is comen to the eres of thin enemies chaunge thy conseil. Thou mayst also chaunge thy conseil, if so be that thou find that by error or by other cause,

harne or damage may betide: also if thy conseil be dishoneste, other elles come of dishoneste cause, chaunge thy conseil; for the lawes sain that all behestes that ben dishoneste ben of no value; and eke if so be that it be impossible, or may not goodly be performed or kept.

And take this for a general reule, that every conseil that is affermed so strongly that it may not be chaunged for no condition that may betide, I say that thilke conseil is wicked.

This Melibeus, whan he had herd the doctrine of his wif Dame Prudence, answered in this wise: Dame, quod he, as yet unto this time ye han wel and covenantly taught me, as in general, how I shal governe me in the chesing and in the withholding of my conseilours; but now wold I fain that you wold condescend in especial, and telle me how liketh you or what semeth you by oure counseillours that we han chosen in oure present nede.

My Lord, quod she, I beseeche you in alle humblesses that ye wol not wilfully replie again my resons, ne distempere your herte, though I speke thing that you displese, for God wote that as in min entente I speke it for your beste, for youre honour and for youre profit eke, and sothly I hope that youre benignitee wol taken it in patience. And trosteth me wel, quod she, that youre conseil as in this cas ne shulde not (as to speke proprely) be called a conseil, but a motion or a moving of folie, in which conseil ye han erred in many a sondry wise.

First and forward, ye han erred in the assembling of youre conseilours, for ye sholde first han cleped a fewe folk to youre conseil, and after ye mighte han shewed it to mo folk if it hadde ben nede; but certes ye han sodeinly cleped to your conseil a gret multitude of peple, ful chargeant, and ful anoyous for to here. Also ye han erred, for ther as ye shulde han only cleped to youre conseil youre trewe frendes olde and wise, ye han cleped straunge folk, yonge folk, false flaterers, and enemies reconciled, and folk that don you reverence withouten love. And eke ye han erred, for ye han brought with you to youre conseil ire, covetise, and hastifnesse, the which three thinges ben contrary to every conseil honest and profitable, the which three thinges ye ne han not anientified or destroyed neither in youre self ne in youre conseilours as you ought. Ye han erred also, for ye han shewed to youre conseilours youre talent and youre affections to make werre anon, and for to do vengeance, and they han espied by youre wordes to what thing ye ben enclined, and therefore han they consailed you rather to youre talent than to youre profite. Ye han erred also, for it semeth that you sufficeth to han ben consailed by thise conseilours only, and with litel avis, wheras in so high and so gret a nede it had ben necessarie mo conseilours and more deliberation to performe youre emprise. Ye han erred also, for ye han not examined your conseil in the foresaid manere, ne in due manere as the cas requireth. Ye han erred also, for ye han maked no division betwix youre conseilours; this is to



sayn, betwix youre trewe frendes and youre feined conseilours; ne ye han not knowe the wille of youre trewe frendes olde and wise, but ye han cast alle hir wordes in an hoche pot, and enclined your herte to the more part and to the greter nombre, and ther be ye confounded: and sith ye wot wel that men shuln alway finde a greter nombre of fooles than of wise men, and therefore the conseilings that ben at congregations and multitudes of folk, ther as men take more regard to the nombre than to the sapience of persones, ye seen wel that in swiche conseilings fooles han the maistrie. Melibeus answered and said again; I graunte wel that I have erred, but ther as thou hast told me herebefore that he n'is not to blame that chaungeth his conseil in certain cas, and for certain and just causes, I am al ready to chaunge my conseil right as thou wolt devise. The proverbe sayth, For to don sinne is mannish, but certes for to persevere in sinne is werke of the devil.

To this sentence answered anon Dame Prudence, and saide; Examine the which of hem han spoken most resonably, and taught you best conseil: and for as muche as the examination is necessarie, let us beginne at the surgiens and at the physiciens that first spaken in this mater. I say that physiciens and surgiens han sayde you in youre conseil discretly as hem oughte, and in hir speche saiden ful wisely that to the office of hem apperteineth to don to every wight honour and profite, and no wight to anoye, and after hir craft to don gret diligence unto the cure of hem which that they han in hir governaunce. And, Sire, right as they han answered wisely and discretly, right so rede I that they be highly and soverainly guerdoned for hir noble speche, and eke for they shulden do the more ententif besinesse in the curation of thy dere doughter: for al be it so that they ben youre frendes, therefore shullen ye not suffren that they serve you for nought, but ye oughte the rather guerdene hem, and shewe hem youre largeffe. And as touching the proposition which the physiciens entreteden in this cas, this is to sayn, that in maladies that a contrarie is warished by another contrarie, I wold fain knowe how ye understonde thilke text, and what is your sentence. Certes, quod Melibeus, I understond it in this wise, that right as they han don me a contrarie, righte so shulde I don hem another; for right as they han venged hem upon me and don me wrong, right so shal I venge me upon hem and don hem wrong, and than have I cured a contrarie by another.

Lo, lo! quod Dame Prudence, how lightly is every man enclined to his owen desire and his owen plesance! Certes (quod she) the wordes of the physiciens ne shulden not han ben understonden in that wise, for certes wickednesse is not contrarie to wickednesse, ne vengeance to vengeance, ne wrong to wrong, but they ben semblable, and therefore a vengeance is not warished by another vengeance, ne a wrong by another wrong, but everich of hem encreseth and aggreggeth o-

ther. But certes the wordes of the physiciens shulden ben understonde in this wise, for good and wickednesse ben two contraries, and pees and werre, vengeance and suffraunce, discord and accord, and many other thinges; but certes wickednesse shal be warished by goodnesse, discord by accord, werre by pees, and so forth of other thinges. And hereto accordeth Seint Poule the apostle in many places; he sayth, Ne yelde not harme for harme, ne wicked speche for wicked speche, but do wel to him that doth to thee harme, and blesse him that faith to thee harme. And in many other places he amonesteth pees and accord. But now wol I speke to you of the conseil which that was yeven to you by the men of lawe, and the wise folk and old folke, that sayden alle by on accord as ye han herd before, that over alle thinges ye shuln do your diligence to kepe your persone, and to warnefore your huse; and saiden also, that in this cas you oughte for to werchen ful avisely and with gret deliberation. And, Sire, as to the first point, that toucheth the keping of youre persone, ye shuln understonde that he that hath werre shal ever more devoutly and mekely preien before alle thinges that Jesu Crist of his mercie wol han him in his protection, and ben his soveraine helping at his nede; for certes in this world ther is no wight that may be conseilid ne kept safely withoute the keping of oure Lord Jesu Crist. To this sentence accordeth the prophete David, that sayth, If God ne kepe the citee in idel waketh he that kepeth it. Now, Sire, than shuln ye committe the keping of youre persone to youre trewe frendes that ben apprevd and yknowe, and of hem shuln ye axen helpe youre persone for to kepe; for Ca-ton sayth, If thou have nede of helpe, axe it of thy frendes, for ther n'is non so good a physicien as thy trewe frend. And after this than shuln ye kepe you fro alle straunge folk, and fro lieres, and have alway in suspect hir compaignie; for Piers Alphonse sayth, Ne take no compaignie by the way of a straunge man, but if so be that thou have knowen him of lenger time; and if so be that he falle into thy compaignie paraventure withouten thin assent, enquere than as subtilly as thou maist of his conversation, and of his lif before, and feine thy way, saying thou wolt go thider as thou wolt not go; and if he bere a spere hold thee on the right side, and if he bere a swerd hold thee on his left side. And after this than shuln ye kepe you wisely from all swiche maner peple as I have sayed before, and hem and hir conseil eschue. And after this than shuln ye kepe you in swiche manere that for any presumption of youre strengthe that ye ne despise not ne account not the might of your adversary so lite that ye let the keping of youre persone for your presumption, for every wise man dredeth his enemy: and Salomon sayth, Welful is he that of alle hath drede; for certes he that thurgh the hardinesse of his herte, and thurgh the hardinesse of himself, hath to gret presumption, him shal evil betide. Than shuln ye evermore untrewaite embouffements and alle espiaile; for Senek sayth, that the wise man that dredeth harmes eschueth harmes, ne he ne falleth into perils that



perils eschue. And al be it so that it seme that thou art in siker place, yet shalt thou alway do thy diligence in keping of thy persone; this is to sayn, ne be not negligent to kepe thin persone not only fro thy grettest enemy but also fro thy beste enemy. Senek sayth, A man that is wel awised he dredeth his leste enemy; Ovide sayth, That the litel wessel wol flee the gret boll and the wilde hart; and the book sayth, A litel thorne may prikke a king ful fore; and a litel hound wol hold the wilde bore. But natheles I say not thou shalt be so awised that thou doute wher as is no drede. The book saith that \* som men [han taught he hir deceivour, for they han to much dreded] to be deceived. Yet shalt thou drede to be empoysoned and [therfore shalt thou] kepe thee fro the compaignie of scornors; for the book sayth, With scornors we make no compaignie, but flee hir wordes as venime.

Now as to the second point, wheras youre wise conseilours conseilled you to warnestore your hous with gret diligence, I wolde fain knowe how that ye understonde thilke wordes, and what is your sentence.

Melibeus answered and saide; Certes I understond it in this wise, that I shal warnestore min hous with toures, swiche as han castelles and other edifices, and armure, and artelries, by which thinges I may my persone and myn hous so kepen and defenden that min enemies shul ben in drede min hous for to approche.

To this sentence answered anon Prudence: Warnestoring (quod she) of heighe toures and of gret edifices, is with grete cottages and with grete travaille, and whan that they ben accomplished yet ben they not worth a stre, but if they ben defended by trewe frendes that ben olde and wise. And understonde wel that the gretteste and strongeste garneson that a riche man may have, as wel to kepen his persone as his goodes, is, that he be beloved with his subgets and with his neighebores; for thus sayth Tullius, that ther is a maner garneson that no man may venquish ne discomfite, and that is a lord to be beloved of his citeizins and of his peple.

Now, Sire, as to the thridde point, wheras youre olde and wise conseilours sayden that you ne oughte not sodeinly ne hastily proceden in this nede, but that you oughte purveyen and appareilen you in this cas with gret diligence and gret deliberation, trevely I trowe that they sayden right wisely and right soth; for Tullius sayth, In every nede er thou beginne it appareile thee with gret diligence. Than say I that in vengeaunce taking in werre, in bataille, and in warnestoring, er thou beginne I rede that thou appareile thee therto, and do it with gret deliberation; for Tullius sayth

that longe appareiling tofore the bataille maketh short victorie; and Cassiodorus sayth, The garneson is stronger whan it is longe time awised.

But now let us speken of the conseil that was accorded by youre neighebores swiche as don you reverence withouten love, youre olde enemies reconciled, your flaterers, that conseilled you certain thinges prively, and openly conseilled you the contrarie, the yonge folk also, that conseilled you to venge you and to make werre anon. Certes, Sire, as I have sayde beforne, ye han gretly erred to han cleped swiche maner folk to youre conseil, which conseilours ben ynough reprovod by the resons aforesaid: but natheles, let us now descende to the special. Ye shul first proceden after the doctrine of Tullius. Certes the trouthe of this matere or of this conseil nedeth not diligently to enquire, for it is wel wist which they ben that han don to you this trespas and vilanie, and how many trespasours, and in what manere, they han don to you all this wrong and all this vilanie. And after this than shul ye examine the second condition which that the same Tullius addeth in this matere; for Tullius putteth a thing which that he clepeth Consenting; this to sayn, who ben they, and which ben they, and how many, that consenten to thy conseil in thy wilfulnesse to don hastif vengeaunce. And let us confidre also who ben they, and how many ben they, and which ben they, that consenteden to youre adversaries. As to the first point, it is wel knowen which folk they be that consenteden to youre wilfulnesse, for trewely all tho that conseilleden you to maken sodein werre ne ben not youre frendes. Let us now confidre which ben they that ye holden so gretly youre frendes as to youre persone, for al be it so that ye be mighty and riche, certes ye ne ben but allone; for certes ye ne han no child but a doughter, ne ye ne han no brethren, ne cosins, germains, ne non other nigh kinrede, wherfore that your enemies for drede shulde stinte to plecth with you or to destroye youre persone. Ye knowen also that your riches moten ben dispended in diverse parties, and whan that every wight hath his part they ne wollen taken but litel regard to venge youre deth. But thin enemies ben three, and they han many brethren, children, cosins, and other nigh kinrede; and though so were that thou haddest slain of hem two or three, yet dwel len ther ynow to wreken hir deth, and to see thy persone. And though so be that youre kinrede be more stedfast and siker than the kin of your adversaries, yet natheles youre kinrede is but a fer kinrede; they ben but litel sibbe to you, and the kin of youre enemies ben nigh sibbe to hem; and certes as in that hir condition is better than youre. Than let us confidre also of the conseililing of hem that conseilled you to take sodein vengeaunce, whether it accorde to reson; and certes ye knowe wel nay; for as by right and reson ther may no man taken vengeaunce on no wight but the jugs that hath the jurisdiction of it, whan it is ygraunted him to take thilke vengeaunce hastily or attemprely as the lawe requiereth.

\* This passage, which is defective in all the mss. I have patched up as well as I could, by adding the words between books from the French Melibee, where it stands thus: "Aucunes gens ont enseigne leur decevoir, car ils ont trop doute que on ne les deceint. Après tu te dois garder de venin, et si te dois garder de compaignie de traicteurs, car il est escript, Avec les malicieux n'aie compaignie, et soy leus paroles comme le venin."---

And moreover of thilke word that Tullius clepeth Consenting, thou shalt considere if thy might and thy power may consente and suffice to thy wilfulnesse and to thy conseilours; and certes thou mayest wel say that Nay; for likerly, as for to speke proprely, we moun do nothing but only swiche thing as we moun don rightfully; and certes rightfully ye ne mowe take no vengeance, as of your propre auctorite. Than mowe ye sen that your power ne consenteth not ne accordeth not to your wilfulnesse. Now let us examine the thridde point; that Tullius clepeth Consequent. Thou shalt understonde that the vengeance that thou purpofest for to take is the consequent, and theroffolweth another vengeance, peril, and werre, and other damages without nombre, of which we ben not ware as at this time. And as touching the fourthe point, that Tullius clepeth Engendering, thou shalt consider that this wrong which that is don to thee is engendred of the hate of thin enemies, and of the vengeance taking upon that wold engender another vengeance, and muchel sorwe and wasting of richesses, as I sayde ere.

Now, Sire, as to the point that Tullius clepeth Causes, which that is the last point, thou shalt understonde that the wrong that thou hast received hath certaine causes which that clerkes clepen *oriens* and *eficiens*, and *causa longinqua*, and *causa propinqua*; this is to sayn, the fer cause and the nigh cause. The fer cause is almighty God, that is cause of alle thinges; the ner cause is thin three enemies; the cause accidental was hate; the cause material ben the five woundes of thy doughter; the cause formal is the maner of hir werking, that broughten ladders and clomben in at thy windowes; the cause final was for to flee thy doughter: it letted not in as muche as in hem was. But for to speke of the fer cause, as to what ende they shuld come, or what shal finally betide of hem in this cas, ne can I not deme but by conjecting and supposing; for we shuld suppose that they shuld come to a wicked ende, because that the book of Decrees sayth, Selden or with gret poine ben causes ybrought to a good ende whan they ben badly begonne.

Now, Sire, if men wold axen me why that God suffred men to do you this vilanie, certes I can not wel answer as for no fothfastnesse; for the apostle sayth that the sciencés and the jugements of oure Lord God Almighty ben ful depe; ther may no man comprehend ne serche hem sufficiently; natheles, by certain presumptuous and conjectings I hold and beleve that God, which that is ful of justice and of rightwisenesse, hath suffered this betide by just cause resonable.

Thy name is Melibee, this is to sayn, a man that drinketh hony. Thou hast dronke so muche hony of swete temporel richesses, and delices, and honours of this world, that thou art drunken, and hast forgotten Jesu Crist thy creatour: thou ne hast not don to him swiche honour and reverence as thee ought, ne thou ne hast wel ytaken kepe to the wordes of Ovide, that sayth, Under the honey of the goodes of thy body is hid the venime that fleth the soule: and Salomon sayth, If thou hast

founden hony, etc of it that sufficeth; for if thou, etc of it out of mesure thou shalt spewe, and benedy and poure. And peraventure Crist hath thee in despit, and hath tourned away fro thee his face and his eres of misericorde, and also he hath suffred that thou hast ben punished in the maner that thou hast ytrespased. Thou hast don sinne again oure Lord Crist, for certes the three enemies of mankind, that is to sayn, the flesh, the fend, and the world, thou hast suffred beyn entre into thin herte winnully by the windowes of thy body, and hast not defended thy soule sufficiently agein hir assautes and hir temptations, so that they han wounded thy soule in five places; this is to sayn, the dedly sinnes that ben entred into thyn herte by thy five wittes: and in the same manere our Lord Crist hath wold and suffred that thy three enemies ben entred into thyn hous by the windowes, and han ywounded thy doughter in the foresayd manere.

Certes, quod Melibee, I see wel that ye enforce you muchel by wordes to overcomen me in swiche manere that I shal not venge me on min enemies, shewing me the perils and the evils that mighten falle of this vengeance; but who so wolde considere in all vengeancees the perils and evils that mighten sue of vengeance taking a man wold never take vengeance, and that were harme; for by the vengeance taking ben the wicked men differd fro the goode men, and they that han will to do wickednesse restrainen hir wicked purpos whan they sen the punishing and the chastising of the trespassours. [To this answered Dame Prudence: Certes, quod she, I graunte you that of vengeance taking cometh muche evil and muche good; but vengeance taking apperteineth not to everich on, but only to juges, and to hem that han the jurisdiction over the trespassours.] And yet say I more, that right as a singuler personne sinneth in taking vengeance of another man, right so sinneth the juge if he do no vengeance of hem that it han deserved; for Senek sayth thus. That master (he sayth) is good that preveth shrewes; and Cassiodore sayth, A man dredeth to do outrages whan he wot and knoweth that it displeth to the juges and foveraines; and another sayth, The juge that dredeth to do right maketh men shrewes; and Seint Poule the apostle sayth in his epistle, whan he writeth unto the Romaines, that the juges beren not the spere withouten cause, but they beren it to punishe the shrewes and misdooers, and for to defende the goode men. If ye wiln than take vengeance of your enemies, ye shuld retourne or have your recours to the juge that hath the jurisdiction upon hem, and he shal punishe hem as the lawe axeth and requireth.

A! sayd Melibee, this vengeance liketh me nothing. I bethink me now and take hede how

\* The following passage, which the reader will see to be very material to the sense, I have translated from the French, and inserted between crotchets, as before; "Et a ce respont Dame Prudence: Certes, cist elle le t'otrove que de vengeance vient molt de maulx et de sens, mais vengeance n'appartient pas a un chascun, fors seulement aux juges et a ceulx qui ont la juridicion sur les malfaiteurs."—Tyrwhitt.

that Fortune hath nourished me from my childhood, and hath holpen me to passe many a stronge pas: now wol I assaye hire, trowing with Goddes helpe that she shal helpe me my shame for to venge.

Certes, quod Prudence, if ye wol werke by my conseil ye shuln not assaye Fortune by no way, ne ye ne shuln not lene or bowe unto hire, after the wordes of Senek; for thinges that ben folily don, and tho that ben don in hope of Fortune, shuln never come to good ende. And as the same Senek sayth, The more shynyng that Fortune is, the more brotel and the soner broke she is. Trusteth not in hire, for she n'is not stedfast ne stable, for whan thou trowest to be most siker and seure of hire helpe, she wol faille and deceive thee. And wheras ye sayn that Fortune hath nourished you fro youre childhode, I say that in so muchel ye shuln the lesse truste in hire and in hire wit; for Senek saith, What man that is nourished by Fortune she maketh him a gret fool. Now than sin ye desire and axe vengeance, and the vengeance that is don after the lawe and before the juge ne liketh you not, and the vengeance that is don in hope of Fortune is perilous and uncertain, than have ye non other remedie but for to have your recours unto the soveraine juge that shal venge you; after that himself witnesseth wheras he saith, Levyth the vengeance to me, and I shal do it.

Melibeus answered, If I ne venge me of the vilanie that men han don to me, I sompne or warne hem that has don to me vilanie, and alle other, to do me another vilanie; for it is written, If thou take no vengeance of an olde vilany, thou sompnest thin adversaries to do thee a newe vilanie: and also for my suffraunce men wolden do me so muche vilanie, that I might neither bere it ne susteine, and so shulde ben put and holden over lowe; for som men sain, In muchel suffring shal many thinges falle unto thee which thou shalt not mowe suffre.

Certes, quod Prudence, I graunte you wel that overmuchel suffraunce is not good, but yet ne folweth it not therof that every persone to whom men don vilanie shuld take of it vengeance, for that apperteineth and longeth all only to the juges, for they shul venge the vilanies and injuries; and therefore tho two auctoritees that ye han sayd above ben only understonden in the juges, for whan they suffren overmuchel the wronges and vilanies to be don withouten punishing, they sompne not a man all only for to do newe wronges, but they commaunden it; al so as a wise man sayth, that the juge that correcteth not the sinner commaundeth and biddeth him do sinne: and the juges and soveraines mighten in hir lond so muche suffre of the shrewes and misdoers, that they shuld en by swiche suffraunce by proces of time wexen of swiche power and might, that they shulde putte out the juges and the soveraines from hir places, and at the laste maken him lese hir lordshippes.

to venge you; for if ye wol maken comparison unto the might of youre adversaries, ye shuln finde in many thinges that I have shewed you er this that hir condition is better than youre, and therefore say I that it is good as now that ye suffre and be patient.

Forthermore, ye knowen wel that after the commune saw it is a woodnesse a man to strive with a stronger or a more mighty man than he is himself; and for to strive with a man of even strengthe, that is to say, with as strong a man as he is, it is peril; and for to strive with a weaker man it is folie; and therefore shulde a man flee striving as muchel as he mighte; for Salomon sayth, It is a gret worship to a man to kepe him fro noise and strif. And if it so happe that a man of greter mighte and strengthe than thou art do thee grevaunce, studie and besie thee rather to stille the same grevaunce than for to venge thee; for Senek sayth, That he putteth him in a grete peril that striveth with a greter man than he is himself; and Caton sayth, If a man of higher estat or degree, or more mighty than thou, do thee any grevance, suffre him; for he that ones hath greved thee may another time releve thee and helpe thee. Yet sette I cas ye have bothe might and licence for to venge you; I say that ther ben ful many thinges that shuln restraine you of vengeance taking, and make you for to encline to suffre and for to han patience in the wronges that han ben don to you. First and forward, if ye wol considere the defautes that ben in youre owen persone; for which defautes God hath suffred you have this tribulation, as I have sayd to you herebefore; for the poete sayth, that we oughten patiently taken the tribulations that comen to us, whan that we thinken and consideren that we han deserved to han hem; and Seint Gregorie sayth, that whan a man considereth wel the nombre of his defautes and of his sinnes, the peines and the tribulations that he suffereth semen the lesse unto him; and in as muche as him thinketh his sinnes more hevy and grevous, in so muche semeth his peine the lighter and the esier unto him. Also ye owen to encline and howe youre herte to take the patience of oure Lord Jesu Crist, as sayth Seint Peter in his Epistles. Jesu Crist (he sayth) hath suffred for us, and yeven ensample to every man to solwe and sue him, for he did never sinne, ne never came ther a vilains word out of his mouth. Whan men cursed him he cursed hem nought, and whan men beten him he manaced hem nought. Also the gret patience which seintes that ben in Paradis han had in tribulations that they han suffred withouten hir desert or gilt, oughte muchel stirre you to patience. Forthermore, ye shulde enforce you to have patience, considering that the tribulations of this world but litel while endure, and sone passed ben and gon, and the joye that a man seketh to han by patience in tribulations is perdurable; after that the apostle sayth in his epistle, The joye of God, he sayth, is perdurable, that is to sayn, everlasting. Also troweth and beleveth stedfastly



tiene; for Salomon sayth, that the doctrine and wit of a man is knowen by patience; and in another place he sayth, that he that is patient governeth him by gret prudence: and the same Salomon sayth, The angrie and wrathful man maketh noises, and the patient man attempteth and stilleth hem: he saith also, It is more worth to be patient than to be right strong; and he that may have the lordshipe of his owen herte is more to preise than he that by his force or strengthe taketh gret citees: and therfore sayth Seint James in his epistle, that patience is a gret vertue of perfection.

Certes, quod Melibee, I graunte you, Dame Prudence, that patience is a gret vertue of perfection, but every man may not have the perfection that ye seken; ne I am not of the nombre of the right parfit men, for min herte may never be in pees unto the time it be venged. And al be it so that it was gret peril to min enemies to do me a vilanie in taking vengeance upon me, yet token they non hede of the peril, but fulfilleden hir wicked will and hir corage; and therfore me thinketh men oughten not repreve me though I put me in a litel peril for to venge me, and though I do a gret excesse, that is to sayn, that I venge on outrage by another.

A! quod Dame Prudence, ye sayn your will and as you liketh; but in no cas of the world a man shulde not don outrage ne excesse for to vengen him; for Cassiodore sayth, that as evil doth he that vengeth him by outrage as he that doth the outrage; and therfore ye shuln venge you after the ordre of right, that is to sayn, by the lawe, and not by excesse ne by outrage. And also if ye wol venge you of the outrage of youre adversaries in other manere than right commaundeth ye sinen; and therfore sayth Senek, that a man shal never venge shrewednesse by shrewednesse. And if ye say that right axeth a man to defende violence by violence, and fighting by fighting, certes ye say soth, whan the defence is don withouten intervalle, or withouten taryng or delay, for to defende him, and not for to venge: and it behoveth that a man putte swiche attemperaunce in his defence that men have no cause ne mater to repreve him that defendeth him of outrage and excesse, for elles were it againe reson. Parde ye knowen wel that ye maken no defence as now for to defende you, but for to venge you, and so sheweth it that ye han no will to do your dede attemprely; and therfore me thinketh that patience is good; for Salomon sayth, that he that is not patient shal have gret harme.

Certes, quod Melibee, I graunte you that whan a man is impatient and wrothe of that that toucheth him not, and that apperteineth not unto him, though it harme him, it is no wonder; for the lawe saith that he is coupable that entremeteth or medleth with swiche thing as apperteineth not unto him; and Salomon saith, that he that entremeteth of the noie or strif of another man is like to him that taketh a straunge hound by the eres; for right as he that taketh a straunge hound by the eres is other while biten with the hound, right is

the same wise it is reson that he have harme that by his impatience medleth him of the noie of another man, wheras it apperteineth not unto him. But ye knowe wel that this dede, that is to sayn, my greef and my disese, toucheth me right nigh; and therfore though I be wroth and impatient it is no mervaille: and (saving your grace) I cannot see that it might gretly harme me though I took vengeance, for I am richer and more mighty than min enemies ben; and wel knowe ye that by money and by having grete possessions ben ~~the things of this world govern-~~ ed; and Salomon sayth that alle thinges obeie to money.

Whan Prudence had herd hire husbond avaunte him of his richesse and of his money, dispreising the power of his adversaries, she spake and sayd in this wise: Certes, dere sire! I graunte you that ye ben riche and mighty, and that riches ben good to hem that han wel ygeten hem, and that wel conne usen hem; for right as the body of a man may not liven withouten soul, no more may it liven withouten temporel goodes, and by riches may a man gete him grete frendes; and therfore sayth Pamphilus, If a netherdes doughter (he sayth) be riche, she may chese of a thousand men which she wol take to hire husbond; for of a thousand men on wol not forsaken hire to be hire. And this Pamphilus saith also, If thou be right happy, that is to sayn, if thou be right riche, thou shalt finde a gret nombre of felawes and frendes; and if thy fortune chaunge, that thou wexe poure, farewell frendshipe and felawshipe, for thou shalt be al allone withouten any compaignie, but if it be the compaignie of poure folk. And yet sayth this Pamphilus moreover, that they that ben bond and thralle of linage shuln be made worthy and noble by riches. And right so as by riches ther comen many goodes, right so by povertie come ther many harmes and eviles, for gret povertie constreinet a man to do many eviles: and therfore clepeth Cassiodore povertie the moder of ruine, that is to sayn, the moder of overthrowing or falling down; and therfore sayth Piers Alfonse, On of the grettest adversitees of this world is whan a free man by kinde, or of birthe, is constreined by povertie to eten the almesse of his enemye. And the same sayth Innocent in on of his bookes: he sayth, that forweful and mishappy is the condition of a poure begger, for if he axe not his mete he dieth for hunger, and if he axe he dieth for shame; and algates necessitee constreinet him to axe; and therfore sayth Salomon, that better it is to die than for to have swiche povertie; and, as the same Salomon sayth, Better it is to die of bitter deth than for to liven in swiche wise. By thisse resons that I have said unto you, and by many other resons that I coude saye, I graunte you that riches ben good to hem that wel geten hem, and to hem that wel usen the riches; and therfore wol I shewe you how ye shuln behave you in gadering of your riches, and in what manere ye shuln usen hem.

First, ye shuln geten hem withouten gret desiring, good leiser, sokingly, and not over hastily, for a man that is to desiring to get riches aban-doneth him firste to thefte and to alle other eviles; and therefore sayth Salomon, He that hasteth him to besily to wexe riche he shal be non innocent: he sayth also, that the richesse that hastily cometh to a man sone and lightly goeth and passeth from a man, but that richesse that cometh litel and litel wexeth alway and multiplieth. And, Sire, ye shuln gete riches by youre wit and by youre travaille, and that withouten wrong or harme doing to any other persone; for the lawe sayth, Ther maketh no man himself riche if he do harme to another wight; this is to say, that Nature defendeth and forbedeth by right that no man make himself riche unto the harme of another persone. And Tullius sayth, that no sorwe, ne no drede of deth, ne nothing that may falle unto a man, is so muchel ageins nature as a man to encrese his owen profite to harme of another man. And though the grete men and the mighty men geten riches more lightly than thou, yet shalt thou not ben idel ne slowe to do thy profite, for thou shalt in alle wise flee idlenesse; for Salomon sayth, that idlenesse techeth a man to do many eviles: and the same Salomon sayth, that he that travaillith and besith him to tillen his lond shal ete bred, but he that is idel, and casteth him to no besynesse ne occupation, shal falle into poverté, and die for hunger. And he that is idel and slow can never find covenable time for to do his profite; for ther is a versifiour sayth, that the idel man excuseth him in winter because of the grete cold, and in sommer they by encheson of the hete. For thise causes, sayth Caton, Waketh, and enclineth you not over muchel to slepe, for over muchel reste noriseth and causeth many vices; and therefore sayth Seint Jerome, Doeth som good dedes, that the devil which is oure enemye ne finde you not unoccupied, for the devil he taketh not lightly unto his working swiche as he findeth occupied in goode werkes.

Than thus in geting riches ye musten flee idlenesse; and afterward ye shuln use the riches which ye han geten by youre wit and by youre travaille in swiche manere than men holde you not to scarce ne to sparing, ne fool-large, that is to say, over large a spender; for right as men blamen an avaricious man because of his scarcitee and chincherie, in the same wise is he to blame that spendeth over largely; and therefore saith Caton, Use (saith he) the riches that thou hast ygeten in swiche manere that men have no matere ne cause to calle thee nother wretche ne chinee, for it is a gret shame to a man to have a poure herte and a riche purse: he sayth also, The goodes that thou hast ygeten use hem by mesure, that is to sayn, spende mesurably, for they that folily waste and dispenden the goodes that they han whan they han no more propre of hir owen that they shapen hem to take the goodes of another man. I saye man that ye shuln flee avarice, using youre

riches in swiche manere that men sayn not that youre riches ben yberied, but that ye have hem in youre might and in youre welding; for a wise man repreveth the avaricious man, and sayth thus in two vers, Wherto and why berieth a man his goodes by his gret avarice, and knoweth wel that nedes must he die, for deth is the end of every man as in this present lif? and for what cause or encheson joineth he him, or knitteth he him so fast unto his goodes, that alle his wittes mown not disseveren him or departen him from his goodes, and knoweth wel, or oughte to know, that whan he is ded he shal nothing bere with him out of this world? and therefore sayth Seint Augustien, that the avaricious man is likened unto helle, that the more it swalweth the more desir it hath to swalwe and devoure. And as wel as ye wolde eschue to be called an avaricious man or chinchie, as wel shulde ye kepe you and governe you in swiche a wise that men calle you not fool-large; therefore saith Tullius, The goodes of this hous ne shulde not ben hid ne kept so close but that they might ben opened by pitee and debonairetee, that is to sayn, to yeve hem part that han gret nede; ne thy goodes shulden not ben so open to be every mannes goodes. Afterward, in getting of youre riches, and in using of hem, ye shuln alway have three thinges in youre herte, that is to say, oure Lord God, conscience, and good name. First, ye shuln have God in youre herte, and for no richesse ye shuln do nothing which may in any manere displese God that is youre creator and maker; for, after the word of Salomon, It is better to have a litel good, with love of God, than to have muchel good and lese the love of his Lord God: and the prophete sayth, that better it is to ben a good man and have litel good and tresor than to be holden a shrewe and have grete riches. And yet I say forthermore, that ye shulden alway do youre besynesse to gete you riches, so that ye gete hem with good conscience. And the apostle sayth, that there n'is thing in this world of which we shulden have so gret joye as whan oure conscience bereth us good witnesse; and the wise man sayth, The substance of a man is ful good whan sinne is not in mannes conscience. Afterward, in geting of youre riches and in using of hem, ye must have gret besynesse and gret diligence that youre good name be alway kept and conserved; for Salomon sayth, that beter it is and more it availeth a man to have a good name than for to have grete riches; and therefore he sayth in another place, Do gret diligence (saith Salomon) in keping of thy frendes and of thy good name, for it shal lenger abide with thee than any tresor, be it never so precious; and certes he shulde not be called a Gentilman that after God and good conscience alle thinges left ne doth his diligence and besynesse to kepen his good name; and Cassiodore sayth, that it is a signe of a gentil herte whan a man loveth and desireth to have a good name; and therefore sayth Seint Augustine, that ther ben two thinges that are right necessarie and nedeful, and that is good conscience and good

los; that is it to sayn, good conscience to thin owen persone inward, and good los for thy neighebour outward. And he that trosteth him so muchel in his good conscience that he despiseth and setteth at nought his good name or los, and recketh not though he kepe not his good name, n'is but a cruel cherl.

Sire, now have I shewed you how ye shulden do in geting riches, and how ye shulen usen hem; and I see wel that for the trust that ye han in youre riches, ye wiln move werre and bataille. I conseilte you that ye beginne no bataille ne werre in trust of youre riches, for they ne sufficien not werres to mainteine; and therefore sayth a philosopre, That man that desireth and wol algates han werre shal never have suffisaunce, for the richer that he is the greter dispences must he make, if he will have worship and victorie; and Salomon saith, that the greter riches that a man hath the mo dispendours he hath. And, dere Sire! al be it so that for youre riches ye moun have muchel folk, yet behoveth it not ne it is not good to beginne werre, wheras you moun in other manere have pees unto youre worship and profite: for the victorie of batailles that ben in this world lith not in gret nombre or multitude of peple, ne in the vertue of man, but it lith in the will and in the hond of oure Lord God Almighty; and therefore Judas Machabeus, which was Goddes knight, whan he shulde fighte again his adversarie that hadde a greter nombre and a greter multitude of folk, and strengier than was the peple of this Machabee, yet he recomforted his litel compaignie, and sayde right in this wise; Al so lightly (sayde he) may our Lord God Almighty yeve victorie to a fewe folk as to many folk, for the victorie of a bataille cometh not by the gret nombre of peple, but it cometh from oure Lord God of heven. And, dere Sire! for as muchel as ther is no man certaine if it be worthy that God yeve him victorie or not, after that Salomon sayth, Therefore every man shulde gretly drede werres to beginne; and because that in batailles fallen many perils, and it happeth othir while that as sone is the gret man slain as the litel man; and, as it is ywritten in the second book of Kinges, The dedes of batailles ben adventurous, and nothing certain, for as lightly is on hurt with a spere as another; and for ther is gret peril in werre, therefore shulde a man flee and eschue werre in as muchel as a man may goodly; for Salomon seyth, He that loveth peril shal falle in peril.

After that Dame Prudence had spoken in this manere, Melibee answerd and saide: I see wel, Dame Prudence, that by youre faire wordes and by youre recons that ye han shewed me that the werre liketh you nothing; but I have not yet herd your conseil how I shal do in this nede.

Certes, quod she, I conseilte you that ye acorde with youre adversaries, and that ye have pees with hem; for Seint James sayth in his epistle that by concorde and pees the smale riches wexen gret, and by debat and discorde grete

of the grettest and moste soveraine thing that is in this world is unitee and pees; and therefore seoure Lord Jesu Crist to his apostles in this wise, Wel happy and blessed ben they that loven and purchasen pees, for they ben called the children of God. A! quod Melibee, now see I wel that ye loven not min honour ne my worshipec. Ye knowen wel that min adversaries han begonne this debat and brige by hir outrage, and ye see wel that they ne requeren ne prayen me not of pees, ne they axen not to be reconciled: wol ye than that I go and ~~me and obeie~~ me to hem, and crie hem mercie? forsoth that were not my worshipec; for right as men sayn that overgret homlineffe engendreth dispresing, so fareth it by to gret humilitee or mekenesse.

Than began Dame Prudence to make semblaunt of wrathe, and sayde, Certes, Sire, (sauf your grace) I love youre honour and youre profite as I do mine owen, and ever have don, ye ne non other seyn never the contrary; and if I had sayde that ye shuld han purchasid the pees and the reconciliation, I ne hadde not muchel mistake me ne sayde amis; for the wise man sayth, The dissention beginneth by another man, and the reconciling beginneth by thyself: and the prophete saith, Flee shrewednesse and do goodnesse: seke pees and solwe it, in as muchel as in the. ~~Yet say~~ I not that ye shuln rather pursue to youre adversaries for pees than they shuln to you, for I know wel that ye ben so hard-herted that ye wol do nothing for me; and Salomon sayth, He that hath over hard an herte atte laste he shal mishappe and mistide.

Whan Melibee had herd Dame Prudence make semblaunt of wrath he sayde in this wise: Dame, I pray you that ye be not displeied of things that I say, for I knowe wel that I am angry and wroth, and that is no wonder, and they that ben wroth woten not wel what they don ne what they sayn; therefore the prophete sayth, that troubled eyen han no clere sighte. But sayth and conseilte me as you liketh, for I am redy to do right as ye wol desire; and if ye repreve me of my folie I am the more holden to love you and to preise you; for Salomon saith, that he that repreveth him that doth folie he shal find greter grace than he that deceiveth him by swete wordes.

Than sayde Dame Prudence, I make no semblaunt of wrath ne of anger but for youre grete profite; for Salomon saith, He is more wroth that repreveth or chideth a fool for his folie, shewing him semblaunt of wrath, than he that supporteth him and preiseth him in his misdoing, and laugheth at his folie; and this same Salomon saith afterward, that by the sorweful visage of a man, that is to sayn, by the fery and hevy countenance of a man, the fool correcteth and amendeth himself.

Than said Melibee, I shal not conne answer unto so many faire recons as ye putten to me and shewen: sayth shortly youre will and youre conseil, and I am al redy to performe and ful-



Than Dame Prudence discovered all hire will unto him, and saide, I conseille you, quod she, above alle thinges that ye make pees betwene God and you, and be reconciled unto him and to his grace, for as I have sayde you herebeforen, God hath suffered you to have this tribulation and disese for youre sinnes: and if ye do as I say you, God wol sende youre adversaries unto you, and make hem falle at youre feet, redy to do youre will and youre commandements; for Salomon ~~saith~~ the condition of man is plesaunt and liking unto God, he chaungeth the hertes of the mannes adversaries, and constraineth him to beseechen him of pees and of grace. And I pray you let me speke with your adversaries in prevee place, for they shul not knowe that it be of youre will or youre assent, and than whan I knowe hir will and hir entente I may conseille you the more seurely.

Dame, quod Melibeus, doth youre will and youre liking, for I putte me wholly in youre disposition and ordinance.

Than Dame Prudence, whan she sey the good will of hire husbond, delibered unto hire, and toke avis in hire self, thinking how she might bring this nede unto goode ende; and whan she sey hire time she sent for thise adversaries to come unto hire in to a priee place, and shewed wisely unto hem the grete goodes that comen of pees, and the grete harmes and perils that ben in werre; and saide to hem in a goodly manere how that hem oughte have gret repentance of the injuries and wronges that they hadden don to Melibeus hire lord, and unto hire and to hire doughter.

And whan they herden the goodly wordes of Dame Prudence they weren so surpised and ravished, and hadden so gret joye of hire, that wonder was to telle. A Lady! quod they, ye have shewed unto us the blessing of swetenesse, after the saying of David the prophet; for the reconciling which we be not worthy to have in no manere, but we oughten requeren it with grete contrition and humilitee, ye of your grete goodnesse have presented unto us. Now see we wel that the science and conning of Salomon is ful trewe; for he saith, that swete wordes multiplien and encreasen frendes, and maken shrewes to be debonaire and meke.

Certes, quod they, we putten oure dede and all our matere and cause al holly in youre good will, and ben redy to obeye unto the speche and commandement of my Lord Melibeus; and therefore, dere and benigne Lady! we praye you and beseeche you, as mekely as we conne and moun, that it like unto your grete goodnesse to fulfille in dede youre goodly wordes; for we consideren and knowelechen that we han offended and greved my Lord Melibeus out of mesure, so fer forth that we ben not of power to maken him amendes, and therefore we oblige and binde us and oure frendes for to do all his will and his commandments; but peraventure he hath swiche ~~meke~~ and swiche wrath to us ward, because of our offence, that he wol enjoynen us swiche

a peine as we moun not bere ne susteine; and therefore, noble Ladie! we beseeche youre womanlyte pittee to take swiche a visement in this nede that we ne oure frendes ben not disherited and destroyed thurgh oure solie.

Certes, quod Prudence, it is an hard thing and right perilous that a man putte him all outrely in the arbitration and jugement and in the might and power of his enemy; for Salomon sayth, Leveth me and yeveth credence to that that I shall say; To thy sone, to thy wif, to thy frend, ne to thy brother, ne yeve thou never might ne maistrice over thy body while thou livest. Now sith he defendeth that a man shulde not yeve to his brother to his frend the might of his body, by a strenger son he defendeth and forbedeth a man to yeve himself to his enemy. And natheles I conseille you that ye mistruste not my lord, for I wot wel and know veraily that he is debonaire and meke, large, curteis and nothing desirous ne covetous of good ne richesse, for ther is nothing in this world that he desireth save only worshipec and honour. Forthermore, I know wel and am right sure that he shal nothing do in this nede withouten my conseil, and I shal so werken in this cas that by the grace of our Lord God ye shuln be reconciled unto us.

Than saiden they with o vois, Worshipful Lady! we putten us and our goodes al fully in youre will and disposition, and ben redy to come what day that it like unto youre noblesse to limite us or assigne us for to make oure obligation and bond as strong as it liketh unto youre goodnesse, that we moun fulfille the will of you and of my Lord Melibee.

Whan Dame Prudence had herd the answer of thise men, she bad hem go agein prively, and she retourned to hire Lord Melibee, and told him how she found his adversaries ful repentant knowleching ful lowly hir sinnes and trespas, and how they weren redy to suffren all peine, requering and preying him of mercy and pittee.

Than saide Melibee, He is wel worthy to have pardon and foryevenesse of his sinne that excuseth not his sinne, but knowlecheth and repenteth him, axing indulgence; for Senek saith, Ther is the remission and fureyvenesse wher as the confession is, for confession is neighebour to innocences; and therefore I assente and conferme me to have pees: but it is good that we do nought withouten the assent and will of oure frendes.

Than was Prudence right glad and joyeful, and saide, Certes, Sire, ye han wel and goodly answered; for right as by the conseil, assent, and helpe, of your frendes ye han be stired to venge you and make werre, right so withouten hir conseil shul ye not accord you ne have pees with youre adversaries; for the lawe saith, Ther is nothing so good by way of kinde as a thing to be unbounde by him that it was ybounde.

And than Dame Prudence, withouten delay or tarying, sent anon hire messageres for hir kin and for hir olde frendes which that were trewe and wise, and told hem by ordre in the presence of Meli-

bee all the matere as it is above expressed and declared, and preied hem that they wold yeve hir avis and conseil what were best to do in this nede. And whan Melibeeus frendes hadden taken hir avis and deliberation of the foresaid matere, and hadden examined it by gret besinesse and gret diligence, they yaven sul conseil for to have pees and reste, and that Melibee shulde receive with good herte his adversaries to foryevenesse and mercy.

And whan Dame Prudence had herd the assent of hire Lord Melibee, and the conseil of his frendes accord with hire will and hire entention, she was wonder glad in hire herte, and sayde, Ther is an old proverbe, quod she, sayth, that the goodnesse that thou maist do this day do it, and abide not ne delay it not till to morwe: and therefore I conseille that ye sende youre messageres, swiche as ben discret and wise, unto youre adversaries, telling hem on youre behalf, that if they wol trete of pees and of accord, that they shape hem withouten delay or tarying to come unto us. Which thing parfourned was indeede. And whan thise trespassours and repenting folk of hir folies, that is to sayn, the adversaries of Melibee, hadden herd what thise messageres sayden unto hem they weren right glade and joyeful, and answerden ful mekely and benignely, yelding graces and thankinges to hir Lord Melibee and to all his compaignie, and shopen hem withouten delay to go with the messageres, and obeie to the commandement of hir Lord Melibee.

And right anon they token hir way to the court of Melibee, and token with hem som of hir trewe frendes to make feith for hem and for to ben hir borwes. And whan they were comen to the presence of Melibee he saide hem thise wordes. It stant thus quod Melibee, and soth it is that ye causeles and withouten skill and reson han don grete injuries and wronges to me and to my wif Prudence, and to my doughter also, for ye han entered into myn hous by violence, and have don swiche outrage that alle men knowen wel that ye han deserved the deth; and therefore wol I know and wete of you whether ye wol put the punishing and chastising, and the vengeance, of this outrage in the will of me and of my wif, or ye wol not.

Than the wifest of hem three answered for hem alle, and saide; Sire, quod he, we knowen wel that we ben unworthy to come to the court of so gret a lord and so worthy as ye ben, for we han so gretly mistaken us, and han offended and agilte in swiche wise agein your high lordshipe, that trewely we han deserved the deth; but yet for the grete goodnesse and dobonairetee that all the world witnesseth of youre persone we submitten us to the excellence and benigntee of youre gracious lordshipe, and ben redy to obeie to alle youre comandements, beseeching you that of youre merciablen pitce ye wol considere oure grete repentance and lowe submision, and graunte us foryevenesse of our outrageous trespass and offence; for wel we knowen that youre liberal grace and mercie stretchen hem forther into goodnesse than

don oure outrageous gyltes and trespass into wickednesse, al be it that cursedly and dampnably we han agilte again youre highe lordshipe.

Then Melibee toke hem up fro the ground ~~for~~ benignely, and received hir obligations and hir bondes by hir othes upon hir plegges and borwes, and assigned hem a certain day to retourne unto his court for to receive and accept sentence and judgement that Melibee wolde commande to be don on hem by the causes aforesaid, which thinges ordeined every man ~~retourne to his~~ hous.

And whan that Dame Prudence saw hire time she freined, and axed hire Lord Melibee what vengeance he thoughte to taken of his adversaries?

To which Melibee answerd and saide; Certes, quod he, I think and purpose me fully to disherite hem of all that ever they han, and for to putte hem in exile for ever.

Certes, quod Dame Prudence, this were a cruel sentence, and muchel agein reson, for ye ben riche ynough, and han no nede of other mennes good; and ye might lightly in this wise gete you a covetous name, which is a vicious thing, and oughte to be eschewed of every good man, for after the sawe of the apostle, covetise is rote of alle harmes; and therefore it were better for you to lese muchel good of your owen, than for to take of hir good in this manere: for better it is to lese good with worship than to winne good with vilanie and shame: and every man ought to do his diligence and his besinesse to get him a good name; and yet shal he not only besie him in keeping his good name, but he shal also enforcen him alway to do som thing by which he may renouvelle his good name; for it is written that the olde good los or good name of a man is sone gon and passed whan it is not newed. And as touching that ye sayn, that ye wol exile your adversaries, that thinketh me muchel agein reson and out of mesure, considered the power that they han yeven you upon hemself; and it is written, that he is worthy to lese his privilege that misuseth the might and the power that is yeven him. And I sette cas ye might enjoin hem that peine by right and by lawe, (which I trowe ye mowe not do) I say ye might not putte it to execution peraventure, and than it were like to retourne to the werre as it was befor: and therefore if you wol that men do you obeisance ye must deme more curteisly, that is to sayn, ye must yeve more esie sentences and jugements; for it is written, he that most curteisly commandeth to him men most obeyen. And therefore I pray you that in this necessitee and in this nede ye caste you to overcome your herte; for Senek sayth, that he that overcometh his herte overcometh twies; and Tullius saith, Ther is nothing so commendable in a gret lord as whan he is debonaire and meke, and appefeth him lightly. And I pray you that ye wol now forbere to do vengeance in swiche a manere that your good name may be kept and conserved, and that men mown have cause and matere to preise you of pitce and of mercy, and that ye

have cause to repente you of thing that ye don; for Seneke saith, He overcometh in an evil manere that repenteth of his victorie. Wherefore I pray you let mercy be in your herte, to the effect and entent that God Almighty have mercy upon you in his last jugement; for Seint James saith in his epistle, Jugement withoute mercy shal be do to him that hath no mercy of another wight.

Whan Melibee had herd the grete skilles and reons of Dame Prudence, and hire wise informations and techinge, his herte gan encline to the will of his wif, considering hire trewe entente, enforced him anon, and assented fully to werken after hire conseil, and thanked God, of whom procedeth all goodnesse and all vertue, that him sent a wif of so gret discretion. And whan the day came that his adversaries shulde appere in his presence, he spake to hem ful goodly, and saide

in this wise: Al be it so that of youre pride and high presumption and folie, and of youre negligence and unconning, ye have misborne you and trespassed unto me, yet for as muchel as I see and behold your grete humiltee, and that ye ben sory and repentant of youre giltes, it constreinet me to do you grace and mercy; wherfor I receive you into my grace, and foryeve you outrely alle the offences, injuries, and wronges, that yet have don agein me and mine, to this effect and to this ende, that God of his endeles mercie wol at the time of oure dying foryeve us oure giltes that we han trespassed to him in this wretched world; for douteles if we be sory and repentant of the finnes and giltes which we han trespassed in the sight of oure Lord God, he is so free and so merciable that he wol foryeven us oure giltes, and bringen us to the blisse that never hath ende. *Amen.*



## THE MONKES PROLOGUE.

WHAN ended was the Tale of Melibee  
And of Prudence and hire benignitee  
Our Hoste saide, As I am faithful man,  
And by the precious *corpus Madrian*,  
I hadde lever than a barell of ale  
That goode lese my wif had herde this Tale,  
For she n'is no thing of swiche patience  
As was this Melibeus wif Prudence.

By Goddes bones whan I bete my knaves  
She brineth me the grete clobbered staves,  
And cryeth, Slee the dogges everich on,  
And breke hem bothe bak and every bon.  
And if that any neighebour of mine  
Wol not in chirche to my wif encline,  
Or be so hardy to hire to trespace,  
Whan she cometh home she rampeth in my face,  
And cryeth, Falso coward! wreke thy wif:  
By *corpus Domini* I wol have thy knif,  
And thou shalt have my distaf and go spinne.  
Fro day til night right thus she wol beginne.

Alas! she saith, that ever I was yshape  
To wed a milkop or a coward ape,  
That wol ben overladde with every wight:  
Thou darst not stonden by the wives right.

This is my lif but if that I wol fight,  
And out at dore anon I mote me dight,  
Or elles I am lost, but if that I  
Be like a wilde leon fool-hardy.

I wote wel she wol do me flee som day  
Som neighebour, and thanne go my way,  
For I am in perilous with knif in honde  
Al be it that I dare not hire withstonde,  
For she is bigge in armes by my faith,  
That shal he finde that hire misdoth or faith.  
But let us passe away fro this matere.

My Lord the Monk, quod he, be mery of chere  
For ye shul telle a Tale trewely.  
Lo! Rouchester stondeth here faste by;  
Ride forth, min owen Lord, breke not our game.  
But by my trouthe I can no telle youre name;  
Whether shal I call you my Lord Dan John.  
Or Dan Thomas, or elles Dan Albon?  
Of what hous be ye by your fader kin?  
I vow to God thou hast a ful faire skin.  
It is a gentil pasture ther thou gost;  
Thou art not like a penaunt or a gost.  
Upon my faith thou art som officer,  
Som worthy sextein, or som celerer,

For by my fadres soule, as to my dome,  
Thou art a maister whan thou art home;  
No poure cloisterer, ne non novice,  
But a governour bothe ware and wise,  
And therwithal of braunes and of bones  
A right wel faring persone for the nones.  
I pray to God yeve him confusion  
That first thee brought into religion.  
Thou woldest han ben a trede-foul a right  
Haddest thou as grete leve as thou hast might  
To parfournme all thy lust: in engendrure  
Thou haddest begeten many a creature.  
Alas! why werest thou so wide a cope?  
God yeve me sorwe but and I were pope  
Not only thou but every mighty man,  
Though he were shore ful high upon his pan,  
Shuld have a wif, for al this world is lorn,  
Religion hath take up all the corn  
Of treading, and we borel men ben shrimpes;  
Of feble trees ther comen wretched impes.  
This maketh that our heires ben so sclendre  
And feble that they monn not wel engendre;  
This maketh that our wives wol assaye  
Religious folk, for they moun better paye  
Of Venus payements than mowen we;  
God wote no Lusheburgees payen ye.  
But be not wroth, my Lord, though that I play;  
Ful oft in game a sothe have I herd say.

This worthy Monke toke all in patience,  
And saide, I wol don all my diligence,  
As fer as souneth into honestee,  
To tellen you a Tale, or two or three;  
And if you list to herken hiderward  
I wol you sayn the lif of Saint Edward,  
Or elles tragedies first I wol telle,  
Of which I have an hundred in my celle.

Tragedie is to sayn a certain storie,  
As olde bookes maken us memorie,  
Of him that stood in gret prosperitee,  
And is yfallen out of high degree  
In to miserie, and endeth wretchedly;  
And they ben versified comunly  
Of six feet, which men clepen Exametron:  
In prose eke ben endited many on,  
And eke in metre in many a sondry wise.  
Lo this declaring ought ynough suffice.

Now herkeneth if you liketh for to here,  
But first I you beseeche in this matere,

Though I by ordre telle not thise thinges,  
 But of popes, emperoures, or kinges,  
 After hir ages, as men written finde,  
 But telle hem som before and som behinde;

As it now cometh to my remembrance,  
 Have me excused of min ignorance.

## THE MONKES TALE\*.

I wol bewaile in manere of tragedie  
 The harm of hem that stode in high degree;  
 And fellen so that ther n'as no remedie  
 To bring hem out of hir adversitee;  
 For certain whan that Fortune list to flee  
 Ther may no man of hire the cours withholde:  
 Let no man trust on blinde prosperitee;  
 Bath ware by thise ensamples trewe and olde.

*Lucifer.*

At Lucifer, though he an angel were  
 And not a man, at him I wol begonne;  
 For though Fortune may non angel dere,  
 From high degree yet felle he for his sinne  
 Down into helle, wheras he yet is inne.  
 O Lucifer! brightest of angels alle,  
 Now art thou Sathanas, that maist not twinne  
 Out of miserie in which that thou art falle.

*Adam.*

Lo! Adam in the feld of Damascene  
 With Goddes owen finger wrought was he,  
 And not begeten of mannes sperme unclene,  
 And welre all Paradis saving o tree.  
 Had never worldly man so high degree  
 As Adam, til he for misgovernance  
 Was driven out of his prosperitee  
 To labour, and to helle, and to meschance.

*Sampson.*

Lo! Sampson, which that was annunciat  
 By the angel long or his nativitee,  
 And was to God Almighty consecrat,  
 And stode in nobleste while he mighte see:  
 Was never swiche another as was he,  
 To speke of strenght and therto hardinesse;  
 But to his wives tolde he his secree,  
 Thurgh which he slow himself for wretchednesse.

Sampson, this noble and mighty champion,  
 Withouten wepen save his handes twey  
 He slow and all to-rente the leon,  
 Toward his wedding walking by the wey.  
 His false wif coude him so plesse and pray  
 Til she his conseil knewe, and she untrew  
 Unto his foos his conseil gan bewray,  
 And him forfoke, and toke another newe.

Three hundred foxes toke Sampson for ire,  
 And all hir tayles he togeder bond,  
 And set the foxes tayles all on fire,  
 For he in every tayl had knit a brond,  
 And they brent all the cornes in that lond,  
 And all hir oliveres and vines eke.  
 A thousand men he slow eke with his hond,  
 And had no wepen but an asses cheke.

Whan they were slain so thurstid him that he  
 Was wel nie lorne, for which he gan to preye  
 That God wold on his peine han som pitee,  
 And send him drinke, or elles mooste he deye;  
 And of this asses cheke that was so dreye  
 Out of a wang toth sprang anon a welle,  
 Of which he drank ynough, shortly to seye.  
 Thus halp him God, as *Judicum* can telle.

By veray force at Gaza on a night,  
 Maugre the Philistins of that citee,  
 The gates of the toun he hath up plight,  
 And on his bak ycarried hem bath he  
 High on an hill, wher as men might hem see.  
 O noble mighty Sampson, lese and dere!  
 Haddest thou not told to women thy secree,  
 In all this world ne had ther beñ thy pere.

This Sampson never sider dranke ne wine;  
 Ne on his hed came rasour non ne shere.  
 By precept of the messager divine,  
 For all his strengthes in his heres were:  
 And fully twenty winter yere by yere  
 He hadde of Israel the governance;  
 But sone shal he wepen many a tere,  
 For women shuln him bringen to meschance.

\* A tragical discourse of many who have fallen from  
 high estate into extreme misery. Urry.

Unto his lemman Dalida he told  
That in his heres all his strengthe lay,  
And fahely to his fomen she him fold;  
And fleeping in hire barme upon a day  
She made to clip or there his here away,  
And made his fomen al his craft espien;  
And whan that they him fond in this array  
They bond him fast, and putten out his eyen.

But or his here was clipped or yshave,  
Ther was no bond with which men might him  
But now is he in prifon in a cave, [bind,  
Wheras they made him at the querne grinde.  
O noble Sampfon, strongest of mankind,  
O whilom juge in glory and richeffe!  
Now mayest thou wepen with thin eyen blind  
Sith thou fro wele art falle in wretchedneffe.

The ende of this caitif was as I shal feye:  
His fomen made a feste upon a day,  
And made him as hir fool before hem pleye,  
And this was in a temple of gret array:  
But at the last he made a foule affray,  
For he two pillers shoke and made hem falle,  
And down fell temple and all, and ther it lay,  
And flow himself, and eke his fomen alle.

This is to sayn, the princes everich on,  
And eke three thousand bodies, were ther flain  
With falling of the gret temple of ston  
Of Sampfon now wol I no more fain:  
Beth ware by this ensample old and plain  
That no men tell hir conseil to hir wives  
Of swiche thing as they wold han secree fain,  
If that it touch hir limmes or hir lives.

#### *Hercules.*

Of Hercules the foveraine conquerour  
Singen his werkes laude, and high renoun,  
For in his time of strength he was the flour.  
He flow and raft the skinne of the leon;  
He of Centaures laid the boft adoun;  
He Harpies flow, the cruel briddes felle;  
He golden apples raft fro the dragon;  
He drow out Cerberos, the hound of helle.

He flow the cruel tirant Busirus,  
And made his hors to fret him flesh and bon;  
He flow the firy serpent venomous;  
Of Achelous two hornes brake he on;  
And he flow Cacus in a cave of ston;  
He flow the geaunt Anteus the strong;  
He flow the grisely bore, and that anon;  
And bare the hevenc on his nekke long

Was never wight sith that the world began  
That flow so many monstres as did he;  
Thurghout the wide world his name ran,  
What for his strength and for his high bountee;  
And every reuame went he for to see.  
He was so strong that no man might him let;  
At bothe the worldes endes, faith Trophee,  
In stede of boundes he a piller fet.

A lemman had this noble champion  
That highte Deianire, as fresh as May:  
And, as thise clerkes maken mention,  
She hath him sent a sherte fresh and gay:

Alas! this sherte, alas and wala wa!  
Envenimed was sotilly withalle,  
That or that he had wered it half a day  
It made his flesh all from his bones falle.

But natheles fom clerkes hire excusen  
By on that highte Nessus, that it maked:  
Be as may be, I wol hire not accusen;  
But on his bak this sherte he wered al naked,  
Til that his flesh was for the venim blaked;  
And whan he saw non other remedie  
In hote coles he hath himselven raked,  
For with no venime deigned him to die.

Thus starf this worthy mighty Hercules.  
Lo! who may trust on Fortune any throw  
For him that solweth all this world of pres  
Or he be ware is oft ylaid ful lowe:  
Ful wise is he that can himselven knowe.  
Beth ware, for whan that Fortune list to glofe  
Than waiteth she hire man to overthrowe  
By swiche a way as he wold lest suppose.

#### *Nabuchodonosor.*

The mighty trone, the precious tresor,  
The glorious sceptre, and real majestee,  
That hadde the King Nabuchodonosor,  
With tonge unnethes may descrived be:  
He twies wan Jerusalem the citee,  
The vessell of the temple he with him ladde;  
At Babiloine was his foveraine fee,  
In which his glorie and his delit he hadde.

The fayrest children of the blood real  
Of Israel he did do gekde anon,  
And maked eche of hem to ben his thral.  
Amonges other Daniel was on,  
That was the wisest child of everich on,  
For he the dremes of the king expounded,  
Wher as in Caldee clerk ne was ther non  
That wiste to what fin his dremes founed.

This proude king let make a statue of gold  
Sixty cubites long and seven in brede,  
To which image both yonge and old  
Commanded he to loute and have in drede,  
Or in a fourneis ful of flames rede  
He shuld be brent that wolde not obeye;  
But never wold assenten to that dede,  
Daniel, ne his yonge felawes tweye.

This king of kinges proud was and elat;  
He wend that God that sit in majestee  
Ne might him nat bereve of his estat:  
But sodenly he lost his dignitee,  
And like a best him semed for to be,  
And ete heye as an oxe, and lay therout;  
In rain with wilde bestes walked he  
Til certain time was ycome about.

And like an egles fethers wex his heres,  
His neyles like a briddes clawes were,  
Til God relefed him at certain yeres,  
And yaf him wit, and than with many a tere  
He thanked God, and ever his lif in fere  
Was he to don amis, or more trespace:  
And til that time he laid was on his bere  
He knew that God was ful of might and grace.



*Balthasar.*

His sone, which that highte Balthasar,  
That held the regne after his fadres day,  
He by his fader coude not beware,  
For proude he was of herte and of array,  
And eke an ydolaster was he ay.  
His high estat assured him in pride;  
But Fortune cast him down (and ther he lay)  
And sodenly his regne gan deuide.

A feste he made unto his lordes alle  
In a time, and made hem blithe be,  
And than his officers gan he calle;  
Goth bringeth forthe the vessels, quod he,  
Which that my fader in his prosperitee  
Out of the temple of Jerusalem beraft,  
And to our highe gooddes thanke we  
Of honour, that our eildres with us last.

His wif, his lordes, and his concubines,  
Ay dronken, while hir appetites last,  
Out of thise noble vessels sondry wines.  
And on a wall this king his eyen cast,  
And saw an hand armles that wrote ful fast,  
For fere of which he quoke and fiked sore:  
This hand that Balthasar so fore agast,  
Wrote *Mane techel Phares* and no more.

In al that lond magicien was non  
That coude expounen what this lettre ment,  
But Daniel expouned it anon,  
And said, O King! God to thy fader lent  
Glorie and honour, regne, tresour and rent,  
And he was proud and nothing God ne dradde,  
And therefore God gret wreche upon him sent,  
And him beraft the regne that he hadde.

He was out cast of mannes compaignie.  
With asses was his habitation,  
And etc hey as a best in wete and drie,  
Til that he knew by grace and by reson  
That God of heven hath domination  
Over every regne and every creature,  
And than had God of him compassion,  
And him restored his regne and his figure.

Eke thou that art his sone art proud also  
And knowest all thise thinges veraily,  
And art rebel to God and art his fo:  
Thou dranke eke of his vessels boldely,  
Thy wif eke and thy wenches sinfully  
Dranke of the same vessels sondry wines,  
And heried false goddes cursedly,  
Therefore to thee yshapen ful gret pine is.

This hand was sent fro God that on the wall  
Wrote *Mane techel Phares*, trusteth me.  
Thy regne is don; thou wayest nought at all:  
Divided is thy regne, and it shal be  
To Medes and to Perses yeven, quod he.  
And thilke same night this king was slawe,  
An Darius occupied his degree,  
Though he therto had neither right ne lawe.

Lordinges, ensample hereby moun ye take  
How that in lordship is no sikernesse,  
For yhan that Fortune wol a man forsake  
She bereth away his regne and his richesse,  
And eke his frendes, bothe more and lesse;  
For what man that hath frendes thurgh Fortune  
Mishap wol make hem enemies I gesse.

This proverbe is ful soth, and fule commune.

*Zenobia.*

Zenobia, of Palmerie the quene,  
(As writen Persiens of hire noblesse)  
So worthy was in armes, and so kene,  
That no wight passed hire in hardinesse,  
Ne in linege, ne in other gentillesse.  
Of kinges blood of Perse is she descended;  
I say not that she hadde most fairenesse,  
But of hire shape she might not ben amended.  
From hire childhode I finde that she fiedde  
Office of woman, and to wode she went,  
And many a wilde hartes blood she shedde  
With arwes brode that she to hem sent;  
She was so swift that she anon hem hent:  
And whan that she was elder she wolde kille  
Leons, leopard, and beres al to-rent,  
And in hire armes weld hem at hire wille.

She dorst the wilde bestes dennes seke,  
And rennen in the mountaignes all the night,  
And slepe under the bush; and she coude eke  
Wrastlen by veray force and veray might  
With any yong man, were he never so wight;  
Ther mighte nothing in hire armes stonde:  
She kept hire maidenhode from every wight;  
To no man deigned hire for to be bonde.

But at the last hire frendes han hire married  
To Odenat, a prince of that contree,  
Al were it so that she hem longe taried,  
And ye shul understonden how that he  
Hadde swiche fantasies as hadde she;  
But natheles whan they were knit in fere  
They lived in joye and in felicitie,  
For eche of hem had other lefe and dere;

Save o thing, that she n'olde never assente  
By no way that he shulde by hire lie  
But ones, for it was hire plaine entente  
To have a childe the world to multiplie;  
And al so sone as that she might espie  
That she was not with childe with that dede,  
Than wold she suffer him don his fantasie  
Eftsoone, and not but ones out of drede.

And if she were with child at thilke cast  
No more shuld he playen thilke game  
Till fullen fourty days weren past,  
Than wold she ones suffre him do the same.  
Al were this Odenate wild or tame  
He gate no more of hire, for thus she sayde,  
It was to wives lecherie and shame  
In other cas if that men with hem playde.

Two sones by this Odenate had she,  
The which she kept in vertue and lettrure.  
But now unto our Tale turne we.

I say so worshipful a creature,  
And wise therwith, and large with mesure,  
So penible in the werre, and curteis eke,  
Ne more labour might in werre endure,  
Was non, though all this world men shulden seke,  
Hire riche array ne mighte not be told,  
As wel in vessell as in hire clothing;  
She was all clad in pierric and in gold;  
And eke she leste not for non hunting

To have of sondry tonges ful knowing,  
Whan that she leifer had, and for to entend  
To lernen bookes was all hire liking,  
How she in vertue might hire lif despend.

And shortly of this storie for to trete,  
So doughty was hire husband, and eke she,  
That they conquered many regnes grete  
In the orient, with many a faire citee  
Appertenaunt unto the majestee  
Of Rome, and with strong hand held hem ful fast,  
Ne never might hir fomen don hem sice  
Ay while that Odenates dayes last.

Hire batailles, who so list hem for to rede,  
Againe Sapor the king, and other mo,  
And how that all this processe fell in dede,  
Why she conquered, and what tittle therto,  
And after of hire mischefe and hire wo,  
How that she was beseged and ytake,  
Let him unto my maister Petrark go,  
That writeth ynough of this I undertake.

Whan Odenate was ded she mightily  
The regnes held, and with hire propre hond  
Agains hir foos she fought so cruelly  
That ther n'as king ne prince in all that lond  
That he n'as glad if he that grace fond  
That she ne wolde upon his lond werreye;  
With hire they maden alliaunce by bond  
To ben in pees and let hire ride and pleye.

The Emperour of Rome Claudius,  
Ne him befor the Romain Galien,  
Ne dorste never be so corageous,  
Ne non Ermin ne non Egiptien,  
Ne Surrien ne non Arabien,  
Within the feld ne dorste with hire fight,  
Lest that she wold hem with hire hondes slen,  
Or with hire meinie putten hem to flight.

In kinges habite wente hire sones two  
As heires of hir fadres regnes alle,  
And Heremanno and Timolao  
Hir names were, as Persiens hem calle.  
But ay Fortune hath in hire hony galle:  
This mighty quene may no while endure;  
Fortune out of hire regne made hire falle  
To wretchednesse and to misaventure.

Aurelian, whan that the governance  
Of Rome came into his hondes twey,  
He shepe upon this quene to do vengeance,  
And with his legions he toke his way  
Toward Zenobie; and, shortly for to say,  
He made hire flee, and atte last hire hent,  
And fettred hire and eke hire children tway,  
And wan the lond, and home to Rome he went.

Amonges other thinges that he wan  
Hire char, that was with gold wrought and pierrie,  
This grete Romain, this Aurelian,  
Hath with him lad for that men shuld it see.  
Beforen his triumphe walketh she,  
With gilte chaines on hire necke honging,  
Crowned she was, as after hire degree,  
And ful of pierrie charged hire clothing.

Alas, Fortune! she that whilom was  
Dredeful to kinges and to emperoures,  
Now gaureth all the peple on hire, alas!  
And she that helmed was in starke floures,

And wan by force tounes stronge and toures,  
Shal on hire hed now were a vitremite,  
And she that bare the sceptre ful of floures  
Shal bere a distaf, hire cost for to quite.

### Nero.

Although that Nero were as vicious  
As any fend that lieth ful low adoun,  
Yet he, as telleth us Suetonius,  
This wide world had in subjection,  
Both est and west, south and septentrion.  
Of rubies, saphires, and of perles white,  
Were al his clothes brouded up and doun,  
For he in gemmes gretly gan delite.

More delicat, more pompos of array,  
More proude, was never emperour than he,  
That ilke cloth that he had wored o day  
After that time he n'olde it never see:  
Nettes of gold threde had he gret plentee  
To fish in Tiber whan him list to play:  
His lustes were as law in his degree,  
For Fortune as his frend wold him obey.

He Rome brente for his delicacie;  
The Senators he slow upon a day  
To heren how that men wold wepe and crie,  
And slow his brother, and by his suster lye.  
His moder made he in pitous array,  
For he hire wombe let flitten, to behold  
Wher he conceived was, so wala wa!  
That he so litel of his moder told.

No tere out of his eyen for that sight  
Ne came, but sayd a faire woman was she.  
Gret wonder is how that he coud or might  
Be domesman of hire dede beautee.  
The wine to bringen him commanded he,  
And dranke anon: no other wo he made.  
Whan might is joined unto crueltee,  
Alas! to depe wol the venime wade.

In youthe a maister had this emperour  
To techen him lettrure and curtesie:  
For of moraltee he was the flour,  
As in his time, but if bookes lie;  
And while this maister had of him maistrise  
He maketh him so conning and so souple  
That longe time it was or tyrannie  
Or any vice dorst in him uncouple.

This Seneka, of which that I devise,  
Because Nero had of him swiche drede,  
For he fro vices wold him ay chastise  
Discretly, as by word and not by dede;  
Sire, he wold say, an emperour mote nede  
Be vertuous, and haten tyrannie;  
For which he made him in a bathe to blede  
On bothe his armes till he must die.

This Nero had eke of a custumaunce  
In youth ageins his maister for to rise,  
Which afterward him thought a gret grevaunce,  
Therefore he made him dien in this wise.  
But natheles this Seneka the wise  
Chees in a bathe to die in this manere  
Rather than han another turmentise:  
And thus hath Nero slain his maister dere.

Now fell it so that Fortune list no lenger  
The highe pride of Nero to cherice,  
For though that he were strong yet was she streng-  
She thoughte thus: by God I am to nice [er.  
To set a man that is fulfilled of vice  
In high degree, and Emperour him calle:  
By God out of his sete I wol him trice;  
Whan he lest weneth fonest shal he falle.

The peple rose upon him on a night  
For his defeute, and whan he it espied  
Out of his dores anon he hath him dight  
Alon, and then he wend han had ben allied  
He knocked fast, and ay the more he cried  
The faster shetten they hir dores alle;  
Tho wist he wel he had himself misgied,  
And went his way; no lenger dorst he calle.

The peple cried and rombled up and down,  
That with his eres herd he how they sayde,  
Wher is this false tyrant, this Neroun?  
For fere almost out of his wit he brayde,  
And to his goddes pitously he priede  
For socour, but it mighte not betide:  
For drede of this him thoughte that he deide,  
And ran into a gardin him to hide.

And in this gardin fond he cherles tweye  
That faten by a fire gret and red,  
And to thise cherles two he gañ to preye  
To slen him, and to girden of his hed,  
That to his body whan that he were ded  
Were no despit ydon for his defame.  
Himself he slow, he coude no better rede,  
Of which Fortune lough and hadde a game.

#### *Holofernes.*

Was never capitaine under a king  
That regnes mo put in subjection,  
Ne stronger was in feld of alle thing  
As in his time, ne greter of renoun,  
Ne more pompous in high presumption,  
Than Holoferne, which that Fortune ay kist  
So likerously, and had him up and down,  
Til that his hed was of or that he wist.

Not only that this world had him in awe  
For lesing of richesse and libertee,  
But he made every man reneie his lawe.  
Nabuchodonosor was God, sayd he;  
Non other god ne shulde honoured be.  
Ageins his heste ther dare no wight trespase  
Save in Bethulia, a strong citee,  
Wher Eliachim a preest was of that place.

But take kepe of the deth of Holoferne:  
Amid his host he drunken lay a night  
Within his tente, large as is a berne;  
And yet for all his pompe and all his might  
Judith, a woman, as he lay upright  
Sleeping, his hed of smote, and fro his tente  
Ful prively she stole from every wight,  
And with his hed unto hire toun she wente.

#### *Antiochus.*

What nedeth it of King Antiochus  
To tell his high and real majestee,  
His gret pride, and his werkes venomous?  
For swiche another was ther non as he;

Redeth what that he was in Machabe,  
And redeth the proud wordes that he seid,  
And why he fell from his prosperitee,  
And in an hill how wretchedly he deid.

Fortune him had enhaunfed so in pride  
That veraily he wend he might attaine  
Unto the sterres upon every side,  
And in a balaunce weyen eche mountaine,  
And all the floodes of the see restraine:  
And Goddes peple had he most in hate,  
Hem wold he sleen in turment and in peine,  
Wening that God ne might his pride abate.

And for that Nichanor and Timothee  
With Jewes were venquished mightily,  
Unto the Jewes swiche an hate had he  
That he bad greithe his char ful hastily,  
And swore and sayde ful despitously  
Unto Jerusalem he wold estone,  
To wreke his ire on it ful cruelly;  
But of his purpos was he let ful sone.

God for his manace him so sore smote  
With invisible wound, ay incurable,  
That in his guttes carfe it so and bote  
Thatte his peines weren importable;  
And certainly the wreche was resonable,  
For many a mannes guttes did he peine;  
But from his purpos curfed and damnable,  
For all his smerte, he n'elde him not restraine;

But bade anon apparailen his host.  
And sodenly, or he was of it ware,  
God daunted all his pride and all his host;  
For he so sore fell out of his chare  
That it his limmes and his skinne to-tare,  
So that he neither mighte go ne ride,  
But in a chaire men about him bare,  
Alle forbrused bothe bak and side.

The wreche of God him smote so cruelly  
That thurgh his body wicked wormes crept,  
And therwithal he stanke so horribly  
That non of all his meinie that him kept,  
Whether so that he woke or elles slept,  
Ne mighte not of him the stinke endure.  
In this mischiese he wailed and eke wept,  
And knew God lord of every creature.

To all his host and to himself also  
Ful wlatson was the stinke of his careine;  
No man ne mighte him beren to ne fro;  
And in this stinke and this horrible peine  
He starf ful wretchedly in a mountaine.  
Thus hath this robbour and this homicide,  
That many a man made to wepe and pleine,  
Swiche guerdon as belongeth unto pride.

#### *Alexander.*

The storie of Alexandre is so commune  
That every wight that hath discretioun  
Hath herd somewhat or all of his fortune.  
This wide world, as in conclusioun,  
He wan by strength, or for his high renoun  
They weren glad for pees unto him sende.  
The pride of man and host he layd adoun,  
Wher so he came, unto the worldes ende.



Comparison might never yet be made  
Betwix him and another conquerour,  
For al this world for drede of him hath quaked;  
He was of knighthode and of fredome flour;  
Fortune him made the heir of hire honour.  
Save wine and women nothing might assuage  
His high entente in armes and labour,  
So was he ful of leonin corage.

What pris were it to him though I you told  
Of Darius, and an hundred thousand mo  
Of kinges, princes, dukes, erles bold,  
Which he conquered, and brought hem into wo?  
I say as fer as man may ride or go  
The world was his; what shuld I more devise?  
For though I wrote or told you ever mo  
Of his knighthode it mighte not suffice.

Twelf yere he regned, as faith Machabe:  
Philippus sone of Macedoine he was,  
That first was king in Greece the contree.  
O worthy gentil Alexandre! alas  
That ever shuld thee fallen swiche a cas!  
Enpoisoned of thyn owen folke thou were;  
Thy sis Fortune hath turned into an as,  
And yet for thee ne wept she never a tere.

Who shal me yeven teres to complaine  
The deth of gentillesse and of fraunchise,  
That all this world welded in his demaine,  
And yet him thought it mighte not suffice?  
So ful was his corage of high emprise.  
Alas! who shal me helpen to endite  
Falso Fortune, and poison to despise?  
The which two of all this wo I wite.

### *Julius Cesar.*

By wisdom, manhode, and by gret labour,  
From humblehede to real majestee  
Up rose he Julius the conquerour,  
That wan all the occident by lond and see  
By strengthe of hond, or elles by trettee,  
And unto Rome made hem tributarie,  
And sith of Rome the Emperour was he  
Til that Fortune wexe his adversarie.

O mighty Cesar! that in Thessalie  
Ageins Pompeius, father thin in lawe,  
That of the orient had all the chivalrie  
As fer as that the day beginneth dawne,  
Thou thurgh thy knighthode hast hem take and  
Save few folk that with Pompeius fledde, [slawe,  
Thurgh which thou put all the orient in awe,  
Thanke Fortune that so wel thee spedde.

But now a litel while I wol bewaile  
This Pompeius, this noble governour  
Of Rome, which that fled at this bataille.  
I say on of his men, a false traitour,  
His hed of smote, to winnen him favour  
Of Julius, and him the hed he brought:  
Alas, Pompeie! of the orient conquerour,  
That Fortune unto swiche a fin thee brought.  
To Rome again repaireth Julius  
With his triumphe laureat ful hie,  
But on a time Brutus and Cassius,  
That ever had of his high estat envie,

Ful prively had made conspiracie  
Ageins this Julius in sotil wise,  
And cast the place in which he shulde die  
With bodekins, as I shal you devise.

This Julius to the Capitolie wente  
Upon a day, as he was wont to gon,  
And in the Capitolie anon him hente  
This false Brutus and his other foon,  
And stiked him with bodekins anon  
With many a wound, and thus they let him lie:  
But never gront he at no stroke but on,  
Or elles at two, but if his storie lie.

So manly was this Julius of herte,  
And so wel loved estatly honestee,  
That though his dedly woundes fore smerte  
His mantel over his hippes caste he,  
For no man shulde seen his privetee;  
And as he lay of dying in a trance,  
And wiste veraily that ded was he,  
Of honestee yet had he remembrance.

Lucan, to thee this storie I recomende,  
And to Sucton and Valerie also,  
That of this storie writen word and ende,  
How that to thise gret conqueroures two  
Fortune was first a frend and sith a fo.  
No man ne trust upon hire favour long,  
But have hire in await for evermo,  
Witnesse on all thise conqueroures strong.

### *Cresus.*

The riche Cresus, whilom King of Lide,  
Of whiche Cresus Cyrus fore him dradde,  
Yet was he caught amidde all his pride,  
And to be brent men to the fire him ladde,  
But swiche a rain down from the welken shadde  
That slow the fire, and made to him escape;  
But to beware no grace yet he hadde  
Til Fortune on the galwes made him gape.

Whan he escaped was he can not stint  
For to beginne a newe werre again:  
He wened wel for that Fortune him sent  
Swiche hap that he escaped thurgh the rain  
That of his foos he mighte not be slain;  
And eke a sweven upon a night he mette  
Of which he was so proud and eke so fain,  
That in vengeance he all his herte sette.

Upon a tree he was, as that him thought,  
Ther Jupiter him weshe both bak and side,  
And Phebus eke a faire towail him brought  
To drie him with, and therefore wex his pride.  
And to his daughter that stood him beside,  
Which that he knew in high science habound,  
He bad hire tell him what it signified,  
And she his dreame began right thus expound.

The tree (quod she) the galwes is to mene,  
And Jupiter betokeneth snow and rain,  
And Phebus with his towail clere and clene,  
Tho ben the sonnes streames, soth to fain:  
Thou shalt anhangd be, fader, certain;  
Rain shal thee wash, and sonne shal thee drie.  
Thus warned him ful plat and eke ful plain  
His daughter, which that called was Phanie.

Anhanged was Crefus the proude king;  
His real trone might him not availle:  
Tragedie is non other maner thing,  
Ne can in finging crien ne bewaile,  
But for that Fortune all day wol assaille  
With unaware stroke the regnes that ben proude;  
For whan men trusten hire than wol she faille,  
And cover hire bright face with a cloude.

*Peter of Spaine.*

O noble, o worthy, Petro, glorie of Spaine!  
Whom Fortune held so high in majestee,  
Wel oughten men thy pitous deth complaine:  
Out of thy lond thy brother made thee flee,  
And after at a sege by sotiltee  
Thou were betrayed and lad unto his tent,  
Wher as he with his owen hond slow thee,  
Succeeding in thy regne and in thy rent.

The feld of snow, with th' egle of blak therin,  
Caught with the limerod, coloured as the glede,  
He brewed this cursednesse and all this sinne;  
The wicked neste was werker of this dede,  
Not Charles Oliver, that toke ay hede  
Of trouthe and honour, but of Armorike  
Genilon Oliver, corrupt for mede,  
Broughte this worthy king in swiche a brike.

*Petro King of Cypre.*

O worthy Petro! King of Cypre also,  
That Alexandrie wan by high maistrie,  
Ful many an Hethen wroughtest thou ful wo,  
Of which thin owen lieges had envie,  
And for nothing but for thy chivalrie  
They in thy bed han slain thee by the morwe.  
Thus can Fortune hire whele governie and gie,  
And out of joye bringen men to sorwe.

*Barnabo Viscount.*

Of Milane grete Barnabo Viscount,  
God of delit, and scourge of Lumbardie,  
Why shuld I not thin infortune account,  
Sith in estat thou clomben were so high?  
Thy brothers sone, that was thy double allie,  
For he thy nevew was and sone in lawe,  
Within his prison made he thee to die,  
But why ne how n'ot I that thou were slawe.

*Hugelin of Pise.*

Of the Erl Hugelin of Pise the langour  
Ther may no tonge tellen for pitee.  
But litel out of Pise stant a tour,  
- In whiche tour in prison yput was he,

And with him ben his litel children three,  
The eldest scarcely five yere was of age:  
Alas! Fortune, it was gret crueltee  
Swiche briddes for to put in swiche a cage.

Dampned was he to die in that prison,  
For Roger which that Bisshop was of Pise  
Had on him made a false suggestion,  
Thurgh which the peple gan upon him rise,  
And put him in a prison in swiche a wise  
As ye han herd; and mete and drinke he had  
So smale, that wel unnethe it may suffice,  
And therwithal it was ful poure and bad.

And on a day befell that in that houre  
Whan that his mete wont was to be brought  
The gailer shette the dores of the toure;  
He herd it wel, but he spake right nought:  
And in his herte anon ther fell a thought  
That they for hunger wolden do him dien:  
Alas! quod he, alas that I was wrought!  
Therwith the teres fellen fro his eyen.

His yonge sone, that three yere was of age,  
Unto him said, Fader, why do ye wepe?  
Whan will the gailer bringen our potage?  
Is ther no morsel bred that ye do kepe?  
I am so hungry that I may not slepe.  
Now wold God that I might slepen ever,  
Than shuld not hunger in my wombe crepe;  
Ther n'is no thing fauf bred that me were lever.

Thus day by day this childe began to crie,  
Til in his fadres barme adoun it lay,  
And saide, Farewel, fader, I mote die;  
And kist his fader, and dide the same day.  
And whan the woful fader did it sey  
For wo his armes two he gan to bite,  
And saide, Alas! Fortune, and wala wa!  
Thy false whele my wo all may I wite.

His children wenden that for hunger it was  
That he his armes gnawe, and not for wo,  
And sayden, Fader, do not so, alas!  
But rather ete the flesh upon us two:  
Our flesh thou yaf us, take our flesh us fro,  
And ete ynough. Right thus they to him seide,  
And after that, within a day or two,  
They laide hem in his lappe adoun and deide.

Himself dispeired eke for hunger starf.  
Thus ended is this mighty Erl of Pise:  
From high estat Fortune away him carf.  
Of this tragedie it ought ynough suffice;  
Who so wol here it in a longer wise  
Redeth the grete poete of itaille  
That highte Dante, for he can it devise  
Fro point to point; not o word wol he faille.

## THE NONNES PREESTES PROLOGUE.

Ho! quod the Knight, good Sire, no more of this;  
That ye han said is right ynough ywis,  
And mochel more; for litel heviness  
Is right ynough to mochel folk I gessie.  
I say for me it is a gret difese

Wher as men have ben in gret wealth and ese  
To heren of hir foden fail, alas!

And the contrary is joye and gret folas,  
As whan a man hath ben in poure estat,  
And climbeth up and wexeth fortunat,  
And ther abideth in prosperitee:

Swich thing is gladfom as it thinketh me,  
And of swiche thing were goodly for to telle.

Ye, quod our Hoste, by Seint Poules belle,  
Ye say right soth: this Monk hath clapped loude;  
He spake how Fortune covered with a cloude

I wote not what, and als of a tragedie  
Right now ye herd; and parde no remedie

It is for to bewailen ne complaine

That that is don, and als it is a paine,

As ye han said, to here of heviness.

Sire Monk, no more of this, so God you bleffe;

Your Tale annoyeth all this compaignie;

Swiche talking is not worth a boterflie,

For therein is ther no disport ne game;

Therefore Sire Monk, Dan Piers by your name,

I pray you hertely tell us somwhat elles,

For likerly n'ere of your belles

That on your bridel hange on every side,  
By heven king, that for us alle-dide,  
I shuld er this have fallen down for slepe,  
Although the slough had ben never so depe,  
Than hadde your Tale all ben told in vain:

For certainly, as that thise clerkes sain,

Wher as a man may have non audience

Nought helpeth it to tellen his sentence;

And wel I wote the subitance is in me

If any thing shal wel reported be.

Sire, say somewhat of hunting I you pray.

Nay, quod this Monk, I have not lust to play:  
Now lette another telle as I have told.

Than spake our Hoste with rude speche and bold,  
And sayd unto the Nonnes Preeft anon,

Come nere, thou Preeft, come hither, thou Sire John;

Telle us swiche thing as may our hertes glade:

Be blithe although thou ride upon a jade.

What though thin horse be both foule and lene?

If he wol serve thee recke thee not a bene;

Loke that thyn herte be mery evermo.

Yes, Hoste, quod he, so mote I ride or go

But I be mery ywis I wol be blamed.

And right anon his Tale he hath attamed;

And thus he said unto us everich on,

This swete Preeft, this goodly man, Sire John,

## THE NONNES PREESTES TALE\*.

A poure widewe, fomdel stoupen in age,  
Was whilom dwelling in a narwe cotage  
Beside a grove stonding in a dale.

This widewe, which I tell ou of my Tale,  
Sin thilke day that she was laft a wif

In patience led a ful simple lif,

For litel was hire catel and hire rente;

By husbondry of swiche as God hire sente

She found hireself and eke hire doughtren two.

Three large sowes had she, and no mo,

Three kine, and eke a sheep that highte Malle:

Ful footy was hire boure and eke hire halle,

In which she ete many a slender mele;

Of poinant lance ne knew she never a dele:

No deintee morsel passed thurgh hire throte;

Hire diete was accordant to hire cote:

Replecion ne made hire never fike;

Attempre diete was all hire phyfike,

\* Of a cork and a hen; the moral wherof is to embrace true friends, and to beware of flatterers. 1797.



And exercise, and hertes suffiance :  
 The goute let hire nothing for to dance,  
 Ne apoplexie shente not hire hed :  
 No win ne dranke she nyther white ne red :  
 Hire bord was served most with white and black,  
 Milk and broun bred, in which she fond no lack,  
 Seihde bacon, and somtyme an eye or twey,  
 For she was as it were a maner dey.

A yerd she had enclosed all about  
 With stikkes, and a drie dicke without,  
 In which she had a cok highte Chaunteclere,  
 In all the land of crowing n'as his pere :  
 His vois was merier than the mery organ  
 On masse daies that in the chirches gon :  
 Wel fikerer was his crowing in his loge  
 Than is a klok or any abbey orloge :  
 By nature he knewe eche ascension  
 Of the equinoctial in thilke toun,  
 For whan degrees fiftene were ascended  
 Than crew he that it might not ben amended.

His combe was redder than the fin corall,  
 Enbattelled as it were a castel wall;  
 His bill was black, and as the jet it shone,  
 Like asure were his legges and his tone,  
 His nailes whiter than the lily flour,  
 And like the burned gold was his colour.

This gentil cok had in his governance  
 Seven hennes for to don all his plesance,  
 Which were his susters and his paramoures,  
 And wonder like to him as of coloures,  
 Of which the fairest, hewed in the throte,  
 Was cleped faire Damofelle Pertelote.  
 Carteis she was, discrete, and debonaire,  
 And compenable, and bare hireself so faire,  
 Sithen the day that she was sevennight old,  
 That trewelich she hath the herte in hold  
 Of Chaunteclere, loken in every lith ;  
 He loved hire so that wel was him therwith :  
 But swiche a joye it was to here hem sing,  
 Whan that the brighte sonne gan to spring,  
 In swete accord, My lefe is fare in lond.

For thilke time, as I have understond,  
 Bestes and briddes couden speke and sing.

And so befell that in a dawening  
 As Chaunteclere among his wives alle  
 Sate on his perche that was in the halle,  
 And next him sate his faire Pertelote,  
 This Chaunteclere gan gronnen in his throte  
 As man that in his dreame is dretched fore ;  
 And whan that Pertelote thus herd him rore  
 She was agast, and saide, Herte dere !

What aileth you to grone in this manere ?

Ye ben a veray sleper, fy for shame !

And he answered and fayde thus ; Madame,  
 I pray you that ye take it not agrese ;  
 By God me mete I was in swiche mischese  
 Right now, that ye min herte is fore afright.  
 Now God (quod he) my sweven recche aright,  
 And kepe my body out of soule prisoun.

My mete how that I romed up and down  
 Within our yerde, wher as I saw a beste  
 Was like an hound, and wold han made areste  
 Upon my body, and han had me ded :  
 His colour was betwix yelwe and red,

And tipped was his tail and both his eres  
 With black, unlike the remenant of his heres :  
 His snout was smal, with glowing eyen twey ;  
 Yet for his loke almost for fere I dey :  
 This caused me my groning douteles.

Away, quod she; fy on you herteles!  
 Alas! quod she, for by that God above  
 Now han ye lost myn herte and all my love :  
 I cannot love a coward by my faith ;  
 For certes, what so any woman faith,  
 We al desiren, if it mighte be,  
 To have an husbond hardy, wise, and free,  
 And secree, and non niggard ne no fool,  
 Ne him that is agast of every tool,  
 Ne non avantour by that God above.  
 How dorsten ye for shame say to your love  
 That any thing might maken you aferde ?  
 Han ye no mannes herte and han a berde ?  
 Alas! and con ye ben agast of swevenis ?  
 Nothing but vanitee, God wote, in sweven is.

Swevenes engendren of repletions,  
 And oft of fume, and of complexions,  
 Whan humours ben to habundant in a wight.  
 Certes this dreame which ye han met to night  
 Cometh of the gret superfluitee  
 Of youre rede colera parde,  
 Which causeth folk to dreden in hir dremes  
 Of arwes, and of fire with rede lemes,  
 Of rede bestes that they wol hem bite,  
 Of conteke, and of waspes gret and lite,  
 Right as the humour of melancolie  
 Causeth ful many a man in slepe to crie  
 For fere of bolles and of beres blake,  
 Or elles that blake devils wol hem take.

Of other humours coud I telle also,  
 That werken many a man in slepe and wo ;  
 But I wol passe as lightly as I can.

Lo Caton, which that was so wise a man,  
 Said he not thus? Ne do no force of dremes.

Now, Sire, quod she, whan we flee fro the bemes  
 For Goddes love as take som laxatif ;  
 Up peril of my foul and of my lif  
 I conseil you the best, I wol not lie,  
 That both of coler and of melancolie  
 Ye purge you; and for ye shul not tarie,  
 Though in this toun be non apotecarie,  
 I shal myself two herbes techen you  
 That shal be for your hele and for your prow,  
 And in our yerde the herbes shal I finde,  
 The which han of hir propretee by kinde  
 To purgen you benethe and eke above.  
 Sire, forgete not this for Goddes love;  
 Ye ben ful colerike of complexion;  
 Ware that the sonne in his ascension  
 Ne finde you not replete of humours hote;  
 And if it do I dare wel lay a grote  
 That ye shul han a fever tertiane,  
 Or elles an ague, that may be your bane.  
 A day or two ye shul han degeestives  
 Of wormes or ye take your laxatives,  
 Of lauzeole, centaurie, and fumetere,  
 Or elles of ellebor that groweth there,  
 Of catapuce or of gaitre berries,  
 Or erbe ive growing in our yerd that mery is.

Picke hem right as they grow, and ete hem in.  
Beth mery, husband; for your fader kin  
Dredeth no dreme: I can say you no more.

Madame, quod he, *grand mercy* of your lore;  
But natheles as touching Dan Caton,  
That hath of wisdome swiche a gret renoun,  
Though that he bade no dremes for to drede,  
By God men-moun in olde bookes rede  
Of many a man more of auctoritee  
Than ever Caton was, so mote I the,  
That all the revers sayn of his sentence,  
And han wel founden by experience  
That dremes ben significations  
As wel of joye as tribulations  
That folk enduren in this lif present:  
Ther nedeth make of this non argument;  
The veray preve sheweth it indede.

On of the grettest auctours that men rede  
Saith thus, that whilom twey felawes wente  
On pilgrimage in a ful good entente,  
And happed so they came into a toun  
Wher ther was swiche a congregatioun  
Of peple, and eke so streit of herbergage,  
That they ne founde as moche as a cotage  
In which they bothe might ylogged be,  
Wherfore they musten of necessitee;  
As for that night, departen compaignie,  
And eche of hem goth to his hostelrye,  
And toke his logging as it wolde falle.

That on of hem was logged in a stalle,  
Fer in a yard, with oxen of the plough,  
That other man was logged wel ynough,  
As was his aventure or his fortune,  
That us governeth all, as in commune.

And so befell that long or it were day  
This man met in his bed ther as he lay  
How that his felaw gan upon him calle,  
And said, Alas! for in an oxes stalle  
This night shal I be mordred ther I lie;  
Now help me, dere brother! or I die:  
In alle haste come to me, he saide.

This man out of his slepe for fere abraide;  
But whan that he was waked of his slepe  
He turned him, and toke of this no kepe;  
Him thought his dreme was but a vanitee,  
Thus twies in his sleping dremed he.

And at the thridde time yet his felaw  
Came, as him thought, and said, I now am slaw;  
Behold my blody woundes depe and wide:  
Arise up erly in the morwe tide,  
And at the west gate of the toun (quod he)  
A carte ful of donge ther shalt thou see,  
In which my body is hid prively;  
Do thilke carte arresten boldely.  
My gold caused my mordre, soth to sayn;  
And told him every point how he was slain  
With a ful pitous face, pale of hewe;  
And trusteth wel his dreme he found ful trewe;  
For on the morwe sone as it was day  
To his felawes inne he toke his way,  
And whan that he came to this oxes stalle  
After his felaw he began to calle.

The hosteler answered him anon,  
And saide, Sire, your felaw is agon;

As sone as day he went out of the toun.

This man gan fallen in suspecion,  
Remembring on his dremes that he mette,  
And forth he goth, no lenger wold he lette,  
Unto the west gate of the toun, and fond  
A dong carte as it went for to dong lond,  
That was arraied in the same wise  
As ye han herde the dede man devise,  
And with an harde herte he gan to crie  
Vengeance and justice of this felonie;  
My felaw mordred is this same night,  
And in this carte he lith gaping upright.  
I crie out on the ministers, quod he,  
That shulden kepe and reulen this citee:  
Harow! alas! here lith my felaw slain.

What shuld I more unto this tale sayn?  
The peple out stert, and cast the cart to ground,  
And in the middel of the dong they found  
The dede man that mordred was all newe.

O blisful God! that art so good and trewe,  
Lo, how that thou bewreyest mordre alway!  
Mordre wol out, that see we day by day:  
Mordre is so wlatson and abhominable  
To God, that is so just and resonable,  
That he ne wol not suffre it hyllid be:  
Though it abide a yere, or two or thre, e,  
Mordre wol out; this is my conclusioun.

And right anon the ministres of the toun  
Han hent the carter, and so fore him pined,  
And eke the hosteler so fore engined,  
That they beknewe hir wickednesse anon,  
And were anhangid by the necke bon.

Here moun ye see that dremes ben to drede.  
And certes in the same book I rede,  
Right in the next chapitre after this,  
(I gabbe not, so have I joye and blis)  
Two men that wold han passed over the see,  
For certain cause, in to a fer contree,  
If that the winde ne hadde ben contrarie,  
That made hem in a citee for to tarie  
That stood ful mery upon a haven side:  
But on a day, agein the even tide,  
The wind gan change, and blew right ashemlest:  
Jolif and glad they wenten to hir rest,  
And casten hem ful erly for to faile;  
But to that o-man fel a gret mervaille.

That on of hem in sleping as he lay  
He mette a wonder dreme again the day:  
Him thought a man stood by his beddes side,  
And him commanded that he shuld abide,  
And said him thus; If thou to-morwe wende  
Thou shalt be dreint; my tale is at an ende.

He woke, and told his felaw what he met,  
And praied him his viage for to let;  
As for that day he prayd him for to abide.

His felaw, that lay by his beddes side,  
Gan for to laugh, and scorned him ful faste:  
No dreme, quod he, may so my herte agaste  
That I wol leten for to do my thinges:  
I sette not a straw by thy dreminges,  
For swevens ben but vanitees and japes:  
Men dreme al day of oules and of apes,  
And eke of many a mase therwithal;  
Men dreme of thing that never was ne shal.

# THE NONNES PREESTES TALE.

But sith I see that thou wol there abide,  
And thus forlouthen wilfully thy tide,  
God wot it reweth me; and have good day:  
And thus he took his leve, and went his way.

But or that he had half his cours ysaied,  
N'ot I not why ne what meschance it ailed,  
But casuelly the shippes bottom rente,  
And ship and man under the water wente  
In sight of other shippes ther beside  
That with him failed at the same tide.

And therefore, faire Pertelote so dere,  
By Twiche ensamples olde maist thou lere  
That no man shulde be to reccheles  
Of dremes, for I say thee douteles  
That many a dreme ful fore is for to drede.

Lo, in the lif of Seint Kenelme I rede,  
That was Kenulphus sone, the noble King  
Of Mercenrike, how Kenelm mette a thing.  
A litel or he were mordred on a day  
His mordre in his avision he say;  
His norice him expounded every del  
His sweven, and bade him for to kepe him wel  
Fro trefon; but he n'as but seven yere old,  
And therefore litel tale hath he told  
Of any dreme, so holy was his herte.  
By God I hadde lever than my sherte  
That ye had red his legend as have I.

Dame Pertelote, I say you trewely,  
Macrobius, that writ the avision  
In Affrike of the worthy Scipion,  
Affirmeth dremes, and sayth that they ben  
Warning of thinges that men after seen.

And furthermore, I pray you loketh wel  
In The Olde Testament of Daniel,  
If he held dremes any vanitec.

Rede eke of Joseph, and ther shuln ye see  
Wher dremes ben somtime (I say not alle)  
Warning of thinges that shuln after falle.

Loke of Egypt the king, Dan Pharaos,  
His baker and his boteler also,  
Wheder they ne felten non effect in dremes.  
Who so wol seken actes of sondry remes  
May rede of dremes many a wonder thing.

Lo Cresus, which that was of Lydie king,  
Mette he not that he sat upon a tree?  
Which signified he shuld anhangen be.

Lo hire Adromacha, Hector's wif,  
That day that Hector shulde lese his lif,  
She dremed on the same nighte beforene  
How that the lif of Hector shuld be lorne  
If thilke day he went into bataille;  
She warned him, but it might not availle;  
He went forth for to fighten natheles,  
And was yslain anon of Achilles.

But thilke tale is al to long to telle,  
And eke it is nigh day, I may not dwelle.  
Shortly I say, as for conclusion,  
That I shal han of this avision  
Adversitec; and I say furthermore,  
That I ne tell of laxatives no store,  
For they ben venomous, I wot it wel:  
I hem despie; I love hem never a del.

But let us speke of mirthe, and stinte all this.  
Madame Pertelote, so have I blis,

Of o thing God hath sent me large grace,  
For whan I see the beautee of your face,  
Ye ben so scarlet red about your eyen,  
It maketh all my drede for to dien;  
For al so fiker as *In principio*  
*Mulier est hominis confusio,*  
(Madame, the sentence of this Latine is,  
Woman is mannes joye and mannes blis;)   
For whan I sefe a night your softe side,  
Al be it that I may not on you ride  
For that our perche is made so narwe, alas!  
I am so ful of joye and of solas

That I despie bothe sweven and dreame.

And with that word he flew down fro the tree,  
For it was day, and eke his hennas alle,  
And with a chuk he gan hem for to calle,  
For he had found a corn lay in the yerd.  
Real he was, he was no more aferd;  
He fethered Pertelote twenty time,  
And trade hire eke as oft, er it was prime:  
He loketh as it were a grim leoun,  
And on his toos he rometh up and down;  
Him deigned not to set his feet to ground:  
He chuketh, whan he hath a corn yfound,  
And to him rennen than his wives alle.

Thus real as a prince is in his halle  
Leve I this Chaunteclere in his pasture,  
And after wol I till his aventure.

Whan that the month in which the world began,  
That highte March, whan God first naked man,  
Was complete, and ypassed were also  
Sithen March ended thritty dayes and two,  
Befell that Chaunteclere in all his pride,  
His seven wives walking him beside,  
Cast up his eyen to the brighte sonne,  
That in the signe of Taurus hadde yronne  
Twenty degrees and on, and somewhat more:  
He knew by kind, and by non other lore,  
That it was prime, and crew with blisful seven.  
The sonne, he said, is clomben up on heven  
Twenty degrees and on, and more ywis;  
Madame Pertelote, my worldes blis,  
Herkeneth thise blisful briddes how they sing,  
And see the freshe floures how they spring;  
Ful is min herte of revel and of solas.

But sodenly him fell a sorweful cas,  
For ever the latter ende of joye is wo;  
God wote that worldly joye is sone ago;  
And if a rethor coude faire endite  
He in a chronicle might it saufly write  
As for a soveraine notabilitec.

Now every wise man let him herken me;  
This story is al so trewe, I undertake,  
As is the book of Launcelot du Lake,  
That women holde in ful gret reverence.  
Now wol I turne agen to my sentence.

A col fox, ful of sleigh iniquitec,  
That in the grove had wonned yeres thre,  
By high imagination forecast,  
The same night thurghout the hegges brast  
Into the yerd ther Chaunteclere the faire  
Was wout, and eke his wives, to repaire,  
And in a bedde of worres stille he lay  
Till it was passed undern of the day,



Waiting his time on Chaunteclere to falle,  
 As gladly don thise homicides alle  
 That in await ligen to mordre men.  
 O false morderour! rucking in thy den,  
 O newe Scariot, newe Genelon!  
 O false dissimulour, o Greek Sinon!  
 That broughtest Troye al utterly to forwe,  
 O Chapnteclere! accursed be the morwe  
 That thou into thy yerd flew fro the bemes;  
 Thou were ful wel ywarned by thy dremes  
 That thilke day was perilous to thee:  
 But what that God forewote most nedes be,  
 After the opinion of certain clerkes,  
 Witnesse on him that any parfit clerk is,  
 That in scole is gret altercation  
 In this matere and gret disputifon,  
 And hath ben of an hundred thousand men:  
 But I ne cannot houlte it to the bren,  
 As can the holy Doctour Augustin,  
 Or Boece, or the bishop Bradwardin,  
 Whether that Goddes worthy foreweting  
 Streineth me nedely for to don a thing,  
 (Nedely clepe I simple necessitee)  
 Or elles if free choise be granted me  
 To do that same thing or do it nought,  
 Though God forewot it or that it was wrought,  
 Or if his weting streineth never a del  
 But by necessitee condicionel.  
 I wol not han to don of swiche matere;  
 My Tale is of a cok, as ye may here,  
 That took his conseil of his wif, with forwe  
 To walken in the yerd upon the morwe  
 That he had met the dreame, as I you told.  
 Womennes conseiles ben ful often cold;  
 Womennes conseil brought us first to wo,  
 And made Adam fro Paradis to go,  
 Ther as he was ful mery and wel at ese:  
 But for I n'ot to whom I might displese  
 If I conseil of women wolde blame,  
 Passe over, for I said it in my game.  
 Rede auctours where they trete of swiche matere,  
 And what they sayn of women ye mown here.  
 Thise ben the Cokkes wordes and not mine;  
 I can non harme of no woman devine.  
 Faire in the foud, to bath hire merily,  
 Lith Pertelote, and all hire susters by,  
 Agein the sonne, and Chaunteclere so free  
 Sang merrier than the mermaid in the see,  
 For Physiologus sayth likerly  
 How that they singen wel and merily.  
 And so befell that as he cast his eye  
 Among the wortes on a boterflie  
 He was ware of this fox that lay ful low:  
 Nothing ne list him thaune for to crow,  
 But cried anon Cok, cok, and up he sterte  
 As man that was affraied in his herte;  
 For naturally a beest desireth flee  
 Fro his contrarie if he may it see,  
 Though he never erst had seen it with his eye.  
 This Chaunteclere, whan he gan him espie,  
 He wold han fled, but that the fox anon  
 Said, Gentil Sire, alas! what wol ye don?  
 Be ye affraid of me that am your frend?  
 Now certes I were werse than any fend

If I to you wold harme or vilanie.  
 I n'am not come your conseil to espie,  
 But trewely the cause of my coming  
 Was only for to herken how ye sing,  
 For trewely ye han as mery a steven  
 As any angel hath that is in heven,  
 Therwith ye han of musike more feling  
 Than had Boece, or any that can sing.  
 My Lord, your fader (God his soule blesse),  
 And eke your moder of hire gentillese  
 Han in myn hous yben, to my gret ese,  
 And certes, Sire, ful fain wold I you plese.  
 But for men speke of singen, I wol sey,  
 So mote I brouken wel min eyen twey,  
 Save you ne herd I never man so sing  
 As did your fader in the morwening:  
 Certes it was of herte all that he song:  
 And for to make his nois the more strong  
 He wold so peine him, that with both his eyen  
 He muste winke, so loude he walde crien,  
 And stonden on his tiptoon therwithal,  
 And stretchen forth his necke long and smal.  
 And eke he was of swiche discretion,  
 That ther n'as no man in no region  
 That him in song or wisdom mighte passe.  
 I have wel red in Dan Burnel the asse  
 Among his vers, how that ther was a cok  
 That for a preestes sone yave him a knock  
 Upon his leg, while he was yonge and nice,  
 He made him for to lese his benefice;  
 But certain ther is no comparison  
 Betwix the wisdom and discretion  
 Of your fader and his subtilitee.  
 Now singeth, Sire, for Seint Charitee:  
 Let see, can ye your fader counterfete?  
 This Chaunteclere his winges gan to bete,  
 As man that coud not his treson espie,  
 So was he ravished with his flaterie.  
 Alas! ye lordes, many a false flatour  
 Is in your court, and many a losengeour,  
 That pleseth you wel more, by my faith,  
 Than he that sothfastnesse unto you saith,  
 Redeth Ecclesiast of flaterie:  
 Beth ware, ye lordes, of hire trecherie.  
 This Chaunteclere stood high upon his toos  
 Stretching his necke, and held his eyen cloos  
 And gan to crowen loude for the nones;  
 And Dan Russel the fox stert up at ones,  
 And by the gargat hente Chaunteclere,  
 And on his back toward the wood him bere,  
 For yet ne was ther no man that him sued.  
 O destinee! that maist not ben eschued,  
 Alas that Chaunteclere flew fro the bemes!  
 Alas, his wif ne raughte not of dremes!  
 And on a Friday fel all this meschance.  
 O Venus! that art goddesse of Plesance,  
 Sin that thy servant was this Chaunteclere,  
 And in thy service did all his powere,  
 More for delit than world to multiplie,  
 Why wolt thou suffre him on thy day to die?  
 O Gaufride, dere maister soverain!  
 That whan thy worthy King Richard was slain  
 With shot complainedest his deth so fore,  
 Why ne had I now thy science and thy lore

The Friday for to chiden as did ye?  
 For on a Friday sothly slain was he)  
 Then wold I shew you how that I coud plaine  
 For Chauntecleres drede and for his paine.

Certes swiche cry ne lamentation  
 Was never of ladies made whan Ilion  
 Was yonne, and Pirgus with streite swerd,  
 When he had hen King Priam by the berd  
 And slain him, (as saith us *Enidos*)  
 As maden all the hennes in the cloos  
 Whan they had seen of Chaunteclere the fight;  
 But soverainly Dame Pertelote shrigh  
 Ful louder than did Hasdruballes wif  
 Whan that hire husband hadde ylost his lif,  
 And that the Romaines hadden brent Cartage;  
 She was so ful of turment and of rage  
 That wilfully into the fire she sterte,  
 And brent hire selven with a stedfast herte.

O woful hennes! right so criden ye  
 As whan that Nero brente the citee  
 Of Rome cried the Senatoures wives  
 For that hir husbands losten alle hir lives.  
 Withouten gilt this Nero hath hem slain.

Now wol I turne unto my Tale again.  
 The sely widewe and hire doughtren two  
 Harden these hennes crie and maken wo,  
 And out at the dores sterten they anon,  
 And saw the fox toward the wode is gon,  
 And bare upon his back the cok away:  
 They crieden out Harow and wala wa!  
 A ha the fox! and after him they ran,  
 And eke with slaves many an other man;  
 Ran Colle our dogge, and Talbot and Gerlond,  
 And Malkin, with hire distaf in hire hond;  
 Ran cow and calf; and eke the veray hogges  
 So fered were for barking of the dogges,  
 And shouting of the men and women eke,  
 They ronnan so hem thought hir hertes breke;  
 They yelleden as fendes don in helle;  
 The dokes crieden as men wold hem quelle:  
 The gees for fere flew over the trees,  
 Out of the hive came the swarme of bees,  
 So hidous was the noise, a *benedicite*!  
 Certes he Jakke Straw and his meinie  
 Ne maden never shoutes half so shrille,  
 Whan that they wolden any Fleming kille,  
 As thilke day was made upon the fox,  
 Of bras they broughten beemes and of box,  
 Of horn and bone, in which they blew and pouped,  
 And therewithal they shriked and they houped;  
 It semed as that the heven shulde falle.

Now, goode men, I pray you herkeneth alle:  
 Lo how Fortune turneth sodenly  
 The hope and pride eke of hire enemy!  
 This cok that lay upon the foxes bake,  
 In all his drede unto the fox he spake,  
 And sayde; Sire, if that I were as ye  
 Yet wold I fain, (as wisly God help me)

Turneth agein, ye proude cherles alle,  
 A very pestilence upon you faile:  
 Now I am come unto the wodes side,  
 Maugre your hed the cok shal here abide;  
 I wol him ete in faith, and that anon.

The fox answered, in faith it shal be don;  
 And as he spake the word al sodenly  
 The cok brake from his mouth deliverly,  
 And high upon a tree he flew anon.

And whan the fox saw that the cok was gon,  
 Alas! quod he, o Chaunteclere, alas!  
 I have (quod he) ydon to you trespas,  
 In as moche as I makid you aferd  
 Whan I you hente and brought out of your yerd  
 But, Sire, I did it in no wikke entente:  
 Come down, and I shal tell you what I mente:  
 I shal say sothe to you, God helpe me so.

Nay than quod he, I shrewe us bothe two;  
 And first I shrewe myself bothe blood and bones  
 If thou begile me oftener than ones:  
 Thou shalt no more thurgh thy flaterie  
 Do me to sing and winken with mine eye,  
 For he that winketh whan he shulde see,  
 Al wilfully, God let him never the.

Nay, quod the fox, but God yeve him melchance  
 That is so indiscrete of governance  
 That jangleth whan that he shuld hold his pees.

Lo, which it is for to be reccheles  
 And negligent, and trust on flaterie.  
 But ye that holden this Tale a folie,  
 As of a fox, or of a cok or hen,  
 Taketh the moralitee therof, good men;  
 For Seint Poule sayth, that all that writen is  
 To our doctrine it is ywriten ywis.  
 Taketh the fruit, and let the chaf be stille.

Now, goode God, if that it be thy wille,  
 As sayth my Lord, so make us all good men,  
 And bring us to thy high blisse. Amen.

Sire Nonnes Preest, our Hoste sayd anon,  
 Yblest be thy breche and every ston;  
 This was a mery Tale of Chaunteclere:  
 But by my trouthe if thou were seculere  
 Thou woldest ben a tredefoule a right,  
 For if thou have corage as thou hast might  
 Thee were nede of hennes, as I wene,  
 Ye mo than seven times seventene.  
 Se whiche braunes hath this gentil Preest,  
 So gret a neck, and swiche a large brest  
 He loketh as a sparhawk with his eyen:  
 Him nedeth not his colour for to dien  
 With Brasil ne with grain of Portingale,

But, Sire, faire falle you for your Tale.  
 And after that he with ful mery chere  
 Sayd to another as ye shulen here.

\* \* \* \* \*

## THE SECOND NONNES TALE\*.

The minstre and the norice unto vices,  
Which that men clepe in English Idelnesse,  
That porter at the gate is of Delices,  
To eschuen, and by hire contrary hire oppresse;  
That is to sayn, by lesful besynesse.

Wel oughte we to don al our entente,  
Lest that the fend thurgh idelnesse us hente.

For he that with his thousand cordes flie  
Continuelly us waiteth to be clappe,  
Whan he may man in idelnesse espie,  
He can so lightly cacche him in his trappe,  
Til that a man be hent right by the lappe  
He n'is not ware the fend hath him in hond:  
Wel ought us werche and idelnesse withstond.

And though men dradden never for to die,  
Yet see men wel by reson douteles  
That idelnesse is rote of flogardie,  
Of which ther never cometh no good encrees,  
And see that slouth holdeth hem in a lees,  
Only to slepe and for to ete and drinke,  
And to deuouren all that other swinke.

And for to put us from swiche idelnesse,  
That cause is of gret confusoun,  
I have here don my feithful besynesse,  
After the legende, in translation  
Right of thy glorious lif and passion,  
Thou with thy gerlond wrought of rose and lillie,  
Thee mene I, maid and martir, Seinte Cecilie,

And thou, that arte floure of virgines all,  
Of whom that Bernard list so wel to write,  
To thee at my beginning first I call,  
Thou comfort of us wretches, do me endite  
Thy maidens deth, that wan thurgh hire merite  
The eternal lif, and over the fend victorie,  
As man may after reden in hire storie.

Thou maide and mother, doughter of thy son,  
Thou wel of mercy, sinful soules cure,  
In whom that God of bountee chees to won;  
Thou humble and high over every creature,  
Thou nobledest so fer forth our nature,  
That no disdaine the maker had of kinde  
His son in blood and flesh to clothe and winde.

Within the cloystre blisful of thy sides  
Toke mannes shape the eternal Love and Pees,

That of the trine compas Lord and guide is,  
Whom erthe, and see, and heven, out of rellecs  
Ay herien; and thou virgine wemmeles  
Bare of thy body (and dweltest maiden pure)  
The Creatour of every creature.

Assembled in thee magnificence  
With mercy goodnesse, and with swiche pitee,  
That thou that art the sonne of excellence,  
Not only helpst hem that praien thee,  
But oftentime of thy benignitee  
Ful freely, or that men thin helpe beseeche,  
Thou goest beforne and art hir lives leche.

Now helpe, thou meke and blisful faire maide,  
Me flamed wretch, in this desert of galle;  
Thinke on the woman Cananee, that saide  
That whelpes eten som of the cromes alle  
That from hir lordes table been yfalle;  
And though that I, unworthy sone of Eve,  
Be sinful, yet accepteth my beleve.

And for that feith is ded withouten werkes,  
So for to werken yeve me wit and space  
That I be quit from thennes that most derke is:  
O thou! that art so faire and ful of grace,  
Be thou min advocat in that high place,  
Ther as withouten ende is songe Ofanne,  
Thou Cristes mother, doughter dere of Anne.

And of thy light my soule in prison light,  
That troubled is by the contagion  
Of my body, and also by the wight  
Of erthly lust and false affection:  
O haven of refute! o salvation  
Of hem that ben in forwe and in distresse!  
Now help, for to my werk I wol me dresse.

Yet pray I you that reden that I write  
Foryeve me that I do no diligence  
This ilke storie subtilly to endite;  
For both have I the wordes and sentence  
Of him that at the seintes reverence  
The storie wrote, and folowed hire legende,  
And pray you that ye wol my werk amende.

First wol I you the name of Seinte Cecilie  
Expoune, as men may in hire storie see;  
It is to sayn in English, Hevens lillie,  
For pure chastnesse of virginitee,  
Or for the whitnesse had of honestee,  
And grene of conscience, and of good fame  
The swote favour, Lillie was hire name.

\* The life and death of Saint Cecily. Sp.



Or Cecile is to sayn, The way to blinde,  
For she ensample was by good teching,  
Or elles Cecile, as I writen finde,  
As joined by a maner conjoining  
Of heven and *Lia*, and here in figuring  
The heven is set for thought of holinesse,  
And *Lia* for hire lasting besinesse.

Cecile may eke be sayd in this manere,  
Wanting of blindnesse, for hire grete light  
Of sapience, and for hire throwes clere;  
Or elles lo this maidens name bright  
Of heven and *Leos* cometh, for which by right  
Men might hire wel the heven of peple calle,  
Insample of good and wise werkes alle.

For *Leos* peple in English is to say:  
And right as men may in the heven see  
The sonne and mone, and sterres, every way,  
Right so men gostly, in this maiden free  
Sawen of faith the magnanimittee,  
And eke the clerenesse hole of sapience,  
And sondry werkes bright of excellence.

And right so as this philosophres write,  
That heven is swift and round, and eke brenning,  
Right so was faire Cecile the white  
Ful swift and besy in every good working,  
And round and hole in good persevering,  
And brenning ever in charitee ful bright.  
Now have I you declared what she hight.

This maiden bright Cecile, as hire life faith,  
Was come of Romaines and noble kind,  
And from hire cradle fostred in the faith  
Of Crist, and bare his gospel in hire mind:  
She never cesed, as I writen find,  
Of hire prayere, and God to love and drede,  
Beseeching him to kepe hire maidenhede.

And whan this maiden shuld until a man  
Ywedded be that was ful yonge of age,  
Which that ycleped was Valerian,  
And day was comen of hire marriage,  
She ful devout and humble in hire corage,  
Under hire robe of gold, that sat ful faire  
Had next hire flesh yclad hire in an haire.

And while that the organs maden melodie  
To God alone thus in hire hert song she;  
O Lord! my soule and eke my bodie gie  
Unwemmed, lest that I confounded be.  
And for his love that died upon the tree  
Every second or thridde day she fast,  
Ay bidding in hire orisons ful fast.

The night came, and to bed must she gon  
With hire husband, as it is the manere,  
And prively she said to him anon;  
O swete and wel beloved spouse dere!  
Ther is a conseil, and ye wol it here,  
Which that right sayn I wold unto you saie,  
So that ye swere ye wol it not bewraie.

Valerian gan fast unto hire swere  
That for no cas ne thing that mighte be  
He shulde never to non bewraien here;  
And than at erst thus to him saide she;  
I have an angel which that loveth me,  
That with gret love wher so I wake or slepe  
Is rady ay my body for to kepe:

And if that he may felen out of drede  
That ye me touch or love in vilanie,

He right anon wol fleen you with the dede,  
And in your youthe thus ye shulden die;  
And if that ye in clene love me gie,  
He wol you love as me for your clenenesse,  
And shew to you his joye and his brightnesse.

This Valerian, corrected as God wold,  
Answered again; If I shal trusten thee  
Let me that angel seen and him behold,  
And if that it a veray angel be,  
Than wol I den as thou hast prayed me;  
And if thou love another man, forsothe  
Right with this swerd then wol I flee you bothe.

Cecile answered anon right in this wise:  
If that you list the angel shul you see,  
So that ye trowe on Crist, and you baptise:  
Go forth to Via Apia, (quod she)  
That fro this toun ne stant but miles three,  
And to the poure folkes that ther dwellen  
Say hem right thus as that I shal you tellen.

Tell hem that I Cecile you to hem sent  
To shewen you the good Urban the old,  
For secree nedes and for good entent;  
And whan that ye Seint Urban han behold,  
Tell him the wordes whiche I to you told:  
And whan that he hath purged you fro sinne  
Than shal ye seen that angel ere ye twinne.

Valerian is to the place gon,  
And right as he was taught by hire lerning  
He fond this holy old Urban anon  
Among the seintes buriels louting;  
And he anon withouten tarying  
Did his message, and whan that he it tolde  
Urban for joye his hondes gan upholde.

The teres from his eyen let he falle;  
Almighty Lord, o Jesu Crist! quod he,  
Sower of chaste conseil, hierde of us alle,  
The fruit of thilk seede of chastitee  
That thou hast sow in Cecile take to thee:  
Lo, like a besy bee withouten gile  
Thee serveth ay thin owen thral Cecile.

For thilk spouse that she toke but newe,  
Ful like a fiers leon, she sendeth here:  
As meke as ever was any lamb or ewe,  
And with that word anon ther gan aperce  
An old man clad in white clothes clere,  
That had a book with letters of gold in hond,  
And gan beforne Valerian to stond.

Valerian as ded fell down for drede  
Whan he him saw, and he up hent him thre,  
And on his book right thus he gan to rede:  
On Lord, on faith, on God withouten me,  
On Cristendom, and fader of all also  
Aboven all, and over all every wher.  
Thise wordes all with gold ywriten were.

Whan this was red, than said this olde man,  
Levest thou this thing or no? say ye or nay.  
I leve all this thing, quod Valerian,  
For sother thing than this I dare wel say  
Under the heven no wight thinken may.  
Tho vanished the olde man he n'iste wher,  
And Pope Urban him cristened right ther.

Valerian goth home, and sint Cecile  
Within his chambre with an angel stonde:  
This angel had of roses and of lilie  
Corones two, the which he bare in honde,  
And first to Cecile, as I understonde,

He yaf that on, and after gan he take  
That other to Valerian hire make,

With body clene and with unwemmed thought  
Kepeth ay wel thise corones two, quod he,  
From Paradis to you I have hem brought,  
Ne never mo ne shul they roten be,  
Ne lese hir fwete favour, trusteth me,  
Ne never wight shal seen hem with his eye,  
But he be chaste and hate vilanie.

And thou, Valerian, for thou so sone  
Assentedest to good conseil, also  
Say what thee list and thou shalt han thy bone.  
I have a brother, quod Valerian tho,  
That in this world I love no man so,  
I pray you that my brother may have grace  
To know the trouthe, as I do in this place.

The angel sayd, God liketh thy request,  
And bothe with the palme of martirdome  
Ye shullen come unto this blisful rest;  
And with that word Tiburce his brother come.  
And whan that he the favour undernome,  
Which that the roses and the lilies cast,  
Within his herte he gan to wonder fast,

And said; I wonder this time of the yere  
Whenes that fwete favour cometh so  
Of roses and lilies that I smelle here,  
For though I had hem min hondes two  
The favour might in me no deper go:  
The fwete smel that in min herte I find  
Hath changed me all in another kind.

Valerian said, Two corones han we  
Snow-white and rose-red, that shinen clere,  
Which that thin eyen han no might to see,  
And as thou smellest hem thurgh my priere,  
So shalt thou seen hem, leve brother dere,  
If it so be thou wolt withouten flouthe  
Beleve aright, and know the veray trouthe.

Tiburce answered; Saigest thou this to me  
In sothnesse, or in dreme herken I this?  
In dremes, quod Valerian, han we be  
Unto this time, brother min, ywis;  
But now at erst in trouthe our dwelling is.  
How wolt thou this, quod Tiburce, in what wise?  
Quod Valerian, That shal I thee devise.

The angel of God hath me the trouthe ytaught,  
Which thou shalt seen, if that thou wilt reney  
The idoles, and be clene, and elles naught.  
And of the miracle of thise corones twey  
Saint Ambrose in his preface list to sey;  
Solempnely this noble doctour dere  
Commendeth it, and saith in this manere:

The palme of martirdome for to receive  
Saint Cecile, fulfilled of Goddes yest,  
The world and eke hire chambre gan she weive,  
Witnesse Tiburces and Ceciles shrift,  
To which God of his bountee wolde shift  
Corones two, of floures wel smelling,  
And made his angel hem the corones bring.

The maid hath brought thise men to blisse  
above;  
The world hath wist what it is worth certain,  
Devotion of chastitee to love.  
Though shewed him Cecile all open and plain  
That all idoles n'is but a thing in vain,

For they ben dombe, and therto they ben deve,  
And charged him his idoles for to leve.

Who so that troweth not this, a best he is,  
Quod this Tiburce, if that I shal not lie.  
And she gan kisse his brest whan she herd this,  
And was ful glad he coude trouthe espie:  
This day I take thee for min allie.  
Saide this blisful faire maider dere;  
And after that she said as ye may here:

Lo, right so as the love of Crist (quod she)  
Made me thy brother's wif, right in that wise  
Anon for min allie here take I thee,  
Sithen that thou wolt thin idoles despise.  
Goth with thy brother now and thee baptise,  
And make thee clene, so that thou maist behold  
The angels face of which thy brother told.

Tiburce answered, and saide, Brother dere,  
First tell me whither I shal, and to what man.  
To whom, quod he, Come for with goode there,  
I wol thee lede unto the Pope Urban.  
To Urban? brother min, Valerian,  
Quod tho Tiburce, wilt thou me thider lede?  
Me thinketh that it were a wonder dede.

Ne menest thou not Urban (quod he tho)  
That is so often damned to be ded,  
And woneth in halkes alway to and fro,  
And dare not ones putten forth his hed?  
Men shold him brennen in a fire so red  
If he were found, or that men might him spie,  
And we also, to bere him compaignie.

And while we seken thilke divinitee  
That is yhid in heaven prively,  
Algate ybrent in this world shuld we be.  
To whom Cecile answered boldel;  
Men mighten dreden wel and skilfully  
This lif to lese, min owen dere brother!  
If this were living only and non other.

But ther is better lif in other place  
That never shal be lost, ne drede thee nought,  
Which Goddes sone us tolde thurgh his grace,  
That fadres sone which alle thinges wrought;  
And all that wrought is with a skilful thought,  
The gost that from the fader gan procede  
Hath souled hem withouten any drede.

By word and by miracle he Goddes sone,  
Whan he was in this world, declared here  
That ther is oþer lif ther men may wone.  
To whom answerd Tiburce; O suster dere!  
Ne saigest thou right now in this manere,  
Ther n'is but o God Lord in sothfastnesse,  
And now of three how mayst thou bere witnesse?

That shal I tell, quod she, or that I go.  
Right as a man hath sapiences three,  
Memorie, engine, and intellect also,  
So in o being of divinitee  
Three persones mowen ther righte wel be.  
Tho gan she him ful besily to preche  
Of Cristes sonde, and of his peines teche,

And many pointes of his passion,  
How Goddes sone in this world was withhold  
To don mankinde pleine remission,  
That was ybound in sinne and kares cold.  
All this thing she unto Tiburce told,

And after this Tiburce in good entent  
With Valerian to Pope Urban he went,  
That thanked God, and with glad herte and  
light

He cristened him, and made him in that place  
Parfite in his lerning, and Goddes knight :  
And after this Tiburce gat swiche grace  
That every day he saw in time and space  
The angel of God and every maner bone  
That he God axed it was sped ful sone.

It were ful hard by ordie for to sain  
How many wonders Jesus for hem wrought ;  
But at the last, to tellen short and plain,  
The sergeaunts of the toun of Rome hem fought,  
And hem before Almache the Prefect brought,  
Which hem apposed, and knew all hir entent,  
And to the image of Jupiter hem sent.

And said, Who so wol nought do sacrifice  
Swap of his hed ; this is my sentence here.  
Anon thise martyrs that I you devise  
On Maximus, that was an officere  
Of the Prefectes, and his Corniculere  
Hem hent, and whan he forth the seintes lad  
Himself he wept for pitee that he had.

Whan Maximus had herd the seintes lore  
He gate him of the turmentoures leve,  
And lad hem to his hous withouten more ;  
And with hir preching or that it were eve  
They gonnen fro the turmentours to reve,  
And fro Maxime, and fro his folk eche on,  
The false faith, to trowe in God alone.

Cecile came, whan it was waxen night,  
With preestes that hem cristened all yfere ;  
And afterward whan day was waxen light  
Cecile hem said with a ful stedfast chere,  
Now, Cristes owen knightes leve and dere,  
Caste all away the werkes of derkenesse,  
And armeth you in armes of brightnesse.

Ye han forsoth ydon a gret bataille ;  
Your cours is don ; your faith hath you conserved ;  
Goth to the croune of lif that may not faille ;  
The rightful juge, which that ye han served,  
Shal yeve it you, as ye han it deserved.  
And whan this thing was said as I devise  
Men ledde hem forth to don the sacrifice.

But whan they weren to the place ybrought,  
To tellen shortly the conclusioun,  
They n'olde encense ne sacrifice right nought,  
But on hir knees they setten hem adoun,  
With humble herte and sad devotioun,  
And losten both hir hedes in the place :  
Hir soules wenten to the King of grace.

This Maximus, that saw this thing betide,  
With pitous teres told it anon right  
That he hir soules saw to heven glide  
With angels, ful of clerenesse and of light,  
And with his word converted many a wight,  
For which Almachius did him to-bete  
With whip of led til he his lif gan lete.

Cecile him toke and buried him anon  
By Tiburce and Valerian softely,  
Within hir burying place, under the ston ;  
And after this Almachius hastily  
Bad his ministres fetchen openly

Vol. I.

Cecile, so that she might in his presence  
Don sacrifice, and Jupiter encense.

But they, converted at hire wise lore,  
Wepten ful fore, and yaven ful credence  
Unto hire word, and crieden more and more  
Crist, Goddes sone, withouten difference,  
Is vefay God, this is all our sentence,  
That hath so good a servant him to serve :  
Thus with o vois we trowen though we sterve.

Almachius, that herd of this doing,  
Bad fetchen Cecile, that he might hire see :  
And alderfirst, lo, this was his axing ;  
What maner woman art thou ? quod he.  
I am a gentilwoman borne, quod she.  
I axe thee, quod he, though it thee greve,  
Of thy religion and of thy beleve.

Why than began your question folily,  
Quod she, that woldest two answers conclude  
In o demand ? Ye axen lewedly.  
Almache answered to that similitude,  
Of whennes cometh thin answering so rude ?  
Of whennes ? (quod she, whan that she was friened)  
Of conscience, and of good faith unfeined.

Almachius said ; Ne takest thou non hede  
Of my power ? And she him answered this ;  
Your might (quod she) ful litel is to drede,  
For every mortal mannes power n'is  
But like a bladder ful of wind ywis,  
For with a nedles point whan it is blow  
May all the boft of it be laid ful low.

Ful wrongfully begonnest thou, (quod he)  
And yet in wrong is all thy perseverance :  
Wost thou not how our mighty princes free  
Have thus commanded and made ordinance  
That every Cristen wight shal han penance  
But if that he his Cristendome withseye,  
And gon al quite if he wol it reneye ?

Your princes erren, as your nobley doth,  
Quod tho Cecile, and with a wood sentence  
Ye make us guilty, and it is not soth ;  
For ye, that knowen wel our innocence,  
For as moche as we don ay reverence  
To Crist, and for we bere a Cristen name,  
Ye put on us a crime and eke a blame.

But we, that knowen thilke name so  
For vertuons, we may it not withseye.  
Almache answered ; Chese on of thise two,  
Do sacrifice, or Cristendom reneye,  
That thou now now escapen by that wey.  
At which this holy blisful sayre maid  
Gan for to laughe, and to the juge said ;

O juge ! confuse in thy nicetee,  
Woldest thou that I reneye innocence ?  
To maken me a wicked wight (quod she)  
Lo, he dissimuleth here in audiepe,  
He stareth and wodeth in his advertence.  
To whom Almachius said, Unfely wretch !  
Ne wost thou not how far my might may stretch ?

Han not our mighty princes to me yeven  
Ya bothe power and eke auctoritee  
To maken folk to dein or to liven ?  
Why spekest thou so proudly than to me ?  
I ne speke nought but stedfastly, quod she.

L



Not proudly, for I fay, as for my side  
We haten dedly thilke vice of pride.

And if thou drede not a foth for to here  
Than wol I shewe al openly by right  
That thou hast made a ful gret lesing here.  
Thou saist thy princes han thee yeven might  
Both for to flee and for to quicken a wight.  
Thou that ne maist but only lif bereve  
Thou hast non other power ne no leve.

But thou maist sayn thy princes han thee maked  
Ministre of Deth, for if thou speke of mo  
Thou liest, for thy power is ful naked  
Do way thy boldnesse, said Almachius tho,  
And sacrifice to our goddes er thou go.  
I recke not what wrong that thou me proffre,  
For I can suffre it as a philosophre.

But thilke wronges may I not endure  
That thou spekest of our goddes here, quod he.  
Cecile answerd; O nice creature!  
Thou saidest no word sin thou spake to me  
That I ne knew therwith thy nictee,  
And that thou were in every maner wise  
A lewed officer, a vain justice.

Ther lacketh nothing to thin utter eyen  
That thou n'art blind; for thing that we seen alle,  
That is a ston, that men may wel espie,  
That ilke ston a god thou wolt it calle:  
I rede thee let thin hond upon it falle,  
And tast it wel, and ston thou shalt it find,  
Sin that thou seest not with thin eyen blind.

It is a shame that the peple shal  
So scornen thee, and laugh at thy folie,  
For comunly men wot it wel over al  
That mighty God is in his heavens hie;  
And thise images, wel maist thou espie,  
To thee ne to nemsself may not profite,  
For in effect they be not worth a mite.

Thise and iwicke other wordes said she,  
And he wex wroth, and bade men shulde hire lede

Home til hire hous, and in hire hous (quod he)  
Brenne hire right in a bath with flames rede.  
And as he bade right so was don the dede,  
For in a bathe they gonne hire faste shetten,  
And night and day gret fire they under betten.

The longe night, and eke a day also,  
For all the fire, and eke the bathe bete,  
She fate al cold, and felt of it no wo;  
It made hire not a drope for to fwete;  
But in that bath hire lif she muste lete,  
For he Almache with a ful wicke entent  
To flee hire in the bath his sonde sent.

Three strokes in the nekke he smote hire tho  
The turmentour, but for no maner chance  
He mighte not smite all hire nekke atwo:  
And for ther was that time an ordinance  
That no man shulde don man swiche penance  
The fourthe stroke to smiten soft or fore,  
This turmentour ne dorste do no more;

But half ded, with hire nekke ycorven ther  
He left hire lie, and on his way is went:  
The Cristen folk which that about hire were  
With shetes han the blood ful faire yhent:  
Three dayes lived she in this turment,  
And never cesed hem the faith to teche,  
That she had soffred hem she gan to preche.

And hem she gaf hire mebles and hire thing,  
And to the Pope Urban betoke hem tho,  
And said, I axed this of heven King  
To have respit three dayes and no mo,  
To recommend to you or that I go  
Thise soules, lo, and that I might do werche  
Here of min house perpetuellich a cherce.

Seint Urban with his dekenes prively  
The body fette, and buried it by night  
Among his other seintes honestly.  
Hire hous The Cherche of Seint Cecile right;  
Seint Urban halowed it as he wel might,  
In which unto this day in noble wise  
Men don to Crist and to his seinte servise.

## THE CHANONES YEMANNES PROLOGUE.

Whan that tolde was the lif of Seinte Cecile,  
 Er we had ridden fully five mile,  
 At Boughton-under-Blee us gan atake  
 A man that clothed was in clothes blake,  
 And undernethe he wered a white surplis.  
 His hakeney, which that was al pomelee gris,  
 So swatte that it wonder was to see;  
 It semed as he had priked miles three.  
 The horse eke that his Yeman rode upon  
 So swatte that unethes might he gon:  
 About the peytrel stood the some ful hie;  
 He was of some as flecked as a pie.  
 A male tweifold on his croper lay,  
 It semed that he caried litel array;  
 Al light for somner rode this worthy man.  
 And in my herte wondren I began  
 What that he was, til that I understode  
 How that his cloke was sowed to his hode,  
 For which whan I had long avised me  
 I demed him some chanon for to be.  
 His hat heng at his back down by a las,  
 For he had ridden more than trot or pas;  
 He had ay priked like as he were wode.  
 A clote lese he had laid under his hode  
 For swete, and for to kepe his hed fro hete:  
 But it was joye for to seen him swete;  
 His forched dropped as a stillatorie  
 Were ful of plantaine or of paritorie.  
 And whan that he was come he gan to crie,  
 God save (quod he) this joly compaignie!  
 Fast have I priked (quod he) for your sake,  
 Because that I wolde you atake,  
 To riden in this mery compaignie.  
 His Yeman was eke ful of curtesie,  
 And saide, Sires, now in the morwe tide  
 Out of your hostelrie I saw you ride,  
 And warned here my lord and soverain,  
 Which that to riden with you is ful fain  
 For his disport; he loveth daliance.  
 Frend, for thy warning God yeve the good chance.  
 Than said our Hoste: certain it wolde seme  
 Thy lord were wise, and so I may wel deme;  
 He is ful joconde also dare I leye:  
 Can he ought tell a mery tale or tweie,  
 With which he gladen may this compaignie?  
 Who, Sire? my lord? Ye, Sire, withouten lie,  
 He can of mirth and eke of jolitee  
 Not but ynough; also, Sire, trusteth me

And ye him knew al so wel as do I  
 Ye wolden wondre how wel and craftily  
 He coude werke, and that in sondry wise:  
 He hath take on him many a gret emprise,  
 Which were ful harde for any that is here  
 To bring about but they of him it lere.  
 As homely as he rideth amonges you  
 If ye him knew it wold be for your prow:  
 Ye wolden not forgon his acquaintance  
 For mochel good, I dare lay in balance  
 All that I have in my possession.  
 He is a man of high discreffion;  
 I warne you wel he is a passing man.  
 Wel, quod our Hoste, I pray thee tell me than  
 Is he a clerk or non? Tell what he is.  
 Nay, he is greter than a clerk ywis,  
 Saide this Yeman, and in wordes fewe,  
 Hoste, of his craft somwhat I wol you shewe.  
 I say my lord can swiche a subtiltee,  
 (But all his craft ye must not wote of me,  
 And somwhat help I yet to his working)  
 That all the ground on which we ben riding,  
 Til that we come to Canterbury toun,  
 He coude al clene turnen up so down,  
 And pave it all of silver and of gold.  
 And whan this Yeman had this tale ytolde  
 Unto our Hoste, he said *Benedicite!*  
 This thing is wonder mervailous to me,  
 Sin that thy lord is of so high prudence,  
 Because of which men shulde him reverence,  
 That of his worship rekketh he so lite;  
 His overest sloppe it is not worth a mite,  
 As in effect, to him, so mote I go;  
 It is all baudy and to-tore also.  
 Why is thy lord so fluttish I thee preye,  
 And is of power better cloth to beye,  
 If that his dede acorded with thy speche?  
 Telle me that, and that I thee beseche.  
 Why? quod this Yeman, wherto axe ye me?  
 God helpe me so, for he shal never the:  
 (But I wol not avowen that I say,  
 And therefore kepe it secrete I you pray)  
 He is to wise in faith, as I beleve:  
 Thing that is overdon it wol not preve  
 Aright, as clerkes fain; it is a vice;  
 Wherefore in that I hold him lewed and nice;  
 For whan a man hath overgret a wit  
 Ful oft him happeth to misusen it:

So doth my lord, and that me greveth fore :  
God it amende ; I can say now no more.

Therof no force, good Yeman, quod our Host ;  
Sin of the conning of thy lord thou wost  
Telle how he doth, I pray thee hertily,  
Sin that he is so crafty and so fly.  
Wher dwellen ye, if it to tellen be ?

In the subarbes of a toun, quod he,  
Lurking in hernes and in laries blinde,  
Wheras thise robbours and thise theves by kinde  
Holden hir privee fereful residence,  
As they that dare not shewen hir presence ;  
So faren we, if I shal say the sothe.

Yet, quod our Hoste, let me talken to the ;  
Why art thou so discoloured of thy face ?

Peter, quod he, God yeve it harde grace ;  
I am so used the hote fire to blow  
That it hath changed my colour I trow :  
I n'am not wont in no mirrour to prye,  
But swinke fore, and lerne to multiplie.  
We blundren ever and poren in the fire,  
And for all that we faille of our desire ;  
For ever we lacken our conclusion.  
To moche folk we don illusion,  
And borwe gold be it a pound or two,  
Or ten or twelve, or many sommes mo,  
And make hem wenen at the leste wey  
That of a pound we connen maken twey ;  
Yet it is false ; and ay we han good hope  
It for to don, and after it we grope :  
But that science is so fer us beforne,  
We mowen not, although we had it sworne,  
It overtake, it slit away so fast ;  
It wol us maken beggers at the last.

While this Yeman was thus in his talking  
This chanon drow him nere and herd all thing

Which this Yeman spake, for suspectyng  
Of mennes speche ever had this chanon ;  
For Caton sayth, that he that gilty is  
Demeth all thing be spoken of him, ywis ;  
That was the cause he gan so nigh hym drawe  
To his Yeman, to herken all his sawe ;  
And thus he saide unto his Yemaig tho :  
Hold thou thy pees, and speke no wordes mo,  
For if thou do thou shalt it deraie :  
Thou sclaudrest me here in this compaignie,  
And eke discoverest that thou shuldest hide.

Ye, quod our Hoste, tell on, what so betide ;  
Of all his thretening recke not a mite.

In faith, quod he, no more I do but lye.  
And whan this chanon saw it wold not be  
But his Yeman wold tell his privetee,  
He fled away for veray sorwe and shame.

A ! quod the Yeman, here shal rise a game :  
All that I can anon I wol you telle,  
Sin he is gon : the soule fend him quelle,  
For never hereafter wol I with him mete  
For peny ne for pound, I you behete.  
He that me broughte first unto that game,  
Er that he die sorwe have he and shame,  
For it is ernest to me by my faith ;  
That fele I wel, what that any man saith ;  
And yet for all my smert and all my grief,  
For all my sorwe, labour, and meschief,  
I coude never leve it in no wise.  
Now wolde God my wit mighte suffice  
To tellen all that longeth to that art ;  
But natheles yet wol I tellen part :  
Sin that my lord is gon I wol not spare ;  
Swiche thing as that I know I wol declare.

## THE CHANONES YEMANNES TALE\*.

With this chanon I dwelt have seven yere,  
And of his science am I never the nere ;  
All that I had I have ylost therby,  
And God wot so han many mo than I.  
Ther I was wont to be right fresh and gay  
Of clothing, and of other good array,  
Now may I were an hofe upon min hed ;  
And wher my colour was both fresh and red  
Now is it wan and of a leden hewe ;  
(Who so it useth so shal he it rewe)

And of my swinke yet blered is min eye ;  
Lo which advantage is to multiplie !  
That sliding science hath me made so bare  
That I have no good wher that ever I fare ;  
And yet I am enderted so therby,  
Of gold that I have borwed trewely,  
That while I live I shal it quiten never ;  
Let every man beware by me for ever.  
What maner man that casteth him therto,  
If he continue, I hold his thrift ydo ;  
So helpe me God, therby shal he nat winne,  
But empte his purse, and make his wittes thinne.

\* A priest of London, more covetous than wife, is deceived by a chanon pretending the art of alchymye. *Urry.*



And whan he thurgh his madnesse and folie,  
 Hath lost his ewen good thurgh jupartie,  
 Than he exciteth other folk therto,  
 To lese hir good as he himself hath do,  
 For unto shrewes joye it is and ese  
 To have hir felowes in peine and disese.  
 Thus was I once lerned of a clerk.  
 Of that no charge; I wol speke of our werk.  
 Whan we be ther as we shuln exercise  
 Our elvish craft we semen wonder wise,  
 Our termes ben so clerghal and queinte.  
 I blow the fire til that myn herte feinte.  
 What shuld I tellen eche proportion  
 Of thinges whiche that we werchen upon;  
 As on five or six unces, may wel be,  
 Of silver, or som other quantitee?  
 And besie me to tellen you the names,  
 As orpiment, brent bones, yren squames,  
 That into poudre grounden ben ful smal?  
 And in an erthen pot how put is al,  
 And salt yput in and also pepere,  
 Beforn thise poudres that I speke of here,  
 And wel ycovered with a lampe of glas?  
 And of moche other thing which that ther was?  
 And of the pottes and glasses engluting,  
 That of the aire might passen out no thing?  
 And of the esy fire, and smert also,  
 Which that was made? and of the care and wo  
 That we had in our materes subliming,  
 And in amalgaming and calcening  
 Of quicksilver, ycleped Mercurie crude?  
 For all our sleighes we can not conclude.  
 Our orpiment and sublimed mercurie,  
 Our grounden litarge eke on the porphurie,  
 Of eche of thise of unces a certain  
 Not helpeth us; our labour is in vain.  
 Ne, neyther our spirites ascentioun,  
 Ne our materes that lien al fix adoun,  
 Mown in our werking nothing us availle,  
 For lost is all our labour and travaille,  
 And all the cost a twenty devil way  
 Is lost also which we upon it lay.  
 Ther is also ful many another thing  
 That is unto our craft appertaining,  
 Though I by ordre hem nat reherse can,  
 Becaute that I am a lewed man,  
 Yet wol I telle hem as they come to minde,  
 Though I ne cannot set hem in hir kinde,  
 As bole armoniak, verdegrese, boras,  
 And sondry vessels made of erthe and glas,  
 Our urinales, and our descensories,  
 Viols, croslettes and sublimatories,  
 Cucurbites and alembikes eke,  
 And other swiche ger, dere ynough a leke,  
 What nedeth it for to reherse hem alle?  
 Wateres rubifying, and bolles galle,  
 Arsenik, sal armoniak, and brimston,  
 And herbes coude I tell eke many on,  
 As egremoine, valerian, and lunarie,  
 And other swiche, if that me list to tarie,  
 Our lampes brenning bothe night and day,  
 To bring about our craft if that we may,  
 Our fourneis eke of calcination,  
 And of wateres albification,

Unflekke lime, chalk, and gleire of an ey,  
 Poudres divers, ashes, dong, pisse, and cley,  
 Sered pokettes, sal peter, and vitriole,  
 And divers fires made of wode and cole;  
 Sal tartre, alcaly, and salt preparat,  
 And combusti materes and coagulat,  
 Cley made with hors and mannes here, and oile  
 Of tartre, alant, glas, berme, wort, and argoile,  
 Rosalgar, and other materes enbibing,  
 And eke of out materes encorporing,  
 And of our silver citrination,  
 Our cementing and fermentation,  
 Our ingottes, testes, and many thinges mo?

I wol you tell as was me taught also  
 The foure spirites and the bodies sevene  
 By ordre, as oft I herd my lord hem nevne.  
 The firste spirit Quicksilver cleped is,  
 The second Orpiment, the thridde ywis  
 Sal Armoniak, and the fourth Brimston.

The bodies sevene eke, lo hem here anon:  
 Sol gold is, and Luna silver we threpe,  
 Mars iren, Mercurie quicksilver we clepe,  
 Saturnus led, and Jupiter is tin,  
 And Venus coper, by my fader kin.

This cursed craft wiso for wol exercise  
 He shal no good have that him may suffice;  
 For all the good he spendeth therabout  
 He lesen shal, therof have I no doute.  
 Who so that listeth tittren his folie  
 Let him come forth and lernen multiplie;  
 And every man that hath ought in his cofre  
 Let him appere and wex o philosophre,  
 Ascaunce that craft is so light to lere.  
 Nay, nay, God wot al be he monk or frere;  
 Preeft or chanon, or any other wight,  
 Though he sit at his book both day and night  
 In lerning of this elvish nice lore  
 All is in vain, and parde moche more  
 To lerne a lewed man this subtiltee.  
 Pie! speke not therof, for it wol not be;  
 And conne he letterure, or conne he nou  
 As in effect he shal finde it all on,  
 For bothe by two my salvation  
 Concluden in multiplication  
 Ylike wel whan they have al ydo;  
 This is to sain, they failen bothe twd.

Yet forgate I to maken reherfaile  
 Of waters corosif and of limaile,  
 And of bodies molification,  
 And also of hir induration,  
 Oiles, ablutions, metal fusible;  
 To tellen all wold passen any Bible  
 That o wher is; wherfore as for the best  
 Of all thise names now wol I me rest;  
 For as I trow I have you told ynow  
 To reise a fend, al loken never so row.

A! nay, let be; the philosophres ston,  
 Elixer cleped, we seken fast eche on,  
 For had we him than were we siker ynow;  
 But unto God of heven I make avow,  
 For all our craft, whan we han all ydo,  
 And all our sleight, he wol not come us to!

He hath ymade us spenden moche good,  
 For forwe of which almost we waxen wood,  
 But that good hope creepeth in our herte,  
 Supposing ever, though we fore smerte,  
 To ben releved of him afterward :  
 Swiche supposing and hope is sharp and hard :  
 I warne you wel it is to feken ever :  
 That future *temps* hath made men dissever  
 In trust therof from all that even they had,  
 Yet of that art they conne not waxen sad,  
 For unto hem it is a bitter swete :  
 So semeth it, for ne had they but a shete  
 Which that they might wrappen hem in a-night,  
 And a bratt to walken in by day-light,  
 They wold hem sell, and spend it on this craft :  
 They conne not stinten til no thing be left ;  
 And evermore, wher ever that they gon,  
 Men may hem kennen by smell of brimston :  
 For all the world they stinken as a gotc ;  
 Hir favour is so rammish and so hote  
 That though a man a mile from hem be  
 The favour wol enfect him, trusteth me.

Lo, thus by smelling and thred-bare array  
 If that men list this folk they knowen may ;  
 And if a man wol axe hem prively  
 Why they be clothed so unthriftily,  
 They right anon wol rounen in his ere,  
 And saien, if that they espied were  
 Men wolde hem sle because of hir science.  
 Lo, thus thise folk betraien innocence.

Passé over this ; I go my Tale unto.  
 Er that the pot be on the fire ydo,  
 Of metals with a certain quantitee  
 My lord hem tempereth, and no man but he,  
 (Now he is gon I dare say boldely)  
 For as men sain he can don craftily,  
 Algate I wote wel he hath swiche a name,  
 And yet ful oft he renneth in a blame ;  
 And wete ye how ? ful oft it falleth so  
 The pot to-brcketh, and farewell ! all is go.  
 Thise metales ben of so gret violence  
 Our walles may not make hem resistance,  
 But if they weren wrought of lime and ston ;  
 They percen so that thurgh the wall they gon,  
 And som of hem sinke down into the ground,  
 (Thus have we lost by times many a pound)  
 And som are scatered all the flore aboute,  
 Som lepen into the roof withouten doute.  
 Though that they fend not in our sight him shewe  
 I trow that he be with us, thilke shrewe  
 In helle, wher that he is lord and fire,  
 Ne is ther no more, rancour, ne ire.  
 Whan that our pot is broke, as I have sayde,  
 Every man chit, and holt him evil apayde :  
 Som sayd it was long on the fire-making,  
 Som sayd nay, it was long on the blowing ;  
 (Than was I ferd, for that was min office)  
 Straw ! quod the thridde, ye ben lewed and nice ;  
 It was not tempred as it oughte to be ;  
 Nay, quod the fourthe, stinte and herken me ;  
 Because our fire was not made of beche  
 That is the cause, and other non, so the iche.  
 I can not tell wheron it was along,  
 But wel I wot gret strif is us among.

What ? quod my lord, ther n'is no more to don ;  
 Of thise perils I wol beware eftsonn ;  
 I am right siker that the pot was cased.  
 Be as be may be ye no thing amased ;  
 As usage is let swepe the flore as frithe ;  
 Plucke up your hertes, and be glad and blithe.

The mullek on an hepe ysweped was,  
 And on the flore ycast a canevas,  
 And all this mullok in a five ythrowe,  
 And sifted, and ypicked many a throwe.

Parde, quod on, somewhat of our metall  
 Yet is ther here, though that we have not all ;  
 And though this thing mishaped hath as now  
 Another time it may be wel ynow.  
 We mosten put our good in aventure ;  
 A marchant parde may not ay endure,  
 Trusteth me wel, in his prosperitee ;  
 Somtime his good is drenched in the see,  
 And somtime cometh it sauf unto the lond.

Pees, quod my lord, the next time I wol fond  
 To bring our craft all in ~~another~~ plite,  
 And but I do, Sires, let me have the wite :  
 Ther was defeaute in somewhat wel I wote.

Another sayd the fire was over hote :  
 But be it hote or cold I dare say this,  
 That we concluden evermore amis ;  
 We faille alway of that which we wold have,  
 And in our madnesse evermore we rave,  
 And whan we be together everich on  
 Every man semeth a Salomon.  
 But all thing which that shineth as the gold  
 Ne is no gold, as I have herd it told,  
 Ne every apple that is faire at eye  
 Ne is not good, what so men clap or crie.  
 Right so, lo, fareth it amonges us ;  
 He that semeth the wifest, by Jesus  
 Is most fool whan it cometh to the prese,  
 And he that semeth truest is a thefe :  
 That shal ye know or that I from you wende,  
 By that I of my Tale have made an ende.

Ther was a chanon of religioun  
 Amonges us wold enfect all a toun,  
 Though it as gret were as was Ninive,  
 Rome, Alisaundre, Troie, or other three.  
 His sleighes and his infinite falsenesse  
 Ther coude no man writen, as I gesse,  
 Though that he mighte live a thousand yere :  
 In all this world of falsenesse n'is his pere,  
 For in his termes he wol him so winde,  
 And speke his wordes in so flie a kinde,  
 Whan he comen shal with any wight,  
 That he wol make him doten anon right  
 But it a fend be, as himselfen is.  
 Ful many a man hath he begiled er this,  
 And wol, if that he may live any while ;  
 And yet men gon and riden many a mile  
 Him for to seke, and have his acquaintance,  
 Not knowing of his false governance ;  
 And if you lust to yeve me audience  
 I wol it tellen here in your presence.

But, worshipful chanons religious,  
 Ne demeth not that I sclander your hous,  
 Although that my Tale of a chanon be :  
 Of every order som shrew is parde



And God forbode that all a compaignie  
 Shuld rewe a singuler mannes folie.  
 To sclander you is no thing min entent,  
 But to correcte that is mis I ment.  
 This Tale was not only told for you  
 But eke for other mo: ye wot wel how  
 That among Cristes aposteles twelve  
 Ther was no traitour but Judas himselve;  
 Than why shuld al the remenant have blame,  
 That giltles were? By you I say the same;  
 Save only this, if ye wol herken me,  
 If any Judas in your covent be  
 Remeveth him betimes I you rede,  
 If shame or los may causen any drede;  
 And be no thing displeased I you pray,  
 But in this cas herkeneth what I say.

In London was a preeft, an annuellere\*,  
 That therein dwelled hadde many a yere,  
 Which was so plesant and so fervisable  
 Unto the wif ther as he was at table,  
 That the wold suffre him no thing to pay  
 For borde ne clothing, went he never so gay;  
 And spending silver had he right ynow:  
 Therof no force; I wol proceed as now,  
 And tellen forth my Tale of the chanon  
 That broughte this preeft to confusion.

This false chanon came upon a day  
 Unto the preeftes chambre ther he lay,  
 Beseeching him to lene him a certain  
 Of gold, and he wold quite it him again.  
 Lene me a marke, quod he, but dayes three,  
 And at my day I wol it quiten thee;  
 And if it so be that thou finde me false  
 Another day hang me up by the halfe.

This preeft him toke a marke, and that as swith,  
 And this chanon him thanked often sith,  
 And toke his leve, and wente forth his wey;  
 And at the thridde day brought his money,  
 And to the preeft he toke his gold again,  
 Wherof this preeft was wonder glad and fain.

Certes, quod he, nothing anoieth me  
 To lene a man a noble, or two, or three,  
 Or what a thing were in my possession,  
 Whan he so trewe is of condition  
 That in no wise he breken wol his day;  
 To swiche a man I can never say nay.

What? quod this chanon, shuld I be untrewed?  
 Nay, that were thing fallen al of the newe:  
 Trowth is a thing that I wol ever kepe  
 Unto the day in which that I shal crepe  
 Into my grave, and elles God forbode!  
 Beleveth this as liker as your crede,  
 God thanke I, and in good time be it sayde,  
 That ther n'as never man yet evil apayde  
 For gold ne silver that he to me lent,  
 Ne never falskede in min herte I ment.

And, Sire, (quod he) now of my privetee,  
 Sin ye so goodlich have ben unto me,  
 And kithed to me so gret gentilleste,  
 Somewhat to quiten with your kindeneste  
 I wol you shewe, and if you lust to here  
 I wol you techen plainly the manere

\* They were called *annuellers*, not from their receiving a yearly stipend, as the Gloss. explains it, but from their being employed solely in singing annuals or anniversary masses for the dead, without any cure of souls.

How I can werken in philosophie:  
 Taketh good heed, ye shuln wel sen at eye  
 That I wol do a mailtrie or I go.

Ye, quod the preeft; ye, Sire, and wol ye so?  
 Mary, therof I pray you hertily.

At your commandement, Sire, trewely,  
 Quod the chanon, and elles God forbode.  
 Lo, how this thefe coude his service bede

Ful soth it is that swiche profered service  
 Stinketh, as witnesen thise olde wise,  
 And that ful sone I wol it verifie  
 In this chanon, rote of all trecherie,  
 That evermore delight hath and gladnesse  
 (Swiche fendly thoughtes in his herte *empresse*)  
 How Cristes peple he may to meschief bring:  
 God kepe us from his false dissimuling!  
 Nought wiste this preeft with whom that he delt,  
 Ne of his harme coming nothing he felt.  
 O sely preeft! o sely innocent!

With covetise anon thou shalt be blent;  
 O graceles! ful blind is thy conceite,  
 For nothing art thou ware of the disceite  
 Which that this fox yshapen hath to thee;  
 His wily wenches thou ne mayst not flee:  
 Wherfore to go to the conclusion,  
 That referreth to thy confusion,  
 Unhappy man! anon I wol me hie  
 To tellen thin unwit and thy folie,  
 And eke the falseneste of that other wretch,  
 As ferforth as that my conning will stretch.

This chanon was my lord, ye wolden wene  
 Sire Hoste, in faith, and by the heaven quene,  
 It was another chanon, and not he.  
 That can an hundred part more subtilitee  
 He hath betraied folkes many a time;  
 Of his falseneste it dulleth me to rime:  
 Ever whan that I speke of his falskede  
 For shame of him my chekes waxen rede,  
 Algates they begynnen for to glowe,  
 For redeneste have I non, right wel I knowe,  
 In my visage, for fumes diverse  
 Of metals which ye have herd me reherse  
 Consumed han and wasted my redeneste.  
 Now take hede of this chanons cursedneste.

Sire, quod the chanon, let your yemaun gon  
 For quiksilver, that we it had anon,  
 And let him bringen unces two or three,  
 And whan he cometh as faste shul ye see  
 A wonder thing, which ye saw never er this.

Sire, quod the preeft, it shal be don ywis.  
 He bad his servant fetchen him this thing,  
 And he al redy was at his bidding,  
 And went him forth, and came anon again  
 With this quiksilver, shortly for to fain,  
 And toke this unces three to the chanoun,  
 And he hem laide wel and faire adoun,  
 And bad the servant roles for to bring,  
 That he anon might go to his working.

The coles right anon weren yfet,  
 And this chanon toke out a crosselet  
 Of his bosome, and shewed it to the preeft.  
 This instrument, quod he, which that thou seest  
 Take in thyn hond, and put thyself therein  
 Of this quiksilver an unce, and here begin  
 In the name of Crist to wex a philosopre:  
 Ther be ful fewe which that I wolde profre



To shewen hem thus muche of my science;  
For here shul ye see by experience  
That this quiksilver I wol mortifie  
Right in your sight anon withouten lie,  
And make it as good silver and as fine  
As ther is any in your purse or mine  
Or elles wher, and make it malliable,  
And elles holdeth me false and unable  
Amonges folk for ever to appere.

I have a prouder here, that cost me dere,  
Shal make all good, for it is cause of all  
My conning which that I you shewen shall.  
Voideth your man, and let him be therout,  
And shet the dore, while we ben about  
Our privitee, that no man us espie  
While that we werke in this philosophie.

All as he bade fulfilled was in dede:  
This ilke servant anon right out yede,  
And his maister shette the dore anon,  
And to hir labour spedily they gon.

This preest at this cursed chanons bidding  
Upon the fire anon he set this thing,  
And blew the fire, and besied him ful fast;  
And this chanon into the croffelet cast  
A poudere, not I never wherof it was  
Ymade, other of chalk, other of glas,  
Or somewhat elles, was not worth a flie,  
To blinden with this preest, and bade him lie  
The coles for to couchen all above  
The croffelet, for in tokening I thee love  
(Quod this chanon) thine owen hondes two  
Shal werken all thing which that here is do.

*Grand mercy*, quod the preest, and was ful glad,  
And couched the coles as the chanon bad;  
And while he besy was this fendly wretch,  
This false chanon, (the foule fend him fetch)  
Out of his bosom toke a bechen cole,  
In which ful subtilly was made an hole,  
And therein put was of silver limaile  
An unce, and stopped was withouten faile  
The hole with wax to keep the limaile in.

And understandeth that this false gin  
Was not made ther, but it was made before;  
And other thinges I shall tell you more  
Hereafterward which that he with him brought;  
Er he came ther him to begile he thought,  
And so he did or that they went atwin;  
Til he had torned him coud he not blin.  
It dulleth me whan that I of him speke;  
On his falschede fain wold I me awreke  
If I wist how; but he is here and ther:  
He is so variaunt he abit no wher.

But taketh hede, Sires, now, for Goddes love.  
He toke his cole, of which I spake above,  
And in his hond he bare it prively,  
And whiles the preest couched besily  
The coles, as I tolde you er this,  
This Chanon sayde; Frend, ye don amis;  
This is not couched as it ought to be,  
But sone I shal amenden it, quod he.  
Now let me meddle therwith but a while,  
For of you have I pitee by Seint Gile.  
Ye ben right hot; I see wel how ye swete;  
Have here a cloth and wipe away the wete.

And whiles that the preest wiped his face  
This chanon toke his cole with fory grace,

And laied it above on the midward  
Of the croffelet, and blew wel after ward,  
Til that the coles gonnen fast to ben.

Now yeve us drinke, quod this Chanon, then,  
As swithe all shall be wel I undertake:  
Sitte we down, and let us mery make.

And whanne that this chanones bechen cole  
Wes brent all the limaile out of the hole  
Into the croffelet anon fell adoun;

And so it muste nedes by resoun,  
Sin it above so even couched was,  
But therof wist the preest nothing, alas!  
He denied all the coles ylike good,  
For of the sleight he nothing understood.

And whan this alkymistre saw his time,  
Riseth up, Sire Preest, quod he, and stondeth by me,  
And for I wote welingot have ye non,  
Goth, walketh forth, and bringeth a chalk ston,  
For I wol make it of the same shap  
That is an ingot, if I may have hap:  
Bring eke with you a bolle or elles a panne  
Ful of water, and ye shul wel see thanne  
How that our besinesse shal thrive and preve:  
And yet, for ye shul have no misbeleve  
Ne wrong conceit of me in your absence,  
I ne wol not ben out of your presence,  
But go with you, and come with you again.

The chambre door, shortly for to sain,  
They opened and shet, and went hir wey,  
And forth with hem they caried the key,  
And camen again withouten any delay.  
What shuld I tarien all the longe day?  
He toke the chalk, and shope it in the wise  
Of an ingot, as I shal you devise;  
I say he toke out of his owen sleve  
A teine of silver (yvel mote he cheve)  
Which that ne was but a just unce of weight:  
And taketh heed now of his cursed sleight;  
He shop his ingot in length and in brede  
Of thilke teine, withouten any drede,  
So sily that the preest it not espide,  
And in his sleve again he gan it hide,  
And from the fire he toke up his matere,  
And in the ingot it put with mery chere,  
And in the water-vessel he it cast  
Whan that him list, and bad the preest as fast  
Loke what ther is; put in thin hond and grope;  
Thou shalt ther finden silver, as I hope.  
What, divel of helle! shuld it elles be?  
Shaving of silver, silver is parde.

He put his hond in and toke up a teine  
Of silver fine, and glad in every veine  
Was this preest whan he saw that it was so.  
Goddes blessing, and his mothers also,  
And alle Halwes, have ye, Sire Chanon!  
Sayde this preest, and I hir malison,  
But and ye vouchesauf to techen me  
This noble craft and this subtilitee  
I wol be your in alle that ever I may.

Quod the chanon, Yet wol I make assay  
The second time, that ye mow taken hede,  
And ben expert of this, and in your nede  
Another day assay in min absence  
This discipline and this crafty science.  
Let take another unce, quod he tho,  
Of quiksilver, without en wordes mo,

And do therwith as ye have don er this  
With that other which that now silver is.

The preeft him besiethe all that ever he can  
To don as this chanon, this cursed man,  
Commandeth him, and faste blewe the fire  
For to come to the effect of his desire;  
And this chanon right in the mene while  
Al redy was this preeft eft to begile,  
And for a countenance in his hond bare  
An holow stikke, (take kepe and beware)  
In the ende of which an unce and no more  
Of silver limaile put was, as before  
Was in his cole, and stopped with wax wel  
For to kepe in his limaile every del;  
And while this preeft was in his besinesse  
This chanon with his stikke gan him dresse  
To him anon, and his pouder cast in  
As he did erst, (the devil out of his skin  
Him torne, I pray to God, for his falsheede,  
For he was ever false in thought and dede)  
And with his stikke above the crosselet,  
That was ordained with that false get,  
He stirreth the coles til relenten gan  
The wax again the fire, as every man  
But he a fool be wote wel it mote nede,  
And all that in the stikke was out yede,  
And in the crosselet hastily it fell.

Now, goode Sires, what wol ye bet than wel?  
Whan that this preeft was thus begiled again,  
Supposing nought but trouthe, soth to sain,  
He was so glad that I can not expresse  
In no manere his mirth and his gladnesse,  
And to the chanon he profered eftsone  
Body and good. Ye, quod the chanon, fone,  
Though poure I be, crafty thou shalt me finde:  
I warne thee wel yet is ther mor behinde.

Is ther any coper here within? sayd he?  
Ye, Sire, quod the preeft, I trow ther be.

Elles go beie us som, and that as swithe.  
Now, goode Sire, go forth thy way and hie the.

He went his way, and with the coper he came  
And this chanon it in his hondes name,  
And of that coper weyed out an unce.  
To simple is my tonge to pronounce,  
As minister of my wit, the doublenesse  
Of this chanon, rote of all cursednesse:  
He semed frendly to hem that knew him nought,  
But he was fendly both in werk and thought.  
It werieth me to tell of his falsenesse,  
And natheles yet wol I it expresse,  
To that entent men may beware therby,  
And for non other cause trewely.

He put this coper into the crosselet,  
And on the fire as swithe he hath it set,  
And cast in pouder, and made the preeft to blow,  
And in his werking for to stoupen low  
As he did erst, and all n'as but a jape;  
Right as him list the preeft he made his ape;  
And afterward in the ingot he it cast,  
And in the panne put it at the last  
Of water, and in he put his owen hond:  
And in his sleve, as ye beforen hond  
Herde me telle, he had a silver teine;  
He sily toke it out, this cursed heine,

(Unweting this preeft of his false craft)  
And in the pannes bottom he it last,  
And in the water rombleth to and fro,  
And wonder prively toke up also  
The coper teine, (not knowing thilke preeft)  
And hid it, and him hente by the brest,  
And to him spake, and thus said in his game;  
Stoupeth adoun; by God ye be to blame;  
Helpeth me now, as I did you whilere;  
Put in your hond, and loketh what is there.

This preeft toke up this silver teine anon;  
And thanne said the chanon, Let us gon  
With thise three teines which that we han wrought  
To som goldsmith, and wete if they ben ought,  
For by my faith I n'olde for my hood  
But if they weren silver fine and good,  
And that as swithe wel proved shal it be.

Unto the goldsmith with thise teines three  
They went anon, and put hem in assay  
To fire and hammer: might no man say nay  
But that they weren as hem ought to be.

This foted preeft, who was gladder than he?  
Was never brid gladder agains the day,  
Ne nightingale in the seson of May  
Was never non that list better to sing,  
Ne lady lustier in carolling,  
Or for to speke of love and womanhede,  
Ne knight in armes don a hardy dede  
To stonden in grace of his lady dere,  
Than hadde this preeft this craft for to lere;  
And to the chanon thus he spake and seid:  
For the love of God that for us alle deid,  
And as I may deserve it unto you,  
What shal this receit cost? telleth me now.

By our Lady, quod this chanon, it is dere.  
I warne you wel that save I and a frere  
In Englelond ther can no man it make.

No force, quod he: now, Sire, for Goddes sake  
What shall I pay? telleth me I you pray.

Ywis, quod he, it is ful dere I say.  
Sire, at o word, if that you list it have  
Ye shal pay forty pound, so God me save;  
And n'ere the frendship that ye did er this  
To me ye shulden payen more ywis.

This preeft the sum of fourty pound anon  
Of nobles fet, and toke hem everich on  
To this chanon for this ilke receit.  
All his werking n'as but fraud and deccit.

Sire Preeft, he said, I kepe for to have no loss  
Of my craft, for I wold it were kept close,  
And as ye love me kepeth it secree,  
For if men knewen all my subtiltee,  
By God they wolden have so gret envie  
To me, because of my philosophie,  
I shuld be ded, that were non other way.

God it forbede, quod the preeft, what ye say:  
Yet had I lever spenden all the good  
Which that I have (and elles were I wood)  
Than that ye shuld fallen in swiche mischese.

For your good will, Sire, have ye right good prefe,  
Quod the chanon; and farewell, *grand mercy*.  
He went his way, and never the preeft him sey  
After that day. And whan that this preeft shold  
Maken assay, at swiche time as he wold,

Of this receit, farewell! it n'old not be.  
Lo, thus bejaped and begiled was he;  
Thus maketh he his introduction  
To bringen folk to hir destruction.

Considereth, Sires, how that in eche estat  
Betwixen men and gold ther is debat,  
So ferforth that unnethes is ther non.  
This multiplying so blint many on  
That in good faith I trowe that it be  
The cause gretest of swiche scarfitee.  
Thise philosophres speke so mistily  
In this craft that men cannot come therby  
For any wit that men have now adayes:  
They mow wel chateren as don thise jayes,  
And in hir termes set hir lust and peine,  
But to hir purpos shul they never atteine.  
A man may lightly lerne, if he have ought,  
To multiplie and bring his good to nought.  
Lo, swiche a lucre is in this lusty game  
A mannes mirth it wol turne al to grame,  
And emptien also gret and hevy purses,  
And maken folk for to purchasen curses  
Of hem that han therto hir good ylent.  
O, fy for shame! they that han be brent,  
Alas! can they not flee the fires hete?  
Ye that it use I rede that ye it lete,  
Lest ye lese all; for bet than never is late:  
Never to thriven were to long a date:  
Though ye prollay ye shul it never find;  
Ye ben as bold as is Bayard the blind,  
That blondereth forth, and peril casteth non;  
He is as bold to renne agains a ston  
As for to go besides in the way:  
So faren ye that multiplien I say.  
If that your eyen cannot seen aright  
Loketh that youre mind lacke not his sight,  
For though ye loke never so brode, and stare,  
Ye shuln not win a mite on that chaffare,  
But wasten all that ye may rape and renne.  
Withdraw the fire lest it to faste brenne;  
Medleth no more with that art I mene,  
For if ye don your thrift is gon ful clene:  
And right as swithe I wol you tellen here  
What philosophres fain in this matere.

Lo, thus saith Arnolde of the newe toun,  
As his Rosarie maketh mentioun;  
He saith right thus, withouten any lie,  
Ther may no man Mercurie mortifie  
But it be with his brothers knowleching.  
Lo, how that he which firste said this thing

Of philosophres father was, Hermes;  
He saith how that the dragon dooteles  
Ne dieth not but if that he be fleten  
With his brother; and this is faine to fain  
By the dragon Mercury and non other  
He understood, and Brimstone by his brother,  
That out of Sole and Luna were ydrawe.

And therfor, said he, Take heed to my sawe:  
Let no man besie him this art to feche  
But if that he the entention and speche  
Of philosophres understonden can,  
And if he do he is a lewed man;  
For this science and this conning (quod he)  
Is of the secree of secretes parde.

Also ther was a disciple of Plato  
That on a time said his maister to,  
As his book Senior wol bere witnesse,  
And this was his demand in sothfastnesse,  
Telle me the name of thilke privee ston.

And Plato answerd unto him anon;  
Take the ston that Titanos men name.  
Which is that? quod he. Magnetia is the same  
Saide Plato. Ye, Sire, and is it thus?  
This is *ignotum per ignotius*,

What is magnetia, good Sire, I pray?  
It is a water that is made, I say,  
Of the elementes foure, quod Plato.  
Tell me the rote, good Sire, quod he tho,  
Of that water, if that it be your will.

Nay, nay, quod Plato, certain that I n'ill:  
The philosophres were sworne everich on  
That they ne shuld discover it unto non,  
Ne in no book it write in no manere,  
For unto God it is so lese and dere  
That he wol not that it discovered be  
But wher it liketh to his deitee

Man for to enspire, and eke for to defende  
Whom that him liketh; lo, this is the ende.

Than thus conclude I; sin that God of heven  
Ne wol not that the philosophres neven  
How that a man shal come unto this ston,  
I rede as for the best to let it gon;  
For who so maketh God his adversary,  
As for to werken any thing in contrary  
Of his will, certes never shal he thrive,  
Though that he multiply terme of his live,  
And ther a point, for ended is my Tale.  
God send every good man bote of his bale!



## THE MANCIPLES PROLOGUE.

WERE ye not wher stondeth a litel toun  
 Which that ycleped is Bob-up-and-down,  
 Under the Blee in Canterbury way?  
 Ther gan our hoste to jape and to play,  
 And sayde; Sires, what? Dun is in the mire;  
 Is ther no man for hire for hire  
 That wol awaken our felaw behind?  
 A thefe him might ful lightly rob and bind:  
 See how he nappeth, see, for cockes bones,  
 As he wold fallen from his hors atones.  
 Is that a coke of London, with meschance?  
 Do him come forth, he knoweth his penance,  
 For he shal tell a Tale by my fey,  
 Although it be not worth a botel hey.  
 Awake, thou coke, quod he; God yeve the sorwe,  
 What aileth thee to slepen by the morwe?  
 Hast thou had sleen al night, or art thou dronke?  
 Or hast thou with som quene al night yfwonke  
 So that thou mayst not holden up thin hed?  
 This coke, that was ful pale and nothing red,  
 Sayd to our Hoste; So God my soule blesse,  
 As ther is falle on me swiche hevinesse,  
 N'ot I nat why, that me were lever to slepe  
 Than the best gallon wine that is in Chepe.  
 Wel, quod the Manciple, if it may don ese  
 To thee, Sire Coke, and to no wight displese  
 Which that hire rideth in this compaignie,  
 And that our Hoste wol of his curtesie;  
 I wol as now excuse thee of thy Tale,  
 For in good faith thy visage is ful pale:  
 Thin eyen dafen, sothly as me thinketh,  
 And wel I wot thy breth ful soure stinketh,  
 That sheweth wel thou art not wel disposed:  
 Of me certain thou shalt not ben yglosed.  
 See how he galpeth, lo, this dronken wight,  
 As though he wold us swallow anon right!  
 Hold close thy mouth, man, by thy father kin;  
 The devil of helle set his foot therin,  
 Thy cursed breth enfeeten wol us alle:  
 Fy, stinking swine! fy, foul mote thee bafalle!  
 A! taketh heed, Sires, of this lusty man.  
 Now, swete Sire! wol ye just at the fan?  
 Therto me thinketh ye be wel ythape:  
 I trow that ye have dronken win of ape,  
 And that is whan men playen with a straw.  
 And with this speche the coke waxed all wraw,  
 And on the Manciple he gan not fast  
 For lacke of speche, and down his hors him cast,

Wher as he lay til that men him up toke:  
 This was a faire chivachee of a coke:  
 Alas that he ne had hold him by his ladel!  
 And er that he agen were in the sadel  
 Ther was gret shoving bothe to and fro  
 To lift him up, and mochel care and wo,  
 So unwelody was this sely palled goot;  
 And to the Manciple then spake our Host,  
 Becaus that drinke hath domination  
 Upon this man, by my salvation  
 I trowe he lewedly wol tell his Tale;  
 For wer it win or old or moisty ale  
 That he hath dronke he speketh in his nose,  
 And sneeth fast, and eke he hath the pose;  
 He also hath to don more than ynough  
 To keep him on his capel out of the slough  
 And if he felle from of his capel esthene  
 Than shul we alle have ynough to done  
 In lifting up his hevny dronken cors.  
 Tell on thy Tale, of him make I no force.  
 But yet, Manciple, in faith thou art to nice  
 Thus openly to repreve him of his vice;  
 Another day he wol paraventure  
 Recleimen thee, and bring thee to the lure;  
 I mene he speken wol of smale thinges,  
 As for to pinchen at thy rekeninges,  
 That were not honest if it came to prefe.  
 Quod the Manciple, That were a gret meschese;  
 So might he lightly bring me in the snare;  
 Yet had I lever payen for the mare  
 Which he writ on than he shuld with me strive:  
 I wol not wrathen him, so mote I thrive:  
 That that I spake I sayd it in my bound  
 And wete ye what? I have here in my gourd  
 A draught of win, ye of a ripe grape,  
 And right anon ye shul seen a good jape;  
 This coke shal drinke therof if that I may;  
 Up peine of my lif he wol not say nay.  
 And certainly, to tellen as it was,  
 Of this vessell the coke drank fast, (alas!  
 What nedeth it? he drank ynough beforene)  
 And whan he hadde pouped in his horne  
 To the Manciple he toke the gourd again;  
 And of that drinke the coke was wonder fain,  
 And thonked him in swiche wise as he coude.  
 Than gan our Hoste to laughen wonder loude  
 And sayd; I see wel it is necessary  
 Wher that we gon good drinke with us to cary,

For that wol turnen rancour and difese  
To accord and love, and many a wrong a pese  
O Bacchus, Bacchus ! blessed be thy name,  
That so canst turnen ernest into game ;

Worship and thanke be to thy de'tee.  
Of that matere ye get no more of me.  
Tale on thy Tale, Manciple, I thee pray.  
Wel, Sire, quod he, now he'neeth what I say.

## THE MANCIPLES TALE\*.

**W**HAN Phebus dwelled here in erth adoun,  
**A**s olde bookes maken mentioun,  
 He was the moſte luſty bacheler  
 Of all this world, and eke the beſt archer :  
 He ſlew Phiton the ſerpent as he lay  
 Sleping agains the ſonne upon a day,  
 And many another noble worthy dede  
 He with his bow wrought, as men mowen rede.

Playen he coude on every minstralcie,  
And singen that it was a melodie  
To heren of his clere vois the soun :  
Certes the King of Thebes Amphion,  
That with his singin walled the citee,  
Coud never singen half-se wel as he.  
Therto he was the semelieste man  
That is or was sithen the world began.  
What nedeth it his feture to descrive ?  
For in this world n'is non so faire on live ;  
He was therwith fulfilled of gentilleffe,  
Of honour, and of parfite worthinesse.

This Phebus, that was floure of bachelerie,  
As wel in fredom as in chivalrie,  
For his disport, in signe eke of victorie  
Of Phiton, so as telleth us the storie,  
Was wont to beren in his hond a bowe.  
Now had this Phebus in his hous a crowe.  
Which in a cage he fostred many a day,  
And taught it speken, as men teche a jay.  
Whit was this crowe, as is a snow-whit swan,  
And contrefete the speche of every man  
He coude whan he shulde tell a tale :  
Therwith in all this world no nightingale  
Ne coude by an hundred thousand del  
Singen so wonder merily and wel.

Now had this Phebus in his hous a wif  
Which that he loved more than his lif,  
And night and day did ever his diligence  
Hire for to ples and don hire reverence ;  
Save only, if that I the soth shal fain,  
Jelous he was, and world have kept hire fain,

\* Phobus kepeth a white crow which can speak as a jay. The crow accuseth his wife, of whom he was too jealous, to have played false in his absence; hereupon with an arrow he slayeth his wife but after repenting of his rashness he taketh revenge of the crow. *Urry.*

For him were loth yjaped for to be,  
And so is every wight in swiche degree ;  
But all for nought, for ~~all~~ <sup>all</sup> throught.  
A good wif, that is cleue of werk and thought,  
Shuld not be kept in non await certain ;  
And trewely the labour is in vain  
To kepe a shrewe, for it wol not be.  
This hold I for a veray nicetee  
To spillen labour for to kepen wives ;  
Thus written olde clerkes ~~in~~ <sup>in</sup> hir lives.

But now to purpos as I first began.  
This worthy Phebus doth all that he can  
To plesen hire, wening thurgh swiche plesance;  
And for his manhood and his governance,  
That no man shulde put him from hire grace;  
But God it wote ther may no man embrace:  
As to destreine a thing which that Nature  
Hath naturelly set in a creature.

✦ Take any brid and put it in a cage,  
And do all thin entente and thy corage  
To foster it tendrely with mete and drinke  
Of alle deintees that thou canst bethinke,  
And kepe it al so clenely as thou may,  
Although the cage of gold be never so gay,  
Yet had this brid by twenty thousand fold  
Lever in a forest that is wilde and cold  
Gon eten wormes and swiche wretchednesse :  
For ever this brid will don his besinesse  
To escape out of his cage whan that he may :  
His libertee the brid desireth ay.

Let take a cat, and foster hire with milke  
And tendre flesh, and make hire couche of silke,  
And let hire see a mous go by the wall,  
Anon she weiveth milke and flesh and all,  
And every deintee that is in that hous,  
Swiche appetit hath she to ete the mous.  
Lo, here hath kind hire domination,  
And appetit flemeth discretion.

A she-wolf hath also a vilains kind;  
The lewedeſte wolf that ſhe may find,  
Or leſt of reputation, wol ſhe take  
In time whan hire loſt to have a make.

All thise ensamples speke I by thise men  
That ben untrew, and nothing by women ;

Men have ever a likerous appetit  
On lower thing to parforme hir delit  
Than on hir wives, be they never so faire,  
Ne never so trewe, ne so debonaire.  
Fleth is so newefange, with meschance,  
That we ne con in nothing have plesance  
That souneth unto vertue any while.

This Phebus, which that thought upon no gile,  
Disceived was for all his jolitee,  
For under him another hadde she,  
A man of litel reputation,  
Nought worth to Phebus in comparison:  
The more harme is: it happeth often so,  
Of which ther cometh moche harme and wo.

And so befell whan Phebus was absent  
His wif anon hath for hire lemman sent.  
Hir Lemman! certes that is a knavish speche;  
For yeve it me, and that I you beseeche;

The wise Plato sayth, as ye now rede,  
The word must nede accorden wit the dede;  
If men shul tellen ~~nothing~~ thing  
The word must cofin be to the werking.  
I am a beuous man, right thus say I;  
Ther is no difference trewely  
Betwixt a wif that is of high degree  
(If of hire body dishonest she be)  
And any poure wenche, other than this,  
(If it so be they werken both amis)  
But for the gentil is in estate above  
She shal be cleped his Lady and his Love,  
And for that other is a poure woman  
She shal be cleped his Wenche and his Lemman;  
And God it wote, mine owen dere brother!  
Men lay as low that on as lith that other.

Right so betwixt a titleles tiraunt  
And an outlawe, or elles a thefe erraunt,  
The same I say; ther is no difference,  
(To Alexander told was this sentence)  
But for the tyrant is of greter might  
By force of meine for to sle down right,  
And brennen hous and hom, and make all plain,  
So, therefore is he cleped a Capitain;  
And for the outlawe hath but smale meine,  
And may not do so gret an harme as he,  
Ne bring a contree to so gret meschiese.  
Men clepen him an Outlawe or a Thefe.

But for I am a man not textuel  
I wol not tell of textes never a del;  
I wol go to my Tale as I began.

Whan Phebus wif had sent for hire lemman  
Anon they wroughten all hir lust volage.  
This white crowe, that heng ay in the cage,  
Beheld hir werke, and sayde never a word;  
And whan that home was come Phebus the lord  
This crowe song Cuckow, cuckow, cuckow!

What? brid, quod Phebus, what song singest thou  
Ne were thou wont so merily to sing, [now?  
That to my herte it was a rejoyfing  
To here thy vois? Alas! what song is this!

By God, quod he, I singe not amis.  
Phebus (quod he) for all thy worthinesse,  
For all thy beautee and all thy gentillesse,  
~~For all thy~~ song and all thy ministralcie,  
For all thy waiting, blered is thin eye

With on of litel reputation,  
Not worth to thee as in comparison  
The mountance of a gnat, so mote I thrive,  
For on thy bedde thy wif I saw him fwise.

What wol you more? the crowe anon him told,  
By fide tokenes and by wordes bold,  
How that his wif had don hire lecherie  
Him to gret shame and to gret vilanie,  
And told him oft he sawe it with his eyen.

This Phebus gan awayward for to wrien:  
Him thought his woful herte brast atwo;  
His bowe he bent, and set therin a flo,  
And in his ire he hath his wif yslein:  
This is the effect, ther is no more to fain;  
For sorwe of which he brake his ministralcie,  
Both harpe and lute, giterne and sautric,  
And eke he brake his arwes and his bowe,  
And after that thus spake he to the crowe:

Traitour, quod he, with tonge of scorpion  
Thou hast me brought to my confusion:  
Alas that I was wrought! why n'ere I dede!

O dere wif, o gemme of lustyhede!  
That were to me so fide and eke so trewe,  
Now liest thou ded, with face pale of hewe,  
Ful gilteles, that durst I swere ywis.

O rakel hond! to do so foule a mis:  
O troubled wit, o ire reccheles!  
That unadvised smitest gilteles:  
O wantrust! ful of false suspecion,  
Wher was thy wit and thy discretion?

O! every man beware of rakelnesse,  
Ne trowe no thing withouten strong witnesse:  
Smite not to sone er that ye weten why,  
And beth avised wel and likerly  
Or ye do any execution  
Upon your ire for suspecion.  
Alas! a thousand folk hath rakel ire  
Fully fordon, and brought hem in the mire.  
Alas! for sorwe I wol myselfen fle.

And to the crowe, O false thefe! said he,  
I wol thee quite anon thy false tale;  
Thou song whilom like any nightingale,  
Now shalt thou, false thefe, thy song forgon,  
And eke thy white fethers everich on,  
Ne never in all thy lif ne shalt thou speke;  
Thus shul men on a traitour ben awreke.  
Thou and thin offspring ever shul be blake,  
Ne never swete noise shul ye make,  
But ever crie ageins tempest and rain,  
In token that thurgh thee my wif is slain.

And to the crowe he stert, and that anon,  
And pulled his white fethers everich on,  
And made him blak, and raft him all his song  
And eke his speche, and out at dore him flog  
Unto the devil, which I him betake;  
And for this cause ben alle crows blake.

Lordings, by this ensample I you pray  
Beth ware, and taketh kepe what that ye say,  
Ne telleth never man in all your lif  
How that another man hath dight his wif;  
He wol you haten mortally certain.  
Dan Salomon, as wise clerkes fain,  
Techeth a man to kepe his tonge wel;  
But, as I sayd, I am no textuel;



But natheles thus taughte me my dame ;  
 My sone, thinke on the crowe a Goddes name :  
 My sone, kepe wel thy tonge, and kepe thy frend ;  
 A wicked tonge is worse than a fend :  
 My sone, from a fende men may hem blesse :  
 My sone, God of his endeles goodnesse  
 Walled a tonge with teeth, and lippes eke,  
 For man shuld him avisen what he speke :  
 My sone, ful often for to mochel speche  
 Hath many a man ben spilt, as clerkes teche,  
 But for a litel speche avisedly  
 Is no man shent, to speken generally :  
 My sone, thy tonge shuldest thou restraine  
 At alle time, but whan thou dost thy peine  
 To speke of God in honour and prayere :  
 The firste vertue, sone, if thou wolt lere,  
 Is to restraine and kepen wel thy tonge ;  
 Thus leren children whan that they be yonge :  
 My sone, of mochel speking evil avised,  
 Ther lesse speking had ynough suffised,  
 Cometh mochel harme, thus was me told and  
 In mochel speche sinne wanteth naught. [taught,  
 Wost thou wherof a rakel tonge serveth ?  
 Right as a swerd forcutteth and forkerveth

An arme atwo, my dere sone ! right so  
 A tonge cutteth frendship all atwo :  
 A jangler is to God abhominable. ✓  
 Rede Salomon, so wise and honourable,  
 Rede David in his Psalmes, rede Senek.  
 My sone, speke not but with thy n hed thou becke ;  
 Dissimule as thou were dese if that thou here.  
 A janglour speke of perilous matere.  
 The Fleming sayth, and lerne if that thee lest,  
 That litel jangling causeth mochel rest. ✓  
 My sone, if thou no wicked word hast said  
 Thee thar not dreden for to be bewraid ;  
 But he that hath missayd, I dare wel sain,  
 He may by no way clepe his word again.  
 Thing that is sayd is sayd, and forth it goth ;  
 Though him repent, or be him never so loth,  
 He is his thral to whom that he hath sayd  
 A tale of which he is now evil apaid. ✓  
 My sone, beware, and be non auctour newe  
 Of tidings whether they ben false or trewe :  
 Wher so thou come, as tonges n. s. or lowe,  
 Kepe wel thy tonge, and thinke uppon the crowe.

## THE PERSONES PROLOGUE.

By that the Manciple had his tale ended  
 The sonne fro the south line was descended  
 So lowe, that it ne was not to my sight  
 Degrees nine-and-twenty as of hight.  
 Foure of the clok it was tho, as I gesse,  
 For enleven foot, ~~a litle more or lesse,~~  
 My shadow was at thilke time as there,  
 Of swiche feet as my lengthe parted were  
 In six feet equal of proportion;  
 Therwith the mones exaltation,  
 I mene Libra, alway gan ascende  
 As we were entering at the thorpes ende;  
 For which our Hoste, ~~as he~~ was wont to gie  
 As in this cas our jolly compaignie,  
 Said in this wise; Lordings, verich on,  
 Now lacketh us no Tales mo than on;  
 Fulfilled is my sentence and my decree;  
 I trowe that we han herd of eche degree;  
 Almost fulfilled in myn ordinance;  
 I pray to God so yeve him right good chance  
 That telleth us this Tale lustily.

Sire Preeft, quod he, art thou a vicary,  
 Or art thou a Person? say soth by thy fay.  
 Be what thou be ne breke thou not our play,  
 For every man save thou hath told his Tale.  
 Unboked and shew us what is in thy male;  
 For trewely me thinketh by thy chere  
 Thou shuldest knitte up wel a gret matere.  
 Tell us a fable anon, for cockes bones.

This Person him answerd al at ones;  
 Thou getest fable non ytold for me,  
 For Poule, that writeth unto Timothe,  
 Repreveth hem that weiven sothfastnesse,  
 And tellen fables and swiche wretchednesse.  
 Why shuld I sowne draf out of my fist  
 Whan I may sowne whete if that me list?  
 For which I say, if that you list to here  
 Moralitee and vertuons matere,

And than that ye wol yeve me audience,  
 I wold ful fain at Cristes reverence  
 Don you plesance lesful, as I can;  
 But trusteth wel I am a sotherne man;  
 I cannot gesse, rom, ram, rus, by my letter,  
 And, God wote, rime hold I but litel better;  
 And therefore if you list, I wol not glose,  
 I wol you tell a litel Tale in prose  
 To knitte up all this fesse and make an ende;  
 And Jesu for his grace wit me sende  
 To shewen you the way in this viage  
 Of thilke parfit glorious pilgrimage  
 That hight Jerusalem celestial:  
 And if ye vouchesauf anon I shal  
 Beginne upon my Tale, for which I pray  
 Tell your avis: I can no better say.

But natheles this meditation.  
 I put it ay under correction  
 Of clerkes, for I am not textuel:  
 I take but the sentence, trusteth me wel:  
 Therefore I make a protestation  
 That I wol standen to correction.

Upon this word we han assented sothe;  
 For as us semed it was for to done,  
 To enden in som vertuons sentence,  
 And for to yeve him space and audience,  
 And bade our Hoste he shulde to him say  
 That alle we to tell his Tale him pray.

Our Hoste had the wordes for us alle:  
 Sire Preeft, quod he, now faire you besalle;  
 Say what you list, and we shul gladly here.  
 And with that word he said in this manere;  
 Telleth, quod he, your meditation,  
 But hasteth you, the sonne wol adoun:  
 Beth fructuous, and that in litel space,  
 And to do wel God sende you his grace.

## THE PERSONES TALE\*.

Our swete Lord God of heven, that no man wol perish, but wol that we comen all to the knowleching of him, and to the blisful lif that is pardurable, amonesteth us by the prophet Jeremie, that sayth in this wise, Stondeth upon the wayes, and seeth, and axeth of the olde pathes, that is to say, of olde sentences, which is the good way, and walketh in that way, and ye shul finde refreshing for your soules. Many ben the wayes spirituel that leden folk to our Lord Jesu Crist, and to the regne of glory; of which wayes ther is a ful noble way, and wel covenantable, which may not faille to man, ne to woman that thurgh sinne hath misgon fro the right way of Jerusalem celestial, and this way is cleped Penance, of which man shuld gladly herken and enqueren with all his herte, to wete what is penance, and whennes it is cleped penance, and how many maneres ben of actions or werkings of penance, and how many spices ther ben of penance, and which thinges appertainen and behoven to penance, and which thinges distroublen penance.

Seint Ambrose sayth, that penance is the plainyng of man for the gilt that he hath don, and no more to do any thing for which him ought to plaine; and som doctour sayth, Penance is the waymenting of man that forweth for his sinne, and peineth himself for he hath misdoun. Penance with certain circumstances is veray repentance of man, that holdeth himself in sorwe and other peine for his gyltes; and for he shal be veray penitent he shal first bewailen the sinnes that he hath don, and stedfastly purposen in his herte to have shrift of mouth, and to don satisfaction, and never to don thing for which him ought more to bewayle or complaine, and to continue in good werkes, or elles his repentance may not availe: for, as Seint Isidor sayth, He is a japer and a gabber, and not veray repentant, that estones doth thing for which him oweth to repent. Weping, and not for to stint to do sinne, may not availe. But natheles men shuld hope that at every time that man falleth, be it never so oft, that he may arise thurgh penance, if he have grace; but certain it is gret doute; for, as saith Seint Gregorie, Unnethes a-

riseth he out of sinne that is charged with the charge of evil usage: and therefore repentant folk that stint for to sinne, and forlete sinne or that sinne forlete hem, holy chirche holdeth hem siker of hir salvation: and he that sinneth and veraily repenteth him in his last day, holy chirche yet hopeth his salvation, by the grete mercy of our Lord Jesu Crist, for his repentance: but ther is the siker and certain way.

And now, sith I have declared you what thing is penance; now ye shul understond that ther ben three actions of penance. The first is, that a man be baptised after that he hath sinned. Seint Augustine sayth, But he be penitent for his old sinful lif, he may not beginne the newe clene lif; for certes, if he be baptised without penitence of his old gilt, he receiveth the marke of baptism, but not the grace, ne the remission of his sinnes, til he have very repentance. Another default is, that men don dedly sinne after that they have received baptism. The thridde defeaute is, that men fall in venial sinnes after hir baptism fro day to day: therof sayth Seint Augustin, that penance of good and humble folk is the penance of every day.

The spices of penance ben three. That on of hem is solempne, another is commune, and the thridde privee. Thilke penance that is solempne is in two maneres, as to be put out of holy chirche in lenton, for slaughter of children, and swiche maner thing: another is, whan a man hath sinned openly, of which sinne the same is openly spoken in the contree, and than holy chirche by jugement distreyneth him for to do open penance: commun penance is that preestes enjoinen men in certain cas, as for to go paraventure naked on pilgrimage or bare foot: privee penance is thilke that men don all day for privee sinnes, of which we thrive us prively, and receive privee penance.

Now shalt thou understond what is behoveful and necessary to every parfit penance; and this stont on three thinges, contrition of herte, confession of mouth, and satisfaction; for which sayth Seint John Chrysostome, Penance distreineth a man to accept benignely every peine that him is enjoined with contrition of herte, and shrift of mouth, with satisfaction, and working of all manner humilitee. And this is fruitful penance ayen the three thinges in which we wrathen our Lord Jesu Crist; this is to say, by delit in thinking, by tech-

\* Jerem. vi. ; \*\* State super vias, et videte, et interrogate de semitis antiquis, quae sit via bona, et ambulate in ea: et invenietis refrigerium animabus vestris." *Psalm.*



Unnesse in speking, and by wicked sinful working: and ayenst this wicked giltes is penance, that may be likened unto a tree.

The rote of this tree is contrition; that hideth him in the herte of him that is veray repentant, right as the rote of the tree hideth him in the erthe. Of this rote of contrition springeth a stalke that bereth branches and leues of confession, and fruit of satisfaction; of which Crist sayth in his Gospell, Doth ye digne fruit of penitence, for by this fruit mow men understonde and knowe this tree, and not by the rote that is hid in the herte of man, ne by the branches, ne the leues of confession: and therefore our Lord Jesu Crist saith thus, By the fruit of hem shal ye knowe hem. Of this rote also springeth a seed of grace, which seed is moder of likerhede; and this seed is eger and hote. The grace of this seed springeth of God, thurgh remembrance on the day of dome and on the peines of helle. Of this matere sayth Salomon, that in the dredde of God man forletteth his sinne. The herte of this sede is the love of God, and the desiring of the joye perdurable. This herte draweth the herte of man to God, and doth him hate his sinne; for sothly ther is nothing that favoureth so fote to a child as the milke of his norsee, ne nothing is to him more abhominable than that milke when it is medled with other mete. Right so the sinful man that loveth his sinne, him semeth that it is to him most swete of any thing, but fro that time that he loveth sadly our Lord Jesu Crist, and desireth the lif perdurable, ther is to him nothing more abhominable; for sothly the lawe of God is the love of God: for which David the prophet sayth, I have loved thy lawe, and hated wickednesse: he that loveth God kepeth his lawe and his word. This tree saw the prophet Daniel in spirit upon the vision of Nabuchodonosor, when he conseilled him to do penance. Penance is the tree of lif to hem that it receiven; and he that holdeth him in veray penance is blisful, after the sentence of Salomon.

In this penance or contrition, man shal understond foure thinges; that is to say, what is contrition, and which ben the causes that moven a man to contrition; and how he shuld be contrite, and what contrition availeth to the soule. Than is it thus, that contrition is the veray sorwe that a man receiveth in his herte for his sinnes, with sad purpos to shaven him, and to do penance, and never more to don sinne. And this sorwe shal be in this maner, as sayth Seint Bernard; it shal ben hevy and grevous, and ful sharpe and poinant in herte; first, for a man hath agilted his Lord and his creatour, and more sharpe and poinant, for he hath agilted his father celestial, and yet more sharpe and poinant, for he hath wrathed and agilted him that boughte him, that with his precious blod hath delivered us fro the bondes of sinne, and fro the crueltee of the devil, and fro the peines of helle.

The causes that ought to meve a man to contrition ben fixe. First, a man shal remembre him of his sinnes; but loke that that remembrance ne be to him no delit by no way, but grete shame and sorwe for his sinnes; for Job sayth, Sinful men

don werkes worthy of confession; and therefore sayth Ezechiel, I wol remembre me all the yeres of my lif in the bitternesse of my herte: and God sayth in the Apocalipse, Remembre you fro whence that ye ben fall, for before the time that ye sinned, ye weren children of God, and limmes of the regne of God; but for your sinne ye ben waxen thral, and foule membres of the fende, hate of angels, schlauder of holy chirche, and fode of the false serpent, perpetuel matere of the fire of helle, and yet more foule and abhominable for ye trespassen so oft times as doth the hound that torneth again to ete his own spewing, and yet fouler for your long continuing in sinne, and your sinful usage, for which ye be rotten in your sinnes as a beest in his donge. Swiche manere thoughtes make a man to have shame of his sinne and no delit, as God sayth by the prophet Ezechiel, Ye shul remembre you of your wayes, and they shul displese you. Sothly sinnes ben the waies that lede folk to hell.

The second cause that ought to make a man to have disdeigne of sinne is this, that, as saith Seint Peter, Who so doth sinne is thral to sinne, and sinne putteth a man in gret thraldom, and therefore sayth the prophet Ezechiel, I went sorweful, and had disdeigne of myself. Certes wel ought a man have disdeigne of sinne, and withdraw him fro that thraldom and vilany. And lo, what sayth Seneke in this mater? He saith thus, Though I wist that neither God ne man shuld never know it, yet wold I have disdeigne for to do sinne. And the same Seneke also sayth, I am borne to greter thinges than to be thral to my body, or for to make of my body a thral. Ne a fouler thral may no man ne woman make of his body than for to yeve his body to sinne: al were it the foulest chorle or the foulest woman that liveth, and lest of value, yet is he than more foule and more in servitude. Ever fro the higher degree that man falleth, the more is he thral, and more to God and to the world vile and abhominable. O good God! wel ought a man have disdeigne of sinne, sith that thurgh sinne ther he was free he is made bond: and therefore sayth Seint Augustine, If thou hast disdeigne of thy servant, if he offend or sinne, have thou than disdeigne that thou thy self shuldest do sinne. Take reward of their owen value that thou ne be to foule to thyself. Alas! wel oughten they than have disdeigne to be servants and thralles to sinne, and fore to be ashamed of himself, that God of his endles goodnesse hath sette in high estat, or yeve hem witte, strength of body, hele, beautee, or prosperitee, and bought hem fro the deth with his herte blood, that they so unkindly agains his gentilnesse quiten him so vilainly, to slaughter of his owen soules, O good God! ye women that ben of gret beautee, remembreth you on the proverbe of Salomon, that likeneth a faire woman that is a fool of hire body, to a ring of gold that is worne in the groine of a sowe; for right as a sowe wroteth in every ordure, so wroteth she hire beautee in stinking ordure of sinne.

The thridde cause that ought to meve a man to contrition, is dredde of the day of dome, and of the

horrible peines of helle; for, as Seint Jerome sayth, At every time that me remembreth of the day of dome I quake; for whan I ete or drinke, or do what so I do, ever semeth me that the trompe fowneth in min eres, Riseth ye up that ben ded, and cometh to the jugement. O good God! moche ought a man to drede swiche a jugement, ther as we shul be alle, as Seint Poule sayth, before the streit jugement of oure Lord Jesu Crist, wheras he shal make a general congregation, wheras no man may be absent; for certes, ther availleth non eschoine, ne non excusation; and not only that our defaultes shul be juged, but eke that all our werkis shul openly be knownen. And, as sayth Seint Bernard, Ther ne shal no pleting availe, ne no sleight: we shal yeve reckening of everich idle word: ther shal we have a juge that may not be deceived, ne corrupt; and why? for certes all our thoughtes ben discovered as to him: ne for prayer, ne for mede he wil not be corrupt; and therefore saith Salomon, The wrath of God ne wol not spare no wight for prayer, ne for yest; and therefore at the day of dome ther is non hope to escape; wherfore, as sayth Seint Anselme, Ful gret anguish shal the sinful folk have at that time: ther shal be the sterne and wroth juge sitting above, and under him the horrible pitte of helle open, to destroye him that wolde not be knownen his finnes, which finnes shullen openly be shewed before God and before every creature; and on the left side no divels than any herte may thinke for to hary and drawe the sinful soules to the pitte of helle; and within the hertes of folk shal be the biting conscience, and without forth shal be the worldall brenning. Whither than shal the wretched soule flee to hide him? Certes he may not hide him, he must come forth and shewe him; for certes, as saith Seint Jerome, the erth shal cast him out of it, and the see, and also the aire; that shal be ful of thunder clappes and lightnings. Now sothly, who so wil remembre him of these thinges I gesse that his finnes shal not torne him to delit, but to grete sorwe for drede of the peine of helle; and therefore saith Job to God, Suffer, Lord, that I may a while bewaile and bewepe or I go without returning to the derke lond ycovered with the derkenesse of deth to the lond of misere and of derkenesse, wheras is the shadow of deth, wheras is non ordre ne ordinance, but grisly drede, that ever shal last. Lo, here may ye see that Job prayed respite awhile to bewepe and waile his trespass; for sothely on day of respite is better than all the tresour of this world: and for as moche as a man may acquite himself before God by penitence in this world, and not by tresour, therefore shuld he pray to God to yeve him respite a while to bewepen and bewaile his trespass; for certes, all the sorwe that a man might make fro the beginning of the world, n is but a litel thing at regard of the sorwe of helle. The cause why that Job clepeth helle the lond of derkenesse, understondeth that he clepeth it londe or erth, for it is stable and never shal faile, and derke, for he that is in helle hath defaute of light naturel; for certes the derke light that shal come out of the fire that ever

shall brenne shall torne hem all to peine that be in helle, for it sheweth hem the horrible divels that hem tormenten covered with the derkenesse of deth; that is to say, that he that is in helle shal have defaute of the sight of God, for certes the sight of God is the lif perdurable. The derkenesse of deth ben the finnes that the wretched man hath don, which that distroublen him to see the face of God, right as a derke cloud betwene us and the sonne: it is londe of misere, because that ther ben three maner of defaultes ayenst three thinges that folk of this world han in this present lif, that is to say honoures, delites, and riches. Ayenst honour have they in helle shame and confusion, for wel ye wote that men clepen honour the reverence that man doth to man, but in helle is non honour, ne reverence, for certes no more reverence shal be don ther to a king than to a knave; for which God saith by the prophet Jeremie, The ~~sonne~~ me despisen shal be in despite. Honour is also cleped gret lordship: ther shal no wight serve other but of harme and turment. Honour is also cleped gret dignitee and highnesse; but in helle shal they be alle fortroden of divels: as God sayth, The horrible divels shal gon and comen upon the hedes of dampned folk; and this is for as moche as the higher that they were in this present lif the more shul they be abated and defouled in helle. Ayenst the riches of this world shul they have misere of povertie, and this povertie shal be in foure thinges, in defaute of tresour, of which David sayth, The riche folk, that embraceden and oneden all hir herte to tresour of this world, shul slepe in the sleping of deth, and nothing ne shul they find in hir hondes of all hir tresour. And moreover, the misere of helle shal be in defaute of mete and drink; for God sayth thus by Moyse, They shul be wasted with hunger, and the briddes of helle shul devoure hem with bitter deth, and the gall of the dragon shal ben hir drinke, and the venime of the dragon hir morsels. And further over hir misere shal be in defaute of clothing, for they shul be naked in body as of clothing, save the fire in which they brenne, and other filthes; and naked shul they be in soule, of all maner vertues which that is the clothing of the soule. Wher ben than the gay robes, the soft shetes, and the fyn shertes? Lo, what sayth God of heven by the prophet Esaie? that under hem shul be strewed mothes, and hir covertures shul ben of wormes of helle. And further over, hir misere shal be in defaute of frendes, for he is not poure that hath good frendes: but ther is no frend, for neither God, ne no good creature shal be frend to hem, and everich of hem shal hate other with dedly hate. The sonnes and the daughters shal rebel ayenst father and mother, and kinred ayenst kinred, and chiden and despoisen eche other both day and night, as God sayth by the prophet Micheas; and the loving children, that whilom loveden so fleschly, everich of hem wold eten other if they might: for how shuld they love togeder in the peines of helle whan they hated eche other in the prosperitee of this lif? for truste wel hir fleschly love was dedly hate; as saith



the prophet David, Who so that loveth wickednesse he hateth his owen soule, and who so hateth his own soule certes he may love non other wight in no manere; and therefore in helle is no solace, ne no frendship, but ever the more skinnedes that ben in helle, the more cursing, the more chiding, and the more dedly hate, ther is among hem. And further over, ther they shul have defaute of all maner delites, for certes delites ben after the appetites of the five wittes, as sight, hering, smelling, favouring, and touching. But in helle hir sight shal be ful of derkenesse and of smoke, and hir eyen ful of tere, and hir hering ful of waimenting and grunting of teeth, as sayth Jesu Crist, Hir nose thirles shul be ful of stinking; and, as sayth Esay the prophet, Hir favouring shal be ful of bitter galle; and touching of all hir body shal be covered with fire that never shal quenche, and with wormes that never shal die, as God sayth by the mouth of Esay, And for as moche as they shul not wepe that they mow dien for peine, and by deth flee fro peine, that mow they understonde in the word of Job, that sayth, Ther is the shadow of deth. Certes a shadowe hath likenesse of the thing of which it is shadowed, but shadowe is not the same thing of which it is shadowed: right so fareth the peine of helle; it is like deth for the horrible anguish: and why? for it peineth hem ever as though they shul die anon; but certes they shul not dien; for, as sayth Seint Gregory, To wretched caitifes shal be deth withouten deth, and ende withouten ende, and defaute withouten failing; for hir deth shal alway live, and hir ende shal ever more beginne, and hir defaute shal never faile: and therefore sayth Seint John the Evangelist, They shul folow deth and they shul not finde him, and they shul desire to die and deth shal flee from hem. And eke Job saith, that in helle is non ordre of rule. And al be it so that God hath create all thing in right ordre, and nothing withouten ordre, but all thinges ben ordred and nombred, yet natheles they that ben dampned ben nothing in ordre, ne hold non ordre; for the erth shal bere hem no fruite; (for, as the prophet David sayeth, God shal destroy the fruite of the erth as fro hem) ne water shal yeve hem no moisture, ne the aire no refreshing, ne the fire no light: for, as sayth Seint Basil, The brenning of the fire of this world shal God yeve in helle to hem that ben dampned, but the light and the clerenesse shal be yeve in heven to his children, right as the good man yeveth flesh to his children and bones to his houndes. And for they shul have non hope to escape, sayth Job at last, that ther shal horror and grisly drede dwellen withouten ende. Horror is alway drede of harme that is to come, and this drede shal alway dwell in the hertes of hem that ben dampned; and therefore han they lorne all hir hope for seven causes: first, for God, that is hir juge, shal be withouten pite to hem, and they may not plesse him ne non of his halwes, ne they may yeve nothing for hir ransom, ne they have no vois to speke to hir, ne they may not flee fro peine, ne they have no goodnesse in hem that they may shew to deli-

ver hem fro peine; and therefore sayth Salomon The wicked man dieth, and whan he is ded he shal have non hope to escape fro peine. Who than wold wel understonde these peines, and be thinke him wel that he hath deserved these peines for his sinnes, certes he shulde have more talent to fighen and to wepe than for to singe and playe; for, as sayth Salomon, Who so that had the science to know the peines that ben established and ordeined for sinne he wold forsake sinne: That science, sayth Seint Austin, maketh a man to waimenten in his herte.

The fourthe point that oughte make a man have contrition is the sorweful remembrance of the good dedes that he hath leste to don here in erthe, and also the good that he hath lorne. Sothly the good werkes that he hath leste, either they be the good werkes that he wrought er he fell into dedly sinne, or elles the good werkes that he wrought while he lay in sinne. Sothly the good werkes that he did before that he fell in dedly sinne ben all mortified, astoned, and dulled, by the ensinning; the other werkes that he wrought while he lay in sinne they ben utterly ded as to the lif perdurable in heven. Than thilke good werkes that ben mortified by est sinning, which he did while he was in charitee, moun never quicken agen without veray penitence: and therof sayth God by the mouth of Ezechiel, If the rightful man retorne again fro his rightwisnesse and do wickednesse shal he liven? nay; for all the good werkes that he hath wrought shul never be in remembrance, for he shal die in his sinne. And upon thilke chapitre sayth Seint Gregorie that, that we shal understonde this principally, that when we don dedly sinne it is for nought than to remembre or drawe into memorie the good werkes that we have wrought befor, for certes in the working of dedly sinne ther is no trust in no good werk that we have don befor; that is to say, as for to have therby the lif perdurable in heven. But natheles the good werkes quicken again and comen again, and helpe and availe to have the lif perdurable in heven, whan we have contrition; but sothly the good werkes that men don while they ben in dedly sinne, for as moche as they were don in dedly sinne, they may never quicken; for certes thing that never had lif may never quicken; and natheles al be it so that they availen not to have the lif perdurable, yet availen they to abreggen the peine of helle, or elles to get temporal richesses, or elles that God wol the rather enlumine or light the herte of the sinful man to have repentance; and eke they availen for to use a man to do good werkes that the sene have the lesse power of his soule. And thus the certeis Lord Jesu Crist ne woll that no good werk that men don be losse, for in somewhat it shal availe. But for as moche as the good werkes that men don while they ben in good lif ben all amortified by sinne folowing, and eke sith all the good werkes that men don while they ben in dedly sinne ben utterly ded, as for to have the lif perdurable, wel may that man that no good werk ne deth



ling thilke newe Fronshe song, *J'ay tout perdu mon temps et mon labour*; for certes sinne bereveth a man both goodnesse of nature and eke the goodnesse of grace; for sothly the grace of the Holy Ghost fareth like fire that may not ben idle, for fire faileth anon as it forletteth his working, and right so grace faileth anon as it forletteth his working. Than leseth the sinful man the goodnesse of glorie, that only is hight to good men that labouren and werken wel. Wel may he be sory than that oweth all his lif to God as long as he hath lived, and also as long as he shal live, that no goodnesse ne hath to paie with his dette to God, to whom he oweth all his lif; for trust wel he shal yeve accomptes, as sayth Seint Bernard, of all the goodes that han ben yeven him in this present lif, and how he hath hem dispended, in so moche that ther shal not perishe an here of his hed, ne a moment of an houre ne shal not perishe of his time that he shal yeve therof a reckening.

The fiftie thing that ought to meve a man to contrition is remembrance of the passion that our Lord Jesu Crist suffered for our sinnes; for, as sayth Seint Bernard, While that I live I shal have remembrance of the travailes that our Lord Jesu Crist suffered in preching, his werinesse in traveling, his temptations whan he fasted, his long wakinges whan he prayed, his teres whan he wept for pitee of good peple, the wo, and the shame, and the filthe, that men sayden to him, of the foule spitting that met spitten in his face, of the buffettes that men yave him, of the foule mouthes and of the foule reprees that men saiden to him, of the nayles with which he was nailed to the crosse, and of all the remenant of his passion that he suffred for mannes sinne, and nothing for his gylte. And here ye shul understand that in mannes sinne is every maner order or ordinance touned up so down; for it is soth that God and reson, and sensualitee, and the body of man, ben ordained that everich of thise foure thinges shuld have lordship over that other, as thus; God shuld have lordship over reson, and reson over sensualitee, and sensualitee over the body of man. But sothly whan man sinneth al this ordre or ordinance is turned up so down; and therefore than, for as moche as reson of man ne wol not be subget ne obeisant to God, that is his Lord, by right therefore leseth it the lordship that it shuld have over sensualitee, and eke over the body of man: and why? for sensualitee rebelleth than ayenst reson, and by that way leseth reson the lordship over sensualitee and over the body; for right as reson is rebel to God, right so is sensualitee rebel to reson and the body also. And certes this discordance and this rebellion our Lord Jesu Crist abought upon his precious body ful dere: and herkeneth in whiche wise; for as moche as reson is rebel to God, therefore is man worthy to have forwe, and to be ded: this suffred our Lord Jesu Crist for man after that he had be betraied of his disciple, and disfreined and bounde, so that his blood brast out at every nail of his hondes, as saith Seint Augustin. And furthermore, for as moche as re-

son of man wol not daunt sensualitee whan it may, therefore is man worthy to have shame; and this suffred our Lord Jesu Crist for man whan they spitten in his visage. And furthermore, for as moche as the carter body of man is rebel both to reson and to sensualitee, therefore it is worthy the deth; and this suffred our Lord Jesu Crist upon the crosse, wheras ther was no part of his body free without grete peine and bitter passion; and all this suffred our Lord Jesu Crist that never forsaited: and thus sayd he; To moche am I peined for thinges that I never deserved, and so moche defouled for shendship that man is worthy to have: and therefore may the sinful man wel say, as sayth Seint Bernard, Accursed be the bitterness of my sinne, for whiche ther must be suffered so moche bitterness: for certes after the divers discordance of our wickednesse was the passion of Jesu Crist ordeined in divers thinges, as thus; certes sinful mannes ~~four~~ <sup>four</sup> betraied of the divel by covetise of temporel prosperitee, and scorned by disceite whan he cheseth fleshly things, and yet it is turmented by impatience of adversitee, and bespet by servage and subjection of sinne, and at the last it is slain finally. For this discordance of sinful man was Jesu Crist first betraied, and after that was he bounde that came for to unbinde us of sinne and of peine; than was he bescorned that only shuld have ben honoured in alle thinges and of alle thinges; than was his visage, that ought to be desired to be seen of all mankind (in which visage angels desiren to loke) villainly bespet; than was he scourged that nothing had trespassed; and, finally, than was he crucified and slain: than were accomplished the wordes of Esaie, He was wounded for our misdeds, and defouled for our felonies. Now sith that Jesu Crist toke on himself the peine of all our wickednesse, moche ought sinful man to wepe and to bewaile that for his sinnes Goddes sone of heaven shuld all this peine endure.

The sixte thing that shuld move a man to contrition is the hope of three thinges; that is to say, foryevenesse of sinne, and the yest of grace for to do wel, and the glorie of heaven, with whiche God shal guerdon man for his good dedes: and for as moche as Jesu Crist yeveth us thise yestes of his largenesse and of his soveraine bountee, therefore is he cleped *Jesus Nazarenus Rex Judaeorum*. Jesus is for to say Saviour or Salvation, on whom men shul hopen to have foryevenesse of sinnes, which that is proprely salvation of sinnes; and therefore sayd the angel to Joseph, Thou shalt clepe his name Jesus that shal save his peple of hir sinnes. And hereof saith Seint Peter, Ther is non other name under heaven, that is yeven to any man, by which a man may be saved but only Jesus. Nazarenus is as moche for to say as flourishing, in which a man shal hope that he shal yeveth him remission of sinnes shal yeve him grace wel for to do; for in the flour is hope of fruite in time coming, and in foryevenesse of sinnes hope of grace wel to do. I was at the dore of him herte, sayth Jesus, and clepeth for to enter; he

that openeth to me shal have foryevenesse of his finnes, and I wol enter into him by my grace, and soupe with him by the good werkes that he shal don, which werkes ben the food of God, and he shal soupe with me by the gret joye that I shal yeve him. Thus shal man hope that for his werkes of penance God shal yeve him his regne, as he be-  
light him in the Gospel.

Now shal man understande in which maner shal be his contrition. I say that it shal be universal and total; this is to say, a man shal be veray repentant for all his finnes that he hath don in delite of his thought, for delite is perilous: for ther ben two maner of consenting, that on of hem is cleped Consenting of Affection, whan a man is moved to do sinne, and than deliteth him longe for to thinke on that sinne, and his reson apper-  
ceiveth it wel that it is sinne ayenst the lawe of God, and yet his reson refraineth not his soule delite or talent though he see wel apertly that it is ayenst the reverence of God; although his reson consenteth to do that sinne indede, yet sayn som doctours that swiche delite that dwelleth longe is ful perilous, al be it never so lite: and also a man shuld sorrow, namely for all that ever he hath de-  
sired ayenst the lawe of God, with parfite con-  
senting of his reson, for therof is no doute that it is dedly sinne in consenting; for certes ther is no dedly sinne but that it is first in mannes thought, and after that in his dede, and so forth into con-  
senting and into dede; wherfore I say that many men ne repent hem never of swiche thoughtes and delites, ne never shriven hem of it, but only of the dede of gret finnes outward; wherfore I say that swiche wicked delites ben subtil begilers of hem that shul be dampned. Moreover, man ought to forwen for his wicked wordes as wel as for his wicked dedes, for certes repentance of a singuler sinne, and not repentant of all his other finnes, or elles repenting him of all his other finnes and not of a singuler sinne, may not availe; for certes God Almighty is all good, and therefore either he foryeveth all, or elles right nought; and therefore sayth Seint Augustin, I wote certainly that God is enemy to every sinner: and how than? he that observeth on sinne shal he have foryeve-  
nesse of the remenant of his other finnes? nay. And furthermore, contrition shuld be wonder forweful and anguishous, and therefore yeveth him God plainly his mercie: and therefore whan my soule was anguishous, and forweful within me, than had I remembrance of God that my praiser might come to him. Furthermore, contri-  
tion muste be continuel, and that man have sted-  
fast purpose to shrive him and to amend him of his lif; for sothly while contrition lasteth man may ever hope to have foryevenesse: and of this com-  
eth hate of sinne, that destroyeth sinne bothe in himself and eke in other folk at his power; for  
which sayth David, They that love God hate wickednesse; for to love God is for to love that  
loveth, and hate that he hateth.

The last thing that men shull understand in contrition is this, wherof availeth contrition. I

say that contrition somtime delivereth man from sinne; of which David saith, I say, (quod David) I purposed fermely to shrive me, and thou have reledest my sinne. And right so as contrition availeth not without sad purpos of shrift and satisfaction, right so litel worth is shrift or satisfac-  
tion withouten contrition. And moreover, con-  
trition destroyeth the prison of helle, and maketh weke and feble all the strengthes of the devils, and restoreth the yestes of the Holy Gost and of all good vertues, and it clenseth the soule of sinne, and delivereth it fro the peine of helle, and fro the compaignie of the devil, and fro the servage of sinne, and restoreth it to all goodes spiritual, and to the compaignie and communion of holy chirche. And furthermore, it maketh him that whilom was sone of ire to be the sone of grace; and all these thinges ben preved by holy writ, and therefore he that wold set his entent to these thinges he were ful wise; for sothly he ne shuld have than in all his lif corage to sinne, but yeve his herte and body to the service of Jesu Crist, and therof do him homage; for certes our Lord Jesu Crist hath spared us so benignely in our so-  
lies, that if he had ne pitee on mannes soule a fory long might we alle singe.

*Explicit prima pars penitentiae, et incipit pars secunda.*

The second part of penitence is confession, and that is signe of contrition. Now shul ye under-  
stande what is confession, and whether it ought nedes to be don or non, and which thinges ben  
convenable to veray confession.

First shalt thou understande that confession is veray shewing of finnes to the preest; this is to saie veray, for he must confesse him of all the conditions that belongen to his sinne as ferforth as he can: all must be sayd, and nothing excused, ne hid, ne forwrapped, and not avaunt him of his good werkes: also it is necessarie to understande whennes that finnes springen, and how they en-  
cresen, and which they ben.

Of springing of finnes saith Seint Poule in this wise; that right as by on man sinne entred first into this world, and thurgh sinne deth, right so deth entreth into alle men that sinnen: and this man was Adam, by whom sinne entred into this world whan he brake the commandement of God; and therefore he that first was so mighty that he shuld have died, became swiche on that he must nedes die whether he wold or no; and all his pro-  
genie in this that in thilke maner sinnen dien. Loke that in the estate of innocence, whan Adam and Eve weren naked in Paradise, and no thing ne hadden shame of hir nakednesse, how that the serpent, that was most wily of all other bestes that God had made, sayd to the woman, Why com-  
manded God you that ye shuld not ete of every tree in Paradise? The woman answered, Of the fruit, sayd she, of the trees of Paradise we feden us, but of the fruit of the tree that is in the mid-  
del of Paradise, God forbode us for to eten, ne to touche it, lest we shuld die. The serpent sayd to the woman, Nay, nay, ye shul not dien of deth



for soth God wote that what day that ye ete ther-  
of your eyen shul open, and ye shul be as goddes,  
knowing good and harme. The woman saw that  
the tree was good to feding, and faire to the eyen,  
and delectable to the sight; she toke of the fruit of  
the tree and did ete, and yave to hire husbond, and  
he ete; and anon the eyen of hem both opened:  
and whan they knewe that they were naked, they  
sowed of a fig-tree leves in maner of breches to  
hiden hir members. Here mow ye seen that  
dedly sinne hath first suggestion of the fende, as  
sheweth here by the adder, and afterward the de-  
lit of the flesh, as sheweth here by Eve, and after  
that the consenting of reson, as sheweth by Adam:  
for trust wel though so it were that the fende  
tempted Eve, that is to say, the flesh, and the flesh  
had delit in the beautee of the fruit defended, yet  
certes til that reson, that is to say Adam, consented  
to the eting of the fruit, yet stode he in the state of  
innocence. Of thilke Adam toke we thilke sinne  
original; from him fleshly descended be we all,  
and engendred of vile and corrupt mater; and  
whan the soule is put in our bodies, right anon is  
contract original sinne, and that that was erst but  
only peine of concupiscence is afterward both  
peine and sinne; and therefore we ben all yborne  
sones of wrath and of dampnation perdurable, if ne  
were baptisme that we receive, which benimeth  
us the culpe: but forsoth the peine dwelleth with  
us as to temptation, which peine hight concupis-  
cence. This concupiscence, whan it is wrongfully  
disposed or ordeined in man, it maketh him co-  
veit, by coveitise of flesh, fleshly sinne by sight of  
his eyen, as to erthly thinges, and also coveitise of  
highnesse by pride of herte.

Now, as to speke of the first coveitise, that is,  
concupiscence, after the lawe of our membres that  
were lawfully ymaked, and by rightful jugement  
of God, I say, for as moche as a man is not obei-  
sant to God that is his Lord, therefore is his herte  
to him disobeisant thurgh concupiscence, which is  
called nourishing of sinne, and occasion of sinne;  
therefore all the while that a man hath within him  
the peine of concupiscence it is impossible but he  
be tempted somtime, and moved in his flesh to  
sinne. And this thing may not faile as long as he  
liveth; it may wel waxe feble by vertue of bap-  
tisme, and by the grace of God thurgh penitence,  
but fully ne shal it never quenche, that he ne shal  
somtime be moved in himselfe but if he were re-  
freined by sikenesse, or malefice of forcerie, or cold  
drinckes. For lo, what sayth Seint Poule? The  
flesh coveiteth ayenst the spirit, and the spirit  
ayenst the flesh; they ben so contrarie and so stri-  
ven that a man may not alway do as he wold.  
The same Seint Poule, after his gret penance in  
water and in lond; in water by night and by day  
in gret peril and in gret peine, in lond in grete  
famine and thrust, cold and clothles, and ones  
stoned almost to deth, yet sayd he, Alas! I car-  
tif man, who shal deliver me fro the prison of my car-  
tif body? And Seint Jerom, whan he long time  
had dwelled in desert, wheras he had no compa-  
nie but of wilde bestes, wheras he had no mete

but herbes, and water to his drinke, ne no bed but  
the naked erth, wherfore his flesh was black as an  
Ethiopian for hete, and nie destroyed for cold, yet  
sayd he that the brenning of lecherie boiled in all  
his body: wherfore I wot wel fikerly that they  
be deceived that say they be not tempted in hir  
bodies; witnesse Seint James, that said that every  
wight is tempted in his owen conscience; that is  
to say, that eche of us hath mater and occasion to  
be tempted of the nourishing of sinne that is in  
his body; and therefore sayth Seint John the Evan-  
gelist, If we say that we ben without sinne we de-  
ceive ourself, and truth not in us.

Now shul ye understonde in what maner sinne  
wexeth and encreaseth in man. The first thing is  
that nourishing of sinne of which I spake before,  
that is, concupiscence; and after that cometh sug-  
gestion of the devil, this is to say, the divels be-  
lous, with which he bloweth in man the fire of  
concupiscence; and after that a man bethinketh  
him whether he wol do or no that thing to which  
he is tempted; and than if a man withstand and  
weive the first entising of his flesh and of the fende  
than it is no sinne; and if so be he do not, then  
feleth he anon a flame of delit, and than it is good  
to beware and kepe him wel, or elles he wol fall  
anon to consenting of sinne, and than wol he do  
it if he may have time and place. And of this  
mater sayth Moyse by the devil in this maner;  
The fend sayth, I wol chace and pursue man by  
wicked suggestion, and I wol hent him by meving  
and stirring of sinne, and I wol depart my pris or  
my prey by deliberation, and my lust shal be ac-  
complished in delit; I wol draw my sward in con-  
senting; (for certes right as a sward departeth a  
thing in two peces, right so consenting departeth  
God fro man) and than wol I sle him with my  
hond in dede of sinne. Thus sayth the fend, for  
certes than is a man al ded in soule; and thus is  
sinne accomplished by temptation, by delit, and by  
consenting, and than is the sinne actual.

Forsoth sinne is in two maners; either it is ve-  
nial or dedly sinne. Sothly whan a man loveth  
any creature more than Jesu Crist our creatour,  
than it is dedly sinne; and venial sinne it is if a  
man love Jesu Crist lesse than him ought. For-  
soth the dede of this venial sinne is ful perilous,  
for it amenufeth the love that man shuld have to  
God more and more; and therefore if a man charge  
himself with many swiche venial sinnes, certes but  
if so be that he somtime discharge him of hem by  
shrift, they may wel lightly amenufe in him all the  
love that he hath to Jesu Crist. And in this wise  
skippeth venial sinne into dedly sinne; for certes  
the more that a man chargeth his soule with ve-  
nial sinnes, the more he is enclined to fall into ded-  
ly sinne; and therefore let us not be negligent to  
discharge us of venial sinnes; for the proverbe  
sayth that many smal maken a gret. And herken  
this ensample: a gret wawe of the see cometh  
somtime with so gret a violence that it drencheth  
the ship; and the same harme do somtime the  
smal dropes of water that enteren thurgh a litel  
crevis in the thurrok, and in the bottom of the



ship, if men ben so negligent that they discharge hem not by time; and therefore although ther be difference betwix thise two causes of drenching algates, the ship is dreint. Right so fareth it sometime of dedly sinne and of anoious venial sinnes, whan they multiplie in man so gretly that thilke worldly thinges that he loveth, thurgh which he sinneth venially, is as gret in his herte as the love of God, or more; and therefore the love of every thing that is not beset in God, ne don principally for Goddes sake, although that a man love it lesse than God, yet it is venial sinne; and dedly sinne is whan the love of any thing weigheth in the herte of man as moche as the love of God, or more. Dedly sinne, as sayth Seint Augustine, is whan a man tourneth his herte fro God, whiche that is veray soveraine bountee, that may not chaunge, and yeveth his herte to thing that may chaunge and flitte; and certes that is every thing save God of heaven: for soth is that if a man yeve his love, which that he oweth to God with all his herte, unto any creature, certes as moche of his love as he yeveth to the same creature, so moche he becometh fro God, and therefore doth he sinne; for he that is dettour to God ne yeldeth not to God all his dette, that is to sayn, all the love of his herte.

Now sith man understondeth generally which is venial sinne, than is it convenable to tell specially of sinnes whiche that many a man peraventure demeth hem no sinnes, and shriveth him not of the same, and yet natheles they be sinnes sothly, as thise clerkes writen; this is to say, at every tyme that man eteth and drinketh more than sufficeth to the sustenance of his body, in certain he doth sinne; eke whan he speket more than it nedeth, he doth sinne; eke whan he herkeneth not benignely the complaint of the poure; eke whan he is in hele of body, and wol not fast whan other folk fast, without cause resonable; eke whan he slepeth more than nedeth, or whan he cometh by that encheson to late to chirche, or to other werkes of charitee; eke whan he useth his wif withouten soveraine desire of engendrure, to the honour of God, or for the entent to yeld his wif his dette of his body; eke whan he wol not visite the fike or the prisoner if he may; eke if he love wif or child, or other worldly thing, more than reson requireth; eke if he flater or blandise more than him oughte for any necessitee; eke if he amuse or withdrawe the almesse of the poure; eke if he appaile his mete more deliciously than nede is, or ete it to hastily by likerousnesse; eke if he talke vanitees in the chirche, or at Goddes service, or that he be a taler of idle wordes of folie or vilanie, for he shal yeld accomptes of it at the day of dome; eke whan he behighteth or assureth to don thinges that he may not perfourme; eke whan that he by lightnesse of foly missayeth or scorneth his neighbour; eke whan he hath any wicked suspencion of thing ther he ne wete of it no sothfastnesse. Thise thinges, and mo withouten nombre, be sinnes, as sayth Seint Augustine. Now shal ye understonde that al be it so that non erthly

man may eschewe al venial sinnes, yet may he refreine him by the brenning love that he hath to our Lord Jesu Crist, and by prayer and confession, and other good werkes, so that it shal but litle grieve: for, as sayth Seint Augustine, If a man love God in swiche maner that all that ever he doth is in the love of God, or for the love of God veraily, for he brenneth in the love of God, loke how moche that o drope of water which falleth into a fourneis ful of fire anoieth or greveth the brenning of the fire, in like maner anoieth or greveth a venial sinne unto that man whiche is stedfast and parfite in the love of our Saviour Jesu Crist. Furthermore, men may also refreine and put away venial sinne by receiving worthily the precious body of Jesu Crist, by receiving eke of holy water, by almes dede, by general confession of confiteor at masse, and at prime, and at complin, and by blessing of bishoppes and preestes, and by other good werkes.

*De Septem Peccatis Mortalibus.*

Now it is behovely to tellen whiche ben dedly sinnes, that is to say, chiefetaines of sinnes, for as moche as all they ren in o lces, but in divers maners. Now ben they cleped chiefetaines for as moche as they be chiefe, and of hem springen all other sinnes. The rote of thise sinnes than is pride, the general rote of all harmes, for of this rote springen certain braunches, as ire, envie, acide or slouth, avarise or coveitise, (to common understonding) glotonie, and lecherie; and eche of thise chief sinnes hath his braunches and his twigges, as shal be declared in hir chapitres following.

*De Superbia.*

And though so be that no man knoweth utterly the nombre of the twigges and of the harmes that comen of pride, yet wol I shew a partie of hem as ye shul understond. Ther is inobedience, avaunting, ipocrisie, despit, arrogance, impudence, swelling of herte, insolence, elation, impatience, strif, contumacie, presumption, irreverence, pertinacie, vaine glorie, and many other twigges that I cannot declare. Inobedient is he that disobeyeth for despit to the commandements of God, and to his soveraines, and to his gostly fader; avaunting is he that boasteth of the harme or of the bountee that he hath don; ipocrite is he that hideth to shew him swiche as he is, and sheweth him to seme swiche as he is not; despitous is he that hath disdain of his neighebour, that is to sayn, of his even Cristen, or hath despit to do that him ought to do; arrogant is he that thinketh that he hath those bountees in him that he hath not, or weneth that he shulde have hem by his deserving, or elles that demeth that he be that he is not; impudent is he that for his pride hath no shame of his sinnes; swelling of herte is whan man rejoyceth him of harme that he hath don; insolent is he that despiseth in his judgement all other folk as in regarde of his value, of his conning, of his speking, and of

his bering; elation is whan he ne may neither suffer to have maistre ne felawe; impatient is he that wol not be taught ne undernorne of his vice, and by strif werrieth truth wetingly, and defendeth his foly; *contumax* is he that thurgh his indignation is ayenst every auctoritee or power of hem that ben his soveraines; presumption is whan a man undertaketh an emprise that him ought not to do, or elles that he may not do, and this is called surquidrie; irreverence is whan man doth not honour ther as him ought to do, and waiteth to be revered; pertinacie is whan man defendeth his foly, and trusteth to moche in his owen wit; vaine-glorie is for to have pompe and delit in his temporal highnesse, and glorye him in his worldly estate; jangling is whan man speketh to moche before folk, and clappeth as a mille, and taketh no kepe what he sayth.

And yet ther is a privee spice of pride that waiteth first to be salewed or he wol salew, all be he lesse worthy than that other is; and eke he waiteth to sit or to go above him in the way, or kisse the pax, or ben encensed or gon to offering before his neighbour, and swiche semblable thinges, ayenst his deutee peraventure, but that he hath his herte and his entente in swiche a proude desire to be magnified and honoured befor the peple.

Now ben ther two maner of prides; that on of hem is within the herte of a man, and that other is without; of whiche sothly thise foresayd thinges, and mo than I have sayd, appertinen to pride that is within the herte of man; and ther be other, spices of pride that ben withouten; but natheless that on of thise spices of pride is signe of that other, right as they gay Levefell at the tavernne is signe of the win that is in the celler. And this is in many thinges, as in speche and contenance, and outrageous array of clothing; for certes if there had ben no sinne in clothing Crist wold not so sone have noted and spoken of the clothing of thilke rich man in the Gospel; and, as Seint Gregory sayth, that precious clothing is culpable for the derth of it, and for his softnesse, and for his strangenesse and disguising, and for the superfluitee or for the inordinate scantnesse of it. Alas! may not a man see as in our daies the sinneful coldewe array of clothing, and namely in to moche superfluitee, or elles in to disordinate scantnesse.

As to the first sinne, in superfluitee, of clothing, whiche that maketh it so dere, to the harm of the peple, not only the coste of the enbrouding, the disguising, endenting or barring, bouding, paling, winding, or bending, and semblable wast of cloth in vanitee but ther is also the costlewe furring in hir gounes, so muche pounsoning of chesel to maken holes, so moche dagging of sheres, with the superfluitee in length of the foresaide gounes, trailing in the dong and in the myre, on hors and eke on foot, as wel of man as of woman, that all thilke trailing is veraily (as in effect) wasted, consumed, thredbare, and rotten with dong, rather than it is yeven to the poure, to get damage of the foresayd poure folk, and that in sondry wise; this is to sayn, the more that cloth is wasted the more

must it cost the poure peple for the scarcenesse; and furthermore, if so be that they wolden yewe swiche pounsoned and dagged clothing to the poure peple it is not convenient to were for hir estate, ne sufficient to bote hir necessitee, to kepe hem fro the disemperance of the firmament. Upon that other side, to speke of the horrible disordinate scantnesse of clothing, as ben thise cutted sloppes or hanelines, that thurgh hir shortnesse cover not the shameful members of man to wicked entente: alas! som of hem shewen the bosse and the shape of the horrible swollen members, that semen like to the ~~marke~~ of Hernia, in the wrapping of hir hosen, and eke the buttokkes of hem behinde, that ~~semen~~ as it were the hinder part of a she ape in the ful of the mone. And moreover, the wretched swollen members that they shew thurgh disguising, in departing of hir hosen in white and rede, semeth that half hir shameful privee membres were flaine: and if so be that they departe hir hosen in other colours, as is white and blewe, or white and ~~black~~ or blake and rede, and so forth, than semeth it, as by variance of colour, that the half part of hir privee members ben corrupt by the fire of Seint Antonie, or by cancre, or other swiche mischance. Of the hinder part of hir buttokkes it is ful horrible for to see, for certes in that partie of hir body, ther as they purgen hir stinking ordure, that soule partie shewe they to the peple proudly in dispite of honestee, whiche honestee that Jesu Crist and his frendes observed to shewe in hir lif. Now as to the outrageous array of women, God wote that though the visages of some of hem, semen ful chaste and debonaire, yet notifien they in hir array of attire likerousnesse and pride. I say not that honestee in clothing of man or woman is unco-venable, but certes the superfluitee or disordinate scarcitee of clothing is reprevable. Also the sinne of ornament or of appaile is in thinges that appertene to riding, as in to many delicat hors that ben holden for delit, that ben so faire, fatte, and costlewe; and also in many a vicious knave that is sustained because of hem; in curious herneis, as in saddles, coppers, peitrels, and bridles, covered with precious cloth and rich, barred and plated of gold and silver, for which God sayth by Zacharie the prophet, I wol confounde the riders of swiche hors. These folke taken litel regard to the riding of Goddes sone of heven, and of his harneis, whan he rode upon the asse, and had none other harneis but the poure clothes of his disciples, ne we rede not that ever he rode on any other beste. I speke this for the sinne of superfluitee, and not for honestee, whan reason it requireth. And moreover, certes pride is gretly notified in holding of gret meinie, whan they ben of litel profite or of right no profite, and namely whan that meinie is felonous and damageous to the peple by hardinesse of high lordeship, or by way of office; for certes swiche lordes sell than hir lordeship to the devil of helle whan they susteine the wickednesse of hir meinie; or elles whan thise folk of low degree, as they that holden hostelries, sustainen theste of hir



hostellers, and that is in many maner of deceites; thiske maner of folk ben the flies that folowen the hony, or elles the houndes that folowen the caraine: swiche foresayde folk stranglen spiritually hir lordeshipes; for which thus saith David the prophet, Wicked deth mot come unto thiske lordshipes, and God yeve that they mot descend into helle all down, for in hir houses is iniquitee and Threwednesse, and not God of heaven: and certes but if they don amendement, right as God yave his benison to Laban by the service of Jacob, and to Pharao by the service of Joseph, right so God wol yeve his malison to swiche lordshipes as susteine the wickednesse of hir servants, but they come to amendement. Pride of the table appereth eke ful oft, for certes riche men be cled to festes, and poure folk he put away and rebuked; and also in excessse of divers metes and drinkes, and namely swiche maner bake metes and dishe metes brenning of wilde fire, and peinted and castelled with paper, and semblable wast, so that it is a labour to thinke; and eke in to gret preciousnesse or vessell, and curiositee of minstrelle by which a man is stirred more to the delites of luxurie, if so be that he sette his herte the lesse upon oure Lord Jesu Crist, it is a sinne; and certainly the delites might ben so gret in this cas that a man might lightly fall by hem into dedly sinne. The spices that fourden of pride, sothly whan they fourden of malice imagined, avised, and forecaste, or elles of usage, ben dedly sinnes it is no doute; and whan they fourden by freete unavised sodenly, and sodenly withdrawn again, al be they grevous sinnes I gesse that they be not dedly. Now might men aske wherof that pride fourdeth and springeth? I say that somtime it springeth of the goodes of nature, somtime of the goodes of fortune, and somtime of the goodes of grace. Certes the goodes of nature stonden only in the goodes of the body or of the soule; certes the goodes of the body ben hele of body, strength, delivernesse, beautee, gentrie, franchise; the goodes of nature of the soule ben good wit, sharpe understanding, subtil engine, vertue naturel, good memorie: goodes of fortune ben riches, high degree of lordshipes, and preisinges of the peple; goodes of grace ben science, power to suffre spiritueltravaile, benignitee, vertuous contemplation, withstanding of temptation, and semblable thinges; of which foresaid goodes certes it is a gret folie a man to priden him in ony of hemall. Now as for to speke of goodes of nature, God wot that somtime we have hem in nature as moche to our damage as to our profite. As for to speke of hele of body, trewely it passeth ful lightly, and also it is ful ofte encheson of siknesse of the soule, for God wote the flesh is a gret enemy to the soule, and therefore the more that the body is hole the more be we in peril to falle; eke for to priden him in his strength of body it is a grete folie, for certes the flesh coviteth ayenst the spirite, and ever the more strong that the flesh is the sorier may the soule be; and, over all, this strength of body and worldly hardinesse causeth ful of to many man peril and

mischance; also to have pride of gentrie is right gret folie, for oft time the gentrie of the body benimeth the gentrie of the soule: and also we ben all of a fader and of a moder, and all we ben of a nature, rotten and corrupt, bothe riche and poure. Forsothe maner gentrie is for to preise, that appareilleth mannes corage with vertues and moralitees, and maketh him Cristes child, for trusteth wel that over what man that sinne hath maistrise he is a veray cherl to sinne.

Now ben ther general signes of gentilnesse, as eschewing of vice and ribaudrie, and servage of sinne in word, and in werk and contenance, and using vertue, as courtesie and clenenesse, and to be liberal, that is to say, large by measure, for thiske that passeth mesure is folie and sinne; another is to remember him of bountee that he of other folk hath received; another is to be benigne to his subgettes; wherfor saith Seneke, Ther is nothing more covenable to a man of high estate than dobonairtee and pitee; and therefore thiske flies that men clepen Bees, whan they make hir king they chesen on that hath no pricke wherwith he may sting. Another is, man to have a noble herte and a diligent, to atteine to high vertuous thinges: now, certes a man to priden him in the goodes of grace is eke an outrageous folie, for thiske yestes of grace that shuld have tourned him to goodnesse and to medicine tourneth him to venime and confusion, as sayth Seint Gregorie. Certes also, who so prideth him in the goodnesse of Fortune he is a gret fool, for somtime is a man a gret lord by the morwe that is a caitife and a wretch or it be night: and sometime the richnesse of a man is cause of his deth: and sometime the delites of a man ben cause of grevous maladie thurgh which he dieth. Certes the commendation of the peple is ful false and brotel for to trust; this day they preise, to-morwe they blame. God wote desire to have commendation of the peple hath caused deth to many a besy man.

*Remedium Superbie.*

Now sith that so it is that ye have understood what is pride, and which be the spices of it, and how mennes pride fourdeth and springeth, now ye shul understand which is the remedie ayenst it. Humilitee or mekenesse is the remedie ayenst pride; that is a vertue thurgh which a man hath veray knowledge of himself, and holdeth of himself no deintee ne no pris, as in regard of his desertes, considering ever his freete. Now ben ther three maner of humilitees, as humilitee in herte, and another in the mouth, and the thridde in werkes. The humilitee in herte is in foure maneres; that on is whan a man holdeth himself as nought worth before God of heaven; the second is whan he despiseth non other man; the thridde is whan he ne recketh nat though men holde him nought worth; and the fourth is whan he is not sory of his humilitation. Also the humilitee of mouth is in four thinges; in attemperate speche; in humilitee of speche, and whan he confesseth



with his owen mouth (that he is swiche as he thinketh that he is in herte; another is whan he preifeth the bountee of another man, and nothing therof amenseth. Humilitee eke in werkes is in foure maners: the first is whan he putteth other men before him; the second is to chese the lowestt place of all; the thridde is gladly to assent to good conseil; the fourth is to stond gladly to the award of his soveraigne, or of hem that is higher in degree; certain this is a gret werk of humilitee.

*De Invidia.*

After pride wol I speke of the foule sinne of envie, which that is, after the word of the philosopher, sorwe of other mennes prosperitee; and after the word of Seint Augustine it is sorwe of other mennes wele, and joy of other mennes harme. This foule sinne is platly ayenst the Holy Gost: al be it so that every sinne is ayenst the Holy Gost, yet natheles for as moche as bountee apperteineth properly to the Holy Gost, and envie cometh properly of malice, therefore it is properly ayenst the bountee of the Holy Gost. Now hath malice two spices, that is to say, hardnesse of herte in wickednesse, or elles the flesh of man is so blind that he considereth not that he is in sinne, or recketh not that he is in sinne, which is the hardnesse of the divel. That other spice of envie is whan that a man werrieth trouth whan he wot that it is trouth, and also whan he werrieth the grace of God that God hath yeve to his neighbour; and all this is by envie; certes than is envie the werst sinne that is, for sothly all other sinnes be sometime only ayenst on special vertue, but certes envie is ayenst al maner vertues and alle goodnesse, for it is fory of all bountee of his neighbour: and in this maner it is divers from all other sinnes, for wel unnethe is ther any sinne that it ne hath som delit in himself save only envie that ever hath in himself anguish and sorwe. The spices of envie ben these: ther is first sorwe of other mennes goodnesse and of hir prosperitee, and prosperitee ought to be kindly mater of joye; than is envie a sinne ayenst kinde. The seconde spice of envie is joye of other mennes harme, and that is properly like to the divel, that ever rejoyseth him of mannes harme. Of this two species, cometh backbiting; and this sinne of backbiting or detracting hath certain spices, as thus; som man preifeth his neighbour by a wicked entente, for he maketh alway a wicked knotte at the laste ende; alway he maketh a *but* at the last ende, that is digne of more blame than is worth all the preifing: the second spice is, that if a man be good, or doth or sayth a thing good entente, the backbiter wol turne all that goodesse up so down to his shrewde entente: the thridde is to amenseth the bountee of his neighbour: the fourthe spice of backbiting is this, that if men speke goodnesse of a man than wol the backbiter say, Parfay swiche a man is yet better than he, in dispreifing of him that men preise:

the fifth spice is this, for to consent gladly to herken the harme that men speke of other folk: this sinne is ful gret, and ay encrefeth after the wicked entent of the backbiter: after backbiting cometh grutching or murmurance, and sometime it springeth of impatience ayenst God, and sometime ayenst man: ayenst God it is whan a man grutcheth ayenst the peine of helle, or ayenst poverte, or losse of catel, or ayenst rain or tempest, or elles grutcheth that shrewes have prosperitee, or elles that good men have adverfitee: and all thise thinges shuld men suffre patiently, for they comen by the rightful judgement and ordinance of God. Sometime cometh grutching of avarice, as Judas grutched ayenst the Magdeleine whan she apointed the hed of our Lord Jesu Crist with hire precious oynement: this maner murmuring is swiche as whan man grutcheth of goodnesse that himself doth or that other folk don of hir owen catel. Sometime cometh murmur of pride, as whan Simon the Pharisee grutched ayenst the Magdeleine whan she approached to Jesu Crist and wept at his feet for hire sinnes: and sometime it fourdeth of ~~envie~~, whan men discover a mannes harme that was privee, or bereth him on hond thing that is false. Murmur also is oft among servants, that grutchen whan hir soveraines bidden hem do defel thinges: and for as moche as they dare not openly withsay the commaundement of hir soveraines, yet wol they say harme and grutche and murmure prively for veray despit, which wordes they call the divels *Pater noster*, though so be that the devyl had never *Pater noster*, but that lewed folk yeven it swiche a name. Sometime it cometh of ire or privee hate, that norissheth rancour in the herte, as afterward I shal declare. Than cometh eke bitternesse of herte, thurgh which bitternesse very good dede of his neighbour semeth to him bitter and unsavory. Than cometh discord, that unbindeth all maner of frendship: than cometh scorning of his neighbour, al do he never so wel: than cometh accusing, as whan a man seeketh occasion to annoyen his neighbour, which is like the craft of the divel, that waiteth both day and night to accusen us all: than cometh malignitee, thurgh which a man annoieth his neighbour prively if he may, and if he may not algate his wicked will shal not let as for to brenne his hous priel, or enpoisen him, or sle his bestes, and semblable hinges.

*R medium Invidia.*

Now wol I speke of the remedie ayenst this foule sinne of envie. Firste is the love of God principally, and loving of his neighbour as himself, for sothly that on ne may not be without that other; and trust wel that in the name of thy neighbour thou shalt understande the name of thy brother, for certes all we have on fader Neshly and on moder, that is to say, Adam and Eve, and also on fader spirituel, that is to say, God of heaven. Thy neighbour art thou bounde for to

love, and will him all goodnesse, and therefore sayth God, Love thy neighbour as thyself, that is to say, to salvation both of lif and soule; and moreover, thou shalt love him in word, and in benigne amonesting and chastising, and comfort him in his anoyes, and praye for him with all thy herte; and in dede thou shalt love him in swiche wise that thou shalt do to him in charitee as thou woldest that it were don to thin owen person, and therefore thou ne shalt do him no damage in wicked word, ne harme in his body, ne in his catel, ne in his soule, by entising of wicked ensample: thou shalt not desire his wis, ne non of his thinges. Understonde eke that in the name of Neighbour is comprehended his enemy; certes man shal love his enemy for the commandement of God, and sothly thy frend thou shalt love in God: I say thin enemy shalt thou love for Goddes sake by his commandement, for if it were reson that man shulde hate his enemy forsoth God n'olde not receive us to his love that ben his enemies. Ayenst three maner of wronges that his enemy doth to him he shal do three thinges, as thus; ayenst hate ~~our~~ of herte he shal love him in herte; ayenst chiding and wicked wordes he shal pray for his enemy; ayenst the wicked dede of his enemy he shal do him bountee; for Crist sayth, Love your enemies and prayeth for hem that speke you harme, and for hem that chafen and pursuen you, and do bountee to hem that haten you. Lo, thus commandeth us our Lord Jesu Crist to do to our enemies. Forsoth nature driveth us to love our frendes, and parsay our enemies have more neede of love than our frendes, and they that more neede have ~~certes to hem~~ shal men do goodnesse; and certes in thilke dede have we remembrance of the love of Jesu Crist that died for his enemies; and in as moche as thilke love is more grevous to performe, so moche is more gret the merite, and therefore the loving of our enemy hath confounded the venime of the divel; for right as the divel is confounded by humilitee, right so is he wounded to the deth by love of our enemy: certes than is love the medicine that casteth out the venime of envie fro mannes herte.

*De Ira.*

After envy wol I declare of the sinne of ire, for sothly who so hath envy upon his neighbour anon communly wol finde him mater of wrath in word or in dede ayenst him to whom he hath envie. And as wel cometh ire of pride as of envie, for sothly he that is proude or envious is lightly wroth.

This sinne of ire, after the descriving of Seint Augustin, is wicked will to be avenged by word or by dede; ire, after the philosophre, is the fervent blode of man yquickened in his herte, thurgh which he wold harme to him that he hateth; for certes the herte of man by enchaufing and meving of his blood waxeth so troubled that it is out of all maner judgement of reson. But ye shul understonde that ire is in two maners, that on of

hem is good, and that other is wicked. The good ire is by jalousie of goodnesse, thurgh the which man is wroth with wickednesse, and again wickednesse, and therefore saith the wise man that ire is better than play. This ire is with debonairete, and it is wrothe without bitternesse; not wrothe ayenst the man, but wrothe with the misdede of the man; as saith the prophet David, *irascimini, et nolite peccare*. Now understonde that wicked ire is in two maners, that is to say, soden ire or hasty ire, without avisement and consenting of reson; the meaning and the sence of this is, that the reson of a manne consenteth not to that soden ire, and than it is venial. Another ire is that is ful wicked, that cometh of felonie of herte, avised and cait before, with wicked will to do vengeance, and therto his reson consenteth; and sothly this is dedly sinne. This ire is so displefant to God that it troubleth his hous, and chafeth the Holy Gost out of mannes soule, and wasteth and destroyeth the likenesse of God, that is to say, the vertue that is in mannes soule, and putteth in him the likenesse of the devil, and benimeth the man fro God that is his rightful Lord. This ire is a ful gret plesance to the devil, for it is the devils forneis that he enchaufeth with the fire of helle; for certes right so as fire is more mighty to destroye erthly thinges than any other element, right so ire is mighty to destroye all spirituel thinges. Loke how that fire of smal gledes, that ben almost ded under ashen, wol quicken ayen whan they ben touched with brimstone; right so ire wol evermore quicken ayen whan it is touched with pride that is covered in mannes herte; for certes fire ne may not come out of nothing, but if it were first in the same thing naturelly, as fire is drawn out of flintes with stele; and right so as pride is many times mater of ire, right so is rancour norice and keper of ire. Ther is a maner tree, as sayth Seint Isidore, that whan men make a fire of the saide tree, and cover the coles of it with ashen, sothly the fire therof wol last all a yere or more: and right so fareth it of rancour whan it is ones conceived in the herte of som men; certes it wol lasten peraventure from on Easterne day until another Easterne day, or more; but certes the same man is ful fer from the mercie of God all thilke while.

In this foresaid devils forneis ther forgen three shrewes, Pride, that ay bloweth and encreseth the fire by chiding and wicked wordes; than stondeth Envie, and holdeth the hot yren upon the herte of man with a pair of longe tonges of longer rancour; and than stondeth the sinne of contumelie, or strif and cheste, and battereth and forgeth by vilains reprevings. Certes this cursed sinne annoyeth both to the man himself and eke his neighbour, for sothly almost all the harme or damage that ony man doth to his neighbour cometh of wrath, for certes outrageous wrathe doth all that ever the soule fende willeth or commandeth him; for he ne spareth neyther for our Lord Jesu Crist ne his swete moder; and in his outrageous anger and ire, alas! alas! ful many on at that



time feleth in his herte ful wickedly both of Crist and also of all his halwes. Is not this a cursed vice? yes, certes. Alas! it benimmeth fro man his witte and his reson, and all his debonaire lif spirituel, that shuld kepe his soule: certes it benimmeth also Goddes due lordship (and that is mannes soule) and the love of his neighbours; it striveth also all day ayenst trowth; it reveth him the quiet of his herte, and subverteth his soule.

Of ire comen thise stinking engendures; first hate, that is olde wrath; discord, thurgh which a man forsaketh his olde frend that he hath loved ful long; and than cometh werre, and every manner of wrong that a man doth to his neighbour in body or in catel. Of this cursed sinne of ire cometh eke manslaughter. And understondeth wel that homicide (that is manslaughter) is in divers wise. Som maner of homicide is spirituel, and som is bodily. Spirituel manslaughter is in six thinges. First, by hate, as sayth Seint John, He that hateth his brother is an homicide. Homicide is also by backbiting, of which backbitours sayth Salomon, that they have two swerdes with which they slay hir neighbours; for sothly as wicked it is to benime of him his good name as his lif. Homicide is also in yeving of wicked conseil by fraude, as for to yeve conseil to arise wrongful customes and talages, of which sayth Salomon, A lion roring, and a bare hungrie, ben like to cruel lordes in withholding or a bregging of the hire or of the wages of servantes, or elles in usurie, or in withdrawing of the almesse of poure folk; for which the wise man sayth, Fedeth him that almost dieth for hunger, for sothly but if thou fede him thou sleest him; and all thise ben dedly sinnes. Bodily manslaughter is whan thou sleest him with thy tonge in other maner, as whan thou commandest to sle a man, or elles yevest conseil to sle a man. Manslaughter in dede is in foure maners. That on is by lawe, right as a justice dampneth him that is culpable to the deth; but let the justice beware that he do it rightfully, and that he do it not for delit to spill blood, but for keping of rightwisenesse. Another homicide is don for necessitee, as whan a man sleeth another in his defence, and that he ne may non other wise escapen fro his owen deth; but certain and he may escape withouten slaughter of his adversarie he doth sinne, and he shal bere penance as for dedly sinne. Also if a man by cas or aventure shete an arowe or cast a ston with which he sleeth a man, he is an homicide. And if a woman by negligence overlyeth hire child in hire slepe, it is homicide and dedly sinne. Also whan a man disturbleth conception of a childe, and maketh a woman barein by drinkes of venomous herbes thurgh which she may not conceive, or sleeth hire child by drinkes, or elles putteth certain material thing in hire secret place to slee hire child, or elles doth unkinde sinne, by which man or woman shedeth his nature in place ther as a childe may not be conceived; or elles if a woman hath conceived and hurteth hireself,

and by that mishappe the childe is flaine, yet is it homicide. What say we eke of women that murderen hir children for drede of worldly name; certes it is an horrible homicide. Eke if a man approche to a woman by desir of lecherie thurgh which the childe is perished, or elles smitten a woman wetingly, thurgh which she leseth hire child, all thise ben homicides, and horrible dedly sinnes. Yet comen ther ire many mo sinnes, as wel in worde as in thought and in dede; as he that arretteth upon God, or blameth God of the thing of which he is himself gilty, or despiseth God and all his halwes, as don thise cursed hasardours in divers confrees. This cursed sinne don they whan they felen in hir herte ful wickedly of God and of his halwes: also whan they treten unreverently the sacrament of the auter, thilke sinne is so gret that unneth it may be relefed, but that the mercy of God passeth all his werkes, it is so gret, and he so benigne. Than cometh also of ire attray anger, whan a man is sharply amonested in his shrift to leve his sinne; than wol he be angry, and answere hokerly and angerly, to defend or excusen his sinne by unstedfastnesse of his conscience; or elles he did it for to hold compaignie with his felawes; or elles he sayeth the fend enticed him; or elles he did it for his youthe; or elles his complexion is so corageous that he may not forbere; or elles it is his destinee, he sayth, unto a certain age; or elles he sayth it cometh him of gentillesse of his auncestres, and semblable thinges. All thise maner of folke so wrappen hem in hir sinnes that they ne wol not deliver hemself, for sothly no wight that excuseth himself wilyly of his sinne may not be delivered of his sinne til that he mekely beknoweth his sinne. After this than cometh swering, that is expresse ayenst the commandement of God; and that befalleth often of anger and of ire: God sayth, Thou shalt not take the name of thy Lord God in idel: also our Lord Jesu Crist sayth by the word of Seint Matthew, Ne shal ye not swere in all manere, neyther by heven, for it is Goddes trone, ne by erthe, for it is the benche of his feet, ne by Jerusalem, for it is the citee of a gret king, ne by thin hed, for thou ne mayst not make an here white ne black; but he sayth, Be your word ye, ye, nay, nay; and what that is more it is of evil. Thus sayth Crist, for Cristes sake swere not so sinnefully, in dismembriing of Crist, by soule, herte, bones, and body; for certes it semeth that ye thinken that the cursed Jewes dismembred him not ynough, but ye disembre him more. And if so be that the lawe compell you to swere, than reuleth you after the lawe of God in your swering, as sayth Jeremie, Thou shalt kepe three conditions; thou shalt swere in trowth, in dome, and in rightwisenesse; this is to say, thou shalt swere soth, for every lesing is ayenst Crist, for Crist is veray trowth: and thinke wel this, that every gret swerer, not compelled lawfully to swere, the plage shal not depart fro his hous while he useth unlesful swering. Thou shalt swere also in dome, whan thou art constrained by the domesman to



Witness a trowth. Also thou shalt not swere for envie, neyther for favour ne for mede, but only for, rightwisenesse, and for declaring of trouthe to the honour and worship of God, and to the aiding and helping of thin even Cristen: and therefore every man that taketh Goddes name in idel, or falsely swereth with his mouth, or elles taketh on him the name of Crist, to be called a Cristen man, and liveth agenst Cristes living and his teching, all they take Goddes name in idel. Loke also what sayth Seint Peter, *1. Pet. iv. Non est aliud nomen sub celo, &c.*; there is non other name (sayth Seint Peter) under heaven yeven to men in which they may be saved, that is to say, but the name of Jesu Crist. Take kepe eke how precious is the name of Jesu Crist, as sayth Seint Poule *ad Philipenses ii. In nomine Jesu, &c.*; that in the name of Jesu every knee of heavenly creature, or erthly, or of helle, shuld bowen; for it is so high and worshipful that the cursed fend in helle shuld tremble for to here it named. Than cometh it that men that swere so horribly by his blessed name, that they despise it more boldely than did the cursed Jewes, or elles the divel, that trembleth whan he hereth his name.

Now certes fith that swering (but if it be lawfully don) is so highly defended, moche worse is for to swere falsely and eke nedeles.

What say we eke of hem that deliten hem in swering, and hold it a genterie or manly dede to swere gret othes? and what of hem that of veray pflagene ocsenotto swere gret othes, al be the cause not worth a strawe? certes this is horrible sinne: swering sodenly without avisement is also a gret sinne. But let us go now to that horrible swering of adjuration and conjuration, as don thise falle enchantours and nigromancers in basins ful of water, or in a bright swerde, in a cercle, or in a fire, or in a sholder bone of a shepe: I cannot sayn but that they do cursedly and damnablely ayenst Crist, and all the faith of holy chirche.

What say we of hem that beleven on divinales, as by sight or by noyse of briddes or of bestes, or by sorte of geomancie, by dremes, by chirking of dores, or cracking of houses, by gnawing of rattes, and swiche maner wretchednesse? Certes all thise thinges ben defended by God and holy chirche, for which they ben accursed, till they come to amendement, that on swiche filth set hir beleve. Charmes for woundes, or for maladies of men or of bestes, if they take any effect it may be peraventure that God suffreth it for folk shuld yeve the more feith and reverence to his name.

Now wol I speke of lesinges, which generally is false signifiante of word, in entent to deceive his even Cristen. Some lesing is of which ther cometh non avantage to no wight; and som lesing turneth to the profite and ese of a man, and to the damage of another man; another lesing is for to saven his lif or his catel; another lesing cometh of delit for to lie, in which delit they wol

lesing cometh for he wol sustein his word; and som lesing cometh of recchelesnesse withouten avisement, and semblable thinges.

Let us now touche the vice of flaterie, which ne cometh not gladly, but for drede or for covetise. Flaterie is generally wrongful preising: flaterers ben the devils nourices, that nourish his children with milke of losengerie. Forsoth Salomon sayth that flaterie is worse than detraction, for sometime detraction maketh an hautein man be the more humble, for he dredeth detraction, but certes flaterie maketh a man to enhaunce his herte and his contenance. Flaterers ben the devils enchauntours, for they maken a man to wenen himself be like that he is not like: they be like to Judas that betrayed God; and thise flaterers betrayen man to selle him to his enemy, that is the devil. Flaterers ben the devils chappelcines, that ever singen *Placebo*. I reken flaterie in the vices of ire, for oft time if a man be wroth with another, than wol he flater som wight to susteine him in his quarrel.

Speke we now of swiche cursing as cometh of irous herte. Malison generally may be said every maner power of harme: swiche cursing bereveth man the regne of God, as sayth Seint Poule; and oft time swiche cursing wrongfully retorneth again to him that curseth, as a bird retorneth again to his owen nest: and over all thing men ought eschew to curse hir children, and to yeve to the devil hir engendrure, as fer forth as in hem is; certes it is a grete peril and a grete sinne.

Let us than speke of chiding and repreving, which ben ful grete woundes in mannes herte, for they unsow the seames of frendship in mannes herte; for certes unnethe may a man be plainly accorded with him that he hath openly reviled, reprevd, and disclaundred; this is a full grisly sinne, as Crist sayth in the gospel. And take ye kepe now that he that repreveth his neighbour either he repreveth him by som harme of peine that he hath upon his bodie, as mesel, croked harlot, or by som sinne that he doth: now if he reprove him by harme of peine, than turneth the reprove to Jesu Crist; for peine is sent by the rightwise onde of God, and by his suffrance, be it meselrie, or maimie, or maladie; and if he reprove him uncharitably of sinne, as thou holour, thou dronkelewe harlot, and so forth, than apperteineth that to the rejoicing of the devil, which ever hath joye that men don sinne. And certes chiding may not come but out of a vilains herte, for after the haboundance of the herte speketh the mouth ful oft. And ye shul understond that loke by any way whan ony man chastiseth another that he beware fro chiding or repreving, for trewely but he beware he may ful lightly quicken the fire of anger and of wrath, which he shuld quench, and peraventure sleth him that he might chastise with benignitee; for, as sayth Salomon, The amiable tonge is the tree of lif, that is to say, of lif spiritual; and sothly a discolute tonge sleth the soule.

is nothing so like the devils child as he which oft chideth; a servant of God behoveth not to chide; and though that chiding be a vilains thing betwix all maner folk, yet it is certes most uncovenable betwene a man and his wif, for ther is never rest; and therefore sayth Salomon, An hous that is uncovered in rayn and dropping and a chiding wif ben like; a man which is in a dropping hous in many places though he eschew the dropping in o place, it droppeth on him in another place; so fareth it by a chiding wif, if she chide him not in o place she wol chide him in another; and therefore better is a morsel of bred with joye than an hous filled ful of delices with chiding, sayth Salomon: and Seint Poule sayth, O ye women! beth ye subgettes to your husbands as you behoveth in God; and ye men loveth your wives.

Afterward speke we of scorning, which is a wicked sinne, and namely whan he scorneth a man for his good werkes, for certes swiche scorers faren like the foule tode, that may not endure to smell the swete favour of the vine whan it flourisheth: thise scorers ben parting felaws with the devil, for they have joye whan the devil winneth, and sorwe if he leseth; they ben adversaries to Jesu Crist, for they hate that he loveth, that is to say, salvation of soule.

Speke we now of wicked conseil, for he that wicked conseil yeveth is a traitour, for he deceiveth him that trusteth in him; but natheless yet is wicked conseil first ayenst himself; for, as sayth the wise man, Every false living hath this propertee in himself, that he that wol annoy another man, he annoyeth first himself. And men shul understand that man shal not take his conseil of false folk, ne of angry folk, or grevous folk, ne of folk that loven specially hir owen profit, ne of to moche worldly folk, namely in conseiling of mannes soule.

Now cometh the sinne of hem that maken discord among folk, which is a sinne that Crist hateth utterly; and no wonder is, for he died for to make concord; and more shame don they to Crist than did they that him crucified; for God loveth better that friendship be amonges folk than he did his owen body, which that he yave for unitee; therefore ben they likened to the devil, that ever is about to make discord.

Now cometh the sinne of double tonge, swiche as speke faire before folk and wickedly behind, or elles they make semblaunt as though they spake of good entention, or elles in game and play, and yet they speken of wicked entente.

Now cometh bewreying of conseil, thurgh which a man is defamed: certes unneth may he restore the damage: now cometh manace, that is an open folie, for he that oft manaceth he threteth more than he may performe ful oft time: now comen idel wordes that be without profite of him that speketh the wordes, and eke of him that herkeneth the wordes, or elles idel wordes ben tho that ben nedeles, or withouten entente of naturel profit; and al be it that idel wordes be sometime venial sinne, yet shuld men doute hem, for we shul yeve

rekening of hem before God. Now cometh jangling, that may not come withouten sinne; and, as sayth Salomon, It is a signe of apert folie; and therefore a philosophre sayd, whan a man axed him how that he shuld plesse the peple, he answered, Do many good werkes, and speke few jangelinges. After this cometh the sinne of japeres, that ben the devils apes, for they make folk to laugh at hir japerie, as folk don at the gaudes of an ape; swiche japes defendeth Seint Poule. Loke how that vertuous wordes and holy conforten hem that travaillen in the service of Crist, right so conforten the vilains words and the knakkes of japeres hem that travaillen in the service of the devil. Thise ben the sinnes of the tonge, that comen of ire, and other sinnes many mo.

#### *Remedium Ira.*

The remedie ayenst ire is a vertue that cleped is Manfuetude, that is debonairtee, and eke another vertue that men clepen Patience or ~~forbearance~~ raunce.

Debonairtee withdraweth and refreineth the stirrings and mevings of mannes corage in his herte in swich maner that they ne ~~spring~~ hot out by anger ne ire; sufferance suffereth swetely all the annoyance and the wrong that is don to man outward. Seint Jerome sayth this of debonairtee, that it doth no harme to no wight ne ~~sayth~~ ne for no harme that men do ne say he ne chafeth not ayenst reson. This vertue somtyme cometh of nature; for, as sayth the ~~philosophre~~ *philosophre*, A man is a quick thing, by nature debonaire, and trefable to goodnesse; but whan debonairtee is enformed of grace, than it is the more worth.

Patience is another remedy ayenst ire, and is a vertue that suffereth swetely every mannes goodnesse, and is not wroth for non harme that is don to him. The philosophre sayth that patience is the vertue that suffreth debonairly al the outrage of adversitee and every wicked word. This vertue maketh a man like to God, and maketh him Goddes owen childe, as sayth Crist: this vertue discomfiteth thin enemies; and therefore sayth the wise man, If thou wolt vanquish thin enemy see thou be patient. And thou shalt understand that a man suffereth foure maner of grevances in outward thinges, ayenst the which foure he must have foure maner of patiences.

The first grevance is of wicked wordes; thilke grevance suffred Jesu Crist, without grutching, ful patiently, whan the Jewes despised him and repreved him ful oft: suffer thou therefore patiently, for the wise man saith, If thou strive with a foole, though the foole be wroth, or though he laugh, algate thou shalt have no reste. That other grevance outward is to have damage of thy catel; therayenst suffred Crist ful patiently whan he was despoiled of al that he had in this lif, and that n'as but his clothes. The thridde grevance is a man to have harme in his body; that suffred Crist ful patiently in all his passion. The fourthe grevance is in outrageous labour in werkes; wher-

Tore he say that folk that make hir servants to tra-  
vaile to grevously, or out of time, as in holy dayes,  
sothly they do gret sinne: hereayenst suffered  
Crist ful patiently, and taught us patience, whan  
he bare upon his blessed sholders the crosse upon  
which he shuld suffer despitous deth. Here may  
men lerne to be patient; for certes not only Cristen  
men be patient for love of Jesu Crist, and for  
guerdon of the blisful lif that is perdurable, but  
certes the old Payenes, that never were chris-  
tened, commended and useden the vertue of  
patience.

A philosophre upon a time that wold have be-  
ten his disciple for his gret trespas, for which he  
was gretly meved, and brought a yerde to bete the  
childe, and whan this child sawe the yerde he sayd  
to his maister, What thinke ye to do? I wol bete  
thee, sayd the maister, for thy correction. For-  
soth, sayd the childe, ye ought first correct your-  
self, that have lost all your patience for the offence  
of a child. Forsooth, sayd the maister, all weping,  
~~and sayest soth~~; have thou the yerde, my dere  
sone! and correct me for min impatience. Of  
patience cometh obedience, thurgh which a man  
is obedient to Crist, and to all hem to which he  
ought to be obedient in Crist. And understand  
wel that obedience is parfite whan that a man doth  
gladly and hastily, with good herte entirely, all  
that he shuld do. Obedience generally, is to per-  
form hastily the doctrine of God and of his sove-  
raines, to which him ought to be obeisant in all  
rightwisenesse.

#### *De Accidia.*

After the sinne of wrath now wol I speke of the  
sinne of accidie or slouth; for envie blindeth the  
herte of a man, and ire troubleth a man, and ac-  
cidie maketh him hevy, thoughtful, and wrawe.  
Envie and ire maken bitternesse in herte, which  
bitternesse is mother of accidie, and benimeth him  
the love of alle goodnesse; than is accidie the an-  
guish of a trouble herte: and Seint Augustine  
sayth, It is annoye of goodnesse and annoye of  
harne. Certes this is a damnable sinne, for it  
doth wrong to Jesu Crist, in as moche as it beni-  
meth the service that men shulde do to Crist with  
alle diligence, as sayth Salomon; but accidie doth  
non swiche diligence: he doth all thing with an-  
noye, and with wrawnesse, slacknesse, and excusa-  
tion, with idelnesse and unlust; for which the  
book sayth, Accursed be he that doth the service  
of God negligently. Than is accidie enemy to  
every estate of man; for certes the estate of man  
is in three maners: either it is the estate of inno-  
cenc, as was the estate of Adam before that he fell  
into sinne, in which estate he was holden to werk,  
as in heryng and adoring of God. Another estate  
is the estate of sinful men, in which estate men  
ben holden to labour in praying to God for  
amendement of hir sinnes, and that he wold  
graunt hem to rise out of hir sinnes. Another estate  
is the estate of grace, in which estate he is holden  
to werkes of penitence; and certes to all thise

thinges is accidie enemy and contrary, for he  
loveth no besinesse at all. Now certes this foule  
sinne of accidie is eke a ful gret enemy to the live-  
hode of the body, for it ne hath no purveance  
ayenst temporel necessitee, for it forsleutheth, for-  
sluggeth, and destroieth all goodes temporel by  
recchelesnesse.

The fourth thing is that accidie is like hem that  
ben in the peine of helle because of hir slouth and  
of hir hevinesse; for they that be damned ben so  
bound that they may neyther do wel ne think  
wel. Of accidie cometh first that a man is annoi-  
ed and accombred to do any goodnesse, and that  
maketh that God hath abomination of swiche ac-  
cidie, as sayth Seint John.

Now cometh slouth, that wol not suffre no  
hardnesse ne no penance; for sothly slouth is so  
tendre and so delicat, as sayth Salomon, that he  
wol suffre non hardnesse ne penance, and therefore  
he shendeth all that he doth. Ayenst this roten  
sinne of accidie and slouth shuld men exercise  
hemselves, and use hemselves to do good werkes, and  
manly and vertuously cachen corage wel to do,  
thinking that our Lord Jesu Crist quiteth every  
good deed, be it never so lite. Usage of labour is  
a gret thing, for it maketh, as sayth Seint Ber-  
nard, the labourer to have strong armes and hard  
finewes, and slouth maketh hem feble and tendre.  
Than cometh drede for to beginne to werke any  
good werkes; for certes he that enclineth to sinne,  
him thinketh it is to gret an emprise for to under-  
take the werkes of goodnesse, and casteth in his  
herte that the circumstances of goodnesse ben so  
grevous and so chargeant for to suffre that he dare  
not undertake to do werkes of goodnesse, as sayth  
Seint Gregorie.

Now cometh wanhope, that is despeir of the  
mercy of God, that cometh somtime of to moche  
outrageous forwe, and somtime of to moche  
drede, imagining that he hath do so moche sinne  
that it wolde not availe him though he wolde re-  
pent him and forsake sinne, thurgh which despeire  
or drede he abandoneth all his herte to every ma-  
ner sinne, as sayth Seint Augustine; which damp-  
nable sinne, if it continue unto his end, it is cleped  
the sinne of the Holy Gost. This horrible sinne is  
so perilous that he that is despeired ther n<sup>is</sup> no  
felonie, ne no sinne that he douteth for to do, as  
shewed wel by Judas. Certes aboven all sinnes  
than is this sinne most displeant and most ad-  
versarie to Crist. Sothly he that despeireth him  
is like to the coward champion recreant that  
flieth withouten nede. Alas! alas! nedeles is  
he recreant and nedeles despeired. Certes the  
mercy of God is ever redy to the penitent per-  
son, and is above all his werkes. Alas! can-  
not a man bethinke him on the Gospel of Seint  
Luke, chap. xv.; wheras Crist sayth, that as wel  
shal ther be joye in heaven, upon a sinful man that  
doth penitence, as upon ninety-and-nine rightful  
men that neden no penitence? Loke further in  
the same gospel the joye and the feste of the good  
man that had lost his sone, whan his sone was re-  
toured with repentance to his fader. Can they



not remembre hem also (as sayth Seint Luke, ch. xxiii.) how that the thefe that was honged beside Jesu Crist sayd, Lord, remembre on me whan thou comest in thy regne? Forsoth, said Crist, I say to thee to-day shalt thou be with me in Paradis. Certes ther is non so horrible sinne of man that ne may in his lif be destroyed by penitence thurgh vertue of the passion and of the deth of Crist. Alas! what nedeth man than to be despayred, sith that his mercy is so redy and large? Axe and have. Than cometh sompnolence, that is, sluggy slumbring, which maketh a man hevy and dull in body and in soule, and this sinne cometh of slouth; and certes the time that by way of reson man shuld not slepe is by the morwe, but if ther were cause resonable; for sothly in the morwe tide is most covenable to a man to say his prayers, and for to think on God, and to honour God, and to yeve almesse to the poure that comen first in the name of Jesu Crist. Lo, what sayth Salomon? Who so wol by the morwe awake to seke me he shal find me. Than cometh negligence or recchelesnesse, that recketh of nothing; and though that ignorance be mother of all harmes certes negligence is the norice: negligence nedeth no force whan he shal do a thing whether he do it wel or badly.

The remedie of thise two finnes is, as sayth the wise man, that he that dredeth God spareth not to do that him ought to do; and he that loveth God he wol do diligence to plesse God by his werkes, and abandon himself with all his might wel for to do. Than cometh idelnesse, that is the yate of all harmes. An idel man is like to a place that hath no walles, theras deviles may enter on every side, or shoot at him at discoverte by temptation on every side: this idelnesse is the thurrok of all wicked and vilains thoughtes, and of all jangleles, trifles, and all ordure: certes heven is yeven to hem that will labour, and not to idel folk: also David sayth, They ne be not in the labour of men, ne they shul not ben whipped with men, that is to say, in Purgatorie: certes than semeth it they shul ben tormented with the devil in helle but if they do penance.

Than cometh the sinne that men clepen *Tarditas*, as whan a man is latered or taryed or he wol tourne to God; and certes that is a gret folie: he is like him that falleth in the dicke and wol not arise. And this vice cometh of false hope, that thinketh that he shal live long; but that hope faileth ful oft.

Than cometh Lacheffe, that is he that whan he beginneth any good werk, anon he wol forlete it and stint, as don they that have any wight to governe, and ne take of him no more kepe, anon as they find any contrary or any annoy. This ben the newe sheperdes that let hir shepe wetingly go renne to the wolf that is in the breres, and do no force of hir owen governance. Of this cometh povertie and destruction both of spirituel and temporel thinges: than cometh a maner coldnesse that frefeth all the herte of man; than cometh undevo- tion, thurgh which a man is so blont, as sayth

Seint Bernard, and hath swiche langour in his soule, that he may neyther rede ne sing in holy chirche, ne here ne thinke of no devotion, ne travaille with his hondes in no good werk, that it n'is to him unsavory and all appalled: than wexeth he sluggish and slombry, and sone wol he be wroth, and sone is he inclined to hate and to envie: than cometh the sinne of worldly sorwe, swiche as is cleped *Tristitia*, that sleth a man as sayth Seint Poule; for certes swiche sorwe werketh to the deth of the soule and body also, for therof cometh that a man is annoyed of his owen lif, wherfore swiche sorwe shorteth the lif of many a man, or that his time is come by way of kinde.

#### *Remedium Accidie*

Ayent this horrible sinne of accidie, and the braunches of he same, ther is a vertue that is called *Fortitudo* or Strength, that is, an affection thurgh which a man despiseth noyous thinges. This vertue is so mighty and so vigorous, that it dare withstand mightily, and wrastle ayent the assautes of the devil, and wisely kepe himself fro periles that ben wicked, for it enhaunfeth and enforceth the soule, right as accidie abateth and maketh it feble; for this *fortitudo* may endure with long sufferance the travailes that ben covenable.

This vertue hath many spices: the first is cleped Magnanimitie, that is to say, gret corage; for certes ther behoveth gret corage ayent accidie, lest that it swalowe the soule by the fire of sorwe, or destroy it with wanhope. Certes this vertue maketh folk to undertake hard and grevous thinges by hir owen will wisely and resonably. And for as moche as the devil fighteth ayent man more by queintesse and sleight than by strength, therefore shal a man withstand him by wit, by reson, and by discrecion. Than ben ther the vertues of feith, and hope in God and in his seintes, to acheven and accomplice the good werkes, in the which he purposeth fermely to continue. Than cometh seuretee or sikerneffe, and that is whan a man ne douteth no travaille in time coming of the good werkes that he hath begonne: than cometh magnificence, that is to say, whan a man doth and performeth gret werkes of goodnesse that he hath begonne, and that is the end why that men shuld do good werkes, for in the accomplishing of good werkes lieth the gret guerdon: than is ther constance, that is stablenesse of corage, and this shuld be in herte by stedfast feith, and in mouth, and in bering, in chere and in dede. Eke ther ben mo special remedies ayent accidie, in divers werkes, and in consideration of the peines of helle, and of the joyes of heven, and in trust of the grace of the Holy Gost, that will yeve him might to performe his good entent.

#### *De Avaritia.*

After accidie wol I speke of avarice and of covetise; of which sinne Seint Poule sayth, The rote

of ail harmes is covetise; for sothly whan the herte of man is confounded in itself and troubled, and that the soule hath lost the comfort of God, than seketh he an idel solas of worldly thinges.

Avarice, after the description of Seint Augustine, is a likerousnesse in herte to have erthly thinges. Som other folk sayn that avarice is for to purchase many erthly thinges, and nothing to yeve to hem that han nede. And understond wel that avarice standeth not only in land ne catel, but som time in science and in glorie, and in every maner outrageous thing, is avarice: and the difference betwene avarice and covetise is this; covetise is for to covet swiche thinges as thou hast not, and avarice is to withholde and kepe swiche thinges as thou hast without rightful nede. Sothly this avarice is a sinne that is ful dampnable, for all holy writ curseth it, and speket ayenst it, for it doth wrong to Jesu Crist, for it bereveth him the love that men to him owen; and tourneth it backward ayenst all reson, and maketh that the avaricious man hath more hope in his catel than in Jesu Crist, and doth more observance in keping of his tresour than he doth in the service of Jesu Crist; and therefore sayth Seint Foule, that an avaricious man is the thraldome of idolatrie.

What difference is ther betwix an idolastre and an avaricious man, but that an idolastre peraventure ne hath not but o maumet or two, and the avaricious man hath many? for certes every florein in his coffre is his maumet: and certes the sinne of maumetrie is the first that God defended in the ten commandments, as bereth witnesse, *Exod. ch. xx.*: Thou shalt have no false goddes before me, ne thou shalt make to thee no graven thing. Thus is an avaricious man that loveth his tresour before God an idolastre. And thurgh this cursed sinne of avarice and covetise cometh thise hard lordships thurgh which men ben distreined by tallages, customes, and cariages, more than hir dutee or reson is; and eke take they of hir bondmen amercementes, which might more resonably be called extortions than amercementes; of which amercementes, or ransoming of bondmen, som lordes stewardes say that it is rightful; for as moche as a cherl hath no temporel thing that it ne is his lordes as they say. But certes thise lordshippes don wrong, that bereven hir bondmen thinges that they never yave hem. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro ix.* Soth is that the condition of thraldom, and the first cause of thraldom was for sinne. *Genesis v.*

Thus may ye see that the gilt deserved thraldom, but not nature; wherfore thise lordes ne shuld not to moche glorifie hem in hir lordshippes; sith that they by naturel condition ben not lordes of hir thralles, but that thraldom came first by the deserte of sinne. And furthermore, ther as the lawe sayth that temporel goodes of bondfolk ben the goodes of hir lord, ye, that is for to understond, the goodes of the emperour, to defend hem in hir right, but not to robbe hem ne to reve hem; therefore sayth Seneca, The prudent shuld live benignely with the thral, tho that thou clepest thy thralles ben Goddes peple; for humble folk ben

Cristes frendes; they ben contubernial with the Lord thy king.

Thinke also that of swiche seed as cherles springen, of swiche seed springen lordes: as wel may the cherl be saved as the lord. The same deth that taketh the cherl swiche deth taketh the lord; wherfore I rede do right so with thy cherl as thou woldest that thy lord did with thee if thou were in his plight. Every sinful man is a cherl to sinne. I rede thee, thou lord, that thou reule thee in swiche wise that thy cherles rather love thee than drede thee. I wote wel that ther is degree above degree, as reson is, and skill is; that men do hir devoir ther as it is due; but certes extortion and despit of your underlinges is dampnable.

And furthermore, understond wel that thise conquerours or tyrantes maken ful oft thralles of hem that ben borne of as royal blood as ben they that hem conqueren. This name of Thraldom was never erst couthe til that Noe sayd that his sone Cham shuld be thral to his brethren for his sinne. What say we than of hem that pille and don extortions to holy chirche? Certes the swerd that men yeven first to a knight whan he is newe dubbed signifieth that he shuld defend holy chirche, and not robbe it ne pille it; and who so doth is traitour to Crist: as saith Seint Augustine, Tho ben the devils wolves that strangelen the shepe of Jesu Crist, and don worse than wolves; for sothly whan the wolf hath full his wombe he stinteth to strangle shepe, but sothly the pillours and destroyers of holy churches goodes ne do not so, for they ne stint never to pille. Now, as I have sayd, sith so is that sinne was first cause of thraldom, than is it thus, that at the time that all this world was in sinne, than was all this world in thraldom and in subjection: but certes sith the time of grace came, God ordeined that som folk shuld be more high in estate and in degree, and som folk more lowe, and that everich shuld be served in his estate and his degree: and therefore in som contrees ther as they ben thralles whan they have tourned hem to the feith they make hir thralles free out of thraldom; and therefore certes the lord oweth to his man that the man oweth to the lord. The Pope clepeth himself Servant of the servants of God; but for as moche as the estate of holy chirche ne might not have ben, ne the commun profite might not have be kept, ne pees ne rest in erthe, but if God had ordeined that som men have higher degree and som men lower, therefore was foveraintee ordeined to kepe and mainteine, and defend, hire underlinges or hire subjectes in reson, as ferforth as it lieth in hire power, and not to destroy hem ne confound; wherfore I say that thilke lordes that ben like wolves, that devoure the possessions or the catel of poure folk wrongfully, withouten mercy or mesure, they shul receive by the same mesure that they have measured to poure folk the mercy of Jesu Crist, but they it amende. Now cometh deceit betwixt marchant and marchant. And thou shalt understond that marchandise is in two maners, that on is bodily, and that other is gostly; that on is honest and lesul, and that other is dishonest and



unlesful. The bodily marchandise, that is lesful and honest, is this, that ther as God hath ordeined that a regne or a contree is sufficient to himself, than it is honest and lesful that of the haboundance of this contree men helpe another contree that is neddy; and therefore ther must be marchants to bring fro on contree to another hir marchandise. That other marchandise that men haunten with fraude, and trecherie, and deceit, with lesinges and false othes, is right cursed and dampnable. Spirituel marchandise is proprely simonie, that is, ententif desire to buy thing spirituel, that is, thing which apperteineth to the seintuarie of God, and to the cure of the soule. This desire, if so be that a man do his diligence to performe it, al be it that his desire ne take non effect, yet it is to him a dedly sinne, and if he be ordered he is irregular. Certes simonie is cleped of Simon Magus, that wold have bought for temporel catel the yeste that God had yeven by the Holy Gost to Seint Peter and to the apostles; and therefore understood ye, that both he that selleth and he that buyeth thinges spirituel ben called Simoniacs, be it by catel, be it by procuring, or by fleshy praier of his frendes, fleshy frendes or spirituel frendes, fleshy in two maners, as by kinrede or other frendes; sothly if they pray for him that is not worthy and able it is simonie, if he take the benefice, and if he be worthy and able ther is non. That other maner is whan man or woman prayeth for folk to advancen hem only for wicked fleshy affection, which they have unto the persons, and that is foule simonie; but certes in service, for which men yeven thinges spirituel unto hir servants, it must be understood that the service must be honest or elles not, and also that it be without bargaining, and that the person be able; for (as sayth Seint Damascen) All the finnes of the world, at regard of this sinne, ben as thing of nought, for it is the grettest sinne that may be after the sinne of Lucifer and of Anticrist; for by this sinne God forleth the churche and the soule, which he bought with his precious blood, by hem that yeven churches to hem that ben not digne, for they put in theves, that stelen the soules of Jesu Crist, and destroyen his patrimonie. By swiche undigne preestes and curates han lewed men lesse reverence of the sacraments of holy churche; and swiche yevers of churches put the children of Crist out, and put into churches the devils owen sones; they sellen the soules that lambes shuld kepe to the wolf, which strangeth hem, and therefore shall they never have part of the pasture of lambes, that is, in the blisse of heven. Now cometh hasardrie, with his apertenautes, as tables and raffles, of which cometh deceit, false othes, chidings, and all raving, blaspheming, and reneying of God, hate of his neyghbours, wast of goodes, mispending of time, and somtime manslaughter. Certes hasardours ne mow not be without gret sinne. Of avarice comen eke lesinges, theft, false witnesse, and false othes; and ye shul understande that these be gret finnes, and expresse ayenst the commandments of God, as I have sayd. False witnesse is eke

in word and in dede; in word, as for to bereve thy neyghbours good name by thy false witnesse, or bereve him his catel or his heritage by thy false witnesse, whan thou for ire, or for mede, or for envie, berest false witnesse, or accusest him, or excusest thyself falsely. Ware, ye questmongers and notaries! certes for false witnesse was Susanna in ful gret sorwe and peine, and many another mo. The sinne of theft is also expresse ayenst Goddes hest, and that in two maners, temporel and spirituel. The temporel theft is as for to take thy neyghbours catel ayenst his will, be it by force or by sleight, be it in meting or mesure, by steling, by false enditements upon him, and in borowing of thy neyghbours catel in entent never to pay it ayen, and semblable thinges. Spirituel theft is sacrilege, that is to say, hurting of holy thinges, or of thinges sacred to Crist, in two maners; by reson of the holy place, as churches or churches hawes; (for every vilains sinne that men don in swiche places may be called sacrilege, or every violence in semblable places) also they that withdrawe falsely the rentes and rightes that longe to holy churche; and plainly and generally, sacrilege is to reve holy thing fro holy place, or unholy thing out of holy place, or holy thing out of unholy place.

*Remedium Avaritie.*

Now shul ye understand that releving of avarice is misericorde and pitee largely taken. And men might axe why that misericorde and pitee are releving of avarice? Certes the avaricious man sheweth no pitee ne misericorde to the nedeful man, for he deliteth him in the keeping of his tresour, and not in the rescoring ne releving of his even Cristen; and therefore speke I first of misericorde. Than is misericorde (as sayth the philosophre) a vertue by which the corage of man is stirred by the misese of him that is misefed; upon which misericorde foloweth pitee, in performing and fulfilling of charitable werkes of mercie, helping and comforting him that is misefed. And certes this meeveth a man to misericorde of Jesu Crist, that he yave himself for our offence, and suffred deth for misericorde, and soryaf us our original finnes, and therby relefed us fro the peine of hell, and amenufed the peines of Purgatory by penitence, and yeveth us grace wel to do, and at the last the blisse of heven. The spices of misericorde ben for to lene, and eke for to yeve, and for to soryeve and relese, and for to have pitee in herte, and compassion of the mischese of his even Cristen, and also to chastise ther as nede is. Another maner of remedy ayenst avarice is resonable largesse; but sothly here behoveth the consideration of the grace of Jesu Crist, and of the temporel goodes, and also of the goodes perdurable that Jesu Crist yave to us, and to have remembrance of the deth which he shal receive, he wot not whan; and eke that he shal forgon all that he hath, save only that which he hath dispended in good werkes.



But for as moche as som folk ben unmesurable, men oughten for to avoid and eschue fool-largesse, the whiche men clepen Waste. Certes he that is fool-large he yeveth not his catel, but he leseth his his catel: sothly what thing that he yeveth for vaine glorie, as to minstrels, and to folk that bere his re- nome in the world, he hath do sinne therof, and non almesse: certes he leseth foule his good that he seketh with the yeste of his good nothing but sinne: he is like to an hors that seketh rather to drink drovy or troubled water than for to drink water of the clere well: and for as moche as they yeven ther as they shuld nat yeven, to hem appertaineth thilke malison that Crist shal yewe at the day of dome to hem that shul be dampned.

*De Gula.*

After avarice cometh glotonie, which is expresse ayenst the commandement of God. Glotonie is unmesurable appetit to ete or to drinke, or elles to do in ought to the unmesurable appetite and disordeined covetise to ete or drinke. This sinne corrupted all this world, as is wel shewed in the sinne of Adam and of Eve. Loke also what sayth Seint Poule of glotonie: Many (sayth he) gon, of which I have ofte said to you, and now I say it weping, that they ben the enemies of the crosse of Crist, of which the end is deth, and of which hir wombe is hir God and hir glorie, in confusion of hem that so serven erthly thinges. He that that is usant to this sinne of glotonie, he ne may no sinne withstand, he must be in servage of all vices, for it is the devils horde ther he hideth him and resteth. This sinne hath many spices: the first is dronkenesse, that is the horrible sepulture of mannes reson, and therefore whan a man is dronke he hath lost his reson; and this is dedly sinne; but sothly whan that a man is not wont to strong drinkes, and peraventure ne knoweth not the strength of the drinke, or hath feble- nesse in his hed, or hath travailled, thurgh which he drinketh the more, al be he sodenly caught with drinke, it is no dedely sinne but venial. The second spice of glotonie is, that the spirit of a man wexeth all trouble for dronkenesse, and bereveth a man the discretion of his wit. The thridde spice of glotonie is whan a man devoureth his mete, and hath not rightful maner of eting. The fourthe is, whan thurgh the gret abundance of his mete the humours in his body ben distempered. The fiftie is foryetfulness by to mochedrinking, for which sometime a man forgeteth by the morwe what he did over eve.

In other maner ben distinct the spices of glotonie, after Seint Gregorie. The first is for to ete before time; the second is whan a man geteth him to delicate mete or drinke; the thridde is whan men taken to moche over mesure; the fourth is curiositee, with gret entent to maken and appareille his mete; the fifth is for to ete greedily. Thise ben the five fingers of the devils hond, by which he draweth folk to the sinne.

*Remedium Gule.*

Ayenst glotonie the remedie is abstinence, as sayth Gallien; but that I holde not meritorie, if he do it only for the hele of his body. Seint Augustine wol that abstinence be don for vertue, and with patience. Abstinence (sayth he) is litel worth but if a man have good will therto, and but it be enforced by patience and charitee, and that men don it for Goddes sake, and in hope to have the blisse in heven.

The felawes of abstinence ben temperance, that holdeth the mene in alle thinges; also shame, that escheweth all dishoneste; suffisance, that seketh no riche metes ne drinkes, ne doth no force of non outrageous appareilling of mete; mesure also, that restraineth by reason the unmesurable appetit of eting; sobernesse also, that restraineth the outrage of drinke; sparing also, that restraineth the delicat ese to sit long at mete, wherfore som folk standen of hir owen will whan they ete, because they wol ete at lesse leiser.

*De Luxuria.*

After glotonie cometh lecherie, for thise two sinnes ben so nigh cosins that oft time they wol not depart. God wote this sinne is ful displefant to God, for he said himself, Do no lecherie; and therefore he putteth gret peine ayenst this sinne: for in the old lawe if a woman thrall were taken in this sinne, she shuld be beten with staves to the deth, and if she were a gentilwoman she shuld be slain with stones, and if she were a bishoppes doughter she shuld be brent by Goddes commandement. Moreover, for the sinne of lecherie God dreint all the world, and after that he brent five cities with thonder and lightning, and sanke hem down into hell.

Now let us speke than of the said stinking sinne of lecherie, that men clepen Avoutrie, that is of wedded folk, that is to say, if that on of hem be wedded or elles both. Seint John sayth, that avouterers shul ben in helle in a stakke brenning of fire and of brimstone; in fire for her lecherie, in brimstone for the stenche of hir ordure. Certes the breking of this sacrament is an horrible thing; it was made of God himself in Paradis, and confirmed by Jesu Crist, as witnesseth Seint Mathew in the Gospel; A man shal let fader and moder, and take him to his wif, and they shal be two in on flesh. This sacrament betokeneth the knitting together of Crist and holy chirche. And not only that God forbade avoutrie in dede, but also he commanded that thou shuldest not covet thy neighbours wif. In this haste (sayth Seint Augustine) is forbidden all maner covetise to do lecherie. Lo, what sayth Seint Mathew in the Gospel, that who so seeth a woman to covetise of his lust, he hath don lecherie with hire in his herte. Here may ye see that not only the dede of this sinne is forbidden, but eke the desire to don that sinne. This cursed sinne annoyeth grevously

hem that it haunt : and first to the foule, for he obligeth it to sinne and to peine of deth, which is perdurable; and to the body annoyeth it greuously also, for it drieth him and wasteth and shent him, and of his blood he maketh sacrifice to the fend of helle: it wasteth eke his catel and his substance; and certes if it be a foule thing a man to waste his catel on women, yet is it a fouler thing whan that for swiche ordure women dispenden upon men hir catel and hir substance. This sinne, as sayth the prophet, bereveth man and woman hir good fame and all hir honour; and it is ful plesant to the devil, for therby winneth he the moste partie of this wretched world: and right as a marchant deliteth him most in that chaffare which he hath most advantage and profite of, right so deliteth the fend in this ordure.

This is that other hond of the devil, with five fingers, to cacche the peple to his vilanie. The first fingre is the foole loking of the foole woman and of the foole man, that sleth right as the basilicok sleth folk by venime of his sight, for the coveitise of the eyen foloweth the coveitise of the herte. The second fingre is the vilains touching in wicked maner; and therefore sayth Salomon, that whoso toucheth and handleth a woman he fareth as the man that handleth the scorpion, which stingeth and sodenly sleth thurgh his enveniming, or as who so that toucheth warme pitch it shendeth his fingers. The thridde is foule wordes, whiche fareth like fire, which right anon brenneth the herte. The fourth finger is kissing, and trewely he were a gret foole that wold kisse the mouthe of a brenning oven or of a fourteis; and more fooles ben they that kissen in vilainie, for that mouth is the mouth of helle; and namely thise olde dotardes holoures, which wol kisse and flicker, and belie hemself though they may nought do: certes they ben like to houndes, for an hound whan he cometh by the roser or by other bushes, though so be that he may not pisse, yet wol he heve up his leg and make a contenance to pisse. And for that many men weneth that he may not sinne for no likerounesse that he doth with his wif, trewely that opinion is false; God wot a man may flee himself with his own knif and make himself drunken of his owen tonne. Certes be it wif, be it childe, or any worldly thing, that he loveth before God, it is his mannet, and he is an idolastre. A man shuld love his wif by discretion, patiently and attemprely and than is she as though it were his suster. The fifth fingre of the divels hond is the stinking dede of lecherie. Trewely the five fingers of glotonie the fend putteth in the wombe of a man, and with his five fingers of lecherie he gripeth him by the reins for to throwe him into the fourneis of helle, ther as they shul have the fire and the wormes that ever shul lasten, and weping and wayling, and sharpe hunger and thirst, and grilinesse of divels whiche shul all to-trade hem withouten respite and withouten ende. Of lecherie, as I sayd, fourden and springen divers spices; as fornication that is betwene man and woman which

ben not married, and is dedly sinne, and ayenst nature. All that is enemy and destruction to nature is ayenst nature. Parfay the reason of a man eke telleth him wel that it is dedly sinne, for as moche as God forbad lecherie; and Seint Poule yeveth hem the regne that n'is dewe to no wight but to hem that don dedely sinne. Another sinne of lecherie is, to bereven a maid of hire maidenhed, for he that so doth, certes he casteth a mayden out of the highest degree that is in this present lif, and bereveth hire thilke precious fruit that the booke clepeth the *Hundreth Fruit*; I ne can say it non otherwise in English, but in Latine it isight *Centesimus fructus*. Certes he that so doth, is the cause of many damages and vilanies mo than any man can reken: right as he somtime is cause of all damages that bestes do in the feld that breketh the hedge of the closure, thurgh which he destroyeth that may not be restored; for certes no more may maidenhed be restored than an arme that is smitten fro the body may returne ayen and wexe: she may have mercy, this wot I wel, if that she have will to do penitence, but never shal it be but that she is corrupte. And all be it so that I have spoke somewhat of avoutrie, it is good to shewe the periles that longen to avoutrie, for to eschewe that foule sinne. Avoutre, in Latine, is for to saye, approching of another mannes bedde, thurgh whiche tho that somtime were on fleshe abandone hir bodies to other persons. Of this sinne, as sayth the wise man, folow many harmes: firste breking of feith: and certes feith is the key of Cristendom, and whan that key is broken and lorne sothly Cristendom is lorne, and stont vaine and without fruit. This sinne also is theft, for theft generally is to reve a wight his thinges ayenst his will. Certes this is the foulest theft that may be whan that a woman steleth hire body from her husbond, and yeveth it to hire holour to defoule it, and steleth hire foule fro Crist and yeveth it to the devil: this is a fouler thefte than for to breke a chirche and stele away the chalice; for thise avouterers breken the temple of God spirituelly, and stelen the vessell of grace, that is, the body and the foule, for whiche Criste shal destroy hem, as sayth Seint Poule. Sothly of this theft douted gretly Joseph, whan that his lordes wif prayed him of vilainie, whan he sayde, Lo, my Lady, how my Lord hath take to me under my warde all that he hath in this world, ne nothing is out of my power but only ye, that ben his wif: and how shuld I then do this wickednesse, and sinne so horribly ayenst God and ayenst my Lord? God it forbede! Alas! all to litel is swiche trouth now yfounde! The thridde harme is the filth thurgh which they breke the commandement of God and defoule the auter of matrimonies, that is Crist; for certes in so moche as the sacrament of mariage is so noble and so digne, so moche is it the greter sinne for to breke it, for God made mariage in Paradis, in the estate of innocencie, to multiplie mankinde to the service of God, and therefore is the breking therof the more grevous, of which breking comen false heires oft time, that wrongfully occupien folkes heritages, and therfor wol Crist put hem



that of the regne of heven, that is heritage to good folk. Of this breking cometh eke oft time that folk unware wedde or sinne with hir owen kindrede; and namely thise harlottes that haunten Bordelles of thise foul women that may helikened to a commune gong wheras men purge hir ordure. What say we also of putours, that live by the horrible sinne of puterie, and constrein women to yelde hem a certain rent of her bodily putrie, ye, somtyme his owen wif or his childe, as don thise bawdes? Certes thise ben cursed sinnes. Understand also that avourie is set in the ten commandements betwene theft and manslaughter, for it is the grettest theft that may be, for it is theft of body and of soule: and it is like to homicide, for it kerveth atwo and breketh atwo hem that first were made on flesh; and therefore by the old lawe of God they shuld be slaine, but nathelesse by the lawe of Jesu Crist, that is the lawe of pitee, whan he sayd to the woman that was found in avourie, and shuld have be slain with stones, after the will of the Jewes, as was hir lawe, Go, said Jesu Crist, and have no more will to do sinne. Sothly the vengeance of avourie is awarded to the peine of helle, but if so be that it be discombered by penitence. Yet ben ther mo spices of this cursed sinne, as whan that on of hem is religious, or elles both; or of folk that ben entered into ordere, as sub-deken, deken, or preest, or hospitalers; and ever the higher that he is in ordre the greter is the sinne. The thinges that gretely agrege hir sinne is the breking of hir avow of chastitee whan they received the ordre. And moreover, soth is that holy ordre is chese of all the tresorie of God, and is a special signe and marke of chastitee, to shew that they ben joined to chastitee, which is the moste precious lif that is. And thise ordered folk ben specially tited to God, and of the special meinie of God, for which whan they don dedly sinne they ben the special traitours of God and of his peple, for they live by the peple to praye for the peple, and whiles they ben swiche traitours hir prayeres availe not to the peple. Preestes ben as angels as by the mysterie of hir dignitee; but forsoth Saint Poule saith that Sathanas transfourmeth him in an angel of light. Sothly the preest that haunteth dedly sinne he may be likened to an angel of derknesse transfourmed into an angel of light; he semeth an angel of light, but forsoth he is an angel of darknesse. Swiche preestes be the sones of Heiy, as is shewed in the Book of Kinges that they were the sones of Belial, that is the divel. Belial is to say withouten juge, and so faren they; hem thinketh that they be free, and have no juge, no more than hath a free boll, that taketh which cow that him liketh in the toun. So faren they by women, for right as on free boll is ynough for all a toun, right so is a wicked preest corruption ynough for all a parish or for all a countree. Thise preestes, as sayth the booke, ne cannot minister the mysterie of preesthood to the peple, ne they knowe not God, ne they hold hem not apaied, as saith the booke, of foddren flesh that was to hem offred, but they take by force the flesh that is raw. Certes

rightsothise shrewes ne hold hem not apaied of rosted flesh and foddren with which the peple feden hem in gret reverence, but they wol have raw flesh, as folkes wives and hir doughters. And certes thise women that consenten to hir harlotrie don gret wrong to Crist and to holy chirche, and to all halowes and to all soules, for they bereven all thise hem that shuld worship Crist and holy chirche, and pray for Cristen soules; and therefore han swiche preestes, and hir lemmans also that consenten to hir lecherie, the malison of the court Cristen til they come to amendement. The thridde spice of avourie is somtyme betwixt a man and his wif, and that is whan they take no regard in hir assembling but only to hir fleshly delit, as saith Saint Jerome, and ne reckon of nothing but that they ben assembled because they ben married: all is good ynough, as thinketh to hem. But in swiche folk hath the divel power, as said the angel Raphael to Tobie, for in hir assembling they putten Jesu Crist out of hir herte, and yeven themself to all ordure. The fourth spice is of hem that assemble with hir kindrede; or with hem that ben of an affinitee, or elles with hem with which hir fathers or hir kinred have deled in the sinne of lecherie: this sinne maketh hem like to houndes, that taken no kepe of kindrede. And certes parentele is in two maners, cyther gostly or fleshly; gostly is for to delen with hir godfribbes; for right so, as he that engendreth a child is his fleshly father, right so is his godfather his father spirituel, for which a woman may in no lesse sinne assemble with hire godfrib than with hire owen fleshly broder. The fiftie spice is that abhominable sinne of which abhominable sinne no man unneth ought to speke ne write, natheles it is openly reherfed in holy writ. This cursednesse don men and women in diverse entent and diverse maner: but though that holy writ speke of horrible sinne, certes holy writ may not be defouled, no more than the sonne that shineth on the myzene. Another sinne apperteineth to lecherie that cometh in sleping, and this sinne cometh often to hem that ben maidens, and eke to hem that ben corrupt and this sinne men call Pollution, that cometh of four maners: somtyme it cometh of languishing of the body, for the humours ben to ranke and haboundant in the body of man; somtyme of infirmitie, for feblenesse of the virtue retentif, as philiike maketh mention; somtyme of surfet of met and drinke; and somtyme of vilains thoughtes that ben enclosed in mannes minde whan he goth to slepe, which may not be withouten sinne, for whiche men must kepe hem wisely, or elles may they sinne ful grevously.

*Remedium Luxurie.*

Now cometh the remedy ayenst lecherie, and that is generally chastitee and continence; that restraineth all disordinate mevings that comen of fleshly talents, and ever the greter merite shal he have that most restraineth the wicked enchaufing



or ardure of this sinne; and this is in two maners, that is to say, chastitee in mariage and chastitee in widowhood. Now shalt thou understonde that matrimony is lesul assembling of man and woman that receiven by vertue of this sacrement the bonde thurgh whiche they may not be departed in all hir lif, that is to say, while that they live bothe. This, as sayth the book, is a ful gret sacrament; God made it (as I have said) in Paradis, and wold himself be borne in mariage; and for to halowe mariage he was at a wedding whereas he touned water into wine, whiche was the first miracle that he wrought in the erthe before his disciples. The trewe effect of mariage clenseth fornication, and replenisheth holy chirche of good lignage, for that is the ende of mariage, and chaungeth dedly sinne into venial sinne betwene hem that ben wedded, and maketh the hertes all on of hem that ben ywedded as wel as the bodies. This is veray mariage that was established by God er that sinne began, whan naturel lawe was in his right point in Paradis; and it was ordeined that o man shuld have but o woman, and o woman but o man, as sayth Seint Augustine, by many retons.

First, for mariage is figured betwix Crist and holy chirche; and another is, for a man is hed of the woman, (algate by ordinance it shuld be so) for if a woman had mo men than on than shuld she have mo hedes than on, and that were an horrible thing before God; and also a woman mighte not plesse many folk at ones; and also ther shuld never be pees ne rest among hem, for everich of hem wold axe his owen right. And furthermore, no man shulde knowe his owen engendrure, ne who shuld have his heritage, and the woman shuld be the lesse beloved for the time that she were conjunct to many men.

Now cometh how that a man shuld bere him with his wif, and namely in two thinges, that is to say, in suffrance and in reverence, and this shewed Crist whan he first made woman; for he ne made hire of the hed of Adam, for she shuld not claime to gret lordshippe, for ther as the woman hath the maistrise she maketh to moche display; ther nede non ensamples of this, the experience that we have day by day ought ynough suffice: also certes God ne made not woman of the foot of Adam, for she shuld not be holden to lowe, for she cannot patiently suffer; but God made woman of the rib of Adam, for woman shuld be felaw unto man. Man shuld bere him to his wif in feith, in trouthe, and in love, as sayth Seint Poule, that a man shuld love his wif as Crist loved holy chirche, that loved it so wel that he died for it: so shuld a man for his wif, if it were nede.

Now how that a woman shuld be subget to hire husbond that telleth Seint Peter: first in obedience; and eke, as sayth the decree, A woman that is a wif, as long as she is a wif, she hath non auctoritee to swere ne bere witnesse without leve of hire husbond, that is hire lord, algate he shuld be so by reson: she shulde also serve him in all

honestee, and ben attempre of hire array. I wete wel that they shuld set hir entent to plesse hir husbonds, but not by queintise of hir array. Seint Jerom sayth, Wives that ben appareilled in filke and precious purple ne mow not cloth hem in Jesu Crist: Seint Gregorie sayth also, that no wight seketh precious array but only for vain glorie, to be honoured the more of the peple. It is a gret folie a woman to have a faire array outward and hireself to be soule inward. A wif shuld also be mesurable in loking, in bering, and in laughing, and discrete in all hire wordes and hire dedes, and above all worldly thinges she shuide love hire husbond with all hire herte, and to him be true of hire body; so shuld every husbond eke be trewe to his wif; for sith that all the body is the husbonds so shuld hire herte be also, or elles ther is betwix hem two, as in that, no parfit mariage. Than shul men understond that for three thinges a man and his wif fleschly may assemble. The first is for the entent of engendrure of children, to the service of God, for certes that is the cause final of matrimonie: another cause is to yelde ech of hem to other the dettes of hir bodies, for neyther of hem hath power of hir owen bodie: the thridde is for to eschew lecherie and vilanie: the fourth is for soth dedly sinne. As to the first, it is meritorie; the second also, for, as sayth the decree, She hath merite of chastitee that yeldeth to hire husbond the dette of hire body, ye, though it be ayenst hire liking and the lust of hire herte. The thridde maner is venial sinne. Trewely scarcely may any of thise be without venial sinne for the corruption and for the delit therof. The fourth maner is for to understond, if the assemble only for amorous love and for non of the foresaid causes, but for to accomplish hir brenning delit, they recke not how oft, sothly it is dedly sinne; and yet with sorwe som folk wol peine hem more to do than to hir appetit suffice.

The second maner of chastitee is for to be a clene widow, and eschue the embracing of a man, and desire the embracing of Jesu Crist. Thise ben tho that have ben wives, and have forgon hir husbonds, and eke women that have don lecherie, and ben releved by penance: and certes if that a wif could kepe hire all chast, by licence of hire husbond, so that she yeve no cause ne non occasion that he agilted, it were to hire a grette merite. This maner of women, that observen chastitee, must be clene in herte as wel as in body, and in thought, and mesurable in clothing and in contenance, abstinent in eting and drinking, in speking, and in dede, and than is she the vessel or the boiste of the blessed Magdeleine, that fulfilseth holy chirche of good odour. The thridde maner of chastitee is virginitee; and it behoveth that she be holy in herte and clene of body; than is she the spouse of Jesu Crist, and she is the lif of angels; she is the preising of this world, and she is as thise martirs in egalitee; she hath in hire that tongue may not telle, ne herte thinke. Virginitee bare our Lord Jesu Crist, and virgin was himself.

Another remedie against lecherie is specially to withdrawe swiche thinges as yeven occasion to that vilanie, as ese, eting, and drinking; for certes whan the pot boileth strongly the best remedie is to withdrawe the fire. Sleeping long in gret quiet is also a gret nourice to lecherie.

Another remedie ayenst lecherie is, that a man or a woman eschewe the compaignie of hem by which he douteth to be tempted; for all be it so that the dede be withstonden, yet is ther gret temptation. Sothly a white wall, although it ne brenne not fully with stiking of a candle, yet is the wall black of the leyte. Ful oft time I rede that no man trust in his owen perfection but he be stronger than Sampson, or holier than David, or wiser than Salomon.

Now after that I have declared you as I can of the Seven Dedly Sinnes, and som of hir braunches, and the remedies, sothly if I coude I wold tell you the ten commandements; but so high doctrine I lete to divines: natheles I hope to God they ben touched in this tretise everich of hem alle.

Now for as moche as the second part of penitence stont in confession of mouth, as I began in the first chapitre, I say Seint Augustine saith, Sinne is every word and every dede, and all that men covetein, ayenst the law of Jesu Crist; and this is for to sinne in herte, in mouth, and in dede, by the five wittes, which ben sight, hering, smelling, tasting or favouring, and feling. Now is it good to understond the circumstances that agregen moche every sinne. Thou shalt consider what thou art that dost the sinne, whether thou be male or female, yonge or olde, gentil or thrall, free or servant, hole or sike, wedded or single, ordered or unordered, wise or foole, clerk or seculer, if she be of thy kinred bodily or gostly or non, if any of thy kinred have sinned with hire or no, and many mo thinges.

Another circumstance is this, whether it be don in fornication or in advourtrie or no, in maner of homicide or non, a horrible gret sinne or smal, and how long thou hast continued in sinne. The thridde circumstance is the place ther thou hast don sinne, whether in other meenes houses or in thin owen, in feld, in chirche, or in church-hawe, in chirche dedicate or non; for if the chirche be halowed, and man or woman spille his kinde within that place, by way of sinne or by wicked temptation, the chirche were enterdited til it were reconciled by the bishop; and if it were a preeft that did swiche vilanie, the terme of all his lif he shuld no more sing masse; and if he did he shuld do dedly sinne at every time that he so song masse. The fourthe circumstance is by whiche mediatours, as by messagers, or for enticement, or for consentment, to bere compaignie with felawship, for many a wretche for to bere felawship wol go to the divel of helle; wherfore they that eggen or consenten to the sinne ben partners of the sinne, and of the dampnation of the sinner. The fift circumstance is, how many times that he hath sinned, if it be in his minde, and how oft he hath fallen; for he that oft falleth

in sinne he despiseth the mercy of God, and encrefeth his sinne, and is unkind to Crist, and he waxeth the more feble to withstand sinne, and sinneth the more lightly, and the later ariseth, and is more slow to shrive him, and namely to him that hath ben his confessour; for which that folk, whan they fall ayen to hir old folies, either they forleten hir old confessour al utterly, or elles they departen hir shrift in divers places: but sothly swiche departed shrift deserveth no mercie of God for hir sinnes. The sixte circumstance is, why that a man sinneth, as by what temptation, and if himself procure thilke temptation, or by exciting of other folk, or if he sinne with a woman by force or by hire owen assent, or if the woman maugre hire hed have ben enforced or non; this shal she tel, and wheder it were for covetise or povertie, and if it were by hire procuring or non, and swiche other thinges. The seventh circumstance is, in what maner he hath don his sinne, or how that she hath suffered that folk have don to hire: and the same shal the man tell plainly, with all the circumstances, and wheder he hath sinned with commun bordel women or non, or don his sinne in holy times or non, in fasting times or non, or before his shrift, or after his later shrift, and hath peraventure broken therby his penance enjoined, by whos helpe or whos conseil, by forcerie or craste; all must be told. All thise thinges, after that they ben gret or smale, engreggen the conscience of man or woman. And eke the preeft that is thy juge may the better be avised of his judgement in yeving of penance, and that shal be after thy contrition: for understond wel that after the time that a man hath defouled his baptism by sinne, if he wol come to salvation, ther is non other way but by penance, and shrifte, and satisfaction; and namely by tho two, if ther be a confessour to whom he may shrive him, and that he first be veray contrite and repentant, and the thridde if he have lif to performe it.

Than shal a man loke and consider that if he wol make a trewe and a profitable confession ther must be foure conditions. First, it must be in sorowful bitternesse of herte, as sayth the King Ezechiel to God, I wol remember all the yeres of my lif in the bitternesse of my herte. This condition of bitternesse hath five signes; the first is that confession must be shamefast, not for to covern ne hide his sinne, but for he hath agilted his God and defouled his soule: and hereof sayth Seint Augustin, The herte travailleth for shame of his sinne, and for he hath gret shamefastnesse he is digne to have gret mercie of God. Swiche was the confessour of the Publican that wold not heve up his eyen to heaven, for he had offended God of heaven, for which shamefastnesse he had anon the mercy of God; and therefore saith Seint Augustine, that swiche shamefast folk ben next foryevnesse and mercy. Another signe is humilitee in confession, of whiche sayth Seint Peter, Humbleth you under the might of God; the hond of God is mighty in confession, for therby God foryeveth thee thy sinnes, for he alone hath the power. And

this humilitee shal be in herte and in signe outward; for right as he hath humilitee to God in his herte, right so shuld he humble his body outward to the preeft that sitteth in Goddes place; for which in no maner, sith that Crist is soveraine, and the preeft mene and mediatour betwixt Crist and the sinner, and the sinner is last by way of reson, than shuld not the sinner sitte as high as his confessour, but knele before him or at his feet, but if maladie distrouble it; for he shal not take kepe who sitteth ther, but in whos place he sitteth. A man that hath trespassed to a lord, and cometh for to axe mercie and maken his accorde, and setteth him down anon by the lord, men wolde holde him outrageous, and not worthy so fone for to have remission ne mercy. The thridde signe is, that the shrift shuld be ful of teres, if men mowen wepe, and if they mowe not wepe with hir bodily eyer, than let hem wepe in hir herte: swiche was the confession of Seint Peter, for after that he had forsake Jesu Crist he went out and wept ful bitterly. The fourth signe is that he ne lete not for shame to shrive him and shewe his confession; swiche was the confession of Magdeleine, that ne spared for no shame of hem that weren at the feste to go to our Lord Jesu Crist, and bekнове to him hire finnes. The fifthe signe is, that a man or a woman be obeisant to receive the penance that hem is enjoined, for certes Jesu Crist for the gilt of man was obedient to the deth.

The second condition of veray confession is, that it be hastily don; for certes if a man hadde a dedly wound, ever the lenger that he taried to warishe himself the more wold it corrupt and haste him to his deth, and also the wound wol be the werse for to hele. And right so fareth sinne that long time is in a man unshewed: certes a man ought hastily to shewe his sinne for many causes; as for drede of deth, that cometh oft sodenly, and is in no certain what time it shal be, ne in what place; and eke the drenching of o sinne draweth in another; and also the lenger that he tarieth, the ferther is he fro Crist; and if he abide to his last day scarcely may he shrive him, or remembre him of his finnes, or repent him for the grevous maladie of his deth. And for as moche as he ne hath in his lif herkened Jesu Crist whan he hath spoken unto him, he shal crie unto our Lord at his last day, and scarcely wol he herken him. And understonde that this condition muste have foure thinges; first that the shrift be purveyed afore, and avised, for wicked hast doth not profite; and that a man con shrive him of his finnes, be it of pride, or envie, and so forth, with the spices and circumstances, and that he have comprehended in his minde the nombre and the gretnesse of his finnes, and how longe he hath lien in sinne, and eke that he be contrite for his finnes, and be in stedfast purpose (by the grace of God) never este to fall into sinne; and also that he drede and countrewaite himself that he flee the occasions of sinne to which he is inclined: also thou shalt shrive thee of all thy finnes to o man, and not parcelmele to o man and parcelmele to another; that is to

understonde, in entent to depart thy confession for shame or drede, for it is but strangling of thy soule; for certes Jesu Crist is entierly all good, in him is non imperfection, and therefore either he foryevech all parfitly or elles never a dele. I say not that if thou be assigned to thy penitencer for certain sinne that thou art bounde to shewe him all the remenant of thy finnes of whiche thou hast ben shriven of thy curat but if it like thee of thyn humilitee; this is no departing of shrift: ne I say not, ther as I speke of division of confession, that if thou have licence to shrive thee to a discrete and an honest preeft, and wher thee liketh, and by the licence of thy curat, that thou ne mayest wel shrive thee to him of all thy finnes: but lete no blot be behind; let no sinne be untolde as fer as thou hast remembrance. And whan thou shalt be shriven of thy curat tell him eke all the finnes that thou hast don sith thou were laste shriven: this is no wicked entente of division of shrift.

Also the veray shrift axeth certain conditions. First, that thou shrive thee by thy free will, not constrained, ne for shame of folk, ne for maladie, or swiche other thinges, for it is reson that he that trespasseth by his free will, that by his free will he confesse his trespas, and that non other man telle his sinne but himself; ne he shal not nay ne deny his sinne, ne wrath him ayenst the preeft for amonesting him to lete his sinne. The second condition is, that thy shrift be lawful, that is to say, that thou that shrivest thee, and eke the preeft that hereth thy confession, be veraily in the feith of holy chirche, and that a man ne be not dispeired of the mercie of Jesu Crist, as Cain and Judas were. And eke a man muste accuse himself of his owen trespas, and not another; but he shal blame and wite himselfe of his owen malice and of his sinne, and non other: but natheles if that another man be encheson or enticer of his sinne, or the estate of the person be swiche by which his sinne is aggregated, or elles that he may not plainly shrive him but he tell the person with whiche he hath sinned, than may he tell, so that his entent ne be not to backbite the person, but only to declare his confession.

Thou ne shalt not also make no lesinges in thy confession for humilitee, peradventure to say that thou hast committed and don swiche finnes of which that thou ne were never gilt; for Seint Augustine sayth, If that thou, because of thin humilitee, makest a lesing on thyself, though thou were not in sinne before yet arte thou than in sinne thurgh thy lesing. Thou must also shew thy sinne by thy propre mouth, but thou be dombe, and not by no letter; for thou that hast don the sinne thou shalt have the shame of the confession. Thou shalt not eke peint thy confession with faire and subtil wordes, to cover the more thy sinne, for than begilest thou thyself and not the preeft: thou must telle it plainly, be it never so foule ne so horrible. Thou shalt eke shrive thee to a preeft that is discrete to conseille thee; and eke thou shalt not shrive thee for vaine glorie, ne for ypocrisie, ne for no cause, but only for the doute of Jesu Crist and



the hele of thy soule. Thou shalt not eke renne to the preest al sodenly to tell him lightly thy sinne, as who telleth a jape or a tale, but avisedly and with good devotion; and generally shrive thee ofte: if thou ofte fall, ofte arise by confession. And though thou shrive thee often than ones of sinne which thou hast be shriven of it is more merite; and, as sayth Seint Augustine, Thou shalt have the more lightly relese and grace of God both of sinne and of paine. And certes ones a yere at the lest way it is lawful to be houseled, for sothely ones a yere all things in the erthe renewen.

*Explicit secunda pars penitentiae, et sequitur tertia pars.*

Now have I told you of veray confession, that is the seconde part of penitence; the thridde part is satisfacion, and that stont most generally in almesse dede and in bodily peine. Now ben ther three maner of almesse; contrition of herte, wher a man offreth himself to God; another is to have pitye of the defaute of his neighbour; and the thridde is in yeving of good conseil gostly and bodily wher as men have nede, and namely in sustentance of mannes food. And take kepe that a man hath nede of thise thinges generally; he hath nede of food, of clothing, and of herberow, he hath nede of charitable conseilling and visiting in prison and in maladie, and sepulture of his ded body. And if thou maieft not visite the nedeful in prison in thy person, visite hem with thy message and thy yestes: thise ben generally the almesses and werkes of charitee of hem that have temporel riches or discretion in conseilling. Of thise werkes shalt thou heren at the day of dome.

This almesse shuldest thou do of thy propre thinges, and hastily and prively, if thou mayest; but natheles if thou mayest not do it prively thou shalt not forbere to do almesse though men see it, so that it be not don for thanke of the world, but only to have thanke of Jesu Crist; for, as witneseth Seint Mathewe, *chap. v.* A citee may not be hid that is sette on a mountaine, ne men light not a lanterne to put it under a bushell, but setten it upon a candlesticke, to lighten the men in the hous: right so shal your light lighten before men, that they mowe see your good werkes, and glorifie your fader that is in heven.

Now as for to speke of bodily peine, it stont in praiers, in waking, in fasting, and in vertuous teching. Of orisons ye shul understond, that orisons or prayers is to say a pitous will of herte, that setteth it in God, and expresth it by word outward to remove harmes, and to have thinges spirituel and perdurable, and somtime temporel thinges; of which orisons certes in the orison of the *Pater noster* hath Jesu Crist enclosed most thinges: certes it is privileged of three thinges in his dignitee, for whiche it is more digne than any other prayer, for that Jesu Crist himself made it; and it is short, for it shuld be coude the more lightly, and to hold it the more esie in herte, and helpe himself the often with this orison, and for a man shuld be the lesse wery to say it, and for a man may not excuse

him to lerne it, it is so sherte and so esie, and for it comprehendeth in himself all good prayers. The exposition of this holy prayer, that is so excellent and so digne, I betake to the maisters of theologie; save thus moche wel I say, that whan thou prayest that God shuld foryeve thee thy gyltes as thou foryvest hem that have agilted thee, be wel ware that thou be not out of charitee. This holy orison ameneth eke venial sinne, and therefore it apperteineth specially to penitence.

This prayer must be trewely sayd, and in perfect feith, and that men prayen to God ordonately, discretely, and devoutly: and alway a man shal put his will to be subgette to the will of God. This orison must eke be sayd with gret humbleste, and ful pure and honestly, and not to the annoyance of any man or woman: it must eke be continued with werkes of charitee: it availeth eke ayenst the vices of the soule; for, as sayth Seint Jerome, By fasting ben saved the vices of the flesh, and by prayer the vices of the soule.

After this thou shalt understonde that bodily peine stont in waking; for Jesu Crist sayth, *Wake ye and pray yethat yene enter into wicked temptation.* Ye shul understond also that fasting stont in three thinges, in forbering of bodily mete and drinke, in forbering of worldly jolitee, and in forbering of dedly sinne; this is to say, that a man shal kepe him fro dedly sinne with all his might.

And thou shalt understond also that God ordained fasting, and to fasting appertaineth foure thinges; largenesse to poure folk, gladnesse of herte spirituel, not to be angry ne annoied, ne grutch for he fasteth, and also resonable honore for to ete by mesure, that is to say, a man shal not ete in untime, ne sit the longer at the table for he fasteth.

Than shalt thou understonde that bodily peine stont in discipline, or teching by word or by writing, or by ensample, also in wering of here or of flamin, or of habergeons, on hir naked flesh for Cristes sake. But ware thee wel that swiche maner penances ne make not thin herte bitter or angry, ne annoied of thyself, for better is to cast away thin here, than to cast away the swetnesse of our Lord Jesu Crist; and therefore sayth Seint Poule, Clothe you as they that ben chosen of God in herte, of misericorde, debonairtee, suffrance, and swiche maner of clothing, of which Jesu Crist is more plesed than with the heres or habergeons.

Than is discipline eke in knocking of thy brest, in scourging with yerdes, in kneeling, in tribulation, in suffering patiently wronges that ben don to thee, and eke in patient suffering of maladies, or lesing of worldly cattle, or wif, or child, or other friendes.

Than shalt thou understond which thinges distourben penance, and this is in foure maners, that is, drede, shame, hope, and wanhope, that is, desperation. And for to speke first of drede; for which he weneth that he may suffer no penance, ther ayenst is remedie for to thinke that bodily penance is but short, and litle at regard of

the peine of helle, that is so cruel and so long, that it lasteth withouten ende.

Now ayenst the shame that a man hath to shrive him, and namely thise ipocrites, that wold be holden so parfit that they have no nede to shrive hem, ayenst that shame shuld a man thinke, that by way of reson he that hath not ben ashamed to do foule thinges, certes him ought not be ashamed to do faire thinges, and that is confessions. A man shuld also think that God seeth and knoweth al his thoughtes, and al his werkes, and to him may nothing be hid ne covered. Men shuld eke remembre hem of the shame that is to come at the day of dome to hem that ben not penitent in this present lif; for all the creatures in heven and in erthe, and in helle, shal see apertly all that they Aiden in this world.

Now for to speke of the hope of hem that ben so negligent and slowe to shrive hem, that stondeth in two maners; that on is that he hopeth for to live long, and for to purchase moche riches for his delit, and than he wol shrive him, and, as he sayth, he may, as him semeth, than timely ynough come to shrift; another is the surquedrie that he hath in Cristes mercie. Ayenst the first vice he shal thinke that our lif is in no sikernesse, and eke that all the riches in this world ben in aventure, and passen as a shadowe on a wall; and as sayth Seint Gregorie, that it appertaineth to the gret rightwisnesse of God that never shal the peine stinte of hem that never wold withdrawe hem from sinne, his thanks, but ever continue in sinne. For thilke perpetual will to don sinne shal they have perpetual peine.

Wanhope is in two maners; the first wanhope is in the mercie of God; that other is that they think that they ne might not long persevere in goodnesse. The first wanhope cometh of that, he demeth that he hath sinned so gretly and so oft, and so long lyn in sinne, that he shal not be saved. Certes ayenst that cursed wanhope shulde he thinke that the passion of Jesu Crist is more stronge for to unbinde than sinne is strong for to binde. Ayenst the second wanhope he shal thinke that as often as he falleth he may arisen again by penitence; and though he never so longe hath lyn in sinne, the mercie of Crist is alway redy to receive him to mercie. Ayenst that wanhope that he demeth he shuld not long persevere in goodnesse he shal think, that the feblenesse of the devil may nothing do but if men wol suffre him; and eke he shal have strength of the helpe of Jesu Crist, and of all his chirche, and of the protection of angels, if him list.

Than shal men understonde what is the fruit of penance; and after the wordes of Jesu Crist it is an endles blisse of heven, ther joye hath no con-

trariostee of wo ne grevance; ther all harmes ben passed of this present lif: ther as is sikernesse from the peines of helle; ther as is the blisful compaignie that rejoycen hem ever mo everich of others joye; ther as the body of man, that whilom was soule and derke, is more clere than the sonne; ther as the body that whilom was sike and freele, feble and mortal, is immortal, and so strong and so hole, that ther ne may nothing appeire it; ther as is neither hunger, ne thurst, ne cold; but every soule replenished with the sight of the Garfit knowing of God. This blisful regne mowe men purchase by povertie spirituel, and the glory by lowlinesse, the plentee of joye by honger and thirst, and the reste by travaile, and the lif by deth and mortification of sinne: to which life he us bring that bought us with his precious blood! Amen.

Now preye I to hem alle that herken this litel treatise or reden it, that if ther be any thing in it that liketh hem that therof they thanken our Lord Jesu Crist, of whom procedeth alle witte and all godenesse; and if ther be any thing that displeseth hem, I preye hem also that they asette it to the defaute of myn unkonning, and not to my wille, that wold sayn have seyde better if i hadde had koning; for oure boke seyth, All that is written is written for oure doctrine, and that is myn entente: wherfore I beseeke you mekely, for the mercie of God, that ye preye for me that Crist have mercie of me and foryeve me my giltes, [and namely of myn Translations and enditinges of worldly vanitees, the which I revoke in my retractions; as The Boke of Troilus, The Boke also of Fame, The Boke of The Five-and-twenty Ladies, The Boke of The Duchesse, The Boke of Seint Valentines Day of the Parlement of Briddes, The Tales of Canterbury, thilke that sounen unto sinne, The Boke of the Leon, and many an other Bokes, if they were in my remembraunce, and many a Song, and many a lecherous Lay, Crist of his grete mercie foryeve me the sinne! but of The translation of Boes of Consolation, and other Bokes of Legendes of Saints, and of Omelies, and Moralite, and Devotion, that thanke I oure Lord Jesu Crist and his blisful-mother, and alle the seintes in heven, beseeeking hem that they fro hensforth unto my lyves ende sende me grace to bewaile my giltes, and to stodien to the savation of my soule,] and graunte me grace, of veray penance, confession and satisfaction to don in this present lif, thorgh the benigne grace of him that is King of kinges and Preste of alle prestes, that bought us with the precious blode of his herte, so that I mot ben on of hem atte the laste day of dome that shullen be saved; *Qui cum Deo patre et Spiritu sancto vivis et regnas Deus per omnia secula. Amen.*

## THE COKE'S TALE OF GAMELYN.

Now lithin and listinith, and  
Herkinith you aright,  
And ye shullin her me tell  
You of a doughti knight.

Sir Johan of Boundis clepid was  
This ilke knight's name;  
Wele coudin he of noriture,  
And eke of mochil game.

Thre sonnis this knight had, and with  
His bodi he them wan;  
The eldest was a moche shrew,  
And son he began.

His brotherin lov'd thir fadir,  
And of him were agast;  
Th' eldist deserv'd his fadir's curse,  
And had it at the last.

The gode knight his fadir did  
Live so long and yore,  
That Deth was comen him unto,  
And handlid him full sore.

The gode knight yearid moch,  
Sore like ther as he lay,  
How that his childerin shuld  
Lyvin after his day.

He haddè ben widè where, but  
Noon husbond he was;  
Allè the londe which that he had  
It was veray purchas;

And fayn he woldè that it were  
Dressid among them all,  
That everich of them had his part  
As it mightè befall.

Tho sent he into the contrè  
Aftir wifè knightis,  
To helpen dele his londis, and  
Dressin them to rightis.

He sent them word by letteris  
That they shulde hye blyve  
If that they wol speken with him  
While that he was on live.

Sone as those knightis herden how  
Thus seke that he lay,  
Tho haddè they no mannir rest  
Nothir by night nor day

Tyll that they comin unto him,  
Ther as he layd him still,  
Upon his deth's bedde for to  
Abidin Godd's will.

Thus then saidin the gode knight,  
Sek ther as he lay,  
Lordis, I warnè you forsothe,  
Withoutin any nay,

I may not lengir liven herè  
In this sorrowful stound,  
For thorough Godd's will supreme  
Dethe drawith me to ground.

Ther ne was no one of them alle,  
That herdin him aright,  
That thei ne haddè mochil routh  
Upon that ilke knight;

And seide, Sir, for Godd's love  
Ne dismayen you nought,  
God may don botè of balè  
Which that is now ywrought.

Then answerid them the gode knight,  
Sike there as he lay,  
Botè of balè God may fend,  
I wote it is no nay.

But I besekè you knightis,  
Al for the love of me,  
Goith and dressith my londis  
Among my sonis thre.

And, frepdis, for the love of God  
Delith them nat amys,  
And forgettith not Gamelyn,  
My yongè son that is.

Takith hedè unto that one  
As wel as to that other;  
Seldome ye seine any heir  
That helpè woll his brother.

Tho lettin they the knighte liggin  
Which that was not in hele,  
And in thei wentin to counsaile  
His londis for to dele;

For to delin them al too on  
That was ther only thought,  
And for that Gamelyn yongist was  
He shuldè havin nought.

Al the londè which that ther was  
They delten it in two,  
And letè Gamelyn the yonge  
Withouten londè go.

And evèrich of them seiden  
Til othir fullè loude,  
His bretherin mowe give him londe  
Whan that he godis loude.



Whan they had delid the londis  
After their owne will,  
Tho camin they unto the knight  
Ther as he lay full still,

And toldin unto him anon  
How that they hadd ywrought,  
And the knight there as he seke lay  
Ylikid it right nought.

Then seide the knight angrily,  
I fware by Seint Martyn  
For all that which ye have ydone  
Yet is the londè myn.

For Godd's love, my neighbouris,  
Standeith ye allè still,  
And I woll delin my londè  
After myn ownè will.

Johan myn eldist sone shall  
Yhavè plowis five,  
That was my fadir's heritage  
While that he was on live;

And middillist sone shall  
Five plowis have of lond  
That I holpe for to gettin  
With myn own rightè hond;

And all myn othir purchasis  
Of landis and of ledes,  
That I bequethè Gamelyn,  
And alle my gode stedes.

And I besèke you, gode men,  
That lawis con of lond,  
For Gamelyn's love that  
Thus my bequest may stond.

Thus delid hath the gode knighte  
His londè be his dai,  
Right upon his deth's beddè,  
Sore like ther as he lay:

And sone aftirwerdis he  
Lay as a stonè still,  
And dyid whan the tyme came,  
As it was Crist's will.

Anon aftir that he was dede,  
And undir grafs ygrave,  
Tho sone the eldir brothir  
Begyld the yongè knave.

He token into his hondis  
His londis and his lede,  
And also Gamelyn himself  
To clothin and to fede.

He clothid him and feddè him  
Evil and ekè wroth,  
And letin his londis for fare,  
And als his housis both;

His parkis eke, and his wodis,  
And diddè nothyng wel,  
And fithin he it aboughtè  
On his own feire fell.

So longè tyme was Gamelyn  
In his brother's Hall,  
For the strengist of godè will  
They doutidin him all.

There ne was none wight in that place,  
Nothir yongè ne olde,  
That woldè wrathin Gamelyn

Gamelyn stode upon a day  
In his brother's yerde,  
And he began with his hondè  
To handilin his berde.

He thoughtin upon his londis,  
That layin longe unfawe,  
And also of his feire okis,  
That dounè were ydrawe.

His parkis werin al brokin,  
And al his deir revèd;  
Of allè his gode stedis noon  
Was there with him belevèd;

His housis werein unhelid  
And full evilly dight;  
Tho thought this yongè Gamelyn  
It wentè not aright.

After camè his brothir in  
Ywalkyng statelich thare,  
And seidè unto Gamelyn,  
What? is our metè yare?

Tho Gamelyn ywrothid hym,  
And swore by Godd's boke,  
Thou shalt y go bake, luke, thy self;  
I wol not be thy coke.

How, brothir Gamelyn, quod he,  
Thus answerist me thou?  
Thou spakist nevir soche a word  
Yet as thou doist now.

By my faith, seidè Gamelyn,  
Now me it thinkith nede;  
Of all the harmis that I have.  
I nevir yit toke hede.

My parkis ben y brokin, and  
My deir ben yrevèd;  
Of myn harnis and my stedis  
No, it is there me belevèd.

Al that my fadir me bequethe  
Al goith now to shame,  
And therefore have thou Godd's curse,  
Brothir John by thy name.

Than thus bespakin his brothir,  
That rapè was of vees,  
Stondith stille, thou gadiling,  
And holdith right thy pees:

Thou shaltè ben ful faign to have  
Thy metè and thy wede.  
What spekest thou, thou gadiling,  
Of lond othir of lede?

Then seidè to him Gamelyn,  
The childè that was yinge,  
Christ's curse mote he havin  
That clepith me Gadlyng.

I am no wors gadlyng than the,  
Parde ne no wors wight,  
But born I was of a lady,  
And gottin of a knyght.

Ne durst he not to Gamelyn  
Not oo fote ferthir go,  
But clepid to him his meinè,  
And seidè to them tho;

Goith and betith wele this boy,  
And ravith him his wit,  
And let him lere another time

Then seid the chyld, yong Gamelyn,

Christ's curse mote thou havin  
What? brother art thou myn,

And if that I shal algatis  
Y betin be anon,  
Christ's curse mote thou havin  
But that thou be that one.

And right anon his brothir did,  
In that his gret hete,  
Makyn his meyn fett stavis,  
This Gamelyn to bete.

Whan everich of them had a staff  
Into his hond nomin,  
Gamelyn was aware tho,  
He forsaugh them comin.

Tho Gamelyn saugh them comin  
He lokid ovir all,  
And was ware of a pestil  
Stodè undir the wall.

And Gamelyn was fully light,  
And thidir gan he lepe,  
And droffe all his brother's men  
Right sone on an hepe.

He lokid like a wild lion,  
And laidin on gode wone;  
Tho whan his brothir seye that  
He beganne to gonne.

He sleigh up untill a lostè,  
And shet the dor fast:  
Thus Gamelyn with his pestil  
Mad them all agast.

Some for Gamelyn's love,  
And some for his envie,  
Alle withdrawnen them to halves  
Tho he began to pleie:

What now? seide Gamelyn; brothir,  
Evil motè ye the;  
Wollè ye beginnin contek  
And than so sone fle?

Gamelyn fought his brothir tho  
Whithir he was yflowe,  
And saugh where that he lokid out  
At a solere windowe.

Brothir, tho seide Gamelyn,  
Comith a litil nere,  
And I wol techin the a plaic  
Attè the bokillere.

His brothir to hym answerid,  
And swore by Seint Richere,  
While the pestil is in thyn honde  
I woll comin no nere.

Brothir, I woll makin the pece,  
I swere by Crist's ore;  
Castith away the pestil tho,  
And wrathè the na more.

I mot nedis, seide Gamelyn,  
Wrathè me at onys,  
For that thou woldist make thy men  
To breikin my bonis.

Ne had I haddin meyn and might,  
In myn ownè twey armes.

To Gamelyn tho seidin his  
Brothir; Be thou not wrothe,  
For to sein the havin harme  
Me werin rightè lothe.

I ne did it not, my brothir,  
But right for a foning,  
For to lokin if thou were strong,  
And art so very ying.

Come adoun then to me, quod he,  
And graunte me my bone,  
Of oo thing I wol askin the,  
And we shul saughtè sone.

Adoun then camin his brothir,  
That sikill was and fell,  
And was swithè right sore aghast  
Of that ilkè pestil.

He seide, Brothir Gamelyn;  
Askè me now thy bone,  
And loke that you me blame, but  
I graunte it full sone.

Tho seiden yongè Gamelyn;  
Brothir mynè, I wils  
And if we shullè ben at one  
Thou must me grauntè this:

Al that my fadir me bequethe,  
While that he was on live,  
Thou mustè do me it to have,  
If that we shul not strive.

That thou shalt have, Gamelyn,  
I swere by Crist's ore,  
Al that thy fadir the bequethe,  
Though thou woldist have more.

Thy londè, that now lyith lie,  
Full well it shall be sowe,  
And thyne housis yraisid up  
That now ben layd full lowe.

Thus seide the knight to Gamelyn,  
But only with his mouth,  
And thoughtè but of fallness,  
As he right welè couth.

The knightè thoughtin on traifon,  
But Gamelyn on noon,  
And went and kissid his brothir,  
And then they were at oon.

Alas for yongè Gamelyn!  
Nothing at all he wist  
With swichè falsè traifon  
His brothir hath him kist.

Lithinith and lestinith, and  
Holdith you stille your tonge,  
And ye shull herin straunge talking  
Of Gamelyn the yonge.

There happid to be there beside  
Tryid a wraistling,  
And therefore there was yfettin  
A ram and als a ring.

And Gamelyn was in a will  
To wendè thereunto,  
For to previn his righte, and se  
What that he couthè do.

Now brothir mynè, quod Gamelyn,  
By holie Seint Richere  
Thou mustè nedis lene to mehtè

That is freshe to the sporis,  
Upon him for to ride;  
I mustin on an errand go  
A litil here beside.

Be God, seide his brothir tho,  
Of stedis in my stall  
Goith and chosith the the best,  
And sparith none of alle,  
Of stedis or of courseris,  
That stondith hem beside,  
And tellith me, my gode brothir,  
Whithur thou wilt ride.

Herè besidis, brothir, is  
Y cryid a wrastring,  
And thereforè shallè ben y sett  
A ram and als a ring.

Mochè worship it were sothly,  
Brothir, unto us all  
Might I the ram and als the ring  
Bringin home to the Hall.

A stedè there was sadilid,  
Smarth was it and eke flete;  
Gamelyn diddin a peire of  
Sporis fast on his fete.

He sat his fote in the stirrop,  
The stedè he bestrode,  
And towards the wrastring  
The yongè childè rode.

Tho Gamelyn the yongè was  
Riddin out at the gate,  
The falsè knight his own brothir  
Lokkid it astir thate.

And he besoughtin Jesu Crist,  
That is of hevin king,  
That he mightè brekin his nek  
In that ilk wrastring.

Assone as Gamelyn cam there  
The wrastring placè was  
He lightid down of the stedè  
And stodin on the gras.

And ther he herd a frankelyn  
Weloway for to sing,  
And beganin all bittirly  
His handis for to wring.

Gode man, seide Gamelyn,  
Why makist thou this fare? +  
Is ther no man that may you help  
Out of this nicè care?

Alas! seide this frankelyn,  
That evir I was bore!  
For tweie stalworthè sonis  
I wene I have forlore.

A champion is in the place  
That has wroughtin me sorow,  
For he hath slayn my too sonis  
But if that God them borrow.

I woldè givin ten poundis,  
Be Jesu Crist, and more,  
With the nonis I fond a man  
To handilin him fore.

Gode man, seide Gamelyn,  
Wilt thou this welè done?  
Holdè my hors while that my man  
Ydrawith of my shone.

And helpe my man also to kepe  
My clothis and my stede,  
And I woll into the place gon  
And loke how I may spede.

By God, seide the frankelyn,  
It shall right so be don,  
I woll my filfin be thy man  
To drawin of thy shone.

And wendè you into the place,  
Swete Jesu Crist the spede,  
And dredè not of thy clothis  
Nor of thy godè stede.

Barefote and ungert Gamelyn  
Into the ringe came,  
Allè that werin in the place  
Hedin of him the name,

How he durstin aventure him  
On him to don his might  
That was so doughti a champion  
In wrastring and in fight.

Upstertè tho the champion  
Ful rapely right anon,  
Towardis yongè Gamelyn  
He tho began to gon,

And seide, Who is thy fadir,  
And who is eke thy sire?  
Forsothè thou art a gret sole  
For that thou camist hire.

Anon Gamelyn answerid  
The stout champion tho,  
Thou knewist full wele my fadir  
Whilè that he couthè go:

Whilis that he was on live,  
I swere by Seint Martyn,  
Sir John of Boundis was his name,  
And I am Gamelyn.

Felawe, seide the champion,  
So evir mote I thrive,  
I knew right welè thy fadir  
While that he was on live;

And thy selfin, yongè Gamelyn,  
I will that thou it here,  
Whiles thou wert a yongè boy  
A mochè shrew thou were.

Then seide yongè Gamelyn,  
And swore bi Crist's ore,  
Now am I oldir wox thou shalt  
Y findin me a more.

Be God, seide the champion,  
Welcome motè thou be;  
Come thou onys in my honde  
Shaltin thou nevir the.

It was welè within the night,  
And bright the mone shone,  
Whan Gamelyn and the champion  
Togidir gan to gon.

The champion castè tornis  
To Gamelyn that was prest,  
And Gamelyn stodin stillè,  
And bad him don his best.

Then seiden yongè Gamelyn  
Unto the champion,  
Now that I have fully provid  
Many tornis of thine,



# THE COKE'S TALE OF GAMELYN.

Thou mostin, seide Gamelyn,  
Prove oon or two of myn.

Gamelyn to the champion  
Yede smartly anon,  
Of al the tornis that he coude  
He shewid him but one;

And kest him on the listè side  
That shre ribbis to brak,  
And thereunto his left armè,  
That gaf a grette crak.

Than seide yonge Gamelyn  
Smerti to him anon,  
Shall it be holdin for a cast,  
Or ellis go for none?

Bi God, seide the champion,  
Whedir so that it be,  
He that ones comith in thyn hand  
Shallin he nevir the.

Than seide the frankelyn, that  
Thre sonis there had lore,  
Blessid be thou, yonge Gamelyn,  
That ever thou were bore!

For now unto the champion  
This have I for to seie,  
This is the yonge Gamelyn  
That taughte the to pleie.

Ayen answerde the champion,  
That likid nothyng well,  
He is allè their maistr, and  
His pleie is right fell.

Sithin that I wristilid first  
It is agon full yore,  
But I was nevir in my life  
Handilid so before.

Yonge Gamelyn stode in the place  
Allone withouten ferk,  
And seide, If there be any mo  
Let them comè to werk.

The champion which that painid  
Him to workin so fore,  
It semith by his countinaunce  
That he willè no more.

Gamelyn in the placè stode  
Stillè as any stone  
For to abidin wraffiling,  
But there ycomith none.

There ne was none with Gamelyn  
That woldè wrestle more,  
For he handilid the champion  
So wonderously fore.

Two gentilmeine that owned the place  
Come to Gamelyn, God geve them grace!  
And seide to him, Have done on  
Phy hofin and thy shone;

Forsothè at this timè all  
This faire it is ydone.

Tho seide to them Gamelyn,  
So mote I well yfare,  
I have not yet halvindele  
Yfoldè all my ware.

Than seide the champion so broke,  
I may it welè swere  
He is a fole that therof bieth,  
Thou sellest it so dere.

Tho seide to him the frankelyn,  
That was in mochill care,  
Fellow, he saidè, whi lakkest  
Thou so moche of his ware?

Be Seint Jame, that in Galis is,  
That many man has fought,  
Yet it is moche too godè chepe  
That thou hasten ybought.

Tho that the wardenis werin  
Of that ilk wraffiling  
Comin forth, and brought Gamelyn  
The ram and als the ring.

And thus wann yonge Gamelyn  
The ram and eke the ring,  
And wentè forth with mochil joy  
Homeward in the morning.

His brothir se where that he come  
With all the grette rout,  
And bad the porter shute the gate,  
And holdin him without.

The porter of his lord's word  
Was so right fore agast,  
And stert anon unto the gate  
And lokkid it full fast.

Now lithinith and lestinith  
Bothè yonge and old,  
And ye shullin herè gamin  
Of Gamelyn the bold.

Gamelyn cometh therunto  
For to have comen in;  
But all in vaine; the dore then was  
Y shitt fast with a pyn.

Than seide yonge Gamelyn,  
Porter, undo the yate,  
For many a godè mann's  
Sonnè stondith thereat.

Then answerid him the porter,  
And swore by Godd's berde,  
Thou ne shalt, frènde Gamelyn,  
Comin into this yerde.

Thou lyist, seide Gamelyn,  
So broukin I my chynne:  
He smote the wicket with his fote,  
And brak away the pyn.

The porter streightwey saughè tho  
It might no bettir be,  
He sette fote on erthè, and  
Fast he began to fle.

Bi my faith, seide Gamelyn,  
That travaile is ylore,  
For I am on fote as light as  
Thow, though thow had yswore,

Gamelyn ovrtoke the porter,  
And his teenè ywraak,  
And gert him full upon the nek,  
That he the bon to brak;

And toke him by that oon armè,  
And threw him in a well;  
Seven hundrid fado, it was depe,  
As I have herdè telle.

Whan Gamelyn the yonge thus  
Had yplaid his play,  
Alle that in the yerde were  
Withdrewin them away.

That dredin him full fore for  
The wreke that he wrought,  
And for the fayir company  
That he had thither brought.

Yong Gamelyn yede to the gate  
And letè it up wide,  
He letin in allè the rout  
That gon woldin or ride;

And seidè, Ye ben ywelcome  
Withouten any greve,  
For we wol ben maisteris here,  
And askè no man leve.

It n'as but yesterdai I last,  
Saide yongè Gamelyn,  
In my brother's feleris  
Five toun of right gode wyne.

I willè not this company  
Partyn with me on twyn,  
And if ye will don aftir me,  
Whil any sope is inn:

And if my brothir grutchith us,  
Or makith it foulè chere,  
Othir for spence of mete and drink  
That we shull spendin here,

I am the ovircaterir,  
And bere our althir purse,  
He shallè have for his grutching  
*Santa Maria's* curse.

My brothir is but a nigon,  
I swere by Crist's ore,  
And we woll spendè largily  
That he hath sparid yore.

And whoso that makith grutching  
That we do here ydwell,  
He shall go unto the porter  
Into the drawè well.

Sevin dayis and sevin nightes  
Gamelyn held his fest,  
With mochè solace that there was,  
And eke no mannir heste.

All in a litil torrit his  
Brothir laydè ysteke,  
And saugh him wastin his godis,  
But durstè not to speke.

Right erli in a morrowning,  
Upon the eightè day,  
The gestis come to Gamelyn,  
And woldè gon thir way.

Lordis, tho seidè Gamelyn,  
And wollin ye so hie?  
Allè the wyn is not yet drunk,  
So broukin I mine eye.

Yonge Gamelyn in his hertè  
Was sorowfull and wo  
Whan that his gestis toke their leve  
And fro him woldè go.

He woldè that they had dwellid  
Lengir, and they seide Nay,  
But bitaught Gamelyn to God,  
And bad him have gode dai.

Thus madè Gamelyn his geste,  
And brought it well to end,  
And aftirward his gestis toke  
Levè their way to end.

Now lithinith and listinith,  
And holdith you your tonge,  
And ye shullin herè gamin  
Of Gamelyn the yonge.

Herkinith, Lordilingis, and,  
Listinith you aright,  
Whan all the gestis weren gon  
How Gamelyn was dight.

Allè the while that Gamelyn  
Had hold his mangerie  
His brothir thought on him bewreke  
With his false trecherie;

Tho whan that Gamelyn's gestes  
Y ridin were and gon  
Gamelyn stode anon alone,  
Frendè tho had he none.

Tho aftir this full sone it fell,  
Within a littil stound,  
That Gamelyn was takin, and  
Full hardly was he bound.

Than forth comith the false knight  
Out of the solerè,  
And to Gamelyn his brothir  
He goith fullè nere,

And seiden unto Gamelyn,  
Who mede the so bold  
For to destroyin and waste  
The store of my houshold?

Brothir, answered Gamelyn,  
Now wrathè the right noght,  
For it is many day agon  
Sithins it was ybought:

For, brothir, thou hastin haddè,  
I swere by Seint Richere,  
Of fiftene plowis of londè  
This full fixtenè yere;

And of allè the bestis which  
Thou hastè forth ybredd,  
That my fadir to me bequethe  
Upon his deith's bedd:

Of allè this full fixtene yere  
I gevè the the prow,  
For the metè and the drinkè  
That we have spendid now.

Than thus seidè the false knight,  
(Full evil mote he the)  
Herkinith, brothir Gamelyn,  
What I woll gevin the;

For of my body, brothir, heit  
Y gettin have I none;  
I wollè makin the my heir,  
I swerè by Seint John.

Par mafay, seidè Gamelyn,  
And if that it so be,  
And thou thinkest as thou seyist,  
May God yeldin it the!

Nothing wistè yong Gamelyn  
Of his brother's gile,  
And therefore he him begilid  
In verry littil while.

Gamelyn, seiden he, o thing  
I nedis must the tell,  
Tho whan thou throwe my porter  
Into the drawè well,

I swore in that wrathè, and  
In that my grete mote,  
That thou shuldist ybondè be  
Both hondè and eke fote :  
And therefore I besechè the,  
My brother Gamelyn,  
I gith thou noght me be forsworn,  
As brothir art thou mine ;

But letith me ybindin the  
Both hondè and eke fote,  
For me to holdin myne avough,  
Right as I the behote.

Brothir tho seide Gamelyn,  
As so I segotin the,  
Thou shalt not ben forsworin  
For the love of me.

Tho madin thei this Gamelyn  
To fitte, might he not stand,  
Tyll that he him ybondin had  
Both fote and also hand.

The false knight his brothir of  
Gamelyn was agast,  
And sente astir fetteris  
To fetterin him fast.

His brothir made lesingis  
On him ther as he stode,  
And toldè them that comin in  
That Gamelyn was wode.

Gamelyn stode to a post  
Y bondin in the Hall,  
And tho that ther ycomin in  
Lokid upon him all.

Evir stodè yong Gamelyn  
Evin bolte upright,  
But mete nor drink ne had he none  
Nowthir by day ne night.

Tho seide yongè Gamelyn,  
Brothir myn, by my hals  
Now I have wele espyid that  
Thou art a parti fals.

Had I but wistè that trefon  
That thou haddist yfond  
I woldin have gevin strokis  
Or I had ben ybound.

Gamelyn stodè thus bondin  
As still as any stone  
For too dayis and too nightis,  
And metè had he none.

Then seide at last this Gamelyn,  
That stodè boundin strong,  
Adam Spencer, methinkith that  
I fastè al to long ;

Therefore, Adam le Dispencer,  
Now I besече the  
For the mochè lovè with which  
My fadir lovid the,

If thou may comin to the kaies,  
Lefith me out of bond,  
And for thi I woll departin  
With the of my fre lond.

Than him answerid this Adam,  
Which that was the Spencer,  
I have yservid thy brothir  
This full sixtenè yere,

VOL. I.

And if I shuld letin you  
To gon out of his boure  
He woldin astirwardis seye  
That I were a traytour.

Adam, answeyrd Gamelyn,  
So broukin I myn hals,  
Thou shaltè findin my brothir  
At the last rightè fals ;

And therefore, brothir Adam, me  
Lofè out of my bonds,  
And I wollè departin with  
The of myn own fre londs.

Upon so gode a forewardè  
Saidin Adam, I wis  
I wollè doin thereunto  
Allè that in me is.

Adam, tho seide Gamelyn,  
As so mowin I the,  
I woll holdè the covènaunt,  
An thou too wollè me.

Anon as Adam his lordè  
To beddè was ygone,  
Adam tokè the kaies, and lat  
Gamelyn out anon.

He unlokid yongè Gamelyn  
Both hondis and eke fete,  
On hope of the avauncement  
Which that he him bēhete.

Then seide yongè Gamelyn,  
Thankid be Godd'is sonde,  
For now that I am ylosid  
Both fote and also hond !

Had I but etin a litil,  
And thereto dronk aright,  
There is non in this housè that  
Shuld bindè me this night.

Tho Adam tokè Gamelyn,  
As still as any stone,  
And haddin him into the spence  
Right rapiy anon ;

And settin him to his soupere  
Right in a privie stede,  
And badin hym do gladily,  
And Gamelyn so dede.

Anon assone as Gamelyn  
Had etin wel and fine,  
And thereunto had ydrankin  
Well of the redè wyne,

Adam, seide yongè Gamelyn,  
Tell what is now thy rede ;  
For me to go to my brothir,  
And gerdin of his hede ?

No, Gamelyn, seidin Adam,  
It shall not be so,  
But I can tellè the a rede  
That is yworth the too.

I wote wele forsothè that  
(And this it is no nay)  
We shullin have a mangerie  
Rightè upon Sunday ;

Of abbotis and priouris  
Full many here shal be,  
And othir men of holie church  
As I can tellè the ;



Thou shalt stond up by the post,  
As thou were hondè fast,  
And I shall them leve unlok, that  
Away thou may them cast :

And whan that they have y etin,  
And washin have their hondes,  
Tho thou shalt bespekin them all  
To bring the out of hondes :

And if that they will borrow the  
That werin a gode game,  
Than werin thou out of prison  
And I als out of blame ;

But if that everich of them  
Saye unto us Nay,  
I shullè don anothir thing,  
I swerè by this day.

Thou shullè have a gode staffe,  
And I woll have another,  
And Crist'is curse have that oon  
That failè shall that othir.

Ye, for God, seide Gamelyn,  
I say it right for me  
If that I failin on my side  
Than evil mote I the.

If that we shullin algatis  
Asoile them of thire synne ;  
Warnith me, my brothir Adam,  
Whan that we shall begynn.

Now Gamelyn, seiden Adam,  
Ey Seintè Charitè  
I wollè warnè the befor  
Whan that the time shall be.

Whan that I twidkin upon the  
Lokè for to be gon,  
And cast away the fetteris,  
And come to me anon.

Adam, seide yong Gamelyn,  
Y blissid be thy bones !  
That is a rightè gode counsaile  
Y gevin for the nones.

If that they shullin wernè me  
To bring the out of bendes  
I wollè settin gode strokis  
Full right upon their lendes.

Tho the Soudy was ycomin,  
And these folk to the feste ;  
Faire they werein ywelcomid  
Bothè the leste and meste.

And evir as they at the Hall  
Dorè wère comin in  
They everich castin an eie  
On yonge Gamelyn.

The falsè knight his own brothir,  
So full of trecherie,  
Allè the gestes that there wère  
At that ilk mangerie

Of Gamelyn his own brothir  
He toldin them with mouth  
Allè the harmis and the shame  
That e're he tellè couth.

Tho they werein yservid st. cit  
Of messis too or thre ;  
Than seide yonge Gamelyn,  
How do ye servè me :

It ne is not wele yservid,  
Be God that allè made,  
That I shold sittin here fasting  
And othir men make glade.

The falsè knight his brothir,  
Thereas that he ystode,  
Toldin to allè his gestis  
That Gamelyn was wode.

And Gamelyn there stodè still,  
And answerid right noght,  
But of Adam'is wordis he  
Heldè still in his thought.

Tho Gamelyn began to speke,  
Right doulesfully withall,  
Unto the grettè lordis that  
Y satyn in the Hall :

My Lordings, tho seiden he,  
For Crist'is passion  
Helpin to bringè Gamelyn  
Out of thilkè prison.

Than seide to him an abbot,  
(Sorrow upon his cheke !)  
He shallin have Crist'is curse  
And Seintè Maries eke,

That shall the out of this prison  
Beggin owthir borow,  
But evir worthè hym full wele  
That doth the mykil sorow.

And anon astir that abbot  
Than spakin anothir,  
I woldè that thyn hede wère of  
Though thou wère my brothir.

Allè that the shall borrowin  
Motè them foulè fall ;  
And thus yseiden allè they  
That werin in the Hall.

Than seide to him a priour,  
Evil mowin he thrive !  
It is grettè sorow and care,  
Boy, that thou art on live.

On, on, seide yonge Gamelyn,  
So broukin I my bone,  
Now that I havin espyid  
That frendis have I none.

A cursid mot he worthè be,  
Bothè fleshe and blode,  
That evir doth to priouris  
Or abbotes any gode.

Anon Adam the Dispencer  
Takin up hath the cloth,  
And lokid unto Gamelyn,  
And saugh that he was wroth.

Adam of the pantrie at thilkè  
Time litil he thought.  
And too godè stavis unto  
The Hallè dore he brought.

Adam lokid on Gamelyn  
And he was war anon,  
And cast awaie the fetteris,  
And began for to gon.

Tho he camin unto Adam,  
He toke to the one staff,  
And beginning to werkè wele,  
And gode strokis he gaff.

Gamelyn came into the Hall,  
And Adam Spencer both,  
And lokid them all aboutin  
As they haddè ben wroth.  
Gamelyn sprenith holi watir  
All with an okin spire,  
That some of them that stode upright  
Fillin into the fire.

There was no mannir lewdè man  
That in th. Hall stode  
That wold doin Gamelyn  
Any thing but gode.

But a stode belidin, and  
Letè the bothè werch,  
For thei haddè no routhè  
Of men of holi cherch.

Of abbot or of prior, or  
Of monk or of canon,  
That Gamelyn hath overtoke,  
Anon they yedin down.

There ne was none of them allè  
That with his stuff ymette  
That he made them overthrowe,  
And quyttè them his dette.

Tho Gamelyn, seidè Adam,  
For Seint Charite  
Payith, I pray, gode liveray,  
And for the love of me ;

And I wollè kepin the dore ;  
So evir here I maffe  
Er that they ben affoilyd  
Ther shallè noon ypasse.

Doutè the noght, seide Gamelyn,  
While that we ben in fere ;  
But kepè thou welè the dore  
And I woll werkin here ;

Besturith the, gode Adam, and  
Ne lettith none yfle,  
And we shall tellè largily  
How many here there be.

To Gamelyn seiden Adam,  
Doith them all but gode,  
For thei ben men of holi cherch ;  
Drawith of them no blode ;

Savith right wele the coroune,  
And doith them no harmes,  
But brekith bothè their leggis,  
And sithin here thir armes.

Thus Gamelyn and Adam hath  
Y wroughtin rightè fast,  
And pleidin with the monkies tho,  
And madè them agast.

Forth hidir they comè riding  
Full jolily with fwaines,  
But home agen they werin ledde  
In cartis and in vaines.

Tho as they baddin all ydone  
That seidin a gray frere,  
Alas ! alas ! my Lord Abbot,  
What diddè we now here ?

Tho that we hither did ycome  
It was a coldè rede ;  
Us had far better ben at home  
With watir and with brede.

While Gamelyn made orderis  
Of monkis and of frere  
Evir stodè his brothir stille,  
And madè foulè chere.

Tho Gamelyn up with his staff,  
That he ful wellè knew,  
And grettin him upon the nek,  
That he him overthrewe,

A litil above the girdil  
The riggin bone to braft,  
And sett him in the fetteris  
There as he sattin arst.

Sittith thou there, my brothir John,  
Tho seidè Gamelyn,  
For to colin thy horte bodie,  
As I did colè myn.

And swithe as they yhaddè wele  
Wroken them on their fone,  
They askid for the watir, and  
They wishin them anon.

What some of them for their lovè,  
And somè for their awe,  
Allè the servauntis servid  
Them of the bestè law.

The shereff was thennis away  
But about a five myle,  
And all was toldin unto him  
Within a little whyle,

How Gamelyn and Adam had  
Ydon a forry res,  
Boundin and woundin many men  
Agen the king's pece.

Eftsonis tho begannin sone  
Striffe for to awake,  
And the shiregereve about did  
Cast Gamelyn to take.

Now lithinith and lestinith,  
So God geve you gode fine,  
And ye shull herin a gode game  
Of yongè Gamelyn.

Now four-and-twenty yongè men,  
That holdin them full bolde,  
Comin unto the shiregereve,  
And seidè that they wold

Both Gamelyn and eke Adam  
Y fettè be the way ;  
The shiregereve gafè them leve  
Tho soth as I you fay,

Thes yongè meinè hiden them  
Fast, wold they not lynne  
Tyll that they comin to the gate  
There Gamelyn was inne.

Thy knokidin upon the gatè,  
The porter tho was nye,  
And lokid forth out at an hole,  
As man that was full flye

The porter had beholdin them  
But for a litil whilè,  
He lovid welè Gamelyn,  
And was adrad of gile,

And forthi letè the wicket  
Y stondin fullè still,  
And askid them that stant with us  
What ywas their will ?

For allè the gret company  
Than spake bot one alone,  
Undo the gatis, porter, and  
Latè us in ygone.

Then seidè to them the porter,  
So broukin I my chynne  
Ye shulle sayin your errand  
Or that ye comin inne.

Say to Gamelyn and Adam,  
If that ther wille it be,  
We wollè spekin here with them  
Two wordis othir thre.

Fellow, seide the porter tho,  
Stondith thou ther ystill,  
And I woll wend to Gamelyn  
To wetin of his wille.

And in wentè the porter tho  
To Gamelyn anon,  
And seidè, Sire, I warne you  
That here be come your sone;

For lo! the shiregereve's men  
Now ben all at the gate  
For to ytekin you bothè;  
Shallè ye not escape.

Porter, tho seide Gamelyn,  
So mote I welè the,  
I woll allowè the thy wordes  
Whan I my timè se.

Go ageyn, porter, to the gate,  
And dwell with them a while,  
Awaitin, and thou shaltè se  
Right sone, porter, a gile.

Adam, tho seide Gamelyn,  
Lokè the to be gon,  
We havè foomen at the gate,  
And frendis nevir onè.

It ben the shiregereve's men  
That hithir ben comin,  
They ben yswore togideris,  
That we shull be nomin.

To Gamelyn seidè Adam,  
Hiè the rightè belyve,  
And if I failè the this day  
Than evil mote I thryve.

And we shullin so welcomè  
The shiregereve's men,  
That some of them I trow shall make  
Their beddis in the fen.

Then thorough the posternè gate  
Yong Gamelyn out went,  
And a gode sturdie cartè staffe  
In his hondè he hent.

And Adam Spencer hentè sone  
Anothir grettè staff  
For to helpè young Gamelyn,  
And gode strokis he gaffe.

Adam yfellid hath his tweyne,  
And Gamelyn felled thre,  
The tothir settè on erth,  
And fast began to fle.

What? seidin Adam Spencer, ho,  
So evir hire I maffe  
I havè right gode reddenè wyne,  
Pray drinkith er ye maffe.

Nai, nai! by God, seidè they tho,  
Thy drink is nothing gode,  
It woldè makin mann's brayne  
To lyin in his hode.

Yong Gamelyn tho stodè still,  
And lokid him about.  
And saide, The shiregereve comith  
With a full grettè rout.

Adam Spencer, seid Gamelyn,  
My rede it is now this,  
Abidin we not lengir here  
Lest we farin amys.

I rede that we to wode y gonn  
Er that we be yfound;  
Betir is there lose for to gonn  
Than in the tounè ybound.

Adam them tokè by the hond  
This yongè Gamelyn.  
And echè of them to the othir  
Drankin a draft of wync.

And aftirwardistoke their course,  
And wentè streight their way;  
Tho fond the shiregereve the nest,  
But in it was none ay.

The shiregereve lightid adoune,  
And went into the Hall,  
And fond the lord yfetterid  
Full fastè therewithall.

The shireve tho unfetterid  
Him rightè sone anon,  
And sentin aftir a gode leche  
To hele his riggè bon.

Letè we now this falsè knight  
Lic in his mochill care,  
And tellè we of Gamelyn,  
And lokè how he fare.

Gamelyn into the wild wode  
Ystalkid is full stille,  
And Adam le Dispencer it  
Ylikid but right ille.

Tho Adam swore to Gamelyn,  
And that be Seint Richere,  
Now I say that it is mery  
To ben a dispencer;

That muchè levire me werin  
The kayis for to bere,  
Than walkin in this wildè wode  
My clothis all to terè.

Adam, seidè yong Gamelyn,  
Dismayè the right noght,  
For many a gode mann's child  
In carè is ybrought.

As they thus in the wode stodin,  
Ytalking both in fere,  
Adam herdè talking of men,  
And nigh them thought they were.

Tho Gamelyn undir the wild  
Wodè lokid aright,  
Full sevin score of yongè men  
He saugh right wel ydight;

Allè were sattè at their mete  
In a compas about;  
Adam, tho seidè Gamelyn,  
Now havin ye no doute,



For aftir balè comith bote,  
Thorough Godd'is grete might;  
Methinkith of mete and of drink  
That I havin a fight.

Adam le Dispencer lokid  
Tho undir wode bowe,  
And whan that he the metè saugh  
Tho he was glad inowe;

For now he hopid unto God  
For to havin his dele,  
And he was ful fore alongid  
Aftir a gode mele.

Anon he seide that word  
Streight to the maistir outlawe  
Saugh Gamelyn and Adam both  
Undir the wode shaw.

Lo! yongè men, seide the maistir  
Outlaw, by the gode rode  
I am aware of some gestis,  
Pray God sendin us gode!

Loke! yondir be two yongè men  
That ben right wel adight,  
A! peradventure they ben mo,  
Whoso lokid aright.

Arifeth up quick yongè men,  
And fette them to me,  
For it is gode that we wetin  
What meinè that they be.

Up thei stertin quik at that word,  
Sevin fro the dinnere,  
And they mettin with Gamelyn  
And Adam Dispencere.

Whan that they werin ney to them  
Than seide thus that one,  
Yeldith up to us, yonge men  
Your bowis and your flone.

Than seide to them Gamelyn,  
That yongè was of elde,  
Ful mochil forow mote they have  
That unto you shall yelde:

I curse woll none othir wight  
But right mine ownè selve  
Tho ye may fettin unto you  
Fyve, and than be ye twelve.

They herdin by his wordis that  
Gret might was in his arme,  
And forthi there was non of them  
That woldè don him harme,

But sedin unto Gamelyn  
Right mildily and still,  
Comith aforin our maistir,  
And say to him thy will.

Yongè man, seide Gamelyn,  
Upon your leaute  
Tellith what man your maister is  
Which that ye with ybe.

Tho allè they answered him  
At ones without tefing,  
Our maister is ycoroundid  
Of Outlawis is the King.

Adam, seide yongè Gamelyn,  
Go we in Crist'is name,  
He may nothir metè nor drink  
Y wernè us for shame;

And if that he hendè, and  
Comin of gentlè blode,  
He woll geve us both mete and drink,  
And doin us some goode.

By Seintè Jame, seide Adam tho,  
What harme so that I grete  
I will adventure me to the  
Dorè that I had mete.

Tho Gamelyn and Adam both  
Y wentè forth in fere,  
And they both gretè the maistir  
Which that they fondè there.

Than seide to them the maistir,  
That King was of Outlawes,  
What do ye feke, ye yongè men,  
Undir the wode shawes?

Yong Gamelyn answerid tho  
The King with his coroune,  
He mustè nedis walk in wodes  
That may not walk in tounè.

Sire, we walkè not here in wodes  
Non harmè for to do,  
But if peradventure we metè  
A dere to sherte thereto,

As meinè that ben right hungry,  
And mow no metè fynd,  
And very hardè ben bestad  
Undir the wode lynd.

Of Gamelyn'is wordis tho  
The maister haddè routhe,  
And seide to them, Ye shall have  
Inow, heve God my trouthe.

Anon he baddè them fittin  
Dounè for to takè rest,  
And baddè them etin and drink,  
And that too of the best.

Asthey were eting and drinking  
Of the best wele and fine,  
Than seide the ton to the tothir  
This is yonge Gamelyn.

Tho was the maister of outlawes  
Into consaile nomin,  
And told how it was Gamelyn  
That thirther was comin.

Anon as he had herdin all  
How that it was befall,  
He madè Gamelyn maistir  
Undir him o're them all.

Within the third weke aftir this  
To him comith tiding,  
To the maistir of outlawis,  
Which that now was their king,

That he shuldè ycomin home,  
For that his pees was made;  
And of that joyfull tiding he  
Was wonderously glade.

Tho seide he to his yongè men,  
The sothè for to tell.  
To me be comin tidingis  
I may no lengir dwèl.

Tho was yong Gamelyn anon,  
Withoutin tarying,  
Made maistir of outlawis; and  
Y coroundid their king:

Tho was yong Gamelyn crounid  
The King of the Outlawes,  
And among them walkid a while  
Undir the wodè shawes.

The falsè knight his brothir now  
Was shiregereve and Sire,  
And lete his brothir be endite  
For hatè and for ire.

Tho werin all his bondmeinè  
Sory and nothing glad  
Whan that Gamelyn their lordè  
Wolves Hede was cryed and made,

And sentin outè his meinè  
Where they mightin him fynd,  
For to sekin yonge Gamelyn  
Undir the wodè lynd,

To tellè to him tidingis  
The winde was ywent,  
And allè his gode revied was,  
And all his men yshent.

Whan that they haddè hym foundin  
On kneys they them sette,  
And adoun with their hodè, and  
Gamelyn their lord grette.

They seiden, Sire, now wrathè not  
You for the godè rode,  
For we have brought you tidingis,  
But they be nothing gode.

Now is thy brothir shiregereve,  
And he hath the baillie,  
And thereto hath enditid the,  
And Wolves Hede doth the crie.

Allas! tho seidè Gamelyn,  
That e're I was so flak,  
That I ne hadd brokin his nek  
Whan I his riggè brak.

Goith, and gretith you welè  
My housbondis an wif,  
I wollè ben at the next shire,  
So havè God my lif.

Gamelyn camè well redy  
Unto the nextè shire,  
And there the falsè knight his brothir  
Was bothè Lord and Sire.

Gamelyn camè boldilich  
Into the Morè Hall,  
And put adoun his hode among  
The lordilingis all.

God savè you, Lordilingis!  
Which that now herè be;  
But as for the, brokebak shereve,  
Evil motè thou the!

Why hastè thou doin to me  
That shame and villonie  
For to latin enditè me,  
And Wolf's Hede me crie?

Tho thought the falsè knight on him  
For to have ben awreke,  
And letè takin Gamelyn;  
Must he no more yspeke.

Mightè there be no manni' gracc,  
But Gamelyn at last  
Was into prisoun ycastin  
And fetterid full fast.

This Gamelyn hath a brothir  
That cleped was Sir Ote;  
As gode and hend a knight he was  
As mightin gon on fote.

Right anon yede a messager  
Unto that gode knight,  
And toldin him altogethir  
How Gamelyn was dight.

Anon as Sir Ote herdin had  
How Gamelyn was dight,  
He was right passing sory tho,  
Ne he was nothing light;

And letè saddle him a redè,  
And streit the weie he name,  
And unto his tweie bretherin  
Right sonè there he came.

Sir, seidè this Sir Ote unto  
The shiregerevè tho,  
We ben but only thre brethren,  
Shall we be nevir mo,

And thus hast thou yprisounid  
The bestè of us all;  
Soche anothir brothir as thou  
Evil mote him befall!

Sir Ote, seidè the falsè knight,  
Now letè be thy cars;  
By God for these thi wordis he  
Shallè farin the wors.

Now to the king's prisoun he  
Is lesfully ynome,  
And ther he shall abidin  
Untill the justice come.

But parde, seidè Sir Ote tho,  
Bettir it shall ybe  
I biddin him unto maynprise  
And that thou grauntè me,

Untill the nextè sitting shall  
Come of deliveraunce,  
And than lete Gamelyn fairely  
Ystondin to his chaunce.

Brothir, in foche a forewardè  
I takin him to the,  
And by thy fadir's foulè,  
That the begat and me,

If that he be not right redy  
Whan that the justice sitte,  
Thou shaltè berin the judgement,  
For all thy grettè wit.

I grauntin it wele, seide Sir Ote,  
That it shall so ybe;  
Letith delivir him anon,  
And takin him to me.

Tho Gamelyn was delivered  
To Sir Ote his brothir,  
And that night ydwellid in fere  
The ton with the tothir.

On the morow seide Gamelyn,  
Unto Sir Ote the hend,  
My brothir, he seide, forsothe  
I motè from the wend,

To lokin how my yongè men  
In wode ledin their lif,  
And whethir that they liven now  
In joie or elles in strif.

Be God, tho answerid Sir Ote,  
That is a coldè rede,  
Now I se that alle the cark  
Shall fallin on my hede;

For whan that the justice sittith,  
And thou be not yfound,  
I shall anon be takin, and  
In thy stede be ybound.

Brothir, tho seide Gamelyn,  
Dismaye the right noght,  
For be Seintè Jame in Galis,  
That many man hath sought,

If I were so mighty hold  
Me my self and my wit  
I wolden there right redy  
Whan the justice sit.

Than seide Sir Ote to Gamelyn,  
God sheldè the fro shame!  
Comith whan that thou seist tyme,  
And bring us out of blame.

Now lithinith and lestinith,  
And holdith you right still,  
And ye shullè herin how that  
Gamelyn had his will.

Anon Gamelyn wentin his  
Way undir the wode rise,  
And he yfondè there playing  
His yongè men of prise.

Tho was this yongè Gamelyn  
In hert right glad inow  
Whan that he fond his yongè men  
Undir the wode bow.

Gamelyn and his yongè men  
Ytalkidin in fere,  
And they all haddè right gode game  
Their maistir for to here.

His men told him of adventures  
Which that they had yfound,  
And Gamelyn told them agen  
How he was fast ybound.

All the while that Gamelyn was  
Outlaw had he no curs;  
There ne was no man that for him  
Yferid ought the wors,

But abbotis and priouris,  
And monkis, and chanon;  
In them forsothe ne last he noght  
Whan er he might them nom.

While Gamelyn and his yong men  
Ymadè mirthis ryve,  
The falsè knight his own brothir,  
Evil motè he thryve!

For all this while he waft about,  
Both one day and othir,  
On purpose for to hire the quest  
To hangin his brothir.

Gamelyn stoc on a day,  
And reend him he beheld  
The wild wodes and the shawis  
Within the wildè feld;

He thoughtin upon his brothir,  
How that he him behete  
That he ywoldin be redy  
Whan that he might him se.

He thoughtin welè that he wolde,  
Withoutin more delay,  
Ycomin afore the justice  
For to kepin his day;

And seide to his yongè men,  
Now dightith you full yare,  
For whan that the justice sittith  
We mote nedis be there;

For I am undir a borow  
Until that I comin,  
And my brothir instede of me  
To prison shal be nomin.

Be Seint Jame, seide his yongè men,  
And that thou rede thereto,  
Ordeinith how it shallè be,  
And it shall so be do.

While Gamelyn was ycoming  
There that the justice satt  
The falsè knight his own brothir  
Forgattin he not that,

To hire the meinè on his quest  
To hangin his brothir,  
And though thei haddè not that oon  
He wolde ban that othir.

Tho comith yongè Gamelyn  
From undir the wode rise,  
And he broughtin along with him  
His yongè men of prise.

I se wele, seide Gamelyn,  
The justice is ysette;  
Go thou afor us, Adam, and  
Lokè how that it spette.

Adam wentè into the Hall,  
And lokid all about,  
And he saugh there ystondè the  
Lordingis grette and stout,

And Sir Ote, Gamelyn's brothir,  
Yferterid wele fast;  
Tho wentin Adam out of Hall  
As he werin agast.

Adam seide to Gamelyn,  
And to his felawes all,  
Sir Ote ystondith fetterid  
Within the Motè Hall.

Seide Gamelyn, If God geve us  
Grace wel for to do  
He shallin it abegge anon  
That him broughtin thereto.

Then seidin Adam Dispencer,  
That lokkis haddin hore,  
Christ's curse motè he havin  
That boundin him so fore.

And if thou wiltè, Gamelyn,  
Doin astir my rede,  
There is none in the Hallè that  
Shall bere aweie his hede.

Adam, tho seide Gamelyn,  
We woliè not do so;  
We woll fle only the giltif,  
And lat the othir go.

I will my selve into the Hall,  
And hire the justice speke,  
And on all them that ben giltif  
I will myselve thei seke.



Lat none escapin at the dore ;  
Take, yongè meinè, yeme,  
For I wolle ben the justice  
This day domis to deme.

Pray God spedè me this ilk dai  
At this my newè werke!  
And Adam, comith thou with me,  
For thou shalt be my clerke.

His meinè all answerid him,  
And bad hym don his best,  
And if thou to us havè nede  
Thou shalt fyndin us prest :

For we wolle stondin with the  
Whilis that we may dure,  
And but that we werkin manly  
Payith us then no hure.

Yongè men, seidè Gamèlyn,  
So mot I wele y the,  
As ye a right trusty maistir  
Shullè findin of me.

And rightè thereat the justice  
Yfattin in the Halle,  
In wentè tho yong Gamèlyn  
Boldly amonges them all.

Gamèlyn letè unfettir  
His brothir out of bend ;  
Than seidè to him Sir Otis,  
His brothir that was hende,

Thou haddist almost, Gamèlyn,  
Dwellid away to long,  
For the questè is ygon out  
On me that I shulde honge.

Brothir, tho seidè Gamèlyn,  
God gevè me gode rest,  
This gode day they shull ben hongid  
That ben upon the quest ;

And thereto the justice bothè,  
That is the juggè man,  
And eke the sheriff our brothir,  
For through him it began.

Than seidè yongè Gamèlyn  
Unto the false justice,  
Now is thi powir at an end,  
You must nedis arise.

Thou hast ygevin domis that  
Ben evil allè dight ;  
I wolle settin in thi fete,  
And dreslin them aright.

But the justice fattin stillè,  
And roofè not anon,  
And Gamèlyn with his fwerdè  
Clevid his chekè bone.

Yonge Gamèlyn toke him in his  
Armis, and no more spak,  
But threw him ovir the barrè,  
And his armè to brak.

Durst no one unto Gamèlyn  
Sayè nothing but godè,  
For fere of the gret company  
That withoutin ystode.

Gamèlyn fattè him adoun  
In the justic's stede,  
(Herkenith now of the bourdè  
That Gamèlyn tho dede)

And Sir Otè by him he fatte,  
And Adam at his fete.  
And whan Gamèlyn the yong was  
Satte in the justice fete,

He letè fettè the justice  
And his false brothir,  
And letè them come to the barre  
The ton with that othir.

Whan Gamèlyn had thus ydone  
Haddin he tho no rest  
Till that he had enquerid who  
Werin upon the quest.

For to demin his brothir ~~here~~  
Sir Ote, for to be honge,  
Er that he wiste which they were  
It thoughte him full longe.

But al so sone as Gamèlyn  
Wiste where that thei were  
He didde them everichone  
Fetterin fast in fere,

And bringè them unto the barre,  
And fettè them in vewe :  
By my faith, seidè the justice,  
The sheriff is a shrewe.

Than seidè yongè Gamèlyn  
Unto the false justice,  
Thou hastè gevè thy domis  
Al of the worst affise ;

And the twelve fisoris that  
Werin of the inquest  
They shulle ben hongid this day,  
So God geve me gode rest.

Than seide the sheriff pitoufly  
To yongè Gamèlyn,  
My Lord, I crie the mercie,  
Brothir artè thou myn.

Therefore, seidè yonge Gamèlyn,  
Havè you Crist's curse,  
For if thou werin maistir yet  
Shuldin I farè worse.

But for to makè short my Tale,  
And not to tary longe,  
He ordeynid him there a quest  
Of his own men so strong.

The false justice and the sheriff  
Bothè were hongid hie,  
To weyvin there with the ropis,  
And with thè winde drie.

And als the twelvè fisoris,  
Sorow havè that rekk,  
Allè they werin yhongid  
Full fastè by the nekk.

Thus endid hath the falsè knight  
With all his trecherie,  
That evir haddè lad his life  
In falseness and folie.

He was hongid up by the nek,  
And nought by the purse,  
That was the mede that he had had  
From his fadir's curse.

Sir Ote was the eldist tho,  
And Gamèlyn was yonge,  
They wentin with their frendis, and  
Passidin to the king

# THE COKE'S TALE OF GAMELYN.

217

They madin pece with the kinge  
Of the bestè affise ;  
The king lovid Sir Otè welè,  
And made him a justice.  
After the king made Gamèlyn,  
Bothè in est and west,  
The chefe justice and ridere of  
Alle his fre forest.

Alle his wight yonge men the king  
Forgafin them their gilt,  
And sithen in gode office the king  
Hath alle them upilt.

There was yonge Gamèlyn  
His lond and his lede,  
And yf of him his enemies,  
And quyte them their mede.

And Sir Otè, his brothir dere,  
Ymade him hath his heir,  
And sithin weddid Gamèlyn  
A wife both gode and faire.

They lividin togidir wele  
Whilis that Christè wolde,  
And sithin that was Gamèlyn  
Ygravin undir molde :

And so shallè we allè here;  
May there no man yfle  
God bringin us unto the joie  
That evir shull ybe !

*Thus endith the legend of Gamelyn, called The Coke's Tale.*

HERE BEGINNETH

## THE PLOWMAN'S PROLOGUE.

THE Plowman plucked up his plowe  
 Whan midfomer mone was comen in,  
 And faied his bestes should ete inowe,  
 And lige in grasse up to the chin :  
 Thei ben feble both oxe and cowe,  
 Of 'hem n'is left but bone and skinne ;  
 He shoke of shere, and coulter' off drowe,  
 And honged his harnis on a pinne.  
 He toke his tabarde and staffe eke,  
 And on his hedde he set his hat,  
 And faied he would Sainct Thomas scke.  
 On pilgrimage he goth forth plat ;  
 In scrippe he bare bothe bred lekes ;  
 He was folfwonke and all forswat :  
 Men might have sene through both his chekes,  
 And every wang tothe where it sat.  
 Our Hoste behelde well all about,  
 And sawe this man was funne ibrent ;  
 He knewe well by his fingid snout,  
 And by his clothes, that were to rent,  
 He was a man wont walke about,  
 He n'as not aye in cloister pent,  
 Ne couthe religiousliche lout,  
 And therefore was he full ill shent.  
 Our Hoste him axed, What man art thou ?  
 Sire Hoste, (quod he) I am an hine,  
 For I am wont to go to plow,  
 And erne my mete yet that I dine :

To swette and swinke I make avowe,  
 My wife and babes therewith to finde,  
 And servin God and I wist how,  
 But we lende men yben full blinde :  
 For clerkes saie we shullin be fain  
 For ther lived to swette and swinke,  
 And thei right nought us give again  
 Neither to ete ne yet to drinke ;  
 Thei mowe by lawe, as that thei fain,  
 Us curse and dampne to hell'is brinke ;  
 And thus thei puttin us to pain  
 With candlis quient and bell'is clinke.  
 Thei make us thrallis at their lust,  
 And fain we mowe not els be sated ;  
 Thei have the corne and we the dust ;  
 Who gainfayes then they faye he raved.  
 What, man ! (quod our Hoste) canst thou preche ?  
 Come nere and tel some holy thing.  
 Sir, quod he, I herd onis teche  
 A preest in pulpit gode preching.  
 Saie on quod he, I the besече.  
 Sir, I am redy at your bidding.  
 I praie that no man me reproche  
 While that I am my Tale telling.

*Thus endeth the Prologue.*



## HERE FOLOWETH

## THE FIRST PART OF THE TALE\*.

A full sterne strief is stirrid newe,  
In many stedis in a stounde,  
Of sondry sedis that ben sewe;  
It temith that some ben unfounde,  
For some be grete growin on grounde,  
Some ben soule, simple and small;  
Whether of 'hem is falsir founde  
The falsir foule mote him bifall.

That one side is that I of tell  
Popis, cardinals, and prelates,  
Parsons, monkis, and freris fell,  
Priours, abbotes, of grete estates;  
Of heven and hell thei kepe the yeates,  
And Peter's successours ben all,  
And this is demid by old dates;  
But falshed foule mote it befall.

The othir side ben pore and pale,  
And peple yput out of prese,  
And seinin caitiffes fore a cale,  
And er in one without encrese  
Iclepid Lollers and Londlese;  
Who totheth on 'hem thei ben untall;  
'Thei ben arayid all for pece,  
But falshed foule mote it befall.

Many a countrey have I fought  
To knowe the falsir of these two,  
But aye my travaile was for nought  
All so ferre as I have ygo,  
But as I wandrid in a wro,  
Within a wode beside a wall,  
Two foulis sawe I sitting tho,  
The falsir foule mote him befall.

That one did plete on the Pope's side,  
A Griffon of a grimme stature,  
A Pellicane withoutin pride  
To these Lollers ylaied his lure;  
He mused his mottir in mesure  
To counsaile Christ if gan he call;  
The Griffon shewed as sharpe as fire,  
But falshed foule mote it befall.

\* A complaint against the pride and covetousness of the clergy, made no doubt by Chaucer, says the editor of Chaucer's Works printed for Ad. Mill at London, A. D. 1602. 177.

The Pellicane began to preche  
Bothe of mercie and of mekenesse,  
And saied that Christ so gan us teche,  
And meke and merciabie gan blesse:  
The' Evangely berith witnesse  
A lambe he likeneth Christ ovre' all,  
In tokening that he mekist was  
Sith pride was out of hevin fall.

And so should every Cristened be,  
Priestis and Peter's successours,  
Beth lowliche and of lowe degre,  
And usin none yerthly honours,  
Ne croune ne curious covertours,  
Ne pilloure ne other proude pall,  
Ne to cofrin up grete trefours,  
For falshed foule mote it befall.

Priestis should for no cattill plede,  
But chaften 'hem in charite,  
Ne to no battaile should men lede  
For inhaunsing ther owne degre,  
Nat willin sittinges in hie se,  
No soverainte in hous ne hall,  
Worldly worship desie and fle;  
Who willeth highnes foule shall fall.

Alas! who maie soche saintis call  
That wilnith welde yerthly honour?  
Lowe as Lucifere soche shall fall,  
In balefull blacknesse build ther boure  
That eggith peple to erroure,  
And makith them unto 'hem thrall;  
To Crist I holde soche one traitour;  
Lowe as Lucifer soche shall fall.

That willith to be kingis peres,  
And higher than the Emperour,  
And some that werin but pore freres  
Now wollin waxe a warriour;  
God ne is not ther governour  
That holdith none his permagall,  
While cove'tise is ther consailour;  
All soche falskede mote nedis fall.

That hie on horse willith to ride  
In glitterande golde of grete araie,  
Painted and portrid alle in pride,  
No common knight maie go so gaie.

Chaunge of clothing every daie,  
With goldin girdils grete and small,  
As boistous as is bere at baie;  
All soche falschede mote nedis fall.

With pride punisshith thei the pore,  
And some one thei sustain with sale,  
Of holie church makith an hore,  
And fill ther wombe with wine and ale;  
With money fille thei many a male,  
And chaffrin churchis when thei fall,  
And telle the peple a leude tale;  
Soche false faitours foule 'hem befall.

Thei fede of many manir metes,  
With song and solas sitting long,  
And filleth ther wombe, and faste fretes,  
And from the mete unto the gong,  
And astir mete with harpe and song,  
And eche man mote 'hem Lordis call,  
And hote spicis evir emong;  
Soche false faitours foule 'hem befall.

Miters thei werin mo than two  
Iperlid as the quen'is hedde,  
A staffe of golde, and pirrie lo!  
As hevie as it were made of ledde;  
With clothe of gold bothe new and redde,  
With glitterande gold as grene as gall,  
By dome thei dampne men to be dedde;  
All soche faitours foule 'hem befall.

And Crist'is peple proudly curse  
With brode boke and braying bell,  
And to put pennies in ther purse  
Thei woll sell bothe hevin and hell:  
In ther sentence and thou wilt dwell  
Thei willin gesse in ther gaie hall,  
And though the soth thou of 'hem tell  
In the grete cursing shalt thou fall.

That is yblessid that thei bleffe,  
And cursid that thei cursin woll,  
And thus the peple thei oppresse,  
And have ther lordshippis at full:  
And many be merchauntes of woll,  
And to purs pennies woll come thrall,  
The pore peple thei al to pull;  
Such false faitours foule 'hem befall,

Lordis alio mote to 'hem loute,  
Obeysaunt to ther brode blessing,  
Thei ridin with ther royal route  
On a courfir as it were a king,  
With saddle of golde glittering,  
With curious barneis quaintly crallit,  
Stioppis gaie of golde mastling;  
All suche falsched foule may befall it.

Christes Ministers clepid thei bene,  
And rulin al in robberie,  
But Antichriste thei servin clene,  
Attirid al in tirannie,  
Witnesse of John his prophecie;  
Antichriste is ther admirall,  
Tiffelers attired in trecherie;  
Al suche faitours foule 'hem befall.

Who saith that some of 'hem may sinne  
He shal be domid to be ded;  
Some of 'hem wollin gladly winne  
Al ayenst that which God forbed.

Al Holiest they clepe ther hed,  
That of ther rule is full regall;  
Alas that evir thei etc bred!  
For al such falsched wol foule fall.

Ther hed covitith al honour,  
To be worshipped in worde and dede,  
Kingis mote to him knele and coure,  
To the' apostles that Christ forbode:  
To Popis heste such take more hede  
Than to kepe Christes commaundement,  
Of gold and silvir ben ther wede,  
Thei holde him hole omnipotent.

He ordaineth by his ordinaunce  
To parishe priestis a powere,  
To' anothir a gretir avaunce,  
A gretir point to his mistere;  
But for he' is highist in erth here -  
To him reserveth he many' a point,  
But unto Christ, that hath no pere,  
Reservith he no pin no joynt.

So senith he abovin all,  
And Christ abovin him nothings,  
Whan that he sittith in his stall  
Dampnith and savith as him thinke;  
Suche pride tofore hie God doth stinke:  
An angel bad John to' him not knele,  
Only to God to do his bowinge;  
Soche worship-willers mote ill fele.

Thei ne clepe Christ but *Sanctus Deus*,  
And clepe ther hed *Sanctissimus*;  
All they that suche a secte sewis  
I trowe thei taken 'hem anisse:  
In erth here they havin ther blisse,  
Ther hie mastir is Beliall;  
Christ his pore peple from 'hem wisse,  
For al suche false will foule befall.

They mowin both ybinde and lose,  
And all is for ther holy life;  
To save or dampne they mowen chose;  
Betwene 'hem now is a grete strife;  
'Many' a man is killed with a knife  
To wete which havin lordship shall;  
For suche Christ suffrid woundis five,  
For all suche falsched will foule fall.

Christ said, *Qui gladio percutit*,  
With swerde surely he shall die;  
He bad his priestis pece and grith,  
And bad 'hem not drede for to die,  
And bad them be both simple' and sie,  
And carkè not for no cattell,  
And truste on God that sittith on hie,  
For al false shal full foule befall.

These wollin makè men to swere  
Ayenst Christ'is commaundement,  
And Christ'is members al to tere,  
On rode as he were neyrent;  
Suche lawes thei maken by assent,  
Eche on it trowith as a baie,  
And thus the pore be fully shent,  
But falsched foule it shulle befall.

Ne usin thei no simonie,  
But selle churchis and priories,  
Ne they usin to none envie,  
But cursin al 'hem contraries,

And hirith men by daies and yeres  
With strength to hold 'hem in ther ~~shall~~,  
And culle all ther advarfaries,  
Therefore falsched soule thou them fall.

With purse they purchase perfonage,  
With purse thei payin 'hem to plede,  
~~And~~ men of warre thei wollin wage  
To bring ther enemies to dede,  
And lordis livis they wol lede,  
And muchil take, and give but small,  
But he ~~it~~ so get from it shal shede,  
And ~~make~~ ~~for~~ ~~his~~ ~~owne~~ ~~right~~ soule yfall.

~~They~~ ~~followe~~ ~~nothing~~ but for hire,  
Ne church, ne font, ne vestiment,  
And make orders in every shire,  
But priestis pay for the parchment;  
O' riatours they taken rent,  
Therwith they smere the shep's skall,  
For many churches ben suspent;  
All fuche falsched soule it befall.

Some livith not in lecherie,  
But haunte wenchis, widows, and wives,  
And punish the pore for putre,  
Themselle it useth al ther lives;  
And but a man to them him shrives  
To hevin come he never shall,  
He shal be cursid as be catives;  
To hel thei saine that he shal fall.

Ther was more mercy' in Maximine,  
And Nero, that never was gode,  
Than there is now in some of them  
Whan he hath on his furrid hode;  
They folowe Christ that shede his blode  
To heven, as bucket to the wall;  
Suche wrechis yben worse than wode,  
And al fuche faitours soule 'hem fall.

They give ther almis to the riche,  
To mainteynours and men of lawe,  
For to lordis they wol be liche,  
And harlots sonne not worthe an hawe;  
Sothfastneff alle fuche han slawe;  
They kenbe ther crockettes with cristall,  
And drede of God they have doune drawe;  
Al fuche faitours soule 'hem befall.

They make parsons for the pennie,  
And canons and their cardinals;  
Unnethe amongst 'hem al is any  
That ne hath glosed the gospel fals,  
For Christ made ner no cathedrals,  
Ne with him was no cardinall  
With a redde hatte, as use ministrals;  
But falsched soule mote it befall.

Ther tithing and ther offering ~~to the~~  
They clemith by possession,  
Ne therof n'il they none ~~for~~ go,  
But robbin men a' a raunome:  
The tithing of ~~type~~ ~~lucifer~~  
With these maniters is veniall;  
The ~~bidde~~ of bribery and larson  
Will make falsched full soule to fall.

They takin to ferme ther sompnours  
To harme the peple what they may,  
To pardoners and false faitours  
Thei sell ther selcs I dare well say,

And all to holdin gret arraie,  
To multiplie 'hem more metall,  
They drede ful litel dom's day,  
Whan al fuche falsched shal soule fall.

Suche harlottes shul men disclaunder,  
For that they shullin make them gre,  
And ben as proud as Alexander,  
And sain to the pore Wo be ye!  
By yere eche priest shal paie his fe  
For to encrese his lemmans call;  
Suche herdis shul wel ivil the,  
And al fuche false shal soule befall.

And if a man be falsely famed,  
And wol ymake purgacioun,  
Than wol the' officers be agramed,  
And assign him fro toun to toun;  
So nede he must payin raunfome,  
Though he be clene as is cristall,  
And than have an absolution;  
But al fuche false shal soule befall.

Though he be giltie of the dade,  
And that he may the money paie,  
Al the while his purse wol yblede  
He may use it fro day to day.  
The bishopes officers gone gay,  
And this game they use ovir all,  
The pore to pil is al their pray;  
But al fuche false shul soule befall.

Alas! God ordained no fuche lawe,  
Ne no fuche crafte of covetise,  
But he forbad it by his lawe;  
Suche rulers mowen of God agrise,  
For al his rulis ben rightwise:  
These newe pointis ben pure papall,  
And Godd's lawe they all dispice,  
And al fuche faitours shul soule fall.

They saine that Peter had the key  
Of heven and hel, to have and holde;  
I trowe Peter toke no money  
For no finnis that he ysolde:  
Suche successours yben to bolde,  
In winning all ther witte they wral,  
Ther conscience is waxin colde,  
And al such faitours foul 'hem fall.

Peter was ner so grete a sole  
To leve his key with fuche a lorell,  
Or take fuche cursid soc or tole,  
He was adviſid nothing well;  
I trowe they have the key of hell,  
Their maistr is of that marshall,  
For there thei dressin 'hem to dwell,  
And with false Lucifer to fall.

Thei ben as proude as Lucifarre,  
As angry and as envious;  
From a gode faith they ben ful farre;  
In cove'tise they ben curious;  
To catche catil as covitous  
As hounde that for hungre wol yall,  
Ungodly and ungracious;  
And nedely fuche false shal soule fall.

The Pope, and he were Peter's heire,  
Me thinke he errith in this case,  
Whan choise of bishop's in dispaire  
To chosin 'hem in divers place,



A lorde shal write to him for grace,  
For his clerke anone praye he shall,  
So shal he sped in his purchase;  
And al suche false foule 'hem befall.

Although he can ne manir gode  
A lord's prayir shal be spedde,  
Though he be wilde of wil or wode,  
Nat understanding what men redde,  
A leude bostir, that God forbedde,  
As gode a bishoppe' is my horse Ball;  
Suche a Pope is full foule bestede,  
And at the laste wol foule yfall.

He makith priestes for erthly thanke,  
And not at all for Christ's sake;  
Suche that yben ful fat and ranke,  
To foul's hele none hede they take;  
Al is wel done what er they make,  
For they shal answere ones for all;  
For world's thank such worch and wake,  
And al suche false shal foule befall.

Suche that can nat yfay ther crede  
With prayir shul be made prelates,  
Nothir can thei the gospels rede,  
Suche shul now weld in hie estates;  
The hie godes frendship 'hem makes,  
Thei totith on ther summe totall;  
Suche bere the keyes of hell's yates,  
And al suche false shal foule befall.

Thei forsakin for Christ's love  
Travaile, and hungre, thurst, and colde;  
They ben ordrid or al above  
Out of youthed til they ben olde;  
By the dore they go nat to the folde,  
To helpe ther shepe they nought traval,  
For hirid men al suche I holde,  
And al suche false foule 'hem befall.

For Christ our King thei wol forsake,  
And knowe him nought for his poverté,  
For Christ's love they wol awake,  
And drinke piment al aperte;  
Of God they seme nothing aferde,  
As lusty live as Lamual,  
And drive ther shepe into desert;  
Al suche false faitours shul foule fal.

Christ yhad twelve apostles here,  
Nowe say they Ther may be but one  
That may not erre in no manere,  
Who leve not this ben lest echone:  
Peter errid, so did not John;  
Why is he cleped the Principall?  
Christe cleped him Peter, not the Stone;  
Al false faitours foule 'hem befall.

Why curlin they the croisery  
Christ's Christian ceturis?  
For bytwene them is now envy  
To be enhaunfid in honours;  
Christin livers with ther labours,  
For they levin on no mortal,  
Ben do to deth with dishonours,  
And al suche false foule 'hem befall.

What knoweth a tilloure at the plowe  
The Pop's name, and what he hate?  
His crede suffiseth to 'him inowe,  
And knoweth a cardi'nal by his hatte.

Rough is the pore unrightly latte,  
That knowith Christ his God royal;  
Suche maters be not worth a gnatte,  
But suche false faitours foule 'hem fal.

A king shal knele and kisse his showe,  
Christ let a sinful kisse his fete,  
Me thinke he holdeth him hie inowe,  
So Lucifer did, that hie set:  
Suche one me thinke himselfe foryet,  
Or to the trouth he was nat cal:  
Christe that suffrid woundis wete,  
Shall make all suche falshedde.

They layith out ther largesse  
For to takin silvir and golde,  
Thei fillin coffers, and sackes fettes  
Ther as they foulis catchin sholde;  
Ther servauntes be to them unholde,  
But they can doublin ther rentall;  
To bigge 'hem castles bigge 'hem holde;  
And al suche false foule 'hem befall.

*Here endeth the first parte of this Tale, and hereafter  
followeth the seconde parte.*

To accorde what this word shal  
No more Englishe ne can I finde,  
Shewing anothir now I shall,  
For I have moche to saye behinde,  
How priestis han the peple pinde,  
As curteis Christe ythath me kinde,  
And put this matter in my minde,  
To make this manir men amende.

Shortely to shende 'hem, and shewe now  
How wrongfully they werche and walke,  
Of hie God nothing tell, ne howe,  
But in Goddes worde tell many a balke,  
In harnis holde 'hem and in halke,  
And prechen' of tithis and offrende,  
And untruely of the gospel talke;  
For his mercy God it amende!

What els is Antichriste to saie  
But even Christ's adversarie?  
Suche hath now ben many a daie  
To Christ's bidding ful contrarie,  
That from the trouth clene ywarry;  
Out of the way they ben ywende,  
And Christ's peple untruely cary;  
God for his pitie it amende!

They live contrary to Christes life,  
In hie pride against his lowlynesse,  
Against suffraunce they be in strife,  
And angre ayenst sobrenesse,  
Ayenst wisdom wilfulnesse;  
To Christ's talis lital tende,  
Against mesure outrigiousnesse;  
But whan God wol it may amende.

Lordely life ayenst lowlinesse,  
And demin al without mercy,  
And covetise ayenst largesse,  
Ayenst trouth trechery,

And ayenist almesse envy ;  
 Ayenist Christ they comprehende ;  
 For chastite mainteine leche'ry ;  
 God for his grace this amende !  
 Against penaunce thei use delightes,  
 Ayenist suffraunce strong defence,  
 Ayenist God they usin ill rightes,  
 Ayenist pitie punishmentes,  
 Open evil ayenist continence ;  
 Ther wickid winning worfe dispende ;  
 Sobirnesse sette in to dispende ;  
 God for his godnesse is amende !

Why cleamin they noly' his powere,  
 And wranglin ayenist al his hestes ?  
 His living folowe thei nought here,  
 But livin worfe than witleffe bestes ;  
 Of fishe and fleshe they lovin festes ;  
 As lordis thei ben brode ikende ;  
 Of Godd'is pore thei hatin gestes ;  
 God for his mercy this amende !

With Dives fuche shal have ther dome,  
 That saine that they be Christ'is frendes,  
 And do nothing as they should done,  
 Al fuche ben falsir than ben fendes :  
 On the peple they ley fuche bendes  
 As God in erth they han offende ;  
 Succour for such Christe now send us,  
 And for his mercy this amende !

A token' of Antichrist they be ;  
 His careckes ben now wide iknowe,  
 Receved to preche shal no man be  
 Without token of him I trowe :  
 Eche Christin priest to prechin owe,  
 From God above thei ben yfende  
 Goddes word to al folke for to showe,  
 And sinful man for to amende.

Christ sent the pore for to preche,  
 The royal riche he did not so,  
 Now dare no pore the peple teche,  
 For Antichrist is al ther foe ;  
 Among the peple he mote go,  
 He hath biddin al fuche suspende,  
 Some hath he hent, and thinketh yet mo ;  
 But al this God may wel amende.

Al tho that han the worlde forsake,  
 And livin lowly, as God hadde,  
 Into ther prison shulle be take,  
 Betin and boundin, and forth ladde :  
 Hereof I rede no man be dradde,  
 Christ said that his should be yfende ;  
 Eche man ought hereof to be gladde,  
 For God ful wel it wol amende.

They take on 'hem royall powere,  
 And say they havin swerdis wo,  
 One curse to hel, one sle we here :  
 At his taking Christ had no mo,  
 Yet Peter had but one of tho,  
 And Christ to him sinke gan defende,  
 And into the' sheth badde put it tho ;  
 And al fuche mischeves God amende !

Christ bad Peter to kepe his shepe,  
 And with his sworde forbade 'hem smite ;  
 Swerde is no tole with shepe to kepe,  
 But to shepherdes that shepe wol bite ;

Me thinke fuche shepherdes ben to wite  
 Who' ayen ther shepe with swerde contende ;  
 They drive ther shepe with grete despite ;  
 But al this God may wel amende.

Peter's successours be thei nought  
 Whom Christ ymade his chefe pastoure ;  
 A swerde no shepherde usin ought  
 But he would fle as a bochoure :  
 Who so were Peter's successoure  
 Should bere his shepe til his backe bende,  
 And shadowe 'hem from every shoure ;  
 And al this God may wel amende.

Successours to Peter ben these  
 In that, that Peter Christe forsoke,  
 That levir had God's love to lese  
 Than shepherde had to lese his hoke ;  
 He culleth the shepe as doth the coke ;  
 Of 'em takin they woll untrende,  
 And falsely glose the Gospell boke ;  
 God for his mercy them amende !

Whan Christ had take Peter the kay  
 Christ saide he must ydie for man ;  
 That Peter to Christ gan withsay,  
 Christe bad him Go behinde, Sathan :  
 Suche counsaillours many' of these han,  
 For 'world'is wele God to offende ;  
 Peter's successours they ben than  
 But al fuche God may wel amende.

For Sathan is to say no more  
 But he that contrary to Christ is,  
 In this they lernin Peter's lore,  
 They sewin him whan he did misse ;  
 They folowe him forsoth in this  
 That Christ would Peter reprehende,  
 But nat that longith to' hevin blisse ;  
 God for his mercie 'hem amende !

Thei none apostle sewen, in case  
 Of ought that I can understonde,  
 But him that betraieth Christ, Judas,  
 That bare the purse in every londe,  
 And al that he might sette on honde  
 He hidde and stale, and it mispende :  
 His rule these traitours han in honde ;  
 Almighty God all fuche amende !

And at the last his lorde gan tray  
 Curvidly through false covetise,  
 So would these traine him for money  
 And they ywistin in what wise ;  
 They be sikre' of the fele ensife.  
 From all sothnesse they ben yfrende,  
 And covetise chaunge with quentise ;  
 Almighty God al fuche amende !

Were Christ upon erth, here este sone,  
 These wouldin dampne him to die ;  
 All his hestis they han fordene,  
 And saine his sawes ben heresie ;  
 Ayenist his commaundementes they crie,  
 And dampnin all his to be brende,  
 For thei ne like fuche losengrie ;  
 God Almighty all fuche amende !

These han more might in Englande here  
 Than hath the king and all his lawe,  
 They han purchasid fuche powere  
 To takin 'hem whom list not knawe,





Alas! what thinke these men to saie  
That thus dispendin Godd'is gode?  
At the grete dredefull dom'is daie  
Soche wretchis shall be worse than wode.

Some ther churchis nevir ne sic,  
Ne ner o penie thidir sende;  
Though that the pore for hungir die,  
O penie on 'hem will thei not spende:  
Have thei receiving of the rente  
Thei recke ner of the remenaunt;  
Alas! the devill hath clene 'hem blente;  
Soche one is ~~Sathan~~ sojournaunt.

And uic ~~heredome~~ and harlottrie,  
And covetise, and pompe, and pride,  
And slothe, and wrathe, and eke envie,  
And sewin sinne by every side;  
Alas! where thinkin soche t' abide?  
How woll thei ther accomptis yeld?  
From hie God thei mowe 'hem not hide;  
Soche willers witte' is not worth a nelde.

Thei ben so rotid in richesse  
That Christ'is povert is foryet;  
Yservid with so many messe  
Hem thinke that manna is no mete:  
All is gode that thei mowin gete;  
Thei wene to livin evirmore;  
But whan that God at dome is sete  
Soche trefour is a feble store.

Unnethis mote thei matins saie  
For counting and for courtholding,  
And yet he jangilith as jaie,  
And understont himself nothing;  
He woll yserve bothe erle and king  
For his finding and for his fe,  
And hide his tithing and offring;  
This is a feble charite.

Othir thei ben proude or cove'tous,  
Or elles thei ben hard or hungrie,  
Or thei ben libe'rall or lecherous,  
Or els medlers with marchandrie,  
Maintainers of men with maistrice,  
Or stewardes, countours, or pledours,  
And serve God in ypocrisie;  
Soche priestis ben Christes false traitours.

Thei ben false, thei ben vengeable,  
And begile men in Christ'is name;  
Thei ben unstedfast and unstable;  
To traie ther Lorde 'hem thinke no shame;  
To servin God thei ben full lame;  
Godd'is thevis, and falsely stele,  
And falsely Godd'is worde defame;  
In winning is ther world'is wele.

Antichrist these priestis serve all,  
I praie the who maie sayin Nae?  
With Antichrist soche shull fall,  
Thei folowen him in dege and faie;  
Thei servin him in rich araie,  
To servin Christ soche falsely fain;  
Why at the dredfull dom'is daie  
Shull thei not folowe him to pain?

That knowen 'hem self that thei doen ill  
Ayenst Christ'is commaundement,  
And amende 'hem ner ne will,  
But serve Sathan by one assent.

Who sayith sothe he shall be shent,  
Or speketh ayenst ther false living,  
Who so well livith shall be brent,  
For soche ben gretir than the king.

Popis, bishops, and cardinals,  
Chanons, and parsons, and vicars,  
In Goddes service I trowe ben fals  
That sacramentis sellin here,  
And ben as proude as Lucifere:  
Eche man loke whethir that I lie;  
Who so spekith ayenst ther powere  
It shall be holdin heresie.

Lokith how many orders take  
Onely of Christ for his service,  
That the world'is godis forsake;  
Who so take ordirs othir wise  
I trowe that thei shall fore agrise,  
For all the glose that thei conne,  
All ne sewin not this assise;  
In evill time thei thus begonne.

Loke how many emong hem all  
Ne holdin not this hie waie  
With Antichrist thei shullin fall,  
For that thei wollin God betraie:  
Gpd amende 'hem, that best ymaie!  
For many men thei makin shende;  
Thei wetin well the sothe I saie,  
But the devill hath soule 'hem blende.

Som of 'hem on ther churchis dwell  
Apparailled porely; proude of porte;  
The seven sacramentes thei doen sell;  
In cattell catching' is ther comfort:  
Of eche mattir thei wollin mell;  
To doen 'hem wrong is ther disport;  
To afraie the peple thei ben fell,  
And hold 'hem lower than doeth the lorde.

And for the tithing of a ducke,  
Or of an apple or an aie,  
Thei make men swere upon a boke;  
Lo! thus thei foulun Christ'is faie:  
Soche berin evill hevin kaie;  
Thei mowin affoile, thei mowe thrive,  
With mennis wivis strongly plaie,  
And with true tillers, sturte and strive,  
At the wrestling and at the wake,  
And the chief chauntours at the nale,  
Market beters, and medling make,  
Hoppen' and houtin with heve and hale;  
At saire freshe, and at wine stale,  
Thei dine and drinke, and make debate,  
The seven sacramentes set a faile;  
Kepe soche the kaies of hevin gate?

Mennis wivis thei wollin hold,  
And though that thei ben right sory,  
To speke thei shull not be so bold,  
For sompning to' the consistory,  
And make 'hem saie with mouthe I lie;  
Though thei it sawin with ther eye  
His lemman holdin opinly  
No man so harde to aske why.

He woll have tithing and offring  
Maugre whofoevir it grutche,  
And twise on the daie he woll sing:  
Godd'is priestis ne were none soche;

He mote go hunte with dogge and biche,  
And blowen his horne and cryin Hey,  
And forcerie usen as a witche;  
Soche kepin evill Peter's key.

Yet thei mote have some stocke or stone  
Gaily paintid and proudly dight,  
To makin men livin upon,  
And saie that it is full of might,  
About soche men set up grete light,  
Other soche stockes shul stande therby  
As darke as if it were midnight,  
For it mae makin no mastrie.

That it the leude peple se mowe,  
Thou Mary, thou worchest wondir thinges,  
About that that men offrin to  
Hongir brochis, ouchis, and ringes;  
The priest purchasith the offringes,  
But he n'ill offir to' none image:  
Wo is the soule that he forsinges  
That prechith for soche pilgrimage!

To men and women that ben pore,  
Which that ben Christ's owne likenesse,  
Men shullen offir at ther dore,  
That suffre hungir and distresse,  
And to soche image offir lesse,  
That mowe not fele ne thirstene cold;  
The pore in spirite gan Christ blesse,  
Therefore offrih to feble' and old.

Buckilers brode and swerdis long,  
Baudrike, with baselardis-kene,  
Soche toles about ther necke thei hong:  
With Antichrist soche priestis ben;  
Upon ther dedes it is well fene  
Whom thei servin, whom thei honouren;  
Antichrist is thei ben all clene,  
And Godd's godes falsly devouren.

Of scarlet and grene gaie gounes,  
That mote be shapin for the newe,  
To clippin and kiffin in tounes  
The damoselles that to the daunce sewe,  
Cuttid clothes to sewe ther hewe,  
With long pikis on ther shone:  
Our Godd's gospel is not true;  
Either thei serve the devill or none.

Now ben the priestis pokes so wide  
Men must enlarge the vestiment,  
The holy gospel they doen hide  
For the contrarien in raiment;  
Such pristes of Lucifer ben sent:  
Like conquerours thei ben araied,  
The proude pendaunces at ther ars pent,  
Falsely the trueth thei han betraied.

Shrift silvir soche wollin askeis,  
And wollin men crepe to the crouche;  
None of the sacramentes save askis  
Withouten moede shall no man touche;  
On ther bishop ther warant vouche,  
That is a law of the decre:  
With mede and money thus thei mouche,  
And thus thei fain is charite.

Within the middis of ther masse  
Thei n'ill have no man but for hire,  
And full shortly let forth ypass;  
Soche shul men findin in eche shire

That parsonages for gaine desire  
To live in liking and in lustes;  
I dare not fain *sans oïe jeo dire*  
That soche ben Antichrist's priestis:

Or thei yef the bishoppis why,  
Or thei mote ben in his service,  
And holdin forth ther harlottrie,  
Soche prelates ben of feble' emprise;  
Of Godd's grante soche men agrise,  
For soche mattirs that takin mede,  
How thei' excuse hem, and in what wise,  
Methinketh thei ought greter mede.

Thei fain that it to no man longith  
To reprove them though that thei erre,  
But falsly Godd's godes thei songeth,  
And therwith maintein wo and werre;  
Ther dedes should be as bright as sterre,  
Ther living leud mann's light:  
Thei saie the Pope ne maie not erre;  
Nede must that passin mann's might.

Though' a priest lie with his lemman' at night,  
And tellen his felowe and he him,  
He goith to masse anon right,  
And saith he singeth out of sinne;  
His birde abideth him at his inne,  
And dighteth his diner the mene while,  
He singeth his masse for he would winne,  
And so he wenith God begile.

Hem thinkith long till thei be met,  
And that thei use forth all the yere;  
Emong the folke whan he is set  
He holdith no man half his pere:  
Of the bishop he hath powere  
To soile men, or els thei ben lore,  
His absolucion maketh them skere;  
Wo is the soule that he singeth for!

The Griffon began for to threte,  
And saied, Of monkis canst thou ought?  
The Pelli'can said, Thei ben full grete,  
And in this world moche wo hath wrought;  
Saint Benet, that ther ordir brought,  
Ne made 'hem ner in soche manere,  
I trowe it came ner in his thought  
That thei should use so grete powere.

That a man should a monke Lorde call,  
Ne serve him on knees as a king;  
He is as proude as prince in pall,  
In mete and drinke, and in all thing:  
Some weren a miter and ring,  
With double worstid well idight,  
With roiall mete and riche drinke,  
And ride on courser as a knight.

With haukis and with houndis eke,  
With broche or ouce on his hode;  
Some saie no masse it is a weke;  
Of deintees is ther moste ode  
With lordshippis and witte bondmen;  
This is a roiall regioun;  
Saint Benet made ner non of 'hem  
To have lordship of man ne toun.

Now thei ben queint and curious,  
With fine clothe clad and servid clene,  
Proude, and angrie, and envious,  
Malice is mochil that thei mene;

In catching craftie and covetous,  
 Lordly livin in grete liking;  
 This living' is not religious  
 According to Benet's living.

Thei ben clerkes, and courts ovir se,  
 Ther pore tenaunce fully thei site;  
 The hier a man amercid be  
 The gladlyir thei woll it write:  
 This is farre from Christes povertie,  
 For all with cove'tise thei endite;  
 On the pore thei have no pite,  
 Ne ner 'hem cherishe but or bite.

And commonly soche ben comen  
 Of pore peple', and of 'hem begete,  
 That this perfection han inomen:  
 Ther fathirs ride but on their sete,  
 And travaile fore for that thei ete,  
 In povert livith yong and old;  
 Ther fathirs suffreth drought and wete,  
 Many hungrie meles, thurste, and cold.  
 And all this the monkes han forsake  
 For Christ's love and Sainct Benete,  
 To pride and ese have 'hem betake;  
 This religion is ill besete:  
 Had thei ben out of gret religion  
 Thei must have hangid at the plowe,  
 Threshid and diked fro toun to toun,  
 With sorie mete not halfe inowe.

Therefore thei han this all forsake,  
 And take to riches, pride, and ese;  
 Full fewe for God wol monkes 'hem make,  
 Lite is soche ordir for to praise;  
 Sainct Benet ordained it not so,  
 But bad hem to the chereliche,  
 In churchliche manir live and go,  
 Boistous in yerth, and not lordliche.  
 Thei disclaunderin Sainct Benet,  
 Therefore thei have his holy curse;  
 Sainct Benet with hem never met  
 But if thei thought to robbe his purse.  
 I can no more here of 'hem tell  
 But that thei ben like tho before,  
 And clene serve the devill of hell,  
 And ben his trefure and his store;

And all soche othir counterfaitours,  
 Chanons, canons, and soche disgised,  
 Ben Godd's enemies and traitours,  
 His religion han foule dispised;  
 And of freris I have before  
 Told in a makin of a crede,  
 And yet I could tell worse and more,  
 But men would werien it to rede.

As Goddes godenes no man tel might,  
 Ne write ne speke, ne thinke, ne thought,  
 So ther falsheid and ther wright  
 Maie no man tell that ege God wrought.  
 The Griffon saied, Tho canst no gode,  
 Thou canst ner of no gentill kinde;  
 Othir I trowe thou waxist wode  
 Or ellis thou hast losse thy minde.

Should holy charche yhave no hedde  
 Who should ybe her governail,  
 Who should her rule, who should her redde,  
 Who should her forthren, who availe?

Eche man shall live by his travaile;  
 Who best doith shall have most mede:  
 With strength if men the church affaile  
 With strength men must defende her nede.

And if the Pope were purely pore  
 And nedy, and nothing ne had,  
 He shuld be drive from dore to dore;  
 The wickid of him n'olde not drad:  
 Of soche an hedde men would be fadde,  
 And sinfully liven' as 'hem lust;  
 With strength amendis soche be made,  
 With wepin wolves from shepe be wust.

If that the Pope and prelates would  
 So begge and bid, bowe and borowe,  
 Holy church should ystande full cold,  
 Her servautes sit and soupe sorowe;  
 And thei were noughtie, foule, and horowe,  
 To worship God men would wlate  
 Both on evin and on morowe:  
 Soche harlotrie men would hate.

And therefore men of holy church  
 Shouldin be honeste in all thing,  
 And worshipfull God's workis werche;  
 So semeth it to serve Christ ther king  
 In honest and in clene clothing,  
 With vessels of gold and clothes riche  
 To God honestly to make offering,  
 For to his lordship none is liche.

The Pellican cast an honge crie,  
 And saied, Alas! why saiest thou so?  
 Christ is our hede that sitteth on hie,  
 Heddin ne ought we have no mo;  
 We ben his membres bothe also,  
 Fathir he taught us call him als,  
 Maisters to call forbad be tho;  
 All maisters ben wickid and fals

That takith maistrise in his name  
 Ghostly, and to win yerthly gode;  
 Kingis and lordes should lordship have,  
 And rule the peple with milde mode,  
 But Christ, for us that shed his blode,  
 Bad his priests no maistriship have,  
 Ne carke not for clothis ne fode;  
 From all mischief he woll 'hem save:

Ther riche clothes shall be rightwisheffe,  
 Ther trefure a true life shall be,  
 Charite shal be ther richeffe,  
 Ther Lordship shal be unite,  
 And hope in God ther honeste,  
 Ther vessell a clene conscience;  
 Pore in sprite, and humilite,  
 Shall be holy church's defence:

What! saied the Griffon, maie the greve  
 That othir folkis faren wele?  
 What hast thou to doin with ther live?  
 Thy falsheid every man maie fele,  
 For thou ne canst no cattell gete,  
 But livest in londe as a lorell,  
 With glosing gettist thou thy mete;  
 So farith the devil in hell.

He would that eche man there should dwell,  
 For he livith in clene envie,  
 So with the tales that thou doest tell  
 Thou wouldest othir peple destric



# THE PLOWMAN'S TALE.

With your glofe and your heresie,  
For ye can live no bettir life  
But clene in fals hypocrisie,  
And bringist the in wo and strife.

And therewith have ye not doen,  
For ye ne havin here ne cure;  
Ye serve the devill, not God ne man,  
And he shall payin you your hire;  
For ye wol farin wel at festes,  
And be warm clothid for the cold,  
Therefore ye glosin Godd'is hestes,  
And begile peple yong and old.

And all the seven sacramentes  
Ye speke ayenst as ye were sliche,  
Tithings, offringes, with your ententes,  
And on your Lord'is body lie:  
All this ye doen to live in ese,  
As who sayith ther ben none soche,  
And sain 'The Pope' is not worth a pese,  
To make the peple' ayen him groche.

And this ycommith in by fendes  
To bring the Christin in distaunce,  
For thei would that no man were frendes.  
Levith thy chattring with mischaunce!  
If thou live well what wilt thou more?  
Let othir men live as 'hem list,  
Spendin ther gode or kepe in store;  
Othir mennes conscience ner thou n'ist.

Ye han no cure to answere fore;  
What meddle' ye that han not to doen?  
Let men live as thei han doen yore,  
For thou shalt answere for no man.  
'The Pellican sayid, Sir, naie,  
I ne dispisid not the Pope  
Ne no sacrament, sothe to saie,  
But speke in charite' and gode hope:

But I dispise ther hiè pride,  
Ther welthe that should be pore in sprite;  
'Ther wickidnesse is knowe so wide,  
Thei servin God in false habite,  
And tournin mekenesse into pride,  
And lowlinesse into' hie degre,  
And Godd'is wordis tourne and hide,  
And I am moved by charite

To lettin men to livin so  
With all my conning and my might,  
And to warnin men of ther wo,  
And to tellin 'hem trouth and right.  
The sacramentes be foul'is hele  
If thei ben usid in gode use;  
Ayenst that speke I ner a dele,  
For than ne were I nothing wise;

But thei that use 'hem in misse manere,  
Or set 'hem up to any sale,  
I trowe thei shall abie 'hem dere;  
'This is my reson, this my tale:  
Who so taketh hem unrightfullliche  
Ayenst the ten commandementes,  
Or elles by glofe wrechidliche  
Selleth any of the sacramentes,

I trowe thei doe the devill homage,  
In that thei wetin thei doe wrong,  
And therto I dare well to wage  
Thei serve Sathan for all their song.

To tithen' and offre' is holome life;  
So it be doen in due manere,  
A man to houselin and to thrive,  
Wedding, and all othir in fere.

So it be nother solde ne bought,  
Ne takè ne give for covetise,  
And it be so taken' it is nought;  
Who selleth him so maie fore agrise:  
On our Lordes body' I doe not lie,  
I saie the sothe thorough true rede,  
His fleshe and blode, through his misterie,  
Is there all in the forme of brede.

How it is there it nedeth not strive.  
Whethre' it be subget or accident,  
But as Christ was whan he' was on live  
So is he there in verament.  
If Pope or cardi'nall live gode live,  
As Christ us bad in his gospell,  
Ayenst that ne woll I not strive,  
But me thinkith thei live not well;

For if the Pope lived as God bedde,  
Pride and highnesse he should dispise,  
Richesse, covetise, and croune on hedde;  
Mekenesse and poverté he should use.  
The Griffon saied he should abaie,  
Thou shalt be brent in balefull fire,  
And all thy sect I shall distrie;  
Ye shall be hangid by the fwire.

Ye shulle be hangid and to drawe:  
Who givith you leve for to preche,  
Or spekin ayenst Godd'is lawe,  
And the peple thus falsely teche?  
Thou shalt be cursed with boke and bell,  
And dissevered from holie church,  
And clene idampnid into hell,  
Othirwise but ye wollin worche.

The Pelli'can saied, That I ne drede;  
Your cursing is of lite value;  
Of God I hope to have my mede,  
For it is falsed that ye shewe,  
For ye ben out of charite,  
And wilne vengeance, as did Nero:  
To suffrin I wol redy be;  
I drede not all that thou canst do.

Christ bad ones suffre for his love,  
And so he taught all his servautes,  
But thou' amende for his sake above;  
I drede not all thy maintenatnce;  
For if I drede the world'is hate,  
Me thinkith I were lite to praise:  
I drede nothing your hie estate,  
Ne I ne drede not your disese.

Wollin ye tourne and leve your pride,  
And your hie portè and your richesse,  
Your cursing should not go so wide;  
God bring you into right wisenesse!  
For I drede not your tirafnie,  
For nothing that ye can yeven;  
To suffre I am all redie,  
Sikir I recke nevir how sone.

The Griffon grinned as he were wode,  
And lokid lovely as an owle,  
And swore by cock'is herte and blode  
He wold him tere every doule;

# THE PLOWMAN'S TALE.

224

Holy church thou disclaundrist foule;  
For thy speche I woll the to race,  
And make thy flesh to rote and moule;  
Lofell, thou shalt have hardè grace.  
The Griffon flewe forth on his waie,  
The Pellican did sit and wepe,  
And to himself he gan to saie,  
God would that any of Christes shepe  
Had herdin, and itaken kepe  
Eche a word that he sayid was,  
And would it write and well ikipe;  
God would it were all for his grace!

*Plowman.*

I answerid, and saied I would,  
If for my travaile one would pey.

*Pellican.*

He saied yes; these ther God han sold,  
For thei han grete store of money.

*Plowman.*

I sayid, Tell me and thou maie,  
Why tellist thou menn'is trespase?

*Pellican.*

He said, To' amende hem in gode fay,  
If God woll give me any grace;  
For Christ himself is liken to me,  
That for his peple died on rode;  
As fare I right so farith he,  
He fedith his birdes with his blode:  
But these doon evill ayenst Gode,  
And ben his foen undir frendes face;  
I told 'hem how ther living stode,  
And God amende 'hem for his grace!

*Plowman.*

What ailith the Griffon, tell why  
That he holdith on the' othir side,  
For thei two yben likily  
And with kindis yrobin wide.

*Pellican.*

The foulè betokinith pride,  
As Lucifer that high flewe was,  
And sith he did him in ill hide,  
For he agilted Godd'is grace.  
As birde flyith up in the aire,  
And livith by birdes that ben meke,  
So these ben flowe up in dispaire,  
And shendin sely foulis eke;  
The foulis that ben in sinnes eke  
He culleth 'hem; knele therefore, alas!  
For bribrie Godd'is forbode breke;  
But God amende it for his grace!

The hinder parte is a loun,  
A robber and a raviner,  
That robbeth the peple in erth doune,  
And in yerth holdith nisse his pere:  
So fareth this foule bo'n ferre and nere,  
With tempo'rel strenght the peple chafe  
As a lion proude in yerth here;  
May God amende 'hem for his grace!

*Pellican.*

He flewe forth with his wingis twain  
All drouping and dafid, and dull,  
But sone the Griffon came again,  
Of his foulis the yerth was full;  
The Pelli'can he had cast to pull,  
So grete nombre ner sene ther was,  
What manir of foules telle I woll,  
If God wol give me of his grace.  
With the Griffon come foulis sele,  
Ravins, rokis, crowis, and pie,  
And graie foulis, agadrid wele,  
Igurde above they wouldin hie,  
Gledis and bosardes weren 'hem by,  
White molles and puttockes toke ther place,  
And lapwinges, that wel conith lie;  
This company' han forlete ther grace.

Long while the Pellican was oute,  
But at last he commith againe,  
And brought with him the phenix stoute;  
The Griffon would have flow ful faine,  
His foulis flewen as thicke as raine,  
The phenix tho began 'hem chace;  
To fle from him it was in vaine,  
For he did vengeance and no grace.  
He flewe 'hem doune without mercy;  
There estarte neither fre ne thrall;  
On him they cast a rufull crie  
Whan that the Griffon down was fall;  
He bete him not, but flewe hem all:  
Where he 'hem drove no man may trace;  
Under the erth methought they yall;  
Alas, they had a feble grace!

The Pellican then axid right  
For my writing if I have blame  
Who then wol for me fight of flight?  
Who shullin sheldè me from shame?  
He that yhad a maide to dame,  
And the Lambè that slaine ywas,  
Shal sheldin me from gostly blame,  
For erthely harme is Godd'is grace.

Therefore I pray every man  
Of my writing have me excused,  
This writing writeth the Pellican,  
That thus these peple hath dispised;  
For I am freshe fully advised  
I n'ill not maintene his menace,  
For the devill is ofte disguised  
To bring a man to evil grace.  
Witith the Pelli'can and not me,  
For herof I n'il not avowe  
In hie ne lowe, ne no degre,  
But as fable take it ye mowe.  
To holy church I will me bowe;  
Eche man to' amende him Christe sende space!  
And for my writing me alowe  
He that' is almighty for his grace.

*Here endeth the Plowman's Tale.*

## THE PROLOGUE;

*Or, The mery aduenture of the Pardonere and Tapstere at the Inn at Canterbury.*

WHEN all this freshe felshipp were come to Can-  
tisbury,  
As ye have herde to fore, with Talys glad and  
merry,  
Som of sotill sentence of vertue and of lore,  
And som of othir mirthis, for them that hold no  
Of wisdom, ne of holynes, ne of chivalry, [store  
Nethir of vertuouse matere, but to foly  
Leyd wit and lustis all to such japis  
As hurlewaynes meyne in every begg that rapes  
Thorough unstabill mynde, ryght as the levis  
grene  
Stondewn ageyn the wedir, ryght so by them I  
mene :  
But no more hereof nowe at this ilche tyme,  
In saving of my sentence, my Prolog, and my  
ryme.  
They toke ther in, and loggit them at mydmo-  
rowe I trowe,  
Alle cheker of the hope that many a man doth  
knowe ;  
Their Hooft of Southworke, that with them went,  
as ye have herde to fore,  
That was reowler of them al, of las and eke of  
more,  
Ordeyned their dyner wisely or they to chirch  
went,  
Such vitailis as he fonde in town, and for noon  
othir sent.  
The Pardonere behelde the besynes, how statis  
wer iservid,  
Diskennyng hym al prively, and a syde swervid :  
The hostelere was so halowid fro o plase to an-  
other,  
He toke his staffe to the Tapstere : Welcom myn  
own brother,  
Quod she, with a frendly loke, al redy for to kys ;  
And he, as a man i lerned of such kyndnes,  
Bracyd hir by the myddyll, and made hir gladly  
chere,

As thoughe he had iknowen hir al the rathir  
yeer :  
She halid hym into the tapstrey there hir bed way  
was makid ;  
Lo, here I ligg, (quod she) myself al nyght al  
nakid,  
Without manny's company syn my love was dede,  
Jenkyn Harpoure, yf ye hym knewe : from fete  
to the hede  
Was not a lustier persone to daunce ne to lepe  
Then he was, thoughe I it sey : and therwith to  
wepe  
She made, and with hir napron feir and white  
ywash  
She wyped soft hir eyen for teris that she out lask  
As grete as any myllstone : upward gon they  
stert  
For love of her swetyng, that sat so nighe hir  
hert :  
She wept and waylid, and wrong her hondis, and  
made much to done,  
For they that loven so passyngly such trowes they  
have echon :  
She snyffith, sighith, and shoke hire hede, and  
made rouful cher :  
Benedicite ! quod the Pardonere, and toke hir by  
the swere,  
Yee make sorwe inowgh, quod he, your life  
though ye shuld lese.  
It is no wondir, quod she than ; and therwith she  
gan to sнесе  
Aha ! al hole, quod the Pardonere ; your penaunce  
is somewhat passid  
God forbede it els ! quod she, but it were som-  
what lassid ;  
I might nat lyve els, thowe wotist, and it shuld  
long endure .  
Now blessid be God of mendemeate of hele and  
eke of cure !



Quod the Pardonere tho anon, and toke hir by  
the chynne,  
And sayd to hir these wordis tho; Alas that love  
is syn!  
So kynd a lover as ye be oon, and so trew of  
herte,  
For be my trewe conscience yit for yewe I smerte,  
And shall this month hereafter, for your soden  
disese;  
Now wele we ~~we~~ ~~ye~~ ~~lovid~~ ~~to~~ he coud you  
plese;  
I durst swere upon a book that trewe he shuld yewe  
fynd,  
For he that is so yore dede is grene in your mynd.  
Ye made me a fory man; I dred ye wold have  
stervid.  
Graunt mercy, gentil Sir, quod she, that ye un-  
stervid:  
Yee be a nobile man, iblessid mut yee be:  
Sit down; ye shul drynk. Nay I wis (quod he)  
I am fastyng yit, myne own hert'is rote.  
Fastyng yit, alas! quod she; therof I can gode  
bote.  
She stert into the town and fet a py al hote,  
And set to fore the Pardonere; Jenken, I ween  
I n'ote  
Is that your name I yow prey. I wis, myn own  
sustir,  
So was I enformed of them that did me fostir.  
And what is yowrs? Kitt, iwis; so cleped me  
my dame.  
And Godd'is blessing have thou, Kitt; now broke  
wel thy name;  
And privylich unlasid his both eyen liddes,  
And lokid hir in the visage paramour and amyddis,  
And fighed there with a litil time that she it here  
myghte,  
And gan to rown and feyn this song, *Now, love,*  
*then do me righte.*  
Ete and be merry, quod she; why breke ye nowt  
your fast?  
To wait more feleship it were but work in waste.  
Whi make ye so dull chere? for your love at  
home?  
Nay, forsooth, myne own hert, it is for you aloon.  
For me? alas! what sey ye? that wer a simple prey.  
Trewlich yit, quod the Pardonere, it is as I yewe  
sey.  
Ye, etith and beth mery; we wol speke therof  
sone;  
*Brennyd cat dredith feir*: it is mery to be a loon;  
For by our Lady Mary, that bare Jesus on hir  
I coud nevir love yit but it did me harm, [arm,  
For evir my manere hath be to love ovirmuch.  
Now Crist'is blessing, quod the Pardonere, go with  
al such.  
Lo! how the clowdis worchyn ech man to mete  
his mach,  
For trewly, gentil Cristian, I use the same tach,  
And have ydo many yer: I may it nat forbere,  
For *Kynd wold have his cours* though men the con-  
trary swere:

And therwith he stert up smertly and cast down  
a grote.  
What shal this do, gentil Sir? Nay, Sir, for my  
I n'old ye payd a peny her and so sone pas. [cote  
The Pardonere swore his grette othe he wold pay  
no las.  
I wis, Sir, it is ovir do, but fith it is yowr will  
I woll putt it in my purse lest yee it take in ill  
To refuse your curtesy: and therwith she gan to  
howe.  
Now trewly, quod the Pardonere, your manere  
been to lowe,  
For had ye countid steytly, and nothing left behind,  
I might have wele ydemed that ye be unkind,  
And eke untrew of hert, and sooner me forgete,  
But ye list be my tresorer, for we shall offer mete.  
Now certen, quod the Tapster, ye have a rede-ful  
even,  
As wold to God ye couth as wele undo my sweven  
That I my self did mete this nyght that is ypassid,  
How I was in a chirch when it was all ymassid,  
And was in my devocionne tyl service was al doon,  
Tyl the preest and the clerk boystly bad me goon,  
And put me out of the churche with an egr mode,  
Now Seynt Daniel, quod the Pardonere, your  
swevyn turn to gode,  
And I woll hallow it to the best, have it in your  
mynd,  
For comyngly of these swevyngs the contrary men  
shul fynd.  
Ye have be a lover glad, and litil joy yhad;  
Plick up a lusty hert, and be mery and glad,  
For ye shul have an husbond that shall yewe wed  
to wyve,  
That shal love yewe as hertly as his own lyve.  
The preest that put yew out of churche shall lede  
you in ageyne,  
And helpe to your mariage with al his might and  
main.  
This is the sweven al and som Kit; how likith the?  
Bemytrowith wondir wele, blessid mut thou we be?  
Then toke he leve at that tyme, tyll he come effe-  
sone,  
And went to his feleship (as it was to doon)  
Thoughe it be no grete holynes to prech this ill  
matere,  
And that som list to her it, yit, Sirs, ner the latter  
Endurith for a while and suffrith them that woll,  
And ye shull her how the Tapster made the Par-  
doner pull  
Garlik all the long nyghte til it was ner end day;  
For the more chere she made of love the falsir  
was her lay:  
But litil charge gaff she therof, tho she acquit his  
while,  
For ethir is thought and tent was othir to begile,  
As ye shul here hereafter, when tyme comith and  
spase  
To meve such matere.—But now a litil spase  
I wol return me ageyn to the company,  
The Knyghte and al the feleship, and nothing for  
to ly.

Whan they wer al yloggit, as skil wold and refon,  
Everich aftir his degre, to chirch then was feson  
To pas and to wend to make their offringis,  
Righte as their devocioun was, of silver broch  
and rynges;

Then at chirch dorr the curtesy gan to ryse  
Tyl the Knyght, of gentilnes that knewe right  
wele the guyse,

Put forth the prelatys, the Parson, and his fere,  
A Monk that took the spyngill with a manly chere,  
And did as the manere is, moilid al their patis  
Everich aftir othir, righte as they were of statis:  
The Frer feynyd fetously the spyngill for to hold  
To spyng oppon the remnaunt, that for his cope  
he n'old

Have last that occupacioun in that holy plase,  
So longid his holy conscience to se the Nonn's safe.  
The Knyght went with his compers toward the  
holy shryne

To do that they wer com for, and aftir for to  
dyne:

The Pardoner and the Miller, and othir lewde  
fotes,

Sought 'hem self in the chirch right as lewd gotes,  
Pyrid fast and pourid high upon the glase,  
Counterfetyng gentilmen the armies for to blase,  
Diskynering fast the peyntur, and for the story  
mournid,

And a red al so right as rammys hornyd.  
He berith a balstaff, quod the toon, and els a ra-  
kid end;

Thow failest, quod the Miller, thow hast nat wel  
thy mynd;

It is a spere, yf thow canst se, with a prik tofore,  
To push a down his enmy, and through the shoul-  
der bore.

Pese, quod the Hooft of Southwork; let stond the  
wyndow glaid;

Goith up and doith your offerynge; ye semith  
half amafid;

Sith ye be in company of honest men and good  
Worchith somwhat aftir them, and let the kynd  
of brode

Pas for a tyme; I hold it for the best,  
For who doith aftir company may live the bet in  
rest.

Then passid they forth boystly gogling with their  
hedis,

Knelid adown to fore the shrine, and hertlich their  
bedis

They preyd to Seint Thomas in suche wyse as they  
couth;

And sith the holy reliques ech man with his mowith  
Kissid, as a goodly monk the names told and  
taught,

And sith to othir places of holynes they raught,  
And wer in their devocioun tyl service wer al  
doon,

And sith they drowgh to dynerward as it drew to  
noon,

Then, as manere and custom is, signes there they  
bought,

For men of contre shuld know whome they had  
sought

Eche man set his silver in such thing as they likid,  
And in the meen while the Miller had ypickid  
His bosom ful of signys of Caunterbury brochis,  
Though the Pardoner and he pryvely in hir pou-  
chis,

They put them afterwards, that noon of them it  
wist,

Save the Sompner seid somwhat, and seyd to he  
list

Halff part, quod he, pryvely, wning on their  
ere;

Husht! pees, quod the Miller, seist thou nat the  
Frere,

How he lowrith undir his hood with a doggish  
eye?

Hit shuld be a privy thing that he coud nat aspy;  
Of every craft he can somwhat our Lady gave  
hym sorowe!

Amen, tho quod the Sompner, on eve and eke  
on morowe:

So cursid a Tale he told of me the devill of hell  
hem spede,

And me, but yf I pay him wele and quyte wele  
his mede.

Yf it bap homward that ech man tell his Tale,  
As we did hiderward, though we shuld set at sale  
All the shrewdnes that I can, I woll hym nothing  
spare,

That I n'ol touch his takerd somwhat of his care.  
They set their signys upon their hedes, and som  
oppon their capp,

And sith to the dynerward they gan for to stapp.  
Every man in his degre wish and toke his sete,  
As they were wont to doon at soper and at mete,  
And wer in silence for a tyme tyl good ale gan  
arise,

And then, as nature axith, as these old wise  
Knownen wele, when veynys been somwhat re-  
plete,

The spirits wol sterc, and also metis swete  
Causen oft myrthis for to be ymevid,  
And eke it was no tyme tho for to be ygrevid:  
Every man in his wyse made hertly chere,  
Telling his felowe of sportys and of chere,  
And of othir mirthis that fellyn by the wey,  
As custom is of pylgryms, and hath been many a  
dey.

The Hooft leid to his ere, of Southworke as ye  
knowe,

And thenkid al the company both high and lowe,  
So wele kepeing the covenaut in Southwork that  
was made,

That every man shuld by the wey with a Tale  
glade

All the whole company in shorting of the wey;  
And al is wele performed: but than now thus I  
sey,

That we must so homeward eche man tel anothir.  
Thus we wer accordit, and I shuld be a rathir  
To set yewe in governaunce by right ful juge-  
ment.

Trewly Hooft, quod the Frer, that was all our  
assent,

With a litil more that I shall sey therto :  
 Yee graunted of your curtesy that we shuld also  
 All the hole company sope with yewe at nyght ?  
 Thus I trowe that it was ; what sey you, Sir  
 Knyght ?  
 It shal nat nede, quod the Hooft, to axe no wit-  
 nes ;  
 Your record is good I now ; and of your gen-  
 tilnes  
 Yit I prey yew ~~agayn~~ for Seynt Thomas  
 shryne  
 And ye wold hold covenaut I wol hold myne.  
 Now trewely Hooft, quod the Knyght, ye have  
 right wel-seyd ;  
 And as towching my persone I hold me payde ;  
 And so I trowe that al doin. Sirs, what sey yee ?  
 The Monk and eke the Marchaunt and al seid Ye.  
 Then al this astir-mete, I hold it for the best ;  
 To sport and pley us, quod the Hooft, eche man  
 as hym left,  
 And go by tyme to soper and to bed also,  
 So mowe we erly ryfen our jorney for to do.  
 The Knyght arose therwithal, and cast on a fresher  
 gown,  
 And his sone anothir, to walk in the town,  
 And so did all the remnaunt that were of that  
 aray,  
 That had their chaungis with them, they made  
 them fresh and gay,  
 Sortid them togidir, right as their lustis lay,  
 As they were more usid travelling by the way.  
 The Knyght with his meyne went to see the walle  
 And the wards of the town, as to a knyght befall,  
 Devising ententiflich the strengthis al about,  
 And apointid to his sone the perell and the dout  
 For shot of arblast and of bowe, and eke for shot  
 of gonne,  
 Unto the wardis of the town, and how it might  
 be wone ;  
 And al defence ther ageyn astir his intent  
 He declarid compendiously, and al that evir he  
 ment  
 He sone perseyvid every poynt, as he was ful abil.  
 To armes and to travaile and persone covenabill  
 He was of all factur astir fourm of kynd,  
 And for to deme his governaunce it semed that  
 his mynd  
 Was much in his lady that he lovid best,  
 That made hym offit to wake when he shuld have  
 his rest.  
 The Clerk that was of Oxenforth onto the Somp-  
 nore seyde ;  
 Me semeth of grete clerge that thow art amayde,  
 For thou puttest on the Frer in maner of repreff,  
 That he knoweth falshe, vice, and eke a theff ;  
 And I it hold vertuouse and right commendabill  
 To have very knowlech of thinges reprovabill ;  
 For who so may eschew it, and let it pas by,  
 And els he might fall theron unward and sodenly.  
 And thoughe the Frer told a Tale of a Somp-  
 nour,  
 Thow oughtist for to take it for no dishonour,  
 For of al craft and of eche degre  
 They be not all perfite, but som nyce be.

Lo ! what is worthy, seyde the Knight, for to be  
 a clerk ;  
 To sommon among us them this mocionne was ful  
 I comend his wittis and eke his clerge, [derke :  
 For of ether part he faveth honeste.  
 The Monk toke the Parson then and the grey  
 Frer,  
 And preyde them for curtesy for to go in fere :  
 I have ther acquaintaunce that al this yeres thre  
 Hath preyde hym by his lettris that I hym wold se ;  
 And ye my brothir in habit and in possessioun,  
 And now I am here methinketh it is to doon,  
 To preve it in dede what chere he wold me make,  
 And to yew my frende also for my sake.  
 They went forth togidir talking of holy matere,  
 But woot ye wele in certeyn they had no mind on  
 watere  
 To drynk at that tyme, when they wer met in fere,  
 For of the best that myght be founde, and there-  
 with mery chere,  
 They had, it is no doubte ; for spycys and eke wine  
 Went round about the galloyn and eke the ruyne.  
 The Wyfe of Bath was so wery, she had no wyl to  
 walk,  
 She toke the Prioress by the honde ; Madam, wol  
 ye stak,  
 Pryvely into the garden to se the herbes growe,  
 And astir with our host's wife in hir parlour  
 rowe ?  
 I wol gyve yewe the wyne and ye shul me also,  
 For tyl we go to soper we have naughs ellis to do.  
 The Prioress, as woman taught of gentil blood and  
 hend,  
 Assentid to hir counsel, and forth gon they wend,  
 Passyng forth softly into the herbery,  
 For many a herb grewe for sewe and surgery,  
 And all the aleys feir, and parid, and raylid, and  
 ymakid,  
 The savage and the isope yfrethid and ystakid,  
 And othir beddis by and by fresh ydight,  
 For comers to the hooft righte a sportful fight.  
 The Marchaunt and the Mancipill, the Miller and  
 the Reve,  
 And the Clerk of Oxenforth, to townward gan  
 they meve,  
 And al the othir meyne, and lastt noon at home  
 Save the Pardonere, that pryvelich when al they  
 wer goon  
 Stalkid into the tapstry ; for nothing wold he leve  
 To make his covenante in certeyn that fame eve ;  
 He wold be loggit with hir, that was his hole en-  
 tentiounne.  
 But hap and eke Fortune, and all the constellaci-  
 ounne,  
 Was clere hym ageyns, as ye shul astir here ;  
 For hym had better be yloggit al nyght in a myere  
 Than he was the same nyght or the sun was up ;  
 For such was his fortune he drank without the  
 cupp ;  
 But thereof wist he no delay ; ne No man of us alle  
 May have that high connyng to know what shal befall.  
 He stappid into the tapstry wondir pryvely,  
 And fond hir ligging liryng with half slopy  
 eye.



Pourid fellich undir hir hood, and sawe all his  
comyng,  
And lay ay still, as naught she knewe, but feynid  
hir slepyng.

He put his hond to hir brest; Awake, quod he,  
awake.

A, *benedicite*! Sir, who wist yew her? out tho I  
myght betake

Prisoner, quod the Tapstere, being al aloon;  
And therwith breyd up in a frite, and began to  
groon.

Now sith ye be my prisoner yeld yew now, quod he.  
I must nedis, quod she, I may nothyng fle;  
And eke I have no strength, and am but yong of  
And also *it is no mastery to catch a mouse in a cage* [age,  
*That may no where stert out, but closid wondir fast*;  
And eke, Sir, I tell yew though I had grete hast  
Ye shuld have caught when ye com. Wher lern  
you curtesy?

Now trewlich I must chide, for of right pryvety  
Women ben som tyme of day when they be aloon.  
Wher coude I yew prey when ye com efftione?

Nowe mercy, dere swetyng! I wol do so no more;  
I thank you an hundrit sithis; and also by your  
lore

I wol do hereaftir in what plase that I com;  
But lovers, Kitt, ben evil avysid full oft, and to  
lem;

Wherfore I prey you hertlich hold me excused,  
And I behote yew trewly it shall no more be usid.  
But now to our purpose: how have ye fare  
Sith I was wyth you last? that is my most care;  
For yf yee cylid eny thing othir wise then good,  
Trewly it wold chaunge my chere and my blood.  
I have farid the wers for yewe, quod Kitt; do ye  
no drede

God that is above? and eke ye had no nede  
For to congir me, God woot, wyth your nygro-  
mancy,

That have no more to vaunte me but oonly my  
And yf it were disseynd then wer I ondo: [body,  
I wis I trowe, Jenkyn, ye be nat to trust to;  
For evir more ye clerkis con so much in book  
Yee wol, wynn a woman at first look.

Thought the Pardonere, this goth wele, and made  
his beter chere,

And axid of hir softly, Love! who shall ligg here  
This nyght that is to comyng? I prey yewe tell  
I wis it is grete nede to tell yewe, quod she: [me.  
Make it nat overqueynt though you be a clerk;  
Ye knowe wele inough iwis by loke, by word, by  
work.

Shal I com than, Cristian, and fese away the cat?  
Shal ye com? *per benedicite*! what question is  
that?

Wherfor I prey you hertly to be my counsail?  
Comyth somwhat late, and for nothing fail;  
The dorr shall stond that up; put it from you soft,  
But be wele avysid ye wake nat them on lofft,  
Care ye nat, quod Jenkin, I can theron at best;  
Shal no man for my slepyng be wakid of his rest.  
Anon they dronk the beverage, and were of oone  
accord,

As it semed by their chere and also by their word;

And al a stauce she lovid hym wele, she toke  
hym by the swere,

As though he had lernyd cury favel of som old  
frere.

The Pardonere plukkid out of his purs I trow the  
dowry,

And toke it Kitt in hir hond, and bad her pryvel,  
To orden a rere sopor for them both to [also,  
A cawdell ymade with swete wyne and with sugir  
For trewly I ~~have no talent~~ in your absence,  
So longith my hert toward ye to be in yewr  
presence.

He toke his leve, and went his way as though no-  
thing wer,

And met wyth al the felshir; but in what plase  
ne wher

He spake no word therof, but held hym close and  
styll,

As he that hopid sikirlich to have had al his wyll,  
And thought many a mery thought by hymself  
aloon:

I am a loggit, thought he best, how so evir it  
goon;

And thoughe it have costid me, yit wol I do, my  
peyn.

For to pike hir purs to nyghte and win my cost  
ageyn,

Now leve I the Pardonere tyll that it be eve,  
And wol returne me ageyn righte, ther as I did leve.

Whan al wer com togider in their herbergage  
The Hooft of Southwork, as ye knowe, that had  
no spice of rage,

But al thing wrought prudencially, as sobir man  
and wise;

Now wol we to the soup, Sir Knyght, feith yeur  
avyse,

Quod the Hooft ful curteysly, and in the same wise.  
The Knyght answer'd him ageyn, Sir as ye devyse

I must obey, ye woot wele; but yf I faill wytt  
Then takith these prelatis to yewe, and washith  
and go sit;

For I woll be yewr Marchall and serve yewe, ech  
one,

And then the officers and I to sopor shall we gone.  
They wish, and sett right as he bad, eche man  
wyth his fere,

And begonne to talk of sportis and of chere  
That they had the astir-mete whiles they wer out,

For othir occupacioun tyll they wer servid about  
They had nat at that tyme, but every man kitt a  
lofft;

But the Pardonere kept hym close, and told no-  
thing of

The myrth and hope that he had, but kept it for  
hymself;

And thoughe he did ~~not~~ no fors, for he had nede  
to solve

Long or it were mydnyght, as ye shal her sone,  
For he met with his love in crokeing of the moon.

They wer yservyd honchely, and eche man held  
hym payde,

For of o mane e of service the sopor was araide,  
As skill wold and reson, sith the best of all

Payd like much, for growing of the gall;

But yit as curtesy axith, though it were som dele  
 streight,  
 The statis that were above had of the feyrest en-  
 dreyte;  
 Wherfor they did their gentilnes ageyn to all the  
 rout,  
 They dronken wyne at their cost onys round  
 about.  
 Now pass I lightly ovir. When they soupid had  
 Tho that were of governance, of wise men and  
 sad,  
 Went to their rest, and made no more to doon,  
 But Miller and the Coke dronken by the moon  
 Twyes to eche othir in the repenyng; [to sing  
 And when the Pardonere them espy'd anon he gan  
*Doutill me this bourden*, choker, in his throte,  
 For the Tapster sheld here of his *own* note:  
 He clepid to hym the Sompuour, that was his own  
 discipill,  
 The Yeman and the Reve, ond the Mancipill,  
 And stoden so holowyng; for nothing wold they  
 Tyl the tyme that it was well within eve. [leve  
 The Hooft of Southwork herd them wele, and  
 the Marchaunt both,  
 As they wer at a countis, and wexen somewhat  
 wroth,  
 But yet they preyd them curteysly to rest for to  
 wend.  
 And so they did all the rout; they dronk and made  
 an end.  
 And eche man droughe to *cusky* to slepe and take  
 his rest  
 Save the Pardonere, that drew apart, and weytid  
 by a cheste  
 For to hide hymself tyl the candill wer out:  
 And in the meen while, have ye no doute,  
 The Tapster and hir paramour, and the hosteler  
 of the house,  
 Sitt togidir pryvelich, and of the best gouse  
 That was yfound in town and yset at sale  
 They had there of sufficiaunt, and dronk but litill  
 ale;  
 And sit and ete the cawdell for the Pardonere that  
 was made,  
 With sugir and with swete wyne, right as hym-  
 self bade;  
 So he that payd for all in feer had not a twynt,  
 For oft is more better ymerkid then ymynt:  
 And so farid he ful right as ye have yherd,  
 But *Who is that a woman cou'd n't make his berd*,  
 And she wer therabout, and set hir wytt therto?  
 Ye woot wele I ly nat, and wher I do or no  
 I wol nat here termyn it, lest ladies stond in plase  
 Or els gentil women, for lesing of my grace  
 Of daliaunce and of sportis and of goodly chere;  
 Therfor anenst their estatys I wol in no manere  
 Deme ne determyn, but of lewd kitts,  
 As tapsters, and othir such that hath wyly wyttis,  
 To pike mennys pursis, and eke to bler their eye;  
 So wele they make *ferre* soth when they fallest  
 by.  
 Now of Kitt Tapster, and of his

When they had ete and dronk right in the same  
 plase,  
 Kitt began to rendir out all things as it was;  
 The wowing of the Pardoners and his cost also,  
 And how he hopid for to lygg al nyght wyth hir  
 also;  
 But therof he shall be sikir as of God's cope;  
 And sodenly killid her paramour, and seyde, *We*  
*shal sclope*  
 Togidir hul by hul, as we have many a nyght,  
 And yf he com and make noyse, I prey yewe  
 dub hym Knyght.  
 Yes, Dame, quod hir paramour, be thou not agast;  
 This is his own staff thou seyst, therof he shall  
 atast.  
 Now trewly, quod the hostler, and he com by my  
 lot  
 He shall drink for Kittis love wythout cup or pot;  
 And he be so hardy to wake eny gyt [mist;  
 I make a vowe to the pecoock there shal wake a soul  
 And arose up therewithal and toke his leve anon:  
 It was a shrewid company; they had servid so  
 many oon.  
 With such manere of feleship ne kepe I never to dele,  
 Ne no man that lovith his worship and his hele.  
 Quod Kitt to hir paramour, Ye must wake a  
 whyle,  
 For trewlich I am sikir that within this myle  
 The Pardonere wol be comyng, his hete to aswage,  
 But loke ye pay hym redelich to kele his corage;  
 And therfor, love, dischance yewe not tyll this chek  
 No, for God, Kitt, that wol I no, [be do.  
 Then Kitt went to bed, and blewe out all the  
 light,  
 And by that tyme it was ner hond quarter nyght.  
 Whan all was still, the Pardonere gan to walk,  
 As glad as eny goldfynch that he herd no man  
 talk,  
 And drowghe to Kittis droward to herken and to  
 list,  
 And went to have fond the dor up; but the hasp  
 and eke the twist  
 Held hym out a whils, and the lok also;  
 Yit trowid he no gile, but went ner to,  
 And scrapid the dorr welplich, and wynyd wyth  
 his mowith  
 After a doggis lyden, as nere as he couith.  
 Away, dog, with evill deth! quod he that was  
 within,  
 And made hym all redy the dorr to unpin.  
 A! thought the Pardonere, tho I trow my berd be  
 made;  
 The Tapster hath a paramour, and hath made  
 them glade  
 With the cawdell that I ordeyned for me, as I  
 guesse;  
 Now the devill hir spede, such oon as she is,  
 She seid I had ycongerid hir; our Lady gyve hir  
 forowe;  
 Now wold to God she wer in stokis tyl I shuld hir  
 borowe,

And therewyth he caught a cardiakill and a cold  
fot,

For who have love longing, and is of corage hote,  
He hath ful many a myry thought tofore his  
delyte;

And right so had the Pardoner, and was in evil  
plight;

For fayling of his purpose he was nothing in ese,  
Wherfor he fill sodenlich into a wood rese,  
Entryng wondir fast into a frensy

For pur very angir and for jelousy; [wood,  
For when he herd a man within, he was almost  
And because the cost was his no mervel tho the  
mond

Wer turned into vengauce, of it myght be :  
But this was the myschief; all so strong as he  
Was he that was within, and lighter man also,  
As provid wele the bataile betwene them both to.  
The Pardoner scrapid esse ageyn; for nothyng  
wold he blyn,

So feyn he wold have herd more of hym that  
was within.

What dog is that? quod the paramour; Kit, wost  
thou ere?

Have God my trowith, quod she, it is the Pardoner.  
The Pardoner, with myscheff! God gyve hym evil  
preff!

Sir, she seid; by my trowith he is the same theff.  
Therof thou liest, quod the Pardoner, and might  
nat long forbere.

A thy fals body! quod he; the devil of hell the  
tere!

For by my trowith a falsher sawe I nevir noon,  
And nempnid hir namys many mo then oon,  
Though to rech hir wer noon honeste  
Among men of good worship and degre  
But, shortly to conclude; when he had chid inowe  
He axid his staff spitouflich, with wordis sharp and  
rowe.

Go to bed, quod he within; no more noyse thou  
make;

Thy staff shal be redy to morowe I undertake,  
In soth, quod he, I wol nat fro the dorr wend  
Tyl I have my staff. Thow bribour, then have the  
todir end,

Quod he that was within; and leyd it on his back,  
Right in the same plase as chapmen berith their  
And so he did to mo, as he coud a rede, [pak;  
Graspyng astir with the staff in length and eke in  
brede;

And fond hym othir whyle redlich inoughe  
With the staffys end high upon the browe.  
The hosteler ley oppon his bed and herd of this  
affray,

And stert hym up lightlich, and thought he wold  
afay:

He toke a staff in his hond, and highed wondir  
blyve

Tyl he wer with the feleship that shuld nevir  
thryve.

What be yee? quod the hosteler; and knew them  
both wele,

Hyust! pefe, quod the paramour: Jak, thow must  
be fele;

Ther is a theff, I tch the, within this hall dorr:  
A theff? quod Jak; this is a nobill chere  
That thou hym hast yfound, yf wee hym myght  
cach.

Yis, yis, care the nought; with hym we shul mach  
Wele inowe or he be go, yf so we had lighte  
For we to be strong inowe with o man for to  
fighte.

The devil of hell, quod Jak breke this thev'is  
bonis!

The key of the kitchen, as it was for the nonys,  
Is above with our dame: and she hath such usage,  
And she be wake of her slepe, she fallith in such a  
rage

That al the weke astir the may no man hir pefe,  
So she sterith about this house in a wood rese.  
But now I am wifid but how we shul have lyte;  
I have too giftis within that this same nyght  
Supid in the halle, and had a litill feir: [pire,  
Go up, quod Jak, and loke, and in the ashie  
And I wol kepe the dorr; he shall not stert out.  
Nay, for God that wol I nat, lest I cach a clout,  
Seid the todir to Jak, for thou knowist bettir then I  
All the estris of this house; go up thyself and spy.  
Nay, for soth, quod Jak, that were grete unrighte  
To aventur oppon a man that with hym did not  
fighte:

Sithens thou hast hym bete and with thy staff ypilt,  
Me thinkith it wer no reson that I shuld ber the  
gilt;

For by the blyfing of the cole he myght se myne  
hede,

And lightly lene me such a stroke my hond to be  
dede.

Then wol we do by common assent sech hymal  
about;

Who that metith hym first pay him on the snout;  
For methought I herd hym here last among the  
panmys.

Kepe thou the toder side, but ware the watir  
cannys,

And if he be herein ryghtfone we shull hym fynde,  
And we to be strong inowghe o theffe for to bynde.  
Aha ha! thought the Pardoner, beth the panmys  
aryn?

And drowhe oppon that side, and thought oppon  
a gynne;

So at l. it he fond oon, and set it on his hede,  
For as the case was fall ther' to be had grete nede:  
But yit he graspit ferthir more to have somewhat  
in honde,

And fond a grete ladill right as he was gonde,  
And thought for to sterte out betwene them both  
to

And waytid wele the paramour that had doon  
hym woo,

And set him with the ladill on the gruscill on the  
nose,

That all the week after he had such a pose,  
That both his eyin waterd arlich by the morowe,  
But she that was the cause of it had ther'of no  
forowe.

But now to the Pardoner. As he wold stert away  
The hosteler met with hym, but not to his pay:



The Pardonere ran so swith the pan fill him fro,  
 And Jak hosteler astir hym as blyve as he myght go,  
 And stapid oppon a brondeal unware, [asware,  
 That hym had bin beter to have goon more  
 For the egg of the pann met with his shynne,  
 And karff atoo a veyn and the next fyn :  
 But wils that it was grene he thought litil on,  
 But when the grenefess was apast the greff sat ner  
 the bone ;  
 Yit Jak leyde his hond ~~on~~ her it fete,  
 And when he found he was yhurt th : Pardonere he  
 gan to tete,  
 And swore by Seynt Amyas that he shuld abigg  
 With strokis hard and fore even oppon the rigg ;  
 Yf he hym myght fyn ~~ne~~ nothyng would hym  
 spare :  
 That herd the Pardonere wele, and ~~hym~~ hym bettir  
 a square,  
 And thought that he had strokis ryght inough.  
 Wynnes on his armis, his back, and his browe.  
 Jak then, quod the paramour, where is the theff  
 ago ?  
 I note, quod tho Jak ; right now he lept me fro,  
 That Crist is curs go with hym, for I have harm  
 and spite :  
 Be my trowith and I also and he goith nat al quyte :  
 But and we myght hym fynd we wold aray him so  
 That he shuld have legg ne foot to morrowe on to go.  
 But how shull we hym fynd ? the moon is adown,  
 (As grace was for the Pardonere) and eke when  
 they did roun  
 He herd them evir wel inowe, and went the more  
 asyde,  
 And drew him ever bakward, and let the strokis  
 glide.  
 Jak, quod the paramour, I hold it for the best,  
 Sith the moon is down, for to go to rest,  
 And make the gatis fast ; he may not then astert,  
 And eke of his own staff he berith a redy mark,  
 Wherby thou mayest him knowe among all the  
 route,  
 And thou ber a redy ey, and weyt wele aboute  
 To morowe when they shul wend ; this is the best  
 rede :  
 Jak, what seyest thou therto ? is this wele yseyd ?  
 Thy wit is clere, quod Jak ; thy wit mut nodis  
 stend.  
 He made the gatis fast ; ther is no more to doon.  
 The Pardonere stode aside, his chekis ron and bled,  
 And was ryght evil at ese al nyght in his hede :  
 He must of force lige lyke a colyn sward, [berd ;  
 Yit it mevid him wondir fore for making of his  
 He payd at full therfore though a womans art  
 For wyne and eke for cawdill, and had therof no  
 part :  
 He therfor preyde Seyn Juliane, as ye mowe on-  
 derstonde,  
 That the devill her shulde spede on watir and on  
 londe,  
 So to disceive a travellig man of his herbergage,  
 And coud not els save curs his angir to aswage ;  
 And was distract of his wit, and in grete despayr  
 For astir his hede he caught a cold through the  
 nyghteyr,

That he was ner afound it, and coud, none othir  
 help :  
 But as he fought his loggyng he happid oppon a  
 whelp  
 That ley undir a steyir, a grete Walsh dog,  
 That bare about his neck a grete huge clog ;  
 Because that he was sperouse, and wold sone bite,  
 The clog was hongit about his neck, for men shuld  
 nat wite  
 Nothyng dogg is maister yf he did eny harm,  
 So for to excuse them both it was a wyly charm.  
 The Pardonere wold have loggit hym ther, and  
 lay somwhat nigh,  
 The warrok was awakid and caught hym by the  
 thigh,  
 And bote hym wondir spetoussly, defending wele  
 his couch,  
 That the Pardonere myght nat ne hym niether touch.  
 But held hym a square by that othir side,  
 As holfom was at that tyme for tercying of his hyde :  
 He coud noon othir help, but leyde adown his hede  
 In the dogg is littir, and wisshid astir brede  
 Many a time and oft, the dog for to plese,  
 To have yle ymore nere for his own ese :  
 But with what he wold, his fortune seyde Ney ;  
 So trawly for the Pardonere it was a dismal dey.  
 The dog ley evir grownyng, redy for to snache.  
 Wherfor the Pardonere durst nat with hym mache ;  
 But ley as still as eny stone, remembring his foly,  
 That he wold trust a Tapster of a common hostry ;  
 For commonly for the most part they ben wyly  
 echon.  
 But now to alle the company a morrow whan  
 they shuld gon  
 Was noon of all the feleship half so sone ydight  
 As was the gentil Pardonere ; for al tyme of the nyght  
 He was aredy in his aray, and had nothing to doon  
 Saffe shake alite his eris, and trus and be goone.  
 Yet or he cam in company he wissh away the blood,  
 And bond the forys to his hede with the typet of  
 his hood,  
 And made lightfom chere for men shuld nat spy  
 Nothyng of his turment ne of his luxury ; [pry,  
 And the hosteler of the house, for nothing he coud  
 He coud nat knowe the Pardonere among the com-  
 pany  
 A morowe when they shuld wend, for ought that  
 they coud pour,  
 So wysely went the Pardonere out of the dogg is  
 bour,  
 And blynced from the hosteler, and turned oft  
 about,  
 And evirmore beheld hym amyward of the rout,  
 And was evir syngyng to make al thyng good ;  
 But yit his notis wer somwhat low for aking of his  
 So at that tyme he had no more grame, [hede ;  
 But held hym to his happynes to scape shame.  
 The Knyght and all the feleship forward gon they  
 Passyng forth merely to the toun ys end ; [wend,  
 And by that tyme they were ther the day began to  
 And the son merely upward gan he pike, [rype,  
 Pleying under the egge of the firmament.  
 Now, quod the Host of Southwork, and to the  
 feleship bent,

Who sawe evir so feyr or so glad a day,  
 And how sote this feson is entring into May?  
 The thrustelis and the thrushis, in this glad morn-  
 nyng, [gale  
 The ruddok and the goldfynch; but the nyghtin-  
 His amorous notis lo how he twynith small!  
 Lo how the trees grenyth that nakid wer, and no-  
 thing  
 Bare this month afore but their sommer clothing!  
 Lo how Nature makith for them everichone!  
 And as many as ther be he forgettith noone!  
 Lo how the feson of the yere and Averell flouris  
 Doith the busshis burgyn out blossoms and flouris!  
 Lo the prymerosis how fresh they ben to sene!  
 And many othir flouris among the gras grene.  
 Lo how they spryng, and sprede, and of divers hue!  
 Beholdith, and feith both rede, white and blue!  
 That lusty bin and comfortabill for mann'ys sight!  
 For I sey for myself it makith my hert to light.  
 Now sith Almighty Soveryn hath sent so feir a dey  
 Let se now, as covenant is, in shorting of the wey,  
 Who shall be the first that shall unlace his male  
 In comfort of us al, and gyn some mery Tale;  
 For and we shuld now begyn to draw lot  
 Peraventure it might fal ther it ought not,  
 On som unlusty persone that wer not wele awakid,  
 Or semybousy ovyr eve, and had ysong and crakid  
 Somwhat ovir much: how shuld he than do:  
 For *Who shuld tell a Tale be must have good wyll therto.*

And eke som men fastyng beth glewid and ybound  
 In their tongis; and som fastyng beth nothyng jo-  
 cound;  
 And som men in the morning ther mouthis beth  
 adoun;  
 Tyll that they be charmyd their wordis with  
 soun.  
 So thys is my conclusioun and my last knot,  
 It wer grete gentilnes to tell with a lot.  
 By the rood of Bromnoln, quod the Marchant tho,  
 As fer as I have failed, riden and ygo,  
 Sawe I never man yet tofore this ilk day  
 So wele coud rule a company as our Host, in fay  
 His wordis ben so comfortabill, and comyth so in  
 feson,  
 That my wit is overcome to make eny reson  
 Contrary to his counsaill at myn ymagynacioun,  
 Wherfor I woll tell a Tale to your consolacioun,  
 In ensampill to yowe that when that I have do  
 Anothir be right redy then for to tell, ryght so  
 To fulfyll our Host's wyll and his ordinaunce.  
 There shall no sawte be found in me: gode wyll  
 shal be my chaunce:  
 With this I be excusid of my rudines,  
 Altho' I cannot peynt my Tale, but tell it as it is,  
 Lepyng ovir no sentence, as ferforth as I may,  
 But tell yewe the yolke and put the white away.

## THE MERCHANT'S SECOND TALE;

## OR, THE HISTORY OF BERYN.

Wherom yeris passed in the old dawis [lawis,  
When rightfullich by reson governyd wer the  
And princypally in the cete of Rome, that was so  
rich,

And worthiest in his dayes, and noon to him ilich  
Of worship ne of wele, ne of governaunce,  
For alle londis christened ther' of had dotaunce,  
And all othir natiouns, of what feith they were,  
Whils the Emperour was hole, and in his paleys  
I mainteynid in honour; and in Pop'is se [there  
Rome was then obciéd of all Cristiante.

But it farith ther'by as it doith by othir thingis;  
For though nethir cete, regioun, ne kyngis,  
Beth nat nowe so worthy as wer by olde tyme,  
As we fynd in romaunces, in gestis, and in ryme,  
*For all things doith wast, and eke mann'ys lyff  
Is more shorter then it was* and our wittis fyve  
Mowe nat comprehende now in our dieties  
As som tyme myght these old wise poetes.  
But sith that terrene thinges ben nat perdurabill,  
No mervaile is though Rome be somwhat variabill  
Fro honour and fro wele sith his frendis passid;  
As many anothir town is payrid and ylassid  
Within these few yeris, as we mowe se at eye;  
Lo! Sirs, here fast by Wynchelfe and Ry.

But yit the name is evir oon of Rome as it was  
groundit

After *Remus & Romulus*, that first that cete foundit,  
That brethren weren both to, as old bokis writen;  
But of ther les and governaunce I wol not now  
enditen,

But of othir mater that fallith to my mynd;  
Wher'for, gentill Sirs, ye that beth behind  
Drawith somwhat nere thikker to a rout,  
That my wordis may soun to eche man about.

Aftir these two brethren *Romulus* and *Remus*  
*Julius Cæsar* was Emperour, that rightful was of  
*Domus*.

This cete he governed nobilich wele,  
And conquered many a regioun, acronicull doth  
us telle

For, shortly to conclude, al tho wer adversaries  
To Rome in his dayis he made them tributaries;  
So had he in subjectione both frend and foon,  
Of which I tell yew trewely Englonde was oon.  
Yit aftir *Julius Cæsar*, and sith that *Crist* was bore,  
Rome was governed as wele as it was before,  
And namelich in that tyme and in the same yeris.  
When it was governed by the *Doseperis*;  
As semeth wele by reson, who so can entend,  
That *O mann'ys wytt ne wyll may not comprehend  
The boucheff and the myscheff*, as may many bedis;  
Ther'for ther operaciouns, ther domes, and ther  
dedes,

Were so egallich ydoon; for in all Cristen londis  
Was noon that they sparid for to mend wrongis.  
Then *Constantyne the Third*, aftir these *Doseperis*,  
Was Emperour of Rome, and regnyd many yeris.  
So, shortly to pas ovir, after *Constantyn's* dayis  
Phus *Augustinus*, as songen is in layes,  
That *Constantyn's* son, and of plener age,  
Was Emperour ychose, as fill by heritage,  
In whose tyme sikerlich the seven Sages were  
In Rome ydwelling decently; and yf yee lust to lere  
How they were yclepid, or I ferther goon,  
I woll tell you the names of them everichone,  
And declare yeu the cause why they ther namys  
The first was ycleped *Sother Legiseer*, [here.  
This is thus much for to sey, as *man bring the lawe*:  
And so he did trewely; for lever he had be sclawe  
Then do or sey eny thing that sowned out of reson,  
So cleen was his conscience yset in trowith and  
reson.

*Marcus Stoycus* the second, so pepill hym highte,  
That is to mene in our constert, *a keper of the right*:  
And so he did full trewe; for the record and the  
plees [sees

He wrote them evir trewely, and took noon othir  
But such as was ordynid to take by the yere:  
Now, Lord God! in Cristendom I wold it were so  
clere,



The third Crassus Asulus among men clepid was,  
*An house of rest, and ese, and counsaill, in every case :*  
 For to onderstand that was his name full right,  
 For evirmore the counsaills he helpid wyth al his  
 Antonius Judeus the serth was yclepid, [myght  
 That was asmuch to meen, aswele me myght have  
 As any posed of all the long yere, {clepid  
 That myght have made hym sory or chongit onys  
 chere,

But evirmore rejoycing, what that evir betid,  
 For his hert was evir mery, right as the somer  
 Summus Philopater was the fift's name, [bridd.  
 That thoughe men wold flee hym, or do hym al  
 the shame,

Angir, or disese, as evil as men couthe,  
 Yet wold he love them nevir the wers in hert ne  
 in mowith.

His will was cleen undir his foot, and nothing  
 hym above,

Therfore he was clepid *Fathir of perfite love.*

The sixth and the sevynth of these Sevin Sages  
 Was Stypio and Sithero. as thes word Astrolages  
 Was sirname to them both aftir their sciencis;  
 For of astronomy likerlich the cours and all the  
 fencis

Bothe they knowhit wele inoughe, and wer right  
 sotil of art.

But now to othir purpose, for her I wold depart  
 As lightly as I can, and draw to my matere.

In that same tyme that these Sages were  
 Dwellyng thus in Room, a litill without the walles,  
 In the subarbis of the town, of chambris and of  
 hallis,

And all other howseing that to a lord belongit,  
 Was noon wythyn the cete, ne noon so wele be-  
 hongit

With docers of highe pryse, ne wallid so aboute,  
 As was a Senatours hous wythyn and eke withoute.

Favinus was his name, a worthe man and rich;  
 And, for to sey shortlych, in Room was noon hym  
 lyche.

His portis and his estris were full evenaunte  
 Of trefour and of lordshyp; also the most vailant  
 He was, and eke ycom of high lynage :

And at last he toke a wyff like to his peerage;

*For Noriture and connyng, beute and parentyne,*

*Wer the countid more worth than gold or sylvir fyne.*

But now it is al othir in many man's thought,

*For thus ys now ymarried, and vertus set at nought*

Fawnus and his worthy wyff wer to gidir aloon

Fyveteene wyntir fullliche, and issu had they noon,

Wherfor ther joyis wer not half parfite,

For uttirlich to have a child was al ther delite,

That myght enjoy ther heritage and weld their  
 honour,

And eke when they were febill to their trew fo-  
 coure.

Their fastyng and their prayir, and all that evir  
 they wrought,

As pilgrimage and almsded, ever they besought

That God would of his goodnes som fruyte be-  
 twene them send :

*For the sake of their counsaill, the myddil, and*

This was their most besynes, and all othir delites,  
 And eke this world's rychis, they set at litil price.  
 So at last, as God wold, it fill oppon a dey,

As this lady fro chirchward went in the wey,  
 A child gan sterc in her womb, as Godd's wyl was,  
 Wherof she gan to mervill, and made short pas,  
 Wyth colour pale and eke wanne, and full in he-  
 vynes,

For she had ~~in~~ <sup>in</sup>ir tofore that day such manere  
 sekenes.

The wymmer that with hir were ~~ye~~ <sup>ye</sup> to behold  
 The lady and her chere, but not ~~ye~~ <sup>ye</sup> they told,  
 But feir and soft wyth ese ~~for~~ <sup>for</sup>ward they her  
 led :

For her soden sekenes ~~for~~ <sup>for</sup>ore they were adred,  
 For she was inliche gentil, kynd and amyabill,  
 And eke trewe of hert, and nothyng variabill.  
 She lovid God above all thing, and dred syn and  
 shame,

And Agea likerly was her rightfull name.

So aftir, in breff tyme, when it was purseyved  
 That she had done a womans dede, and had a  
 child conseyyd,

The joy that she made ther may no tung tell;  
 And al so much, or more, yf I ne ly shell;  
 Favinus made in his behalf for this glad tyding,  
 That I trowe I leve the emperour ne the kyng  
 Made no bettir cher to wyff, ne no more myrth,  
 Then Fawnus to Agea. And when the tyme of  
 birth

Nyghid her and ner, aftir cours of kynd,  
 Wetith wele in certen that all the wyt and mynd  
 Of Fawnus was continuell of feir delyveraunce  
 Betwene Agea and his child, and made grete or-  
 denaunce

Agcyn the tyme it shuld be bore, as it was for  
 to down.

So as God wold whan tyme cam Agea had a  
 son ;

But joy that Fawnus made was dobil tho to fore  
 When that he knew in certen she had a son ybore,  
 And sent anoon for nursis four, and no less,  
 To reule this child. Afterward as yeris did pas,  
 The child was kept so tenderly that it throff wel  
 the bet,

For what the norishes axit anoon it was yfett.

In his chambir it norished was; to town it mut  
 nat go :

Fawnus lovid it so cherely hit myght nat part  
 hym fro.

It was so feyr a creature as myght be on lyve  
 Of lymys and of fetours, and growe wondir  
 blyve.

This child that I of tell, Berinus was his name,  
 Was ovir much cherished, which turned hym into  
 grame,

As yee shull here aftir, when time comyth and  
 spase ;

For *Aftir swete the soure comyth full oft in many a*  
 For as sone as he coude ~~ye~~ <sup>ye</sup> and also speke

All that he set his ey on, or a tir list to beke,

Anoon he shuld it have, for ~~no~~ <sup>no</sup> man hym wer-  
 nvd. [nyd

Nobilitie and gentilnes, and had yhad some hey,  
 For it fill so astir wyth what child he did pley  
 Yf the pley ne likid hym he wold breke his  
 hede,  
 Or wyth a knyff hym hurt ryght nygh hond to be  
 dede :  
 For ther nas knyght ne squyer in his fadirs house,  
 That thought his owne persone moſte corajouſe,  
 That did oſeyd any thing Bérinus to displeſe  
 That he n<sup>o</sup> ſp<sup>o</sup>ntouſly anſwered on him reſe ;  
 Wher'of his fadir had joy and his modir alſo :  
 Yet it ſemith to many a man it was nat wiſely do.  
 When Beryn paſſed was ſeven yere, and grew in  
 more age,  
 He wrought ful many an evil chek ; for ſuch was  
 his corage  
 That there he w<sup>o</sup>ld or might do any evil dede  
 He wold nevir ſeſe for ought that men him ſeid,  
 Whe'fore many a pore man ful oft was agrevid ;  
 But Fawnus and Agea ful light theron belevid :  
 And thoughte men wold pleyne ful ſhort it ſhuld  
 availe,  
 For Fawnus was ſo myghty, and cheff of all  
 counſaill  
 With Auguſtyn the Emperbur, that all men hym  
 drad,  
 And lete paſs ovir miſcheſe and harmys that they  
 had.  
 Bérinus ferthermore lovid well the diſe,  
 And for to pley at hazard, and held ther' of grete  
 pryſe,  
 And all othir gamys that loſery was in,  
 And evirmore he loſt, and nevir myght wyn.  
 Bérinus at hazard many a nyght he wakid,  
 And oft tyme it fill ſo that he cam hom al nakid :  
 And that was all his joy, for right wele he knew  
 That Agea his modir wold cloth hym newe.  
 Thus Bérinus lyvid, as I have told to fore,  
 Tyll he was of the age of eightene yere or more.  
 But othir whyls amongis for pleyntis that were  
 grete  
 Fawnus made amendis, and put them in quiete :  
 So was the fadir cauſe the ſone was ſo wyld ;  
 And ſo have many mo ſuch of his own child  
 Be cauſe of his undoyng, al we mowe ſe al day ;  
 For *Thing ytake is hard to put away,*  
*As hors that evir trottid, trewlich I yew telle,*  
*It were hard to make bym aſtir to ambill welle :*  
 Ryght ſo by Bérin ; when he had his luſt and wyll  
 when he was lite  
 It ſhuld be hevy afterward to reve his old delite,  
 Save the whele of Fortune, that no man may  
 withſtonde,  
 For every man on lyve ther'on he is gond ;  
 O ſpoke ſhe turnyd bakward, righte at high noone,  
 All ageyn Bérinus, as ye ſhuld here ſone.  
 Agea his modir fell in grete ſikenes,  
 And ſent aſtir huſbond wyth wordis hire to liſ,  
 And for ſhe wold tell bym hir hole hert'is wyll  
 Er ſhe out of the wynd partid, as it was right and  
 ſkill.  
 When Fawnus was ycome, and ſaw ſo rodyleſe  
 Hys wyff th<sup>at</sup> was ſo dere, that for love he cheſe,  
 V.

No mervell though his hert wer in grete morn-  
 ing,  
 For he purſeyvyd fullich ſhe drewe to hir endyng :  
 Yit made he othir chere then in his hert was  
 To put away diſcomfort, diſſimilyng wyth his  
 faſe  
 The hevynes of his hert : wyth chere he did it  
 cloſe,  
 For ſuch a manner craft ther is wyth them can  
 gloſe ;  
 Save that tournyſh all to cautele : but Fawnus  
 did nat ſo,  
 For wetith wele in certeyn his hert was full of wo  
 For his wyff Agea ; and yit for craft he couth  
 The teris fro his eyin ran down by his mowith :  
 When he ſaw the pangis of deth comyng ſo aſt  
 Oppon his wyff Agea almoſt his hert to braſt.  
 Agea lyſt up hir eyen, and beheld the chere  
 Of hir huſbond Fawnus, that was ſo trew a fere,  
 And ſeyd, Sir, why do ye thus ? this is an elying  
 fare  
 In comfort of us both, yf yee might ſpare  
 And put away thys hevynes whyle that yee and I  
 Myght ſpeke of othir thyngis, for Deth me  
 nyghith nygh,  
 For to body ne to ſoule this vailyth nat a karſe.  
 Now tellyth on, quod Fawnus, and I wol lete it  
 For the tyme of talkyng as wele as I may [pas  
 But out of my remembraunce onto my endyng  
 day  
 Your deth woll nevir, I woot it wele, but evir be  
 in my mynd.  
 Then, good Sir, quod Agea, beth to my ſoule  
 kynd  
 When my body is out of ſight, for therto have I  
 nede,  
 For truer make then yee be in word ne in dede  
 Had nevir woman, ne more kyndnes  
 Hath ſhewed unto his make, I know right wele  
 iwis :  
 Now wold ye ſo her after in hert be as trewe,  
 I o lyve wythout make, and on your ſone rewe,  
 That litill hath ylernid ſithens he was bore :  
 Let hym have no ſtepmodir, for children have  
 tofore  
 Comelich they lovith nat : wherefore wyth hert I  
 prey  
 Have chere onto your ſone aſtir my endyng day ;  
 For ſo God me help and I laſt yew behynd  
 Shuld nevir man on lyve bryng it in my mynd  
 To be no more yweddit, but lyve ſoule aloon.  
 Now yee know all my wyll, good Sir, think  
 ther'on.  
 Certis, quod Fawnus, whils I have wyttis fyve  
 I think nevir aſtir yew to have another wyff.  
 The preſt was com therwythall for to do hir  
 rightis ;  
 Fawnus toke his leve, and all the othir knyghtis,  
 Hir kyndrid and frendis kiſſed hir echone :  
 It is no nede to axe wher ther was dole or noon.  
 Agea caſt her ey up, and lokid all aboute,  
 And wold have kiſſid Bérin, but then was he  
 wythoute,



Fleying to the hazard, as he was wont to doon,  
For as sone as he had ete he wold ren out anoon;  
And when she saw he was not ther that she thought  
most on

Hire sekene and hire mournyng berst her hert  
anoon.

A damfell tofore that was ron into the toone  
For to feche Beryn, that pleyed for his gowne,  
And had almost lost it, right as the damfell cam,  
And swore and starid as he was wood, as longit  
to the game.

The damfell seyde to Beryn, Sir, ye must com  
home,

For but ye hygh blyve that yee wer ycome  
Yeur mothir wold be dede; she is yit on lyve:  
Yf ye wol speke wyth her yee must hygh blyve.  
Who bad so, lewd Kitt? Your fadir, Sir, quod  
she.

Go home, lewd visenag, that evil mut thow the!  
Quod Beryne to the damfell, and gan her fray and  
feer,

And bad the devill of hell hir should to tere.  
Hast thow ought els to do but let me of my  
game?

Now by God in hevin, by Peter, and by Jame,  
Quoth Beryn in grete angir, and swore be book  
and bell,

Reherfying many namys mo than me lyst to tell,  
N'er thow my fadirs messenger wer thou shuldist  
nevir ete brede:-

I had levir my modir and also thou wer dede  
Then I shuld lese the game that I am nowgh in;  
And smote the damfell undir the ere, the weet  
gon upward spyn:

The death of Agea he set at litill pryse;  
So in that wrath frolick Beryn threw the dyse,  
And lost wyth that same cast al was leyde adown,  
And stert up in a wood rage, and ballid on his  
crown,

And so he did the remnaunt, as many as wold  
abyde;

But for drede of Fawnus his felawis gan to hyde,  
And nevir had wyll, ne list, wyth Beryn for to  
fyght,

But evir redy to pley and wyn what they  
myght.

The deth of Agea sprang about the towne,  
And every man that herd the bell for her sowne  
Bemony'd her full sore; fast Beryn toke none  
hede,

But sought another feleship, and quyklik to them  
yede,

To such manner company as shuld nevir thryve,  
For such he lovid bettir then his modir's lyve;  
And evirmore it shuld be nyght or he wold home  
drawe,

For of his fadir in certeyn he had no manner awe;  
For evir in his yowith he had al his wyll,

And was ypassed chastising but men wold hym  
kyll.

Fawnus for Agea, as it was well fitting,  
Made grete ordenaunce for hir buryng,  
Of prelatys and of preestis, and of all othir thyng,  
As thoughe she had be a wyff of a worthy king

It myght nat have be mendit; such was his gen-  
tilnes,

For at hir enteryng was many a worthy messe.

For four weeks full, or he did her intere,

She ley in lede wythyn his house; but Beryn cam  
not there,

Namelich into the place where his modir ley

Ne onys wold he a *Pater noster* for hir soule sey:

His thought was all in unthryft, benery, and  
dyse,

And drawyng all to foly, for *Yowith is recbles*,

*But ther it is refreynd and bath som manere eye:*

And therfore methinkith that I may wele sey

A man ypaffid yowith, and is wythout lore,

May be wele ylikened to a tre wythout more,

That may nat bowe ne bere fruyte, but root and  
ever wold:

Ryght so by yowith farith that no man list to  
chast.

This mowe we know verely by experience,

That *Terd makith vertu and benevolence*

*In childhode for to growe* as provith ymagynacioun:

A plant whils it is grene, or it have domina-  
cioun,

A man may wyth his fyngers ply it wher hym  
lyst,

And make therof a shakill, a with, or a twist;

But let the plant stond, and yeris ovirgrowe,

Men shull not wyth both his hondis unnethis make  
it bowe:

No more myght Fawnus make his sone Beryn,

When he grew in age, to his lore enclyne;

For every day when Beryn rose unwash he wold  
dyne,

And draw hym to his feleship as even as a lyne,  
And then com home and ete, and soop, and slepe  
at nyght:

This was al his besynes but yf that he did fight;  
Wherfor his fadir's hert Fawnus gan for to blede,  
That of his modir that ley at home he toke no  
more hede:

And so did all the pepill that dwellid in the town  
Of Beryn's wildnes gon speke and eke roun.

Fawnus oppon a dey, when Beryn cam at eve,

Was set oppon a purpose to make his sone leve

All his shrewd taichis wyth goodnes if he myght,  
And taught hym feir and soft, but Beryn toke it  
light,

And countid at litill pryse al his fadir's tale.

Fawnus saw it wold nat; with colour wan and pale

He partid from his sone, and wyth a sorowfull  
hert.

I ne can write halfynde how sore he hid smert

The disobeying of his sone and his wyf's deth,

That, as the book tellith, he wished that his breth

Had ybeen above the ferkill celestyne,

So fervent was his sorowe, his angir, and his pyne.

So, shortly to conclude, Agea was interid,

And Fawnus livid wyfles three yere were ywerid,

Wherof ther was grete speche for his high honour;

Tyll at last word cam onto the Emperour

That Fawnus was without wyfe, and feld was jo-  
counde,

But mournyng for Agea that he was to ybound;



And lyvid as an hermyte, soule and destitute,  
Wythout consolacioun, penyff oft and mute;  
Wherfor Augustinus, of Rome the Emperour,  
Was inwardlich fory, and in grete dolour.  
Wyth that the seven Sagis and Senatouris all  
Were assenblid, to discryve what shuld ther'of  
falt;

The wych seyde shortly, For a molestacioun  
Ther was noon othir remedy but a consolacioun;  
For *Whoso loveth in any thing displeyd or agrevid*  
*Must by a like thing egaill be remeid.*  
And when the Emperour knew all their determi-  
nacioun,

Quicklich in his mynd he had imaginacioun  
That Fawnus for Agea was in high distres,  
And must ycurid be wyth passyng gentilnes  
Of som lusty lady, that of pulchritude  
Were excellent al othir: so, shortly to con-  
clude,

The Emperour had a love tofore he had a wyf  
That he lovid as hertlich as his own lyf,  
As was as feir a creature as sone myght beshyne;  
So excellent of bewte that she myght be shryne  
To all othir wymmen that wer tho lyvand:  
But for the Emperour had a wyf ye shul wele on-  
derstonde

He cam nat in hir company to have his delite;  
For Cristendome and conscience was tho more  
perfitte

Then it is now adayis, yf I durst tell:  
But I wol leve at this tyme. Than Fawnus al  
so well

Was astir sent in hest, of seknes to be curyd;  
So what for drede and ellis they wer both en-  
furyd

In presence of the Emperour, so Fawnus myght  
nat flee;

It was the Emperours wyll, it myght noon  
othir be.

So wythin a tyme Agea was forgete,  
For Fawnus thought litill on that he hir behight:  
For as the seven Sagis had afore declarid

It cam all to purpos; For Fawnus litil carid  
For any thing at all save his wyff to plesse,  
That Rame was yclepid: for rest nethir ese  
Fawnus nevir had but of her presence:  
So was his hert on her yset that he coud no  
defence,

Save evirmore be wyth hir, and stare on hir  
visage,

That the most part of Room held it for dorage,  
And had much marvell of his variaunce:  
But *What is that Fortune cannot put in chance?*  
For ther n'as man on lyve on woman more be-  
dotid

Then Fawnus was in Rame, ne half so much  
ysotid.

Wyth that Rame had knowlech that Fawnus was  
ysmyt

Wyth the dart of Love: ye mowe ryght wele  
it wyt

That all that e'er she cond cast or ythynck  
Was all ageya Berynus, for many a sotill wrench

She thought and wrought day by day, as meny  
wemen doon,

Tyll they have of their desire the full conclu-  
sioun:

For the more that Fawnus of Rame did made  
The more dangerous was Rame and of chere  
fede,

And kept wele hir purpose undir coverture:  
She was the las to blame; it grew of nature.

But though that Rame wrought so, God forbede  
that alle

Wer of that condicioun. Yet touch no man the  
gall,

It is my plein counsell, but doith as othir doith:  
Take your part as it comith of roughe and eke of  
smoothe.

Yit noritur, wit and gentilnes, reson and perfitte  
mynde,

Doth all these worthy women to worch agenys  
kynde,

That thoughe they be agrevid they suffer and  
endure,

And passith ovir for the best, and folowith nothing  
nature.

But now to Rame's purpose, and what was hir  
desire,

Shortly to conclude, to make debate and ire  
Betwene the fadir and the sone, as it was likely  
tho;

What for his condicioun, and what for love also  
That Fawnus owte to his wyff, the rathir he must  
hir leve,

And grant for to mend, yf ought hir did greve.  
Berynus evir wrought right as he did before,

And Rame made hym chere of love, ther myght  
no woman more,

And gaff hym gold and clothing evir as he did  
lese,

Of the best that he coud ought wher in town  
chese,

And speke full feir wyth hym, to make al thyng  
dede;

Yit wold she have yete his hert wythout salt or  
brede:

She hid so hir felony, and spak so in covert,  
That Beryn myght nat spy it but lite of Ram's  
hert.

So, shortly to pas ovir, it fill oppen a nyghte,  
When Fawnus and his fresh wyf wet to bed  
ydight,

He toke hir in his arms and made hir hertly  
chere,

Ther myght no man betir make to his fere,  
And seyde, Myn ertly joy, myn hertis full plesaunce,

My wele, my woo, my paradise, my lyv's suste-  
naunce!

Why ne be ye mery, why be ye so dull,  
Sith ye know I am your own right as your hert  
woll?

Now tell on love, myn own hert! yf ye eyllith  
ought,

For and it be in my power anon it shall be  
wrought.

Rame wyth that gan sighe, and wyth a wepeing  
chere

Undid the bagg of trechery, and seide in this  
manere :

No mervell though myn hert be fore and full of  
dele,

For when I to yew weddit was wrong went my  
whele,

But who may be ageyns hap and aventure ?

Therfor as wele as I may myne I mut endure.

Wyth many sharp wordis she set his hert on feir

To purchafe with hir practik that she did desire :

But hoolich all hir wordis I cannot wele reherse,

Ne write ne endite how she did perce

Through Fawny's hert and his scull also ;

For more petouse compleynt of sorowe and of woo,

Made nevir woman, ne more petously,

Then Rame made to Fawnys : she smote full  
bitterly

Into the veyn, and through his hert blood ;

She bloderit so and wept, and was so high on  
mode,

That unneth she myght speke but othir while  
among

Wordis of discomfirt, and hir hondis wrong ;

For alas and woo the tyme that she weddit was !

Was evir more the frefreit when she myght have  
spafe.

I am yweddit ; ye, God woot best in what maner  
and how !

For yf it wer so fall I had a child by you,  
Lord ! how shuld he lyve, how shuld he com  
away ?

Sith Beryn is your first sone, and heir after your  
day ?

But yf that he had grace to scoole for to goo,  
To have som maner conning that he myght  
trust to,

For as it now stondeth it were the best rede,

For, so God me help, I had levir he wer dede

Than wer of such condicioun or of such lore

As Beryn your sone is ; it wer bett he wer unbore,

For he doith nat ellis save at hazard pley,

And comyth home al nakid ech othir dey ;

For within this month that I have wyth you be

Fiftene sithis, for verry grete pite

I have yclothid hym al new when he was to tore,

For evirmore he seyde the old were ylore.

Now and he wer my sone I had levir he were yfod,

For and he pley so long half our lyvelode

Wold scarcely suffise hymself oon,

And n'ere yee wold be grevid, I swere be Seynt  
John

He shuld after this dey be clothid no more for me,  
But he wold kepe them bettir and draw fro  
nycete.

Now gentill wyff, gramcy of your wise tale,

I thynk wel the more that I sey no fale ;

For towchyng my grevaunce, that Beryn goith  
al nakid,

Treulich that grevaunce is somewhat asclakid :

Let hym aloon, I prey yew, and I woll con yew  
thank,

For in such losery he hath lost many a frank.

The devil hym speide that rech yf he be to tore,  
And he use it hereafter as he hath doon to fore.

Beryn arose a morowe, and cried wondir fast,

And axid after clothis, but it was all in wast ;

Ther was no man tendant for hym in all the  
house ;

The whele was ychaungit into anothir cours.

Fawnus herd his sone wele how he began to cry,

And rose up anon and to hym did hys,

And had forgete nothyng that Rame had yseyde,

For he boillid so his hert he was nat well apayde.

He went into the chambir ther his sone ley,

And set hym down in a chair, and thus he gan to  
sey :

My gentil sone Beryn, now feir I wol ye teche ;

Rew oppon thy self, and be thyne own leche.

Manhode is ycom now, myne own dere sone,

It is tyme thow be aweynynd of thyn old wone :

And thow art 20 wynters, and naught hast of  
doctryne ;

Yit woldist thow draw to perfite the worship wold  
be thyne,

To noritur and goodship, and al honest thing,

Ther myght com to myn hert no more glad ty-  
ding.

Leve now al thy foly and thy rebawdry,

As tablis and mervellis, and the hazardry,

And draw the to the company of honest men and  
good,

Els leve thow me as wele as Criste died on the  
rode ;

And for al menkynd his ghost pas lete,

Thow shalt for me hereafter stond on thyn own fete,

For I woll no longir suffir this aray

To clothe the al new eche othir dey.

Yf thow wolt draw the to wit, and rebawdry  
withdraw,

Of such good as God have sent yn part have shalt  
thow :

And if thow wolt nat, my sone, do as I the tell,

Of me shalt thow naught have, trust me right well.

Wenyft thow wyth thy dise-pleying hold myn ho-  
noure

After my deth dey ? Then Beryn gan to loure,

And seide, Is this a sermon or a prechement ?

Ye were nat wont herto ; how is this ywent ?

Sendith for some clothing that I wer ago ;

My felawis lokith after me, I woot well they do so :

I woll nat leve my feleship ne my rekelagis,

Ne my dise-pleying, for all your heretages :

Doirh your best wyth them by your lyf day,

For when they fall to me I wol do as I may.

Benedicite ! fadir, who hath enformyd you,

And set you into ire, to make me chere rowe ?

But I know wele enough whens this counsaill cam ;

Trewlich of your own wyfe, that evil dame :

Com oppon hir body that fals putaigne,

For treulich, fadir, yee dote on hir, and so all men  
seyne.

Alas that evir a man shuld, that of high counsaill,

Set all his wisdom on his wyf's tale !

Yee lovith hir so much she hath benome your  
wyt,

And I may cure the tyme that evir ye wer yknyt,



For now I am in certen I have a stepmodir :  
 They been shrewis, som ther been, but few, othir.  
 Wel Fikil Flaptail, such oon as she ys,  
 For all my pleying at disce yit do yee more amys :  
 Yce have ylost your name, your worship, and  
 your feith,

So dote ye on hir, and levith all she sayith.  
 Fawnus wyth the same word gaff the chayir a but,  
 And sepe out of the chambir, as who seyde Cut,  
 And swor on verrey woodnes be God omnipotent

That Beryn of his wordis shuld fore repent.  
 Beryn set nought ther'of, with a proude hert  
 Answerd his fadir, and axid a new shert.  
 He gropid al about to have found oon,  
 As he was wont to fore, but ther was noon.  
 Then toke he such wilokis as he fond ther,  
 And beheld hymself what man he wer ;  
 For when he was arayde then gan he firste be  
 wrothe,

For his womb lokid out and his rigg both.  
 He stert astir his fadir, and he began to cry,  
 For feth myn array, for the villany  
 Ye as wele yours as it is myne.

Fawnus let him clatir and cry wel and fyne,  
 And passid forth still and spak nat a word.  
 Then Beryn gan to think it was nat al bord  
 That his fadir seyde when he wyth hym was,  
 And gan to think all about, and therwyth seid  
 Alas !

Now know I wele forsoth that my modir is dede ;  
 For tho gan he to glow first a fory mann'ys hede.  
 Now kepe thy cut, Beryn, for thou shalt have a  
 Somwhat of the world to lern betir wit ; [fit  
 For and thou wist sikerly what ys for to com  
 Thou woldist wissh astir thy deth full oft and  
 ylonge ;

For *Ther n'ys betying half so sore wyth staff nethir  
 As man to be bete with his own yerd.* [sweerd

The pyry is yblowe, hop, Beryn, hop,  
 That ripe wol herastir and on thyn hede drop :  
 Thou tokist noon hede whils it shoon hoot,  
 Ther for wynter the nyghith asay by thy cote.  
 Beryn for shame to town durst he nat go,  
 He toke his wey to churchward ; his frend was  
 made his foo,

For angir, sorowe, and shame, and hevynes, that  
 he had,

Unneth he might speke, but stode half as mad.  
 O alas ! quod Beryn, what wyt had I  
 That coud nat tofore this dey know sikerly  
 That mymodir dede was ? but now I know to fore,  
 And drede more that eche day hereastir more and  
 more

I shall know and fele that my modir is dede.  
 Alas ! I smote the messangere, and toke of hir noon  
 hede :

Alas ! I am right pore ; alas ! that I am nakid :  
 Alas ! I slept to fast, tyl sorowe now hath me  
 wakid :

Alas ! I hunger fore ; alas ! for dole and peyn,  
 For eche man me feith hath me in disceyn.  
 This was all his mirth to the churchward  
 That of his modir Agea he toke so litill reward.

When Beryn was within the chirch then gan he  
 wers fray :

As sone as he saw the tomb where his modir lay  
 His colour gan to chaunge into a dedely hew :  
 Alas, gentill modir ! so kynd you wer and trew,  
 It is no mervell for thy deth though I fore smert.  
 But therwythal the sorowe so fervent smote his hert  
 That sodenly he fil down stan dede in fwowe :  
 That he had part of sorowe methynkith that  
 myght I avowe.

Beryn lay so long or he myght awake,  
 For al hys fyve wittis had clene hym forsake,  
 Wel myght he by hymself, when reson ycom were,  
 Undirstond that Fortune had a sharp spere,  
 And eke grete power among high and lowe,  
 Som to avaunce and som to ovirthrowe.  
 So at last whan Beryn a litill wakid were  
 He trampelid fast with his fete, and al to tere his  
 And his visage both, right as a wodeman, [ere  
 With many a bitir tere that from his eyen ran,  
 And sighid many a fore sigh, and had much hevyn-  
 nes,

And evirmore he cursid his grete unkyndnes  
 To foreyit his modir whils she was alyve,  
 And lenyd to hir tombe upon his tore sclyve,  
 And wishid a thousand sithis he had ybe hir by,  
 And beheld hir tombe with a petouse eye.  
 Now, glorious God ! quod Beryn, that al thing  
 madist of nought,  
 Heven and erth, man and beste, sith I am mys-  
 wrought

Of yewe I axe mercy, socour, and help, and grace,  
 For my mysdede and foly, unthryffe and trespass :  
 Set my sorowe and peyn somwhat in mesure  
 Fro dispeir and myscheff as I may endure.  
 Lord of all lordis ! though Fortune be my foo  
 Yit is thy myght above to turn hym to and fro.  
 First my modirs lyfe Fortune hath me berevid,  
 And sith my faders love, and nakid also me levid.  
 What may he do more ? Yis, take away my lyfe ;  
 But for that wer myn ese, and end of al stryfe,  
 Ther'for he doith me lyve for my wers I sey,  
 That I shuld evirmore lyve and nevir for to dey.  
 Now leve I Beryn wyth hys modir tyl I com aye,  
 And wol return me to Rame, that of hir sotilte  
 Bethoughte hir al aboute, when Beryn was agoon  
 That it shuld be wittid hir, wher'for she anoon  
 In this wise seyde to Fawnus : Sir, what have ye do,  
 Althoughe I speke a mery word, to suffir your sone  
 Nakid into the town ? it was nat my counsaill. [go  
 What wol be seyde ther'of ? sikir without faile,  
 For I am his stepmodir, that I am cause of alle  
 The violence, the wrath, the angir, and the gall,  
 That is betwene yew both, it wol be wit me ;  
 Wher'for I prey you hertly doith hym com hom  
 aye.

Nay, by trowith, quod Fawnus, for me comyth he  
 Sithe he of my wordis so litil prise set [nat yit ;  
 As litil shall I charge his estate also :  
 Sorowe have that rechith though he nakid go,  
 For every man knowith that he is nat wise ;  
 Wher'for may be supposid his pleying at disce  
 Is cause of his aray, and nothing yee, my wyff,  
 Yes, iwis, quod Rame, the tale woll he ryff



Of me and of noon othir, I know right wel afyne;  
 Wher'for I prey you, gentil Sir, and for love myn,  
 That he wer yfet hom, and that in grete hast,  
 And let asay offit agein with feirnes hym to chaste;  
 And send Beryn clothis and a new smert; [hert.  
 And made al wele in eche side, and kept close her  
 Now sith it is your wyll, quod Fawnus tho anoon,  
 That Beryn shall home com, for your sake aloon  
 I wold be the messager to put your hert in ese;  
 And els, so God me help, wer it nat yew to plesse  
 The gras shuld grow on pavement or I hym home  
 bryng.

Yet nethirles forth he went, wyth too or thre  
 riding.

From o strete to anothir, enqueryng to and fro  
 Astir Beryn in every plase wher he was wont to  
 Seching eviry hark howris two or thre, [go,  
 With hazardours, and othir such, ther as he was  
 wont to be,

And fond hym not ther; but to chirche went  
 echone,

And at dorr they stode a while and herd Beryn  
 made his mone:

They herd all his compleynt, that petoufe was to  
 here.

Fawnus into the chirch pryvelich gan pise,  
 But al so sone as he beheld wher Agea lay  
 His teris ran down be his chekis, and thus he gan  
 to sey:

A, Agea! myn old love, and my new also!  
 Alas, that evir our hertis shuld depart atoo!  
 For in your graciouse dayis of hertis trobilnes  
 I had never knowlech, but of all gladnes;  
 Remembryng in his hert, and evir gan renewe  
 The goodnes betwene them both, and hir hert  
 trewe,

And drew hym ner to Beryn with an hevy mode.  
 But as sone as Beryn knew and ondirstode  
 That it was his sadir, he wold no longir abide,  
 But anoon he voidit by the todir side,  
 And Fawnus hym encountrid, and seyde, We have  
 the foughit

Through the town, my gentil sone, and ther'for  
 void the nought.

Though I seyde a word or two, as me thought for  
 the best

For thyne erudicioune, to drawe the onto lyfe ho-  
 nest,

Thou shuldist nat so fervently have take it to thyn  
 hert:

But sith I know my wordis doith the so sore smert  
 Shall no more hereafter; and eche dey our diete  
 Shall be mery and solase, and this shall be forgete;  
 For wele I woot for thy modir that thou art to tore,  
 Also thou hast grete sorowe, but onys nedith, and  
 no more:

And ther'for, sone, on my blessing to put sorowe  
 away;

Drawe the nows hereafter to honist myrth and pley.  
 Lo ther is clothing for yewe, and your hors ydight  
 With harneys all fieshe new; and if yee list be  
 knyght

I shall yit or eve that bergeyn undirtake, [make;  
 That the Emperour for my love a knyght shall you

And what that evir ye nede anoon it shall be  
 bought,

For whils that I have eny thing ye shall lak naught.  
 Graunt mercy! quod Beryn with an hevy chere,  
 Of your worshipfull profir that ye have proferid  
 me here:

But ordir of knyghthode to take is nat my liking:  
 And sith your will is for to do somewhat my plesing,  
 Ye have a wyfe ye love wele, and so tenderlich,  
 That and she have children I know right likerlich  
 All that she can devyse both be nyght and dey  
 Shall be to make her childryn heirs of that she  
 may,

And eke sowe fedis of infelicite,  
 Wher'of wold growe devysioune betwene yewe  
 and me:

For yf ye spend on me your good, and thus riallich  
 Levith wele, in certen your wyfe wold likerlich  
 Eche dey for angir her tuskis whet,  
 And to smyte with her tunge, your hert in wrath  
 to set.

Toward me from dey to dey, but ye wold aply  
 Somwhat to hir purpose and astir hir yew guy;  
 She wold wex so ovirtwart and of so lither tach,  
 And evir leir undir her hood a redy for to snache;  
 She wold be shorfyng of your lyfe, and that desire  
 I naught:

Wher'for to plesse all about, my purpose and my  
 thought

Is for to be a Marchaunte, and leve myn heritage,  
 And relese it for evir, for shypys fyve of stage  
 Full of marchaundise the best of all this londe:  
 And yf ye wold so, sadyr, quyk let make the bonde.  
 Fawnus was right well apayd that ilk word out-  
 stert,

But yit he seyde to Beryn, I mervell in myn hert  
 Wher haddist thou this counsaile to leve thyne  
 honour,

And lyve in grete aventure and in grete labour;  
 And rid to forth talkyng a fofte esy pase  
 Homward to his plase ther that Rame was.

And as sone as Fawnus was ylight adown,  
 And highid fast to his wyfe, and with hir gan  
 to rown,

And told hir all the purpose, and made Fawnus  
 chere,

She did hym nat half so much the tyme she was  
 his fere.

She hullid hym, and mollid hym, and toke hym  
 about the nekk,

And went low for the kite, and made many a bekk;  
 And seyde, Sir, by your spech now right well I here  
 That yf ye list ye mowe do thing that I most de-  
 sire;

And that is this, your heritage there ye best likid  
 That ye myght gyve: and evir among the brussh  
 away she pikid

From hir clothis here and there, and sighid ther-  
 withall.

Fawnus of his gentilnes by hir myddil smale  
 Hertlich hir bracyd, and seyde, I wold nat leve,  
 I fuyr yew my trowith that onys or it be eve  
 That I shall do my devoir without feintise  
 For to plesse your hert fulllich in all wyse.

## THE MERCHANT'S SECOND TALE, &c.

Graunt mercy! myn own soverene, quod Rame  
 tho mekely,  
 And made protestatioun that she shuld likerly  
 All the dayis of hir lyfe be to hym as hende  
 As evir woman was to man, as ferforth as hir  
 mynd  
 And wit hir wold serve, and made grete othe.  
 Fawnus bood no longir, but forth therwith he  
 goith.  
 A! precious God in heaven, Kyng of majeste!  
 So plentivouse this world is of iniquite!  
*Why is to yfuffrid that trowith is brought adown  
 Wyth trechery and falsbede in feld and eke in town?*  
 But now to Fawnus and his entent. When he his  
 sone met  
 He toke hym soft by the hond; his tung he gan  
 to whet,  
 Sotilly to engyne him. First he gan to preche,  
 Leve thy sonly, my dere sone, and do as I the teche:  
 Sith thou hast wit and reson, and art of mannys  
 age,  
 What nedith the be Marchaunt and shall have  
 heritage?  
 For and thy good wer ylost the sorowe wold be  
 myne,  
 To tell the soth, right nigh peregall to thyne;  
 And yf that I were dede whils thou wer oute  
 Lond and rent, and all my good, have thou no  
 doute,  
 It wold be plukkid from the; thy part wold be  
 And also ferthermore, I make oon beheest, [lest:  
 That I trowe my mobilis wol nat suffise  
 To charge fyve shippis ful of marchandise  
 But yf I leyd in mortgage my lond and eke my  
 rent,  
 And that I leve be nat thy wyll ne thyn entent:  
 Yit nethirles yf thy hert be so inly set  
 For to be a Marchaunt, for nothing woll I let  
 That I n'yl do thy plessaunce as ferforth as I mey  
 To go ryght nygh myn own estate, but levir I  
 had nay.  
 Their wordis ne their dedis, ne matters them be-  
 twene,  
 I wol nat tary now ther'on my perchemen to  
 spene:  
 But synallich, to the end of their accordement,  
 Fawnus had so goon about, yturned and ywent,  
 That he had brought his sone tofore the Empe-  
 To relese his heritage and al his honour, [rouer,  
 That he shuld have astir his dey, for shippis fyve,  
 and full  
 Yled of marchaundise of linnen and of wool,  
 And of othir thingis that wer yalid tho.  
 Engrosid was the covenante betwene them to  
 Yn presence of the Emperour, in opyn and norown,  
 Tofore the gretist Cenators and eldest of the town.  
 So when the relese felid was with a fyde bonde  
 They wer yleyd both in a meen honde  
 Into the tyme that Beryn fullich felid were  
 In the fyve shippis that I yew told ere.  
 But who was glad but Fawnus? and to his wyff  
 went  
 And seyde, Now, my hertlis wyte! all thyn hole  
 entent

Ys uttirlich perfourmyd; us lakkith now no more  
 But marchaundise and shippis, as I told tofore.  
 That shall not faill, quod Rame, and began to  
 daunce,  
 And astirward they speken of the purveaunce.  
*Alas! this fals world, so ful of trechery?  
 In whom shuld the sone have trust and feith sikirly  
 If his fadir saylid bym? whether myght he go  
 For to fynd a sikir frend that he myght trust to!*  
 So when these fyve shippis wer rayid and dight  
 Fawnus and his sone to the Emperour ful right  
 They went, and many a grete map for the same  
 case,  
 To see both in possessioun, as ther covenante  
 Beryn first was felid in the shippis fyve, [was.  
 And Fawnus had the relese, and bare it to his  
 wyff;  
 And eche held them payde, and Rame best of all,  
 For she had conquerid thing that causid most hir  
 gall.  
 Now leve I Fawnys and his wyff, and of the go-  
 vernaunce  
 Of Beryn I wol speke, and also of his chance.  
 When lodismen and marymeris in al thing redy  
 was  
 This Beryn into Alisaunder, yf God wold send  
 hym grace  
 That wynde hym wold serve, he wold: so on a day  
 The wynd was good, and they seyld on ther wey  
 Too dayis fullich, and a nyght therwythal,  
 And had wedir at wyll, tyll at last gan fall  
 Such a myst among them that no man myght se  
 othir,  
 That wele was hym that had ther the blessing of  
 his modir.  
 For thre dayis incessantly the derknes among  
 them was,  
 That no shipp myght se othir; wherfor full oft  
 Alas!  
 They seyde, and to the high God they made their  
 preyere,  
 That he wold of his grace them govern and stere  
 So that their lyvis myght savid be,  
 For they were cleen in dispeyr, because they  
 myght nat se  
 The loder, wherby these shipmen ther cours toke  
 ech one.  
 So at last, the ferth day, making thus hir mone,  
 The dey gan clere; and then such wynd arose  
 That blew their shippis el sewhere then was their  
 first purpose.  
 The tempest was so huge and so strong also,  
 That wele was hym that coude bynde or ondo  
 Any rope within the shipp that longit to the craft;  
 Every man shewed his connyng to fore the shipp  
 and bafft.  
 The wynd a week the see to brast, it blew so  
 gresly fore,  
 That Beryn and all his company of synnys las and  
 more  
 Eche man round about shroff hymself to othir,  
 And put in Godd's governaunce lyf, shipp, and  
 strothir;



For ther was shippis meyne, for owght they coud  
 hale,  
 That myght abate of the shipp the thiknes of a  
 scale :  
 The wedir was so fervent of wynd and eke of  
 thundir  
 That every shipp from othir was blowe of sight  
 asondir,  
 And durid so al day and nyght, tyll on the morowe  
 I trow it was no questioune wher they had joy or  
 sorowe.  
 So aftirward, as God wold, the wynd was som-  
 what soft,  
 Beryne clepid a maryner, and bad hym sty on loft,  
 And weyte aftir our four shippis aftir us doith  
 dryve,  
 For it is but grace of God yf they be alyve.  
 A maryner anoon wyth that, right as Beryn bad,  
 Styed into the top castell, and brought hym ty-  
 dings glad :  
 Sir, he seith, beth mery; yeur shippis comith echone  
 Saff and sound sailing, as ye shul se anoon;  
 And eke, Sir, ferthermore, lond also I sigh,  
 Let draw our cors estward, thys tyde woll bryng  
 us ny.  
 Blessed be God! quod Beryn, then wer our shippis  
 com,  
 We have no nede to dout werr ne molestatioune,  
 For ther n'ys wythin our shippis no thyng of spo-  
 liatioune,  
 But al trew marchaundise; wherefor for lodisman  
 Stere onys into the costis as well as thou can;  
 When our shippis be ycom, that we mowe pas in  
 fere,  
 Lace on a bonnet or tweyn, that we mowe faile  
 nere.  
 And when they wer the costis nygh was noon of  
 them alle  
 That wist what lond it was : then Beryn gan to  
 calle  
 Out of every ship anoon a maryner or tweyne  
 For to take counseil, and thus he gan to seyne :  
 The frountis of this ilk town been wondir feir  
 wythall,  
 Methinketh it is the best rede, what that evir be-  
 fall,  
 That I my self aloon walk into the towne,  
 And here and se both her and ther, upward and  
 downe,  
 And enquire fullich of their governaunce.  
 What sey ye Sirs? woll ye sent to this ordenaunce?  
 All they accordit well therto and held it for the  
 best, [rest,  
 For thus yf it be profitabill we mowe abide and  
 And yf it be othirwise the rathir shall we go,  
 For aftir that the spede we woll work and do.  
 But nowe mowe ye her right a wondir thing :  
 In all the world wyde so fals of their lyvyng  
 Was no pepill undir sone, ne none so disseyvabill,  
 As was the pepill of this town, ne more unstabill,  
 And had a cursed usage of sotill ymaginacioune,  
 That yf so wer the shippis of any straunge nacioune  
 Were com into the port, anoon they wold them hide  
 Within their own howfis, and no man go ne ryde

In no strete of alle the town; ascaunce that they  
 wer lewde,  
 And coud no skill of marchandise, a skill it was a  
 shrewde,  
 As ye shull here aftir of their wrong and falshede;  
 But yit it fill, asworthy was, oppon their own hede.  
 Beryn arayd hym freshly, as to a Marchand  
 longith,  
 And fet hym on a palfrey wel be sey and hongit,  
 And a page rennyng by his hors fete?  
 He rode endlong the town, but no man coud he  
 meet;  
 The dorrys wer yclofid in both too fidis,  
 Wherof he had niervell : yet ferthermore he ridis,  
 And waytid on his right hond a mancipil's plafe  
 All fresh and new, and thidir gan he pase :  
 The gatis wer wyde up, and thidir gan he go,  
 For throughout the long town he found so no mo.  
 Therin dwellid a burgeyse the most scliper man  
 Of all the town throughout, and what so he wan  
 With trechery and gile, as doith som freris,  
 Right so must he part with his comperis.  
 Beryn light down on his hors, and inward gan  
 he dres,  
 And fond the good man of the house pleying at  
 ches  
 With hys neyghbour, as trewe as he, that dwellid  
 hym fast by.  
 But as sone as this burgeyse on Beryn cast his eye  
 Sodenly he stert up, and put the ches hym fro,  
 And toke Beryn by the hond, and seyde these wor-  
 dis tho;  
*Benedicite*; what manere wynd hath ybrought you  
 here?  
 Now wold to God I had wherof, or coud make  
 yew chere!  
 But ye shull lowe my good wyll, and take such as  
 ther is,  
 And of yeur gentil paciens suffir that is amys.  
 For well he wist by his aray and by his counte-  
 naunce  
 That of the shippis that wer ycom he had som go-  
 vernaunce,  
 Wherfor he made hym chere femyng amaybill,  
 Icolerid all with cautelis, and wondir disseyvabill :  
 He bracyd hym by the myddil, and preyde hym sit  
 adoun,  
 And lowly with much worshipp dresid his cosshon.  
 Lord God! seyde this burgeyse, I thank this ilk dey  
 That I shuld see yew hole and found here in my  
 contray;  
 And yf ye list to tell the cause of yewr comyng,  
 And yf ye have nede to any manere thing,  
 And it be in my power, and thoughe I shuld it  
 fesch,  
 It shuld go right wonder streyte, I sey yew fiker-  
 But yee it had in haste, therwith yew plese, [lich,  
 For now I see yew in my house my hert is in grete ese.  
 The todir burgeyse rose hym up for to make rouse,  
 And axid of his felaw, that lord was of the house,  
 Whens is this worshipfull man? with wordis hend  
 and low,  
 For it semith by th<sup>e</sup> manere that ye hym shuld  
 knowe,



THE MERCHANT'S SECOND TALE, &c.

449

And have sey hym tofore this tyme. I have sene,  
quod the todir,  
Ye ywis an 100 fithis, and right as to my brodir  
I wol do hym plesaunce in al that evir I can,  
For trewlich in his contray he is a worshipful man:  
Forsoth, Sir, and for your love, a thousand in this  
town  
Wold do hym worship, and be right feyne and  
bown  
To plesid hym, and avail to have thonk of you:  
I woot wele, God them yeld, so have they oft er  
nowe.  
And arose up therwithall, and with his felaw spak  
Of such manere mater that saylid nevir of lakk.  
So when their conseill was ydo this burgeyse preyd  
his fere  
To sit a down b. Beryn, and do hym sport and  
And in the while I wol se to his hors, [chere,  
For every gentil hert, afore his own cors  
Desirith that his riding best servid and ydight  
Rather than hymself; wherfor wyth all my myght  
I wold have an eye therto; and sich parte wynn  
Wich tounne or pipe is best and most fyne.  
Beryn was all abashid of his soden chere,  
But nethirles the burgeyse sat hym somwhat nere,  
And preyd hym of his gentilnes his name for to tell,  
His contrey and his lynage: and he answer'd snell,  
Berinus I am ynamid, and in Rome ybore,  
And have fyve shippis of myn own, las and more,  
Full of marchaundise, ligging tofore the town;  
But much marvaill have I the good man is so boun  
To serve me and plesse, and how it might be.  
Sir, seyde the burgeyse, no mervelle it is to me,  
For many a tyme and oft, I cannot sey how lonie,  
He hath be in your marchis; and as I trow in Room  
Also he was ybore, yf I ne ly shall.  
Yf it be so, quod Beryn, no mervelle it is at all  
Thoughe he may have ysey, and eke his gentill  
chere  
Previth it all opynly; but be hym that bought me  
dere  
I have ther'of no knowlech, as I am now avysid.  
With that cam in the good man with countenaunce  
disgittid,  
And had enqueryd of the child that with Beryn cam  
Fro gynnynge to the endyng, and told his mastris  
name,  
And of Agea his modir, and all thing as it was,  
Wher-through he was ful perfit to answer to e-  
very cas;  
So entryng into the hall the burgeys spak anon,  
A! my gentill Beryn, alas! that under stonne  
Myn own hert Agea, thy modir leff and dere!  
Now God affoyl hir soule, for nevir bettir chere  
Had I of frend woman, ne nevir half so good.  
Benedicite! a Marchaunt comyng ovir flood!  
Who brought yew in this purpos, and beth your  
fadir's heir?  
Now by my trew conscience ryght nygh in dispeyr  
I wax for your sake, for now frendlese  
Ye mowe wele sey that ye been; but yit for ne-  
thirles  
Yee mut endure fortune and hevynes put away;  
Ther is noon othir wisdom. Also your shippis gey,

That been ycom in favete, ought to amend your  
mode,  
The wich when we have dyned, I swere for by the  
rood,  
We wol se them trewly within and eke without,  
And have wyne wyth us and drynk al about.  
They set and wissh, and fed them, and had wher-  
of plente;  
The burgeyse was a stuffid man, ther lakkid noon  
deynte.  
So when they had ydined the cloth was up ytake,  
A chese ther was ybrought forth, but tho gan so-  
rowe to wake.  
The ches was all of ivory, the meyne fressh and  
new,  
I pulsshid and ypikid of white, asure, and blew.  
Beryn beheld the cheker, it semed passyng feir;  
Sir, quod the burgeyse, ye shul fynd her a payr  
That wold mate yew trewly in las than half a myle,  
And was yseyd of sotilte Beryn to begile.  
Now in soth, quod Beryn, it myght wel hap nay,  
And ne'er I must my shippis se els I wold assay.  
What nedith that, quod the burgeyse? trewlich I  
wol nat glose,  
They been nat yit yfetelid ne fixid in the wofe;  
For I have sent thries sith ye hither cam  
To wait oppon their governaunce; wher'for let set  
o game,  
And I shall be the first that shall yew atast.  
The meyne wer yset up, and gon to pley fast.  
Beryn wan the first, the second, and the third,  
And at fourth game in the ches amyde  
The burgeyse was ymatid; but that lust him weles;  
And all was doon to bryng hym yn, as ye shul  
her snel.  
Sir, then, seyde Beryn, ye woot well how it is,  
Me list no more to pley, for yee know this,  
Wher is noon comparisoun, of what thing so it be,  
Lust and liking fallith ther: as it semeth me  
Ne myrth is nat commendabill that ay is by o side,  
But it rebound to the tothir; wherfore tyme is to ryde;  
And as many thonkis as I can or may  
Of my sport and chere, and also of your pley.  
Nay iwis, gentill Beryn, I woot ye wol nat go,  
For noritur wol it nat for to part so,  
And eke my condicioun; but I ley something  
Is no more to pley then who so shoke a ryng  
Ther no man is wythyn the ryngyng to answer:  
To shete a fethirles bolt almost as good me were:  
But and ye wold this next game som manir wager  
legg,  
And let the trowith on both sidis be morgage and  
yplegg,  
That whofo be ymatid graunt and assent  
To do the todirs bidding, and whofo do repent  
Drynk all the watir that salt is of the see.  
Beryn belevid that he coude pley bettir than he,  
And sodinly assentid, with hond in hond assurid.  
Men that stode besides, ycapid and yhurid.  
Wist wele that Beryn shuld have the werc mes,  
For the burgeyse was the best pleyer at ches  
Of all the wyde marchis, or many a myle about;  
But that ne wist Beryn of, ne cast ther'of no  
doute;

He set the meyne eft ageyn, and toke betir hede  
Then he did tofore; and fo he had nede.

The burgeyse toke avifement long on every  
draught,

So wyth an hour or two Beryn he had ycaught  
Somwhat oppon the hipp, that Beryn had the wers.  
And albeit his mynd and wyll was for to curs,  
Yit myft he dure his fortune when he was fo fer  
ygo;

*For Who is that that Fortune may alway undo!*

And namelich stout even in eche fide

Of pro and contra: but God help down woll he  
glide.

But now a word of philosophy that fallith to my  
mynd;

*Who take bede of the begynnyng what fal shall of the end*  
*He leyth abus tofore the gap ther Fortune wold invyde:*

But comynlich yowith forgetith that throughout  
the world wyde.

Right fo be Beryn I may wele fey that confaillis  
in rakid,

Likly to lefe his marchaundise, and go hymself al  
nakid.

Beryn studied in the ches, although it nought  
availid;

The burgeyse in the mene while with other men  
confaillid

To fech the fergauntis in the town for thing he  
had ado.

So when they come were, they walkid to and fro  
Up and down in the hall, as skaunce they knew  
nought;

And yit of all the purpose, wit, and mynd, and  
thought,

Of the untrew burgeyse, by his messengeris

They wer ful enformyd: wherfor with eye, and  
eris, and heft,

They lay await full doggidly Beryn to areft,

Forther for they wer aftir sent, and was their  
charge.

Lord! how shuld o fely lomb among wolvis weld,  
And scape unyharmyd? it hath been feyn feld.

Kepe thy cut now, Beryn, for thow art in the case.  
The hall was full of pepill, the serjauntis shewid  
their mase;

Beryn kist up his hede, and was ful fore amayid,  
For then he was in certen the burgeyse had hym  
betrayde.

Draw on, feyd the burgeyse; Beryn, ye have the  
wers;

And every man to othir the covenaut gan reherse.  
The burgeys, whils that Beryn was in hevy thought,

The next draught aftir he toke a rook for nought.  
Beryn swat for angir, and was in hevy plight,

And drede full fore in hert; for wele he wist al quyt  
He shuld nat escape, and was in high distrefs;

And pryvelich in his hert that ever he saw the ches  
He curld the day and tyme: but what awaylid

For wele he wist then that he shuld be mate: [that?  
He gan to chaunge his colour both pale and wan.

The burgeyse feith; Comyth nere, ye shulfe this man  
How he shul be matid with what man me list.

He droughe and feyd, Chek mate. The serjauntis  
wer full prest,

And fefid Beryn by the fcleve, and feyd, Sirs, what  
think ye for, to do, [fo?

Quod Beryn to the serjauntis, that ye me hondith  
Or what have I offendit? or what have I feide?

Trewlich, quod the serjauntis, it vaylith nat to  
breyde;

Wyth us ye must a while wher ye wol or no  
Tofore the steward of this town; aryse, and trus  
and go;

And ther it shal be openyd how wisely thow hast  
wrought:

This is the end of our tale, make it nevir so tought.  
Sirs, farith feir, ye have no nede to hale. [tale.

Pas forth, quod the serjauntis, we wol nat her thy  
Yis, Sirs, of your curtesy I prey yew of o word:

Although my gentill hooft hath pleyed with me in  
borde,

And ywon a wager, ye have naught to doon:  
That is between hym and me; ye have nothyng  
to doon.

The hooft made an hidoufe cry, in gefolrent the  
haut,

And fet his hand in kenebowe, he lakkid nevir a  
faute.

Weynist thow, feid he to Beryn, for to fcorne me?  
What evir thow speke, or stroute, certes it woll  
nat be.

Of me shalt thou have no wrong: pas forth a betir  
pafe;

In prefence of our steward I woll tell my case.  
Why, hooft, say yee this in ernest or in game?

Ye know my contray, and my modir, my lynnage,  
and my name;

And thus ye have yfeyd me X sith on this dey.  
Ye, what though I feyd fo? I know wele it is nay:

Ther lyth no more ther to. But anothis tyme  
Leve me so much the les when thow comest by me;

For all that evir I feyd was to bryng the in care,  
And now I have my purpose I woll nothyng the  
spare.

Thus jangling to ech othir, endenting every pafe,  
They entrid both into the hall ther the steward  
was:

Evandir was his name, that sotill was, and so fell,  
He must be well avised tofore hym shuld tell.

Anothis burgeyse wyth hym was, provost of the  
That Hanybald was yclepid, but of sotilte [cete,

He passid many anothis, as ye shul here fone.  
Berynus hooft gan to tell al thyng as it was doon

Fro gynnnyng to the endyng, the wordis wyth the  
dede,

And how they made their covenaut, and wager  
how they leyd.

Now Beryn, quod the steward, thou hast yherd  
this tale,

How and in what manere thou art ybrought in  
bale;

Thow must do his byddyng, thow maist yn no  
wyfe flee,

Or drynk all the watir that falk is in the see:  
Of these too thingis thow must chese the toon;

Now be well avysid, and fey they will anon.  
To do yee both law may no betir fey, [mey:

For thow shalt have no wrong, as serforth as I

## THE MERCHANT'S SECOND TALE, &c.

39

~~Chese~~ the self right as the list, and wit thou nothing me  
 Though thou chese the wers and let the betir be.  
 Beryn stode astonyd, and no mervail was, [case;  
 And preyd the steward of a dey to answere to the  
 For I might lightlich in som word be ycaught,  
 And eke it is right herd to chese of to that beth  
 right naught:  
 But and ~~it~~ <sup>we</sup> your likyng to graunt me day tyl  
 to merowe  
 I wold answer through Godd's help. Then must  
 thou fynd a borowe,  
 Seyd the steward to Beryn, and yit it is of grace.  
 Now herith me, quod Hanybald, I prey a litil spase:  
 He hath five shippis ondir the town, lyggyng on  
 the strong,  
 The wich been sufficient yfild in our hond,  
 By me that am your provost to execute the law.  
 He must assent. Quod Evander, Let us onys here  
 his saw.  
 I graunt wele, quod Beryn, sith it may be noon  
 othir.  
 Then Hanybald arose hym up to sese both ship  
 and strothir, [wey,  
 And toke Beryn wyth hym: so talkyng on the  
 Beryn, quod Hanybald, I suy the be my fey  
 That thou art much ybound to me this ilk dey,  
 So is thy ple amendit by me; and eke of such a wey  
 I am avysid in thy cause, yf thou wolt do by rede,  
 That lite or nought by my counsaill ought the to  
 drede.  
 Yee know wele to morowe the dey of ple is set  
 That ye mut nedis answere, or els wythout lett  
 I must yeld them your shippis; I may in no wyse  
 blyn;  
 So have I undertake: but the merchaundise wythin  
 is nat in my charge, ye knowe as wele as I,  
 To make ther'of no lyvery: wher'for now wysely  
 Worch, and do astir rede: let all your merchaun-  
 Be voidit of your shippis, and at hiest prise [dise  
 I wol have it every dele in covenaut, yf ye list  
 To se myne house here onys tofore, I hold it for  
 the best,  
 Wher ye shall se of divers londis, houses to or thre  
 Full of marchaundise, that through this grete cete  
 is no such in preve, I may right well avowe.  
 So when he have all seyn, and I have your also,  
 Let som bargin be ymade betwene us both too.  
 Graunt mercy! Sir, quod Beryn, your profir is feir  
 and good;  
 Feyn wold I do ther'astir yf I ondirstood  
 I myght wythout blame of breking of arest.  
 Yis, quod Hanybald, at my perell me trust.  
 So to Hanybald's house togidir both they rode,  
 And fond, as Hanybald had yseyd, an heuge house,  
 long and brode,  
 Full of marchaundise as rich as it may be, [cete.  
 Passyng all the marchantis that dwellid in that  
 Thus when all was shewid they dronk and toke  
 their leve,  
 So se Beryn's shippis in hast they gon to meve.  
 And when that Hanybald was avysid what charge  
 the shippis bere [nere  
 He gan to speke, in his wyse assaunce, he rought

Whethir he bargenynd or no, and feyd thus: Ber-  
 ryn, frend,  
 Your marchaundise is feir and good, now let us  
 make an end  
 If yee list; I can no more; ye knowith how it is.  
 Com, of short let tak them yn, methinkith I sey  
 nat mys,  
 And then your meyne and ye, and I, to my house  
 shall we go,  
 And of the marchaundise I saw I wol not part  
 Chese of the best of that ye find there [therfro;  
 Throughout the long house, ther shal no man yeu  
 dere,  
 And therwith shall your shippis be filled all fyve:  
 I can sey no betir: yf ye list to dryve [men;  
 This bargin, to the end counselith with your  
 I may nat long tary, I must nedis hen.  
 Beryn clepid his meyne counsell for to take;  
 But his first mocionne was of the woo and wrake,  
 And all the tribulacioun, for pleying at ches,  
 That he had, every dele his shame and his dures.  
 Fro poynt to poynt, and how it stode, he told how  
 it was,  
 And then he axid counsaill what best was in the  
 case,  
 To chaunge with the burggyse or els for to leve?  
 Eche man seyde his avise; but al that they did meve  
 It wer to long a tale for to tell it here:  
 But fynally, at end, they cordit al in fere  
 That the chaunge shuld stond, for as the case was  
 fall  
 They held it clerely for the best, and went forth  
 wythall  
 The next wey that they couth to Hanybald's plait.  
 But now shall ye here the most sotill fallace  
 That ever man wrought till othir, and highest  
 trechery,  
 Wich Hanybald had wrought hymself to this com-  
 pany.  
 Go in, quod Hanybald, and chese, as thy cove-  
 naut is.  
 In goon these Romeyns ech oon, and fond a mys;  
 For there was nothing that eny man might se  
 Saff the wall and tyle stonys, and tymbir made of  
 tre;  
 For Hanybald had do void it of all thing that was  
 there;  
 Whils he was at the shippis his men away it bare.  
 When Beryn saw the house ler that ful waaether'se-  
 fore  
 Of riche marchaundise, alas! thought he, I am lore,  
 I am in this world; and wittith well his hert  
 Was nat al in likeing; and outward gan he stert  
 Like half a wode-man, and bete both his lippis,  
 And gan to hast fast towards his own shippis,  
 To kepe his good within wyth al that evir he  
 myght,  
 That it were nat dischargit, as hym thought verrey  
 right.  
 But al for naught was his hast, for 300 men,  
 As fast as they myght, they bare the good then,  
 Through ordenaunce of Hanybald, that pryvelich  
 tofore  
 Had purposid and ycast shuld be out ybore.



Beryn made a swyff pafe; ther myght no man hym let;  
 But Hanybald was ware inough, and with Beryn met:  
 All for nought: Beryn, thou knowest well and fyne  
 The shippis ben arcistid, and the good is myne.  
 What woldest thou do ther? thou hast ther nowght to de;  
 I wol hold thy covenant and thou myn also.  
 For yit saw I never man that was of thy manere;  
 Sometime thou wilt avaunte, and some tyme arere:  
 Now thou wilt, and now thou n'olt. Wher shul men the fynd?  
 Now sey oon, and sith anothir. So variant of mynd  
 Saw I never tofore this dey man so variabill.  
 Sith I the fynd in such plyte, our bargin for to stabill,  
 We woll tofore the steward, ther we both shull have right.  
 Nay, forsoth, quod Beryn. Yis treulich the tite,  
 Quod Hanybald, wher thou wolt or no; and so I the charge  
 As provost: know that yf me list my warant is so large,  
 And thou make any diffence, to bynym thy lyffe.  
 Take thyn hors; it gaynyth nat for to make stryffe.  
 So wyth sorowfull hert Beryn toke his hors,  
 And softly seyde to his men, Of me, quod he, no fors,  
 But wend to your shippis; I wol com when I may;  
 Ye sesh well everichone I may no bet away.  
 Now here by this same Tale both fre and bond  
 Mow sele in their wittis; and eke ondirstonde  
 That *Litill wailith wysdom or els governaunce*  
*Ther Fortune evir werrieth, and eke Hap and Chaunce,*  
*Or what availith bounte, beute, or riches,*  
*Frendship, or sotilte, or els hardines,*  
*Gold, good, or catell, wyte, or by lynage,*  
*Lord, or lordis service, or els high peerage?*  
*What may all this awayle ther Fortune is a foo?*  
*I wis right litill, or never a dele: full oft it fallith so.*  
 So, shortly to pas ovir, they fill to such an end  
 That Beryn shuld have day ageyn a morowe, and so to wend  
 He set hym in ful purpose to his shippis ward:  
 But yit or he cam ther he fond the passage hard:  
 For how he was begiled throughout all the towne  
 Ther and ther a coupill gan to speke and to rounce;  
 And every man his purpose was to have parte  
 With falsnes, and with sotiltees; they coude noon othir art,  
 Beryn rode forth in his wey, his page ran hym by,  
 Full fore adred in hert, and cast about his eye  
 Up and down, even long the strete, and for angir swet;  
 And er he had riden a stone's cast, a blynd man with him met,  
 And spak no word, but sefid hym fast by the lap,  
 And cried out and harrowe, and nere hym gan to flap.  
 All for nought, quod this blynd; what! wenyth thou for to skape?  
 Beryn had thought to prik forth, and thought it had be jape.

The blynd man cast away his staff, and set on both his hondis;  
 Nay, thou shalt nat void, quod he, for all thy rich londis,  
 Tyll I of the have reson, lawe, and eke righte,  
 For treulich I may wit it the that I have lost my fight.  
 So for ought that Beryn coude othir speke or prey  
 He myght in no wyse pas; ful fore he gan to may,  
 And namelich for the pepill throng hym so about,  
 And eche man gan hym hond, and seyde, Without doute  
 Ye must nedes stond, and rest, and bide the lawe,  
 Be ye never so grete a man. So wold I wonder fawe,  
 Quod Beryn, yf yee had cause, but I know noon.  
 No, thou shalt know or thou go thou hast nat al ydoon,  
 The blynd man seyde to Beryn. Tell on them; quod he.  
 Here is no place to plete, the blynd man seyde age,  
 Also we have no juge here of autorite; [me.  
 But Evandir the steward shall deme both the and  
 When I my tale have told, and thou hast made answer,  
 By that tyme men shull know how thou canst the clere.  
 Now, soveren God! I thank the of this ilk dey;  
 Then I may preve the, be my lyve, of word and eke of say  
 Fals, and eke untrew of covenant thou hast ymakid.  
 But litill is thy charge now though that I go nakid  
 That sometime wer partinere, and rekenydst never yit;  
 But thou shalt bere or we depart ther' of a litill  
 For aftir comyn seyng, Evir atte ende [witt,  
 The trowith woll be previd how so men evir trend.  
 Thus they talkid to eche othir tyl they com into the plase,  
 And wer yentrid in the hall ther the steward was.  
 The blynd man first gan to spake: Sir Steward, for Godd's sake,  
 Herith me a litill while, for here I have ytake  
 He that hath do me wrong most of man of mold;  
 Be my help, as law woll, for hym that Judas sold.  
 Ye know wele that oft tyme I have to yew ypleynid  
 How I was betrayed, and how I was ypenid,  
 And how a man some tyme and I our yen did chaunge:  
 This is the same persone, though that he make it strange:  
 I toke them hym but for a tyme, and wenyd trewly  
 Myne to have that yhad ageyn; and so both he and I  
 Were ensured uttirlich, and was our both will;  
 But for myne the bettir were wrongfullich and ille  
 He hath them kept hidirto, wyth much sorowe and pyne  
 To me, as ye wele know; because I have nat myne  
 I may nat se with him; wherfor me is ful woo:  
 And evirmore yeseyd that ye myght nothing de

Without prefence of the man that wrought me  
this unquert :

Now fith he is tofore you now let hym nat aſtert ;  
For many tyme and oft yee behete me

And he myght be take he ſhuld do me gre.

Sith ye of hym be ſeſid, howevir ſo ye tave,  
Let hym nevir pas tyl I myn yen have.

Beryn, quod Evandir, heriſt thou nat they ſelve

How ſotilly he pletith, and ware by eche halve ?

Beryn ſtode all muët, and no word he ſpake ;

And that was tho his grace ; ful ſone he had be  
take

And he had myſſeyd onys, or els yſeyd nay ;

For then he had been negatyff, and undo for ay :

For they were grete Sevilious, and uſid probat law,

Where evirmore affirmatyf ſhuld preve his own  
ſaw :

Wherfore they were ſo querelouſe of all myght  
com in mynd,

Though it wer nevir in dede ydo ; ſuch matere  
they wold fynd

To benym a man his good through ſom manir gile ;

For the blynd man wiſt right welc he ſhuld have  
loſt his whyle

To make his pleynt on Beryn, and ſuyd oppon his  
good,

For ſhippis and eke marchaundise in a balaunce  
ſtode ;

Therfor he made his chalenge his yen for to have,

Or els he ſhuld for them ſyne yf he wold them  
have,

And ligg for them in hoſtage tyll the ſynaunce cam :

This was all the ſotiſte of the blynd man.

Beryn ſtode all muët, and no word he ſpak.

Beryn, quod Evander, leſt thou be ytake

In defeaute of anſwere thou myghtiſt be condemp-  
nyd,

Be right welc avyſid, ſith thou art examenyd.

Sir, ſeyd Beryn, it wold litill availe

To anſwere thus aloon without good counſaill ;

And alſo ferthermore, full litill I ſhuld be levid,

Whatevir I answered, thus ſtonyd and reprevid ;

And eke my wit doith faille ; and no wondir is ;

Wherfor I wold prey yew, of yewr gentilnes,

To graunt me dey tyll to morowe I might be  
avyſide

To anſwere forth, wyth othir that on me been  
ſurnyſid.

Deperdeux ! quod the ſteward, I graunt wel it be ſo.

Beryn toke his leve, and hopid to pas and go :

But as ſone as Beryn was on his hors ryding

He met a woman and a child wyth ſad chere  
comyng,

That toke hym by the reyn, and held hym wondir  
faſt,

And ſeid, Sir, voidith nat yit, vailith nat to haſte ;

Ye may in ſo wyle ſcape ; ye muſt nedis abyde ;

For though ye liſt to know me nat, yit lien by  
yew ſide

I have ful many a tyme, I can nat tell yew lome.

Come tofore the ſteward, ther ſhall ye here yew  
dome

Of thing that I ſhall put on yew, and no word for

To leve me thus aloon it is yewr villany. [to ly :

Alas the day and tyme that evir I was yewr make  
Much have I endured this too yere for yewr ſake !

But now it ſhall be know who is in the wronge.

Beryn was all abaſhid, the pepill ſo thik thronge ;

About him in eche ſide : for ought that he couth  
peyn

He muſt to the ſteward of fyne fors ageyn.

Now ſhull ye here how ſotilich this woman gan  
hir tale

In prefence of the ſteward. With colour wan and  
pale

Petounly ſhe gan to tell ; and ſeid, Sir, to yew

Full oft I have compleynyed in what manere and

My childliſ fadir leſt me, by myſelf aloon, [how

Without help or comforte, as grete as I myght  
goon,

Wyth my ſon here and his, that ſhame it is to tell

The penury that I have yhad, that afors fell

I muſt nedis myne aray, wher me liſt or lothe,

Or els I muſt have beggit for to fynd us bothe ;

For there was nevir woman I leve, as I ges,

For lak of hede of lyvelode that lyvid in more  
diſtres

Then I my ſelf for oft tyme for lake of mete and  
drink ;

And yit I trow no creature was ſeyner for to ſwinke

My lyff to ſuſtene : but as I mut nede

Above all othir thingis to his child take hede,

That wondir is and mervaile that I am alyve ;

For the ſokying of his right as it were a knyve

It ran into my hert ; ſo low I was of mode

That well I woot in certen with percell of my  
blode

His child I have ynorifhid ; and that is by me ſeen ;

For my rede colour is turnid into grene :

And he that cauſe is of all here he ſtondith by me ;

To pay for the foſteryng methinkith it is tyme.

And ſith he is my huſbond, and hath on me no  
rowith,

Let hym make amendis in ſaving of his trowith.

And yf he to any word onys can ſay nay

Lo ! here my gage, al redy to preve all that I ſey.

The ſtewarde toke the gage, and ſpak in ſoft wyſe ;

Of this perouſe compleynt a mannys hert may  
grife,

For I know in percell hir tale is nat all leſe,

For many a time and oft this woman that here is

Hath ybe tofore me, and pleynid of hir greſſe,

But without a party hir cauſe myght nat preſſe.

Now thou art here preſent that ſhe plenyth on,

Make thy defence now, Beryn, as welc as thou

Beryn ſtode all muët, and no word he ſpak. [con.

Beryn, quod the ſteward, doſt thou ſclepe or

Sey onys oon or othir : is it ſoth or nay. [wake ?

As ſhe hath declarid ? tell on ſaunce delay.

Lord God ! quod Beryn, what ſhuld it me availe

Among ſo many wiſe, without right good coun-  
ſaill,

To tell eny tale ? full litil as I ges :

Wherfor I wold prey you of your gentilnes

Graunt me day tyl to morowe to anſwer forth  
with othir.

I graunt wele, quod the ſteward, but for fadir and  
modir,



Thow getist no lenger tyme pleyaly I the tell.  
 Beryn toke his leve; his hert gan to swell  
 For pure verrey anguysch; and no mervail was;  
 And who is that that n'old and he wer in such  
 case?

For al his trist and hope in eny worldich thing  
 Was cleen from hym passid, save forowe and my-  
 flykyng;

For body, good, and catell, and lyff, he set at  
 nought,

Sowas his hert ywoundit for angir and for thought.  
 Beryn passyd softly, and to his hors gan go;

And when he was without the gatis, he lokid to  
 and fro,

And coud noon othir countenance; but to his  
 page he seyde,

Preciouse God in heven! how falsly am I betrayd!  
 I trow no man alyve stont it wers plight,

And all is for my synne, and for my yong delite;  
 And pryncipally above all thyng for grete un-  
 kyndnes

That I did to my modir; for littil bede iwis  
 I toke of hir, this know I wele, while she was alyve,

Therfor al this turment is sent to me so ryve:

For ther was never woman kynder to hir child

Than she was; and ther ageyns never thing so  
 Ne so evil thewid as I was my self, [wyld

Therfor forowe and happes environ me by eche  
 helve,

That I n'ote whider ryde nethir up ne down,

Ther ben so many devillis dwellyng in this town,  
 And so ful of gile and trechery also,

That well I woot in certeyn they woll me ondo.

Now wold to God in hevyn what is my best rede!  
 He toke his hors to his page, and thus to hym he  
 sayde,

Lede my hors to shipward, and take it to some  
 And I woll go on foot as pryvely as I can, [man,

And assay yf I may in eny manere wise

E scape unarrested more in such manner wise.

The child toke his maistr's hors, and laft hym there  
 aloon,

Walking forth on foot, making oft his moon;

And in his most musing, I can nat fey how lome,

He wosshid nakid as he was bore he had be in  
 Room,

And no mervail was it as the case stode,

For he drad more to lese his eyen than he did his  
 shippis or his good.

Now ye that listith to dwell and here of aventure,

How petously Dame Fortune, Beryn to inure,

Turnyth hir wheel about in the wers side;

With hap of sorowe and anguysch she gynyth for  
 to ride.

Beryn passid toward the strand ther his shippis were,

But yee now ondirstond his hert was full of sere;

Yet nethirles he sat hym down softly on a stall,

Semy'ryse for sorowe, and lenyd to the wall

For turment that he had, so wery he was and fen t

And to God above thus he made his pleynt:

Glorious God in heven! that al thing maidist of  
 nought,

Why sufferist thou these cursid men to stroy me  
 for nought,

And knowest well myn innocent, that I have na  
 Of al that they purfu me or on me is pilt? [gilt  
 And in the meen whils that Beryn thus gan pleyne  
 A cachepoll stode besidis, his name was Machaign,  
 And herd all the wordis, and knew also tofore  
 How Beryn was turmented both with las and  
 more:

It was ysprong through the town; so was he full  
 enfenid

How he hym would engyne as he had propensid,  
 And had araid hym sotillich as man of contem-  
 placiounne,

In a mantell wyth the list, with fals dissimulaciounne.  
 And a staff in his honde, as thoughe he febl' were,

And drow hym toward Beryn, and seide in this ma-  
 nere:

The high God of heven, that al thing made of  
 nought,

Bles yew, gentil Sir, for many an hevy thought  
 Me thinketh that ye have, and no wondir is:

But, good Sir, dismay yew nat, but levith yewr  
 hevines,

And yf ye list to tell me somewhat of yeur distres

I hope to God Almighty in party it redres [oon,

Through my pore counsaill, and so I have many

For I have pete on yew be God and by Seint Jon:

And eke pryvy hevines doith eche man apeir

Sodenly or he be ware, and fall in dispeir;

And who be in that plague that man is incurabill.

For consequent comyth aftir sekene abominabill;

And therfor, Sir, diskeverith yewe, and be ne-  
 thing adrad.

Graunt mercy! Sir, quod Beryn, ye seme trew and  
 sad;

But o thing lyith in myn hert, I n'ote to whom to  
 trust,

For tho that dyned me to dey ordeyned me to  
 arest,

A Sir! be yew that man? of yew I have yherd.

Gentill Sir, doutith nat, ne be nothing aferd

Of me, for I shall counsell yew as well as I can,

For trewlich in the cete dwellith many a fals man,

And usyn litil els but falshode, wrong, and wyle,

And how they might straungers with trechery  
 begile:

But ye shul do right wisely somewhat be my  
 counsaill.

Speke with the steward; that may you most  
 avail;

For ther is a comyn byword, yf ye it herd havith,  
*Wele setib be his peny that the pound savith.*

The steward is a covetouse man, that long hath  
 disirid

A knyff I have in keeping, wherwith his hert  
 wirid;

Shall be yew to help, in covenante that yee

Shall give me five mark yeur treu friend to be.

The knyff is feir, I tell yew; yet never more this  
 day

Myght the steward have it for aught he coud prey,

The wich ye shuld gyve hym, the betir for to  
 spede,

And behothe hym 20*l.* to help yew in your  
 nede;



And yf he grauntith, trustith wele ye stond in  
good plight;

For betir is then lese all the las the more quyt.

And I woll go wyth yew straight to his plase,  
And knele down and speke first to amend yewr  
case,

And say yee be my cofin; the betir ye shul spede;  
And when that I have all ytold the knyff to hym  
yee bede.

Beryn thankid hym hertlich, and on hym gan trust,  
With hond in hond ensurid, and all for the best;

Beryn thought noon othir, al that it othir was.

Machaign hym comfortid, talkyng of their case,  
And passid forth styly toward the steward blyve

Beryn and Machaign; but Beryn bare the knyff,  
And trust much in his felawe to have som help:

But or they departid were they had no cause to yelp  
Of no manir comfort, as ye shull here anon;

For as sone as Machaigne tofore the steward com  
He fill plat to the erth: a grevous plynt and an  
huge

He made; and seyde, Sir Steward, now be a trew  
juge

Ageyns this fals treytour that stondith me besyde;  
Let take of hym good hede, els he woll nat abide.

Now mercy gode Steward, for yee have herd me  
yore

For my fadir Melan pleyn to you ful fore,  
That with seven dromedarys, as I have told yew  
lome,

With marchandise chargit went toward Rome,  
And it is seven yere ago and a litill more

Of hym or of his goodis that I herd les or more;  
And yet I have enquired as by ely as I couthe.

And met nevyr man yit that me coud tell with  
mowth

Any tyding of hym onto this same day;  
But now I know too much, alas! I may wel sey.

When Beryn herd these wordis he kist down his  
hede;

Allas! he thought in hert, alas! what is my rede?  
And would fayn have voidit and outward gan to  
stapp,

But Machaigne arose and sefid by the lapp:  
Nay, thou shalt not void, he seid; my tale is nat  
ydo;

For be trowith of my body yf thou scapidist so  
I shuld nevyr have mery whils I wer on lyve,

And set hond fast on Beryn's othir scleve,  
And seid, Good Sir Steward, my tale to the end

I prey ye wold here, for wend how men wend  
There may no man hele murdir, but it will out at  
last:

The same knyff my fadir bere when he of contre  
I sefch wele this felon, ther ye shul hym find;

I know the knyff wele inough, it is nat out of my  
mynd

The coteke dwellich in this toun that made the  
same knyff,

And for to preve the trowith he shall be here as  
blyve.

Beryn swat for angir, his hert was full of fere;  
He toke the knyff to the steward or he sefchid  
were,

The steward onto Beryn, My frend, lo! quod he,  
And thou think the well about this is foule plee:

I can know noon othir but thou must or thou go  
Yeld the body of Melan and his good also.

Now be well avysid ageyne to morowe day,  
Then shalt thou have thy jugement; ther is no  
more to say.

When Beryn fro the steward thus departid was,  
And was without the gate, he lokid oppon the plase,

And cursid it wondir bitterly in a fervent ire,  
And wisshid many tymes it had been a fire;

For I trowe that man of lyve was never wors be-  
trayid

Then I am; and therewithall my hert is cleen dis-  
mayid,

For here I have no frendship, but am all counsellis,  
And they ben falscher then Judas, and eke mer-  
cyles.

A, Lord God in hevyn! that my hert is woo;  
And yit suyrly I mervel nat though that it be so.

For yit in all my lyve sithe I ought undirstond  
Had I nevyr wyl for to lern good:

Foly I hauntid it ever, ther myght no man me let,  
And now he hath ypaid me, he is cleen out of my  
dett;

For whils I had tyme, wisdom I myght have  
lernyd,

But I drow me to folly, and wold nat be governed,  
But had al myne own wyll, and of no man aserd,

For I was nevyr chastid; but now myne own yerd  
Betith me to fore; the strokis been too hard;

For these devillis of this toun takith but littil  
reward

To sclee my body to have my good. The day is  
set to morowe;

Now wold to God I were in grave, for it wer end  
of sorowe.

I was iwis to much afole; for hate I had to Rame  
I wold forsake myn heritage, therfor sorowe and  
shame

Is oppon me fall, and right wele deservid,  
For I toke none maner hede when my modir  
stervid,

And disobeyid my fadir, and set hym at naught  
also;

What wondir is it than though that I have woo?  
Fortune and eke Wisdom have werrid with me  
evir,

And I with them in all my lyf, for Fortune was  
me levir.

Then eny wit or governaunce, for them too I did  
hate;

And though I wold be at oon now it is too late.  
O myghtfull God in haven! wher was evir man

That wrought hymself more folly than I my self  
did than?

A cursid be the tyme that I out of Rome went!  
That was my fadir's right heir of lyvelode and of  
rent,

And al the rial lordship that he hath in the toun.  
Had I had wit and grace, and hold me low and  
houn,

It wer my kynd now among my baronage  
To hawk and to hunt, and eke to pley and rage

With feir freshe ladies, and daunce when me list;  
 But now it is to late to speke of Had I wist.  
 But I fare like the man that for to swele his flyes  
 He stert into the bern, and astir stre he hies,  
 And goith about the wallis with a brennyng wafe,  
 Tyll it was at last that the leem and blafe  
 Entrid into the chynys where the wheate was,  
 And kistid so the evefe that brent was all the plafe;  
 But first in the begynnyng, tyll feer smote in the  
 rastris,  
 He toke no manere kepe, and thought of nothing  
 astir  
 What perell there myght fall: ne more did I  
 ywis,  
 That wold forsake myn honouf for the unkynd-  
 nes.  
 Of Rame, that was my stepmodir; for yf I shall  
 nat ly  
 They beth foure; wherfore the more wisely  
 I shuld have wrought, had I had wit, and suffrid  
 for a tyme,  
 And astir com to purpos wel inowghe of myne;  
 But evil avengit he is deol that for a litil mode  
 And angir to his neybour sellith away his good,  
 And goith hymself a beggyng: astir in breff  
 tyme  
 He mut be countid a lewd man in all manere  
 ryme.  
 So have I wrought and wers, for I dout of my  
 lyve,  
 How that it shal stond, for plukking of my seleve  
 The knyff that was me take, as ye have herd to-  
 fore;  
 And yit it grevith mine hert also much more  
 Of myn own pepill, that no disese aservid.  
 I wote wele astir pleding ryght nought wold be  
 reservyd  
 To sustene their lyvis: I trow ryght nought or lite,  
 And peraventur lightly stond in wors plight.  
 Of me it is no fors though I be thus arayed,  
 But it is dole and pete that they shull be betrayid  
 That hath nought aservid but for my gilt aloon.  
 And when that Beryn in this wise had ymade his  
 mone  
 A crepill he saw comyng with grete spede and  
 haste  
 Oppon a stilt ondir his kne bound wondir fast,  
 And a crouch undir his armys, with hondis al for-  
 skramyd;  
 Alas! quod this Beryn, shall I be more examenyd?  
 And gan to turn aside onto the see stronde,  
 And the crippill astir, and wan oppon hym londe.  
 Tho began Beryn to drede inwardlich fore,  
 And thought thus in his hert, shall I be comberid  
 more?  
 And it wer Godd's wyll my sorowe for to cese  
 Methinkith I have inowghe. The crippill began  
 to preche,  
 And had yraught nere hond Beryn by the seleve:  
 Beryn turnyd as an hare, and gan to ren blyve;  
 But the crippill knew betir the pathis smale and  
 grete  
 Then Beryn, so to fore hym he was, and gan hym  
 mete.

When Beryn saw it vaylid naught to renne ne to  
 lepe,  
 What for dole and anguyssh no word myght he  
 speke,  
 But stode still amafid, and starid fast about:  
 The crepill began to speke; Sir, to drede or to  
 dout  
 Of me wold ye right light, and ye knew myne  
 hert,  
 So where ye like well or ill fro me shall ye nat  
 part  
 Tyl I have tretid with yew, and ye with me also,  
 Of all yeur soden happis, yeur myscheff, and yeur  
 wo;  
 For by the tyme that I have knowle of yeur  
 case,  
 Yeur rennyng, and yeur trotting into an esy pas,  
 I shall turn or that we twyn, so ye astir my stole  
 Wold do, and as I rede yew; for yee wer a sole  
 When ye cam first alonde, ye had met with me,  
 For I wold have entensid yew all the iniquite  
 Of thes fals marchautes that dwellen in this  
 town,  
 And outid all your chaffare without gruch or  
 groun;  
 For had ye dwellid within yeur shippis, and nat  
 go them among,  
 Then had ye been undaungerid, and quyte of all  
 their wrong  
 On yew that been surmysid through fals sugges-  
 tioune.  
 Beryn gan to sigh, unneeth he might soune  
 Saf o word or tweyn, and Mercy was the first,  
 Preying with all his hert that he myght have his  
 rest,  
 And be no more enpledit, but pas fro hym quyte.  
 Good Sir, quod Beryn, doith me no more dis-  
 pite,  
 And suffir me to pas, and have on me routhie,  
 And I sayr yew feithfully, have here my trowith,  
 To morowe when I have pléidit, and eny thing  
 be last  
 Of ship or marchaundise, afore the ship or bast,  
 I wold shew yew all isere, and opyn every cheff,  
 And put it in yewr grace to do what ye lest.  
 And in the meen while that Beryn gan to clapp  
 The crypill nyghid hym nere and nere, and hent  
 hym by the lap;  
 And as sone as Beryn knew that he was in honde  
 He unlacyd his mantell for drede of some com-  
 mand,  
 And pryvelich ovir his shuldris let hym down  
 glide,  
 And had levir lese his mantell then abide.  
 The crepill all perceyvid, and hent hym by the  
 seleve  
 Of his nethir surcote. Alas! now but I live,  
 Thought Beryn by himself, now I am rent,  
 There helpith naught save strengith; therewith  
 the seleve to rent.  
 Beryn gan; to scape he sparid for no cost.  
 Alas! thought this cripill, this man wold be lost,  
 And be ondo for evir, but he counsell have;  
 Iwis thoughe he be lewde my contremen to save;

Yit will I my besines do and peyn that I may,  
 Sith he is of Room, for that is my contray.  
 This tripill was an hundrit yere full of age,  
 With a long thik berd, and a trow visage  
 He had; and manly and july was he,  
 And Geffrey was his name yknow in that contre.  
 Alas! thought this Geffrey, this man hath grete  
 drede  
 Of me, that by my power wold help hym in his  
 nede:  
 I wis though he be nyce, untaught and unwise,  
 I wold not for his foly leve myne enpryse;  
 And lest astir Beryn, and that in right good  
 spede.  
 Beryn was so fore agast he toke no maner hede  
 To look on bakward tyll he to the watir cam,  
 Then lokid he behynd and saw Sir Clekam  
 Commaund wondir fast with staff and with his stilt.  
 Allas! thought Beryn, I now am yspilt,  
 For I may no ferthir without I wold me droune,  
 I note wich were the betir, or go ageyn to toune.  
 Geffrey was so nigh com that Beryn myght nat fle:  
 Good Sir, quod this Geffrey, why do yee void me?  
 For by heaven quene, that bare Crist in hir barme,  
 But right as to my self I wold yew no more harme.  
 Sittith down here by me oppon this see stronde,  
 And yf ye drede any thing clepe yewr men to  
 londe,  
 And let them be here with us all our speche tyme,  
 For I wold nat seyn oon word, as makers doon to  
 ryme,  
 But counsell yew as prudently as God wold send  
 me grace:  
 Take comfort to yew, and herk a litill spase.  
 And when that Beryn had yherd his tale to the  
 end,  
 And how goodly as Geffrey spak, as he were his  
 frende,  
 None obstant his drede, yet part of sapience  
 Stremyd into his hert for his eloquence,  
 And seyde; God me coupsaill for his high mercy!  
 For I have herd this same dey men as sotilly  
 Speke, and of yewr semblant, and in such manere,  
 And byhete me frendship outward by their chere,  
 But inward it was contrary their intellectuone,  
 Wherfor the blame is les, though I suspicioune  
 Have of yewr wordis, lest othir be yewr entent,  
 For I note whom to trust by God omnipotent;  
 Yit nethirles yf your will is to com into the ship  
 with me  
 I wold somwhat do by your rede how so it evir  
 be.  
 Then, quod Geffrey, if it be so that I in yewr  
 powere  
 Entr into your shippis, and yew help in yewr my-  
 nere,  
 That ye agayn yewr adversaries shall have the be-  
 ir yde,  
 And giv yow such counsell to bate down their  
 pride,  
 And that yee wyne in every pleynt, al so much  
 or more  
 As they purpose to have of yew; yf they be down  
 ybore,  
 Vol. I.

And ye have amendis for their iniquite,  
 And I yew bring to this end, what shall my gues-  
 don, be?  
 In verrey soth, quod Beryn, yf I yew may trust  
 I wold quyte yew trewly, I make yew behest.  
 In feith then, quod Geffrey, I wold with yew  
 wende.  
 What is yewr name, seid Beryn, though my  
 frende?  
 Geffrey, he seid; but in these marchis I was nat  
 bore,  
 But I have dwellid in this cete yeeris heretofore  
 Ful many, and turmented wers then wer yee,  
 And endurid for my trowith much adversite,  
 For I wold in no wise suffir their falsihedes,  
 For in all the world so corrupt of their dedis  
 Been noon men alyve, I myght ryght well avow;  
 For they set all their wittis in wrong all that they  
 mowe;  
 Wherfor full many a tyme the grettist of them  
 and I  
 Have stonden in altercacioun for their trechery;  
 For I had in valew in tiew marchaundise  
 A M. l. all have they take in such maner wise:  
 So ferforth to save my blode no longer myght I  
 dryve dure;  
 For drede of wors thus thought I myself to disfi-  
 gure,  
 And have among them 12 yere go right in this  
 plichte,  
 And evir have had in memory how I myght them  
 quyte;  
 And so I hope now, as sotill as they be,  
 With my wit engine them and help yew and  
 me.  
 My lymes been both hole and found, me nedith  
 stille me crouch.  
 He cast alyde them both, and lepe oppon an huche  
 And adown ageynes, and walkid to and fro,  
 Up and down, within the ship, and shewid his  
 hondis tho,  
 Stretching forth his fingris in sight and all about  
 Without knot or knor, or eny sign of goute,  
 And dyght them efft ageyns right disetirly,  
 Som to ride ech othir, and som aweward wry.  
 Geffrey was right myghty, and wele his age did  
 bere,  
 For natur was more substantiell when tho dayis  
 wer  
 Then now in our tyme; for all thing doith waste  
 Saff vile and curfid lyving, that growith all to faste.  
 What shuld I tell more? But Geffrey sat hym  
 down;  
 And Beryn hym besydis; the Romeyns gan to  
 rown,  
 And mervelled much in Geffrey of his disgisenes,  
 And Beryn had another thought, and spak of his  
 distres.  
 Now Geffrey, seid this Beryn, and I durst trust in  
 yewe  
 That and ye knewe eny man that is alyve anowe  
 That had of discrecioune so much influence  
 To make my party good to morowe in my de-  
 fence;



And delivir me of sorowe, as ye behote have,  
 I wold become his legeman, as God my soule save.  
 That wer to much, quod Geffrey; that wold I  
 yew relese;  
 But I desire of othir thing to have yewr promes,  
 That and I bryng yewr enmyes into such a  
 traunce  
 To make for yewr wrong is to you right high fe-  
 naunce,  
 And so declare for you that with you pas such dome,  
 That yee oppon your feith bryng me at Rome,  
 Yf God wol send yew wedir and grace to repase.  
 Quod Beryn, But I grant yew I wer lewder then  
 an asse,  
 But or I fullich trust yew holdith me excusid;  
 I wold go counsell with my men lest they it re-  
 fusid.  
 Beryn drew asyde, and spak with his meyne,  
 And expressid every word in what plight and  
 degre  
 That he stode from poynt to poynt, and of his  
 fals aretis:  
 His meyne were astonyd, and starid forth as bestis.  
 Spakith som word, quod Beryn, sith I am betrayd;  
 Yee have yherd what Geffrey to me hath sayd.  
 These Romeyns stode alle still; o word ne coud  
 they meve;  
 And eke it passid their wittis. Then Beryn gan  
 releve,  
 And to Geffrey eft ageyn, and mercy hym be-  
 sought.  
 Help me, Sir, quod Beryn, for his love that us  
 bought  
 Dying on the rood, and wept full tendirly;  
 For but ye help, quod Beryn, ther is no remedy,  
 For comfort nethir counsaill of my men have I  
 noon:  
 Help me, as God yew help, and els I am undoon.  
 When Geffrey saw this Beryn so distraict and wept,  
 Pite into eche veyn of his hert crept.  
 Allas! quod Geffrey, I might nat do a more syn-  
 ful dede,  
 I leve by my trowith, then sayl yew in this nede;  
 Faill me God in heven yf that I yew faill!  
 That I shall do my besines, my peyn, and my tra-  
 vaile,  
 To help yew be my power; I may no ferther goo.  
 Yis, yee behete me more, seid Beryn, tho,  
 That yee wold help me at all that I shuld stonde  
 Beryn gan to wepe and make wers chere [cler.  
 Stillith yew, quod Geffrey, for how so evir ye  
 More than my power ye ought nat desire, [tire  
 For thorough the grace of God ye shul be help wele;  
 I have ther'of no dout; but trewlich I you tele  
 That ye wold hold me covenante and I wold yew  
 also,  
 To bryng me at Rome when it is all ydo.  
 In signe of trowith of both sidis of our acordment  
 Eche of us kys othir of our comyn assent;  
 And all was do. And aftirward Beryn commaun-  
 dit wyne;  
 They dronk, and then Geffrey seid; Sir Beryne,  
 Yee mut declare your maters to myne intelligence,  
 That I may the bet perseyve all inconvenience,

Dout, pro, contra, and ambiguite,  
 Thorough your declaratioun, and enformyd be;  
 And with the help of our Soveren Lord celestiale  
 They shall be behynd, and we shull have the ball,  
 For now the time approachith for their cursidnes  
 To be somewhat rewardit; and cause of yewr  
 distres  
 Hath my hert ysetlid and fixid them a nye,  
 As trowith wold and reson, for their trechery:  
 For many a man tofore this day they have do out  
 of daw,  
 Distroid and turmentid thorough their fals law;  
 For they think litill ellis, and all their wysis fyve,  
 Save to have a mann'ys good and to be hym his  
 lyve;  
 And hath a cursid custom, all ageyn reason,  
 That what man they empeche, they have noon  
 encheson  
 Thoughe it be as false a thing as God hymself is  
 trewe:  
 And it touche a straunger that is com of newe  
 Atte first mocionne that he begynneth to meve  
 Ther stondith up an hundrit hym to repreve.  
 The lawes of the cete stont in probacy;  
 They usen noon enquestis the wrongis for to try:  
 And yf thow haddist eny wrong, and woldist  
 pleyn the,  
 And were as trewe a cause as eny myght be,  
 Thow shuldist nat find o man to bere the witnes,  
 Though every man in the town knew it more or  
 les;  
 So burith they togidir, and holdith with eche  
 othir,  
 That as to counterplede them, though ye wer my  
 brothir,  
 I wold gyve yew no counsaill, ne their empeche-  
 ment,  
 In no word to deny, for that wer combirment;  
 For then wer they in the affirmatyf, and wold  
 preve anon,  
 And to yew that wer negatyff the law wold graunt  
 anon:  
 So for to plede ageyn them it wold litill avail,  
 And yit to every mann'ys wit it ought be grete  
 mervaille,  
 For their lawes been so streyt, and peynous ordi-  
 naunce  
 Is stallid for their fals hede; for this is their sy-  
 naunce,  
 To lese their lyff for lesing, and I hope it may  
 knowe,  
 That lord is riall of the town, and holdith them  
 so lowe,  
 Wherfor they have a custom a shrewid for the  
 nonys,  
 Yf eny of them sey a thing they ry all at onys,  
 And ferm it for a soth, and it bere any charge;  
 Thus of the danger of I hope they kep them ever  
 at large;  
 And therfor wisdom weer, who so might eschewe,  
 Nevir to dele with them; for wer it wrong or  
 trewe  
 It shuld litill availl agayn their fals hedes,  
 For they been acursid, and so been their dedes;

## THE MERCHANT'S SECOND TALE, &c.

Wherefore we must, with all our wit fenfibil,  
Such answers us purvey that they been insolubil;  
To morowe at our aparaunce, and shall be respon-  
saill,

For of welc and ellis it is thy day fynall.  
Now Sovoren Lord celestiale! with many sorow-  
ful sighs,

Seyd Beryn to Geffrey, ymmemorat of lyes,  
Graunt me grace to morowe, so that God be  
pleasid

Make so myne answere, and I somewhat y-cfid  
the that art my counsaill, for othir help is noon.  
Reherse me then, quod Geffrey, the causis of thy  
soun

First to poynt, al in fere, on the is furmyfid,  
Whether I myght to morowe the betir be  
avifid.

Now in soth, quod Beryn, thoughe I shuld dy  
I cannat tell the tenyth part of their trechery,  
What for sorowe and angir that they to me have  
wrought;

So stond I clene desperat but ye con help ought.  
Deperdeux! seid Geffrey, and I the woll not fail,  
Sith I have enfurid the to be of thy counsaill;  
And so much the more that thou art nat wise,  
And canst nat me enform of no maner avise;  
Here therfore a while, and tend wel to my lore.  
The lord that dwellith in this town, whose name  
I told tofore,

Ilope, efft herfid, is so inly wise  
That no man alyve can his pas devise,  
And is so grow in yeris that ix year ago  
He sawe nat for age; and yit it stondith so  
That thorough his wit, and wisdom, and his go-  
vernaunce,

Who makith a fray ef, or stryvith aught, or mel  
to much or prauce,  
Within the same cete, that he n'ys take anoon,  
And hath his pennaunce forthwith, for pardon  
usith he noon:

For ther n'ys pore ne riche, ne what state he be,  
That he ny's undirfote for his iniquite;  
And it be prevind on hym ther shall no gold hym  
quyte,

Right as the forsete axith moch or lite,  
For geys his commaundment is noon so hardy  
quck,

So hard setith he his fote in every niann's nek;  
For undir sky and sterris this day is noon alyve  
That coud amend hym in o poynt, al thing to di-  
stryve.

The seven Sages of Rome, though al ageyn hym  
were,

The shuld be insufficient to make his answere,  
For he can all langagis, Greek, Hebrew, and  
Latyn,

Saldey, French, and Lombard, ye know well fyne,  
And in maner that noon in bokis write;  
In poynt and philosophie also he can endite:

Cevile and canoune, and al maner lawis,  
Seneca and Sydrak, and Salamon's sawys,  
And the seven sciences, and eke lawe of armys,  
Experimentis and pomprey, and all maner char-  
pays,

As ye shul here aftir er that I depart,  
Of his imaginaciouns and of his sotill art;  
For he is of age 300 yere and more,  
Wherfor of all sciences he hath the more lore,  
In Denmark he was gotten and ybore also,  
And in Grece ynorished tyl he coud speke and go;  
Ther was he put to scole, and lernyd wondir fast,  
For such was his grace that all othir he past:  
But first in his begynnyng litil good he had,  
But lernyd evir passyngly, and was wise and sad:  
Of stature and of feture ther was noon hym like  
Thorough the load of Grece though men wold  
hym seke.

A kyng ther was in tho yeris that had noon heir  
male  
Saff a doughter, that he lovid as his own saal;  
Ilope was his servaunt, and did hym such plea-  
saunce

That he made hym his heir, and did hym so  
avaunce  
To wed his doughter, and astit hym to bere  
crowne,

Thorough prowes and his port so low he was and  
boun;  
So as Fortune wold, that was Ilope's frend,  
This worthy king that same yere made his carnel  
end.

That twenty-seven yere is passid that Ilope thus  
hath reigned,  
And yit was ther never for wrong on hym com-  
pleyned

For no judgement that he gaff; yit som ageyn hym  
wyld  
A grete part of his pepil, and wold have hym  
exilid;

But his grete wisdom, and his manfulnes,  
His governaunce, with his bounte and his right-  
fulnes,

Hath evir yit preserved hym unto this ilk day,  
And woll whyle that he lyvith for aught that men  
can say:

For who hath eny quarrel or cause for to wonde  
Within this same cete, quicklich woll he fond,  
And it be sotill matir, to Ilope for to fare,  
For gynnyng to the end his quarrell to declare;  
And eve afore, as custom is, peple shall be on the  
morowe;

But whoso ly he scapith nat wythout shame or so-  
rowe.

Beryn, thou must go thidir, wher thyn empeche-  
ment

Shall be ymevid, and therfor pas nat thens  
Tyll thou have herd them alle, and report them  
wele

To me, that am thy counsell, and repeir snele.  
But so rial mancione as Ilope dwellith in  
Ther is noon in the world, ne so queynt of gyn,  
Wherfore be well avifid how I enform the  
Of the wondir wayis and of the pryvyte  
That been wythyn his paleyse, that thou must pas  
by:

And when thou approchist, and art the castell  
nygh,

Blench fro the brode gate, and enter thow nat  
 there,  
 For ther been men to keep it; yit have thow no  
 fere;  
 Pas down on the right hond by the castell walle  
 Tyll thow fynd a window, and what so the by-  
 fall  
 Entir ther yf thow may, and be nothyng agast,  
 But walk forth in that entre: then shalt thow see  
 in haste  
 A portcolyse the tofore; pas in boldly  
 Tyll thow com to an hall the feyrift undir sky:  
 The wallis been of marbill, yjoynid and yclofid,  
 And the pilours of crystall, grete and wele pro-  
 pofid:  
 The keveryng of bove is of felondyn,  
 And the pavement beneth of gold and asure fyne.  
 But whofo passith thorough this hall hath nede to  
 ren blyve,  
 Or els he myght be disware of his own lyve,  
 For ther wythin liith a stoon that is so hote of  
 kynd  
 That what thing com for by anon it wolle atend,  
 As bryght as eny kandell leeni, and consume  
 anon;  
 And so wold the hall also n'er coldnes of a stoon  
 That is yclepid Dionyse, that set is hym ageyn;  
 So and thow lepe lightly thou shalt have no peyn,  
 For echir ston in kynd proportioned they be,  
 Of hote and cke of coldnes of oon equalite.  
 Thow must pas thorough the hall, but tary nat I  
 rede,  
 For thou shalt fynd a dur up right afore thyn  
 hede:  
 When thow art entrid ther, and the dore apast,  
 Whatso thow se ligg or stond be thow nat agast;  
 And yf thow drede eny thing do no more fass  
 blowe,  
 But yit I rede the beware that it be somewhat  
 lowe:  
 Ther been to libardis loos and untied,  
 If that thy blowing of that othir in eny thing be  
 spicid  
 Anoon he rakith on the to sese the by thy pate,  
 For ther n'ys thing in erth that he so much doth  
 hate,  
 As breth of mann'ys mowith; wherfore refreyn  
 thee,  
 And blow but fair and soft, and when that nede be.  
 When thow art passid this hall anon then shalt  
 thow com  
 Into the fayrest garden that is in Christendom,  
 The wich thorough his clergy is made of such  
 devise  
 That a man shall ween he is in Paradise,  
 At his first comyng in, for melody and song,  
 And othir glorious thinges and delectabill among,  
 The wich Tholomeus, that fountyne Paynym was,  
 That of astronomy knew every poynt and case,  
 Did it so devise, thorough his high comyng,  
 That ther n'ys best in erth ne bird that doith sing.  
 That he n'ys there in figur in gold and sylvir fyne,  
 And now, as they wer quyke, knowe the sotill  
 engyne.

In mydward of this gardyn stant a feir tre  
 Of al maner levis that undir sky be,  
 Yforgit and yfourmit eche in his degre  
 Of sylvir and of gold fyne that lusty been to see.  
 This gardeyn is evir grene, and full of May  
 flowris,  
 Of rede, white, and blew, and othir fresh co-  
 louris,  
 The wich been so redolent, and sentyn so about,  
 That he must be right lewde therin shuld rou-  
 These monstrefull thingis I devise to the  
 Because thow shuldist nat of them abashe the.  
 When that thow comyst there, so thow be strong  
 in thought,  
 And do be my counsell, drede the right  
 For ther beth eight tregetours that in this gardyn  
 kepith,  
 Four of them doith waak whils the four selepith,  
 The wich been so perfite of nygramance,  
 And of the art of apparene and of tragetrie,  
 That they make semen as to a mann'ys sight  
 Abominabill wormys, that fore ought be afright  
 The hertiest man on erth, but he warnyd were  
 Of the grisly sightis that he shuld see there.  
 Among all othir there is a lyon white  
 That and he be a straungir he rampith for to bite,  
 And hath tofore this tyme 500 men and mo  
 Devourid and yete, that therfore have ygg:  
 Yit shalt thow pas suyrly so thow do as I tel.  
 The tre I told tofore, that round as eny bell  
 Berith bow and brannche, traylyng to the ground,  
 And thow touch oon of them thow art fass and  
 found;  
 The tre hath such vertu there shall nothing the-  
 dere:  
 Loke that be the first when thow comyst there.  
 Then shalt thow se an entre by the fether side;  
 Thoughe it be freyte tofore, inner large and wyde  
 It growith more and more, and as a dentour  
 wryith;  
 Yit wolle that wey the bryng there that Ilope  
 liith,  
 Into the feyrift chambir that evir man saw with  
 eye.  
 When thow art there wythyn govern the wisely,  
 For there shalt thow here al thyn empechement  
 Opynly declarid in Illo'is present.  
 Report them wele and kepe them in thy mynd,  
 And aftir thy relacounne we shall so turn and  
 wend,  
 Thorough help of God above, such help for to  
 make  
 That they shall be acombrit, and we right well to  
 scape.  
 Now in soth, quod Beryn, a mann'ys he-  
 grise  
 Of such wondir weyis, for al my marhandise  
 I had levir lese them oppo' me take  
 Such a wey to pas. Then, Sir, for yet a fake  
 I wolle my self, quod Geffrey; sith I am enfuryd  
 To help the with my power thow shalt me amy-  
 rid  
 As ferforth as I may; that I wolle do my peyn  
 To bryng yow plesaunt tyding, and retoun ageyn.



# THE MERCHANT'S SECOND TALE, &c.

461

Yit or the cok crow; and ther'for let me se  
While I am out how mery ye can be.  
Geffrey toke his leve; but who was fory tho  
But Beryn and his company? for when he was go  
Thei had no maner joy, but dout and hevynes,  
For of his repecyryng thei had no sikernes;  
So every man to othir made his compleynt,  
And wishid that of felony they had been atteynt,  
And them thought betir to end hevynes  
Then every day to lak brede atte first mes;  
For our good is go what shall fal of us?  
Evir to be their thrallis, and peraventure wers,  
To lesse our lyf affir yf we displese them ought.  
Geffrey went this was all their thought  
Throughout the nyght tyl cokkis gan to sing;  
But then encorid anguyshe; their hondis gan to  
wryng,  
And cursid wynd and watir that them brought  
ther,  
And wishid many tymes that he had been in  
here,  
And were apassid and entrid into dispeyr,  
In as much as Geffrey did nat repeir:  
Eche man seyde to othir it myght nat be ynayid  
But Geffrey had uttirlich falsly them betrayid  
Throughout all the long nyght.

.....  
Tho went they to counsell a litill tofore the day,  
And were all acordit for to sayl away;  
And so them thought betir, and leve their good  
ther,  
Then abyde theroppon, and have more fere.  
They made their takelyng redy, and wend the  
sail acros,  
For to save their lyvis, and set nat of their los;  
So fore they wer adred to be in servitude,  
And hopid God above wold send them som refute  
By som othir costis ther wynd them wold bryng;  
And therewithall cam Geffrey on his stilt lepeing,  
And cried wondir fast by the watir syde.  
When Beryn herd Geffrey he bid his men abyde,  
And to launch out a bote and bryng Geffrey in,  
For he may more avayl me now then al my kyn,  
And he be trew and trusty, as myn hope is;  
But yit ther'of had Beryn no full sikernes.  
These Romeyns set in Geffrey with an hevyn  
chere,  
For they had levir sail forth then put them in  
weir  
Both lyve and goodis; and evill suspicioun  
They had of this Geffrey; wherfore they gon  
roune,  
Takyng to eke othir, This man wold us betray.  
Geffrey yit wold inowghe he was nat to their  
pay,  
And for Beryn angir he threw into the see  
Both his staff and eke his crouch, that made wer of  
tre,  
And gan them to comfort, and seide in this ma-  
nere  
Beryn, why make ye such chere?

For and yee wex hevyn what shall yewr men do  
But take ensampill of yew? and have no cause to;  
For yit or it be eve yewr adversaryes all  
I shall make them spurn and have a fore fall,  
And yee go quyte, and all yewr good, and have  
of theirs too,  
And they to be right feign for to scape so  
Wythout more daungir, and yewr wyl be;  
For of the lawys her such is the equitye  
That *Who pursueth his pleynt be wrong*  
*He shall make amendis be he never so strong;*  
Right as shuld the t'odir yf he condemned were  
Right so shall the pleyntiff right as I yew here:  
And that shall preve by them, have ye no doute,  
Yet or it be eve right low to yew to loute,  
And submit them to yew, and put them in yewr  
grace  
By that tyme I have ymade all my wanlase;  
And in hope to spede wel let shape us for to dyne,  
Geffrey axid watir, and sith brede and wyne,  
And seite, It is holsom to breke our fast betyme,  
For the steward wold to the court at hour of prynt.  
The sonne gan to shyne and shope a feir dey;  
But for aught that Geffrey could do or sey.  
These Romeyns spekyn fast all the dyner while,  
That Geffrey with his sotill wordis wold them  
begile.  
So when they had ydyned they ryfen up echoone,  
And drew them to counsell what was best to doon;  
Som seyde the best rede that we do may,  
To throw Geffrey ovir the bord, and seyll forth  
our way:  
But for drede of Beryn som wold nat so,  
Yit the more party assentid wele therto.  
Geffrey and Beryn, and worthy Romeyns tweyn,  
Stood a part within the ship, so Geffrey gan to  
seyne,  
Beryn, beth avisid; your men beth in distaunce:  
Sith ye been her soveren put them in governance;  
For methinkith they holdith contrary opynyoun,  
And *Grace saylith comynlich toher is divisoun.*  
In the meen whyle that they gan thus to stryve  
Hanybald was up, and ycom as blyve  
To the brigg of the town ther the shippis rood,  
And herd much noyse; but litil while he bood,  
For when he saw the saylis stond all acros,  
Alas! quod this Hanybald, here growith a finett  
los  
To me that am provost, and have in charge and  
hest  
All these fyve shippis undir myn arest:  
And ran into the town, and made an hidouse cry,  
And chargit all the cetezins to armys for to hy  
From offrete tyl anothir, and rerid up al the town,  
And made the trompis blowe up and the bellis  
foun,  
And sey that the Romeyns wer in poynt to pas,  
Tyl ther wer a thousand, rather mo then les,  
Men y-armyd cleen, walkyng to the stonde  
When Beryn them aspid: Now, Geffrey, in thy  
honde  
Stont lyf and goodis; doth with us what the list  
For all our hope is on the, comfort, help, and trust:  
R. iij

For we must bide aventure, such as God wol  
 shape,  
 For now I am in certen we mow in no wise scape.  
 Have no doubt, quod Geffrey, beth mery; let me  
 aloon;  
 Getith a peir sisours, shewith my berd anoon,  
 And aftirwerd lete top my hede hastilych and  
 blyve.  
 Som went to with fessours, som wyth a knyffe,  
 So what for sorowe and hast, and for lewd tole,  
 Ther was no man alyve bet like to a sole  
 Then Geffrey was by that tyme they had al ydo.  
 Hanybald clepid out Beryn, to Mote Hall for to go,  
 And stode upon the brigg with an huge route.  
 Geffrey was the first to Hanybald gan to loute  
 And lokid out a fore ship: God bles yew! Sir,  
 quod he.  
 Wher art thou now, Beryn? com forth, behold  
 Her is an huge pepill yrayd and ydight; [and se,  
 All these been my children that been in armys  
 Yistirdey I gat them: is nat mervail, [bryght;  
 That they been hidir ycom to be of our counsaill,  
 And to stond up by us, and help us in our ple?  
 A! myne own childryn, blefid mut ye be!  
 Quod Geffrey, with an high voise, and had a nyce  
 visage,  
 And gan to daunce for joy in the fore stage.  
 Hanybald lok'd on Geffrey as he wer amafid,  
 And beheld his countenance, and how he was  
 yrasid,  
 But evirmore he thought that he was a sole  
 Naturell of kynde, and had noon othir tool,  
 As femed by his wordis and his visage both,  
 And thought it had been foly to wex with hym  
 wroth,  
 And gan to bord ageyn, and axid hym in game,  
 Sith thou art our fadir who is then our dame?  
 And how and in what plase were we begete?  
 Yistirday, quod Geffrey, pleyng in the strete  
 At a gentil game that clepid is the Quek,  
 A long peny halter was cast about my nek,  
 And yknet fast with a riding knot,  
 And cast over a perch, and hale along my throte.  
 Was that a game, quod Hanybald, for to hang thy  
 selve?  
 So they seyde about me, a thousand eche by hymself.  
 How scapiddist thou, quod Hanybald, that thou  
 wer nat dede?  
 Therto can I answer without any rede;  
 I bare thre dife in myn own purs,  
 For I go nevir without, fare I betir or wers;  
 I kist them forth all thre, and too fill am'ys,  
 But here now what fill aftir, right a mervelouse  
 case;  
 Ther cam a mowse lep forth, and ete the third boon,  
 That pussid out her skyn as grete as she myght goon;  
 And in this maner wise of the mowse and me  
 All ye be ycom my children fair and fre;  
 And yit or it be eve fall woll such a chaunce  
 To stond in my power yew all to avaunce,  
 For and we plede well to day we shall be riche  
 inowghe.  
 Hanybald of his wordis hertlich loughe,

And so did all that herd hym, as they myght wele,  
 And had grete joy wyth hym for to tell,  
 For they knew hym noon othir but a sole of kynd  
 And all this was his discrecioun, and that previd  
 the end,  
 Thus whils Geffrey japid to make their hertis  
 light  
 Beryn and his company were rayid and ydight,  
 And londid them in botis, ferefull how to fere  
 For all their thoughtis in balance stode betwene  
 hope and drede:  
 But yet they did their peyn to make [some  
 chere,  
 As Geffrey them had enfourmed, of poyn [all  
 manere  
 Of their governaunce all the long day [wey  
 Tyll their plee wer endit; so went they forth their  
 To the court with Hanybald. Then Beryn gan to  
 sey,  
 What nedith this, Sir Hanybald, to make such aray  
 Sith we been pese-marchantis, and use no spolia-  
 cioun?  
 For soth, Sir, quod Hanybald, to me was made  
 relacioun  
 Yee wer in poynt to void; and yef ye had do so  
 Yee had lost yewr lyvis, without wordis mo.  
 Beryn held hym styll. Geffrey spak anoon;  
 No les wed them lyvis? Whi so, good Sir Joh?  
 That wer somewhat to much as it semeth me;  
 But ye be ovirwise that dwell in this cete;  
 For ye have begonne a thing makith you right bold  
 And yit or it be eve as folis shull yee be hold:  
 And eke ye devyne for shipmanny's craft,  
 And wotith litill what longith to afore the ship  
 and bast,  
 And namelich in the dawning when shipmen first  
 arise,  
 My good frend, quod Hanybald, in a scornynge  
 wise,  
 Yee must onys enfourm me thorough yowr dis-  
 crecioun,  
 But first yee must answer to a questioun;  
 Why make men cros-sail in myddis of the mast?  
*For to talow the ship and fere more blast.*  
 Why goon the yemen to bote ankirs to hale?  
*For to make them redy to walk to the ale.*  
 Why hale they up stonys by the crane lyne?  
*To make the tempest sefe and the sonne shyne.*  
 Why close they the port with the see bord?  
*For the mastir shuld awake at first word.*  
 Thou art a redy reve, quod Hanybald, in fay.  
 Yee, Sir, trewly, for sothe is that ye yew sey;  
 Geffrey evir clappid as doith a watir myll,  
 And made Hanybald to laugh al his hert fy.  
 Beryn, quod this Geffrey, retourn thy men ageyn;  
 What shull they do with the at court? no man on  
 them pleyn.  
 Plede thy case thy selve right as thou hast  
 ywrought;  
 To bide with the shippis my purpose is and thought.  
 Nay, forsoth, quod Hanybald, thou shalt abyde  
 on lond,  
 Wee have no folis but the; and toke hym by the  
 hond,

# THE MERCHANT'S SECOND TALE, &c.

Forthow art wise in law to plede all the case.  
 That can I betir, quod Geffrey, then eny man in  
 this plase.  
 What seyst thou therto, Beryn? shall I tell thy  
 tale?  
 Hanybald likid his wordis wele, and forward gan  
 hym hale.  
 Beryn made him angry, and sighid wondir fore,  
 For Geffrey hym had enfourmid of every poynt to  
 fore,  
 And hym shuld govern all the long day.  
 Geffrey said hym ageyn; Sey me ye or nay;  
 Mayst we nat here speke some maner word?  
 I have my blab, lewd sole, me likith nat thy bord:  
 I have thir thought, quod Beryn, wherof thou  
 canst lite.  
 Clepeist thou me a Fole, quod Geffrey? al that  
 I may the wite:  
 But first when we out of Rome sailid both in fere  
 Tho I was thy felawe and thy partinere,  
 For the marchandise was more then half myne,  
 And sith that thou com hidir thou takist all for  
 thyne.  
 But yit or it be eve I wol make oon beheft,  
 But thou have my help thy part shall be left.  
 Thyn help, quod Beryn; lewde sole, thou art  
 more then masid;  
 Dresthe to the shippis ward with thy crown  
 and  
 For I myght never spare the bet: trus and be agoo.  
 I woll go with the, quod Geffrey, wher thou wolt  
 or no,  
 And lern to plede law to wyn both howse and lond.  
 So thou shalt, quod Hanybald, and led hym by  
 the hond,  
 And leyd his hond oppon his nek: but and he  
 had yknow  
 Whom he had led, in sikernes he had well levir in  
 snowe  
 Have walkid xl myle, and rathir then fail more;  
 For he wisshid that Geffrey had ybe unbore  
 Full oft tyme in that day or the ple wer do,  
 And so did all that wrought Beryn sham and woo.  
 Now yee that list abide and here of sotilte  
 Mowe know how that Beryn sped in his ple,  
 And in what aray to the court he went,  
 And how Hanybald led Geffrey, disware of his  
 entent;  
 But yet he axid of Geffrey, What is thy name  
 I pray?  
 Gylhochet, quod Geffrey, men clepid me yistirday.  
 And wher were thou ybore? I note I make a vow,  
 Seyd Geffrey to this Hanybald, I axe that of yew,  
 For I can tell no more but here I stond now.  
 Hanybald of his wordis hertlich lowghe,  
 And held hym for a passyng sole to serve eny lord.  
 Thus they romyd janglyng into the court ward,  
 But or they com ther the steward was yset,  
 And the rettif of the town a company ymer,  
 And go to stryve fast who shuld have the good  
 That com was with Beryn ovr the salt flood.  
 Som seydon and som seyde anothir;  
 Som wold have the shippis, the parrell, and the  
 gothir;

Som his eyen, som his lyf wold have, and no les,  
 Or els he shuld for them fyne or he did pas;  
 And in the mene whils they wer in this afay  
 Beryn and these Romeyns wer com, in good aray  
 As myght be made of woll, and of colour graynyd;  
 They toke a fyde bench that for them was or-  
 deynyd.  
 When all was hufat and still Beryn arose anoon,  
 And stode in the myddis of the hall tofore them  
 everichone,  
 And seyde, Sir Steward, in me shall be no let;  
 I am ycom to answer as my day is set:  
 Do me ryght and reson; I axe yew no more.  
 So shall I, quod the steward, for ther'to I am  
 swore.  
 He shall have right, quod Geffrey, wher thou  
 wolt or no,  
 For and thou mys onys thy jugement ondo.  
 I woll to the Emperour of Rome my cosyn,  
 For of o cup he and I full oft have dronk the wyne,  
 And yit we shall herastir as oft as we mete,  
 For he is longe gladder when I send hym to grete.  
 This Geffrey stode upon a fourm, for he wold be sey  
 Above all othir the shoultris and the cry,  
 And starid al about with his lewd berd,  
 And was yhold a very sole of ech man hym herd.  
 The steward, and the officers, and the burgeysis  
 all,  
 Laughid at hym hertlich; the criour gan to call  
 The burgeyse that had pleyd with Beryn at ches,  
 And he arose quiklich, and gan hym for to dres  
 Afore the steward at barr, as the maner is;  
 He gan to tell his tale wyth grete redines:  
 Here me, Sir Steward, this day is me set  
 To have right and reson; I axe yew no bet,  
 Of Beryn that here stondith, that with me yistirday  
 Made a certen covenant, and at ches we did pley,  
 That who so were ymatid of us both too  
 Shuld do the todir's bidding, and yf he wold nat so  
 He must drink all the watir that salt wer in the se;  
 Thus I to hym furid and he also to me.  
 To preve my tale trew I am nat all aloon;  
 Up rose ten burgeysis quyklich anoon,  
 And affermyd eviry word of his tale soth,  
 And made them all redy for to do their othe.  
 Evander the steward, Bery, now, quod he,  
 Thou most answer nede; it woll noon othir be:  
 Take thy counsell to the: spede on; I have dooth.  
 Beryn held hym styll: Geffrey, spak anoon;  
 Now be my trowith, quod Geffrey, I mervell much  
 of yew  
 To bid us go to counsell, and knowith me wise  
 inowghe,  
 And evir ful avysid, in twynkelyng of an eye,  
 To make a short answer but yf my mowith be dry.  
 Shuld we go to counsell for o word or tweyn?  
 Be my trowith we n'yll; let se mo that pleyn;  
 And but he be yanswer'd, and that right anoon,  
 I geve yew leve to rise and walk out every choon,  
 And aspyd redily yf ye fynd me there,  
 In the meen whils I woll abyde here;  
 Nay, I tell trewly, I am wiser than ye ween,  
 For ther n'is noon of you woot redely what I  
 meen.



Every man gan laughe all his hert fill  
Of Geffrey and his wordis; but Beryn held hym  
And was cleenastonyd; but yit ner the lattir [still,  
He held it nat al folly that Geffrey did clattir,  
But wisely hym governyd, as Geffrey hym taught.  
For percell of his wisdom he had tofore smaught.  
Sir Steward, quod Beryn, I undirstound wele  
The tale of this burgeyse; now let anothir tell,  
That I may take counsell and answer all at onys,  
I graunt, quod the steward; then axing for the  
nonys,

Sith thow wold be rewld by the fol's rede,  
For he is right a wise man to help the in thy nede.  
Up aros the accusours queyntlich anoon;  
Hanybald was the first of them everichoon,  
And gan to tell his tale with a proud chere.  
Yistirday, Soverens, when I was here  
Beryn and thes burgeyse gon to plede fast  
For pleying at ches; so ferforth at last,  
Thorough vertu of my noslice, that I had in charge  
Beryn's fyve shippis, for to go at large,  
And to be in answer her this same day;  
So walkyng to the strandward we bargeynyed by  
the wey

That I shuld have the marchandise that Beryn  
with hym brought,

Wherof I am felid, as ful sold and bought,  
In covenante that I shuld his shippis fill ageyn  
Of my marchandise, such as he tofore had seyn  
n myn own plase, howis to or thre,  
Full of marchandise as they myght be;  
And I am evir redy, whensoever he wold,  
Let hym go or sende, and charge his shippis full  
Of such marchandise as he findith there,  
For in such wordis we acordit were.

Up rose x burgeyis, not tho that rose tofore,  
But othir, and made them redy to have swore  
That every word of Hanybald, from the begyn-  
nyng to the end,

Was soth and eke trewe, and with their mende  
Full prest they wer to preve; and seyde they wer  
present

At covenant making, by God omnipotent.  
It shal nat nede, quod Geffrey, whils that I here  
stond,

For I wold preve it my self with my right honde,  
For I have been in four batellis heretofore,  
And this shall be the fift, and therfor I am swore.  
Beholdith, and seith, and turnyd hym about;  
The steward and the burgeyse gamyd all about;  
The Romeyns held them still, and lawghid but  
a lite.

Wyth that cam the blynd man his tale to endite,  
That God hym grant wynnynge right as he hath  
aservid.

Beryn and his company stode all astryvyd  
Betwene hope and drede, right in high distres,  
For of wele or of woo they had no sikernes.  
Beryn, quod this blynd, thoughe I may nat see  
Stond nere yit the harr, my comyng is for the,  
That wrongfullich thow witholdist my both to  
eyen,

The wich I toke the for a tyme, and quycklich to  
me hijen,

And take them me ageyn, as our covenant was.  
Beryn, I take no reward of othir mennys case,  
But oonlich of myn oon; that stont me moit an  
hond.

Now blelid be God in heven that brought the to  
this lond!

For sith our last parting many betir teris  
Have I lete for thy love, that som tyme partieris  
Of wynnynge and of lising were yeris fele,  
And evir I fond the trewe, tyl at the last thou  
didst flele

Awey wyth my too eyen that I toke to  
To se the tregatours pley and their sotilte,  
As yistirday here in this same plase  
Tofore yew, Sir Steward, reherfid as it was.  
Full trewe is that byword, *A man to se wefabill*  
*Ledith oft Beyard from his own stabill.*

Beryn, by the I meen, though thow make it  
straunge,

For thow knowist trewly that I made no chaunge  
Of my good eyen for thyn that badder were.

Therwith stode up burgeyse four witnes to here.  
Beryn held hym styll, and Geffrey spak anoon;  
Now of thy lewd compleynt, and thy masid  
moon,

By my trewith, quod Geffrey, I have grete mer-  
vaill,

For though thow haddist eyen-sight it shuld litill  
availe;

Thow shuldist nevir fare the bet, but the wors,  
in fay,

For al thing may be still now for the in house and  
way,

And yf thow haddist thyn eyen thou woldist no  
counsell hele;

I know wele by thy sifnamy thy kynd wer to stele:  
And eke it is thy profite and thyn ese also  
To be blynd as thou art; for now wherfu thow  
go

Thow hast thy lyvlode whils thow art alyve,  
And yf thow myghtist se thow shuldist nevir  
thryve.

Al the house throughout save Beryn and his feris  
Lawghid of Geffrey, that watir on their levis  
Ran down from their eyen for his masid wit.

Wythat cam the woman, hir tung was nat sclyt,  
Wyth 15 burgeyis, and women also fele,  
Her quarel for to preve, and Beryn to apele,  
With a feir knave child yloke wythin their armys,  
And gan to tel her tale of wrongis and of harmys,  
And eke of unkyndnes, untrowith, and falsheede,  
That Beryn had ywrought to hir, that quyntlich  
from hir yede

Anoon oppon her wedding, when he his wif  
doon,

And brought hir wyth chyld, and lete hir  
aloon

Wythout help and comfert from that day, and  
nowith

He proferid me nat to kys onys with his nowith,  
As yistirday, Sir Steward, afore yew ech word  
Was reherfid here, my pleynt is of record,  
And this dey is me set for to have resoun.  
Let hym make amendis, or els tell enchevaloun

THE MERCHANT'S SECOND TALE, &c.

181

Why hym ought nat fynd, as man ought, his wyf.  
These fiftene burgeyfis quylich al so blyve,  
And as sole wymen as stode by hir ther,  
Seyd that they were present when they weddit were,

And that every word that the woman seyde  
Was trew, and eke Beryn had hir so betray'd.  
*Beryn* quod Geffrey, Beryn, hast thou a  
wyf?

And have God my trowith the dayis of my lyf  
The the les thou teldist me nat to fore  
As wel as thy wedding and of thy sone ybore.  
Go to, and kys them both, thy wyf and eke thyn  
air :

Be thou n<sup>o</sup> affhamyd, for they both be feyr.  
This wedding was right privy, but I shall make it  
couthe :

Behold thy sone, it semith crope out of thy  
mowith,

And eke of thy condicioun both soft and some.  
Now am I glad thyn heir shall with us to Rome,  
And I shall teche hym, as I can, whils that he is  
young,

Every day by the strete to gadir houndis dung  
Tyll it be abill of prentyse to craft of *Taverner*  
taury

And after I shall teche hym for to catche a fly,  
And to mend mytens when they been to tore,  
And after to shoun whan he is elder more ;  
Yit for his parentyne to pipe as doith a mowse  
I woll hym teche, and for to pike a snayl out of  
his howse ;

And to berk as doith an hound, and sey Baw,  
baw,  
And turn round about as a cat doith wyth a  
straw,

And to blete as doith a shepe, and ney as doith an  
hors,  
And to low as doith a cow ; and as myn own  
corps

I woll cherissh hym every day for his modirs  
fak :

And gan to stappe ner the child, to have ytake,  
As fomed by his countenance, although he  
thought nat so :

But modir was evir ware, and blenchid to and  
fro,

And leyd hir hond betwene, and lokid somwhat  
wroth,

And Geffrey in pur wrath beshrewid them all  
both ;

For by my trowith, quod Geffrey, wel masid is thy  
pan,

For I woll teche thy sone the craftis that I can,  
nat he in tyme to come myght win his liv-  
lode,

To wetherfor angry thou art verry wood.  
Of husbond wyf, and sone, by the Trynyte  
I note wen is the wisest of them all thre.  
No, sothe, quod the steward ; it liith all in thy  
nol :

Both wit and wysdom, and previth by thy poll :  
For all be that Geffrey wordit sotilly,  
The steward and the burgeyfis held it for foly

All that evir he seyde, and toke it for good game,  
And had full litill knowlech he was Geffrey the  
lame.

Beryn and his company stode still as stone  
Betwene hope and drede, disware how it shuld  
goon,

Saff Beryn trist in party that Geffrey wold hym  
help,

But yit into that hour he had no cause to yelp ;  
Wherfor they made much sorowe, that dole was  
and pete.

Geffrey herd hym sigh fore : What devil is yew ?  
quod he :

What nede yew be fory whils I stound here ?  
Have I nat enfourmid yew how and in what ma-  
nere

That I yew wold help, and bryng them in the  
snare ?

Yf ye coud plede as well as I, full litill wold ye  
care.

Pluk up thy hert, quod Geffrey, Beryn, I speke to  
the.

Leve thy blab lewd, quod Beryn to hym age ;  
It doith no thing avail that sorowe com on thy  
hede ;

It is nat worth a fly al that thou hast seyde :

Have we nat els now for to think oppon

Saff here to jangill ? Machyn rose anon,

And went to the barr, and gan to tell his tale ;

He was as fals as Judas, that set Criste at sale.

Sir Steward, quod this Machyn, and the burgey-  
fis al,

Knowith wel how Melan with purpill and with  
pall,

And othir marchandise, seven yere ago

Went toward Rome, and how that I also

Have enquerid sith, as reson woll and kynde,

Sith he was my fadir, to know of his ende ;

For yit sith his departing tyl it was yistirday

Met I never creature that me coud wissh or say

Reedynes of my fadir, dede othir alyve ;

But, blefid be God in heven ! in this thev'is  
sclyve

The knyff I gaff my fadir was yistirday yfound :

Sith I hym apele let hym be fast ybound.

The knyff I know wel inowe ; also the man stont  
here,

And dwellith in this town, and is a cotelere,

That made the same knyff wyth his too hondis,

That wele I woot there is noon like to fech al  
Cristen londis ;

For three preciouste stonys been wythin the haft

Perfctlich ycouhit, and sotillich by craft

Endendit in the haft, and that right coriously,

A saphir, and a salidone, and a rich ruby.

The cotelere cam lepeing forth with a bold chere

And seyde to the steward that Machyn told now  
here

Every word is trew, so beth the stonys set ;

I made the knyff my self, who myght know it  
bet ?

And toke the knyff to Machyn, and he me pay'd  
wele ;

So is this felon giltly ; there is no more to tell.



Up arose burgeyfis by two by three by four,  
 And sey'd they wer present the same tyme and  
 hour  
 When Machyn wept fore, and brought his fadir's  
 gownd,  
 And gaf hym the same knyff oppon the see strond.  
 Beth ther eny mo pleyntifs of record?  
 Quod Geffrey to the steward: and he ageyn-  
 ward;  
 How semeth the, Gylhochet, beth ther nat  
 inowghè?  
 Make thyn answer, Beryn, case that thou mowe,  
 For oon or othir thou must sey, although it nat  
 availle,  
 And but thou lese or thou go methinkith grete  
 mervail.  
 Beryn goith to counsell and his company,  
 And Geffrey bode behinde to her more and se,  
 And to shew the burgeyse somewhat of his hert;  
 And seyde, *But* I make the pleyntifs for to smert,  
 And alle that them meynntenith, for aught that is  
 yseyd,  
 I woll grant yew to kut the eris fro my hede.  
 My master is at counsell, but counsell hath he  
 noon  
 For but I hym help he is cleen undoon;  
 But I woll help hym al that I can, and meyntene  
 hym also  
 By my power and connyng, so I am bound ther'to;  
 For I durst wage battell wyth yew, though yee be  
 strong,  
 That my maister is in the trowith and ye be in  
 the wrong;  
 For and we have lawe I ne hold yew but distroied  
 In yewr own fallhede, so be yee now aspiet;  
 Wherfor yit or eve I shal abate yewr pride,  
 That som of yew shall be right seyn to slynk away  
 and hide.  
 The burgeyses gon to lawgh, and scornyd hym  
 ther'to.  
 Gylhochet, quod Evander, and thou cowardist so  
 Bryng it thus about, it were a redy wey.  
 He is a good fool, quod Hanybald, in fay,  
 To put hymself aloon in strengith and eke in wit  
 Ageyns all the burgeyfis that on this bench sit.  
 What clatir is this, quod Machyn, al day with a  
 sole?  
 Tyme is now to worch with som othir tole,  
 For I am certeyn of their answer that they wol fail,  
 And lys for lys of my fadir what may that avail?  
 Wherfor beth avisid, for I am in no doute  
 The goodis been sufficient to part al aboute,  
 So may every party pleyntif have his part.  
 That is reson, quod the blind; a trow man thou  
 art;  
 And eke it were untrowith and eke grete syn  
 But eche of us that pleynith myght fomwhat wyn.  
 Hanybald bote his lippis, and herd them both  
 wele;  
 Towching the marchandise o tale I shall yew tell,  
 And eke make a vow, and hold my behest,  
 That of the marchandise yewr part shall be left;  
 For I have made a bargeyn that may nat be undo;  
 I woll hold his covenaut and he shal myn also.

Up roos quicklich the burgeyse Syrophanes;  
 Hanybald, quod he, the law goith by no lanys,  
 But hold ferth the streyt wey, evenas doith a lyne;  
 For yistirday when Beryn with me did dyne  
 I was the first person that put him in arest;  
 And for he wold go large thou haddest in charge  
 and hest  
 To sese both ship and goodis til I were answ  
 Then must I first be servid, this knowith  
 ylerid.  
 The woman stode besidis, and cried won-  
 Ful soth is that byword, *To pot who cor, b last*  
*He werst is servid*; and so it farith by me  
 Yit nethirles, Sir Steward, I trust to yewr entent,  
 That knowith best my cause and my t<sup>r</sup> entent;  
 I axe yew no more but rightful judgement:  
 Let me have part with othir sith he my husbond is:  
 Good Sir, beth avisid; I axe yew nat amys.  
 Thus they gon to stryve, and wer of high mode  
 For to depart among them othir mennys good  
 Wher they tofore had nevir properte,  
 Ne nevir shuld theraftir by doom of equyte;  
 But they had othir cause then they had tho.  
 Beryn was at counsell, his hert was full woo,  
 And his meyny sory, difrakt, and al amayide,  
 For tho they levid noon othir but Geffrey had be-  
 trayide;  
 Because he was so long they coud no mane rede,  
 But everich by hymself wisshid he had dede.  
 O myghtful God! they seyde, I trow tofore this day  
 Was nevir gretter treson, fere, ne affray,  
 Ywrought onto mankind then nowis to us here,  
 And namelich by this Geffrey with his sotil chere;  
 So feithful he made it he wold us help echone.  
 And now we be ymyryd he letith us sit aloon.  
 Of Geffrey, quod Beryn, be as it be may;  
 We mut answer nede, ther is noon othir way;  
 And therfor let me know your wit and your  
 counsaile.  
 They wept, and wrong their hondis, and gan to  
 waille [lyve  
 The tyme that they were bore, and shortly of the  
 They wisshid that they wer. With that came Gef-  
 frey blive,  
 Passing them towards, and began to smyle.  
 Beryn axid Geffrey wher he had be al the while?  
 Have mercy oppon us, and help us as thou hight.  
 I woll help yow right wele through grace of  
 Godd's might;  
 And I can tell yow tiding of their governaunce.  
 They stondin altercatioun and stryf in poynt to  
 prauce  
 To depart your goodis, and levith verily  
 That it wer impossibil yew to remedy;  
 But their high pride and their presumptioun  
 Shal be yit or eve their confusioun;  
 And to make amendis ech man for his pleynit,  
 Let se therfor your good advise how they might  
 be ateynt.  
 The Romeyns stode still, as who had for their  
 hede.  
 In feith, quod Beryn, we can no maner rede,  
 But in God and yew we submit us all,  
 Body, lys, and goodis, to stond or to fall,



Sirophanes must do cost and aventure,  
To stop al the fresh ryvers into the see that entir,  
For Beryn is redy in al thing hym to quyte,  
So he be in defaute must pay for the wite.  
Sith ye been wise al what nede is much clatir?  
Ther was no covaunte them betwene to drink  
fresh watir.

When Sirophanes had yherd al Geffrey's tale,  
He stode al abalhid, with colour wan and pale,  
And lokid oppon the steward with a rewful chere,  
And on othir frendship and neyhbour he had  
there,

And preyd them of counsell the answere to reply.  
These Romeyns, quod the steward, been wondir  
And eke right ymagytyf, and of sotil art, [scly,  
That I am in grete dowte howe yee shul depart  
Without harm in oon side: our lawis, well thow  
wolt,

Is to pay damagis, and eke also the cost,  
Of every party plentyf that fallith in his pleynt:  
Let hym go quyt I counsell, yf it may so be  
queynt.

I mervail, quod Sirophanes, of their sotilte,  
But sith that it so stondith, and may noon othir be,  
I do woll be counsell, and graunted Beryn quyte.  
But Geffrey thought anothir, and without repite,  
Sirs, he seyde, me wetith wele that ye wol do us  
right,

And so ye must nedis, and so ye have us highte;  
And therefore, Sir Steward, ye occupy our plase,  
And ye know wele what law wol in this ca e;  
My mastir is redy to perfourme his avow.  
But natheless, quod the steward, I cannat wete  
how

To stop all the fresh watir were possibilite.  
Yis, in soth, quod Geffrey, who had of gold plente  
As man coud wish and it myght well be do:  
But that is nat our defaute, he hath no tresour to.  
Let hym go to in haste, or find us fuerthe  
To make amendis to Beryn for his iniquite,  
Wrong, and harm, and trespas, and undewe wex-  
acioune,

Left of sale, and marchandise, disese, and tribula-  
lacioune,  
That we have sustenyd thorough his iniquite.  
What vaylith it to tary us? for though ye sotil pry  
We shul have reson wher ye wol or no,  
So woll we that ye knowe what that we woll do;  
In certen full avysid to lhope for to pase,  
And declare every poynt, them ore and eke the  
lase,

That of your opyn errours hath pleyne correc-  
tioune,  
And ageny's his jugement is noon protectioun:  
He is yewr lord riall, and foveren jugge and lele,  
That and ye work in eny poynt to hym liith our  
apele.

So when the steward had yherd, and the burgey's  
alle,  
How Geffrey had ysteryd, that went so nighe the  
gall,

What for shame, and drede of more harm, and re-  
presse,

They made Sirophanes, weer hym looth or leffe,

To take Beryn gage, and plegg find also,  
To byde the ward and jugement of that he had  
myfdo.

Now fertherfore, quod Geffrey, sith that it so is  
That of the first plentyf we have sikernes,  
Now to the Marchant we must nedis answere,  
That bergeyned with Beryn al that his sh-  
bere,

In covaunte that he shuld his shippis fill  
Of othir marchandise that he tofore had seyn  
In Hanybald's plase, howis to or thre,  
Full of marchandise as they might be;

Let us pas thidir, yf eny thing be there  
At our lust and liking, as they accordit were.  
I graunt wele, quod Hanybald, the axist but  
righte;

Up arose these burgey's, Thow axist but right.  
The steward and his comperis entrid first the  
howse,

And saw nothing within, straw, ne less ne moyse,  
Save tymbir, and the tyle stonys, and the wallis  
white.

I trow, quod the steward, the wynnynge woll be  
but lite

That Beryn woll now get in Hanybald, is pleynte.  
For I can se noon othir but they woll be ateyn,  
And clepid them in echone, and went out hym-  
felve.

As sone as they were entrid they saw no maner  
For soris of their hert, but, as tofore is seyde,  
The howse was cleen yswept; then Geffrey feir  
they preyde,

To help yf he coud. Let me aloon, quod he,  
Yit shul they have the wers as sotil as they be.  
Evander the steward in the mene while

Spak to the burgeyse, and began to smyle;  
Though Sirophanes be yhold the Romeyns for to  
curs,

Yit I trow that Hanybald woll put hym to the  
wers,

For I am suyr and certeyn within they shul nat  
fynd?

What sey ye be my pleynt, Sirs, quod the blynd?  
For I make a vow I woll nevir cese

Tyl Sirophanes have of Beryn a pleyne relese,  
And to make hym quyte of his submissioun,  
Els wol I have no pete of his contritioun,  
But folow hym al so ferly as I can or may  
Tyll I have his eyen both to away.

Now in feith, quod Machyn, and I wol have his  
lyffe,

For though he scape yewall, with me woll he nat  
stryffe,

But be right feyn in hert all his good forforn  
For to scape wyth hys lyf, and to me it take.

Beryn and his felship wer within the howse,  
And speken of their answer, and made but litil  
rouse,

But evir preyd Geffrey, to help yf he coud ought.  
I woll nat fail, quod Geffrey, and was tofore be-  
thought

Of too botirliis, as white as eny snowe;  
He lete them flee within the howse, that astir on  
the wowe

## THE MERCHANT'S SECOND TALE, &c.

They clevid wondir fast, as their kynd woll,  
 Aftir they had flew to rest anothir pull  
 When Geffrey saw the botirflis cleving on the wall  
 The steward and the burgeyse in he gan call;  
 Lo! Sirs, he sayd, whofo evir repent,  
 We have those marchandise most to our talent  
 That we fynd herein. Behold, Sir Hanybal,  
 Wondir botirflis that clevith on the wall;  
 Thye must fill our shippis all fyve.  
 And thy hert Beryn, for thow most nedis  
 And thryve;  
 And wher we out of Rome in Marchantfare went,  
 To purchace botirflis was our most entent;  
 Yit wolt I tell the cause especial and why:  
 There is a leche in Room that hath ymade a cry  
 To make amentement to cure all tho ben blynde,  
 And al maner marmytees that growith in man-  
 kynde. [ye mut hy.  
 The day is short; the work is long: Sir Hanyball,  
 When Hanybald herd this tale, he seyde pryvely  
 In countre to the steward; In soth I have the wers,  
 For I am sikir by this pleynt that shall I litil purs.  
 So me semeth, quod the steward, for in the world  
 • rounde  
 So many botirflis wold nat be founde  
 I trow o ship to charge; wherfor me thinkith best  
 Let hym have his good ageyn, and be in pefe and  
 rest.  
 And yit is an aventure and thow scape so  
 Thy covenants to relese without more ado.  
 The burgeysis everichone, that were of that cete,  
 Were anoyid fore when they herd of this plee;  
 Geffrey with his wisdom held them hard and  
 streyte;  
 That they were acombrit in their own distreyte.  
 When Hanybald with his frendis had spoke of  
 this matere [manere:  
 They drow them towards Beryn, and seid in this  
 Only for botirflis ye com fro your contres,  
 And we you tell in sikirnes and opon our fey,  
 That so many botirflyes we shul nevir gete,  
 Wherefore we be avisid othirwise to trete;  
 That Hanybald shal relese his covenaut that is  
 makid, [ransakid.  
 And delyver the good ageyn that from you was  
 Nay forsoth, quod Geffrey, us nedith no relese;  
 Ye shall hold our covenaut and we shall cure  
 For we shall have reson wher ye woll or no [also,  
 Whils Hope is alyve; I am nothyng aserd,  
 For I can wipe all this plee cleen from our berd,  
 And ye blench onys out of the high wey. [deley.  
 Thei proferid hym plegg and gage without more  
 Now ferthir more, quod Geffrey, us ought to pro-  
 • cede, [nede;  
 For to the blynd mann's poynt we must answer  
 That, for to tell trowith, he lyvith all to long  
 For his own sawte and his own wrong  
 On Beryn he hath surmysid, as previth by his plee,  
 And that we shall opynlich know wele and see;  
 For as I undirstode hym he seyde that fele yeris  
 Beryn, that here stonidith, and he were pertynoris  
 Of wyunnyng and of lesyng, as men it use and  
 doith,  
 And that they chaungit eyen, and yit this is sothe:

But the cause of chaunging yit is to yow onknow,  
 Wherfore I wold declare it both to high and lowe.  
 In that same tyme that this burge se blynd,  
 And my master Beryn, as fast asseyth myght bynde  
 Were marchaundis in comyn of al that they myght  
 Saff of lyf and lym, and of dedel syn, [wyn,  
 Ther fill in the marchis of al thing such a derth  
 That joy, comfort, and solas, and al maner myrth;  
 Was exilid cleen, saff oonly molestatioun,  
 That abood continuel—desperatioun:  
 So when that the pepil wer in most myscheffe  
 God that is above, that al thing doth releve,  
 Sent them such plete of mony, fruyte, and corn,  
 Wich turnid al to joy their mourning al to forny;  
 Then gaf they them to mirth, revel, pley, and  
 And thankid God above evir more among [song,  
 Of their relevacioun from weo into gladnes,  
 For *Aftir four when swete is com it is a plesant mes.*  
 So in the meen while of this prosperite  
 Ther cam such a pleyer into the same contre  
 That nevir thertofore was seyn such anothir,  
 That wele was the cecture that born was of his  
 modir  
 That myght se the mirthis of this jageloure,  
 For of the world wide tho dayis he bare the flour,  
 For there n'as man ne woman in that regioune  
 That set of hymself the store of a boton  
 Yf he had not sey his myrthis and his game.  
 So oppon a tyme this pleyer did proclame  
 That al manere of pepill his pleyis wold se  
 Shuld com oppon a certen dey to the grete cete a  
 Then among othir my master here, Beryn,  
 And this same blynd; that pledith now with hym,  
 Made a certen covenaut that they wold se  
 The merzellis of this pleyer and his setilte:  
 So what for hete of somer, age, and febilnes,  
 And eke also the long way, this blynd for weal-  
 rynes  
 Fill flat adown to the erth; o fote ne myght he goe  
 Wherfor my master Beryn in hert was full woo,  
 And seyde, My frend, how now? now ye no fer-  
 ther pas?  
 No, he sayde, by hym that first made mas;  
 And yit I had levir, as God my soule save,  
 Se thes wondir pleyis then all the good I have.  
 I cannat els, quod Beryn, but yf it may nat be  
 But that ye and I mut retourn age  
 Aftir ye be refreshid of your weryness,  
 For to leve yew in this plite it wer no gentilnes.  
 Then seyde this blynd, I am avisid bet;  
 Beryn, ye shall wend thidir without eny let,  
 And have myn eyen with yew that they the pley  
 now se,  
 And I wold have yewrs tyll ye come age.  
 Thus was their covenaut made, as I to yow report,  
 For ese of this blynd, and most for his comfort.  
 But wotith wele the whole science of all sur-  
 gery  
 Was unyd or the change was made of both eye.  
 With many sotill enchantours and eke nygraman-  
 cers,  
 That sent were for the nonys mastris and scoleris.  
 So when all was complete my mastir went his wey  
 With this mann's eyen and saw all the pley,

And hastily retourned into that plase age,  
And fond this blynd seching on hondis and on  
kne,

Grasping all aboute to fynd that he had lore,  
Beryn his both eyen that he had tofore.  
But as sone as Beryn had pleyn knowleche  
That his eyen were ylost, unneth he myght  
areche

O word, for pure angush that he toke sodenly,  
And from that day till now he myght he nevyr  
spy

This man in no plase ther law was ymevid;  
But now in his presence the soth is full yprevid,  
That he shall make amendis or he hens pas  
Right as the lawe wol deme, ethir more or las;  
For my mastir's eyen were betir and more clere  
Then these that he hath now to se both fer and  
nere;

So wold he have his own, that proper were of  
kynd,

For he is evir redy to take to the blynde  
The eyen that he had of hym, as covenant was,  
So he wold do the same. Now, Soverens, in this  
Ye mut take hede for to deme right, {case  
For it wer no reson my mastir shuld lese his sight  
For his trew hert and his gentilnes.

Beryn, quod the blind, tho I wold the relese  
My quarell and my cause, and fall fro my pleynt.  
Thow mut nede, quod Geffrey, for thow art  
ateynt,

So mut thow profir gage, and borowis fynd also,  
For to make amendis, as othir have ydo.

Sir Steward, do us law, sith we desire but right:  
As we been pese marchandis us longith nat to  
fight,

But pleyn us to the law, yf so we be agrevid.  
Anoon opon that Geffrey these wordis had yme-  
vid

The blynd man fond borowis for all his maleta-  
lent,

And were yentrid in the court to byde the juge-  
ment;

For thoughe that he blynde were yit had he good  
plente,

And more wold have wonne through his ini-  
quite.

Now herith, Sirs, quod Geffrey: thre pleyntifs  
been assurid;

And as anenst the ferth this woman hath arerid,  
That pleynith here on Beryn, and seyth she is his  
wyfe,

And that she hath many a dey led a peynous lyfe,  
And much sorow endurid his child to fustene,  
And al is soth and trew. Now rightfallych to  
deme

Whether of them both shall othir obey,  
And folowe will and lustis, Sir Steward, ye mut  
sey.

And therwith Geffrey lokid aside on this woman  
How she chaungit colours, pale and eke wan.

All for nought, quod Geffrey, for ye mut with  
us go,

And endure with your husband both wele and  
woo:

And wold have take her by the hond, but she  
away did breyde,

And with grete sighing these wordis she seyde;  
That ageyns Beryn she wold plede no more,  
But gaged with too borowis, as othir had do to-  
fore.

The steward sat as still as who had shor his hede  
And specially the pleyntifs were in much d  
Geffrey set his wordis in such maner wile  
That wele they wist they myght nat sca  
wife

Without los of goodis for damage and for con-  
For such wer their lawis wher pleyntis ever ylost.  
Geffrey had full perseyte of their encombriment,  
And eke he was in certen that the jugement  
shuld pas with his mastir; wherfor anoon,  
Sovern Sirs, he seyde, yit must we ferthir goon,  
And answere to this Machyn, that seith the knyfe  
is his

That found was on Beryn; therof he seith  
amys:

And for more prefe he seith in this manere  
That here stondith present the same cotelere  
That the knyfe made, and the precious stonys thre  
Within the haft been couchid, that in Crystyanite,  
Thoughe men wold of purpose make ferch and  
seche,

Men shuld nat fynd in al thing a knyfe that were  
it liche;

And more opyn prefe than man's own know-  
leche

Men of law ne clerkis con nat tell ne teche.  
Now sith we be in this manere thus ferforth ago,  
Then were spedfull for to know how Beryn cam  
first to

Have possessioun of the knyfe that Machyn seith  
is his:

To few unknowne I shall enfourm the trowith as  
it is.

Now seven yere and passid, opon a Tuyfday  
In the Passioun-week, when men leven pley,  
And use mote devocioun, fastyng, and preyer,  
Then in othir tyme or seson of the yere,  
This Beryn's fadir erlich wold arise,  
And barefote go to chirch to Godd's servise,  
And lay hymself aloon from his own wyfe,  
In reverence of the tyme, and mending of his  
lyfe:

So on the same Tuyfday that I tofore nempt  
This Beryn rose and rayn hym, and to the chirch  
went,

And marvelid in his hert his fadir was nat there,  
And homward went ageyn with drede and eke  
fere.

Into his fadir's chambir sodenlich he raki,  
And fond hym ligg stan dede oppon the straw as  
nakid,

And the clothis halid from the bed away:  
Out, alas! quod Beryn, that evir I saw this dey!  
They meyne herd the roise, how Beryn cried alas,  
And cam into the chambir at that therin was;  
But the dole, and the sorowe, and angush, that  
was there

It was nat at this tyme to declare it here:



## THE MERCHANT'S SECOND TALE &c.

But Beryn had most of all, have ye no doute :  
 And anon they ferchid the body al aboute,  
 And fond this same knyfe, the poynt right at his  
 hert  
 Of Beryn's fadir, whose teres gan outstert  
 When he drowth out the knyfe of his fadir's  
 wound;  
 Standede I saw hym fall down to the ground  
 That of the most part that beth with hym  
 And now here,  
 And they affermyd it for soth, as Geffrey did them  
 here :  
 And yit had I never suspicioun from that day tyll  
 noweth  
 Who ded that cursed dede, tyll Machyn with his  
 moweth  
 Afore yew hat knowlechid that the knyfe is  
 his;  
 So mut he nedis answer for his deth ywis.  
 When Machyn had yherd all Geffrey's tale  
 He rose of bench sodenly with colour wan and  
 pale,  
 And seyde unto Beryn, Sir, ageyn the  
 I wold plete no more, for it wer gret pete  
 To combir yew with actions that beth of nobill  
 kynde.  
 Graunt mercy! Sir, quod Geffrey; but yit ye  
 shall fynde  
 Borowis or ye pas, amendis for to make  
 For our unclawe vexacioun, and gage also us  
 take  
 In sign of submyssioun for your injury,  
 As law wold and reson, for we wold uttirly  
 Proceede tyll we have judgement finall;  
 And therfor, Sir Steward, what that evir fall  
 Delay us no longer but gyve us judgement,  
 For tristith yee noon othir but we be fullich bent  
 To I hope for to wend, and in his high presence  
 Reherce al our ples, and have his sentence;  
 Then shall we make fynys, and highlich be agre-  
 vid.  
 And as sone as the steward herd thes wordis me-  
 vid,  
 Reson, ryght, and law, seyde the steward tho,  
 Ye mut nedis have wher I wold or no;  
 And to preve my full wyll, or we ferther goon,  
 Quicklich he commaundit, and sparid never oon,  
 24 burgeyfis in law best ylerid,  
 Reherfing them the ples, and how Geffrey an-  
 swerid,  
 And on lyf and lym, and forfetur of good,  
 And as they wold nat lese the ball within their  
 hood,  
 To draw a-part togidir, and by their all assent  
 Spare no man on lyve to gyve trew judgement.  
 And when thes 24 burgeyfis had yherd  
 The charge of the steward, right fore they wer  
 aserd  
 To lese ther own lyvis but they demed trowith;  
 And eke of their neybours they had grete rowith,  
 For they perscyvid clerlich in the plee through-  
 out  
 Their frendis had the wors side, therof they had  
 no dout,

And yf we deme trewly they wold be fore anoyid,  
 Yit it is betir then we be shamyd and distroyid.  
 And anon they were accordit, and seyde with  
 Beryn,  
 And demed every pleyntif to make a grete fyne  
 With Beryn, and hym submyt hoolich to his grace  
 Body, good, and catell, for wrong and their tref-  
 pase;  
 So ferforth, tyll at last it was so bout ybore  
 That Beryn had the doubill good that he had to-  
 fore,  
 And wyth joy and myrth, wyth all his company,  
 He droughe hym to his shippis ward wyth song  
 and melody.  
 The steward and the burgeyse from the court bent  
 Into their own placis, and evir as they went  
 They talkid of the Romeyns, how sotill the wer  
 To aray hym like a sole that for them shuld an-  
 swer.  
 What vylith it, quod Hanybald, to angir or to  
 curs?  
 And yit I am in certen I shall fare the wers  
 All the dayis of my lyfe for this day is pleding,  
 And so shal al the remnaunt; and their bondis  
 wryng,  
 Both Syrophanes, and the blynd, the woman, and  
 Machyn,  
 And be bet avifid er the estfon s pleyne,  
 And al othir personys wythyn this cete  
 Meil the les wyth Romeyns whils they here be;  
 For such anothir sole was never yit yborn,  
 For he did naught ellis but evir with us scorn  
 Tyll he had us caught even by the shyn  
 With his sotill wittis in our own grene.  
 Now wold I retourn to Beryn ageyn,  
 That of his grete lukir in hert was right feyne.  
 And so was all his meyne, as them ought wele,  
 That they wer so delyverid from turment like to  
 hell,  
 And graciouly relevid out of ther grete myschef,  
 And yset above in comfort and bouchef.  
 Now in soth, quod Beryn, it may nat be denied  
 N'ad Geffrey and his witt be we had be distroyid:  
 I thanked be Almyghty God omnipotent  
 That for our consolacioun Geffrey to us sent!  
 And in protest opynly, here among yew alle,  
 Half me good, whils that I lyve, whatever me  
 befall,  
 I graunt it here to Geffrey, to gyve or to sell,  
 And never to part from me, yf it wer his wyll,  
 And fare as well as I a morrow and eke on eve,  
 And never for a man on lyve his company for to  
 leve.  
 Graunt mercy! Sir, quod Geffrey, yewr profir is  
 feir and grete,  
 But I desire no more but as ye me behete,  
 To bryng me at Room, for this is covenante.  
 It shall be do, quod Beryn, and all the rem-  
 naunt.  
 Deperdeux! quod Geffrey, therof we shull wele  
 do.  
 He rayid hym othirwise; and without wordis me  
 They went to the dyner the hole company,  
 With pipis and wyth trompis, and othir melody;

And in the myddis of their mete gentil women  
fyve,

Maidens fresh atirid as myght be on lyve,  
Com from the Duke Ifope, lord of that rigioune,  
Everich wyth a present, and that of grete re-  
nown :

The first bare a cup of gold, and of asure fyne,  
So corouse and so nobill that I can nat devyne;  
The second brought a swerd yfethid, wyth  
seyntur

Ifretid all with perelis orient and pure;  
The third had a mantell of lusty fresh colour,  
The uttir part of purpill, yfurrid with pelour;  
The ferth a cloth of gold, a worthy and a riche,  
That nevir man tofore saw cloth it liche;  
The fift bare a palme that stode tofore the deyse  
In tokyn and sign of trowith and pefe,  
For that was the custom through all the con-  
tray;

The message was the levir and more plesant to  
pay.

The cup was uncoverid, the swerd was out  
ybrayid,

The mantell was unfold, the cloth along ylayid;  
They knelid adown echone right tofore Beryn;  
The first did the message, that taught was wel  
and fyne :

Ifope, she seyde, Sir Beryn, that is our lord riall,  
And gretith yew, and sendith yew these presentis  
all,

And joy hath of yewr wisdom and of yewr go-  
vernaunce,

And preyd you to com and have with hym ple-  
saunce

To morowe, and se his palayse, and to sport you  
there,

Yee and all your company. Beryn made noon an-  
swere,

But sat styll, and beheld the women and the son-  
dis;

And astirward avisely the swerd first he hondis  
And commaundit therewith all the wymmen wasch  
and sit,

And pryvelich chargit officers that with al their  
wit

To serve them of the best, and make them hertly  
chere

Reflevying al the presentis in worshipful manere.  
I cannot wele expresse the joy that they had,  
But I suppose tofore that day that they were nat  
so glad

That they wer so ascapid fortune and mysehese,  
And thankid God above that al thing doith relesse;

For *Astir myssly cloudis ther comith a cler sonne,*  
*So astir bale comyth botc,* who so hyde conne.

The joy and nobley that they had whils they wer  
at mete,

It wylth nat at this tyme ther'of long to trete :  
But Geffrey sat with Beryn, as he had servid wele;

Their hedis they leyde togidir, and begon to tell  
In what maner the wymen shuld be answered.

Geffrey seyde avysid Beryn ther'of he leryd,  
And of othir thinges how he hym shuld govern;

Beryn sawerid wele thereon, and fast he gan to lern.

When al wer up the wymmen cam to take their  
leve;

Beryn, as fat hym wele of blode, them toward gan  
releve,

And prey'd them hertly hym to recommend  
Unto the worthy lordship of Ifope, that you send

To me that am unworthy, save of his grete noble-  
And thank hym of his gystis as ye can be-  
sey,

To morow I woll be redy his hest to fulfille  
With this I have save condit I may com hym  
For me and al my feleship saff to com and go,

Trusting in his discrecioune that thoughe I ax so  
He wol nat be displeid; for in my contray

It hath evir be the custom, and is into this da-  
That yf a lord riall desirith for to see

Eny maner persone that is of las degre,  
Er he approche his presence he wol have in his  
honde

A saff condit enselid, or els som othir bonde,  
That he may com and pas without disturbance;

Throughout all our marchis it is the observaunce.  
Thes wymmen toke their leve without wordis mo,

Repeyring onto Ifope, and al as it was do-  
They reherfid redely, and saylid nevir a word,

To Ifope with his baronage ther he sat at his borde-  
Talking fast of Romayns, and of their high pru-  
dence,

That in so many daungers made so wise defence.  
But as sone as Ifope had pleynlich yherd

Of Beryn's governaunce, that first sesid the swerd  
Afore al othir presentis, he demed in hys minde

That Beryn was ycom of som nobill kynde.  
The nyght was past; the morowe cam; Ifope had  
nat forgete;

He chargit barons twelf with Beryn for to mete  
To cond hym saff and his meyne; and al persour-  
myd was.

Thre dayis ther they sportid hym in myrth and  
solas,

That throughe the wise instructioun of Geffrey  
nyght and dey

Beryn plesid Ifope with wordis al to pay,  
And had hym so in port and in governaunce

Of all honest myrthis and witty daliaunce,  
That Ifope cast his chere to Beryn so groundly,

That at last ther was no man with Ifope so pryvy,  
Resorting to his shippis, comyng to and fro,

Thoroughe the wit of Geffrey, that eche day it  
fil so

That Ifope coude no wher chere when Beryn was  
absent;

So Beryn must nedis eche day be astir sent :  
And chese he was of counsell within the first  
yere,

Thoroughe the wit of Geffrey, that eche dey did  
hym lere.

This Ifope had a doughtir betwene hym and his  
wyfe

That was as feir a creature as myght bere lyfe,  
Wyse, and eke bountevouse, and beryng with  
all,

That heir shuld be astir his dey of his lordshippis  
alle :

2

THE MERCHANT'S SECOND TALE, &c.

273

So, shortly to conclude, the mariage was made  
Betwene hir and Beryn, many a man to glade,  
Saff the burgeyfis of the town, of falshede that  
were rote :

But they wer evir hold so low ondir fote  
That they might nat regre, but at last fawe  
A leve their condicioun and their fals lawe.  
Thyn and Geffrey made them so tame  
At they amendit eche dey, and gat a betir  
T name.

Thus Geffrey made Beryn his enemyes to ovir-  
com,

And brought hym to worship thorough his  
wyldom.

Now God us graunt grace to fynde such a  
frende

When we have nede ! and thus I make an  
ende.

§



---

## M I S C E L L A N I E S.

---

### THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE\*.

MANY menne saine that in sweveninges  
Ther n'is but fables and lesinges,  
But yet menne maie some swedin sene  
Whiche hardily that false ne bene,  
But astirwarde ben apparent,  
This maie I drawin to warraunt.

An author that hight Macrobes,  
That halte not dremis false ne lese,  
But undoth us the avisioun  
That whilom mette King Cipion.

And who saith and weneth it be  
A jape or els a nicete  
To wene that dremis astir fal,  
Let who so list a sole me cal;  
For this trowe I, and sa for me,  
That dremis signifaunce be  
Of gude and harme to man wightes  
That dremis in ther slepe a nightes  
Full many thingis covirely  
That fallin astir opiny.

\* This book was begun in French verse by William de Lorris, and finished forty years after by John Clopinell, alias John Moone, born at Mewen upon the river of Loyer, not far from Paris, as appeareth by Molinet the French author, upon the morality of The Romaunt, and afterward translated, for the most part into English metre by Geoffrey Chaucer, but not finished. It is intituled The Romaunt of the Rose, or The Art of Love; wherein are shewed the helps and furtherances, as also the lets and impediments that lovers have in their suits. In this book the author hath many glances at the hypocrisy of the clergy, whereby he got himself such hatred amongst them that Gerson Chancellor of Paris writeth thus of him; say'th he, There was one called Johannes Meldinensis who wrote a book called The Romaunt of the Rose, which book if I only had, and that there were no more in the world, if I might have 500 pound for the same, I wold rather burn it than take the money. He saith more, that if he thought the author thereof did not repent him for that book before he dyed, he wold vouchsafe to pray for him no more than he would for Judas that betrayed Christ. Urry.

Within my twenty yere of age,  
Whan that Love takith his corage  
Of yongè folke, I wentè sone  
To bed, as I was wont to done,  
And faste I slepte, and in sleping  
Me mettè fuche a swevining  
That likid me wondrous wele,  
But in that swevin' is ner a dele  
That it n'is astirwarde befall,  
Right as this dreame wol tell us al.

Now this dreame wol I rime a right  
To make your hertis gay and light;  
For Love it prayith, and also  
Commaundith me, that it be so.

And if there any askin me  
Whether that it be he or she,  
And how this bokè whiche is here  
Shal hate, which that I rede you here,  
It is The Romaunt of the Rose,  
In which all The' Arte of Love I close.

The matir faire is of to make,  
God graunt in gre that she it take  
For whom that it begonnin is!  
And that is she that hath iwis  
So mokil prife, and therto she  
So worthy is beloved to be  
That she wel ought of prife and right  
Be clepid Rose of every wight.  
That it was Mey me thoughtin tho,  
It is five yere or more ago,  
That it was Mey thus dremid me,  
In time of love and jolite;  
That al thing ginnith waxin gay,  
For there is neithir buske nor hay  
In Mey that it n'ill shroudid bene,  
And it with newè levis wrene;

## THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE.

These wordis eke recoveren grene  
 That drie in winter ben to sene,  
 And the erth wexith proud withall  
 For fote dewis that on it fall,  
 And the povir estate forgette  
 In whiche that winter had it sette;  
 And than becometh the grounde so proude  
 That it wol have a newe shroude,  
 And make so queint his robe and sayre,  
 That it had hewes as hundrid payre  
 Of graspe and flouris Inde and Pers,  
 And many hewis full divers,  
 That is the robe I mene iwis  
 Through whiche the ground to praisin is.  
 The birdis that han lest ther songe  
 While thei han suffrid colde ful stronge  
 In wethers grille and derke to sight,  
 Ben in Mey for the sunne bright  
 So glad, that they shewe in singing  
 That in ther herit is suche liking  
 That thei mote singin and ben light;  
 Than dothe the nightingale her might  
 To makin noise and singen blithe,  
 Than is blisful many a sithe,  
 The chelandre' and the poppingay,  
 Than yongè folke entendin aye  
 For to ben gaie and amorous,  
 The time is than so favorable.  
 Harde is his herte that lovith nought  
 In Mey, whan al this mirth is wrought;  
 Whan he may on these braunchis here  
 The smale birdis singin clere  
 Ther blisful swete song pitous:  
 And in this seson delitous,  
 Whan love affirmith alle thing,  
 Me thought one night, in my sleping,  
 Right in my bed ful redily  
 That it was by the morowe erly,  
 And up I rose and gan me clothe;  
 Anon I wishe mine hondis bothe,  
 A silvir nedil forth I drowe  
 Out of aguiler queint inowe,  
 And gan this nidill threde anone,  
 For out of tounge me list to gone  
 The sounce of briddis for to here  
 That on the buskis singin clere,  
 In the swete seson that lese is,  
 With a thred basting my slevis,  
 Alone I went in my playing,  
 The smale foulis songe herkening,  
 That painid' hem ful meny' a paire  
 To sing on bowis blossomed faire;  
 Jolife and gaie, full of gladnesse,  
 Towarde a river gan me dresse,  
 Which that I herde renne faste by,  
 For fairir playin non saugh I  
 Than playin me by that rivere,  
 For from an hill that stode there nere  
 Come doune the streame full stille and bold,  
 Clere was the watir, and as cold  
 As any well is, sothe to saine,  
 And somdele lassie it was than Saine,  
 But it was straitir, wele away,  
 And never saugh I er that daie

The watir that so wele liked me,  
 And wondir glad was I to se  
 That lusty place and that rivere;  
 With that watir that ran so clere  
 My face I wishe, tho sawe I wele  
 The botome ipavid everidele  
 With gravell, ful of stonis shene,  
 The medowis fette, fote, and grene,  
 Beet right upon the watir side;  
 Ful clere was than the morowe tide,  
 And ful attempre out of drede;  
 Tho gan I walkin throwe the mede,  
 Downwarde evir in my playing  
 Nigh to the river's side coasting.  
 And whan I had a while igone  
 I sawe a gardin right anone  
 Full long and brode, and everidele  
 Enclosid was and wallid wele  
 With hie walis enbataillid,  
 Portrayed without, and well entaylid  
 With many full riche portreitures,  
 And both the' imagis and peintures  
 Gan I beholdin besily;  
 And I wol tel you redily  
 Of thilke imagis the semblaunce,  
 As ferre as I have remembraunce.  
 Amiddis sawe I Hate yfonde,  
 That for her wrahte, and ire, and onde,  
 Semid to be a minoresse,  
 An angry wight, a chidireffe,  
 And ful of gile and fell corage  
 By semblaunt was that ilke image,  
 And she was nothing wele arraide,  
 But like a wode woman affraide;  
 Yfrouncid foule was her visage,  
 And grinning for dispitous rage;  
 Her nose ysnortid up for tene,  
 Ful hidous was she for to sene;  
 Ful foule and rusty was she this;  
 Her had iwritthin was iwis  
 Ful grimly with a grete towaile.  
 An image of anothe' entaile  
 A liste halfe was her fast yby;  
 Her name above her hed sawe I,  
 And she was callid Felony.  
 Anothe' image, that Villany  
 Yclepid was, sawe I and fonde  
 Upon the wall on her right honde:  
 This Villany was like somdele  
 That othe' image, and trustith wele  
 She semid a wickid cature;  
 By countenaunce in portreiture  
 She semid be ful dispitous,  
 And eke ful proude and outrageous.  
 Wel coude he paint, I undertake,  
 That such an image coude imake;  
 Ful foule and chorlich semid she,  
 And eke villainous for to be,  
 And hitil could of norture  
 To worshippie any creature.  
 And nexte was paintid Covetise,  
 That eggith folke in many' a gife  
 To take and yeve right nought again,  
 And grete trefouris up to laine.

And that is she that for usure  
 Lenith to many a cature  
 The lasse for the more winning,  
 So covitous is her brenning!  
 And that is she for permissiſe  
 That techith for to robbe and stele  
 These thevis and these smale harlotes,  
 And that is routh, for by ther throtes  
 Ful many one hongith at last;  
 She makith folke compasse and cast  
 To takin othir folkis thing  
 Through robbery or miscoveting;  
 And that is she that makith trechours,  
 And she that makith false pledours,  
 That with ther termis and ther domes  
 Do maidins, childrin, and eke gromes,  
 Ther heritage, alas! forge;  
 Ful crokid were her bondis two,  
 For Covetise is evir wode  
 To gripin othir folkis gode; +

For Covetise for her winning  
 Ful lese hath othir mennis thing.

Another image set saugh I  
 Next unto Covetise fast by,  
 And she was clepid Avarice:  
 Ful soule in painring was that vice,  
 Ful sad and caustise was she eke,  
 And also grene as any leke;  
 So evil hewed was her coloure  
 Her semed to have livid in langoure;  
 She was like thing for hungir ded,  
 That lad her life onely by bred  
 Knedin with eisel strong and egre,  
 And therto she was lene and megre;  
 And she was clad ful povirly  
 Al in an oldè torne courtpeye  
 As she were all with doggis torne,  
 And bothe behinde and eke beforne  
 Ycloutid was she beggirly.

A mantil honge her fast by  
 Upon a benche both weke and smale;  
 A burnette cote honge there withal,  
 Yfurrid with no menivere,  
 But with a furre rough of here  
 Of lambe skynnys hevy and blake;  
 It was full olde I undirtake,  
 For Avarice to clothe her wele  
 Ne hastith her nevir adele,  
 For certainly it were her lothe  
 To werin of that ilkè clothe,  
 And if it were forwerid she  
 Would havin full gret nicete  
 Of clothing er she bought her newe,  
 Al were it bad of wol and hewe.

This Avarice helde in her hande  
 A purse which that honge by a bande,  
 And that she hid and bonde so stronge  
 Men must abidin wondir longe  
 Out of the purse er there come ought,  
 For that ne comith in her thought;  
 It was not certaine her entent  
 That fro that purse a peny went.

And by that image nigh inough  
 Was painted Envy, that nere lough,

Nor nevir wel in her hert ferde  
 But if she either sawe or herde  
 Some grete mischaunce or grete disese;  
 Nothing ne may so much her plesse  
 As mischese and misaventure;  
 Or whan she seeth discomfiture  
 Upon any worthy man fall,  
 Than likith her right well withall:  
 She is ful glad in her corage  
 Yf she se any grete linage  
 Be brought to naught in shamful wise;  
 And if a man in honour rise  
 Or by his wit or his prowesse,  
 Of that she hath gret hevinesse,  
 For trustith wele she goeth nie wode  
 Whan any chaunce yhapith gode.  
 Envy is of fuche cruelte  
 That faith ne trouth ne holdith she  
 To frende ne felawe badde or gode;  
 Ne she hath kinne none of her blode  
 That she n'is ful ther enemy;  
 She n'olde, I dare saie hardily,  
 That her own fathir farid wele:  
 And fore abieth she every dele  
 Her malice and her male talent,  
 For she is in so grete turment  
 And hate fuche whan that folke doth gode  
 That nigh she meltith for pure wode:  
 Her hert so kervith and so breketh  
 That God the peple wel a wrekeeth.

Envy I wis shall nevir let  
 Some blame upon the folke to set:  
 I trowe that if Envy i-wis  
 Yknew the beste man that is  
 On this side or beyond the se,  
 Yet somewhat lackin him wold she;  
 And if he were so hende and wise  
 That she ne might abate his prife,  
 Yet wold she blame his worthinesse,  
 Or by her wordis make it lesse.  
 I sawe Envy in that painting  
 Yhad a wondirful lokin,  
 For she ne lokid but awrie  
 Or ovirthwarte, all baggingly;  
 And she had a full soule usage,  
 She mightin loke in no visage  
 Of man ne woman forth right plaine,  
 But shette her one eye for disdaine;  
 So for envie ybrennid she  
 Whan she might any man yse  
 That faire or worthy were or wise,  
 Or ellis stode in folkis prife.

Sorowe was paintid next Envie  
 Upon that wal of masonrie;  
 But wel was sene in her colour  
 That she had livid in langour;  
 Her semid to have the jaundice;  
 Not halfe so pale was Avarice,  
 Ne nothing alike of lenesse,  
 For sorowe, thought, and grete distresse,  
 That she had suffrid day and night,  
 Made her yelow, and nothing bright:  
 Ful sade, pale, and megre, also,  
 Was nevir wighte yet halfe so wo



## THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE.

As that her semid for to be,  
 Nor so fulfilled with yre as she;  
 I trow that no wight might her plesse,  
 Nor do that thing that might her esse;  
 Nor she ne would her sorowe flake,  
 Nor comfort none unto her take,  
 So depe ywas her wo begonne,  
 And eke her hert in angre ronne.  
 A sorowful thing wel semid she;  
 Nor she had nothing slowe ybe  
 For to bescratchin all her face,  
 And for to rent in many place  
 Her clothes, and for to tere her swire,  
 As she that was fulfilled of ire;  
 And all to torne laie eke her here  
 About her sholders here and there,  
 As she that had it all to rent  
 For angre and for male talent.  
 And eke I tell you certainly  
 How that she wept full tendirly:  
 In worlde n'is wight so hard of herte,  
 That had yfene her sorowes smerte,  
 That n'olde have had of her pite,  
 So wo begon a thing was she.  
 She all to dasht her self for wo,  
 And smote togidir her hondes two;  
 To Sorowe was she full ententise,  
 That wofull rechileffe caitise,  
 Her roughte little of playing,  
 Or of clipping or of kissing,  
 For who so sorowfull is in herte  
 Him lustith not to plaie ne sterre,  
 Nor for to dauncin ne to sing,  
 Ne maie his herte in temper bring  
 To make joie on even or morowe,  
 For joie is contrary to sorowe.  
 Elde was ypaintid after this,  
 That shortir was a fote i-wis  
 Than she was wont in her yonghede;  
 Unneth her self she might yfede:  
 So feble and so olde was she  
 That fadid was all her beaute;  
 Full salowe was waxen her colour;  
 Her hedde for hore was white as flour:  
 I wis grete qualme ne were it none,  
 Ne sinne, although her life were gone.  
 All woxin was her body' unwelde,  
 And drie and dwined all for elde:  
 A foule forwelkid thing was she,  
 That whilom round and soft had be:  
 Her heris shokin fast withall,  
 As from her hedde they wouldin fall;  
 Her face yfrouncid and forpined,  
 And bothe her hondis lorne fordwined:  
 So old she was that she ne went  
 A fote but it were by potent.  
 The time that passith night and daie,  
 And restileffe travailith aie,  
 And stelith from us privily,  
 That to us semith sikirly  
 That it in oon point dwellith ever,  
 And certis it ne restith never,  
 But goeth so fast and passith aie  
 That ther n'is man that thinkin maie

What time that now present is,  
 Askith at these grete clerkis this;  
 For men thinkin it redily  
 Thre timis ben ypassid by  
 The time that maie not sojourne,  
 But goth and maie never retourne,  
 As watir that doune runnith aie,  
 But newir droppe returne maie.  
 There maie nothing as time endure,  
 Ne metall nor yerthly cature,  
 For alle thing is fette and shall,  
 The time eke that ychaungith all,  
 And all doeth waxe and foffrid be,  
 And alle thing distroyith he;  
 The time that eldith our auncestours  
 And eldith kinges and emperours,  
 And that us all shall ovircomen,  
 Er that deth us shall have nommen,  
 The time that hath all in welde  
 To elden folke had made her elde  
 So inly, that to my weting  
 She mightin helpe her self nothing,  
 But tourned eyen unto childhede:  
 She had nothing her self to lade,  
 Ne witte ne pithe within her hold,  
 More than a child of two yere old.  
 But nathelle I trowe that she  
 Was faire somtime and freshe to se  
 Whan she was in her rightfull age,  
 But she was past all that passage,  
 And was a doted thing becomen:  
 A furrid cappe on had she nommen;  
 Well had she cladde her self and warme,  
 For cold might els doin her harme:  
 These old folke havin alwaie cold,  
 Ther kinde is soche whan thei ben old.  
 An othir thing was down there write  
 That semid like an ipocrite,  
 And it was clepid Papelardie;  
 That ilke is she that privilie  
 Ne sparith ner a wicked dede  
 Whan men of her takin none hede,  
 And makith her outward precious  
 With pale visage and pitous,  
 And semith a simple cature,  
 But there n'is no misaventure  
 That she ne thinketh in her corage:  
 Full like to her was thilke image  
 That makid was like her semblaunce,  
 She was full simple of countenaunce;  
 And she was clothid and eke shod  
 As she were for the love of God,  
 Yholdin to religion,  
 Soche semid her devocion.

A spaltir helde she fast in honde,  
 And busily she gan to fonde  
 To make many a faint priere  
 To God and to his saintis dere:  
 Ne she was gaie, freshe, ne jolife,  
 But semed to be full ententise  
 To gode werkis and to faire,  
 And therto she had on an haire.  
 Ne certis she was fatte nothing,  
 But semid werie for fasting:

Of colour pale and dede was she;  
 From her the gates aie warnid be  
 Of Paradise, that blissfull place,  
 For soche folke makin lene ther grace,  
 As Christ saieth in his Evangile,  
 To get 'hem prife in toun a while,  
 And for a little glory veigne  
 Thei leisin God and eke his reigne.

And aldir last of everichone  
 Was painted Poverte' all alone,  
 That not a penny had in hold,  
 Although that she her clothis sold,  
 And though she shold an hongid be,  
 For nakid as a worme was she,  
 And if the wether stormy were  
 For cold she shold have dyid there.

She ne' had on but a straite old sacke,  
 And many' a cloute on it there stacke;  
 This was her cote and her mantele;  
 No more was there nevir a dele  
 To clothe her with; I undirtake  
 Grete lesur haddē she to quake;  
 And she was put that I of talke  
 Ferre fro these othre, up in an halke;  
 There lurkid and there courid she,  
 For povir thing, where so it be,  
 Is shamefast and dispisid aie:  
 A curtid maie well be that daie  
 That povir man conceived is,  
 For God wote all to selde i-wis  
 Is any pore man well ifed,  
 Or well arayid or iced,  
 Or well beloved, in soche wise  
 In honour that he maie arise.

Allē these thingis well avised,  
 As I have you er this devised,  
 With gold and asure ovir all  
 Depaintid were upon the wall:  
 Square was the wall, and high somdele,  
 Enclosid and ibarrid wele  
 In stede of hegge was that gardin,  
 Came nevir no shepherd therein:  
 Into that gardin well ywrought  
 Who so that me coud have ybrought  
 By ladders, or els by degre,  
 It woude well have likid me;  
 For soche solace, soche joie and pleie,  
 I trowe that nevir man ne seie  
 As was in that place delicious:  
 The gardin was not daungerous  
 To herborowe birdes many one;  
 So riche a yere was nevir none  
 Of birdis song and braunchis grene,  
 Therin were birdis mo I wene  
 Than ben in all the relme of Fraunce;  
 Full blissfull was the accordaunce  
 Of the swete petous song thei made,  
 For all this worlde it ought to glade.

And I my self so mery ferde,  
 Whan I ther blissfull songis herde,  
 That for an hundrid ponde would I  
 If that the passage opiny  
 Haddin ybe unto me fre,  
 That I n'olde entrin for to se

Th' assemble (God kepe it fro care!)  
 Of birdis whiche that therein ware,  
 That songin through ther mery throtes  
 Dancis of love and mery notes.

Whan I thus herd the foulis sing,  
 I fell fast in a waimenting  
 By whiche art or by what engin  
 I might com into that gardin;  
 But waie I couthe ne findin none  
 Into that gardin for to gone,  
 Ne nought wist I if that there were  
 Eithir a hole or a place where  
 By whiche I mightin have entre;  
 Ne there was none to techin me,  
 For I was all alone i-wis,  
 For wo and for anguishe of this,  
 Till at the laste bethought I me  
 That by no waie ne might it be,  
 There n'as ladder ne waie to pace,  
 Or hole, into so faire a place;  
 Tho gan I go a full grete pace  
 Environ, evin in compas,  
 The closing of the square wall,  
 Till that I founde a wicket small  
 So shette that I ne might in gone,  
 And othir entre was there none.

Upon this dore I gan to smite  
 That was so fetis and so lite,  
 For othir waie coud I not seke.  
 Full long I shofe and knockid eke,  
 And stode full long all herkinig  
 If I herd any wight coming,  
 Till that the dore of thilke entre  
 A maidin curteis opened me:  
 Her here was as yelowe of hewe  
 As any basin scourid newe;  
 Her fleshe tendir as is a chike,  
 With hent browis both smothe and like;  
 And thereto by mesure large were  
 The opening of her eyen clere;  
 Her nose of gode proporcion;  
 Her eyen graie as is a faucon;  
 With swetē breth and wel favoured;  
 Her face white and well coloured;  
 With little mouthe and round to se;  
 A clovin chinne eke had she;  
 Her necke was of gode fashion,  
 In length and gretnesse by reson,  
 Withoutin bleine, or scabbe, or roine;  
 Fro Hierusalem to Burgoine  
 There n'is a fairer necke i-wis  
 To sele how smothe and soft it is;  
 Her throte also so white of hewe  
 As snowe on braunche ysnowid newe;  
 Of body full well wrought was she,  
 Men nedin not in no countre  
 A fairer bodie for to seke;  
 And of fine orfrais had she eke  
 A chapilet, so semely on  
 Ne nevir werid maide upon;  
 And faire above that chapilet  
 A rose garlande had she yfet;  
 She had also a gaie mirroure;  
 And with a riche golde tresour

Her helde was tressid full queintly;  
 Her flevis sowed fetously;  
 And for to kepe her hondis faire  
 Of glovis white she had a paire;  
 And she had on a cote of grene  
 Of cloth of Gaunt withoutin wene:  
 Well semid by her aparaille  
 She was not wont to grete travaile,  
 For whan she kempt was feteously,  
 And well araied and richly,  
 Than had she doen all her journe,  
 For mery' and well begon was she.

She had a lustie life in Maie;  
 She had no thought by night ne daie  
 Of nothing but it were onely  
 To graieth her well and uncouthly.  
 Whan that this dore had opened me  
 This maidin semely for to se,  
 I thonkid her as I best might,  
 And askid her how that she hight,  
 And what she was I asked eke?

And she to me was nought unmeke,  
 Ne of her answer daungerous,  
 But faire answerde, and sayid thus:

Lo, Sir, my name is Idilnesse,  
 So clepen men me more and lesse:  
 Ful mightie and ful riche am I,  
 And that of one thing, namely,  
 For I entending to no thing  
 But to my joie and my playing,  
 And for to kembe and tressid me:  
 Acquainted am I and prive  
 With Mirthe, the lorde of this gardin,  
 That fro the' londe of Alexandrian  
 Made the treis hithir be set  
 That in his gardin ben iset;  
 And whan the trees were woxe on hight  
 This wall, that stant here in thy sight,  
 Bid Mirthe enclofin all about;  
 And these imagis all without  
 He did hem bothe entaile and paint  
 That neither ben jolife ne quaint,  
 But thei ben full of sorowe and we,  
 As thou hast sene a while ago.

And oft timis him to solace  
 Sir Mirthe comith into this place;  
 And eke with him come his meine,  
 That liven' in lust and jolite;  
 And now is Mirthe therein, to here  
 The birdis how they singin clere,  
 The mavis and the nightingale,  
 And othir joly birdis smale;  
 And thus he walkith to solace  
 Him and his folke, for swettir place  
 To playin in he maie not finde  
 Although he sought one in till Inde;  
 The althir fairest folk to se  
 That in this worlde maie founde ybe  
 Hath Sir Mirthe with him in his rout,  
 That folowen him alwaies about.

Whan Idilnesse had tolde all this,  
 And I had herkened well i-wis,

Than saied I to Dame Idilnesse,  
 Now all so wifely God me blesse,  
 Sith Mirthe, that is so faire and fre,  
 Is in this yerd with his meine,  
 Fro thilke assemble if I maie  
 Shall no man wernè me to daie,  
 That I this night ne mote it se,  
 For well wene I there with him be  
 A faire and jolie companie  
 Fulfillid of all currisie.  
 And forth withoutin wordis mo  
 In at the wicket went I tho  
 That Idilnesse had opened me  
 Into that gardin faire to se:  
 And whan that I was in i-wis  
 Mine herte was full glad of this,  
 For well wende I full sikirly  
 Have ben in Paradise yerthly,  
 So faire it was, that trustith well  
 It semed a place espirituell;  
 For certis as at my devise  
 There is no place in Paradise  
 So gode in for to dwell or be  
 As in that gardin thoughtin me;  
 For there was many' a birde singing,  
 Thorougout the yerde all thringing,  
 In many placis nightingales,  
 And alpes, and finches, and wodewales,  
 That in ther swete song deliten  
 In thilke places as thei habiten.

There mightin men se many flockes  
 Of turtels and of laverockes,  
 Chalaundris sele ysawe I there,  
 That very nigh forsongin were,  
 And thrustils, terins, and mavise,  
 That songin for to winne hem prise,  
 And eke to surmount in ther song  
 That othir birdis hem emong;  
 By note ymadin faire servise  
 These birdis that I you devise;  
 Thei song their song as faire and wele  
 As angels doen espirituell;  
 And trustith me whan I hem herde  
 Full lustie and full well I ferde,  
 For nevir yet soche melodie  
 Was herd of man that mightin die,  
 Soche swete song as was hem emong,  
 That me thought it no bird's song,  
 But it was wondir like to be  
 Song of meremaicens of the se,  
 That for her singing is so clere;  
 Though we Meremaicens clepe hem here  
 In Englishe, as is our usance,  
 Men clepin hem Screins in Fraunce.

Ententise werin for to sing  
 These birdis, that not unkonning  
 Were of ther craft and a prentise,  
 But of song subtil and eke wise;  
 And certis whan I herd ther song,  
 And sawe the grene place emong,  
 In hert I went so wondir gaie  
 That I was nevir er that daie



So jolife nor so well bigo,  
 Ne mery' in herte as I was tho;  
 And than wist I and sawe full well  
 That Idilnesse me servid well,  
 That me put in soche jolite :  
 Her frende well ought I for to be  
 Sithe she the dore of that gardin  
 Had opinid and let me in.

From hennis-forthe how that I wrought  
 I shall you tellen as me thought.  
 First whereof Mirthe yservid there,  
 And eke what folke there with him were,  
 Without fable I woll discrive,  
 And alle that gardin eke as blive;  
 I woll you tellen aftir this  
 The faire fassion all i-wis  
 That well ywrought was for the nones;  
 I mai not tell you all at ones,  
 But as I mai and can I shall  
 By order tellin you it all.

Full faire service, and eke full swete,  
 These birdis madin as thei sete;  
 Layis of love full well founing  
 Thei songin in ther jargonig;  
 Some hie and some eke lowe ysong  
 Upon the braunchis grene isprong;  
 The swetenesse of ther melodie  
 Made all mine herte in revelrie.

And whan that I had herd I trowe  
 These birdis singin on a rowe,  
 Than might I not withholdin me  
 That I ne went in for to se  
 Sir Mirthe, for all my desiring  
 Was him to sene ovir all thing;  
 His countenance and his manere  
 That fight was unto me full dere.

Tho wente I forthe on my right honde,  
 Doune by a little pathe I fonde  
 Of mintis full and fenell grene;  
 Afastè by withoutin wene  
 Sir Mirthe I founde, and right anon  
 Unto Sir Mirthe gan I to gon,  
 Ther as he was him to solace;  
 And with him in that lustie place  
 So faire folke and so freshe had he  
 That whan I sawe I wondrid me  
 Fro whennis soche folke mightin come,  
 So faire thei werin all and some,  
 For thei weren like, as to my sight,  
 To angels that ben fethered bright.

These folke, of whiche I tell you so,  
 Upon a karole wentin tho :  
 A ladie karoled 'hem that hight  
 Gladnesse, the blisfull and the light :  
 Well could she sing and lustily,  
 None halfe so well and semly,  
 And cothe make in song soche refraining  
 It fete her wondir well to sing :  
 Her voice full clere was and full swete;  
 She was not rude ne yet unmete,  
 But couthe inoughe for soche doing  
 As longith unto karolling,

For she was wonte in every place  
 To singin first folke to solace,  
 For singing mooste she gave her to;  
 No crafte had she so lese to doe.

Tho mightist thou karollis sene,  
 And folke daunce and merie ben,  
 And made many a faire tourning  
 Upon the grene grasse springing :  
 There mightist thou se these flutours,  
 Minstrallis and eke jogelours,  
 That wel to singin did ther paine :  
 Some songin songis of Lorraine,  
 For in Lorraine ther notis be  
 Full swetir than in this contre.  
 There was many a timbestere,  
 And sailours, that I dare wel swere  
 Ycothe ther craft full parfitly;  
 The timbris up full subtilly  
 Thei castin, and bent them full oft  
 Upon a fingir faire and soft,  
 That thei ne fallid nevir mo.  
 Full fetis damofellis two,  
 Right yong, and full of semelyhede,  
 In kirtils and none othir wede :  
 And faire ytreffid every tresse  
 Had Mirthe ydoen for his noblesse  
 Amide the carole for to daunce.  
 But hereof lieth no remembraunce  
 How that thei daunsid queintly,  
 That one would come all privily  
 Ayen that othre', and whan thei were  
 Togithre' almoste thei threwe ifere  
 Ther mouthis so, that through ther plaic  
 It semid as thei kist alwaie :  
 To dauncen well couthe thei the gise;  
 What should I more to you devise?  
 Ne bode I nevir thennis go  
 Whiles that I sawe 'hem dauncin so.  
 Upon the karoll wondir fast  
 I gan beholde, till at the last  
 A ladie gan me for to' espie,  
 And she was clepid Curtesie,  
 The worshipfull, the debonaire;  
 I praie to God er fall her faire!  
 Full curtisly she callid me,  
 What do you there, Beau Sire? (quod she)  
 Comith, and if it likith you  
 To dauncin, daunsith with us now.  
 And I withoutin tarying  
 Ywent into the caroling :  
 I was abashid ner a dele,  
 But it to me likid right welc  
 That Curtesie me clepid so,  
 And bade me on the daunce ygo,  
 For if I haddè durst certain  
 I would have karollid right fain,  
 As man that was to daunce right blithe :  
 Than gan I lokin oftè sithe  
 The shape, the bodies, and the cheres,  
 The countenance, and the maneres,  
 Of all the folke that dauncid there,  
 And I shall tellin what thei were.

Full faire was Mirth, full longe and high,  
 A fairer man I nevir figh :  
 As round as aple was his face,  
 Full roddie' and white in every place;  
 Fetis he was and well befeie,  
 With metely. mouthe, and eyin greie;  
 His nose by mesure wrought full right;  
 Crispe was his here, and eke full bright;  
 His ihulderis of large brede,  
 And imalihe in the girdelstede;  
 He semid like a purtreiture,  
 So noble' he was of his stature,  
 So faire, so jolie', and so fetise,  
 With limmis wrought at point & devise,  
 Deliver, smerte, and of grete might,  
 Ne sawe thou nevir man so light;  
 Of berde unnerh had he nothing,  
 For it was in the firste spring;  
 Full yong he was, and merie' of thought,  
 And in samette with birdis wrought;  
 And with golde bete full fetously  
 His bodie was clad full richely;  
 Wrought was his robe in straunge gise,  
 And all to flittered for queintise  
 In many a place, lowe and hic;  
 And shode he was with grete maistrise  
 With shone decopid, and with lace,  
 By drurie and eke by solace;  
 His lese a rosin chapilet  
 Had made, and on his hedde it set.  
 And wetin ye who was his lese?  
 Dame Gladdesse there was him so lese,  
 That singeth so well with glad corage,  
 That from she was twelve yere of age  
 She of her love graunt to him made;  
 Sir Mirthe her by the fingir hade  
 A dauncing, and she him also;  
 Grete love there was a twix 'hem two;  
 Bothe were thei faire and bright of hewe;  
 She semid like a rose newe  
 Of colours, and her fleshe so tender,  
 That with a brere smale and tender  
 Men might it cleve, I dare well sain;  
 Her forhedde frounciles all plain;  
 Bent werin her eye-browis two;  
 Her eyin graie, and glad also,  
 That laughdin aie in her semblaunt  
 First or the mouthe by covenant;  
 I not what of her nose discrive,  
 So faire hath no woman alive;  
 Her here was yelow', and clere shining;  
 I wot no lady so liking.  
 Of orfraies freshe was her garlande;  
 I, whiche that sene have a thousande,  
 Sawe ner i-wis no garlande yet  
 So well ywrought of filke as it;  
 And in an ovir gilt samite  
 Yeladde she was by grete delite,  
 Of whiche her lese a robe ywerde;  
 The merier she in herte ferde.  
 Next her went, on her othir side,  
 The god of Love, that can devide  
 Love, and as him liketh it be;  
 But he can cherlis dauntin, he;

And many folkis pride fallen,  
 And he can well these lordis thrallen,  
 And ladies put at lowe degre,  
 When he maie 'hem to proude yse.  
 This god of Love of his fascion  
 Was like no knave ne no quistron:  
 His beutie gretely was to prise,  
 But of his robis to devise  
 I drede encombrid for to be,  
 For not icladde in silk was he,  
 But all in flouris and flourettes,  
 Ipainted all with amorettes,  
 And with losingis and scochons,  
 With birdis, liberdes, and lions,  
 And othir bestis wrought full wele;  
 His garment was every dele  
 Ipurtraic- and iwrought with floures,  
 By divers medeling of coloures;  
 Flouris there were of many gise  
 Iset by compace in a lise;  
 There lackid no oflure to my dome,  
 Ne not so much as floure of brome,  
 Ne violet, ne eke pervinke,  
 Ne floure none that men can on thinke;  
 And many a rose lese full long  
 Was entermedlid there emong;  
 And also on his hedde was set  
 Of roses redde a chapilet.  
 But nightingales a full grete rout,  
 That flien ovir his hedde about,  
 The levis feldin as thei flien,  
 And he was all with birdis wrien,  
 With poppingaie, with nightingale,  
 With chalaundre and with wodewale,  
 With finche, with larke, and with archangel;  
 He semid as he were an angell  
 That down were come fro hevin clere.  
 Love had with him a bachilere  
 That he made alwaies with him be,  
 And Swete Loking cleped was he.  
 This bachilere stode beholding  
 The daunce, and in his honde holding  
 Turke bowes two, well devised, had he;  
 That one of 'hem was of a tre  
 That berith fruct of favour wicke;  
 Full crokid was that fould sticke,  
 And knottie here and there also,  
 And blacke as berie' or any flo.  
 That othir bowe was of a plant  
 Withoutin wemme I dare warant  
 Full even' and by proporcion  
 Trechtis and long, and of gode facion,  
 And it was paintid well and thwitten,  
 And ore all diaprid and written  
 With ladies and with bachileres  
 Full lightfome and full glad of cheres.  
 These bowis two held Swete Loking,  
 That ne semid like no gadling,  
 And ten brode arowes held he there,  
 Of whiche five in his hond were,  
 But thei were shavin well and dight,  
 Nockid and fetherid a right.  
 And all thei were with golde begon,  
 And strong ypoinctid everichon,

And sharpe for to ykervin wele,  
But iron was there none ne stele,  
For all was golde, men might it se,  
Out take the fethers and the tre.

The swiftest of these arowes five  
Out of a bowe for to drive,  
And the best fethered for to fle,  
And fairest eke, was cleped Beutie.

That othir arowe, that hurteth lesse,  
Was clepid (as I trowe) Simplesse.

The thirde yclepid was Fraunchise,  
That fethered was in noble wise  
With valour and with curteisie.

The fowerth was clepid Companie,  
That hevie for to shotin is,  
But who so shotith right i-wis  
Maie therwith doen grete harme and wo.

The fift of these, and laste also,  
Faire Semblaunt men that arowe call;  
'Tis the leste grevous of 'hem all,  
Yet can it make a full grete wounde,  
But he maie hope his foris founde  
That hurte is with that arowe' i-wis;  
His wo the bette bestowid is  
For he maie soner have gladnesse;  
His languor ought to be the lesse.

Five arowes were of othir gise  
That ben full foule for to devise,  
For shaft and ende, sothe for to tell,  
Were all so blacke as fende in hell.

The first of 'hem is callid Pride;  
That othre' arowe next him beside  
It was yclepid Vilanie;  
That arrowe was with felonie  
Envenimed, and with spitous blame:  
The third of 'hem was clepid Shame;  
The fowerth Wanhope yclepid is;  
The fift the Newe Thought iwis.

These arowes that I speke of herc  
Werin all five on one manere,  
And all were thei resemblable;  
To them was well fitting and able  
The foule crokid bowe hidous  
That knottie was and all roinous:  
That bowe ysemid well to shete  
The arowes five that ben unmete  
And contrary to that othir five;  
But though I tellin not as blive  
Of ther powir ne of ther might,  
Hereaftir shall I tellin right  
The sothe and eke signifaunce,  
As ferre as I have remembraunce  
All shall be saied I undirtake  
Er'of this boke an ende I make.

Now come I to my tale againe;  
But aldirfirst I woll you saine  
The fashon and the countenaunces  
Of alle the folke that on the daunce is.  
The god of Love, jolife and light,  
Ladde on his honde a ladie bright,

Of high prife and of grete degre,  
This ladie callid was Beutie;  
And an arowe of whiche I tolde  
Full well ythewid was she holde;  
Ne she was derke ne broune, but bright  
And clere as is the monè light,  
Again whom all the sterris semen  
But small candelis as we deemen;  
Her fleshe was tendre' as dewe of floure;  
Her chere was simple' as birde in bourc,  
As white as lillie' or rose in rise;  
Her face was gentill and tretise;  
Fetis she was, and smale to se;  
No wintrid browis haddè she,  
Ne popped here, for it nedid nought  
To windir her or to paint ought;  
Her tressles yelowè, and long straughten,  
Unto her heles doune thei raughten;  
Her nose, her mouthe, and eye, and cheke,  
Well wrought, and all the remnaunte eke;  
A full grete savour and a fote  
Me thoughtin in mine hertè rote,  
As helpe me God, whan I remember  
Of the fashon of every member:  
In worlde is none so faire a wight,  
For yong she was, and hewid bright  
Sore plefaunt, and fetis with all,  
And gent and in her middle small.

Beside Beute yede Richeffe,  
And hight ladie of grete nobleffe,  
And grete of price in every place;  
But who so durst to her trespace,  
Or till her folke, in werke or dede,  
He were ful hardie out of drede,  
For bothe she helpe and hindir maie;  
And that is not of yesterdaie  
That riche folke havin full grete might  
To helpe and eke to greve a wight.

The best and gretist of valour  
Diddin Richeffe full grete honour,  
And busie werin her to serve,  
For that thei would her love deserve;  
Thei cleped her Ladie grete and small;  
This wide worlde her dredith all,  
This worlde is all in her daungere;  
Her courte hath many' a losingere,  
And many' a traitour envious,  
That ben full busie' and curious  
For to dispreisin and to blame  
That best deservin love and name;  
To forne the folke 'hem to begilen  
These losengeours 'hem prife and smilen.

And thus the worlde with worde anointen,  
Bot aftirward thei prill and poincten  
The folke right to the bare bone  
Behinde ther backe whan thei ben gone,  
And foule abatin folkis prife:  
Full many' a worthie man and wise  
Han hindrid and idoen to die  
These losingeours with ther flatt'erie,  
And makith folke full straungè be  
There as 'hem ought to ben prive:  
Well evill mot thei thrive,  
And evill arived mote thei be,



These lōngcours full of envie;  
No gode man loveth ther companie.

Richeſſe a robe of purple' on had,  
Ne trowe not that I lie or mad,  
For in this world is none it liche,  
Ne by a thouſande dele ſo riche,  
Ne none ſo faire, for it full wele  
With orfreis laied was every dele,  
And purtraied in the ribaninges  
Of dukis ſtories and of kinges,  
And with a bend of golde taſſiled,  
And knoppis fine of golde amiled:  
About her necke of gentle' entaile  
Was ſhet the richè cheveſaile,  
In whiche there was full grete plente  
Of ſtonis clere and faire to ſe.

Richeſſe a girdle had upon,  
The bokill of it was of ſton  
Of vertue grete and mokil might,  
For who ſo bare the ſtone ſo bright  
Of venim durſt him nothing doubt  
While he the ſtone had him about;  
That ſtone was gretely for to love,  
And till a riche mann'is behove  
Worth all the golde in Rome and Friſe;  
The mourdaunt, wrought in noble giſe,  
Was of a ſtone full precious,  
That was ſo fine and vertuous  
That whole a man it couth ymake  
Of paſſie and of the tothe ake,  
And yet the ſtone had ſoche a grace  
That he was ſikre' in every place  
All thilkè daie not blinde to ben  
That faſting might that ſtonè ſene;  
The barris were of gold full fine,  
Upon a tiſſue of ſatin;  
Full hevie, grete, and nothing light,  
In everiche was a beſaunt wight.

Upon the treſſis of Richeſſe  
Was ſet a circle of nobleſſe  
Of hrende golde, that ful light yſhone,  
So faire trowe I was never none:  
But he were konning for the nones  
That could deviſin all the ſtones  
That in that circle ſhewin clere;  
It is a wondir thing to here,  
For no man could or preiſe or geſſe  
Of 'hem the value or richeſſe:  
Rubies there were, ſaphirs, ragounes,  
And emeraudes, more than two unces,  
But all before full ſubtilly  
A fine carboncle ſet ſawe I,  
The ſtone ſo clere was and ſo bright,  
That all ſo ſone as it was nigh  
Men mightin ſene to go for nede  
A mile or tyo in length and brede;  
Soche light yſprang out of the ſtone  
That Richeſſe wondir bright yſhone  
Bothe on her hedde and all her face,  
And eke about her all the place.

Dame Richeſſe on her honde gan lede  
A yong man ful of ſemelihede  
That ſhe beſt loved of any thing;  
His luſt was moche in houſholding;

In clothing was he full ſetiſe,  
And loved well to have hors of priſe;  
He wende to have reprovied be  
Of theft or murder if that he  
Had in his ſtable an hackenaie,  
And therefore he deſirid aie  
To ben aqueintid with Richeſſe,  
For all his purpoſe, as I geſſe,  
Was for to makin grete diſpence  
Withoutin warning or defence.  
And Richeſſe might it well ſuſtain,  
And her diſpences wele maintain,  
And him alwaie ſoche plentie ſende  
Of golde and ſilvir for to ſpende  
Withoutin lacking or daungere  
As it were pourde in a garnere.

And aſtir on the dauncè went  
Largeſſe, that ſet all her entent  
For to ben honourable' and fre:  
Of Alexander's kinne was ſhe;  
Her moſtè joie it was i-wis  
Whan that ſhe yaſe, and ſaied, Have this:  
Not Avarice, the ſoule caitiſe,  
Was halſe to gripe ſo ententiſe  
As Largeſſe is to yeve and ſpende,  
And God alwaie inowe her ſende!  
So that the more ſhe yave awaie  
The more i-wis ſhe had alwaie.  
Grete loos hath Largeſſe, and grete priſe,  
For bothe the wiſe folke and unwiſe  
Were wholly to her bandon brought,  
So well with yeſtis hath ſhe wrought.

And if ſhe had an enemy  
I trowe that ſhe couth craftily  
Make him full ſone her frende to be,  
So large of yeſtes and wiſe was ſhe;  
Therefore ſhe ſtoode in love and grace  
Of riche and pore in every place.

A full grete ſole is he i-wis  
That riche, and pore, and nigard is.  
A lorde maie have no manir vice  
That grevith more than avarice;  
For nigarde ner with ſtrength of hande  
Maie winne him grete lordſhipe or lande,  
For frendis all to fewe hath he  
To doen his will performid be;  
And whoſo woll have frendis here  
He maie not holde his treſour dere;  
For by enſample tell I this,  
Right as an adamant i-wis  
Can drawin to him ſubtilly  
The iron that is laied therby,  
So drawith folkis hertes i-wis  
Silvir and golde that yevin is.

Largeſſe had on a robè freſhe  
Of richè purpure ſarliniſhe:  
Well formid was her face and clere,  
And opened had ſhe her colere,  
For ſhe right there had in preſent  
Unto a lady made preſent  
Of a gold broche ful wel ywrought,  
And certis it miſſate her nought,  
For through her ſmocke ywrought with ſilke  
The fleſhe was ſene as white as milke.

Largeffe, that worthy was and wise,  
 Helde by the honde a knight of prife  
 Was sibbe to Arthour of Breteigne,  
 And that was he that bare the enseigne  
 Of worship and the gonfannoun;  
 And yet he is of fuche renoun  
 That menne of him fay faire thinges  
 Before barons, and erles, and kinges.

This knight was comin al newly  
 Fro tourneying there faste by,  
 Where he had done grete chivalry  
 Through his vertue and his maistrise,  
 And for the love of his lemman  
 He caste doune many a doughty man.

And next him dauncid Dame Franchise,  
 Arayid in ful noble gise:

She n'as not broune ne donne of hewe,  
 But white as snowe ifallin newe;  
 Her nose was wrought at point devise,  
 For it was gentill and tretise;  
 With eyin glad, and browis bent;  
 Her here doune to her helis went;  
 And she was simple as dove on tre;  
 Ful debonaire of hert was she.

She durste neither say ne do  
 But that that hir belongith to;  
 And if a manne were in distresse,  
 And for her love in hevynesse,  
 Her hert would have full grete pite,  
 She was so amiable and fre;  
 For were a manne for her bestadde  
 She would ben right fore a dradde  
 That she did ovir gret outrage;  
 But she him holpe his harme t'afwage  
 Her thought it all a vilanie:

And she had on a fuckiny  
 That not of hempè herdis was,  
 So faire was non in all Arras;  
 Lorde! it was riddleed fetisly;  
 There ne was not a point truely  
 That it n'as in his right affise:  
 Ful wel iclothid was Fraunchise,  
 For there n'is no clothe sitteth bette  
 On damosell than doth rokette;  
 A woman wel more fetise is  
 In rokette than in cote i-wis;  
 The white rokette riddilid faire  
 Betokenith that full debonaire  
 And swete was she that it ybere.

By her dauncid a bachelere,  
 I can not tell you what he hight,  
 But faire he was and of gode hight,  
 Al had he ben, I saie no more,  
 The lord's sonne of Windesore.

And next that dauncid Curtisy,  
 That preised was of lowe and hie,  
 For nethir proude ne sole was she;  
 She for to daunce callid me;  
 I prais God give to her gode grace!  
 For whan I come first to the place  
 She n'as not nice ne outrageous,  
 But wise and ware, and vertuous,  
 Of faire speche, and of faire answere;  
 Was never wight missaide of here;

She bare no rancour to no wight;  
 Clere broune she was, and therto bright  
 Of face, and body avenaunt;  
 I wotte no lady so plesant:  
 She werin worthy for to bene  
 An emperesse or crounid quene.

And by her went a knight dauncing  
 That worthy was and wel speking,  
 And ful wel coude he don honour:  
 The knight was faire and stiffe in flour,  
 And in armure a semely man,  
 And wel beloved of his lemman.

Faire Idilnesse than nexte saugh I,  
 That alway was me faste by:  
 Of her have I withoutin faile  
 Tolde you the shape and appareile,  
 For, (as I said) lo! that was she  
 That did to me so grete bounte;  
 She me the gate of that gardin  
 Undid, and let me passin in,  
 And astir dauncid, as I gesse.

And she fulfilled of lustinesse  
 That n'as not yet twelve yere of age,  
 With herte wilde and thought volage:  
 Nice she ywas, but she ne mente  
 None harme ne sleight in her entente,  
 But onely luste and jolite,  
 (For yonge folke, wel wetin ye,  
 Have litill thought but on ther play:)  
 Her lemman was beside alway  
 In fuche a gise that he her kiste  
 At alle timis that him liste,  
 That al the daunce might it se;  
 They make no force of privite,  
 For who spake of 'hem ill or wele  
 Thei were ashamid nere a dele,  
 But men might sene 'hem kisse there  
 As though it two yonge doves were;  
 For yonge was thilke bachilere,  
 Of beute wot I non his pere,  
 And he was right of fuche an age  
 As youthe his lese, and fuche corage.

The lusty folke that dauncid there,  
 And also othir that with 'hem were,  
 That werin all of ther meine,  
 Ful hendè folke, both wise and fre,  
 And folke of faire porte truely,  
 There werin alle cominly.

Whan I had sene the countenaunces  
 Of them that laddin thus these daunces,  
 Than had I will to go and se  
 The gardin that so likid me,  
 And lokin on these faire laureres,  
 On pine trees, cedres, oliveres.  
 The dauncis than endid ywere,  
 For many of 'hem that dauncid there  
 Were with ther lovis went away,  
 Undir the trees to have ther play.

A lorde thei livid lustily!  
 A grete sole were he sikirly  
 That n'olde his thanks fuche life to lede,  
 For this dare I saie out of drede,

That who so might so well yfare  
For bettir life durst him not care,  
For there n'is so gode paradise  
As to have a love at his devise.  
Out of that place went I tho,  
And in that gardin gan I go,  
Playing along full merily.

The god of Love full hastily  
Unto him Swete Loking yclept;  
No lengir would he that she kept  
His bowe of gold that shone so bright:  
He haddin him bent anon right,  
And he full sonè set an ende,  
And at a braide he gan it bende,  
And toke him of his arowes five  
Ful sharpe and redy for to drive.

Now God that sitteth in majeste  
Fro dedly woundis he kepe me  
If so be that he had me shete,  
For if I with his arowe mete  
It had me grevid fore i-wis;  
But I, that nothing wist of this,  
Went up and doune ful many' a waie,  
And he me folowed fast alwaie;  
But no where would I reste me  
Til' I had in all the gardin be.

The gardin was by mesuring  
Right even' and square in compassing;  
It as longe was as it was large;  
Of fruite had every tre his charge  
But it were any hidous tre,  
Of whiche there werin two or thre.

There were (and that wote I full wele)  
Of pomgranetts a full grete dele,  
That is a frute ful wel to like,  
Namely to folke whan thei ben like;  
And trees there werin grete foison  
That berin nuttes in ther feson,  
Suche as menne Nutemlggis ycall,  
That sote of favour ben withall,  
And of almandris grete plente,  
Figgis, and many a date tre,  
There werin, if that menne had nede,  
Through the gardin in length and brede.

There was eke waxing many' a spice,  
As clove, gilofre, and licorice,  
Gingiber, and grein de Paris,  
Canell, and fetewale of pris,  
And many' a spice delitable  
To etin whan men rise fro table.

And many homely trees there were  
That peches, coines, and apples, bere,  
Medlers, plommis, peris, chesteinis,  
Cherise, of whiche many one faine is,  
Notis, and aleis, and bolas,  
That for to sene it was solas,  
With many high laurer and pine,  
Was rengid clene all that gardine  
With cipris, and with oliveris,  
Of which that nigh no plenty here is.

Ther werin elmis grete and strong,  
Maplis, ashe, oke, aspe, planis long,

Fine ewe, popler, and lindis faire,  
And othir trees full many' a paire.  
What should I tell you more of it?

There werin so many trees yet  
That I should al encombrid be  
Er I had rekenid every tre.

These trees were set, that I devise,  
One from an othir in assise  
Five sadome or sixe, I trowe so;  
But they were hie and grete also,  
And for to kepe out wel the sunne  
The croppis were so thicke ironne,  
And every braunche in othir knitte,  
And ful of grenè levis fitte,  
That sunne might there none discende  
Lest that the tendir grassis shende.  
There might men does and roes ise,  
And of squirrels ful grete plente  
From bow to bow alwaie leping;  
Connis there were also playing,  
That comin out of ther clapers,  
Of sondry colours and maners,  
And madin many' a tourneying  
Upon the freshe grassis springing.

In placis sawe I wellis there  
In whichè there no froggis were,  
And faire in shadowe was eche wel;  
But I ne can the nombre tel  
Of stremis final that by devise  
Mirth had done come thorough condise,  
Of whiche the watir in renning  
Gan makin a noise ful liking.

About the brinkis of these wellis,  
And by the stremes ovir al ellis,  
Sprange up the grassis, as thicke iset  
And soft eke as any velvet,  
On which men might his lemmen lay,  
As on a fethirbed to pley,  
For the erth was ful softe and swete;  
Thorough the moisture of the wel wele  
Sprong up the sote grenè gras  
As faire, as thicke, as mister was;  
But moche amended it the place  
That the erth was of such a grace  
That it of flouris hath plente  
That both in somre' a nd wintir be.

There sprange the violet al newe,  
And freshe pervinke riche of hewe,  
And flouris yelow, white, and rede;  
Suche plente grewe there ner in mede:  
Ful gaie was al the grounde and queint,  
And poudrid as men had it peint,  
With many' a freshe and sondry flour,  
That castin up ful gode favour.

I wol not longe hold you in fable  
Of al this gardin dilectable;  
I mote my tonge stinten nede,  
For I ne maie withoutin drede  
Naught tellin yon the bentie all,  
Ne halfe the bounte, there withall.

I went on right honde and on lefte  
About the place; it was not lefte  
Till I had all the gardin bene  
In the estris that men might sene.



And thus while I went in my playe  
The god of Love me folowed aye,  
Right as an hunter can abide  
The beste till he seith his tide  
To shote at godenesse to the dere,  
Whan that him nedith go no nere.

And so befil I restid me  
Besides a wel undir a tre,  
Whiche tre in Fraunce men cal a Pine,  
But since the time of King Pepine  
Ne grewe there tre in mann's sight  
So faire, ne so wel woxe in hight;  
In all that yarde so high ~~was~~ none  
And springing in a marble stone  
Had nature set, the sothe to tell,  
Under that pine tre a well,  
And on the bordir al without  
Was written in the stone about  
Letteris smal, that saidin thus,  
Here whilome starfe faire Narcissus.

Narcissus was a bachilcre  
That Love had caught in his daungere,  
And in his nette gan him so straine,  
And did him so to wepe and plaine,  
That nede him must his life forgo  
For a fair lady hight Echo  
Him loved over any cature,  
And gan for him suche paine endure,  
That on a timè she him tolde  
That if he her ne lovin wolde  
That her behovid nedis die;  
There laie none othir remedie.

But nathèlesse for his beaute  
So feirs and dangerous was he,  
That he n'olde grauntin her asking  
For weping ne for faire praying.

And when she herde him werne her so  
She had in hert so gretè wo,  
And toke it in so grete dispite,  
That she withoutin more respite  
Was dede anon; but ere she diede  
Ful piteously to God she preide  
That the proude hertid Narcissus,  
That was in love so dangerous,  
Might on a day ben hampered so  
For love, and bene so hote for wo,  
That ner he might to joie attaine,  
Than should he fele in every vaine  
What sorow true loveris maken  
That ben villainously forsaken.

This prayir was but resonable,  
Therefore God helde it ferme and stable,  
For Narcissus, shortly to tell,  
By aventure came to that well  
To rest him in the shadowing  
O day when he came from hunting.

This Narcissus had suffrid paines,  
For renning all day in the plaines,  
And was for thirst in greate distresse  
Of herte, and of his werinesse,  
That had his brethe almost benomen.  
Whan he was to that wel icomen,

That shadowed was with braunchis grene;  
He thought of thilke watir thene  
To drinke, and freshe him wele withall,  
And doune on knees he gan to fall,  
And forth his necke and hed outstraught,  
To drinkin of that well a draught;  
And in the watre anone was sene  
His nose, his mouthe, his eyin, thene,  
And he therof was all abashed,  
His owne shadowe had him betrashed,  
For wel wende he the forme to se  
Of a childe of full grete beaute:  
Full well couth Love him wreke tho  
Of daungir and of pride also  
That Narcissus somtime him bere;  
He quite him well his guerdon there,  
For he musid so in the well  
That shortly, the sothe to tell,  
He lovid his owne shadowe so  
That at the last he starfe for wo;  
For whan he sawe that he his will  
Might in no manir way fulfill,  
And that he was so faste caught  
That he him couthè comfort naught,  
He lost his witte right in that place,  
And deide within a litill space;  
And thus his warison he toke  
For the lady that he forfoke.

Ladies, I praie ensample taketh,  
Ye that ayenst your love mistaketh;  
If of ther deth you be to wite  
Good can ful wel your wilè quite.

Whan this letter, of whiche I tell,  
Had taught me that it was the well  
Of Narcissus in his beaute,  
I gan anon withdrawè me  
When it fell in my remembraunce  
That him betide suche a mischaunce;  
But at the laste than thoughtin I  
That scathèlesse full sickirly  
I might unto the wellè go,  
Wherof shull I abashin so?  
Unto the welle than went I me,  
And doune I loutid for to se  
The clere watir in the stone,  
And eke the gravel, whiche that shone  
Doune in th' botom as silvir fine,  
For of the welle this is the fine,  
In world is none so clere of hewe,  
The watre is ever fresh and newe,  
That welmith up with wavis bright  
The mountenaunce of two fingir hight.  
About it is the grassie springing  
For moiste so thicke and weil liking  
That it ne may in wintir die  
No more than may the see be drie.

Doune at the botome set sawe I  
Two cristal stonis craftily,  
In thilke freshe and faire well;  
But o thinge sothly dare I tell  
That ye well holde a grete mervaille  
Whan it is tolde withoutin faille,

For whan the sunne clere in sight  
 Cast in that welle his bemis bright,  
 And that the hete descendid is,  
 Than taketh the cristall stone i-wis  
 Againe the sunne an hundrid hewis,  
 Blewe, yellow, red, that fresh and new is,  
 Yet hath the mervailous cristall  
 Suche strenght that the place ovir all,  
 Both soule and tre, and levis grene,  
 And all the yerde, in it is sene :  
 And for to don you to' undirfonde  
 To make ensample wol I fonde ;  
 Right as a mirroure opinly  
 Shewith al thing that stondeth thereby,  
 As well the colour as figure,  
 Withoutin any covirture,  
 Right so the cristall stone shining,  
 Withoutin any disceving,  
 The entrees of the yerde accuseth  
 To him that in the watir museth,  
 For evir in whiche halfe ye be  
 Ye may wele halfe the gardine se,  
 And if ye turne ye may right wele  
 Sene the remnaunt every dele,  
 For there is none so litil thing  
 So hid ne closin with shiting  
 That it n'is sene, as though it were  
 Ypainted in the cristall there.  
 This is the mirroure perillus  
 In whiche the proude Narcissus  
 Sey al his faire face so bright  
 That made him sith to lie upright,  
 For who so loke in that mirroure  
 There may nothing ben his socour  
 That he ne shal there se somthing  
 That shal him lede into laughing :  
 Ful many' a worthy man hath it  
 Yblent, for folke of gretist wit  
 Ben sone ycaught here and ywaitid ;  
 Withouten respire ben they baitid :  
 Here comith to folke of newe rage,  
 Here chaungith many wight corage,  
 Here lithe no rede ne witte therto,  
 For Venus sonne, Dan Cupido,  
 Hath sowin there of love the fede,  
 That helpe ne lithe there non ne rede,  
 So cerelith it the welle about ;  
 His ginnis hath he set without,  
 Right for to catche in his panthers  
 These damosels and bachilers ;  
 Love will none othir birdis catche  
 Though he set cithir nette or fatche ;  
 And for the fede that here was sowen  
 This welle is cleped, as well is knowen,  
 The Welle of Love of very right,  
 Of whiche there heth ful many wight  
 Spokin in bokis diversely ;  
 But thei shul ner so verily  
 Discripcion of the welle here,  
 Ne eke the sothe of this matere,  
 As ye shul whan I have undo  
 The craste that here belongith to.

Alway me likid for to dwell  
 To sene the cristall in the well,  
 That shewid me ful opinly  
 A thousande thingis faste by ;  
 But I may saie in sory houre  
 Stode I to lokin or to poure,  
 For sithin I fore have ylikid  
 That mirroure hath me now entriked ;  
 But had I first knowen in my wit  
 The vertu and strenghtis of it,  
 I n'olde not have musid there ;  
 Me had bettir ben ellis-where,  
 For in the snare I fell anone  
 That had bitreshid many one.  
 In thilke mirroure sawe I tho,  
 Among a thousande thingis mo,  
 A rosir chargid ful of rosis,  
 That with an hedge aboute enclosed is ;  
 Tho had I suche lust and envie,  
 That for Paris ne for Pavie  
 N'olde I have left to gone and se  
 There gretist hepe of rosis be.  
 Whan I was with this rage yhente,  
 That caught hath many' a man and sienter,  
 Towarde the rosir gan I go,  
 And whan I was not ferre there fro  
 The favour of the rosis sote  
 Me smote right to the herte rote,  
 As I had all enbaumid me ;  
 And if I n'ad endoutid me  
 To have ben hatid or assailed  
 My thankis wol I not have failed  
 To pull a Rose of al that route  
 To berin in mine honde aboute,  
 And smellin to it where I went ;  
 But er I dredde me to repent,  
 And leste it grevid or forthought  
 The lord that thilke gardin wrought,  
 Of rosis there werin grete wone,  
 So faire werin nevir in Rone ;  
 Of knoppis close some sawe I there,  
 And some wel bettir woxin were,  
 And some there ben of othir moison,  
 That throwe nigh to ther seson,  
 And spedde 'hem faste for to spredde ;  
 I love wel suche rosis redde,  
 For brode rosis and open' also  
 Ben passid in a daie or two,  
 But knoppis wollin freshe be  
 Two daies at lest or ellis thre :  
 The knoppis gretely likid me,  
 For fairir maie there no man se ;  
 Who so might havin one of all  
 It ought him ben ful lese withall :  
 Might I garlonde of 'hem gotten  
 For no richeffe I wolde it letten.  
 Amonges the knoppis I chese one  
 So faire, that of the remenaunt none  
 Ne preise I halfe so wel as it  
 Whan I avisin in my wit ;  
 It so wel was enluminid  
 With colour red, as well finid

As Nature couth it makin faire,  
 And it hath levis wel foure paire,  
 That Kind hath set through his knowing;  
 Aboute the redde rosis springing  
 The flake ywas as rishe right,  
 And theron stode the knoppe upright,  
 That it ne bowed upon no side;  
 The sote smell ysprong so wide  
 That it died al the place aboute:  
 Whan I had smelled the favour sote  
 No will had I fro thence yet go,  
 But somdele nere it went I tho  
 To take it, but mine honde for drede  
 Ne durst I to the Rose bede  
 For thisteles sharpe of many maners,  
 Netlis, thornis, and hokid briers,  
 For muche they distourblid me,  
 For fore I dradde to harmid be.

The god of Love, with bowe ybent,  
 That al daie fet had his talent  
 To pursue and to spyin me,  
 Was stondin by a figge tre,  
 And whan he sawe how that I  
 Had chosin so ententifely  
 The bothum more unto my pay  
 Than any othir that I say,  
 He toke an arowe sharpely whette,  
 And in his bowe when it was sette  
 He streight up to his ere ydrough  
 The stronge bowe that was so tough,  
 And shotte at me so wondir smerte  
 That through mine eye unto mine herte  
 The takil smote, and depe it wente,  
 And therewith al such colde me hente  
 That undir clothis warme and fofte  
 Sin that day I have chivered ofte.

Whan I was hurte thus in stounde  
 I fell doun plat unto the grounde,  
 Mine herte failid and faintid aie,  
 And longé time in swoune I laie;  
 But whan I came out of swouning,  
 And hadde my witte and my feling,  
 I was all mate; and wende full wele  
 Of blode t' have lorne a full grete dele,  
 But certes th' arowe that in me stode  
 Of me ne drewe no droppe of blode;  
 For why? I founde my woundes all drie.

Than toke I with mine hondis tweie  
 The arowe, and full fast it out plight,  
 And in the pulling fore I fight;  
 So at the last the shaft of tre  
 I drough out with the fethirs thre,  
 But yet the hokid hedde i-wis,  
 The whiche Beaute ycallid is,  
 Gan so depe in mine herte pace  
 That I it ne might not arace,  
 But in mine herte still it stode,  
 All bledde I not a droppe of blode:  
 I was bothe anguishous and trouble  
 For the perill that I sawe double;  
 I ne wist what to saie or doe,  
 Ne get a leche my woundis to,

For neither thorough grasse ne rote  
 Ne had I helpe of hope ne bote,  
 But to the bothum evir mo  
 Mine herte drewe, for all my wo  
 My thought was in none othir thing,  
 For had it ben in my keping  
 It would have brought my life again,  
 For certis evenly, I dare fain,  
 The sight onely and the favour  
 Aleggid moche of my languor.

Than gan I for to drawe me  
 Toward the bothum faire to se,  
 And Love had gette him in this throwe  
 An othir arowe into' his bowe,  
 And for to shotin gan him dresse;  
 The arowes name was Simpleneffe:  
 And whan that Love gan nigh me nere  
 He drowe it up withoutin were,  
 And shote at me with all his might,  
 So that this arowe anone right  
 Throughout mine eigh, as it was founde,  
 Into mine herte hath made a wounde:  
 Than I anone did all my craft  
 For to ydrawin out the shaft,  
 And therewithall I fighid est;  
 But in mine hert the hedde was left,  
 Whiche aie encrefid my desire;  
 Unto the bothum drewe I nere,  
 And evir mo that me was wo  
 The more desire had I to go  
 Unto the rosis, where that grewe  
 The freshe bothom so bright of hewe:  
 Bettir me were to' have lettin be,  
 But it behovid nedis me  
 To doen right as mine herte badde,  
 For er the body must be ladde  
 Aftir the herte in wele and wo,  
 Of force togethir thei must go;  
 But nevir this archir would fine  
 To shote at me with all his pine,  
 And for to make me to him mete.

The thirde arowe he gan to shete,  
 Whan best his time he might espie,  
 The whiche was namid Curtise,  
 Into mine herte he did avale:  
 A swoune I fell bothe dedde and pale;  
 Long time I laie, and stirid nought  
 Till I abraied out of my thought,  
 And faste than I avilid me  
 To drawin out the shaft of tre;  
 But aye the hedde was leste behinde  
 For ought I couthe pull or winde;  
 So fore it sticked whan I was hit  
 That by no crafte I might it flit,  
 But anguishous and full of thought  
 I felt soche wo my wounde aie wrought,  
 That somoned me alwaie to go  
 Toward the Rose that plesed me so;  
 But I ne durst in no manere,  
 Because the archir was so nere.

For evir more gladly, as I rede,  
 Brent child of fire hath mochil drede:  
 And certis yet for all my pein  
 Though that I sigh, yet arowis rein,



## THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE.

And ground quarelis, sharpe of fele,  
 Ne for no pain that I might fele,  
 Yet might I not my self with hold  
 The faire rofir to behold,  
 For Love me yave soche hardiment  
 For to fulfill his commaundement;  
 Upon my fete I rose up than  
 Feble as a forwounded man,  
 And forthe to goft my might I fet,  
 And for the archir n'olde I let:  
 Toward the rofir fast I drowe,  
 But thornis sharpe mo than inow  
 There were, and also thistles thicke,  
 And brevis brynnè for to pricke,  
 That I ne might ygettin grace  
 Through the rough thornis for to pace  
 To fene the rofis freshe of hewe;  
 I must abide though it me rewe:  
 The hedge about so thicke was,  
 That closed the rofis in compas.  
 But o thing likid me right wele,  
 I was so nigh that I might fele  
 Of the bothom the sore odour,  
 And also se the freshe coloure,  
 And that right gretely likid me  
 That I so nere mightin it se;  
 Soche joie anon theteof had I  
 That I forgate my malady;  
 To fene it I had soche delite  
 Of woe and angre' I was all quite,  
 And of my woundes that I had thore,  
 For nothing likin me might more  
 Than dwellin by the rofir aie,  
 And thens nevir to passe awaie:  
 But whan a while I had be thare  
 The god of Love, whiche all to share  
 Mine herte with his arowis kene,  
 Casteth him to yeve me woundis grene;  
 He shote at me full hastily  
 An arowe namid Companie,  
 The whichè takil is full able  
 To make these ladies merciabie;  
 Than I anon gan chaungin hewe  
 For grevaunce of my wounde newe,  
 That I again fell in swouning,  
 And sighid fore in complaining.  
 Sore I complained that my fore  
 On me gan grevin more and more;  
 I had none hope of allegiance,  
 So nigh I drowe to disperaunce;  
 I ne nought of deth, ne of life,  
 Whethir that Love ywould me drife;  
 If me a martir wold he make  
 I might his powir not forsake:  
 And while for angir thus I woke  
 The god of Love and arowe toke  
 Full sharp it was and full pounaunt,  
 And it was callid Faire Semblaunt,  
 The whiche in no wise would consent  
 That any lover him repent  
 To serve his love with herte and all  
 For any perill that maie fall:  
 But though this arowe was kene grounde  
 As any rafor that is founde

To cutte and kervin at the point,  
 The god of Love it had anoint  
 With a full precious ointment,  
 Some dele to yeve elegement  
 Upon the woundis that he hade  
 Thorough the eye in my herte made,  
 To helpe her soris and to cure,  
 And that thei maie the bette indure;  
 But yet this arowe without more  
 Made in mine herte a large fore,  
 That in full grette pain I stode,  
 But aie the ointment went stode;  
 Throughout my woundis large and wide  
 It sprede about in every side,  
 Thorough whose vertue and whose might  
 Mine herte joifull was and light;  
 I had ben dedde and all to shent  
 But for the precious ointment.  
 The shaft I drowe out of the arowe,  
 Roking for wo right wondir narowe,  
 But the hedde, whiche that made me smerte,  
 I left behind in mine herte  
 With othir fower, I dare well saie,  
 That nevir wold be toke awaie;  
 But the ointment halpe me wele,  
 And yet soche sorowe did I fele,  
 That allè daie I chaungid hewe  
 Of my woundis so freshe and newe,  
 As men might se in my visage:  
 The arowes were so full of rage,  
 So variaunt of diversite,  
 That men in everiche might se  
 Both grette anoie and eke swetnesse:  
 And joie ymeint with bittirnesse:  
 Now were thei esy and now wode;  
 In them I felt bothe harme and gode;  
 Now sore without alleggement,  
 Now softning with the ointment;  
 It softenid here and prickid there;  
 Thus ese and angir were yfere.

The god of Love delivirly  
 Came lepande to me hastily,  
 And sayid to me in grette jape,  
 Yelde the, for thou maie not escape,  
 Maie no defence availe the here,  
 Therefore I rede make no daungere:  
 If thou wolt yelde the hastily  
 Thou shalt the rathir have mercie;  
 He is a sole in sikernesse  
 That with daungir or with stoutnesse  
 Rebellith there that he should please;  
 In soche folie is little ese;  
 Be meke where thou must nedis bowe;  
 To strive ayen is not thy prow:  
 Come at onis, and have idoc,  
 For I wolle that it be so;  
 Than yelde the here debonairly.  
 And I answerid full humbly,  
 All gladly, Sir, at your bidding  
 I woll me yelde in allè thing:  
 To your service I woll me take,  
 For God defende that I should make

Ayen your bidding resistance;  
 I woll not doen so grete offence,  
 For if I did it were no skill;  
 Ye maie do with me what ye will,  
 Or save or spill, and also slo;  
 Fro you in no wise may I go;  
 My life, my deth, is in your honde,  
 I maie not laste out of your bonde;  
 Plaine at your liste I yelde me,  
 Hoping in hert that somtime ye  
 Comforte and ese shuld to me fende,  
 Or els shortly, this is the ende,  
 Withoutin helth I mote aie dure;  
 But if ye take me to your care:  
 Comforte or helth how shuld I have,  
 Sithe ye me hurte, but ye may save?  
 The helth of Love mote be yfounde  
 Where as thei tokin first the wounde;  
 And if ye liste of me to make  
 Your prisoner, I woll it take  
 Of herte and will fully at gre:  
 Wholy and plaine I yelde me  
 Withoutin feining or feintise.  
 To be governed by you emprise:  
 Of you I here so mochil-prise  
 I wol ben whole at your devise  
 For to fulfill all your liking,  
 And to repent in for nothing,  
 Hoping to have yet in some tide  
 Mercy of that that I abide:  
 And with that covenaut yelde I me,  
 Anon doune kneeling on my kne,  
 Prossiring for to kisse his fete,  
 But for nothing he wold me lete;

And said, I love the both and preise,  
 Sens that thine answere doth me ese,  
 For thou answered so curtisly;  
 For nowe I wote well uttirly  
 That thou art gentil by thy speche,  
 For though a man ferre woulde seche,  
 He shuld not find in certaine  
 No suche answere of no vilaine,  
 For such a worde ne mighte nought  
 Issue out of a vilaines thought:  
 Thou shalt not lesin of thy speche,  
 For thy helping willin I eche  
 And eke encrefin that I maie;  
 But first I woll that thou obaie  
 Fully for thine own avauntage  
 Anone to do me here homage,  
 And sithin kisse thou shalt my mouth,  
 Whiche to no vilaine was ner couthe  
 For to aproche it ne for to touche;  
 For fause of cherlis I ne vouchie  
 That thei shal nevir neigh it nere;  
 For curteis and of faire manere,  
 Wel taught and ful of gentilnesse,  
 He must yben that shall me kisse,  
 And also of ful highe fraunchise  
 That shal atteine to that emprise.

And first of o thing warne I the,  
 That paine and gret adversite  
 He mote endure, and eke travaile,  
 That shal me serve withoutin faile;

But there against the to comforte,  
 And with thy service to disporte,  
 Thou maist ful glad and joyfull be  
 So gode a maister to have as me,  
 And lord of so high renoun;  
 I bere of Love the gonfennoun,  
 And of Curtise the banere,  
 For I am of selfe the manere,  
 Gentill and curteis, meke and fre,  
 That who evir ententise be  
 Me to honour, re-doute, and serve,  
 And also that he him observe  
 Fro trespase and fro villanie,  
 And him governe in curtise,  
 With will and with entencion;  
 For when he first in my prison  
 Is caught, than must be uttirly  
 Fro thennis-forth ful besily  
 Ycast him gentill for to be,  
 Yf he desire helpe of me.

Anone withoutin more delaie,  
 Withoutin daungir or affraie,  
 I become his vassal anone,  
 And gave him thankes many a one,  
 And knelid doune with hondis joint,  
 And made it in my porte full queint:  
 The joye went to my hert's rote.  
 Whan I had kised his mouthe so sote;  
 I had suche mirth and such liking  
 It curid me of languishing.  
 He asked of me than hostages;  
 I have takin fele homages  
 Of one and othir where I have bene,  
 Distreinid ofte withoutin wene:  
 These felons ful of falsite  
 Have many sithes begilid me,  
 And through falsshed ther lust achieved,  
 Wherof I repent and am greved:  
 And I hem gettee in my daungere  
 Ther falsheed shul thei bie ful dere;  
 But for I love the I saie the plaine  
 I wolk of the be more certaine,  
 For the fore I will now ybinde  
 That thou away ne shalt not winde  
 For to denien thy covenant  
 Or done that is not avenaunt:  
 That thou were false it wer grete ruth,  
 Sithe thou semist so ful of truth.

Sir, if the liste to understaunde  
 I merveile the asking this demaunde:  
 For why or wherfore shoulde ye  
 Hostage or borowes aske of me,  
 Or any othir sikirnesse,  
 Sithin ye wote in sothfastnesse  
 That ye me have surprisid so,  
 And whole mine herte takin me fro,  
 That it wolk doe for me nothing  
 But if it be at your bidding?  
 Mine hert is yours, and mine right nought,  
 As it behoveth, in dede and thought,  
 Redy in all to worche your will,  
 Whethir so tourne to gode or ill;  
 So fore it lustith you to plesse  
 No man therof maie you disesse

## THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE.

Ye have theron set soche justice  
That it is werried in many wise;  
And if ye doubt in n'olde obaie  
Ye maie therof do make a kaie  
And hold it with you for hostage,  
Now, certis, this is none outrage  
(Quod Love) and fully I accorda,  
For of the body he is full lorde  
That hath the herte in his tresore;  
Outrage it were to aske more.

Than of his aumener he drough  
A little keie fetife inough,  
Whiche was of gold polished clere,  
And saied to me, With this keie here  
Thine herte to me now woll I shet,  
For all thy joifull loke and knet  
I binde undir this little keie,  
That no wight maie cary awaie.

This keie is full of grete postre;  
With whiche anone he touchid me  
Undir the side full softly,  
That he mine herte sodainly  
Without any doute hath so spered  
That yet right nought it hath me dered.

Whan he had doin his will all out,  
And I had put him out of dout,  
Sir, I saied, I have right grete will  
Your lust and plesure to fulfill,  
Loke ye my service take at gre  
By thilke faith ye owe to me;  
I saie nought for recreaundise,  
For I nought doubt of your service.

But this servaunt travaileth in vain  
That for the servin doeth his pain  
Unto that lorde which in no wise  
Conne him no thanke for his service.

Love sayid tho, Dismaie the nought;  
Sirhe thou for succour hast me fought  
In thanke thy service woll I take,  
And high of degre woll the mak  
If Wickednesse ne hindir the,  
But (as I hope) it shall nought be;  
To worship no wight by' aventure.  
Maie come but that he pain endure.

Abide and suffre thy distresse  
That hurtith now; it shall be lesse:  
I wote my self what maie the save,  
What medicine thou wouldist have.

And if thy truth to me thou kepe  
I shall unto thine helping eke,  
To cure thy woundes and make hem clene,  
Where so that thei be old or grene;  
Thou shalt be holpen, at wordis few,  
For certainly thou shalt well shewe  
Where that thou servist with gode will,  
For to acomplishe and fulfill  
My commaundementis daie and night,  
Whiche I to lovirs yave of right.

Ah Sir! for Godd's love (saied I)  
Er ye passe hens ententifely  
Your commaundementes to me saie,  
And I shall kepe hem if I maie,  
For them to kepen is all my thought;  
And if so be I wote hem nought  
Than maie I erre unwittingly;  
Wherefor I praie you entirly  
With all mine herte me for to lere,  
That I trespase in no manere.

The god of Love than chargid me  
Anon, as ye shall here and se  
Wordè by worde, by right emprise,  
So as The Romaunt shall devise.

The maistr lefith time to lere  
Whan the disciple woll not here;  
It is but vain on him to swinke  
That on his lerning woll not thinke:  
Who so lust love let him intende,  
For now The Romance ginneth to amende.

Now is gode to herin in saie,  
If any be that can it saie,  
And poinct it as the reson is  
Ylet, for othir gate i-wis  
It shall nat well in alle thing  
Be brought to gode understanding;  
For a rede that poinctith ill  
A gode sentence maie o'tin si ill.  
The boke is gode at the ending,  
Ymade of newe and lustie thing,  
For who so woll the ending here  
The craft of Love he shall now lere,  
If that he well so long abide  
Till I this Romaunce maie unhide,  
And undoe the signifaunce  
Of this dremè into Romaunce:  
The sothfastnesse that now is hid  
Without coverture shall be kid  
Whan I undoen have this dreming,  
Wherein no wordè is of lesing.

Villanie at the beginning  
I woll, saied Love, ovr all thing  
Thou leve, if that thou wolt ybe  
False, and trespase ayenist me:  
I curse and blame generally  
All them that lovin villanie,  
For villanie makith villaine,  
And by his dedes a chorle is seine.

These villains arne without pite,  
Frendship and love, and all bounte:  
I n'ill receive to my service  
Them that ben vilains of emprise.

But undirstonde in thine entent  
That this is not mine entement  
To clepin no wight in no age  
Ouely gentill for his image,  
But who so that is vertuons,  
And in his port not outragious:  
Whan soche one thou seest the beforne,  
Though he be not gentill yborne,



Thou mayist well seine this in soth  
 That he is gentill, bicause he doth  
 As longith to a gentil man;  
 Of them none othir deme I can,  
 For certainly withouten drede  
 A chorle is demid by his dede.  
 Or hie or lowe, as ye maie se,  
 Or of what kinrid that he be;  
 Ne saie nought for non evill will  
 Thing which that is to holdin still:  
 It is no worship to misseie,  
 Thou maigest ensample take of Keie,  
 That was somtime for missaying  
 Yhatid bothe of old and yong:  
 As ferre as Gawein the worthie  
 Was praisid for his curtilie  
 Kaie was hatid, for he was fell,  
 Of worde dispitous and cruell;  
 Wherefore be wise and aqueintable,  
 Godelie of worde, and resonable,  
 Bothe to lesse and eke to mare:  
 And whan thou consist there men are  
 Loke that thou have in custome aie  
 First to salve hem if thou maie;  
 And if it fall that of hem somme  
 Salve the first, be thou not domne,  
 But quite him curtisly anon,  
 Without abiding, er thei gon.

For nothing eke thy tong applic  
 To spekin wordes of ribaudrie:  
 To vilaine speche in no degre  
 Late not thy lippe unboundin be,  
 For I nought holde him in gode faith  
 Curteis that foulde wordis faith  
 And alle women serve and preise,  
 And to thy power there honour reise;  
 And if that any missayrre  
 Dispise women that thou maist here,  
 Blame him, and bidde him holde him still;  
 And sette thy might and al thy will  
 Women and ladies for to plese,  
 And to do thing that may hem ese,  
 That thei evir speke gode of the,  
 For so thou maist best praisid be.

Loke that fro pride thou kepe the welc,  
 For thou maist both perceive and sele  
 That pride is both foly and sinne;  
 And he that pride hath him within  
 Ne may his herte in no wise  
 Mekin, ne souplin to service,  
 For pride is founde in every parte,  
 Contrarie unto Lov's arte;  
 And he that lovith truly  
 Should him containe jolily  
 Withouten pride in sondry wise,  
 And him disguisin in queintice;  
 For queinte aray, withoutin drede,  
 Is nothin proude, who takith hede,  
 For freshe aray, as men may se,  
 Withouten pride may oftin be.

Maintaine thy selfe alir thy rent  
 Of rob' and eke of garment,  
 For many a sithe faire clothing  
 A man amendith in muche thinge.

And loke alway that thei be shape  
 (What garment that thou shalt the make)  
 Of him that can the best ydo,  
 With al that parteinith therto,  
 Pointis and sleeves be wel sittande  
 Ful right and streight upon the hande:  
 Of shone and botis newe and faire  
 Loke at the left thou have a paire,  
 And that thei sitte so fetously  
 That these rude men may uttirly  
 Mervaille, sith that thei sitte so plaine,  
 How thei come on or of againe:  
 Were streightè glovis, with aumere  
 Of filke: and alway with gode chere  
 Thou yeve, if that thou have richesse,  
 And if thou have nought speride the lesse:  
 Alway be mery if thou maie,  
 But wastè not thy god alwaie;  
 Have hatte of flouris freshe as May,  
 Chapeket of rosis of Whitsondaie.  
 For soche araie costnith but lite;  
 Thine hondis washe, thy tethe make white,  
 And let no filthe upon the be:  
 Thy nails blacke if thou maigest se  
 Voide it awaie delivry;  
 And kembe thine hedde right jolily:  
 Farce not thy visage in no wise,  
 For that of Love is nat th' emprise,  
 For Love doeth hatin, as I finde,  
 A beautie that cometh nat of kinde:  
 Alwaie in herte I redè the  
 Ful glad and mery for to be,  
 And be as joyfull as thou can;  
 Love hath no joie of sorowfull man,  
 That ill is full of curtilie,  
 That knowith in his maladie  
 For evir of love the sickenesse  
 Is meint with swete and bittirnesse.  
 The fore of love is mervailous,  
 For now the lovir is joious,  
 Now can he plain, now can he grove,  
 Now can he singe, now makin mone;  
 To daie he plaineth for hevinesse,  
 To morue he plaineth for jolinesse.  
 The life of love is full contrarie,  
 Whiche stounde mele can oftin varie;  
 But if thou canist mirthis make  
 That men in gre woll gladly take  
 Do it godely, I commaunde the;  
 For men shuld, where so er thei be,  
 Doe thing that hem besittig is,  
 For therof cometh gode loos and pris;  
 Whereof that thou be vertuous  
 Ne be nat straunge ne daungereus;  
 For if that thou gode ridir be  
 Prickle gladly that men maie the se:  
 In armis also if thou conne  
 Pursue till thou a name hast wonne:  
 And if thy voice be faire and clere  
 Thou shalt makin no grete daungere;  
 Whan the to sing thei godely praie  
 It is thy worship for to obaie;  
 Also to you it longith aie  
 To harpe and giterne, daunce and plaie;

## THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE.

For if he can well fote and daunce  
 It maie him gretely doe avaunce,  
 Among eke for thy ladie sake  
 Songis and complaintes that thou make,  
 For that woli mevin in her herte  
 Than that thei redin of thy smerte :  
 Love that no man for scarce the holde,  
 For that maie greve the manifolde ;  
 Refon woli that a lovir be  
 In his yestis more large and fte  
 Than chorles that ben not of loving ;  
 For who therof can any thing  
 He shall be lese aie for to yeve,  
 In londis lore who so would leve,  
 For he that through a fodain sight  
 Or for a kissing anon right,  
 Yave whole his herte in will and thought,  
 And to himself kepith right nought,  
 Aftir this swift gift 'tis but reason  
 He give his gode too in a bandon.

Now woli I shortly here reherce  
 Of that I have ysaied in verce  
 Alle the sentence by and by  
 In wordis fewe compendiously,  
 That thou the bet maiest on 'hem think  
 Wher so it be thou wake or winke,  
 For the wordis do little greve  
 A man to kepe whan thei be breve.

Who so with Love woli gon or ride  
 He mote be curteis, voide of pride,  
 Merie, and full of jolite,  
 And of largesse a losid be.

First I joigne the here in penaunce  
 That evir without repentaunce  
 Thou set thy thought in thy loving  
 To last withoutin repenting,  
 And think upon thy mirthis fwete  
 That shall solue' aftir whan ye mete.

And for thou true to Love shalt be  
 I will and eke commaunde the  
 That in one place thou set all whole  
 Thine herte, withoutin halfin dole,  
 For trecherie and sikirnesse,  
 For I loved nevir doublenesse.  
 To many' his herte that woli depart  
 Everiche shall have but little part,  
 But of him drede I me right nought  
 That in one place settith his thought ;  
 Therefore in o place thou it set,  
 And let it nevir thennis flet,  
 For if thou yevest it in lening  
 I holde it but a wretchid thing ;  
 Therefore yevith it whole and quite,  
 And thou shalt have the more merite :  
 If it be lent than aftir soen

The bounte and the thanke is doen ;  
 But in love a fre yevin thing  
 Requirith a grete guerdoning.

Yeve it in yest all quite fully,  
 And make thy gift debonairly,  
 For men that yest holdin more dere  
 That yevin is with gladfome chere.

That giftè nought to praisin is  
 That a man gevith mal gre his.  
 Whan thou hast yeven thine hert (as I  
 Have said the here all opinly)  
 Than aventuris shall the fall  
 Whiche hard and hevye ben with all ;  
 For ofte whan thou bethinkest the  
 Of thy loving, where so thou be,  
 Fro folke thou must depart in hie,  
 That none perceive thy maladie,  
 But hide thine harme thou must alone  
 And go forth sole and make thy mone.  
 Thou shalt no while be in o state,  
 But whilom colde and whilom hate,  
 Now red as rose, now yelow' and fade :  
 Such sorow I trow thou ner had ;  
 Cotidien ne the quarteine  
 It is not half so full of peine ;  
 For oftin timis it shal fal  
 In love, among thy painis al,  
 That thou thy selfin all wholly  
 Foryettin shalt so uttirly  
 That many timis thou shalt be  
 Still as an image made of tre,  
 Domme as a stone, without ftering  
 Of fote or honde, without speking.

And than sone aftir al thy paine  
 To memo'rie shalt thou come againe,  
 A man abashid wondir fore,  
 And aftir sighin more and more ;  
 For wit thou wele withoutin wene  
 In fuche a state ful ofte have bene  
 That have the' evill of love affaide,  
 Where thorough thou art so dismaide.

Aftir a thought shal take the so  
 That thy love is to ferre the fro,  
 Thou shalt sa (God) what may this be  
 That I ne may my lady se ?  
 Mine hert alone is to her go,  
 And I abide al sole in wo,  
 Departid fro mine ownè thought,  
 And with mine eyin se right nought.

Alas ! mine eien sene I ne may  
 My carefull herte to convay ;  
 Mine hert'is guidè but thei be  
 I praise nothing what er thei se ;  
 Shul thei abidin than ? why, nay,  
 But gone and se without delay  
 That whiche mine hert desirith so,  
 For certainly but if thei go  
 I sole my selfe I may well holde  
 Whan I ne se what mine hert wolde  
 Wherefore I wol gone her to sene,  
 Or esid shall I nevir bene  
 But that I have some tokining.

Than goft thou forth without dwelling  
 But ofte thou failest of thy desire  
 Er thou maiest come her any nere,  
 And waitist in vaine thy passage ;  
 Than falist thou in a newe rage ;  
 For want of sight thou ginnist murne,  
 And homwarde pensife dost retorne.

In grete mischefe than shalt thou be,  
For than againe shal come to the  
Sighis and plaintis, with newe wo,  
That no itching prickith the so;  
Who wote it nought he maie go lere  
Of them that buyin love so dere.

No thing thine hert appesin maie,  
That oft thou wolt gone and assaie  
If thou maist fere by aventure  
Thy liv'is joye, thine hert'is cure;  
So that by grace if that thou might  
Attaine of her to have a sight  
Than shalt thou done non othir dede  
But with that sight thine eyin fede.  
That faire freshe whan thou maist se  
Thine hert shal so ravishid be  
That ner thou woldest thy thankis lete,  
Ne remove for to se that swete;  
The more thou seest, in sothfastnesse,  
The more thou covitest that swetenesse;  
The more thine herte brennith in fire  
The more thine herte is in delire,  
For who confidritn every dele,  
It may be likened wondir wele  
The paine of love unto a fere,  
For evirmore thou neighist nere  
In thought, or how so that it be,  
(For very sothe I tel it the)

The hotter evir shalt thou brenne,  
As experience shall the kenne;  
Where so comist in any coste  
Who is next fire he brennith mozte:  
And yet forsothe for al thine herte,  
Though thou for love swelte and swete,  
Ne for no thing thou felist may,  
Thou shalt not wille to passe away;  
And though thou go, yet must the nede  
Thinkin al day on her faire hede  
Whom thou behelde with so gode will,  
And holde thy selfe begilid ill  
That thou ne haddest none hardiment  
To shewe her aught of thine entent;  
Thine hert ful fore thou wolt dispise,  
And eke reprove of cowardise,  
That thou so dull in every thing  
Were domme for drede without speking.

Thou shalt eke thinke thou diddest foly  
That thou were her so faste bie  
And durst not venture the to say  
Some thing er that thou came away,  
For thou haddist no more wonne  
To speke of her whan thou begonne;  
But yet if she would for thy sake  
In armis godely the have take,  
It should have be more worthe to the  
Than of tresour a grete plente.

Thus shalt thou morne and eke complaine,  
And get encheson t'o gon againe  
Unto thy walke or to thy place  
Where thou behelde her fleshy face;  
And n'ere for false suspicion  
Thou woldist finde occasion  
For to gone in unto her house;  
Thou art than so desirous

A sight of her bat for to have,  
If thou thine honour mightist save,  
Or any erande mightist make,  
Thidir for thy lov'is sake,  
Ful faine thou woldist, but for drede  
Thou guesst not, lest that men take hede;  
Wherefore I rede in thy going,  
And also' in thine againe coming,  
Thou be wel ware that men ne wit;  
Feine the othir cause than it  
To go that waie, or faste bie;  
To helin wel is no folie;  
And if so be it happè the  
That thou thy love there maistie yse,  
In sikir wise thou her salewe,  
Wherwith thy coloure wold transmewe,  
And eke thy bloud shal al to quake,  
Thy hewe eke chaungin for her sake,  
But worde and wit, with chere ful pale,  
Shul want for to tellin thy tale;  
And if thou maist so ferforth winne  
That thou to reson durst beginne,  
And woldist faine thre thinges or mo,  
Thou shalt ful scarfly faine the two;  
Though thou bethinke the ner so wele  
Thou shalt foryetin yet somdele.

But if thou dele with trechery,  
For false lovirs mowe all fully  
Sain what 'hem lust withoutin dred,  
Thei be so double' in ther falsheid,  
For thei in hert can thinke o thing  
And faine an othre' in ther speking:  
And whan thy speche is endid all  
Right thus to the it shal befall;  
If any worde than come to minde  
That thou to say hast left behinde,  
Than thou shalt brenne in grete martire,  
For thou shalt brenne as any fire:  
This is the strife and eke the' affraie,  
And the batill, that lastith aie:  
This bargaine ende may never take  
But if that she thy pece wil make.

And whan the night is come anon  
A thousande angres shal come on:  
To bed as fast thou wolte the dight,  
Where thou shalt have but smal delight,  
For whan thou wenist for to slepe  
So ful of paine shalt thou crepe,  
Sterte in thy bed about ful wide,  
And turne ful ofte on every side,  
Now downward grouse, and now upright,  
And walow in wo the long night:  
Thine armis shalt thou sprede a brede  
As man in warre were forwerede;  
Than shal the come a remembrance  
Of her shape and of her semblaunce,  
Wherto none othir may be pere:  
And wete thou wel withoutin were  
That the shal se somtime that night  
That thou hast her that is so bright  
Nakid bitwene thine armis there,  
Al sothfastnesse as though it were:



# THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE.

Thou shalt make castels than in Spaine,  
And drepe of joy al but in vaine,  
And the delitin of right nought  
While thou so slombrist in that thought  
That is so swete and delitable,  
The whiche in sothe n'is but a fable,  
For it ne shall no while last:  
Than shalt thou sighe and wepe fast,  
And say, Dere God! what thing is this?  
My dreme is turnid al amis  
Whiche was ful swete and apparent,  
But now I wake it is al shent;  
Now yede this mery thought away;  
Twenty times upon a day  
I would this thought would come againe,  
For it alegith wel my paine;  
It maketh me ful of joyfull thought;  
It sleeth me that it lastith nought:  
Ah Lorde! whi n'il ye me focoure?  
The joye I trowe that I langoure,  
The deth I would me shoulde flo  
While I lie in her armis two:  
Mine harme is harde withoutin wene,  
My gret unse ful ofte I mene.

But woulde Love do so I might  
Have fully joye of her so bright  
My paine were quite me richily.  
Alas! to gret a thing aske I;  
It is but foly' and wrong wening  
To aske so outrageous a thing,  
And who so askith folily  
He mote be warnid hastily;  
And I ne wote what I may say,  
I am so ferre out of the way,  
For I would have ful grete liking  
And ful grete joy of lasse thing;  
For would she of her gentilnesse  
Withoutin more me onis kesse,  
It were to me a grete guerdon,  
Relese of all my passion:  
But it is harde to come therto;  
Al is but foly that I do;  
So highe I have mine herte sette  
Where that I may no comfort gette:  
I n'ote wher I say well or nought;  
But this I wote well in my thought,  
That it were bette of her alone  
For to stintin my wo and mone:  
A joke on her I cast godely  
Than for to have al uttirly  
Of an othir al whole the play.  
Ah Lord! where I shal bide the day  
That ere she shal my lady be?  
He is ful cured that may her se.  
Ah God! whan shal the dauning springe?  
To liggin thus is angry thing;  
I have no joy thus here to lie  
Whan that my love is not me bie:  
A man to lien hath grete disese  
Which maie not slepe ne rest in ese:  
I would it dawed and were now day,  
And that the night were went away,

For were it daye I would up rise:  
Ah flowe sonne! shewe thine enprise;  
Spede the to sprede thy bemis bright,  
And chace the derknesse of the night,  
To put away the stoundis strong  
Whiche in me lastin al to long.

The night shalt thou continue so  
Withoutin rest, in paine and wo;  
If er thou knew of love distresse  
Thou mowe lerne it in that fikenesse;  
And thus enduring shalt thou lie,  
And rise on morow up erly  
Out of thy bed, and harnais the  
Er evir dawning thou maist se:  
Al privily than shalt thou gone,  
What wethre' it be, thy selfe alone,  
For reine or haile, for snowe for flete,  
Thidir she dwelleth that is so swete,  
The whiche maie fal a slepe be,  
And thinkith but lye upon the:  
Than shalt thou go, ful foule aserde,  
Loke if the gate be unsperde,  
And waite without in woe and paine,  
Full ill a colde in winde and raine:  
Than shalt thou go the dore before,  
If thou maiste findin any shore,  
Or hole, or reffe, what ere it were;  
Than shalt thou stoupe and lay to ere  
If they within a slepe be,  
I mene al save thy lady fre,  
Whom waking if thou maist aspice  
Go put thy selfe in jupardie,  
To askin grace and the bimene,  
That she maie wete withoutin wene  
That thou all night no rest hast had,  
So fore for her thou were bestad.

Women wel ought pite to take  
Of them that sorowen for ther sake:  
And loke for love of that relike  
That thou think none othir like,  
For whan thou hast so gret anney  
Shal kisse the er thou go away,  
And hold that in ful grete deinte:  
And for that no man shal the se  
Before the house ne in the way,  
Loke thou be gon againe er day:  
Suche comming and suche going,  
Suche hevinesse and suche walking,  
Makith lovirs withoutin wene  
Undir ther clothis pale and lene.  
Love ne leveth coloure ne clerenesse;  
Who lovith trewe hath no satnesse,  
Thou shalt wel by thy selfin se  
That thou must nedes assauid be,  
For men that shapen hem othir way  
Falsely ther ladies to betray  
No wondir is though thei be fatte,  
With false othis ther loves thei gatte,  
For ofte I se suche losingeours  
Fattir than abottes or priours.

Yit with o thing I wolle the charge,  
That is to say, that thou be large  
Unto the maide that her doth serve;  
So best her thanke thou shalte deserve:

Yeve her gestic, and get her grace,  
 For so thou may thanke purchase;  
 'That she the worthy holde and fre,  
 'The lady' and al that may the se :  
 Also her servauntes worship aie,  
 And plesin as muche as thou maie;  
 Grete gode through them may come to the,  
 Bicause with her thei ben prive;  
 'Thei shal her tell how thei the fande  
 Curteis and wise, and wel doande,  
 And she shal preise the wel the more :  
 Loke out of londe thou be not fore,  
 And if suche cause thou have that the  
 Behoveth to gone out of countre,  
 Leave wholely thine hert in hostage  
 Til thou againe make thy passage :  
 'Thinke longe to se the swete thing  
 That hath thine hert in her keping.

Now have I told the in what wise  
 A lovir shal do me service;  
 Do it than if that thou wolt have  
 The mede that thou dost astir crave.

Whan Love al this had bodin me  
 I said him, Sir, how may it be  
 'That lovirs may in suche manere  
 Endure the paine ye have said here ?  
 I marvaillin me wondir faste  
 How any man may live or laste  
 In suche paine and in such brenning,  
 In sorue' and thought, and suche sighing,  
 Aie unreliefid wo to make  
 'Wher so it be thei slepe or wake,  
 In suche anoy continually ;  
 As helpe me God this mervaille I  
 How man, but he were made of stele,  
 Might live a monthe such paines to sele.

The god of Love than said to me,  
 Frende, by the feith I owe to the  
 May no man have gode but he' it bie :  
 A man lovith more tendirlye  
 'The thing that he hath bought most dere ;  
 For wete thou well withoutin were  
 In thanke that thing is takin more  
 For which a man hath suffrid sore :  
 Certis no wo ne may attaine  
 Unto the fore of lov'is paine,  
 None evil therto may amounte,  
 No more than a man may counte  
 'The droppes that of the watir be,  
 For drie as wel the gretè se  
 'Thou mightist as the harmis tell  
 Of all them that with Love ydwell  
 In service, for peine them sleeth,  
 And that eche wouldè sie the deeth,  
 And trewe thei should nevir escape,  
 Ne were that hope ycouth 'hem make  
 Glad as a man in prison sete  
 And maie not gettin for to ete  
 But barlie bred and watir pure,  
 And lieth in vermin and ordure :

With allè this yet can he live.  
 Gode hope suche comfort hath him yve,  
 Whiche makith wene that he shal be  
 Reliefed and come to liberte :  
 In Fortune is fully his trust  
 Although he lie in strawe or dust :  
 In hope is al his sustaining :  
 So fare lovirs in ther wenning  
 Whiche Love hath shutte in his prisoun,  
 Gode hope is ther salvacioun ;  
 Gode hope (how fore that thei smerte)  
 Yevith 'hem bothè will and herte  
 'T' offre ther body to martyre,  
 For hope so fore doth 'hem desire  
 'To suff're' eche harme that men devise  
 For joye that astirwarde shal rise.

Hope in desire catche victory,  
 In hope of Love' is al the glory,  
 For hope is all that Love maie yve ;  
 N'ere hope there should no lengir live :  
 Bleffid be hope! whiche with desire  
 Avaunceth lovirs in such manire.  
 Gode hope is curteise for to plesè,  
 'To kepe lovirs from all disese :  
 Hope kepeth his londe, and woll abide  
 For any peril maie betide,  
 For hope to lovirs, as most chese,  
 Doth 'hem endurin all mischese ;  
 Hope is ther helpe whan mistir is ;  
 And I shal yve the eke i-wis  
 Thre othir things that gret solace  
 Doth to them that be in my lace.

The first gode that may be yfounde  
 To them that in my lace be bounde  
 Is swetè thought, for to recorde  
 Thingè wherwith thou canst accorde  
 Best in thine herte, whethir she be  
 Thinking in absence gode to the.  
 Whan any lovir doth complaine,  
 And livith in distresse and paine,  
 Than swetè thought shal come as blive  
 Awaie his angre for to drive ;  
 It makith lovirs have remembraunce  
 Of comforte and of highe plesaunce  
 That hope hath hight him for to winne ;  
 For thought anone than shal beginne,  
 As ferre God wote as he can finde,  
 To make a mirrour of his minde,  
 For to beholde he wol not let,  
 Her person he shal force him set,  
 Her laughing eyen persaunt and clere,  
 Her shape, her forme, her godely chere,  
 Her mouthe, that is so gracious,  
 So swete, and eke so savirous,  
 Of al her fetirs shal take hede,  
 His eyen with all her limmis fede.

Thus swete thinking shal aswage  
 The paine of lovirs and ther rage ;  
 Thy joye shal double without gesse  
 Whan thou thinkist on her semeliness,  
 Or of her laughing or her chere,  
 That to the made thy lady dere :

This comfort wol I that thou take,  
And if the nexre thou wolt forsake,  
Whiche is not lesse favirous,  
Thou shouldest not ben to daungirous.

~~And~~ and shal be swete speche,  
That hath to many one be leche,  
To bring hem out of wo and were,  
And helpe many a bachilere,  
And many a lady sent socour,  
That had ylovid paramoure,  
Thorough speking (whan thei might here)  
Of their lovirs to them so dere;  
To me it voidith al ther smerte  
The whiche is closid in ther herte;  
In hert it maketh hem glad and light,  
Speche, whan thei mowe not havin sight;  
And therefore nowe it cometh to minde  
In olde dawis, as I finde,  
That clerkis written that her knewe  
There was a lady freshe of hewe  
Whiche of her love madin a song,  
On him for to remembre among,  
In whiche she said, Whan that I here  
Spekin of him that is so dere  
To me it voidith alle smerte;  
Iwis he sittith so nere myn herte,  
To speke of him at eve or morowe  
It curith me of al my sorowe;  
To me is none so high plesaunce  
As of his person daliaunce.  
She wist ful wele that swete speking  
Comfortith in ful mochil thing;  
Her love she had full well assaide,  
Of him she was ful wel apaide;  
To speke of him her joye was set;  
Therefore I rede the that thou get  
A felowe that can wel concele  
And kepe thy counsaile, and welle hele,  
To whom go shewe wholly thine herte,  
Both wele and woe, and joye and smerte;  
To get comforte to him thou go,  
And privily bitwene you two  
Ye shal speke of that godely thing  
That hath thine hert in her keping,  
Of her beaute and her semblaunce,  
And of her godely continuance;  
Of al thy state thou shalt him saie,  
And aske him counsaile how thou maie  
Do any thing that maie her plesse,  
For it to the shal do gret ese,  
That he maie wete thou trust him so  
Both of thy wele and of thy wo;  
And if his herte to love be sette  
His companie is moche the bette,  
For reson wol he shewe to the  
Al uttirly his private,  
And what she is he lovith so  
To the plainly he shal undo,  
Withoutin drede of any shame  
Both tell her renome and her name;  
Than shall he forthir ferre and nere,  
And namely to thy lady dere

In likir wise ye every other  
Shal helpin as his owne brother  
In trouthe withoutin doublenesse,  
And kepin close in sikirnesse;  
For it is noble thing in fay  
To have a man thou darst say  
Thy privy counsaile every dele,  
For that wold comforte the right wole;  
And thou shalt holde the wel apaied  
Whan sughe a frende thou hast assaied,

The thirde gode of grete comfort,  
That yevith lovirs most disport,  
Comith of sight and beholding,  
That is yclepid Swete Loking,  
The whiche may none ese ydo  
Whan thou art ferre thy lady fro,  
Wherefore thou plesse alway to be  
In place where thou maist her se,  
For it is thing most amirous  
Moste delitable and favirous,  
For to asswage a mann's sorow  
To sene his lady by the morow;  
For it is a ful noble thing  
Whan that thine eyin have meting  
With that relike so precious  
Whereof thei be so desirous.

But al daie aftir sothe it is  
Thei have no drede to faren amis;  
Thei dredin neither winde ne raine,  
Ne non othir manir of paine;  
For whan thine eyen were thus in blisse  
Yet of ther curtise iwife  
Alone thei can not have ther joye,  
But to the herte thei convoie  
Parte of ther blisse, to him thou sende  
Of all this harme to make amende,

Thi eye is a gode messangere,  
Which can to the hert in such manere  
Tidingis sende, that he hath sene  
To voide him of his painis clene,  
Wherof the hert rejoysith so  
That a grete partie of his wo  
Is voided, and put away to flight;  
Right as the derkenesse of the night  
Is chased with clerenesse of the mone,  
Right so is al his wo ful sone  
Devoidid clene whan that the sight  
Beholdin may that freshe wight  
Whiche that the hert desirith so,  
That al his derkenesse is ago,  
For than the herte is all at ese  
Whan thei sene that that maie hem plesse.

Now have I declared the al out  
Of that thou were in drede and doute,  
For I have tolde the faithfully  
What the may curin uttirly,  
And all lovirs that wollin be  
Faithful and of stabilite;  
Gode Hope alway kepe by thy side,  
And Swete Thought make eke abide,  
Swete Loking and Swete Speche,  
Of al thine harmes thei shal be leche:



Of bale thou shalt have grete-plefaunce  
Yf thou canst bide in suffiraunce,  
And servin wele without feintise;  
'Thou shalt be quite of thine emprise  
With more guerdoun if that thou live,  
But al this time this I the yreve.

The god of Love, whan al the day  
He' had taught me as ye have herd say,  
And enformid compendiously,  
He vanished al sodainly,  
And I alone ylestē al sole,  
So full of complaint and of dole,  
For I sawe no man there me by.  
My woundes me grevid wondirfly;  
Me for to cure nothing I knewe  
Save the bothum so bright of hewe,  
Wheron was sette wholly my thought;  
Of othir comforte knewe I nought,  
But it were through the god of Love;  
I knew nat else to my behove  
That might me ese or comfort gette  
But if he would him entermette.

The rofir was withoutin doute  
Yclosid with an hedge without,  
As ye to forne have herde me saine,  
And fast I besied and would saine  
Have passid the hay, if I might  
Have gettin in by any sleight,  
To the bothum so faire to se,  
But evir I dradde blamed to be  
Yf men would have suspicion  
That I would of entencion  
Have stole the rofis that there were,  
Therefore to entre' I was in fere;  
But at the laste, as I bethought  
Whethir I shuldē passe or nought,  
I sawe come, with a gladdē chere,  
To me a lusty bachilere  
Of gode stature and of gode height,  
And Bialacoil forsoth he height;  
Sonnē he was to Curtisie,  
And he me grauntid ful gladlie  
The passage of the uttir hay,  
And saidē, Sir, how that ye may  
Passe, if that it your wille ybe,  
The freshe rofir for to se,  
And ye the swetē favour sele,  
Your warrant I may be right wele;  
So thou the kepin fro folie  
Shal no man do the vilanie;  
Yf I mai helpin you in ought  
I shall not faine, dredith right nought,  
For I am bounde to your service  
Fully devoide of all feintise.  
Than unto Bialacoil saide I,  
I thank you, Sir, ful hertily,  
And your behest I take at gre  
That ye so godely profir me;  
To you it cometh of grete fraunchis  
That ye me profir your servise.  
Than astir ful delivirly

Wherof encombrid was the haie;  
I was well plesed, the sothe to saie,  
To se the bothum faire and sote  
So freshe ysprung oute of the rote.

And Bialacoil me servid wele  
Whan I so nigh me mightin sele  
Of the bothum the swete odoure,  
And so lusty hewed of colour;  
But than a chorle, soule him betide!  
Beside the rofis gan him hide,  
To kepe the rofis of that rosere,  
Of whom the namē was Daungere.  
This chorle was hid there in the greves,  
Ycovirid with grasse and leves,  
To spie and take whom that he fonde  
Unto that rofir put a honde.

He was not sole, for there was mo,  
For with him werin othir two  
Of wickid manirs and ill fame;  
That one was clepid by his name  
Wickid Tonge, God yeve him sorowe!  
For neither at eve ne at morowe  
He can of no man gode yspeke;  
On many' a justē man doth he wreke.

There was a woman that eke hight  
Shamē, that who can rekin right  
Trespacē ywas her fathir's name,  
Her mothir Reson; thus was Shamē  
Ybrought forth of these ilke two,  
And yet had Trespacē nere adoe  
With Reson, ne nere leie her by,  
He was bidous and so ugly;  
I menē this, that Trespacē hight,  
But Reson conceveth of a sight  
That Shamē of which I spake asorne:  
And whan that Shamē was thus yborne  
It was ordained that Chastite  
Should of the rofir lady be,  
Whiche of the bothums more and las  
With fondrie folke assailid was,  
That she ne wistē what to doe,  
For Venus her assailith so  
That night and daie fro her she stall  
Bothoms and rofis ovir all:  
To Reson than praicth Chastite,  
Whom Venus hathi flemēd ore the se,  
That she her doughter would her lene  
To kepe the rofir freshe and grene.

Anon Reson to Chastite  
Is fully' assentid that it be,  
And grauntid her at her request  
That Shamē, bicause she is honest,  
Shall kepir of the rofir be;  
And thus to kepe it there were thre,  
That none should hardie be ne bolde  
(Were he yongē or were he olde)  
Again her will awaie to bere  
Bothoms ne rofis that there were.  
I had well sped had I nat ben  
Awaitid with these thre and sene,  
For Bialacoil, that was so faire,

## THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE.

Quitte him to me ful curtisly,  
 And me to plesin badde that I  
 Shoud drawe to the bothom nere;  
 Frefe in to touchin the rofere  
 Whiche bare the rose he yafe me leve;  
 This graunt ne might but litill greve;  
 And for he sawe it likid me  
 Right nigh the bothom pullid he  
 A lese all grene, and yave me that,  
 The whiche full nigh the bothom sat;  
 I madin of that lese full queint,  
 And whan I felt I was aqueinte  
 With Bialacoil, and so prive,  
 I wende all my will had ybe,  
 Than wext I hardie for to tell  
 To Bialacoil how me befell  
 Of Love that toke and woundid me,  
 And sayid, Sir, I mote I the,  
 I maie no joie have in no wife  
 Upon no side, but it arise  
 For sithè (if I shall not faine)  
 In herte I have had so grete paine,  
 So grete anioie, and soche affraie,  
 That I ne wotte what I shall saie;  
 I drede your wrothe to deserve;  
 Levir me were that knivis kerve  
 My bodie shoud in pecis small  
 Than in any wise it shoud fall  
 That ye wrothid shoud ben with me.  
 Saie boldly thy will, (quod he)  
 I nill be wrothe, if that I maie,  
 For nought that thou shalt to me saie.

Than saied I, Sir, not you displese  
 To knowin of my grete unese,  
 In which only Love hath me brought,  
 For painis grete, disese, and thought,  
 Fro daie to daie it doeth me drie;  
 Suppelieth not, Sir, that I lie;  
 In me five woundis did he make,  
 The fore of whiche shall nevir flake  
 But ye the bothom graunte me  
 Whiche is most paussaunt of beaute,  
 My life, my deth, and my martyre,  
 And tresour that I moste desire.  
 Than Bialacoil, affrayid all,  
 Sayid, Sir, it maie not befall  
 That ye desire; it maie not rise;  
 What! would ye shende me in this wife?  
 A mokill folè than I were  
 If I suffrid you' awaie to bere  
 The freshe bothom so faire of sight,  
 For it were neithir skill ne right  
 Of the rosir ye broke the rinde,  
 Or take the Rose asorne his kinde:  
 Ye are not curteis to aske it;  
 Let it still on the rosir sit;  
 Let it growe till it' amendid be,  
 And perfily come to beaute;  
 I n'olde not that it pullid were  
 Fro the rosir that doth it bere,  
 To me it is so lese and dere.  
 With that anon stert out Daungere

Out of the place where he was hidde;  
 His malice in his chere was kidde:  
 Full grete he was, and blacke of hewe,  
 Sturdie and hidous, who so' him knewe;  
 Like sharpe urchons his here was growe,  
 His eyes red-sparching as fire glowe;  
 His nose frouncid full kirkid stode;  
 He come criande as he were wode,  
 And saied, Bialacoil, tel me why  
 Thou bringist hidir so boldely  
 Him that so nigh to the rofere?  
 Thou worchist in a wrong manere;  
 He thinkith to dishonour the;  
 Thou art well worthy to 'have malgre  
 To let him of the rofere witte:  
 Who servith Fellone is ill quitte.  
 Thou woldist have doen grete bounte,  
 And he with shame would quite the.  
 Flie hens, felowe; I rede the go;  
 It wantith lite he wol the flo,  
 For Bialacoil ne knewe the nought  
 Whan the to serve he set his thought,  
 For thou wolt shame him if thou might  
 Bothe again reson and 'gainst right:  
 I woll no more in the assie  
 That comest so slightly for t' espie,  
 For it provith wondirly wele  
 Thy sleight and treson every dele.  
 I durst no more make there abode  
 For the chorle, he was so wode:  
 So gan he threttin and manace,  
 And through the haie he did me chace,  
 For fere of him I trembled and quoke,  
 So chorlishely his hedde he shoke,  
 And saied, If est he might me take  
 I shoud nat from his hondis scape,  
 Than Bialacoil is fled and matè,  
 And I all sole disconsolate  
 Was lest alone in pain and thought;  
 Fro shame to deth I was nigh brought:  
 Than thought I on my high folie,  
 How that my bodie uttirlic  
 Was yeve to paine and to martire,  
 And therto had I so grete ire,  
 That I ne durst the hayis passe;  
 There was no hope, there was no grace:  
 I trowe nevir man wiste of pain  
 But he were laced in Lov's chain,  
 Ne no man wist, (and soth it is)  
 But if he love, what angir is.  
 Love holdeth his heste to me right wele;  
 Whan pain (he sayid) I shoud fele  
 No herte maie thinke no tonge saie  
 A quartir of my wo and pain;  
 I might not with the angir last;  
 Mine herte in point was for to brast  
 Whan I thought on the Rose, that so  
 Was thorough Daungir cast me fro.  
 A long while stode I in that state,  
 Till that me sawe so madde and mate  
 The ladie of the highè ward,  
 Whiche from her toure lokid thidirward,  
 Reson men clepin that lady,  
 Whiche from her toure delivirly

Came doun to me withoutin more;  
 But she was neither yong ne hore,  
 Ne high ne lowe, ne fatte ne lene,  
 But best, as it were in a mene:  
 Her eyin two were clere and light  
 As a candill that brennith bright;  
 And on her hedde she had a croune;  
 Her semid well an high persoun,  
 For round environ her crounet  
 Was full of riche stonis afret;  
 Her godely semblaunt by devise  
 I trowe was made in Paradise,  
 For Nature had never soche grace  
 To forge a worke of soche compage;  
 For certain, but if the' lettir lie,  
 Grete God himself, that is so hie,  
 Formid her astir his image,  
 And yafe her sithe soche avauntage  
 That she hath might and seignorie  
 To kepè men from all folie:  
 Who so woll trowè welc her lore  
 Ne maie offendin nevirmore.

And while I stode thus derke and pale  
 Refon began to me her tale:  
 She saied, Al haile, my swete frende!  
 Folie and childhod woll the shende,  
 Whiche the have put in grete afraie;  
 Thou hast bought dere the time of Maie,  
 That made thin herte merie to be;  
 In evill time thou wentest to se  
 The gardin whereof Idilnesse  
 Ybare the keie and was maistresse,  
 Whan that thou yedist in the daunce  
 With her, and haddin acquaintaunce;  
 Her acquaintaunce is perillous,  
 First soft, and astir full noious;  
 She hath the trashid without wene;  
 The god of Love had the nat sene,  
 Ne had Idilnesse the conveide  
 Within the vergewhere Mirthe him pleide;  
 If Folie have surprisid the  
 Doe so that it recovered be,  
 And be well ware to take no more  
 Counsaile that grevith astir fore:  
 He' is wise that woll himself chastise.

Though a yong man in any wise  
 Trespasse emong and doe folie,  
 Let him nat dwelle, but hastilie  
 Let him amende what so he mis;  
 And eke I counsaile the i-wis  
 The god of Love wholly foryete,  
 That hath the in soche pain ylete,  
 And the in herte tourmentid so;  
 I can not sene how thou maiest go  
 Othir waies the to garisoun,  
 For Daungere, that is so feloun,  
 Fellie purposeth the to werreie,  
 Whiche is fulle cruill, sothe to seie.

And yet of Daungere cometh no blame;  
 In reward of my daughtir Shame,  
 Whiche hath the rosis in her warde,  
 As she that maie be no musarde,

And Wickid Tong is with these two,  
 That suffrith no man thidir go,  
 For er a thing he doe he shall,  
 Where that he comith ovir all,  
 In fourtie placis, if' it be fought,  
 Saie thing that nere was don ne wrought,  
 So moche traifon is in his male,  
 Of falsenesse for to faine a tale.  
 Thou delest with angrie folke i-wis,  
 Wherefore to the bettir is  
 From these folkis awaie to fare,  
 For thei woll make the live in care;  
 This is the ill that Love thei call,  
 Wherein there is but folie all,  
 For love is folie every dell;  
 Who loveth in no wise maie doc well,  
 Ne set his thought on no gode werke;  
 His schole he lefeth if he be clerke,  
 Or othir craft if that he be  
 He shall not thrive therein, for he  
 In love shal have more passioun  
 Than monke, or hermite, or chanoun.  
 This pain is herd out of mesure;  
 The joie maie no while endure;  
 And eke in the possession  
 Is mochil tribulacioun;  
 The joie it is so short lasting,  
 And but in hape is the getting;  
 I se there many in travaile  
 That at the last shall foully faile;  
 I was nothing thy counsailler,  
 Whan thou were made the homager  
 Of god of Love to hastily,  
 Where was no wisedome but folie;  
 Thine harte was jolie but not sage  
 Whan thou were brought in soche a rage  
 To yelde the up so redily  
 To Love of his grete maistiry.

I rede the Love awaie to drive,  
 That maketh the reche not of thy live;  
 The folie more fro dai to daie  
 Shall growe but thou it put awaie;  
 Take with thy tethe the bridill faste  
 To daunt thy herte, and eke thec aste,  
 If that thou maiest, to get defence  
 For to redresse thy first offence;  
 Who so his herte alwaie woll leve  
 Shall finde emong that shall him greve.

Whan I her herd thus me chastise  
 I answerde in full angrie wise,  
 I prayid her cesse of her speche  
 Eithir to chastise me or teche,  
 To biddè me my thought refrein,  
 Whiche Love hath caught in his demein:  
 What wenin ye Love woll consent  
 (That me asleyith with bowe bent)  
 To drawe mine herte out of his honde,  
 Whiche is so quickly in his bonde?  
 That ye counsaile maie never be,  
 For whan he first arestid me  
 He toke mine herte so fore him till  
 That it is nothing at my will;



He taught it so him for to obeie  
 That he it sparrid with a keie.  
 I praie you let me be all still,  
 For ye maie well, if that ye will,  
 Your wordis waste in idilnesse,  
 For attirly, withoutin gesse,  
 All that ye saie is but in vain;  
 Me were levir die in the pain  
 Than Love to meward should sette,  
 Falshede or trefon on me sette:  
 I woll me gettin pris or blame,  
 And love true for to save my name:  
 Who me chastifith I him hate.  
 With that worde Refon went her gate,  
 Whan she sawe for no sermoning  
 She might me fro my folie bring:  
 Than dismayid I left all sole,  
 For-werie, for-wandred, as a sole,  
 For I ne knewe no cherisaunce:  
 Than fell into my remembraunce  
 How Love ybadde me to purveie  
 A felawe to whom I might seie  
 My counsaile and my privite,  
 For that should moche availin me.  
 With that bethought I me that I  
 Yhad a felaw faste by  
 True and sikir, curteis and hende,  
 And he called was by name a Frende;  
 A truer Felawe was no where none.  
 In haste to him I went anone,  
 And to him all my wo I told,  
 Fro him right nought I would withhold,  
 I tolde him all withoutin were,  
 And made my compleint on Daungere,  
 How for to seie he was hidous,  
 And to meward contrarious,  
 The whichè through his cruilte  
 Was in point to have meimid me,  
 With Bialacoil whan he me seie  
 Within the gardin walke and pleie  
 Fro me he made him for to go,  
 And I be left alone in wo;  
 I durst no lengir with him speke,  
 For Daungir saied he would be wreke  
 Whan that he sawe how that I went  
 The freshe bothom for to hent,  
 If I were hardie to come nere  
 Bitwene the haie and the rosere.  
 This frende, whan he wist of my thought,  
 He discomfortid me right nought!  
 But saied, Felawe, be nat so madde,  
 Ne so abashid nor bestadde;  
 My selfe I knowe full well Daungere,  
 And how that he is fiers of chere,  
 At primè temps, Love to manace;  
 Full oft I have ben in his case;  
 A felon first though that he be,  
 Astir thou shalt him souple se:  
 Of long passid I knewe him wele;  
 Ungodelie first though men him sele  
 He woll meke afre in his bering  
 Ben for service and obeising:  
 I shall the tell what thou shalt doo;  
 Mekely I rede thou go him to,

Of herte praie him specially  
 Of thy trespase to have mercie,  
 And hotin him well here to plesse,  
 That thou shalt ner more him displese:  
 Who can best serve of flattery  
 Shall plesse Daungir most attirly.  
 My frende hath saied to me so wele  
 That he me end hath somedele,  
 And eke allegged of my tourment,  
 For through him had I hardiment  
 Again to Daungir for to go,  
 To preve if I might make him so.

To Daungir cam I all ashamed,  
 The whiche aforne me had yblamed,  
 Desiring for t' apese my wo,  
 But over hedge durst I nat go,  
 For he forbode me the passage:  
 I founde him cruill in his rage,  
 And in his honde a grete bourdoun:  
 To him I knelid lowe adoun,  
 Full meke of port and simple of chere,  
 And saied, Sir, I am comin here  
 Only to ask of you mercie;  
 It grevith me full gretily  
 That evir I have wrathid you,  
 But for to amende I am come now,  
 With all my might bothe loude and still  
 To doin right at your own will,  
 For Love madin me for to do  
 That I have trespassed hidirto,  
 Fro whome I ne maie drawe mine herte,  
 Yet shall I nere for joie ne smerte  
 (What so befall me, gode or ill)  
 Offendin more again your will;  
 Levir I have endure disese  
 Than doe that whiche should you displese.

I you require and praie that ye  
 Of me have mercie and pite,  
 To stint your ire that grevith so,  
 That I woll swere for evir mo  
 To be redressed at your liking  
 If I trespase in any thing,  
 Save that (I praie the) graunte me  
 A thing that maie nat warnid be,  
 That I maie love all onily,  
 None othir thing of you aske I;  
 I shall doin all wele i-wis,  
 If of your grace you graunt me this,  
 And that ye maie nat lettin me,  
 For well wote ye that love is fre,  
 And I shall loven soche that I will,  
 Who evir like it well or ill,  
 And yet ne would I for all Fraunce  
 Doe thing to doe you displeaunce.

Than Daungir fill in his entent  
 For to foryeve his male talent,  
 But all his wrathe yet at the last  
 He hath relefed, I praied so fast.  
 Shortly, (he sayid) thy request  
 Is nat to moki, dishonest,

Ne I woll nat wernin it the,  
 For yet nothing engrevith me;  
 For though thou love thus evirmore  
 To me is neithir soft ne fore:  
 Love where the list, what rechith me?  
 So ferre thou fro my rois be;  
 Trust not on me for none affaie  
 In any time to passe the haie.

Thus hath he grauntid my praier:  
 Than went I forth withoutin were  
 Unto my frende, and told him all  
 Whiche was right joifull of my tale.  
 (He saied) Now goeth well thine affaie;  
 He shall to the be debonaire;  
 Though he aforne was dispitous  
 He shall hereaftir be gracious;  
 If he were touched on some gode vein  
 He should yet retwin on thy pein:  
 Suffir, I rede, and no bolste make  
 Till thou at gode mes maicst him take.

By suffraunce and by wordis soft  
 A man maie ovircomin oft  
 Him that aforne he had in drede,  
 In bokis sothly as I rede.  
 Thus hath my frende with grete comfort  
 Avauncid me with high disport,  
 Whiche would me gode as moche as I;  
 And than anon full sodainly  
 I toke my leve, and streight I went  
 Unto the haie, for grete talent  
 I had to fene the freshe bothom  
 Whercin laie my salvacion,  
 And Daungir toke kepe if that I  
 Kepe him covinaunt truely:  
 So fore I drede his manasing  
 I durst not brekin his bidding,  
 For lest that I were of him shent  
 I brake not his commaundiment,  
 For to purchasin his gode will  
 It was for to comin there till;  
 His mercie was to ferre behinde  
 Ykept, for I ne might it finde:  
 I complainid and sighid fore,  
 And languishid evir the more,  
 For I ne durst nat ovir go  
 Unto the Rose I lovid so,  
 Throughout my deming uttirly  
 That he had knowlege certainly:  
 Than Love me ladde in sochē wife  
 That in me there was no feintise  
 Ne falschedde, ne no trecherie,  
 And yet he full of villanie,  
 And of disdaie and cruilte,  
 On me ne would have no pite  
 His cruill will for to refrain,  
 Tho I wept aie and me complain.

And while I was in this tuzment  
 Were come of grace, by God ysent,  
 Dame Fraunchise, and with her Pite,  
 Fulfilde the bothom of bounte:  
 Thei go to Daungir anon right  
 To ferthir me with all ther might,

And helpe me in worde and in dede;  
 For well thei sawe that it was nede.  
 First of her grace Dame Fraunchise  
 Ytakin hath of this emprise;  
 She saied Daungir, grete wrong ye doe  
 To worch this man so mochil woe,  
 Or pinin him so angirlye,  
 It is to you grete vilanie;  
 I can not se ne why ne how  
 That he hath trespassed again you,  
 Save that he loveth, wherefore ye shold  
 The more in charite' of him hold:  
 The force of Love maketh him do this;  
 Who would him blame he did amis:  
 He levith more than he maie doe;  
 His pain is harde ye maie se lo!  
 And Love in no wise would consent  
 That he have powir to repent,  
 For though that quicke ye would him flo  
 Fro Love his herte ne maie nat go.

Now, swet Sir, it is your ese  
 Him for to angir or disese.  
 Alas! what may it you avaunce  
 To doen to him so grete grevaunce?  
 What worship is it again him take,  
 Or on your man a werrē make;  
 Sithe he so lowlie every wise  
 Is redy as ye luste devise?  
 If Love have caught him in his lace,  
 You for t' obaie in every cace,  
 And ben your subject at your will,  
 Should ye therfore willin him ill?  
 Ye should him sparin more all out  
 Than him that is bothe proude and stout:  
 Curtesie would that ye succoure  
 Them that ben meke undir your cure:  
*His herte is hard that woll not meke  
 Whan men of mekenesse him beseke.*

This is certain, sayid Pite,  
 We se oft that humilite  
 Bothe ire and also felonie  
 Venquish'eth, and also melancolie,  
 To stondin forth in soche duresse  
 This cruilte and wickednesse;  
 Wherefore I praie you, Sir Daungere,  
 For to maintain no lengir here  
 Soche cruill werre again your man,  
 As wholly your's as er he can,  
 Nor that ye worchin no more wo  
 On this caitife languishing so,  
 Whiche woll no more to you trespase,  
 But put him wholly in your gracc:  
 And his offence ne was but lite;  
 The god of Love it was to wite  
 That he your thrall so gretely is:  
 If ye him harme ye doen amis,  
 For he hath had full hard perraunce  
 Sith that ye rest him th' aquaintaunce  
 Of Bialacoil, his most joie,  
 Whiche all his pains might acoie:  
 He was before anoyid fore,  
 But than ye doublid him well more,

For he of blisse hath ben ful bare  
 Sith Bialacoil was fro him fare :  
 Love hath to him done grete distresse,  
 He hath no nede of more duresse :  
 Voidith from him your ire I rede ;  
 Ye maye not winnin in this dede :  
 Maketh Bialacoil repaire again  
 And havith pite on his pain,  
 For Fraunchise woll, and I Pite,  
 That mercifull to him ye be ;  
 And sirhe that she and I accorde  
 Have upon him misericorde,  
 For I you praie, and eke moneste,  
 Nought to refusin our requeste,  
 For he is hard and fell of thought,  
 That for us two woll doe right nought.  
 Daungir ne might no more endure,  
 He mekid him unto mesure.

I woll in no wise, saieth Daungere,  
 Denie that ye have askid here,  
 It were to grete uncurtisie ;  
 I woll ye have the companie  
 Of Bialacoil, as ye devise ;  
 I woll him lettin in no wise.  
 To Bialacoil than went in his  
 Fraunchise, and saied full curtislie,  
 Ye have to long yben deignous  
 Unto this lovir and daunge'rous,  
 Fro him to withdrawe your presence,  
 Whiche hath doe to him grete offence,  
 That ye not would upon him se,  
 Wherefore a sorowfull man is he :  
 Shape ye to paie him and to plesse,  
 Of my love if ye woll have ese :  
 Fulfill his will : sith that ye knowe  
 Daungir is dauntid and brought lowe  
 Through helpe of me and of Pite  
 You dare no more aserde to be.

I shall doin right as ye will,  
 Saieth Bialacoil, for it is skill,  
 Sith Daungir woll that it so be ;  
 Than Fraunchise hath him sent to me.

Bialacoil at the beginning  
 Saluid me in his comming ;  
 No straungeneffe was in him sene  
 No more than he ne' had wrathid ben ;  
 As faire semblaunt than shewed he me,  
 And godely, as aforne did he,  
 And by the honde withoutin doubt  
 Within the haie right all about  
 He lad me with a right gode chere,  
 All environ on the vergere  
 That Daungere had me chafid fro.  
 Now have I leve ovre' all to go,  
 Now am I raised at my devise  
 Fro hell up unto paradise...  
 Thus Bialacoil of gentilnesse  
 With all his pain and businesse  
 Hath shewid me onely of grace  
 The estirs of the fote place.

I sawe the Rose, whan I was nigh,  
 Was gretir woxin and more high,

Freshe and roddy, and faire of hewe,  
 Of colour evir illiche newe :  
 And whan I had it longè sene  
 I sawe that through the levis grene  
 The Rose spred to spannishing,  
 To sene it was a godely thing,  
 But it ne was so spredè on brede  
 That men within might knowe the fede,  
 For it covert ywas and close  
 Bothe with the leves and with the Rose ;  
 The stalke was even' and grene upright,  
 It was thereon a godely sight,  
 And well the bettir without wene  
 For that the fede was not ysene :  
 Full faire it sprad, the god of Blesse,  
 For soche an othir as I gesse  
 Aforne ne was, ne more vermaile ;  
 I was abawed for marveile,  
 For er the fairir that it was  
 The more I'am boundin in Love's laas.  
 Long I abode there, sothe to saie,  
 Til Bialacoil I gan to praie,  
 Whan that I sawe him in no wise  
 To me to warnin his service,  
 That he to me would graunte a thing  
 Whiche to remembre' is well sitting,  
 This is to saie, that of his grace  
 He would me yeve leifar and space,  
 To me that was so desirous  
 To have a kissing precious  
 Of the so godely freshe rose  
 That so swetely smelleth in my nose,  
 For if it you displeid nought  
 I woll gladly, as I have sought,  
 Havin a kisse therof frely  
 Of your yeste, for certainly  
 I woll none have but by your leve,  
 So lothe me werre you for to greve.

He sayid, Frende, so God me spede,  
 Of Chastite I have soche drede,  
 Thou shouldest not warnid be for me ;  
 But I dare not for Chastite ;  
 Again her dare I not misdooe,  
 For alwaie biddith she me so  
 To yeve no lovir leve to kisse,  
 For who thereto may winnen, i-wisse  
 He of the surplus of the praie  
 May live in hope to get some daie ;  
 For who so kissing maie attain  
 Of lov'is pain hath (soth to saie)  
 The best and the moste avinaunt,  
 And ernest of the reminaunt.  
 Of his answer I sighid sore,  
 I durste assaie him the no more,  
 I had suche drede to greve him aie ;  
 A man should not to muche assaie  
 To chafe his frende out of mesure,  
 Nor put his life in avinture ;  
 For no man at the first stroke  
 Ne may not fel adoun an oke,  
 Nor of the reins have the wine  
 Till grapes be ripe and well a-fine,



Be fore empresse, I you ensue,  
 And drawin out of the pressure :  
 But I, forpeinid wondir strong,  
 Thoughte that I abode right long  
 Astir the kisse in paine and wo,  
 Sith I to kisse desirid so ;  
 Till that rewing on my distresse  
 There comin Venus the goddesse,  
 (Whiche aie weryith Chastite)  
 Came of her grace to socour me,  
 Whose might is knowin ferre and wide,  
 For she is mothir of Cupide,  
 The god of Love, as blinde as stone,  
 That helpith lovirs many one.  
 This lady brought in her right honde  
 Of brenning fire a blasing bronde,  
 Whereof the flame and hotte fire  
 Hath many a lady in desire  
 Of love ybrought, and fore yhette,  
 And in her service her herte sette.  
 This lady was of gode entaile,  
 Right wondirful of appaile ;  
 By her atire so bright and shene  
 Men might perceivin well and sene  
 She was not of religioun ;  
 Nor I n'il makin mencion  
 Nor of her robe nor of trefour,  
 Of broche ne of her riche attour,  
 Ne of her girdle about her side,  
 For that I n'il not long abide ;  
 But knowith well that certainly  
 She was arrayid richily ;  
 Devoide of pride certaine she was ;  
 To Bialacoil she went a paas,  
 And to him shortely in a clause  
 She sayid, Sir, what is the cause  
 Ye ben of porte so daungirous  
 Unto this lovir and dainous,  
 To graunt him nothing but a kisse ?  
 To warne it him ye done amisse,  
 Sithe well ye wotin how that he  
 Is Love's servaunt, as ye may se,  
 And hath beaute, wher through he is  
 Worthy of love to have the blis.  
 How he' is semely beholde and se,  
 How he is faire, how he is fre,  
 How he is sote and debonaire,  
 Of age yonge, lusty and faire :  
 There is no lady so hauteine,  
 Duchesse, countesse, ne chastelaine,  
 That I n'olde her ungodely  
 For to refuse him uttirly.

His brethe is also gode and swete,  
 And his lippes roddy ; are thei mete  
 Only to plaine and not to kisse ?  
 Graunt him a kisse of gentilnesse.

His teth arne also white and clene ;  
 Me thinkith wrong withoutin wene  
 If ye now warne him, trustith me,  
 To graunte that a kisse have he ;  
 The lasse ye helpe him that ye haste,  
 And the more time shul ye waste.

Whan the flame of the very bronde  
 That Venus brought in her right honde

Had Bialacoil with his hete snete  
 Anone he bade me without lete,  
 And grauntid me the Rose to kisse,  
 Than of my paine I ganne to lisse,  
 And to the Rose anon went I,  
 And kissid it ful faithfully.  
 Nede no man aske if I was blith  
 Whan the favour so sote and lish  
 Stroke to mine hert withoutin more,  
 And me alleggid of my fore,  
 So was I ful of joye and blisse ;  
 It is faire suche a floure to kisse ;  
 It was so sote and savirous  
 I might not be so anguissous  
 That I mote glad and joly be ;  
 Whan that I do remembre me  
 Yet evre among (sotly to saine)  
 I suffre noie and mochil paine.

The se may nevir be so still.  
 But with a litill winde at will  
 May ovirwhelme and tourne also  
 As it were wode in wawis go ;  
 Astir the calme the trouble loue  
 Mote folow, and chaunge as the mone.

Right so fareth Love, that felde in one  
 Holdeth his ancre, for right anone  
 Whan thei in ese wene best to live  
 They ben with tempest all fordrive.  
 Who servith Love can tell of wo  
 The stoundmele joye mote ovirgo ;  
 Now he hurtith and now he cureth,  
 For selde in o pointe Love endureth.

Now it is right me to procede  
 How Shame gan medle and take hede,  
 Through whom fel angirs I have hade,  
 And how the stronge wall was made,  
 And the castell of brede and length,  
 That god of Love wan with his strength :  
 Al this in Romaunce will I set,  
 And for no thing ne will I let,  
 So that it liking to her be  
 That is the floure of all beaute,  
 For she may best my labour quite  
 That I for her love shal endite.

Wickid Tonge, whiche that the covine  
 Of every lovir can devine  
 Worste, and aie addith more somdele,  
 (For wickid tonge saith nevir wele)  
 To mewarde bare he right grete hate,  
 Espying me erly and late,  
 Til he hath sene the gretè chere  
 Of Bialacoil and me ifere ;  
 He ne might not his tonge withstonde  
 Worste to reportin than he fonde,  
 He was so ful of cursid rage :  
 It sat him wele of his linage,  
 For him an Irishe woman bare :  
 His tonge was filid sharpe and square,  
 And right poignaunt, and right kerving,  
 And wondir bittir in speking ;  
 For whan that he me gan espie  
 He swore (affirming sikirly)

Bitwene Bialacoil and me  
 Was ill aquitaunce and prive :  
 He spake therof so folie  
 That he awakid Jelousie,  
 Whiche all astraied in his rising,  
 Whan that he herd the jangling;  
 He ran anon as he were wode  
 To Bialacoil here that he stode,  
 Which had levir in this cas  
 Have ben at Reines or Amias  
 For fote-hote in his felonie  
 To him thus saide Jelousie;  
 "Why hast thou ben so negligent  
 To kepin, whan I was absent,  
 This vergir here leste in thy warde?  
 To me thou haddist no regarde  
 To trust (to thy confusion)  
 Him thus, to whom suspicion  
 I have right grete, for it is nede,  
 It is well shewid by the dede :  
 Grete faute in the now have I founde;  
 By God anon thou shalt be bounde,  
 And faste lockin in a toure,  
 Withoutin resuite or socoure.

"For Shame to long hath be the fro;  
 Ovir fond she was ago;  
 Whan thou hast lost both drede and fere  
 It semid well she was not here;  
 For she was besy in no wise  
 To kepin the and to chastice,  
 And for to helpin Chastite  
 To kepe the rofir, as thinketh me,  
 For than this boie knave so boldly  
 Ne shoulde nat have be hardy,  
 Ne in this vergir had suche game,  
 Which now me tournith to grete thame."

Bialacoil n'is what to saie;  
 Fulsaine he would have fled awaie;  
 For fere have hyid, ne'ere that he  
 All sodainly toke him with me;  
 And whan I sawe that he had so  
 This Jelousie takin us two,  
 I was astraied, and knewe no rede;  
 But fledde away for very drede.  
 Than Shame came forth ful simply;  
 She wende have trespassed ful gretely,  
 Humble of her porte, and made it simple,  
 Wering a vaile in stede of wimple,  
 As nonnis done in ther abbey :  
 Bicause her hert was in affray  
 She gan to speke within a throwe  
 To Jelousie right wondir lowe.  
 First of his grace she him besought,  
 And sayid, Sir, ne levith nought  
 Wickid Tonge, that false espie,  
 Which is so glad to faine and lie;  
 He hath you made through flatiring  
 On Bialacoil a false lesing;  
 His falsnesse is not now a newe,  
 It is to longe that he him knewe;  
 VOL. I.

This ne is not the firste daie,  
 For Wickid Tonge hath custome aie  
 The yonge folkis to bewrie,  
 And false lesingis on 'hem lie.  
 Yet nere-thelesse I se among  
 That the soigne it is so long  
 Of Bialacoil, hertis to lure  
 In Lov's service for to endure,  
 Ydrawing such folke him to  
 That he hath nothing with to do,  
 But in sothnesse I troye nought  
 That Bialacoil had er in thought  
 To do trespass or vilanie,  
 But for his mothir Curtise  
 Hath taught him evir for to be  
 Gode of aquitaunce and prive,  
 For he lovith none hevinesse,  
 But mirth and play, and all gladnesse;  
 He hatith eke alle trechours,  
 And soleine folke and envious,  
 For ye wele wetin how that he  
 Wol evir glad and joyful be  
 Honestly with folke to pley :  
 I have be negligent in sey  
 To chastise him, therefore now I  
 Of herte yerie you here mercy,  
 That I have ben so rechiles  
 To tamin him withouten lecs;  
 Of my foly I me repent;  
 Now wol I whole set mine entent  
 To kepin both low and still  
 Bialacoil to do your will.

O Shame ! o Shame ! saide Jelousie,  
 To be bitraied grete drede have I;  
 Lecherie hath yclombe so hie,  
 That almost blerid is mine eie :  
 No wondir is if drede have I,  
 Ovir all feignith Lechery,  
 Whose might ygrowith night and dey  
 But in cloistre and in abbey;  
 Chastite is werried ovir all,  
 Therefore I woll with sikir wall  
 Close both the rofis and rosere;  
 I have to long in this manere  
 Leste 'hem unclosid wilfully,  
 Wherfore I am right inwardly  
 Sorowfull, and repentè me;  
 But now thei shall no lengir be  
 Unclosid; and yet I drede fore  
 I shall repentè ferthirmore,  
 For the game goith all amis;  
 Counsaile I muste newe i-wis :  
 I have to long ytrustid the,  
 But now it shal no lengir be,  
 For he may best in every coile  
 Decevin that men trustin moste :  
 I se well that I am nigh shent  
 But if I set my full entent  
 Some remedie for to purveie,  
 Wherfore closin I shall the way  
 From them that woll the Rose espie;  
 And come to waite me vilonie;  
 For now in gods faith and in trouthe  
 I wol not lettin for no south.

To live the more in flkerneffe;  
 Do make anon a fortireffe,  
 Than close the rosis of gode favour;  
 In middis shal I make a tour  
 To put Bialacoil in prison,  
 For evir I drede me of trefon  
 I trow I shal him kepe so  
 That he shal have no might to go  
 About to makin companie  
 To them that thinke of vilanie,  
 Ne to no fuche as hath ben here  
 Aforne, and found in him gode chere,  
 Whiche han assailid him to shende,  
 And with ther towandise to blende:  
 A sole is eith to begile;  
 But may I live a litil while  
 He shal forthinke his faire semblaunt;  
 And wilst that worde came Drede Avaunt,  
 Which was abashed, and in grete fere  
 Whan he wist Jelousie was there,  
 He was for drede in fuche affray  
 That not a worde durste he say,  
 But quaking stode ful stil alone,  
 (Til Jelousie his way was gone)  
 Save Shame, that him not forsoke;  
 Both Drede and she ful fore quoke,  
 Til at the laste Drede abraide,  
 And to his cofin Shame faide:  
 Shame, (he said) in sothfastnesse  
 To me it is gret hevinesse  
 That the noife is so ferre ygo,  
 And eke the sclaudir, of us two;  
 But fithin that it is befall,  
 We maie it not againe call  
 Whan onis sprongin is a fame;  
 For many' a yere withoutin blame  
 We have ben, and many a day,  
 For many' an Aprill, many' a May,  
 We han ypassid nothing shamed,  
 Til Jelousie hath us yblamed  
 Of mistrust and suspection  
 Causelesse, without encheson:  
 Go we to Daungir hastily,  
 And let us shewe him opinly  
 That he hath not a right ywrought;  
 Whan that he settè not his thought  
 To kepin bettir the purpise;  
 In his doing he is not wise;  
 He hath to us do gretè wrong,  
 That hath suffrid now so long  
 Bialacoil to have his will  
 Allè his lustis to fulfill:  
 He must amende it uttirly,  
 Or els shal he vilainously  
 Exilid be out of this londe;  
 For he the werre maie not withstonde  
 Of Jelousie, nor bere the grefe,  
 Sithe Bialacoile is at mischefe.

To Daungir, Shame and Drede anon  
 The rightè way ben both ygon;  
 The chorle thei foundin 'hem aforne  
 Ligging undir an hawethorne;

Undir his hede no pilowe was  
 But in the stede a trusse of gras;  
 He slombrid, and a knappe he toke,  
 Til Shame pitously him shoke,  
 And grete manace on him gan make.  
 Why slepist thou whan thou should wake?  
 (Quod Shame) thou doest us vilanie.  
 Who trustith the he doth folie  
 To kepe rosis or bothoms  
 Whan thei ben faire in ther fasons:  
 Thou arte wexe to familiere  
 Wher thou should be straunge of chere  
 Stoute of thy porte, redy to greve:  
 Thou doest gret folie for to leve  
 Bialacoil here inne to call  
 The yongir man to shenden us all:  
 Though that thou slepe we mowin here  
 Of Jelousie grete noife here:  
 Art thou now laie? rise up an hic,  
 And stoppe sone and delivirly  
 Allè the gappis of the hay;  
 Do no favour I do the pray:  
 It fallith nothing to thy name  
 To make sayre semblaunt wherethou mayste blame.

If Bialacoil be swete and fre,  
 Doggid and fel thou shouldist be,  
 Forward and outrageous i-wis;  
 A chorle chaungith that curteis is:  
 This have I herde oft in saying,  
 That man ne maie for no daunting  
 Make a sperhauke of a bosarde:  
 Al men wol hold the for musarde  
 That debonaire have foundin the:  
 It sitteth the nought curteis to be:  
 To do men plesaunce or servise  
 In the it is recreaundise:  
 Let thy werkis ferre and nere  
 Be like thy name, whiche is Daungere.  
 Than als abashed in shewing  
 Anon spake Drede, right thus saying  
 And sayid, Daungir, I drede me  
 That thou ne woltè besy be  
 To kepin that thou hast to kepe:  
 Whan thou shouldest wake thou art a-slepe  
 Thou shalt be grevid certainly  
 If the aspyin Jelousie,  
 Or if he finde the in blame;  
 He hath to day assailid Shame,  
 And chased away with grete manace  
 Bialacoil out of this place,  
 And swerith shortly that he shall  
 Enclose him in a sturdy wall;  
 And al is for thy wickidnesse,  
 For that the failith straungenesse:  
 Thine hert I trowe be failid all;  
 Thou shalt repent in speciall,  
 If Jelousie the sothè knewe,  
 Thou shalt forthinke and forè' rewe.

With that the chorle his clubbe gon shake,  
 Frowning his eyin gan to make,  
 And hidous chere, as man in rage;  
 For yre he brent in his visage;



Whan that he herde him blamid so  
 He said, Out of my wit I go,  
 To be discomfite I have grete wrong;  
 Certis I have now lived to long  
 Sith I may not this clofir kepe:  
 Al quicke I would de dolvin depe  
 Yf any man will more repayre  
 This gardin for hire or payre;  
 Mine hert for ire goith a-fere  
 That I let any entre here:  
 I have do foly now I se,  
 But now it shal amended be:  
 Who settith fote here any more  
 Truly he shall repent it fore,  
 For no man more into this place  
 Of me to entre shall have grace;  
 Levir I had with swerdis twaine  
 Throughout mine hert in every vaine,  
 Percid to be with many a wounde  
 Than slouth should in me be founde:  
 From hennisforth by night or dey  
 I shall defende it if I may  
 Withoutin any excepcion  
 Of eche manir condicion,  
 And if I it any man graunte  
 There holdith me for recreaunte.

Than Daungir on his fete gan stonde  
 And bent a burdon in his honde;  
 Wroth in his ire ne left he nought,  
 But through the vergir he hath sought  
 If he might findin hole or trace  
 Where through that memote forth by pace,  
 Or any gappe, he did it close;  
 That no man might touchin a Rose  
 Of the rosir alle about,  
 He shittith every man without,  
 Thus day by day Daungir is wers,  
 More wondirfull and more divers,  
 And fellir eke than evre he was,  
 For him ful oft I singe alas!  
 For I ne may nought through his ire  
 Recovir that I moste desire;  
 Mine hert, alas! wol brest a-two,  
 For Biatacoil I wrathid so;  
 For certainly in every membre  
 I quake whan that I me remembre  
 Of the bothom whiche that I wolde  
 Ful oft a day sene and beholde;  
 And when I thinke upon the kisse,  
 And how much joie and how much blisse,  
 I hadde through the favour swete,  
 For want of it I grone and grete:  
 Me thinketh I fele yet in my nose  
 The sote favour of the Rose,  
 And now I wote that I mote go  
 So ferre the freshe flouris fro,  
 To me ful welcome were the dethe,  
 Absence therof (alas! me flethe;  
 For whilom with this Rose, alas!  
 I touchid nose, and mouthe, and face,  
 But now the deth I must abide:  
 But Love consent an othir tide

That onis I touche maie and kisse  
 I trow my paine shal nevir lisse;  
 Theron is all my covetise,  
 Whiche brent my hart in any wise;  
 Now shal repaire againe sighing,  
 Long watche on nightes, and no sleping;  
 Thought in wishing, turment, and wo,  
 With many a tourning to and fro,  
 That halfe my paine I cannot tell,  
 For I am fallin into hell  
 From paradise and welthe; the more  
 My turment grevith, more and more  
 Anoyith now the bittirnesse  
 That I to forne have felte swetnesse:  
 And Wickid Tonge throughe his falshe  
 Ycausith all my wo and drede;  
 On me he lieth a pitous charge,  
 Bicause his tonge was to large.

Now is it time shortly that I  
 Tel you somthing of Jelousy,  
 That was in grete suspection:  
 About him leste he no mason  
 That stone could laie, ne no querroun,  
 He hirid hem to make a tour;  
 And first the rosis for to kepe  
 About hem mede he a dicke depe,  
 Right wondir large, and also brode,  
 Upon the which also stode  
 Of squarid stone a sturdy wall,  
 Whiche on a cragge was foundin all,  
 And right grete thicknesse eke it bare;  
 About it was yfoundid square  
 An hundrid fadome on every side;  
 It was al lichte both long and wide:  
 Lest any time it were assailed  
 Ful wel about it was batailed,  
 And rounde environ eke were set  
 Ful many a riche and faire tournet:  
 At every cornir of this wall  
 Was set a tour full principall,  
 And evêriche had without fable  
 A portcolise defensible,  
 To kepe of en'emies, and to greve  
 That there ther force would yprave.

And eke amidde this purprise  
 Was made a tour of grete maistrise,  
 A fairir laugh no man with sight,  
 Large and wide, and of grate might:  
 Thei draddè nought nonè assaut  
 Of ginn or gonn, nor of skassaut:  
 The tempreture of the mortere  
 Was made of lycoure wondir dere,  
 Of quicklime persaunt and egre,  
 Which temprid was with vinegre.  
 The stone was harde of adamaunt  
 Wherof thei made the foundemaunt;  
 The tour was rounde made in compas;  
 In al this world no richir was,  
 Ne bettir ordained therewithall:  
 About the tour was made a wall,  
 So that betwixt that and the toure  
 Rosis were set of swete favoure,  
 With many rosis that thei bete:  
 And eke within the castil were

Springoldis, gounes, bowes, and archers,  
 And eke about at the corners  
 Men seinin ovir the wall stonde  
 Gret engins, which ywere nere honde,  
 And in the kernils here and there  
 Of arblastirs grete plentie were;  
 None armour mighte ther stroke withstonde,  
 It were foly to prese to honde;  
 Without the dicke were listis made  
 With wal bataillid large and brade,  
 For men and horse should not attaine  
 To nigh the dicke ovir the plaine.  
 Thus Jelousie hath environ  
 Mett about his garnison  
 With wallis rounde and dicke depe,  
 Onely the rofir for to kepe,  
 And Daungir bothe erly and late  
 The keys kept of the uttir gate,  
 The whiche opened towarde the est,  
 And he had with him at the lest  
 Thirty servauntes echone by name.

That othir gate was kept by Shame,  
 Whiche opinid, as it was couthe,  
 Towardis the parte of the southe,  
 Sergeauntes assignid were here to  
 Full many, her will for to do:  
 Than Drede had in her baillie  
 The keping of the constable'rie  
 Towarde the north I understonde,  
 That opened upon the leste honde,  
 The whiche for nothing may be sure  
 But if she do her besy cure  
 Erly on mor'we, and also late,  
 Strongly to shette and barre the gate.  
 Of every thing that she may se  
 Drede is aferde where so she be,  
 For with a pufte of litill winde  
 Drede is astonied in her minde,  
 Therefore for steling of the Rose  
 I rede her nat the yate unclofe:  
 A foul's flight would make her fle,  
 And eke a shadowe, if she it se.

Than Wickid Tonge, full of envy,  
 With soudiers of Normandy,  
 As he that causith all debate,  
 Was kepir of the fourthe gate,  
 And also to the tothir thre  
 He went ful oft for to se.  
 Whan his lotte was to walke a night  
 His instrumentis would be dight  
 For to blowin and makin sounce  
 Oftir than he hath enchesounce,  
 And walkin oft upon the wall,  
 Cornirs and wickittes ovir all  
 Ful narowe serchin and espie:  
 Though he nought sonde yet would he lie  
 Discordaunt er fro armonie,  
 And dissonid fro melodie;  
 Controve he would, and foulè faile  
 With hornpipis of Cornèwaile;

In floitis made he discordaunce,  
 And in his musike, with mischaunce!  
 He wouldè seine with notis newe  
 That he ne fonde no woman trewe,  
 Ne that he sawe nere in his life  
 Unto her husbonde a trewe wife,  
 Ne none so ful of honeste  
 That she n'il laugh and mery be  
 Whan that she hereth or may espie  
 A man spekin of lecherie;  
 Everiche of 'hem hath some vice;  
 One is dishonest, t'other nice;  
 Yf one be ful of vilanie,  
 An othir hath a lico'rous eie;  
 If one be ful of wantonesse,  
 Anothir is a chidireffe.

Thus Wickid Tonge, God yeve him shame!  
 Can put 'hem everichone in blame  
 Without desert, and cauflesse:  
 He lieth though thei ben giltyesse:  
 I have pity to sene the sorowe  
 That wakith bothe evin and morowe  
 To innocentes doth suche grevaunce,  
 I pray God yeve him evil chaunce!  
 That he evir so besy is  
 Of any woman to seine amis.

Eke Jelousie may God confounde!  
 That hath makid a toure so rounde,  
 And made about a garison,  
 To sette Bialacoil in prison,  
 The whiche is shette there in the tour.  
 Ful long to holdè ther sojour,  
 There for to livin in penaunce;  
 And for to do him more grevaunce,  
 Whiche hath ordainid Jelousie,  
 An olde vecke for to espie  
 The manir of his governaunce,  
 The whiche devil in her infaunce  
 Had lernid all of Lov's arte,  
 And of his pleyis take her parte:  
 She was expert in his servise;  
 She knewe eche wrenche and every gise  
 Of Love, and every secret wile;  
 It was right harde her to begile.

Of Bialacoil she toke aie hede,  
 That er he liveth in wo and drede  
 He kepte him coye and eke prive,  
 Lest that in him she haddè se  
 Any lite foly countinaunce,  
 For she knew all the oldè daunce.

And astir this whan Jelousie  
 Had Bialacoil in his baillie,  
 And shette him up that was so fre,  
 For sure of him he would ybe,  
 He trustith fore in his castell,  
 The strongè werke him likith well;  
 He dradde nat that no glotons  
 Should stele his rofis or bothoms;  
 The rofis weren assurid all,  
 Defencid with the strongè wall:  
 Now Jelousie full well may be  
 Of drede devoide in liberte;

Whether that he or slepe or wake  
Of his rois may none be take.

But ~~Alas!~~ now morne shall  
Bicause was without the wall:  
Ful moch ~~dole~~ and mone I made;  
Who so had wis what wo I had  
I trowe he would have had pite;  
Love all to dere had sold me;  
The gode that of his love had I  
I went about it al queintly,  
But now through dubling of my paine  
I se he wold it sell again,  
And me a newe bargain here,  
The whiche all out the more is dere  
For the solace that I have lorne  
Than I had it nevyr aforne:  
Certain I am full like in dede  
To him that caste in yerth his fede,  
And hath joie of the newe springing  
Whan it grenith in the ginning,  
And is so faire and freshe of floure,  
Lustie to sene, fote of odoure,  
But er he it in shevis shere  
Maie fall wethir that shall it dere,  
And makin it to fade and fall  
The stalke, the greine, and flouris all,  
That to the tiller is fordoen,  
The hope he had conceived to sone.  
I drede certaine that so fare I,  
For hope and travaile sikirly  
Ben me birafte all with a storme:  
The floure n'ill sedin of my corne,  
For Love hath so avauncid me,  
Whan I began my private  
To Bialacoil all for to tell,  
Whom I ne founde froward ne fell,  
But toke agre all whole my plaie;  
But Love is of so harde assaie,  
That all at ones he revid me  
Whan I weped best above to have be.  
It is of Love as of Fortune,  
That chaungith oft, and n'ill contune,  
Whiche whilom will on folké smile,  
And glombe on 'hem an othir while;  
Now frende now foe thou shalt her sole,  
For a twinkling tournith her whele.  
She can writthin her hedde awaie;  
This is the concourse of her plaie,  
She can arcise that doith mourne,  
And whirle adoune and ovirtourne  
Who sittith hieft but as her lust:  
A sole is he that wold her trust,  
For it is I that am come doune  
Through charge and revolucioun;  
Sithe Bialacoil mote fro me twin,  
Shette in her prison yonde within,  
His absence at mine herte I se,  
For all my joie and all mine hele  
Twas in him and in the Rose,  
That but you wold, whiche him doeth close,  
Opin, that so I maie him se,  
Love wold not that I curid be

Of the painis that I endure,  
Nor of my cruill avinture.

Ah, Bialacoil, mine own dere!  
Though thou be now a prisonere,  
Kepith at lest thine herte to me;  
Suffir not that it dauntid be,  
Ne let not Jelousie in his rage  
Puttin thine herte in no servage:  
Although he chastice the without,  
And make thy bodie to him lout,  
Have herte as harde as diamant,  
Stedfast and stout, and naught pliaunt:  
In prison though thy bodie be  
At large kepe thine herte fre:  
A trewe hert ne will not plie  
For no manace that it maie drie;  
If Jelousie doith the pain  
Quite him his wilè thus again,  
To venge the at lest in thought,  
If othir waie thou mayist nought,  
And in this wise full subtilie  
Worchin and winne the maistiry.  
But yet I am in grete affraie  
Lest thou sholdest nat doe as I saie;  
I drede thou canst me grete maugre  
That thou enprisoned art for me,  
But yet right nought for my trespas,  
For through me nere discovered was  
Yet thing that ought to be secre:  
Well more annoie is in me  
Than is in the of this mischaunce,  
For I endure more hard penaunce  
Than any man can saie or thinke,  
That for the sorowe almoste I sinke:  
Whan I remembir me of my wo  
Full nigh out of my witte I go.  
Inward mine herte I se blede,  
For comfortlesse the deth I drede;  
Owe I nat well to have distresse  
Whan false through ther wickidnesse,  
And traitours, that arne envious,  
To noien me be so coragious?  
Ah, Bialacoil! full well I se  
That thei hem shape to deceve the,  
To make the buxum to ther lawe,  
And with ther corde the to drawe  
Where so 'hem lust, right at ther will;  
I drede thei have the brought there till:  
Withoutin comfort thought me flaeth;  
This game wold bring me to my deth,  
For if that I your gode will lese  
I mote be dedde, I maie not chese,  
And if that thou foryetè me  
Mine herte shall nere in liking be,  
Nor ellifwhere findin solace:  
If I be put out of your grace,  
As it shall nevyr ben I hope,  
Than shuldin I fall in wanhope.  
Alas, in wanhope! naie, parde,  
For I wold nere dispeirid be:  
If Hope me faile, than alle am I  
Ungracious and unworthy:  
U iij



In Hope I woll comfortid be,  
For Love, whan he betought her me,  
Sayid that Hope where so I go  
Should aie be relese to my wo.

But what and she my balis bete,  
And be to me curteis and swete?  
She is in nothing full certain;  
Lovirs she put in full grete pain,  
And makith 'hem with wo to dele:  
Her faise beheste decevith fele,  
For she woll behote sikirly  
And failin astir uttirly.

Ah! that is a full noious thing,  
For mony' a lovir in loving  
Hangeth upon her, and trullith fast,  
Whiche lese ther travaile at the last.

Of thing to commie she wote right nought,  
Therefore if it be wisely fought  
Her counsaile folie is to take;  
For many times whan she woll make  
A full gode syllogisme, I drede  
That astirwarde there shall in dede  
Folowe an ill conclusion:  
This put me in confusion,  
For many times I have it sene,  
That many have begilid bene  
For trust that thei have set in Hope,  
Whiche fell 'hem astirward a-slope,

But nath'les yet gladly she wold  
That he that woll him with her hold  
Had all timis her purpose clere  
Withoutin deceipt any where;  
That she desirith sikirly;  
Whan I her blamed I did foly.  
But what availith her gode will  
Whan she ne maie staunche my stound ill?  
That helpith lite that she maie doe,  
Out take beheste unto my wo,  
And heste certain in no wise  
Without ifete is not to preise.

Whan heste and dede a sondir vary  
Thei doin a gretè contrary:  
Thus am I possid up and doune  
With dele, thought, and confusioun:  
Of my disese there is no number,  
Daungir and Shame me encomber,  
Drede also and Jelosie,  
And Wickid Tong, full of envie,  
Of whiche the sharpe and cruill ire  
Full oft me put in grete martire:  
Thei have my joie fully let,  
Sith Bialacoil thei have beliet  
Fro me in prision wickidly,  
Whom I love so entierly,  
That it wollin my banè be  
But I the sonir maie him se.

And yet moreovir, worst of all,  
There' is set to kepe, foule her befall!  
A rimplid vecke ferre ronne in age,  
Frowning and yel'we' in her visage,

Whiche in awaite lieth daie and night,  
That none of him maie have a sight.

Now mote my sorowe enforced be  
Ful sothe it is that Love yafe me  
Thre wondir yestis of his grace,  
Whiche I have lorne now in this place,  
Sith thei ne maie withoutin drede  
Helpin but lite who takith hede,  
For here availith no Swetè Thought,  
And Swetè Speche helpith right nought,  
The thirde was callid Swete Loking,  
That now is lorne without lesing.

Yestis were faire, but nat for thy  
Thei helpin me but simply  
But Bialacoil losid be  
To gone at large and to be fre;  
For him my life lieth all in dout  
But if he come the rathir out.

Alas! I trowe it woll nat ben,  
For how should I ere more him sene?  
He maie nat out, and that is wrong,  
Bicause the tourè is so strong:  
How should he' out, or by whose prowesse,  
Out of so strong a fortireffe?

By me certain it n'ill be doe,  
God wotte I have no witte therto,  
But well I wote I was in rage  
Whan I to Love did my homage;  
Who was the cause (in sothfastnesse)  
But her self Damè Idilnesse,  
Whiche me conveide through faise praiero  
To' entir into that faise vergere?  
She was to blame me to leve,  
The whiche now doeth me fore greve:  
A fol'is worde is nought to trowe,  
Ne worthe an apple for to lowe;  
Men should him snibbe bittirly  
At primè temps of his folie:  
I was a sole, and she me leved,  
Through whom I am right nought releved:  
She accomplishid all my will  
That now me grevith wondir ill.

Refon me sayid, What should fall  
A sole my self I maie well call,  
That Love aside I had not laied,  
And trowid that Dame Refon faied;  
Refon had bothè skill and right  
Whan she me blamed with all her might  
To medle' of Love, that hath me shent,  
But certain now I woll repent.

And should I repent? naie, parde,  
A false traitour than should I be:  
The devil's cingins would me take  
If evir I Love would forsake,  
Or Bialacoil falsly betraie.  
Should I at mischief hate him? naie,

Sithe he now for his curtise  
Is in prison of Jelousie;  
Curtise certain did he me  
So muche it maie not yoldin be:  
When he the haie passin me lete  
To the Rose faire and swete  
Should therefore conne him maugre?  
Naie, certainly, it shall nat be,  
For Love shall ~~in~~ ~~his~~ gode will,  
Here of me ne through worde or will  
Offence or complaint more or lesse  
Neithir of Hope nor Idlenesse;  
For certis it were wrong that I  
Hatid hem for ther curtise.  
There is not els but suffre' and thinke,  
And wakin whan I shoulde winke,  
Abide in hope till Love through chaunce  
Sende me foccour or allegaunce,  
Expectaunt aie till I maie mete  
To gettin mercie of that swete.

Whilom I thinke how Love to me  
Sayid that he would take at gre  
my service if unpacience  
Ycausid me to doen offence;  
He saied, In thanke I shall it take,  
And high maistr eke they make,  
If Wickidnesse ne reve it the,  
But, sone, I trowe that shall nat be.  
These were his wordis by and by,  
It semed he lovid me truely.

Now is there not but serve him wele  
If that I thinke his thanke to fele:  
My gode, mine harme, lithe whole in me,  
In Love maie no defaute ybe,  
For true Love ne failed nevir man;  
Sothly the faute mote nedis than,  
As God forbide, be founde in me,  
And how it cometh I can not fe.  
Now let it gone as it maie go,  
Wher Love woll foccour me or flo,  
He maie do wholly on me his will;  
I am so fore ybounde him till  
From his service I maie not flene,  
For life and deth withoutin wene  
Is in his hande; I maie nat chese;  
He maie me doe bothe winne and lese:  
And sithe so fore he doeth me greve,  
Yet if my lust he would acheve,  
To Bialacoil godely to be,  
I yeve no force what fell on me;  
For though I die, as I mote nede,  
I praie Love of his godelihede  
To Bialacoil doe gentilnesse,  
For whom I live in soche distresse  
That I mote dyin for penaunce:  
But first withoutin repentaunce  
I will me confesse in gode entent,  
And make in haste my testament,  
As lovirs doin that felen smerte.  
To Bialacoil leve I mine herte  
All whole, withoutin departing  
Or doublenesse or repenting.

*Coment Raïson vient a L'amant.*

Thus as I madin my passage  
In compleint and in cruill rage,  
And I n'ot where to find a leche  
That couthe unto mine helpingeche,  
Sodainly again comin down  
Out of her toure I sawe Refoun,  
Discrete and wise, and full plefaunt,  
And of her porte full avenaunt:  
The right waie she toke unto me,  
Whiche stode in grete perplexite,  
That was poshid in every side,  
That I n'ist where I might abide,  
Till she, demurely sadde of chere,  
Sayid to me as she came nere;  
Mine owne frende, art thou agreved?  
How is this quarell yet achewed  
Of Lov'is side? anon me tell  
Hast thou not yet of love thy fill?  
Art thou nat werie' of thy service  
That the hath grevid in soche wise?  
What joie haste thou in thy loving!  
Is it a swete or bittir thing?  
Canst thou yet chesin, let me se,  
What best thy succour mightin be?  
Thou servist a full noble lorde,  
That maketh the thrall for thy rewarde  
Whiche aie reneweth thy tourment,  
With folie so he hath the blent:  
Thou fell in mischief thilkè daie  
Whan thou diddist, the sothe to saie,  
To him obeisaunce and homage:  
Thou wroughtist nothing as the sage  
Whan thou became his liegè man;  
Thou diddist a grete folie than:  
Thou wistist nat what fell therto,  
With what lorde thou haddist to doe:  
If that thou haddist him well knowe  
Thou haddist nought be brought so lowe,  
For if that thou wiste what it were  
Thou n'oldist serve him halfe a yere,  
No, nat a weke nor halfe a daie,  
Ne yet an houre without delaie:  
Ne nevir I lovid paramours,  
His lordship is so full of shours:  
Knowist him ought?—  
*L'amant.* Ye, Dame, parde.—  
*Raïson.* Naie, naie.—*L'amaunt.* Yes I.—  
*Raïson.* Wherefore, let se.—  
*L'amant.* Of that he sayid I should be  
Glad to have soche a lorde as he,  
And maistr of soche seignorie.—  
*Raïson.* Knowist him no more?—  
*L'amaunt.* Naie, certie, I.  
Save that he yafe me rulis there,  
And went his waie I ne wist where,  
And I abode bounde in balaunce:  
Lo, there a noble cognisaunce!

*Raïson.*

But I woll that thou knowe him now  
Ginning and ende, sithin that thou

Art so anguifhous and fo mate,  
 Disfigurid out of aftate,  
 There maie no wreche have more of wo,  
 Ne catife non endurin fo;  
 It were to every man fitting  
 Of his lorde to have knowleging,  
 For if thou knewe him out of dout  
 Lightly thou shouldift fcapin out  
 Of thy prifon that marrith the.

*L'amaunt.*

Ye, Dame, fithin my lorde is he,  
 And I his man made with mine honde  
 I wouldè right faine undirftonde  
 To knowin of what kinde he be,  
 If any would enforme me.

*Raifoun.*

I would (fayid Refon) the lere,  
 Sithe thou to lerne haft foche desire,  
 And shewin the withoutin fable  
 A thing that is not demonftrable.  
 Thou shalt knowe withoutin science  
 And withoutin experience  
 The thing that maie not knowin be,  
 Ne wift ne shewed in no degre,  
 Thou maieft the fothe of it not witten  
 Although in the it were ywritten;  
 Thou shalt not knowin therof more  
 While thou art rulid by his lore,  
 But unto him that Love will flie  
 The knottè maie unclouid be  
 Whiche hath to the, as it is founde,  
 So longe to knitte and not unbounde;  
 Now fet well thine entencion  
 To here of love the defcripcion.

Love it is an hateful pefe,  
 A fre' acquitance without relefe,  
 And through the fret full of fallhede  
 A fikerneffe all fet in drede;  
 In herte is a difpering hope,  
 And full of hope it is wanhope;  
 A wifè wedneffe, and void refon,  
 A fwete perill in to droun,  
 And hevie burthin light to bere,  
 A wickid wawe awaie to were;  
 It is Charybdis perilous,  
 Difagreable and gracious;  
 It is discordaunce that can acorde,  
 And accordaunce unto discorde;  
 It is conning without science,  
 And wifedome without fapience,  
 Witte withoutin difcrecion,  
 Havoire without poffeffion;  
 It is like helè and whole fickenefse,  
 A trust drounid and dronkinefse,  
 And helth all full of maladie,  
 And charite full of envie,  
 And angre full of aboundaunce,  
 And a full gredie fullfaunce,  
 Delite right full of hevinesse,  
 And dreriness-full of gladneffe,  
 Bittir swetenefse and fwete errour,  
 Right evill favoured gode favour,

A fin that pardone hath withinne,  
 And pardone spottid without finne,  
 A paine alfo it is joious,  
 And felonie right pitçous,  
 Alfo a plaie that felde is ftable,  
 And ftedefastnefs right mevable,  
 A ftrengh weikid to ftonde upright,  
 And a feblenefse full of might,  
 Witte unavifid, fage fohe,  
 And joie full of tourmentrie,  
 A laughtir it is weping aie,  
 Rest that travailith night and daie,  
 Alfo a fwetè hell it is,  
 And a forowfull paradis,  
 A plefaunt gaile and efie prifoun,  
 And full of froftis femir fefoun,  
 Prime temps full of froftis white,  
 And Maie devoide of all delite,  
 With fere braunchis bloffoms ungrene,  
 And newe fruit filled with wintir tene;  
 It is a flowe maie not forbere,  
 Ragges ribanid with gold to were,  
 For all fo well woll Love be sette  
 Undir raggis as riche rotchette,  
 And eke as well by amorettes  
 In mourning blacke as bright burnettes;  
 For none is of fo mokill prife,  
 Ne no man foundin is fo wifè,  
 Ne no man fo high of parage,  
 Ne no man founde of witte fo fage,  
 No man fo hardie ne fo wight,  
 Ne no man of fo mokill might,  
 None fo fullfillid of bounte,  
 That he with love maie dauntid be;  
 All the worldè holdith this waie,  
 Love makith all to gone miswaie  
 But if it be thei of evill life,  
 Whom Genius curfid, man and wifè,  
 That wrongly werke again Nature;  
 None foche I love, ne have no cure  
 Of foche as Lov'is fervauntès ben,  
 And woll nat by my counsaile fleen,  
 For I ne preifin that loving  
 Where through man at the laft ending  
 Shall call 'hem wretchis full of wo,  
 Love grevith 'hem and shendith fo;  
 But if thou wolt well Love efchewe  
 For to efcape out of his mewe,  
 And make all whole the forowe flake,  
 No bettir counsaile maieft thou take  
 Than thinke to flein wel i-wis,  
 Maie nought helpe els, for wit thou this,  
 If thou flie it shall flie the,  
 Folowe' it and folowen shall it the.

*L'amaunt.*

Whan I had herid Refon fain,  
 Whiche had ysplif her fpeche in vain,  
 Dame, (fayid I) I dare well faie  
 Of this avaunt me well I maie,  
 That from your fcole fo deviaunt  
 I am, that nere the more avaunt  
 Right nought I am through your doocline;  
 I dulle undir your difcipline;



I wot no more than I wiste ever,  
 To' me so contrarie and so fer  
 Is every thing that ye me lere,  
 And yet I can it all by partivere;  
 Mine herte foryeteth thereof right nought;  
 It is so wettin in my thought,  
 And depe g. in it is so tender,  
 That all mine herte I can it render,  
 And rede it ovr continually,  
 But to my self lewdist am I.

But sithe ye love diserivin so,  
 And lacke and preise it bothe two,  
 Definith it into this letter,  
 That I-mate thinke on it the better.  
 For I herd nevyr defined here,  
 And wilfully I wuld it lere.—  
*Raison.* If love be ferchid well and fought,  
 It is a sickeneffe of the thought,  
 Annexid and knedde betwixt tweine,  
 Which male and female with o cheine,  
 So frele bindeth, that thei n'll twinne  
 Wedir thereof thei lese or winne;  
 The rote springith through hote brenning  
 In to disordinate desiring  
 For to kissin and to embrace,  
 And at ther lust them to solace;  
 Of othir thing Love retchith nought,  
 But setteth ther herte and all ther thought  
 More for ther delectacioun  
 Than any procreacioun  
 Of other fruit by engendrure,  
 Whiche love to God is nat plesure,  
 For of ther bodie fruit to get  
 Thei yeve no force, thei are so set  
 Upon delite to plaie in fere;  
 And some have also this manere  
 To fainin 'hem for love seke;  
 Soche love I prefe not at a leke,  
 For paramours thei do but faine,  
 To lovin truely thei disdaine;  
 Thei falsin ladies traitourly,  
 And swerne 'hem othis uttirly,  
 With many' a lesing, many' a fable,  
 And all thei findin disceivable.

And whan thei han ther lust ygetten  
 The hote ernes thei all foryetten;  
 Women the harme byin full fore;  
 But men this thiukin evirmore,  
 The lasse harme is, so mote I the,  
 Disceive them than disceivid be,  
 And namily where thei ne maie  
 Findin none othir mene ne waie,  
 For I wote well in sothfastnesse,  
 That who doeth now his businesse  
 With any woman for to dele  
 For any lust that he maie fele,  
 But if it be for engendrure  
 He doeth trespassse I you ensure,  
 For he should settin all his will  
 To gotten a likely thing him till,  
 And to sustain, if that he might,  
 And kepin forth by kind'is right

His owne likeneffe and sensible;  
 For bicause all' is corruptable,  
 And failin should successioun,  
 Ne were the generacioun,  
 Our sect'is strenē for to save,  
 Whan fadre' or mothir aine in grave  
 Ther childrin shulde whan they ben dede  
 Full diligent ben in ther stode  
 To use that worke on soche a wife  
 That one maie through an othir rise;  
 Therefore set kinde therein delite,  
 For men therein should 'hem delite,  
 And of that dede be not erke,  
 But ofte sithis haunt that werke,  
 For none wuld drawe thereof a draught,  
 Ne were delite whiche hath him caught;  
 This had subtil Dame Nature,  
 For none goeth right I the ensue,  
 Ne hath entten whole ne partite,  
 For ther desire is for delite,  
 The whiche forteneid crese, and eke  
 The plaie of love, for oft thei seke  
 And thrall 'hem self, thei be so nice,  
 Unto the prince of every vice,  
 For of eche sinne it is the rote  
 Unlesfull lust, though it be sote,  
 And of all evill the racine,  
 As Tullius can determine,  
 Whiche in his time was full sage,  
 In a boke whiche he made of age,  
 Where that more he ypraisith blde,  
 Though he be crokid and unwelde,  
 And more of commendacioun  
 Than youth in his diseripioun;  
 For youth set bothe man and wife  
 In all perill of soule and life,  
 And perill is, but men have grace,  
 The perill of youth for to pace  
 Without any deth or distresse,  
 It is so full of wildeneffe,  
 So oft it doeth shame and damage  
 To him or unto his linage,  
 It ledith man now up now down,  
 In mokill dissolucioun,  
 And maketh him love ill companie,  
 And lede his life disrulilie,  
 And halte him paied with none estate;  
 Within himself is soche debate  
 He chaungith purpose and entent,  
 And yalte into some covent,  
 To livin astir ther emprise,  
 And lesith fredome and fraunchise  
 That Nature in him had yset,  
 The whiche again he maie not get,  
 If there he make his mansion,  
 For to abide profession;  
 Though for a time his herte absent  
 It maie not faile he shall repent,  
 And eke abidin thiike daie  
 To leve' his abite and gon his waie,  
 And leseth his worship and his name,  
 And dare not come again for shame,  
 But all his life he doeth so mourne,  
 Bicause he dare not home retourne.

Fredome of kinde so lost hath he  
 That nevir maie recurid be,  
 But that if God him grauntin grace  
 That he maie, er he hennis pace,  
 Contein undir obedience,  
 Through the vertue of pacience;  
 For youth set man in all folie,  
 In unthrift and in ribaudrie,  
 In lecherie and in outrage,  
 So oft it chaungith of corage:  
 Youth ginnith oft foche a bargain  
 That maie not end withoutin pain:  
 In grete perill is Youth-hede,  
 Delite so doeth his bridill lede:  
 Delite this hangith, drede the nought,  
 Bothe mann'is bodie and his thought;  
 Onily through youth'is chambere,  
 That to doen ill is customere,  
 And of naught ellis takith hede  
 But onely folkis for to lede  
 Into disport and wildenesse  
 So froward is it from sadnesse,  
 But elde ydrawith 'hem therfro;  
 Who wote it not he maie well go,  
 And mo of 'hem that now arne old,  
 That whilom youth yhad in hold,  
 Whiche yet remembre' of tendir age  
 How it 'hem brought in many' a rage,  
 And many' a folie therin wrought,  
 But now that elde hath 'hem through fought  
 Thei repent 'hem of ther folie  
 That youth 'hem put in jeopardie,  
 In perill and in mokill woe,  
 And made 'hem oft amisse to doe,  
 And sewin evill companie  
 And riot and advouterie.

But Eldè gan againe restraine  
 From suchè folie and refraine,  
 And set men by her ordinaunce  
 In gode rule and in governaunce;  
 But ill she spendith her servise,  
 For no man wol her love ne preise;  
 She is hatid, this wot I wele,  
 Her acquaintaunce would no man fele,  
 Ne han of Eldè companie,  
 Men hate to be of her alie,  
 For no man wold becomin olde,  
 Ne die whan he is yonge and bolde;  
 And Elde mervailith right gretely  
 Whan thei remembre 'hem inwardly  
 Of many' a perillous emprise  
 Whiche that thei wrought in sondry wise,  
 How evir thei might without blame  
 Escape awaie withoutin shame,  
 In youth without any damage,  
 Without represe of ther linage,  
 Lesse of membre, sheding of blode,  
 Perill of deth, or losse of gode.  
 Wotist thou nat where Youth abit,  
 That men so preisin in ther wit?  
 With Delite she yhalte sojour,  
 For both thei dwellin in o tour:

As longe as Youthe is in seson  
 Thei dwellin in one mansion:  
 Delite of Youth woll have service  
 To do what so he woll devise,  
 And youth is redy evirmore  
 For to obey for sinerte or fore  
 Unto Delite, and him to yeve  
 Her service while that she maie live.  
 Where Elde abitte ~~Love~~ <sup>well</sup>  
 Shortily, and no while ydwelle,  
 For thidir behoveth the to go,  
 Yf Deth in youthè the not flo;  
 Of this journey thou maiste not faille,  
 With her Labour and eke Travaile  
 Lodgid ben, with Sorow and Wo,  
 That nevir out of her court go,  
 Paine and Distresse, Sickenesse and Ire,  
 And Melan'coly, that angry fire,  
 Ben of her paleis fenatours,  
 Groning and grutching her herbegeours:  
 The day and night her to tourment  
 With cruill Deth thei her present,  
 And tellin her erliche and late  
 That Death stondeth armid at her gate;  
 Than bring thei to her remembraunce  
 The folie dedes of her ensaunce,  
 Whiche causin her to mourne in wo  
 That youth hath her begilid so,  
 Whiche sodainly awaie is hasted;  
 She weped the time that she hath wasted  
 Complaining of the preteritte  
 And the present, that nat abitte,  
 And of her oldè vanite,  
 That but asorne her she maie se  
 In the future some smale focoure  
 To leggin her of her doloure,  
 To graunt her time of repentaunce,  
 For her finnis to do penaunce,  
 And at the last so her governe,  
 To winne the joye that is eterne,  
 Fro whiche go backwarde youth her made,  
 In vanite to drowne and wade;  
 For present time abidith nought,  
 It is more swifte than any thought;  
 So litill while it doth endure  
 That there is ne compte ne mesure.  
 But how that evir the game go,  
 Who list love joye and mirrè also  
 Of love, be it he or she,  
 Or hie or lowe, who so it be,  
 In frute thei shouldin 'hem delite,  
 Ther parte thei maie not ellis quite,  
 To save 'hem self in honeste;  
 And yet full many one I se  
 Of women, sothly for to faine,  
 That desirin and wouldin faine  
 The plaie of love, thei be so wilde,  
 And not coveite to go with childe;  
 And if with childe thei be perchaunce,  
 Thei wol it holde a grete mischaunce;  
 But what so evir wo thei fele  
 Thei wol not plainin, but concele,  
 But it be any sole or nice,  
 In whomè that shame hath no justice;

For to delite echone thei drawe  
 That haunt this worke, both hie and lawe,  
 Save for he that arne worth right nought,  
 That for money wol be ybought;  
 Such love I preisin in no wife  
 Whan this is given for covetise;  
 I preise no woman, though she is wode,  
 That yeveth her selfe for any gode,  
 For litill should a man yene  
 Of her that wil her body selle,  
 Be she a maide or be she wife,  
 That quicke wol selle her by her life,  
 How faire chere that ever she make,  
 He is a wretche I undirtake  
 That love suche one, for swete or soure,  
 Though she him called her paramoure,  
 And laugheth on him, and maketh him fess,  
 For certainly no such best  
 To be lovid is nat worthy,  
 Or berin the name of Drury;  
 None should her plese, but he wer wode,  
 That wol dispoile him of his gode  
 Yet nathelesse I wol not faie  
 That she for solace and for plaie  
 Maie a jewil or othir thing  
 Take of her lov's fre yeving,  
 But that she aske it in no wise  
 For drede of shame or covetise;  
 And she of hers maie him certaine  
 Without sclaundir yevin againe,  
 And joyne ther hertes togidir so  
 In love, and take and yeve also:  
 Trowe nat that I wollin hem twinne  
 Whan in ther love there is no sinne;  
 I wol that thei togidir go,  
 And done al that thei han ado,  
 As curtis should and debonaire,  
 And in ther love berin hem faire,  
 Withoutin vice, both he and she,  
 So that alwaie in honeste  
 Fro soly Love to kepe hem clere,  
 That brennith hertis with his fere,  
 And that ther love in any wise  
 Be devoide of all covetise.  
 Gode love should engendrid be  
 Of trewe hert, juste and secre,  
 And not of fuche as set ther thought  
 To have their lust and ellis nought,  
 So are thei caught in Lov's lace  
 Trewly for bodily solace;  
 Fleshely delite is so present  
 With the, that set al thine entent  
 Withoutin more, what should I glose?  
 For to gettin and have the Rose,  
 Whiche makith the so mate and wode  
 That thou desirest none other gode:  
 But thou art not an inche the nerre,  
 But evre abidest in forroue and werre,  
 As in thy face it is yfene;  
 It makith the bothe pale and lene;  
 Thy might, thy vertue, gothe awaie,  
 A sory gest in god faie  
 Thou harborist than in thine ione,  
 The god of Love whan thou let inne;

Wherefore I rede thou shette him oute,  
 Or he shal greve the out of doute,  
 For to thy profite it wol turne,  
 If he no more with the sojourne.  
 In grete mischefe and sorow sonken  
 Ben hertis that of love arne dronken,  
 As thou peraventure knowen shall  
 Whan thou hast lost thy time all,  
 And spent thy thought in idilnesse,  
 In waste, and woful lustinesse.  
 Yf thou maist live the time to se  
 Of love for to delivered be  
 Thy time thou shalt bewepè fore,  
 The whiche never thou maist restore,  
 For time ylost, as men may se,  
 For nothing may recovered be:  
 And if thou scape yet at the laste  
 Fro Love that hath the so faste  
 Yknitte and boundin in his lace,  
 Certaine I holde it but a grace;  
 For many one, as it is seine,  
 Have losse and spent also in veine  
 In his service without focour  
 Body and soule, gode and tresour,  
 And witte and strength, and eke richesse,  
 Of whiche thei had never redresse.

## L'amant.

Thus taught and prechid hath Reson,  
 But Love yspilte hath her sermon,  
 That was so impid in my thought  
 That her doctrine I set at nought,  
 And yet ne faide she nevre a dele  
 That I ne understode it wele  
 Wordè by worde the matir all;  
 But unto Love I was so thrall,  
 Whiche callith ovir all his praie,  
 He chasith so my thoughtis aie,  
 And holdeth min herrte undir his sele  
 As trusty and trewe as any stele,  
 So that I no devocion  
 Ne haddè in the wise sermon  
 Of Dame Reson, ne of her rede  
 I toke no sojour in mine hede,  
 For allè yede out at one ere  
 That in that othir she did lere;  
 Fully on me she lost her lore;  
 Her speche me grevid wondir fore:

That unto her for ire I faide,  
 For angir as I did abraide,  
 Dame, and as it your will algate  
 That I not love but that I hate  
 All men, as ye me now do teche?  
 For if I do astir your speche,  
 Sith that you seine love is not gode,  
 Than must I nedis say with mode,  
 Yf I it leve, in hatrid aie  
 Livin, and voidin love awaie  
 Ferrè from me a sinful wretche,  
 Yhatid of allè that tettehe,  
 I may not go none othir gate,  
 For either must I love or hate,  
 And if I hatin men of newe  
 More than love it wol me rewe.



As by your preching semith me,  
 For Love nothing ne praisith the :  
 Ye yeve gode counsaile sikirly  
 That prechith me al day that I  
 Ne should not Lov'is lore alowe;  
 He were a foie woulde you not trowe;  
 In speche also ye han me taught  
 Anothir love that knowen is naught,  
 Whiche I have herde you not repreve :  
 To love eche othir, by your leve,  
 If ye would doinin it me,  
 I woulde gladly here, to fe  
 At the lest if I mowin lere  
 Of sondry lovis the manere.

*Raïson.*

Certis, frende, a grete sole art thou,  
 Whan that thou nothing wolt alow  
 Whiche that I for thy profite saie;  
 Yet wol I saie the more in saie,  
 For I am redy at the lest  
 To accomplisshin thy request;  
 But I not where it wol aveile;  
 In vaine perav'enture I travaile.  
 Lov' there is in fondrie wise,  
 Right as I shall the here devise.

For some love lesul is and gode,  
 I mene not that whiche maketh the wode,  
 And bringith the in many' a fitte,  
 And raviltheth fro the al thy witte,  
 It is so marvellous and queint;  
 With fuche love be no more aqueint.

*Comment Raïson diffinist Aunfete.*

Love of frendshippe also there is  
 Whiche makith no man don amis,  
 Of will yknitte betwixin two,  
 That wol not breke for wele ne wo,  
 Whiche longe is likely to contune,  
 Whan wil and godes ben in commune,  
 Groundid by Godd'is ordinaunce,  
 All whole withoutin discordaunce,  
 With them yholding commauncè,  
 Of al ther gode in charite,  
 That there be none exceptioun  
 Through chaunging of ententioun,  
 That eche helpe othir at ther nede,  
 And wisely hele both worde and dede,  
 Trewe of mening, devoide of flouthe,  
 For wit is nought withoutin trouthe,  
 So that the t' one dare all his thought  
 Saine to his frende, and sparin nought,  
 As to him selfe, without dreding  
 To be discovered by wreying,  
 For glad is that conjunction  
 Whan there is none suspectioun  
 Betwixin hem whome thei wold prove,  
 That trewe and parfite weren in love;  
 For no man may be amiable  
 But if he be so ferme and stable  
 That Fortune chaunge him not ne blinde,  
 But that his frende alway him finde  
 Bothe pore and riche in one estate,  
 For if his frende through any gate  
 Wol complaine of his poverté  
 He should not bide so long til he

Of his helping doth him require,  
 For gode dede done thorough prayere  
 Is solde and bought to dere i-wis  
 To hert that of grete valure is,  
 For hert fulfilled of gentilnesse  
 Can evil demene his distresse;  
 And man that worthy is of name  
 To askin oft in hath grete shame.

A gode man brentith in his thought  
 For shame whan that he askith ought;  
 He hath grete thought, and dredith aie  
 For his disese whan he shal praie  
 His frende lest that he warnid be  
 Till he prove his stabilite;  
 But whan that he hath foundin one  
 That trusty is and trewe as stone,  
 And hath affayid him at all,  
 And founde him stedfast as a wall,  
 And of his frendshippe be certaine,  
 He shal him shewe bothe joie and paine,  
 And all that he dare thinke or saie,  
 Withoutin shame, as he well maie,  
 For how should he aghamid be  
 Of fuche an one as I tolde the?  
 For whan he wot his secret thought  
 The third shall know therof right nought,  
 For twey in nombre' is bet than thre  
 In every counsaile and secrete:  
 Repreve he dredith nevre' a dele  
 Who that beset his wordis wele,  
 For every wise man out of drede  
 Can kepe his tong till he se nede.

And solis can not holde ther tonge;  
 A fol's belle is sone yronge;  
 Yet shall a trewe frende doin more  
 To helpe his felowe of his fore,  
 And socour him whan he hath nede  
 In all that he may done in dede,  
 And gladdir that he him plesith  
 Than his felowe that he esith;  
 And if he do nat his request  
 He shal as mochil him molest  
 As his felowe, bicause that he  
 Maie not fulfill his volunte  
 All fully as he hath required.  
 If both the hertis Love hath fired  
 Bothe joye and wo thei shall departe,  
 And take evinly eche his parte,  
 Halfe his anoye he shal have aie,  
 And comforte him what that he maie,  
 And of his bliff. parte shal he,  
 If love wollin departid be.

And whilom of this unite  
 Spake Tullius in a dite,  
 A man should makin this request  
 Unto his frende that is honest,  
 And he godely should it fulfill,  
 But it the more were out of skill,  
 And otherwise not graunt therto,  
 Except only in causis two.

Yf men his frende to deth wold drive  
 Let him be besy to save his live.

Also if men wollen him assaile,  
Of his worship to make him faile,  
And hindrin him of his renoun,  
Let him with ful entencion  
His deyr done in eche degre,  
That his frende ne shamid be.

In these two casis with his might,  
Taking no kepe to skill nor right,  
As ferre as love may him excuse,  
This ought no man for to refuse.

This love that I have told to the  
Is nothing contrarie to me;  
This wol I that thou folowe wele,  
And leve the t'othir every dele;  
This love to vertue al entendeth,  
The t'othir folis blent and shendeth.

An othir love also there is  
That is contrary unto this,  
Which desire is to constrainid  
That it ne is but will fainid;  
Away fro trowth it doth so varie  
That to gode love it is contrarie,  
For it maynith in many wise  
Sike hertis with covetise;  
All in winning and in profite  
Suche love ysettith his delite:  
This love so haungith in balaunce,  
That if it lese his hope perchaunce  
Of lucre that he' is set upon  
It wol failin and quench anon,  
For no man maie be amorous,  
Ne in his living vertuous,  
But if he lovin more in mode  
Men for 'hem selfe than for ther gode;  
For love that profite doth abide  
Is false, and bidith not to tide:  
Soche love comith of Dame Fortune,  
That litil while woll contune,  
For it shall chaungin wondir sone,  
And take eclips as doth the mone,  
Whan that she is from us ylet  
Through erth, that betwixin is set  
The sonne and her, as it may fall,  
Be it in partie or in all:  
The shadowe makith her bemes merke,  
And her hornis to shewin derke  
That part where she hath lost her light  
Of Phebus fully and the sight,  
Till whan the shadowe' is ovir paste.  
She' is enlumined agein as faste  
Through the brightnes of the sonne bemes,  
That yevith to' her again her lemes:  
That love is right of such nature,  
Now it is faire and now obscure,  
Now bright, now clipfy of manere,  
And whilom dimme and whilom clere,  
As sone as povertie ginnith take,  
With mantil and with wedis blake  
Hidith of love the light away,  
That into night it tournith day,  
It may not sein Richeffe shine.  
Till that the blacke shadowis fine,  
For whan that Richeffe shinith bright  
Love recovereth ayen his light,

And whan it failith he wol flit,  
And as she grevith so grevith it.

Of this love herith what I saie:  
The riche men are ylovid aie,  
And namely tho that sparande bene,  
That wol not washe ther hertis clene  
Of the filthe nor of the vice  
Of gredy brenning avarice.

The riche man ful fond is i-wis  
That wenith that he lovid is;  
If that his hert it undirstode  
It is not he; it is his gode:  
He may wel wetin in his thought  
His gode is loved and he right nought;  
For if he be a nigarde eke  
Men wol not set by him a leke,  
But hatin him, this is the sothe.  
Lo what profite his catil dothe!  
Of every man that may him se  
It getteth him nought but enmite,  
But he amende him of that vice,  
And know himselfe he is not wise.

Certis he should aie frendly be  
To get him love, also ben fre,  
Or els he is not wise ne sage,  
No more than is a gode ramage.  
That he not lovith his dede proveth,  
Whan he his richesse so well loveth  
That he wol hide it aie and spare,  
His pore frendis sene forfare,  
To kepin aie his ill purpose,  
Till that for drede his eyin close,  
And til a wickid deth him take  
Him had levir a sondre shake,  
And let al' his limmes a sondre rive.  
Than leve his richesse in his live;  
He thinketh to part it with no man;  
Certain no love is in him than,  
For how should love within him be  
Whan in his hert is no pite?  
That he trespafith well I wate,  
For eche man knowith his estate,  
For wel him ought to be reprovod  
That lovith nought ne is not loved.

But sithe we arne to Fortune comen,  
And hath our sermon of her nomen,  
A wondir will I tell the now,  
Thou herdist nere fuche one I trow;  
I n'ot where thou me levin shall,  
Although sothfastenesse it be all,  
As it is writtin, and is sothe,  
That unto men more profite dothe  
The frowarde fortune and contraire  
Than doth the sote and debonaire;  
And if the thinke it is doutable,  
It is through argument provable,  
For Fortune debonaire and softe  
Yfalsith and begilith ofte,  
For liche a mothir she can cherishe,  
And milkin as doth a norice,  
And of her gode to him ydeles,  
And yeveth 'hem parte of her jeweles,  
With grete richis and dignite,  
And 'hem she hoteth stabilite

In a state that is nothing stable,  
 But chaunging, die, and variable,  
 And sedith him with glory veine,  
 And worldely blisse nothing certeine:  
 Whan she 'hem settith on her whele  
 Than wenin thei to be right wele,  
 And in so stable state withall  
 That nevir thei wene for to fall;  
 And whan thei sette so high to be  
 Thei wene to have in certainte  
 Of hertly frendis to grete nombre,  
 That nothing might their state encombre;  
 Thei trust 'hem so on every side,  
 Wening with 'hem that would abide  
 In every perill and mischaunce  
 Withoutin chaunce or variaunce  
 Both of catil and of gode,  
 And also for to spende ther blode,  
 And al ther membris for to spill,  
 Only to fulfill ther will:  
 Thei maken it whole in many wise,  
 And hotin 'hem their full service,  
 How sore so that it do 'hem smerte  
 Into ther very nakid sherte;  
 Herte and hande also whole thei give,  
 For al the time that thei may live,  
 So that with this ther flattery  
 Thei makin folis glorie  
 Onely of ther wordis speking,  
 And han chere of a rejoyng,  
 And trow 'hem as the Evangile;  
 And it is al falshe and gile,  
 As thei shal afterwardis se;  
 Whan thei arne fal in poverté,  
 And ben of gode and catil bare,  
 Than should thei sene who frendis ware,  
 For of an hundrid certainly,  
 Nor of a thousande full fearfully,  
 Ne shall thei finde unnethis one  
 Whan poverté is comen upon.

For thus Fortune that I of tell,  
 With men whan that her lust to dwell,  
 Maketh 'hem to lese ther conifaunce,  
 And norisheth 'hem in ignoraunce.

But frowarde Fortune and perverse,  
 Whan high estates she doth reverse,  
 And makith 'hem to touble doun  
 Of her whele with a sodaine tourne,  
 And from ther riches dothe 'hem fle,  
 And plongeth 'hem in poverté,  
 As a stepmothir envious,  
 And laieth a plaistir dolorous  
 Unto ther hertis woundid egre,  
 Whiche is not tempered with vinègre,  
 But with poverté and indigence,  
 For to shewe by experience  
 That she is Fortune verilie,  
 In whom no man ne should assie,  
 Nor in her yestis have fiaunce,  
 She is so ful of variaunce.

Thus can she makin hie and lowe,  
 Whan thei from riches arne throwe,  
 Fully to knowin without were  
 Frende of affecte and frende of chere,

And whiche in love weren trewe and stable,  
 And whiche also weren variable,  
 After Fortune ther goddesse,  
 In poverté, either in richesse,  
 For all that yeveth here out of drede  
 Unhappy yberith it in dede,  
 For Infortune lette not one  
 Of frendis whan Fortune is gone,  
 I mene tho frendis that woll fle  
 Anone as entrith poverté;  
 And yet thei wol not leve 'hem so,  
 But in eche place where that thei go  
 Thei callin 'hem wretche, scorne, and blame,  
 And of ther mishappe 'hem diffame,  
 And namely suche as in richesse  
 Pretendith moste of stablenessse,  
 Whan that they sawe 'hem set on lose,  
 And werin of hem succoured ofte,  
 And most iholpe in al ther nede,  
 But now thei take no manner hede,  
 But seine in voice of flattery  
 That now appereth ther folie  
 Ovir al wher so that thei fare,  
 And singe, Go, farewell, Feldefare.

Allé suche frendis I beshrewe,  
 For of trewe frendis thei be to fewe,  
 But sothfast frendes, what so betide,  
 In every fortune wollen abide;  
 Thei han their hertes in such noblesse  
 That thei n'il love for no richesse,  
 Nor for that Fortune may 'hem sende  
 Thei wollen 'hem socour and defende,  
 And chaungin for softe ne for sore;  
 For who his frende loveth evirmore,  
 Though men drawe swerdis him to slo,  
 Thei may not hewe ther love a two;  
 But if in case that I shall say,  
 For pride and ire lese it he may,  
 And for reprove by nicete,  
 And discovering of privite  
 With tonge wounding, as felon,  
 Through venemous detraction.

Frende in this case wol gon his way,  
 For nothing greve him more ne may,  
 And for nought ellis wol he fle  
 If he love in stabilité:

And certaine he is well begone  
 Among a thousande that findeth one,  
 For there ne may be no richesse,  
 Ayenst frendship of worthinesse,  
 For it ne may so high attaine  
 As may the valoure, sothe to saine,  
 Of him that lovith trewe and well:  
 Frendship is more than is catell,  
 For frende in courte aie bettir is  
 Than peny is in purse certis,  
 And than is Fortune mishaping,  
 Whan upon men she is fabling  
 Thorough misturning of her chaunce,  
 And castith 'hem out of balaunce.

She maketh through her adversite  
 Men ful and clerly for to se  
 Him that is frende in existence  
 From him that is by apparence,



For infortune makith anone  
To know thy frendis fro thy fone  
By experyence right as it is,  
The whiche is more to praisse i-wis  
Than in muche richesse and tresour,  
For more depe profite and valour  
Poverty, and such aduersite  
Before, than doeth prosperite,  
For that one yeveth confaunce,  
And t'other gevith ignoraunce.

And thus in poverty is in dede  
Trowth declared fro falshe dede,  
For faint frendis it wol declare,  
And trewe also, what way they fare;  
For whan he was in his richesse  
These frendis ful of doublenesse  
Offrid him in many wise  
Ther herte and body, and service,  
What would he then have you to have brought  
To knowin opynly ther thought,  
That he now hath so clerely sene?  
The lasse begiled he should have bene  
And he had than percevid it;  
But Richesse n'olde not let him wit;  
Wel more avauntage doeth him than,  
Sith that it makith him a wise man,  
The grete mischefe that he perceveth  
Than doeth richesse, that him deceveth:  
Richesse riche ne ymakith nought  
Him that on tresour set his thought,  
For richesse stonde in suffisaunce,  
And nothing stonde in haboundaunce,  
For suffisaunce all onily  
Makith menne to live richily.

For he that hath but mitchis tweine,  
Ne value in his whole demeine,  
Liveth more at ese, and more is riche,  
Than doith he whiche that is chiche,  
And in his barne hath, soth to saine,  
An hundrid mavis of whete graine,  
Though he be chapman or marchaunt,  
And have of golde many besaunt,  
For in the getting he hath such wo,  
And in the keeping drede also,  
And sette ere more his besinesse  
For to encrese and nat to lesse,  
For to augment and multiply;  
And though on hepes that lie him by,  
Yet never shall make his richesse  
Asseth unto his greedinesse;  
But the pore man that retchith nought  
Save of his livelode in his thought,  
Whiche that he getteth with his travaile,  
He dredith nought that it shall faile,  
Though he have little world's gode,  
Met and drinke, and ese fode,  
Upon his travaile and living,  
And also suffisaunt clothing,  
Or if in sicknesse that he fall,  
And lothe mete and drinke withall,  
Though he have not his mete to baie,  
He shall bethinke him hastily

To put him out of all daungere,  
That he of mete hath no mistere,  
Or that he maie with little eke  
Be foundin while that he is seke,  
Or that men shall him berne in haste  
To live till his sicknesse be passe  
Unto some maisonnewe beside:  
He caste nought what shall him betide;  
He thinkith nought that ever he shall  
Into any sicknesse yfall.

And though it fall, as it maie be,  
That all betime sparishall he  
As moke as shall to him suffice  
While he is sicke in any wise,  
He doith for that he woll be  
Contentid with his poverty  
Withoutein nede of any man:  
So moche in little have he can  
He is apaide with his fortune,  
And for he n'ill be importune  
Unto no wight ne onerous,  
Nor of ther godeffe covetous,  
Therefore he spareth, it mai well ben,  
His pore estate for to sustene.

Or if him luste not for to spare,  
But suffrith forthe as nat yet ware,  
At laste it happeneth, as it maie,  
All right unto his laste daie,  
And take the worlde as it would be;  
For evir in herte thinkith he  
The sonir that Deth him yll  
To paradise the sonir go  
He shall, there for to live in blisse  
Where that he shall no godis misse:  
Thidir he hopeth God shall him sende  
Aftir this wretchid liv'is ende.  
Pythagoras himself reherfes,  
In a boke that The Goldin Verses  
Is cleped, for the nobilite  
Of the honorable dite,

Than whan thou goest thy body fro  
Fre in the ayre thou shalt up go,  
And levin all humanite,  
And purely live in diete.  
He is a sole withoutin were  
That trowith have his countrey here.

In yerth is not our countere,  
That maie these clerkis seine and se  
In Boece of Consolacion  
Where it is makid mencion  
Of our contre plaine at the eye  
By teching of philosophie,  
Where leude men mightin lern wit,  
Who so that would translatin it.  
If he be such that can well live  
Aftir his rente maie him yve,  
And not desirith more to have  
Than maie fro poverty him save.  
A wiseman saied, as we maie sene,  
Is no man wretched but he it wene;

Be he a king, knight, or ribaude :  
 Many a ribaude is merie and baude  
 That swinketh and berith daie and night  
 Many a burthin of grete might,  
 The whiche doith him lasse offence  
 For he that suffrith in pacience :  
 Thei laugh and daunce, thei trippe and sing,  
 And laie nought up for ther living,  
 But in the taverne all dispendeth  
 The winning whiche that God hem fendeth ;  
 Than goeth he fardils for to bere  
 With as gode chere as he did ere :  
 To swinke and travaile he not fainith,  
 For to robbin he disdainith,  
 But right anon after his swinke  
 He goeth to taverne for to drinke.  
 All these are riche in haboundaunce  
 That can thus havin suffaunce  
 Well more than can an usurere,  
 As God well knowith, without were,  
 For 'an usurere, so God me se,  
 Shall nevir for richesse riche be,  
 But er more pore and indigent,  
 Scarce, and gredy in his entent.

For sothe it is, whom it displese,  
 There maie no marchaunt live at ese,  
 His herte in soche a where is set  
 That it quicke brennith for to get,  
 Ne nevir shall though he hath gotten,  
 Though he have golde in garnis yeten,  
 For to be nedy he dredeth fore,  
 Wherefore to gettin more and more  
 He set his herte and his desire :  
 So hote he brennith in the fire  
 Of covetise, that maketh him wode  
 To purchace othir mennis gode.  
 He undirfongith a grete pain  
 That undertaketh to drinke up Sain,  
 For the more that he drinkith aie  
 The more he levith, sothe to saie.  
 Thus is the thrust of false getting,  
 That laste evir in coviting,  
 And the anguisse and the distresse,  
 With the fire of gredinesse ;  
 She fightith with him aie and striveth,  
 So that his herte a fonder riveth :  
 Soche gredinesse him assailith  
 That whan he mooste hath mooste he failith.

Phisiciens and advocates  
 Goin right by the same yates ;  
 Thei sell ther science for winning,  
 And haunte ther crafte for grete getting :  
 Ther winning is of soche swetenesse  
 That if a man fall in sickenesse  
 Thei are full glad for ther encrece,  
 For by ther will withoutin lese  
 Everiche man sholdin be seke ;  
 Though thei die thei set not a leke ;  
 Aftir whan thei the golde have take  
 Full little care for him thei make :  
 Thei would fowertie were sicke at ones,  
 Ye, two hundrid, in fleshe and bones,  
 And yet two thousande, as I gesse,  
 For to encrese ther richesse.

Thei woll not worchin in no wise  
 But for lucre and covetise,  
 For physicke ginnith first by (phi)  
 The phisicien also sothly ;  
 And sithen it goeth fro fie to fie  
 To trust on hem it is folie,  
 For thei n'il in no manir gre  
 Doin right nought for charite.  
 Eke in the same secte are set  
 All tho that prechin for to get  
 Worships, and honour, and richesse ;  
 Ther hertis arne in grete distresse  
 That folke livin not holily,  
 But abovin all specially  
 Soche as yprechin veinglorie,  
 And towarde God have no mem'orie,  
 But forthe as ipocritis trace,  
 And to ther soulis deth purchace,  
 And outward shewing holinesse,  
 Though thei be full of curfidnesse :  
 Natliche to the apostlis twelve,  
 Thei deceive othir and hem selve :  
 Begilid is the gilir than  
 For preching of a curfid man :  
 Though it to othir maie profite  
 Himself it availeth not a mite,  
 For oft gode predicacioun  
 Cometh of evill entencioun :  
 To him nat availeth his preching,  
 All helpe he othir with his teching,  
 For where thei gode example take  
 There is he with veinglorie shake.

But let us leven these prechours,  
 And speke of hem that in their tours  
 Hepe up ther golde and fast yhet,  
 And fore thereon ther hertis fet :  
 Thei neither lovin God ne drede ;  
 Thei kepin more than it is nede,  
 And in the baggis fore it binde  
 Out of the sunne and of the winde ;  
 Thei puttin up more than nede ware  
 Whan thei sene povir folk forfare,  
 For hungre die, and for cold quake ;  
 God can well vengeance thereof take ;  
 The grete mischivis hem assaileth,  
 And thus in gadring aie travaileth ;  
 With mochil pain thei winne richesse,  
 And drede hem holdith in distresse  
 To kepin that thei gathir fast :  
 With sorowe thei leve it at last,  
 With sorowe thei bothe die and live  
 That unto richesse ther hertes yeve,  
 And in defaute of love it is,  
 As it shewith full well i-wis,  
 For if these gredy, sothe to saie,  
 Lovidin and were loved againe,  
 And gode love reignid ovir all,  
 Soche wickidnesse ne should yfall,  
 But he should yeve that mooste gode had  
 To hem that weren in nede bestad,  
 And live withoutin false usure,  
 For charite ful clene and pure ;  
 If thei hem yeve unto godenesse,  
 Defending hem from idlenessse,

In all this worlde than povir none  
 We shoulde finde I trowe not one.  
 But chaungid is this worlde unstable;  
 For love is ovir all vendable:  
 We se that no man lovith now  
 But for his winning and for prowē;  
 And love is thrallid in servage  
 Whan it is sold for avauntage;  
 Yet women wol ther bodies sell;  
 Soche foules goith to the devill of hell.

Whan Love had tolde hem his entent  
 The baronage to counsaile went.  
 In many sentencis thei fill,  
 And diversly thei saied ther will;  
 But aftir discorde thei accorded,  
 And ther accorde to Love recorded:  
 Sir, saidin thei, we ben at one,  
 By even accorde of everichone,  
 Out take Richeffe all onily,  
 That swornē hath full hauteinly  
 That she the castill n'ill assaile,  
 Ne finite a stroke in this bataille  
 With darte ne mace, ne spere, ne knife,  
 For man that speketh or bereth life,  
 And blamith your emprise iwis,  
 And from our hofte departid is,  
 At lestē waie, as in this plite,  
 So hath she this man in dispite;  
 For she saith he ne loved her never,  
 And therefore she woll hat him ever;  
 For he woll gathir no tresore  
 He hath her wrathe for evirmore;  
 He' agiltē her nert in othir case,  
 Lo herē all wholly his trespase!  
 She saith well that this othir daie  
 He asked her leve to gon the waie  
 That is clepid to moche yeving,  
 And spake full faire in his praying,  
 But whan he praied her poete was he,  
 Therefore she warned him the entre,  
 Ne yet is he not thrivin so  
 That he hath gottin a penie or two  
 That quietly' is his owne in holde:  
 Thus hath Richeffe us all ytolde,  
 And whan Richeffe us this recorded  
 Withoutin her we ben acorded.  
 And we finde in our accordaunce  
 That Falso Semblant and Abstinence,  
 With all the folke of ther bataille,  
 Shull at the hindir gate assaile  
 That Wickid Tong hath in keping,  
 With his Normans full of jangling,  
 And with him Curtesie and Largesse,  
 That shullin shewe ther hardinesse  
 To the old wife that kept so hard  
 Faire Welcoming within her ward,  
 Than shall Delite and Well-Heling  
 Yfendin Shame adoun to bring  
 With all her hofte erly and late,  
 Thei shull assailin that like gate;  
 Avenist Drede shall Hardinesse  
 Assaile and also Sikirnesse,  
 With all the folke of ther leding,  
 That never wiste what was slaying.

VOL. I.

Fraunchise shall fight and eke Pite  
 With Daungir ful of cruilte,  
 Thus is your hofte ordainid wele;  
 Doune shall the castill every dele  
 If everiche doe his entent,  
 So that Venus yhe present,  
 Your mothir, full of vesselage,  
 That can inough of soche usage;  
 Withoutin her maie no wight spede  
 This werke neither for worde ne dede,  
 Therefore is gode ye for her sende,  
 For through her maie this worke amende.

Lordinges, my mothir the goddes,  
 That is my ladie and maistres,  
 Ne is nat all at my willing,  
 Ne doeth nat all my desiring;  
 Yet can she sometime doen labour  
 Whan that her luste in my focour,  
 As my nede is for to atcheve,  
 But now I thinke her nat to greve:  
 My mothir is she, and of childhede  
 I both worship her and eke drede,  
 For who that dredeth fire ne dame  
 Shall it abie in bodie' or name:  
 And nathelasse yet conne we  
 Sende aftir her if nede ybe,  
 And were she nigh she commin wold;  
 I trowe that nothing might her hold.  
 My mothir is of grete prowesse,  
 She hath tane many a fortresse  
 That cost hath many' a pound er this  
 There I n'as not present iwis,  
 And yet men saied it was my dede:  
 But I come never in that stede,  
 Ne me ne liketh, so mote I the,  
 That soche tours ben ytake with me;  
 For why? me thinkith that in no wise  
 It maie be cleped but Marchaundise.

Go buie a coursir blacke or white,  
 And paie therefor, than art thou quite:  
 The marchaunt owith the right nought  
 Ne thou him whan thou hast it bought.  
 I woll not felling clepe Yeving,  
 For felling asketh no guerdoning;  
 Here lithe no thanke ne no merite,  
 That one goth from that othre' all quite;  
 But this felling is not semblable;  
 For whan his horse is in the stable  
 He maie it sell again parde,  
 And winnen on it, soche happe maie be,  
 All maie the manne nat lese iwis,  
 For at the left the skinnē is his;  
 Or ellis, if it so betide  
 That he woll kepe his horse to ride,  
 Yet is he lorde zie of his horse;  
 But thilkē chafare is well worse  
 There Venus entremetith ought,  
 For who so soche chaffare hath bought  
 He shall not worchin so wisely  
 That he ne shall lese uttirly

X



Bothe his money and his chaffare ;  
 But the seller of thilke ware  
 The prife and profite havin shall ;  
 Certaine the buier shall lese all,  
 For he ne can so dere it buie  
 To have lordship and full maistrice,  
 Ne havin power to make letting  
 Neither for yeste ne for preching,  
 That of his chaffare maugre his  
 An other shall have as moche iwis,  
 If he woll yeve as moche as he,  
 Of what countrey so that he be,  
 Or for right nought, so happe ymaie,  
 If he can flattir her to her paie.

And ben than soche marchauntis wife ?  
 No, but folis in every wise :  
 Whan thei buie soche thing wilfully  
 Thert thei lese ther gode folily ;  
 But nathelless this dare I saie,  
 My mothir is not wont to paie,  
 For she' is neither so sole ne nice  
 To entremete her of soche vice ;  
 But trustith well he shall paie all  
 That repente of his bargaine shall,  
 Whan Poverté put him in distresse,  
 All were he scholir to Richesse,  
 That is for me in grete yerning  
 Whan she assenteth to my willing.

But by my mothir Saint Venus,  
 And by her fathir Saturnus,  
 That her engendrid by his life,  
 But nat upon his weddid wife,  
 Yet woll I more unto you swere,  
 To makin this thing the surere.  
 Now by that faithe and that beaute  
 That I owe to' all my brethrin fre,  
 Of whiche ther n'is wight undir heven  
 That cant her fadir's namis neven,  
 So divers and many there be  
 That with my mothre' have be prive,  
 Yet woll I swere for sikirnesse  
 The pole of helle to my witnesse,  
 Now drink I not this yere clarre  
 If that I lie or forsworne be,  
 For of the goddes the usage is  
 That who so him forswerith amis  
 Shall that yere drinkin no clarre.

Now have I sworne inough parde ;  
 If I forswere than am I lorne ;  
 But I woll nevir be forsworne,  
 Sithe Richesse hath me failid here  
 She shall abie that trespas dere  
 At lesté waie but I her harme  
 With swerde, or sparth, or with gifarmie.

For certis sithe she loveth not me,  
 Fro thilke time that she maie se  
 The castill and the touré to shake,  
 In sorie time she shall awake ;  
 If I maie gripe a riche man  
 I shall so pulle him if I can,  
 That he shall in a few stoundis  
 Lese all his markes and his poundis.

I shall him make his pens out fling  
 But that thei in his garnir spring ;  
 Our maidins shall eke plucke him so  
 That him shall nedin lethirs mo,  
 And make him sell his londe to spende  
 But he the bet conne him defende.

Pore men han made ther lorde of me ;  
 Although thei nat so mightie be  
 That thei maie fede me in delite  
 I woll not have 'hem in dispite :  
 No gode man hateth 'hem as I gesse,  
 For chinche and feloun is Richesse,  
 That so can chafe 'hem and despise,  
 And 'hem desqule in sondrie wise :  
 Thei loven full bette, so God me spede,  
 Than doith the riche chinchy grede,  
 And ben (in gode faith) more stable,  
 And truir and more serviable,  
 And therefore it suffisith me  
 Ther gode hertis and ther beaute :  
 Thei han on me set all their thought,  
 And therefore I foryete 'hem nought.

I woll 'hem bring in grete noblesse,  
 If that I were god of Richesse,  
 As I am god of Love sothely,  
 Soche ruthe upon ther plaint have I ;  
 Therefore I must his sorow be  
 That painith him to serve me,  
 For if he deied for love of this  
 Than semith in me no love there is.

Sir, saied thei, sothe is every dele  
 That ye reherce, and we wote wele  
 Thilke othe to holde is resonable,  
 For it is gode and covenable  
 That ye on riche men han ysworne ;  
 For, Sir, this wote we well beforne,  
 If riche men doin you homage  
 That is as folis doen outrage ;  
 But ye shall not forsworne ybe,  
 Ne let therefore to drinke clarrie,  
 Or piment makid freshe and newe :  
 Ladies shall 'hem soche pepir brewe  
 If that thei fall into their laas  
 That thei for wo mowe saine Alas !  
 Ladies shullen ere so curteis be  
 That thei shall quite your othe all fre ;  
 Ne seketh nevir othir vicaire,  
 For thei shall speke with 'hem so faire  
 That ye shall holde you paid full wele,  
 Though ye you medle nere a dele.  
 Let ladies worchin with ther thinges,  
 Thei shall 'hem tell so fele tidinges,  
 And move so many requestis,  
 By flatterie, that not honest is,  
 And thereto yeve 'hem soche thankinges,  
 What with kissing and with talkinges,  
 That certis if thei trowid be  
 Shall nevir leve 'hem londe ne se  
 That it n'ill as the moeble fare,  
 Of whiche thei first delivered are.  
 Now maie you tell us all your will,  
 And we your hestis shall fulfill.

But False Semblant dare not for drede  
Of you, Sir, medle' him of this dede,  
For he saith that ye ben his fo,  
He n'ot if ye woll worche him wo;  
Wherefore we praie you all, beau Sire,  
That ye foryeve him now your ire,  
And that he maie dwell as your man  
With abstinence his dere lemman:  
'This our accorde and our will now.

Parfei, saied Love, I graunt it you  
I woll well holde him for my man;  
Now let him come: and he forthe ran.

False Semblant, (quod Love) in this wise  
I take the here to my service,  
'That thou our frendis helpe alwaie,  
And hindre 'hem neither night ne daie,  
But doe thy might 'hem to releve,  
And eke our en'mies that thou greve:  
'Thine be this might; I graunt it the;  
My king of Harlotes shalt thou be:  
We woll that thou have soche honour:  
Certain thou art a false traitour,  
And eke a thief; sihe thou were borne  
A thousande times thou art forsworne:  
But nathelesse in our hering,  
'To put our folke out of doubting,  
I bidde the teche 'hem, wost thou how?  
By some gen'errall signe now,  
In what place thou shalt foundin be  
If that men had mistir of the,  
And how men shall the best espie,  
For the to knowe is grete maistre:  
Tell in what place is thine haunting.

Sir, I have fully divers wonning  
That I kepe not reherfid be,  
So that ye would respitin me,  
For if that I tell you the sothe  
I maie have harme and shame bothe?  
If that my felawes wistin it  
My talis shouldin me be quit,  
For certaine thei would hate me:  
If er I knewe ther cruelte,  
For thei would ore all hold 'hem still  
Of trothe that is again ther will:  
Soche talis kepin thei not here;  
I might estfone buie it full dere  
If I saied of 'hem any thing  
That displeith to ther hering,  
For what word that 'hem pricketh or biteth  
In that worde non of 'hem deliteth,  
All were it gospels the' Evangile,  
That would reprove 'hem of ther gile,  
For thei are cruill and hautain;  
And this thing wote I well certain,  
If I speke ought to paire or loos  
Your courte shall not so well be cloos  
That thei ne shall wite it at last:  
Of gode men am I nought agast,  
For thei woll taken on 'hem nothing  
Whan that thei knowe all my mening,  
But he that woll it on him take  
He woll himself suspicious make  
That he his life let covirtly  
In Gile and in Ypocrisie,

That me' engendrid and yave fostring.

Thei made a full gode engendring,  
(Quod Love) for who so sothly tell  
Thei engendrid the divell of hell.

But nedely, howsoere it be,  
(Quod Love) I will and charge the  
To tell anon thy wonning placis  
Hering eche wight that in this place is,  
And what life thou livist also,  
Hide it no langir now; wherto?  
'Thou must discovre' all thy worching,  
How thou servist, and of what thing,  
Though that thou shouldest for thy soth-faw  
Ben all to-betin and to-drawe,  
And yet art thou not wont parde;  
But nathelesse though thou betin be  
'Thou shalt not be the first that so  
Hath for sothfawe ysuffrid wo.

Sir, sihe that it maie likin you,  
Though that I should be slain right now,  
I shall doen your commaundement,  
For thereto have I grete talent.

Withoutin wordis mo, right than  
False Semblant his sermon began,  
And saied 'hem thus in audience:

Barons, take hede of my sentence.  
That wight that list to have knowing  
Of False Semblant, full of flatt'ring,  
He must in worldly folke him seke,  
And certis in the cloistirs eke;  
I won no where but in 'hem twaie,  
But not like evin, sothe to saie:  
Shortly, I woll herberowe me  
There I hope best to hulstrid be;  
And certainly sikereft hiding  
Is undirneith humblist clothing.

Religious folke ben full covert,  
Seculer folke ben more appert;  
But nathelesse, I woll not blame  
Religious folke, ne 'hem diffame,  
In what habite that er thei go;  
Religion humble' and true also  
Woll I not blamin ne dispise,  
But I n'ill love it in no wise;  
I mene of false religious,  
That stout ben and malicious,  
That wollin in an habite go  
And settin not ther herte thereto.

Religious folke ben all pitous,  
Thou shalt not sene one disputous;  
Thei lovin no pride ne no strife,  
But humbly thei woll lede ther life,  
With whiche folke woll I nevir be,  
And if I dwell I faine me  
I maie well their habite go;  
But me were lever my necke a two  
'Then let a purpose that I take,  
What covenaunt that er I make.

I dwell with 'hem that proude ybe,  
And full of wiles and subtilte,  
That worship of this worlde coveiten,  
And gretè nede connin expleiten,

And goth and gadrin grete pitaunces,  
 And purchase hem the acqweitaunces  
 Of men that mightie life maie leden,  
 And saine hem pore, and hem self feden  
 With gode morcils delicious,  
 And drinkin gode wine precious,  
 And preche us povert and distresse,  
 And fishin hem self grete richesse  
 With wily nettis that thei cast :  
 It woll come foule out at the last.

Thei ben fro clene religion went ;  
 Thei make the worlde an argument  
 That hath a foul conclusion :  
 I have a robe of religion,  
 Than am I all religious :  
 This argument is all roignous ;  
 It is not worth a croked brete :  
 Habite ne makith monke ne frere,  
 But clene life and devocion  
 Makith gode men of religion.

Nathelasse there can none answere,  
 How high that er his hedde he shere  
 With rasour whettid nere so kene,  
 That gile in braunchis cutte thurtene,  
 There can no wight distinct it so  
 That he dare saie a word therto.

But what herb'row that ere I take,  
 Or what semblaunt that er I make,  
 I mene but gile, and folowe that,  
 For right no more than Gibbe our cat  
 (That awaiteth mice and rattes to killen)  
 Ne entende I but to begilen :  
 Ne no wight maie by my clothing  
 Wete with what folke is my dwelling,  
 Ne by my wordis yet parde,  
 So seft and so plesant thei be.

Beholde the dedis that I doe,  
 But thou be blinde thou oughtist so,  
 For varie ther wordes fro ther dede  
 Thei thinke on gile withoutin drede,  
 What manir clothing that thei were,  
 Or what estate that ere thei bere,  
 Lerd or leude, lorde or ladie,  
 Knight, squier, burgeis, or bailie.

Right thus while Falsse Semblant sermoneth  
 Est sonis Love him aresoneth,  
 And brake his tale in his speking  
 As though he had him tolde lesing,  
 And said, What devil is that I here ?  
 What folke hast thou us nempnid here ?  
 Maie men findin religioun  
 In worldly habitacioun ?  
 Ye, Sir, it foloweth nat that thei  
 Should lede a wickid life parfei,  
 Ne not therefore ther soulis lese  
 That hem to worldly clothis chese ;  
 For certis it were grete pite ;  
 Men maie in seculer clothes se  
 Fiorishin holy religioun  
 Ful many a saint in sekde and town,  
 With many a virgine glorious,  
 Devoute and full religious,  
 Han died that comin clothe aie beren,  
 Yet saintis nerthelesse thei weren :

I could reckin you many a ten,  
 Ye, welnigh all these holy women  
 That men in churchis herry' and seke,  
 Bothe maidins and these wivis eke,  
 That bare ful many a faire childe here,  
 Werid alway clothis seculere,  
 And in the same clothes didin they  
 That saintis weren and ben alway.

The ix thousande maidinis dere,  
 That beren in heven ther ciergis clere,  
 Of whiche men rede in churche and sing,  
 Were take in seculer clothing,  
 Whan thei recevid martirdome,  
 And wonnin heven unto ther home.  
 Gode hert ymakith the gode thought,  
 The clothing yeveth ne revith nought :  
 The gode thought and the gode worching  
 That maketh the religion flouring ;  
 There lieth the gode religioun  
 Astir the righte entencioun,

Who so ytoke a wethir's skinne,  
 And wrapped a gredy woulfe therinn,  
 For he should go with lambis white,  
 Wenist thou not he would hem bite ?  
 Yes ; nerthelesse as he were wode  
 He would hem wirry', and drinke the blode  
 And wel the rathir hem disceve,  
 For sithin thei coude nat perceve  
 His tregette and his cruile  
 Thei would him folow tho he fle.

If there be wolvis of suche hewe  
 Amongis these apostis newe,  
 Thou, holy churche, thou maiste be wailed ;  
 Sithe that thy cite is assailed  
 Through knightis of thine ownè table  
 God wot thy lordship is doutable :  
 If thei enforcin it to win  
 That should defend it fro within  
 Who might defence ayenst hem make ?  
 Withoutin stroke it mote be take  
 Of trepeget or mangonell,  
 Without displaying of pensell ;  
 And if God n'il done it socour,  
 But let remain in this colour,  
 Thou must thy hestis lettin be ;  
 Than is there nought but yeldè the,  
 Or yeve hem tribute doutiless,  
 And holde it of hem to have pees :  
 But gretir harme betidith the  
 That thei all maistir of it be :  
 Wel con thei scornin the withall,  
 By day ystuffin thei the wall,  
 And al the night thei minin there :  
 Nay, thou plantin must ellis where  
 Thine impis if thou wolt frute have ;  
 Abide not there thyself to save.

But now pece ; here I turne againe ;  
 I wol no more of this thing saine,  
 Yf I may passin me hereby,  
 For I might makin you wery ;



## THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE.

But I wol letin you alway  
To helpe your frendis what I may,  
So thei wollin my company,  
For thei be shent all uttirly;  
But if so fallin that I be  
Oftin with 'hem and thei with me,  
And eke my lemman mote thei serve,  
Or thei shul not thy love deserve  
Forsoth I am a false traitour;  
God judged me for a thefe trechour;  
Forfworne I am, but wel nigh none  
Wote of my gile til it be done.

Through me hath many' one deth received  
That my treget ner aperceved,  
And yet receveth, and shal receive,  
That my falsnesse shal nere perceive;  
But who so doth, if he wise be,  
Him is right gode beware of me;  
But so flighe is the perceiving,  
That al to late comith knowing,  
For Proteus, that coude him chaunge,  
In every shappe homely and straunge,  
Coude nevir fuche gile ne tresoun  
As I, for I come nere in toun  
There as I might yknowin be  
Though men me both might here and see;  
Ful wel I can my clothis chaunge,  
Take one and make an othir straunge;  
Now am I knight, now chastelaine,  
Now prelate, and now chaplaine,  
Now priest, now clerke, and now fostere,  
Now am I maistir, now scholere,  
Now monke, now chanon, now baily;  
Whatever mistir manne am I.

Now am I prince, now am I page,  
And can by hert ev'ry language;  
Sometimis am I hore and olde,  
Now I am yong, and stout, and bolde,  
Now am I Robert, now Robin,  
Now Frere Minor, now Jacobin;  
And with me foloweth my loteby  
To done me solace and comp'any,  
That hight Dame Abstinence, and raigned  
In many a queint arraie fained;  
Right as it cometh to her liking  
I fulfill all her desiring.

Somtime a woman's clothe take I,  
Now am I a maide, now lady:

Somtime I am religious,  
Now like an ankir in an hous:

Somtime am I a prioreffe,  
And now a nonne, and now abbess,  
And go thorough all regiounes  
Yfeking all religiounes.

But to what ordir that I am sworne  
I take the strawe and bete the corne:  
To jolic folke I enhabite  
I aske no more but ther habite.

What wol ye more? in every wise  
Right as me list I me disgise.

Wel can I here me undir wede,  
Unlike is my worde to my dede.  
Thus make I into my trappes fall  
The folke through my priv'ilegis all

That ben in Christendome a live.

I may affoile and I may thrive,  
That no prelate may lettin me,  
All folke where ever thei found be:  
I n'ot no prelate maie don to  
But it the Pope be, and no mo.  
That madin thilke establisshing:  
Now is not this a propre thing?  
But were by flightis aperceved

As I was wont, and wost thou why?

For I did 'hem a tregetry;  
But therof yeve I' a litil tale,  
I have the silvir and the male.  
So have I prechid and ake thriven,  
So have I take, so have I yeven,  
Through ther foly husbunde and wifes;  
That I lede right a joly life:  
Through simplese of the prelacie  
Thei know not all my tregetrie.

But for as moche as man and wife  
Shuld shew ther parish priest ther life  
Onis a yere, as saith the boke,  
Er any wight his housil toke,  
Then have I privilegis large  
That maie of mochtil thing discharge,  
For he may say right thus parde:

Sir Priest, in shrift I tel it the,  
That he to whom that I am thriven  
Hath me affoild, and me yeven  
Penaunce sothly for alle my sin  
Whiche that I founde me gilty in;  
Ne I ne' have nevir entencion  
To make double confession,  
Ne reherce este my shrift to the;  
O shrifte is right enough to me;  
This ought the to suffise wele,  
Ne be not rebell nere a dele,  
For certis though thou haddest it sworne  
I wote no priest ne prelate borne  
That maie to shrift est me constraine,  
And if thei done I wol me plaine,  
For I wote where to plainin wele:  
Thou shalt not streinin me a dele,  
Ne enforce me ne not me treable  
To makin my confession double:  
Ne I have none affection  
To have double absolucion;  
The first is right inough to me;  
This lettre' affoiling quite I the:  
I am unbounde; what maist thounde  
More of my sinnes me to unbinde,  
For he that might hath in his honde  
Of all my sinnis me unbounde?  
And if thou wolt me thus constraine,  
That me mote nedis on the plaine,  
There shall no juge imperiall,  
Ne bishop ne officiall,  
Done judgement on me, for I  
Shal gone and plaine me opiny

Anon to my shriftfathir newe,  
 Whiche that hight Frere Wolfe untrew,  
 And he shal chusin him for me,  
 For I trowe he can hampir the;  
 But Lord! he would be wrothe withall  
 Yf men would him Frere Wolfe ycall,  
 For he would have no pacience,  
 But done all cruill vengeance;  
 He would his might done at the lest,  
 Than nothing spare for Godd'is hest:  
 And God so wise be my focour  
 But thou yeve me my Saviour  
 At Estir, whan it likith me,  
 Withoutin presing more on the,  
 I wol forth and to him ygone,  
 And he shal housil me anone,  
 For I am out of thy grutching;  
 I kepe not dele with the nothing.

Thus may he shrive him that forsaketh  
 His parish priest and to me taketh,  
 And if the priest wol him refuse  
 I am full redy him to' aduse,  
 And him punish and hampir so  
 That he his church shal forgo.

But who so hath in his feling  
 The consequence of such shriving  
 Shal sene that priest maie nere have might  
 To know the conscience aright  
 Of him that is undir his cure;  
 And this is ayenst holy' scripture,  
 That biddith every herde honest  
 Have very knowing of his best;  
 But povir folke, that gon by strete,  
 That have no golde ne summis grete,  
 Them would I let to ther prelates  
 Or let ther priestis know ther states,  
 For to me right nought yevin thei,  
 And why it is, for thei ne may.

Thei ben so bare I take no kepe,  
 But I woll havin the fat shepe;  
 Let parish priestis have the lene;  
 I yeve not of ther harme a bene:  
 And if that prelat'is grutche it,  
 That oughtin wroth be in ther wit  
 To lesin ther fat bestis so,  
 I shal yeve 'hem a stroke or two,  
 So that thei shal lesin with force  
 Ye, both ther mitre and ther croce.

Thus jape I' hem, and have do longe,  
 My privilegis ben so strong.

False Semblant would have stintid here,  
 But Love ne made him no such chere,  
 That he was wery of his sawe,  
 But for to make him glad and fawe  
 He said, Tell on more specially  
 How that thou servist untruly:

Tel forth, and shame the nere a dele,  
 For as thine habit shewith wele,  
 Thou servest an holy heremite.

Sothe is but I' am but an ipocrite.  
 Thou goest and prechist poverté.

Ye, Sir, but Richesse hath possé,  
 Thou prechist abstinence also.

Sir, I woll fillen, so mote I go,

My pauce of gode mete and gode wine,  
 As shoud a maistr of divine,  
 For how that I me povir faine  
 Yet al povir folke I disdaine.

I love bettir the acquaintance  
 Ten times of the King of Fraunce  
 Than of a pore man of milde mode  
 Though that his soule be all so gode,  
 For whan I se beggirs quaking,  
 Nakid on mixins all stinking,  
 For hungre crie and eke for care,  
 I entremet not of ther fare;  
 Thei ben so pore and ful of pine,  
 Thei might not ones yeve me a dine,  
 For thei have nothing but ther life;  
*What shoud be yeve that licketh his knife?*  
 It is but foly to' entremete  
 To seke in hounde'is nest fat mete:  
 Let bere him to the spittle' anone,  
 But for me comfort get thei none:  
 But a full riche sicke usurer  
 Would I visitin and drawe nere;  
 Him would I comforte and reheté,  
 For I hope of his golde to gete;  
 And if that wickid Deth him have,  
 I woll go with him in his grave:  
 And if there any reprove me  
 Why that I let the povir be,  
 Wolt thou how I know how to' ascape?  
 I say and swerin him full rape  
 That riché men han more tetchis  
 Of sinne than han these pore wretchis,  
 And han of counsaile more mistere,  
 And therefore I would drawe 'hem nere:  
 But as gret hurt, it maie so be,  
 Hath soule in right grete poverté,  
 As soule in grete richesse forsothe,  
 Al be it that thei hurtin bothe,  
 For richesse and mendicitees  
 Bene clepid two extremitees,  
 The mene is clepid Suffisaunce,  
 There lieth of vertue the' abondaunce,

For Salomon, ful wel I wote,  
 In his wise Parablis us wrote,  
 As it is knowen of many' a wight,  
 In his thirtieth chapitir right,  
 God thou me kepe for thy posté  
 Fro richesse and mendicite,  
 For if a riché man him dresse  
 To thinkin to moche on richesse  
 His hert on that so ferre is sette  
 That he' his Creatour doth foryette,  
 And him that beggith woll aie greve;  
 How shoud I by his worde him leve  
 Unneth that he n'is a micher  
 Forfworne, or els Godd'is lier?  
 Thus sayith Salomon'is sawes.

Ne we find writtin in no lawes,  
 And namely in our Christin laie,  
 Who so faith ye I dare say naie,  
 That Christ ne his apostils dere  
 While that thei walkid in erth here,

Were nevir fene herbrid begging,  
 For they n'olde beggin for nothing.  
 And right thus were men wont to teche.  
 And in this wise wouldin it preche  
 The maistirs of divinite  
 Somtime in Paris the cite.

And if men would there gaine appose  
 The nakid texte and let the glose,  
 It mightin sone assoilid be,  
 For men may wel the sothe yse,  
 That pardie thei might aske a thing  
 Plainly forth withoutin begging,  
 For they weren Godd'is herdis dere,  
 And cure of foulis haddin here,  
 Thei ne wolde nothing begge ther fode,  
 For astir Christ was done on rode  
 With ther propir hondis thei wrought,  
 And with traveile, and ellis nought,  
 Thei wonnin al their sustinaunce,  
 And lividin forth in ther penaunce,  
 And the remenaunt yaf awaie  
 To othir pore folkis alwaie.

Thei neithir bildin toure ne hall,  
 But thei in housis smal with alle.  
 A mighty man, that can and maie,  
 Should with his honde and body' alwaie,  
 Winne him his fode in labouring,  
 Yf he ne' have rent or fuche a thing:  
 Although he be religious,  
 And God to servin curious,  
 Thus mote he done or do trespas,  
 But if it be in certaine caas,  
 That I can telle if mistir be  
 Right wel whan that the time I se.

Seke the boke of Saincte Augustine,  
 Be it in papir or perchemene,  
 There as he writte of these worchinges,  
 Thou shalt fene that none excusinges  
 A perfite man ne should yseke  
 By wordis ne by dedis eke,  
 Although he be religious  
 And God to servin curious,  
 That he ne shal so mote I go,  
 With propir hondes and body' also  
 Yget his fode in laboring,  
 Yf he ne' have properte of thing,  
 Yet should he sel all his substaunce,  
 And with his swinke have sustinaunce,  
 If he be parfite in bounte;  
 Thus han the bokis toldè me :  
 For he that wol gone idilly,  
 And usith it aie besily  
 To hauntin othir menn'is table,  
 He is a trechour full of fable,  
 Ne he ne maie by gode reson  
 Excuse him by his orison,  
 For men behovith in some gise  
 Ben somtime out of God's servise,  
 To gon and purchasin ther nede.

Men mote etin, that is no drede,  
 And slepe, and eke do othir thing,  
 And so long may thei leve praying.

So may they eke ther praier blinne  
 While that thei werke ther mete to winne;  
 Seint Austin wol therto accorde  
 In thilke boke that I recorde.

Justinian eke, that made lawes,  
 Hath thus forbodin by olde lawes.  
 No man, up paine for to be ded,  
 Mighty' of body, to begge his bred  
 Yf he may swinke it for to gete;  
 Men should him rathir maime or bete,  
 Or done of him aperte justice,  
 Than suffrin him in fuche malice.

Thei done not wel, so mote I go,  
 Whiche that takin fuche almesse so,  
 But if thei have some privilege  
 That of the paine 'hem woll alege.

But how that is can I not se  
 But if the prince discevid be;  
 Ne I ne were not sikirly  
 That thei maie have it rightfully.

But yet I wol not determine  
 Of princis powir ne desine,  
 Ne by my worde compre'hende iwis,  
 Yf it so ferre may stretche in this;  
 I wol nat entremete a dele  
 But I trowe that the boke saith wele,  
 Who that taketh almessis that be  
 Dewe to folke that men may yse  
 Lame and feble, wery and bare,  
 Povir, or in fuche manir care,  
 That con winnin 'hem nevir mo,  
 For thei havin no power therto,  
 He etith his ownè dampning,  
 But if he lie that made al thing;  
 And if ye fuche a truaunt finde,  
 Chastise him wel if ye be kinde;  
 But thei would hatin you parcaas  
 if that ye fillin in ther laas.

Thei would estsonis do you scathe,  
 If that thei mightin, late or rathe,  
 For thei be not ful pacient  
 That han the worlde thus foule yblent:  
 And wetith wel that God ybad  
 The gode man sell al that he had  
 And folowe' him, and to pore it yeve :  
 He would not therfore that he live  
 To servin him in mendience,  
 For it was nevir his sentence,  
 But he had werke whan that nede is,  
 And folowe him in gode dedis.

Saint Poule, that loved al holy church,  
 He bade th' apostils for to wurch,  
 And winne ther livelode in that wise,  
 And 'hem defendid truandise,  
 And sayid, Werkith with your honden;  
 Thus should the thing be understonden.

He n'olde iwis have bid 'hem begging,  
 Ne sellin gospels ne preching,  
 Lest thei berafte with ther asking  
 Folke of ther cattle or of ther thing.

For in this world is many' a man  
 That yeveth his gode, for he ne can  
 Werne it for shame, or ellis he  
 Would of the' askir delivered be,



And for he him encombrith so  
 He yeveth him gode to let him go :  
 But it can him nothing profite ;  
 Thei lese the yeste and the merite.  
 The gode folke that St. Poule to preched  
 Profrid him ofte, whan he 'hem teched,  
 Some of ther gode in charite,  
 But therof right nothing toke he,  
 But of his hondis would he gette  
 Clothis to wyne him, and his mete.

Tel me than how a man may liven  
 That al his gode to pore hath yeven,  
 And wol but onely bidde his nedes,  
 And ner with hondes labour his nedes.  
 May he do so ? Ye, Sir. And howe ?  
 Sir, I woll gladly tellin you.  
 Saint Austyn saith, A man may be  
 In housis that han properte,  
 As Templers and Hospitellers,  
 And as these Chanons Regulars,  
 Or these White Monkis, or these Blake,  
 I wol no mo ensamplis make,  
 And take thereof his susteining,  
 For therin lyith no begging,  
 But othirwayis not iwis,  
 Yet Austyn gabbith not of this ;  
 And yet ful many' a monke laboureth  
 That God in holy church honoureth,  
 For whan ther swynking is agon  
 Thei rede and sing in church anone.  
 And for there hath ben gret discord  
 As many' a wight may here recorde,  
 Upon the' estate of mendicience,  
 I wol shortely in your presence  
 Tel how a man maie begge at nede,  
 That hath not wherwith him to fede,  
 Maugre his felowis janglinges,  
 For sothfastnes wol none hidinges,  
 And yet percase I may obey,  
 That I to you sothly thus sey.

Lo, here the case especial :  
 If a man be so bestiall  
 That he of no crafte hath science,  
 And nought desirith ignorance,  
 Than may he go a begging yerne  
 Till he some othir crafte can lerne,  
 Through whiche withoutin truanding  
 He may in trouthe have his living :

Or if he may done no labour  
 For elde, or sickenesse, or langour,  
 Or for his tendir age also,  
 Than may he yet a begging go :

Or if he have peravinture  
 Through usage of his noriture  
 Livid ovir deliciouly,  
 Than oughtin gode folke cominly  
 Han of his mischefe some pite,  
 And soffrin him also that he  
 May gon about and begge his bred  
 That he be not for hongir ded :

Or if he have of crafte coming,  
 And strength also and desiring  
 For to worchin, as he had what,  
 But he finde neithir this ne that,  
 Than may he beggin til that he  
 Have gettin his necessite :  
 Or if his winning be so lite  
 That his labour will not quite  
 Sufficiauntly al his living,  
 Yet may he go his brode begging,  
 Fro dore to dore he may go trace  
 Till he the remnaunt may purchafe :

Or if a man would undirstake  
 Any emprise for to ymake  
 In the rescous of our lay,  
 And it defendin as he may,  
 Be it with armis or lettrure,  
 Or othir convenable cure,  
 If it be so that he pore be,  
 Than may he beggin til that he  
 Maie findin in trouthe for to swinke,  
 And get him clothis, mete, and drinke,  
 Swinke he with his hondes corporel,  
 And not with hondes espirituel.

In all this case, and in semblables,  
 If that there ben no resonables,  
 He maie begge as I tell you here,  
 And ellis not in no manere,  
 As William Saint Amour would preche,  
 And oftin would dispute and teche  
 Of this matir al opinly  
 At Paris fully' and solemply ;  
 And all so God my souke blesse  
 As he had in this stedfastnesse  
 The' acorde of the' Universite,  
 And of the peple', as semith me.

No gode man ought it to refuse,  
 Ne ought him thereof to excuse,  
 Be wrothe or blithe, who so thou be,  
 For I wol speke and tell it the  
 All shoud I die and be put down,  
 As was Saint Poule, in derke priseum,  
 Or be exilid in this caas  
 With wrong, as Maistr William was,  
 That my mothir Hypocrisie  
 Banished for her gret envie.

My mothir flemed him Saint Amour :  
 This noble man did suche labour  
 To susteine er the loialte,  
 That he to muche agiltè me :  
 He made a boke and let it write,  
 Wherin his life he did all dite,  
 And would that eche renied begging,  
 And livin by my traveiling,  
 If I ne' had rent ne othir gode ;  
 What ! wenith he that I were wode ?  
 For labour might me nevir plese,  
 I have more will to ben at ese,  
 And have well levir, sothe to saie,  
 Before the peple pattre' and praie,  
 And wrie me in my foxerie  
 Undir a cope of papelardie

(Quod Love) What diuel is this I here?

What wordis tellist thou me here?

What, Sir, Why Falseneffe that apert is.

Than dredist thou not God? No, certis;

For selde in grete thing shal he spede

In this world that God wol ydrede,

For folke that 'hem to vertue yeven,

And truly on ther owne liven,

And 'hem in godenesse sie contente,

On 'hem is litil thriste ifente:

Suche folke ydrinkin grete misese;

That life ne may me nevir plesse.

But what golde han userers,

And silvir eke, in ther garneris!

Tailagiers, and these moniours,

Bailiffes, bedils, provostes, contours,

These livin well nigh by ravine;

The smale peple 'hem mote encline,

And thei as wolvis wol 'hem eten;

Upon the povir folke thei geten

Ful muche of that thei spende or kepe;

N'is none of 'hem that thei n'il strepe,

And wrine 'hem selvin well at full;

Withouthin scalding thei 'hem pull:

The strong the feble overgothe,

But I that were my simple clothe

Robbe bothe the robbid and robbours,

And gile the gilid and gilours;

By my treget I gathre' and threste

The grete tresour into my cheste,

That lieth with me so fatte ybounde;

Thus myn high paleis do I founde,

And by my delitis I fulfill

With wine at festis at my will,

And tablis full of extremeis:

I wol no life but ese and pees,

And winnin golde to spende also,

For whan the grete bagge is ago

It comith full right with my jape,

Make I not wel tooble mine ape

To winnen is alwaie mine entent

My purchace' is bettir than my rent;

For though that I should betin be

Ovir al I entremet me:

Withouthin me maie no wight dure;

I walkin foulis for to cure:

Of all the world the cure have I

In brede and eke in length; boldly

I wol bothe preche and eke counsaillen:

With hondis wol I not travailen,

For of the Pope I have the bull;

I ne holde not my wittis dull:

I wol not flintin in my live

These emperouris for to thrive,

Or kingis, dukes, and lordis grete,

But povir folke al quite I lete:

I love no suche spriving parde

But it for othir cause y be:

I recke not of these povir men;

Thei estate is not worthe an hen.

Wher findest thou a swinkir of labour

Have me to be his confessoure?

But empreffis and ducheffis,

These queenis and eke countessis,

These abbessis and eke bigins,

And these grete ladies palasins,

These joly knightis and bailives,

These nonnis and these burgeis wives,

That riche yben and eke plesing,

And these maidinis welfaring,

Where so thei clad or nakid be,

Uncounsailed goeth there none fro me;

And for ther foulis savite

At lorde and lady', and ther meine,

I aske, whan thei 'hem to me thrive,

The propertie of al ther live,

And make 'hem trowe, both moste and lest,

Thei parish priest is but a best

Ayens me and my company,

That shrewis ben as gret as I,

Fro whiche I wol not hide in holde

No privite that me is tolde,

That I by worde or signe iwis

Ne wol make 'hem know what it is,

And thei wollen also tellin me

Thei hele fro me no privite;

And for to make you them perceiven

That usin folke thus to deceiven,

I wol you saine withouthin drede

What men maie in the Gospell rede

Of saint Mathewe the gospellere,

That saith as I shall you saie here.

Upon the chairè of Moses

Thus it is glosid doutileis,

(That is, The Oldè Testament,

For thereby is the chairè mept)

Sittin Scribis and Pharisen,

That is to saine, the cursid men,

Whiche that we Ipocritis call;

Doeth that thei preche I rede you all;

But doeth not as thei doen a dele

That ben not werie to saie wele,

But thei doe well no will have thei,

And thei would binde on folke alwaie,

That ben to be begilid able,

Burdons that ben importable;

On folkis shouldirs thinges thei couchen,

That thei n'ill with ther fingirs touchen;

And why woll thei not touch it? why!

For them ne liste nat sikirly,

For the sadde burdons that men taken

Ymakin folkis shouldirs aken.

And if thei doe ought that gode be

That is for folke it shouldin se;

Thei burdons largir makin thei,

And makin ther hemmes wide alwaie,

And lovin setis at the table

The first and the moste honourable;

And for to han the first chairis

In sinagogges to 'hem full dere is,

And willen that folke 'hem loude and grete

Whan that thei passin through the strete,

And wollen be cleped Maistir also;

But thei ne should not willin so,

The Gospell' is there ayenst I gesse,

That shewith well ther wickidnesse.

An othir custome usin we;  
 Of hem that woll ayenst us be  
 We hate him dedly everychone,  
 And we woll werrey him as one;  
 Him that one hatith hate we all,  
 And coniecte how to doen him fall;  
 And if we sene him winne honour,  
 Richeffe or preise, through his valour,  
 Provende or rent, or dignite,  
 Full faste, iwis compassin we  
 By what laddre' he is clombin so;  
 And for to make him doune, to go  
 With traicion we woll him defame,  
 And doen him lesin his gode name.

Thus from his laddit we him take,  
 And thus his frendis foes we make,  
 But worde ne wetin shall he none  
 Till al his frendis ben his fone;  
 For if we did it opiny  
 We mightin have blame redily,  
 For had he wiste of our malice  
 He had him kept but he were nice.

An othir' is this, that if so fall  
 That there be one among us all  
 That doeth a gode tourne, out of drede  
 We saine it is our aldir dede,  
 Ye, sikirly though he it fained;  
 Or that him liste or that him dained  
 A man through him avauncid be,  
 Thereof all partinetes be we,  
 And tellin folke where so we go  
 That man through us is sprongin so.

And for to have of men praisin  
 We purchase through our flattering  
 Of richē men of grete poste  
 Lettirs to witnesse our bounte,  
 So that man weneth that maie us se  
 That allē vertue in us be.

And alwaie povir we us fain,  
 But how so that we begge or plain  
 We ben the folke without lesing,  
*That all thing have without having.*

Thus be dradde of the peple' iwis,  
 And gladly my purpose is this:

I delin with no wight but he  
 Have golde and tresour grete plente;  
 Ther acquaintaunce well lovin I:  
 This moche is my desire shortly;  
 I entremete me of brocages,  
 I makin pece and mariages,  
 I am gladly executour,  
 And many times a procuratour,  
 I am sometime a messagere,  
 That fallith not to my mistere.

And many timis I make enquest,  
 For me that office is nat honest;  
 To dele with othir mennis thing  
 That is to me a grete liking;  
 And if that ye have ought to doe  
 In place that I repairin to,  
 I shall it spedin through my witte  
 As fone as ye have told me it:  
 So that ye servin me to paie  
 My service shal be yours alwaie.

But who so wol chastise me  
 Anone my love ylosse hath he,  
 For I love no man in no gife  
 That woll me reprove or chastise,  
 But I woll all folke undirtake,  
 And of no wight no teching take;  
 For I that othir folke chastie  
 Woll not be taught fro my folie.

I ne love none hermitage more;  
 Al desertis and holtis hore.  
 And grete wodis everichone  
 I let hem to the Baptist John;  
 I queth him quite, and him relese,  
 Of Egypt all the wildirnesse:  
 To ferre were all my mansiouns  
 Fro allē citees and gode touns.

My paleis and mine house make I  
 There men maie renne in opiny  
 And saie that I the worlde forsake;  
 But all amidde I builde and make  
 My house, and swimme and plaie therein  
 Bette than a fishe doth with his finne.

Of Antichrist'is men am I  
 Of whiche that Christ saieth opiny  
 Thei have habite of holinesse,  
 And livin soche wickidnesse.

Al' outward lambin semin we,  
 Full of godenesse and of pite,  
 And inwarde we withoutin fable  
 Ben greedy wolvis ravisable.

We enviroun bothe londe and se;  
 With all the worlde werryin we:  
 We woll ordain of allē thing,  
 Of folkis gode and ther living.

If there be castill or cite  
 Within that bougerons be,  
 Although that thei of Millaine were,  
 For therof ben thei blamid there;  
 Or if a wight out of mesure  
 Would lene ther gold and take usure,  
 For that he is so covetous,  
 Or if he be to lechirous,  
 Or these that hauntin simonie,  
 Or provost full of trechirie,  
 Or prelate living jolilie,  
 Or priest that halt his quein him by,  
 Or oldē whoris hostilers,  
 Or othir baudes or bordillers,  
 Or ellis blamed of any vice,  
 Of whiche men shouldin doen justice;

By all the saintis that we preie,  
 But thei defende them with lampreie,  
 With luce, with elis, with famons,  
 With tendir gees and with capons,  
 With tartis or with cheffis fat,  
 With deinte slaunis brode and flat,  
 With caleweis or with pullaile,  
 With coninges or with fine vitaille,  
 That we undir our clothis wide  
 Ymakin through our golet glide,



## THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE.

Or but he wolle come in haste,  
 Rae venison ybake in paste,  
 Whethir so that he loure or groine  
 He shall have of a corde a loigne,  
 With whiche men shall him binde and lede  
 To breune him for his sinfull dede,  
 That men shall here him crie and rore  
 A milis waie about and more,  
 Or els he shall in prison die  
 But if he wolle his frendship buie,  
 Or smertin that that he hath doe  
 More than his gilt amountith to.  
 But and he couthe thorough his sleight  
 Doe makin up a toure of height,  
 Nought rought I wher of stone or tree,  
 Or yerth or turvis, though it be,  
 Though it were of no vounde stone  
 Ywrought with square and scantilone,  
 So that the toure were stuffid well  
 With allè richis temporell;  
 And than that he would him up dresse  
 Enginis bothè more and lesse,  
 To caste at us by every side,  
 To berin his gode namè wide.  
 Soche sleightis I shullin you yeuen,  
 Barolles of wine by sixe or seven,  
 Or golde in sackis grete plente,  
 He should though sone delivered be;  
 And if he have no fuche pitences  
 Let him studie in equipolences,  
 And lerin lies and fallaces,  
 If that he would deserve our graces,  
 Or we shall bere him soche witnesse  
 Of sinne and of his wretchidnesse,  
 And doen his lose so widè renne,  
 That all quicke we shouldin him brenne,  
 Or ellis yeve hem soche penaunce.  
 That is well worse than the pitaunce.  
 For thou shalt nevir for nothing  
 Con knowen aright by ther clothing  
 The traitours full of trechérie  
 But thou ther werkis can espie.  
 And ne had the gode keping be  
 Whilom of the' Universite,  
 That kepeth the kei of Christendome,  
 We' had ben tourmentid all and some,  
 Soche ben the stinking Prophetis;  
 N'is none of 'hem that gode prophete is,  
 For thei through wickid entencion,  
 The yere of the' incarnation  
 A thousande and two hundrid yere  
 Five-and-fifte, ferther ne nere,  
 Broughtin a boke with sorie grace,  
 To yeuen ensample in common place,  
 That sayid thus, though it were fable,  
 This the Gospell pardurable  
 That fro the Holie Ghost is sent:  
 Well were it worthy to be ybrent,  
 Entitlid was in soche manere  
 This boke of whiche I tell here,  
 There n'as no wight in al Paris  
 Before our Ladie at parvis  
 That thei ne might the bokè by;  
 The sentence plesed 'hem well truly.

To the copie if him talent toke  
 Of the Evangelist's boke,  
 There might he se by grete traifoun  
 Full many' a false comparifoun.  
 As moche as thorough his grete might,  
 Be it of hete be it of light;  
 The sunne ysurmountith the mone,  
 That troublir is, and chaungith sone,  
 And the nutte kerneill dothe the shell,  
 I skorne nat that I you it tell,  
 Right so withoutin any gile  
 Surmountith this noble' Evangile  
 The worde of any' evangelist,  
 And to ther title thei toke Christ.  
 And many soche comparifoun,  
 Of whiche I make no mencion,  
 Mightin men in that bokè finde,  
 Who so coud of 'hem havin minde.  
 The' Uni'ersite, that was a slepe,  
 Gan for to braied, and takin kepe,  
 And at the noise the hedde up cast,  
 Ne nevir sithen slept it fast,  
 But up it stert, and armis toke  
 Ayenst this false horrible boke,  
 All redy battaile for to make,  
 And to the judge the boke thei take.  
 But thei that broughtin the boke there  
 Hent it anone awaie for fere;  
 Thei n'old shewe it no more a dele,  
 But than it kept, and kepin wele,  
 Till soche a time that thei maie se  
 That thei so strong ywoxin be  
 That no wight maie 'hem well withstonde,  
 For by that boke thei durst not stonde:  
 Awaie thei gonne it for to bere,  
 For thei ne durstin not answere  
 By expoficion ne glose  
 To that that clerkis wolle oppose  
 Ayenst the curfidnesse iwis  
 That in that boke ywrittin is.  
 Now wotte I nat ne can nat se  
 What manir ende that there shall be  
 Of all this whiche that thei yhide,  
 But yet algate thei shall abide  
 Till that thei maie it bette defende;  
 This trowe I best wolle be ther ende.  
 This Antichrist abidin we.  
 For we ben all of his meine,  
 And what man that wolle not be so  
 Right sone he shall his life forgo:  
 We wolle a peple' on him arise,  
 And through our gile doin him cease,  
 And him on sherpe speris rive,  
 Or othir waies bring him fro live,  
 But if that he wolle folowe iwis  
 That in our boke ywrittin is.

Thus moche wolle our boke signifie,  
 That while Peter had maistrise  
 Maie nevir John shewe well his might.  
 Now have I you declarid right  
 The mening of the barke and rinde  
 That makith the entencions blinde;

But now at erst I woll begin  
 To expounne you the pithe within,  
 And the seculers comprehende  
 That Christ's lawe wollin defende,  
 And shoud it kepen and maintenen  
 Ayenist them that all sustenen,  
 And falsly to the peple techen  
 That John betokeneth 'hem to prechen  
 That there n'is lawe covenable  
 But thilke Gospell pardurable  
 That fro the Holy Ghost was sent  
 To tournin folke that ben miswent.

The strength of John thei undirstonde  
 The grace in whiche thei saie thei stonde,  
 That doeth the sinfull folke convert,  
 And 'hem to Jesu Christ revert :  
 Full many' an othere' horriblete  
 Mowin men in that boke se,  
 That ben commaundid doutilete  
 Ayenst the lawe of Rome expresse,  
 And all with Antichrist thei holden,  
 As men maie in the boke beholden.

And than commaundin thei to fleeen  
 All tho that with Peter yben ;  
 But thei shall nevir have that might,  
 And God to forme, for strif to fight,  
 That thei ne shall ynough yfinde  
 That Peter's lawe shall have in minde,  
 And evir holde and so maintene,  
 That at the last it shall be sene  
 That thei shall all comin therto  
 For aught that thei can speke or do.

And thilke lawe ne shall not stonde  
 That thei by John have undirstonde,  
 But maugre them it shall adoun,  
 And ben brought to confusion.

But I woll stint of this matere,  
 For it is wondir long to here ;  
 But had that ilke boke endured  
 Of bettre' estate I were ensured,  
 And frendis have I yet parde  
 That han me set in grete degre.

Of all this worlde is emperour  
 Gile my fathir, the false trechour,  
 And emperesse my mothir is,  
 Maugre the Holie Ghoste iwis.  
 Our mightie linage and our rout  
 Reignith in every reigne about,  
 And well' is worthy we mini'sters be,  
 For all this worlde governe we,  
 And can the folke so well deceve  
 That none our gilis can perceive,  
 And though thei doen thei dare not saie ;  
 The sothe dare no wight bewraie.

But he in Christ's wrathe him ledeth  
 That more than Christ my brethrin dredeth ;  
 He n'is no full gode champion  
 That dredeth soche simulacion,  
 Nor that for pain woll refusin  
 Us to correcte and accusin  
 He woll not entremete by right,  
 Ne havin God in his eyen sight,

And therefore God shall him punice :  
 But me ne rekith of no vice  
 Sithen men us loven comunablie,  
 And holdin us for so worthie,  
 That we maie folke repreve echone,  
 And we n'ill have represe of none :  
 Whom shouldin folke worshipin so  
 But us that stintin nevir mo  
 To patrin while that folke maie' us se  
 Though it not so behinde 'hem be ?

And where is there more wode folie  
 Than to enhauncin chivalrie,  
 And lovin nable men and gaie,  
 That jolie clothis weren alwaie ?  
 If thei be soche folke as thei semen,  
 So clene as men ther clothis demen,  
 And that ther wordes folowe ther dede,  
 It is grete pite out of drede  
 For thei woll be none hypocritis ;  
 Of 'hem me thinkith grete spite is :  
 I can not love 'hem on no side :

But beggirs with these hodie wide,  
 With sleigh and pale facis lene,  
 And with graie clothis nat full clene,  
 But frettid full of tatar wagges,  
 And high shewis knoppid with dagges,  
 That frouncin like a qualè pipe,  
 Or botis riving as a gipe ;

To soche folke, as I you devise,  
 Should princis and these lordis wise  
 Take all ther landis and ther thinges,  
 Bothe warre and pece in govirninges,  
 To soche folke shoud a prince him yeve  
 That would his life in honour live,

And if thei be nat as the seme,  
 That servin thus the worlde to queme,  
 There would I dwellin to deceive  
 The folke, for thei shall nat perceive.

But I ne speke in no soche wise  
 That men shoud humble' habite dispise ;  
 So that no pride there undir be  
 No man shoud hate, as thinkith me,  
 The povir man in soche clothing ;  
 But God ne presith him nothing  
 That saith he hath the worlde forsake,  
 And hath to worldly glory 'him take,  
 And woll of soche delicis use ;  
 Who maie that beggir well excuse ?

That papelarde that him yeldith so,  
 And woll to worldly ese ygo,  
 And saith that he the worlde hath left,  
 And gredily it gripith eft,  
 He is the hounde, shame is to sain,  
 That to his casting goeth again.

But unto you dare I not lie,  
 But might I felin or espie  
 That ye perceived it nothing  
 Ye shoudin have a starke lesing ;  
 Right in your honde thus to beginne,  
 I ne wolde it let for no sinne.

The god lough at the wondir tho,  
And every wight gan laugh also,  
And sayid, Lo, here a man right!  
For to be trustie to' every wight!

Falſe Semblant, (quod Love) ſaid to me,  
Sith I thus have avauncid the,  
That in my court is thy dwelling,  
And of Ribaudes ſhalt be my king,  
Wolt thou well holdin my forwardes?  
Ye, Sir, quod he, from hence forwardes  
Had my fathir here beforne  
Servaunt ſo true ſithe be was borne.  
That is ayenſt all nature.

Sir, put you in that avinture,  
For though ye borowes take of me  
The ſikerer ſhall ye nevir be  
For hoſtagis ne ſikirneſſe  
Or chartris for to here witneſſe:  
I take your ſelf to recorde here  
That men ne maie in no manere  
Terin the wolfe out of his hide  
Till he be ſlain bothe backe and ſide,  
Though men him beſe and all deſile:  
What! wene ye that I wold begile?

For I am clothid mekily,  
There undre' is all my trechiry;  
Mine herte chaungith nevir the mo  
For none habite in which I go:  
Though I have chere of ſimpleneſſe,  
I am not werre of ſhredneſſe:  
My lemman, ſtrainid Abſtenaunce,  
Hath miſtir of my purveiaunce,  
She had full long ago be dedde  
Nere for my counſaile and my redde:  
Let her alone, and you and me.

And Love answerid, I truſt the  
Withou borowe, for I wold none.

And Falſe Semblant the theſe anone  
Right in that ike ſame place,  
That had of treſon all his face  
Right blacke within and white without,  
Thanking him gan on his knees lout.

Than was ther nought but every man  
Now to aſſaute that ſailin can;  
(Quod Love) and that ſtill hardily:  
Than armid thei hein cominly  
Of ſoche armour as to 'hem fell.  
Whan thei were armid fiers and fell,  
Thei went 'hem forthe all in a roat  
And ſet the caſtill all about;  
Thei will not awaie for no drede  
Till it ſo be that thei ben dedde;  
Or till thei have the caſtill take.  
And four battellis gan thei make,  
And partid 'hem in foure anone,  
And toke there waie, and forth thei gene  
The foure gatis for to aſſaile,  
Of whiche the kepirs wold not faile,  
For thei ben neithir ſicke ne dedde,  
But hardie folke, and ſtrong in dedde.  
Now wold I ſaine the countenance  
Of Falſe Semblant and Abſtenaunce,

That ben to Wickid Tong ywent;  
But firſt thei helde ther parliament  
Whethir it to be doin were  
To makin 'hem be knowin there  
Or ellis walkin forthe diſguiſed;  
But at the laſte thei deviſed  
That thei wold gone in tapinage,  
As it were in a pilgrimage,  
Like gode and hoke folke unſeined;  
And anon Dame Abſtenaunce ſtrained  
Toke on a robe of cameline  
And gan he gratche as a Bigite.  
A large coverchief of threde  
She wrappid all about her hede;  
But ſhe forgate not her pſaltre.  
A paire of bedis eke ſhe bere  
Upon a lace all of white threde,  
On whiche that ſhe her bedis bede;  
But ſhe ne bought 'hem nevre' a deſe,  
For thei were given her, I wote wel,  
God wote of a full hoke frere,  
That ſaid he was her fathir dere,  
To whom ſhe had oftiner went  
Than any frere of his covert;  
And he viſitid her alſo,  
And many' a ſermone ſaid her to;  
He n'olde let for no man on live  
That he ne wold her oftin ſhrive,  
And with ſo grete devocion  
Thei madin her confeſſion  
That thei had oftin for the nones  
Two heddis in one hode at oncs.  
Of faire ſhape I deviſed her the,  
But pale of face ſometime was ſhe;  
That falſe traitoureſſe untrew  
Was like that ſalowe horſe of hewe  
That in the' Apocalypis is ſtewed,  
That ſigniſieth tho folke beſtrewed  
That ben all full of trechery,  
And pale thorough hypocriſy;  
For on that horſe no colour is  
But onely dedde and pale iwis:  
Of ſoche a colour enlangotred  
Was Abſtenaunce iwis coloured;  
Of her eſtate ſhe her repented  
Right as her village represented.  
She had a burdoune all of theſt  
That Gile had yeve her of his yeſt,  
And a ſkrippe of ſaint diſtreſſe,  
That full was of elengeneſſe,  
And forthe ſhe walkid ſobirly.  
And Falſe Semblant ſaint, *Je ſuis dieu*,  
And as it wert for ſoche miſtere  
Doin on the cope of a frere,  
With chere ſimple and full pitout  
His loking was not diſſimulid  
Ne proude, but meke and ful peſible.  
About his necke he bare a Bible,  
And ſquyirly forthe gan he gon,  
And for to reſt his limmes upon  
He had of treſon a potent;  
As he were feble' his waie he went.  
But in his ſleve he gan to thring  
A raſour ſharpe and well biting,



That was yforgid in a forge  
Whiche that men clepin Coupé Gorge.

So long forth ther-waie thei nomin  
Till thei to Wickid Tong comin,  
That at his gate ywas fitting,  
And sawe folke in the waie passing.

The pilgrimis sawe he fast by  
That berin 'hem full mekily,  
And humbly thei with him ymette;  
Dame Abstinence first him ygrette,  
And siþe him Falso Semblant salved,  
And he 'hem, but he not remeved,  
For he ne drede him not a dele,  
For whan he sawe ther facis wele  
Alwaie in herte him thought so  
He should knowin 'hem bothe two,  
For well he knewe Dame Abstinence,  
But he knewe not Constreinaunce;  
He knewe nat that she was constrained,  
Ne of her thev'is life yfained,  
But wende she come of will all fre,  
But she come in othir degree,  
And if of gode will she began  
That will ywas failid her than.

And Falso Semblant had he faine alse,  
But he knewe nat that he was false;  
Yet false was he, but his falsnesse  
Ne coud he nat espie nor gesse,  
For Semblant was so flie ywrought  
That falsnesse he ne espied nought;  
But haddeþt thou knowin him besorne  
Thou woldist on a boke have sworné,  
Whan thou him sawe in thilke araie,  
That he that whilom was so gaie,  
And of the daunce Jolie Robin,  
Was tho become a Jacobin:  
But soþly what so men him call  
Frere prechouris ben gode men all;  
Ther odir wickidly thei beren.  
Soche minstrellis if that thei weren.

So ben Augustins and Cordileres,  
And Carmis, and eke sackid freres,  
And all the freris shode and bare,  
Though some of 'hem ben grete and square,  
Full holy men as I 'hem deme;  
Everiche of hem would gode man seme;

*But shalt thou never of apparence  
Sein conclude gode consequence*

*In any argument inwis,*  
If existens all failid is;  
For men maie finde alwaie fopheme  
The consequence to enveneme,  
Who so hath had the subtilte  
The double sentence for to se.

Whan the pilgrimis comin were  
To Wickid Tong that dwellid there,  
Ther harnies nigh 'hem was algate;  
By Wickid Tong adoune thei fate,  
That badde 'hem nere him for to come,  
And of tidingis tell him some,  
And saied 'hem, What case makith you  
To comin into this place now?

Sir, sayid Strainid Abstinence,  
We for to dryin our penaunce  
With hertis pitous and devout  
Are commen as pilgrimes gon about;  
Well nigh on fote alwaie we go;  
Full doughtie ben our helis two,  
And thus bothe we ben ysent  
Throughout the worlde that is miswent  
To yeve ensample' and preche also;  
To fishin sinfull men we go,  
For othir fishing ne fishe we:  
And, leve Sir, for that charite,  
As we be wont, erbo'rowe we crave;  
Your life to amenne Christ it save,  
And so it should you not displese  
We woldin, if it were your ese,  
A short sermon unto you sain.

And Wickid Tong answered again,  
The house (quod he) soche as ye se  
Shall nat be warnid you for me:  
Saie what you list and I woll here.  
Graunt mercie! tho swete Sir dere,  
Quod aldirfirst Dame Abstinence,  
And thus began she her sentence:

Sir, the first vertue for certaine,  
The gretist and most soveraine  
That maie be founde in any man  
For having or for wit he can  
That is his tong for to refrain;  
Therto ought every wight him pain,  
For it is bettir still to be  
Than for to spekin harme parde,  
And he that harkeneth it gladly  
He is no gode man sikirly.

And, Sir, abovin all othir sinne  
In that art thou most giltie inne;  
Thou spake a jape not long ago,

And, Sir, that was right evill doe.  
Of a yong man that here repaired,  
And never yet this place apaired,  
Thou saideþt he awaitid nothing  
But to disceve Faire Welcoming:  
Ye saidin nothing sothe of that,  
But, Sir, ye lie, I tell you plat:  
He cometh no more ne goeth parde;  
I trowe ye shal him never se;  
Faire Welcoming in prison is  
That ofte hath plaied with you er this  
The fairist gamis that he coude  
Withoutin filth, or stil or loude;  
Now dare he not himselfe solace;  
Ye han also the man do chace,  
That he dare neither come ne go:  
What mevith you to hate him so  
But propirly your wickid thought,  
That many a false lesing hath thought,  
That mevith your foule eloquence,  
That janglith evre' in audience,  
And on the folke arilith blame,  
And doeth 'hem dishonour and shame  
For thing that maie have no preving  
But likeliness and contriving?

For I dare faine that Refon demeth  
*It is not a foth thing that semeth;*

And it is sinne for to controue  
 Any thing that is to reprove;  
 This wote ye wele, and Sir, therefore  
 Ye arne to blame mochil the more;  
 And nathelleſſe he reckith lite  
 He yeveth not now thereof a mite,  
 For if he thoughtin harme, parſaie  
 He would ycome and gone all daie;  
 He ne coude not himſelf abſtene;  
 Now cometh he not, and that is ſene,  
 For he ne taketh of it no cure,  
 But if it be through avinture,  
 And laſſe than othir folke algate,  
 And though here watchift at the gate  
 With ſpere in thine areſt alwaie,  
 There muſe muſarde all the longe daie;  
 Thou wakift night and daie for thought;  
 Iwis thy traveile is for nought,  
 And Jelouſie withoutin faile  
 Shall nevir quite the thy traveile;  
 And ſkathe is that Faire Welcoming,  
 Withoutin any treſpaſſing,  
 Shal wrongfully in priſon be,  
 There wepith and languiſhith he;  
 And though thou nevir yet iwis  
 Agiltiſt man no more but this  
 Take not a greſe, it were worthy  
 To put the out of this baily,  
 And attirwarde in priſon lie,  
 And fettrid the till that thou die;  
 For thou ſhalt for this ſinnè dwelle  
 Right in the devil's arſe of helle  
 But if that thou repentè the.  
 Maiſaie thou lieſt falſely (quod he.)

What, welcome with miſchaunce now!  
 Have I therefore herberid you  
 To ſaie me ſhame and eke reprove,  
 With ſorie happe to your behove?  
 And I to day your herbegere?  
 Go herbir you els where than here  
 That han a lier callid me.  
 Two tregetours arte thou and he,  
 That in mine hous do me this ſhame,  
 And for my ſothefawe ye me blame.  
 Is this the ſermon that ye me make?  
 To all the divils I me take,  
 Or ellis God thou me confounde,  
 But er men diddin this caſtill founde  
 It paſſith not ten daies or twelve  
 But it was tolde right to my ſelve,  
 And as thei ſaide right ſo tolde I;  
 He kiſte the Roſe privily;  
 Thus ſaide I now, and have ſaid yore  
 I not where he did any more;  
 Why ſhould men ſaie me ſuche a thing  
 If that it had yben gabbing?  
 Right ſo ſaide I, and woll ſaie yet,  
 I trowe I lyid not of it;  
 And with my bennis I woll blowe  
 To alle neighbours arowe  
 How he hath bothe comin and goſte.  
 Tho ſpake Falſe Semblant right anone,  
 All is nat goſpell out of doute  
 That men ſaie in the tounce aboute:

Lay no defe ere to my ſpeking,  
 I ſwere you, Sir, it is gabbing  
 I trow ye wote well certainly  
 That no man lovith him tendirly  
 That ſaith him harme, if he wote it,  
 All be he ner ſo pore of wit;  
 And ſothe is alſo ſikirly,  
 This know ye, Sir, as well as I,  
 That lovirs gladly wol viſiten  
 The placis there ther loavs habiten:  
 This man you loveth and eke honoureth,  
 This man to ſervin you laboureth,  
 And clepith you his frende ſo dere,  
 And this man makith you gode chere,  
 And every where that he you meteth  
 He you ſaleweth and he you greteth;  
 He preſiſh not ſo ofte that ye  
 Oughte of his coming encombrid be;  
 There preſin othir folke on you  
 Ful oftir than he doith now;  
 And if his hert him ſtrainid ſo  
 Unto the Roſe for to go,  
 Ye ſhould him ſene ſo oftir nede  
 That ye ſhould take him with the dede;  
 He coude his comming not forbere,  
 Though ye him thrillid with a ſpere;  
 It n'ere not than as it is now;  
 But truſtith well, I ſwere it you,  
 That it is clene out of his thought.  
 Sir, certis he ne thiakith it nought,  
 No more ne doth Faire Welcoming,  
 That ſore abyith al this thing.  
 And if thei were of one aſſent,  
 Full ſone ywere the Roſe ybent,  
 Tho the malgre your's would ybe.  
 And, Sir, of o thing herkeneth me;  
 Sithe ye this man that loveth you  
 Han ſaide ſuch harme and ſhamè now,  
 Wittith well if he geſſid it  
 Ye maie well demin in your wit  
 He ne wolde nothing love you ſo,  
 Ne callin you his frende alſo,  
 But night and daie he wollin wake  
 The caſtill to diſtroie and take,  
 Yf it were ſothe as ye deviſe;  
 Or ſome man in ſome manir wiſe  
 Might it warnin him every dele,  
 Or by himſelfe percevin wele,  
 For ſitthe he might not come and gone,  
 As he was whilom wonte to done,  
 He might it ſonè wite and ſe,  
 But now all othirwiſe wote he.  
 Than have we, Sir, all uttirly  
 Deſervid hell, and jolily  
 The deth of hellè doutileſſe,  
 That thrallin folke ſo giltileſſe.  
 Falſe Semblant ſo provith this thing  
 That he ne can none answering,  
 And ſeeth alwaie ſoche apparaunce  
 That nigh he fel in repentaunce,  
 And ſaid him; Sir, it maie well be;  
 Semblant, a gode man ſemin ye,  
 And Abſtinence, ful wiſe ye ſeme;  
 Of o talent you bothe I deme:

What counsaile wol ye to me yeven ?<sup>1</sup>

Right here anon thou shalt be shriven,  
 And say thy sinne withoutin more ;  
 Of this shalt thou repent the fore,  
 For I am priest, and have poste  
 To shrive folk of most dignite  
 That ben as wide as world maie dure ;  
 Of al this world I have the cure,  
 And that had nevir yet persoun  
 Ne vicarie' of no manir toun,  
 And God it wot I have of the  
 A thousande times more pite

Than hath thy priest parochiall,  
 Though he thy frende be speciall.

I have advantage in o wise,  
 That your prelates ben not so wise  
 Ne halfe so lettrid as am I ;  
 I am licensid boldily  
 In divinite for to rede,  
 And to confession out of drede

Yf that ye wol you now confesse,  
 And leve your sinnis more and lesse,  
 Without abode knele doune anon  
 And you shal have absolucion.



---

# TROILUS & CRESEIDE\*.

IN FIVE BOOKES.

---

## BOKE I.

THE double sorow of Troilus to telle,  
That was the King Priamus sonne of Troy,  
In loving how his aventuris felle  
From wo to wele, and astir out of joy,  
My purpose is er that I partè froly,  
Thou Thesiphone! thou helpe me t'endite  
This woful verse, that wepin as I write.

To the I clepe, thou goddesse of tourment,  
Thou cruil wight, sorowing ay in paine!  
Help me, that am the wofull instrument  
That helpith lovirs as I can complaine;  
For wel fit it, the sothè for to saine,  
A woful wight to have a drery fere,  
And to a sorowfull tale a fory chere.

For I, that god of Lov's servautes serve,  
No dare to love for mine unlikelineffe,  
Prayin for spede, al shoud I therfore sterve,  
So ferre am I fro his helpe in derkenesse;  
But natheleffe if this may done gladnesse  
To any lovir, and his cause aveile,  
Have he the thanke and mine be the traveile.

\* In this boke is shewed the fervent love of Troilus to Creseide, whom he enjoyed for a time, and her grete untrouthe to him againe in giving her self to Diomedes, who in the end did so cast her off that she came to grete misery. In whiche discourse Chaucer liberally treteth of the divine purveiance. *Urry.*

But ye lovirs that bathin in gladnesse,  
Yf any droppe of pite in you be,  
Remembrith you of passid hevinesse  
That ye have felte, and on the' adversite  
Of othir folke, and thinkith how that ye  
Han felte that Lovè durst you to displese  
Or ye han won him with to gret an ese.

And prayith for 'hem that ben in the care  
Of Troilus, as ye may astir here  
That Love 'hem bring in hevin to solace;  
And eke for me prayith to God so dère,  
That I have might to shew in some manere  
Suche paine and wo as Lov's folke endure  
In Troilus unsely avinture.

And biddith eke for them that ben dispeire  
In love, that nevir will recovered be,  
And eke for them that falsely ben apeired  
Through wickid tongis, be it he or she,  
And biddith God for his benignite  
So graunt 'hem sone out of this world to pace  
That ben dispairid out of Lov's grace.

And biddith eke for them that ben at ese  
That God 'hem graunt in love perseveraunce,  
And sende 'hem grace ther lovis for to plesse,  
That it to love be worship and plesaunce;  
For so hope I my selfe best to avaunce  
To pray for them that Lov's servautes be,  
And write ther wo, and live in charite;

And for to have of them compassioun,  
As though I were ther owne brothir dere.  
Now herkenith with a gode entencioun,  
For now wol I go streight to my matere,  
In whiche ye may the double sorowes here  
Of Troilus in loving of Creseide,  
And how she forsoke him er that she deide.

It is wel wist how that the Grekis strong  
In armis with a thousand shippis went  
To Troie wardis, and the cite long  
Besiegedin, nigh ten yeres ere thei stent,  
And how in divers wise and one entent,  
The ravishing to wreke of Queene Heleine,  
By Paris don, thei wroughtin all their peine.

Now fell it so that in the toun there was  
Dwelling a lord of gret authorite,  
A gret divine, that clepid was Calcas,  
That in that science so' experte was that he  
Knew wel that Troie shold destroyid be,  
By answeere of his god, that hight was thus  
Dan Phebus, or Apollo Delphicus.

So whan this Calcas knew by calculing,  
And eke by the' answeere of this god Apollo,  
That Grekis sholdin suche a peple bring  
Thorow the whiche that Troy must be fordo,  
He caste anone out of the toun to go,  
For wel he wist by forte that Troie sholde  
Destroyid be, ye, would who so or n'olde;

Wherfore, for to departin softly  
Toke purpose ful this wight, forknowing, wise,  
And to the Grekis host ful privily  
He stalle anone, and thei in curteis wise  
Didin to him both worship and service,  
In trust that he hath conning hem to rede  
In every peril which that was to drede.

Grete rumour rose whan it was first espied  
In al the toun, and opinly was spoken  
That Calcas traitour fled was, and alied  
To them of Grece; and caste was to be wroken  
On him that falsly hath his faith to broken,  
And said that he and al his kinne atones  
Were worthy to be brent both fell and bones.

Now had this Calcas lefte in this mischaunce,  
Unknowing of this false and wicked dede,  
A doughtir whiche that was in grete penaunce,  
And of her life she was full fore in drede,  
And ne wist never what best was to rede;  
And as a widowe was she and alone,  
And n'ist to whom she might ymake her mone.

Creseide ywas this ladies name aright;  
As to my dome in al Troy's cite  
Most fairist lady, passing every wight;  
So angelike shone her natife beaute  
That like a thing immortal semiid she,  
And therwith was she so parfite a cecture  
As she had be made in scorning of Nature.

This lady, whiche that al day herde at ere  
Her fathir's shame, his falsheid, and traifoun,  
Ful nigh out of her wit for sorow and fere,  
In widowe's habit large of samite broun,  
Before Hector on knees she fill adoun,  
His mercy bad, her selfin excusing  
With pitous voice, and tenderly weping,

Now was this Hector pitous of nature,  
And saw that she was sorowful begone,  
And that she was so faire a cecture,  
Of his godenesse he gladdid her anone,  
And said, Let your fathir's traifoun gone  
Forth with mischaunce, and ye your self in joye  
Dwellith with us whilis you list in Troye,

And al the honour men may do you have,  
As ferforth as though your fathir dwelt here,  
Ye shul have, and your body shul men save,  
As fer as I may ought enquire and here.  
And she him thankid with ful humble chere,  
And oftir wolde and it had been his will,  
And toke her leve, went home, and helde her still.

And in her house she' abode with such meine  
As til her honour nede was for to holde;  
And while she was dwelling in that cite  
She kepte her estate, and of yong and olde  
Ful wel beloved, and wel men of her tolde;  
But whethir that the childrin had or none  
I rede it nat, therfore I let it gone.

The thingis sellin as thei done of werre  
Betwixin hem of Troie and Grekis ofte,  
For some day boughtin thei of Troie it derre,  
And est the Grekis foundin nothing soft  
The folk of Troie: and thus fortune aloft  
And undir este gan hem to whelmin bothe,  
Aftir her course, aie while that thei wer wrothe.

But how this toun came to distruction  
Ne fallith not to purpose me to tel;  
For why? it were a long digression  
Fro my matir, and you to long to dwel;  
But the Troyan jestis, all as thei fel  
In Omer, or in Dares, or in Dite,  
Who so that can may rede hem as thei write.

But though the Grekis them of Troie in shetten  
And ther cite besegid al aboute,  
Ther olde usagis n'oldin thei not letten,  
As to honouren ther goddis ful devoute,  
But aldirmost in honour out of doute  
Thei had a relicke hight Palladion,  
That was ther trust abovin everichon.

And so besel, whan comin was the time  
Of Apprilis, whan clothid is the mede  
With newe grene, of lusty Ver the prime,  
And with swete smelling flours white and rede  
In sondrie wise shewid, as I you rede,  
The folke of Troie ther observances olde,  
Palladion 'is fest, went for to holde.

Unto the temple in all ther best wise  
In general went every manir wight  
To herkin of Palladion's service,  
And namily many a lusty knight,  
And many a lady fresh and maidin bright  
Ful well beseyn the most meyn and lest  
Both for the feson and for the hie fest.

Among these othir folke was Creseida,  
In widdowe's habite blake; but natheles  
Right as our first lettir is now an A,  
In beaute first so stode she makelles;  
Her godely looking gladdid all the pres;  
N'as never fene thing to be praised so derre  
Nor undir cloude biake so bright & sterre.

As was Creseide, thei saidin everichone  
That her beheldin in her blake wede;  
And yet she stode ful lowe and stil alone,  
Behinde all othir folke, in litil brede,  
And nie the dore, aye undir sham'is drede,  
Simple of atire, and debonaire of chere,  
With full assuaid loking and manere.

Dan Troilus, as he was wont to gide  
His yonge knightis, ledde hem up and doun  
In thilke large temple on every side,  
Beholding aie the ladies of the toun  
Now here now there, for no devocioun  
Had he to none to revin him his rest,  
But gan to praise and lackin whom he lest.

And in his walk ful faste he gan to waiten  
If knight or squyr of his company  
Gan for to like, or let his eyin baiten  
On any woman that he could espie,  
Then he would smile, and hold it a folie,  
And say him thus; O Lord! she slepith softe.  
For love of the, whan thou turnist ful ofte.

I have herde tel pardieux of your living,  
Ye lovirs, and of your leude observaunce,  
And whiche a labour folke have in winning  
Of love, and in the keping whiche doutaunce,  
And whan your pray is lost wo and penaunce.  
O very folis! blinde and nice be ye,  
Ther is not one can ware by othir be.

And with that worde he gan cast up his browe  
Ascaunce, lo! is this not wisely is spoken?  
At whiche the god of Love gan lokin rowe  
Right for dispite, and shope him to be wroken;  
He hidde anon his bowe was not to broken,  
For sodainly he hitte him at the full,  
And yet as proude a peacocke can be pul.

O blinde worlde! o blinde entencion!  
How oftin fallith al th' effecte contraire  
Of surquedrie and foule presumption?  
For caught is proude and caught is debonaire;  
This Troilus is clombin on the staire,  
And litil wenith that he mote discende;  
But al day failith thing that folis wende.

As proude Bayard beginnith for to skippe  
Out of the way (so prickith him his corne)  
Till he a lashe have of the longè whippe,  
Than thinkith he though I prauce all before  
First in the traife, full fatte and newe isborne,  
Yet am I but an horse, and hors 'is lawe  
I must endure, and with my feris drawe:

So fared it by this fiers and proude knight;  
Though he a worthy king's sonne were,  
And wend that nothing had had such might  
Ayenst his wil that should his herte stere,  
Yet with a luke his hert ywoxe on fire,  
That he that now was most in pride above  
Woxe sodainly moste subje& unto love.

Forthy ensample takith of this man  
Ye wise, proude, and worthy folkis all,  
To skornin Love, whiche that so sonè can  
The fredome of your hertis to him thral;  
For evir was and evir shall besal  
That Love is he that al thingis may binde,  
For no man maie fordo the law of kinde

That this be sothe hath previaid and doth yet  
For this (trowe I) ye knowin al and some,  
Men redin nat that folke han gretir wit  
Than thei that han ben most with love inome,  
And strengist folke ben therwith ovircome,  
The worthyist and gretist of degre;  
This was and is, and yet man shal it se.

And truiliche it litte well to be so,  
For aldirwisist han therwith ben plesed,  
And thei that han ben aldirmoste in wo  
With love han ben comfortid most and esed,  
And oft it hath the cruill herte apesed,  
And worthy folke made worthyir of name,  
And causith most to dredin vice and shame.

Now lisch it may nat godely be withstonde,  
And is a thing so vertuons in kinde,  
Ne grudgith naught to Love for to ben bonde,  
Sithe as him selvin list he may you binde;  
The yerde is bette that bowin wel and winde  
Than that that brest; and therfore I you rede  
Folowith him that so well can you lede.

But for to tellin forth in speciall  
As of this king 'is sonne of whiche I tolde,  
And levin othir thing collateral,  
Of him thinke I my tale forth to holde,  
Bothe of his joye and of his caris colde,  
And all his werke as touching this matere,  
For I it gan, I wol therto refere.

Within the temple wente him forth playing  
This Troilus with every wight about,  
On this lady and now on that loking,  
Wherefo she were of toun or of without;  
And upon case befil that through a rout  
His eye ypercid, and so depe it went  
Til on Creseide it smote, and there it stent.

And sodainly for wondir wert astoned,  
And gan her bet beholde in thrifty wise;  
O mercy, God! thought he; wher hast thou wouned,  
That arte so faire and godely to devise?  
Therwith his hert began to sprede and rise,  
And softe he sighid, lest men might him here,  
And caught ayen his formir playing chere.

She n'as nat with the leste of her stature,  
But al her limmis so wel answering  
Werin to womanhode, that creature  
Was nevir lassè mannish in seming,  
And eke the pure wife of her mening  
She shewid wel, that men might in her gesse  
Honour, estate, and womanly noblesse.

The Troilus right wondir wel withall  
Gan for to like her menin and her chere,  
Whiche somdele deignous was, for she let fal  
Her luke a lite a side, in suche manere  
Ascauncis, what may I nat stonidin here?  
And aftir that her loking gan she light.  
That never thought him sene so gode a sight

And of her luke in him there gan to quicken  
So grete desire and suche affection,  
That in his hert 'is bottom gan to sticken  
Of her his fixe and depe impressioun;  
And though he erst had porid up and doun  
Than was he glade his hornis in to shrinken;  
Unnethis wist he how to luke or winke.



Lo! he that lete him selvin so conning,  
And scornid 'hem that lov's painis drien,  
Was ful unware that Love had his dwelling  
Within the subtil stremis of her eyen,  
That sodainly him thought that he felte dien  
Right with her loke the spirite in his herte;  
Blessid be Love, that thus can folke convert!

She thus in blake loking to Troilus  
Ovir al thing he stode for to beholde,  
But his desire, ne wherefore he stode thus,  
He neither chere made ne worde thereof tolde,  
But from aserre, his manir for to holde,  
On othir thing somtime his loke he cast,  
And este on her, while that the service last.

And astir this, not fully all awhaped,  
Out of the temple esliche he wente,  
Repenting him that evir he had japed  
Of Lov's folke, lest fully the discente  
Of scorne fil on him self; but what he mente  
Leste it were wiste on any manir side  
His wo he gan dissimulin and hide.

Whan he was fro this temple thus departed  
He streight anone unto his palais turneth;  
Right with her loke thorough shottin and darterd,  
Al frainith he in luste that he sojourneth,  
And all his chere and speche also he abnormeth.  
And aie of Lov's servauntes every while,  
Himselfe to wrie, at 'hem he gan to smile,

And sayd, Ah, Lord! so ye live all in lust,  
Ye lovirs, for the conningist of you,  
That servith most ententifeliche and best,  
Him tite as oftin harme therof as prowre;  
Your hire is quite ayen, ye, God wote howe,  
Not wel for wele, but skorne for gode service;  
In faith, your ordir is ruled in gode wise.

In no certaine ben your observances,  
But it in a few sely pointis be,  
Ne nothing asketh so gret attendances  
As doth your laie, and that knowin al ye;  
But that is not the worst, as mote I the,  
But tolde I which were the worst point, I leve,  
Al saide I sothe, ye woldin at me greve.

But take this; that ye lovirs ofte eschewe,  
Or ellisdone of gode etencion,  
Ful ofte thy lady wol it misseconfstewe,  
And deme it harme in her opinion,  
And yet if she for othir encheson  
Be wroth, then shalt thou have a groin anone:  
Lorde! wel is him that may bene of you one!

But for al this, whan that he seeth his time,  
He held his pees, non othir bote him gained,  
For Love began his fethirs so to lime,  
That wel unneth unto his folke he fained  
That othir bely nedis him distrained:  
So wo was him that what to done he n'ist,  
But bad his folke to gone where as 'hem list.

And whan that he in chambre was alone  
He doune upon his bedd'is fete him sette,  
And first he gan to sike and este to grone,  
And thought aie on her so withoutin lette,  
That as he fatte and woke his spirite mette  
That he her saugh and temple, and all the wise  
Right of her loke, and gan it newe avise.

Thus gan he make a mirroure of his minde,  
In whiche he saugh all wholly her figure,  
And that he wel coude in his hert yshade  
It was to him a right gode avinture  
To love suche one, and if he did his cure  
To servin her yet might he fal in grace,  
Or els for one of her servauntes pace:

Imagining that ne travaille nor grame  
Ne might for so godely an one be lorne,  
As she ne him for his desire no shame,  
Al were it wiste, but in prise and upborne  
Of all lovirs, wel more than before.  
Thus argumentid he in his ginning,  
Ful unavisid of his wo coming.

Thus toke he purpose Lov's craft to sewe,  
And thought that he would workin privily,  
First for to hide all his desire in mewe,  
From every wight iborne all uttirly,  
But he might ought recovered ben therby,  
Remembring him that Love to wide iblowe  
*Felt bitter frute, although swete fede he forwe.*

And ore al this ful mokil more he thought  
What for to speke and what to holdin inne,  
And what to artin her to love he sought,  
And on a songe anone right to beginne,  
And gan loude on his sorowe for to winne;  
For with gode hope he gan fully assente  
Creseida for to love, and nought repente.

And of his songe not onely his sentence,  
(As write mine auctour, callid Lolius)  
But plainely, save our tong's difference,  
I dare wel say in al that Troilus  
Saied in his songe, lo! every word right thus  
As I shal saie, and who so list it here  
Lo! next this verse he may it findin here.

*The songe of Troilus out of Petrarche.*

If no love is, o God, what fele I so!  
And if love is, what thing and whiche is he?  
If love be gode from whence comith my wo?  
If it be wicke a wondir thinkith me,  
Whan every turment and adversite  
That cometh of him may to me savery thinke,  
For aye more thurst I the more that I drinke.

And if that at mine owne lust I brenne,  
From whence comith my wailing and my pleinte,  
If harme agre me wherto plaine I thenne?  
I n'ot nere why unwery that I feinte.  
O quickè deth! o swete harme so quicnte!  
How may I se in me soche quantite  
But if that I consente that it so be?

And if that I consente I wrongfully  
Complaine iwis. Thus possid to and fro,  
As sterelès wight is in a bote, am I,  
Amidde the se atwixin windis two  
That in contrarie stondin evirmo.  
Alas! what is this wondir maladie?  
For hete of colde, for colde of hete, I die.

And to the god of Love thus sayid he  
With pitous voice; O Lorde! now your'is is  
My spirite, whiche that oughtin your'is be;  
You thonké I, Lord, that han me brought to this;  
But whethir goddesse or woman iwis  
She be I n'ot whiche, that ye do me serve,  
But as her man I wol aie live and sterve.

Ye stondin in her eyin mightily,  
As in a place unto your vertue digne,  
Wherfore o Lord! if my service or I  
May likin you, so bethe me to ben,  
For mine estate royal here I resigne  
Into her honde, and with ful humble chere  
Become her man, as to my lady dene.

*Endeth the song.*

In him ne deigned to sparin blode royall  
The fire of love, wherfro may God me blesse!  
Ne him forbare in no degre for all  
His virtue or his excellent prowesse,  
But helde him as his thrall lowe in distresse,  
And brende him so in sondrie wise aie newe,  
That sixty times a day he losse his hewe.

So muchill daie fro daie his ownè thought  
For luste to her gan quickin and encrese,  
That everiche othir charge he sette at nought:  
Forthy ful oftin, his hote fire to cese,  
To sene her godely loke he gan to prese,  
For therby to ben esid wel he wende,  
And aie the nere he was the more he brende;

For aie the nere the fire the hottir is,  
This (trowe I) knowith al this company;  
But were he ferre or nere I dare saie this,  
By night or daie, for wisdom or folie,  
His herte, whiche that is his brest's eye,  
Was aie on her, that fairir was to sene  
Than evir was Helein or Polixene.

Eke of the daie there pallid nat an houre  
But to himself a thousande times he falde,  
God godely, to whom I serve and laboure  
As best I can, now would to God, Creseide,  
Ye wouldin on me rue er that I diede;  
My dere herte, alas! mine hele, and my hewe,  
And life, is losse but ye woll on me rewe.

All othir dredis werin from him fledde  
Bothe of th' assiege and his salvacion,  
Ne in his desire non othir fancy brede  
But argumentes to this conclusion,  
That she on him would han compassion,  
And he to ben her man while he maie dure;  
Lo here his life, and from his deth his cure.

The sharpe shouris fell of armis preve  
That Hector or his othir brethrin didden  
Ne made him onely therefore onis meve,  
And yet was he, wher so men went or ridden,  
Found one the best, and lengist time abiden  
There peril was, and eke did sache travail  
In armis that to thinke it was mervaille.

But for none hate he to the Grekis had,  
Ne also for the rescous of the toun,  
Ne made him thus in armis for to mad,  
But onely lo! for this conclusion,  
To likin her the bet for his renoun:  
Fro daie to daie in armis so he spedde  
That all the Grekis as the deth him dredde.

And fro this forth the tho rest him love his slepe,  
And made his mete his foe, and eke his sorow  
Gan multiplie, that who so tokè kepe  
It shewid in his hewe both even' and morow  
Therefore a title he gan him to borowe  
Of othir sickeneise, leil men of him wende  
That the hottesire of cruill love him brende;

And faied he by a fevir fared amis:  
But how it was certain I cannot say,  
If that his ladie understode nat this,  
Or fainid her she n'ist, one of the tweie;  
But well rede I that by no manir weie  
Ne fened it as if she on him rought,  
Or of his paine, what so evir he thought.

But than yfild this Troilus soche wo  
That he was wel nigh wode; for aie his drede  
Was this, that she somt wight had lovid so  
That ner of him she would han takin bedde,  
For whiche him thought he felt his herte blede;  
Ne of his wo ne durst he nought begin  
To tellin her for all this worlde to win.

But whan he had a space left from his care,  
Thus to himself full oft he gan to plain;  
He saied, O sole! now art thou in the snare  
That whilom japedist at lov's pain;  
Now art thou hent, now gnaw thin ownè chain:  
Thou wert aie woned eche lovir reprehende  
Of thing fro which thou canst nat the defende.

What woll now every lovir saie of the  
If this be wist! but er in thine absence  
Laughin in scorne, and sayn, Lo! there goth he;  
That is the man of so grete sapience,  
That helde us lovirs leste in reverence:  
Now thanked be God he maie gon on the daunce  
Of hem that Love liste feibly to avaunce:

But o thou woful Troilus! God would  
(Sithe thou must lovin through thy destine)  
That thou beset wer of soche one that should  
Know all thy wo, all lackid her pite!  
But all so colde in love towardis the  
Thy ladie is as frost in wintir mone,  
And thou fordon as snowe in fire is fone.

God would I were arivid in the port  
Of deth, to which my sorowe woll me lede!  
Ah, Lorde! to me it were a grete comfort,  
Than were I quite of languishing in drede,  
For by my hidde sorowe iblowe in brede  
I shall be lapid ben a thousande time  
More than that sole of whose foly men rime.

But now helpe God, and ye my swete, for whom  
I plaine; icought ye nevir wight so fast:  
O mercie, my dere herte! and helpe me from  
The deth, for I while that my life maie last  
More than my life woll love you to my last;  
And with some frendly loke gladith me, swete!  
Though nevir nothing more ye me behete.

These wordis and full many' an othir mo  
He spake, and callid evir in his pleinte  
Her name, to tellin unto her his wo,  
Till nigh that he in sake teris was dreinte:  
All was for nought; she herd nat his compleinte;  
And whan that he bethought on that folie  
A thousand folde his wo gan multiplie.

Bewailing in his chambir thus alone  
A frende of his, that callid was Pandare,  
Came onis in unware, and herd him grone,  
And saw his frend in soche distresse and care;  
Alas! (quod he) who causith all this fare?  
O mercie God! what unhap maie this mene?  
Han now thus fone the Grekis made you lene?



Or hast thou some remorse of conscience ?  
And art now fall in some devocioun,  
And waitest for thy sinne and thine offence,  
And hast for ferde yought contricioun ?  
God save them that besiegid han our toun,  
That so can keie our jolite on presse,  
And bring our lustie folke to holinesse !

These wordis saied he for the nonis all,  
That with such thing he might him angry maken,  
And with his angre doen his sorowe fall  
As for a time, and his corage awaken ;  
But well wist he, as ferre as tongis speken,  
There n'as a man of gretir hardinesse  
Than he, ne more desirid worthinesse.

What cas (quod Troilus) or what avinture  
Hath gidid the so sene me languishing,  
That am refuse of every creature ?  
But for the love of God, at my praying,  
Go hence awaie, for certis my dying  
Woll the disese, and I mote nedis deie,  
Therefore go waie ; there n'is no more to seie.

But if thou wene I be thus sicke for drede,  
It is nat so, and therefore scorne me nought ;  
There is an othir thing I take of hede  
Wel more than ought the Grekis han yet wrought,  
Which cause is of my deth for sorow and thought,  
But though that I now tell it the ne leste  
Be thou nat wrothe ; I hide it for the beste.

This Pandare, that nigh malt for wo and routh  
Ful oftin saied, Alas ! what maie this be ?  
Now frende, (quod he) if evir love or trouth  
Hath ben er this betwixin the and me  
Ne do thou nevir soche a cruikie  
To hidin fro thy frende so grete a care ;  
Wost thou not well that it am I Pandare ?

I woll partake with the of all thy paine ;  
If it so be I doe the no comfort,  
As it is frend'is right, so the for to saine,  
To enterpartin wo as glad disport  
I have and shall ; for true or false report,  
In wrong and right, iloved the all my live ;  
Hide not thy wo from me, but tell it blive.

Than gan this sorowfull Troilus to like,  
And saied him thus ; God leve it be my best  
To tellin the, for sithe it maie the like  
Yet woll I tell it the though my herte brest,  
And well wote I thou maiest do me no rest,  
But lest thou deme that I trust nat to the :  
Now herkin frende, for thus it stant with me.

Love, ayenst the whiche who so defendith  
Him selvin mooste him aldirlest availeth,  
With dispeire so sorely me offendith  
That streight unto the deth mine herf ysailleth,  
Therto desire so breunningly me assailleth  
That to ben slain it were a gretir joie  
To me than king of Grece to be and Troie.

Suffisith this, my fully frende Pandare,  
That I have saied, for now wotest thou my wo,  
And for the love of God my cold care  
So hide it well, I tolde it ner to mo,  
For harmis mightin folowen mo than two  
If it were wist ; but be thou in gladnesse,  
And let me sterve unknowe of my distresse.

How hast thou thus unkindely and long  
Hid this fro me, thou sole ? (quod Pandarus)  
Paraventure thou maiest for soche one long  
That mine avise anone maie helpin us.  
This were a wondir thing, (quod Troilus)  
Thou couldist ner in love thy selfin wisse,  
How devill maiest thou bringin me to blisse ?

Ye, Troilus, now herkin, (quod Pandare.)  
Though I be nice, it happith oftin so,  
That one that of axis doeth full ill fare  
By gode counsaile can kepe his frend therfro ;  
I have my self yseine a blinde man go  
There as he fell which that could lokin wide :  
*A sole maie eke a wise man oftin gide.*

A whetstone is no kerving instrument ;  
But yet it makith sharpe kerving tolis ;  
And if thou wost that I have aught miswent  
Eke thou that, for soche thing to schole is,  
Thus oftin wise men ben warin by folis :  
If thou so do thy wit is well bewared ;  
*By his contrary is every thing declared.*

For how might evir swetnesse have be know  
To him that nevir tastid bitternesse ?  
No man ne wot what gladnesse is I trowe  
That nevir was in sorowe or some distresse ;  
Eke white by black, by shame eke worthines ;  
Eche set by othir more for othir semeth,  
As men maie sene, and so the wise it demeth.

Sithe thus of two contraries is o lore,  
I that in love so oftin have assayed  
Gregauncis ought to connin well the more  
Counsailein the of that thou art dismaied,  
And eke the ne ought not ben ill apaied,  
Though I desirin with the for to bere  
Thine hevie charge ; it shall the lasse the dere.

I wote well that it farid thus by me  
As to my brothir Paris an heirdesse  
Whiche that yclepid was Oenone  
Wrote in a complaint of her hevinesse ;  
Ye saw the lettir that she wrote I gesse.  
Naie, nevir yet iwis (quod Troilus.)  
Now (quod Pandare) herkinith, it was thus.

Phæbus, that first found art of medicine,  
(Quod she) and coud in every wight'is care  
Remedy' and rede by herbis he knew fine,  
Yet to himself his conning was full bare,  
For love had him so boundin in a snare,  
All for the daughter of the King Admete,  
That all his craft ne coud his sorowe bete.

Right so fare I ; unhappily for me  
I love one best, and that me smertith sore,  
And yet paraventure I can rede the  
And nat my self ; repreve thou me no more,  
I have no cause I wote well for to fore  
As doeth an hauke that listith for to plaie,  
But to thine helpe yet somewhat can I saie.

And of o thing right sikir maiest thou be,  
That certain for to dyin in the pain  
That I shall nevir mo discovir the ;  
Ne by my trouth I kepe nat to restrain  
The fro thy love, although it were Helein,  
That is thy brothir's wife, if I it wist,  
Be what she be, and love her as the list.



Therefore as frendfulliche in me assure,  
 And tell me platte what is thine encheson  
 And small cause of wo that ye endure,  
 For doubtith nothing mine entencion  
 N'as nat to you of reprehension  
 To speke as now, for no wight maie bireve  
 A man to love till that him list to leve.  
 And therefore wetith wel that both ben vicis,  
 Mistrustin all or ellis all beleve;  
 But well I wote the mene of it no vice is,  
 As for to trustin some wight is a preve  
 Of trouth, and forthy would I fain remeve  
 Thy wrong concept, and do the some wight trust  
 Thy wo to tell, and tell me if the lust.  
 The wise saith, Wo is him that is alone,  
 For and he fall he hath none helpe to rise;  
 And sithe thou hast a felowe tell thy mone,  
 For this ne is nought certain the next wise  
 To winnin love, as techin us the wise,  
 To waile and wepe as Niobe the quene,  
 Whose teris yet in marble ben isene.  
 Let be thy weping and thy drerinesse,  
 And let us lessin wo with othir speche,  
 So maie thy wofull time semin the lesse;  
 Delitith nought in wo thy wo to seche,  
 As doen these folis that ther sorowes eche  
 With sorowe whan thei han misaventure,  
 And lustin nought to sechin othir cure.  
 Men saine, *To wretche is consolacion*  
*To have an othir felowe in his paine;*  
 That ought well to bein our opinion,  
 For we bothe thou and I of love do plain;  
 So full of sorowe am I, sothe to saine,  
 That certainly as now no more hard grace  
 Maie sit on me; for why? there is no space.  
 Yf God wol thou art nought agast of me  
 Lest I would of thy lady the begile;  
 Thou wost thy self whom that I love parde,  
 As I best can, gon sithin longe while,  
 And sithe thou wost I do it for no wile,  
 And sithe I am he that thou trustith most,  
 Tel me somwhat, fens al my wo thou woste.  
 Yet Troilus for al this no worde saide,  
 But long he laie as still as he ded were,  
 And astir this with siking he abraide,  
 And to Pandarus voice he lent his ere,  
 And up his eien cast he; and than in fere  
 Was Pandarus leste that in a frenseye  
 He should yfal, or ellis soné deye;  
 And said, Awake, full wonderliche and sharpe  
 What slombriest thou as in a lethargy?  
 Or art thou like an asse unto the harpe,  
 That herith soun, whan men the stringis ply,  
 But in his mind of that no melodie  
 Maie sinkin him to gladin, for that he  
 So dull is in his bestialite?  
 And with this Pandare of his wordis stent,  
 But Troilus to him no thing answerde;  
 For why? to tellin was nought his entent  
 Ner to no man for whom that he so ferde,  
 For it is said, *Men makin ofte a yerde*  
*With which the makir is himselfe ibetin*  
 In sondrie mapir, as these wise men treten.

And nameliche in his counsaile telling  
 That touchith love, that ought to ben secre,  
 For of himselfe it woll inough out spring,  
 But if that it the bet governid be;  
 Eke somtime it is crafte to seme to fle  
 Fro thing which in effectte men huntin faste;  
 Al this gan Troilus in his hette caste.  
 But nathelesse whan he had herde him crie  
 Awake, he gan to sike wondir fore,  
 And sayd, My frende, although that still I lie  
 I n'am not dese; now pece, and crie no more,  
 For I have herde thy wordis and thy lore,  
 But suffir me my fortune to bewailen,  
 For thy proverbis may nought me availen;  
 Nor othir cure ne canst thou none for me;  
 Eke I n'il not ben curid; I woll die:  
 What knowin I of the Quene Niobe?  
 Let be thine olde ensamplis, I the prey.  
 No, frende, (quod Pandarus) therefore I sey  
 Suche is delite of folis to bewepe  
 Ther wo, but to sekin bote thei ne kepe.  
 Now know I that there reson in the failleth;  
 But tellist me, if I wiste what she were  
 For whome that the al misaventure aileth  
 Durste thou trust that I tolde it in her ere  
 Thy wo, sith thou darst not thy selfe for fere,  
 And her besought on the to han some routhe?  
 Why nay, (quod he) by God and by my trouthe?  
 What! not as besily (quod Pandarus)  
 As though mine owne life lay in this nede?  
 Why no, parde, Sir, (quod this Troilus.)  
 And why? For that thou shouldist nevir spede.  
 Wost thou that well? Ye, that is out of drede,  
 (Quod Troilus) for all that er ye conne  
 She wol to no suche wretche as I be wonne.  
 (Quod Pandarus) Alas! what may this be  
 That thou dispairid art thus causlesse?  
 What! liveth nat thy lady? *Benedicite!*  
 How wost thou so that thou art gracilesse?  
 Suche evil is not alwaie botelless;  
 Why put not thus impossible thy cure,  
 Sithe thing to come is ofte in avinture?  
 I grauntin well that thou endurist wo  
 As sharpe as doth he Tityus in hell,  
 Whose stomake foulis tirin evir mo  
 That hightin Vulturis, as bokis tell;  
 But I may not endurin that thou dwell  
 In so unskilful an opinion  
 That of thy wo n'is no curacion;  
 But onis n'ilt thou for thy cowarde herte,  
 And for thine ire and folish wilfulnesse,  
 For wantrust tellin of thy sorowe' smerte,  
 Ne to thine owne helpe do besinesse  
 As moche as speke a worde ye more or lesse,  
 But liest as he that of life nothing retche:  
 What woman living coude love suche a wretche?  
 What may she demin othir of thy dethe,  
 Yf thou thus die, and she n'ot why it is,  
 But that for fere is yoldin up thy brethe  
 For Grekis han besiegid us iwis?  
 Lord! which a thanke shalt thou have than of this  
 Thus wol she saine, and al the toun atones,  
 The wretch is ded, the divel have his bones.  
 Y iiiij

Thou maiste alone her wepe, and crie, and knele,  
And love a woman that she wote it nought,  
And she wol quite it that thou shalt not fele,  
Unknow unkist, and lost that is unfought.  
What! many a man hath love ful dere abought  
Twenty wintir that his lady ne wiste,  
That never yet his ladie's mouthe he kiste.

What! should he therefore fallin in dispaire,  
Or be recreaunte for his owne tene,  
Or slain himself, all be his ladie faire?  
Naie, naie; but er in one be fresh and grene,  
To serve and love ay his dere hert is quene,  
And thinke it is a guerdone her to serve  
A thousande fold more than he can deserve.

And of that wordē toke hede Troilus,  
And thought anone what folie he was in,  
And how that sothe him sayid Pandarus,  
That for to slaen himself might he not win,  
But bothe to doen unmanhode and a sinne,  
And of his deth his ladie nought to wite,  
For of his wo God wot she knewe full lite.

And with that thought he gan ful sore to fike,  
And saied, Alas! what is me best to doe?  
To whom Pandare answerid, If the like  
The best is that thou tell me all thy wo,  
And have my trouth but if thou find it so  
I be thy bote or that it ben full long  
To pecis doe me drawe and sithin hong.

Ye, so saiest thou, (quod Troilus) alas!  
But God wot it is naught, the rathir so  
Full harde it were to helpin in this caas,  
For well finde I that Fortune is my fo,  
Ne all the men that ridin con or go  
Maie of her craill whele the harme withstond,  
For as her list she plaieth with fre and bond.

(Quod Pandarus) Than blamist thou Fortune  
For thou art wroth ye now at erst I se;  
Wost thou not wel that Fortune is commune  
To every manir wight in some degre?  
And yet thou hast this comfort, lo! parde,  
That as her joyis motin ovirgone  
So mote her sorowes passin everichone.

For if her whele stint any thing to tourne  
Than cessith she Fortune anone to be;  
Now sith her whele by no waie maie sojourn  
What wost thou of her mutabilite?  
Right as thy self lust she woll done by the,  
Or that she be nought ferre fro thine helping,  
Paravinture thou hast cause for to sing.

And therefore wost thou what I the beseeche?  
Let be thy wo and touning to the grounde,  
For who so liste have heling of his leche  
To him bihovith first unwrie his wounde;  
To Cerberus in hell aie be I bound,  
Were it eke for my sustir all thy sorowe,  
By my gode will she should be thine to morowe.

Loke up I saie, and tell me what she is  
Anone, that I maie gone about thy nede.  
Know I her aught? for my love tell me this,  
Than would I hope the rathir for to spede.  
Tho gan the veine of Troilus to blede,  
For he was hit, and woxe all redde for shame.  
Aha! (quod Pandare) here beginnith game.

And with that worde he gan him for to shake,  
And saied him thus; These, thou shalt her name tell:  
But tho gan sely Troilus for to quake,  
As though men should han had him into hel,  
And saied, Alas! of all my wo the well  
Than is my swete foe callid Creseide;  
And well nigh with that word for fere he deide.

And whan that Pandare herd her name neven,  
Lorde! he was glad, and sayid, Friend so dere,  
Now fare a right, for Jov's name in heaven  
Love hath beset the well: be of gode chere,  
For of gode name, and wisdom, and manere,  
She hath inough, and eke of gentillnesse:  
If she be faire thou wost thy self I gesse.

Ne nevir seie I a more bounteous  
Of her estate, ne gladdir, ne of speche  
A frendlier, ne none more gracious  
For to doe well, ne lasse had nede to seche  
What for to doen, and all this bet to eche  
In honour to as ferre as she may stretche:  
A king's herte semith by her's a wretchc.

And forthy loke of gode comforte thou be,  
For certainly the firste pointe is this  
Of noble corage, and wele ordaine the  
A man to have pece with himsele iwis;  
So oughtist thou, for naught but gode it is  
To lovin wel and in a worthy place;  
The ought not to clepin it happe but grace.

And also thinke, and therwith gladdin the,  
That sith thy lady vertuous is all,  
So soloweth it that there is some pite  
Amongis all these othir in generall,  
And for thei se that thou in speciall  
Requirist nought that is ayen her name,  
For Vertue stretchith not himsele to shame.

But wel is me that evir I was borne  
That thou beset art in so gode a place,  
For by my trouth in love I durst have sworne  
The should nevir have tidde so faire a grace;  
And wost you why? for thou were wont to chace  
At Love in scorne, and for dispite him call  
Saint Idiot, lord of these solis all.

How oftin hast thou madin thy nice japes?  
And saied that Lov's servauntes everichone  
Of nicete ben very godd's apes,  
And some of them would monche ther mete alone  
Ligging a bedde, and make 'hem for to grone,  
And some thou saidist had a blaunche fevere,  
And praidist God thei should nevir kevere:

And some of 'hem toke on 'hem for the cold  
More than inough; so saidist thou full oft,  
And some han fainid oftin time, and tolde  
How that thei wakin whan thei slepin soft,  
And thus thei would have set 'hem self aloft,  
And nathelesse were undir at the laste:  
Thus saidist thou, and japidist full faste.

Yet saidist thou that for the more part  
These lovirs wouldin speke in generall,  
And thoughtin that it was a sikir art  
For failing for to' assayin ovir all:  
Now maie I jape of the if that I shall;  
But nathelesse although that I should die  
Thou art none of tho I dare well seie.

Now bete thy brest, and saie to god of Love,  
Thy grace, o Lord! for now I me repent  
If I misspake, for now my self I love;  
Thus saie with all thine heart in gode intent.  
(Quod Troilus) Ah, Lorde! I me consent,  
And praie to the my japis thou foryeve,  
And I no more will jape while that I live.

Thou saiest well, (quod Pandare) and now I hope  
That thou the godd'is wrath hast al apesed;  
And sithin thou hast weptin many a drope,  
And said such thing wherwith thy god is plesed,  
Now would God nevir but that thou were esed,  
And thinke well she of whom rest all thy wo  
Hereafter maie thy comfort ben also.

For thilke ground that berith the wedis wicke  
Bereth eke these wholsome herbis as full oft,  
And nexte to the foule nettle rough and thicke  
The rose ywexith fote, and smothe, and soft,  
And next the vafey is the hill aloft,  
And next the derke night is the glad morowe,  
And also joie is next the fine of sorowe.

Now loke that well attempre be thy bridell,  
And for the best aie suffre to the tide,  
Or ellis all our labour is on idell:  
*He bastib well that wisely can abide.*

Be diligent and true, and aie well hide:  
Be lustie, fre: persever in servise,  
And all is well if thou werke in this wise:

But he that partid is in every place  
Is no where whole, as writin clerkis wife;  
What wondir is if soche one have no grace?  
Eke wost thou how it fareth of some servise?  
As plant a tre or herbe in sondrie wise,  
And on the morowe pull it up as blive,  
No wondir is though it maie nevir thrive.

And sith the god of Love hath the bestowed  
In place digne unto thy worthinesse,  
Stonde fast, for to a gode port hast thou rowed,  
And of thy self for any hevinesse  
Hope alwaie well; for but if drerinesse  
Or ovirhast doe our bothe labour shende  
I hope of this to makin a gode ende.

And wost thou why? I am the lasse asered  
Of this matter with my nece for to trete,  
For this have I herd saie of wise and lered,  
Was nevir man or woman yet beyete  
That was unapt to suffre lov'is hete:  
Celestiall, or ellis love of kinde;  
Forthy some grace I hope in her to finde.

And for to speke of her in speciall,  
Her beaute to bethinkin and her youthe,  
It fit her nought to ben celestiall  
As yet, though that her bothè list and kouthe;  
And trully it fit her well right nouthe  
A worthie knight to lovin and cherice,  
And but she doe I holde it for a vice.

Wherefore I am and woll be aie redy  
To painin me to do you this servise,  
For bothe of you to plesin; this hope I  
Hereafterwardis, for ye ben bothe wise,  
And connin counsaile kepe in soche a wise  
That no man shall the wisir of it be;  
And so we maie ben gladdid allè thre.

And by my trowth I have right now of the  
A gode conceit in my wit as I gesse.  
And what it is I woll now that thou se;  
I think that sithin Love of his godanesse  
Hath the convertid out of wickidnesse  
That thou shalt ben the beste post I leve  
Of all his laie, and gosse his soin greve.

Ensample why, for now these grette clerkes,  
That errin aldaynesse ayen all lawe,  
And ben convertid from ther wickid werkes  
Through grace of God, that left hem to him drawe,  
Than arne thei folk that han most God in awe,  
And strengist faithid ben I understonde,  
And con an errour aldirbest withstonde.

Whan Troilus had herde Pandare assented  
To ben his helpe in loving of Creseide  
He wext of wo, as who faith unturmented,  
But hottir wext his love; and than he saide  
With sobre chere, as though his harte yplaide,  
Now blisfull Venus! helpe er that I sterve.  
Of the, Pandare, I now some thanke deserve.

But, dere frende, how shal my wo be lesse  
Till this be done? and, gode now, tell me this,  
How wost thou saie of me and my distresse,  
Lest she be wroth? this drede I most twis,  
Or wol not herin al how that it is:  
Al this drede I, and eke for the manere  
Of the her eme she n'it no suche thing here.

(Quod Pandarus) Thou hast a ful grette care  
Lest that the chorle may fal out of the mone.  
Why, Lorde! I hate of the the nice fare;  
Why entremete of that thou hast to done?  
For Godd'is love I bidè the a bone;  
So let me' alone, and it shal be thy best.

Why, frende, (quod he) than done right as the best:  
But herke, Pandare, o worde, for I ne wolde  
That thou in me wendist so grette folie  
That to my lady I desirin sholde  
That touchith harme or any vilanie,  
For dredilese me were levir to die  
Than she of me aught ellis understode  
But that might yfrownin into gode.

Tho lough Pandare, and anon answerde,  
And I thy boxow? sie! no wight doth but so;  
I ne raught not although she stode and herde  
How that thou saiest: but farewell, I wol go:  
Adieu; be glad: God spede us bothè two!  
Yeve me this labour and this businesse  
And of my spede be thine al the swetnes.

Tho Troilus on knees gan donne to fall,  
(And Pandare in his armis hente him fast)  
And saide, Nowe sie upon the Grekis all!  
Yet parde God shal helpin at the last,  
And dredilese if that my life may last,  
And God toforne, lo! some of hem shal smerte;  
And yet me athinketh that this avaunt m'asterte.

And now, Pandare, I can no more say,  
But thou wise, thou wost thou maist: thou art al;  
My life, my deth, hole in thine honde I lay,  
Helpe me (quod he.) Yes, by my trowth I shal.  
God yelde the, frende, and this in speciall,  
(Quod Troilus that thou me recommaunde  
To her that may me to the deth commaunde,



This Pandarus tho, desirous to serve  
 His ful frendè, tho saide in this manere;  
 Farwel, and thinke I wol thy thanke deserve,  
 Have here my trowth, and that thou shalt well here:  
 And went his way thinking on this matere,  
 And how he best might her beseche of grace,  
 And find a lesure therto and a place.

For every wight that hath a herte to found  
 He rennith nat the werke for to beginne  
 With rakel honde, but he wol bide a stound,  
 And sende his hert'is line out fro within,  
 Thus aldirfirst his purpose for to winne,  
 As this Pandarus in his hert'is thought  
 Did cast his werke full wisely for he wrought.

But Troilus lay tho no lengir down,  
 But up anon gat upon his stede baie,  
 And in the felde he playid the lionn;  
 Wo was that Greke that with him met that daie:  
 And in the tounce his manir tho forthe aie

So godely was, and gat him so in grate,  
 That eche him loved that lokid in his face.

For he becamin the most frendly wight,  
 The gentilist, and eke the moste fre,  
 The trustyist, and one the beste knight,  
 That in his time was or ellis might be:  
 Ded were his japis and his cruilte,  
 Ded his high porte and all his manir straunge,  
 And eche of 'hem gan for a vertue chaunge.

Now let us stint of Troilus a stounde,  
 That ferith like a man that hurt is fore,  
 And is fomdele of aking of his wounde  
 Ylesid wel, but helid no dele more,  
 And as an esy pacient the lore  
 Abite of him that goth about his cure,  
 And thus he drivith forth his avinture.

---

# TROILUS & CRESEIDE.

---

## PROÆMIUM LIBRI SECUNDI.

Out of these blackè wawis let us faile,  
O winde, o winde! the wedir ginnith clere,  
For in the se the bote hath such travaile  
Of my conning that unneth I it stere :  
This se clepe I the tempestous matere  
Of depe dispaire that Troilus was in;  
But now of hope the kalendis begin.

O lady mine, that callid art Clio!  
Thou be my spede fro this forthe, and my Muse,  
To rime wel this Boke til I have do;  
Me nedith here none othir art to use;  
For why? to every lovir I me' excuse  
That of no sentiment I this endite,  
But out of Latin in my tonge it write.

Wherefore I n'il have neithir thanke ne blame  
Of all this Worke, but praie you mekily  
Disblamith me if any worde be lame,  
For as mine auctour sayid so say I;  
Eke though I speke of love unfeelingly  
No wondir is, for it nothings of newe is :  
*A blinde man can not judgin wel in bewis.*

I know eke that in forme of speche is chaunge  
Within a thousande yere, and wordis tho  
That haddin prife now wondir nice and straunge  
Us thinkith 'hem, and yet thei spake 'hem so,  
And spede as wel in love as men now do;

Eke for to winnin love in sondry ages  
In sondry londis sondry ben usages.

And forthy if it happe in any wise  
That here be any lovir in this place  
That herkeneth, as the story wol devise,  
How Troilus came to his ladie's grace,  
And thinkith so n'olde I not love purchace,  
Or wondrith on his speche or his doying,  
I n'ot, but it is to me no wondring :

For every wight whiche that to Rome ywent  
Halt nat o pathe ne alway o manere;  
Eke in some londe were al the game yfient  
Yf that men farde in love as men don here,  
As thus, in opin doying or in chere,  
In visiting, in forme, or said our sawes;  
For thus men saine, *Acbe contre bath his letin.*

Eke scarcely ben there in this place thre  
That have in love said like and don in al,  
For to this purpose this maie likin the,  
And the right nought, yet al is done or shal;  
Eke some men grave in tre, some in stone wal,  
As it betide : but sithe I have begonne,  
Mine authour shall I follow as I kenne.

## LIBER SECUNDUS.

In May, that mothir is of monethis glade,  
That the freshe flouris all, blew, white, and rede,  
Ben quicke ayen that wintir ded had made,  
And full of baume is fleting every mede,  
Whan that Phœbus doth his bright bennis spred  
Right in the white Bole, right so it betidde,  
As I shal singe; on May is day the thridde,  
That Pandarus, for all his wife speche,  
Felte eke his parte of Loy's flottis kene;  
That coude he ner so well of loving preche  
It made his hewe al daieful oftin grene;  
So shope it that him fill that day a tene  
In love for whiche in wo to bedde he went,  
And made er it were day full many' a went.

The swalow Progne with a sorowful lay,  
Whan morow come, gan make her waimenting  
Why she forshapin was; and ever lay  
Pandare abed halfe in a slombering,  
Til she so nigh him made her waimenting;  
How Tereus gat forth her sustir take,  
That with the noise of her he gan awake,  
And to call, and dresse him up to rise,  
Remembring him his arande was to done  
From Troilus, and eke his grete emprise,  
And cast, and knew in gode plite was the mone  
To done voiage, and toke his way full sone  
Unto his nec's paleis there beside:  
Now Janus, god of Entre, thou him gide!

Whan he was come unto his nec's place,  
Where is my lady, to her folke (quod he?)  
And thei him tolde, and he forthe in gan pace,  
And founde two othir ladies sit and she  
Within a pavid parlour, and thei thre  
Herdin a maidin 'hem redin the geste  
Of the sieg of Thebis whilis 'hem leste.

Madame, quod Pandare, God you save and se,  
With al your boke and al the companie!  
Eighe I, uncle mine, welcome iwis, (quod she)  
And up she rose, and by the honde in hie  
She toke him fast, and sayid, This night thrye,  
To gode mote it yturne, of you I mette;  
And with that word she doun on bench him fet.  
Ye, nece, ye shullin farin wel the bet,  
If God wol, al this yere, (quod Pandarus)  
But I am fory that I have you let

To herkin of your boke ye praisin thus:  
For Godd's love what saith it? tell it us:

Is it of love? some gode ye may me lere.  
Uncle, (quod she) your maistresse is nat here.

With that thei gonnin laugh, and tho she seide,  
This romauncé is of Thebis that we rede,  
And we have herd how that King Lanis deide  
Through Oedipus his sonne, and all the dede;  
And here we stintin at these letters rede  
How the bishop, as the boke can ytell,  
Amphiorax, fill through the ground to hell.

(Quod Pandarus) All this know I my selve,  
And al th' assiege of Thebis and the care,  
For herof ben there makid bokis twelve:  
But let be this, and tell me how ye fare:  
Do' way your barbe, and shew your face bare;  
Do' way your boke: rise up and let us daunce;  
And let us done to May some observaunce.

Eighe! God forbid! (quod she) What! be ye  
mad?

Is that a widowe's life, so God you save?  
Parde you makin me right fore adrad;  
Ye bene so wilde it semeth as ye rave:  
It sat me wel bettir aie in a cave  
To bide, and rede on holy saintis lives:  
Let maidins gon to daunce and yonge wives.

As evir thrive I (quod this Pandarus)  
Yet coude I tel a thing to don you play.  
Now uncle dere (quod she) tellith it us  
For Godd's love: is than th' assiege aweie?  
I am of Grekis ferde so that I deie.

Nay, nay, (quod he) as evir mote I thrive  
It is a thing wel bettir than suche five.

Ye, holy God! (quod she) what thing is that?  
What! bettir than suche five? Eighe! nay iwis.

For al this world ne can I redin what  
It should yben: some jape I trowe it is;  
And but your selvin tell us what it is  
My wit is for to arede it al to lene:

As helpe me God I n'ot what that ye mene.

And I your borow; ne ner shal (quod he)  
This thing be tolde to you, as mote I thrive.

And why so, uncle mine, why so? (quod she.)

By God (quod he) that wol I tel as blive,  
For proudir woman is there none on live,



And ye it wiste, in al the toun of Troie :  
I ne jape nat, so evir have I joie.

Tho gan she to wondrin more than before  
A thousande folde, and doune her eyin cast,  
For nevir sith the time that she was bore  
To knowin thing desirid she so fast,  
And with a fike she said him at the last,  
Now, uncle mine, I n'il you not displice,  
Nor askin that that may do you disce.

So aftir this with many wordis glade  
And frendly talis, and with mery chere,  
Of this and that thei speke, and gonnon wade  
In many an unkouth, glad, and depe, matere,  
As frendis done whan thei ben met here,  
Til she gan askin him how Hector ferde,  
That was the tounis wall and Grekis yerde.

Ful wel, I thanke it God, saide Pandarus,  
Save in his arme he hath a litle wounde;  
And eke his freshe brothir Troilus,  
To the wife worthy Hector the secounde,  
In whom that every vertue liste habounde,  
As alle trouthe and alle gentillesse,  
Wisedome, honour, fredome, and worthinesse.

In gode faith, eme, (quod she) that likith me  
Thei farin wel; God save hem bothe two!  
For trewliche I holde it a grete deinte  
A king's sonne in armis wel to do,  
And be of gode condicions therto,  
For grete powir and moral vertue here  
Is selde isene in one persone here.

In gode faith that is sothe, (quod Pandarus)  
But by my trouth the king hath sonnys twey,  
That is to mene Hector and Troilus,  
That certainly though that I should ydey  
Thei ben as voide of viciis, dare I sey,  
As any men that livin undir sonne;  
Ther might is wide know and what thei conne.

Of Hector nestith nething for to tel;  
In all this world there n'is a bettir knight  
Than he, that is of worthinesse the wel,  
And he wel more of vertue hath than might,  
This knowith many a wife and worthy knight:  
And the same prife of Troilus I sey:  
God helpe me so I knowe not siche twey.

Parde (quod she) of Hector that is sothe,  
And of Troilus the same thing trowe I,  
For dredileffe men tellith that he dothe  
In armis day by day so worthily,  
And berith him here at home gently  
To every wight, that al prife hath he  
Of them that me were levist praisid be.

Ye say right sothe iwis, (quod Pandarus)  
For yesterday who so had with him ben  
Mightin have wondrid upon Troilus,  
For nevir yet so thicke a swarme of been  
Ne flewe as Grekis from him gannin seen,  
And through the felde in every wight's ere  
There was no crie but Troilus is there!

Now here now there he huntid hem so fast  
There n'as but Grekis blode and Troilus;  
Now him he hurt, and him al down he cast;  
Aye where he went it was arrayid thus:  
He was ther deth, and shelde and life for us,

That as that day ther durst him none withstonde  
While that he helde his bloody fwerde in honde.

Therto he is the frendlyist man  
Of gret estate that er I sawe my live,  
And where him liste the best felowship can  
To siche as him thinkith able to thrive.  
And with that word the Pandarus as blive  
He toke his love, and said I wol gon hen.  
Nay, blame have I, myne uncle, (quod she) then,

What ellith you to be thus wery sone,  
And namliche of women wol ye so?  
Naie, sittith doune; parde I have to done  
With you to speke of wisedome er ye go;  
And every wight that was about hem tho  
That herde that gan ferre awaie to stonde.  
While thei two had al that hem liste on honde.

Whan that her tale al brought was to an ende  
Of her estate and of her governaunce,  
(Quod Pandarus) Now time is that I wende,  
But yet I say Aristith, let us daunce  
And caste your widowe's habite to mischaunce;  
What liste you thus your selfe to disfigure,  
Sith you is tidde so glad an aventure?

But wel bethought; for love of God, (quod she)  
Shal I nat wein what ye mene of this?  
No, this thing askith lesir tho quod he)  
And eke it me would full muche greve iwis  
If I it tolde and ye it toke amis:

Yet were it bette my tonge to holdin stil  
Than say a sothe that were ayenst your wil.  
For, nece myne, by the goddesse Minerve,  
And Jupiter, that makith the thonde'ring,  
And by the blisful Venus that I serve,  
Ye ben the woman in this world living,  
Withoutin paramours, to my weting,  
That I best love, and lastist am to grewe,  
And that ye wein wel your selfe I love.

Iwis, mine uncle, (quod she) grant me mercy!  
Your frendship have I sougth out yet;  
I am to no man beholdin nowly,  
So muche as you, and have to litil quit;  
And with the grace of Godsemforth my wit  
As in my gylte I shal you ner offende  
And if I have er this I wol amende,

But for the love of God I you beseeche,  
As ye be he that I love most and trise,  
Let be to me your frenid manir speche,  
And saie to me your nece what so you list.  
And with that worde her uncle anon her list,  
And sayid, Gladly, my love nece so depe,  
Take it for gode that I shal say you here.

With that she gan her eyin doune to caste,  
And Pandarus to coughe began a lase,  
And sayid, Nece, alway, lo I to the lase,  
How so it be that some men hem delite  
With subtil art ther talis for to endite,  
Yet for al that in this entencion  
Ther tale is all for some conclusion.

And sith the end is every tal's strength,  
And this matir is so behovily,  
What should I paint or drawin it on length  
To you that ben my frende so faithfully?  
And with that worde he gan right inwardly

Beholdin her, and lokin in her face,  
And faide, On suche a mirroure muche gode grace!

Than thought he thus, if I my tale endite  
Ought harde or make a proceffe any while,  
She shal no favour have therin but lite,  
And trowe I would her in my wil begile,  
For tendir wittis wenin al be wile  
Wher as thei con nat plainliche undirstond;  
Forthy her wit to founin wol I fonde;

And lokid on hir in a besy wife,  
And she was ware that he behelde her so:  
Ah, Lorde! (quod she) so faste ye me avise,  
Sawe ye me ner er now? what, say ye no?  
Yes, yes, (quod he) and bet wol er I go;  
But by my trouth I thoughtin newe if ye  
Be fortunate, for now men shal it se.

For every wight some godely avinture  
Somtime is shape, if he it can receive,  
But if that he n'il take of it no cure  
When that it cometh, but wilfully it weive,  
Lo, neither case nor Fortune him deceive,  
But right his owne slouth and wretchidnesse;  
And suche a wight is for to blame I gesse.

Gode avinture, o bellè nece! have ye  
Full lightly foundin, and ye conne it take;  
And for the love of God and eke of me  
Catcher it anone, lest avinture yslake:  
What should I lengir proceffe of it make?  
Yeve me your hond, for in this world is none,  
If that you list, a wight so well begon.

And sithe I speke of gode entencioun,  
As I to you have tolde wel here beforne,  
And love as wel your honour and renoun  
As any cature in the worlde iborne,  
By al the othis that I have you sworne  
And ye be wrothe therfore, or wene I lie,  
Ne shal I never sene you este with eie.

Beth nat agaste, ne quakith nat; wherto?  
Ne chaungith nat for ferè so your hewe,  
For hardily the worst of this is do;  
And though my tale as now be to you newe,  
Yet trust alwaie ye shal me findin trewe;  
And were it thing that me thought unfitting  
To you ne would I no such talis bring.

Nowe, my gode eme, for Godd's love I pray  
(Quod she) come of and tel me what it is,  
For bothe I am agast what ye wol say,  
And eke me longith it to wit iwis,  
For whethir it be wel or be amis  
Say on; let me not in this fere ydwel.  
So wol I done: now herkenith I shal tel.

Now nece mine, the king's owne dere sonne,  
The gode, the wise, the worthy, fresh and fre,  
Whiche alway for to done wel is his wonne,  
The noble Troilus, so lovith the  
That but ye helpe it wol his bane ybe.  
Lo! here is al: what shouldin I more sey?  
Doth what you list to make him live or dey.

But if ye let him dye I wol stervin,  
Have here my trouthe, nece, I n'il not lien,  
Al should I with this knife my throte kervin:  
With that the teris burst out of his eyen,  
And faide, If that ye done us both to dien

Thus giltlesse, than have ye fishid faire;  
What mendeth it you though that we both apaire?

Alas! he whiche that is my lorde so dere  
That trewe man, that noble gentle knight,  
That naught desirith but your frendly chere,  
I se him dyin, there he goth upright,  
And hastith him with al his fullè might  
For to ben slaine, if his fortune assente:  
Alas that God you suche a beaute sente!

If it be so that ye so cruil be  
That of his deth you listith nought to retch,  
That is so trewe and worthy as we se,  
No more than of a japor or a wretch,  
If ye be suche, your beaute may nat stretch  
To make amendes of so cruill a dede:

*Avisement is gode before the nede.*

Wo worthe the faire gemme that is vertulesse!  
Wo worthe that herbe also that dothe no bote!  
Wo worth the beaute that is routhelesse!  
Wo worth that wight that trede eche undir fote!  
And ye that ben of beaute croppe and rote,  
If therwithal in you ne be no routhe,  
Than is it harme ye livin, by my trouthe.

And also thinkè wel that this is no gaude,  
For me were levir thou, and I, and he,  
Were hongid than that I should ben his baude,  
As high as men might on us al life:  
I am thine eme; the shame were unto me  
As wel as the if that I should assent  
Through mine abet that he thine honour shent.

Now undirstonde, for I you nought require  
To binde you to him thorough no beheft  
Save one, that ye makin him bettir chere  
Than ye han don er this and more feste,  
So that his life be savid at the leste  
This al and some is plainly our entente:  
God helpe me so I never othir mente.

Lo! this request is nought but skil iwis,  
Ne doute of reson parde is there none:  
I set the worst that ye dredin; this is,  
Men would wondir to sene him come and gone;  
Ther ayenist answere I thus anone,  
That every wight, but he be sole of kinde,  
Wol deme it love of frendship in his minde.

What! who wol demin though he se a man  
To temple gon that he th' imagis eteth?  
Thinke eke howe wel and wisely that he can  
Governe himselfe that he nothing foryeteth,  
That wher he cometh he pris and thonk him  
And eke therto he shal come here so selde [geteth;  
What force were it though all the toun behelde?

Suche love of frendes reignith in al this toun;  
And wrie you in that mantil evirmo;  
And God so wis be my salvacioun  
As I have faide your best is to do so.  
But, gode nece, alway for to stint his wo  
So let your daungir fugrid ben alite.  
That of his deth ye be not al to wite.

Creseide, which that herde him in this wise,  
Thought I shal fele what he menith iwis.  
Now eme, (quod she) what wouldin ye devise?  
What is youre rede that I should don of this?  
That is wel said, quod he: certaine best is



That ye him love aien for his loving,  
As love for love is skilful guerdoning.

Thinke eke how elde wastith every hour  
In eche of you a part of your beaute,  
And therefore er that age doth the devour  
Go love, for olde there woll no wight love the.  
Let this proverbe a lore' unto you be,

*To late weare, quod Beaute, when it passeth,  
—And elde ydauntith daungir at the laste.*

The king's sole is wont to crie aloud,  
When that he thinketh a woman bereth her hie,  
So longe mote ye livin, and all proude,  
Til crow'is fete growin undir your eie,  
And sende you than a mirroure in to prie  
In which that ye may se your face a morrowe:  
Neece, I bid him within you no more sorowe.

With this he stinte, and cast adoun the hed,  
And she began to brest and wepe anone,  
And saide, Alas for wo! why n'ere I ded?  
For of this world the faith is al agone:  
Alas! what shuldin straunge unto me done  
When he that for my beste frende I wende  
Redith me love who shulde it me defende?

Alas! I would have trustid doutiles  
That if that I through my disfaventure  
Had lovid eithir him or Achilles,  
Hector, or any othir manir cature,  
Ye n'old have had no mercy ne mesure  
On me, but alwaie had me in repreve:  
This false worlde, alas! who may it leve?

What! is this al the joy and al the fest?  
Is this your rede? is this my blisful cas?  
Is this the very mede of your behest?  
Is this al paintid processe said (alas!)  
Right for this fine? O lady mine Pallas,  
Thou in this dredful case for me purvey,  
For so astonied am I that I dey.

With that she gan ful sorowfully to like:  
Ah! may it be no bet? (Quod Pandarus)  
By God I shall no more come here this weke,  
And God to-forne, that am mistrustid thus;  
I se wel now ye settin lite of us  
Or of our deth, alas! I, woful wretche,  
Might he yet live of me were nought so retche.

O cruil god of Deth, dispitous Marte!  
O Furies thre of hel! on you I crie,  
So let me ner out of this house departe  
Yf that I ment or harme or vilanie;  
But sithe I se my lorde mote nedis die,  
And I with him, here I me shrive, and sey,  
That wickidly ye done us bothe to dey.

But sithe it likith you that I be ded,  
By Neptunus, that god is of the Se,  
Fro this forthe shal I never etin bred  
Til that I mine own hert'is blode maie se,  
For certaine I wol die as sone as he:  
And up he sterte, and on his way he raught,  
Til she againe him by the lappe ycaught.

Creseide, which that wel nigh starfe for fere,  
So as she was aye the most ferefull wight  
That mightin be, and herde eke with her ere,  
And sawe the sorowful ernest of the knight,  
And in his prayir sawe eke non unright,

And for the harme eke that might fallin more,  
She gan to rewe, and dredde her wondir fore:

And thus she thought; unhappis fallin thicke  
Al day for love, and in suche manir cas  
As men ben cruill in 'hem selfe and wicke;  
And if this man fle here hemselfe, alas!  
In my presence, it n'il be no solas:  
What men would of it deme I can nat say;  
It nedith me full slyghly for to play.

And with a sorowful sighe she saide thrie,  
Ah, Lorde! me is betidde a fery chaunce,  
For mine estate lieth in a jeopardie,  
And eke mine em'is life lieth in balaunce;  
But nathelesse with Godd'is govirnaunce  
I shal so done mine honour shal I kepe,  
And eke his life, and stentin for to wepe.

*Of barmis two the lesse is for to chese;*  
Yet had I levir makin him gode chere  
In honour than mine em'is life to lese;  
Ye saine ye nothing ellis me requere.  
No, wis, (quod he) mine owne nece so dere!  
Now wel, (quod she) and I wol don my paine;  
I shal mine herte ayen my lust constraine.

But that I n'il nat holdin him honde,  
Ne love a man, that can I naught ne may,  
Ayenst my wil, but ellis wol I fonde,  
Mine honour save, plese him fro day to day;  
Therto n'olde I not onis have saide nay  
But that I dredde as in my fantasie;  
But *Cesse cause and aie cessith maladie.*

But here I make a protestacion  
That in this processe if ye depir go  
That certainly for no salvacion  
Of you, though that ye stervin bothè two,  
Though al the worlde on o day be my fo,  
Ne shal I ner on him have othir rounthe.  
I graunt it wel (quod Pandare) by my trouthe.

But maie I trustin well to you (quod he)  
That of this thing that ye han bight me here  
Ye woll it holdin truely unto me?  
Ye, doubtilefs, quod she, myne uncle dere!  
Ne that I shal have cause in this matere  
(Quod he) to plain or asir you to preche?  
Why no, parde; what nedith more speche?

Tho fellin thei in othir talis glade,  
Till at the last, O gode cme! (quod she tho)  
For love of God, whiche that us bothe ymade,  
Tell me how first ye wistin of his wo;  
Wot non of it but ye? He sayid No.  
Can he well speke of love, (quod she) I preie?  
Tell me, for I the bet shal me purveie.

Tho Pandarus a litil gan to smile,  
And sayid, By my trouth I shal now tell:  
This othir daie, nat gon full longe while,  
Within the paleis gardin by a well  
Can he and I well halfe a daie to dwell,  
Right for to spekin of an ordinaunce  
How we the Grekis mightin disavaunce:

Sone after that begone we for to lepe  
And castin with our dartis to and fro,  
Till at the last he sayid he would slepe,  
And on the grasse adoun he laied him tho;  
And I asir gan romin to and fro,



Till that I herd, as I walkid alone,  
How he began ful wofully to grone.

'Tho gan I stalke him full softly behinde,  
And fikirly, the sothe for to saine,  
As I can clepe ayen now to my minde,  
Right thus to Love he gan him for to plain :  
He sayid, Lorde, have routh upon my pain ;  
All have I ben rebell in mine entent,  
Now (*mea culpa*) Lorde, I me repent.

O God ! that at thy disposicion  
Ledist forth the fine by just purveiaunce  
Of every wight, my lowe confession  
Accept in gre, and sende me soche penaunce  
As likith the ; put from me disperaunce,  
'That maie my ghost departe alwaie fro the :  
'Thou be my shilde for thy benignite.

For certis, Lorde, so fore hath she me wounded  
That stode in blacke with loking of her eyen,  
That to mine hert'is botome it is founded,  
Through which I wot that I must nedis dien ;  
This is the worst, I dare me nought bewrien,  
And well the hotir ben the gledis rede  
That men 'hem wrien with ashin pale and ded.

With that he smote his hedde adoune anone,  
And gan to muttre I nat what truly,  
And I with that gan still awaie to gone,  
And lete thereof as nothing wist had I,  
And come again anon and stode him by,  
And saied, Awake, ye slepin all to long ;  
It semith me nought that Love doth you wrong.

That slepin so that no man maie you wake ;  
Who seic evir er this so dull a man ?  
Ye, frende, (*quod he*) doe ye your hedd'is ake  
For love, and let me livin as I can :  
But though that he for we was pale and wan  
Yet made he tho as freshe a countenaunce  
As though he should have led the newe daunce.

This passid forth eill now this othir daie  
It fell that I come roming all alone  
Into his chambre, and founde how that he laie  
Upon his bedde ; but man so fore grone  
Ne herd I nevir ; and what was his mone  
Ne wist I nought, for as I was comming  
All sodainly he left his complaining,

Of whiche I toke somewhat suspicion,  
And nere I come, and founde him wepe sore ;  
And God so wise be my salvacion  
As I had nevir routh of nothing more,  
For neithir with engine ne with no lore  
Unnethis might I fro the deth him kepe,  
That yet seie I mine herte for him wepe.

And God wot nevir fith that I was borne  
Was I so busie no man for to preche,  
Ne nevir was to wight so depe ysworne,  
Er he me told who might yben his leche ;  
But not to you reherse al his speche,  
Or all his wofull wordis for to fowne,  
Ne bid me nought, but ye woll se me swone ;

But for to save his life, and ellis nought,  
And to non harm of you, thus am I driven ;  
And for the love of God that us hath wrought  
Soche chere him doth that he and I maie liven.  
Now have I plat to you mine herte yshiven,

And fith ye wote that mine entent is clene  
Take hede thereof, for none evill I mene.

And right gode thrift I pray to God have ye  
That han soche one icaught withoutin net ;  
And be ye wise, as ye be faire to se ;  
Well in the ring than is the rubie set :  
There werin nevir two so well imet  
Whan ye ben his all whole as he is your :  
The mighty God us grant to se that hour !  
Naie, thereof spake I nat. A ha ! (*quod she*)  
As helpe me God ye shendin every dele,  
A, mercie, derè nece ! anon (*quod he*)  
What so I spake I ment it nought but wele,  
By Mars the god that helmid is of stele :  
Now beth not wroth, my blode, my nece dere !  
Now well (*quod she*) foryevin be it here.

With this he toke his leve, and home he went :  
Ye, Lorde, how he was glad and well bigon !  
Creseide arose, no lengir she ne stent,  
But streight into her closet went anon,  
And set her doune as still as any stone,  
And every worde gan up and doune to winde  
That he had saied as it came her to minde.

And woxe somedeles astonied in her thought  
Right for the newe case ; but whan that she  
Was full avised, tho found she right nought  
Of perill why that she oughte aferde be,  
For man maie love of possibilitie  
A woman so that his herte maie to brest  
And she nat love ayen but if her left.

But as she sat alone and thoughte thus,  
In field arose a skirmish all without,  
And men cried in the strete, Se ! Troilus  
Hath right now put to flight the Grekis rout :  
With that gonne all her meine for to shout  
A ! go we se ; cast up the gatis wide,  
For through this strete he mote to paleis ride,

For othir waie is fro the yatis none  
Of Dardanus, there opin is the cheine :  
With that come he and all his folke anone  
And ese pace riding in routis tweine,  
Right this happie daie was (*sothe to seine*)  
For whiche men faith maie not distourbid be  
That shal betidin of necessite.

This Troilus sat on his baie stede  
All armid save his hedde full richily,  
And woundid was his horse, and gan to blede,  
On whiche he rode a pace full softly ;  
But soche a knightly fight, lo ! truly  
As was on him was nat withoutin faile  
To loken on Mars, that god is of Battaile.

So like a man of armis and a knight  
He was to sene, fulfilled of high prowesse,  
For bothe he had a bodie and a might  
To doen that thing as well as hardinesse,  
And eke to sene him in his gerè dresse,  
So freshe, so yong, so weldy, semid he,  
It was an hevin on him for to se

His helme to hewin was in twentie places,  
That by a tiffue hong his backe behinde,  
His shelde to dashed with swerdis and with maces,  
In whiche men might many an arowe finde  
That thirlid had both horne, and nerse, and rinde ;

And aie the peple cried, Here cometh our joie,  
And next his brothir holdir up of Troie!

For which he wext a little redde for shame  
When he so herd the peple on him cryen;  
That to beholde it was a noble game  
Now sobirliche ne cast adoune his eyen;  
Creside anon gan all his chere espien;  
And let it in her herte so softly sinke  
That to her self she sayed, Ho! give me drinke.

For of her owne thought she woxe al redde,  
Remembring her right thus, lo! this is he  
Whiche that mine uncle swereth he mote be dedde  
But I on him have mercie and pite:

And with that likè thought for pure shame she  
Gan in her hedde to pull, and that as fast,  
While he and all the peple forth by past:

And gan to cast and rollin up and down  
Within her thought his excellent prowesse;  
And his estate, and also his renoun,  
His witte, his shape, and eke his gentilnesse;  
But moste her favour was, for his distresse  
Was all for her, and thought it were a routh  
To slaen soche one, if that he mentè trouth.

Now might some envions wight janglin thus,  
This was a sodain love; how might it be  
That she so lightly lovid Troilus,  
Right at the first sight of him? Yea, parde:  
Now whofo saied so mote he nevir the,  
For every thing a ginning hath it nede  
Er all be wrought withoutin any drede.

For I saie nat that she so sodenly  
Yafe him her love, but that she gan encline  
To liken' him tho, and I have told you why;  
And astir that his manhode and his pine  
Made love within her herte for to mine,  
For whiche by proesse and by gode service  
He wanne her love, and in no sodain wise.

And also blisful Venus wele arayed  
Satte in her sevynth house of hevin tho  
Disposid wele, and with aspectis payed,  
To helpin sely Troilus of his wo;  
And, sothe to sayne, she n'as nat all a foe  
To Troilus in hys natyvyte,  
God wote that wele the sonir sped in he.

Now let us stinte of Troilus a throwe,  
That ridith forth, and let us tourne fast  
Unto Creside, that heng her hedde full lowe  
There as she satte alone, and gan to cast  
Wheron she would apoinet her at the last;  
If it so were her eme ne would ycesse  
For Troilus upon her for to presse.

And, Lorde! so she gan in her thought argue  
In this matter of whiche I have you told,  
And what to doen best were, and what eschue,  
That platid she ful oft in many fold;  
Now was her herte warme, now was it cold;  
And what she thought of somewhat shal I write  
As mine auethour listeth to me t' endite.

She thought wele first that Troilus person  
She knewe by sight, and eke his gentilnesse,  
And thus she saied, All were it nought to doen  
To graunt him love, yet for his worthinesse  
It wer honor with plaic and with gladnesse

Vol. I.

In honeste with such a lorde to dele  
For mine estate and also for his hele.

Eke well wote I my king's sonne is he,  
And sith he hath to se me soche delite,  
If I would utterliche his sight yllie,  
Par'aventure he might have me in dispite,  
Thorough whiche I might stondin in worse plite;  
Now were I not wise me hate to purchase,  
Withoutin nede, there I maie stand in grace.

In every thing I wot there lieth mesure;  
For though a man forbiddith drunkenesse,  
He nought forbiddith that every creature  
Be drinkilisse for alwaie, as I gesse;  
Eke sith I wot for me is his distresse  
I ne ought not for that thing him dispise,  
Sith it is so he menith in gode wise.

And eke I knowe of longè time agone  
His thewis gode, and that he n'is not nice,  
No vauntour saine men certain he is none,  
To wise is he to doen so grete a vice,  
Ne als I n'ill him nevir so cherice  
That he shall make a vaunt by justè cause;  
He shall me nevir binde in soche a claus.

Now let a case, the hardist is it,  
Men mightin demin that he lovith me;  
What dishonour were it unto me this?  
Maie I him let of that? why naie, parde;  
I knowe also, and alwaie here and se,  
Men lovin women al this toun about;  
Be thei the wers? why naie, withoutin doubt.

I thinke eke how he worthy is to have  
Of all this noble toun the thriftyist  
That woman is, if she her honour save,  
For out and out he is the worthyist  
Save only Hector, whiche that is the best;  
And yet his life lieth all now in my cure;  
But soche is love, and eke man's avinture.

Ne me to love a wondir is it nought,  
For well wote I my self, for God me spede,  
All woll I that no man wist of this thought,  
I am one of the fairist out of drede,  
And godelyist, who so that takith hede,  
And so men saie, in all the toun of Troie;  
What wondir is though he of me have joie?

I am mine owne woman, well at ese,  
I thanke it God, as astir mine estate,  
Right yong, and stond untied in lustie lese,  
Withoutin jelousie, and soche debate;  
Shall no husbonde saine unto me checke me,  
For either thei ben full of jelousie,  
Or maistrifull, or lovin novelrie.

What shal I doen? to what shal I thus  
Shall I not love in case if that me list?  
What? pardieu! I am not religious;  
And though that I mine herte set at rest  
Upon this knight, that is the worthiest,  
And kepte alwaie mine honor and my name,  
By all right it maie doe to me no shame.

But right as whan the sunne shinieth bright  
In March, that chaungith oftintime his face,  
And that a cloud is put with winde to flight  
Whiche oversprat the sunne as for a space,  
A cloudy thought gan through her soule pace

That ovirspradde her bright thoughtis all,  
So that for fere a moſte ſhe gan to fall.

That thought was this; Alas! ſith I am fre  
Should I now love and put in jeopardie  
My ſikirneſſe, and thrallin libertie?  
Alas! how durſt I thiakin that ſolie?  
Maie I not well in othir folke aſpie  
Ther dredfull joie, ther conſtreint and ther pain?  
Ther lovith non that ne hath why to plain?

For love is yet the moſte ſtormie life  
Right of himſelf that evir was begonne,  
For ever ſome miſtruſt or ſome nice ſtriſe  
There is in love, ſome cloud ovir the ſunne;  
Thereto we wretchid women nothing conne  
Whan us is wo but wepe, and ſit, and thinke:  
Our wretche is this, our owne wo to drinke.

Alſo theſe wickid tonguis ben ſo preſt  
To ſpeke us harme, eke men ben ſo untrue,  
That right anon as ceſſid is ther leſt  
So ceſſith love, and forth to love anewe:  
But *Harme adoe is doen, who ſo it rue;*  
For though theſe men for love 'hem firſt to rende,  
*Full ſharpe beginning brekith aſte at ende.*

How oft in time hath it yknowin ben  
The treſon that to women hath be doe!  
To what fine is ſoche love I can not ſene,  
Or where becomith it whan it is go  
There is no wight that wote I trowe ſo;  
Wher it becometh lo no wight on it ſporneth;  
That erſt was nothing into nothing turneth.

How buſie (if I love) eke muſt I be  
To pleaſin 'hem that jangle' of love and deme,  
And coyen 'hem that thei ſaie no harm of me!  
For though there be no cauſe yet 'hem may ſeme  
Al be for harme that folke ther frendis queme;  
And who maie ſtoppin every wickid tong  
Or ſoune of bellis while that thei ben rong?

And after that her thought gan for to clere,  
And ſaied, *He whiche that nothing undirtaketh*  
*Nothing achievith, be him loth or dere;*  
And with an othir thought her hert yquaketh;  
Than ſlepith hope, and aſtir drede awaketh;  
Now hote now cold: but thus betwixin twey  
She riſt her up and went her for to pley.

Adoune the ſtaire anon right tho ſhe went  
Into her gardine, with her necis thre,  
And up and down thei madin many' a went  
Flexippe' and ſhe, Tarbe' and Antigone,  
To playin, that it joie was to ſe,  
And othir of her women a grete rout  
Her folowed in the gardine all about.

This yerde was large, and railed al the aleyes,  
And ſhadowed wel with bloſomy bowis grene,  
And benchid newe, and ſondid all the weyes,  
In whiche ſhe walkith arme in arme betwene,  
Till at the laſt Antigone the ſhene  
Can on a Trojan ſong to ſingin clere,  
That it an hevin was her voice to here.

She ſaied, O Love! to whom I have and ſhal  
Ben humble ſubject, true in mine entent,  
As I beſt can to you, Lorde, yeve I all  
For evirmore mine hert'is love to rent,  
For nevir yet thy grace to no wight ſent

So bliſfull cauſe as me, my life to lede  
In allé joie and ſuretie out of drede.

The bliſſful God hath me ſo well beſet  
In love iwia, that all that berith life  
Imagin in ne could how to be bet;  
For, Lorde, withoutin jelouſie or ſtriſe  
I love one whiche that moſte is ententiſe  
To ſervin well, unwerily' or unfained,  
That evir was, and leſt with harme diſtained,

As he that is the well of worthineſſe,  
Of trouth the ground, mirroure of godelihedde,  
Of wit Apollo, ſtone of ſikirneſſe,  
Of virtue rote, of luſte findir and hedde,  
Thorough whiche is all ſorowe fro me dedde:  
Iwis I love him beſt, ſo doeth he me;  
Now gode thrift have he where ſo er he be;

Whom ſhould I thankin but you, god of Love,  
Of all this bliſſe in whiche to bathe I ginne?  
And thankid be ye, Lorde, for that I love:  
This is the righte life that I am inne,  
To ſlemin all manir of vice and finne;  
This doeth me ſo to vertue for to' entende  
That daie by daie I in my will amende.

• And who that ſaieſh that for to love is vice  
Or thraldome, though he ſele in it diſtreſſe,  
He either is envious or right nice,  
Or is unmightie for his frendeneſſe  
To lovin; for ſoche manir folke I geſſe  
Diffamin Love as nothing of him knowe;  
They ſpeke of Love, but nevir bent his bowe.

What is the ſunne worſe of his kinde right  
Though that a man for febleſſe of his eyen  
Maie not endure on it to ſe for bright?  
Or love the worſe that wretchis on it crien?  
No wele is worth that maie no ſorowe drien;  
And ſorþhy, *Who that hath an bedde of verre*  
*Fro caſt of ſtonis ware him in the verre.*

But I with al mine herte and all my might,  
As I have ſaied, woll love unto my laſt  
My owne dere herte, and all mine owne knight,  
In whiche mine herte ygrowin is ſo faſt,  
And his in me, that it ſhall evir laſt:  
All did I dred at firſt to love begin  
Now wote I well there is no pain therein.

And of her ſong right with that worde ſhe ſtent,  
And therewithall, Now necé (quod Creſeide)  
Who made this ſong now with ſo gode entent?  
Antigone anſwerde anon, and ſaide,  
Madame, iwia it was the godelyiſt maide,  
Of grete eſtate, in all the toun of Troie,  
Who led her life in moſte honour and joie.

Forſothe ſo it yſemith by her ſong,  
Quod tho Creſeide, and gan therwith to ſike,  
And ſayid, Lorde! is theré ſoche bliſſe emong  
Theſe lovirs, as thei can ſo faire endite?  
Ye, wiſſe, quod freſhe Antigone the white,  
For all the folke that have or ben on live  
Ne couldin well the bliſſe of love diſcrive.

But wenin ye that every wretche wote  
The parſite bliſſe of love? why naie, iwia;  
Thei wenin all be love if one be hote;  
Do' waie, do' waie! thei wote nothing of this:  
Men mote aſkin of ſainctis if it is



Ought faire in heven? and why? for thei can tell;  
And askin fendes if it be foule in hell?

Creseide unto the purpose nought answerde,  
But saied, Iwis it wold be night as faste;  
But every worde whiche that she of her herde  
She gan to printin in her herte faste;  
And she gan love her lasse for to agaste  
Than it did erst; and sinkin in her herte;  
That she wax somewhat able to converte.

The day is honour and the heven is eye,  
The night is foe, all this clepe I the sonne,  
Can weltrin fast, and downward for to wrie,  
As he that had his day is course ironne,  
And white thingis woxin all dimme and donne  
For lacke of light, and sterris for to aperre,  
That she and all her folke in went ifere.

So whan it likid her to gon to reste,  
And voidid werin thei that voidin ought;  
She sayid, that to slepin well her leste;  
Her women sone unto her bedde her brought:  
Whan al was hush't, than laie she stil and thought  
Of all this thing the manir and the wise;  
Reherce it nedith not; for ye ben wise.

A nightingale upon a cedre grene  
Undir the chambir wall there as she laie  
Full loude ysong ayen the monè shene,  
Par'aventure in his bird is wise a laie  
Of love, that made her herte freshe and gaie;  
That herkenid she so long in gode entent  
Till at the last the dedde slepe her hent.

And as she slept anon right tho her met  
How that an egle, fethered white as bone,  
Undir her brest his longè clawis set,  
And out her herte he rent; and that anon,  
And did his herte into her brest to gon,  
Of which she nought agrose ne nothing smert,  
And forthe he flyith with herte lest for hert.

Now let her slepe, and we our talis holde  
Of Troilus, that is to paleis ridden  
Fro the scarnishe of the whiche I have tolde,  
And in his chambir fate and hath abidden  
Till two or thre of his messangirs yeden  
For Pandarus, and soughtin him full fast  
Till thei him found, and brought him at the last.

This Pandarus came leping in at ones,  
And sayid thus, Who hath ben well ibete  
To daie with swardis and with slongè stones  
But Troilus, that hath caught him an hete?  
And gan to jape, and saied, Lorde how ye swete!  
But rise and let us soupe and go to reste:  
And he answerde him, Doe we as the leste.

With all the hast goddely as thei might  
Thei sped hem fro the soupir and to bedde,  
And every wight out at the dore him dight,  
And wher him list upon his waie he sped,  
But Troilus thought that his herte bledde  
For wotil that he herde some tiding,  
And sayid, Frende, shall I now wepe or sing?

(Quod Pandarus) Be still and let me slepe,  
And doe on thy hode, thine nedis spedde ybe,  
And chese if thou wolt sing, or daunce, or lepe:  
At short wordis, thou shalt trowe all by me,  
For, Sir, mynece wold doin well by the,

And love the best, by God and by my trothe,  
But lacke of pursute marre it in thy slothe.

For thus ferforth I have thy werke begon  
Fro daie to daie, till this daie by the morowe  
Her love of frendship have I to the won,  
And therto hath she laid her faith to borow;  
Algate o fote is hameled of thy sorowe:  
What should I lengir sermon of it holde?  
As ye have herd before all he him tolde.

But right as flours through the cold of night  
Iclosid stoupin in ther stalkis lowe,  
Redressin hem ayen the sunne bright,  
And spredin in ther kindè course by rowe,  
Right so gan tho his eyin up to throwe  
This Troilus, and saied, O Venus dere!  
Thy might, thy grace, iheried be it here.

And to Pandare he held up both his hondes,  
And sayid, Lorde, all thine be that I have,  
For I am whole, and brostin ben my bondes:  
A thousande Troyis who so that me yave  
Eche afor othir, God so wis me save,  
Ne might not me so gladin: lo! mine hert  
It spredith so for joie it wold to sterte.

But, Lorde, how shall I doen? how shall I liven?  
Whan shall I next my own dere herte yle?  
How shall this longè time awaie be driven  
Till that thou be ayen at her fro me?  
Thou maiest answer, Abide, abide; but He  
That bangith by the necke, the sothe to saine,  
In grete disese abidith for the paine.

All esily now, for the love of Marte,  
(Quod Pandarus) for every thing hath time,  
So long abide till that the night departe,  
For all so fixir as thou liest here by me,  
And God toforne, I wold be there at prime,  
And for thy werke somewhat as I shall saie,  
Or on some othir wight this charge laie.

For parde God wot I have thir yet  
Ben redy the to sarve, and to this night  
Have I not fainid, but emborthe my wit  
Doen all thy lust, and shal with al my might;  
Doe now as I shall saie, and fare aright;  
And if thou n'liste, wite all thy felie the care:  
On me is nought along thine evill fare.

I wote well that thou wisir art than I  
A thousande folde; but if I were as thou,  
God helpe me so, as I would uttirly  
Right of mine ownè honde write to her now  
A lettir, in whiche I would telle her how  
I farde amisse, and her besече of routh:  
Now helpe thy self, and leve it for no slouth.

And I my self shall therwith to her gon,  
And whan thou wost that I am with her there  
Worthe thou up on a courtir right anon,  
Ye hardily, and that in thy best gere,  
And ride forth by the place as naught ne were,  
And thou shalt finde us (if I maie) sitting  
At some windowe into the strete loking.

And if the list than maiest thou us salve,  
And upon me make thou thy countenance,  
But by thy life beware, and fast eschue  
To tation ought; God shild us fro mischaunce!  
Ride forth thy waie and hold thy govirnaunce;

And we shall speke of the somewhat I trow,  
Whan thou art gon, to doe thine eris glow.  
Touching thy lettir, thou art wise enough;  
I wot thou n'like it deigneliche endite  
As make it with these argumentis tough,  
Ne scriven-like, or craftily it write;  
Beblotte it with thy teris eke alite,  
And if thou write a godely worde all soft,  
Though it be gode reherce it not to oft:

For though that the best harpoun upon live  
Would on the bestè founid jolly harpe  
That evir was with all his fingirs five  
Touche aie o string, or aie o warble harpe,  
Were his naillis poinctid newir so sharpe,  
It shuldè makin every wight to dull  
To here his gle and of his strokis full.

Ne jombre no discordaunt thing isere,  
As thus, to usin termis of phisike;  
In lov'is termis holde of thy matere  
The forme alwaie, and doe that it be like;  
For if a paintir would ypainte a pike  
With aff'is fete, and heddid as an ape,  
It cordith not, so were it but a jape.

This counsaile likid well to Troilus,  
But as a dredfull lovir he saied this;  
Alas! my derè brothir Pandarus!  
I am ashamid for to write iwis,  
Lest of mine ignorance I saied amis,  
Or that she n'olde it for dispite receive;  
Than wer I ded, there might it nothing weve.

To that Pandare answerid, If the lest  
Doe that I saie, and let me therewith gon,  
For, by that Lorde that formid est and west,  
I hope of it to bring answer anon  
Right of her hond, and if that thou n'ilte non  
Let be, and forie mote he ben his live  
Ayent thy lust that helpith the to thrive.

(Quod Troilus) Depardieux I assent;  
Sith that the liste I woll arise and write,  
And blissfull God prais I with gode entent  
The viage and lettir I shall endite  
So speke it, and thou Minerva the White  
Yeve thou me witte my lettir to devise;  
And set him down, and wrote right in this wise.

First he gan her his right ladie to call,  
His hert'is life, his lust, his sorowe's lezhe,  
His blisse, and eche these othir termis all  
That in soche case ye lovirs allè seche,  
And in full humble wise, as in his speche,  
He gan him recommaunde unto her grace;  
To tell all how it askith mokill space.

And aftir this full lowly he her praised  
To be nought wrothe though he of his folie  
So hardie was to her to write, and saied  
That love it made, or ellis must he die,  
And pitoussly gan mercie for to crie;  
And aftir that he saied (and lied full loude)  
Himself was little worthe, and lasse he coude.

And that she would have his coming excused,  
That litil was; and eke he dradde her so,  
And his unworthinesse aie he accused;  
And aftir that than gan he tel his wo;  
But that was endeleffe withoutin he;

And said, he would in trouth alway him holde,  
And redde it ovre', and gan the lettre folde:

And with his saltè teris gan he bathe  
The ruby in his signet, and it sette  
Upon the wexe delivirliche and rathe,  
Therewith a thousande timis er he lette  
He kiste the lettre whan he had it shette,  
And saide, Lettre, a blisful destine  
The shapin is; my lady shal the se!

This Pandare toke the lettre, and betime  
A morowe to his nec'is paleis ferte,  
And fast he swore that it was pallid prime,  
And gan to jape, and saide, Iwis mine herte  
So freshe it is (although it fore smerte)  
I maie nat slepe nevir a May'is morowe,  
I have a joly wo, a lusty sorowe.

Creseide, whan that she her uncle herde,  
With dredful herte, and desirous to here  
The cause of his comming, right thus answerde;  
Now by your faith, mine uncle (quod she)\*dere!  
What manir windis gidith you now here?  
Tell us your joly wo and your penaunce;  
How serforth be ye put in lov'is daunce?

By God (quod he) I hop alwaie behinde,  
And she to laugh as though her herte to breste.  
(Quod Pandarus) Loke alwaie that ye finde  
Game in mine hode, but herkeneth if you lest;  
Ther is right now come to the toun a gest,  
A Greke espie, and tellith newè thinges,  
For whiche I come to tell you newe tidinges.

Into the gardin go we', and ye shal here  
Al privily of this a long fermoun.  
With that thei wentin arme in arme isere  
Into the gardin fro the chambre down;  
And what that he so ferre was that the foun  
Of that which he spake no man herin might  
He saide her thus, and out the lettir plight:

Lo! he that is al wholly your'is fre  
Him recommaundith lowly to your grace,  
And sent to you this letter here by me;  
Avisth you on it whan ye han space,  
And of some godely answer you purchace,  
Or helpe me God so, plainely for to faine,  
He maie not longè livin for his paine.

Ful dredfully tho gan she stondin stil,  
And toke it not, but all her humble chere  
Gan for to chaungin, and saide, Scribe nor bil,  
For love of God, that touchith such matere,  
Ne bring me none; and also, uncle dere!  
To mine estate have more regarde I pray  
Than to his lust: what shouldin I more say?

And lokith now if this be reso'nable,  
And lettith not for favour ne for flouthe;  
To faine a sothe, now is it convenable  
To mine estate, by God and by my trouthe,  
To take it, or to havin of him routhe  
In harming of my selfe or in repreve?  
Beare it ayen for him that ye on leve.

This Pandarus gan on her for to stare,  
And sayid, Now is this the gretist wonder  
That evir I sawe; let be this nice fare;  
To dethe mote I smittin be with thonder  
Yf for the cite whiche that stondith yonder



Would I a lettir to you bring or take  
To harme of you : what list you thus it make ?

But thus ye farin well nigh all and some,  
That he that most desirith you to serve  
Of him ye retchin lest where he become,  
And whethir that he live or ellis sterue;  
But for al that, that er I maie deserve  
Refuse it not, (quod he) and herste her fast,  
And in her bosome doune the lettir thrust,

And said her, Now cast it awaie anon  
That folke maie sene and gaurin on us twey.  
(Quod she) I can abide till thei be gon;  
And gan to smile, and said him, Eme, I pray  
Suche answere as you list your selfe purvey,  
For truely I wol no lettir write.

No, than wol I, (quod he) so ye endite.  
Therwith she lough, and sayid, Go we dine;  
And he gan at himselfe to japin faste,  
And sayid, Nece, I have so gret a pine  
For love, that everiche othir daie I faste;  
And gan his bestè japis forth to caste,  
And made her so to laugh at his follie  
That she for laughtir wenid for to die.

And whan that she was comen into the hall  
Now eme, (quod she) we wol go dine anon;  
And gan some of her women to her call,  
And streight into her chambre gan she gone;  
But of her besineffis this was one  
Amongis othir thingis, out of drede  
Ful privily this lettir for to rede.

Avissid word by word in every line,  
And founde no lacke; she thought he coude his  
And put it up, and went her in to dine; [gode,  
And Pandarus, that in a studie stode,  
Er he was ware she toke him by the hode,  
And sayid, Ye were caught er that ye wiste.  
I vouchsafe, (quod he) do whatere you list.

Tho within thei, and set hem doune and etc;  
And astir none ful flyghly Pandarus  
Gan draw him to the windowe nie the strete,  
And sayid, Nece, who hath arayid thus  
The yondir house that stante aforyene us?  
Which house? (quod she) and gan for to beholde,  
And knewe it wel, and whose it was him tolde:

And fellin forthe in speche of thingis smale,  
And satin in the windowe bothè twey.  
Whan Pandarus sawe time unto his tale,  
And sawe well that her folke wer al awey,  
Now, necè mine, tel on (quod he) I prey;  
How likith you the lettir that ye wot?  
Can he thereon? for by my trowth I n'ot.

Therwith al rosy hewid tho woxe she,  
And gan to hum, and sayid, So I trowe.  
Aquite him wel for Godd's love (quod he)  
My selfe to-madis woll the lettir sowe,  
And helde his hondis up, and fell on knowe.  
Nowe godè nece, be it nevir so lite,  
Yeve me the labour it to sowe and plite.

Ye, for I can so writin (quod she) tho,  
And eke I n'ot what I should to him say.  
Naie, nece, quod Pandarus, saie you not so,  
Yet at the lest ythunkith him I pray  
Of his gode will. O doth him not to dey!

Now for the love of me, my nece dere!  
Refusith not at this time my praicre.

Depardieux! (quod she) God leve al be wele;  
God helpe me so this is the first lettir  
That er I wrote, ye al or any dele:

And into a closet for to avise her bettre  
She went alone, and gan her herte unafettre  
Out of Disdain's prison but a lite,  
And set her down and gan a lettir write,

Of whiche to tel in shorte is mine entent  
Th' effecte as ferre as I can undirstonde:  
She thonkid him of al that he wel ment  
Towardis her, but holdin him in hende  
She n'olde not, ne makin her selvin bonde  
In love, but as his sustir him to plesse  
She would aie faine to done his hert an ese.

She shette it, and to Pandare in gan gon  
There as he sat and lokid into strete,  
And down she set her by him on a stone  
Of jaspre, upon a quishen of golde ibete,  
And said, As wisely helpe me God the grette  
I nevir did a thing with more paine

Than write this, to the which ye me constrainie.  
And toke it him: he thonkid her, and seide,  
God wot of thing ful oftin toke begonne  
Comith ende gode; and necè mine Creseide,  
That ye to him of harde now ben iwonne  
Ought he be glad, by God and yondir sonne;  
For why? men faine *Impressiois light*  
*Ful lightly ben ais redy to the flight.*

But ye han plaied the tiraunt al to longe,  
And harde was it your herte for to grave;  
Now stinte, that ye no longir on it honge,  
Al woldin ye the forme of daungir save,  
But hastith you to done him joye to have,  
For trustith wel, *To long idene bardnesse*  
*Causith dispite ful oftin for distresse.*

And right as thei declarid this matere  
Lo! Troilus right at the first is ende  
Came riding with his tenthe somme isere  
Al festily, and thidirwarde gan bende  
There as they late, as was his waie to wende  
To paleis warde, and Pandare him aspide,  
And said, Nece, ise who comith here ride!

O fie not in! he sethe us I suppose,  
Lest he may thinkin that ye him elchue.  
Nay, nay, (quod she) and woxe as redde as rose.  
With that he gan her humbly to salve  
With dredful chere, and ofte his hewis mue,  
And up his loke debonairly he cast,  
And beekid on Pandare and forth by past.

God wot if he sat on his horse aright,  
Or godely was befene that ilke day;  
God wot where he were like a manly knight;  
What should I dretche, or tel of his aray?  
Creseide, which that al these thingis sey,  
To tell in shorte, her likid al isere,  
His person, his aray, his loke, his chere,

His godely manir and his gentilnesse,  
So well, that never sithe that she was borne  
Ne haddin she suche routhe of his distresse;  
And howe so she hath hard ben here beforne  
To God hope I she hath now caught a thorne.



She shal nat pul it out this nexte wike;  
God sende her mo such thornis on to pike!

Pandarus, whiche that stode her faste by,  
Felte iron hotte, and he began to suite,  
And seide, Nece, I praye you hertilie  
Tel me that I shal askin you alite;  
A woman that were of his deth to wite,  
Withouten his gilt, but for her lacke of routh,  
Were it wel done? (quod she) Naie, by my trouthe.

God help me so, (quod he) ye say me sothe,  
Ye felin wel your selfe that I nought lie.  
Lo! yonde he rideth, (quod she) ye, so he dothe.  
Wel, quod Pandare, as I have tolde you thrie,  
Let be your nicete and your icke,  
And speke with him in esing of his herte:  
Let nicete nat do you bothe smerte.

But theron was to hevin and to done,  
Considring al thing it maie nat be,  
And why? for shame; and it were eke to sone  
To grauntin him so gret a liberte,  
For plainly her entent (as sayid she)  
Was for to love him unwist if she might,  
And guerdon him with nothing but with sight.

But Pandarus thought it shal nat be so;  
If that I maie this nice opinion  
Shal nat ben holdin fully yeristwo;  
What should I make of this a longe sermon?  
He must assent on that conclusion  
As for the time, and whan that it was eve,  
And al was wel, he rose and toke his leve.

And on his way full fast homewarde he spedde,  
And right for joy he felte his hert to daunce,  
And Troilus he founde alone apedde,  
That laie as done these lovirs, in a traunce,  
Betwixin hope and derke disesperaunce;  
But Pandarus right at his incomming  
He song, as who saith, Lo! somwhat I bring;

And saide, Who is in his bedde so sone  
Yburied thus? It am I, frende, (quod he.)  
Who? Troilus! naie, helpe me so the mone,  
(Quod Pandarus.) Thou shalt up rise and se  
A charme that was ysent right now to the,  
The whiche can helin the of thine axelle,  
If thou do forthwith all thy besinesse.

Ye, through the might of God (quod Troilus.)  
And Pandarus gan him the lettir take,  
And saide, Parde God hath yholpin us:  
Have here a light, and loke on all these blake.  
But oftin gan the hert to glad and quake  
Of Troilus while he it gan to rede,  
So as the wordis yave him hope or drede.

But, finally, he toke al for the beste  
That she him wrote, for somwhat he behelde  
On which he thought he might his herte rest,  
Al covired she the wordis undir shelde;  
Thus to the more worthy part he him helde,  
That what for hope and Pandarus beheste  
His gret wo foryede he at the leste.

But as we maie al daie ourselvin se  
Through more wode or cole kindlich the more fire,  
Right so encrese of hope, of what it be,  
Therwith ful oft encrefith eke desire,  
Or as an oke comith of a litil spire,

So through this lettir which that she him sent  
Encrefin gan desire, of whiche he brent.

Wherefore I say alway that day and night  
This Troilus gan to desirin more  
Then he did erst through hope, and did his might  
To presin on, as by Pandarus lore,  
And writin to her of his sorowes fore  
Fro day to day: he let it nought refreide  
That by Pandare he somwhat wrot or seide;

And did also his othir observaunces  
That till a lovir longith in this caas,  
And astir that his dice turnid on chaunces  
So was he eithir glad, or saide Alas!  
And held astir his gestis aie his pans,  
And after suche answeris as he hadde  
So werin his daies fory othir gladde.

But to Pandare alway was his recours,  
And pitoufly gan aie to him to plaine,  
And him besought of rede and soine focours;  
And Pandarus, that sawe his wode paine,  
Wext well nigh ded for routh, sothe for to faine,  
And besely with al his hert gan caste  
Some of his wo to fleen, and that as faste;

And saide, Lorde, and frende, and brothir dere!  
God wot that thy disese ydothe me wo,  
But wolt thou stin in al this woful chere,  
And by my trouthe er it be dayis two,  
And God toforne, yet shal I shape it so  
That thou shalt come into a certaine place  
There as thou maiest thy selfe praen her of grace.

And certainly I n'ot if thou it wolt,  
But thei that ben experte in love it say,  
It is one of these thingis fortherith most  
A man to have a leisur for to praie,  
And sikir place his wo for to bewraie,  
For in gode hert it mote some routh impresse  
To here and se the gilleste in distresse.

Par'aventure thinkist thou though it be so  
That Kinde would her ydone for to beginne  
To have a manir routh upon my wo,  
Saith Daungir Nay, thou shalt me nevir win;  
So rulith she her hert's goste within  
That though she bendin yet she stonte on rote;  
What in effect is this unto my bote?

Thinke here ayen whan that the sturdy oke,  
On which men hackith oftin for the nones,  
Recevid hath the happy falling stroke,  
The grete sweight makith it fall all at ones,  
As done these grete rockis or these milnestones;  
For swiftir course cometh thing that is of wight,  
Whan it discendith, than done thingis light.

But rede that bowith doune for every blast  
Ful lightly cessith winde it wol arise,  
But so n'il not an oke whan it is cast;  
It nedith me nought longe the for to vise;  
Men shall rejoyfin of a grete emprise  
Atchevid wel, and stout withoutin dout,  
Al have men ben the lengir there about.

But, Troilus, now tel me if the lest  
A thing whiche that I shal askin of the;  
Whiche is thy brothir that thou lovist best  
As in thy very hert's privite?  
Iwis my brothir Deiphobus, (quod he.)

Now, (quod Pandare) er hour'is twife twelve  
He shal the ese unwist of it himselve.

Now let me' alone, and workin as I may,  
(Quod he) and to Deiphobus went he the,  
Which had his lord and gretè frend ben aie;  
Save Troilus no man he lovid so:

To tel in shorte, withoutin wordis mo,  
(Quod Pandarus) I pray you that ye be  
Frende to a cause whiche that ytouchith me.

Yes, parde, (quod Deiphobus) wel thou wost  
Al that evir I may, and God tofore,  
Al n'ere it but for the man I love most,  
My brothir Troilus; but say wherfore  
It is, for sithe the day that I was bore  
I n'as, ne nevir more to ben I thinke,  
Ayenst a thing that mightin the forthinke.

Pandarus gan him thanke, and to him seide,  
Lo! Sir, I have a lady in this toun  
That is my neze, and callid is Creseide,  
To whiche some men would done oppressioun,  
And wrongfully have her possessioun,  
Wherfore I of your lordship you beseeche  
To ben our frende withoutin more speche.

Deiphobus him answerde, O! is nat this  
That thou spekest of to me thus straungely  
Creseide, my frende? Pandarus said him Yes.  
Than nedith (quod Deiphobus) hardily  
No more of this, for trustith wel that I  
Wol be her champion with spere and yerde;  
I ne rought nat though all her foes it herde.

But telle me, thou that wost all this matere,  
How might I best availin now? let se.  
(Quod Pandarus) If ye, my lorde so dere,  
Woldin as now do this honour to me  
To prayin her to morowe, lo, that she  
Came unto you her plaintis to devise  
Her adversaries would of it agrise.

And if I more durst prayin you as now,  
And chargin you to have so grete travaile;  
To have some of your brethrin here with you,  
That mightin to her cause bettir avail;  
Than wote I wel she mightin nevir faile  
For to ben holpin, what at your instaunce,  
What with her othir frendis govirnaunce.

Deiphobus, whiche that comin was of kinde  
To al honour and bounte to consente,  
Answerde, It shal be done; and I can finde  
Yet greater helpe to this in mine entente:  
What woldest thou faine if for Helen I sent  
To speke of this? I trowe it be the best,  
For she may ledin Paris as her left.

Of Hector, which that is my lord my brother,  
It nedith nat to praien him frende to be,  
For I have herde him, o time and eke other,  
Spekin of Creseide suche honour that he  
Maie faine no bet: such hap to him hath she  
It nedith nat his helpis more to crave;  
He shal be suche right as we wol him have.

Speke thou thy selfe also to Troilus  
On my behalfe, and praien him with us dine.  
Sir, al this shal be done, (quod Pandarus)  
And toke his leve, and nevir gan to fine,  
But to his nec'is house as streight as line

He came, and found her fro the mete arise,  
And set him down, and spake right in this wise;

He saide, O very God so have I ronne,  
Lo! necè mine, se ye nat how I swete?  
I n'ot whethir ye the more thanke me conne;  
Be ye not ware how that false Poliphete  
Is now aboute effenis for to plete,  
And bringin on your advocacies newe?

I? no, (quod she) and chaungid al her hewe.  
What! is he more about me for to dretche,  
And done me wrong? what shal I don? alas!  
Yet of him selfin nothing would I retche,  
N'ere it for Antenor and Æneas;

That ben his frendis in such manir caas;  
But for the love of God, mine uncle dere!  
No force of that, let him have al ifere,  
Withoutin that I have inough for us.

Nay, (quod Pandare) it shal nothing be so,  
For I have ben right now at Deiphobus,  
At Hector, and mine othir lordis mo,  
And shortly makid eche of hem his fo,  
That by my thrifte he shal it nevir winne.  
For aught he can, whan so that he beginne.

And as thei castin what was best to done  
Deiphobus, of his owne curtisie,  
Came her to praye in his propir persone  
To holde him on the morowe companie  
At dinir, whiche she ne wolde not denie,  
But godely gan to his prayere obeie:  
He thonkid her, and went upon his wey.

Whan this was don this Pandarus anone,  
(To tellin in shorte) forth he gan to wende  
To Troilus as stil as any stone,  
And al this thing he tolde him orde and ende,  
And how that he Deiphobus gan to blende,  
And saide him, Now is time of that ye conne  
To bere the belle to morow', and all is wonne.

Now speke, now pray, now pitoufly complaine  
Let nat for niecè shame, for drede or slouth;  
Somtime a man mote tel his ownè paine;  
Beleve it, and she wol have on the routh;  
Thou shalt ben savid by thy faith and trouth:  
But well wot I thou now art in a drede,  
And what it is I lay I can arede:

Thou thinkist now how should I don al this  
For by my cheris mostin folke espie  
That for her love is that I fare amis,  
Yet had I levre' unwist for sorow die:  
Nowe thinke nat so, for thou dost gret folie,  
For I right now have foundin a manere  
Of sleight for to coverin al thy chere.

Thou shalt gon overnigh, and that as blive  
Unto Deiphobus house as the to plaie,  
Thy malady awaie the bette to drive;  
For why? thou semist like, the sothe to saie;  
Some after that doune in thy bedde the laie,  
And saie thou maist no lengir up endure,  
And lie right there and bide thine avinture.

Say that the sevir is wont the to take  
The same time, and lastin till a morowe;  
And let se now how well thou canst it make  
For parde like is he that is in sorowe:  
Go now, farewell and Venus here to borowe



I hope and thou this purpose holdè ferme  
Thy grace she shal the fully there conferme.

(Quod Troilus) Iwis thou alle nedelesse  
Consailist me that sikeliche I me faine,  
For I am like in earnest doutelesse,  
So that wel nigh I stervin for the paine.  
(Quod Pandarus) Thou shalt the better plaine,  
And hast the lesse nede for to counterfete,  
For *Him men demin bote that men se swete.*

Lo! holde the at thy triste close, and I  
Shal wel the deere unto thy bowe ydrive:  
Therwith he took his leve all softly,  
And Troilus to his paleis went blive,  
So glad ne was he ner in all his live,  
And to Pandarus rede gan al assent,  
And to Deiphobus house at night he went.

What nedith it to tellin all the chere  
That Deiphobus unto his brothir made,  
Or his axis, or his sikeliche manere  
How men gon him with clothis for to lade  
When he was laid, and how men would him glade?  
But all for nought; he helde forth aie the wise  
That ye han herde Pandare ere this devise.

But certaine is er Troilus him leide,  
Deiphobus had praied him ovrnight  
To ben a frende and helping to Creseide;  
God wot that he that grauntid anon right  
To ben her fullè frend with all his might:  
But such a nede was it to praien him thenne  
As for to biddin a wode man to renne.

The morowe came, and nighin gan the time  
Of mealtide, whan that the faire Quene Helen  
Shope her to ben an hour astir the prime  
With Deiphobus, to whom she nolde faine,  
But as his sustir homely, sothe to faine,  
She came to dinir in her plaine entent,  
But God and Pandare wist al what this ment.

Came eke Creseide all innocent of this,  
Antigone her nece and Tarbe also;  
But flie we now prolixite best is,  
For love of God, and let us fast ygo  
Right to the effectè withoutin talis mo,  
Why al this folke assenblid in this place,  
And let us of ther saluingis pace.

Gret honour did hem Deiphobus certaine,  
And fedde him wel with all that might hem like,  
But evirmo, alas! was his refraine,  
My godè brothir, Troilus the like,  
Lithe yet; and therwithal he gan to like,  
And after that he painid him to glade  
Hem as he might, and cherè gode he made.

Complainid eke Helen of his sikenesse  
So faithfully, that pity was to here,  
And every wight gan wexin for axes  
A leche anon, and saide, In this manere  
Men curin folke, this charme I wol the lere:  
But there sat one, al list her nat to teche,  
That thought, yet best couldin I ben his leche.

Astir complaint him gonnin thei to preise,  
As folke don yet whan some wight hath begon  
To preise a man, and up with preise him reise  
A thousande folde yet higher than the son;  
He is, he can, that fewe othir lordes ken;

And Pandarus of that thei would afferme  
He nought forgate ther praising to conferme.

Herde all this thing seire Creseide wel inough,  
And every worde gan for to notifie,  
For whiche with sobre chere her hertè lough,  
For who is that ne would her glorifie  
To mowin suche a knight done live or die?  
But al passe I, lest ye to longe ydwell;  
But for o fine is al that er I tell.

The time came fro dinir for to rise,  
And as hem ought arisin everichone,  
And gon a while of this and that devise;  
But Pandarus brake al this speche anon,  
And said to Deiphobus, Wol ye gon,  
If it your will be, as I erst you prayde,  
To spekin of the nedis of Creseide?

Helen, which that by the hondè her heldè,  
Toke first the tale, and saidè, Go we blive;  
And godely on Creseide she behelde,  
And sayid, Jovis, let him nevir thrive  
That doth you harm, and reve him sone of live,  
And yeve me sorowe but he shal it rue  
If that I may, and allè folke be true.

Tel thou thy nec's case, (quod Deiphobus  
To Pandarus) for thou canst best it tell.  
My Lordis and my, Ladies, it stant thus;  
What should I lengir (quod he) do you dwell?  
He ronge hem out a proces like a bell  
Upon her foe, that hight was Polyphete,  
So heinous that men nightin on it spete.

Answerde of this eche worde of hem than other,  
And Polyphete thei gonnin thus to warien,  
And hougèd be suche one were he my brother,  
And so he shal, for it ne maie nought varien:  
What should I lengir in this talè tarien?  
Plainliche al at onis thei her highten  
To ben her frende in all that er thei mighten.

Spake than Helen, and said to Pandarus,  
Wot aught my lord my brothir of this matere,  
I mene Hector, or wote it Troilus?  
He saide her Ye; but wol ye me now here?  
Me thinketh thus, sith that Troilus is here  
It were gode if that ye wouldin assent  
She tolde him her selse al this er she went;

For he wol have the more her grete at herte,  
Bicause lo, she a worthy lady is,  
And by your wil I wol but in right sterte,  
And do you wete, and that anon iwis,  
If that he slepe or wol aught here of this:  
And in he lept, and said him in his ere,  
God have thy soule! for brought have I thy bere.

To smilin of this gan the Troilus;  
And Pandarus withoutin rekinig  
Out went to Helen and Deiphobus,  
And said hem, So there be no tarying,  
Ne more prese, he wol well that ye bring  
Creseide my lady that is now here  
And as he maie enduren he wol her here.

But wel ye wote the chambre is but lite,  
And fewè folke may lightly make it warme;  
Now lokith ye, for I wol have no wite.  
To bring in prese that might I ydon him harme  
Or him discin for my bettir arme;



Wher' it be bet she abide till eftsonis  
Now lokith ye, that knowin what to don is.

I fay for me best is, as I can knowe,  
That no wight in ne wendè but ye twey,  
But it were I, for I can in a throwe  
Reherle her case unlike that she can sey,  
And aftir this she may onis him prey  
To ben gode lorde in short, and take her leve;  
This may not mokill of his ese him reve.

And eke for she is straunge he woll forbere  
His ese, whiche that him darin nat for you;  
Eke othir thing that touchith nat to her  
He wol it tel, I wote it well right now,  
That secrete is, and for the town's prow:  
And thei, that knew nothing of his entente,  
Without more to Troilus in thei wente.

Heleine in all her godely softly wise  
Gan him salve and womanly to plaie,  
And saied, Iwis ye mote algate arise;  
Now, faire brothir, be all whole I praie;  
And her arme right over' his shuldir laie,  
And him with all her wit to recomfort;  
As she best could she gan him to disport.

So after this (quod she) We you beseke,  
My dere brothir! Deiphobus and I,  
For love of God, and so doeth Pandare eke,  
To ben gode lorde and frende right hertily  
Unto Creseide, whiche that certainly  
Receivid wrong, as wot well here Pandare,  
That can her case well bet than I declare.

This Pandarus gan newe his tong affile,  
And all her case reherce, and that anone:  
Whan it was saied, sone aftir in a while  
(Quod Troilus) As sone as I maie gone  
I woll right fain with all my might ben one,  
Have God my trouth, her cause for to susteine:  
Now good thrift have ye (quod Helen the Quene.)

(Quod Pandarus) And it your will ybe  
That she maie take her leve er that she go.  
O, ellis God forbid it! (tho quod he)  
If that she vouchsafin for to doe so.  
And with that worde (quod Troilus) Ye two,  
Deiphobus and my suster lefe and dere,  
To you have I to speke of a matere,

To ben avisid by your rede the better;  
And found (as hap was) at his bedd'is hedde  
The copie of a tretise and a letter  
That Hector had him sent to askin redde  
If soche a man was worthy to ben dedde?  
Wote I naught who, but in a grissly wise  
He prayid hem anone on it avise.

Deiphobus gan this letter for to unfold  
In earnest grete, so did Helen the Quene,  
And roming outward fast it gonre beholde,

Dounward a steire, into an herber grene;  
This ilke thing thei reddin hem betwene,  
And largily the mountenaunce of an houre  
Thei gonre on it to redin and to poure.

Now let hem rede, and tournè we anone  
To Pandarus, that gan full faste prie  
That all was well, and out he gan to gone  
Into the grete chambir, and that in hie,  
And sayid, God save all this companie!  
Come, nece mine, my ladie Quene Helen,  
Abidith you, and eke my lordis twene.

Rise, take with you your nece Antigone,  
Or whom you list, or no force hardily;  
The lasse presie the bettir: come forth with me,  
And lokith that ye thonkin humbily  
Them all thre, and whan ye maie godily  
Your time ifee takith of them your leve,  
Lest we to long his restis him bireve.

All innocent of Pandarus entent,  
Quod the Creseide, Go we, uncle dere!  
And arme in arme inward with him she went,  
Avising well her wordis and her chere;  
And Pandarus in earnestfull manere  
Sayid, All folke, for Godd'is love I praie,  
Stintith right here, and softly you plaie.

Avisith you what folke ben here within,  
And in what plite one is, God him amende!  
And inward thus full softly begin;  
Nece, I conjure and highly you defende,  
On his behalfe whiche that soule us all sende,  
And in the vertue of corounis twaine,  
Slea nat this man that hath for you this paine.

Fie on the devill! thinke whiche one he is,  
And in what plite he lieth; come of anone;  
Thinke all soche taried tide but lost it n'is,  
That woll ye bothe saine whan ye ben one;  
And secondly, there yet devinith none  
Upon you two, come of now if ye conne  
While folke is blent, lo! all the time is wonne.

In titiring, and pursute, and delaies,  
The folke devine at wegging of a stre,  
And though ye would han aftir merie daies  
Than dare ye nat; and why? for she and she  
Spake soche a worde; thus lokid he and he:  
Lest time be losse I dare nat with you dele,  
Come of therfore, and bringith him to hele.

But now to you, ye lovirs that ben here,  
Was Troilus nat in a cankedort,  
That laie and might the whispring of hem here,  
And thought, o Lorde! right now rennith my sore  
Fully to die or have anone comfort,  
And was the first time that he should her praie  
Of love; o mightie God! what shall he saie?

---

## TROILUS & CRESEIDE.

---

### PROÆMIUM LIBRI TERTII.

O BLISSFULL light ! of whiche the beemis clere  
Adornith allè the third hevin faire,  
O sonn'is life ! o Jov'is doughtir dere !  
Plesaunce of love ! o godely debonaire !  
In gentle hertes aie redy to repaire,  
O very cause of hele and of gladnesse,  
Heried be thy might and thy godenesse !

In heven and hell, in yerth and the salt se,  
Is felt thy might, if that I well discerne,  
As man, brid, beste, fishe, herbe, and grenè tre,  
Thei sele in timis with vapour eterne :  
God lovith, and to love he woll naught werne ;  
And in this worldè no liv'is creture  
Withoutin love is wroucht or maie endure.

Ye, Jovis, first to thilke affectis glade,  
Through whiche that thingis livin all and be,  
Commendidin and amorous him made  
On mortall thing, and as ye list aie ye  
Yeve him in love ese or adversite,  
And in a thoufande formis doune him sent  
For love in yerth, and whom you list he hent.

Ye fiers Mars, apesin of his ire,  
And as you list ye makin hertes digne,  
Algatis them that ye woll fet a fire  
Thei dredin shame, and vicis thei resigne ;  
Ye doen 'hem curteis be, freshe, and benigne,

And hie or lowe astir a wight extendeth  
The joyis that he hath your might it sendeth.

Ye holdin reigne and house in unite,  
Ye sothfast cause of frendship ben also ;  
Ye knowin all thilke covered qualite  
Of thingis whiche that folke on wondrin Yo  
Whan thei can nat construe how it maie go  
She loveth him, or why he lovith here,  
As why this fishe nat that comith to were.

Ye folke a lawe have set in universe,  
And this knowe I by them that lovirs be,  
That who so strivith with you hath the werse :  
Now ladie bright, for thy benignite,  
At reverence of them that servin the,  
Whose clerke I am, so techith me divise  
Some joie of that is felt in thy service :

Ye in my nakid hert'is sentiment  
Inhilde, and doe me shewe of thy swetenesse,  
Caliope ! thy voice be now present,  
For now is nede ; seest thou nat my distresse  
How I mote tell anon right the gladnesse  
Of Troilus to Venus herying ?  
To whiche gladnesse whonede hath God him bring !

# INCIPIT LIBER TERTIUS.

I MAIE all this mene while this sad Troilus  
Recording his lesson in this manere,  
Maseie, thought he, thus woll I saie and thus,  
Thus woll I plain unto my ladie dere,  
That worde is gode, and this shall be my chere,  
This n'ill I nat foryetin in no wife;  
God leve him werkin as he can devise.

And, Lorde! so that his herte began to quappe.  
Hering her come, and short gan for to like;  
And Pandarus, that led her by the lappe,  
Came nere, and gan in at the curtein pike,  
And saied, God doe bote on all that are like!  
Be who is here you comin to visite;  
Lo! here is she that is your deth to wite.

Therwith it semid as he wept almoste.  
A! a! quod Troilus, so routhfully,  
Where me be wo o mightie God! thou wofte;  
Who is all there I se nat truily.  
Sir, (quod Creseide) it is Pandare and I.  
Ye, swete herte, alas! I maie nat rise  
To knele, and do your honour in some wise.

And dresid him upward; and she right tho  
Gan both her hondis soft upon him leie.  
O, for the love of God doe ye not so  
To me! (quod she.) Ey, what is this to sei!  
Sir, comen' am I to you for causis tweie,  
First you to thonke, and of your lordshipe eke  
Continuance I woulde you beseke.

This Troilus, that herd his ladie praie  
Of lordship, him wox neithir quick ne dedde,  
Ne might o worde for shame unto it saie,  
Although, men shouldin smitin of his hedde,  
But, Lorde! so he woxe sodainliche alle redde;  
And, Sir, his lesson that he wendè conne  
To prayin her is through his wit ironne.

Creseide all this espyid well inough,  
For she was wise, and loved him ner the lesse,  
All n'ere he' in all aparte, or made it tough,  
Or was to bolde to sing a fol'is masse;  
But whan his shame began somewhat to passe  
His reasons, as I maie my rimis holde,  
I woll you tell as techin bokis olde.

In chaungid voice, right for his very drede,  
Whiche voice eke quoke, and therto his manere  
Godelie abash't, and now his hewis rede  
Now pale, unto Creseide his ladie dere,  
With loke doune cast and humble yoldin chere,  
Lo the aldirfirst worde that him asterte  
Was twyis, Mercie, mercie, my dere herte!

And stint a while, and whan he might out bring  
The nexte word, was, God wote for I have  
As faithfully as I have had konning  
Ben your'is all, God so my soule save,  
And shall, till that I wofull wight be grave,  
And though I dare ne can unto you plain  
Iwis I suffir not the lassè pain.

Thus moche, as now, ah womanliche wife!  
I maie out bring, and if this you displese  
That shall I wreke upon mine owne life  
Right sone I trowe, and doe your herte an ese,  
If with my deth your hert I maie aperse,  
But fens that ye han herd me somewhat sey  
Now retche I nevir how sone that I deie.

Therwith his manly forowe to beholde  
It might have made an herte of stone to rew,  
And Pandare wept as he to watir would,  
And pokid evir his nece newe and newe,  
And sayid, Wo begon ben hertis true;  
For love of God make of this thing an ende,  
Or fies us bothe at ones er that ye wende.

I, what? (quod she,) By God and by my trouth  
I n'ot nevir what ye wilne that I seie.  
Eie! what? (quod he) that ye have on him routh  
For Godd'is love, and doeth him nat to deie.  
Now than thus, (quod she) I wollin him preie  
To tellin me the fine of his entente;  
Yet wist I nevir well what that he mente.

What that I mene, o my swete herte dere!  
(Quod Troilus) o godely freshe and fre!  
That with the stremis of your eyin clere  
Ye wouldin somtime frendly on me se,  
And than agrein that I maie ben he  
Withoutin braunche of vice on any wise  
In trouthe alwaie to do you my servise,

As to my ladie right, and chese resort,  
With all my witte and all my diligence,  
And I to have right as you list comfort,  
Under your yerde egall to mine offence,  
As deth, if that I brekin your defence,  
And that ye digne me so mochil honour  
Me to commaundin aught in any hour,

And I to ben your very humble, true,  
Secrete, and in my painis pacient,  
And evir to desirin freshly newe  
To servin, and ben aie like diligent,  
And with gode herte all wholly your talent  
Recevin, in gre, how fore that me smerte:  
Lo, this mene I, o mine owne swete herte!



(Quod Pandarus) Lo! here an hard request,  
And refo'nable a ladie for to werne;  
Now necè mine, by Natall Jov'is felt,  
Were I a god ye shouldin sterve as yerne,  
That herin well this man wol nothing yerne  
But your honor, and sene him almoſte ſterve,  
And ben so lothe to suffre' him you to ſerve.

With that ſhe gan her eyin on him caſt  
Full eſily and full debonairly,  
Aviſing her, and hied her not to faſt  
With ner a worde, but ſaied him ſoftly,  
Mine honour ſafe I woll well truily,  
And in ſoche forme as ye can now deviſe,  
Recevin him fully to my ſerviſe;

Befeſching him, for Godd'is love, that he  
Would in honour of trouth and gentillneſſe,  
As I well mene, eke menie well to me.  
And mine honour with wit and buſineſſe  
Aie kepe; and if I maie doen him gladneſſe  
From hennisforthe iwis I n'ill not ſaine:  
Now bethe all whole, no lengir ye ne plain.

But nathelſſe this warne I you, (quod ſhe)  
A king'is ſonne although ye be iwis,  
Yet ye ſhall no more have ſoveraunte  
Of me in love than right in that caſe is,  
Ne n'ill I forbere if ye doen amis  
To wrathin you, and while that ye me ſerve  
Cheriſhe you right aſtir that ye deſerve.

And ſhortily, dere herte, and all my knight!  
Beth glad, and drawith you to luſtineſſe,  
And I ſhall truely, with all my full might,  
Your bittir tourin all to ſwetneſſe,  
If I be ſhe that maie do you gladneſſe  
For every wo ye ſhall recovir bliſſe.  
And him in armis toke, and gan him kiſſe.

Fill Pandarus on knees, and up his eyen  
To hevin threwe, and helde his hondis hie;  
Immortall god! (quod he) that maieſt not dien  
Cupide, of this thou maiſt the gloriſie,  
And Venus, thou maiſt makin melodie:  
Withoutin honde me ſemith that in toun  
For this miracle I here eche bell ſounde.

But ho! no more now of this ilke matere;  
For why? this folke woll comin up anone  
That have the lettir redde: lo! I'hem here;  
But I conjure the Creſeide anone,  
And thou to Troilus, whan thou maiſt gone,  
That at mine houſe ye ben at my warning,  
For I full well ſhall ſhapin your comming;

And eſith there your hertis right inough,  
And let ſe whiche of you ſhall bere the bell  
To ſpeke of love, and right therwith he lough,  
For there have ye a leiſir for to tell.

(Quod Troilus) How long ſhall I here dwell  
Er this be doen? Quod he, Whan thou maieſt riſe  
This thing ſhall be right as you liſt deviſe.

With that Helen and alſo Deiphobus  
Tho comin upward, right at the ſtaire's ende,  
And, Lorde! ſo tho gan gronin Troilus,  
His brothir and his ſuſtir for to blende.

(Quod Pandarus) It time is that we wende;  
Take, necè mine, your leve at them all thre,  
And let hem ſpeke, and comith forth with me.

She toke her leve at hem full thriftily,  
As ſhe well could, and thei her reverence  
Unto the full ydiddin hertily,  
And wondir well ſpekin in her abſence  
Of her, in praiſing of her excellence,  
Her govirnaunce, her wit, and her manere  
Commendidin, that it joie was to here.

Now let her wende unto her ownè place,  
And tournin we to Troilus againe,  
That gan full lightly of the lettir pace  
That Deiphobus had in the gardine ſaine,  
And of Helen and of him he would ſeine  
Delivirid ben, and ſaied that him leſt  
To ſlepe, and aſtir talis have a reſt.

Helen him kiſt, and toke her leve as blive,  
Deiphobus eke, and home went every wight,  
And Pandarus as faſte as he maie drive  
To Troilus tho came as linè right,  
And on a paillet all that gladè night,  
By Troilus he laie with merie chere,  
And well was them that thei werein yfere.

Whan every wight was voided but thei two,  
And all the doris werin faſt iſhet,  
To tell in ſhort, withoutin wordis mo,  
This Pandarus withoutin any let  
Up roſe, and on his bedd'is ſide him ſet,  
And gan to ſpekin in a ſobir wiſe  
To Troilus as I ſhall you deviſe.

Mine aldirleviſt Lorde, and brothir dere!  
God wot and thou that it ſate me ſo ſore  
Whan I the ſawe ſo languiſhing to yere  
For love, of whiche thy wo woxe alwaie more,  
That I with all my might and all my lore  
Have ever ſithin doen my buſineſſe  
To bringin the to joie out of diſtreſſe;

And have it brought to ſoche plite as thou woſt,  
So that through me thou ſtondiſt now in waie  
To ſarin well, I ſaie it for no boſt;  
And woſt thou why? but ſhame it is to ſaie,  
For the have I begon a game to plaie  
Whiche that I nevir doen ſhall eſt for other,  
Altho he were a thouſande fold my brother;

That is to ſaie, for the am I become,  
Betwixin game and ernest, ſoche a mene  
As makin women unto men to come,  
All ſaie I nat, thou woſt well what I mene,  
For the have I my nece, of viciſ clene,  
So fully made thy gentillneſſe to triſt  
That all ſhall ben right as thy ſelfin liſt.

But God, that all wotteth, take I to witneſſe  
That never this for covetiſe I wrought,  
But onely for to abredge that diſtreſſe  
For whiche well nie thou deydiſt, as me thought;  
But, gode brothir, doith now as the ought  
For Godd'is love, and kepe her out of blame,  
Sins thou art wiſe, and ſave alwaie her name:

For wel thou woſte the name as yet of her  
Emonges the peple' as (who ſaieſt) halowed is,  
For that man is unbore, I dare well ſwere,  
That ever wiſt that ſhe yet did amis:  
But wo is me that I that cauſe all this  
Maie thinkin that ſhe is my nece dere,  
And I her eme, and traitour eke ifere.

And wer it wist that I through mine engine  
 Had in my nece iput this fantasie  
 To doon thy lust, and wholly to be thine,  
 Why, all the worlde wouldin upon it crie,  
 And sayin that I the worst trecherie  
 Did in this case that evir was begon,  
 And she fordon, and thou right nought iwon.  
 Wherefore er I woll ferthir gone or paas  
 Yet este I the besече and fully saie  
 That privity go with us in this caas,  
 That is to faine, that thou us never wraie;  
 And be not wrothe though I the oftin praie  
 To holdin secrete soche an high matter,  
 For skilfull is, thou woste well, my praier.  
 And thinke what wo there hath betid er this  
 For making of avauntis, as men rede;  
 And what mischaunce in this worlde yet there is  
 Fro daie to daie right for that wickid dede,  
 For whiche these wise clerkis that ben dede  
 Have evir this proverbial to us young,  
 That *The first vertue is to kepe the tongue.*  
 And n'ere it that I wilne as now abredge  
 Diffusion of speche, I could almoste  
 A thousande olde stories the aledge  
 Of women losse through false and fol's boste;  
 Proverbis canst thy self inow, and woste  
 Ayenist that vice for to ben a blabbe  
 All saied men sothe, as often as thei gabbe.  
 O tongue, alas! so oftin here before  
 Hast thou made many a ladie bright of hewe  
 Saied, Welawaie the daie that I was bore!  
 And many a maidins sorrowe for to newe;  
 And for the more parte all is but untrue  
 That men of yelpe and it wer brought to preve;  
 Of kinde none avauntour is to leve.  
 Avauntour and a lye all is one,  
 As thus; I suppose a woman graunt me  
 Her love, and saith that othir wolle she none,  
 And I am sworne to holdin it secrete,  
 And aftir I goe tell it two or thre;  
 Iwis I am a vauntour at the lest,  
 And lye eke, for I breke my behest.  
 Now lokith than if thei be not to blame  
 Soche manir folk, what shal I clepe hem, what?  
 That hem-avaunt of women, and by name,  
 That yet behight hem nevir this ne that,  
 Ne knowin hem no more than mine olde hat:  
 No wondir is, so God me sendin hele,  
 Though women dredin with us men to dele.  
 I saie nat this for no mistrust of you,  
 Ne for no wise men, but for folis nice,  
 And for the harme that in the worlde is now  
 As well for folie oft as for malice,  
 For well wote I that in wise folk that vice  
 No woman drat, if she be well avised,  
 For *Wise men ben by folis harme chastised.*  
 But now to purpose, leve brothir dere!  
 Have all this thing that I have saied in minde,  
 And kepe the close, and be now of gode chere,  
 For all thy daies thou shalt me true yfinde;  
 I shall thy processe set in soche a kinde,  
 And God toforne, that it shall the suffise,  
 For it shall be right as thou wolt devise.

For well I wote thou menist well parde,  
 Therefore I dare this fully undirtake;  
 Thou wost eke what thy ladie grauntid the,  
 And daie is set the charteris to make:  
 Have now gode night, I maie no lengir wake,  
 And bid for me, sith thou art now in blisse,  
 That God me sende deth or sonne liffe.  
 Who might tellin halfe the joie or feste  
 Whiche that the lord of Troilus tho felte!  
 Hering the effect of Pandarus behest  
 His olde wo, that made his herte to swete,  
 Gan tho for joie to wastin and to melt,  
 And all the rehetin of his sikkes fore  
 At onis fled, he felt of hem no more;  
 But right so as these holtes and these hayis  
 That han in wintir dedde yben and drie  
 Revestin hem in grene whan that Maie is,  
 Whan every lustie beste listith to pleie,  
 Right in that selfin wise, sothe for to seie,  
 Woxe sodainly his herte full of joie,  
 That gladdir was there nevir man in Troie;  
 And gan his lye on Pandarus up cast  
 Full sobirly, and frendly on an isle,  
 And sayid, Frende, in Aprilis the last,  
 As well thou wost, if it remembre the,  
 How nigh the deth for wo thou founde me,  
 And how thou diddist all thy businesse  
 To knowe of me the cause of my distresse;  
 Thou wost how long I it forbare to saie  
 To the that art the man that I best trist,  
 And perill none was to the to bewraie,  
 That wist I well; but tell me if the list,  
 Sith I so lothe was that thy self it wist,  
 How durst I mo tellin of this matere  
 That quake now the no wight maie us here?  
 But nathelless, by that God I the swere,  
 That as him list maie all this world governe,  
 And if I lie Achilles with his speere  
 Mine herte cleve, all were my life eterne,  
 As I am mortall, if I late or yerne  
 Would it bewraie, or durst, or shuld, or conne,  
 For all the gode that God made undir sonne;  
 That rather die I would and determine,  
 As thinkith me now, stockid in prisoun,  
 In wretchidnesse, in filthe, and in vermine,  
 Captive to cruill King Agamemnon;  
 And this in all the templis of this town,  
 Upon the goddis all, I wolle the swere,  
 To morowe daie, if that the likith here.  
 And that thou hast so moche fides for me  
 That I ne maie it nevirmore desave  
 This knowe I well, all might I now for the  
 A thousande timis on a morowe stave;  
 I can no more but that I wolle the serve  
 Right as thine own slave, whatso thou wende,  
 For evirmore unto my lyf's ende.  
 But here with al mine herte I the besече  
 That nevir in me thou deme soche folie,  
 As I shall saie, me thought by thy speche,  
 That this whiche thou me doest for companie  
 I shuld wene it were a bauderie;  
 I am not wode all if I leude ybe:  
 It is nat so, that wote I well parde.



But he that goeth for gold or for richesse  
On soche messagis, call him what ye list,  
And this that thou doest, call it gentillesse,  
Compassion, and felowship, and trist,  
Departin it so, for widewhere is wist  
How that there is diversite requered  
Betwixin thingis like, as I have lered.

And that thou knowe I ne thinke not ne wene  
That this service a shame be or a jape,  
I have my faire suster Polixene,  
Cassandra, Helen, or any of the fraye,  
Be she never so faire or well ishape,  
Tell me whiche thou wilt of everichone  
To have for thine, and let me than alone.

But sith that thou hast doen me this service  
My life to save, and for non hope of mede,  
So for the love of God this grete emprise  
Performe it out, for now is the moste nede;  
For high and lowe, withoutin any drede,  
I woll alwaie thine hestis alle kepe:  
Have now gode night, and let us bothe slepe.

Thus held 'hem eche of othir well apaied,  
That all the worlde ne might it bet amende,  
And on the morowe, whan thei were araied  
Eche to his owne nedis gan entende;  
But Troilus, though as the fire he brende  
For sharpe desire of hope and of plesaunce,  
He not forgate his gode wise govirnaunce;

But in himself with manhode gan restrain  
Eche rakill dede and eche unbridlid chere,  
That all tho that livin, sothe for to faine,  
Ne should have wiste by worde or by manere  
What that he ment as touching this matere,  
From every wight as ferre as is the cloud,  
He was so wise, and well dissimu'len coud.

And all the while whiche that I now devise  
This was his life, with all his fullè might,  
By daie he was in Mart's high service,  
That is to sain, in armis as a knight,  
And fore the more part all the longè night  
He lay and thought how that he might yserve  
His ladie beste, her thanke for to deserve.

N'ill I not swerin, although he laie soft,  
That in his thought he n'as somwhat disefed,  
Ne that he tournid on his pillowes oft,  
And would of that him mislid have ben efed;  
But in soche case men be nat alwaie plesed  
For aught I wote, no more than was he,  
That can I deme of possibilitè.

But certain is, to purpose for to go,  
That in this while, as written is in geste,  
He sawe his ladie somtime, and also  
She with him spake when that she durst and leste,  
And by ther both avise, as was the beste,  
Appointidin full warely in this nede,  
So as thei durst, how they wouldin procede.

But it was spokin in so short a wise,  
In soche awaite alwaie, and in soche fere,  
Lest any wight divinim or divise  
Would of 'hem two, or to it laie an ere,  
That all this worlde so lese to 'hem ne were  
As that Cupido would 'hem his gracefende  
To makin of ther purpose right an ende.

But thilkè little that thei spake or wrought  
His wifè ghozte toke aie of all soche dede,  
It semid her he wistè what she thought  
Withoutin worde, so that it was no nede  
To bid him aught to doen or aught forbade,  
For which she thought that love, al come it late;  
Of alle joie had openid her the yate.

And shortly to this proceffe for to pace,  
So well his werke and wordis he beset  
That he so full stode in his ladie's grace  
That twentie thousande timis er she let  
She thonkid God she evir with him met;  
So could he him governe in soche service  
That all the worlde ne might it bet devise:

For why? she founde him so discrete in all,  
So secrete, and eke of such obeisaunce,  
That well she felt he was to her a wall  
Of stele, and shelde from every displeasaunce,  
That to yben in his gode govirnaunce,  
So wise he was, she was no more asered,  
I mene as fere as it ought ben requered.

And Pandarus to quicke alwaie the fire  
Was evir ilike prest and diligent;  
To ese his frende was set at his desire;  
He shove aie on; he to and fro was sent,  
He lettis bare whan Troilus was absent,  
That nevir man as in his frend's nede  
Ne bare him bet than he withoutin drede.

But now para'venture some man waitin wold  
That every worde or fonde, or loke or chere,  
Of Troilus that I reherschin shold,  
In al this while unto his lady dere,  
I trowe it were a long thing for to here,  
Or of what wight that stonte in suche distointe  
His wordis al or every loke to pointe.

Forsothe I have not herde it done er this  
In storie none, ne no man here I wene,  
And though I would yet I could not iwis,  
For there was some epistel 'hem betwene  
That wold (as faith min auctor) wel contene  
Nie halfe this boke, of which him list not write  
How should I than a line of it endite?

But to the gret effecte than saie I thus,  
That stonding in concorde and in quiete  
This ilkè two, Creseide and Troilus,  
As I have tolde, and in this timè fwete,  
Save onely ofte mightin thei not mete,  
Ne leisir have ther spechis to fullfell,  
That it besil right as I shal you tell,

That Pandarus, that evir did his might  
Right for the fine that I shal speke of here,  
As for to bringin to his house some night  
His faire nece and Troilus ifere,  
Where as at leisir al this high matere  
Touching her love were at the ful up bounde,  
Had out of doute a time to it yfounde;

For he with grete deliberacion,  
Had every thing that therto might availe  
Forne cast, and put in execution,  
And neithir leste for coste ne for travaile;  
Come if 'hem liste 'hem shouldè nothing faile  
And for to ben in aught espyid there  
That wiste he wel an impossible were.



And dreddesse it clere was in the winde  
 Of every pic and every lergeame,  
 Now al is wel, for al the world is blinde  
 In this matir bothe fremid and tame;  
 This timber is al redy up to frame;  
 Us lackith naught but that we wetin wold  
 A certaine houre in whiche she comin shold,  
 And Troilus, that al this purveiaunce  
 Knew at the ful, and waited on it aie,  
 And hereupon eke made gret ordinaunce,  
 And founde his cause and therewith his aray,  
 Yf that he were ymissid night or day,  
 There while he was aboutin this service,  
 That he was gon to don his sacrifice,  
 And muste at suche a temple alone wake,  
 Answerid of Apollo for to be,  
 And first to sene the holy laurir quake  
 Er that Apollo spake out of the tre,  
 To tellin him whan Grekis next should fle;  
 And forthy let him no man, God forbede!  
 But praie Apollo helpin in this nede.  
 Now is there litill more for to be done  
 But Pandare up, and, shortly for to saine,  
 Right sone upon the chaunging of the mone,  
 Whan lightlesse is the world a night or twaine,  
 And that the welkin shope him for to raine,  
 He streight amorowe unto his nece went,  
 Ye have wel herde the fine of his entente.  
 Whan he was comen' he gan anon to plaie,  
 As he was wont, and of himselfe to jape,  
 And finally he swore, and gan her saie  
 By this and that, she should him not escape,  
 No lengir done him astir her to cape,  
 But certainly that she must, by her leve,  
 Come soupin in his house with him at eve.  
 At which she lough, and gan her first excuse,  
 And said, It rainith, lo! how should I gone?  
 Let be, (quod he) ne stonde not thus to muse;  
 This mote be don, ye shal come there anone,  
 So at the last herof thei fel at one,  
 Or ellis soft he swore her in her ere  
 He n'olde nevir comin there she were.  
 Sone astir this she unto him gan rowne,  
 And alkid him if Troilus were there?  
 He swore her Nay, for he was out of towne,  
 And said, What, nece, I pose that he were there,  
 You durst nevir thereof have the more fere?  
 For rathir than men might him there aspice  
 Me levir were a thoulande folde to die.  
 Naught list mine auour fully to declare  
 What that she thought whan that he said her so,  
 That Troilus was out of toune ifare,  
 And if he said therof soth or no,  
 But that without awaite with him to go  
 She grauntid him, fith he her that besought,  
 And as his nece obeyid as her ought.  
 But nathelasse yet gan she him beseeche,  
 Although with him to gone it was no fere,  
 For to beware of gosishe peplis speche,  
 That dremin thingis whiche that nevir were,  
 And well avisin him whom he brought there;  
 And said she, Eme, thus I must on you trist  
 Loke al be wel; I do now as you list.

He swore her this by stockis and by stones,  
 And by the goddis that in hevin dwell,  
 Or ellis were him levir soule and bones  
 With Plato King as depè ben in hell  
 As Tantalus: what shouldin I more tell?  
 Whan al was wel he rose and toke his leve,  
 And she to soupir came whan it was eve,  
 With a certaine nombre of her owne men,  
 And with her sayir nece Antigone,  
 And othir of her women nine or ten;  
 But who was glad now, who, as trowyin ye?  
 But Troilus, that stode and might it se  
 Throughout a litil window in a stewe,  
 Ther he beshet till midnight was in mewes,  
 Unwist of every wight but of Pandare.  
 But to the point. Now whan that she was come  
 With al joie, and all her frendis in fare,  
 Her eme anone in armis hath her nome,  
 And astir to the soupir al and some,  
 Whan as time was, ful softe thei 'hem yfet,  
 God wot there was no deinte ferre to fet.  
 And astir soupir gonin thei to rise,  
 At ese wel, with hertis full fresh and glade,  
 And wel was him that coude best devise  
 To likin her, or that her laughin made:  
 He songe, she plaide; he tolde a tale of Wade;  
 But at the last, as every thing hath ende,  
 She toke her leve, and nedis would thens wende.  
 But, o Fortune! executrice of wierdes,  
 O influencis of these hevins hie!  
 Soth is that undir God ye ben our hierdes,  
 Though to us bestis ben the causis wrie;  
 This mene I now, for she gan homward hie;  
 But execute was al beside her leve  
 The goddis wil, for whiche she must bileve.  
 The bentè mone with her hornis all pale,  
 Saturn and Jove, in Cancrò joynid were,  
 That suche a raine from hevin gan availle  
 That every manir woman that was there  
 Had of that smoky raine a very fere,  
 At the which Pandare tho lough, and said thenne,  
 Now were it time a lady to gone henne?  
 But, gode nece, if that I might evir plesse  
 You any thing, than pray I you (quod he)  
 To don mine hert as now so gret an ese  
 As for to dwell here al this night with me;  
 For why? this is your ownè house parde,  
 For by my trouthe, I say it nat in game,  
 To wende as now it were to me a shame.  
 Creside, which that could as mokil gode  
 As halfe a world, toke hede of his prayere,  
 And sens it rained, and al was in a fode,  
 She thought as gode chepe may I dwellin' here,  
 And graunt it gladly with a frend'is chere,  
 And have a thonke, as grutche and than abide,  
 For home to gon it may nat well betide.  
 I wol, (quod she) mine uncle lese and dere!  
 Sens that you list; it 'kil is so be so;  
 I am right glad with you to dwellin here;  
 I seide but in game that I wolde goe.  
 Iwis graunt mercy! nece, (quod he) tho;  
 Were it a game or no, the sothe to tell,  
 Now am I glad sens that you list to dwell.

Thus al is wel; but tho began aright  
The newe joy, and al the fest againe;  
But Pandarus, if godely had he might,  
He would have hyid her to bedde full faine,  
And said, O Lorde! this is an huge raine,  
This were a wethir for to slepin in,  
And that I rede us fone to begin:

And, nece, wot ye where I wol you laie?  
For that we shal nat liggin ferre asonder,  
And for ye neithir shullin, dare I saie,  
Herin the noise of rainis ne of thonder,  
By God right in my litil clofet yonder,  
And I wol in that uttir house alone  
Ben wardain of your women everichone;

And in this middle chambre that ye se  
Shal all your women slepin wel and foste,  
And there I sayid shal your selvin be.  
And if ye liggin wel to night come ofte,  
And carith not what wethir is alofte,  
Goth in anon, and whan so that ye left  
Go we to slepe, I trowe it be the best.

There n'is no more, but here astir fone  
Thei drank, voidid, and curtins drew anone;  
Gan every wight that hadde nought to done  
More in the place out of the chambre gone;  
And evir more so sterneliche it rone,  
And blewe therwith so wonderliche loude,  
That wel nigh no man herin othir coude,

Tho Pandarus her cme, right as him ought,  
With women suche as were her most aboute,  
Ful glad unto her bedd'is side her brought,  
And toke his leve, and gan ful lowe to loute,  
And said, Here at this clofet dore withoute  
Right ovirthwart your women liggin all,  
That whom ye list of 'hem ye make fone call.

So whan that she was in the clofet laide,  
And al her women forth by ordinaunce  
A bedde werin, there as I have ysaide,  
There n'as no more to skippin nor to prauce  
But bodin go to bedde with mischaunce,  
If any wight stering were any where,  
And let 'hem slepin that abedde ywere.

But Pandarus, that wel couthe eche adele  
The olde daunce, and every point therin,  
Whan that he wiste that all thing was wele,  
He thought he wolde upon his werke begin,  
And gan the stewe dore all soft unpin  
As stil as stone, withoutin lengir lette;  
By Troilus adoun right he him sette.

And, shortly to the pointe right for to gone,  
Of al this werke he told him orde and ende,  
And sayid, Make the redy right anone,  
For thou shalt into hevyn blisse ywende.  
Now blissful Venus! thou me grace yfende,  
(Quod Troilus) for never yet no nede  
Had I er now, ne halfindele the drede.

(Quod Pandarus) Ne drede the ner a dele,  
For it shal be right as thou wolt desire;  
So thrive I this night shal I make it wele,  
Or castin all the gruil in the fire.  
Yet, blissful Venus! this night thou me' enspire,  
(Quod Troilus) as wis as I the serve,  
And evir bet and bet shal til I sterve,

And if I had, o Venus ful of mirthe!  
Aspectis badde of Mars or of Saturne,  
Or thou Combuste, or let were in my birth,  
Thy father pray I al thilke harme disturne  
Of grace, and that I glad aien maie turne,  
For love of him thou lovidest in the shawe,  
I mene Adon, that with the bore was flawe:

O Jove! eke for the love of faire Europe,  
The which in form of bulle awaie thou set;  
Now helpe, o Mars! that with thy bloody cope,  
For love of Cypria, thou me nought ne let;  
O Phœbus! thinke when Daphne her selve shet  
Undir the barke, and laurir woxe for drede,  
Yet for her love o helpe me at this nede!

O Mercurie! for the love of her eke  
For which Pallas was with Aglauros wrothe,  
Now helpe; and eke Diane! I the beseke  
That this viage ne be nat to the lothe;  
O Fatall Sustin! whiche or any clothe  
Me shapin was my destine me sponne,  
So helpith to this werke that is begonne!

(Quod Pandarus) Thou wretchid monc'is hert,  
Art thou agast so that she wol the bite?  
Why, do on this furred cloke upon thy sherte,  
And folowe me, for I wol have the wite,  
But bide, and let me gon before alite;  
And with that worde he gan undone a trappe,  
And Troilus he brought in by the lappe.

The sternè winde so loude began to route  
That no wight other'is noise might yhere,  
And thei that layin at the dore without  
Full sikirly thei sleptin all ifere;  
And Pandarus with a ful sobre chere  
Goth to the dore anon withoutin lette  
There as thei lay, and softly it shette;

And as he came ayenwarde privily  
His nece awoke, and askith, Who goeth there?  
Mine ownè dere nece! (quod he) it am I,  
Ne wondrith not, ne have of it no fere;  
And nere he came, and said her in her ere,  
No worde for love of God I you besече,  
Let no wight rise and herin of our speche.

What! whiche waie be ye comen? *Benedicite!*  
(Quod she) and how thus unwiste of 'hem all?  
Here at this secret trappè dore (quod he.)  
(Quod tho Creside) Let me some wight call:  
Eigh! God forbid that it should so befall  
(Quod Pandarus) that ye suche foly wrought!  
Thei might demin thing that thei never thought.

*It is nat gods a sleping bounde to wake.*  
Ne yeve a wight a cause for to divine;  
Your women slepin al I undirtake,  
So that for them the house men mightin mine,  
And slepin wollen till the sunne shine,  
And when my tale ybrought is to an ende  
Unwist right as I came so wol I wende.

Now, nece mine, ye shal well undirstonde,  
(Quod he) so as ye women demin all,  
That for to holde in love a man in honde,  
And him her lese and her dere hert to call,  
And makin him an how above a call,  
I mene, as love an othir in mene while,  
She doth her selfe a shame and him a gile.



Now wherby that I tellin you al this  
 Ye wote your selfe as wel as any wight,  
 How that your love al fully grauntid is  
 To Troilus, that is the worthiest wight  
 One of the world, and therto trouth is light,  
 That but it were on him alonge ye n'olde  
 Him nevir falsin while ye levin sholde.  
 Now stonde it thus, that sith I fro you went  
 This Troilus, right platly for to seine,  
 Is through a guttir by a privy went  
 Into my chambre come in al this reime,  
 Unwist of every manir wight certaine  
 Save of my selfe, as wisely have I joie,  
 And by the faith I owe Priam of Troie:  
 And he is come in such paine and distresse  
 That but he be all fully wode by this  
 He sodainly mote fall into wodenesse  
 But if God helpe: and the cause why is this,  
 He saith him told is of a frende of his  
 How that ye should love one that hight Horast,  
 For sorow of which this night shal be his last.  
 Creseide, whiche that al this wondir herde,  
 Gan sodainly aboute her hert to colde,  
 And with a sigh she sorowfully answerd,  
 Alas! I wende whofoere talis tolde,  
 My dere hert, certis, eme, would me nat holde  
 So lightly faulse: alas! conceitis wrong  
 What harme thei done! for now live I to long.  
 Horaste, alas! and falsin Troilus!  
 I knowe him not, God helpe me so! (quod she.)  
 Alas! what wickid spirite tolde him thus?  
 Now certis, eme, to morow' and I him se  
 I shal therof as full excusin me  
 As evir did woman, if that him like,  
 And with that worde she gan full fore to like.  
 O God! (quod she) so worldly felineffe,  
 Whiche clerkis callin false felicite,  
 Ymedlid is with many' a bitterneffe  
 Ful anguishous, that is, God wote, (quod she)  
 Conclucion of veine prosperite,  
 For eithir joyis comin nat ifere,  
 Or ellis no wight hath 'hem alwaie here.  
 O brotil wele of mann'is joie unstable!  
 With what wight so thou be, or how thou playe,  
 Eithir he wote that thou joie art mutable,  
 Or wote it nate, it mote been one of twafe:  
 Now if he wote it nat how maie he saie  
 That he hath very joie and filineffe  
 That is of ignoraunce aie in darkencesse?  
 Now if he wote that joy is transitory,  
 (As every joie of worldly thing mote flie)  
 Than every time he that hath in memory  
 The drede of lesing makith him that he  
 May in no parfite sikernesse ybe,  
 And if to lese his joie he set a mite  
 Than semith it that joy is worth ful lite.  
 Wherfore I wol define in this matere,  
 That truilly for aught I can espie  
 There is no very wele in this world here;  
 But o thou wickid serpent Jealousie!  
 Thou misbelevid, envious folie,  
 Why hast thou Troilus made me to untrist,  
 That nevir yet agilité him that I write?

VOL. I.

(Quod Pandarus) Thus fallin is this caas.  
 Why, uncle mine, (quod she) who tolde him this?  
 And why doch my dere hert thus alas!  
 Ye wote, ye, nece min, (quod he) what it is;  
 I hope al shal be wel that is amis,  
 For ye maie quenche al this if that you lest;  
 And doeth right so; I holde it for the best.  
 So shal I do to morow', iwis, (quod she)  
 And God toforne, so that it shal suffice.  
 To morow, alas! that were faire (quod he.)  
 Nay, nay, it maie nat stonde in this wise,  
 For, nece mine, thus writin clerkis wise,  
 That *Peril is with dretching in ydrawe*:  
 Nay, suche abodis ben nat worthe an hawe.  
 Nece, alle thing hath time, I dare avowe,  
 For whan a chambre' a fire is or an hall,  
 Wel more nede is it sodainly rescowe  
 Than to dispute and aske amongis all  
 How is this candil in the strawe yfall?  
 Ah, *benedicite*! for al among that fare  
 The harme is done, and farwel feldefare.  
 And, nece mine, ne take it nat agrese  
 If that ye suffre' him al night in this wo;  
 God helpe me so ye had him nevir lese;  
 What dare I sain, now there is but we two,  
 But yet I wote that ye wol nat so do,  
 Ye ben to wise to don so gret folie,  
 To put his life al night in jeopardie.  
 Had I him nevir lese? by God I wene  
 Ye ne had nevir thing so lese, (quod she.)  
 Now by my thrifte (quod he) that shal be sene,  
 For sith ye make this ensample of me,  
 If I al night would him in sorowe se  
 For al the trefour in the tounce of Troie,  
 I bidde God that I nevir mote have joie.  
 Now loke than if ye that ben his love  
 Should put his life all night in jeopardy  
 For thing of nought: now by that God above  
 Nat onely this delaie cometh of folie  
 But of malice, if that I should nat lie:  
 What! platly and ye suffre' him in distresse  
 Ye neithir bounte done ne gentilneffe.  
 (Quod the Creseide) Wol ye done o thing,  
 And ye therwith shal stinte al his disese,  
 Have here and berith him this blewè ring,  
 For there is nothing might him bettir piece  
 Save I myselfe, ne more his hert aperse;  
 And saie, my dere herte! that his sorowe  
 Is causelesse, that shal he sene to morowe.  
 A ringe! (quod he) ye hasilwodis shaken!  
 Ye, nece mine, that ring must have a stone,  
 A stone which that might ded men alive maken,  
 And suche a ring trowe I that ye have none:  
 Discrecion out of your hed is gone,  
 That sele I now, (quod he) and that is routhe:  
 O time ilost, wel maist thou cursin slouth!  
 Wote ye not wel that noble and hie corage  
 Ne soroweth nat, ne flintith eke for lite,  
 But if a sole were in a jelous rage  
 I n'olde settin at his sorowe a mite,  
 But feste him with a fewe wordis white  
 An othir deie, whan that I might him finde;  
 But this thing stant al in anothir kinde;

A a



This is so gentle' and so tendir of herte  
That with his deth he wol his sorowes wreke,  
For trust it wel how fore so that him finerte  
He wol to you no jelous wordis speke;  
And forthy, nece, er that his hert to breke,  
So speke your selfe to him of this matere,  
For with a worde ye maie his herte fere.

Now have I tolde what peril he is in,  
And his coming unwist to every wight,  
Ne parde harme maie there be none ne sin,  
I wol my self be with you al this night;  
Ye know eke how it is your owne knight,  
And by that right ye must upon him triste,  
And I al prest to fetch him when you list.

This accident so pitous was to here,  
And eke so like a sothe, at prime face,  
And Troilus her knight, to her so dere,  
His prive comming, and the sikir place,  
That though she thought she did him than a grace,  
Confidrid all thingis as they shode,  
No wondir is, fens he did al for gode.

Creseide answerde, As wisely God at rest  
My soule bring as me is for him wo,  
And, eme, iwis faine would I don the best,  
If that I a grace had for to do so;  
But whether that ye dwel or for him go  
I am, til God me bettir mindẽ sende,  
At Dalcarnon, right at my witt's ende.

(Quod Pandarus) Ye, nece, wol ye here,  
Dalcarnon clepid is fleming of wretches,  
It semith hard, for wretchis wol nought lere  
For very flouthes, or othir wilfull tetches,  
This said is by them that ben't worth two fetches;  
But ye ben wife, and that ye han on honde  
N'is neithir harde ne skilful to withstonde.

Than, eme, (quod she) doeth hereof as you list,  
But er he come I wol up first arise,  
And for the love of God, fens al my trist  
Is on you two, and ye beth bothẽ wife,  
So werkith now, in so discrete a wise,  
That I honour maie have and he plesauce,  
For I am here al in your govirnaunce.

That is wel said, (quod he) my nece dere!  
There gode thrifte on that wise gentill herte;  
Ert liggith still, and takith him right here,  
It nedith nat no ferthir for him ferte;  
And eche of you ese othir sorowes smert,  
For love of God and Venus I the herie,  
For sone hope I that we shullin ben merie.

This Troilus full sone on knees him sette  
Ful sobrelly right by her bedd's hed,  
And in his heste wife his lady grette;  
But Lord! so she woxe sodainliche all red,  
And thought anone how that she shulde be dedde;  
She coulde nat o worde aright out bringe,  
So sodainly for his sodaine cominge.

But Pandarus, that so wel could fele  
In every thing, to plaie anon began,  
And sayid, Nece, se how this lord gan knele,  
Now for your trouthe se this gentil man;  
And with that worde he for a quishin ran,  
And said, Knelith now whilis that thou leste,  
There God your hertis bring sone to reste.

Can I naught sain, for she bad him nat rife,  
If sorowe' it put out of her remembraunce,  
Or ellis that she toke it in the wise  
Of duetie as for his observaunce;  
But well finde I she did him this plesauce,  
That she him kist, although she sikid fore,  
And bad him sit adoun withoutin more.

(Quod Pandarus) Now wol ye well begin,  
Now doth him sittin doune, gode nece dere!  
Upon your bedd's side, al there within,  
That eche of you the bet maie othir here;  
And with that worde he drew him to the fere,  
And toke a light, and found his countinaunce  
As for to loke upon an old romaunce.

Creseide, that was Troilus lady right,  
And clere stode in a grounde of sikirnesse,  
All thought she that her servaunt and her knight  
Ne shulde of trouthe none unright of her gesse,  
Yet nathelless, confidrid his distresse,  
And that love is in cause of suche folie,  
Thus to him spake she of his jelousie:

Lo, herte mine! as would the excellence  
Of love, aienst the whiche that no man maie,  
Ne ought eke godely makin resistance,  
And eke bicause I feltẽ wel and faie  
Your grete trouthe and service evẽr daie,  
And that your hert al mine was, soth to faine,  
This drove me for to rewe upon your paine;

And your godenes have I founden' alway yet,  
Of whiche my dere hert, and al my knight!  
I thanke it you, as ferre as I have wit,  
Al can I nat as much as it were right;  
And I emforth my conning and my might  
Have, and aie shal, how fore so that me smert,  
Ben to you trewe and whole with all mine hert;

And dredilless that shal be founde at preve:  
But, herte mine! what al this is to faine  
Shal well be told, so that ye nought you greve,  
Though I to you right on your self complaine,  
For therewith mene I finally the paine  
That halt your hert and mine in heviness  
Fully to flaine, and every wrong redresse.

My gode hert mine! n'ot I for why ne how  
That jelousy, alas! that wicked wivere,  
Thus causelless is cropin into you,  
The harme of whiche I would fain deliver;  
Alas! that he all whole or of him flivere  
Should have his refute in so digne a place!  
Than Jove him sone out of your herte erace!

But o thou Jove! o auctour of nature!  
Is this an honour to thy dignite  
That folke ungilty fuffrin here injure,  
And who that gilty is al quite goeth he?  
O were it lesfull for to plaine of the,  
That undeservid fuffrist jelousie,  
Of that I would upon the plaine and crie.

Eke al my wo is this, that folke now usen  
To faine right thus; Ye, jelousie is love,  
And would a bushil of venim excusen,  
For that a grane of love is on it shove,  
But that wote high Jove that sittin above  
If it be likir love, or hate, or grame,  
And astir that it ought to bere his name.

But certaine is some mahir jelousie  
 Is excusable more than some iwis,  
 As whan cause is and some fuche fantasie;  
 With pite that so wel exprestid is  
 That it unnethis doeth or saith amis,  
 But godely drinkith up al his distresse;  
 And that excuse I for the gentilnesse.  
 And some so ful of fury is and dispite  
 That it surmountith his repression;  
 But, herte mine! ye be nat in that plite,  
 That thonke I God, for whiche your passion  
 I wol nat cal it but illusion  
 Of haboundaunce of love and besy cure,  
 That doth your herte this disese endure;  
 Of which I am right fory but nat wrothe;  
 But for my devoir and your hert's reste.  
 Where so you list, by ordal or by othe,  
 By sorte, or in what wise so that you leste,  
 For love of God let preve it for the beste,  
 And if that I be guilty do me die;  
 Alas! what might I more or done or seie?  
 And tho with that a fewe bright teris newe  
 Out of her eyin fel, and thus she seide;  
 Now God, thou wost in thought ne dede untrewed  
 To Troilus was never yet Creseide;  
 With that her hed down in the bed she leide,  
 And with the shete it wrie, and sighid fore,  
 And held her pece; nat a word spake she more.  
 But now helpe God to quench al this sorow,  
 So hope I that he shal, for he beste may,  
*For I have sene of a ful misty morow*  
*Folowen ful oft a mery somer's day,*  
*And Astir wintir foloweth grene May;*  
 Men sene all day, and redin eke in stories,  
 That *Astir sharpe flouris ben victories.*  
 This Troilus, when he her wordis herde,  
 Have ye no care him liste nat to slepe,  
 For it thought him no strokis of a yerde  
 To here or se Creseide his lady wepe,  
 But wel he felte about his herte crepe,  
 For every tere whiche that Creseide asterte;  
 The crampe of deth to straine him by the herte.  
 And in his minde he gan the time accurse  
 That he came there, and that he was yborne,  
 For now his wicke ytournid into worse,  
 And all that labour he hath doen beforne  
 He wende it lost, he thought it n'as but lorne:  
 O Pandarus! thought he, alas! thy wile  
 Servith of nought, so welawaie the while!  
 And therwith all he hing adoune his hedde,  
 And fell on knees, and sorowfully sight:  
 What might he sain? he felt he n'as but dedde,  
 For wroth was she that should his sorowes light;  
 But nathelasse whan that he spekin might,  
 Than said he thus; God wote that of this game  
 Whan all is wist than am I nat to blame.  
 Therwith the sorowe in hert so shet  
 That from his eyin fell there nat a tere,  
 And every spirite his vigour in knet,  
 So thei astonied and oppressid were;  
 The feling of his sorowe or his fere,  
 Or of aught ellis, fledde were out of toune;  
 Adoune he fell all sodainly in swoone.

This was no little sorowe for to se,  
 But all was hush't, and Pandare up as fast;  
 O nece! pece, or we be lost (quod he);  
 Bethe nat agast; but certain at the last  
 For this or that he into bedde him cast,  
 And saide, O thefe! is this a mann's herte?  
 And of he rent all to his bare sherte,  
 And sayid, Nece, but and ye helpe us now,  
 Alas! your owne Troilus is lorne.  
 Iwis so would I, and I wiste how,  
 Full fain, (quod she,) Alas that I was borne!  
 Ye, nece; woll ye pullin out the thorne  
 That stiketh in his herte (quod Pandare?)  
 Saie all foryeve, and stint is all this fare.  
 Ye, that to me (quod she) full levir were  
 Than all the gode the sunne about ygoeth;  
 And therewithall she swore him in his ere,  
 Iwis, my derè herte! I am not wrothe,  
 Have here my trouthe, and many' an othir othe.  
 Now speke to me, for I am I Creseide;  
 But all for naught; yet might he not abreide.  
 Therwith his poulce and paumis of his hondes  
 Thei gan to frote, and wete his templis twain,  
 And to delivir him fro bittir hondes  
 She oft him kist; and, shortly for to sain,  
 Him to rewakin she did all her pain;  
 And at the last he gan his breth to drawe,  
 And of his swough sone aftir that adawe,  
 And gan bet minde and reson to him take;  
 But wondir fore he was abashed iwis,  
 And with a sigh whan he gan bet awake  
 He saied, O mercie, God! what thing is this?  
 Why doe ye with your selvin thus amis?  
 (Quod tho Creseide) is this a mann's game?  
 What, Troilus! woll ye do thus for shame?  
 And therewithall her arme ovre him she laide,  
 And all foryave, and oft in time him kest:  
 He thonkid her, and to her spake and saied  
 As fill to purpose for his hert's rest;  
 And she to that answerde him as her lest,  
 And with her godelie wordis him disport  
 She gan, and oft his sorowes to comfort.  
 (Quod Pandarus) For aught I can asprien  
 This light nor I ne serving here of naught,  
 Light is nat gode for sike folkis eyen;  
 But for the love of God, sene ye ben brought  
 In this gode plite, let now non hevy thought  
 Ben hangid in the hertis of you twei;  
 And bare the candle towards the chimney.  
 Sone after this, though it no nede ywere,  
 Whan she soche othis as her list devise  
 Had of him takin, her thought tho no fere  
 Ne cause eke none to bid him thennis rise:  
 Yet lesse thing than othis maie suffice  
 In many' a case, for every wight I gesse  
 That lovith well menith but gentilnesse.  
 But in effect she would ywete anon  
 Of what man, and eke where, and also why,  
 He jelous was, sene there was causè non,  
 And eke the signe whiche that he toke it by,  
 She bade him that to tell her busily,  
 Or ellis certain she bare him on honde  
 That this was doen of malice, her to fonde;  
 A a ij



Withoutin more, shortly for to fain,  
He must obeie unto his ladie's hest,  
And for the lasse harme he must somewhat fain;  
He saied her, Whan she was at soche a fest  
She might on him have lokid at the lest;  
N'ot I nat what (all dere inough a rishe)  
As he that nedis must a cause out fishe.

And she answerde, Swete hert! all were it so,  
What harme was that, since I non evill mene?  
For by that God that wrought us bothè two  
In all manir thing is mine entent clene;  
Soche argumentes ne be nat worthe a bene:  
Woll ye the childish jelous counterfete?  
Now were it worthy that ye were ibete.

Tho Troilus gan sorowfully fike,  
Lest she be wrothe him thought his hertè deide,  
And saied, Alas! upon my sorowe's fike  
Have mercie, o swete hertè mine, Crescide!  
And if that in tho wordis that I seide  
Be any wrong, I woll no more trespase;  
Doeth what you list; I am all in your grace.

And she answerde, Of gilt misericorde,  
That is to faine, that I foryeve all this,  
And evirmore on this night you recorde,  
And bethe well ware ye doe no more amis.  
Naie, dere hert mine! no more (quod he) iwis.  
And now (quod she) that I have you doe smerte  
Foryeve it to me, mine owne swete herte!

This Troilus with blisse of that supprised  
Put all in Godd's hande, as he that ment  
Nothing but well, and sodainly avised  
He her in his armis fast to him hent;  
And Pandarus with a full gode entent  
Laied him to slepe, and saied, If ye be wise  
Sownith not now, lest more folke arise.

What might or maie the sely larkè saie  
When that the sparhawkè hath him in his fote?  
I can no more but of these ilkè twaie,  
(To whom this tale sugre be or fote)  
Though I tary a yere, sometime I mote  
After mine anèthour tellin ther gladnesse,  
As well as I have tolde ther hevinesse.

Crescide, whiche that felt her thus itake,  
(As writin clerkis in ther bokis old)  
Right as an aspin lese she gan to quake  
Whan she him felt her in his armis fold;  
But Troilus all whole of caris cold  
Gan thankin tho the blisfull goddis seven.  
*Thus Sondry painis bringin folk to beven.*

This Troilus in armis gan her straine,  
And sayid, Swete! as evir mote I gone  
Now be ye caught; now here is but we twaine;  
Now yeldith you, for othir bote is none.  
To that Crescide answerid thus anone,  
Ne had I er now, my swete hertè dere!  
Ben yoldin, iwis I were now not here.

O soth is saied, that helid for to be  
Of a fevir or othir grete siknesse  
Men must drinkin, as we may oftin se,  
Full bittir drinke, and for to have gladnesse  
Men drinkin oft in pain and in distresse;  
I mene it here, as for this avinture,  
That through a pain hath foundin al his cure.

And now swetnesse ysemith ferre more swete  
That bittirnesse assayid was biforne,  
For out of wo in blisse now thei flete;  
Non soche thei feltin sithins thei were borne;  
Now is this bettir than bothe two be lorne:  
For love of God take every woman hede  
To werkin thus if it come to the nede.

Crescide all quite from every drede and tene,  
As she that justè cause had him to trist,  
Made him soche fest it joie was for to fene,  
Whan she his trouth and clene entent ywist;  
And as about a tre with many' a twist  
Bitrent and writhin is the swete wodbinde  
Gan eche of 'hem in armis othir winde.

And as the newe abashid nightingale,  
That stintith first, whan she beginnith sing,  
Whan that she herith any herd's tale,  
Or in the hedgis any wight stering,  
And astir sikir doeth her voice out ring,  
Right so Crescide, whan that her drede stent,  
Opened her hert, and told him her entent.

And right as he that seeth his deth ishapen,  
And dyin mote, in aught that he maie gessie,  
And sodainly rescous doeth him escapen,  
And from his deth is brought in sikirnesse,  
For al this worlde in soche present gladnesse  
Was Troilus and hath his lady swete;  
With no worse hap God let us nevir mete!

Her armis small, her back both streight and soft,  
Her sidis long, and fleshy, smothe, and white,  
He gan to stroke, and gode thrift bad full oft,  
Her snow-white throte, her brestis round and lite;  
Thus in this heaven' he gan him to delite,  
And therwithall a thousande times her kist,  
That what to doen for joie unneth he wist.

Than saied he thus, O Love! o Charite!  
Thy mothir eke, Citherea the swete!  
Astir thy self next heryid be she,  
Venus I mene, the wellwilly planete,  
And next that Hymenæus! I the grete,  
For nevir man was to you goddis hold  
As I, whiche ye have brought fro caris cold.  
Benigne Love! thou holy bond of thinges,  
Who so woll grace, and list the not honoure,  
Lo! his desire woll flie withoutin winges,  
For n'oldist thou of bountie 'hem socoure  
That servin best, and mozte alwaie laboure,  
Yet were all lost, that dare I well fain certes,  
But if thy grace ypassid our desertes.

And for thou me, that lest thonke coud deserve  
Of them that nombred ben unto thy grace,  
Hast holpin there I likely was to sterve,  
And me bestowid in so high a place  
That thikè boundis maie no blisse surpace,  
I can no more, but laude and reverence  
Be to thy bounte and thine excellence.

And therwithall Crescide anon he kist,  
Of whiche certain she ne felt no difese,  
And thus saied he, Now wold to God I wist,  
Mine hertè swete! how I you best might please:  
What man (quod he) was evir thus at ese  
As I, on whiche the fairist and the best  
That er I seie deinith her hert to rest?



Here maie ye fene that mercie passith right,  
 The experience of that is felt in me,  
 That am unworthy to so swete a wight;  
 But harte mine! of your benignite  
 So thinkith, that though I unworthy be  
 Yet mote I nede amendin in some wise  
 Right through the vertue of your hie service.  
 And for the love of God, my lady dere!  
 Sith he hath wrought me fur I shal you serve,  
 As thus I mene, that ye woul be my fere  
 To do me live, if that you list, or sterve;  
 So techith me how that I maie deserve  
 Your thonke, so that I through min ignoraunce  
 Ne doe nothing that you be displeaunce:  
 For certis, freshe and womanliche wife!  
 This dare I saie, that trouth and diligence,  
 That shall ye findin in me all my life,  
 Ne I woul not certain breke your defence,  
 And if I doe, present or in absence,  
 For love of God let flea me with the dede,  
 If that it like unto your womanhede.  
 Iwis, (quod she) mine ownè herte's lust!  
 My ground of ese, and al mine herte dere!  
 Graunt mercie! for on that is all my trust:  
 But let us fall awaie fro this mattere,  
 For it suffisith this that said is here,  
 And at o worde, withoutin repentaunce,  
 Welcome my knight, my pece, my suffisaunce!  
 Of ther delite or joies one of the lest  
 Were impossible to my wit to saie,  
 But judgith ye that have ben at the fest  
 Of soche gladnesse, if that him list to plaie,  
 I can no more but thus, these ilke twaie  
 That night, betwixin drede and sikirnesse,  
 Feltin in love the gretist worthinesse.  
 O blisfull night! of them so long isought,  
 How blithe unto 'hem bothè two thou were!  
 Why ne' had I soche fest with my soule ibought,  
 Ye, or but the lest joie which that was there?  
 Awaie thou foulè daungir and thou fere!  
 And let 'hem in this hevin blisse ydwell,  
 That is so high that all ne can I tell.  
 But sothe is, though I can not tellin all,  
 As can mine aucthour of his excellence,  
 Yet have I saied, and God tofornè shall,  
 In every thing all wholly his sentence,  
 And if that I at Lov's reverence  
 Have any worde in echid for the best,  
 Doeth therwithall right as your selvin lest;  
 For all my wordis here, and every part,  
 I speke 'hem all undir correction  
 Of you that feling have in lov's art,  
 And put it all in your discrecion,  
 To encrese or make diminicion  
 Of my langage, and that I you besече:  
 But now to purpose of my rathir speche,  
 These ilke two, that ben in armis last,  
 So lothe to 'hem asondir gon it were,  
 That eche from othir wendin ben biraft,  
 Or ellis, lo! this was ther mostè fere,  
 That al this thing but nicè dremis were,  
 For whiche full oft eche of 'hem said, O swete!  
 Clippe I you thus, or els doe I it mete?

And, Lorde! so he gan godelie on her se,  
 That nevir his loke ne blent from her face,  
 And saied, O my dere herte! maie it be  
 That it be sothe that ye ben in this place?  
 Ye, herte mine! God thanke I of his grace,  
 (Quod tho Creseide) and therwithall him kist,  
 That where here spirite was for joie she n'ist.  
 This Troilus full oft her eyin two  
 Gan for to kisse, and saied, O eyin clere!  
 It werin ye that wrought me sochè wo,  
 Ye humble nettis of my lady dere,  
 Though there be mercie writtin in your chere,  
 God wote the text full harde is for to finde;  
 How couldin ye withoutin bonde me binde?  
 Therwith he gan her fast in armis take,  
 And well an hundrid timis gan he like,  
 Not soche sorowfull sighis as men make  
 For wo, or ellis whan that folke be like,  
 But esie sighis, soche as ben to like,  
 That shewid his affection within;  
 Of soche manir sighis could he not blin.  
 Sone astir this thei spake of sondrie thinges,  
 As fill to purpose of this avinture,  
 And playin enterchaungidin ther ringes,  
 Of whiche I can not tellin no scripture,  
 But well wot a broche of gold and azure,  
 In whiche a rubie set was like an hert,  
 Creseide him yave, and stacke it on his sherte.  
 Lorde! trowè ye that a covetous wretche  
 That blamith love, and halte of it dispite,  
 That of tho pens that he can muckre' and ketchè  
 Was evir yet yeve to him soche delite,  
 As is in love in o poinct in some plite?  
 Naie, doubtileffe, for all so God me save  
 So parfite joie ne maie no nigard have,  
 Thei woul saie Yes, but Lorde that so thei lie!  
 Tho busie wretchis full of wo and drede  
 That callin love a wodenesse or folie;  
 But it shall fall 'hem as I shall you rede,  
 Thei shall forgon the white and eke the rede,  
 And live in wo, there God yeve 'hem mischaunce,  
 And every lovir in his trouthe avaunce.  
 As woul to God tho wretchis that dispise  
 Service of love had eris all so long  
 As had Midas, all full of covetise,  
 And therto dronkin had as hotte and strong  
 As Cyrus did for his affectis wrong,  
 To techin 'hem that thei ben in the vice,  
 And lovirs not, although thei hold 'hem nice.  
 These ilke two of whom that I you saie,  
 Whan that ther hertis well assurid were,  
 The gonnin thei to spekin and to plaie,  
 And eke rehercin how, and whan, and where,  
 Thei knewin first, and every wo or fere  
 That passid was; but all soche hevinesse,  
 Ithonkid God, was tournid to gladnesse.  
 And evirmore whan that 'hem fell to speke  
 Of any thing of soche a time agone  
 With kissing all that talè should ybreke,  
 And fallin into a newe joie anone,  
 And diddin all ther might, sens thei were one,  
 For to recoveren blisse and ben at ese,  
 And passid wo with joyis counterpaife,

Reson woll not that I spekin of slepe,  
For it accordith not to my mattere;  
God wote thei toke of it full little kepe,  
But lest this night that was to hem so dere  
Ne should in vaine escape in no manere  
It was bifet in ioie and businesse  
Of all that founth into gentilnesse.

But whan the cocke, commune astrologer,  
Gan on his brest to bete and astir crowe,  
And Lucifer, the day's messenger,  
Gan for to rise, and out his beinis throwe,  
And estward rose, to him that could it know,  
*Fortuna Major*, than anon Creseide  
With herte fore to Troilus thus seide:

Mine hert' is life, my trust, al my plesance!  
That I was borne, alas! that me is wo,  
That daie of us mote make discoueraunce,  
For time it is to rise and hennis go,  
Or ellis I am lost for everso.

O Night! alas! why n'ilt thou ore us hove  
As long as whan Alcmena laie by Iove?

O blacke Night! as folke in bokis rede,  
That shapin art by God this worlde to hide  
At certain timis with thy derke wede,  
That undir that men might in rest abide,  
Wel oughtin bestes to plain and folke to chide,  
That thereas daie with labor would us brest,  
That thou us fliest and deiniest us not rest.

Thou doest, alas! so shortly thine office,  
Thou rakle Night, that God makir of kinde  
The for thine hast, and thine unkindē vice  
So fast aie to our hemispherē binde,  
That nevirmore undir the ground thou winde,  
For through thy rakle hying out of Troie  
Have I forgone thus hastily my ioie.

This Troilus, that with tho wordis felt,  
As thought him tho, for piteous distresse  
The blodie teris from his herte melt,  
As he that yet nevir soche hevinesse  
Assayid had out of so grete gladnesse,  
Gan therewithall Creseide his lady dere  
In armis strain, and said in this manere:

O cruill Daie! accuser of the ioie  
That Night and Love hath stole and fast iwrie,  
Accursid be thy comming into Troie!  
For every bowre hath one of thy bright eyen:  
Envious Daie! what list the so to spien?  
What hast thou lost? why sekest thou this place?  
There God thy light so quenche for his grace!

Alas! what have these lovirs the agilt?  
Dispitous Daie! thine be the paine of hell,  
For many a lovir hast thou slain and wilt;  
Thy poring in woll no where let hem dwell:  
What! profrist thou thy light here for to sel?  
Go, sell it them that smale scelis grave;  
We woll the not; us nedith no daie have.

And eke the sonnē Titan gan he chide,  
And said, O sole! well maie men the dispise,  
That hast all night the Dauning by thy side,  
And suffrist her so sone up fro the rise,  
For to disese us lovirs in this wise;  
What! hold your bed there thou and thy Morow;  
I bidde God so yeve you both sorowe.

Therwith full fore he sighed, and thus he seide;  
My lady bright and of my wele or wo  
The well and rote! o godely mine, Creseide!  
And shall I rise, alas! and shall I goe?  
Now fele I that mine herte mote a two;  
And how should I my life an hourē save?  
Sens that with you is all the life I have?

What shall I doen? for certis I n'ot how,  
Ne whan, alas! I shal the timē fe  
That in this plite I maie ben est with you,  
And of my life God wote how shall that be,  
Sens that desire right now so bitith me  
That I am dede anon but I retourne:  
How should I long, alas! fro you sojourne:

But nathelasse, mine ownē ladie bright!  
Yet were it so that I wist uttirly  
That I your humble servaunt and your knight  
Were in your herte iset so fermly.

As ye in mine, the whiche thing truily  
Me levir were than have these worldis twain,  
Yet should I bet endurin all my pain.

To that Creseide answerid right anon,  
And with a sigh she saied, O herte dere!  
The game iwis so ferforth now is gon  
That first shall Phoebus fallin from the sphere,  
And everiche egle ben the dov's fere,  
And every rocke out of his place asterte,  
Er Troilus go out of Creseide's herte.

Ye ben so depe within mine herte ygrave,  
That tho I would it turne out of my thought,  
As wisely very God my souldē save,  
To dyin in the pain I couldē nought;  
And for the love of God, that us hath wrought,  
Let in your brain none othir fantasie  
So crepin, that it causē me to die.

And that ye me would have as fast in minde  
As I have you, that would I you beseeche,  
And if I wist sothily that to finde,  
God might not o point of my joyis eche.  
But, herte mine! withoutin morē speche,  
Bethe to me true, or ellis were it routhe.  
For I am thine, by God and by my trouthe.

Bethe glad forthy, and live in hevinesse,  
Thus saied I ner er this, ne shall to mo;  
And if to you it were a grete gladnesse  
To tourne ayen sone astir that ye go,  
As faine would I as ye that it were so,  
As wisely God mine herte bring to reste,  
And him in armis toke, and oftē keste.

Ayenst his will, sithe it mote nedis be,  
This Troilus up rose, and fast him cled,  
And in his armis toke his lady fre  
An hundrid times, and on his waie him sped,  
And with soche wordis as his herte ybled  
He seide, Farith wel, my dere herte swete!  
That God us graunte soun and sone to mete.

To whiche no worde for sorowe she answerd,  
So fore gan his parting her to distrain,  
And Troilus unto his paleis ferd,  
As wo bigon as she was, sothe to faine,  
So harde him wrong of sharpe desire the pain;  
For to ben este there he was in plesance,  
That it may nere out of his remembraunce.



Retournid to his roiall paleis fone  
He flet unto his bedde gan for to shrinke,  
To fleep long, as he was wont to doen;  
But ail for naught; he maie wel ligge and winke,  
But fleepe maie there none in his hertè finke,  
Thinking how fhe, for whom defire him brende,  
A M. folde was worth more than he wende.

And in his thought gan up and doune to wende  
Her wordis all, and every continuaunce,  
And fermly impressin in his minde  
The leste pointè that to him was plesaunce,  
And verily of thilkè remembraunce  
Defire al newe him brende, and luft to brede  
Gan more than erft, and yet toke he non hede.

Creseide alfo right in the fame wife  
Of Troilus gan in her hertè fhet,  
His worthineffe, his luft, his dedis wife,  
His gentilneffe, and how fhe with him met,  
Thonking Love that he fo well her befet,  
Defiring oft to have her hertè dere  
In foche a place as fhe durft make him chere.

Pandare a morowe which that commin was  
Unto his nece gan her faire to grete,  
And faied, All this night fo rained it alas!  
That all my drede is that ye, nece swete!  
Have little leifir had to fleep and mete:  
All night (quod he) hath rain fo do me wake  
That fome of us I trowe ther heddis ake.

And nere he came, and faid, How ftant it now,  
This merie morowe? nece, how can ye fare?  
Creseide answerde, Nevir the bet for you,  
Foxe that ye ben, God yeve your hertè care;  
God helpe me fo ye caufid all this fare,  
Trowe I, (quod fhe) for all your wordis white:  
O who fo feeth you knowith you full lite!

With that fhe began her face for to wrie  
With the fhetè, and woxe for shame all redde,  
And Pandarus gan undir for to prie,  
And fayid, Nece, if that I fhall ben dedde  
Have here a fwerde and fmitith of my hedde:  
With that his arme all fodainly he thriste  
Undir her necke, and at the laft her kiste.

— I paffe al that, which chargith naught to fay:  
What! God foryave his deth, and fhe alfo  
Foryave; and with her uncle gan to plaie,  
For othir caufe ne was there none than fo:  
But of this thing right to th' effect to go,  
Whan time ywas home to her houle fhe went,  
And Pandarus hath fully his entent.

Now tournè we aye to Troilus,  
That refteffe full long a bedde ylaie,  
And privily fent aftir Pandarus,  
To him to come in all the haft he maie:  
He come anon, not onis faied he naie,  
And Troilus full fobirly he grete,  
And doune upon the bedd'is fide him fete.

This Troilus with all th' affection  
Of frendly love that hertè maie devife  
To Pandarus on kneis fill adoune,  
And er that he would of the place arife  
He gan him thankin on his beftè wife;  
An hundred time he gan the timè bleffe  
That he was borne, to bring him fro diftreffe.

He faid, O frend of frendes! the aldirbeft  
That evir was, the fothe for to tell,  
Thou haft in heven ibrought my foule at reft  
Fro Plegethon, the fire fode of hell,  
That though I might a thoufande timis fel  
Upon a daie my life in thy fervice,  
It ne might not a mote in that fuffice.

The fonnè, whiche that al the worlde maie fe,  
Sawe nevir yet (my life that dare I leie)  
So joily, faire, and godely, as is fhe  
Whose I am all, and fhall till that I deie;  
And that I thus am her's, dare I wel feie,  
That thankid be the highè worthineffe  
Of Love, and eke thy kindè bufineffe.

Thus haft thou me no little thing iyeve;  
For why? to the obligid be for aie  
My life; and why? for through thine helpe I live,  
Or els dedde had I ben many a daie:  
And with that worde doune in his bed he laie,  
And Pandarus full fobirly him herde  
Till all was faid, and than he him answerde:

My derè frende! if I have doen for the  
In any cafe, God wote it is me lefe,  
And am as glad as man maie of it be,  
God helpe me fo; but take now not agrefe  
That I fhall faine; beware of this mifchefe,  
That there as now thou brought art to thy bliffe  
That thou thy felf ne caufe it not to miffe:

For of Fortun'is sharpe adverfite  
The worftè kinde of infortune is this,  
A man to have ben in prosperite,  
And it remembir whan it paffid is:  
Thou' art wife inough, forthy doe nat amis;  
But not to rakill though thou fittè warnie,  
For if thou be certain it woll the harme.

Thou art at efe, and hold the well therin,  
For all fo fure as redde is every fire  
As grete a crafte is to kepe well as winne:  
Bridle alwaie thy fpeech and thy defire,  
For Worldly joie boldeth not but by a wire,  
That previth well, it brest al daie fo ofte,  
Forthy nede is to werkin with it fofter.

(Quod Troilus) Hope, and God toforne,  
My derè frende! that I fhall fo me bere  
That in my gilt therè fhall nothing ben lorne,  
Ne I n'ill rake for to grevin her;  
It nedeth not this mattir oft to tere,  
For wiftist thou mine hertè wel, Pandare,  
God wote of this thou wouldist lital care.

Tho gan he tell him of his gladè night,  
And whereof firft his hert ydradde and how,  
And fayid, Frende, as I am a true knight,  
And by that faithe I owe to God and you,  
I had it nevir half fo hot as now,  
And evir the more that defire me biteth  
To love her beft the more it me deliteth.

I n'ot my felf not wifely what it is,  
But now I felin a new qualite,  
Ye, all anothir than I did er this.  
Pandare answerid and faied thus, that he  
That onis maie in hevin bliffe ybe  
He felith othir wayis, dare I faie,  
Than thilkè time he firft herd of it faie.



This is a worde for al, that Troilus  
Was nevir ful to speke of this matere,  
And for to praisin unto Pandarus  
The bounte of his bright lady so dere,  
And Pandarus to thanke and makin chere:  
This tale was aie span newe to beginne  
Till that the night departid hem atwinne.

Sone aftir this, for that Fortune it would,  
Icomin was the blisful time swete  
That Troilus was warnid that he should  
There he was erst Creseide his lady mete,  
For whiche he felte his herte in joie flete,  
And faithfully gan all the goddis bery;  
And let se now if that he can be mery.

And holdin was the forme and al the gise  
Of her comming, and eke of his also,  
As it was erst, whiche nedirh nought devise;  
But plainly to th' effecte right for to go,  
In joie and surete Pandarus hem two  
A bedde ybrought whan that hem bothe left,  
And thus thei ben in quiete and in rest.

Naught nedith it to you, sithe thei ben met,  
To aske at me if that thei blithe ywere?  
For if it erst was well tho was it bet  
A thousande folde, this nedith not enquire;  
Ago was every sorow' and every fere,  
And bothe iwis thei had, and so thei wende,  
As mochil joie as herte maie comprehende.

This n'is no litil thing of for to sey,  
This passith every wit for to devise,  
For eche of hem gan othir's lust obey;  
Felicite, whiche that these clerkis wise  
Commendin so, ne may not here suffise;  
This joye ne maie not writtin be with inke;  
This passith al that any hert maie thinke.

But cruil day, so welaway the stounde!  
Gan for to' aproche, as thei by signis knewe,  
For whiche hem thought thei felin deth iswounde:  
So wo was hem that chaungin gan ther hewe,  
And day thei gonnin to dispise al newe,  
Calling it traitour, envious, and worse,  
And bittirly the day's light thei corse.

(Quod Troilus) Alas! now am I ware  
That Pyrois, and tho swifte stedis thre  
Whiche that ydrawin forth the Sunn's chare  
Han gon some bypathe in dispise of me,  
And makith it so sone day to be,  
And for the Sunne him hastith thus to rise  
Ne shall I nevir don him sacrificie.

Eut nedis daie departin hem must fone;  
And whan ther speche don was and ther chere  
Thei twin anon, as thei were wont to done,  
And settin time of meting este ifere,  
And many' a night thei wrought in this manere:  
And thus Fortune a time yladde in joie  
Creseide and eke this king's son of Troie.

In suffisaunce, in blisse, and in singinges,  
This Troilus gan al his life to lede;  
He spendith, justith, and makith festinges;  
He gevith frely ofte, and chaungith wede;  
He helde about him alwaie out of drede  
A worlde of folke, as come him well of kinde,  
The freshest and the best that he could finde.

That suche a voice was of him and a steven  
Throughout the world of honour and largesse  
That it up ronge unto the yate of heven;  
And as in love he was in suche gladnesse  
That in his hert he demid as I gesse  
That there n'is lovir in this world at ese  
So wel as he, and thus gan love him plesse.

The godelihede or beaute whiche that Kinde  
In any othir lady had ifette  
Can not the mountenaunce of a gnat unbinde  
About his hert of al Creseid's nette;  
He was so narowe' imaskid and iknette  
That is undon in any manir side  
That n'il nat ben for aught that maie betide.

And by the honde ful oftin he would take  
This Pandarus, and into gardin lede,  
And suche a fest and suche a processe make  
Him of Creseide, and of her womanhede,  
And of her beaute, that withoutin drede  
It was an heven his wordis for to here,  
And than he would sing in this manere:

Love, that of erthe and se hath govirnaunce,  
Love, that his hestis hath in hevin hie,  
Love, that with a right wholsome aliaunce  
Halte peple joynid as him liste hem gie,  
Love, that yknittith lawe and companie,  
And couplis doth in vertue for to dwel,  
Hende this accorde that I have tolde and tel.

That that the world with faith, whiche that is  
Diversith so his stoundis according, [stable,  
That elementis that bethe discordable  
Holdin a bonde perpetually during,  
That Phoebus mote his rosy day forth bring,  
And that the mone hath lordship ore the nightes.  
Al this doeth Love; aie heried be his nightes!

That that the se, that gredy is to flowen,  
Constrainith to a certaine ende so  
His flodis, that so fierfly thei ne growen  
To drenchin erthe and al for evirmo,  
And if that Love aught let his bridil go  
Al that now lovith asondir should lepe,  
And lost were al that Love halt now to hepe.

So would to God, that author is of kinde,  
That with his bonde Love of his verme list  
To serchin hertis al, and fast to binde,  
That from his bonde no wight the wey out wist,  
And hertis colde them wold I that he twist  
To make hem love, and that list him aie rewe  
On hertis fore, and kepe hem that ben trewe.

In alle nedis for the toun's werre  
He was, and aie the first in armis dight,  
And certainly, but if that bokis erre,  
Save Hector most idradde of any wight;  
And thi' encrese of hardinesse and might  
Come him of love, his ladies thanke to win,  
That altirid his spirite so within.

In time of truce on hauking would he ride,  
Or ellis hunt the bore, beare, or lioun,  
The smale bestis let he gon beside;  
And whan that he come riding into the toun  
Ful oft his lady from her window down,  
As fresh as faucon comin out of muc,  
Ful redy was him godely to salve.

And most of love and vertue was his speche,  
 And in dispite had he al wretchidnesse;  
 And doutlesse no nede was him to beseeche  
 To honourin them that had worthinesse,  
 And esin hem that werin in distresse;  
 And glad was he if any wight wel ferde  
 That lovir was whan he it wist or herde.

For, soth to saine, he lost helde every wight  
 But if he were in Lov's high service,  
 I menè folke that aught it ben of right;  
 And ore al this so wel coulde he devise  
 Of sentiment, and in so uncouthen wise  
 Al his array, that every lovir thought  
 That al was well what so he said or wrought.

And though that he become of blode royal,  
 Him list of pride at no wight for to chace;  
 Benigne he was to eche in general,  
 For which he gate him thanke in every place:  
 Thus wouldè love, iheried be his grace!

That pride and ire, envie and avarice,  
 He gan to fle, and every othir vice.

Thou lady bright, the doughtir of Dione!  
 Thy blinde and wingid sonne eke, Dan Cupide!

Ye Sustin Nine eke! that by Helicone

In hil Parnasso listin for to abide,

That ye thus ferre han deivid me to gide

I can no more, but sens that ye wol wende

Ye beried ben for aie withoutin ende!

Through you have I said fully in my song

Th' effecte and joie of Troilus service,

Al be that there was some disese among,

As mine auctour to listith to devise:

My Thirde Böke now ende I in this wise,

And Troilus in luste and in quiete

Is with Creseide, his owne ladie fwete.

---

## TROILUS & CRESEIDE.

---

### PROÆMIUM LIBRI QUARTI.

**B**UT all to litill, welaway the while !  
Lastith fuche joie, ithonkid be Fortune,  
That semith trewist whan she woll begile,  
And can to folis so her songe entune  
That she 'hem hent and blent, traitour commune,  
And whan a wight is from her whele ithrowe  
Than laughith she, and makith him the mowe.  
From Troilus she gan her brightè face  
Away to writhe, and toke of him non hede,  
And caste him clene out of his ladie's grace,  
And on her whele she fet up Diomedè,  
For which min hert right now ginnith to blede ;  
And now my pen, alas ! with which I write,  
Quakith for drede of that I must endite :

For how Creseidè Troilus forfoke,  
Or at the lest how that she was unkinde,  
Mote hennisforth ben matir of my Boke,  
As writin folke through which it is in minde :  
Alas ! that thei should evir causè finde  
To speke her harme ! and if thei on her lie  
Iwis them selfe should have the vilanie.  
O ye Erinnyes ! Night's doughtirs thre,  
That endeleffe complaine evir in paine,  
Megæra, Alecto, and Typhphone,  
Thou cruil Mars eke ! fathir of Quirine,  
This ilke Fourth Boke helpith me for to fine.  
So that the loos of love and life ~~if~~  
Of Troilus be fully shewid here.



# INCIPIIT LIBER QUARTUS.

Lyeing in host, as I have faide er this,  
 The Grekis strong aboutin Troie toun,  
 Bisell that whan that Phœbus shining is  
 Upon the breste of Hercules Lioun.  
 That Hector with many a bold boroun  
 Cast on a daie with Grekis for to fight,  
 As he was wont, to greve 'hem what he might.  
 N'ot I how long or short it was bitwene  
 This purpose and that day thei fightin mente;  
 But on a daie wel armid bright and shene  
 Hector and many' a worthy knight out wente  
 With spere in honde, and with bigge bowis bente,  
 And in the berde, withoutin lengir lette,  
 Ther fomen in the felde anon 'hem mette.  
 The longe day with speris sharpe igrounde,  
 With arowes, dartis, swerdes, and macis fel,  
 Ther fight, and bringin horse and man to grounde,  
 And with ther axis out the brainis quel;  
 But in the last shoure, the sothe for to tel,  
 The folke of Troie 'hem selvin so misleden  
 That with the worse at night homeward thei fleden.  
 At which day was takin Antenor,  
 Polydamas, and also Menestes,  
 Xantippe, Sarpedon, Polytenor,  
 Polite, or the Trojan, Dan Ruphes,  
 And othir lesse folk, as Phebusus,  
 So that for harme that daie the folke of Troie  
 Dredin to lese a grete parte of ther joie.  
 Of Priamus was yeve, it Grekes request,  
 A time of truce, and tho thei gonnin trete  
 Ther prisioners to chaungin host and lest,  
 And for the surplus yevin sommis grete;  
 This thing anon was couthe in every strete,  
 Bothe in th' assage, in toun, and every where,  
 And with the first it came to Calchas ere.  
 When Calchas knew this tretise shold yholde,  
 In consistorie amonge the Grekis sone,  
 He gan in thringe forth with the lordis olde,  
 And set him there as he was wont to done,  
 And with a chaungid face 'hem bade a bone,  
 For love of God, to done that reverence  
 To stintin noise, and yeve him audience.  
 Than said he thus, Lo! Lordis mine, I was  
 Trojan, as it is knowin out of drede.  
 And if that you remembre I am Calchas,  
 That aldirfirst yave comfort to your nede,  
 And told wel howe that you shildin spede,

For dredelasse through you shal in a stounde  
 Ben Troie ibrent, and betin down to grounde.  
 And in what forme or in what manir wise  
 This toun to shende, and al your lust atcheve,  
 Ye have er this wel berde me you devise;  
 This knowin ye, my Lordis, as I leve,  
 And for the Grekis werin me so leve,  
 I came my selfe in my propir persone  
 To teche in this how you was best to done.  
 Having unto my tresour ne my rent  
 Right no regarde in respecte of your ese,  
 Thus al my gode I leste and to you went,  
 Wening in this you, Lordis, for to plesse;  
 But al that losse ne doth me no disese;  
 I vouchsafe do, as wisely have I joï,  
 For you to lese al that I have in Troie,  
 Save of a doughtir that I leste, alas!  
 Sleeping at home when out of Troie I stert:  
 O sterne, o cruil fathir that I was!  
 Howe might I have in that so hard an hert?  
 Alas that I ne' had brought her my shert!  
 For sorow of which I wol nat live to morow  
 But if ye, Lordis, rewe upon my sorow.  
 For bicause that I sawe no time er now  
 Her to delivre I holdin have my pees,  
 But now or nevir, if that it like you,  
 I may her have right sone nowe doubtles:  
 O helpe and grace amongis al this prees!  
 Rewe on this oldè caitife in distresse,  
 Sith I through you have all this hevinesse.  
 Ye have now caught and fettrid in prison  
 Troyans inowe, and if your willis be  
 My childe with one may have redemption;  
 Now for the love of God and of bounte  
 One of so fele, alas! so yese him me:  
 What nede were it this prayir for to werne,  
 Sith ye shul have both folke and toun as yern?  
 On peril of my life I shal nat lie,  
 Apollo hath me tolde ful faithfully;  
 I have eke foundin by astronomy,  
 By sort, and eke by augury, trewely,  
 And dare wel saie the time is faste by  
 That fire and flambe on al the toun shal sprede,  
 And thus shal Troie yturne to ashin dede.  
 For certaine Phœbus and Neptunus bothe,  
 That makidin the wallis of the toun,  
 Ben with the folke of Troie alwaie so wroth

That thei wol bring it to confusioun;  
Right in dispite of King Laomedoun,  
Bicause he n'olde payin 'hem ther hire,  
The toun of Troie shal ben fet on fire.

Telling his tale alway this oldè grey,  
Humble in speche and in his lokin eke,  
The saltè terris from his eyin twey  
Ful fast yronnin down by eithir cheke;  
So long he gan of focour 'hem beseke  
That for to hele him of his sorowes fore  
Thei gave him Antenor withoutin more.  
But who was glad inough but Calchas tho?  
And of this thing ful sone his nedis leide  
On them that sholdin for the tretise go,  
And them for Antenor ful oftè preide  
To bringin home King Thoas and Creseide;  
And whan Priam his safe conduct sent,  
Th' embassadours to Troie streight they went.

The cause i-tolde of ther conning, the olde  
Priam the King ful sone in generall  
Gan hereupon his parlyment to holde,  
Of whiche th' effecte reherschin you I shall:  
Th' embassadours ben answerde for finall  
The eschaunge of prisoners and al this nede  
'Hem likith wel, and forth in thei procede,

This Troilus was present in the place  
Whan askid was for Antenor Creseide,  
For whiche ful sone to chaungin gan his face,  
As he that with tho wordis wel nigh deide;  
But nathelless he no worde to it seide,  
Lest men should his affection espie;  
With mann'is hert he gan his sorowes drie.

And ful of anguish and of gresly drede  
Abode what othir lordes would to it sey,  
And if that thei would graunt, as God forbede!  
Th' eschaunge of her; then thought he thinges  
First how to save her honor, and what wey twey  
He mightè best th' eschaunge of her withstonde;  
Ful fast he cast how allè this might stonde.

Love him made allè prest to done her bide,  
And rathir dyin than that she should go,  
But Reason said him on that othir side  
Withoutin assent of her do nat so,  
Lest for thy werkè she would be thy foe,  
And fain, that through thy meddling is iblowe  
Your bothè love ther it was erst not knowe.

For whiche he gan deliberen for the beste,  
And though the lordis wouldin that she went  
He wouldè suffir them graunt what 'hem lest,  
And tel his lady first what that thei ment;  
And when that she had said him her entent,  
Therastir would he werkin all so blive  
Tho al the world ayen it would ystrive.

Hector with that full wel the Grekis herde  
For Antenor how thei would have Creseide,  
Gan it withstonde, and sobirly answerde;  
Sirs, she ne is no prisoner (he seide);  
I n'ot en you who that this chargè leide,  
But on my parte ye maie eftsones 'hem tell  
We usin hereno women for to sell.

The noise of peple upstert then atones  
As brimme as blase of strawe iset on fire,  
For infortune it wouldè for the nones

Thei sholdin ther confusion desire.

Hector, (quod thei) what goß may you enspire  
This woman thus to shilde, and done us lese  
Dan Antenor? a wrong waie now ye chese

That is so wise, and eke so bolde baroun,  
And we have nede of folke, as men may se;  
He is one of the gretist of this toun;  
O Hector! lette suche thy fantasies be;  
O King Priam! (quod thei) thus seggè we,  
That all our voice is to forgone Creseide,  
And to delivir Antenor thei preide.

O Juvenal, Lorde! trewe is thy sentence,  
That litil wenin folke what is to yerne,  
That thei ne findin' in ther desire offence,  
For cloude of errour ne lette 'hem discernen  
What best is; and lo! here ensample' as yerne;  
These folke desirin now deliviraunce  
Of Antenor, that brought 'hem to mischaunce:

For he was astir traitour to the toun  
Of Troy, alas! thei quitte him out to rathe:  
O nice world, lo thy discrecion!  
Creseide, which that never did 'hem scathe,  
Shal nowe no lengir in her blissè bathe,  
But Antenor he shal come home to toun,  
And she shal out: thus said both heere and houn,

For which delibered was by parlyment  
For Antenor to yeldin out Creseide,  
And it pronouncid by the President,  
Although that Hector nay ful oftè praide;  
And finally, what wight that it withsaide  
It was for naught; it must yben and should,  
For substaunce of the parlyment it would.

Departid out o' th' parlyment echone,  
This Troilus, withoutin wordis mo,  
Unto his chambre spedde him fast alone,  
But if it were a man of his or two,  
The whiche he bad out fastè for to go,  
Bicause that he would slepin, as he saide,  
And hastily upon his bedde him laide.

And as in wintir levis ben birafte  
Eche astir othir til the trees be bare,  
So that there n'is but barke and braunche ilafte,  
Lithe Troilus biraft of eche welfare  
Iboundin in the blackè barke of care,  
Disposid wode out of his witte to breide,  
So fore him fate the chaunging of Creseide.

He rist him up and every dore he shette  
And window eke, and cho this wofull man  
Upon his bedd'is side adoun him sette,  
Ful like a ded image, both pale and wan,  
And in his brest the hepid wo began  
Out brust, and he to workin in this wise,  
In his woenesse, as I shal you devise.

Right as the wildè bulle beginnith spring  
Now here now there, idartid to the herte,  
And of his deth rorith in complaining,  
Right so gan he about the chambre sterte,  
Smiting his brest aie with his fistis smerte;  
His hed to the wall, his body to the grounde,  
Ful oftè he swapte, him selvin to confounde.

His eyin two for pite of his herte  
Out stremidin as swifte as wellis twey;  
The highè sobbis of his sorowes smerte



His speche him reſte; unneſthis might he ſey  
O Deth, alas! why n'ilt thou do me dey?  
Acurſid be that day which that Nature  
Yi hope me to ben a liv'is cature!

But aſtir, whan the fury' and al the rage  
Whiche that his herte twiſt and faſte theſt  
By length of time ſomewhat gan aſwage,  
Upon his bedde he laide him down to reſt;  
But tho begon his teres more out to beſt,  
That wondir is the body maie ſuffiſe  
To halfe this wo which that I you deviſe.

Than ſaide he thus; Fortune, alas the while!  
What have I done? what have I the agilt?  
How mightiſt thou for routh thus me begile?  
Is there no grace? and ſhal I thus be ſpilt?  
Shal thus Creſeide away for that thou wilt?  
Alas! how mightiſt thou in thine hert finde  
To ben to me thus cruil and unkinde?

Have I the nat honourid al my live,  
As thou well woteſt, above the goddis all?  
Why wilt thou then of this joie me deprive?  
O Troilus! what may men now the call  
But wretche of wretches, out of honour ſal  
Into miſe'ry? in whiche I wol bewaile  
Creſeide, alas! til that the brethe me faile.

Alas, Fortune! if that my life in joie  
Diſpleſid had unto thy ſoule envie,  
Why ne' haddiſt thou my fathir King of Troy  
Biraſte the life, or done my brethrin die,  
Or ſtaine my ſelfe, that thus complaine and crie?  
I combre world that maie of nothing ſerve,  
But evir die and never fully ſterve.

If that Creſeide alone werin me laſte  
Naught raught I whidir thou woldiſt me ſtere,  
And her, alas! than haſt thou me biraſte:  
But evirmore, lo! this is thy manere,  
To reve a wight that moſte is to him dere,  
To prove in that thy gierfull violence;  
Thus am I loſt, there helpith no defence.

O very Lorde! o Love, o god! alas!  
That knowiſt beſt min hert and al my thought,  
What ſhal my ſorowfull life done in this caas  
~~That I ſo dere have bought?~~

Sens ye Creſeide and me have ſully brought  
Into your grace, and both our hertis ſeled,  
How maie ye ſuffre', alas! it be repeled?

What I may done I ſhal while I may dure  
On live, in turment and in cruill paine;  
This infortune and this diſaventure  
Alone as I was borne I wol complaine,  
Ne nevir wol I ſene it ſhine or raine,  
But ende I wol as Edippe in derkneſſe,  
My wofull life, and dying in diſtreſſe.

O wery gholt! that errith to and fro,  
Why n'ilt thou ſlien out of the wofulleſt  
Body that evir might on grounde ygo?  
O ſoulè! lurking in this woful neſte,  
Flee forth anon, and do mine herte to beſte,  
And ſolowe Creſeide thy lady dere;  
Thy right place is no lengir to ben here.

O woful eyin two! ſens your diſporte  
Was al to ſene Creſeid's eyin bright,  
What ſhal ye done, but for my diſcomforte

Stondin for naught and wepin out your ſight,  
Sens ſhe is queint that wont was you to light?  
In veine from this forth have I eyin twey  
Iſformid, ſens your vertue is away.

O my Creſeide! o lady ſoveraine!  
Of this ſorowfull ſoulè that thus crieth  
Who ſhall now yevin comfort to thy paine?  
Alas! no wight; but whan mine hert ydieth  
My ſpirite, whiche that ſo unto you hieth,  
Receve in gre, for that ſhall aie you ſerve;  
Forthy no force is tho the body ſterve.

O ye lovirs! that high upon the whele  
Ben ſette of Fortune, in gode avinture  
God lene that ye aie findin love of ſtele,  
And longè mote your life in joy endure,  
But when ye comin by my ſepultura  
Remembrith that your ſelowe reſtith there,  
For I lovid eke, though I unworthy were.

O olde unwholfome and miſlivid man,  
Calchas I mene! alas! what cild the  
To ben a Greke ſens thou art borne Trojan?  
O Calchas! whiche that wolt my banè be,  
In curſid time was thou borne for me;  
As woulde bliſſfull Jove for his joye  
That I the had where that I wold in Troie!

A thouſande ſighis hottir than the gleden  
Out of his beſt eche aſtir othir wente,  
Medlid with plaintis newe, his wo to ſede,  
For whiche his woful teris nevir ſtente;  
And, ſhortly, ſo his ſorowes him to rente,  
He woxe ſo mate that ne joy nor penaunce  
He felith none, but lyith in a traunce.

Pandarus, whiche that in the parliment  
Had herde what every lord and burgeis ſeid,  
And how ful grauntid was by one aſſent  
For Antenor to yeldin out Creſeide,  
Can wel nigh wode out of his wit to breide,  
So that for wo he ne wiſt what he mente,  
But in a rage to Troilus he wente.

A certaine knight that for the time kepte  
The chambre dore undid it him anone,  
And Pandarus, that ful tenderly wepte,  
Into the derke chambre as ſtil as ſtone  
Towarde the bedde gan ſoftly ſor to gone,  
So confuſe that he ne wiſt what to ſay;  
For very wo his witte was nigh away.

And with his chere and loking al to torne  
For wo of this, and with his armis ſolden,  
He ſtode this woful Troilus beforne,  
And on his pitous face he gan beholden;  
But Lord! ſo oftin gan his hert to colden,  
Seying his frende in wo, whoſe hevineſſe  
His herte ſlough, as thought him, for diſtreſſe.

This woful wight, this Troilus, that ſelte  
His frende Pandare isomin him to ſe,  
Gan as the ſnow ayenſt the ſunne to melte,  
For whiche this woful Pandare of pite  
Gan ſor to wepe as tenderly as he;  
And ſpecheleſſe thus ben theſe ilke twey,  
That neithir might for ſorow o worde ſey.

But at the laſt this wofull Troilus,  
Nigh did for ſmert, gan beſtin out to rore,  
And with a ſorowful noiſe he ſaid thus,



Amonges his sobbis and his fighis fore;  
Lo! Pandare, I am ded, withoutin more;  
Hast thou nat herde at parliament, he seide,  
For Antenor how losse is my Creseide?

This Pandarus, ful ded and pale of hewe,  
Ful piteously answerid, and saide Yes,  
As wisely were it false as it is trewe  
That I have herde, and wote all how it is!  
O mercy, God! who would have trowid this?  
Who would have wende that in so lite a throw  
Fortune our joye would havin ovirthrow?

For o! in this world there is no creature,  
As to my dome, that evir sawe ruine  
Sraungir then this through case or avinture;  
But who may al eschue or al devine?  
Suche is this world. Forthy I thus define,  
No trustith no wight to finde in Fortune  
Aie propertie; her yestis ben comune.

But tel me this, why thou art now so mad,  
To sorowen thus why liste thou in this wise,  
Sens thy desire al wholly hast thou had,  
So that by right it ought inough suffice?  
But I, that never felte in my service  
A frendly chere or loking of an eye;  
Let me thus wepe and wailin til I dye.

And ore al this, as thou wel wost thy selve,  
This toune is ful of ladies al aboute,  
And to my dome fairir than suche twelve  
As er she was shall I finde in a route,  
Ye, one or twey, withoutin any doute:  
Forthy be glade, mine owne dere brother!  
If she be lost we shal recovre' an other.

What! God forbid alway that eche plesaunce  
In o thing were, and in non othir wight;  
If one can singe, anothir can wel daunce,  
If this be godely she is glad and light,  
And this is faire and that can gode aright;  
Eche for his vertue holdin is full dere  
Bothe heroner and faucon for riverse.

And eke, as writ Zanis, that was full wise,  
The newe love out chasith oft the old,  
And upon newe case lyith newe avise;  
Thinke eke thy self to savin thou art hold;  
Soche fire by proceffe shall of kinde cold,  
For sens it is but casuell plesaunce  
Some case shal put it out of remembraunce.

For all so sure as daie cometh astir night  
The newe love, labour, or othir wo,  
O ellis feldē seing of a wight,  
Doen old affections all ovir go;  
And for thy part thou shalt have one of tho  
To abredge with thy bittir painis smerte;  
Absence of her shall drive her out of herte.

These wordis saied, he for the nonis all  
To helpe his frende, lest he for sorowe deide,  
For doubtelesse to doen his wo to fall  
He ne raught nat what unthrift that he seide;  
But Troilus, that nigh for sorowe deide,  
Toke little hede of all that ere he ment;  
One ere it herd, at the' othir out it went.

But at the last he answerde, and said, Friend,  
This lecherast, or yhelid thus to be,  
Were well sitting if that I were a fend,

To traifin her that true is unto me;  
I praie God let this counsaill never the,  
But doe me rathir sterve anon right here  
Er I thus doen as thou me wouldist lere.

She that I serve iwis, what so thou seie,  
To whom mine herte enhabite is by right,  
Shall have me wholly her's till that I deie;  
For, Pandarus, sens I have trouth her hight,  
I woll nat ben untrue for any wight,  
But as her man I woll aie live and sterve,  
And never wolle non othir creature serve.

And there thou saiest thou shalt as faire yfind  
As she, let be; make no comparifon  
To a creature iformid here by Kinde;  
O leve, Pandarus! thy conclusion;  
I woll nat ben of thine opinion  
Touching all this, for whiche I the besече  
So holde thy pece; thou flact me with thy speche.

Thou biddist me that I should love another  
All freshly newe; and let Creseide go;  
It listie nat in my powir; leve brother,  
And though I might yet would I nat doe so:  
But canst thou playin rake to and fro,  
Nertle' in Docke out, now this now that, Pandare?  
Now fouldē fall her for thy wo that care!

Thou farist eke by me, thou Pandarus,  
As he that whan a wight is wo bigon  
He cometh to him apace and saith right thus,  
Thinke not on smert and thou shalt sele none.  
Thou maiest me first transmewin in a stone,  
And reve me of my passionis all,  
Or thou so lighty do my wo to fall.

The deth maie well out of my brest depart  
The life, so long maie last this sorowe mine,  
But fro my fouldē shall Creseid's dart  
Out nevermore, but doune with Proserpine,  
Whan I am dedde, I woll go won in pine,  
And there I woll eternally complain  
My wo, and kow that twinnid be we twain.

Thou hast here made an argument full fine,  
How that it shouldin lassē pain ybe  
Creseide to forgon, for she was mine,  
And lived in ese and in felicite;  
Why gabbist thou, that ~~thou~~ erst erit to me  
That him is wors that, as fro wele ithrowe  
Than he had erst none of that wele iknowe?

But tel me now, sens that the thinketh so light  
To chaungin so in love aie to and fro,  
Why hast thou nat ben busily thy might  
To chaungin her that doeth the al thy wo?  
Why n'ilt thou let her fro thine herte go?  
Why n'ilt thou love anothir lady swete,  
That may thine herte settin in quiete?

If thou hast had in love aie yet mischaunce,  
And canst it not out of thine herte drive,  
I that have lived in lust and in plesaunce  
With her, as moche as any wight on live,  
How should I that foryet, and that so blive?  
O! where hast thou ben hid so long in mewe  
That canst so well and formliche argewe?

Naie, Pandarus, naught worth is all thy rede,  
But douteless for ought that may befall,  
Withoutin wordis mo, I woll ben dede.

O Deth ! that endir art of sorowes all,  
Come now, sens I so oft aftir the call,  
For sely is that deth, soth for to fain,  
That oft iclepid cometh and endith pain.

Well wote I, while my life was in quiete,  
Er thou me sue I would have yevin hire,  
But now thy comming is to me so swete  
That in this worlde I nothing so desire :  
O Deth ! sens with this sorowe I am afire,  
Thou eithir doe me' anon in teris drenche  
Or with thy coldè stroke mine hertè quenche.

Sens that thou flæst so sele in sondry wise  
Ayenst ther will, unprayid, daie and night,  
Doe me at my requestè this service,  
Deliver now the worlde, so doest thou right,  
Of me, that am the sorowfullist wight  
That evir was, for time is that I sterve  
Sens in this world of right naught do I serve.

This Troilus in teris gan distill,  
As licour out of a limbeck full fast,  
And Pandarus gan holde his tongè still,  
And to the ground his eyin doune he cast,  
But pathèlessè thus thought he at the last ;  
What ! parde rathir than my felowe deie  
Yet shall I somewhat more unto him seie.

And sayid, Frend, sens thou hast soche distresse,  
And sens the list mine argumentis blame,  
Why n'ilt thou thy selvin helpe doen redresse,  
And with thy manhode lettin all this game ?  
Go ravishe her, ne canst thou not for shame ?  
And eithir let her out of tounè fare  
Or hold her still, and leve thy nicè fare.

Art thou in Troie and hast non hardiment  
To take a woman whiche that lovith the,  
And would her selvin ben of thine assent ?  
Now is nat this a nicè vanite ?  
Rise up anon and let this weping be,  
And kith thou art a man, for in this hour  
I woll ben dedde or she shall bein our.

To this answerde him Troilus full soft,  
And saied, Iwis, my leve brothir dere !  
All this have I my self yet thought full oft,  
And more ~~things~~ than thou devisist here,  
But why this thing is ~~so~~ thou shalt well here,  
And whan thou hast me yeyin audience  
Theraftir maiest thou tell a thy sentence.

First, sin thou wost this toun hath all this werre  
For ravishing of women so ay might,  
It should not ben yfuffrid me litherre,  
As it stont now, ne doen so grete myght ;  
I should have also blame of every wight.  
My fathir's graunt if that I so withstode,  
Sens she is chaungid for the toun's godep.

I have eke thought, so it were her assente,  
To aske her of my fathir of his grace,  
Than thinke I this were her accusèment,  
Sens well I wot I maie her not purchase ;  
For sens my fathir in so high a place  
As parliment hath her eschaunge enseled  
He n'ill for me his lettir be repeled.

Yet drede I mooste her hertè to perturbe  
With violence, if I doe soche a game,  
For if I would it opinyly disturbe

It must be disclaundre unto her name,  
And me were levir die than her diffame,  
As n'oldè God, but if that I should have  
Her honour levir than my life to save.

Thus am I lost, for aught that I can se,  
For certain is that sith I am her knight  
I must her honour levir have than me.  
In every case, as lovir ought of right :  
Thus am I with desire and reson twight,  
Desire for to distourbin her me redeth,  
And reson n'ill not, so mine hertè dredeth.

Thus weping, that he ne could nevir cese,  
He saied, Alas ! how shall I wretchè fare ?  
For well sele I alwaie my love encrese,  
And hope is lasse and lasse alway, Pandare ;  
Encrefin eke the causis of my care ;  
So welawaie ! why n'ill mine hertè brest ?  
For why ? in love there is but little rest.

Pandare answerid, Frend, thou maiest for me  
Doen as the list, but had I it so hote,  
And thine estate, she should ygo with me ;  
Tho all this toun cried on this thing by note,  
I n'oldè set all that noise at a grote,  
For whan men have well cried than woll thei roun  
Eke wondir last but ix daies nere in toun.

Devynth not in reson aie so depe,  
Ne curtisly, but helpe thy self anon ;  
Bet is that othir than thy selvin wepe,  
And namily sens ye two ben all one :  
Rise up, for by nyne hedde she shall not gone,  
And rathir ben in blame a little found  
Than sterve here as a gnat withoutin wound.

It is no shame unto you ne no vice  
Her to withholdin that the lovith mooste :  
Paraviature she might holde the for nice  
To lette her go thus to the Grekis hoste :  
Thinke eke *Fortune*, as well thy selvin wofte,  
*Helpith the bardie man to his emprise*,  
And weivith wretchis for ther cowardise.

And though thy lady would alite her greve,  
Thou shalt thy self thy pece hereaftir make ;  
But as to me certain I can not leve  
That she would it as now for evill take,  
Why shouldè than for fere thine hertè quake ?  
Thinke how that Paris hath, that is thy brother  
A love, and why shal thou not have another ?

And, Troilus, o thing I dare the swere,  
That if Cresidè, whiche that is thy lefe,  
Now lovith the as well as thou doest here,  
God helpe me so, she n'ill not take agrese  
Though thou do bore anon in this mitchese ;  
And if she wilnith fro the for to passe  
Than is she false, so love her well the lasse.

Forthy take hert, and thinke right as a knight  
Through love is brokin al daie every lawe ;  
Kith now somewhat thy corage and thy might ;  
Have mercie on thy self ; for any awe  
Let not this wretchid wo thine hert ygnawe,  
But manly set the worlde on sixe and seven,  
And if thou die a martyr go to heven.

I woll my self ben with the at this dede,  
Though I and all my kin upou a stound  
Should in a strete as doggis liggin dede,

Through-girt with many a wide blodie wound;  
In every case I wolle a frend be found;  
And if the lifte here stervin as a wretche  
Adieu, the devill speðe him that retche!

This Troilus gan with tho wordis quicke,  
And sayid, Frend, graunt mercie! I assent,  
But certainly thou maieft nat so me pricke,  
Ne paine none ne maie me so tourment,  
That for no case, it is not mine entent,  
At short wordis, though that I dyin should,  
To ravish her but if her self it would.

Why, so mene I (quod Pandare) al this day;  
But tell me than, hast thou her well assaied  
That sorowest thus? and he answerde him Naie.  
Whereof art thou (quod Pandare) than dismaied,  
That n'oste not that she wol ben il apaied  
To ravish her, sens thou hast not ben there,  
But if that Jove the tolde it in thine ere?

Forthy rise up, as naught ne were, anon,  
And washe thy face, and to the king thou wend,  
Or he maie wondrin whidir thou art gon;  
Thou must with wisedome him and othir blend,  
Or upon case he maie astir the fend  
Or thou be ware: and, shortly, brothir dere!  
Be glad, and let me werke in this mattere;

For I shall shape it so that sikirly  
Thou shalt this night somtime in some manere  
Come spekin with thy ladie privily,  
And by her wordis, eke as by her chere,  
Thou shalt full sone aperceve and well here  
Of her entent, and in this case the best;  
And fare now well, for in this point I rest.

The swiftè Fame, whiche that fals thingis  
Equall reportich like the thingis true,  
Was throughout Troie ised with prest wingis  
Fro man to man, and made his tale all newe,  
How Calchas doughtir with her brightè hewe  
At parliment, withoutin wordis more,  
Igrauntid was in chaunge of Antenore.

The whichè tale anon right as Creseide  
Had herd, she, whiche that of her fathir rought  
(As in this case) right naught, ne whan he deide,  
Full busily to Jupiter besought  
Yeve him mischaunce that this tretis brought:  
But, shortly, lest these talis sothè were  
She durst at no wight askin it for fere.

As she that had her hert and all her minde  
On Troilus iset so wondir fast  
That all this world ne might her love unbind,  
Ne Troilus out of her hertè cast,  
She would ben his while that her life maie last;  
And she thus brennith bothe in love and drede  
So that she ne wist what was best to rede.

But as men sene in toun and all about,  
That women use ther frendis to visite,  
So to Creseide of women came a rout  
For pitous joie, and wendin her delite,  
And with ther talis, dere inough a mite,  
These women, whiche that in the cite dwell,  
Thei set 'hem doune, and saied as I shall tell.

(Quod first that one) I am glad truely  
Bicquise of you, that shall your fathir se.  
Anothir saied, Iwis so am not I,

For all to little hath she with us be.  
(Quod tho the thirde) I hope iwis that she  
Shall bringin us the pecc on every side,  
That whan she goth Almightye God her gide!

Tho wordis and tho womannishe thingis  
She herd 'hem right as though she thennis were,  
For God it wote her herte on othir thing is;  
Although the body sat among 'hem there  
Her advertence is alwaie ellis where;  
For Troilus full fast her soule fought;  
Withoutin worde on him alwaie she thought.

These women that thus wendin her to plesse  
Aboutin naught gon all ther talis spende;  
Soche vanite ne can doen her none ese,  
As she that all this menè while brende  
Of othir passion than thei ywende,  
So that she felte almoste her hertè die  
For wo, and werie of that comparie.

For whichè might she no lengir restrain  
Her teris, thei ganin so up to well,  
That gavin signis of her bittir pain  
In whiche her spirite was and must ydwell,  
Remembring her from heaven unto which hel  
She fallin was sens she forgo the sight  
Of Troilus, and sorowfully she fight.

And thilkè folis sitting her about  
Wendin that she had wept and sighid fore,  
Bicause that she shouldin out of the rout  
Departin, and nevir plaie with 'hem more;  
And thei that haddin knowin her of yore  
Se her so wepe, and thought it was kindnesse,  
And eche of 'hem wept eke for her distresse.

And busilie thei gonin her comforte  
On thing God wot on which she little thought,  
And with ther talis wendin her disporte,  
And to be glad thei oftin her besought;  
But soche an ese therwith thei in her wrought  
Right as a man is esid for to sele  
For ache of hedde to clawen' him on his hele.

But astir all this nicè vanite  
Thei toke ther leve, and home thei wentin all;  
Creseide, full of sorowful pite,  
Into her chambre' up went ~~at~~ of the hall,  
And on her bedde she gan for dedde to fall,  
In purpose nevir theris for to rise,  
And thus she wrought, as I shall you devise.

Her owndid heer, that sonnyshe was of hewe,  
She rent, and eke ~~her~~ fingirs long and smale  
She wrong ful ~~to~~, and bade God on her rue,  
And with ~~the~~ death to doe bote on her bale;  
Her hew, whilom bright, that tho was pale,  
Bare witnesse of her wo and her constreint,  
And thus she spake, sobbing in her compleint:

Alas! (quod she) out of this regioun  
I, wofull wretche and infortunid wight,  
And borne in cursid constellacioun,  
Mote gon, and thus departin fro my knight!  
Wo worthe, alas! that ilkè day's light  
On which I sawe him first with eyin twain  
That causith me and I him all this pain!

Therwith the teris from her eyin two  
Doune fell as showris full in Aprill swithe,  
Her whitè brest she bet, and for the wo



After the deth she cried a thousande sith,  
Sens he that wont her wo was for to lith  
She mote forgoon, for whiche disavinture  
She helde her sellin a forioft creature.

She saied, How shall he doon and I also!  
How should I live if that I from him twin!  
O dere herte eke, that I love so,  
Who shall that sorowe slaen that ye ben in!  
O Calchas, fathir! thine be all this sin!  
O mothir mine, that clepid were Argive,  
Wo worth that daie that thou me bare on live!  
To what fine should I live and sorowen thus?

How should a filhe withoutin watir dure?  
What is Creseide worth from Troilus?  
How should a plant or any othir creature  
Livin withoute his kindly noriture?  
For whiche full oft a byword here I seie,  
That ertheles mote grene mede sone deye.

I shall doon thus, sens neither sward ne dart  
Dare I none handle for the cruilte,  
That ilke daie that I fro you depart,  
If sorowe of that nill nat my bane be,  
Than shall no mete ne drinke ycome in me  
Till I my soule out of my brest unsheth,  
And thus my selvin woll I doon to deth.  
And, Troilus, my clothis everichone  
Shall blacke ben, in tokining, herte swete!  
That I am as out of this worlde agone  
That wont ywas you to set in quiete,  
And of mine ordir aie, till deth me mete,  
The observaunce evir in your absence  
Shall sorowe ben, complaint and abstinence.

Mine herte, and eke the wofull ghost therein,  
Biqueth I with your spirite to complain  
Eternally, for thei shall newir twin;  
For though in yerth ytwinnid be we twain,  
Yet in the felde of pite, out of pain,  
That hight Elysium, we shall ben yfere,  
As Orpheus and Eurydice his fere.

Thus, herte mine! for Antenor, alas!  
I sone shall be ychaungid, as I wene;  
But how shall ye doon in this wofull caas?  
How shall your tender herte thus sustein?  
But, herte mine! foryeve his sorowe, and tene,  
And me also; for, sothly, for to seie,  
So ye well fare I reche not for to deie.

How might it evir redde ben or ifong  
The plaintis that she made in her distresse?  
I not, but as for me, my littel tong,  
If I discrivin would her heviness,  
It should ymake her sorowe semè lesse  
Than that it was, and childishly deface  
Her hic complaint, and therefore I it page.

Pandarus, whiche that sent from Troilus  
Was to Creseide, as ye have herd devise,  
That for the best it was accordid thus,  
And he full glad to doon him that service  
Unto Creseide in a full secrete wise,  
There as she laie in tourment and in rage,  
Came her to tell all wholly his message;

And fonde that she her selvin gan to trete  
Full piteously, for with her faste teres  
Her brest and face ibathid was full wete,  
Yet,

Her mightie tressis of her sonnifhe heres  
Unbroidin hangin all about her eres,  
Whiche yavin him very signall mattire  
Of deth, whiche that her herte gan desire.

Whan she him sawe she gan for sorowe anon  
Her tery face atwixt her armis hide,  
For whiche this Pandarus is so wo bigon  
That in the hous he might unneeth abide,  
As he that felt sorowe on every side,  
For if Creseide had crist complainid fore  
Tho gan she plain a thousande times more,

And in her aspre plainte thus she seide;  
Pandarus, my cme, of joyis mo than two  
Was cause, causing first to me Creseide,  
That now transmutid bin in cruil wo,  
Wher' shall I saie to you welcome or no,  
That aldirfirst me brought unto servise  
Of love, alas! that endith in soche wise?

Endith than love in wo? ye, or men lieth,  
And every worldly blisse, as thinkith me;  
The ende of blisse aie sorowe occupieth;  
And who so trowith not that it so be  
Let him upon me wofull wretchè se,  
That my self hate, and aie my birthè curse,  
Feling alwaie fro wicke I go to worse.

Whoso me seeth seeth sorowe all atonis,  
Paine, turment, wo, and plaint, and eke distresse  
Out of my wofull bodie harme there none is,  
As langour, anguise, cruill bittirnesse,  
Annoie, smarte, drede, furie, and eke siknesse;  
I trowe iwis from hevin teris rain  
For pite of my aspre and cruill pain.

O thou my sustir! full of discomfort,  
(Quod Pandarus) what thinkist thou to doe?  
Why ne' hast thou to thy selvin some resport?  
Why wilt thou thus thy self, alas! fordo?  
I leve all this werke, and take now hede to  
That I shall sain, and herken' of gode entent  
This that by me thy Troilus the sent.

Tournid her tho Creseide a wo making  
So grete, that it a deth was for to se;  
Alas! (quod she) what wordis maie ye bring,  
What woll my dere herte sendin unto me,  
Whiche that I dredè nevir more to se?  
Woll he have plaint or teris ere I wende?  
I have inough if he theraftir sende.

She was right soche to sene in her visage  
As is that wight that men on bere ybinde,  
Her face, like of paradis the image  
Was all ichaungid in anothir kinde;  
The plaie, the laughtir, men wer wont to find  
In her, and eke her joyis evrichone,  
Ben fledde; and thus lieth Creseide alone.

About her eyin two a purple ring  
Bitrent, in sothfast tokening of her pain,  
That to behold it was a dedly thing,  
For whiche Pandarus ne might nat restrain  
The teris from his eyin for to rain;  
But nath'lesse as he best might he seide  
From Troilus these wordis to Creseide:

Lo! nece. I trowe well ye han herd all how  
The King, with othir lordis, for the best  
Hath made eschaunge of Antenor and you;  
B b

That cause is of this sorowe and unrest  
But how this case doth Troilus molest  
This maie none yerthly mann'is tong ysaie;  
For very wo his wit is all awaie:

For whiche we have so sorowed he and I,  
That into little it had bothe us flawe,  
But through my counsaile this daie, finally,  
He somewhat hath fro weping him withdrawe,  
And semith me that he desirith save  
With you to ben all night, for to devise  
Remedie of this, if there were any wise.

This, short and plain, th' effect of my message,  
As serforthe as any wit can comprehend,  
For ye that ben of tourment in soche rage  
Maie to no long prologue as now entende,  
And hercupon ye maie answere him sende;  
And for the love of God, my neede dere!  
So leve this wo or Troilus be here.

Grette is my wo, (quod she) and sighid fore,  
As she that felith oodly sharpe distresse,  
But yet to me his sorowe' is mckill more,  
That love him bet than he himself I gesse.  
Alas! for me hath he soche hevinesse?  
Can he for me so pitoufly complain?  
Iwis this sorowe doublith all my pain.

Grevous to me, God wot, it is to twin,  
(Quod she) but yet it hardir is to me  
To sene that sorowe which that he is in,  
For well wot I it woll my banè be,  
And die I woll in certain tho (quod she:)  
But bid him come er Deth that thus me threteth  
Drive out that ghost, which in min hert ybeteth.

These wordis saied, she on her armis two  
Fill grasse, and gan to wepin pitoufly.  
(Quod Pandarus) Alas! why doe ye so,  
Sens ye well wote the time is faste by  
That he shall come? arise up hastily,  
That he you nat biwopin thus yfinde,  
But ye wol have him wode out of his minde:

For wist he that ye farde in this manere  
He would himselfin see; and if I wende  
To have this fare he should not comin here  
For all the gode that Priam maie dispende,  
For to what fine he would anon pretende,  
That know I well; and forthy yet I seie  
So leve this sorowe', or plainly, he woll deie:

And shapith you his sorowe for to' abredge  
And nat encrefin, lese neede swete!  
Bethir rathir to him cause of plat than edge,  
And with some wisdom ye his sorowes bete:  
What helpith it to wepin full a frete,  
Or though ye bothe in fake teris dreint?  
*But is a time of cure die than of plaint.*

-I menè thus, whan I him hithir bring,  
Sens ye be wise, and bothe of one assent,  
So shapith how to distourbe your going,  
Or come ayen sone affir ye be went:  
Women ben wise in short avisement;  
And let sene how your wit shall now availe,  
And what that I maie help'tt shall nat faile.

Go, (quod Creseide) and, uncle, truly  
I shall doen all my might me to restrain  
From weping in his sight, and busily

Him for to glad I shall doen all my pain,  
And in my hertè sokin every vain:  
If to this fore there maie ben foundin salve  
It shall not lacke certaine on mine behalve.

Goth Pandarus, and Troilus he fought,  
Till in a temple' he found him all alone,  
As he that of his life no lengir rought,  
But to the pitous goddis everichone  
Full tendirly he praied and made his mone,  
To doen him sone out of this worlde to pace,  
For wel he thought there was non othir grace.

And, shortly, all the sothè for to seie,  
He was so fallin in dispaire that daie  
That uttirly he shope him for to deie;  
For right thus was his argument alwaie,  
He saied he n'as but lornè, welawaie!  
For all that cometh cometh by necessite,  
Thus to ben lorne it is my destine:

For certainly this wote I well, he saide  
That foresight of the divine purveiaunce  
Had sene alwaie me to forgon Creseide,  
Sens God seeth every thing out of doutaunce,  
And them disposith through his ordinaunce  
In his meritis sothly for to be  
As thei shall comin by predestine.

But nathèlesse, alas! whom shall I leve?  
For there ben grette clerkis many one  
That destine through argumentis prève,  
And some ysain that nedely there is none,  
But that fre choice is yeven' us everichone.  
O welawaie! so fligh arne clerkis old  
That I n'ot whose opinion I maie hold.

For some men sain that God seeth al biforne,  
Ne God maie nat decevid ben parde;  
Than mote it fallin, though men had it sworne,  
That purveiaunce hath sene beforne to be;  
Wherefore I saie that from eterne if he  
Hath wist beforn our thought eke as our dede  
We have no fre choice, as these clerkis rede.

For othir thought nor othir dede also  
Might nevir ben but soche as purveiaunce,  
Whiche maie not ben discevid nevir mo,  
Hath seled biforne withoutin ignorace;  
For if there might ybe a variaunce  
To writthin out fro God's purveying  
There n'are no prescience of thing comming;

But it were rathir an opinion  
Uncertain, and no ste. fast foreseing;  
And certis that were an abuson  
That God shog. I have no perfect clere wetting  
More than we men, that have doubtings wening:  
But soch an errour upon God to gesse  
Were fapè and foule, and wickid cursidenesse.

Eke this is an opinion of some  
That have ther top ful high and smothe isore,  
Thei sain right thus, that thing is nat to come  
For that the prescience hath sene before  
That it shall come, but thei sain that therfore  
That it shal come, therefore the purveiaunce  
Wote it beforne withoutin ignoraunce.

And in this manir this necessite  
Retournith in his place contrary' againe,  
For nedefully behovith it nat be

That thilke thingis fallin in certaine  
That ben purveyed, but nedefully, as thei faine,  
Behovith it that thingis which that fall  
Than thei in certaine ben purveyid all:

I mene as though I laboured me in this  
To enquire which thing cause of which thing be,  
As whethir that the prescience of God is  
The certaine cause of the necessite  
Of thingis that to comin be parde,  
Or if necessite of thing coming  
Be the cause certaine of the purveying.

But nowe ne' enforce I me not in shewing  
How the' ordir of the causis stant, but wot I  
That it behovith that the befalling  
Of thingis wiste before certainly  
Be necessarie, al seme it not therby  
That prescience put falling necessarye  
To thing to come, al fal it foule or faire:

For if there sit a man yonde on a se,  
Than by necessite behovith it  
That certis thine opinion sothe be  
That wenist or conjectist that he sit;  
And furthirovir now ayenwarde hit,  
Lo! right so is it on the part contrarie,  
As thus; now herkin, for I wol nat tarie:

I say that if the opinion of the  
Be sothe for that he sit, than say I this;  
That he mote sittin by necessite,  
And thus necessite in eithir is;  
For in him nede of sitting is iwis,  
And in the nede of sothe; and thus forsothe  
There mote necessite ben in you bothe.

But thou maist faine, the man sit nat therefore  
That thine opinion of his sitting soth is,  
But rathir for the man fate there before,  
Therefore is thine opinion sothe iwis:  
And I say, though the cause of sothe is this  
Cometh of his sitting, yet necessite  
Is enterchaungid bothe in him and the.

Thus in the same wise out of doutance  
I maie wel makin, as it semith me,  
Reasoning of Godd's purveyaunce;  
And of the thingis that to comin be,  
By whichè reson men maie wel ise  
That thilke thingis that in erthe befall  
That by necessite thei comin all:

For although that this thing shall come iwis;  
Therefore is it purveyid certainly,  
Nat that it cometh for it purveyid is;  
Yet nathelless behoveth it nedefully  
That thing to come be purveyid truly  
Or ellis thingis that purveyid be  
That thei betidin by necessite.

And thus suffisith right inough certaine  
For to distroie our fre choise everydell;  
But now is this abusin to faine  
That falling of the thingis temporell  
Is cause of Godd's prescience eternell;  
Now trewily that is a false sentence  
That thing to come should cause his prescience.

What might I wene and I had suche a thought,  
But that God purveyeth thing that is to come  
For that it is to come, and ellis nought!

So might I wene that thingis all and sothe  
That whilom ben bifall and ovrcome  
Ben cause of thilke soveraine purveyaunce  
That forwote al withoutin ignoraunce.

And ore al this yet say I more therto,  
That right as whan I wote there is a thing  
Iwis that thing mote nedefully be so,  
Eke right so whan I wote a thing coming,  
So mote it come; and thus the befalling  
Of thingis that ben wiste before the tide  
Thei mote not ben eschewid on no side.

Than said he thus, Almighty Joye in trone!  
That wottest of all this thing the sothfastnesse  
Rewe on my sorowe, and do me dien lone,  
Or bring Creseide and me fro this distresse.  
And while he was in all this hevinesse,  
Disputing with himselfe in this matere,  
Came Pandare in, and seide as ye maie here:

O mighty God (quod Pandarus) in trone!  
Eigh! who saw er a wise man farin so?  
Why, Troilus! what thinkist thou to done?  
Hast thou such lust to ben thine owne soc?  
What! parde yet is not Creseide ago?  
Why list the so thy selfe fardon for drede  
That in thine hed thine eyin semin dede.

Hast thou nat livid many a yere before  
Withoutin her, and farde ful wel at ese?  
Art thou for her and for none othir borne?  
Hath Kinde the wrought al only her to plesse?  
Let be, and thinke right thus in thy disese,  
That in the dice right as there fallin chaunces,  
Right so in love there come and gon plesances.

And yet this is a wondir most of al  
Why thou thus sorowest, seth thou wost nat yet  
Touching her goyng how that it shal fal,  
Ne if she can her selfe distourbin it;  
Thou hast not yet assayid al her wit:  
A man maie al betime his necke bede  
Whan it shal of, and sorowen at the nede.

Forthy take hede of al that I shal say:  
I have with her ilpoke and longe ibe,  
So as accordid was betwixe us twey,  
And evyn now me thinkith thus, that she  
Hath somewhat in her hert is privite  
Wherwith she can, if I shal aright rede,  
Disturbe al this of whiche thou art in drede.

For which my counsel is, whan it is night  
Thou to her go, and make of this an ende;  
And blisful Juno, though her grette might,  
Shal (as I hope) her grace unto us sende;  
Mine hert seith certaine that she shal nat wende  
And forthy put thine hert a while in rest,  
And holde thy purpose, for it is the best.

This Troilus answerde, and sighid sore,  
Thou saidst right wel, and I wil do right so,  
And what him list he said unto him more;  
And whan that it was time for to go  
Ful privily himselfe withoutin mo  
Unto her came, as he was wont to done,  
And how thei wrought I shal you tellin sone.

Soth is, that when thei gonnin first to mete  
So gan the paine ther hertis for to twiste  
That neithir of hem othir mighte grete,



But 'hem in armis toke and astir kiste;  
The lasse wofull of 'hem bothe ne wiste  
Wher that he was, ne might o word out bring,  
As I said erst, for wo and for sobbing.

The woful teris that thei letin fall  
As bittir werin, out of teris kinde,  
For paine, as is ligne aloes or gal;  
So bittir teris wept nat, as I finde,  
The wofull Myrrha through the barke and rinde,  
That in this world ther n'is so hard an hert  
That n'old have rewid on ther painis smert.

But whan ther wofull wery gostis twaine  
Returnid ben there as 'hem ought to dwell,  
And that somewhat to wekin gan the paine  
By length of plainte, and ebbin gan the wel  
Of ther falt teris, and the hert unswel,  
With broken voice, all horse for shright, Creseide  
To Troilus these ilkè wordis seide:

O Jove! I die, and mercy the beseeche;  
Helpe, Troilus: and therewithal her face  
Upon his brest she laid, and lost her speche,  
Her wofull spirite from his propir place  
Right with the worde away in point to pace:  
And thus she lith with hewis pale and grene  
That whilom fresh and fairist was to sene.

This Troilus that on her gan beholde,  
Clepung her name, and she lay as for ded,  
Withoutin answer, and felte her limmes colde,  
Her eyin throwin upwarde to her hed,  
This sorouful man can now non othir rede,  
But oftin time her coldè mouthe he kiste:  
Where him was wo God and himself it wiste.

He risith up, and long straite he her leide,  
For signe of life for aught he can or may  
Can he none finde in nothing of Creseide,  
For whiche his songe ful oft is Welaway!  
But whan he sawe that spechelesse she lay,  
With sorouful voice, and hert of blisse all bare,  
He said how she was fro this world ifare.

So astir that he long had her complained,  
His hondis wronge, and said that was to sey,  
And with his teris salt her brest beamed,  
He gan tho teris wipin of full drey,  
And pitoussly gan for the soule prey,  
And said, O Lord! that set arin thy trone,  
Rewe eke on me, for I shal folow' her sone.

She colde was, and withoutin sentement,  
For ought he wote, for brethe yet felte he none,  
And this was him a preigant argument  
That she was forth out of this worlde agone;  
And when he saw there was non othir wenne  
He gan her limmis dresse in such manere  
As men don them that shall ben laide on bere.

And astir this with sterne and cruill herte  
His swerd anon out of his sheeth he twight,  
Himselfe to fleen, how fore so that him smerte,  
So that his soule her soule folowin might  
Ther as the dome of Minos would it dight,  
Sith Love and cruil Fortune it ne would  
That in this world he lengir livin should.

Than said he thus, fulsilde of high disdaine;  
O cruil Jove! and thou Fortune adverse!  
This al and some is, falsely have ye flaine

Creseide, and sith ye may do me no werse,  
Fie on your might and werkis so diverse!  
Thus cowardely ye shul me nevir winne;  
There shal no deth me fro my lady twinne.

For I this world, sith ye have slain her thus,  
Wol let, and folow' her spirit lowe or hie;  
Shal nevir lovir saine that Troilus  
Dare nat for sere with his lady die,  
For certaine I wol bere her companie;  
But sith ye wol nat suffire' us livin here,  
Yet suffrit that our soulis ben ifere.

And thou, Cite! in whiche I live in wo,  
And thou, Priam! and brethrin al ifere!  
And thou, my mothir! farwel, for I go,  
And Atropos! make redy thou my bere,  
And thou, Creseide! o swete herte dere!  
Receive thou now my spirite, would he sey,  
With swerde at hert, al redy for to dey.

But as God would of swough she tho abraide,  
And gan to sighe, and Troilus! she cride;  
And he answerid, Lady mine, Creseide!  
Livin ye yet? and let his swerde doune glide.  
Ye, herte mine! that thankid be Cupide,  
(Quod she) and therewithal she sore sight,  
And he began to glade her as he might;

Toke her in armis two, and kiste her ofte,  
And her to glad he did al his entent,  
For whiche her gost, that flickered aie alofte,  
Into her wofull hert aien it went;  
But at the laste, as that her eyin glent  
Aside, anon she gan his swerde alpie  
As it lay bare, and gan for sere to crie,

And askid him why he had it out draue?  
And Troilus anon the cause her tolde,  
And how himself therwith he would have flawe;  
For whiche Creseide upon him gan beholde,  
And gan him in her armis fast to folde,  
And saide, O mercy, God! lo whiche a dede!  
Alas! how nighe we werin bothè dede!

Than if I ne hadde spokin, as grace was,  
Ye would have flaine your selfe anon? quod she.  
Ye, doutlesse. And she answerde, Alas!  
For by that ilkè Lorde that ~~wote~~ me  
In'olde a forlong waie, on live have be,  
Astir your deth, to have ben crounid quene  
Of al the lorde the sunne on shinith shene;

But with this felve swerde which that here is  
My selfin I would have flaine (quod she) tho.  
But ho! for we have right inough of this,  
And let us rise and straite to bedde go,  
And there let us spekin of our wo,  
For by that mortar whiche that I se brenne  
Know I shal well that day is nat far henn.

Whan thei wer in ther bedde in armis folde  
Naught was it like tho nightis here beforne,  
For petoussly eche othir gan beholde,  
As thei that haddin al ther blisse ilorne,  
Bewailing al the daie that thei were borne,  
Till at the last this wofull wight Creseide  
To Troilus these ilkè wordis seide:

La, herte mine! wel wot ye this, (quod she)  
That if a wight abraie his wo complainc,  
And sekith nat how holpin for to be,

It n'is but folie and encrece of paine;  
And fens that here assemblid be we twaine  
To findin bote of wo that we ben in,  
It were all time right sone for to begin.

I am a woman, as ful wel ye wotte,  
And as I am avisid sodainly,  
So wol I tel it you while it is hotte:  
Me thinkith thus, that neithir ye nor I  
Ought halfe this wo to makin skilfully,  
For there is art inough for to redresse  
That yet is misse, and fleen this hevinesse.

Sothe is, the wo the whiche that we ben inne,  
For aught I wote, for nothing ellis is  
But for the cause that we should ytwinne;  
Confidrid al there n'is no more amis:  
And what is than a remedy' unto this  
But that we shape us sone for to mete?  
This al and some is, my dere herte swete!

Now that I shal wel bringin it aboute  
To comen' ayen sone afir that I go  
Therof am I no manir thing in doute,  
For dreddelesse within a weke or two  
I shal ben here; and that it may be so  
By all right, and that in wordis few,  
I shal you wel an hepe of wayis shewe;

For whiche I woll nat makin longe sermon,  
For time ilosse may not recovered be,  
But I wol go to my conclusion,  
And to the beste in aught that I can se;  
And for the love of God forgive it me  
If I speke aught aienst your hert'is reste,  
For trewily I speke it for the beste;

Making alway a protestacion,  
That in effect this thing that I shall say  
N'is but to shew in you my mocion  
To find unto our helpe the beste way,  
And takith it none othirwise I pray;  
For, finally, what so ye me commaunde  
That wol I done, for that is no demaunde.

Now herkenith this; Ye have well understond  
My goyng grauntid is by parliament,  
So ferforth that it may not ben withstond  
For ~~this~~ world, as by my jugement;  
And sithe there ~~her~~ none avisement  
To lettin it, lette it passe out of mind,  
And let us shape a bettir wise to finde,

The sothe is this; the tyning of us twaine  
Wol us disce and cruilly agoie,  
But him behovith somtime ~~in~~ paine  
That servith Love, if that he wel have joie;  
And sith I shal no farthir out of ~~this~~ lie  
Than I maie ride aien on halfe a morove  
It ought the lasse causin us for to sorowe;

So as I shal nat now ben hid in mewe,  
That day by day, min owne herte dere!  
Sens wel ye wote that it is now a trewe,  
Ye shal ful wel al mine estate yhere,  
And er that truce is done I shal ben here;  
And thus have ye both Antenor iwonne  
And me also. Bethe glad now if ye conne.

And thinke it right thus, Creseide is now agen,  
But what? she shal come hastily ayen:  
And whan? alas! by God, lo, right anon,

Er dayis ten, this dare I safely saie,  
And than as erste shall we be bothe saie,  
So as we shall togethers evir dwell,  
That al this worlde ne might our blisse tell.

I se that oft time, there as we ben now,  
That for the beste, our counsaile for to hide,  
Ye speke nat with me nor I with you  
In fourtenight, ne se you go ne ride:  
And may ye nat ten dayis than abide,  
For mine honour, in such an avinture?  
Iwis ye mowe, or ellis lite endure.

Ye knowe eke howe that all my kin is here  
But if that onely it my fathir be,  
And eke mine othir thingis al ifere,  
And namily my derè herte ye,  
Whom that I n'olde levin for to se  
For al this worlde, as wide as it hath space,  
Or ellis se I nevir Jov'is face.

Why trowin ye my fathir in this wise  
Covetith so to se me, but for drede  
Leste in this toun that folkis me dispise  
Bicause of him for his unhappy dede?  
What wote my fathir what life that I lede?  
For if he wist in Troie how I fare  
Us nedid for my wending nat to care.

Ye sene that every day eke more and more  
Men trete of pece, and it supposid is  
That men the Quene Helena shall restore,  
And Grekis us restore that is amis;  
So though there ne were comfort none but this,  
That men purposin pece on every side,  
Ye may the bett at ese of herte abide:

For if that it be pece, mine herte dere!  
The nature of the pece mote nedis drive  
That men must entrecommunin ifere,  
And to and fro eke ride and gone as blive  
Al day, as thicke as been flien from an hive,  
And every wight have liberty to bleve  
Where as him list the bet withoutin leve.

And though so be that pece ther maie be none,  
Yet hither, though ther nevir pece ne were,  
I must ycome, for whidir should I gone,  
Or how, mischaunce I should I dwellin there  
Among the men of armis evre' in fere?  
For whiche, as wisely God my soule rede,  
I can nat sene wherof ye shouldin drede.

Have here anothir way, if it so be  
That al this thing ne maie you not suffice;  
My fathir, as ye knowin wele parde,  
Is holdin olde and ful of covitise,  
And I right now have foundin al the gise  
Withoutin nette wherwith I shal him hent,  
And herkenith now if that ye wol assent.

Lo! Troilus, men saie full harde it is  
The wolfe ful and the wedir whole to have;  
This is to saie, that men full oft iwis  
Mote spendinge the remnant for to save;  
For aie with golde men maie the hert ygrave  
Of him that is set upon covitise;  
And how I mene I shal it you devise.

The movable whiche I have in this toun;  
Unto my fathir shal I take, and saie,  
That right for trust and for salvacioun



It sent is from a frende of his or twaie,  
The which frendis do fervently him praie  
To sendin after more, and that in hie,  
While that this toun stant thus in jeopardie;

And that shal he of golde huge quantite;  
Thus shal I saie, but lest folke it aspide  
This maie be sent by no wight but by me;  
I shal eke shewin him, if pece betide,  
What frendis that I have on every side  
To doe the wrathe of Priamus to pace  
Towardis him, and don him stand in grace.

So what for o thing and for othir, swete!  
I shal him so enchauntin with my sawes  
That right in hevin his soule shal he mete;  
For al Apollo or his clerkis lawes,  
Or calculing, availith nat thre hawes;  
Desire of golde shal to his soule blende  
That as the liste I shal wel make an ende.

And if he would aught by his fort it preve  
If that I lie, in certaine I shal fonde  
Disturbin him, and plucke him by the sleeve,  
Makin his sorte, and berin him on honde,  
He hath nat wel the goddis undirstonde,  
For goddis speke in amphibologies,  
And for o sothe thei tellin twenty lies:

Eke dred: fond first goddis, I suppose,  
Thus shal I saie, and that his cowarde herte  
Made him amis the goddis text to glose  
Whan he for ferde out of Troie sterte;  
And but I makin him sone to converte,  
And done my rede within a day or twey,  
I wol to your obligè me to dey.

And trewily, as writtin wel I finde,  
That al this thing was said of gode entent,  
And that her herte trewe was and kinde  
Towardis him, and spake right as she ment,  
And that she starfe for wo nigh when she went,  
And was in purpose evir to be trewe,  
This writin thei that of her werkis knewe.

This Troilus, with hert and eris sprad,  
Herde al this thing devisid to and fro,  
And verily it semid that he had  
The selvin witte, but yet to let her go  
His herte misforvare him evirno;  
But finally he gan his hert: wrest  
To trustin her, and toke it for the best;

For which the grete fury of his penaunce  
Was quent with hope, and therwith hem bitwene  
Began for joye the amorous daunce;  
And as the birdis when the sunne shene  
Delitin in ther songe in levis grene,  
Right so the wordis that thei spake ifere  
Delitin them, and made ther hertis chere.

But nathelless, the wendin of Creseide  
For al this world may nat out of his minde,  
For whiche ful oft he petously her preide  
That of her haste he might her trewe yfinde,  
And saide her; Certis if ye be unkinde,  
And but ye come at daie set into Troie,  
Ne shal I nere have hele, honor, ne joie:

For all so sothe a sunne uprist to morow,  
And God so wisely thou me wofull wretche  
To rest ybring out of this cruel sorow,

I wol my selvin se if that ye dretche,  
But of my deth though litil be to retche,  
Yet er that ye me causin so to smerte  
Dwel rathir here mine owne dere swete herte!

For trewily, mine owne lady dere!  
The sleightis yet that I have herd you stere  
Ful shapely ben to fallin al ifere,  
For thus men saith, *That one thinkith the bere,*  
*But al anothir thinkith the ledere:*

Your fire is wise, and said is out of drede  
*Men may the wise outrenne and nat outrede.*

It is full harde to haltin unespied  
Before a crepil, for he can the craste;  
Your fathir is in sleight as Argus eyed,  
For albe' it that his movble' is him biraste  
His old: sleight is yet so with him laste  
Ye shal not blende him for your womanhede,  
Ne faine aright, and that is al my drede.

I n'ot if pece shall evirno betide,  
But pece or no, for ernest ne for game,  
I wote sith Calchas on the Grekis side  
Hath onis ben, and lost so foule his name,  
He dare no more come here ayen for shamo,  
For whiche that we, for ought I can espy,  
To trustin on n'is but a fantasie.

Ye shal eke sene your fathir shal you glose  
To ben a wife, and, as he can wel preche,  
He shal some Greke so prese and wel alofe,  
That ravishin he shal you with his speche,  
Or do you done by force, as he shal teche,  
And Troilus, on whom you n'il have routh,  
Shal causelless so stervin in this trouth.

And ore al this your fathir shal dispise  
Us al, and faine this cite is but lorne,  
And that th' allegè nevir shal arise;  
For why? the Grekis have it all: sworne,  
Til we ben flaine and doun our wallis torne;  
And thus he shal you with his wordis fere,  
That aie drede I that ye wol blevin there.

Ye shall eke sene so many' a lusty knight  
Among the Grekis, ful of worthinesse,  
And eche of hem with herte, wit, and might,  
To plesin you done al his businesse,  
That ye shall dullin of the ~~manesse~~  
Of us the sely Trojans, but if routhe  
Romordin you or vertue of your trouthe.

And this to me so givouse is to thinke  
That fro my brest it wil my soule rende,  
Ne dredelless in me here may nat sinke  
O gode opinion, that ye wende;  
For why? your fathir's sleightis wol us shende;  
And if ye gone, as I have tolde you yore,  
So thinke I n'am but ded withoutin more;

For which with humble, true, and pitous, hert  
A thousande timis mercie I you praie,  
So rewith on mine aspre painis smert,  
And doth somewhat as that I shal you saie,  
And let us stele away betwixt us twaie,  
And thinke that foly' is whan a man maie chese  
For accident his substance for to lese.

I menè thus, that sene we mowe or daie  
Well stele awaie, and ben togither so,  
What wit were it to partin in assaie



(In case ye shouldin to your fathir go)  
If that ye mightin come aien or no?  
Thus mene I, that it were a grete folie  
To put that sikirnesse in jeopardie.

And, vulgarly to spekin of substaunce,  
Of thyfour may we bothe with us lede  
Ynough to live in honour and plesaunce  
Untill the time that we shall ben dede,  
And thus we may eschewin all this drede;  
For every othir waie ye can recorde  
Mine hert iwis mae therewith nat acorde.

And hardily ne dredith no poverté,  
For I have kin and frendis ellis where  
That though we comin in our bare sherte  
Us shulde never lacke ne golde ne gere,  
But ben honourid while we dweltn there;  
And go we' anone, for as in mine entent  
This is the best, if that ye wol assent.

Creseide with a sighe right in this wise  
Answerid him; Iwis, my dere hert trewe!  
We maie well stele away as ye devise,  
And findin such unthrifty wayis newe,  
But afterwarde ful sore it wol us rewe;  
And helpe me God so at my moste nede  
As causelesse ye sufferin al this drede:

For thilke day that I for cherishing  
Or drede of fathir, or for othir wight,  
Or for estate, delite, or for weding,  
Be false to you, my Troilus, my knight!  
Saturnus doughtir Juno, through her might,  
As wode as Atalanta do me dwell  
Eternally in Styx, the pit of hell.

And this on every god celestiall  
I swere it you, and eke on eche goddesse,  
On every nymph and deite infernall,  
On Satyrys and Faunys more and lesse,  
That halve goddis ben of wilkinessse;  
And Atropos my thred of life to brest  
If I be false. Now trowe me if you lest.

And thou, Simois, that as an arowe clere  
Through Troie rennist aie downward to the se,  
Be witnesse of this worde that said is here,  
Thilke day that I untrew be  
To Troilus, mine own herte fre!  
That thou returne backwarde unto thy well,  
And I with body and soule sinke to hell.

But that ye speke awaie thus for to go,  
And lettin al your frendis, God forbede  
For any woman that ye shouldin so!  
And namily sens Troie hath in w such nede  
Of helpe; and eke of o thing that shal hede,  
If this were wiste, my life laie in barounce  
And your honor, God shilde us fro mischaunce!

And if so be that pece hereafter take,  
As al daie happith after angre game,  
Why, Lorde! the sorow' and wo ye woldin make  
That ye ne durst comin ayen for shame!  
And er that ye jeopardin so your name  
Beth nat to hasty in this hotté fare,  
For hasty man ne wantith never care.

What trowe ye the peple eke all aboute  
Would of it say? it is ful light to arede;  
They woldin say, and swere it out of doute,

That love ne drave you nat to don this dede,  
But luste voluptuous and cowardé drede;  
Thus were al losse iwis, mine herte dere!  
Your honour, whiche that now so shynith clere.  
And also thinkith on mine honeste,  
That flourish yet, how soule I should it shende,  
And with what filth it spottid should be  
If in this forme I should with you wende:  
Ne though I lived unto the worldis ende  
My name should I never ayenward winne:  
Thus were I lost, and that were routh and sinne.

And forthy fle with reson al this herte;  
Men saie, *The sufferant overcometh paine*,  
Eke *Who so wol have life mote late*:  
Thus makith vertue of necessity  
By patience, and thinke that lorde is he  
Of Fortune aie that naught woll of her retch,  
And she ne dauntith no wight but a wretch.

And trustith this, that certis, herte swete!  
Or Phœbus suffer, Lucina the shene,  
The Lion passith out of this Arite  
I woll ben here withoutin any wene;  
I mene, as helpe me Juno, hevin's quene,  
The tenth daie, but if that seth me assaile,  
I woll you sene withoutin any faile.

And now, so this be sothe (quod Troilus)  
I shall well suffer unto the tenth daie,  
Sens that I se that nede it mote ben thus;  
But for the love of God, if it be maie,  
So let us stelin privily awaie,  
For evre' in one as for to live in rest,  
Mine herte saith that it woll be the best.

O mercie, God! what life is this? (quod she)  
Alas! ye slea me thus for very tene;  
I se well now that ye mistrustin me,  
For by your wordis it is well isene:  
Now for the love of Cynthia the shene  
Mistrust me nat thus causelesse for routh,  
Sens to be true I have you plight my trowth.

And thinkith wel that sometime it is wit  
To spendin a time a time for to win;  
Ne parde lorne am I nat fro you yet,  
Though that we ben a daie or two atwin:  
Drive out tho fantasies you have within,  
And trustith me, and levith eke your sorow,  
Or here my trowth, I wol nat live til morow:

For if ye wist how sore it doeth me smerte  
Ye would cesse of this: for God thou wost  
The pure spirite ywepith in mine herte  
To sene you wepin whiche that I love most,  
And that I mote gon to the Grekis hoste;  
Ye, were it that I wist a remedie  
To come ayen right here I would die.

But certis I am not so nice a wight  
That I ne can imaginin a waie  
To come ayen that daie that I have hight,  
For who maie holden a thing that wol awaie  
My fathir naught for all his queinte plaie;  
And by my thrift my wending out of Troie  
Anothir daie shall tourne us all to joie.

Forthy with all mine herte I you beseeke,  
If that you list doen ought for my praier,  
And for the love whiche that I love you eke

That er that I departin fro you here  
 That of so gode a comfort and a chere  
 I maie you sene that ye maie bring at rest  
 Mine hertè, whiche is at the point to brest,  
 And ore al this I praie you, quod she tho,  
 Mine ownè hert'is fothfast suffisaunce!  
 Sith I am thine all whole withoutin mo,  
 That while that I am absent no plesaunce  
 Of othir doe me fro your remembraunce;  
 For I am er agast; for why? men rede  
 That love is thing aie full of busie drede.

For in this worlde there livith ladie none,  
 If that ye were untre, as God defende!  
 That so betrayid were or wo begon  
 As I, that allè trouthe in you entende;  
 And douteless if that othir wende  
 I n'ere but dedde, and er ye cause yfinde  
 For Godd'is love so beth me naught unkinde.

To this answerid Troilus, and seide,  
 Now God, to whom there n'is no cause iwrie,  
 Me glad, as wis I nevir to Creseide,  
 Sithe thilke daie I saw her first with eye,  
 Was false, ne nevir shall till that I die:  
 At short wordis, well ye maie me bileve;  
 I can no more; it shall be founde at preve.

Graunt mercy, gode hert mine! iwis, (quod she)  
 And, blisful Venus! let me nevir sterve  
 Er I maie stonde of plesaunce in degre  
 To quite him well that so well can deserve,  
 And while that God my wit will me conserve  
 I shall so doen, so true I have you found,  
 That aie honour to me ward shall rebounde:

For trustith well that your estate roiall,  
 Ne veine delite, nor onely worthinesse

Of you in werre or turnaie marciall,  
 Ne pompe, arraie, nobley, or eke richesse,  
 Ne madin me to rue on your distresse,  
 But morall vertue, groundid upon trouth,  
 That was the cause I first had on you routh:  
 Eke gentle hert, and manhode that ye had,  
 And that ye had (as me thought) in dispite  
 Evèry thing that sownid into bad,  
 As rudenesse, and peplishe appetite,  
 And that your reson bridlid your delite;  
 This made abovin evèry cature  
 That I was yours, and shall while I maie dure.

And this may length of yeris nat fordoe,  
 Ne remuable Fortunè deface,  
 But Jupiter, that of his might maie doe  
 The forowfull be glad, so yeve us grace  
 Er nightis tenne to metin in this place,  
 So that it maie your herte and mine suffise:  
 And fare now well, for time is that ye rise.

And astir that thei long iplanid had,  
 And oft ikist, and straite in armis folde,  
 The daie gan rise, and Troilus him clad,  
 And rusfully his ladie gan behold,  
 As he that felt of deth'is caris cold,  
 And to her grace he gan him recommaunde;  
 Where he was wo this holde I no demaunde:

For mann'is hedde imaginin ne can,  
 Ne' entendement confidir, ne tongue to  
 The cruill painis of this wofull man,  
 That passin every tourment doune in hell;  
 For whan he sawe that she ne might ydwell,  
 Whiche that his soule out of his body rent,  
 Withoutin more out of the chambre he went.

---

# TROILUS & CRESEIDE.

---

## INCIPIT LIBER QUINTUS.

APROCHIN gan the fatall destine  
That Jovis hath in disposicioun,  
And to you angrie Paræ, fustrin thre,  
Committith to doen execucioun,  
For whiche Creseide must out of the toun,  
And Troilus shall dwellin forth in pine  
Till Lachesis his threde no langir twine.

The goldin tressid Phœbus high on loft  
Thryis had allè with his bemis clere  
The snowis molte, and Zephirus as oft  
Brought ayen the tendir levis grene,  
Sens that the sonne of Hecuba the Quene  
Began to love her first, for whom his sorowe  
Was all that she departin should amorowe.

Full redy was at primè Diomedè  
Creseide unto the Grekis hoste to lede,  
For sorowe of whiche she felt hertè blede,  
As she that ne wist what was best rede:  
And truly, as men in bokis rede,  
Men wistè nevir woman have the care,  
Ne was so lothe out of a toun to fare.

This Troilus withoutin rede or lore,  
As man that hath his joyis eke sorlore,  
Was waiting on his ladie evirmore,  
As she that was the sothfast crophe and more  
Of all his lust or joyis heretofore;  
But Troilus, now farewell all thy joie!  
For shalt thou nevir sene her est in Troie.

Soth is, that while he bode in this manere  
He gan his wo full manly for to hide,  
That well unneth it sene was in his chere,  
But at the yate there she should out ride  
With certain folke he hovid her to abide,  
So wo bigon, all would he not him plain,  
That on his hors unneth he fate for pain.

For ire he quoke, so gan his hertè gnawe,  
Whan Diomedè on hors gan him to dresse,  
And saied unto himself this ilkè sawe;  
Alas! (quod he) this foule o wretchidnesse  
Why suffre' I it? why n'ill I it redresse?  
Were it nat bet at onis for to die  
Than evirmore in langour thus to drie?

Why n'ill I make at onis riche and pore  
To have inough to doen er that she go?  
Why n'ill I bring all Troie upon a rore?  
Why n'ill I slaen this Diomedè also?  
Why n'ill I rathir with a man or two  
Stele her awaie? Why woul I this endure?  
Why n'ill I helpin to mine ownè cure?

But why he n'oldè doen so fell a dede  
That shall I sain, and why him list it spare:  
He had in herte alwaie a manir drede  
Lest that Creseide, in rumour of this fare,  
Should have ben slain: so! this was al his care  
And ellis certain, as I sayid yore,  
He had it doen withoutin wordis more.



Cresside, when she redy was to ride,  
Full sorowfully fighed, and saied Alas!  
But forthe she mote for aught that maie betide,  
And forthe she ritte a full sobirly pase;  
There is none othir remedy in this case:  
What wondir is though that her fore smert  
Whan she forgoith her owne swete herte?

This Troilus in gife of curtisie,  
With hauke on hond, and with an huge rout  
Of knightis, rode and did her companie,  
Ypassing all the valey ferre without,  
And ferthir would have riddin out of doubt  
Full faine, and wo was him to gone so fone,  
But tourne he must, and it was eke so doen.

And right with that was Antenor icome  
Out of the Grekis holte, and every wight  
Was of him glad, and saied he was welcome;  
And Troilus, all n'ere his herte light,  
He pained him with all his full might  
Him to withholde of weping at the lest,  
And Antenor he kist, and made grete fest.

And therewithall he must his leve ytake,  
And cast his eye upon her pitoufly,  
And nere he rode, his cause for to make,  
To take her by the honde all sobirly;  
And Lorde: so she gan wepin tendirly,  
And he full soft and slyghly gan her seie,  
Now holde your daie, and doe me not to deie.

With that his courfir tournid he about  
With face full pale, and unto Diomed  
N'werde he spake, ne none of all his rout,  
Of whiche the sonne of Tydeus toke hede,  
As he that kouthè more than the crede  
Is soche a craft, and by the rain her hent,  
And Troilus to Troie homwardis went.

This Diomed, that lad her by the bridell,  
Whan that he sawe the folke of Troie awaie,  
Thought all my labor shall not ben on idell;  
If that I maie, for somewhat shall I saie,  
For at the worst it shortin maie our waie,  
I have herd saie eke timis twise twelve  
He is a fole that woll foryete him selve.

But nathelless this thought he well inough,  
That certainly I am aboutin naught  
If that I speke of love or make it tought,  
For doutlefs if she have in her thought  
Him that I gesse he maie not ben ibrought  
So fone awaie; but I shall finde a mene  
That she nat yet wete shall what that I mene.

This Diomed, as he that could his gode,  
Whan this was doen gan fallin forth in speche  
Of this and that, and askin why she stode  
In soche difese? and gan her eke besече,  
That if that he encrefin might or eche  
With any thing her ese that she should  
Commaunde it him, and saied he doen it would:

For truily he swore her as a knight [plese  
That ther n'as thing with which he might her  
That he n'olde doen his pain and al his might  
To doen it, for to doen her herte an ese,  
And prayid her she would her sorowe' apese,  
And saied, Iwis we Grekis can have joie  
To honoure you as well as folke of Troie.

He saide eke thus, I wot you thinkith straunge,  
No wondir is, for it is to you newe,  
Th'acquaintaunce of these Trojans for to chaunge  
For folke of Grece, which that ye nevir knewe;  
But wouldè nevir God but if as true  
A Greke ye should emong us all yfinde  
As any Trojan is, and eke as kinde.

And by the cause I swore you, lo! right now  
To ben your frende, and help you to my might,  
And for that more acquaintaunce eke of you  
Have I had than anothir straungir wight,  
So fro this forth I praie you daie and night  
Commaundith me, how fore so that me smerte.  
To doen all that maie like unto your herte:

And that ye me wold as your brothir trete,  
And takith not my frendship in dispite;  
And though your sorowes hen for thingis grete,  
N'ot I nat why, but out of more respite  
Mine hert hath for to amende it grete delite,  
And if I maie your harmis nat redresse  
I am right sorie for your hevinesse:

For though ye Trojans with us Grekis wroth  
Have many a daie ben, alwaie yet parde  
O god of Love in sothe we servin bothe:  
And for the love of God, my ladie fre,  
Whom so ye hate as beth not wroth with me,  
For truily there can no wight you serve  
That halfe so loth your wrathe would deserve.

And n'ere it that we ben so nere the tent  
Of Calchas, whiche that sene us bothè maie,  
I would of this you tell all mine entent;  
But this enselid till anothir daie:  
Yeve me your honde; I am and shall be aie,  
God help me so, while that my life maie dure,  
Your owne abovir every cecture.

Thus said I nere er now to woman borne,  
For God mine herte as wisely glade so  
I lovid nevir woman here beforene  
As paramours, ne nevir shall no mo;  
And for the love of God be not my fo,  
All can I not to you, my ladie dere!  
Complain aright, for I am yet to lere.

And wondirith nought, min owne lady bright!  
Though that I speke of love to you thus blive  
For I have herd or this of many a wight  
That lovid thing he nere saw in his live;  
Eke I am not of power for to strive  
Ayenst the god of Love, but him obaie  
I woll alwaie, and mercie I you praie.

Ther beth so worthy knightis in this place,  
And ye so faine, that everiche of hem all  
Woll paitan him to stondin in your grace;  
But might to me so faire a grace befall  
That ye me for your servaunt wouldè call,  
So lowly ne so truily you serve  
N'll none of hem as I shall till I sterve.

Cresside unto that purpose lite answerde,  
As she that was with sorowe' oppressid so  
That in effect she naught his talis herde,  
But here and there now here a worde or two;  
Her thought her sorowful herte brust atwo;  
For whan she gan her fathir ferre espie  
Well nigh doune of her hors she gan to ste.

But nathèlesse she thonkith Diomede  
Of all his travaile and his godè chere,  
And that him list his frendship to her bede,  
And she acceptith it in gode manere,  
And woll do fain that is him lefe and dere,  
And trustin him she would, and well she might,  
As sayid she, and from her hors she' alight.

Her fathir hath her in his armis noma,  
And twentie times he kist his doughtir swete,  
And saied, O derè doughtir mine! welcome.  
She saied eke she was fain with him to nrete,  
And stode forth still, mild, muet, and mansuete.  
But here I leve her with her fathir dwell,  
And forthe I woll of Troilus you tell.

To Troie is come this wofull Troilus  
In sorowe abovin all sorowes smert,  
With felon loke and with face dispitous,  
Tho sodainly doune from his hors he stert,  
And through his paleyse with a swollin hert  
To chambir went; of nothing toke he hede,  
Ne none to him dare speke o worde for drede.

And there his sorowes that he spard had  
He yave an issue large, and Deth he cride,  
And in his throwis frenetike and mad  
He cursith Jove, Apollo, and Cupide,  
He cursith Bachus, Ceres, and Cypride,  
His birthe, himself, his fate, and eke Nature,  
And save his ladie every cature.

To bed he goth, and wellith there and turneth  
In furie as doeth Ixion in hell,  
And in this wise he nigh till daie sojourneth,  
But tho began his herte alite unswell  
Through teris which that gonnin up to wel,  
And pitously he cried upon Creseide,  
And to himself right thus he spake and seide;

Where is mine ownè ladie lefe and dere?  
Where is her whitè brest? where is it? where?  
Where ben her armis and her eyin clere  
That yesterdaie this timè with me were?  
Now maie I wepe alone many a tere,  
And graspe about I maie, but in this place  
Save a pilowe I find naught to embrace.

How shall I doen? whan shall she come again?  
I n'ot, alas! Why leavest her so go?  
As wouldè God I had as tho be flain!  
O herte mine, Creseide! o swetè so!  
O ladie mine! that I love and no mo,  
To whom for evir mo mine herte I vowe,  
So how I die; ye n'ill me not rescowe!

Who seith you now, my right-lodèsterre?  
Who sittith now or stant in your prèfence?  
Who can comfortin now your hert'is werre,  
Now I am gon whom ye yeve audience?  
Who spekith for me now in my absence?  
Alas! no wight, and that is all my care,  
For well wote I as ill as I ye fare.

How should I thus ten dayis full endure  
Whan I the first night havin all this tene?  
And how shall she eke, sorowfull cature,  
For tendirnesse how shall she this sustene  
Soche wo for me? a. . . . ., pale, and grene,  
Shall woxin bea her freshe womanly face  
For langour or she tourne unto this place.

And whan he fill in any slombringis  
Anon begin he shouldè for to grone,  
And dremin of the dredfullist thingis  
That might yben, as mete he were alone  
In place horrible, making aie his mone,  
Or metin that he was emongis all  
His enemies, and in their hondis fall.

And therewithall his bodie shouldè sterte,  
And with the starte all sodainly awake,  
And soche a tremour fele about his herte,  
That of the fere his bodie shouldè quake,  
And therewithall he should a noise ymake,  
And semin as though he should fallin depe,  
From high aloft, and than he wouldè wepe;

And rew in on himself so pitously  
That wondir was to here his fantasie;  
Anothir time he shouldè mightily  
Comfort himself, and fain it was folie  
So causelesse soche drede and wo to drie,  
And eft begin his aspre sorowes newe,  
That every man might on his painis rewe.

Who could tell all aright, or full discrive  
His wo, his plaint, his langour, and his pine?  
Nat all the men that han or ben on-live:  
Thou, Redir, maiest thy self full well devine  
That soche a wo my wit can not define;  
On ill for to write it should I swinke  
Whan that my wit is werie it to thinke.

On hevin yet the steris werin sene,  
Although full pale iwoxin was the mone,  
And whitin began the horizon shene  
All estwardis, as it is wont to doen,  
And Phœbus with his rosie cartè sone  
Gan astir that to dresse him up to fare  
Whan Troilus hath sent astir Pandare.

This Pandare, that of all the daie beforne  
Ne might have comin Troilus to se,  
Although that he on his hedde it had sworne,  
For with the King Priam al daie was he,  
So that it laie nat in his liberte  
No where to gon, but on the morowe he went  
To Troilus, whan that he for him sent;

For in his herte he couldè well devine  
That Troilus all night for sorowe woke,  
And that he wouldè tell him of his pine;  
This knewe he well inough withoutin boke;  
For which to chambir streight the way he toke,  
And Troilus tho sobirly he grette,  
And on the bedde full sone he gan him sette.

My Pandarus! (quod Troilus) the sorowe  
Whiche that I drie I maie not long endure;  
I trowe I shall not livin till to morowe;  
For whiche I would alwaies on avinture  
To the devisin of my sepulture  
The forme, and of my movble thou dispone  
Right as the semith best is for to doen:

But of the fire and flambè funèrall  
In whiche my body brennin shall to glede,  
And of the fest and playis Palestrell  
At my vigile I praie the take gode hede  
That that be well, and offir Mars my stede,  
My swerde, mine helme, and, levè brothir dere!  
My shelde to Pallas yeve that shinith clere.



The poude' in which mine hert ibrend shall  
That praie I the thou take, and it conserue [turn  
In a vessell that men clepith an Urne,  
Of golde, and to my lady that I serue,  
For love of whom thus pitouly I sterue,  
So yeve it her, and doe me thispleaunce  
To praie her kepe it for a remembraunce :

For well I felin by my maladie,  
And by my dremis now and yore ago,  
All certainly that I mote nedis die ;  
The oule eke whiche that hight Alcalapho  
Hath astir me shright all these nightis two :  
And god Merc'urie, now of me woful wretch  
The foule guide, and whan the list it fetche.

Pandure answerid and saied, Troilus,  
My derè frende ! as I have told the yore  
That it is folie for to sorowen thus,  
And causelesse, for whiche I can no more,  
But who so woll not trowin rede ne lore  
I can not fene in him no remedie,  
But let him worchin with his fantasie.

But, Troilus, I praie the tell me now  
If that thou trowe er this that any wight  
Hath lovid paramours as well as thou ?  
Ye, God wot, and fro many' a worthie knight  
Hath his ladie forgon a fourteenight  
And he nat yet made halvindele the fare ;  
What nede is the to makin all this care ?

Sens daie by daie thou maifest thy selvin se,  
That from his love or ellis from his wife  
A man mote twinnin of necessite,  
Ye, though he love her as his owne life,  
Yet n'ill he with himself thus makin strife ;  
For well thou wost, my levè brothir dere !  
That alwaie frendis maie not ben ifere.

How doen this folke that fene ther loviswedded  
By frendis might, as it bitidith oft,  
And fene 'hem in ther spousis bedde ibedded ?  
God wote thei take it wisely faire and soft ;  
For why ? gode hope halt up ther herte aloft,  
And for thei can a time of sorowe' endure ;  
As time 'hem hurtith a time doeth 'hem cure.

So shouldst thou endure, and lettin slide  
The time, and fondè to ben glad and light ;  
'Tenne dayis n'is not so long to abide ;  
And sens she to comin the hath behight  
She n'ill her hest brekin for any wight,  
For drede the nat that she n'ill finde a waie  
To come ayen, my life that durst I laie.

Thy swevines eke, and all soche fantasie,  
Drive out, and let 'hem farin to mischaunce,  
For thei procede of thy melancolie,  
That doeth the sele in slepe all this penaunce :  
A strawe for all swevenis signifaunce !  
God helpe me so ! I coumpt 'hem not a bene ;  
There wot no man aright what dremis mene.

For preftis of the temple tellin this,  
That dremis ben the revelacions  
Of goddis, and als well thei tell iwis  
That thei ben infernalle illusions,  
And lechis faine that of completions  
Procedin thei, of fast or glotonie :  
Who wot in sothe thus what thei signifie ?

Eke othir sain that through impressiouns,  
As if a wight hath fast a thing in minde,  
That thereof comith soche avisiouns ;  
And othir sain, as thei in bokis finde,  
That astir timis of the yere by kinde  
Men dreme, and that th' effect goth by the nione :  
But leve no dreme, for it is nat to doen.

Well worth of dremis aie these oldè wives ;  
And truly eke augurie of these foulis,  
For fere of which men wenin lese ther lives,  
As ravin's qualm, or schriching of these oulis,  
To trowin on it bothè false and foule is :  
Alas ! alas ! that so noble' a creature  
As is a man should dredin soche ordure !

For whiche with all mine hert I the besecne  
Unto thy self that all this thou foryeve ;  
And rise now up, withoutin more speche,  
And let us cast how forth maie best be drive  
The time, and eke how freshly we maie live  
Whan she comith, the which shall be right sone ;  
God helpe me so the best is thus to doen.

Rise, let us speke of lustie life in Troie  
That we have lad, and forth the time drive,  
And eke of time coming us rejoie,  
That bringin shall our blisse now so blive,  
And langour of these twise dayis fivè  
We shall therwith so forget or oppresse  
That well unneth it doen shall us duresse.

This tounè is full of lordis all about,  
And truis lastith all this mene while ;  
Go we playin us in some lustie rout,  
To Sarpedon, not hennis but a mile,  
And thus thou shalt the time well begile,  
And drive it forth unto that blisfull morowe  
That thou her se that cause is of thy sorowe.

Now rise, my derè brothir Troilus !  
For certis it non honour is to the  
To wepe, and in thy bedde to roukin thus,  
For truly of o thing trust to me,  
If thou thus ligge a daie, or two, or thre,  
The folke wol wene that thou for cowardise  
The fainist sick, and that thou darst not rise.

This Troilus answerde, O brothir dere !  
This knowin folke that have seffrid pain,  
That though he wepe and make sorowfull chere  
That felith harme and smerte in every vain  
No wondir is ; and though I evir plain  
Or alwaie wepe I am nothing to blame,  
Sens I have lost the cause of al my game.

But fithins of fne force I mote arise  
I shal arise as fne as er I maie,  
And God, to whom mine herte I sacrifice,  
So sende us hastily the tennith daie,  
For was there nevir soule so faine of Maie  
As I shal ben whan she comith in Troie  
That cause is of my tourment and my joie.

But whidir is thy rede, (quod Troilus)  
That we maie plaie us best in all this toun ?  
By God my counsaile is (quod Pandarus)  
To ride and plaie us with King Sarpedoun,  
So long of this thei spekin and down  
Till Troilus gan at the last assene  
To rise, and forth to Sarpedon thei went.



This Sarpedon, as he that honourable  
Was all his live, and full of his prowess,  
With all that might iservid, ben on table  
That deinte was, all coste it grete richesse,  
He teld hem daie by daie, that soche noblesse,  
As laiden bothe the moste and eke the lest,  
Was nere er that daie wiste at any fest:

Nor in this worlde there is none instrument  
Delicious through winde or touch on corde,  
As ferre as any wight hath er iwent,  
That tonge tell or herte maie recorde  
But at that fest it was well herd acorde,  
Ne of ladies eke so faire a companie  
Dance er tho was never sene with eye.

But what availith this to Troilus,  
That for his sorowe nothing of it rought,  
But evir in one his herte pitous  
Full busily Creseide his ladie sought?  
On her was evir all that his herte thought,  
Now this now that so fast imagining  
That gladin iwis can him no festing.

These ladies eke that at this feste bene,  
Sens that he sawe his ladie was awaie,  
It was his sorowe on hem for to sene,  
Or for to here on instrumentis plaie;  
For she that of his hert berith the kaie  
Was absent, lo: this was his fantasie,  
That no wight should makin melodie:

Now there n'as hour in all the daie or night,  
Whan he was there as no man might him here,  
That he ne saied, O lovesome ladie bright!  
How have ye farin sins that ye were there?  
Welcome iwis, mine owne ladie dere!  
But welawaie! all this n'as but a mase;  
Fortune his love entendid but to glase.

The lettirs eke that she of olde time  
Had him sent he would alone irede  
An hundrid sithe atwixtin none and prime,  
Resguring her shape and womanhede  
Within his hert, and every worde and dede  
That passid was; and thus he drove to an ende  
The fethere day, and thennis wolde he wende;

And saide, Leve brothir Pandarus!  
Intendist thou that we shall here byleve  
Til Sarpedon wol forth conveyin us?  
Yet were it fairir that we toke our leve;  
For Godd's love let us now sone at eve  
Our leve take, and homwarde let us tourne,  
For trewely I n'il nat thus sojourne.

Pandare answerid, Be we comin hither  
To fetchin sire and reunit home again?  
God helpe me so I can nat tellin whither  
We mightin gone, if I shall sothly saie,  
There any wight is of us more saie  
Than Sarpedon; and if we hennis hie  
Thus sodainly I holde it vilanie;

Sith that we feydin we wouldin byleve  
With him a weke, and now thus sodainly  
The fethere day to take of him our leve,  
He would wondrin on it trewely.  
Let us holde forth our purpose fermely,  
And sens that ye be lightin him to abide  
Holde forward now, and altir let us ride.

This Pandarus with mochil pine and wo  
Made him to dwel; and at the wek's ende  
Of Sarpedon thei toke ther leve to go,  
And on ther way they spedin hem to wende.  
(Quod Troilus) Now, Lorde, me grace sende  
That I maie findin at mine home-comming  
Creseide domin, and therwith gan he sing.

Ye halif wode thought ywis Pandare,  
And to him selfe ful softly he seide,  
God wote refroidin may this hottè fare  
Er Calcas sende Troilus Creseide:  
But nethelless he japid thus, and seide,  
And swore iwis, his hert him wel behight  
She wouldin come as sone as er she might.  
Whan thei unto the paleis were icomen  
Of Troilus thei doun of horse alight,  
And to the chambre ther waie have thei nommen,  
And unto time that it gan to night  
Thei spekin of Creseide the lady bright,  
And altir this, whan that hem bothe leste,  
Thei spede hem fro the suppir unto rest.

On morow' as sone as day began to clere  
This Troilus gan of his slepe to abride,  
And to Pandarus his owne brothir dere,  
For love of God, ful pitowly he seide,  
As go we sene the paleis of Creseide,  
For sens we yet maie have none othir fest  
So let us sene her paleis at the lest!

And therwithal his meine for to blende  
A cause he fonde into the toun to go,  
And to Creseid's paleis they gone wende;  
But Lorde! this sely Troilus was wo,  
Him thought his sorouful hert brast atwo,  
For when he saw her doris sperrid all  
Wel nigh for sorow' adoun he gan to fall.

Therwith when he was ware, and gan behold  
How shet was every window of the place,  
As froit him thought his hert began to cold,  
For whiche with chaungid' dedly pale face  
Withoutin worde he forth by gan to pace,  
And as God would he gan so fast to ride  
That no wight of his countinaunce aspide.

Than saide he thus; O paleis desolate!  
O house of housis whilom best ydight!  
O paleis empty and disconsolate!  
O thou lanterne, of which queint is the light!  
O paleis whilom day, that now art night!  
Wel oughtist thou to fal and I to die  
Sens she is went that went was us to gie.

O paleis whilom croune of housis al!  
Euluminid with samne of alle blisse,  
O ring, of whiche the rubie is out fall!  
O cause of wo that cause hast ben of blisse!  
Yet sens I may no bet saie would I kisse  
Thy coldè doris, durst I for this route;  
And farwel shrine of whiche the saint is out!

Therwith he cast on Pandarus his cie  
With chaungid face, and pitous to beholde,  
And whan he might his time aright aspice  
Aie as he rode to Pandarus he tolde  
His newe sorow, and eke his joyis olde,  
So pitowly, and with so ded an hewe,  
That every wight might on his sorow rewe.

Fro thinnis forth he ridith up and doune,  
 And every thing came him to remembraunce  
 As he rode forth by placis of the tounce  
 In whiche he whilom had all his plessaunce;  
 Lo! yondir saw I mine owne lady daunce,  
 And in that temple with her eyin clere  
 Me captive caught first my right lady dere:  
 And yondir have I herde ful lustily  
 My dere hert Creseide laugh, and yondir plaie  
 Sawe I her onis eke ful blisfully,  
 And yondir onis to me gan she saie,  
 Now, gode swete! lovith me wel I you praye;  
 And yonde so godely gan she me beholde  
 That to the deth mine hert is to her holde:  
 And at the cornir in the yondir house  
 Herde I mine aldirlevist lady dere  
 So womanly with voice melodiousse  
 Singin so wel, so godely and so clere,  
 That in my soule yet me thinkith I here  
 The blisful sowne, and in that yondir place  
 My lady first me toke unto her grace.  
 Than thought he thus, O blisfull Lorde Cupide!  
 Whan I the processe have in memorie  
 How thou me hast wried on every side  
 Men might a boke make of it like a storie;  
 What nede is the to seke on me victorie  
 Sens I am thine and wholly at thy will?  
 What joy hast thou thine ownè folke to spill?  
 Wel hast thou, Lorde, iwroke on me thine ire,  
 Thou mighty God, and dredful for to greve;  
 Now mercy, Lorde! thou wost wel I desire  
 Thy grace moſte of allè lustis leve,  
 And live and die I wol in thy beleve,  
 For whiche I ne' aske in guerdon but a bone;  
 That thou Creseide aien me sende sone.  
 Distrainin her hert as fast to returne  
 As thou doest mine to longin her to se;  
 Than wote I wel that she n'il nat sojourne:  
 Now blisful Lorde! so cruil thou ne be  
 Unto the blode of Troie, I praie the,  
 As Juno was unto the blode Thebane;  
 For whiche the folke of Thebis caught ther bane.  
 And afir this he to the yatis wente  
 Ther as Creseide out rode a full gode paas,  
 And up and down there made he many a wente;  
 And to him selfe ful oft he said, Alas!  
 Fro hennis rode my blisse and my solas:  
 As woulde blisful God now for his joie  
 I might her sene ayen comin to Troie!  
 And to the yondir hil I gan her gide,  
 Alas! and there I toke of her my leve,  
 And yonde I saw her to her fathir ride,  
 For sorow of whiche mine hert shal to cleve,  
 And hithir home I came whan it was eve,  
 And here I dwel, out cast from allè joie,  
 And shal, til I maie sene her este in Troie.  
 And of him selfe imaginid he ofte  
 To ben defaitid, pale, and woxin lesse  
 Than he was wonte, and that men saidin softe  
 What may it be? who can the sothe gesse  
 Why Troilus hath al this hevinessie?  
 And al this n'as but his melancolie,  
 That he had of him selfe suche fantasie.

Anothir time imaginin he would  
 That evèry wight that went by the wey  
 Had of him routhe, and that thei faine should;  
 I am right fory Troilus wol dey:  
 And thus he drove a daie yet forth or twey,  
 As ye have herde: suche life gan he to lede  
 As he that stode betwixin hope and drede:  
 For which him likid in his songis shewe  
 Th' encheson of his wo as he best might,  
 And made a songe of wordis but a fewe,  
 Somwhat his wofull herte for to light,  
 And whan he was from every mann's sight  
 With softe voice he of his lady dere,  
 That absent was, gan sing as ye maie here:  
 O sterre! of which I lost have all the light;  
 With hefte fore wel ought I to bewaile  
 That evir derke in turment, night by night,  
 Towarde my deth with winds, I, sterre and faile,  
 For whiche the tennith night if that I faile  
 The giding of thy bemis bright-an houre  
 My ship and me Carybdis woll devoure.  
 This songe when he thus songin had sone  
 He fil aien into his sighis olde,  
 And every night, as was his wont to done,  
 He stode the bright mone to beholde,  
 And al his sorowe he to the mone tolde,  
 And said, Iwis whan thou art hornid newe  
 I shal be glad if al the world be trewe.  
 I saw thine hornis olde eke by that morow  
 Whan hennis rode my bright lady dere,  
 That cause is of my turment and my sorow,  
 For whiche, o bright Lucina the clere!  
 For love of God ren fast about thy sphere,  
 For whan thine hornis newe ginnin to spring  
 Than shal she come that maie my blisse ybring.  
 The daie is more and lengir every night  
 Than thei ben wont to be, thim thoughte tho;  
 And that the sunne went his course unright  
 By lengir waie than it was wonte to go,  
 And said, Iwis I drede me evir mo  
 The sunn's sonne Phaeton be on live,  
 And that his fathir's carre amisse he drive.  
 Upon the wallis fast eke would he walke;  
 And on the Grekis host he would yse,  
 And to him selfe right thus he would ytalke;  
 Lo! yondir is mine ownè lady fre,  
 Or ellis yondir there the tentis be,  
 And thence comith this ayre that is so fote,  
 That in my soule I fele it doth me bote.  
 And hardily this winde that more and more  
 Thus stoundemele encrefith in my face  
 Is of my ladies depè sighis fore;  
 I preve it thus, for in none othir space  
 Of a! this toun, save onely in this place,  
 Fele I no winde that founith so like paine,  
 It saith Alas! why twinid be we twaine?  
 This longè time he drivith forth right thus,  
 Til fully pallid was the ninthè night,  
 And aie beside him was this Pandarus,  
 That besily did allè his full might  
 Him to comfort and nake his herte light,  
 Yeving him hope alway the tennè morow  
 That she shal comen and stintin al his sorow.

Upon that othir side eke was Creseide  
With women fewe among the Grekis strong,  
For whiche ful oft a day Alas! she seide,  
That I was borne! wel maie mine herte long  
Aftir my deth, for now live I to long;  
Alas! and I ne may it not amende,  
For now is worse than evir yet I wende.

My fader n'il for nothing do me grace  
To gone ayen for aught I can him queme,  
And if so be that I my terme pace  
My Troilus, alas! shal in his hert deme  
That I am false, and so it maie wel seme;  
Thus shal I have unthonke on every side:  
~~That I was borne so welaway the tide!~~

And if that I me put in jeopardie  
To stele awaie by night, and it befall  
That I be caught I shal be holde a spie,  
Or ellis, lo! this drede I most of al,  
If in the hondis of some wretche I fall  
I n'am but lost, al be mine herte trewe:  
Now mighty God thou on my sorow rewe!

Ful pale iwoxin was her brighte face;  
~~Her lissis lene, as she that al the daie~~  
Stode whan she durst, and lokid on the place  
There she was borne, and she had dwellid aye;  
And al the night weping, alas! she laie;  
And thus dispeirid out of alle cure  
She lad her life this soroufull cature.

Ful oft a daie she sighed eke for distresse,  
And in her selfe she went aie purtraying  
Of Troilus the grette worthinesse,  
And al his godely wordis recording  
Sens first that daie her love began to spring;  
And thus she sette her wofull hert asire  
Through remembraunce of that she gan desire.

In all this world there n'is so cruil hert  
That her had herd complainin in her sorow  
That n'old have wepin for her painis smert;  
So tenderly she wept both eve and morow  
Her nedid not no teres for to borow;  
And this was yet the worst of all her paine,  
Ther was no wight to whom she durst complaine.

Ful rewfully she lokid upon Troie,  
Behelde the touris high and eke the hallis;  
Alas! (quod she) the plesaunce and the joie,  
The whiche that now al turned into gal is,  
Have I had oftin within yondir wallis!  
O Troilus! what doest thou now? she seide;  
Lord, whethir thou yet think upon Creseide!

Alas! that I ne' had trowed on your lote,  
And went with you, as ye me redde er this,  
Than had I now not sighid halfe so sore:  
Whe might have said that I had don amis  
To stele awaie with such one as he is?  
But al to late comith the lestuarie  
Whan men the corse unto the grave carie.

To late is now to speke of that matere;  
Prudence, alas! one of thine eyin thre  
Me lackid alway er that I came here,  
For on time pallid wel remembrid me,  
And present time eke could I wel yse,  
But future time I was in the snare,  
Could I have seen, that carid now my care.

But nathelisse, betide what may betide,  
I shal to morow' at night, by est or west,  
Out of this hoste stele on some manir side,  
And gon with Troilus where as him leist;  
This purpose wol I holde, and this is best;  
No force of wickid tongis jonglerie,  
For er on love have wretchis had envie:

For who so wol of every worde take hede,  
Or rulin him by every wight's wit,  
Ne shal he nevir thrivin out of drede,  
For that that some men blamin ever yet  
Lo othir manir folke commendin it;  
And as for me, for al suche variaunce  
Felicite clepe I my suffisaunce.

For whiche, withoutin any wordis mo,  
To Troie I wol, as for conclusoun.  
But God it wote er fully monthis two  
She was ful ferre fro that entencioun,  
For bothe Troilus and Troie toun  
Shall knotelisse throughout her herte slide,  
For she wol take a purpose for to abide.

This Diomed of whom I you tel gan,  
Goth now within himselfe aie arguing,  
With al the sleight and al that er he can,  
How he maie best with shortist tarying  
Into his nette Creseid's hert bring;  
To this entente he couthe nevir fine;  
To fishin her he laide out hoke and line.

But nathelisse wel in his hert he thought  
That she n'as nat without a love in Troie,  
For nevir fishin he her thennis brought  
Ne couthe he sene her laugh or makin joie;  
He n'ist how best her hert for to acoie,  
But for t' assey he said nought it ne greveth,  
For *He that naught assayith naught atchevethe.*

Yet said he to him selfe upon a night,  
Now am I nat a sole that wote wel hawe  
Her woe is for love of anothir wight;  
And herupon to gon assaie her nowe?  
I maie well wete it n'il nat ben my prow,  
For wise folke in bokis it expresse,  
*Men shal nat worwe a wight in bewinesse.*

But who so might ywinnin suche a flour  
Fro him for whom she mournith night and daie  
He might wel saine he were a conqueroure;  
And right anone, as he that bold was aie,  
Thought in his hert, happin what happin may,  
Al should I die I wol her herte seche,  
I shal no more lesin but my speche.

This Diomed, as bokis us declare,  
Was in his nedis prest and corageous,  
With stern voice, and mighty limmis square,  
Hardy and testife, strong and chevalrous,  
Of dedis like his fathir Tydeus;  
And some men saine he was of tonge large,  
And heire he was of Caledon and Arge.

Creseide mene ywas of her stature,  
Therto of shape, of face, and eke of chere,  
There ne mightin ben no fairir cature;  
And oftin timis this was her manere  
To gone itressid with her heris clere  
Down by her colere, at her backe behinde,



And fave her bowis joynedin iferer  
There n'as no lacke in aught I can espie;  
But for to spekin of her eyin clere,  
Lo! truily thei writtin that her feien  
That paradis stode formed in her eien,  
And with her richè beauty evirmore  
Strove love in her aie which of 'hem was more.

She sobre was, simple, and wist withall,  
The best inorishid eke that might be,  
And godely of her speche in generall,  
Charitable, estatey, lusty, and fre,  
Ne nevirmore ne lackid her pite,  
Tendrehertid, and sliding of corage,  
But truily I can nat tel her age.

And Troilus wel woxin was in hight,  
And complete, formid by proporcioun  
So wel, that Kinde it naught amendin might,  
Yong, fresh, and strong, and hardy as lioun,  
And trewe as stele in eche condicioun,  
One of the best entetchid creature  
That is or shal while that the world maie dure.

And certainly in story it is fonde  
That Troilus was nevir to no wight,  
As in his time, in no degre seconde  
In daring do that longith to a knight;  
Al might a giaunt passin him of might  
His hert aie with the first and with the best  
Stode peregall to dare done what him lest.

But for to tellin forth of Diomed  
It fil, that astir on the tennith daie  
Sens that Creseide out of the cite yede  
This Diomed, as fresh as braunche in Maie,  
Came to the tentè there as Calchas laie,  
And fainid him with Calchas have to done,  
But what he mente I shal you tellin sone.

Creseidè, at shorte wordis for to tel,  
Welcomid him, and doun him by her sette,  
And he was ethe inough to makin dwel;  
And astir this, withoutin longè lette,  
The spicis and the wine men forth 'hem sette,  
And forthe thei speke of this and that ifere,  
As frendis done, of whiche some shall ye here.

He gan first fallin' of the warre in speche  
Betwixin them and the folke of Troie toun,  
And of th' assiege he gan eke her besече  
To tellin him what was her opinioun;  
Fro that demaunde he so discendith doun  
To askin her if that her straungè thought  
The Grekis gife and werkis that thei wrought,

And why her fathir taryith so long  
To weddin her unto some worthy wight?  
Creseidè, that was in her painis strong  
For love of Troilus her ownè knight,  
So serforth as she conning had or might  
Answerde him tho, but as of his entente  
It semid that she ne wist what he mente.

But nathèlesse this ilkè Diomed  
Gan on him felse assure, and thus he seide;  
If I aright have taken on you hede  
Me thinkith thus, o lady mine Creseide!  
That sens I first hond on your bridil leide,  
When I out came of Troie by the morow,  
Ne might I nevir sene you but in sorow.

I can nat fain what maie the cause be,  
But if for love of some Trojan it were,  
The whiche right fore wouldin athinkin me,  
That ye for any wight that dwellith there  
Shulden yspil a quartir of a tere,  
Or pitously your selvin so begile,  
For dredèlesse it is nat worthe the while.

The folke of Troie, as who saith al and some,  
In prison ben, as you your selvin se,  
Fro thennis shal nat one on livè come  
For al the golde atwixin sunne and se;  
Trustith wel this, and undirstondith me,  
There shal nat one to mercy gone on live,  
Al were he lord of worldis twise five.

Such wrech on them for fetchin of Helene  
There shal be take, er that we hennis wende,  
That Manes, whiche that goddis ben of Peine,  
Shal ben agast that Grekis wel 'hem shende;  
And men shal drede unto the world's ende  
From hennis forthe to ravishe any quene,  
So cruil shal our wreche on them be sene.

And but if Calchas led us with ambages,  
That is to faine, with double wordis flie  
Suche as men clepen a word with twi visages,  
Ye shal wel knowin that I do nat lie.  
And al this thing right sene it with your cie,  
And that anon, ye n'il nat trowe how sone;  
Now takith hede, for it is for to done.

What! wenin ye that your wife fathir would  
Have yevin Antenor for you anon.  
If he ne wistè that the cite should  
Distroyid ben? Why, nay: so mote I gone  
He knew ful wel there shal nat scapin one  
That Trojan is, and for the gretè fere  
He durst nat that ye dwellid lengir there.

What wol ye more, o lovesome lady dere!  
Let Troie and Trojans fro your hertè passe;  
Drive out the bittir hope, and make gode chere,  
And clepe ayen the beaute of your face,  
That ye with saltè teris so deface,  
For Troie is brought in suche a jeopardie  
That it to save is now no remedie.

And thinkith wel ye shal in Grekis finde  
A love more parfite, er that it be night,  
Than any Trojan is, and morè kinde,  
And bet to servin you wol don his might;  
And if that ye vouchsafe, my lady bright!  
I wol ben he to servin you my felve,  
Ye, levir than be lorde of Grecis twelve.

And with that word he gan to waxin red,  
And in his speche a litil while he quoke,  
And cast aside a litil with his hed,  
And stinte a while, and astirwarde he woke,  
And sobrelly on her he threwe his loke,  
And said, I am, al be' it to you no joie,  
As gentle' a man as any wight in Troie:

For if my fathir Tydeus, he seide,  
Ilivid had, tho I had ben er this  
Of Calidony' and Arge a king, Creseide,  
And so hope I that I shal yet iwis,  
But he was slaine, alas! the more harm is,  
Unhappily at Thebisal to rathe  
Polynices and many a man to seith.

But, herté mine! sithe that I am your man,  
And ye ben the first of whom I seche grace,  
To seruin you as hertely as I can,  
And evir shal while I to live have space,  
So that er I depart out of this place  
Ye wol me grauntin that I may to morow  
At bettir laisir tell you of my sorow.

What should I tell his wordis that he seide?  
He spake inough for o daie at the mest;  
It previth wel he spake so that Creseide  
Grauntid on the morow at his request  
Forthy to spekin with him at the leste,  
So that he n'olde spekin of suche matere,

Thus she to him said, as ye mowe here,  
As she that had her hert on Troilus  
So fast yset that none might it arace,  
And straungely he spake, and seide thus:  
O Diomede! I love that ilke place  
There I was borie, and Jovis of thy grace  
Delivre' it for of al that doth it care:  
God for thy might so leve it wel to fare!

That Grekis wold ther wrath on Troye wreke,  
What thei might, I know it wel iwis;  
But it shal naught befallin as ye speke,  
And God toforne; and farthir ovir this  
I wote, my fathir wife and redy is,  
And that he me hath bought, as ye me tolde,  
So dere I am to him the more yholde.

That Grekis ben of high condicioun  
I wote eke wel, but certaine men shal finde  
As worthy folké within Troie toun,  
As conning, as parfite, and eke as kinde,  
As ben betwixin Orcades and Inde;  
And that ye couldin wel your lady serve  
I trowe eke wel, her thonke for to deserve.

But as to speke of love, iwis, she seide,  
I had a lorde to whom I weddid was,  
The whose mine hert was al til that he deide,  
And othir love, as helpe me now Pallas,  
There in mine hert ne is ne nevir was;  
And that ye ben of noble' and high kinrede  
I have wel herde it tellin out of drede.

And that doth me to have so grete a wonder  
That ye wol scornin any woman so;  
Eke God wote love and I ben ser afonder;  
I am disposid bet, so mote I go,  
Unto my deth to plaine and make wo;  
What I shal astir done I can nat saie,  
But truilly as yet me liste nat plaie.

Mine hert is now in tribulacioun,  
And ye in armis besy daie by daie;  
Hereafter when ye wonnin have the toun  
Paravintur than so it happin maie  
That whan I se that I nevir ere saie  
Than wol I werke that I nevir ere wrought;  
This word to you inough suffisin ought.

To morow eke wol I speke with you faine,  
So that ye touchin nought of this matere,  
And whan you list ye maie come here againe;  
And er ye gon thus muché I saie you here,  
As helpe me Pallas with her heris clere,  
Yf that I shol of any Greke have routhe  
It shol be your selvin by my trouthe.

VOL. I.

I saie nat therfore that I wol you love,  
Ne saie nat naie, but, in conclusioun,  
I mené wel, by God that sit above;  
And therwithal she cast her eyin down,  
And gan to sigh, and saide, O Troye toun!  
Yet bidde I God in quiet and in rest  
I maie the sene, or do mine herté brest.

But in effecte, and shortely for to saie,  
This Diomede al freshly newe againe  
Gan preasin on, and fast her mercy praie;  
And astir this, the sothé for to faine,  
Her glove he toke, of which he was ful faine,  
And, finally, whan it was woxin eve,  
And al was well, he rose and toke his leve.

The bright Venus folowid and aie taught  
The waie there brode Phœbus doune alight  
And Cytherea her chare-horse o'r raught  
To whirle into the Lioun if she might,  
And Signifer his candils shewith bright,  
Whan that Creseide unto her bed wente  
Within her fathir's faire brighte tente,

Retourning in her soule aie up and down  
The wordis of this sodaine Diomede,  
His gret estate, and peril of the toun,  
And that she was alone, and haddé nede  
Of frendis helpe, and thus began to drede  
The causis why, the sothé for to tell,  
That she toke fully purpose for to dwell.

The morow came, and, gostly for to speke,  
This Diomede is come unto Creseide;  
And, shortly, lest that ye my talé breke,  
So wel he for himselfin spake and seide  
That al her sighis fore adoun he leide;  
And, finally, the sothé for to faine,  
He rest her of the grete of alle her pain.

And astir this the story tellith us  
That she unto him yave the faire baie stede  
The whiche she onis wan of Troilus,  
And eke a broche (and that was litil nede)  
That Troilus was, she yave this Diomede,  
And eke the bet from sorowe' him to releve  
She made him were a pencell of her sleve.

I finde eke in the story ellis where,  
Whan through the body hurt was Diomede,  
Of Troilus tho wepte she many' a tere,  
Whan that she saw his widé woundis blede,  
And that she toke to kepin him gode hede,  
And for to helin him of his woundis smerre:  
Men faine, I n'ot, that she yeve him her herte.

But truilly the story tellith us  
There madin nevir woman more wo  
Than she whan that she falsid Troilus;  
She saide Alas! for now is clene ago  
My name in trouthe of love for evir mo,  
For I have falsid one the gestillest  
That ever was, and one the worthiest.

Alas! of me unto the world's ende  
Shal neithir ben iwrittin or isong  
No gode worde, for these bokis woll me shende;  
Irollid shal I ben on many' a tong,  
Throughout the world my bell shal be yrong,  
And women moste woll hatin me of all;  
Alas that soche a caas me should befall!

C c

Thei well saine, in as moche as in me is  
I have 'hem doon dishonour, welawaie!  
All be I not the first that did amis,  
What helpith that to doon my blame awaie?  
But fens I se there is no bettir waie,  
And that to late is now for me to rue,  
To Diomedes I woll algate be true.

But, Troilus, fens I no bettir maie,  
And fens that thus departin ye and I,  
Yet praie I God so yeve you right gode daie,  
As for the gentillist knight truly  
That er I sawe to servin faithfully,  
And best can aie his ladie's honour kepe,  
(And with that worde she braft anon to wepe.)

And certis you ne hatin shall I never,  
And frend's love that shall ye have of me,  
And my gode worde, all should I livin ever;  
And truly I would right forie be  
For to sein you in adversite;  
And giltlesse I wot well I you leve;  
And all shall passe, and thus take I my leve;

But truly how long it was bitwene  
That she forsoke him for this Diomedes  
There is none anethour tellith it I wene,  
Take every man now to his bokis hede  
He shall no terme findin out of drede,  
For though that he began to wowe her sone,  
Er he her wan yet was there more to done.

Ne me ne list this felie woman chide  
Ferthir than that the storie woll devise;  
Her name, alas! is publishid so wide  
That for her gilt it ought inough suffise;  
And if I might excuse her in some wise,  
For she so forie was for her untrouthe,  
Iwis I would excuse her yet for routhe.

This Troilus, as I before have told,  
Thus drivith forth as wel as he hath might,  
But oftin was his herte hote and cold,  
And namily that ilke ninithe night  
Whiche on the morowe she had him behight  
To come ayen; God wote full little rest  
Had he that night; nothing to slepe him left.

The lauril-crownid Phœbus with his hete  
Gan in his course aie upward as he went  
To warme of the est se the wavis wete,  
And Circe's doughtir song with freshe entent,  
Whan Troilus his Pandare aftir sent,  
And on the wallis of the toun thei pleide,  
To loke if thei can sene aught of Creseide;

Till it was none thei stodin for to se  
Who that there came, and every manir wight  
That came fro ferre thei saidin it was she,  
Till that thei couldin knowin him aright;  
Now was his herte dull, now was it light;  
And thus bejapid stodin for to stare  
About naught this Troilus and Pandare.

To Pandarus this Troilus tho seide;  
For aught I wot before none sikirly  
Into this toun ne comith not Creseide,  
She hath inough to doin hardily  
To twinnin from her fathir, so trowe I;  
Her old fathir woll yet make her dine  
Er that she go; God yeve his herte pine!

Pandare answerd, it may wel ben certain  
And forthy let us dine, I the besече,  
And aftir none than maist thou come again:  
And home thei go withoutin more speche,  
And comin ayen; but long maie thei seche  
Er that thei findin that thei aftir gape;  
Fortune 'hem bothe ythinkith for to jape.

(Quod Troilus) I se well now that she  
Is taryid with her old fathir so  
That er she come it woll nigh evin be;  
Come forth, I woll unto the yate go,  
These portirs hen unkonning evir mo,  
And I woll doon 'hem holdin up the yate  
As naught ne were, although she comin lat.

The daie goth fast, and after that came eve,  
And yet came not to Troilus Creseide;  
He lokith forth by hedge, by tree, by greve,  
And ferre his hedde ovir the wal he leide,  
And at the last he tournid him, and seide,  
By God I wote her mening now, Pandare;  
Almoste iwis all newe was all my care.

Now doutles this ladie can her gode;  
I wote she comith ridin privily;  
I commendin her wisedome by mine hod;  
She woll nat makin peple nicily  
Gaure on her whan she cometh, but softly  
By night into the toun she thinkith ride,  
And, dere brothir! thinke nat long to abide.

We have naught ellis for to doon iwis;  
And Pandarus, now wilt thou trowin me,  
Have here my trouth I se her; yond she is:  
Heve up thine eyin man; maiest thou nat se?  
Pandare answerid, Naie, so mote I the;  
All wrong by God: what saist thou man? wher art?  
That I se yonde asarre n'is but a carte.

Alas! thou saiest right sothe, (quod Troilus)  
But hardily it is not all for nought  
That in mine herte I now rejoicè thus;  
It is ayenst some gode: I have a thought,  
N'ot I nat how, but fens that I was wrought  
Ne felt I soche a comfort dare I saie;  
She cometh to night, my life that durst I lay.

Pandare answerde, It maie be well inough;  
And helde with him of all that er he saied,  
But in his herte he thought, and soft he lough,  
And to himself full sobirly he saied,  
From hasilwodde, there Joly Robin plaied,  
Shall come all that that thou abidist here;  
Ye, farwell all the snowe of fernè yere.

The wardein of the yatis gan to call  
The folke which that without the yatis were,  
And badde 'hem drivin in their bestis all,  
Or all the night thei must bylevin there;  
And ferre within the night, with many' a tere,  
This Troilus gan homward for to ride,  
For well he seeth it helpith nat to abide.

But nathèlesse he gladdid him in this,  
He thought he misaccomptid had his daie,  
And saied, I understande have all amis,  
For thilkè night I last Creseide saie  
She saied I shall ben here, if I maie,  
Er that the mone, o my dere herte, wete!  
The Lion passe out of this Ariete:



For whiche she maie yet hold all her behest;  
And on the morowe to the yate he went,  
And up and doune, by west and eke by est,  
Upon the wallis made he many a went;  
But al for naught; his hope alway him blent,  
For which at night in sorow and sighes sore  
He went him home withoutin any more.

This hope all clene out of his herte fledde,  
He ne hath wheron now lengir for to hong,  
But for the pain him thought his herte bledd,  
So wer his throwis sharp, and wondir strong,  
For whan he sawe that she abode so long  
He ne wist what he judgin of it might,  
Sens she hath brokin that she him behight.  
The thirde, the fourth, the fiste, and the sixt, daie  
After tho dayis tenne of whiche I told,  
Betwixin hope and drede his herte laie,  
Yet soniwhat trusing on her heftis old;  
But whan he sawe she n'olde her termis hold  
He can now sene none othir remedie  
But for to shapin him sone for to die.

Therwith the wickid spirit, God us blesse!  
Whiche that men clepin the wode Jalousie,  
Gan in him crepe in all this hevinesse,  
For whiche bicause he wouldin sone die  
He n'ete ne dronke for his melancolie,  
And eke from every companie he fledde;  
This was the life that all this time he ledde.

He so defaite was that no manir man  
Unmethis him might knowin there he went,  
So was he lene and therto pale and wan,  
And feble, that he walkith by potent,  
And with his ire he thus himselfin shent;  
But whofo askid him wherof him smerte,  
He saied his harme was all about his herte.

Priam full oft, and eke his mothir dere,  
His bretherne and his sustrin, gan him frain  
Why he so wofull was in all his chere,  
And what thing was the cause of al his pain?  
But all for naught; he n'olde his cause plain,  
But saied he felt a grevous maladie  
About his herte, and sain he would die.

So on a daie he laie him doune to slepe,  
And so bifell it that in slepe him thought  
That in a forest fast he walked to wepe  
For love of her that him these painis wrought,  
And up and doune as he that forest sought  
He met he sawe a bore with tuskis grete  
That slept ayenist the bright sunn's hete;

And by this bore, fast in her armis fold,  
Laie kissing aie his ladie bright Creseide,  
For sorowe of whiche, whan he it gan behold,  
And for dispite, out of his slepe he breide,  
And loude he cried on Pandarus, and seide,  
O Pandarus! now knowe I crop and rote  
I n'am but dedde; there n'is none othir bote.

My ladie bright, Creseide, hath me betraide,  
In whom I trustid moste of any wight;  
She elliswhere hath now her hert apaied;  
The blisfull goddis thorough ther grete might  
Have in my dremes seid it full right;  
Thus in my dremes Creseide have I beholde,  
And all this thing to Pandarus he tolde.

O my Creseide! alas! what subtilte,  
What newe lust, what beaute, what science,  
What wrathe of juste cause have ye unto me?  
What gilt of me, what fell experience,  
Hath fro me rafte, alas! thine advertence?  
O trust! o faithe! quod he, o depe assuraunce!  
Who hath me rafte Creseide, all my plesaunce?

Alas! why let I her from hennis go?  
For whiche well nigh out of my wit I breide;  
Who shall now trowe on any othis mo?  
God wote I wende, o ladie bright Creseide!  
That every worde was gospel that ye seide;  
But who maie bet begile if that him list,  
Than he on whom men wenin best to trist?  
What shall I doon, my Pandarus? alas!  
I felin now so sharpe a newe pain,  
Sens that there is no remedy in this caas,  
That bet were it I with mine hondis twain  
My selvin slowe than alwaie thus to plain,  
For through the deth my wo shuld have an ende;  
There every daie with life my self I shende.

Pandarus answerde and said, Alas the while  
That I was borne! Have I nat saied er this  
That dremis many a manir man begile?  
And why? for folke expoundin hem amis:  
How darst thou sain that false thy ladie is  
For any dreame? right for thine owne drede  
Let be this thought; thou canst no dremis rede.

Paravisture there thou dremest of this bore  
It maie so be that it maie signifie  
Her fathir, whiche that old is and eke hore,  
Ayen the sunne lyith on point to die,  
And she for sorowe ginnith wepe and crie,  
And kissith him, there he lieth on the ground;  
Thus shuldest thou thy dreame aright expound.

How might I than doin (quod Troilus)  
To knowe of this, yea, were nevir so late?  
Now saiest thou wisely, (quod this Pandarus)  
My redy is this, sens thou canst well endite,  
That hastily a lettir thou her write,  
Thorough which thou shalt wel bringin about  
To knowe a soth of that thou art in dout.

And se now why; for this I dare well sain,  
That if so is that she untrue ybe  
I can not trowe that she woll write again;  
And if she write thou shalt full sone ise  
As whethir she hath any liberte  
To come ayen, or ellis in some clause  
If she be let she wol assigne a cause.

Thou hast not writtin to her sens she went,  
Nor she to the; and this I durst wele laie,  
There maie soche cause ben in her entent  
That hardily thou wolt thy selvin saie  
That her abode the best is for you twaie:  
Now write her than, and thou shalt sele songe  
A soth of all; there is no more to done.

Acordid ben to this conclusioun,  
And that anon, these ilke lordis two,  
And hastily sat Troilus adoun,  
And rollith in his herte to and fro  
How he maie best discrivin her his wo,  
And to Creseide his owne ladie dere  
He wrote right thus, and said as ye maie here.

*The copie of the letter.*

Right fresh flour, whose I have aye ben and shall,  
Withoutin part of ellifwhere servise,  
With herte and bodie, life, lust, thought, and all,  
I wofull wight, in every humble wise  
That tong can tell or herte maie devise,  
As oft as mattir occupyth place,  
Me recommaunde unto your noble grace.

Likith it you to wetin, swete herte!  
As ye well knowin, how long time agon  
That ye me left in aspre painis smerte,  
Whan that ye wentin, of whiche yet hote now  
Have I non had, but evir worse bigen  
Fro daie to daie am I, and so mote dwell  
While it you list, of wele and wo my well.

For whiche to you with dredefull herte true  
I write, as he that sorowe driveth to write,  
My wo, that every houre encrefith newe,  
Complaining as I dare or can endite;  
And that defacid is that maie ye wite  
The teris which that from mine eyin rain,  
That wuldin speke if that thei durst and plain.

You first beseeche I that your eyin clere  
To loke on this defoulid ye nat hold,  
And ore all this that ye my ladie dere  
Woll vouchsafin this lettir to behold,  
And by the cause eke of my caris cold,  
That flæeth my wit, if aught amis me sterre  
Foryevith it me, mine owne swete herte!

If any servaunt durst or ought of right  
Upon his ladie pitously complain,  
Than wene I that I ought to be that wight,  
Confidrid this, that ye these monthis twain  
Have taried there ye saidin, sothe to sain,  
But tennie dayis ye n'olde in hoste sojourne,  
But in two monethis yet ye not retourne.

But for as moche as me mote nedis like  
All that you list I dare nat planin more,  
But humbly with sorowfull sighis like  
You write I mine unrestie sorowes fore,  
Fro daie to daie desiring evirmore  
To knowin fully, if your will it were,  
How ye have fared and don while ye be there;

The whole welfare and hele eke God encrese  
In honour soche, that upward in degre  
It growe alwaie, so that it nevir cese;  
Right as your herte aie can, my ladie fre,  
Devise, I praie to God so mote it be,  
And graunt it that ye sone upon me rewe,  
As wisely as in all I'am to you true.

And if you likith knewin of the fare  
Of me, whose wo there maie no wight discrive,  
I can no more, but cheif of every care,  
At writing of this lettir I'am on live,  
All redy out of my wofull ghost to drive,  
Whiche I delaie and holde him yet in honde  
Upon the sight of mattir of your sonde.

Mine eyin two, in vain with whiche I se,  
Of sorowfull teres salt am woxin wellis,  
My song in plaint of mine adversite,  
My gode in harme, mine ese eke woxin hel is,  
My joie in wo: I can sey now nought ellis

But tourmid is, for whiche my life I warie,  
Every joie or ese in his contrarie:

Which with your coming home ayen to Troy  
Ye maie redresse, and more a thousande sithe  
Than er I had encreffin in me joie,  
For was there nevir herte yet so blythe  
To have his life as I shall ben as swithe  
As I you se, and though no manir routhe,  
Can mevin you, yet thinkith on your trouthe.

And if so be my gilt hath deth deserved,  
Or if you list no more upon me se,  
In guerdon yet of that I have you served  
Beseeche I you, mine owne ladie fre  
That hereupon you woulon write to me  
For love of Jovis, my right lode sterre,  
That deth maie make an end of al my werre.

If othir cause aught doeth you for to dwel,  
That with your lettir ye me recomfort,  
For though to me your absence is an hell,  
With patience I woll my wo comfort,  
And with your letter of hope I woll disport:  
Now writith, swete! and let me thus nat plain;  
With hope or deth delivereth me fro pain.

Iwis, mine owne dere herte true!  
I wot that whan ye next upon me se,  
So lost have I mine hele and eke mine hewe,  
Creside shall not conne the knowin me;  
Iwis, mine hert is daie, my ladie fre!  
So thurstith aie mine herte to behold  
Your beaute that unmeth my life I hold.

I saie no more, all have I for to sey  
To you well more than that I tellin maie;  
But whethir that ye doe me live or dey  
Yet praie I God so yeve you right gode daie:  
And farith well, thou godely faire freshe Maie!  
As ye that life or deth me maie commaunde,  
And to your trouthe aie I me recommaunde,

With hele soche, that but ye yevin me  
The samin hele I shall non hele yhave:  
In you leth, whan you list that it so be,  
The daie in whiche me clothin shall my grave,  
And in you my life, in you might to save  
Me fro disese of all my painis smerte:  
And farith now wele, myne own dere swete herte!

*Le vostre, T.*

This lettir forthe was sent unto Creside,  
Of whiche her answere in effect was this;  
Full pitously she wrote ayen, and seide,  
That all so sone as she might iwis  
She would come, and amende that was amis;  
And, finally, she wrote and sayid thep  
She would ycome, ye, but she n'ist not when.

But in her lettir madin she soche festes  
That wondir was, and swore she loved him best,  
Of whiche he found but botomles bihestes.  
But, Troilus, thou maiest now east and west  
Pipe in an ivie lefe if that the lest:  
Thus goth the world; God shild us fro mischaunce,  
And every wight that menith trouthe avaunce!

Encreffin gan the wo fro daie right  
Of Troilus for taryng of Creside,

And lessin gan his hope and ek his might,  
For whiche al down he in his bedde him leide;  
He ne ete, dronke, ne slept, ne wordè seide,  
Imagining aie that she was unkinde,  
For whiche well nigh he wext out of his mind.

This dreame of whiche I told have eke beforne  
Maie never come out of his remembraunce;  
He thought aie well he had his ladie lorn,  
And that Jovis of his hie purveiaunce  
Him shewed had in slepe the signifaunce  
Of her untrouth and his disavinture,  
And that the bore was shewed him in figure;

For whiche he for Sibylle his sustir sent,  
That ~~collid~~ was Cassandre' eke all about,  
And all his dreame he told her er he stent,  
And her besought assoilin him the doubt  
Of the strong bore with all his tuskis stout;  
And, finally, with n a litil sounde  
Cassandra him gan thus his dreame expound.

She gan first smile, and said, O brothir dere!  
If thou a sothe of this desirest to knowe  
Thou must a fewe of oldè stories here,  
To purpose how that Fortune ovrthrowe  
Hath lon'is old, through which within a throw  
Thou shalt this bore well know, and of what kinde  
He comin is, as men in bokis finde.

Diana, whiche that wrothe was and in ire,  
For Grekis n'old doin her sacrifice,  
Ne encens on her altar set on fire,  
She for that Grekis gon her so dispise  
Ywrake her in a wondir cruill wife,  
For with a bore as grete as oxe in stall  
She made up frete ther corne and vinis all.

To flea the bore was all the countrie reised,  
Emongis whiche there came this bore to se  
A maid, one of this worlde the best ipraised;  
And Meleager, lorde of that countre,  
He lovid so this freshe maidin fre,  
That with his manhode er he wouldè stent  
This bore he slough, and her the hed he sent.

Of whiche, as oldè bokis tellin us,  
There rose a conteke and a grete envie;  
And of this lorde disendit Tydeus  
By ligne, or ellis oldè bokis lie;  
But how this Meleager gan to die,  
Thoroughe his mothir, woll I you not tell,  
For all to long it werin for to dwell.

She tolde eke how Tydeus, er she stent,  
Unto the stronge cite of Thebes  
(To claimin kingdome of the cite) went  
For his felawè Dan Polynices,  
Of whiche the brothir Dan Eteocles  
Full wrongfully of Thebis held the strength;  
This tolde she by processe all by length.

She tolde eke how Hemonides asterte  
Whan Tydeus slough fittie knightis stoute;  
She tolde eke all the prophecies by herte,  
And how that seven kingis with ther rout  
Besiegedin the cite all aboute,  
And of the holie serpent, and the well,  
And of the Furies, as she gan him tell.

*Associat profus, Tydeus primo Polynicem,  
Tydeus sextus docet, insulsius secundus,  
Tartius Hemoniden canit, & ydem latitantem,*

*Quartus habet Reges incuntes praelia septem,  
Lemniadum Furia quinto narratur, & angust,  
Archemori bustum sexto, ludique leguntur,  
Dat Thebis vatem Genitorum septimus umbris,  
Ottavo cecidit Tydeus, spes, vita Pelagum,  
Hippomedon nono meritur cum Parthenopeo,  
Fulmine percussus decimo Capaneus superatur,  
Undecimo sese perimunt per vulnera fratres,  
Argivum flentem narrat duodenus, & ignem.  
Of Archinorie's burying and the plaies,  
And how Amphiaras fill through the grounde,  
How Tydeus was slain, Lord of Argeies,  
And how Hipome'don in a litil sounde  
Was dreint, and dedde Parthenope of wound,  
And also how Capaneus the proude  
With thonder dint was slain, that cryd loude.*

She gan eke tell him how that eithir brother,  
Eteocles and Polynice also,  
At a scarmishe eche of 'hem slough the other,  
And of Argivis weping and ther mo,  
And how the town was brent she told eke tho;  
And the disendit doone from jessie old  
To Diomede, and thus she spake and told:

This ilke bore betokenith Diomede,  
Tydeus sonne, that doune disendit is  
Fro Mele'ager, that made the bore to blede,  
And thy ladie, where so she be iwis,  
This Diomede her herte hath and she his:  
Wepe if thou wolt or leve, for out of doute  
This Diomede is in and thou art out.

Thou saiest nat sothe, (quod he) thou foretelle,  
With all thy falsè ghost of prophecie;  
Thou wenist ben a grete devinereffe,  
Now seest thou nat this sole of fantasie  
Pinin her upon ladies for to lie:  
Awaie, (quod he) there Jovis yeve the sorowes!  
Thou shalt be fals para'venture er to morow.

As well thou mightist lien on gosse Alceste,  
That was of all creturis (but men) lie;  
That evir werin kindest and the beste,  
For whan her husbonde was in jeopardie  
To die himself, but if she wouldè die,  
She chafe for him to die and gon to hell,  
And starfe anon, as us the bokis tell.

Cassandre goeth; and he with cruill herte  
Foryate his wo for angre of her speche,  
And fro his bedde all sodainly he sterte,  
As though all whole him had imade a lerkie,  
And daie by daie he gan enquire and seche  
A sothe of this with all his besy cure;  
And thus he drivith forthe his avinture.

Fortune, whiche that the permutacion  
Of all thinges hath, as it is her committed  
Through purveiaunce and disposicion  
Of high Jove, as reignis shall ben yfitted  
Fro folk to folk, or whan thei shal ben smitted,  
Gan pull awaie the fethirs bright of Troie  
Fro daie to daie, till thei ben bare of joie.

Emong all this the fine of the jeopardie  
Of Hector gan approchin wondir blive,  
The Fatis would his soule should unbodie,  
And shapin had a mene it out to drive,  
Ayenst whiche fate him helpith not to strive,



But on a daie to fightin gan he wende,  
At whiche, alas! he caught his liv'is ende:

For whiche me thinkith every manir wight  
That hauntith armis oughtin to bewaile  
The deth of him that was so noble a knight,  
For as he drough a king by th' aventaile,  
Unware of this Achilles through the maile  
And through the bodie gan him for to rive,  
And thus the worthy knight was rest of live;

For whom, as old bokis tellin us,  
Was made foch wo that tong it maie nat tel,  
And namily the sorowe of Troilus,  
That next him was of worthinesse the well,  
And in this wo gan Troilus to dwell,  
That what for sorowe, love, and for unrest,  
Full oft a daie he had his herte brest.

But nathelesse though he gon him dispaire,  
And drede aie that his ladie was untrue,  
Yet aie on her his herte gan repaire,  
And, as these lovirs doen, he sought aie newe  
To get ayen Creseide bright of hewe,  
And in his herte he went her excusing,  
That Calchas causid all her tarying.

And oftin time he was in purpose grete  
Him selvin like a pilgrim to disgise  
To sene her; but he maie not counterfete  
To ben unknowen of folke that werin wise,  
Ne finde excuse aright that maie suffice,  
If he among the Grekis knowin were,  
For whiche he wept full oft many a tere.

To her he wrote yet oftin time all newe  
Full pitously, he left it nat for slouth,  
Beseeching her, fithins that he was true,  
That she would come ayen and hold her trowth:  
For whiche Creseide upon a daie for routh,  
I take it so, touching all this mattere  
Wrote him ayen, and saied as ye maie here:

Cupid's sonne, ensample of godelibede,  
O swerde of knighthode, fours of gentilnesse!  
How might a wight in turment and in drede,  
And helelesse, you sendin as yet gladnesse?  
I hertilese, I sicke, I in distresse,  
Sens ye with me nor I with you maie dele,  
You neithir sende I maie ne herte ne hele.

Your lettirs full the papir all iplained  
Commevid havin myne hert's pite;  
I have eke sene with teris all depainted  
Your lettir, and how ye requirin me  
To come ayen, whiche yet ne maie not be,  
But why, lest that this lettir foundin were,  
No mencionun ne make I now for fere.

Grevous to me (God wote) is your unrest,  
Your hast, and that the goddis ordinaunce  
It semith nat ye take it for the best,  
Nor othir thing n'is in your remembraunce  
As thinkith me, but onely your plesaunce;  
But beth nat wroth, and that I you beseeche,  
For that I tarie is all for wickid speche:

For I have herd well more than I wend  
Touching us two how thingis have istond,  
Whiche I shall with dissimuling amende;  
And beth not wroth, I have eke undirstond  
How ye ne doe but holdin me in honde;

But now no force; I can nat in you gesse  
But alle trouthe and alle gentilnesse.

Comin I well, but yet in soche disjoints  
I stond as now, that what yere or what daie  
That this shall be that can I nat apointe;  
But in effect I praie you as I maie  
Of your gode worde and of your frendship aie,  
For truely while that my life maie dure  
As for a frende ye maie in me assure.

Yet praie I you on evill ye na take  
That it is short whiche that I to you write;  
I dare nat there I am well lettirs make,  
Ne nevir yet ne could I well endite;  
Eke grete effect men writin in place lite  
Th' entent is all, and nat the lettirs space:  
And farith well; God have you in his grace!

*Le vostre, C.*

This Troilus thought this lettir al straunge  
Whan he it sawe, and sorowfully he fight;  
Him thought it like a kalendes of eschaunge;  
But, finally, he ful ne trowin might  
That she ne would him holdin that she hight,  
For with ful evill wil liste him to leve  
That lovith wel, in such case, though he greve.

But nathelesse men sain that at the last  
For any thing men shal the sothe fe,  
And suche a case betide, and that as fast,  
That Troilus wel understonde that she  
N'as nat so kinde as that he thought to be;  
And, finally, he wote now out of dout  
That al is lost that he hath ben about.

Stode on a daie in his melancolie  
This Troilus, and in suspicioun  
Of her for whom he wenid for to die,  
And so befil that throughout Troie toun,  
As was the gise, iborne was up and doun  
A manir cote armoure, as saithe the storie,  
Beforn Deiphobe, in signe of his victorie;

The whiche cote, as tellith Lollius,  
Deiphobe it had yrente fro Diomede  
The same daie; and when this Troilus  
It sawe he gan to takin of it hede,  
Avising of the length and of the brede,  
And al the werke, but as he gan beholde  
Ful sodainly his herte began to colde,

As he that on the coler fonde within  
A broche that he Creseide yave at morow  
That she from Troie toun must nedis twin,  
In remembraunce of him and of his sorow,  
And she him laide ayen her faith to borow  
To kepe it aie; but now ful wel he wist  
His lady n'as no longir on to trift.

He goeth him home, and gan ful sone sende  
For Pandarus, and al this newe chaunce,  
And of this broch he tolde him orde and ende,  
Complaining of her hert's variaunce,  
His longelove, his trowth, and his penaunce;  
And aftir Deth, withoutin wordis more,  
Ful fast he cried, his rest him to restore.

Than spake he thus; O lady mine, Creseide!  
Where is your faith, and where is your behest?  
Where is your love? where is your trowth? he  
seide.

Of Diomedes have ye now al his fest?  
 Alas! I would have trowid at the lest  
 That sene ye n'olde in trouthe to me stonde  
 That ye thus n'olde have holdin me in honde.

Who shal now trowen on any othis mo?  
 Alas! I nevir would have wende er this  
 That ye, Creside, coude have chaungid so,  
 Ne but I had agilte and don amis;  
 So arsel wende I nat your herte iwis  
 To fle me thus; alas! your name of trouthe.  
 Is now fordone, and that is al my routhe.

Was there none othir broche you list to lete  
 To fesse with your newe love, (quod he)  
 But this broche that I with teris wete  
 You yave as for a remembraunce of me?  
 None other cause, alas! ne haddin ye  
 But for dispite, and eke for that ye mente  
 All uttirly to f'ewin your entente:

Through which I se that clene out of your  
 Ye have me cast, and I ne can nor maie [minde  
 For all this world within mine herte finde  
 To unlovin you a quartir of a daie;  
 In curst time I borne was, welawaie!  
 That you that done me all this wo endure  
 Yet love the best of any cature.

Now God (quod he) me fendin yet the grace  
 That I maie metin with this Diomedes,  
 And trully it have might and space  
 Yet shall I make I hope his fidis blede:  
 Now God (quod he) that aughtist takin hede  
 To forthrin trouthe, and wrongis to punice,  
 Why n'ilt thou don a vengeance of this vice?

O Pandarus! that in dremes for to trifle,  
 Me blamid hast, and wonte art oft upbreide,  
 Now maist thou sene thy selfe, if that the list,  
 How trewe is now thy neede bright Creside:  
 In sondry formis, (God it wote) he seide,  
 The goddis shewin bothe joie and tene  
 In slepe, and by my dreme it is now sene.

And certainly, withoutin more speche,  
 From hennis forth, as ferforth as I maie,  
 Mine owne deth in armis wol I seche,  
 I ne retche nat how sone be the daie;  
 But trewily, Creside, swete Maie!  
 Whom I have ay with al my might iserved,  
 That ye thus done I have it nat deserved.

This Pandarus, that al these thingis herde,  
 And wiste wel that he said a sothe of this,  
 He nat a worde ayen to him answerde,  
 For sory of his frend's sorow he is,  
 And shamid for his nece hath done amis,  
 And stante astonied of these causis twaie  
 As stil as stone; o worde ne coude he saie.

But at the last thus he yspake and seide:  
 My brothir dere! I may do the no more;  
 What should I saie? I hate iwis Creside,  
 And God it wote I wol hate her er more;  
 And that thou me besoughtist don of yore,  
 Having unto mine honour ne my reste  
 Right no regarde, I did al that the leste.

Yf I did aught which that might likin the  
 It is me lese, and of this treson now  
 God wote that it a forow is to me,

And dreddelesse, for hert's ese of you,  
 Right faine I would amende it wist I how,  
 And fro this world Almighty God I praie,  
 Delivir her sone! I can no more saie.

Great was the woe and plaint of Troilus,  
 But forthe her course Fortune aie gan to holde,  
 Creside lovith the sonne of Tydeus,  
 And Troilus mote wepe in caris colde:  
 Such is this worlde, who so it can beholde;  
 In eche estate is litill hert's reste;  
 God leve us to takin it for the beste!

In many cruil bataile, out of drede,  
 Of Troilus this ilke noble knight  
 (As men maie in these old bokis rede)  
 Was sene his knighthod and his gretè might,  
 And dreddelesse his ire daie and night  
 Ful cruilly the Grekis aie abought,  
 And alwaie most this Diomedes he fought.

And oftin timis I finde that thei mette  
 With bloody strokis and with wordis grete,  
 Assaying how ther speris werin whette;  
 And God it wote with many a cruil hete  
 Gan Troilus upon his helme to bete:  
 But nathelesse Fortune it naught ne would  
 Of eithir's honde that eithir dyin should.

And if I had itakin for to write  
 The armis of this ilke worthy man,  
 Than would I of his battailis endite;  
 But for that I to writin first began  
 Of his love, I have saidin as I can  
 His worthy dedis, who so liste hem here,  
 Rede Dares, he can tel hem al isere.

Beseching every lady bright of hewe,  
 And every gentil woman, what she be,  
 Al be it that Creside was untrew, e  
 That for that gilt ye be nat wroth with me,  
 Ye maie her gilte in othir bokis se;  
 And gladdir I would writin if you leste  
 Of Penelope's trouthe and gode Alceste.

Ne saie I nat this all only for men,  
 But most for women that betrayid be  
 Through fals folke, God yeve hem sorrow, Amen!  
 That with ther gretè witte and subtilte  
 Betrayin you, and this comnevith me  
 To speke; and in effecte you al I praie  
 Beth ware of men, and herkenith what I saie:

Go, litil boke, go litill tragedie,  
 There God my makir yet er that I die  
 So sende me might to make some comedie;  
 But, litill boke, make thou the none envie,  
 But subject ben unto al poesie,  
 And kisse the steppes wher as thou seist pace  
 Of Virgil, Ovide, Homer, Lucan, Stace.

And for there is so grete diversite  
 In English, and in writing of our tonge,  
 So praie I to God that none miswrite the,  
 Ne the misse-metre for defaute of tonge;  
 And redde where so thou be or ellis songe  
 That thou be undirtonde God I beseeche;  
 But yet to purpose of my rathir speche.

The wrathe, as I began you for to seie,  
 Of Troilus the Grekis boughtin dere,  
 For thousandis his hondis madin deye,

As he that was withoutin any pere,  
Save in his time Hector, as I can here;  
But welawaie! (save onely Godd's wil)  
Dispitously him slough the sierce Achil.

And whan that he was slain in this manere,  
His lightè goste ful blisfully is went  
Up to the holownesse of the seventh sphere,  
In his place leting everiche element,  
And there he sawe, with ful avisement,  
The erratike sterres, herkening harmonic,  
With sownis full of hevins melodie.

And down from thennis fast he gan avise  
This litil spotte of erth that with the se  
Embracid is, and fully gan dispise  
This wretchid world, and helde al vanite  
In respecte of the plaine felicite  
That is in heven above, and at the last.  
There he was slaine his loking down he cast.

And in him selfe he lough right at the wo  
Of them that weptin for his dethe so fast,  
And dampnid all our werkes, that foloweth so  
The blindè lust whiche that ne may nat last,  
And shuldin al our herte on hevin cast;  
And forthe he went, shortly for to tell,  
There as Mercury sortid him to dwel.

Suche fine hath, lo! this Troilus for love,  
Suche fine hath all his gretè worthinesse,  
Suche fine hath his estate royal above,  
Suche fine his lust, suche fine hath his noblesse,  
Suche fine hath this false world's brotilnesse!  
And thus began his loving of Creseide  
As I have tolde, and in this wise he deide.

O yonge and freshe folkis, he or she!  
In whiche that love up growith with your age,  
Repairith home from worldely vanite,

And of your hertes up castith the visage  
To thilkè God that aftir his image  
You made, and thinkith al n'is but a faire,  
This world that passith sone, as flouris faire:

And lovith him the whiche that right for love  
Upon a crosse, our soulis for to bey,  
First starfe and rose, and sit in heven above,  
For he n'il fallin no wight, dare I sey,  
That wol his hert al wholly on him ley;  
And sens he best to love is and most meke  
What nedith fainid lovis for to seke?

Lo! here of Painims cursid oldè rites!  
Lo! here what al ther goddis maie availe!  
Lo! here this wretchid world's appetites!  
Lo! here the fine and guerdon for travaille  
Of Jove, Apollo, Mars, and such askaile!  
Lo! here the forme of oldè clerk's speche  
In poetrie, if ye ther bokis seche!

O, moral Gower! this Boke I directe  
To the and to the philosophicall trode,  
To vouchsafe there nede is for to correcte  
Of your benignities and zelis gode;  
And to the sothfast Christ, that starfe on rode,  
With al mine hert of mercy er I praie,  
And to the Lorde right thus I speke and saie:

Thou One, and Two, and Thre! eterne on live,  
That raignist aie in Thre, and Two, and One!  
Uncircumscript, and all maist circumscribe,  
From visible and invisible sone  
Defende us in thy mercy everichone!  
So make us, Jesus, to thy mercy digne,  
For love of maide and mothir thine benigne!



TESTAMENT OF FAIRE CRESEIDE\*.

A ~~man~~ feson till a carefull dite  
Should corresponde and be equivalent;  
Right so it was when I began to write  
This tragedy, the wedder right fervent,  
Whan Aries in middis of the Lent  
Showris of haile gan fro the north discende,  
That scantly fro the cold I might me defende.

Yet nerthelesse within mine orature  
I stode, whan Titan had his bemis bright  
Withdrawin doun, and scylid undir cure,  
And faire Venus the beaute of the night,  
Upraise, and sette unto the weste ful right  
Her goldin face, in oppositioun  
Of god Phæbus, directe descending doun.  
Throughout the glasse her bemis braft so faire  
That I might se on every side me by,  
The northrin winde hath purified the aire,  
And shedde his misty cloudis fro the skie,  
The froste fresid, the blastis bittirly  
Fro pole Artike came whisking loud and still,  
And causid me remove ayenst my will:

For I trustid that Venus, Lov's quene,  
To whom somtime I hight obedience,  
My fadid hert of love she would make grene,  
And thereupon with humble reverence  
I thought to praie her hie magnificence,  
But for grete colde as than I lettid was,  
And in my chambre to the fire gan pas.

Though love be hote, yet in a man of age  
It kindlith nat so sone as in youthed,

\* The Author of The Testament of Creseide, which might pass for the sixth book of this story, I have been informed by Sir James Wiskia late Earl of Kelly, and diverse aged scholars of the Scottissh nation, was one Mr. Robert Henderson, chief schoolmaster of Dumferlin, a little time before Chaucer was first printed, and dedicated to King Henry VIII. by Mr. Thynne, which was near the end of his reigne. Mr. Henderson wittily observing that Chaucer in his fifth booke had related the death of Troilus, but made no mention what became of Creseide, he learnedly takes upon him, in a fine poetical way, to express the punishment and end due to a false unconstant whore, which commonly terminates in extreme misery. *Vrry.*

Of whom the blode is flowing in a rage,  
And in the olde the corage dul and ded,  
Of whiche the fire outwarde is best remed:  
To helpe by phisike wher that nature failed:  
I am experte, for bothe I have assailed.

I made the fire and bekid me aboute,  
Than toke I drinke my spirites to comforte,  
And armid me wel fro the colde theroute:  
To cutte the wintir night and make it shorte  
I toke a quere, and leste al othir sporte,  
Writin by worthy Chaucer glorious  
Of faire Creseide and lusty Troilus:

And there I founde afir that Diomedes  
Recevid had that lady bright of hewe  
How Troilus nere out of his witte abrede,  
And wept full sore, with visage pale of hewe  
For which wanhope his teris gan renewe  
While Esperus rejoyld him againe;  
Thus while in joie he lived and while in paine.

Of her behest he had grete comforting,  
Trusting to Troie that she wold make retour,  
Whiche he desired most of al erthly thing,  
For why! she was his onely paramour;  
But whan he sawe passid both day and hour  
Of her gaincome, in sorowe gan oppresse  
His woful herte in care and hevinesse.

Of his distresse me nedith nat reharfe,  
For worthy Chaucer in that same boke  
In godely termis and in joly verse  
Compilid hath his caris, who will loken:  
To break my slepe anothir quere I toke,  
In which I founde the fatal destiny  
Of faire Creseide, which endid wretchidly.

Who wote if all that Chaucer wrate was trewe!  
Nor I wote nat if this narracion  
Be authorised, or forgid of the newe  
Of some poete by his invencion,  
Made to reporte the lamentacion  
And wofull ende of this lusty Creseide,  
And what distresse she was in or she deide.

Whan Diomede had al his appetite  
And more fulfilled of this faire lady  
Upon anothir sette was his delite,  
And sende to her a libel repudy,  
And her excluded fro his company;  
Than desolate she walkid up and down,  
As some men saie in the courte as commune.

O faire Creseide! the floure and a per fe  
Of Troie and Grece, how were thou fortunate  
To chaunge in filthe al thy feminite,  
And be with fleshly lust so maculate,  
And go among the Grekes erly and late  
So giglotlike, taking thy soule plesaunce?  
I have pite the should fall suche mischaunce.

Yet nerthelasse, what er men deme or say  
In scornfull langage of thy brutilnesse,  
I shall excuse as ferforth as I may  
Thy womanhed, thy wisedome, and fairnesse,  
The which Fortune hath put to suche distresse,  
As her plesid, and nothing throughe the gilte  
Of the through wickid langage to be spilt.

This faire lady, on this wise destitute  
Of al comforte and consolatioun,  
Right prively, without fello'whip or refute,  
Dishevelid, passid out of the toun  
A mile or two unto a mansioun  
Bildid ful gaie, where her fathir Calchas  
Which than among the Grekis dwelling was.

Whan her he saw the cause he gan enquire  
Of her coming: she said, sighing ful sore,  
For Diomede had gottin his desire  
He woxe wery, and would of me no more.  
Quod Calchas, Doughtir wepe thou nat therfore,  
Paravinture al comith for the best:  
Welcome; to me thou art ful dere a gest.

This olde Calchas, aftir the lawe was tho,  
Was kepir of the temple as a preste  
In whiche Venus and her sonne Cupido  
Were honourid, and his chambre was nest,  
To which Creseide with bale enewed in brest  
Ufid to passe, her prayirs for to saie,  
While at the last upon a solempne daie,

As custome was, the peple ferre and nere  
Before the none unto the temple went  
With sacrifice devout in ther manere;  
But stil Creseide, hevy in her intent,  
Into the church would nat herself present,  
For giving of the peple' any deming  
Of her expulse fro Diomede the King,

But passid into a secrete oratore,  
Where she might wepe her wofull destiny;  
Behinde her backe she closid fast the dore,  
And on her kneis bare fel down in hie;  
Upon Venus and Cupide angirly  
She cryid out, and sayid in this wise,  
Alas that er I made you sacrifice!

Ye gave me ones a divine respossaile  
That I should be the floure of love in Troie;  
Now am I made an unworthy outwaile,  
And al in care translatid is my joie:  
Who shal me gide? who shal me now convoie,  
Sith I fro Diomede and noble Troilus  
Am clene excluded, abject, odious?

O false Cupide! none is to wite but thou,  
And the mothir of Love, that blinde goddace;  
Ye caused me undirstande alwaie and trow  
The sede of love was sowin on my face,  
And aie grewe grene thorough your sople grace;  
But now, alas! that sede with frost is flaine,  
And I fro lovirs leste and all forlaine.

Whan this was said, down in an extasy,  
Ravished in spirite, in a dreme she fel,  
And by apparaunce herde where she did lie  
Cupide the King tinging a silvir bel,  
Which men might here fro hevin into hel,  
At whose sounde before Cupido peres  
The seven planets discending fro the spheres,

Whiche hath powir of al thing generable,  
To rule and sterc by their gret influence  
Wedir and winde, and course variable;  
And first of al Saturne gave his sentence,  
Whiche gave to Cupide litil reverence,  
But as a boistous chorle in his manere  
Came crabbidly with austrine loke and chere.

His face frounid, his lere was like the lede,  
His tethe chatrid, and shivered with the chin,  
His eyin droupid, whole sonkin in his hede,  
Out at his nose the mildrop fast geyn,  
With lippis blew, and chekis lene and thin,  
The isekills that fro his heer doure honge  
Was wondir grete, and as a spere as longe;

Attour his belte his liart lokis laie  
Feltrid unfaire, or fret with frostis hore,  
His garment and his gite ful gay of graie,  
His widrid wede fro him the winde out wore,  
A boustous bowe within his honde he bore,  
Undir his girdle a fashe of felone flains  
Fedrid with ise and hedid with holstains.

Than Jupiter right faire and amiable,  
God of the steris in the firmament,  
And norice to al thing generable,  
Fro his fathir Saturne farre different,  
With burly face, and browis bright and brent,  
Upon his hed a garlonde wondris gaie  
Of flouris faire, as it had ben in Maie;

His voice was clere, as cristal was his eien,  
As goldin wier so glittering was his here,  
His garment and his gite ful gaie of grene,  
With goldin listis gilte on every gere,  
A burly brandy about his middle he bere,  
And in his right hand he had a groundin spere,  
Of his fathir the wrothe fro us to bere.

Next aftir him came Mars, the god of ire,  
Of strife, debate, and all discencioun,  
To chide and fight as fierse as any fire,  
In harde harnesse hewmonde and habergioun,  
And on his haunch a rousty fel fauchoun,  
And in his hande he had a rousty sworde,  
Writhing his face, with many angry worde;

Shaking his brande before Cupide he come,  
With red visage and grisly glowing eien,  
And at his mouth a blubbur stode of some,  
Like to a bore whetting his tuskis kene,  
Right tulfurelike, but temperaunce in tene,  
An horne he blewe with many boustous bragge,  
Whiche al the world with warre hath made to wagge.

Than faire Phœbus, lanterne and lampe of light,  
Of man and best both frute and flourishing,  
Tendir norice, and banishir of night,  
And of the worlde causing by his moving  
And influence life in al erthly thing,  
Without comforte of whom of force to nought  
Mest go dyin all that this world hath wrought.

As king royall he rode upon a chare,  
The whiche Phaeton somtime gided unright.  
The brightnesse of his face whan it was bare  
Non might beholde for persing of his sight,  
This goldin carte with firy bemis bright  
Foure yokid it was ful different of hewe  
But lyte or tising through the spheris drew.  
The first was forde, with mane as red as rose,  
Callid Boye in the orient;  
The secunde stede to name hight Erhiose,  
Whitely and pale, and somdele ascendent;  
The third Pyrois, right hote and fervent;  
The fourth was blak, and callid Phlegone;  
Which rollith Phœbus down into the se.

Venus was there present, that goddes gay,  
Her sonn's quarrel to defende, and make  
Her owne complaint, cladde in a nice aray,  
The one halfe grene, th' othir halfe fable blake,  
White heer as gold, kembit and shede abake,  
But in her face semid grete variaunce,  
Whiles parfit truth and whilis inconstaunce.

Undir smiling she was dissimulate,  
Provocative with binkis amorous,  
And sodainly chaungid and alterate,  
Angry as any serpent venomous,  
Right pungitive with wordis odious;  
Thus variaunt she was who list take kepe,  
With one eye laugh and with the othir wepe,

In tokening that al fleshely paramour,  
Which Venus hath in rule and govirnaunce,  
Is sometime swete, sometime bittir and sour,  
Right unstable, and ful of variaunce,  
Minglid with careful joye and false pleasaunce,  
Now hotte, now colde, now blith, now ful of wo,  
Now grene as lefe, now widrid and ago.

With boke in hand than come Mercurious,  
Right eloquent and ful of rethorie,  
With polite termis and delicious,  
With penne and inke to reporte al redie,  
Setting songis, and singing merily,  
His hode was red heclid attour his croun,  
Like til a poete of the olde fashioun.

Boxis he bare with fine electuaries  
And sugrid siropes for digestion,  
Spicis belonging to the potiquares,  
With many wholsome swete confection,  
Doctor in phisike cledde in scarlet gown,  
And furril wel, as suche one ought to be,  
Honest and gode, and nat a worde couth lie.

Next after him come Lady Cynthia  
The laste of al, and swiftist in her sphere,  
Of colour blake, buskid with hornis twa,  
And in the night she listith best t' apere,  
Hawe as the leed, of colour nothing clere,  
For al the light she borroweth at her brother  
Titan, for of her selfe she hath non other.

Her gite was gray and ful of spottis blake,  
And on her brest a chorle paintid ful even,  
Bering a bushe of thornis on his bake,  
Whiche for his theft might clime no ner the heven.  
Thus when thei gadrid were the goddis seven  
Mercurius thei chosed with one assent  
To be fore-spekir in the parliment.

Who had ben there and liking for to here  
His faconde tonge and termis exquisite,  
Of rethorike the practike he might lere,  
In breste sermon a preignant sentence write,  
Before Cupide, valing his cappe a lite,  
Speris the cause of that vocacioun,  
And he anon shewde his entencioun.

Lo, quod Cupide, who wol blasphemie the name  
Of his owne god either in worde or dede  
To al goddis he doeth bothe losse and shame,  
And should have bittir painis to his mede;  
I saie this by yondir wretche Creseide,  
The whiche through me was somtime flour of love;  
Me' and my mothir she stately can reprove,

Saying of her gret infelicite  
I was the cause, and my mothir Venus  
She called a blinde goddes and might nat se,  
With sclaudir and defame injurious;  
Thus her living unclene and lechirous  
She would retorte on me and my mother,  
To whom I shewde my grace above al other.

And sithe ye are al fevin deficate  
Participant of divine sapience,  
This gret injury done to' our high estate  
Me thinke with paine we shuld make recompence;  
Was ner to goddis done suche violence;  
As wel for you as for my selfe I saie,  
Therefore go help to revenge I you praie.

Mercurius to Cupide gave answeere,  
And said, Sir King, my counsaile is that ye  
Referre you to the hyist planet here,  
And take to him the lowist of degre,  
The paine of Creseide for to modifie,  
As God Saturne with him take Cynthia.  
I am content (quod he) to take thei twa.

Than thus procedid Saturne and the Mone,  
Whan thei the matir ripely had digest,  
For the dispite to Cupide that she' had done,  
And to Venus opin and manifest,  
In al her life with pain to be oprest,  
And turment sore, with fikenesse incurable,  
And to al lovirs be abhominable.

This doleful sentence Saturne toke in hande,  
And passid down where careful Creseide laie,  
And on her hed he laide a frosty wande,  
Than lausfully on this wise gan he saie;  
Thy grete fairnesse and al thy beauty gaie,  
Thy wanton blode, and eke thy goldin here,  
Here I exclude fro the for evirmere:

I chaunge thy mirthe into melancoly,  
Whiche is the mothir of al pensivenesse,  
Thy moistir and thy hete to colde and dry,  
Thine insolence, thy plaie and wantonnesse,  
To grete disese, thy pompe and thy richesse  
Into mortal nede and grete penurie;  
Thou suffre shalt, and as a beggir die.



O cruil Saturne ! froward and angrie,  
Harde is thy dome and to malicious,  
Of faire Creseide why hast thou no mercie,  
Whiche was so swete, gentill, and amorous ?  
Withdrawe thy sentence and be gracious,  
As you were ner, so shewith through thy dede  
A wrekeful sentence givin on Creseide.

Than Cynthia, whan Saturne past awaie,  
Out of her sete descendid doune blive,  
And red a bill on Creseide where she laie,  
Containing this sentence diffinitive,  
Fro hele of body here I the deprive,  
And to thy sikenesse shal be no recure,  
But in dolour thy dayis to endure ;  
Thy cristal eyen mengid with blode I make,  
Thy voice so clere unplefant here and hace,  
Thy lustie lere orspred with spottis blake,  
And humours have appering in thy face,  
Where thou comist eche man shal fle the place ;  
Thus shalt thou go begging fro hous to hous  
With cuppe and clappir, like a Lazarous.

This dolie dreame, this ugly visioun,  
Brought till an ende, Creseide fro it awoke,  
And all that courte and convocacioun  
Vanished awaie ; than rose she up and toke  
A polished glasse, and her shadowe couth loke,  
And whan she sawe her visage so deformate  
If she in herte wote wo I n'ote, God wote.

Weping ful fore, Lo ! what it is (quod she)  
With froward langage for to move and stire  
Our crabbid goddes ! and so is sene on me ;  
My blaspheming now have I bought ful dere,  
All yerthly joie and mirth I set arere ;  
Alas this daie, alas this wofull tide,  
Whan I began with my goddis to chide !

By this was saied a childe came fro the hal  
To warne Creseide the suppir was redie,  
First knockid at the dore, and eft couth call,  
Madame, your fathir biddith you cum in hie,  
He hath marveile so long on grose ye lie,  
And saith your bedis beth to long somdele,  
The goddis wote all your entent full wele.

Quod she, Faire child, go to my fathir dere,  
And praie him come to speke with me anon ;  
And so he did, and saied, Doughtir, what chere ?  
Alas ! (quod she) fathir, my mirth is gone.  
How so ? (quod he) and she gan all expone  
As I have told, the vengeance and the wrake  
For her trespas Cupide on her couth take.

He lokid on her ugly lepir's face,  
The whiche before was white as lily flour,  
Wringing his handes oftimis saied Alace  
That he had lived to se that wofull hour !  
For he knewe well that there was no socour  
To her siknesse, and that doublid his pain :  
Thus was there care inow betwixt hem twain.

Whan thei togidir mouruid had full lang,  
Quod Creseide, Fathir, I would nat be kende,  
Therefore in secrete wise ye let me gange  
To yon hospitall at the toun's ende,  
And thidir some mete for charite me sende  
To live upon, for all mirth in this yerth  
Is fro me gone, soche is my wickid werth.

Whan in a mantill and a bevir hat,  
With cuppe and clappir, wondir privily  
He opened a secrete gate, and out therat  
Conveyid her that no man should espie,  
There to a village halfe a mile therebic  
Delivered her in at the spittill hous,  
And daily sente her part of his almous.

Sum knew her well, and sum had no knowlege  
Of her, bicause she was so deformate,  
With bilis blake orspred in her visage,  
And her faire colour sadid and alt'erate  
Yet thei presumid for her hie regrate  
And still mourning she was of noble kin,  
With bittir will there thei tokin her in.

The daie passid, and Phoebus went to rest,  
The cloudis blake orwhelid all the skie,  
God wote if Creseide were a sorowfull gest,  
Seing that uncouth fare and herborie ;  
But mete or drinke she dreslid her to lie  
In a darke cornir of the hous alone,  
And on this wise weping she made her mone.

*Here foloweth the complaint of Creseide.*

O soppe of sorowe sonkin into care !  
O caitife Creseide now and evirmare !  
Gon is thy joie and al thy mirth in werth ;  
Of all blithnesse now art thou blake and bare ;  
There is no salve that helpin maie thy fare ;  
Fell is thy fortune, wickid is thy werthe,  
Thy blisse is banished, and thy bale unberde ;  
Undir the grete God if I gravin ware  
Wher men of Grece ne yet of Troie might herd !  
Where is thy chambir wantonly befene,  
With burly bed and blankits broudid bene,  
Spicis and wine to thy colatioun,  
The cuppis all of gold and silver shene,  
Thy swete metis servid in platis clene,  
With favere sauce of a gode fashoun,  
Thy gaie garmentes with many godely gown,  
Thy plefant laune pinnid with goldin penc ?  
All is arere thy grete roiall renoun.

Where is thy gardein with thy Grecis gaie,  
And freshe flouris, which the quene Floraie  
Had painrid plefantly in every paine,  
Where thou were wont full merrily in Maie  
To walke, and take the dewe by it was daie,  
And here the merle and mavise many one,  
With ladies faire in carolling to gone,  
And se ther roiall renkis in ther raie ?

This lepir loge take for thy godely bouse,  
And for thy bed take now a bounche of stro,  
For wailid wine and metis thou had tho  
Take mouldid bred, pirate and sidir souse,  
But cuppe and clappir is all now ago.

My clere voice and my courtly carolling  
Is ranke as roke, full hidous here and bace,  
Deformid is the figure of my face,  
To loke on it no peple hath liking,  
So sped in sight, I saie with sore sighing  
Lying among the lepir folke, Alas !

O ladies faire of Troie and Grece ! attende  
My freile fortune, mine infelicate,  
My grete mischese which no man can amende,  
And in your mirde a mirrour make of me,

# TESTAMENT OF CRESEIDE.

As I am now paravinture that ye,  
For al your might, may come to the same ende  
Or ellis worse, if any worse maie be;  
Beware therefore, approachith nere your ende.

Nought is your fairnesse but a fading floure,  
Nought is your famous laude and hie honour  
But winde inflate in othir mennis eres,  
Your rosing redde to roting shall retoure,  
Exemple make of me in your memoure,  
Which of soche thingis wofull witnes beres,  
Al welth in yerth as wind awaie it weres;  
Beware therfore, approachith nere your hour.

Thus chiding with her drerie destine  
Weping she wolk the night fro ende to ende:  
But all in vain; her dole, her carefull crie,  
Might not remed, ne yet her mourning mend;  
A lepir ladie rose and to her wende,  
And saied, Why spurnist thou again the wall  
To fle thy self, and mende nothing at all?

Sith that thy weping but doublith thy wo,  
I counsaile the make vertue of a nede,  
Go lerne to clappe thy clappir to and fro,  
And lerne astir the lawe of lepers lede.  
There was no bote, but forthwith than she yede  
Fro place to place, while cold and hungir sore  
Compellid her to be a ranke heggore.

That same time of Troie the garnisoun,  
Whiche had the sheftain worthy Troilus  
Through jeoperdy of warre had strikin down  
Knightis of Grece in nombir marveilous,  
With grette triumphe and laude victorious  
Again to Troie right roially thei rode  
The waie wher Creseide with the lepir stode.

Seiug that companie come with o steven  
Thei gave a crie, and shoke cuppis, Gode spede,  
Worthie lordis! for Gedd's love of heven  
To us lepirs part of your almose dede!  
Than to her crie noble Troilus toke hede,  
Having pite, nere by the place gan pas  
Where Creseide sat, nat weting what she was.

Than upon him she kest up bothe her eyen,  
And with a blinke it come intill his thought  
That he somtime her face before had sein,  
But she was in soche plight he knew her nought,  
Yet than her loke into his minde he brought,  
The swete visage and amorous blenking  
Of faire Creseide, somtime his own desling.

No wondir was suppose in mind that he  
Toke her figure so sone; and lo! now why  
The idea of a thing in case maie be  
So depe enprintid in the fantasie  
That it deludith the wittes outwardly,  
And so appereth in forme and like estate  
Within the minde as it was figurate.

A sparke of love than til his hert couth spring,  
And kindlid his body in a fire  
With hote sevir, in swette, and trembling  
Him toke, while he was redie to expire;  
To bere his shilde his brest begon to tire,  
Within a while he chaungid many a hewe,  
And nertheles nat one anothir knewe.

For knightly pite and memoriell  
Of faire Creseide a girdill gan he take,  
A mass of golde, and many a

And in the skirte of Creseide down gan shake,  
Than rode awaie, and nat a worde he spake,  
Penfise in herte, while he came to the toune,  
And for grete care oft sith almoste fell doune.

The-lepre folke to Creseide then couth draw,  
To se the equall distribucioun  
Of the almose; but whan the golde they sawe  
Eche one to othir privily gan roun,  
And saied, Yon lorde hath more affectioun,  
Hower it be, unto yon Lazarous  
Than to us all, we knewe by his almous.

What lorde is yon, (quod she) have ye no sele,  
That doeth to us so grete humanite?

Yes, quod a lepre man, I knowe him wele,  
Troilus it is, a knight gentle and fre.

Whan Creseide undirstode that it was he  
Stiffir than stele there sterte a bittir stound  
Throughout her hert, and fill doune to the ground.

Whan she, orcome with sighing fore and sad,  
With many a carefull crie and cold atone,  
Now is my brest with stormie stoundis stad,  
Wrappid in wo, oh wretchfull will of one!  
Than fell in swoun ful oft or she would sone,  
And evir in her swouning cried she thus,  
O false Creseide, and true knight Troilus!

Thy love, thy laude, and all thy gentilnesse,  
I comptid small in my prosperite,  
So efflatid I was in wantonnesse,  
And clambe upon the fickle whele so hie,  
All faith and love I promittid to the  
Was in thy self sikill and furious;  
O false Creseide, and true knight Troilus!

For love of me thou kept thy countinaunce  
Honest and chaste in conversacion;  
Of all women protectour and defence  
Thou were, and helpid ther opinion:  
My minde on fleshy soule affection  
Was enclinid to lustis lecherous;  
Fie, false Creseide! o true knight Troilus!

Lovirs, beware, and take gode hede about  
Whom that ye love, for whan ye suffre paine  
I let you wit there is right fewe throughout  
Whom ye maie trust to have true love again;  
Prove whan you woll, your labour is in vain;  
Therefore I rede ye take them as ye finde,  
For thei are sad as wedircocke in winde

Bicause I knowe the grete untablenesse,  
Brittle as glasse, unto my selfe I saie,  
Trusting in othir as grete brutilnesse,  
As inconstaunt, and as untrue of saie;  
Though some be true I wot right few ar thei:  
Who findith truthe let him his lady ruse;  
None but my self as now I woll accuse.

Whan this was said, with papir she sat down,  
And in this manir made her Testament;  
Here I bequeth my corse and carioun  
With wormis and with todis to be rent,  
My cuppe, my clappir, and mine ornament,  
And all my gold, these lepre folke shall have,  
Whan I am dedde to burie me in grave.

This roiall ring, set with this rubie redde,  
Whiche Troilus in dowrie to me sende,  
To him again I leve it whan I am dedde,

To make my careful deth unto him kende :  
 Thus I conclude shortly and make an ende ;  
 My sp'rit I leve to Diane, where she dwelles,  
 To walke with her in wast wadis and welles.

O Diomedes ! thou hast bothe broche and belte  
 Whiche Troilus gave me in tokining  
 Of his true love ; and with that worde she swelt.  
 And sone a lepirman toke off the ring,  
 Than buried her withoutin tarying ;  
 To Troilus forthwith the ring he bare,  
 And of Creseide the deth he gan declare.  
 Whan he had herd her grete infirmite,  
 Her legacie, and lamentacioun,  
 And how she endid in such poverté,  
 He swelte for wo, and fell doune in a swoun,  
 For sorowe his hertè to braft was boun,

Sighing full sadly saied I can no more,  
 She was untrue, and wo is me therfore.

Some faith he made a tombe of marbie graie,  
 And wrote her name and superferioun,  
 And laid it on her grave whereas she laie,  
 In golden lettirs, containing this refoun ;  
 Lo ! faire ladies, Creseide of Troie toun,  
 Somtime comptid the floure of womanhed,  
 Undir this stone, late lepir, lyith dedde !

Now worthy women, in this balade short,  
 Made for your worship and instruction,  
 Of charite I monishe and exhorte,  
 Minge nat your love with false discepcion,  
 Bere in your minde this fore confulsion  
 Of faire Creseide as I have saied before ;  
 Sith she is dedde I speke of her no more.



## THE LEGENDE OF GOOD WOMEN\*.

A THOUSAND times I have herd men tell  
That there is joie in heven and pain in hell,  
And I acord' it wele that it is so,  
But nathelless yet wot I wele also  
That there n'is non dwelling in this coundre  
That eithir hath in heven or hell ibe,  
Ne maie of it none othir waies wittin  
But as he herd saied or found it writtin,  
For by assaie there maie no man it preve.

But God forbode but that men shuldu leve  
Well more thing than thei han seen with eye!  
Men shall nat wenin every thing a lie  
But if himself it feeth or els it doeth,  
For God wote thing is nevir the lesse soth  
Though every wight ne maie it not ise.

Bernarde the monke ne faugh not all parde,  
Than motè we to bokis that we finde,  
(Through which the oldè thingis ben in minde)  
And to the doctrine of these oldè wise,  
Yeve credence in evéry skilfull wise,  
That tellin of these old apprevit stories  
Of holines, of reignis, of victories,  
Of love, of hate, and othir sondrie thinges,  
Of whiche I maie not makin reherfinges;  
And if that oldè bokis were awaie  
I shoulde were of all remembraunce the kaie.

Well ought us than honourin and beleve  
These bokis there we han none othir preve.

And as for me, though that I can but lite,  
On bokis for to rede I me delite,  
And to 'hem yeve I faithe and ful credence,  
And in mine herte have 'hem in revèrence  
So hertily, that there is gamè none  
That fro my bokis makith me to gone,  
But it be feldome, on the holic daie,  
Save certainly whan that the month of Maie  
Is comin, and I here the foulis sing,  
And that the flouris ginnin for to spring,

Farewell my hoke and my devocioun.

Now have I than eke this condicion,  
That above all the flouris in the mede  
Than love I moste these flouris white and rede,  
Soche that men callin Daiesies in our toun;  
To them have I so grete affectioun,  
As I saied erst, whan comin is the Maie,  
That in my bedde there dawith me no daie  
That I n'am up and walking in the mede  
To sene this floure ayenst the sunne sprede  
Whan it uprisith erly by the morowe;  
That blisfull sight softinith all my sorowe;  
So glad am I when that I have presence  
Of it to doin it all revèrence,  
As she that is of all flouris the floure,  
Fulfilid of all vertue and honoure,  
And evir ilike faire and freshe of hewe  
As wel in wintir as in summir newe;  
This love I evre', and shall until I die,  
All swere I not of this, I woll nat lie.

There levid no wight hottir in his life;  
And whan that it is eve I renne blithe,  
As sone as evir the sunne ginnith west,  
To sene this floure how it woll go to rest;  
For fere of night, so hatir she derknesse,  
Her chere is plainly spred in the brightnesse  
Of the sunne, for there it woll unclofe:  
Alas that I ne' had Englishe, rime, or prose,  
Suffisaunt this floure to praisè aright!  
But helpith ye that han conning and might,  
Ye lovirs, that can make of sentiment;  
In this case ought ye to be diligent.

To forthrin me somwhat in my labour,  
Whether ye ben with the Lefe or the Flour,  
For well I wote that ye han here beforne  
Of making ropen and lad awaie the corne,  
And I come astir glening here and there,  
And am full glad if I maie finde an ere  
Of any godely worde that ye han leste;  
And though it happe me to reherfin est  
That ye han in your freshe songis saied  
Forberith me, and beth not ill apaied,  
Sith that ye se I doe it in the honour  
Of Love, and eke in service of the flour,

\* Some ladies in the court took offence at Chaucer's large speeches against the untruth of women, therefore the Queen enjoined him to compile this book in the commendation of tundry maidens and wives who shewed themselves faithful to faithless men. This seems to have been written after *The Flower and the Leaf*.

Whom that I serve as I have wit or might;  
 She is the clerenesse and the very light  
 That in this derke world me windith and ledeth;  
 The hert within my wofull brest you dredeth  
 And loveth so fore, that ye ben verily  
 The maistris of my wit and nothing I;  
 My worde, my workes, is knit so in your bonde,  
 That as an harpe obeyith to the honde,  
 And makith sounne aftir his fingiring,  
 Right so mowe ye out of mine hertè bring  
 Soch voice right as you list to laugh or pain;  
 Be ye my guide and ladie soverain:  
 As to mine yerthly god to you I call  
 Bothe in this werke and my sorowis all.  
 But wherfore that I spake to yeve credence  
 To old stories, and doen 'hem revèrence,  
 And that men mustin morè thing bileve  
 Than men may sene at eye or ellis preve,  
 That shall I seyn whan that I se my time;  
 I maie not all at onis speke in rime;  
 My busie ghost, that thurstith alwaie newe  
 To sene this flour so yong, so freshe of hewe,  
 Constrained me with so gredie desire  
 That in mine herte I felin yet the fire  
 That madè me to rise er it were daie,  
 And this was now the first morowe of Maie,  
 With dredfull herte and glad devocion  
 For to ben at the resurrection  
 Of this flourè, whan that it shoulde unclofe  
 Again the sunne, that rose as redde as rose,  
 That in the brest was of the best that daie  
 That Agenor's doughtir ladde awaie;  
 And doune on knees anon right I me sette,  
 And as I could this freshe floure I grette,  
 Kneling alwaie till it unclofid was  
 Upon the small, and soft, and swetè gras,  
 That was with flouris swete embroudid al,  
 Of soche swetnesse and soche odour oer all  
 That for to spekin of gomme, herbe, or tre,  
 Comparisoun maie none imakid be,  
 For it surmountith plainly all odoures,  
 And of riche beaute the most gaye of floutes.  
 Forgottin had the yerth his pore estate  
 Of wintir, that him nakid made and mate,  
 And with his sward of colde so forè greved;  
 Now hath the atempre sennè al that releved  
 That nakid was, and clad it newe again;  
 The smallè foulis, of the seson fain,  
 That of the panter and the net ben scaped,  
 Upon the foulir that 'hem made awhaped  
 In wintir, and destroyid had ther brode,  
 In his dispite them thought it did 'hem gode  
 To sing of him, and in ther song dispise  
 The foulè chorle that for his covitise  
 Had 'hem betrayid with his sophistrie:  
 This was ther song; The foulir we desie,  
 And all his crafte: and some yfongin clere  
 Lays of love, that joie it was to here,  
 In worshipping and praising of her make,  
 And for the newè blisfull somir's sake;  
 Upon the braunchis full of blofms soft  
 In ther delite thei tournid 'hem full oft,  
 And songin, Blissid be Sainct Valentine!  
 For on his daie I chese you to be mine,

Withoutin repenting, mine hertè swete!  
 And therwithall their beakis gonnin mete,  
 Yelding honour and humble obeisaunce  
 To Love, and didden ther othir observaunce  
 That longith unto love and to nature;  
 Confrewe that as you list; I doe no cure:  
 And tho that had doin unkindenesse,  
 As doeth the tidise for newefangelnesse,  
 Besoughtin mercie of ther trespassing,  
 And humilly songin ther repenting,  
 And sworin on the blofms to be try,  
 So that ther makis would upon 'hem rue:  
 And at the last thei madin ther acorde,  
 All found thei Daungir for the time a lorde,  
 Yet Pite thorough his strong gentill might  
 Forgave, and madè mercy pafin right  
 Through Innocence and rudid Curtesie;  
 But I ne clepe nat innocence folie,  
 Ne false pite, for vertue is the mene,  
 As Ethicke saith, in soche manir I mene:  
 And thus these foulis, voide of all malice,  
 Accordidin to love, and lastin vice  
 Of hate, and songin all of one acorde,  
 Welcome Sommir, our governour and lorde!  
 And Zephyras and Flora gentilly  
 Yave to the flouris soft and tendirly  
 Ther sotè breth, and made 'hem for to sprede,  
 As god and goddesse of the floure mede,  
 In whiche me thought I might daie by daie  
 Dwellin alwaie the joly monthe of Maie  
 Withoutin slepe, withoutin mete or drinke:  
 Adoune full softly I gan to sinke,  
 And lening on my elbowe and my side  
 The longè daie I shope me for to abide,  
 For nothing ellis, and I shall nat lie,  
 But for to lokin upon the Daie,  
 That well by reson men it callè maie  
 The Daie, or els the eye of the daie,  
 The emprise, and the floure of flouris all  
 I praie to God that faire mote she fall,  
 And all that lovin flouris for her sake!  
 But nathelèsse ne wene nat that I make  
 In praisin of the Floure again the Lefe  
 No more than of the corne again the shefe,  
 For as to me n'is levir none no lother;  
 I n'am withholdin yet with neithir nother,  
 Ne' I n'ot who servith Lefe ne who the Floure;  
 Well broukin thei ther service or laboure;  
 For this thing is all of anothir tonne,  
 Of old storie, er soche thing was begonne.  
 Whan that the sunne out of the south gan west,  
 And that this floure gan close and gon to rest,  
 For derknes of the night the whiche she drede,  
 Home to mine house full swiftly I me spedè  
 To gone to rest, and erly for to rise  
 To sene this floure to sprede as I devise;  
 And in a little herbir that I have,  
 That benchid was of turvis fresh igrave,  
 I bad men shoulidin me my couchè make;  
 For deinte of the newè sommir's sake  
 I bad 'hem strawin flouris on my bedde:  
 Whan I was laied and had mine eyin hedde  
 I fell aslepe, and slept an houre or two,  
 Me met how I laie in the midowe the

To fene this floure that I love so and drede,  
 And from aserre came walking in the mede  
 The god of Love, and in his hande a quene,  
 And she was clad in roiall habite grene,  
 A fret of goldè she had next her here,  
 And upon that a white coroune she bere  
 With flourounis small, and, I shall nat lie,  
 For all the worldè right as a Daïsie  
 Terounid is, with whitè levis lite,  
 So were the flourounis of her crounè white,  
 For of o perlè fine orientall  
 Her whitè coroune was inakid all,  
 For which the white coroune above the grene  
 Ymade her like a Daïsie for to fene,  
 Confidrid eke ! er fret of gold above;  
 Iclothid was this mightie god of Love  
 In silke embroidid, full of grenè greves,  
 In whiche there was a fret of red rose leves,  
 The freshest sees the worldè was first bigon;  
 His gilt here was yerounid with a son  
 In stede of gold, for hevynesse and weicht,  
 Therwith me thought his face shone so bright  
 That weill unnethis might I him behold,  
 And in his hand methought I sawe him hold  
 Two fire darts as the gledis rede,  
 And angelike his wingis sawe I sprede;  
 And all be that men sain that blinde is he  
 Algas me thought that he might wele se,  
 For sternly on me he gan behold,  
 So that his lokyng deth min herte cold;  
 And by the hande he helde this noble quene,  
 Crounid with white, and clothid al in grene,  
 So womanly, so benigne, and so meke,  
 That in this worldè though that men woldin seke  
 Halfe her beaute ne shouldin thei nat finde  
 In cature that yformid is by Kinde,  
 And therefore maie I sain, as thinkith me,  
 This song in praisyng of this ladie fre:  
 Hide, Absolon, thy giltè tressis clere,  
 Hester, laie thou thy mekenesse all adoun,  
 Hide, Jonathas, all thy frendly manere,  
 Penelope, and Marcia Catoun,  
 Make of your wisehede no comparisoun,  
 Hide ye your beauties fonde and folein,  
 My ladie cometh, that all this maie distain.  
 Thy faire bodie ne let it not appere  
 Lavine, and thou Lucrece of Rome toun,  
 And Polyxene, that boughtin love so dere,  
 And Cleopatra, with all thy passioun,  
 Hide ye your trouthe of love and your renoun,  
 And thou Thisbe, that hast of love soche pain,  
 My ladie cometh, that all this maie distain.  
 Hero, Dido, Laodomia, ifere,  
 And Phyllis, hanging for Demophaon,  
 And Canace, espyd by thy chere,  
 Hyppipyle, betrayid by Jason,  
 Askith of your trouthe neither losse ne foun,  
 Nor Hypernuestra or Ariadne, ye twaine,  
 My ladie cometh, that all this maie distain.  
 This balade maie full well isongin be,  
 As I have said erst, by my ladie fre,  
 For certainly all theise mowe not suffice  
 To apperin with my ladie in no wise,

For as the sunnè woll the fire distain,  
 So passith all my ladie soverain,  
 That is so gode, so faire, so debonaire,  
 I praie to God that evir fall her faire!  
 For ne had comfort ben of her presence  
 I had ben dedde without any defence  
 For drede of lov'is wordis and his chere,  
 As whan time is hereaftir ye shall here.  
 Behinde this god of Love upon the grene  
 I sawe coming of ladyis ninetene,  
 In roial habit, a full esie pace,  
 And aftir them of women soche a trace  
 That kas that God Adam had made of yerth  
 The thirde part of mankinde, or the firth,  
 Ne wende I nat by possibilite  
 Had evir in this wide worldè ibe,  
 And true of love these women were echon:  
 Now whether was that a wondir thing or non,  
 That right anon as that thei gonne espie  
 This floure whiche that I clepe the Daïsie,  
 Full sodainly thei stantin all at ones,  
 And knelid doune as it were for the nones,  
 And songin with o voice, *Hele and bonour*  
*To trouth of womanhede, and to this flour,*  
*That berith our aldir prife in figuring,*  
*Her white coroune berith the witnesing!*  
 And with that worde a compas environn  
 Thei sittin 'hem full softly adoun:  
 First sat the god of Love, and sith his quene,  
 With the white coroune, yclad all in grene,  
 And sithin all the remnaunt by and by,  
 As thei were of estate, full curtilly;  
 Ne nat a worde was spokin in the place  
 The mountenance of a furlong waie of space.  
 I kneling by this floure in gode entent  
 Abode to knowin what this peple ment  
 As still as any stone, till at the last  
 This god of Love on me his eyin cast,  
 And said, Who knelith there? and I answerd  
 Unto his asking whan that I it herde,  
 And said, Sir, It am I, and come him nere,  
 And salued him. (Quod he) What doest thou here  
 So nigh mine ownè floure so boldily?  
 It werin bettir worthy truely  
 A worme to nighin nere my flour than thou.  
 And why, Sir, (quod I) and it likith you?  
 For thou (quod he) art therto nothing able;  
 It is my relike digne and delitable,  
 And thou my so, and all my folke werriest,  
 And of mine old servauntis thou misfaiest,  
 And hindrist 'hem with thy translacon,  
 And lettist folke from ther devocion  
 To servin me, and holdist it folie  
 To servin Love; thou maiest it nat denie,  
 For in plain text, withoutin nede of glose,  
 Thou' hast translatid The Romaunt of the Rose,  
 That is an heresie ayenst my lawe,  
 And makist wise folke fro me to withdrawe;  
 And of Creseide thou hast saide as the list,  
 That makith men to women lesse to triste,  
 That ben as trewe as er was any stele:  
 Of thine answer avisin the right wele,  
 For though that thou renyid hast my lawe  
 As othir wretchis have done many a daie,



By Seint Venus, which that my mothir is,  
If that thou live thou shalt repent in this  
So cruilly that it shal wel be sene.

Thou spake this lady, clothid all in grene,  
And sayid, God, right of your curtilie  
Ye mote herkin if that he can replie  
Ayenit al this that ye have to him meved;  
A God ne shoulde nat be thus agreved,  
But of his deite he shall be stable,  
And therto gracious and merciable,  
And if ye n'ere a god that knowin all  
Than might it be, as I you tellin shall,  
This man to you maie fallfely ben accused,  
That as by right him oughtin ben excused,  
For in your court is many' a losingeour,  
And many a queint totoler accusour  
That tabouren in your cris many' a soun  
Right after ther imaginacioun  
To have your daliaunce, and for envy;  
Thele ben the causis, and, I shal nat lie,  
Envie is lave'ndir of the court alwaie,  
For she ne partith neithir night ne daie  
Out of the house of Cesar, thus saith Dant,  
Who so that goeth algate she wol nat want.

And eke paraunter for this man is nice  
He mightin done it, gessing no malice,  
But for he usith thingis for to make  
Him reckish nought of what matir he take,  
Or him was bodin makin thilke tway  
Of some persone, and durst it nat withsey,  
Or him repentith attirly of this,  
He ne' hath nat done so grevously amis  
To translatin that old clerkis writen,  
As though that he of malice would caditen  
Dispite of Love, and had himselfe it wrought;  
This shoulde a rightwile lorde have in his thought,  
And nat be like tirauntes of Lombardie,  
That han no rewarde but at tirannie;  
For he that king or lorde is naturel,  
Him ought not be a tiraunt ne cruel  
As a fermour, to done the harme he can,  
He must thinkin it is his liege man,  
As is his tresour, and his golde in cofer,  
This is the sentence of the philosopher;  
A kinge to kepe his liegis in justice,  
Withoutin doute that is his office,  
Al wol he kepe his lordes in ther degre,  
As it is right and skil that thei shoulde be  
Enhauusid and honourid, and most dere,  
For thei ben halfegoddis in this world here,  
Yet mote he done both right to pore and riche,  
Al be that ther estate be nath both liche,  
And have of povir folke compassion;  
For lo the gentil kinde of the lion!  
For whan a flie offendith him or biteth  
He with his taile awaie the flie yfmiteth  
Al esily, for of his genterie  
Him deinit nat to wroke him on a flie,  
As doeth a curre or els anothir best;  
In noble corage ought to ben arest,  
And wayin every thinge by equite,  
And have regarde unto his owne degre;  
For, Sir, it is no maistrise for a lorde  
To dampne a man without answere of word

And for a lorde that is ful foule to use;  
And it so be he maie him nat excuse,  
But askith mercy with a dredeful herte,  
And profitith him right in his bare therte  
To ben right at your owne jugement,  
Than ought a god by short avisement  
Considre his owne honour and his trespas,  
For sith no cause of deth lieth in this case  
You ought to ben the lightlier merciabie:  
Lettith your ire, and beth somewhat trefable;  
The man hath servid you of his conninges,  
And forhrid well your law in his makenges;  
Al be it that he can nat wel endite,  
Yet hath he madin leude folke delite  
To servin you, in preiling of your name;  
He made the boke that hight The House of Fame,  
And eke The Deth of Blaunche the Duchesse,  
And The Parliament of Foules, as I gesse,  
And al The Love of Palamon and Arcite  
Of Thebis, though the storie is knowen lite,  
And many an hymne for your holy daies,  
That hightin Balades, Rondils, Viralaies;  
And for to speke of othir holinesse,  
He hath in prof. translatid Boece,  
And made The Life also of Saint Cecile,  
He madin also, gon is a grete while,  
Origines upon the Maudelaine,  
Him oughtin now to have the leste paine;  
He hath made many' a ley and many' a thing.

Now as ye be a god and eke a king,  
I your Alceste, whilom Quene of Thebes,  
I aske you this man right of your grace  
That ye him nevir hurte in al his live,  
And he shal swerin to you, and that blive,  
He shal ner more agiltin in this wise,  
But shal makin as ye wol him devise  
Of women trewe in loving al their life,  
Where so ye wol of maidin or of wife,  
And fordrin you as muche as he misseide  
Or in The Rose, or ellis in Cresseide.

The god of Love answerde her thus  
Madame, (quod he) it is so longe agon  
That I you knew so charitable and trewe,  
That nevir yet sithin the worlde was newe  
To me ne founde I bettir none than ye;  
If that I wol yfavin my degre  
I may nor wol nat werne your request;  
Al lieth in you; doth with him as you lest.

I al foryeve withoutin lengir space,  
For who so yeveth a yeste or doth a grace  
Do it betime, his thanke shal be the more,  
And demith ye what he shal do therefore.

Go, thankith now my lady here (quod he.)  
I rose, and down I set me on my kne,  
And sayid thus; Madame, the God above  
For yeld you that ye the god of Love  
Have makid me his wrath to foryeve,  
And give me grace so long for to live  
That I maie know sothily what ye be  
That have me holpen and put in this degre!  
But trewily I wende as in this caas  
Nought have agilt ne done to Love trespas;  
For why? a newe man withoutin drede  
Hath nat to partin with a thev's dede;

Ne a trewe lovir ought me not to blame  
 Though that I speke a false lovir some shame,  
 Thei oughtin rather with me for to holde  
 For that I of Creside wrote or tolde,  
 Or of the Rose; what so mine author ment  
 Algis God wote it was mine entent  
 To forthrin trowth in love, and it chesice;  
 And to ben ware fro falsenesse and fro vice,  
 By whiche ensample this was my mening.  
 And she answerde, Let be thine arguing,  
 For Love ne wol not countirpleid be  
 In right ne wrong, and lerne that of me;  
 Thou hast thy grace, and holde the right therto;  
 Now woll I saie what penaunce thou shalt do  
 For thy trespass: Understandith it here  
 Thou shalt while that thou livist yere by yere  
 The moste partie of thy time spende  
 In making of a glorious Legende  
 Of gode Women, both maidinis and wives,  
 That werin trewe in loving all ther lives,  
 And tellin of false men that hem betraien;  
 That al ther life ne do nat but assaen  
 How many women thei maie done a shame,  
 For in your world that is nat holde a game;  
 And though that the like nat a lovir be  
 Speke wel of love, this penaunce yeve I the,  
 And to the god of Love I shal so praie  
 That he shal charge his servantes by any waie  
 To forthrin the, and wel thy labour quite;  
 Go now thy waie, this penaunce is but lite;  
 And when this boke is made yeve it the Quene  
 On my behalfe, at Eltham or at Shene.  
 The god of Love gan smile, and than he seide;  
 Wost thou (quod he) wher this be wife or maide,  
 Or quene or countesse, or of what degre,  
 That hath so litill penaunce yevin the,  
 That hast deservid forely for to smerte?  
 But pite rennith sone in gentle herte,  
 That maist thou sene; sh. kithith what she is.  
 And I answerde, Naie, Sir, so have I blis,  
 No more but that I se wel she is gode.  
 That is a trewe tale by mine hode  
 (Quod Love) and that thou knowist wel parde;  
 If it be so that thou avise the:  
 Hast thou nat in a boké in thy chesice  
 The grette godenesse of the Quene Alceste,  
 That turnid was into a Däiesie,  
 She that for her husbondé chese to die,  
 And eke to gone to hell rathir than he,  
 And Hercules rescuid her parde,  
 And brought her out of hel againe to blis?  
 And I answerde againe, and sayid, Yes;  
 Now know I her; and is this gode Alceste,  
 The Däiesie, and mine owne hert's reste?  
 Now se I wel the godenesse of this wife,  
 That both astir her deth and in her life  
 Her grette bounte doublith her renoun,  
 Wel hath she quit me mine affectioun

That I have to her flour the Däiesie;  
 No wondir is though Jove her stellifie,  
 As tellith Agaton, for her godenesse,  
 Her white corowne berith of it witnesse,  
 For all so many virtuis had she  
 As final florounis in her crowne be;  
 In remembraunce of her and in honour  
 Cybilla made the Däiesie, and the flour  
 Icrownid all with white, as men maie se,  
 And Mars yave her a corown red parde,  
 In stede of rubies set among the white;  
 Therwith this quene woxe red for shame alite  
 When she was praisid so in her presence.  
 Than sayid Love, A ful grete negligence  
 Was it to the, that ilké time thou made  
 (*Hide, Alceste, thy tressis*) in balade,  
 That thou forgette her in thy songe to sette,  
 Sir that thou art so gretty in her dette,  
 And wotist wel that kalender is she  
 To any woman that wol lovir be;  
 For she taught all the craste of trewe loving,  
 And namily of wifchode the living,  
 And all the bondis that she ought to kepe;  
 Thy litil witte was thilké time aslepe;  
 But now I charge the upon thy life  
 That in thy Legende thou make of this wife,  
 When thou hast othir smale imade before;  
 And fare now wel, I charge the no more,  
 But er I go this muche I wol the tel,  
 Ne shal no trewe lovir come in hel.  
 These othir ladies sitting here arowe  
 Ben in my balade, if thou const hem knowe,  
 And in thy bokis al thou shalt hem finde,  
 Have hem now in thy Legende al in minde,  
 I mene of them that ben in thy knowing,  
 For here ben twenty thousande mo sitting  
 Than that thou knowist, and gode women al,  
 And trewe of love, for ought that maie befall;  
 Makith the metris of hem as the leste,  
 I mote gone home, the sunne drawith weste,  
 To Paradis, with al this companie,  
 And servin alwaie the fresh Däiesie:  
 At Cleopatra I wol that thou beginne,  
 And so forthe, and my love so shalt thou winne;  
 For let se now what man that lovir be  
 Wol done so strong a paine for love as she.  
 I wote wel that thou maist not al it rime  
 That sache loviris diddin in ther time;  
 It were to longe to redin and to here;  
 Suffisith me thou make in this manere,  
 That thou reherce of al ther life the grete,  
 Astir these olde authors liste for to trete;  
 For who so shal so many a storie tel  
 Sey shortily, or he shal to longe dwell.  
 And with that worde my bokis gan I take,  
 And right thus on my Legende gan I make

HERE BEGINNETH

## THE LEGENDE OF CLEOPATRA,

QUENE OF EGYPTE.

After the dethe of Ptolemy the King,  
 That all Egypt had in his governing,  
 Reignid his suster Quene Cleopatras,  
 'Til on a time bifel there fuche a cas  
 That out of Rome was sent a senatour  
 To conquerin relmis, and bring honour  
 Unto the toun of Rome, as was usaunce,  
 To have the worlde at her obēsaunce,  
 And, sothe to saie, Antonius was his name.  
 So fil it, as Fortune him ought a shame,  
 Whan he was fallin in prosperite  
 Rebel unto the toun of Rome is he,  
 And or al this the suster of Cæsar  
 He left her falsely, er that she was ware,  
 And would algatis han anothir wfe,  
 For whiche he toke with Rome and Cæsar strife.

Nathelesse, for sothe this ilkē senatour  
 Was a ful worthy gentil werriour,  
 And of his deth it was ful grete damage;  
 But Love had brought this man in such a rage,  
 And him so narrow boundin in his laas,  
 And al for the love of Cleopatras,  
 That al the world he set at no value;  
 Him thought there was nothing to him so due  
 As Cleopatras for to love and ferve;  
 Him roughtē nat in armis for to ferve  
 In the defence of her and of her right.

'This noble Quene eke lovid so this knight  
 Through his deserte and for his chivalrie,  
 As certainlie, but if that bokis lie,  
 He was of person and of gentilnesse,  
 And of discretion and of hardinesse,  
 Worthy to any wight that livin maie,  
 And she was faire as is the rose in Maie;  
 And, for to makin shorte is the best,  
 She woxe his wife, and had him as her left.

The wedding and the festē to devise,  
 To me that have itakin fuche emprise  
 Of so many a storie for to make,  
 It were to longe, lest that I shoulde flake

Of thing that berith more effecte and charge,  
 For men maie ovirlade a shippe or barge;  
 And forthy to effecte than wol I kippe,  
 And al the remnaunt I wol let it slippe.

Ætavian, that wode was of this dede,  
 Shope him an hoste on Antony to lede,  
 Al uttirly for his distruction,  
 With stoute Romainis, cruil as lion:  
 To ship thei went; and thus I let 'hem faile.

Antonius was ware, and wol not faile  
 To metin with these Romaines if he maie,  
 Toke eke his rede, and both upon a daie  
 His wife and he, and al his host, forth went  
 To ship anone, no lengir thei ne stent,  
 And in the se it happed 'hem to mete;  
 Up goeth the trumpe, and for to shoute and shete,  
 And painin 'hem to set on with the sunne;  
 With grisly foune out goith the grete gonne,  
 And hertily thei hurtlin al at ones,  
 And fro the top doune comith the grete stones,  
 In goth the grapinel so ful of crokes  
 Among the ropis ran the shering hokes,  
 In with the polaxe prefith he and he,  
 Behinde the maste beginnith he to fle,  
 And out againe, and drivith him or borde,  
 He stickith him upon his sper's orde,  
 He rent the saile with hokis like a sithe,  
 He bringeth the cuppe, and biddith 'hem be blith,  
 He pourith presen upon the hatchis slider,  
 With pottis ful of lime thei gon togider.

And thus the longe daie in fight thei spende,  
 Til at the last, as every thing hath ende,  
 Antonius is shent and put to flight,  
 And al his folke to go that best go might,  
 Fleeth eke the Quene, with al her purple saile,  
 For strokis whiche that went as thicke as haile;  
 No wondir was, she might it nat endure:  
 And whan Antony sawe that avinture,  
 Alas (quod he) the daie that I was borne!  
 My worship in this daie thus have I lorne,



LEGENDE OF CLEOPATRA, QUENE OF EGYPTE.

427

And for dispaire out of his witte he sterte,  
And rose himfelle anon throughout the herte  
For that he ferthir went out of the place:  
His wife, that could of Cæsar have no grace,  
To Egypt fled for drede and for distresse;  
But herkenith, ye that spekin of kindenesse.

Ye men that falsely swerin many' an othe  
That ye wol die if that your love be wrothe,  
Here maie ye sene of women such a trowth  
This woful Cleopatre' had made suche routh  
That there n'is tonge none that maie it tel,  
But on the' morowe she wol no lengir dwel,  
But made her subtil werkmen make a shrine  
Of al the rubies and the stonis fine  
In al Egypt which that she coude espie,  
And she put ful the shrine of spicèrie,  
And lette the corse enbaume, and forth she sette  
This ded corse, and she in the shrine is shette;  
And next the shrine a pit than doth she grave,  
And al the serpentis that she might have  
She put 'hem in that grave, and thus she seide;  
Now love, to whom my sorowful hert obeide  
So ferforthly, that fro that blisful hour  
That I you swore to ben al frely your,

I mene you, Antonius, my knight,  
That nevir waking in the daie or night  
Ye n'ere out of mine hert's remembraunce,  
For wele or wo, for carole or for daunce,  
And in my selfe this covenant made I tho,  
That right suche as ye feltin, wele or wo,  
As ferforth as it in my power laie,  
Unreprovable' unto my wifehode aie,  
The same would I felin in life or dethe,  
And thilkè covenant while me lastith brethe  
I wol fulfil, and that shal wel be sene,  
Was ner unto her love a trewir quene;  
And with that word nakid, with ful gode hert,  
Among the serpentis in the pitte she stert,  
And there she chese to have her burying:  
Anone the nedirs gonne her for to sting,  
And she her deth recevith with god chere,  
For love of Antony that was her dere;  
And this is storial sothe, it is no fable.  
Now er I finde a man thus trewe and stable,  
And wol for love his deth so frely take,  
I praie God let our hedis nevir ake!

D d iij

## HERE FOLLOWETH

## THE LEGENDE OF THISBE

## OF BABYLONE.

At Babylone whilom fil it thus,  
 The whiche toun the Quene Simiranius  
 Let dichin al about, and wallis make  
 Full hic of hardè tilis wel ibake :  
 There werin dwelling in this noble toun  
 Two lordis which that were of grete renoun,  
 And wonidin so nigh upon a grene  
 That there n'as but a stone wal 'hem bitwene,  
 As oft in grete tounis is the womne,  
 And, sothe to saine, that one man had a sonne  
 Of al that londe oie of the lustyist,  
 That othir had a daughter the fairist  
 That estward in the world was the dwelling ;  
 The name of everiche gan to othir spring,  
 By women that were neighbouris aboute,  
 For in that cowntre yet withoutin doute  
 Maidinis ben ikepte for jelousie  
 Fui straitely, lest thei giddin some folie.

This younge man was clepid Pyramus,  
 And Thisbe hight the maide (Naso saith thus)  
 And thus by reporte was ther name islove,  
 That as thei woxe in age so woxe ther love ;  
 And certaine, as by reson of ther age,  
 Ther might have ben betwixt 'hem mariage,  
 But that ther fathirs n'olde it nat assent ;  
 And thei in love ylike fore bothè brent  
 That none of al ther frendis might it lette,  
 But privily somtunis yet thei mette  
 By sleight, and spakin some of ther desire,  
 As wrie the glede and hottir is the fire ;  
 Forbid a love and it is ten times so wode.

This wal which that betwixt 'hem both ystode  
 Was cloven atwo right fro the top adoun  
 Of oldè time of his foundacioun,  
 But yet this clifte was so narow and lite  
 It was nat senè, (dere inough a mite)

But what is that that love can not espie ?  
 Ye levirs two, if that I shal nat lie,  
 Ye foundin first this litle narowe clifte,  
 And with a founde as softe as any shrifte  
 Thei let ther wordis through the clifte pace,  
 And toldin, while that thei stoden in the place,  
 Al ther complaint of love and al ther wo,  
 At every time whan thei durstin so.

Upon that one side of the wal stode he,  
 And on that other side stode Thisbe,  
 The swete soune of othir to receve,  
 And thus ther wardeins woldin thei disceve,  
 And every daie this wal thei woldin threte,  
 And wish to God that it were down ibete ;  
 Thus wold thei saine, Alas ! thou wickid wal,  
 Thorough thine envie thou us lettist al ;  
 Why n'ilt thou cleve or fallin al atwo ?  
 Or at the lestè, but thou woldist so,  
 Yet woldist thou but onis let us mete,  
 Or onis that we mightin kisin swete,  
 Than were we curid of our caris colde ;  
 But nathèlesse yet be we to the holde,  
 In as much as thou suffrist for to gone  
 Our wordis through thy lime and eke thy stone,  
 Yet oughtin we with the ben wel apaide.

And whan these idil wordis werin saide  
 The coldè wal thei woldin kisse of stone,  
 And take ther leve, and forth thei woldin gone,  
 And this was gladly in the evintide,  
 Or wondir erly, lest men it espide :  
 And longè time thei wrought in this manere,  
 Til on a daie, whan Phœbus gan to clere,  
 Aurora with the stremis of her hete  
 Had dryid up the dewe of herbis wete,  
 Unto this clifte, as it was wonte to be,  
 Come Pyramus, and astir come Thisbe,

And plightin trouth right fully in ther faie,  
That ilke same night to stele awaie,  
And to begile ther wardeins everichone,  
And forth out of the cite for to gone;  
And for the feldis ben so brode and wide  
For to metin in o place at o tide  
Thei settin markes ther metingis should be  
There King Ninus was graven undir a tre,  
For olde Pajims, that idollis heried,  
Usidin tho in feldis to ben beried;  
And faste by his grave was a wel,  
And shortly of this tale for to tel,  
This covenant was affirmid wondir fast,  
And longe hem thoughtin that the sonne last,  
That it n'ere gone undir the se adoun.

This Thisbe hath so grete affectioun,  
And so grete liking Pyramus to se,  
That whan she sawe her time might ybe  
At night she stole awaie ful privily,  
With her face iwimplid full subtilly,  
For al her frendis (for to save her trouthe)  
She hath forsake, alas! and that is routhe,  
That evir woman would ybe so trewe  
To trustin man but she the bet him knewe;  
And to the tre she goeth a ful gode pace,  
For love made her so hardy in this case,  
And by the welle adoun she gan her dresse.  
Alas! than comith a wilde lionesse  
Out of the wode, withoutin more arest;  
With blode mouthe of strangling of a best,  
To drinkin of the wel there as she sat;  
And whan that Thisbe had espyid that  
She rist her up with a ful drery herte,  
And in a cave with dredful fote she sterte,  
For by the mone she sawe it wel withall,  
And as she ran her wimple let she fall,  
And toke none hede, so fore she was awhaped,  
And eke so glad for that she was escaped;  
And thus she sat and lurkith wondir still.  
Whan that this lionesse hath dronke her fill  
Aboutin the well gan she for to winde,  
And right anon the wimple gan she finde,  
And with her bloody mouthe it al to rente;  
Whan this was done no lengir she ne stente,  
But to the wode her way than hath she nome.

And at the last this Pyramus is come,  
But al to longe, alas! at home was he;  
The mone shone, men mightin wel se;  
And in his waie, as that he come ful fast,  
His eyin to the grounde adoun he cast,  
And in the sonde, as he behelde adoun,  
He saw the steppis brode of a lioun,  
And in his hert he sodainly agrose,  
And pale he wexte, therwith his hert agrose,  
And nere he came, and founde the wimple torne;  
Alas (quod he) the daie that I was borne!  
This o night wol both us loviris se;  
How should I askin mercy of Thisbe  
Whan I am he that have you slaine? alas!  
My biding hath you slaine in this caas:  
Alas! to bidde a woman gone by night  
In place there as perill fallin might,  
And I so slowe: alas! I ne had be  
Here in this place a furionge waie er ye.

Now what lioun that is in this forest  
My body mote he rentin, or what best  
That wilde is, gnawin mote he now mine herte.  
And with that word he to the wimple sterte,  
And kiste it ofte, and wepte on it ful fore,  
And said, Wimple, alas! there n'is no more,  
But thou shalt fele as well the blode of me  
As thou hast felte the bleding of Thisbe:  
And with that worde he smote him to the herte,  
The blode out of the wounde as rode asterte  
As watir, whan the conduite brokin is.

Now Thisbe, which that ne wist not of this,  
But sitting in her drede she thoughte thus,  
Yf it so fallin that my Pyramus  
Be comen hithir, and may me nat ifinde,  
He maie me holdin false and eke unkinde.  
And out she cometh, and astir him gan spien  
Both with her herie and eke with her eien,  
And thought I wol him tellin of my drede  
Both of the lionesse and of my dede;  
And at the last her love than hath she founde  
Ybeting with his helis on the grounde  
Al bloody, and therwithal abacke she sterte,  
And like the wawis quappe began her herte,  
And pale as boxe she woxe, and in a throwe  
Awid her, and gan him wel to knowe,  
That it was Pyramus, her herte dere:  
O! who could writin whiche a dedly chere  
Hath Thisbe now! and how her here she rent,  
And how she gan her selfin to turment,  
And how she lieth and swounich on the ground,  
And how she wept of teris ful his wounde,  
How medlith she his blode with her complaint,  
How with her blod her seivin gan she paint,  
How clippith she the red ded corse, alas!  
How doth this woful Thisbe in this caas,  
How kistith she his frosty mouthe so colde!  
Who hath don this? and who hath ben so bolde  
To fleen my life? o! speke my Pyramus,  
I am thy Thisbe that the callith thus;  
And therwithal she listith up his hed.

This wofull man, that was nat fully ded,  
Whan that he herde the name of Thisbe crien,  
On her he cast his hevy dedly eyen,  
And doun againe, and yeldith up the gost.

Thisbe rist up withoutin noife or host,  
And saw her wimple and his empty sheth,  
And eke his swerde, that him hath don to deth,  
Than spake she thus; My woful hande (quod she)  
Is stronge inough in suche a werke to me,  
For love shal yeve me strength and hardinesse  
To make my wounde large inough I gessie;  
I wol the solowen ded, and I wol be  
Felawe and cause eke of thy deth, (quod she)  
And though that nothing save the deth only  
Might the fro me departin trewily,  
Thou shalt no more departin now fro me  
Than fro the deth, for I wol go with the.

And now, ye wretchid jelouse fathirs our,  
We that ywerin whilom childrin your,  
We prayin you withoutin more envie  
That in o grave we both motin lie,  
Sens love hath brought us to this pitous ende;  
And rightwise God to every lovir sende,



That lovith trowly, more prosperite  
 Than evir had Pyramus and Thisbe,  
 And let no gentil woman her assure  
 To puttin her in suche an avinture:  
 But God forbid but that a woman can  
 Ben as true and as loving as a man,  
 And for my part I shal anon it kith;  
 And with that word his swerd she tokè swith,  
 That warme was of her lov'is blode and hote,  
 And to the hertè she her selvin smote.

And thus are Thisbe' and Pyramus ago:  
 Of trewè men I findin but fewe mo  
 In al my bokis save this Pyramus,  
 And therefore have I spokin of him thus,  
 For it is deinte to us men to finde  
 A man that can in love be trewe and kinde.  
 Here maie ye sene, what lovir so he be,  
 A woman dare and can as wel as he.

HERE FOLOWETH

# THE LEGENDE OF DIDO

QUENE OF CARTHAGE.

GLORIE and honour, Virgile Mantuan,  
Be to thy name, and I shal as I can  
Folowe thy lanterne as thou goest besorne,  
How Æneas to Dido was forsworne  
In thine Æneide, and Nase wol I take  
The ten ur and the gret effectis make.  
Whan Troee ybrought was to distruction  
By Grekis sleight, and namely by Sinon  
Faning the horse offrid unto Minerve,  
Through which that many a Trojan must sterue,  
And Hector had aftir his deth apered,  
And fire so wode that it might nat ben stered,  
In al the noble toure of Illion,  
That of the cite was the chefe dongeon,  
And al the countre was so lowe ibrought,  
And Priamus the king fordone and nought,  
And Æneas was chargid by Venus  
To flien awaie, he toke Ascanius,  
That was his son, in his right hande and fledde,  
And on his backe he bare and with him ledde  
His oldè fathir clepid Anchises,  
And by the waie his wife Creusa he lese;  
And mokil sorow had he in his minde  
Er that he could his felawship yfinde,  
But at the last, whan he had 'hem yfounde,  
He made 'hem redy in a certaine stounde,  
And to the se ful fast he gap him hie,  
And sailith forth with al his companie  
Towards Itaile, as wold Destine:  
But of his aventuris in the se  
N'is nat to purpose for to speke of here,  
For it accordith nat to my matere;  
But as I said, of him and of Dido  
Shal be my talè til that I have do.  
So long he sailid in the saltè se  
Til in Libye unneth arrivid he

With shippis fevin, and no more navie,  
And glad he was to londè for to hie,  
So was he with the tempest al to shake;  
And whan that he the havin had itake  
He had a knight was callid Achates,  
And him of all his felowship he chese  
To gon with him the countre for t'espie,  
He ne toke with him no more companie.  
But forthe thei gon, and left his shippis ride,  
His fere and he, withoutin any guide.  
So long he walkith in this wildirnesse;  
Till at the last he met an huntireffe;  
A bowe in honde and arowis had she,  
Her clothis cuttid were unto the kne,  
But she was yet the fairist creature  
That evir was iformid by Nature,  
And Æneas and Achates she grette,  
And thus she to 'hem spake whan she 'hem met:  
Saw ye, (quod she) as ye han walkid wide,  
Any of my fustrin walke you beside  
With any wildè bore or othir best,  
That thei have huntid to in this forest,  
Ituckid up, with arowes in ther caas?  
Naie, sothly, ladie, (quod this Æneas)  
But by thy beaute, as it thinkith me,  
Thou mightist nevir yerthly woman be,  
But Phoebus sustir art thou as I gesse,  
And if so be that thou be a goddesse  
Have mercie on our labour and our wo.  
I n'am no goddesse sothly, quod she tho,  
For maidins walkin in this countre here  
With arowes and with bow in this manere;  
This is the relme of Libye there ye ben,  
Of whiche that Dido ladie is and quene;  
And shortly tolde all the occasion  
Why Dido came into that region,

Of whiche as now me listith nat to rhyme;  
It nedith nat; it n'ere but losse of time;  
For this is all and some, it was Venus,  
His owne mothir, that spake with him thus:  
And to Carthage she bade he should him dight,  
And vanisid anon out of his sight.  
I could folowin worde for worde Virgile,  
But it would lastin all to longe while.

This noble Quene, that clepid was Dido,  
That whilom was the wife of Sichæo,  
That fairir was by ferr than the bright sonne,  
This noble toune of Carthage hath begonne,  
In whiche she reignith in so grete honour  
That she was holdin of all quenis flour  
Of gentillesse, of fredome, and beaute,  
That well was him that might her onis se,  
Of kingis and of lordis so desired,  
That all the worlde her beautie had ifired,  
She stode so well in every wight's grace.

Whan Æneas was come unto the place,  
Unto the maistir temple of all the toun,  
There Dido was in her devocioun,  
Full privily his waie than hath he nome:  
Whan he was into the large temple come  
I can not saie if that it be possible,  
But Venus had him makid invisible,  
Thus saith the boke, withoutin any lese.

And whan this Æneas and Achates  
Haddin in this temple ben ovir all,  
Than foundin thei depaintid on a wall  
How Troie and all the lande destroyid was;  
Alas that I was borne! (quod Æneas)  
Thorough the world our shame is kid so wide,  
Now it is paintid upon every side:  
All we that werin in prosperite  
Ben now diselaundrid, and in soche degre,  
No lengir for to livin I ne kepe;  
And with that word he brast out for to wepe  
So tendirly that routh it was to sene.

This freshe ladie, of the cite Quene,  
Stode in the temple in her estate roiall,  
So richily and eke so faire withall,  
So yong, so lussie, with her eyin glade,  
That if that God that hevin and yerth made  
Would have a love, for beaute and godenesse,  
And womanhede, and trouth and semelnesse,  
Whom should he lovin but this ladie swete?  
There n'is no woman to him half so mete.  
Fortune, that hath the world in govirnaunce,  
Hath sodajuly brought in so newe a chaunce  
That nevir was there yet so frened a caas,  
For all the companie of Æneas,  
Which that we wenid have lorne in the se,  
Arivid is nought ferre fro that cite,  
For whiche the gretis of his lordis some  
By avinture ben to the cite come,  
Unto that samè temple for to seke  
The Quene, and of her focour her beseke,  
Soche renome was ther sprong of her godenes.

And whan that thei had tolde all ther distres,  
And all ther tempest and all ther hard case,  
Unto the Quene apperid Æneas,  
And openly beknewe that it was he;  
Who haddin joie than but his meine,

That haddin found ther lorde, ther govirnour?

The Quene saw that thei did him soche honour  
And had herd oft of Æneas er the,  
And in her herte she had routh and wo  
That evir soche a noble man as he  
Shall ben disheritid in soche degre,  
And sawe the man that he was like a knight,  
And fuffisaunt of persone and of might,  
And like to ben a very gentilman,  
And well his wordis he besettin can,  
And had a noble visage for the nones,  
And formid well of brawne and eke of bones,  
And aftir Venus had soche fairnesse  
That no man might be halfe so faire I gesse,  
And well a lorde him semid for to be;  
And for he was a straungir, somewhat she  
Ylikid him the bet, as God doe bote,  
*To some folk oftin nerve thing is sete;*  
Anon her herte hath pitie of his wo,  
And with that pite love ycame also;  
And thus for pite and for gentilnesse  
Refreshid must he ben of his distresse.

She sayid certis that the sorie was  
That he hath had soche perill and soch caas,  
And in her frendly speche in this manere  
She to him spake, and saied as ye maie here:

Be ye nat Venus sonne and Anchises?  
In gode faith all the worship and encrese  
That I maie godely doen you ye shall have;  
Your shippis and your meine shall I save;  
And many a gentill worde she spake him to,  
And commaundid her messangirs to go  
The samè daie withoutin any faile  
His shippis for to seke and hem vitale:  
Full many a best she to the shippis sent,  
And with the wine she gan hem to present,  
And to her roiall paleis she her spedde,  
And Æneas alwaie with her she ledde.

What nedith you the festis to discriue?  
He nevir bet at ese was in his live;  
Full was the fest of deinties and richesse,  
Of instrumentes, of song, and of gladnesse,  
And many an amo'rous loking and devise.

This Æneas is come to paradise  
Out of the swolowe of hell, and thus in joie  
Remembrith him of his estate in Troie.  
To daunsing chambris full of paramentes,  
Of richè beddis and of ornamentes,  
This Æneas is ledde aftir the mete;  
And with the Quene whan that he had yfete,  
And spicis partid, and the wine agon,  
Unto his chambir was he lad anon  
To take his ese and for to have his rest,  
Withall his folke to doen what so him left.

There ne was coursir well ibridlid none,  
Ne stedè for the justing well to gone,  
Ne largè paulfrey esie for the nones,  
Ne jewill yfret full of richè stones,  
Ne sackis full of gold, of largè wight,  
Ne rubie none that shinith bright by night,  
Ne gentill hautin faukon heronere,  
Ne hounde for harte, or wildè bore, or dere,  
Ne cuppe of gold, with floreins newe ibette,  
That in the londe of Libye maie ben gette



That Dido ne' hath Æneas it isent,  
And all is payid what that he hath spent.  
Thus gan this worthy Quene her gestis call,  
As she that can in fredome passin all.  
Æneas sothely eke, withoutin lese,  
Hath sent to his shippis by Achates  
Aftir his sonne, and aftir richè thinges,  
Both sceptre, clothis, brochis, and eke ringes,  
Some for to were, and some for to present  
To her that all these noble things him sent,  
And bad his sonne how that he should ymake  
The presentig, and to the Quene it take.

Repairid is this Achates again,  
And Æneas full blisfull is and fain  
To sein his yonge sonne Ascanius,  
For unto him it was reportid thus,  
That Cupido, that is the god of Love,  
At prayir of his mothir he above,  
Yhad the likenesse of the childe itake,  
This noble Quene enamoured for to make  
On Æneas; but as to that scripture,  
Be as he maie, I make of it no cure;  
But soth is this, the Quene hath made soch chere  
Unto this childe that wondir was to here,  
And of the present that his fathir sent  
She thankid him full oft in gode entent.  
Thus is this Quene in plesaunce and in joie  
With all these newè lustie folke of Troie,  
And of the dedis hath she more enquired  
Of Æneas, and all the storie lered  
Of Troie, and all the longè daie thei twaie  
Entendidin for to speke and to plaie,  
Of whiche there gan to bredin soche a fire,  
That felie Dido hath now soche desire  
With Æneas her newè gest to dele  
That she hath lost her hewe and eke her hele.

Now to the effect, now to the fruite, of all  
Why I have told this storie' and tellin shall.

Thus I beginne. It fell upon a night,  
Whan that the mone upreisid had her light,  
This noble Quene unto her rest ywent,  
She sighid sore, and gone her self tourment,  
She walkith, waloweth, and made many braied,  
As doen these lovirs, as I have herd saied,  
And at the laste unto her sustir Anne  
She made her mone, and right thus spake she than:

Now, derè sustir mine! what maie it be  
That me agastith in my dreme? (quod she)  
This ilke newe Trojan is so in my thought,  
For that me thinketh he it so well iwrought,  
And eke so likely for to ben a man,  
And therewithall so milkill gode he can,  
That all my love and life lieth in his cure;  
Have ye nat herd him tell his avinture?

Now certis, Anne, if that ye redè me,  
I woldin fain to him iweddid be:  
'This is the effect; what should I more seine?  
In him lieth all to doe me live or deine.

Her sustir Anne, as she that coud her gode,  
Said as her thought, and somdele it withstode;  
But hereof was so long a sermoning  
It were to long to makin reherfing;  
But finally, it maie not be withstonde,  
Love wolleve, for no wight wolle it wonde;

The dawning uprist out of the false se,  
This amorous Quene chargith her meinë  
The nettis dresse, and speris brode and kene,  
An hunting wolle this lustie freshè Quene,  
So prikith her this newè jolic wo;  
To horse is all her lustie folke igo,  
Unto the court the houndis ben ibrought,  
And upon coarfir swift as any thought  
Her yongè knightis hevin all about,  
And of her women eke an hugè rout:  
Upon a thicke palfraie, papirwhite,  
With sadill redde, enbroudid with delite,  
Of golde the harnis, up enbossid high,  
Sate Dido, all in golde and perreywrich,  
And she is faire as is the brightè morowe  
That helith sick folkis of night's sorowe,  
Upon a coursir startlin as the fire,  
Men mightin tourne him with a little wire.

But Æneas, like Phœbus to devise,  
So was he fresh arayid in his wife,  
The somie bridill, with the bitte of gold,  
Govirnith he right as himself hath would;  
And forthe this noble Quene, this ladie, ride  
On hunting, with this Trojan by her side.  
The herde of hartis foundin is anon,  
With Hey go bet, pricke thou, let gon, let gon!  
Why n'il the lion comin or the bere;  
That I might him ones metin with this spere?  
Thus fain this yongè folke, and up thei kill  
The wilde hartis, and have 'hem at ther will.

Emong all this to romblin gan the heven,  
The thondir rorid with a grisly steven,  
Doun come the rain, with haile and slet so fast,  
With hevin's fire, that made so fore agast  
This noble Quene and also her mainè,  
That eche of 'hem, was glade awaie to fle;  
And, shortly, fro the tempest her to save  
She fled her self into a little cave,  
And with her went this Æneas also,  
I n'ot with 'hem if ther went any mo,  
The auctour makith of it no mencion;  
And here began the depe affection  
Betwixt 'hem two; this was the firstè morowe  
Of her gladnesse and ginning of her sorowe,  
For there hath Æneas iknelid so,  
And tolde her all his hert and all his wo,  
And sworne so depè to her to be true  
For well or wo, and chaungin for no newe,  
And as a false lovir so well can plain,  
That felie Dido rewid on his pain,  
Toke him for husbond, and became his wife  
For evirmore, while that 'hem last shulde life;  
And aftir this, when that the tempest stente,  
With mirth out as thei came homward thei went;  
The wickid fame uprofe, and that anon,  
How Æneas hath with the Quene igon  
Into the cave, and demid as 'hem list;  
And whan the King (that Yarbass hight) it wist,  
As he that had her loved evir his life,  
And wowid her to havin to his wife,  
Soche sorow' as he hath makid and soche chere  
It is a routhe and pity for to here;  
But as in love all daie it happith so  
That one shall laughin at an othir's wo,

Now laughith Æneas, and is in joie  
And more riches than evir was in Troie.

O felie woman, full of innocence,  
Full of pite, of truthe, and continence!  
What makid you to men to trustin so?  
Have ye soche routh upon ther fainid wo  
And have soche old ensamplis you beforne?  
Se ye nat all how that thei ben forsworne?  
Where se ye one that he ne' hath laste his lefe,  
Or ben unkinde, or doen her some mischefe,  
Or pillid her, or boistid of his dede?  
Ye maie as well it sene as ye maie rede.  
Takith hede now of this grete gentilman,  
This Trojan, that so well her plesin can,  
That fainith him so true and obeising,  
So gentill and so privie' of his doing.  
And can so well doen all his obeisaunce,  
And waitith her at festis and at daunce,  
And whan she gooth to temple' and home again,  
And fastin till he hath his ladie sein,  
And berin in his devisis for her sake  
N'ot I nat what, and songis would he make,  
Justis, and doen of armis many thinges,  
Sende her lettirs, tokins, brochis, and ringes.

Now herkenith how he shal his lady serve;  
There as he was in perill for to sterve  
For hungir and for mischefe in the se,  
And desolate, and fledde fro his countre,  
And all his folke with tempest all to driven,  
She hath her body and eke her relme yeven  
Into his honde, there as she might have ben  
Of othir land than of Carthage a quene,  
And lived in joy inough; what would ye more?

This Æneas, that hath thus depe iswore,  
Is werie of his craft within a throwe,  
And the hote ernest is all ovirblowe,  
And privily he doeth his shippis dight,  
And shapith him to stele awaie by night.

This Dido hath suspicion of this,  
And thoughtin well that it was all amis,  
For in his bedde he lieth anight and siketh:  
She askith him anon, What the misliketh,  
My derè herte! whiche that I lovin moste?

Certis (quod he) this night my fathir's ghooste  
Hath in my slepe me so sorely tourmented,  
And eke Mercurie's his message hath presented,  
That nedis to the conquest of Itaile  
My destinie is sonè for to saile,  
For which me thinkith brostin is mine hert;  
Therwith his falsè teris out thei stert,  
And takith her within his armis two.

Is that in ernest? (quod she) woll ye so?  
Have ye no sworne to wife me for to take?  
Alas! what woman woll ye of me make?  
I am a gentill woman and a quene,  
Ye woll not fro your wife thus foul yflene?  
That I was borne alas! what shall I do?

To telle in short, this noble Quene Dido

She sekith halowes and doeth sacrifice,  
She knelith, crieth, that routh is to devise,  
Conjurith him, and profe'rith him to be  
His thrall, his servaunt, in the best degre,  
She fallith him to fore, and sownith there,  
Dischevilid with her bright gildid here,  
And saieth, Have mercy! let me with you ride,  
These lordis whiche that wonnin me beside  
Woll me destroyin only for your sake;  
And if ye wolle me now to wife ytake  
As ye have sworne, than woll I yeve you leve  
Te slaen me with your swerde now son at eve,  
For than yet shall I dyin as your wife;  
I am with childe, and yeve my childe his life:  
O mercie, Lorde! have pite in your thought.  
But all this thing availith her right nought,  
For on a night he sleping let her lie,  
And stole awaye into his company,  
And as a traitour forthe he gan to saile  
Towardis the large countre of Itaile:  
And thus hath he left Dido' in wo and pine,  
And weddid there a ladie hight Lavine.  
A clothe he last, and eke his sworde standing,  
Whan he fro Dido stale in her sleping.  
Right at her bedd'is hedde, so gaye he hic  
Whan that he stale awaie to his navie.

Which cloth whan felie Dido gan awake  
She hath it kiste ful oftin for his sake,  
And said, Swete cloth! while Jupiter it lest  
Take my soule, unbinde me of this unrest,  
I have fulfilled of Fortune all the course:  
And thus, alas! withoutin his socourse  
Twentie timis iswounid heth she than.  
And whan that she unto her sustir Anne  
Complainid had of which I maie not write,  
So grete routh I have it for to endite,  
And bad her norice and her sustir gon  
To fetchin fire and othir thinges anon,  
And sayid that she wouldè sacrifice;  
And whan she might her timè well asprie  
Upon the fire of sacrifice she sterte,  
And with his sworde she rose her to the herte:  
But as mine auctour saith yet this she seide,  
Or she was hurtin, beforne or she deide,  
She wrote a lettre' anon, and thus began;

Right so-(quod she) as the milkwhite swan  
Ayenst his deth beginnith for to sing,  
Right so to you I make my complaining,  
Not that I trowe to gettin you again,  
For well I wote that it is al in vain,  
Sens that the goddes ben contrarious to me,  
But sin my name is lost through you (quod she)  
I maie well lese a worde on you or letter,  
All be it I shall be nevir the better,  
For thilkè wind that blewe your ship awaie  
The samè winde hath blowe awaie your saie:  
But who so wol al this lettre' have in minde  
Rede Ovide, and in him he shall it finde.

HERE FOLLOWETH

THE LEGENDE OF HYPsipYLE AND MEDEA.

Thou rote of false loviris, Duke Jason,  
Thou fleer, devourir, and confusion,  
Of gentill women, gentil creatures,  
Thou madist thy reclaiming and thy lures  
To ladies of thy scathliche aparaunce,  
And of thy wordis falsid with plesaunce,  
And of thy fainid trouth and thy manere,  
With thine obeisaunce and humble chere,  
And with thine counterfeitid pain and wo,  
There othir falsin one thou falsid two.  
O! oftin swore thou that thou woldist die  
For love whan thou ne feltist maladie  
Save soule delite, whiche that thou callist love:  
If that I live thy name shall be yshove  
In Englishe, that thy deceipt shall be knowe:  
Have at the, Jason; now thin horn is blow.  
But certis it is bothè routh and wo  
That Love with false lovirs werkith so,  
For thei shal have well bettir love and chere  
Than he that hath aboughtin love full dere,  
Or had in armis many' a bloodie boxe,  
For ay as tendre' a capon eteth the fox,  
Though he be fals, and hath the soule betraied,  
As shall the gode man that therefore hath paid;  
Although he have to the' capon skill and right  
The false foxe woll have his part at night:  
On Jason this ensample' is well isene  
By Hypsipyle' and Medea the quene.

In Theffalie, as Ovide tellith us,  
There was a knight that hightin Pelus,  
That had a brothir whiche that hight Jason;  
And whan for age he might unnethis gon  
He yave to Peleus the governing  
Of all his reigne, and made him lorde and king;  
Of whiche Jason this Jason gettin was,  
That in his time in all that land there n'as  
Nat soche a famous knight of gentileffe,  
Of fredome, of strengthe, and of lustinesse.

Aftir his fathir's deth be bare him so  
That there n'as none that list to ben his foe,  
But did him all honour and companie,  
Of whiche this Peleus hath grete envie,  
Imagining that Jason might ybe  
Enhaunsid so, and put in soche degre,  
With love of lordis of his regioun,  
That from his reigne he maie be put adoun,  
And in his wit anight compassid he  
How this Jason might best distroyid be,  
Withoutin sleaundir of his compasment;  
And at the last he toke avisement  
That to sende him into some ferre countre,  
Theras this Jason maie distroyid be:  
This was his wit, all made he to Jason  
Grete chere of loke and of affection,  
For drede lest that his lordis it espide,  
And so bifell it, as fame ronnyth wide,  
There was soche tiding or all, and soche loos,  
That in an isle that callid was Colchos,  
That stonde beyonde Troie estward in the se,  
There was a Ram which that men mightin se  
That had a Fleece of Golde that shone so bright  
That no where was there soche an othir sight;  
But it was kept alwaie with a dragoun,  
And many othir marvailles up and down,  
And with two bullis makid all of bras,  
That spittin fire, and mochi thing ther was;  
But this was eke the tale nathèles,  
That who so would ywinnin thilke Fleece  
He must bethe, or that he it winnin might,  
With the bullis and with the dragon fight.

And King Oëtes lorde was of that ile.  
This Peleus bethought upon this while  
That he his nevewe Jason would exhort  
To sailin to that londe him to disport,  
And sayid, Nevewe, if it might ybe  
That soche a worship might befallin the



That thou this famous trefure mightist win,  
And bringin it my region within,  
It were to me grete plesauce and honour,  
Than were I holdin to quite thy labour,  
And all thy costis I woll my self make,  
And chesith what folke thou wolt with the take :  
Let se now, darste thou takin this voiage ?  
Jafon was young, and lustie of corage,  
And undirtoke to doen this ilke emprise ;  
Anon Argus his shippis gan devise.

With Jafon went the strong stout Hercules,  
And many' an othir that he with him ches ;  
But who so askith who is with him gon  
Let him rede the boke Argonauticon,  
For he wol tel a tale long inough.  
Philocrates anon the saile up drough,  
Whan that the winde was gode, and gan him hie  
Out of his countre callid Theffalie.

So long thei sailid in the salt se  
Till in the ile of Lemnos arived he,  
All be this nat reherfid of Guido,  
Yet saith Ovide in his Epistlis so ;  
And of this ileland ladie was and quene  
The faire and yonge Hypspyle the shene,  
That whilom Thoas doughter was, the king.

Hypspyle was gon in her playing,  
And roming on the clevis by the se ;  
Undir a banke anone espyid she  
Where laie the shippe that Jafon gon arive ;  
Of her godenesse adoune she sendith blive  
To wetin if that any straunge wight  
With tempest thidir were iblowe anight,  
To doen 'hem socour, as was her usaunce  
To furth'rin every wight, and don plesauce  
Of very bounte and of curtise.

This messangir adoune him gan to hie,  
And founde Jafon and Hercules also,  
That in a cogge to londe werin igo  
'Hem to refreshin and to take the aire,  
The morowning attempre was and faire,  
And in ther waie this messangir 'hem mette ;  
Full conningly these lordis two he grette,  
And did his message, asking 'hem anon  
If thei wer brokin or ought wo bigon,  
Or had nede of lodesmen or of vitale ?  
For of succour they shouldin nothing faile,  
For it was uttirly the Quen's will.

Jafon answerid mekely and still,  
My ladie (quod he) thanke I hertily  
Of her godenesse : us nedith truily  
Nothing as now, but that we werie be,  
And comin for to plaie out of the se  
Till that the winde be bettir in our waie.

This ladie romith by the cliffe to plaie,  
With her meinè, endlong upon the stronde,  
And findith Jafon and this othir stonde  
In speking of this thing, as I you told.

This Hercules and Jafon gan behold  
How that the Quene it was, and faire her grete,  
Anon right as thei with this ladie mete,  
And she toke hede, and knewe by ther manere,  
By ther araie, by wordis, and by chere,  
That it were gentillmen of grete degre,  
And to the castle with her ledith she

These straunge folke, and doith 'hem gret honor  
And askith 'hem of travaile and of labor  
That thei have suffrid in the salt se ;  
So that within a daie, or two or thre,  
She knewe by the folke that in his shippis be  
That it was Jafon, full of renomè,  
And Hercules, that had the grete loos,  
That foughtin the adventures of Colchos,  
And did 'hem honour more than before,  
And with 'hem deled evir longir the more,  
For thei ben worthy folke withoutin lese,  
And namely moste she spake with Hercules,  
To him her herte she bare, an he should be  
Sadde, wise, and true, of wordis avise,  
Withoutin any othir affection  
Of love, or othir imaginacion.

This Hercules hath this Jafon so preised,  
That to the sunnè he hath him up reised,  
That halfe so true a man there n'as of love  
Undir the cope of heven that is above,  
And he was wise, hardie, secrete, and riche,  
Of these iii pointis there n'as non him liche,  
Of fredome passid he and lustie hedde  
All tho that livin and all tho ben dedde,  
Thereto so grete a gentillman was he,  
And of Theffalie likely king to be ;  
There n'as no lacke but that he was agast  
To love, and for to spekin shamesast ;  
Him had levir himself murdir and die  
Than that men should a lovir him espie,  
As woldè God above that I had give  
My blode and fleshe, so that I might live  
With the bones, that he had aught where a wife  
For his estate, for soche a lustie life  
She shouldin ledin with this lustie knight :  
And all this was compassid on the night  
Betwixin Jafon and this Hercules :  
Of both these two here was a shreudè lese,  
To come to house upon an innocent,  
For to bedote this Quene was ther entent.  
And Jafon is as coie as is a maide ;  
He lokith pitously, but naught he saied ;  
But frely yave he to her counsaillers  
Yestis full grete and to her officers,  
As would God that I lesir had and time  
By processe all his woeing for to rime ;  
But in this house if a false lovir be,  
Right as himself now doeth right so did he  
With faining and with every subtil dede :  
Ye get no more of me but ye woll rede  
Th' originall, that tellith all the caas.

The sothe is this, that Jafon weddid was  
Unto this Quene, and toke of her substance  
What so him list unto his purveiaunce ;  
And upon her begate he childrin two,  
And drough his saile, and sawe her nevir mo.  
A lettir sent she unto him certain,  
Which were to long to writtin and to sain,  
And him reprovith of his grete untrouth,  
And prayith him on her to have some routh,  
And on his childrin two : she said him this,  
That thei be like of allè thing iwis  
To Jafon, save that thei couth nat begile ;  
And prayid God or it were longè while

That she that had his herte irest her fro  
Mote findin him untrue and false also,  
And that she muste both her childrin spill,  
And aile tho that suffrith him his will.  
And true to Jason was she all her life,  
And evir kept her chaste as for his wife,  
Ne evir had she joide at her herte,  
But dyid for his love of sorowes smerte.

To Colchis comin is this Duke Jason,  
That is of love devourir and dragon,  
As matire appetitith forme alwaie,  
And from forme into forme it passin maie,  
Or as a wellè that were botomles;  
Right so can fals Jason have no pees  
For to desirin through his appetite  
To doen with gentillwoman his delite;  
This is his luste and his felicite.  
Jason is romid forthe to the cite  
That whilom clepid was Jasonicos,  
That was the maistroute of all Colchos,  
And hath tolde the cause of his coming  
Unto Ætæta, of that countre king,  
Praying him that he must doen his affaie  
To gette the Fleece of Golde if that he maie,  
Of whiche the King assentith to his bone,  
And doth him requour as it is to done,  
So forforth that his doughtir and his heire  
Medea, whiche that was so wise and faire,  
That fairir sawe there nevir man with eye,  
He made her doen to Jason companie  
At mete, and sittin by him in the hall.

Now was Jason a femely man withall,  
And like a lorde, and had a grete renoun,  
And of his loke roiall as a lioun,  
And godelic of his speche and familiere,  
And coud of love the craft and art plenere  
Withoutin boke, with everiche observaunce;  
And as Fortune her ought a soule mischaunce  
She woxe enamorid upon this man.

Jason, (quod she) for ought I se or can  
As of this thing the whiche ye ben about,  
Ye and your self ye put in mochil doubt,  
For who so woll this avinture atcheve  
He maie nat wele assertin as I leve  
Withoutin deth, but I his helpe be;  
But nathêles it is my will (quod she)  
To forthrin you so that ye shall nat die,  
But turnin fonde home to your Thessalie.

My right fair lady! (quod this Jason tho)  
That ye have of my deth or of my wo  
Any regarde, and doen me this honour,  
I wot wel that my might ne my labour  
May nat deservin it my liv'is daie;  
God thankè you there I ne can ne maie;

Your man am I, and lowely you beseeche  
To ben my helpe withoutin more speche;  
But certis for my deth shal I not spare.

Tho gan this Medea to him declare  
The peril of this case fro point to point,  
Of his batyle, and eke in what disjoynt  
He motè stondin, of wniche no cature  
Save onley she ne might his lyfe assure:  
And shortly, right to the poynt for to go,  
They ben accordid full betwyxe hem two  
That Jason shall her wedde as her true knight,  
And terme yset to comin sone at night  
Unto her chanibre, and make there his othe  
Upon the goddess, that he for lese or lothe  
Ne shulde her nevir fallin nyght ne daye  
To ben her husbonde whyle he lyvin maye,  
As she that from his deth him savid here;  
And hereupon at night they mete yfere,  
And doth his othe, and goth with her to bedde;  
And on the morewe upwarde he him spedde,  
For she hath taught him how he shal nat fayle  
The Flees to wyne and stintin his bataile,  
And savid hym his life and his honour,  
And gate him a name as a conquerour,  
Right through the sleight of her enchantement.  
Now hath Jason the Fleece, and home is went  
With Medea, and trefours full grete wonne:  
But unwyfte of her fathir she is gonne  
To Thessalie with Duke Jason her lese,  
That aftirwarde hath brought her to mischefe,  
For as a traytour he is from her go,  
And with her leste yongè childrin two,  
And falsely hath betrayid her, alas!  
And er in love a chefe traytour he was,  
And waddid yet the thirde wyfe anon,  
That was the doughtir of the Kyng Creon.  
This is the mede of lovyng and guerdon  
That Medea received of Duke Jason  
Right for her truth and for her kyndinesse,  
That loved him bettir than her self I gesse,  
And leste her fathir and her herytage:  
And of Jason this is the vassalage,  
That in his dayes n'as nevir non yfounded  
So false a lovir goyng on the grounde;  
And therefore in her lettir thus she sayd,  
First whan she of his falsnesse him upbrayd,  
Why lykid me thy yelowè here to se  
More than the boundis of myn honeste?  
Why lykid me thy youth and thy fayrnesse,  
And of thy tonge the infynite gracyousnesse?  
O! haddest thou in thy conquest ded ybe  
Ful mikil untrouth had ther dyed with the.  
Wel can Ovide her lettire in verse endyte,  
Which were as now to longè for to write.

HERE FOLLOWETH

THE LEGENDE OF LUCRECE OF ROME.

Nowe mote I fain th' exilyng of kyngis  
Of Rome for ther horrible doyngis,  
Of the laste kyng Sextus Tarquinius,  
As saith Ovid, and Titus Lyvius;  
But for that cause tel I nat this storye,  
But for to prayse and drawe in memorye  
The ver. wyfe, the very true Lucrese,  
That for her wifehode and her stedfastnesse  
Nat onely that these Panymes her commende,  
But that yclepid is in our Legende  
The gret Austyn, that hath compassioun  
Of this Lucrece that starfe in Rome toun,  
And in what wise I woll but shortly trete,  
And of this thing I touch not but the grete.

Whan Ardea besiegid was aboute  
With Romayns that ful sterne wcrin and stout,  
Ful long lay the siege, and litil wroughten,  
So that they wer halfe ydil as 'hem thoughten,  
And in his play Tarquinius the yonge  
Gan for to jape, for he was lyght of tonge,  
And sayid that it was an ydle lyfe,  
No man d. d there no more than did his wife,  
And let us speke of wivis, that is best,  
Praise evêrie man his own as him lest,  
And with our spechis let us ese our herte.

A knight (yclepid Colatin) up sterte,  
And sayid thus Nay, Sir, it is no nede  
To trowin on the worde but on the dede;  
I have a wife (quod he) that as I trowe  
Is holdin gode of al that ex her knowe,  
Go we to Rome to nyght and we shul se.

Tarquinius answerde, That lykith me.  
To Rome they be comin, and fast 'hem dighte  
To Colatyn's house, and downe they light,  
Tarquinius and eke this Colatine;  
The husbonde knewe the estirs wel and fyne,  
And ful prively into the house thei gone:

Nor at the gate ne portir was there none,  
And at the chambre dorè they abyde.  
This noble wife fate by her bedd'is fyde

Discheveled, for no malyce she ne thought,  
And soft wol, saith Livy, that she wrought  
To kepin her from slouth and ydilnesse,  
And bad her servautes done ther besynesse,  
And askith 'hem, What tidinges herin ye?  
How saieth men of the siege, howe shal it be?  
God wolde the wallis were fallin adowne!  
Myn husbond is to long out of this towne,  
For whiche drede doth me sorely to smerte,  
Right as a sworde it styngith to mine hert  
Whan I thinkin on this or of that place;  
God save my lorde, I pray him for his grace!  
And therwithal so tendirly gan wepe,  
And of her werke she toke no more kepe,  
But mekily she let her eyin fal,  
And thilkè semblant fate her wel withal,  
And eke her teris, ful of honeste  
Embelissid her wifely chastite;  
Her countinaunce is to her hertè digne,  
For thei accordidin in dede and signe.  
And with that worde her husbonde Colatin,  
Or she of him was ware, came sterling in,  
And sayid, Drede the nat for I am here:  
And she anone up rose with blisful chere,  
And kyssed him, as of wivis is the wonne.

Tarquinius, this proude king's sonne,  
Conceivd hath her beantie and her chere,  
Her yelowè here, her bountie', and her manere,  
Her bewè, her wordis, that she hath complained,  
And by no craft her beantie was nat fained,  
And caught unto this lady soche desire  
That in his hert he brent as any fire,  
So wodely, that his witte was all forgotten,  
For wel thought he she shuldè nat be gotten;  
And aye the more that he was in dispaire  
The more he covetith and thought her faire;  
His blindè luste was al his coveting.  
On morowe, whan the birde began to syng,  
Unto the siege he cometh ful privily,  
And by himselfe he walkith sobirly,



## LEGENDE OF LUCRECE OF ROME.

The ymage of her recording alway newe,  
 Thus lay her here, and thus fresh was her hew,  
 Thus fate she, thus she spake, this was her chere,  
 Thus faire she was, and this was her manere :  
 Al this conceite his herte hath newe ytake,  
 And as the se with tempest al to shake,  
 That aftir whan the storme is al ago  
 Yet woll the watir quappe a daie or two,  
 Right so, though that her forme were absent  
 The plesaunce of her forme was present ;  
 But nathelesse nat plesaunce but delite,  
 Or an unrightful talent with dispite,  
 For maugre her she shal my lemman be,  
*Hap helpith bardy man alway*, (quod he ;) *Whendè*  
 That I make it shal be so,  
 And gyrt him with his sworde and gan to go :  
 And he forth ritt til he to Rome is come,  
 And al alone his way that he hath nome  
 Unto the house of Colatin ful right ;  
 Down was the sunne, and day hath lost his lyght ;  
 And in he come unto a privie halke,  
 And in the night ful thesely gan he stalke,  
 Whan every wight was to his rest ybrought,  
 Ne no wight had of treson soche a thought,  
 Whethir by windowe or by othir gin :  
 With swerde y drawe shortly he comith in  
 There as she lay, this noble wife Lucrece,  
 And as she woke her bedde she feltin presse :  
 What best is that (quod she) that wayith thus ?

I am the king's sonne Tarquinius,  
 (Quod he) but and thou crie or noise ymake,  
 Or if thou any creature awake,  
 By thilke God that formid man of lye  
 This swerdè through thyne hertè shal I ryve ;  
 And therewithal unto her throte he sterte,  
 And set the swerde al sharpe upon her herte.  
 No word she spake ; she hath no might therto ;  
 What shal she saine ? her witte is al ago,  
 As when a wolfe findith a lambe alone ;  
 To whom shal she complaine or make her mone ?  
 What ! shal she fightin with an hardie knight ?  
 Wel wotte men that a woman hath no might ;  
 What shal she crie, or how shal she asterte,  
 That hath her by the throte with swerde at herte ?  
 She askith grace, and said al that she can.

No, wolt thou nat tho ? (quod this cruil man)  
 As wisely Jupiter my foule save  
 As I shal in thy stable fle thy knave,  
 And lay him in thy bedde, and loudè crie  
 That I the fyndin in soche avoutrie ;  
 And thus thou shalt be ded, and also lese  
 Thy name, for that thou shalt none othir chese,  
 This Romaines wives lovidin so ther name  
 At thilke tyme, and dredidin so the shame,  
 That what for fere of flaundre and dred of deth  
 She lost at onis both her wit and breth,  
 And in a swough she lay, and woxe so ded  
 Men mightin finit in of her arme or hed,  
 She felith nothing neithir foule ne feyre.

Tarquinius, that art a king's heyre,  
 And shuldist as by linage and by right  
 Done as a lorde and as a very knight,  
 Why hast thou done dispite to chivalrye ?  
 Why hast thou done thy lady vilanie ?

Alas ! of the this was a vile'itous dede.  
 But nowe to the purpose. In the story I rede  
 Whan he was gonne, and this mischaunce is fal,  
 This lady sent aftir her frendis al,  
 Fathir, mothir, and husbonde, al yfere,  
 And dischevilid with her here clere,  
 In habyt soche as women usid tho  
 Unto the buryng of ther frendis go,  
 She fate in hal with a sorowful fyght :  
 Her frendis askin what her aylin myght,  
 And who was ded ? and she fate aye wepyng,  
 A worde for shame ne may she forth out bring,  
 Ne upon them she durstè nat behold ;  
 But at the laste of Tarquin she hem tolde  
 This rusul case, and al this thyng horrible :  
 The wo to tellin were impossible  
 That she and all her frendis make at ones :  
 Al haddin folkis hertis ben of stones  
 It might have makid hem upon her rewe,  
 Her hert ywas so wisely and so trewe.  
 She said that for her gilte ne for her blame  
 Her husbonde shulde nat have the foule name ;  
 That wolde she nat suffer by no waye.  
 And they answerid al unto her saye  
 That they foryave it her, for it was right,  
 It was no gylte, it lay nat in her myght,  
 And saydin her ensamplis many one :  
 But al for naught, for thus she said anone,  
 Be as be may (quod she) of forgivyng,  
 I will nat have no forgifte for nothing :  
 But privily she caughtin forth a knife,  
 And therewithal she raste her selfe her life,  
 And as she fel adowne she cast her loke,  
 And of her clothis yet gode hede she toke,  
 For in her fallyng yet she had a care  
 Leste that her fete or soche thingis lay bare,  
 So wel she lovid clenness and eke trouthe.  
 Of her had all the towne of Rome routh,  
 And Brutus hath by her chaste blode yswore  
 That Tarquin shulde ybanished be therfore  
 And al his kinne, and let the peple cal,  
 And opinly the tale he tolde hem al,  
 And opinly let cary her on a bere  
 Through al the towne, that men may se and here  
 The horrible dede of her oppressioun ;  
 Ne nevir was there kyng in Rome toun  
 Sens thylke day : and she was holdin there  
 A saynt, and evre her day yhalowed dere  
 As in ther lawe. And thus endith Lucrece  
 The noble wyfe, Titus berith witnesse  
 I tel it for she was of love so trewe,  
 Ne in her wil she chaungid for no newe,  
 And in her stable hertè sadde and kinde,  
 That in these women men may al day finde  
 There as they cast ther hert there it dwellith ;  
 For wel I wote that Christ himselte tellith  
 That in Israel, as wide as is the londe,  
 He so grete faith in al the londe ne fonde  
 As in a woman, and this is no lie :  
 And as for men, loke ye soche tyrannie  
 Thei done al daie, assay hem who so list,  
 The trewist is ful brotil for to triste.

HERE FOLLOWETH

## THE LEGENDE OF ARIADNE,

OF ATHENS.

**M**INOS, Infernal Judge, of Crete the Kyng,  
Now cometh thy lotte; thou comist on the ryng :  
Nat for thy sake alone writen is this storye,  
But for to clepe ayen unto memorie  
Of Theseus the gret untrouthe of love,  
For whiche the goddis of hevin above  
Ben wroth, and wrath have takin for thy synne :  
Be red for shame, nowe I thy lyfe beginne.

Minos, that was the mighty King of Crete,  
That had an hundrid cities strong and grete,  
To schole hath sent his sonne Androgeus  
To Athenes, of the whiche it happid thus,  
That he was slayne, lerning philosophie  
Right in that cyte, nat but for envie.

The grete Minos, of the whiche that I spcke,  
His sonnys deth is comin for to wreke.  
Alcathoe' he besiegid harde and longe,  
But natheles the wallis be so stronge,  
And Nisus that was kyng of that cite  
So chivalrous, that litil dredith he ;  
Of Minos or his hoste toke he no cure  
Tyl on a daie befil an avinture  
That Nisus doughtir stode upon the wal,  
And of the siege behelde the manir al ;  
So happid it that at a scarnishing  
She caste her hert upon Minos the king,  
For his beautie and for his chivalrye,  
So sorely that she wenid for to die :  
And shortly of this processe for to pace,  
She made Minos to winnin thilke place,  
So that the cite was al at his wyl  
To savin whom him liste or ellis spill ;  
But wickidly he quit her kyndenesse,  
And let her drenche in sorowe and distresse,  
N'ere that the goddis had of her pite :  
But that tale were to longe as nowe for me.

Athenis was this King Minos also,  
As Alcathoe' and othir townis mo,  
And this th' effect, that Minos hath so driven  
Them of Athenis that thei mote him yeven  
Fro yere to yere ther owne childrin dere  
For to be slaine, as ye shal aftir here.  
This Minos hath a monstre', a wickid best,  
That was so cruil, that without arest  
Whan that a man was brought into' his presence  
He wolde him ete ; there helpith no defence ;  
And ev'ry thirde yere withoutin doute  
Thei castidin lotte as it came aboute  
On riche and pore, he must his sonne take,  
And of his childe he must a presente make  
To Minos, for to save him or to spill,  
Or at his best devour him at his will :  
And this hath Minos don right in dispite ;  
To wreke his sonne was fet al his delyte,  
And makin 'hem of Athenis hys thral,  
Fro yere to yere while that he livin shal ;  
And hom he sailith whan this toun is won.  
This wickid custome is so long yron  
Till that the King of Athenes, Ægeus,  
Mote sendin his owne sonne Theseus,  
Sens that the lotte is fallin him upon,  
To ben devourid, for grace is there non :  
And forth is ladde this woful yongè knight  
Unto the countre' of Minos ful of night,  
And in a prison fettrid fast is he  
Tyl that ilke time he shulde yfretin be.

Wel maist thou wepe, o woful Theseus !  
That art a king's sonne and damnid thus ;  
Me thinkith this, that thou art depe yholde  
To whom that savid the fro caris colde,  
And nowe yf any woman helpè the  
Wel oughtist thou her servaunt for to be,

And ben her trewe lovir yere by yere.  
But nowe to come aien to my matere.

The tourè there this Theseus is throwe  
Downe in the bottom derke and wondir lowe,  
Was joyning to the wal of a foreine  
That longing was unto the doughtir tweine  
Of Minos, whiche that in ther chambris grete  
Dweltin above toward the maistirstrete  
O. thilk towne in joy and in solas :  
Not I nat howe, it happened per cas,  
As Theseus complainid him by night,  
The kinge's doughtir that Ariadne hight,  
And eke her sustir Phœdra, herdin al  
His complainte as thei stod in on the wall  
And lokid up upon the bright mone,  
'Hem listin nat to go to bedde so sone,  
And of his wo thei had compassion ;  
A king's sonne to be in soche prison,  
And ben devoured, thought 'hem grete pite :  
Than Ariadne spake to her sustir fre,  
And sayd, Phœdra, my lese sustir dere !  
'This woful lord's sonne maie ye nat here  
Howe pitously he complainith his kinne,  
And eke his pore estate that he is inne,  
And giltyless ? certis nowe it is routhe,  
And if ye wol assentin, by my trouthe  
He shal ben holpin, howe so that we do.

Phœdra answerde, Ywis me is as wo  
For him as er I was for any man,  
And to his helpe the best rede that I can  
Is, that we done the gailir privily  
To come and spekin with us hastily,  
And done this woful man with him to come,  
For if he maie this monstir ovircome  
Than were he quite, there is non other bote :  
Let us wel taste him at his hert's rote,  
That if so be that he a wepon have,  
Where that he dare, his life to kepe and save,  
Fightin with this fende, and himself defende,  
For in the prison there he shal discende :  
Ye wote wel that the best is in a place  
That is not derke, and hath rounge and eke space  
To welde an axe, or swerde, a staffe, or knive,  
So that me thinkith he shulde save his life ;  
If that he be a man he shal do so :  
And we shal make him ballis eke also  
Of wexe and towe, that whan he gapith fast  
Into the best's throte he shal 'hem caste  
To fleke his hongir and entombre his tethe,  
And right anon whan that Theseus sethe  
The best achekid he shal on him lepe  
To seen him or they comin more to hepe ;  
This wepon shal the gailir or that tyde  
Ful privily within the prison hyde :  
And for the house is crenclid to and fro,  
And hath so queintè wayis for to go,  
For it is shapin as the mase is wrought,  
'Therto have I a remedy' in my thought,  
That by a clewe of twyne as he hath gon  
The samè way he may returne anon,  
Folo'wing alway the threde as he hath come :  
And whan that he this best hath ovircome  
Than may he flien away out of this stede,  
And eke the gailir may he with him lede,

And him avaunce at home in his countre,  
Sens that so gret a lord's sonne is he.

This is my rede, if that ye dare it take.  
What shulde I lengir sermon of it make ?  
The gailir cometh, and with him Theseus ;  
And whan these thingis ben accordid thus,  
Adowne fate Theseus upon his kne ;  
O the right lady of my life ! (quod he)  
I sorowfull man, ydamnid to the dethe,  
Fro you whilis that me ylastith brethe  
I wol nat twinne afir this avinture,  
But in your service thus I wol endure,  
That as a wretch unknow I wol you serve  
For evirmore tyl that min hertè sterve ;  
Forfake I wol at home min heritage,  
And as I saied ben of your courte a page,  
If that ye vouchsafin that in this place  
Ye grauntin me to havin soche a grace  
That I may have nat but my mete and drinke ;  
And for my sustinaunce yet wol I swinke  
Right as you list, that Minos ne no wight  
Sens that he saw me nevir with eyesight,  
Ne no man ellis, shal me nat espye,  
So sily and so wel I shal me gye,  
And me so wel disfigure and so lowe,  
That in this world there shal no man me knowe,  
To have my lyfe and to have the prefence  
Of you that done to me this excellence ;  
And to my fathir shal I fendin here  
This worthy man, which that is your gaylere,  
And him so guerdon that he shal wel be  
One of the gretist men of my countre :  
And if I durstè sayne, my lady bright !  
I am a king's sonne and eke a knight,  
As woldè God if that it mighte ybe  
Ye werin in my countre allè thre,  
And I with you to bere you compagne,  
Than shuld you sene if that I therof lye,  
And if I profir you in lowe manere  
To ben your page, and servin you right here,  
But I you serve as lowly in that place  
Ypray to Mars to yeve me sochè grace  
That sham's deth on me there motè fall,  
And deth and povertè to my frendis all,  
And that my spritè by night motè go  
Aftir my deth and walkin to and fro,  
That I mote of foule traitour have a name,  
For whiche my sprit mote go, to do me shame,  
And if I clayme evir othir degre,  
But ye vouchsafin to grauntin it me,  
As I have saied, of sham's deth I dey,  
And mercy, lady ! I can naught els sey.

A femely knight was this Theseus to se,  
And yongè, but of twenty yere and thre,  
But who so had ysene his countinaunce  
He would have wept for routh of his penaunce,  
For which this Ariadne' in this manere  
Answerde to his profre and to his chere :

A kyng's sonne and eke a knight (quod she)  
To ben my servaunt in so low degre  
God shuld it ! for the shame of women al,  
And lene me nevir soche a case befall,  
And sende you grace and sleight of hert also  
You to defende and knightly fleen your foe,



And lene here aftir that I may you finde  
 To me and to my fustir here so kynde  
 That I ne repent nat to yeve you lyfe;  
 Yet were it bettir that I were your wife,  
 Sithe that ye ben as gentil borne as I,  
 And have a relme nat ferre but faste by,  
 Than I suffrid your gentillesse to sterue,  
 Or that I let you as a page to serve;  
 It is no profite unto your kinrede,  
 But what is that that men n'ill do for dred?  
 And to my fustir, syth that it is so  
 That she mote gone with me if that I go,  
 Or ellis suffre deth as wel as I,  
 That ye unto your sonne as trewily  
 Done her be weddid at your home comming;  
 This is the synal ende of al this thing,  
 Ye swere it here on all that may be sworne.

Ye, lady myn, (quod he) or els to torne  
 Mote I be with the Minotaure to morowe,  
 And havith here of min hert blod to borowe,  
 If that ye wol, if I had knife or spere  
 I wolde it lettin out and thereon swere,  
 For than at erste I wot ye would me leve,  
 By Mars, that is the chiefe of my beleve,  
 So that I mightin lyvin and nat faile  
 To morowe for to takin my bataile  
 I ne wolde nevir fro this place flye  
 Tyl that ye shulde the very profe yse;  
 For now, if that the soth I shall you say,  
 I have lovid you ful many a daie,  
 Though ye ne wist it nat, in my countre,  
 And aldirmoste desyrid you to se  
 Of any earthly living creature;  
 Upon my trouthe I swere and you assure,  
 This sevin yere I have your servaunt be;  
 Nowe have I you, and also have ye me,  
 My dere hert of Athenis Duchesse.

This lady smilith at his stedfastnesse,  
 And at his hertely wordes, and at his chere,  
 And to her fustir sayd in this manere:

And sothely, leve all fustir myn, (quod she)  
 Nowe be we duchessis both I and ye,  
 And sikerde to the regals of Athenes,  
 And bothe hereaftir likely to be quenes,  
 And favid fro his deth a king's sonne,  
 As er of gentilwomen is the wonne  
 To save a gentilman enforth ther might,  
 In honest cause, and namely in his right,  
 Me thinkith no wight ought us hereof blame,  
 Ne berin us therefore an evil name.  
 And shortly of this matir for to make,  
 This Theseus of her hath leve ytake,  
 And every point was performed in dede  
 As ye have in this covenaut herde me rede;  
 His wepen, his clewe, his thing, that I have said,  
 Was by the gailir in the house ylaide,  
 There as the Minotaure hath his dwellyng,  
 Right faste by the dore at his entring,  
 And Theseus is lad unto his derhe;  
 And forth unto this Minotaure he gothe,  
 And by the teching of this Adriane  
 He ovircame this best and was his bane;  
 And out he comith by the clewe againe  
 Ful privily whan he this best hath slaine,

And by the gailir gottin hath a barge,  
 And of his wiv's trefure gan it charge,  
 And toke his wife and eke her fustir fre,  
 And eke the gailir, and with 'hem al thre  
 Is stole away out of the londe by night,  
 And to the countre' of Enupie him dight,  
 Thereas he had a frende of his knowing;  
 There festin thei, there dauncin thei and sing,  
 And in his armis hath this Adriane,  
 That of the best hath kept him fro his bane,  
 And get him there a noble barge anone,  
 And of his countre folke a ful gret wone,  
 And taketh his leve, and homwarde sailith he;  
 And in an yle amidis the wilde se,  
 Thereas there dwellid nevir cature none  
 Save wild bestis, and that ful many one,  
 He made his shippe alonde for to sette,  
 And in that yle halfe a daie he lette,  
 And sayd, that on the londe he must him reste;  
 His mariners have donè right as him leste:  
 And for to tellin shortly in this case,  
 Whan Ariadne his wife aslepe was,  
 For that her fustir sayrir was than she,  
 He taketh her in his honde, and forth goth he  
 To shyppe, and as a traitour stale away  
 While that this Ariadne aslepe lay,  
 And to his countre warde he sailith blive,  
 A twenty dyvil way the winde him drive,  
 And found his fathir drenchid in the se.  
 Me lyfte no more to speke of him parde;  
 These false lovirs poison be ther bane!

But I wol turne againe to Adriane,  
 That is with slepe for werinesse ytoke,  
 Ful sorowfully her hert may awake.

Alas! for the myne herte hath grete pite.  
 Right in the dawning awakith she,  
 And gropith in the bed, and fond right nought.

Alas, (quod she) that evir I was wrought!  
 I am betrayid, and her here to rente,  
 And to the stronde all barefote fast she wente,  
 And cryid, Theseus, myn herte swete!  
 Where be ye, that I may nat with you mete,  
 And might thus with the bestis ben yslaine?  
 The halowe rockis answerde her againe;  
 No man she sawe, and yet yshone the mone;  
 And hye up on a rocke she wentin sone,  
 And sawe his barge ysailing in the se;  
 Colde woxe her hert, and right thus sayid she:

Mekir than ye finde I the bestis wylde.  
 Hath he nat synne that he her thus begylde?  
 She cried, O turne againe for routhe and sinne!  
 Thy barge ne hath nat al his meinè inne.  
 Her couverchese on a pole styked she  
 Ascaunce that he shulde it wele yse,  
 And him remembre that she was behinde,  
 And turne againe, and on the stronde her finde.

But all for naught; his way he is ygone;  
 And downe she fel a swowne upon a stone,  
 And up she risse, and kissed in all her care  
 The steppis of his fete there he hath fare,  
 And to her bed right thus she spekith tho:  
 Thou bed, (quod she) that hast recevid two,  
 Thou shalt answer of two and not of one;  
 Where is the greter perte away gone?

## LEGENDE OF ARIADNE OF ATHENS.

Alas! wher shal I wretched wight become?  
For though so be that botè none here come  
Home to my countre dare I nat for drede;  
I can my felfin in this case nat rede.

What should I tellin more here complaining?  
It is so long it were an hevy thing;  
In her epistle Nafò tellith all,  
But shortly to the ende tellin I shall,

The goddis have her holpin for pyte,  
And in the fygne of Taurus men may se  
The stonis of her corowne shynè clere.  
I will no more spekin of this matere,  
But thus this falsè lovir can begile  
His trew love; the devil quit him his while!

E e iij

HERE FOLLOWETH

## THE LEGENDE OF PHILOMELA.

**T**hou yevir of the formis that hast wrought  
The fayrè world, and bare it in thy thought  
Eternally er thou thy werke began,  
Why madist thou to the flaundir of man?  
Or allbe that it was not thy doying,  
As for that ende to making soche a thing,  
Why suffredest thou that Tereus was bore,  
That is in love so false and so forswore,  
That fro this world up to the first hevin  
Corrumpith whan that folke his name nevin?  
And as to me, so grisly was his dede,  
That whan that I this foulè storie rede  
Myne eyin wexin foule and sore also,  
Yet lasteth the venyme of so long ago  
That it enfectith him that wolde beholde  
The storie of Tereus of which I tolde.  
Of Thrace was he the lorde, and kyn to Marte,  
The cruel god that stante with bloody darte;  
And weddid had he with full blisful chere  
King Pandion's fairè doughtir dere  
That hight Progne, the floure of her countre,  
Though Juno liste not at the fest to be  
Ne Hymen, that the god of Weddyng is,  
But at the festè redy ben iwis  
The Furis three, with all ther mortall bronde.  
The oule all night above the balkis wonde,  
That prophete is of wo and of mischaunce.  
This revill, full of song and full of daunce,  
Lasted a fourtènight or little lasse:  
But shortlie of this storie for to passe,  
(For I am werie of hym for to tell)  
Five yere his wife and he togithir dwell,  
Till on a daie she gan so sore to long  
To sene her sustir, that she sawe not long,  
That for desire she ne wist what to saie,  
But to her husbonde gan she for to praie,

For Godd's love, that she mote onis gone  
To sene her sustre', and come ayen anon,  
Or ellis but she motè to her wende  
She praied him that he would astir her fende;  
And this was daie by daie all her praie,  
With all humbleste of wifehode, worde, and chere.

This Tereus let make his shippis yare,  
And into Grece hymself is forthe ifare:  
Unto his fathir in lawe gan he praie  
To vouchesafin that for a moneth or twaie  
That Philomela his wive's sustir might  
On Progne' his wife but onis have a sight,  
And she shall come to you again anon,  
My self with her I will bothe come and gon,  
And as my hert's life I will her kepe.

This olde Pandion, this kyng, gan to wepe  
For tendirnesse of hertè for to leve  
His doughtir gon, and for to yeve her leve;  
Of all this worlde he lovid nothyng so;  
But at the lastè leve hath she to go,  
For Philomela with salt teris eke  
Gan of her fathir his grace to beseke  
To sene her sustir, that her longith so,  
And hym enbracith with her armis two:  
And therewithal so yonge and faire was she,  
That when that Tereus sawe her beaute,  
And of arraie that there was none her liche,  
And yet of beaute was she to so riche,  
He cast his fierie herte upon her so  
That he woll have her how so that it go,  
And with his wilis knelid and so praied  
Till at the last Pandion thus ysaied:

Now sonne, (quod he) that art to me so dere,  
I the betake my yonge doughtir here,  
That bereth the keie of all myne hert's life,  
And grete me well my doughtir and thy wife,



## LEGENDE OF PHILOMELA.

And yêve her levè somtyme for to pleie,  
 That she maie se me onis or I deie.  
 And sothly he hath made hym richè fest,  
 And to his folke the moste and eke the lest  
 That with him came, and yave him yestis grete,  
 And him conveyith through the mastirstrete  
 Of Athenis and to the se hym brought,  
 And tournith home, no malice he ne-thought.  
 The oris pullith forth the vessil fast,  
 And into Thrace arrivith at the last,  
 And up into a forest he her led,  
 And to a cave full privily hym sped,  
 And in this darkè cave, if that her lest  
 Or ne list nought, he bad her for to rest,  
 Of whiche her herte agrofe, and sayid thus :

Where is my sustir, brothir Tereus?  
 And there withall she wept full tendirlic,  
 And quoke for fere all pale and pitounslie,  
 Right as the lambe that of the wolfe is bitten,  
 Or as the culver that of the egle is smitten,  
 And is out of his clawis forthe escaped,  
 Yet it is still aferde and sore awhaped,  
 Lest it be hent estsonis ; so fate she :  
 But uttirlic it maie none othir be,  
 By force hath this traitour ydoen a dede  
 That he hath rest her of her maidinhede  
 Maugre her hed, by strenght and by his might.

Lo, here a dede of men, and that aright !  
 She cryith Sustir with full loudè steven,  
 And Fathir dere ! o helpe me God in heven !  
 All helpith not : and yet this falsè thefe  
 Hath doen his lady yet a more mischese,  
 For fere lest that she should his shamè crie,  
 And doen him opinlie a vilanie,  
 And with his sward her tong of kerfith he,  
 And in a castill made her for to be  
 Full privily in prisone evirmore,  
 And kept her to his usage and his store,  
 So that she ne might nevir more asterte.

O sely Philomela ! wo' is thine herte,  
 Hugo ben thy sorowis, and wondir smerte ;  
 God wreke the, and sende the thy bone !  
 Now it is time I make an endè sone.

This Tereus is to his wife icome,  
 And in his armis hath his wife inome,  
 And pitoussly he wept, and shoke his hedde,  
 And swore her that he found her sustir dedde,  
 For whiche this selie Progne hath sothe wo  
 That nigh her sorowfull herte brake atwo :

And thus in teris let I Progne dwell,  
 And of her sustir forthe I woll you tel.

This wofull ladie lernid had in youth  
 So that she workin and enbraudin couth,  
 And wevin in her stole the radvore,  
 As it of women hath ben wovid yore ;  
 And, sothly for to saine, she hath her fill  
 Of mete and drinke, of clothing at her will,  
 And couth eke rede well inough and endite,  
 But with a pennè she ne could not write,  
 But lettris can she wevin to and fro,  
 So that by that the yere was all ago  
 She had ywovin in a stamen large  
 How she was brought fro Athens in a barge,  
 And in a cave how that she was ybrought,  
 And all the thyng that Tereus ywrought  
 She wave it wel, and wrote the storie above  
 How she was servid for her sustir's love ;  
 And to a knave a ring she yave anon,  
 And prayid him by signis for to gon  
 Unto the Quene, and berin her that clothe,  
 And by signis swore him many an othe  
 She should him yevin what she gettin might.

This knave anon unto the Quene him dight,  
 And toke it her, and all the manir tolde :  
 And when that Progne hath this thing behold  
 No worde she spake for sorowe and for rage,  
 But fainid her to gon on pilgrimage  
 To Bacchus temple ; and in a little stounde  
 Her dombe sustir ysittying hath she founde,  
 Weping in the castill her self alone ;  
 Alas the wo, the constraint, and the mone,  
 That Progne upon her dombe sustir maketh !  
 In armis everiche of 'hem othir taketh :  
 And thus I let 'hem in ther sorowe dwell,  
 The remenaunt is no charge for to tell,  
 For this is all and some, thus was she served  
 That nevir ought agiltid ne deserved  
 Unto this cruill man that she of wiste.  
 Ye maie beware of men if that you liste,  
 For all be that he woll not for his shame  
 Doin as Tereus to lese his name,  
 Ne serve you as a murtherer or a knave,  
 Full little while shullin ye trewe him have,  
 That woll I sain, al wer he now my brother,  
 But it so be that he maie have none other.

---

HERE FOLOWETH

THE LEGENDE OF PHYLLIS.

By prove as well as by authorite  
 That wickid fruite commeth of a wicked tre,  
 That maie ye find if that it likith you;  
 But for this ende I speke this as now,  
 To tellin you of false Demophoon;  
 In love a falsir herd I nevir non  
 But it werin his fathir Theseus;  
 God for his grace fro soche one kepin us!  
 Thus these women yprayin that it here;  
 Now the' effecte tourne I of my matere.  
 Destroyid is of Troie the cite;  
 This Demophon came sailyng in the se  
 Toward Athenis; to his paleis large;  
 With him came many a ship and many' a barge  
 All full of folke, of whiche full many one  
 Is wounded fore, and sike, and wo begone,  
 And thei have at the siegè long ilaine;  
 Behind him came a winde and eke a raine  
 That shofe so fore his saile ne might not stonde,  
 Hym were levir then all the worlde a londe;  
 So huntith hym the tempest to and fro,  
 So dark it was he could no where ago,  
 And with a wave to brustin was his stere;  
 His ship was rent so lowe in soche manere  
 That carpenter ne coude it not amende;  
 The se by night as any torche brende  
 For wode, and possith him up and down,  
 Till Neptune hath of hym compassion,  
 And Thetis, Chorus, Triton, and thei all,  
 And madin him upon a londe to fall  
 Whereof that Phyllis lady was and quene,  
 Lycurgus doughtir, fairir unto sene  
 Then is the floure again the brightè sonne:  
 Unneth is Demphon to londe iwonne,  
 Weke and eke werie, and his folke forpined  
 Of werinesse, and also enfamined,  
 And to the deth he was almoſte idriven:  
 His wiſe folke counsaile have him yeven

To sekin helpe and succour of the Quene,  
 And lokin what his grace mightin bene,  
 And makin in that lande some chevesaunce,  
 And kepin him fro wo and fro mischaunce,  
 For sike he was and almoſte at the deth,  
 Unnethis might he speke or drawin breth,  
 And lieth in Rhodopeia hym to reſte.  
 When he may walkin him thought it was beſte  
 Unto the courte to sekin for succour;  
 Men knewe him wele, and diddin hym honour,  
 For at Athenis duke and lorde was he,  
 As Theseus his fathir hath ibe,  
 That in his tyme was of grete renoun,  
 No man so grete in all his regioun,  
 And like his fathre' of face and stature,  
 And false of love, it came hym of nature,  
 As doeth the foxe Renarde, the fox'is sonne,  
 Of kinde he could his oldè fathir wonne  
 Withoutin lore, as can a drake swimme  
 When it is caught and caried to the brimme.  
 This honourable Phyllis doth him chere;  
 Her likith well his porte and his manere;  
 But I am all-agrotid here beforne  
 To write of 'hem that in love ben forsworne,  
 And eke to hastin me in my Legende,  
 Whiche to performè God me grace yfende,  
 Therefore I passin shortly in this wiſe.  
 Ye have well herd of Theseus the giſe  
 In the betraying of faire Adriane,  
 That of her pite kept him fro his bane;  
 At short wordis, right so Demophoon  
 The samè waie and the same pathe hath gon  
 That did his false fathir Theseus,  
 For unto Phyllis hath he swornè thus,  
 To weddin her, and her his trouth yplight,  
 And pikid of her all the gode he might,  
 Whan he was whole and founde, and had his reſte,  
 And doeth with Phyllis what so that him left,

## LEGENDE OF PHYLLIS.

As well I could, if that me listè so,  
T'ellin of all his doying to and fro.

He faied that to his cowntre mote hym faile,  
For there he would her weddyng appaile  
As fill to her honour and his also:  
And opinly he toke his levè tho,  
And to her swore that he would not sojourn,  
But in a moneth again he would retourne,  
And in that londe let make his ordinaunce  
As very lorde, and toke the obeisaunce  
Well and humbly, and his shippis ydight,  
And home he goith the next waie he might,  
But unto Phyllis again came he nought,  
And that hath she so harde and sore ibought,  
Alas! as the storie doeth us recorde,  
That she was her owne deth right with a corde,  
When that she saw that Demophon her traied;  
But first wrote she to him, and fast him praid  
He would come and delivir her of pain,  
As I reherfin shall a worde or twain;  
Me liste not to vouchsafe on him to swinke,  
Dispendin on him a penne full of ynke,  
For false in love was he, right as his fire,  
The devil set ther soulis both on fire!  
But of the lettre' of Phyllis woll I write  
A worde or twain, although it be but lite.

Thine hostesse, (quod she) o Demophon!  
Thy Phyllis, which that is so wo begon,  
Of Rhodopeie upon you mote complain,  
Ovir the terme yset betwixt us twain  
That ye ne holdin forwarde as ye faied;  
Your ancre, whiche ye in our havin laied,  
Hight us that ye would comin out of doubt  
Or that the monè onis went about,  
But timis fower the mone hath hid her face  
Sens thilkè daie ye wentin fro this place  
And fowir timis light the worlde again;  
But for all that yet shall I sothly fain  
Yet hath the streame of Scython not ybrought  
From Athenis the ship, yet came it nought;  
And if that ye the termè rekin would  
As I or othir true lovirs doe should,  
I plainin not (God wot) before my daie.  
But all her lettir writin I ne maie  
By ordir, for it were to me a charge;  
Her lettir was right long, and thereto large,

But here and there in rhyme I have it laied  
There as me thought that she hath wel yfaied.

She faied, The failis comith not again,  
Ne to the worde therè n'is no fey certain;  
But I wot why ye comin not, (quod she)  
For I was of my love to you so fre;  
And of the goddis that ye have yswore  
If that ther vengeance fall on you therefore  
Ye be not suffisaunt to bere the pain;  
To mochil trustid I, well maie I fain,  
Upon your linage and your faire tong,  
And on your teris falsly out ywrong:  
How coud ye wepin so by craft? (quod she)  
Maie there soch teris evir fainid be?

Now certis if ye would have in memorie  
It oughtin be to you but little glorie  
To have a felie maidin thus betraied:  
To God (quod she) praie I, and oft have praied,  
That it be now the gretist price of all  
And moste honour that er you shall befall;  
And when thine old auncetirs paintid be,  
In whiche men maie ther worthinesse yse,  
Then praie I God thou paintid be also,  
That folke maie redin fortheby as thei go,

Lo! this is he that with his flattiry  
Betrayid hath and doen her villany  
That was his true love in thought and dede!

But sothly of o poinct yet maie thei rede,  
That ye ben like your fathir as in this,  
For he begild Ariadne' iwis  
With suche an arte and soche a subtilte  
As thou thy selvin hast beguiled me;  
As in that poinct, although it be not feire,  
Thou folowist certain, and art his heire;  
But sens thus sinfully ye me begile  
My bodis mote ye sene within a while  
Right in the haven of Athenis fletyng  
Withoutin sepulture and burying,  
Though ye ben hardir then is any stone.

And when this lettir was forth sent anone,  
And knewe how brotill and how fals he was,  
She for dispaire forbid her self, alas!  
Suche sorowe' hath she for she beset her so,  
Beware ye women of your subtill fo,  
Sens yet this daie men maie ensample se,  
And trustith now in love no man but me.



HERE FOLOWETH

## THE LEGENDE OF HYPERMNESTRA.

In Grece whilom were dwelling brethrene two,  
Of whiche that one was callid Danao,  
That marry' a sonne hath of his bodie wonne,  
As soche false loviris oftimis conne.

Emongis his sonnys all there was one  
That aldirmoste he loved of everychone,  
And when this child was borne this Danao  
Shope him a name, and callid hym Lino;  
That othir brothir callid was Egiste,  
That was of love as false as er him lifte;  
And many' a daughtir gate he in his life,  
Of whiche he gate upon his righte wife  
A dough'ir dere, and did her for to call  
Hypermnestra, the youngist of 'hem all,  
The whichẽ childe of her nativite  
To alle gode thewis yborne was she,  
As likid to the goddess or she was borne  
'That of the shefe she should be the corne:  
The werdis that we clepin Destine  
Hath shapin her that she must nedis be  
Pitous, and sad, and wise, and true as stele;  
And to this woman it accordith wele,  
For though that Venus yave her grete beute  
With Jupiter compownid so was she  
That conscience and trouthe, and drede of shame,  
And of her wifekode for to kepe her name,  
This thought her was felicite as here:  
And Red Mars was at that tyme of the yere  
So feble that his malice is him rafte,  
Repressid hath Venus his cruill crafte,  
And what with Venus and othir oppression  
Of housis Mars his venime is adon,  
That Hypermnestra dare not handle' a knife  
In malice, though she shouldin lese her life;  
But nathellessẽ as hevyn gau the turne,  
Two bad aspectis hath she of Saturne,  
That made her f r to dyin in prafon;  
And I shall aftir makin mencion

Of Danao and Egiste also,  
And though so be that thei were brethrin two,  
For thilke tyme n'as sparid no linage,  
It likid 'hem to makin mariage  
Betwixt Hypermnestra and him Lino,  
And castin in soche a daie it shall be so,  
And full accordid was it uttirly,  
The' araie is wrought, the tyme is faste by;  
And thus Lino hath of his fathir's brother  
The dough'ir wedded, and ech of 'hem hath othir;  
The torchis brennin and the lampis bright,  
The sacrificis ben full redy dight,  
Th' enfence out of the fire out rekith fote,  
The floure the lese, is rent up by the rote  
To makin garlandis and crounis hie;  
Full is the place of found of minstrelcie,  
Of songis amouros of mariage,  
As thilkẽ tyme was the plain usage;  
And this was in the paleis of Egiste,  
That in his hous was lord right as him lifte;  
And thus that daie thei drivin to an ende,  
The frendis takin leve, and home thei wend;  
The night is come, the bride shall go to bed,  
Egiste to his chamber fast him sped,  
And privily he let his dough'ir call  
When that the hous voidid was of 'hem all;  
He lokith on his dough'ir with glade chere,  
And to her spake as ye shall aftir here:  
My right dough'ir, the trefour of mine herte!  
Sens first that daie that shapin was my sherte,  
Or by the Fatall Sufir had my dome,  
So nye myne herte nevir thing ne come,  
As thou my Hypermnestra, dough'ir dere!  
Take hede what thy fathir sayith the here,  
And werke aftir thy wisir evirmo,  
For aldirfirst dough'ir I love the so  
That all the worlde to me n'is halfe so lese,  
Ne I n'olde redẽ the to thy milchefe

For all the gode undir the coldè mone;  
 And what I mene it shal be said right sone,  
 With protestacion, as faine these wise,  
 That but thou doe as I shall the devise  
 Thou shalt be ded, by him that al hath wrought:  
 At shorte wordis, thou ne scapist nought  
 Out of my palcis or that thou be dede  
 But thou consent and werke aftir my rede;  
 Take this to the for full conclusioun.  
 This Hypermnestra cast her eyin down,  
 And quoke as doeth the lefe of aspis grene,  
 Ded wext her hew, and like ashin to sene,  
 And sayid; Lorde and fathir, all your will,  
 Attir my might, God wote I shall fulfill,  
 So it be to me no confusion.  
 I n'ill (quod he) have non exception,  
 And out he caught a knife as rasour kene;  
 Hide this (quod he) that it be nat isene,  
 And when thine husbonde is to bed ygo,  
 While that he slepith cut his throte atwo,  
 For in my dreme it is ywarnid me  
 How that my nevewe shall my bane ybe,  
 But whiche I n'ot, wherefore I woll be fiker;  
 If thou saie naie we two shall have a biker,  
 As I have saied, by him that I have sworne.  
 This Hypermnestra' hath nigh her wit forlorn,  
 And for to passe harmeleffe out of that place  
 She grauntid him, there was non othir grace.  
 And therewithall a costrell takith he,  
 And saied, Hereof a draught or two, or thre,  
 Yeve him to drinke when he goith to reste,  
 And he shall slepe as long as er the leste,  
 The narcotikes and apies ben so strong,  
 And go thy waie, lest that him thinke to long.  
 Out cometh the bride, and with full sobre chere,  
 As is of maidins oftin the manere,  
 To chambir brought with revil and with song:  
 And shortlie, leste this tale be to long,  
 This Lino and she beth bin brought to bed,  
 And every wight out at the dore him sped.  
 The night is wastid, and he fell aslepe;  
 Full tendirly beginnith she to wepe;  
 She rist her up, and dredefully she quaketh,  
 As doeth the braunch that Zephyrus yshaketh;

And husht were all in Aragone that cite:  
 As colde as any froste now wexith she,  
 For pite by the herte strainid her so,  
 And drede of deth doith her so moche wo,  
 That thryis doune she fill; in soche a were  
 She rist her up, and stekereth here and there,  
 And on her handis faste lokith she;  
 Alas! quod she, shall myne handes blodie be!  
 I am a maidin, and by my nature,  
 And by my semblaunt, and by my vesture,  
 Myne haundis ben not shapin for a knife,  
 As for to revin no man fro his life:  
 What devill have I with the knife to do?  
 And shall I have my throte ycorve atwo?  
 Then shall I blede, alas! and be yshende:  
 And nedis of this thing mote have an ende;  
 Or he or I mote nedis lefe our life:  
 Now certis (quod she) fens I am his wife,  
 And hath my feithe, yet is it bette for me  
 For to be dedde in wisely honeste  
 Then be a traitour living in my shame:  
 Be as be maie, for earnest or for game,  
 He shall awake, and rise and go his waie  
 Out at this guttir er that it be daie;  
 And wept full tendirly upon his face,  
 And in her armis gan him to embrace,  
 And kum she roggith and awakith soft;  
 And at the windowe lepe he fro the lost  
 When she hath warnid him and doen him bote.  
 This Lino swift ywas and light of fote,  
 And from his wife he ran a full gode pace:  
 This selie woman is so weke, alas!  
 And helpless, so that er she ferrè went  
 Her cruill fathir did her for to hent.  
 Alas, Lino! why art thou so unkinde?  
 Why ne hast thou remembrid in thy minde  
 And takin her and led her forthe with the?  
 For when she sawe that gone awaie was he,  
 And that she ne might not so fast ygo,  
 Ne folowin him, she fate doune right tho  
 Til she was caught and fettrid in prison;  
 This Tale is saied for this conclusion.

## A PRAISE OF WOMEN.

As tho that lyfte of women ill to speke,  
And sayin of 'hem worse than they deserve,  
I pray to God that ther neckis to breke,  
Or on some yll dethe mote tho janglirs sterve,  
For every man were holdin 'hem to serve,  
And do 'hem worship, honour, and servise,  
In every manir they best coude devise.

For we ought first to think on what manere  
Thei bring us forth, and what pain thei endure  
First in our byrth, and sith fro yere to yere  
How busily they done ther busy cure  
To kepe us fro every mysfavinture

In our youthbed, whan that we have no might.  
Our selfe to kepe neythir by day nor night.

Alas! howe may we say on 'hem but wele  
Of whom we were yfostred and ybore,  
And ben all our socoure, and trewe as stele,  
And for our sake ful ofte they suffre sore?  
Without women were al our joye ylore,  
Wherefore we ought al women to obey  
In al godenesse; I can no more ysay.

This is wel knowin, and hath ben or this,  
That women ben the cause of al lightnesse,  
Knighthode, norture, eschewing al malis,  
Encrese of worship and of worthinesse,  
Therto curteys meke, grounde of alle godenesse,  
Glad and mery, and trewe in every wise  
That any gentle hert can thinke or devise.

And though any would trust to your untruth,  
And to your faire wordis would aught assent,  
In gode faith methinkith it wer grete ruth  
That othre women should for ther gilt be shent  
That ner knew ne wist nought of ther entent,  
Ne list not to here the faire wordes ye write,  
Whiche ye you paine fro daie to daie t' endite.

But who maie beware of your tales untrue  
That ye so busilie painte and endite?  
For ye will swerin that ye nevir kewe  
Ne sawe the woman neither moche ne lite,  
Save only her to whom ye had delite  
As for to serve of all that er ye sey,  
And for her love must ye nedis dey.

Then wil ye swere that ye knew ner before  
What Love was, ne his dredful observaunce,  
But now ye felin that he can wounde sore,  
Wherefore ye put you' into her govirnaunce

Whom Love hath ordeined you to serve and dople  
saunce

With al your might your lityl liv'is space,  
Whiche endith sone but if she doe you grace;  
And then to bedde will ye you sone ydrawe,  
And sone your selvis sicke ye will then fain,  
And swerin fast your ladie hath you slawe,  
And brought you sodainly in so high pain  
That fro your deth maie no man you restrain,  
With a dangerous loke of her eyin two,  
That to your deth must ye nedis go.

Thus will ye morne, thus will ye sighin sore,  
As though your hert anon in two wold hrest,  
And swerin fast that ye maie live no more,  
Myne owne ladie, that might if ye lest  
Bryngin myne herte somedele into rest,  
As if you list mercie on me to have,  
Thus your untrouth will evir mercie crave.

Thus woll ye plainin tho you nothing smerte  
These innocent cretures for to begile,  
And swere to 'hem so woundid is your herte.  
For love of them that ye maie live no while,  
Scarlie so long as one might go a mile;  
So hyith Deth to bryng you to an ende  
But if your soverain lady list you' amendé.

And if she comfort you in any wise  
For routhre for pite' of your false othis sere,  
So that she weneth it be as you devise,  
And wenith your herte be as she maie here,  
Thus to comfort and somewhat do you chere,  
Then woll these janglirs deme of her full ill,  
And saine ye have her fully at your will.

Lo, how redie ther tongis ben and prest  
To spekin harme of women causilese!  
Alas! why might ye not as well saie the best  
As for to demin 'hem thus giltylesse?  
In your herte iwis there' is no gentllnesse  
That of your own gilt list thus women fame;  
Now by my trouth me thinke ye be to blame,

For of women comith this worldly wele,  
Wherefore we ought worship 'hem evirmore,  
And though it mishap one we ought to hele,  
For it is all thorough our false lore,  
That daie and night we pain us evirmore  
With many' an othe these women to begile  
With false talis and many' a wickid wile.



And if falshe should be reckened and told  
It n'ere in women iwis full trouth were  
Not as in men is by a thousande fold,  
Fro all vicis iwis thei standin clere,  
In any thing that er I could of here,  
But if entifyng of these men it make,  
That 'hem to flatteren connin nevir flake.

I would fain wete where evir ye coud here  
Without mens tising women did amis;  
There ye get 'hem ye lie fro yere to yere,  
And many' a gabbyng ye make to 'hem iwis,  
For I could nevir here ne knowen er this  
Where evir ye coude finde in any place  
That evir women befought you of grace.

There ye you painin with al your full might,  
With all your herte and all your businesse,  
To plesin 'hem aye both by daie and night,  
Praying 'hem of ther grace and gentilnesse  
To have pite upon your grete distresse,  
And that thei woldin on your pain have routh,  
And fle you not, sithin ye mene but trouth.

Thus maie seyn that thei ben faultlesse,  
And innocent to all your werkis fle;  
And all your craftis that touchin falsnesse  
Thei knowe 'hem not, ne maie 'hem not espie;  
So swerin ye that ye must nedis die  
But if thei woldin of ther womanhedde  
Upon your trouth rewe er that ye be dedde.

And then your lady and your hert'is quene  
Ye callin 'hem, and therewith ye sigh fore,  
And saie, My ladie', I trowe that it be sene  
In what plite that I have livid full yore,  
But now I hope that ye wollin no more  
In these pains suffre me for to dwell,  
For of all godenesse iwis ye be the' well.

Lo, whiche a paintid processe can ye make  
These harmlesse creturis for to begile!  
And when thei slepe ye painin you to wake,  
And to bethinke you' on many' a wickid wile;  
But ye shal se the daie that ye shall curse the while  
That ye so busily did your entent  
'Hem to begile that falshed nevir ment.

For this ye know wel, though I wouidin lie,  
In women is all trouth and stedfastnesse,  
For in gode faithe I nevir of 'hem fle  
But moche worship, bounte, and gentilnesse,  
Right commyng, faire, and full of mekenesse,  
Gode and glad, and lowlie I you ensure,  
Is this godelie and angelike cature.

And if it happe a man be in disese  
She doeth her businesse and her full paine  
With al her might him to comfort and plesse,  
If fro his disese she might hym restrain:  
In worde ne dede iwis she woll not faine;  
With al her might she doth her businesse  
To bryngin hym out of his hevinesse.

Lo, here what gentillesse these women have:  
If we could knowe it for our rudenesse  
How busie thei be us to kepe and save  
Bothe in hele and also in sickenesse,  
And alwaie right sorie for our distresse;  
In every manir thus shewe thei routh,  
That in 'hem is all godenesse and all trouthe.

And sith we find in 'hem gentilnesse, trouth,  
Worship, bounte, and kindnesse, evirmore,  
Let nevir this gentillesse through your slouth  
In ther kinde trouth be evir aught forlore  
That in women is and hath ben full yore,  
For a reverence of heaven'is quene  
We ought to worship all women that bene;

For of all catures that were get and borne  
This wote ye well a woman was the best;  
By her was recovered the blis we' had lorne,  
And through that woman shall we come to rest  
And ben isayid, if that our self lest;  
Wherefore me thinkith if that we had grate  
We oughten honour women in every place.

Therefore I rede that to our liv'is ende,  
Fro this time forth while that we havin space,  
That we have trespaced pursue to amende,  
Praying our Ladie, the welle of all grace,  
To bryngin us unto that blisfull place  
There as she' and all gode women shall be' in fere,  
In hevin above, among the angils clere.

## LA BELLE DAME SANS MERCY.

*M. Aleyn, Secretary to the King of France, formed this dialogue between a gentleman and a gentlewoman, who finding no mercy at her hand, dyeth for sorrow.*

**H**ALFE in a dreme, not fully well awaked,  
The goldin Slepe me wrapped undir his wyng,  
Yet not forthy I rose, and well nigh naked,  
Al sodainly my self rememberyng  
Of a mattir, levyng all othir thyng,  
Which I must doe withoutin more delaie  
For them whiche I ne durst not disobaie.

My charge was this, to translate by and by,  
(All thyng forgive) as parte of my penaunce,  
A boke callid *La bel Dame sans Mercy*,  
Whiche Maistir Aleine made of remembraunce,  
Chief Secretarie with the Kyng of Fraunce;  
And hereupon a while I stode musyng,  
And in my self greatly imaginynge

What wife I should perform the said processe  
Confidiryng by gode advisement  
My unconnyng and my grete simplenesse,  
And ayenward the straite commaundement  
Whiche that I had; and thus in myne entent  
I was vexid and tournid up and doune,  
And yet at last, as in conclusioun,

I cast my clothis on, and went my waie,  
This foresaid charge having in remembraunce,  
Till I came to a lustie grene valaie  
Full of flouris, to se a grete plesaunce,  
And so boldly, with ther benigne suffraunce  
Which redin this boke, touching this matere  
Thus I began, if it plesse you to here.

Not long ago, ridyng an esle paas,  
I fell in thought of joyful desperate,  
With grete disese and pain, so that I was  
Of all lovirs the most unfortunate,  
Sith by his darte moste cruell full of hate  
The Deth hath take my ladie and maistresse,  
And left me sole, thus discomfite and mate,  
Sore languishyng and in waie of distresse.

Then said I thus, It fallith me to cesse  
Eithir to rime or ditees for to make,  
And surcly to makin a full promesse  
To laugh no more, but wepe in clothis blake  
My joyfull tyme (alas!) now doeth it flake,  
For in my self I fele no manir ese,  
Let it be written, soche fortune (as I take)  
Which neithir me nor non othir doth plesse.

If it were so my wyll or myne entent  
Constrainid were a joyfull thing to write,  
My penne coud nevyr knowin what it ment,  
To speke thereof my tongue hath no delite;  
Tho with my mouthe I laugh mochil or lite  
Mine eyin should make a countenance untrue,  
My herte also would have therof despise,  
The wepyng teris have so large issue.

These sicke lovirs I leve that to 'hem longes,  
Which lede ther life in hope of eleageaunce,  
This is to saie, to make balades and songes  
Every of 'hem as thei fele ther grevaunce,  
For she that was my joye and my plesaunce,  
Whose soule I praie God of his mercie save!  
She hath my will, myne hert's ordinaunce,  
Which lyith here within this tombe igrave.

For this tyme forthe tyme is to hold my pees;  
It werieth me this mattir for to trete;  
Let othir lovirs put 'hem selfe in prees,  
Their seson is, my tyme is now forgete;  
Fortune by strength the forcir hath unshete  
Wherein was sperde all my worldly richeffe,  
And all the godis which that I have gete  
In my best tyme of youth and lustinesse.

Love hath me kept undir his govirnaunce;  
If I misdidd God graunt me forgivenesse!  
If I did well yet felt I no plesaunce,  
It causid neithir joye nor hevinesse,

For when she dyid that was my maistres  
My welfare then ymade the same purchase;  
The Deth hath shette my bondis of witnesse,  
Which for nothing myne hert shal nevir pase.

In this grete thought fore troublid in my mind,  
Alone thus rode I all the morrow tide,  
Till at the last it happid me to finde  
The place wherein I cast me to abide  
When that I had no furthir for to ride,  
And as I went my lodgyng to purvaie  
Right sone I held a little me beside,  
In a gardin, where minstrels gan to plaie:

With that anone I went me backir more,  
My self and I, me thought we were inow,  
But twaine that wer my frendis here before  
Had me espied, and yet I wote not how  
Thei came for me; awaiewarde I me drowe,  
Somwhat by force, somewhat by ther request,  
That in no wise I coud my self rescowe,  
But nedis I must come in and se the fest.

At my commyng the ladies everichone  
Bad me welcome, God wote so gentillie,  
And made me chere every one by one  
A grete dele bettir than I was worthie,  
And of ther grace shewed me grete curtisie  
With gode disport, bicause I should not mourne:  
That daie I bode still in ther companie,  
Whiche was to me a gracious sojourn.

The bordis were spred in right lityl space,  
The ladies sat eche as she semid best;  
There were no dedly fervautes in the place,  
But chosin men, right of the godelyest,  
And some there wer, peraventure most freshest,  
That fawin ther judgis right full demure,  
Withoutin semblaunt eithir to moste or lest,  
Notwithstandyng thei had 'hem undir cure.

Among all othir one I gan espie  
Which in grete thought ful oftin came and went,  
As one that had ben ravished uttirly,  
In his language not gretly diligent;  
His countinaunce he kept with grete turment,  
But his desire farre passid his reson,  
For er his eye went aftir his entent  
Full many a tyme when it was no seson.

To makin chere sorely hymself he pained,  
And outwardly he fainid grete gladnesse;  
To sing also by force he was constrained,  
For no plesaunce but verie shamefastnesse,  
For the complainte of his moste hevinesse  
Came to his voice alwaie without request,  
Like as the soune of birdis doeth expresse  
When thei sing loude in frische or in forest.

Othir there were that servid in the hall,  
But none like hym, as aftir myne advise,  
For he was pale, and somewhat lene withall,  
His speche also tremblid in ferfull wise,  
And er alone but when he did servise;  
All blacke he were, and no devise but plain;  
Me thought by him, as my witte coud suffise,  
His herte was nothyng in his owne demain.

To fest 'hem all he did his diligence,  
And well he coud, right as it semid me,  
But evirmore when he was in presence  
His chere was doon, it n'olde none othir be;

His scholemaistir had soche au'thorite  
That all the while he bode still in that place  
Speke cou'd he not, but upon her beaute  
He lokid still with a right pitous face.

With that his hedde he tounid at the last  
For to beholde the ladies everichone,  
But er in one he set his eye stedfast  
On her whiche that his thought was moste upon,  
For of his eyen the shot I knewe anone,  
Which ferfull was, with right humble requestes;  
Then to my self I saied, by God alone  
Soche one was I or that I sawe these jesses.

Out of the prese he went full esily  
To make stable his hevie countinaunce,  
And wote ye well he sighid wondirly  
For his sorowes and wofull remembrance,  
Then in hymself he made his ordinance,  
And forthwithall came to bryng in the messe,  
But for to judge his moste wofull penance  
God wote it was a pitous entremesse.

Aftir dinir anone thei 'hem avaunced  
To daunce above the folk everychone,  
And forthwithal this hevie man he daunced  
Somtime with twaine and somtymis with one;  
Unto 'hem all his chere was aftir one,  
Now here, now there, as fell by avinture,  
But er among he drew to her alone  
Whiche that he moste drede of livyng cature.

To mine advise gode was his purveiaunce  
When he her chose to his maistresse alone,  
If that her herte were set to his plesaunce  
As moche as was her beauteous persone,  
For who so evir setteth his trust upon  
The report of the eyen withoutin more  
He might be dedde and gravin undir stone  
Or he should his hert'is ese restore.

In her failid nothyng that I coud gesse  
One wise nor othir, privie nor aperte;  
A garison she was of godelinesse,  
To make a frontier for a lovirs herte;  
Right yong and freshe, a woman full coverte,  
Assurid wele of porte and eke of chere,  
Wel at her ese, withoutin wo or smerte,  
All underneth the standerde of Dangere.

To se the fest it weried me full sore,  
For hevie joye doeth fore the herte travaile,  
Out of the prese I me withdrawe therfore,  
And set me doune alone behinde a traile  
Full of levis, to se a grete mervaile,  
With grene wrethis iboundin wondirly,  
The levis were so thicke withoutin faile  
That thoroughout no man might me espie.

To this ladie he came full curtisly  
When he thought time to daunce with her a trace,  
Set in an herbir made full plesantly,  
Thei restid 'hem fro thens but lityl space,  
Nigh 'hem were none of a certain compage,  
But onely thei, as farre as I coud se;  
Save the traile there I had ychose my place  
Ther was no more betwene 'hem two and me.

I herd the lovir sighyng wondir fore,  
For the more the forir it hym sought,  
His inward paine he coud not kepe in store,  
Nor for to speke so hardie was he nought;



His leche was nere, the gretir was his thought :  
 He musid fore to conquere his desire,  
 For no man maie to more penaunce be brought  
 Then in his herte to bryng hym to the fire.

The herte began to swell within his chest,  
 So fore strainid for anguiste and for pain,  
 That all to pecis almoste it to brest,  
 When both at ones so fore it did constrain.  
 Desire was bolde, but shame it gan refrain,  
 That one was large, the othir was full close ;  
 No little charge was laied on hym certain  
 To kepe soche werre and have so many fose.

Full oftin times to speke himself he pained,  
 But shamefastnesse and drede saied evir naie,  
 Yet at the last so fore he was constrained,  
 When he full long had put it in delaie,  
 To this ladie right thus then gan he saie,  
 With dredfull voice, wepyng, halfe in a rage ;  
 For me was purveied an unhappie daie  
 When I first had a sight of your visage :

I suffre pain, God wote, full hote brenning,  
 To cause my deth, all for my true servise,  
 And I se well ye reeke thereof nothing,  
 Nor take no hede of it in no kinde wise,  
 But when I speke astir my best advise  
 Ye reke it nought, but make thereof a game,  
 And though I sewe so grete an entirprise  
 Yet peirith not your worship nor your fame.

Alas ! what should it be to' you prejudice  
 If that a man doe love you faithfully ?  
 To your worship eschewyng every vice,  
 So I am yours, and will be verily ;  
 I chalenge nought of right, and reson why,  
 For I am whole submit to your service ;  
 Right as you list it be right so will I,  
 To binde my self where I was in fraunchise.

*L'amant.*

Though it be so that I can not deserve  
 To have your grace, but alwaie live in drede,  
 Yet suffre me you for to love and serve  
 Without maugre of your moste goddelihede ;  
 Both faith and trowth I give your womanhede  
 And my service without any callyng ;  
 Love hath me bound withoutin wage or mede  
 To be your man and leve all othir thyng.

*La Dame.*

When this ladie had herd al this language  
 She gave answere full soft and demurely,  
 Without chaungyng of colour or corage,  
 Nothyng in hast, but full mesurably ;  
 Me thinkith, Sir, your thought is grete foly ;  
 Purpose ye nought your labour for to cese,  
 For thinkith not whilis ye live and I  
 In this mattir to set your herte in pefe.

*L'amant.*

Ther maie none make the pecc but onely ye,  
 Which are the ground and cause of all this war,  
 For with your eyen the lettirs writtin be  
 By whiche I am defied and put asarre ;  
 Your plasaunt loke, my very lod starre,  
 Was made heraude of thilke same desiaunce  
 Whiche utterly beight me for to barre  
 My faithfull trust and all myne assyaunce.

*La Dame.*

To live in wo he hath grete fantasie,  
 And of his hert also but slipper holde,  
 That onely for beholdyng of an eye  
 Can not abide in pece, as reson wolde ;  
 Other or me if ye list ye maie beholde ;  
 Our eyen are made to loke, why should we spare ?  
 I take no kepe' neithir of yong ne olde ;  
 Who selith finart I counsaile hym beware.

*L'amant.*

If it be so one hurte on othir fore  
 In his defeaute that felith the grevaunce,  
 Of very right a man may do no more,  
 Yet reson would it were in remembraunce,  
 And sith Fortune onily by her chaunce  
 Hath causid me to suffre all this pain  
 By your beautie, with all the circumstaunce,  
 Why list ye have me in so grete disdaine ?

*La Dame.*

To your persone ne have I no disdaine,  
 Nor nevir had truelie, ne nought will have,  
 Nor right grete love nor hatred in certain,  
 Nor your counsaile to knowe so God me save ;  
 If that soche love be in your minde igrave,  
 That lityl thyng maie doe you displeaunce,  
 You to begile or make you for to rave,  
 I will not causin no soche encombraunce.

*L'amant.*

What er it be that me hath thus purchafed  
 Wenying hath not decevid me certain,  
 But fervent love so fore hath me ichafed  
 That I unware am castin in your chaine ;  
 And sith so is, as Fortune list ordaine,  
 All my welfare is in your handis fall,  
 In eschewyng of more mischevous paine  
 Who souist dieth, his care is lest of all.

*La Dame.*

This sicknesse is right esie to endure,  
 But fewe peple it causith for to die,  
 But what thei mene I knowe it very sure,  
 Of more comfort to drawe the remedie ;  
 Seche be there now plainyng full pitouslie  
 That sele, God wote, not althir gretist pain ;  
 And if so be love hurte so grevoullie,  
 Lesse harme it wer one forowful then twain.

*L'amant.*

Alas ! Madame, if that it might you plesse,  
 Moche bet it were by waie of gentilnesse  
 Of one sorie to make twain well at ese  
 Then hym to destroie that liveth in distresse,  
 For my desire is neithir more nor lesse  
 But my service to doe for your plesaunce,  
 In eschewyng all manir doublenesse  
 To make two joies in stede of one grevaunce.

*La Dame.*

Of love I seke neithir plesaunce nor ese,  
 Nor have I therein no grete assyaunce ;  
 Though ye be sick it doeth me nothing plesse,  
 Also I take no hede of your plesaunce :  
 Chese who so will ther hertis to avaunce,  
 Free am I now and fre will I endure ;  
 To be rulid by mann's govirnaunce  
 For yerthly gode maie, that I you ensure.

*L'amant.*

Love, which that joy and sorow doth depart,  
Hath set the ladies out of all servage,  
And largely doeth graunt 'hem for ther part  
Lordship and rule of every maner of age;  
The pore servaunt nought hath of avantage  
But what he maie get onely by purchesse,  
And he that ones to Love doeth his homage  
Full oftin tymes dere bought is the richeffe.

*La Dame.*

Ladies, be not so simple, thus I mene,  
So dull of witte, so sottid in folie,  
That for wordis which said be of the splene,  
In faire language paintid full plesauntlie,  
Whiche ye and mo holde scholis of dailie,  
To make 'hem all grete wondirs to suppose,  
But sone thei can awaie their heddis wrie,  
And to faire speche lightly ther eris close.

*L'amant.*

There is no man that janglith busilie,  
And setteth his herte and al his minde therfore;  
That by reson maie plain so pitoullie  
As he that hath moche hevinesse in flore;  
Whose hedde is whole and saith that it is sore  
His fainid chere is harde to kepe in mewe,  
But thought, whiche is unfainid evirmore,  
The workis previth as the wordis shewe.

*La Dame.*

Love is subtile, and hath a grete awaite,  
Sharp in working, in gabbing grete plesaunce;  
And can hym venge of soche as by disceite  
Would fele and knowe his secrete govirnaunce,  
And makith 'hem to' obeie his ordinaunce  
By cherefull waies, as in 'hem is supposed,  
But when thei fallin into repentaunce  
Then in a rage ther counsaile is disclosed.

*L'amant.*

Sith for as moche as God and eke Nature  
Hath avauncid love to so hie degre,  
Moche sharpe is the point, thus am I right sure,  
Yet grevith more the faute, where er it be;  
*Who hath no colde of bete hath no drinte;*  
The' one for that othir askid is expresse;  
And of plesaunce knowith none certainte  
But it be one in thought and hevinesse.

*La Dame.*

As for plesaunce, it is not alwaie one,  
That you think swete I think it bittir pain;  
Ye maie not me constrain, nor yet right none,  
Aftir your luste to love; that is but vain;  
To challenge love by right was nevir sein,  
But herte assent, before bonde and promise,  
For strength and force ne maie not er attain  
A will that standeth enteffid in franchise.

*L'amant.*

Right faire laide! God mote I nevir plesse  
If that I seke othir right in this case  
But for to shewe you plainly my disese,  
And your mercie to' abide and eke your grace;

VOL. I.

If I purpose your honour to deface,  
Or evir did, God and Fortune me shende,  
And that I ner unrightfully purchase  
One onelie joye unto my liv'is ende.

*La Dame.*

Ye and othir that swere soche othis faste,  
And so condempne and cursin to and fro,  
Full sikirly ye wene your othis laste  
No lengir then the wordis ben ago,  
And God and eke his sainctis laugh also;  
In soche sweryng there is no stedfastnesse,  
And these wretchis that have ful trust thereto  
Aftir thei wepe and wailin in distresse.

*L'amant.*

He hath no courage of a man truelie  
That sechith plesaunce worship to dispise,  
Nor to be callid, for he' is not worthie  
The yerth to touch, the aire in no kind wise,  
A trustie herte, a mouthe without feintise,  
Thus by the strength of every manir name,  
And who that laieth his faith for little prisio  
He lesith both his worship and his fame.

*La Dame.*

A cursid herte, a mouthe that is curteise,  
Full well ye wote thei be not accordyng,  
Yet fainid chere right sone maie 'hem apeise,  
Where of malice is set all ther workyng,  
Full false semblaunt thei bere and true semyng,  
Ther name, ther fame, ther tonguis, ben but fained,  
Worship in 'hem is put in forgettyng,  
Nought repentid, nor in no wise complained.

*L'amant.*

Who thinkith ill no gode maie him befall,  
God of his grace graunt eche man his desert!  
But for his love emong your thoughtis all  
As thinke upon my wofull sorowes smert,  
For of my paine whethir your tendir hert  
Of swete pitie be not therewith agreved,  
And of your grace to me were discovert,  
That by your mene sone should I be releved.

*La Dame.*

A lightsome herte, a folie of plesaunce,  
Are moche bettir the lesse while thei abide,  
Thei make you think and bring you in a traunce;  
But that sikeness will sone be remedide;  
Respite your thought, and put all this aside;  
Full gode disporte ywerieth me all daie;  
To helpe nor hurte my will is not aplide;  
Who troweth me not I let hym passe awaie.

*L'amant.*

Who hath a birde, a faucon, or a hounde,  
That foloweth hym for love in every place,  
He cherisheth him and kepith him ful found,  
Out of his sight he will not hym enchace,  
And I, that set my wittis in this cace  
On you alone, withoutin any chaunge,  
Am put undir, moche farthir out of grace,  
And lesse set by, then othir that be straunge;

F f

*La Dame.*

'Though I make chere to every man about  
For my worship and for myne own franchise,  
To you I nill doe so withoutin doubt,  
In eschewyng all manir prejudise,  
For wote ye well Love is so little wise,  
And in hileve so lightly will be brought,  
That he takith all at his owne devise  
Of thing God wote that servith him of nought.

*L'amant.*

If I by love and by my true servise  
Lese the gode chere that straungirs have alwaie  
Whereof shall serve my trouthe in any wise  
Lesse then to him that cometh and goeth al daie,  
Whiche holdeth of you nothyng, that is no naie?  
Also in you is lost, as to my femyng,  
All curtise, whiche of reson will saie  
That Love for love were lawfull desirng.

*La Dame.*

Curtise is alyd wondir nere  
To worship, whiche hym lovith tendirly,  
And he will not be bounde for no praiere,  
Nor for no giftes, I saie you verily,  
But his gode chere depart full largily  
Where hym lykith, as his concept will fall;  
Guerdon constrained, a gift doen thankfully,  
These twain can ner accord, nor nevir shal.

*L'amant.*

As for guerdon, I seke none in this cace,  
For that deserte to me it is to hie,  
Wherefore I aske your pardon and your grace,  
Sith me behovith deth or your mercie;  
To give the gode where it wantith truly  
That were reson and a curtise manere,  
And to your own moche bettir were worthy  
Then to straungirs to shew hem lovly chere.

*\* La Dame.*

What cal ye gode? fain would I that I wist;  
That plesith one an othir smertith fore,  
But of his owne to large is he that list  
Give moche and lesin his gode name therfore;  
One should not make a graunt, little ne more,  
But the request were right well accordyng;  
If worship be not kept and set before  
All that is leste is but a little thyng.

*L'amant.*

Into this worlde was foundin nevir none,  
Nor undir hevin creature ibore,  
Nor nevir shall, save onely your persone,  
To whom your worship touchith halfe so fore  
But me, whiche have no seson lesse ne more  
Of youth ne age but still in your service;  
I have no eyen, no wit, nor mouthe, in store,  
But all be givin to the same office.

*La Dame.*

A ful grete charge hath he withoutin faile  
That his worship kepith in sikirnesse,  
But in daungir he settith his travail  
That fessith it with othirs businesse;

To hym that longith honour and noblesse  
Upon none othir should not be awaite,  
For of his owne so moche hath he the lesse  
That of othir moche foloweth the conceite.

*L'amant.*

Your eyen hath set the print which that I sele  
Within my herte, that where so er I go  
If I doe thyng that founith unto wele  
Nedes must it cum from you and fro no mo;  
Fortune will this, that I for wele or wo  
My life endure, your mercy abidyng,  
And verie right will that I thinke also  
Of your worship above all othir thyng.

*La Dame.*

To your worship se well, for that is nede,  
That ye spende not your seson all in vain;  
As touchyng myne I rede you take no hede,  
By your follie to put your felfe in pain;  
To ovrcome is gode and to restrain  
An herte which is decevid follilie,  
For Worse it is to breke then bowe certain;  
Bettir to bowe then to fall sodainly.

*L'amant.*

Now, faire ladie! thinke sith it first began  
That Love hath set mine herte undir his cure  
It nevir might, ne truelic I ne can,  
None othir serve while I shall here endure,  
In most fre wise thereof I make you sure,  
Which maie not be withdraw, this is no naie;  
I must abide all manir advinture,  
For I ne maie put to nor take awaie.

*La Dame.*

I holde it for no gift in sothfastnesse  
That one offirith where it is forsake,  
For soche a gifte is abandonyng expresse,  
That with worship ayen maie not be take;  
He hath an herte full fell that list to make  
A gift lightlie that put is to refuse,  
But he is wise that soche concept will flake,  
So that hym nede neithir studie ne muse.

*L'amant.*

He should not muse that hath his service spent  
On her whiche is a ladie honourable,  
And if I spende my time to that entent  
Yet at the lest I am not reprovable  
Of fainid harte, to thinke I am unable,  
Or I mistoke when I made this request,  
By whiche Love hath of enterprise notable  
So many hertis gottin by conquest.

*La Dame.*

If that ye liste doe aftir my counsaile  
Seche a fairir and of more highir fame,  
Whiche in service of love will you prevaile,  
Aftir your thought, accordyng to the same;  
He hurtith bothe his worship and his name  
That follily for twain himself will trouble,  
And he also lesith his aftir game  
That surely can not set his poinctis double.



*L'amant.*

This your counsaile, by ought that I can se,  
Is bettir said than doen, to myne advise,  
Though I beleve it not forgive it me:  
Mine herte is soche, so whole without feintise,  
That I ne maie give credence in no wise  
To thyng whiche is not sounyng unto truth:  
Othir counsaile I se' is but fantasie  
Save of your grace to shewe pitie and ruth.

*La Dame.*

I holde hym wise that workith no folie,  
And when hym list can leve and part therfro,  
But in connyng he is to lerne truelie  
That would himself conduite and can not so;  
And he that will not astir counsaile doe  
His sute he puttith into disperaunce,  
And all the gode that should yfall hym to  
Is lost and dedde clene out of remembraunce.

*L'amant.*

Yet woul I shewe this mattir faithfullie  
Whillis I live, what evir be my chaunce,  
And if it hap that in my truthe I die  
Then deth shall doe to me no displeaunce,  
But when that I by your hard sufferaunce  
Shall die so true, and with so grete a pain,  
Yet shall it doe me moche the lesse grevaunce  
Then for to live a false lovir certain.

*La Dame.*

Of me get ye right noght, this is no fable,  
I will to you be neither hard nor straite,  
And right will not no man customable  
To thinke ye should be sure of my conceite;  
*Who sechith sorowe his be the receite;*  
Othir counsaile can I not sele nor se,  
Nor for to lerne I cast me not to' awaite,  
Who will thereof let him assaie for me.

*L'amant.*

Ones must it be assaied, that is no naie,  
With soche as be of reputacion,  
And of true love the right honour to paie  
Of fre hartis gottin by due raunsome,  
For frewil holdith this opinion,  
That it is grete duresse ond discomforte.  
To kepe a herte in so straite a prison  
That hath but one bodie for his disporte.

*La Dame.*

I knowe so many causis marveilous  
That I must nede of reson thinke certain  
Soche avinture is wondir perilous,  
And yet well more the coming backe again,  
Gode or worship thereof is seldome sene,  
Where I ne will make any soche araie,  
As for to finde a pleasaunce but baraine  
When it shall cost so dere the first assaie.

*L'amant.*

Ye have no cause to doubt of this matter,  
Nor you to meve with no soche fantasie,  
To put me farre all out as a straunger,  
For your godenesse can thinke and well advise

That I have made aprise in every wise,  
By whiche my truthe sheweth opin evidence;  
My long abidyng and my true service  
Maie well be knownen by plain experience.

*La Dame.*

Of verie right he maie be callid true,  
And so must he be take in every place,  
That can discerne and let as he ne knewe,  
And kepe the gode if he it maie purchase;  
For who that praieth or swereth in any case  
Right well ye wote in that no trouth is proved;  
Soch hath there ben and are that gettin grace,  
And lese it sone when thei have it achieved.

*L'amant.*

If truthe me cause, by vertue sov'rain,  
To shewe gode love and alwaie find contrarie,  
And cherilhe the whiche sleeth me with the pain,  
This is to me a lovely adversarie,  
When that Pitie, whiche long on slepe doth tarie,  
Hath set the fine of all my hevynesse,  
Yet her comfort, to me moche necessarie,  
Shall set my will more sure in stablenesse.

*La Dame.*

The woful wight what maie he think or say,  
The contrarie of all joye and gladnesse,  
A sicke bodie, his thought is ferre alwaie  
From 'hem that sein no fore nor sickenesse;  
Thus hurtis ben of divers businesse,  
Whiche love hath putt unto grete hinderaunce,  
And truthe also put in forgetfulnesse,  
When thei full fore begin to sigh askaunce.

*L'amant.*

Now God defende but he be harmelesse  
Of all worship or gode that maie befall  
That to werst tournith by his leudenesse  
A gift of grace or any thyng at all  
That his ladie vouchsafe upon hym call,  
Or cherish hym in honourable wise;  
In that defaute what er he be that fall  
Deservith more than deth to suffre twise.

*La Dame.*

There is no judge iset on soche trespase,  
By whiche of right love maie recovered be,  
One cursith fast, an othir doth manace,  
Yet dyith none, as farre as I can se,  
But kepe ther course alwaie in one degre,  
And evirmore ther labour doeth encrese  
To bryng ladies, by ther grete subtilte,  
For othirs gilte, in sorowe and disese.

*L'amant.*

All be it so one doeth so grete offence  
And is not dedde nor put to no justice,  
Right well I wote hym gainith no defence,  
But he must ende in full mischevous wise,  
And all ever saied God with hym dispise,  
For falsed is all full of cursidnesse,  
That his worship may ner have entirprise  
Where it reignith and hath the wilfulnesse.

*La Dame.*

Of that have thei no grete fere now a daise,  
 Soche as will saie and maintain it thereto,  
 That stedfast truthe nothyng for to praise  
 In 'hem that kepe it long in wele or wo,  
 Their busie hertis passin to and fro,  
 Thei be so well reclaimid to the lure,  
 So well lernid 'hem to withholde also,  
 And al to chaunge when love should best endure.

*L'amant.*

When one hath set his herte in stable wise  
 In soche a place as is bothe gode and true  
 He should not sit, but doe forthe his service  
 Alwaie withoutin chaunge of any newe:  
 As sone as love beginnith to remewe  
 All plesaunce goeth anone in lityl space;  
 As for my partie that shall I eschue  
 While that the soule abidith in his place.

*La Dame.*

To love truely there as it ought of right  
 Ye maie not be mistakin doubtlesse,  
 But ye be soule discevid in your sight  
 By your light understanding as I gesse,  
 Yet maie we well repele your businesse,  
 And unto reson have some attendaunce,  
 Moche bettir than to abide by simplenes  
 The feble soccouris of desperaunce.

*L'amant.*

Reson, counsaile, wisedome, and gode advise,  
 Ben undir love arrestid everichone,  
 To whiche I can accorde in every wise,  
 For thei ben not rebell but still as stone;  
 Ther will and myne be medlid all in one,  
 And therwith boundin with so strong a chain,  
 That as in 'hem departyng shall be none,  
 But pitie breke the mightie bonde atwain.

*La Dame.*

Ye love not your self, what evir ye be,  
 That in love stande subject in every place,  
 And of your wo if ye have no pite  
 Othirs pite bileve not to purchase,  
 But be fullie assured, as in this cace,  
 I am alwaie undir one ordinaunce;  
 To havin bettir trust not astir grace,  
 And all that levith take to your plesaunce.

*L'amant.*

I have my hope so sure and so stedfast  
 That soche a ladie should not lacke pitie,  
 But now, alas! it is shit up so fast  
 That Daungir sheweth on me his crueltie,  
 And if she se the virtue faile in me  
 Of true service, though she doe faile also  
 No wondir were; but this is my surete,  
 I must suffre whiche waie that er it go.

*La Dame.*

Leve this purpose, I rede you for the best,  
 For the lengir ye kepe it is in vain,  
 The lesse ye get as of your hert's rest,  
 And to rejoyce it shall you ner attain;

When ye abide gode hope to make you fain  
 Ye shall be founde asottid in dotage,  
 And in the ende ye shall knowe for certain  
 That hope shall paie the wretchis for ther wage.

*L'amant.*

Ye saie as fallith moste for your plesaunce,  
 And your powir is grete, all this I se,  
 But hope shall ner out of my remembraunce,  
 By whiche I fele so grete adversite,  
 For when Nature hath set in you plente  
 Of all godenesse, by vertue and by grace,  
 He ner assemblid 'hem, as semid me,  
 To put Pitie out of his dwellyng place.

*La Dame.*

Pitie of right ought to be resonable,  
 And to no wight do grete disavauntage,  
 There as is nede it should be profitable,  
 And to the pitous shewyng no damage:  
 If a ladie will doe so grete outrage  
 To shewe pitie and cause her owne debate,  
 Of soche pitie comith dispitous rage,  
 And of soche love also right dedly hate.

*L'amant.*

To comfort 'hem that live all comfortlesse  
 That is no harme, but comfort to your name,  
 But ye that have a herte of soche dureffe,  
 And a faire ladie, I must affirme the same,  
 If I durst saie, ye winne all this defame  
 By crueltie, whiche sittith you full ill,  
 But if pitie, whiche maie all this attain,  
 In your high herte maie rest and tary still.

*La Dame.*

What er he be that saith he lovith me,  
 And paraventure I leve well it be so,  
 Ought he be wrothe, or should I blamid be,  
 Though I did not as he would have me doe?  
 If I medlid with soche or othir moc  
 It might be callid pitie mercilesse,  
 And astirward if I should live in wo  
 Then to repent it were to late I gesse.

*L'amant.*

O marble herte! and yet more harde parde,  
 Whiche mercie maie not perce for no labour,  
 More strong to bowe then is a mighty tre,  
 What availeth you to shewe so grete rigour!  
 Pleseth it you more to se me die this hour  
 Before your eyen, for your disport and plaie,  
 Then for to shewe some comfort and soccour  
 To respite deth, whiche chalith me alwaie?

*La Dame.*

Of your disease ye may have allegcaunce,  
 And as for myne I let it ovir flake,  
 Also ye shall not die for my plesaunce,  
 Nor for your hele I can no suretie make;  
 I will not hurte my self for othirs sake;  
 Wepe thei, laugh thei, or sing thei, I waraunt  
 For this mattir so will I undirtake  
 That none of 'hem shall make therof avaunt.

# LA BELLE DAME SANS MERCY.

*L'amant.*

I can not skill of love by God alone,  
I have more cause to wepe in your presence,  
And well ye wote avauntour am I none,  
For certainly I love bettir silence:  
One should not love by his hert's credence,  
But he were sure to kepe it secretlie,  
For a vauntour is of no reverence  
When that his tongue is his moste enemye.

*La Dame.*

*Male bouch* in court hath grete commaundment,  
Eche man studieth to saie the worst he maie,  
These false lovirs in this tyme now present  
Thei servin best to jangle as a jaie;  
The moste secreete iwis yet some men saie  
How he mistrustid is in some partise,  
Wherefore to ladies when men speke or saie  
It should not be bilevid in no wise.

*L'amant.*

Of gode and ill shall be and is alwaie,  
The world is soche; *The yerth is not al plain*;  
Thei that be gode the prose sheweth every daie,  
And othir wise grete villonie certain;  
It is not reson though one his tongue distain  
With cursid speche to doe hymself a shame  
That soche refuse should wrongfully remain  
Upon the gode renomid in ther fame.

*La Dame.*

Soch as be nought, when thei here tidinges new  
That eche trespas shall lightly have pardon,  
Thei that pursuin to be gode and true  
Will not set by none ill disposicion,  
To continue' in every gode condicion  
Thei are the first that fallin in damage,  
And full frely the hertis habandon  
To lityl faithe with soft and faire language.

*L'amant.*

Now knowe I well of verie certainte  
If one doe truelie yet shall he be shente,  
Sith all manir of justice and pite  
Is banished out of a ladies entente;  
I can not se but all is at one stente,  
The gode, the ill, the vice, and eke the virtue;  
Soche as be gode soche have the punisshmente  
For the trespas of 'hem that live untrue.

*La Dame.*

I have no powir you to do grevaunce,  
Nor to punishe none othir creature,  
But to eschewin the more encombraunce,  
To kepe us from you all I hold it sure,  
*For False Semblaunce hath a face full demure,*  
Lightlie to catche these ladies in a waite,  
Wherefore we must, if we will here endure,  
Make right gode watch: lo! this is my conceite.

*L'amant.*

Sith that of grace a godely worde not one  
Maie now be had, but alwaie kept in store,  
I appele to God, for he maie here my mone,  
Of the duresse which grevith me so fore,

And of pite I complaine furthirmore,  
Whiche he forgate in all his ordinaunce,  
Or els my life to have entid before,  
Whiche so sone am put out of remembraunce.

*La Dame.*

My herte nor I have doen you no forseite  
By whiche ye should complaine in any kinde;  
Nothyng hurtith you but your own conceite;  
Be judge your self, for so ye shall it finde:  
Thus alwaie let this sinke into your minde  
That your desire shall ner recovered be;  
Ye noye me fore in wastying all this winde,  
For I have saied inough, as samith me.

This wofull man rose up in all his paine,  
And departid with wepyng countmaunce,  
His wofull herte almoite to braste in twaine,  
Full like to die, walkyng forthe in a traunce,  
And sayid, Deth, come forthe, thy self avaunce,  
Or that myne herte forget his propertie,  
And make shortir all this wofull penaunce  
Of my pore life, full of adversitie.

Fro thens he went, but whithir wist I nought,  
Nor to what part he drewe in sothfastnesse,  
But he no more was in his ladie's thought,  
For so the daunce anone she gan her dresse;  
And aftirward one tolde me thus expresse,  
He rent his heer for anguishe and for pain,  
And in hymself toke so grete hevinesse  
That he was dedde within a daie or twain.

L'ENVOY.

The true lovirs thus I beseeche you all  
Soche adventures flie 'hem in every wise,  
And as peple defamid ye 'hem call,  
For thei truelie do you grete prejudice  
His castelles strong stuffid with ordinaunce,  
For thei have had long tyme by their office  
The whole countrey of Love in obeisaunce.

And ye ladies, or what estate ye be,  
Of whom Worship hath choise his dwellyng place,  
For Godd's love doe no soche crueltie,  
Nor in no wise ne folowe not the trace  
Of her that here is namid right wisely,  
Whiche by reson me semith in this case  
Maie be callid *La belle Dame sans Mercy*.

Go, lityl Boke. God sende the gode passage!  
Chese well thy waie, be simple of manere,  
Loke thy clothyng be like thy pilgrimage,  
And specially let this be thy praier  
Unto 'hem all that the will rede or here,  
Where thou art wrong after ther helpe to call  
The to correcte in any parte or all.

Praie 'hem also with thine humble servise  
Thy boldnesse to pardon in this case,  
For els thou art not able in no wise  
To make thy self appere in any place;  
And furthirmore beseeche 'hem of ther grace  
By ther favour and supportacion,  
To take in gre this rude Translacion,  
The which God wote standith full destitute  
Of eloquence, of metre, and colours,  
Like as a best nakid without refute



Upon a plain to abide all manir showers:  
I can no more but aske of 'hem focours  
At whose request thou wer made in this wife,  
Commandyng me with body and servise.

Right thus I make an ende of this proffes,  
Besechyng hym that all hath in balaunce

That no true man be vexid causelesse  
As this man was, whiche is of remembraunce;  
And all that doen ther faithfull observaunce,  
And in ther trouth purpose 'hem to endure  
I praie God sende 'hem bettir avinture.

THE ASSEMBLE OF LADIES.

*A gentlewoman dreameth that she seeth a greate number of Ladies put up their billes of complaint before a judge, who promiseth to relieve their grievances.*

In September, at the fallinge of the lefe,  
The freshe seson was altogidir done,  
And of the corne was gathirid the shefe,  
In a gardine, aboute twayne astir none,  
Ther were Ladies walking, as was ther wone,  
Foure in nombre, as to my minde doth fall,  
And I the fiftie, the simplist of 'hem al.

Of gentilwomen faire there were also  
Disporting 'hem everiche astir her gise,  
In crosse aleis walking by two and two,  
And some alone, astir ther fantasies;  
Thus occupied we were in diverse wise,  
And yet in trouthe we were nat al alone,  
There werin knightes and squiris many one.

Whereof I served? one of 'hem askid me:  
I said ayen, as it fel in my thought,  
To walke aboute the mase in certainte,  
As a hedeless woman that nothing rought.  
He askid me ayen whom that I sought,  
And of my colour why I was so pale?  
Forsothe (quod I) and therby lithe a tale.

That must me wete, (quod he) and that anone;  
Tel on, let se, and make no tarying,  
Abide, (quod I) ye ben a hastie one;  
I let you wete it is no lityl thing,  
But for bicause ye have a grete longing  
In your desire this proceffe for to here  
I shal you tel the plaine of this matere.

It happid thus that in an afirnone  
My felauship and I by one assent,  
Whan al othir besinessis were done,  
To passe our time into this mase we went,  
And toke our waies eche astir our entent,  
Some went inward and went they had gon out,  
Some stonde in the mid and loked all about.

And, soth to say, some were ful ferre behinde,  
And right anon as ferforthe as the best,  
Othir ther were so masid in ther minde  
Al waies were gode for 'hem both est and west;  
Thus went they forth and had but lityl rest,  
And some ther courage dyd 'hem sore assaile,  
For very wrathe they dyd step o'er the raile;

And as they sought 'hem selvin to and fro,  
I gate my self a lityl avauntage,  
Al forweried I might no furthir go,  
Though I had won right grete for my viage,  
So came I forthe into a straite passage,  
Which brought me to an herbir faire and grene,  
Ymade with benchis ful crafty and clene;

That as me thoughtin there might no cecture  
Devise a bette by dewe proporcioun,  
Safe it was closid wel I you ensure,  
With masonrye of compace enviroun,  
Ful secretly with stairis goyng down  
In myddes the place with turning whele certain,  
And upon that a potte of margelaine,

With margerettes growinge in ordinaunce  
To shewe 'hem selfe as folke went to and fro,  
That to beholde it was a grete plessaunce,  
And how they were accompainid with mo,  
Ne momblisnesse and sonenesse also,  
The poure penfis were not dislogid there,  
Ne, God wote ther place was every where.

The flore and bench was pavid faire and smothe  
With stonis square of many divers hewe,  
So wel joynid that for to say the soth  
Al semid one, that no one othir knewe,  
And undirnith the stremis newe and newe,  
As silvir bright, springing in soche a wise,  
That whence it came ye coude it not devise.

A lityl while ywas I al alone  
Beholding wel this delectable place,  
My felawship were coming everichone,  
So muste we nedis abyde for a space,  
Remembiring of many divers cace  
Of tyme ypassid yore with sighis depe,  
I set me downe, and there I fel allepe.

And as I slept me thought there came to me  
A gentylwoman metely of stature,  
Of grete worship she semid for to be,  
Atyld wel, not high, but by mesure,  
Her countinaunce full sad was and demure,  
Her colours blew as that she had upon;  
Ther ne came no mo but her selfe alone.

Her gowne wel was embrauid certainly  
With stonis sette aftir her owne devise  
In her purfillis, her worde by and by  
*Bien '5 Loyalement*, as I coude devise;  
Than praide I her in any manir wise  
That of her name I might have remembraunce;  
She said she was callid Perseverance.

So furthir more to spekin was I bolde,  
Where she dwellid I prayed her for to say?  
And she againe ful curtisly me tolde,  
My dwelling is and hath be many a day  
With a lady. What lady? I you pray.  
Of gret estate, thus warne I you (quod she,)   
What cal ye her? Her name is Loyalte.

In what office stonde ye or what degre?  
(Quod I to her) that would I wete right faine.  
I am, (quod she) unworthy though I be,  
Of her chambre her ushir in certaine,  
This rodde I bere as for a token plaine,  
Lyke as ye knowe the rule in soche service  
Apertaining is to the same office.

She chargid me by her commaundement  
To warne you and your felawes everichone  
That ye shulde come there as she is present  
For a counsaile whiche shal be nowe anone,  
Or sevin dayis be comin and gone;  
And furthir more, she bad that I shulde say  
Excusis there might be none nor delay.

Another thing was not forget behinde,  
Whiche in no wise I wolde but that ye knewe;  
Remembre wel and bere it in your minde  
Al your felawes and ye must come in blewe  
Everlyche, your matirs for to sewe,  
With more, whiche I pray you to thinke upon,  
Your wordis on your felvis everychon.

And be not abashed in no manir wise,  
As many ben, in soche an high presence;  
Make your request as ye can best devise,  
And she gladly wol yeve you audience:  
Ther is no grese nor no manir offence  
Wherin ye fele that your herte is dispised  
But with her help right sone ye shal be esed.

I am right glad (quod I) ye tel me this,  
But ther is non of us that knoweth the waie.  
As of your way (quod she) ye shal not mis,  
Ye shal have one to gyde you day by day  
Of my felawes, I can not bettir say,  
Soche one as shal tel you the way ful right,  
And Diligence this gentylwoman hight,

A woman of right famous govirnaunce,  
And wel cherished, I tel you in certaine,  
Her felawship shal do you grete plesaunce;  
Her porte is soch, her manirs trewe and plaine,  
She with glad chere wold do her besy paine  
To bring you there. Now farewell; I have done.  
Abyde, said I, ye may not go so sone.

Why so? (quod she) and I have ferre to go,  
To yeve warning in many divers place  
To your felawes and so to othir mo,  
And well ye wote I have but lityl space,  
Now yet, (quod I) ye must tel me this cace,  
If ye shal any men unto us cal.

Not one (quod she) may come amonges you all.

Not one, than? said I: eigh, *Benedicite!*  
What have I done? I pray you tel me that.  
Nowe by my lyfe I trawe but wel, (quod she)  
But er I can byleve there is somwhat,  
And for to saye you trouthe more can I nat;  
In questions I may nothing be to large;  
I meddle must no furthir then my charge.

Than thus, (quod I) do me to undirstande  
What place is there this lady is dwelling?  
Forsothe (quod she) and one fought al this lande  
Fairir is none, though it were for a king,  
Devysid wel, and that in every thing,  
The tourishie ful plesaunt shal ye finde,  
With phanis fresh turning with every wynde;

The chambris and the parlirs of a forte,  
With bay windowes godely as may be thought,  
As for daunsing and othir wise disporte  
The galeries be all right well ywrought,  
That wel I wote if ye were thydir brought,  
And take gode hede therof in every wise,  
Ye wol it thinke a very paradise.

What hight the place? (quod I) now say me that  
Plesaunt Regarde, (quod she) to tell you plaine.  
Of very trouth, (quod I) and wote ye what?  
It may right wel be callid so certaine:  
But furthir more this wold I wit right fain,  
What I shulde do as sone as I come there,  
And aftir whom that I may best enquire?

A gentylwoman portir of the yate  
There shal ye finde, her name is Countinaunce,  
If ye so hap ye come erly or late  
Of her wer gode to have some acquaintaunce,  
She can you tel howe ye shal you avaunce,  
And howe to come to her ladye's presence;  
To her wordis I rede ye geve credence.

Now it is time that I shulde parte you fro,  
For in gode faithe I have grete busynesse.  
I wote right wel (quod I) that it is so,  
And I thanke you of your grete gentilnesse,  
Your comforte hath yevin me hardinesse,  
That nowe I shal be bolde withoutin faile  
To do' aftir your advice and gode counsaile.

Thus partid she, and I lefte all alone;  
With that I sawe (as I behelde aside)  
A woman come, a verie godely one,  
And forth withal as I had her aspyde  
Me thought anone it shoulde be the gide,  
And of her name anone I did enquire;  
Ful womanly she yave me this answer.



I am (quod she) but a simple creture,  
Sent from the courte, my name is Diligence;  
As sone as I myght come, I you ensure,  
I taried not astir I had licence:

And nowe that I am come to your presence,  
Loke, what service I can you do or may  
Commaundith me; I can no furthir say.

I thankid her, and prayed her to come nere,  
Bycause I woulde se how she was araide;  
Her gown was blew, dreslid in gode manere,  
With her devise, her worde also, that saide  
*Tant que je puis*, and I was wel apaide;  
And than wist I, withoutin any more,  
It was ful trewe that I had herde before.

Though we toke nowe before a litil space  
It were ful gode (quod she) as I coude gesse.  
Howe farre (quod I) have we unto the place?  
A daye's journey, (quod she) but litil lesse;  
Wherefore I rede that now we outwarde dresse  
For I suppose our felawship is past,  
And for nothings I wolde not we were the' last.

Then departid we' at springing of the daye,  
And forthe we wente a softe and esy pace,  
Til at the last we were on our journey  
So far outwarde that we might se the place;  
Nowe let us rest (quod I) a litil space,  
And say we as devoutly as we can  
A *Pater noster* for Saint Julian.

With all my herte; I assent with gode wil;  
Moch bettir shal we spede whan we have done.  
Than taried we and said it every dyl;  
And whan the day was past farre astir none  
We sawe a place, and thidir came we sone,  
Whiche rounde aboute was closid with a wal,  
Seminge to me full like an hospitall.

There found I one had brought all min aray,  
(A gentil woman of mine acquaintaunce)  
I have mervaille (quod I) what manir way  
Ye had knowlege of al this ordinaunce.  
Yes, yes, (quod she) I herde Perseveraunce  
Howe she warnid her felawes everichone,  
And what aray ye shoulidin have upon.

Nowe for my love (quod I) this I you praye,  
Sith ye have take upon you all the paine,  
That ye wolde helpe me on with mine araye,  
For wit ye wel I wolde be gone right faine.  
Al this prayir us nedith not certaine,  
(Quod she againe;) come of, and hye you sone,  
And ye shal se anone it shal be done.

But this I doute me gretly, wote ye what?  
That my felawes be passid by and gone.  
I warnè you (quod she) that are they nat,  
For here they shall assemble everichone,  
Notwithstandinge I counsaile you anone  
Make you redy, and tary you no more,  
It is no harme though ye be there before.

So than I dreslid me in mine araye,  
And asked her whethir it were wel or no?  
It is right well (quod she) unto my pay,  
Ye nede not care to what place er ye go;  
And whilies that she and I debatid so  
Came Diligence and sawe me al in blewe;  
Sistir, (quod she) right wel broke ye your newe!

*Discrecion Purveyour.*

Than wente we forth and met an avinture  
A yonge woman, an officir seminge;  
What is your name? (quod I) tell, gode creture.  
Discrecion, (quod she) without lesinge.  
And where (quod I) is your most abidinge?  
I have (quod she) this office of purchase,  
Chefe Purveyour that longith to this place.

*Acquaintaunce Herbyger.*

Fair love! (quod I) in all your ordinaunce  
What is her name that is the herbigere?  
Forsothe (quod she) her name is Acquaintaunce,  
A woman of right gracious manere.  
Then thus, (quod I) what straungirs have ye here?  
But fewe (quod she) of high degre ne lowe,  
Ye be the first, as ferforth as I knowe.

*Countinaunce Porter.*

Thus with talis we came streight to the yate,  
This yonge woman departid was and gone,  
Came Diligence, and knockid fast thereat,  
Who is without? (quod Countinaunce anone.)  
Truly, (quod I) fayre sistir, here is one.  
Which one? (quod she) and therewithal she lough,  
I Diligence; ye knowe me wel ynoughe.

Than opened she the gate, and in we go;  
With wordis faire she saide full gentilly,  
Ye are welcome ywis; are ye no mo?  
Nat one (quod she) save this woman and I.  
Now than (quod she) I pray you hertily  
Takith my chaumbre for a while to rest  
Til your felawis come; I holde it best.

I thanked her, and forth we go everichone  
Til her chambre withoutin wordis mo,  
Came Diligence and toke her leve anone.  
Where er ye lyst (quod I) nowe may ye go,  
And I thanke you right hertily also  
Of your labour, for whiche God do you mede;  
I can no more, but Jesu be your spede!

Than Countinaunce thus askid me anone,  
Your felawship where be they all? (quod she.)  
For sothe (quod I) they' are cominge everichone,  
But where they are I knowe no certainte,  
Without I may 'hem at his windowe se;  
Here wil I stande a waitinge here amonge,  
For wel I wote they wil not hence be longe.

Thus as I stode musing ful busily,  
I thought to take gode hede of her aray;  
Her gowne was blewe, this wote I verily,  
Of gode facyon, and furrid wel with gray,  
Upon her sleve her worde, this is no nay,  
Whiche said thus, as my penn can endite,  
*A moy, qui voy*, writin with lettirs white.

Then forth withal she came streight unto me,  
Your wordes (quod she) fain wold I that I knewe.  
Forsothe (quod I) ye shal wel knowe and se,  
And for my worde I have none, this is trew;  
It is ynough that my clothing be blewe,  
As here before I had commaundement,  
And so to do I am right well content.

*Largeffe Stewarde.*

But tell me this I pray you hertilye,  
The steward here, say me what is her name?  
She hight Largeffe, I say you furily,  
A faire lady, and of right noble fame,

Whan ye her se, ye wil reporte the same,  
And undir her to byd you welcomè al  
There is Belchier, marshal of the hal.

Now al this while that ye here tary still  
Your own matirs ye may wel have in mind;  
But tel me this, have ye brought any bill?  
Ye, ye, (quod I) and els I were behinde;  
Where is there one, tel me, that I may finde  
To whom that I may shewe my matirs plaine?  
Surely (quod she) unto the chambirlaine.

*Remembraunce Chambirlaine.*

The chambirlaine, (quod I) and say ye trewe?  
Ye, verily, (said she;) by myne advise  
Ben nat aferde; unto her lowlye sewe.  
It shal be done (quod I) as ye devyse,  
But I must knowe her name in any wise.  
Trewly (quod she) to shewe you in substaunce,  
Withouten fainyng, her name is Remembraunce.

The secretaire may not be forget,  
For she dothe right moche in every thinge,  
Wherefore I rede when ye have with her mete  
Your matere whole tel her without fainyng;  
Ye shal her fynde ful gode and ful lovinge.  
Tel me her name (quod I), of gentillesse.  
By my gode sothe (quod she) Avisenelle.

That name (quod I) for her is passing gode,  
For every byl and schedule she must se.  
Nowe gode, (quod I) come stande there as I stode,  
My felawes be cominge; yondir they be.  
Is it in jape, or say ye sothe? (quod she)  
In jape! nay, nay, I say you for certayne;  
Se how thei come togethir twain and twaine.

Ye say ful sothe, (quod she) that is no nay,  
I se coming a godely company.  
They ben soch folke, (quod I) dare I to say,  
That lyst to love, thinkith it verily,  
And for my love I pray you faythfully  
At any tyme whan they upon you call  
That ye woll be gode frende unto 'hem all.

Of my frendship (quod she) they shal not misse,  
And for their ese to put therto my paine.  
God yelde it you! (quod I) but take you this,  
Howe shal we know who is the chambirlayne?  
That shal ye wel know by her word certaine.  
What is her worde, systir? I pray you say.  
*Plus ne purroye*, thus writith she alwaye.

Thus as we stode togydir she and I,  
Even at the yate my felawes were echone,  
So met I 'hem (as me thought was godely)  
And bade 'hem welcome al by one and one:  
Then came forth Countinaunce to us anone,  
Ful hertily, Pair sistirs al, (quod she)  
Ye be right welcome into this countre.

I counsaile you to take a litil rest  
In my chambre, if it be your plesaunce;  
Whan ye be there me think it for the best  
That I go in and cal Perseveraunce,  
Bycause she is one of your acquaintance,  
And she also wil tel you every thinge  
Howe ye shal be rulir of your cominge.

My felawes al and I, by one advise,  
Were wel agreed to do lyke as she sayde;  
Than we began to dresse us in our gise,  
That folke shoulde say we were not unpurveide,  
And gode wagirs among us there we laide

Which of us was atirid moste godelest,  
And of us al whiche shulde be praisid best.

The portir came and brought Perseveraunce,  
She welcomid us in curteis manere;  
Thinke not long (quod she) of your attendance,  
I wil go speke unto the herbigere,  
That she may purvey for your lodging here,  
Than wil I go unto the chambirlaine  
To speke for you, and come anone againe.

And whan that she departid was and gone,  
We sawe folkis coming without the wal,  
So gret peple, that nombre coude we none,  
Ladies they were, and gentil women al,  
Clothid in blewe, echone her worde withal,  
But for to knowe her worde or her devise  
They came so thicke I ne might in no wise.

With that anone came in Perseveraunce,  
And where I stode she came streight unto me;  
Ye ben (quod she) of min olde acquaintance,  
You to enquire the boldir wolde I be  
What worde they bere eche aftir her degre;  
I you pray tel it me in secret wise,  
And I shal kepe it close on warrantise.

We ben five ladies (quod I) al in fere,  
And gentil women four in company,  
When they begin to open ther matere  
Than shal ye knowe ther wordis by and by;  
But as for me I have none verily,  
And so I tolde Countinaunce here before;  
Al min aray is blewe, what nedith more?

Nowe then (quod she) I wol go backe againe  
That ye may have knowlege what ye shuld do.  
In soth (quod I) if ye wolde take the paine,  
Ye dyd right moche for us if ye dyd so,  
The rathir spede the sonir may we go;  
Grete coste alway there is in taryng,  
And longe to sewe it is a wery thinge.

Then partid she and came againe anone;  
Ye must (quod she) come to the chambirlaine.  
We be nowe redy (quod I) everychone  
To folowe you whan er ye list certaine;  
We have none eloquence, to tel you plaine,  
Beseching you we may be so excused  
Our trewe meaning that it be not refused.

Then went we forth aftir Perseveraunce;  
To se the prees it was a wonder se,  
There for to passe it was a grete combraunce,  
The peple stode so thicke in every place:  
Nowe stande ye stil (quod she) a litil space,  
And for your ese somewhat I shal assay  
Yf I can make you any bettir way.

And forth she gothe among 'hem everychon,  
Making a way that we might thorough passe  
More at our ese, and whan she had so done  
She beckende us to come where as she was,  
So aftir her we folowed more and las;  
She brought us streight unto the chambirlayne,  
There leste she us, and than she went againe.

We salued her, as reson woulde it so,  
Ful humble beseching her gret godenesse  
In our mattirs that we had for to do  
That she wolde be gode lady and maistresse.  
Ye be welcome, (quod she) in sothfastenesse,  
And se, what I can do you for to plesse  
I am redy, that may be to your ese.

# THE ASSEMBLE OF LADIES.

We folowed her unto the chambir dore;  
Sistirs, (quod she) come ye in aftir me:  
But wete ye wel there was a pavid flore  
The godlyist that any wight might se;  
And furthirmore about than lokid we  
On echie cornir and upon every wal,  
Whiche was ymade of burel and crystal.

Wherein was graven of stories many one  
Firse how Phyllis, of womanly pite,  
Dyed piteously for love of Demophone,  
Next aftir was the story of Thisbe,  
Howe that she flewe her selfe undir a tre;  
Yet sawe I more, howe in right pitous caas  
For Antony was slaine Cleopatras;

Upon the othir side was Hawes the shene,  
Ful untrewly discevid in her baine;  
There was also Annelida the Quene,  
Upon Arcite howe fore she did complaine!  
Al these stories were gravid there certaine,  
And many mo than I reherse you here;  
It were to longe to tel you al in fere.

And bicause that the wallis shone so bright  
With fine umple they were al ewir sprad,  
To the entent folk shulde not harte ther sight,  
And thorough it the stories might be radde;  
Than furthirmore I went as I was lad,  
And there I sawe withoutin any faile  
A chaire yset with ful riche aparaile;

And five stagis it was set fro the grounde,  
Of cassidony ful curiously wrought,  
With foure pomelles of golde, and very rounde,  
Set with saphirs as gode as coude be thought,  
That wot ye what? if it wer thorough fought  
As I suppose fro this countre to Inde  
Anothir soche it were right harde to finde:

For wete ye wel I was right nere to that,  
So as I durst, beholding by and by,  
Above there was a riche clothe of estate  
Ywrought with the nedle ful straungely,  
Her worde thereon, and thus it said truely,  
*En Dieu est*, to tel you in wordis fewe,  
With grete lettirs, the bettir I 'hem knewe.

Thus as we stode a dore opened anone,  
A gentilwoman semely of stature,  
Bering a mace, came out her selfe alone,  
Sothely me thought her a godely cature;  
She spake nothings to lowde, I you ensure,  
Nor hastily, but with godely warninge  
Make rome, (quod she) my lady is cominge.

With that anone I sawe Perseveraunce  
Howe she helde up the tapet in her hande,  
I sawe also in godely ordinaunce  
This gret lady within the tapet stande,  
Comyng outwarde I wol ye undirstande,  
And aftir her a noble company,  
I coude not tel the nombre sikirly.

Of ther namis I wolde nothing enquire,  
Furthir than soche as we wolde sewe unto,  
Save a lady whiche was the chauncellere,  
Attemperaunce, sothely her name was so,  
For us nedith with her have moche to do  
In our mattirs, and alway more and more;  
And so forthe to tellin you furthirmore

Of this lady, her beaute to descrive  
My conninge is to simple venily,  
For nevir yet the dayis of my live  
So inly faire I have sene none trewly,  
In her estate assuvid uttirly;  
There wantid naught, I dare you well assure,  
That longid to a most godely cature.

And furthirmore, to speke of her araye,  
I shal tel you the manir of her gowne;  
Of clothe of golde ful riche, it is no nay,  
The colour blewe, of right godely facyoun,  
In taberde wise, the sleeves hanging adown,  
And what purfil there was, and in what wise,  
So as I can I shal it you devise:

Aftir a sorte the collir and the venter,  
Lyke as armine is made in purfilinge,  
With grete perlis ful fine and orient,  
They were couchid all aftir one worching,  
With diamondes in stede of powdiring,  
The slevis and the purfill of a sife,  
They werin made alike in every wise.

Aboute her necke a sorte of faire rubyes,  
In white flouris of right fine chammails,  
Upon her hed set in the fairest wise  
A circle of grete balsis of entaile,  
That in ernest, to speke withoutin faile,  
For yonge and olde and every manir age  
It was a worlde to loken on her visage.

Thus coming forth to sit in her estate,  
In her presence we kneled down everychone,  
Presenting our byllis; and wote ye what?  
Ful humbly she toke 'hem by one and one:  
Whan we had done than came they al anone  
And did the same eche aftir her manere,  
Kneling at ones and rising al in fere.

Whan this was don, and she set in her place,  
The chambirlaine she did unto her cal,  
And she godely coming to her apace,  
Of her entent knowing nothing at al,  
Voyde backe the prese (quod she) up to the wass,  
Make large rome, but loken that ye do not tary,  
And take these byllis to the secretary.

The chambirlaine did her commaundement,  
And came againe as she was byd to do,  
The secretary there beyng present  
The byllis were delivered her also,  
Not onely ours but many othir mo,  
Than the lady with gode advise againe  
Anone with al callid her chambirlaine.

We wol (quod she) the first thing that ye do  
The secretary ye make come anone  
With ther bilis, and thus we wil also  
In our presence she rede 'hem everychon,  
That we may takin gode advise thereon  
Of the ladies that ben of our counsaile;  
Loken this be done withoutin any faile.

Whan the chambirlaine wiste of her entent  
Anone she did the secretarye call;  
Let your billis (quod she) be here present,  
My lady' it wil. Madame (quod she) I shal  
And in presence she wil that ye 'hem call  
With right gode wil I am redy (quod she)  
At her plesure, whan she commaundith me.



And upon that was made an ordinaunce  
They that came first ther byllis shulde be red,  
Ful gentilly than said Perseveraunce,  
Reson it wil that they were sonist spedde;  
Anone withal, upon a tapet spredde,  
The secretarye layde 'hem downe echone;  
Our byllis first she redde tho one by one.

The first lady bering in her devise  
*Sans que jamays*, thus wrote she on her byl,  
Complaining fore, and in ful pitous wise,  
Of promisse made with faithful hert and wyll,  
And so brokin ayenst al manir skil,  
Without deserte alwaies on her partie,  
In this matir desiring remedye.

Her next fol'owing her word was in this wise,  
*Un sans changer*, and thus she did complaine,  
Though she had be guerdoned for her service  
Yet nothing like as she that toke the paine,  
Wherfore she coude in no wise her restraine,  
But in this case fewe until her presence,  
As reson wolde, to havin recompence.

So furthirmore, to speke of othir twaine,  
One of 'hem wrote astir her fantasy  
*Onques puis lever*, and for to tel you plaine,  
Her complaint was ful pitous verily,  
For, as she said, there was grete reson why:  
As I can remembre in this matere  
I shal you tell the processe al in fere.

Her byl was made complaining in her gife,  
That of her joye, her comforte, and gladnesse,  
Was no suretie, for in no manir wise  
She said therein no point of stablenesse;  
Now yl, now wele, out of al sikirnesse,  
Ful humbly desiring of her high grace  
Sone to shewe her remedy in this case.

Her felawe made her bil, and thus she said,  
In plaining wise, There as she lovid best,  
Whethir that she were wrothe or weie apaide,  
She might not se whan that she wole fainest,  
And fulle wrothe she was in very earnest;  
To tel her worde, as ferforth as I wote,  
*Entierement vostre*, right thus she wrote.

And upon that she made a grete request  
With hert and wil, and al that might be done,  
As until her that might redresse it best,  
For in her minde there might she finde it sone  
The remedy of that whiche was her bone,  
Reherfing that that she had saide before,  
Beseeching her it might be so no more.

And in like wise as they had done before  
The gentylwomen of our company  
Put ther byllis; and for to tell you more,  
One of 'hem wrote *C'est sans dire* verily,  
And her matere wholly to specify  
Within her byl she put it in writinge,  
And what it said ye shall yhave knowinge.

It said, God wote, and that ful pitously,  
Lyke as she was disposid in her herte,  
No misfortune that she toke grevously,  
Al one to her was the joy and the smerte,  
Sometime no thanke for al her gode deserte,  
Othir comforte she wantid none coming,  
And so usid it grevid her nothing;

Desiring her and lowly beseeching,  
That she wolde for her seke a bettir way,  
As she that had yben her daies lyving  
Stedfast and trewe, and wil be so alway:  
Of her felawe somwhat I shal you say,  
Whose byl was red the nexte forthe withal,  
And what it ment reherfin you I shal.

*Ex Dieu est* she wrote in her devise,  
And thus she said withoutin any faile,  
Her trouthe ne might be takin in no wise,  
Like as she thought, wherfor she had mervaile,  
For trouth somtyme was wont to take availe  
In every mattere, but al that is ago,  
The more pyte that it is suffrid so. (plain,

Moche more there was, wherof she shuld com-  
But she thought it to gret an encombraunce  
So moche to write, and therfore in certain  
In God and her she put all her assaunce,  
As in her worde is made a remembraunce,  
Beseeching her that she wolde in this case  
Shewe unto her the favour of her grace.

The thirde she wrote reherfing her grevaunce,  
Ye, wote ye what a pitous thing to here?  
For as me thought she felt grete displeaunce,  
One might ryght wel perceve it by her chere;  
And no wondir, it sate her passyng nere,  
Yet lothe she was to put it in writinge,  
But *Nede nul bavin course in every tbinge*.

*Soyes assure*, this was her word certain,  
And thus she wrote within a litil space;  
There she lovid her labor was in vaine,  
For he was set al in anothir place,  
Ful humilly desiring in that case  
Some gode comforte her sorowe to appese,  
That she might livin more at hert's ese,

The fourth surely me thought she likid wele,  
As in her porte and in her behavinge,  
And *Bien moneste*, as ferre as I coude fele,  
That was her worde, tyl her belonging,  
Wherfore to her she praied above al thing  
Ful hertily, to say you in sustance,  
That she wold sendin her gode Countinaunce.

Ye have reherfid me these byllis all,  
But nowe let se somwhat of your entent;  
It may so hap paravinture ye shal;  
Nowe I pray you while I am here present  
Ye shal have knowlege parde what I ment,  
But thus I say in trouth, and make no fable,  
The case it selfe is inly lamentable;

And wel I wote that ye wol thynke the same,  
Lyke as I say, whan ye have herde my byl;  
Now gode, tel on; I hate you by Saint Jame;  
Abyde a while, it is not yet my wil,  
Yet must ye wete by reson and by skil,  
Sith ye have knowlege of that was don before,  
And thus it is said, without wordis more:

Nothing so lese as deth to come to me,  
For final ende of my sorowes and paine;  
What shuld I more desire as semith ye?  
And ye knewe al aforne it for certaine  
I wote ye wolde, and for to tel you plaine,  
Without her helpe that hath al thinge in cure  
I can nat thinke that it may long endure.

## THE ASSEMBLE OF LADIES.

As for my trouth it hath be provid wele,  
To say the sothe, and I can say no more,  
Of ful longe tyme, and suffrid every dele  
In pacience, and kepe it all in store,  
Of her godenesse beseching her therfore  
That I might have my thanke in soche a wife  
As m<sup>e</sup> deserte yservith of justise.

Whan these billis were rad everychone  
The ladie toke a gode advisement,  
And 'hem to answerin by one and one  
She thought it was to moche in her entent,  
Wherefore she yave to 'hem commandement  
In her presence to come both one and al  
To yeve 'hem her answer in generall.

What dyd she than suppose ye verily?  
She spake her selfe, and said in this manere:  
We have wel fene your byllis by and by,  
And some of 'hem be pitous for to here,  
We wol therefore ye knowe al this in fere,  
Within shorte tyme our court of parliment  
Here shal be holde in our palays presente,

And in al this wherin you find you greved  
There shall ye finde an opin remedy,  
In soche a wife as ye shal be relev'd  
Of al that ye reherfin here thoroughly;  
As for the date, ye shal knowe verily  
That ye may have a space in your coming,  
For Diligence shal tel you by writing.

We thankid her in our most humble wise  
Our felawship eche one by one assent,  
Submittinge us lowly til her service,  
For as we thought we had our travaile spent  
In soche wise as we heldin us content;  
I than eche of us toke othir by the sleve,  
And forth withal as we shulde take our leve.

Al sodainly the watir sprange anone  
In my visage, and therewithal I woke:  
Where am I now? thought I; al this is gone,  
Al amafid; and up I began to loke:  
With that anon I went and made this Boke,  
Thus simpilly reherfing the substaunce,  
Bicause it shulde not be' out of remembraunce.

Now verily your dreame is passing gode,  
And worthy to be had in remembraunce,  
For though I stand here as longe as I stode  
It shulde not to me be none encombraunce,  
I toke therin so inly grete plesaunce;  
But tel me now what ye the boke do cal,  
For I muste wete. Wyth right gode wyl ye shal

As for this boke, to say you very right,  
And of the name to tel you' in certainte,  
*L'assemblee de Dames*, thus it hight.

How thinkin ye? That name is gode parde.  
Nowe go; farewell; for they cal aftir me  
My felawes al, and I must aftir sone:  
Rede wel my dreame, for now my tale is done.

## CHAUCER'S DREAM\*.

*Never before the year 1597 printed: that which heretofore hath gone under the name of his Dreame, is The Book of the Duchesse, or The Deatb of Blanch, Duchesse of Lancaster.*

WHEN Flora, the quene of Plefaunce,  
Had whole achievid th' obeyfaunce  
Of the fresh and the new feson  
Thorow out evêry region,  
And with her mantle whole covert  
That wintir made had discovert,  
Of avinture withoutin light  
In May I lay upon a night  
Alone, and on my lady thought,  
And how the Lord that her ywrought  
Couth well entayle in imagery,  
And shewid had grete maistiry,  
When he in so litil a space  
Made such a body and a face,  
So grete beautie with swich fetures,  
More than in othir créatures;  
And in my thoughtis as I lay  
Within a lodge out of the way,  
Beside a well in a forest,  
Where aftir hunting I toke rest,  
Nature and kind so in me wrought  
That halfe on slepe they me ybrought,  
And gan to dreme to my thinking  
With mind of knowliche like making,

For what I dremid, as me thought,  
I saw it, and I sleptin nought,  
Wherefore is yet my full beleve  
That some gode spirit that ilke eve,  
By mene of some curious port,  
Bare me where I saw payne and sport;  
But whether it were I woke or slept  
Well wot I oft I lough and wept;  
Wherefore I woll in remembraunce  
Put whole the payne and the plefaunce,  
Which was to me axin and hele;  
Would God ye wist it everydele,  
Or at the lest ye might o night  
Of such anothir have a sight  
Although it were to you a payne,  
Yet on the mo'row ye would be fayne,  
And wish that it might long endure,  
Then might ye say ye had gode cure,  
For he that dremes and wenes he se  
Mochil the bettir yet maie he  
Ywit what, and of whom, and where.  
And eke the lasse it woll hindere  
To thinke I se this with mine eene,  
Iwis this may not dremè kene,  
But signe or a signifaunce  
Of hasty thing souning plefaunce;  
For on this wise upon a night,  
As ye have herd, withoutin light,  
Not all wakyng ne full on slepe,  
About such hour as lovirs wepe  
And crie aftir ther ladies grace,  
Befell me tho this wondir cace,  
Which ye shall here, and all the wise,  
So wholly as I can devise:

\* This Dreame, devised by Chaucer, semeth to be a covert report of the marriage of John of Gaunt, the king's sonne, with Blanch, the daughtir of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, who after long love (during the time wherof the poet sailneth them to be dead) were in the end by consent of friends happily married, figured by a bird bringing in her bill an hearbe which restored them to lyfe againe. Here also is shewed Chaucer's match with a certain gentlewoman, who although she was a stranger, was notwithstanding so well liked and loved of the Lady Blanch and her lord, as Chaucer himselfe also was, that gladly they concluded a marriage between them. *Urry.*



In playne English evill writtin,  
 For slepe writir, well ye wittin,  
 Excusid is though he do mis  
 More than one whiche that waking is,  
 Wherefore here of your gentilnesse  
 I you requyre my boistounesse  
 Ye lettin passe as thinge rude,  
 And herith what I woll conclude,  
 And of the' endityng taketh no hede,  
 Ne of the termes, so God you spede,  
 But let all passe as nothing were,  
 For thus befell, as you shall here.

Within an yle methought I was  
 Where wall and yate was all of glasse,  
 And so was closid round about  
 That levelesse none come in ne out,  
 Uncouth and straunge to behold,  
 For every yate of fine gold  
 A thousand fanis aie turning  
 Entunid had, and briddes singing  
 Divers, and on eche fane a paire  
 With opin mouth again the aire;  
 And of a fute were all the toures,  
 Subtily corvin astir floures,  
 Of uncouth colours during aye,  
 That nevyr ben none sene in May,  
 With many a small turret hie;  
 But man on live could I non sic,  
 Ne creturis, save ladies play,  
 Which werin such of ther array  
 That as me thought of godelihed  
 They passeden all and womanhed,  
 For to behold them daunce and sing  
 It semid like none erthly thing,  
 Such was ther uncouth countinaunce  
 In every play of right usaunce,  
 And of one age everichone  
 They semid all save onely one,  
 Which had of yeris suffisaunce,  
 For she might neythir sing ne daunce,  
 But yet her countenaunce was so glad,  
 And she so fewe yeris had had  
 As any ladie that was there,  
 And as litil it did her dere  
 Of lustines to laugh and tale  
 As she had full stuffid a male  
 Of disportis and new playis;  
 Faire had she ben in her dayis,  
 And maistresse semid well to be  
 Of all that lusty companie,  
 And so she might, I you ensure,  
 For one the conningist cature  
 She was, and so said everichone,  
 That er her knew, there failid none,  
 For she was sober, and well avised,  
 And from every fault disguised,  
 And nothing used but faith and truth;  
 That she n'as young it was grete ruth,  
 For every where and in ech place  
 She govirnid her, that in grace  
 She stode alway with pore and riche,  
 That a word was none her liche,  
 Ne halfe so' able maistress to be  
 To such a lusty companie.

Befell me so, when I avised  
 Yhad the yle that me suffised,  
 And whole th' estate every where  
 That in the lusty yle was there,  
 Which was more wondir to devise  
 Than is the joyous paradise,  
 I dare well say, for floure ne tre,  
 Ne thing wherein plesaunce might be,  
 There faylid none, for every wight,  
 Had they desirid day and night  
 Richis and hele, beauty and ese,  
 With every thing that them might plesse,  
 But thinke and have, it cost no more;  
 In such a country there before  
 Had I not ben ne herdin tell  
 That livis creature might dwell.  
 And when I had thus all about  
 The yle avised thoroughout  
 The state, and how they were arrayed,  
 In my hert I wexe well appayed,  
 And in my selfe I me assured  
 That in my body' I was well ured,  
 Sithin I might have such a grace  
 To se the ladies and the place,  
 Which were so faire, I you ensure,  
 That to my dome though that Nature  
 Would evir strive and do her paine  
 She should not con ne mow attaine  
 The lest feture for to amend,  
 Though she would all her conning spende,  
 That unto beautie might availe,  
 It were but paine and lost travaile,  
 Such part in ther nativite  
 Was then alargid of beautie;  
 And eke they had a thing notable  
 Unto ther deth ay durable,  
 And was, that ther beauty should dure,  
 Which was nevyr sene in cature,  
 Save onily there (as I trow)  
 It ne hath not be wist ne know,  
 Wherefore I praise with ther conning  
 That during beautie, richè thing,  
 Had they ben of ther lives certaine  
 They had ben quite of every paine.  
 And when I wend thus all have sene  
 The state, the riches, that might bene,  
 That me thought impossible were  
 To se one thing more than was there.  
 That to beautie or glad conning  
 Serve or availe might any thing,  
 All sodainly as I there stode  
 This lady, that couth so much gode,  
 Unto me came with smiling chere,  
 And said, *Benedicite!* this yere  
 Saw I nevyr man here but you;  
 Tell me how ye come hidir now,  
 And your name, and where that ye dwell,  
 And whom ye seke eke mote ye tell,  
 And how ye come be to this place;  
 The soth well told my cause you grace,  
 And ellis ye mote prisoner be  
 Unto the ladies here and me,  
 That have the governaunce of this yle;  
 And with that word she gan to smile,

And so did all the lusty rout  
Of ladies that bode her about.  
Madame, (quod I) this night ypast  
Lodgid I was and slepte fast  
In a forest beside a well,  
And now am here, how should I tell?  
Wot I not by whose ordinance,  
But onely Fortune's purveiance,  
Which puttith many, as I gesse,  
To travaile, paine, and businesse,  
And lettith nothing for ther truth,  
But some fleeth eke, and that is ruth;  
Wherefore I doubt her brittilnes;  
Her variance and unstedfastnes;  
So that I am as yet afraid,  
And of my beyng here amaid,  
For wondir thing it semith me  
Thus many fresh ladies to se  
So faire so cunning, and so yong,  
And no man dwelling them among;  
N'ot I not how I hidir come,  
Madame, (quod I) this all and some:  
What should I faine a long processe  
To you, that seme such a princeesse?  
What plesith you commaund or say,  
Here I am redy to obay  
To my powir, and all fulfill,  
And prisionir bide at your will,  
Till you duly enformid be  
Of every thing ye aske me.

This lady there right well apaid  
Me by the hande ytoke, and said,  
Welcome, prisioner adventurus,  
Right glad am I ye have said thus,  
And for ye doubt me to displese  
I will assay to do you ese:

And with that word, ye, right anon,  
She and the ladies everichon  
Assemblid, and to counsaile went,  
And astir that sone for me sent,  
And to me said on this manere,  
All word for word, as ye shall here:

To se you here us thinke marvaile,  
And how withoutin bete or faile,  
By any subtilty or wyle,  
Ye get have entre in this yle,  
But not for that yet shall ye se  
That we gentill women ybe,  
Loth to displese any wight,  
Notwithstanding our gretè right;  
And for ye shall well undirstond  
The oldè custome of this lond,  
Which hath continued many yere,  
Ye shall well wete that with us here  
Ye may not bide, for causis twaine  
Which we be purposed you to faine.

The one is this; our ordinance,  
Which is of long continuance,  
Ne woll not, sothly we you tell,  
That no man here among us dwell,  
Wherefore ye mote nedis retourne;  
In no wise may you here sojourne.

The othir is eke, that our quene  
Out of the relme, as ye maie se,

Is, and may be to us a charge  
If we let goe you here at large,  
For whichè cause the more we doubt  
To doe a fault while she is out,  
Or suffer that may be noysance  
Againe our old accustomedance.

And when I had these causis twaine  
Yherd, o God! what mochil paine  
All sodainly about mine hert  
There came at onis, and how smert!  
In creping soft as who should stele  
Or doe me robbe of all mine hele,  
And made me in my thought so afraid  
That in courage I stode dismaid;  
And standing thus, as was my grace,  
A lady came more than apace,  
With a huge preise her about,  
And told how that the quene without  
Was arivid; and would come in;  
Well were they that hidir might twin;  
They bied so they would not abide  
The bridiling ther horse to ride,  
By five, by sixe, by two, by thre;  
There was not one abode with me;  
The quene to mete everichone  
They went, and bode with me not one;  
And I went astir a soft pase,  
Imagining how to purchase  
Grace of the quene there to abide  
Till gode fortune some happy guide  
Me sendin might, that would me bring  
Where I was borne, to my wonning,  
For way ne fote ne knew I none,  
Ne whithirward I n'ist to gone,  
For all was se about the yle;  
No wondir though me list not smile,  
Seing the case uncouth and straunge;  
And so in like a perilous chaunge,  
Imagi'ning thus walking alone  
I saw the ladies everichone,  
So that I might somewhat offer,  
Sone astir that I drew me nere,  
And tho I was ware of the quene,  
And how the ladies on ther knene  
With joyous words gladly advised  
Her welcomed so that it suffised  
Though the the princes whole had be  
Of all environed is with se;  
And thus avising with chere sad  
All sodainly I was right glad,  
That gretir joy, as mote I thrive,  
I trow had never man on live  
Than I tho, ne an hert more light,  
When of my lady I had sight,  
Which with the quene ycome was there,  
And in one clothing both they were;  
A knight also there well befene  
I saw that come was with the quene,  
Of whom the ladies of that yle  
Had hugè wondir a long while,  
Till at the last right sobirly  
The quene her self full cunningly,  
With softè wordis in gode wise,  
Said to the ladies yong and nise,

My sistir, how it hath befall  
 I trow ye know it one and all  
 That of long time here have I bene  
 Within this yle biding as quene,  
 Living at ese, that nevir wight  
 More parfit joy havin ne might,  
 And to you ben of govirnance  
 Such as you found in whole plesance,  
 In every thing as ye know  
 Aftir our custome and our low,  
 Which how they first yfoundin were  
 I trow ye wote all the manere;  
 And who the quene is of this yle,  
 As I have ben this longè while,  
 Ech seven yeres mote of usage  
 Visit the heavenly armitage  
 Which on a rock so high ystonds,  
 In strangè se out from all londs,  
 That to makin the pilgrimage  
 Is called a long peri'lous viage,  
 For if the wind be not gode frend  
 The journey duris to the end  
 Of him whichè that it undirtakes;  
 Of twenty thousand one not scapes;  
 Upon which rock growith a tre  
 That certaine yeres beres applis thre,  
 Which thre applis who so may have  
 Ben from all displeaunce ysave  
 That in the seven yere may fall,  
 This wote ye well bothe one and all,  
 For the first apple and the hext  
 Which ygrowith unto you next  
 Yhath thre vertues notable,  
 And kepith youth aie durable,  
 Beauty and loke evir in one,  
 And is the best in everichone.

The second apple red and grene,  
 Onely with lokis of your yene  
 You nourishis in grete plesance  
 Bettir than partridge or fesaunce,  
 And fedis every liv'is wight  
 Plesantly onely with the sight.

And the third apple of the thre,  
 Which growith lowist on the tre,  
 Who it beris ne may not faile  
 That to his plesance may availe,  
 So your plesure and beauty rich  
 Your during youth evir yliche,  
 Your truth, your cunning, and your wele,  
 Hath aye flourid, and your gode hele,  
 Without sicknes or displeaunce,  
 Or thing that to you was noysaunce,  
 So that you have as goddeses  
 Livid above all princesses;  
 Now is befall, as ye may se,  
 To gathir these said applis thre,  
 I have not failed againe the day  
 Thithirwardis to take the way,  
 Wening to spede as I had ost;  
 But when I come I find alost  
 My sistir, which that here ystands,  
 Having those applis in her hands,  
 Avising them, and nothing said,  
 But lokid, as she were well paid;

VOL. I.

And as I stode her to behold,  
 Thinking how my joyis were cold  
 Sith I those applis have ne might,  
 Evin with that so came this knight,  
 And in his armes of me aware  
 Me toke, and to his ship me bare,  
 And said, though him I ner had sene  
 Yet had I long his lady ben,  
 Wherefore I should with him ywend,  
 And he would to his liv'is end  
 My servant be, and gan to sing  
 As one that had wonne a rich thing:  
 Tho were my spirits fro me gone  
 So sodainly everichone  
 That in me apperid but deth,  
 For I felt neithir life ne breth,  
 Ne gode ne harmè none I knewe;  
 The sodaine paine me was so new,  
 That had not the hasty grace be  
 Of this lady, that fro the tre  
 Of her gentilnesse so byid  
 Me to comfort I had dyid,  
 And of her thre applis she one  
 Into mine hand there put anone,  
 Which brought againe my mind and breth,  
 And me recovered from the deth;  
 Wherefore to her so am I hold  
 That for her all things do I wold,  
 For she was lech of all my smert,  
 And from grete paine so quite mine hert,  
 And, as God wote, right as ye here  
 Me to comfort with frendly chere  
 She did her prowesse and her might;  
 And truly eke so did this knight  
 In that he couth, and oftin said  
 That of my wo he was ill paid,  
 And cursed the ship that them there brought,  
 The mast, the mastir that it wrought:  
 And as ech thing mote have an end,  
 My sistir here, your brothir frend,  
 Con with her words so womanly  
 This knight entrete and conningly,  
 For mine honour and his also,  
 And said that with her we should go  
 Both in her ship, where she was brought,  
 Which was so wondirfully wrought,  
 So clene, so rich, and so araid,  
 That we were both content and paid;  
 And me to comfort and to plesè,  
 And mine hert for to put at ese,  
 She toke grete paine in litil while,  
 And thus hath brought us to this yle,  
 As ye may se; wherfore echone  
 I pray you thanke her one and one  
 As hertly as ye can devise  
 Or imagine in any wise.  
 At once there tho men mightin seen  
 A world of ladies fall on kneen  
 Fore my lady, that there about  
 Was left none standing in the rout,  
 But altogether they went at ones  
 To knele; they spared not for the stones,  
 Ne for estate, ne for ther blode;  
 Well shewid there they couth much gode:

G g



To my lady they made such fest,  
 And with such wordis, that the lest  
 So frendly and so faithfully  
 Ysaide was and so cunningly,  
 That wondir was, seing ther youth,  
 To here the language that they couth,  
 And wholly how they governed were  
 In thanking of my lady there,  
 And saide by will and maundement  
 They were at her commaundement,  
 Which was to me as grete a joy  
 As winning of the toun of Troy  
 Was to the hardy Grekis strong  
 When they it war with siegè long,  
 To se my lady in such a place,  
 And so recevid as she was.  
 And when they talkid had a while  
 Of this and that, and of the yle,  
 My lady and the ladies there,  
 Altogithir as they ywere,  
 The quene her self began to play,  
 And to the agid lady say,  
 Now semith you not gode it were,  
 Sith we be altogithir here,  
 To ordaine and devise the best  
 To set this knight and me at rest,  
*For Woman is a feble wight  
 To rene a warre against a knight;*  
 And sith he here is in this place,  
 At my lest in dangir or grace,  
 It were to me grete villany  
 To do him any tiranny;  
 But faine I would, now will ye here,  
 In his owne country that he were,  
 And I in pece and he at ese;  
 This were a way us both to plesse;  
 If it might be I you beseeche  
 With him hereof you fall in speche.  
 This lady tho began to smile,  
 Avising her a litil while,  
 And with glad chere she saide anon,  
 Madam, I will unto him gone,  
 And with him speke, and oftin sele  
 What he desiris every dele:  
 And sobirly this lady tho  
 Her selfe, and othir ladies two  
 She toke with her, and with sad chere  
 Saide to the knight on this manere;  
 Sir, the grete princes of this yle,  
 Whom for your plesance many a mile  
 Ye sought have, as I undirstond,  
 Till at the last ye have her fond  
 Me sent hath here, and ladies twaine,  
 To herin all thing that ye faine;  
 And for what cause ye have her sought  
 Faine would she wote, and whole your thought,  
 And why you do her all this wo,  
 And for what cause you be her so,  
 And why of every wight unware  
 By force ye to your ship her bare,  
 That she so nigh ywas agone  
 That mind ne spech ne had she none,  
 But as a painfull creature  
 Dying abode her advinture,

That her to se indure that paine  
 Here we all say unto you plaine  
 Right on your selfe ye did amisse,  
 Seing how she a princes is.  
 This knight, the which ycowth his gode,  
 Right of his truth mevid his blode,  
 That pale he woxe as any led,  
 And lok't as tho he wold be ded;  
 Blode was there none in nothir cheke,  
 Wordlesse he was, and semid sicke;  
 And so it provid well he was,  
 For without moving any paas,  
 All sodainly as thing dying,  
 He fell at onis downe fowning;  
 That for his wo this lady fraid  
 Unto the quene her hyed, and saide,  
 Cometh on anon, as have you blisse,  
 But ye be wise; thing is amisse;  
 This knight is ded or will be sone,  
 Lo! where he lyith in a swone  
 Withoutin word or answiring  
 To that I have saide any thing;  
 Wherefore I doubt moche that the blame  
 Might be hindiring to your name,  
 Which flourid hath so many yere,  
 So longè that for nothing here  
 I would in no wise that he dyed,  
 Wherefore it gode were that ye hyed,  
 His life to savin at the lest;  
 And astir that his wo be cest  
 Commaundith him to voide or dwell,  
 For in no wise dare I more mell  
 Of thing wherein such perill is  
 As like is now to fall of this.  
 This quene right tho, full of grete fere,  
 With all the ladies present there,  
 Unto the knight came where he lay,  
 And made a lady to him say,  
 Lo! here the quene; awake, for shame!  
 What will you doe? is this gode game?  
 Why lye you here? what is your mind?  
 Now is well sene your wit is blind,  
 To se so many ladies here  
 And ye to make none othir chere;  
 But as ye set them all at nought  
 Arise for his love that you bought.  
 But what she saide a word not one  
 He spake, ne answere gave her none.  
 The quene of very pitty tho,  
 Her worship and his life also  
 To savin, there she did her paine,  
 And quoke for fere, and gan to saime,  
 For woe, alas! what shall I doe?  
 What shall I say this man unto?  
 If he die here lost is my name:  
 How shal I play this perillous game?  
 If any thing be here amisse  
 It shall be saide it rigour is,  
 Whereby my name impayrin might;  
 And like to die eke is this knight:  
 And with that word her hand she laid  
 Upon his brest, and to him saide,  
 Awake, my knight! lo! it am I  
 That to you speke: now tell me why

Ye fare thus, and this paine endure,  
 Seing you be in country sure,  
 Among such frends that would you hele,  
 Your hert'is ese eke and your wele?  
 And if I wist what you might ese,  
 Or know the thing that you might plesse,  
 I you ensue it thould not faile  
 That to your hele you might availe;  
 Wherefore with all my hert I pray  
 Ye rise, and let us talke and play:  
 And se how many ladies here  
 Be comin for to make gode chere!  
 All was for nought, for still as stone  
 He lay, and word ne spoke he none;  
 Long while was or he might braid;  
 And of all that the quene had said  
 He wist no word; but at the last  
 O mercy! twise he cryid fast,  
 That pittie was his voice to here,  
 Or to behold his painefull chere,  
 Which was not feined was well to sein  
 Both by his visage and his cun,  
 Which on the quene at once he cast,  
 And sighid as he would to brast,  
 And astir that eke he thright so  
 That wondir was to se his wo,  
 For sithin that payne was first named  
 Was ner more wofull payne attained,  
 For with voyce did he gan to plaine,  
 And to himselfe these wordis saine;  
 I, wofull wight full of malure,  
 And worse than ded, and yet I dure,  
 And maugre any paine or deth  
 Against my will I fele my breth:  
 Why n'am I ded, sith I ne serve,  
 And sith my lady will me sterue?  
 Where art thou, Deth? art thou agast?  
 Well shall we mete yet at the last.  
 Though thou the hide it is for nought,  
 For where thou dwelst thou shalt be sought:  
 Maugre thy subtill double face  
 Here will I die right in this place.  
 To thy dishonour and myn ese  
 Thy mannir is no wight to plesse:  
 What nedis the, sith I the seche,  
 So the to hide, my paine to eche?  
 And well wost thou I will not live  
 Who would me all this world here give,  
 For I have with my cowardise  
 Lost joy, and hele, and my servise,  
 And made my soveraigne lady so  
 That while she lives I trow my so  
 She will be evir to her end;  
 Thus have I neither joy ne frend.  
 Wote I not whethir hast or sloth  
 Hath causid this now by my troth,  
 For at the hermitage full ale,  
 When I her saw first with myne eye,  
 I hyd till I was aloft,  
 And made my pace small and soft,  
 Till in mine armes I had her fast,  
 And to my ship bare at the last,  
 Wherof she was displeid so  
 That endles there semid her wo,

And I thereof had so grete fere  
 That me repent that I come there,  
 Which hast I trow gan her displese,  
 And is the cause of my disese.  
 And with that word he gan to cry,  
 Now Deth, Deth, come, twyis or thry,  
 And motrid I n'ot what of flouth:  
 And even with that the quene of routh  
 Him in her armis toke, and sayd,  
 Now, mine owne knight! be' not ill apayd  
 That I a lady to you sent  
 To have knowledge of your entent,  
 For in gode faith I men't but well,  
 And would ye wist it every dele,  
 Nor will not do to you ywis;  
 And with that word she gan him kisse,  
 And prayed him rise, and said she would  
 His welfare by her truth, and told  
 Him how she was for his disese  
 Right sory, and faine would him plesse,  
 His lyfe to save. These wordis tho  
 She said to him, and many mo,  
 In comforting, for from the paine  
 She would he were delivered faine.  
 The knight tho up ycast his een,  
 And when he saw it was the quene  
 That to him had these wordis said,  
 Right in his wo he gan to braid,  
 And him up dressis for to knele,  
 The quene avising wondir wele;  
 But as he rose he ovirthrew,  
 Wherefore the quene yet est anew  
 Him in her armis anone toke,  
 And pitously gan on him loke;  
 But for all that nothyng she sayd,  
 Ne spake not like she were well payd,  
 Ne no chere made nor sad ne light,  
 But all in one to every wight  
 There was sene conning with estate  
 In her without noyse or debate,  
 For save onely a loke piteous  
 Of womenhed undispiteous,  
 That she showid in continance,  
 Far semed her hert from obeisance,  
 And not for that she did her reine  
 Him to recovir from the peine,  
 And his hert for to put at large,  
 For her entent was to his barge  
 Him for to bryng agaynst the eve,  
 With certeine ladies, and take leve,  
 And pray him of his gentilnesse  
 To suffir her thenceforth in pece,  
 As othir princis had before,  
 And from thenceforth for evirmore  
 She would him worship in all wise  
 That gentilnesse ymight devise,  
 And payne her wholly to fulfill  
 In honour his plesure and will.  
 And during thus this knightis wo,  
 Present the quene and othir mo,  
 My lady' and many' an othir wight,  
 Ten thousand shippis at a fight  
 I saw come oer the wavy flode  
 With sayle and ore, that as I rode

Them to behold I gan marvaile  
 From whom might come so many a faile,  
 For sith the tyme that I was bore  
 Such a navie there n'ere before  
 Had I not sene, ne so arayed,  
 That for the sight my hert yplayed  
 Aye to and fro within my brest  
 For joy; long was or it would rest;  
 For there was faylis full of floures,  
 Astir castils with huge toures,  
 Yfeming full of armis bright.  
 That wondir lusty was the sight,  
 With large toppis and mastis long,  
 Richly depeint, and reare among  
 At certaine timis gan repayre  
 Smale birdis doune from the aire,  
 And on the shippis bounds about  
 Yfate and song with voyce full out  
 Ballades and layes right joyously,  
 As they cowth in ther harmony,  
 That you to write that I there se  
 Mine excuse is it may not be;  
 For why? the mattir were to long  
 To name the birds and write ther song;  
 Whereof anon the tydings there  
 Unto the quene sone brought ywere,  
 With many' alas and many, a doubt,  
 Shewing the shippis there without:  
 Tho gan the agid lady wepe,  
 And said, Alas! our joy on flepe  
 Sone shal be brought, ye, long or night,  
 For we discried ben by this knight,  
 For certes it may none othir be  
 But he is of yond companie,  
 And they be come him here to seche;  
 And with that word her faylid speche.  
 Without reme'dy we be destroid,  
 Ful oft said all, and gan conclude  
 Wholy at onis at the last  
 That best was shrit ther yatis fast,  
 And arme them all in gode langage,  
 As they had done of old usage,  
 And of fayre wordis make ther shot;  
 This was ther counsaile and the knot,  
 And othir purpose toke they none,  
 But armed thus forth they all gone  
 Toward the wallis of the yle;  
 But or they comin there long while  
 They mettin the grete lord of bove  
 That callid is the god of Love,  
 That them avisid with such chere,  
 Right as he with them angry were:  
 Avayled them not ther wals of glasse;  
 This mighty lord let not to passe  
 The shuttyng of ther yatis fast;  
 All they had ordained was but wast;  
 For when his ships had foundin land  
 This lord anon, with bow in hand,  
 Into this yle with huge prefe  
 Yhyid fast, and would not cese  
 Till he came there the knight ylay:  
 Of quene ne lady by the way  
 Toke he no hede, but forth he past,  
 And yet all followed at the last.

And when he came where lay the knight  
 Well shewid he he had grete might,  
 And forth the quene callid anone  
 And all the ladies everichone,  
 And to them said, Is not this routh,  
 To se my servaunt for his trowth  
 Thus lene, thus sick, and in this payne,  
 And wot not unto whom to playne,  
 Save onely one withoutin mo,  
 Which might him hele, and is his fo?  
 And with that word his hevy brow  
 He shewid the quene, and lokid row,  
 This mighty lord forth tho anone  
 With o loke her faultis echone  
 He can her shew in litil spech,  
 Commaunding her to be his lech.  
 Withoutin more, shortly to say,  
 He thought the quene sone should obey,  
 And in his hond he shoke his bow,  
 And said right sone he would be know;  
 And for she had so long refused  
 His service, and his lawes not used,  
 He let her wit that he was wroth,  
 And bent his bow, and forth he goth  
 A pace or two, and evin there  
 A largè draught up to his ere  
 He drew, and with an arrow ground  
 Both sharpe and newe the quene a wound  
 He gave that perfed unto the hert,  
 Which astirward full sore gan smert,  
 And was not whole of many yere;  
 And even with that Be of gode chere,  
 My knight, quod he; I will the hele,  
 And the restore to parfite wele,  
 And for ech payne thou hast endured  
 To have two joies thou art enured:  
 And forth he passid by the rout,  
 With sobir chere walking about,  
 And what he said I thought to here;  
 Well wist he whiche his servaunts were:  
 And as he passid anon he fond  
 My lady', and her toke by the hond,  
 And made her chere as a goddes,  
 And of Beaute called her Princes,  
 Of Bounty eke gave her the name,  
 And sayd there was nothyng to blame  
 In her, but she was vertuous,  
 Saving she would no pity use,  
 Which was the cause that he her fought  
 To put that far out of her thought;  
 And sithin she had whole richesse  
 Of womanhed and frendlineffe,  
 He said it was nothing fitting  
 To void Pity his owne leggyng;  
 And gan her prech and with her play,  
 And of her beauty told her aie,  
 And said she was a creë  
 Of whom the name shoulde endure,  
 And in his bokis full of plesaunce  
 Be put for er in remembraunce,  
 And as me thoughtin more frendly,  
 Unto my lady and godelily  
 He spake than any that was there;  
 And for the' applis I trow it were



That she had in possession,  
 Wherefore long in procession  
 Many a pace arme undir other  
 He welke, and so did with none other :  
 But what he would commaund or say  
 Forwith nedis all must obey,  
 And what he desired at the lest  
 Of my lady was by request :  
 And when they long together had bene  
 He brought my lady to the quene,  
 And to her said, So God you speche  
 Shew grace and consent, that is nede.  
 My lady tho full conningly,  
 Right well avised and womanly,  
 Downe gan to knele upon the floures  
 Which Aprill nourished had with shoures,  
 And to this mighty lord gan say,  
 That plesith you I woll obey,  
 And me restraine from othir thought ;  
 As ye woll al thyng shall be wrought :  
 And with that word kneeling she quoke.  
 That mighty lord in armes her toke,  
 And said, You have a servaunt, one  
 That truir living is ther none,  
 Wherefore gode were, seing his trouth,  
 That on his painis ye had routh,  
 And purpose you to here his spech,  
 Fully avised him to lech,  
 For of one thyng ye may be sure,  
 He will be yours while he may dure.  
 And with that word right on his game  
 Me thought he lough, and told my name,  
 Which was to me marvaile and fere,  
 That what to do I ne wist there,  
 Ne whethir was me bet or none  
 There to abide or thus to gone,  
 For well wend I my lady wold  
 Imagin or deme I had told  
 My counsaile whole, or made complaint  
 Unto that lord, that mighty saint,  
 So verily ech thing unfought  
 He said as he had knowne my thought,  
 And told my trouth and mine unese  
 Bet than I couth have for mine ese,  
 Though I had studied all a weke :  
 Well wist that lord that I was feke,  
 And would be lechid wondir faine ;  
 No man me blame, mine was the paine.  
 And when this lord had all ysaide,  
 And long while with my lady plaid,  
 She gan to smile with spirit glade ;  
 This was the answere that she made,  
 Which put me there in double peine,  
 That what to do ne what to seine  
 Wist I not, ne what was the best ;  
 Ferre was my hert then fro his rest,  
 For as I thought that smiling signe  
 Was token that the hert encline  
 Would to requestis resonable,  
 Because *Smiling is favorable*  
 To every thing that shall thrive,  
 So thoughtin I tho anon blive  
 That *Worldlesse answere in no tour*  
 Was tane for obligacioun,

Ne callid surety in no wise  
 Amongst them that callid ben wise :  
 Thus was I in a joyous dout,  
 Sure and unfurist of that rout :  
 Right as mine hert ythought it were  
 So more or lesse wexin my fere,  
 That if one thought ymade it wele  
 Anothir shent it everydele,  
 Till at the last I couth no more,  
 But purposed as I did before  
 To serve truly my lyv's space,  
 Awaiting er the yere of grace,  
 Which may yfall yet or I serve,  
 If that it plesse her that I serve,  
 And servid have, and woll do ever,  
 For thyng is none that me is lever  
 Than is her service, whose presence  
 Mine heaven is whole, and her absence  
 An hell all full of divers paines,  
 Whych to the deth full oft me straines.  
 Thus in my thoughtis as I stode,  
 That unneth felt I harme ne gode,  
 I saw the quene a litil paas  
 Come where this mighty lord ywas,  
 And knelid downe in presence there  
 Of all the ladies that there were,  
 With sobir continuaunce avised,  
 In few wordis that well suffised,  
 And to this lord anon present  
 A bill, wherein whole her entent  
 Was writtin, and how she besought,  
 As he knew every will and thought,  
 That of his godhed and his grace  
 He would forgyve all old trespass,  
 And undispleid be of time past,  
 For she would evir be stedfast,  
 And in his service to the deth  
 Use every thought while she had breth,  
 And sight and wept, and said no more,  
 Within was writtin all the fore :  
 At whyche bill the lord gan smile,  
 And said he would within that yle  
 Be lord and syre both est and west,  
 And call'd it there his new conquest.  
 And in grete counsell toke the quene ;  
 Long were the talis them betwene :  
 And ovir her bill he red thrise,  
 And wondir gladly gan devise  
 Her fetures faire and her visage,  
 And bad gode thrift on that image,  
 And saide he trowid her compleint  
 Should astir cause her be corseint ;  
 And in his sleeve he put the bill,  
 Was there none that yknew his will,  
 And forthe he walke apace about,  
 Beholding all the lusty rout,  
 Halfe in a thought with smiling chere,  
 Till at the last, as ye shall here,  
 He turned unto the quene ageine,  
 And said, To morne here in this pleing  
 I woll that ye be and all yours,  
 That purposed ben to were flours,  
 Or of my lusty colour use,  
 It may not be to you excuse,

Ne to none of yours in no wise,  
 That able be to my servise;  
 For as I said have here before  
 I will be lord for evirmore  
 Of you, and of this yle, and all,  
 And of all yours that havin shall  
 Joy, pece, or ese, or in plesauce  
 Your livis use without noysaunce;  
 Here will I in state be yfene,  
 And turned his visage to the quene,  
 And you give knowledge of my will,  
 And a full answere of your bill.  
 Was there no nay, ne wordis none,  
 But very' obeisaunt semed echone;  
 The quene and othir that were there  
 Well semid it they had grete fere,  
 And there toke lodging every knight,  
 Was none departid of that night,  
 And some to rede old romances  
 Them occupied for ther plesances,  
 Some to make verblaies and laies,  
 And some to othir diverse plaies,  
 And I to me a romance toke,  
 And as I reding was the boke,  
 Methought the spherè had so run  
 That it was rising of the sun,  
 And such a pres into the plaine  
 Assemble gone, that with grete paine  
 One might for othir go ne stand,  
 Ne none take othir by the hand,  
 Withoutin they distourbid were,  
 So huge and gret the pres was there.  
 And aftir that within two houres  
 This mighty lord clad all in floures  
 Of divers colours many' a paire  
 In his estate up in the aire  
 Well nigh two fathom, as his hight,  
 He set him there in all ther sight,  
 And for the quene and for the knight,  
 And for my lady' and every wight,  
 In hast he sent, so that ner one  
 Was there absent, but come echone:  
 And when they thus assemblid were,  
 As ye have herd me say you here,  
 Without more tarrying on hight,  
 There to be sene of every wight,  
 Up stode among the pres above  
 A counsaylir, servaunt of Love,  
 Which semid well of gret estate,  
 And shewid there how no debate  
 Othir then godely might be used  
 In gentilnesse and be excused,  
 Wherefore he said his lord's will  
 Was every wight there should be still  
 And in pees, and of one accord,  
 And thus commaundid at a word,  
 And can his tongue to swiche language  
 To turne, that yet in all mine age  
 Herd I never so conningly  
 Man speke, ne halfe so faithfully,  
 For every thing he said there  
 Semid as it infelid were,  
 Or approvid for very trew:  
 Swiche was his cunning language newe,

And well according to his chere,  
 That where I be me thinke I here  
 Him yet alway, when I mine oue  
 In any place may be alone:  
 First con he of the lusty yle  
 All the estate in lityl whyle  
 Reherse, and wholly every thing  
 That causid there his lord's comming,  
 And every wele and every wo,  
 And for what cause eche thing was so  
 Well shewed he there in ese spech,  
 And how the sicke had nede of lech;  
 And that whiche whole was and in grace  
 He told plainly why ech thing was,  
 And at the last he con conclude,  
 Voidid every language rude,  
 And said, That prince, that mighty lord,  
 Or his departing would accord  
 All the parties were there present;  
 And was the fine of his entent,  
 Witnesse his presence in your sight,  
 Which sits among you in his might;  
 And knelid downe withoutin more,  
 And not o word yspake he more.

Tho gan this mighty lord him dresse,  
 With chere avised, to do largeffe,  
 And said unto this knight and me,  
 Ye shall to joy restorid be,  
 And for ye have ben true ye twaine  
 I graunt you here for every paine  
 A thousand joies every weke,  
 And loke ye be no lengir seke,  
 And both your ladies, lo'hem here!  
 Take ech his own; beth of gode chere,  
 Your happie day is new begun  
 Sith it was rising of the sun,  
 And to all othir in this place  
 I graunt wholly to stand in grace  
 That servith truely without slouth,  
 And to avauncid be by trouth.  
 Tho gan this knight and I downe knele,  
 Wening to doin wondir wele,  
 Seing, O lord! your grete mercy  
 Us hath enriched so opynly  
 That we deserve may never more  
 The lestè part, but evirmore  
 With soule and body truely serve  
 You and yours till that we ysterve:  
 And to ther ladies there they stode  
 This knight, that *couth so mikil gode*,  
 Ywent in hast, and I also;  
 Joyous and glad werin we tho,  
 And al so rich in every thought  
 As he that all hath and ought nought,  
 And them besought in humble wise  
 Us to accept to ther service,  
 And shew us of ther frendly cheres,  
 Which in ther tresure many yeres  
 They keptin had, us to grete paine,  
 And told how ther servauntis twaine  
 We were, would be, and so had ever,  
 And to the deth chaunge would we never,  
 Ne doe offence, ne thinke like ill,  
 But fill ther ordinaunce and will;

And made our othis freshe and new,  
 Our old service for to renew,  
 And wholly ther's for evirmore  
 We there become; what might we more?  
 And well awaiting that in slouth  
 We made no fault ne in our trouth,  
 Ne thought not do, I you ensure,  
 With our will, whilis we may dure.

This selson past, againe an eve  
 This lord of the quene toke his leve,  
 And said he would hastely returne,  
 And at gode leifure there sojourne,  
 Both for his honour and his ese,  
 Commaunding fast the knight to plesse,  
 And gave his statutes in papirs,  
 And orderit divers officirs,  
 And forth to ship the same night  
 He went, and sone was out of sight.  
 And on the morowe when the aire  
 Attemprid was and wondir faire,  
 Erly at rising of the sun,  
 Aftir the night away was run,  
 Yplaying us on the rivage,  
 My lady spake of her voyage,  
 And said she madin small journies,  
 And held her in straunge counteries,  
 And forthwith to the quene went,  
 And shewed her wholly her entent,  
 And toke her leve with chere weping,  
 That pity was to se that parting;  
 For to the quene it was a paine,  
 As to a martyr new yslame,  
 That for her woe, and she so tender,  
 Yet I wepe oft when I remember:  
 She offerid there to resigne  
 To my lady eight times or nine  
 Th' astate, the yle, shortly to tell,  
 If it might plesse her there to dwell,  
 And said, for evir her linage  
 Should to my lady doe homage,  
 And hers be whole withoutin more,  
 Ye, and all thers for evirmore.  
 Nay, 'God forbid! my lady eft,  
 With many cunning word and soft,  
 Said, that evir such a thing should bene  
 That I consent should that a quene  
 Of your estate, and so well named,  
 In any wise should be attamed,  
 But would be faine with all my hert,  
 What so befell or how me smert,  
 To doin thing that you might plesse  
 In any wise or be your ese,  
 And kissid there and bad gode night,  
 For which leve wept many a wight.  
 There might men here my lady praised,  
 And such a name of her araised,  
 What of cunning and frendlinesse,  
 What of beauty with gentilnesse,  
 And what of glad and frendly cheres  
 That she usid in all her yeres,  
 That wondir was here every wight  
 To say well how they did ther might,  
 And with a pres upon the morow  
 To ship her brought, and what a sorow

They made when she should undir faille,  
 That and ye wist ye would mervaille.  
 Forth goeth the ship, out goeth the sond,  
 And I as a wode man unbond,  
 For doubt to be left behind there,  
 Into the se withoutin fere  
 Anon I ran, till with a waw  
 All sodenly I was oerthraw,  
 And with the watir to and fro  
 Backward and forward travailed so  
 That mind and breth nigh was ygone,  
 For gode ne harme ne knew I none,  
 Til at the last with hokis tweine  
 Men of the ship with mekil peine  
 To save my life did such travaile  
 That and ye wist ye would mervaille,  
 And in the ship me drewe on hie,  
 And saidin all that I would die,  
 And laid me long downe by the mast,  
 And of ther clothis on me cast;  
 And there I made my testament,  
 And wist my selfe not what I ment,  
 But when I said had what I would,  
 And to the mast my wo all told,  
 And tane my leve of every wight,  
 And closed mine eyen and lost my sight,  
 Avised to die without more spech,  
 Or any remedy to sech  
 Or grace new, as was grete nede,  
 My lady of my paine toke hede,  
 And her bethought how that for trouth  
 To se me die it were grete routh,  
 And to me came in sobir wise,  
 And softly said, I pray you rise;  
 Come on with me; let be this fare;  
 All shall be wel; have ye no care;  
 I will obey ye, and fulfill  
 Wholly in al that lordis will  
 That you and me not long ago  
 Aftir his list commaundid so,  
 That there againe no resistence  
 May be withoutin gret offence,  
 And therefore now loke what I say,  
 I am and will be frendly aye;  
 Rise up, behold this avauntage,  
 I grauntin you in heritage  
 All peceably withoutin strive  
 During the dayis of your live;  
 And of her applis in my sleve  
 One she yput, and toke her leve  
 In wordis few, and said, God hele  
 He that all made you send, and wele!  
 Wherewith my pains all at ones  
 Tokin such leve, that all my bones,  
 For the new durense plesaunce,  
 So as they couth desired to daunce,  
 And I as whole as any wight  
 Up rose with joyous hert and light,  
 Whole and unsicke, right wele at ese,  
 And all forget had my disese,  
 And to my lady where she plaid  
 I went anone, and to her said;  
 He that all joies perlonis to plesse  
 First ordainid with parsite ese,  
 G g iij



And every plesure can depart,  
 Send you, Madame, as large a part,  
 And of his godis such plenty,  
 As he has done you of beauty,  
 With hele, and all that may be thought,  
 He send you all as he all wrought.  
 Madame, (quod I) your servaunt trew  
 Have I ben long, and yet will new,  
 Withoutin chaunge or repentaunce  
 In any wise or variaunce,  
 And so will do, as thrive I ever,  
 For thing is none that me is fever  
 Than you to pleser how er I fare,  
 Mine hert's lady and my welfare,  
 My life, mine hele, my lech also  
 Of every thing that doth me wo,  
 My helpe at nede, and my surete  
 Of every joy that longs to me,  
 My succours whole in alle wise  
 That may be thought or man devise,  
 Your grace, Madame, such have I found,  
 Now in my nede, that I am bound  
 To you for er, so Christ me save,  
 For hele and live of you I have,  
 Wherefore is resoun I you serve  
 With due obeisaunce till I sterve,  
 And ded and quicke be evir yours,  
 Late, erly, and at alle hours.  
 Tho came my lady small alite,  
 And in plaine English con confite,  
 In wordis few whole her entent  
 She shewed me there, and how she ment  
 To me ward in every wise,  
 Wholly she came at ther devise,  
 Without processe or long travell,  
 Charging me to kepin counsell,  
 As I would to her grace attaine,  
 Of which commaundement I was faine;  
 Wherefore I passe oer at this time,  
 For counsell cords not well in rime,  
 And eke the oth that I have swore  
 To breke me were bettir unbore;  
 Why? for untrue for evirmore  
 I should be hold, that nevirmore  
 Of me in place should be report  
 Thing that availe might, or comfort  
 To mewardis in any wise,  
 And eche wight wouldin me dispise  
 In that they couth, and me repreve,  
 Which were a thing sore for to greve,  
 Wherefore hereof more mencion  
 Make I not now ne long sermon,  
 But shortly thus I me excuse,  
 To rime a counsell I refuse.  
 Sailing thus two dayis or thre  
 My lady towards her countre,  
 Ovir the wavis high and grene,  
 Which werin large and depe betwene,  
 Upon a tinge me called and said,  
 That of my hele she was well paid,  
 And of the quene and of the yle  
 She talkid with me a long while,  
 And of all that she there had sene,  
 And of the estate and of the quene,

And of the ladies name by name,  
 Two houres or mo this was her game,  
 Till at the last the wind can rise,  
 And blew so fast and in such wise  
 The ship, that every wight can say  
 Madame, er eve be of this day,  
 And God tofore, ye shall be there  
 As ye would fainist that ye were,  
 And doubtith not within fixe hours  
 Ye shall be there as all is yours:  
 At which wordis she gan to smile,  
 And said that was no longe while  
 That they her set; and up she rose,  
 And all about the ship she gose,  
 And made gode chere to every wight,  
 Till of the land she had a sight,  
 Of which she glad, God it wot,  
 She was abashid and abote,  
 And forth goeth, shortly you to tell,  
 Where she accustomed was to dwell,  
 And recevid was, as gode right,  
 With joyous chere and hert's light,  
 And as a glad new avinture  
 Plesant to every creature;  
 With which landing tho I awoke,  
 And found my chambir full of smoke,  
 My chekis eke unto the eres,  
 And all my body, wet with teres,  
 And all so feble and in such wise  
 I was, that unneth might I rise,  
 So far travaillid and so faint,  
 That neithir knew I kirke ne faint,  
 Ne what was what ne who was who,  
 Ne avised what way I would go;  
 But by an adventurous grace  
 I rise and walkt, sought pace and pace,  
 Till I a winding staire yfound,  
 And held the vice aye in my hond,  
 And upward softly so can crepe  
 Till I came where I thought to slepe  
 More at mine ese, and out of prece,  
 At my gode leifure and in pece,  
 Till somewhat I recomfort were  
 Of the travill and the grete fere  
 That I endurid had before,  
 This was my thought withoutin more;  
 And as a wight witlesse and faint,  
 Without more in a chambir paint  
 Full of stories old and divers,  
 More than I can as now reherse,  
 Unto a bed full sobirly,  
 So as I mightin, full southly,  
 Pace aftir othir, and nothing said,  
 Till at the last downe I me laid,  
 And as my mind would give me leve  
 All that I dremid had that eve  
 Before that all I can reherse,  
 Right as a child at schole his verse  
 Doth aftir that he thinketh to thrive,  
 Right so did I for all my live,  
 I thought to have in remembraunce  
 Both the paine and eke the plesaunce,  
 The Dreame whole as it me befell,  
 Which was as ye herin me tell:

Thus in my thoughtis as I lay  
 That happy or unhappy day,  
 Ne wot I not, so have I blame,  
 Of the two which shulde be the name,  
 Befell me so that there a thought  
 By processe new on slepe me brought,  
 And me governed so in a while  
 That ones againe within the yle  
 Me thought I was, where of the knight  
 And of the ladies I had sight,  
 And were assemblid on a grene,  
 Bothe knight and lady with the quene,  
 At which assembly there was said  
 How that they all content and paid  
 Werin wholly as in that thing  
 That the knight there should be the king,  
 And they would all for sure witnesse  
 Yweddid be both more and lesse,  
 In remembraunce, withoutin more,  
 Thus they consent for evirmore,  
 And was concludid that the knight  
 Departin should the same night,  
 And forthwith there toke his voiage  
 To journey for his marriage,  
 And returnin with such an host  
 That weddid might be lest and most:  
 This was concluded, written and seled,  
 That it ne might not be repeled  
 In no wise, but continue firme,  
 And all should be within a terme,  
 Without more excusation,  
 Both fest and coronation.  
 This knight, which had thereof the charge,  
 Anon into a little barge  
 Ybrought was late against an eve,  
 Where of all he ytoke his leve,  
 Which barge was as a man's thought  
 Aftir his plesure to him brought,  
 The quene her selfe accustomed aye  
 In the same barge oft for to play,  
 It nedith neithir mast ne rothir,  
 I have not herd of such another,  
 No maistir for the govirnaunce,  
 He saylid by thought and plesaunce,  
 Withoutin labour est and west,  
 All ywas one calme or tempest,  
 And I went with at his request,  
 And was the first praied to the fest.  
 When he came into his countre,  
 And passid had the wavy se,  
 In an havin bothe depe and large  
 He left his rich and noble barge,  
 And to the court, shortly to tell,  
 He went where he was wont to dwell,  
 And was recevid, as gode right,  
 As heire, and for a worthy knight,  
 With all the statis of the lond,  
 Which came anon at his first sond,  
 With glad spiritis full of trowth,  
 Loth to do fault, or with a slouth  
 Attaint to be in any wise,  
 Ther richis was ther old servise,  
 Which evir trew had ben yfond  
 Sith first inhabit was the lond:

And so recevid thei ther king  
 That forgottin ywas no thing  
 That ought to be done ne might plesse,  
 Ne ther sevéraine lord do ese;  
 And with them so, shortly to say,  
 As they of custome had done aye,  
 For seven yere past was and more,  
 The father, the old, wife, and hore,  
 King of the land, ytoke his leve  
 Of all his barons on an eve,  
 And told them how his dayis past  
 Were all, and comin was the last,  
 And hart'ily prayed 'hem to remember  
 His sonnè, which yong was and tender,  
 That borne ywas ther prince to be,  
 If he returne to that countre  
 Might by adventure or by grace  
 Within any shorte time or space,  
 And to be true and frendly aye,  
 As they to him had ben alway:  
 Thus he them prayd withoutin more,  
 And toke his leve for evirmore.  
 Knowin was how tendir in age  
 This yongè prince a grete viage  
 Uncouth and straunge, honours to seche,  
 Ytoke in hond with lityl speche,  
 Which was to sekin a princes  
 That he desired more than riches,  
 For her grete name that flourid so  
 That in that time there was no mo  
 Of her estate, ne so well named,  
 For borne was none that er her blamed,  
 Of which princes somwhat before  
 Here have I spoke, and some will more.  
 So thus befell as ye shall here;  
 Unto ther lord they made such chere  
 That joy was there to be present  
 To se ther troth and how they ment;  
 So very glad they were ech one  
 That them among there was no one  
 Whiche that desired more riches  
 Than for ther lord such a princes  
 That they might plesse, and that were fair,  
 For fast desired they an heire,  
 And said grete surety were ywis.  
 And as they were spekin of this  
 The prince himselfin him avised,  
 And in plaine English undisguised  
 Them shewid wholly his journey,  
 And of ther counsell can them prey,  
 And told how he ensurid was,  
 And how his day he might not passe  
 Withoutin diffame and grete blame,  
 And to him for evir a shame;  
 And of ther counsell and avise  
 There he prayith them once or twise,  
 And that they would within ten daies  
 Avise and ordaine him such waies,  
 So that it were no displeaunce,  
 Ne to this relme oer grete greivaunce,  
 And that he might have to his fest  
 Sixty thousand gastes at the lest,  
 For his ipent within short while  
 Was to returne unto this yle

That he came fro, and kepe his day;  
 For nothing would he be away.  
 To counsaile tho the lords anon  
 Into a chambir everychone  
 Togithir went, them to devise  
 How they might best and in what wise  
 Purvey for their lord's plesauce,  
 And the relm's continuaunce  
 Of honor, which in it before  
 Had continuid evirmore:  
 So at the last they found the waies,  
 How that within the next ten daies  
 All might with paine and diligence  
 Be done, and cast what the dispence  
 Might draw, and, in conclusion,  
 Made for ech thing provision.  
 When this was done, wholly tofore  
 The prince the lordis all before  
 Come, and shewid what they had done,  
 And how they couth by no reson  
 Findin that within the ten daies  
 He might departin by no waies,  
 But would be fiftene at the lest  
 Or he returne might to his fest:  
 And shewed him every reson why  
 It might not be so hastily  
 As he desirid, ne his day  
 He might not kepe by no way,  
 For divers causis wondir grete;  
 Which when he herd in such an hete  
 He fell for sorow, and was seke,  
 Still in his bed whole that weke,  
 And nigh the tothir for the shame,  
 And for the doubt and for the blame  
 That mightin on him be aret,  
 And oft upon his brest he bet,  
 And said, Alas! mine honour for aye  
 Have I here lost clenely this day;  
 Ded would I be; alas! my name  
 Shall aye be more henceforth in shame,  
 And I dishonoured and reprevd,  
 And nevir more shall be beleved:  
 And made swich sorow, that in trouth  
 Him to behold it was grete routh;  
 And so endured the dayes fiftene,  
 Till that the lords on an even  
 Him come and told they redy were,  
 And shewid in few wordis there  
 How and what wise they had purvey'd  
 For his estate, and to him said  
 That twenty thousand knights of name,  
 And fourty thousand without blame,  
 All come of noble ligine,  
 Togidir in a compane,  
 Were lodgid on a river's side,  
 Him and his plesure there t'abide.  
 The prince tho for joy up arose,  
 And where they lodgid were he goes  
 Withoutin more that same night,  
 And these his suppir made to dight,  
 And with them bode till it was dey,  
 And forthwith to take his journey,  
 Leving the streight, holding the large,  
 Till he came to his noble barge:

And when this prince, this lustie knight,  
 With his peple in armis bright  
 Was comin where he thought to pas,  
 And knew well none abiding was  
 Behind, but all were there present,  
 Forthwith anon all his intent  
 He told them there, and made his crie  
 Thorough his hoste that day twise,  
 Commaunding every livis wight  
 There being present in his sight  
 To be the morow on the rivage,  
 Where he begin would his viage.  
 The morow come, the cry was kept,  
 But few was there that night that slept,  
 But trussed and purveid for the morow,  
 For fault of ships was all ther sorow,  
 For save the barge and othir two  
 Of shippis ther saw I no mo:  
 Thus in ther doubtis as they stode,  
 Waxing the se, comming the fode,  
 Was cried, To ship goe every wight,  
 Then was but hie that hie him might;  
 And to the barge me thought echone  
 They went, without was left not one,  
 Ne horse ne male, trusse ne baggage,  
 Salad ne speer, gardbrace ne page,  
 But was lodgid, and rome ynough;  
 At which shipping me thought I lough,  
 And gan to marvaile in my thought  
 How evir such a ship was wrought,  
 For what peple that can encrese,  
 Ne ner so thicke might be the prese,  
 But all had rome at ther will,  
 There was not one was lodgid ill;  
 For as I trowe my selfe the last  
 Was one, and lodgid by the mast,  
 And where I loked I saw such rome  
 As all were lodgid in a towne.  
 Forth goth the ship, said was the crede,  
 And on ther knees for ther gode spede  
 Downe knelid every wight a while,  
 And prayid fast that to the yle  
 They mightin comin in safety,  
 The prince and all the company,  
 With worship and withoutin blame,  
 Of disclaundir of his gode name,  
 Of the promise he should retourne,  
 Within the time he did sojourne,  
 In his londè bidding his host,  
 This was ther prayir lest and most:  
 To kepe the day it might not ben  
 That he' appointid had with the quene  
 To returnin withoutin slouth,  
 And so assurid had his trouth,  
 For which default this prince, this knight,  
 During the time slept not a night,  
 Such was his wo and his disese,  
 For doubt he should the quene displese.  
 Forth goith the ship with such spede  
 Right as the prince for his grete nede  
 Desirin would after his thought,  
 Till it unto the yle him brought,  
 Where all in hast upon the sand  
 He and his peple toke the land



With hertis glad and chere light,  
 Wening to be in heven that night;  
 But or they passid had a while,  
 Entering in towardis that yle,  
 All clad in blacke, with chere piteous,  
 A lady which ner dispiteous  
 Had be in all her life tofore  
 With fory chere and hert to tore  
 Unto this prince where he gan ride  
 Ycome and said, Abide, abide,  
 And have no hast, but fast retourne,  
 No reson is ye here sojourne,  
 For your untruth hath us discried;  
 Wo worth the time we us allied  
 With you, that are so sone untrew;  
 Alas the day that we you knew!  
 Alas the time that ye were bore!  
 For all this lond by you is lore;  
 Accursed be he you hidir brought!  
 For all our joy is turnd to nought;  
 Your acquaintance we may complaine,  
 Which is the cause of all our paine.  
 Alas! Madame, quod tho this knight,  
 And with that from his horse he light,  
 With colour pale and chekis lene,  
 Alas what is this for to mene?  
 What have ye said? why be ye wroth?  
 You to displese I would be loth:  
 Knowe ye not full well the promesse  
 Which I made have to your princeesse,  
 Which to perfourme is mine intent,  
 So mote I spede as I have ment,  
 And as I am her very trew,  
 Withoutin change or thoughtis new,  
 And al so fully her servand  
 As creature or man livand  
 May be to lady or princeesse,  
 For she mine heven and whole richesse  
 Is, and the lady of mine hele,  
 My worldis joy and all my wele.  
 What may this be, whence coms this spech?  
 Tell me, Madame, I you besech,  
 For sith the first of my living  
 Was I so feresfull of nothing  
 As I am now to here you speke,  
 For doubt I fele mine hert to breke:  
 Say on, Madame, tell me your will;  
 The remnaunt is it gode or ill?  
 Alas (quod she) that ye were bore!  
 For for your love this land is bore;  
 The quene is ded, and that is ruth,  
 For sorow of your gret untruth;  
 Of two partes of the lusty rout  
 Of ladies that were there about,  
 That wont werin to talk and play,  
 Now are thei ded and clene away,  
 And undir earth tane lodging newe;  
 Alas that er ye were untrew!  
 For when the time ye fet was past  
 The quene toke counsaile sone in hast  
 What was to doe, and said Grete blame  
 Your acquaintance cause would and shame,  
 And the ladies of ther avise  
 Prayid, for nede was to be wise,

In eschewing talis and songs,  
 That by them makin would ill tongs,  
 And sey they were lightly conquest,  
 And prayid to a pore fest,  
 And foully had ther worship weved,  
 When so unwisely they conceived  
 Ther riche trefour and ther hele,  
 Ther famous name and ther wele  
 To put in such an avinture,  
 Of which the sclaudir ever dure  
 Was like, without helpe of appele,  
 Wherefore they nede had of counsele,  
 For every wight of them would say,  
 Ther closid yle an opin way  
 Was become to every wight,  
 And well apprevid by a knight,  
 Which he, alas! without payfaunce  
 Had sone achevid th' obeisance:  
 All this was moved at counsell thrise,  
 And was concludid daily twise,  
 That bet was die withoutin blame  
 Than lose the riches of ther name;  
 Wherefore the deth's acquaintance  
 They chese, and lest have ther plessaunce,  
 For doubt to livin as repreved,  
 In that they you so sone beleved,  
 And made ther othes with one accord,  
 That ete ne drinke, ne speke o word,  
 They should nevir, but er weping  
 Bide in a place without parting,  
 And use ther dayis in penaunce,  
 Without desire of allegeaunce,  
 Of which the truth anon con preve;  
 For why? the quene forthwith her leve  
 Toke at them all that were present,  
 Of her defaults fully repent.  
 And dyid there withoutin more,  
 Thus are we lost for evirmore;  
 What should I more hereof reherse?  
 Comin within, come se her herse  
 Where ye shall se the piteous sight  
 That er yet was shewin to knight,  
 For ye shall sein ladies stond  
 Ech with a grete rod in her hond,  
 Yclad in black with visage white,  
 Redy ech othir for to smite;  
 If any be that will not wepe,  
 Or who that makes countenance to slepe,  
 They be so bet, that all so blew  
 They be as cloth that died is new,  
 Such is ther parfite repentance,  
 And thus they kepe ther ordinance,  
 And will do evir to the deth,  
 While them enduris any breth.  
 This knight tho in his armis twaine  
 This lady toke, and gan her faine,  
 Alas my birth! wo worth my life!  
 And even with that he drew a knife,  
 And thorough gown, doublet, and shert,  
 He made the blode come from his hert,  
 And set him doune upon the grene,  
 And full repent closid his ene,  
 And save that ones he drew his breth  
 Without more thus he toke his deth;

For whichè cause the lusty host,  
 Which in a battaile on the cost  
 At once for sorrow such a cry  
 Gan rene throw the company,  
 That to the leuen herd was the fowne,  
 And undir th' erth als for adowne,  
 That wilde bestis for the fere  
 So sodainly afrayid were,  
 That for the doubt while they might dure  
 They ran, as of their lives unsure  
 From the wodis unto the plaine,  
 And from valleys the high mountaine  
 They fought, and ran as bestis blind  
 That clene forgottin had ther kind.  
 This wo not cesed, to counsaile went  
 These lordis, and for that lady sent,  
 And of avise what was to done  
 They her besought she say would sone.  
 Weping full sore, all clad in blake,  
 This lady softly to them spake,  
 And said, My Lordis, by my trouthe  
 This mischefe it is of your slouth,  
 And if ye had that judge would right  
 A prince that were a very knight,  
 Ye that ben of estate echone  
 Die for his fault should one and one;  
 And if he hold had the promesse,  
 And done that longes to gentilnesse,  
 And fulfilled the princes behest,  
 This hastie farne had ben a fest,  
 And now is unrecoverable,  
 And us a flaundir aye durable,  
 Wherefore I say, as of counsaile  
 In me is none that may availe,  
 But if ye list for remembraunce  
 Purvey and make such ordinaunce  
 That the quene whiche that was so meke,  
 With all her women dede or seke,  
 Might in your land a chappill have,  
 With some remembraunce of her grave,  
 Shewing her end with the pity  
 In some notable old city,  
 And nigh unto an highè way,  
 Where every wight might for her pray,  
 And for all hers that have been trew:  
 And even with that she changid hew,  
 And twise wishid after the deth,  
 And sight, and thus passid her breth.  
 Then said the lordis of the host,  
 And so concludid lest and most,  
 That they would in housis of thacke  
 Ther livis lede, and were but blacke,  
 And forsake all ther plesaunces,  
 And turne all joy to penaunces,  
 And bere the ded prince to the barge,  
 And namid them should have the charge;  
 And to the herse where lay the quene  
 The remnaunt went and doune on knene,  
 Holding ther hands, on high con crie,  
 Mercy, mercy! everich thrie,  
 And cursed the time that evir slouth  
 Should have seche mastirdome of trouth,  
 And to the barge a longe mile  
 They bare her forth, and in a while

Alle the ladies one and one  
 By companies were brought echone,  
 And past the se and toke the land,  
 And in new herfis on a sand,  
 Put and brought werin all anon  
 Unto a city closed with stone,  
 Where it yhad ben usid aye  
 The kingis of the land to lay,  
 After they raignid in honours,  
 And writ was which were conquerours,  
 In an abbey of nunnis blake,  
 Which accustomed were to wake,  
 And of usage rise ech a night  
 To pray for every livis wight:  
 And so befell, as is the guise,  
 Ordeint and said was the servise  
 Of the prince and eke of the quene  
 So devoutly as might yben,  
 And aftir that about the herfes  
 Full many orisons and verses  
 Withoutin note ful hertily  
 Said were, and that full softly  
 That all the night till it was day  
 The peple in the church con pray  
 Unto the holy Trinitie  
 Of those soulis to have pitie.  
 And when the night ypast and ronne  
 Was, and the newe day begonne,  
 The yong morow with rayis red,  
 Which from the sonne oer all con spred,  
 Atempirid clere was and faire,  
 And made a tyme of wholsome aire,  
 Befell a wondir case and strange  
 Among the peple, and gan change  
 Sone the word and every wo  
 Unto a joy, and some to two;  
 A bird all fedrid blew and grene,  
 With bright rayis like gold betwene,  
 As small thred ovir every joynt,  
 All full of colour strange and coint,  
 Uncouth, and wondirfull to sight,  
 Upon the quen's herse con light,  
 And song full low and softly  
 Thre songis in her harmony;  
 Unlettid of every wight,  
 Til at the last an agid knight,  
 Which semid a man in grete thought,  
 Like as he set all thing at nought,  
 With visage and ein al forwept,  
 And pale, as a man long unslept;  
 By the herfis as he ystode  
 With hasty hondling of his hode  
 Unto a prince that by him past  
 Ymade the bridde somwhat agast,  
 Wherefore she rose and left her song,  
 And departed from us among,  
 And spred her wingis for to passe  
 By the place where he entrid was,  
 And in his hast, shortly to tell,  
 Him hurt, that backward downe he fell  
 From a window richly ypeint  
 With lives of many divers seint,  
 And bet his wingis and bled fast,  
 And of the hurt thus died and past,

~~And~~ there well an hour and more,  
 Till at the last of briddes a score  
 Come and assemblid at the place  
 Where the window ybrokin was,  
 And made swiche wamentacioun  
 That pity was to here the soun,  
 And the warblis of ther throtis  
 And the complaint of ther notis,  
 Which from joy clene ywas reversed;  
 And of them one the glas sone perfed,  
 And in his boke of colours nine  
 An herbe he brought flourelesse, all grene,  
 All full of small levis and plaine,  
 Swart, and long with many a vaine,  
 And where his fellow lay this dede  
 This herbe he down laid by his hede,  
 And dressid it full softly,  
 And hong his hed and stode thereby,  
 Which herb in lesse than half an houre  
 Gan oer all knit, and astir floure  
 Full out, and wexin ripe the fede,  
 And right as one anothir fede  
 Would, in his beke he toke the graine,  
 And in his fellowes beke certaine  
 It put, and thus within the third  
 Up stode and pruned him the bird  
 Which ded had be in all our sight,  
 And both togethir forth ther flight  
 Toke, singing from us, and ther leve  
 Was none disturb 'hem would ne greve.  
 And when they partid were and gone  
 Th' abbess the sedis sone echone  
 Gathrid had, and in her hand  
 The herbe she toke, well avisand  
 The lese, the fede, the stalke, the floure,  
 And said it had a gode favour,  
 And was no common herb to find,  
 And well approved of uncouth kind,  
 And than othir more vertuouse;  
 Who so have it might for to use  
 In his nede flowre, or lese, or graine,  
 Of ther hele might ybe certaine;  
 And laid it downe upon the herse  
 Where lay the quene, and gan reherse  
 Echone to' othir that they had sene;  
 And taling thus the fede wex grene,  
 And on the drie herse gan to spring,  
 Which me thought was a wondrous thing,  
 And astir that floure and new fede,  
 Of which the peple all toke hede,  
 And said it was some grete miracle,  
 Or medicine fine more than triacle,  
 And were well done there to assay  
 If it might ese in any way  
 The corsis, which with torchè light  
 They wakid had there all that night;  
 Sone did the lordis their consent,  
 And all the peple' thereto content  
 With esie words and litil fare,  
 And made the quen's visage bare,  
 Which shewid was to all about,  
 Wherefore in swone fell whole the rout,  
 And were so sory most and lest  
 That long of weping they not cest,

For of ther lord the remembraunce  
 Unto them was such displeaunce  
 That for to live they called a paine,  
 So were they very true and plaine.  
 And after this the gode abbess  
 Of the graine gan to chese and dresse  
 Thre, with her fingirs clene and smale,  
 And in the quen's mouth by tale  
 One astir othir esily  
 She put 'hem and full conningly,  
 Which shewid sone such vertue  
 That previd was the medi'cine true,  
 For with a smiling countinaunce  
 The quene uprose, and of usaunce,  
 As she was wont to every wight,  
 She made gode chere, for whiche sight  
*The peple kneeling on the stones*  
*Thought they in heven were soule and bones;*  
 And to the prince where he ylay  
 They went to make the same assay,  
 And when the quene it undirstode,  
 And how the medicine was gode,  
 She preyid she might have the graines  
 To relevin him from the paines  
 Which she and he had both endured,  
 And to him went and so him cured,  
 That streight within a litil space  
 Lusty and freshe on live he was,  
 And in gode hele, and whole of spech,  
 And lough, and said, Gramercy, lech!  
 For which the joy throughout the town  
 So gret was that the bellis sown  
 Afraied the peple a journey  
 About the cite every way,  
 And come and askid cause and why  
 They rongin were so statily?  
 And astir that the quene th' abbess,  
 Made diligence or they would cesse,  
 Such that of ladies sone a rout  
 Sewing the quene was all about,  
 And called by name echone and told,  
 Was none forgettin young ne old;  
 There mightin men se joyis new  
 When the medicine fine and trew  
 Thus restorid had every wight,  
 So well the quene as the knight,  
 Unto full perfit joy and hele,  
 That fleting they were in such welc  
 As folke that wouldin in no wise  
 Desire more parfit paradise.  
 And thus when passed was the sorow,  
 With mikil joye sone on the morow  
 The king, the quene, and every lord,  
 With all the ladies, by' one accord  
 Helde a generall assembly:  
 Gret cry was made through the country,  
 The which astir as ther intent  
 Was turnid to a parliament,  
 Where was ordainid and avised  
 Every thing and wel devised  
 That plesin might to most and lest,  
 And there concludid was the fest  
 Within the yle for to behold  
 With full consent of young and old.



All in the same wife as before,  
 As thing should be withoutin more,  
 And thei shippid and thithir went,  
 And into straunge relmis sent,  
 To kingis, quenes, and ducheſſes,  
 To divers princes and princeſſes,  
 Of ther linage, and can them pray  
 That it might like them at that day  
 Of mariage, for ther diſport,  
 Come ſe the yle and them diſport,  
 Where ſhould be jouſtis and turnaies;  
 And armis done in othir waies,  
 Signifying oer all the day  
 Aſtir Aprilis within May,  
 And was aſiſed that ladies tweine,  
 Of gode eſtate and well beſeine,  
 With certaine knightis and ſquiers,  
 And of the quen's officers,  
 In mannir of an embaffade,  
 With certain lettirs cloſed and made,  
 Should take the barge and depart,  
 And ſeke my lady every part  
 Till they her found for any thing  
 Both chargid have the quene and king,  
 And as ther lady and maiſtres  
 Her to beſeke of gentilnes  
 At the day there for to yben,  
 And oft her recommaund the quene,  
 And prayis for all loves to haſt,  
 For but ſhe come all woll be waſt,  
 And the feſt but a buſineſſe  
 Withoutin joy or luſtineſſe,  
 And toke them tokins, and gode ſpede  
 Praid God ſend 'hem aſtir ther nede.  
 Forth went the ladies and the knights,  
 And were out fourtene daies and nights,  
 And brought my lady in ther barge,  
 And had well ſped and done ther charge;  
 Whereof the quene ſo herti'ly glad  
 Was, that in ſoth ſuch joy ſhe had  
 When that the ſhip approchid lond  
 That ſhe my lady on the ſond  
 Met, and in armis ſo conſtraine,  
 That wondir was behold them twaine,  
 Which to my dome during twelve houres  
 Neithir for hete ne watry ſhoures  
 Departid not no company  
 Saving themſelfe, but none them by,  
 But gave them layſour at ther eſe  
 To reherſin joy and diſeſe  
 Aſtir the pleiſure and couragis  
 Of ther young and tendir agis;  
 And aſtir with many a knight  
 Brought thei were where as for that night  
 They partid not, for to pleaſaunce  
 Content was hert and countinaunce  
 Both of the quene and my maiſtreſſe,  
 This was that night ther buſineſſe;  
 And on the morow with huge rowt  
 This prince of lordis him about  
 Come, and unto my lady ſaid,  
 Of her comming glad and well paid  
 He was, and full right conningly  
 Her thankid and full hertily,

And lough and ſmiled, and ſaid, Ywis  
 That was in doubt in ſafety is;  
 And commaundid do diligence,  
 And ſpare for neithir gold ne ſpence,  
 But make redy, for on the morow  
 Yweddid, with Saint John to borow,  
 He would ybe withoutin more,  
 And let them wite this leſe and more.  
 The morow come, and the ſervice  
 Of mariage in ſuch a wife  
 Yſaid was, that with more honour  
 Was nevir prince ne conquerour  
 Ywedde, ne with ſuch company  
 Of gentilneſſe in chivalry,  
 Ne of ladies ſo gretè routs,  
 Ne ſo beſeen as all abouts  
 They werin there, I certifie  
 You on my life, withoutin lie.

And the feſt hold was in tentis,  
 As to tell you mine entent is,  
 In a rome in a largè plaine,  
 Undir a wode in a champaine,  
 Betwixt a rivir and a well,  
 Where nevir had abbay ne fell  
 Yben, ne kirke, houſe, ne village,  
 In time of any man's age,  
 And durid thre moniths the feſt  
 In one eſtate, and nevir ceſt  
 From erly riſing of the ſonne  
 Till the day ſpent was and yronne  
 In juſting, dauncing, luſtineſſe,  
 And all that ſowned to gentilneſſe.

And as me thought the ſecond morow,  
 Whan endid was all oldè ſorow,  
 And in ſurety every wight  
 Had with his lady ſlept a night,  
 The prince, the quene, and all the reſt,  
 Unto my lady made request,  
 And her beſought oſtin and praied  
 To mewardes to be well apaied,  
 And conſidir mine oldè trouth,  
 And on my painis havin routh,  
 And me accept to her ſerviſe  
 In ſuch formè and in ſuch wiſe  
 That we both mightin be as one;  
 Thus praied the quene and everichone;  
 And for there ſhould ne be no nay  
 They ſtintin juſting all a day  
 To pray my lady, and requere  
 To be content and out of fere,  
 And with gode hert make frendly chere,  
 And ſaid it was a happy yere;  
 At which ſhe ſmiled, and ſaid, Ywis  
 I trow well he my ſervaunt is,  
 And would my welfare, as I triſt,  
 So would I his, and would he wiſt  
 How and I knewè that his trouth  
 Continue would withoutin flouth,  
 And be ſuch as ye here report,  
 Reſtraining both courage and ſport,  
 I couth conſent at your request  
 To be ynamid of your feſt,  
 And doin aſtir your uſaunce  
 In obeying of your pleaſaunce

At my request this I consent,  
 To plesin you in your entent,  
 And eke the sovèraine above,  
 Commandid hath me for to love,  
 And before othir him prefer,  
 Against which prince may be no wer,  
 For his powir ovir all raigneth,  
 That othir would for nought him paineth;  
 And sith his will and yours is one  
 Contrary in me shall be none:  
 Tho (as me thoughtin) the promise  
 Of marriage before the mese  
 Desirid was of every wight  
 To be madin the same night,  
 To put away all manir doubts  
 Of every wight thereabouts;  
 And so was do: and on the morow,  
 When every thought and every sorrow  
 Dislodgid was out of mine hert,  
 With every wo and every smert,  
 Unto a tent prince and princes  
 Me thought brought me and my maistres;  
 And said we werin at full age  
 There to conclude our marriage,  
 With ladies, knightis, and squiers,  
 And a gret host of ministers,  
 With instruments and sounes diverse,  
 That long werin here to reherse;  
 Which tent was church parochiall,  
 Ordaint was in especiall  
 For the fest and for the sacre,  
 Where archbishop and archdiacre  
 Ysongin full out the servise  
 Aftir the custome and the guise  
 And holie church's ordinaunce:  
 And aftir that to dine and daunce  
 Brought were we, and to divers plaies,  
 And for our spedè ech wight praies,  
 And merry was both most and lest,  
 And said amendid was the fest,  
 And were right glad lady and lord  
 Of the marriage and th' accord,  
 And wishid us hert's plesauce,  
 In joy and hele continuance,  
 And to the ministrils made request  
 That in encrefing of the fest  
 They wouldin touchin ther cordis,  
 And with some new joyeux accordis  
 Ymove the peple to gladnesse,  
 And praidin of all gentilnesse  
 Ech to painin them for the day  
 To shew his cunning and his play:  
 Tho began sownis marvelous,  
 Entunid with accords joyous,  
 Round about and in all the tents,  
 With thousandis of instruments,  
 That every wight to daunce them pained;  
 To be merry was none that fayned;  
 Which sowne me troublid in my slepe,  
 That fro my bed anone I lepe,  
 Wening to have be at the fest,  
 But when I woke all was yfist,  
 For there n'as lady ne cature,  
 Save on the wals old portraiture  
 Of horsmen, hawks, and houndis.

Some like bittin, some hurt with shot,  
 And as my dreame semed that was not.  
 And when I wake and knew the trouth,  
 And ye had seen, of very rou-h  
 I trow ye would have wept a weke,  
 For nevir man yet halfe so seke  
 Iwent escapid with the life,  
 And was for fault that sword ne knife  
 I find ne might my life t' abridge,  
 Ne thing that kervid ne had edge,  
 Wherewith I might my wofull pains  
 Have voidid with bleding of vains.  
 Lo, here my blisse! lo, here my paine!  
 Which to my lady I do complaine,  
 And grace and mercy her requere  
 To end my wo and busie fere,  
 And me accept to her servise,  
 And to her service in such wise,  
 That of my Dremè the substance  
 Might turnin once to cognisaunce;  
 And cognisaunce to very preve,  
 By full consent and by gode leve;  
 Or els withoutin more I pray  
 That this same night or it be day  
 I mote unto my Dreme retourne,  
 And sleping so forthe aie sojourne  
 Aboutin the yle of plesauce  
 Undir my ladie's obeisaunce,  
 In her service, and in such wise  
 As it plesè her may to devise,  
 And grace onis to be accept  
 Like as I dremid when I slept,  
 And dure a thousand yere and ten  
 In her gode will. Amen, Amen!

## L'ENVOY.

Fairist of faire, and godelyist on live!  
 All my secre to you I plaine and shrive,  
 Requiring grace, and of my fore complaint  
 To be be helid or martirid as a saint,  
 For by my trouth I swere, and by this boke,  
 Ye may both hele and fle me with a loke.  
 Go forth, mine ownè true hert innocent,  
 And with humblenesse do thine observaunce,  
 And to thy lady on thy knees present  
 Thy service new, and think how grete plesauce  
 It is to live undir the obeisaunce  
 Of her which that may with her lokis soft  
 Give the the blisse that thou desirist oft.  
 Be diligent, awake, obey, and drede,  
 And be not wild of thy countinaunce,  
 But meke and glad, and thy nature yfede  
 To do ech thing that may her doe plesauce;  
 When thou shalt slepe have aie in remembraunce  
 Th' image of her which may with lokis soft  
 Give the the blisse that thou desirist oft.  
 And if so be that thou her namè find  
 Writtin in boke, or ellis upon wall,  
 Loke that thou do, as servaunt true and kind,  
 Thine obeisaunce as she were therewithall:  
 Fayning in love is breeding of a fall  
 From the grace of her whose lokis soft  
 May give the blisse that thou desirist oft.  
 Ye which that this ballade yredin shall

## THE DREME OF CHAUCER\*.

I HAVE grete wonder, by this light,  
How that I lyve, for day ne night  
I maye not slepin welny nought;  
I have so many' an ydle thought,  
Purely for the defaute of slepe,  
That by my trouth I take no kepe  
Of nothing howe it cometh or gothe,  
Ne me n'ys nothing lese nor lothe;  
Al is ilichè gode to me  
Joye or sorowe where so it be,  
For I have felinge in nothing,  
But as it were a masid thing  
Al day in pointe to fall adoun,  
For sorowful ymaginacioun  
Is alway wholly in my minde.

And well ye wote that againste kinde  
It were to livin in this wise,  
For nature ne wolde not suffise  
Unto none erthy creature  
Not longè tymè to endure  
Withoutin slepe and be in sorowe,  
And I ne may ne night ne morowe  
Slepin, and this melancolye  
And drede I havin for to die;  
Defaute of slepe add hevinesse  
Hath slaine my spirite of quicknesse,  
That I have lost al lustihed;  
Soche fantasies ben in mine hed  
So I n'ot what is best to do:  
But men might askin me whi so  
I may not slepe, and what me is!

But nathèles who askith thys  
Lefeth his askyng trewily;  
My selvin can not telling why  
The sothe, but trewly, as I gesse,  
I holde it be a sikènesse

\* By the person of a mourning knight sitting under an oak, is meant John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, greatly lamenting the deth of one whom he entirely loved, supposed to be Blanch the Dutchess, 1399.

That I have suffrid this eyght yere,  
And yet my bote is ner the nere,  
For there is phisicien but one  
That may me hele; but that is done;  
Passin we ovir until este;  
That wil not be mote nedes be leste:  
Our first matir is gode to kepe.

So whan sawe I might not slepe  
Til now of late this othir night  
Upon my bedde I fate upright,  
And bade one rechin me a boke,  
A romauncè and it me toke  
To rede, and drive the night away;  
For why? me thought it betir play  
Than play either at chesse or tables.

And in this boke were writtin fables  
That clerkis had in olde time  
And other poetes put in rhyme  
To rede, and for to be in minde,  
While men lovid the lawe of kinde:  
This boke ne spake but of soche thinges  
Of quenis livis and of kinges,  
And many othir thingis smale;  
Amonge al this I fond a tale  
Whiche that me thought a wondir thing.

This was the tale. There was a king  
That hight Ceix, and had a wife  
The best that mightin berin lyfe,  
And this quenè hight Alcyone;  
So it befel thereaftir sone  
This king wol wendin ovir se:  
To tellin shortly whan that he  
Was in the se thus in this wise  
Soche a tempest began to ryse  
That brake ther maste and made it fal,  
And cleft ther ship and dreint 'hem al,  
That nevir was founde, as it telles,  
Ne borde ne man, ne nothing elles:  
Right thus this king ylost his life.

Nowe fer to spekin of his wife.



This lady that was leste at home  
 Hath wondir that the kinge ne come  
 Home, for it was a longe terme;  
 Anone her herte began to yerne,  
 And for that her thought evir mo  
 It was not wele, her thoughtin so,  
 She longid so aftir the king,  
 That certes it were a pitous thing  
 To tell her hertely sorowful lyf:  
 Whiche that she had this noble wife,  
 For him she lovid aldirbest;  
 Anon she sent both est and west  
 To seke him but they founde him nought.

Alas (quod she) that I was wrought!  
 And where my lord my love he ded  
 Certis I n'yl never ete bred,  
 I make a vowe to my God here,  
 But I mowe of my lord here.

Such sorowe this lady to her toke,  
 That trewly I, that made this boke,  
 Yhad soche pite and soche routhe  
 To rede her sorowe, that by my trouthe  
 I ferd the worse al the morowe  
 Aftir to thinkin on her sorowe.

So whan that she coude here no word  
 That no man myghtin finde her lord  
 Ful ofte she swouned, and saide Alas!  
 For sorow ful nigh wode she was,  
 Ne she ne coude no rede but one,  
 But downe on knees she fate anone  
 And wept, that pitie was to here.

A! mercy, my swete lady dere!  
 Quod she to Juno, her goddesse,  
 Helpith me out of this distresse,  
 And yeve me grace my lord to se  
 Sone, or to wete where so he be,  
 Or howe he fareth, or in what wise,  
 And I shal make you sacrifice,  
 And wholly yours become I shal,  
 With gode wil, body, herte, and al;  
 And but thou wolte this, lady swete  
 Sendin me grace to slepe, and mete  
 In my slepe some certaine swevin  
 Where through that I may knowe evin  
 Whethir my lord be quicke or ded.

With that worde she hinge down the hed,  
 And fel in a swonne as colde as stene;  
 Her women caught her up anone,  
 And broughtin her in bed al naked,  
 And she for wepid and forwaked  
 Was wery, and thus the ded slepe  
 Yfel on her or she toke kepe,  
 Through Juno that had herde her bone,  
 That madin her to slepe sone;  
 For as she praide right so was don  
 In dede, for Juno right anon  
 Ycallid thus her messangere  
 To do' her eraunde, and he come nere:  
 Whan he was come she bad him thus;

Go bet (quod Juno) to Morpheus,  
 Thou knowest him wel, the god of Slepe;  
 Nowe understande wel, and take kepe,  
 Say thus on my behalfe, that he  
 Go fast into the grete se,

VOL. I.

And bid him that on alle thinge  
 He take up Ceix body the kinge,  
 That lieth ful pale and nothings rody;  
 Byd him crepin into the body,  
 And do it gone to Alcyone  
 The quene, there she lyith alone,  
 And shewe her shortely' it is no nay  
 Howe it was dreint this othir day,  
 And do the body speke right so  
 Right as it was wonnid to do  
 The whilis that it was alyve:  
 Goith now fast, and hye the blive.

This messanger toke leve and went  
 Upon his way, and novre' he stente  
 Tyl he came to the darke valey  
 That stante betwixt in rokis twey,  
 There never yet grewe corne ne gras,  
 Ne tre, ne nothing that ought was,  
 Ne best ne man, ne nothing elles,  
 Save that there werin a fewe welles  
 Came renning fro the clyffes adowne  
 That made a dedly slepinge sowne,  
 And remain downe right by a cave  
 That was undir a rocke ygrave  
 Amyd the valey wondir depe  
 There as these goddis lay aslepe,  
 Morpheus and Eclimpassere,  
 That was the god of Slepe's hire,  
 That slepte and did none othir werke.

This cave ywas also as derke  
 As hel pitte; ovir all aboute  
 They had gode leyfire for to route  
 To vye who mightin slepe best;  
 Some hinge ther chinne upon ther brest,  
 And slepte upright ther hed yhed,  
 And some lay nakid in ther bed,  
 And sleptin whiles their dayis last.

This messanger come renning fast,  
 And cried, Ho, ho! awake anone!  
 It was for naught; there herde him none;  
 Awake, (quod he) who lyith there?  
 And blewe his horne right in ther ere,  
 And cried Awakith! wondir hie.

This god of Slepe with his one eye  
 Cast up, and asked Who clepith there?  
 It am I, (quod this messangere)  
 Juno bade that thou shouldist gone,  
 And toldin him what he should done  
 As I have tolde you here before,  
 It is no nede reherse it more,  
 And wente his way whan he had saide.  
 Anone this god of Slepe abraide  
 Out of his slepe and gan to go,  
 And did as he had bidde him do;  
 He toke up the ded body sone,  
 And bare it forthe to Alcyone  
 His wife, the quene, there as she lay,  
 Right even a quartir before day,  
 And stode right at her bedd'is fote,  
 And callid her right as she hete  
 By name, and said; My swete wife!  
 Awake, let be your sorowful lyfe,  
 For in your sorow there lyth no rede,  
 For certes, swete love! I am but dede;

H h

Ye shall me ner on lyve yfe :  
 But, gode swete herte ! I praye that ye  
 Bury my body ; soche a tide  
 Ye mowe it finde the se beside :  
 And farewell swete ! my world is blisse !  
 I pray that God your sorowe lyffe :  
 To lytel while our blisse ylasteth.  
 With that her eyin up she casteth,  
 And sawe naught. Alas ! for sorowe  
 She died within the thirde morowe.  
 But what she said more in that swowe  
 I may nat tellin you as now ;  
 It were to longe for to dwel :  
 My first matere I wil you tel  
 Wherfore I have ytold this thinge  
 Of Alcyone and Ceix the kinge.  
 For this moche dare I sayin well,  
 I had be dolvin everidel,  
 And ded, right through defeaute of slepe,  
 Yf I ne had red and take kepe  
 Of this ilke tale next before,  
 And I wil tellin you wherfore,  
 For I ne might for bote ne bale  
 Slepyn or I had redde this tale  
 Of this ydreinte Ceix the kinge,  
 And of the goddis of Slepinge,  
 Whan I had red this tale welc,  
 And overloked it everidele,  
 Me thought wondir if it were so,  
 For I had ner herde speke or tho  
 Of no goddis that couldin make  
 Men for to slepe ne for to wake,  
 And I ne knewe ner God but one,  
 And in my game I said anone,  
 (And yet me lyst right il to pley)  
 Rather than that I shuldin dey  
 Thorough defeaute of slepinge thus  
 I woldin gyve thiike Morpheus,  
 Or that goddesse hight Dame Juno,  
 Of some wight els, I ne rought who,  
 To make me slepe and have some rest  
 I will give him the althir best  
 Yeste that er he abode his lyve  
 And hereonwarde right now as blyve,  
 If he wold make me slepe a lite,  
 Of downe of purd doves white  
 I wol yeve him a fethir bed  
 Rayid with gold, and right wel cled  
 In fine blacke sattin doutermere,  
 And many a pilowe, and every bere  
 Of clothe of Raines to slepe on softe,  
 Him thare not nede to turnin ofte ;  
 And I wol yeve him al that failles  
 To his chambre and to his halles,  
 I wol do painte hem with pure golde,  
 And tapite hem ful many foid ;  
 Of one sute this shal he yhave,  
 If that I wiste where were his care,  
 If he can make me slepin sore,  
 As did the goddesse Quene Alcyone ;  
 And thus this ylke god Morpheus  
 May winnin of me mo fees thus  
 Than er he wanne ; and to Juno  
 That is his goddesse I shal so do,

I trowe that she shal holde her paid.  
 I had unneth that worde ifaide,  
 Right thus as I have toldin you,  
 Than sodeinly, I ne wiste howe,  
 Soche a luste anone me ytoke  
 To slepe, that right upon my boke  
 I fel allepe, and therwith even  
 Me mette so inly soche a sweven,  
 So wondisfull, that nevyr yet  
 I trowe no man ne had the wit  
 To connin wel my swevin rede.  
 No, nought Joseph withoutin drede  
 Of Egypt, he which that rad so  
 The king's metinge Pharao,  
 No more than cotide the leste of us,  
 Ne nat scarfly Macrobeus,  
 He that wrote al the avision  
 Whiche that he met Kinge Scipion,  
 The noble man, the Affrican,  
 Soche mervailis fortunid than  
 I trowe, arede my dremis even ;  
 Lo ! thus it was, this was my sweven :  
 Me thoughtin thus, that it was Maye,  
 And in the dawning there I lay  
 Me met thus in my bed al naked,  
 And lokid forthe, for I was waked  
 With smal fousis a gret hepe,  
 That had afraied me out of my slepe  
 Through noise and swetnesse of ther songe ;  
 And as me met they fate amonge  
 Upon my chambre rose without,  
 Upon the tyles ovre al about,  
 And everiche songe in his wise  
 The moste swete and solemne servise  
 By note that evir man I trowe  
 Had herde, for some of hem songe lowe,  
 Some high, and al of one accorde :  
 To tellin shortly, at o worde,  
 Was nevyr herde so swete a steven,  
 But it had be a thinge of heaven,  
 So merie a sowne, so swete entunes,  
 That certis for the towne of Tewnes  
 I n'olde but I had herde hem singe,  
 For al my chambre gan to ringe  
 Through singin of ther harmony,  
 For instrument nor melody  
 Was no where herde yet halfe so swete,  
 Nor of acorde halfe so mete,  
 For there was none of hem that sained  
 To singe, for eche of hem him pained  
 To finde out many crafty notes,  
 They ne ysparid nat ther throtes ;  
 And, soth to saine, my chambre was  
 Ful wel depaintid, and with glas  
 Were at the windowes wel yglased  
 Ful clere, and nat an hole ycrased,  
 That to beholde it was grete joy,  
 For wholly al the story of Troy  
 Was in the glaifinge ywrought thus,  
 Of Hector and Kinge Priamus,  
 Achilles and Kinge Lamedon,  
 And eke Medea and Jason,  
 Of Paris, Heleine and Lavine ;  
 And all the walles with colours fine

Were paintid, bothe texte and glose,  
 And al The Romaunte of the Rose :  
 My wyndowes werin shet ech one,  
 And through the glasse the sunne yshone  
 Upon my bed with bright bemis,  
 With many glad gildy stremis ;  
 And eke the welkin was so faire,  
 Blewe, bright, and clere, ywas the ayre,  
 And ful attempre', in sothe it was,  
 For neithir colde ne hote it n'as,  
 Ne' in al the welkin was no clowde.

And as I lay thus, wondir lowde  
 Me thought I herde an huntir blowe  
 T' assay his gret horne, and to knowe  
 Whethre' it was clere or horse of fowne ;

And I herde goynge up and downe  
 Men, horsis, houndes, and othir thinge,  
 And al men spekin of huntinge,  
 How they wolde sle the harte with strenght,  
 And how the harte had upon length  
 So moche enbofed, I n'ot nowe what.

Anon right whan I herdin that,  
 How that they wolde on huntinge gone,  
 I was right glad, and up anone  
 I toke my horse, and forth I wente  
 Out of chambre ; I nevir stente  
 Tyl I come to the felde without,  
 There ovirtoke I a grette rout  
 Of huntirs and of foresters,  
 And many relaies and limers,  
 That hied 'hem to the forest fast,  
 And I with 'hem : so at the last  
 I askid one lad, a lymere,  
 Say, felowe, who shal huntin here ?  
 (Quod I) and he answered ayen,  
 Sir, the Emperour Octonyen,  
 (Quod he) and he is here, faile by.

A goddes halfe, in gode tyme, (quod I)  
 Than go we fast, and gan to ride :  
 Whan we come to the forest side  
 Ev'ry man ydyd right sone  
 As unto huntinge sel to done.

The maistr huntir anone fote hote  
 With his clere horne yblewe thremote  
 At the uncouplinge of his houndis.  
 Within a while the harte founde is :  
 I halowed and rechafid fast  
 A longe time : and so at the last  
 This harte rousid and stafe away  
 Fro al the houndes a privy way.

The houndes had ovirshot him all,  
 And were on a defaulte yfal,  
 Therwith the hont full wondir fast  
 Yblewe a forloyn at the laste :  
 I was go walkid fro my tre,  
 And as I went there came by me  
 A whelpe, that fawned me as I fode,  
 That had folowed and coude no gode ;  
 It came and crepte to me as lowe,  
 Right as it had me wele yknowe,  
 Helde down his hed and joynded his eres,  
 And laide al smothe adowne his heres.

I wolde have caught it up anone ;

As I folowed and it forth went,  
 Downe by a floury grene it went  
 Ful thick of graffe ful softe and swete,  
 With flouris fele fare undir fete,  
 And lytil used, it semid thus,  
 For bothe Flora and Zephyrus,  
 They two that makin flouris growe,  
 Had made ther dwelling there I trowe,  
 For it was on for to beholde  
 As though the erthe there envye wolde  
 To be gayir than is the heven,  
 To havin mo flouris soche seven  
 As in the welkin sterris be,  
 It had forget the povirte  
 Of Wintir, through his cold morowes  
 That made it suifre, and his sorowes  
 All was forieten, and that was sene,  
 For all the wode was woxin grene,  
 Swetnesse of dewe had made it waxe.

It is no nede eke for to axe  
 Where there were many grene greves,  
 Or thicke of trees so ful of leves,  
 And every tree stode by him selve  
 Fro othir wel ten fote or twelve,  
 So grette trees and so huge of strenght,  
 Of fourty' or fifti fadome length,  
 All clene withoutin bowe or sticke,  
 With croppis brode, and eke as thicke,  
 They werin not an ynche asonder,  
 That it was shadde ovir all under ;  
 And many' an hart and many' an hinde  
 Was both before me and behinde,  
 Of fawnis, sowirs, buckis, does,  
 Was ful the wode, and many roes,  
 And many squirilis, that sete  
 Ful high upon the trees and etc,  
 And in ther manir madin festes :  
 Shortly, it was so ful of bestes  
 That though Argus the noble countour  
 Yfate to rekin in his countour,  
 And rekin with his figures ten,  
 For by tho figures newe al ken  
 If they be crafty, reken and nombre,  
 And tel of every thing the nombre,  
 Yet shulde he faile to rekin even  
 The wonders me met in my sweven ;  
 But forthe I romed right wondir faste  
 Downe through the wode ; so at the laste  
 I was ware of a man in blacke,  
 That fete, and had yturned his backe  
 Unto an ooke and huge tre ;  
 Lord ! tho thought I, who may that be ?  
 What eylieth him to sittin here ?  
 And anon right I went him nere ;  
 Than founde I sitte evin upright  
 A wondir faire welfaring knight,  
 By the manir me thoughtin so  
 Of gode mokil, right yonge therto,  
 Of the' age of four-and-twenty yere,  
 Upon his berde but litil here,  
 And he was clothid al in blacke ;  
 I stalkid even unto his backe ;  
 And there I stode as stil as ought,



For why? he hinge his hed adowne,  
 And with a dedly sorowful sowne  
 He made of rime ten verses or twelve  
 Of a complainte unto himselfe,  
 The moste pite and the most routh  
 That evir I herde, for by trouthe  
 It was grete wondir that Nature  
 Might suffre any creature  
 To have soche sorow' and he not ded;  
 Ful pitous pale, and nothing red,  
 He said a lay, a manir songe,  
 Withoutin note, withoutin songe,  
 And was this, for ful wel I can  
 Reherse it; right thus it began:

I have of sorowe so grete wone,  
 That joye ne get I never none,  
 Nowe that I se my lady bright,  
 Which I have loved with all my might,  
 Is fro me ded, and is agone,  
 And thus in sorowe' lefte me alone:  
 Alas! o Deth! what eylyth the  
 That thou n'oldist have takin me  
 Whan that thou toke my lady swete?  
 Of all godenes she had none mete,  
 That was so faire, so freshe, so fre,  
 So gode, that men may wel yse.

Whan he had made thus his complainte  
 His sorowful hert gan fast fainte,  
 And his spiritis wexin dede,  
 The blode was fledde for pure drede  
 Downe to his herte to makin him warme,  
 For wel it feled the herte had harme,  
 To wete eke why it was adradde,  
 By kinde, and for to make it gladde,  
 For it is membre principal  
 Of the body, and that made al  
 His hewe ychaunge, and wexin grene  
 And pale for there no blode is sene  
 Within no manir lymme of his.

Anon therwith, whan I sawe this,  
 He farde thus yvil there he sete,  
 I went and stode right at his fete,  
 And grette him, but he spake right nought  
 But arguid with his owne thought,  
 And in his witte disputid faste  
 Bothe why and howe his lyfe might laste,  
 Him thought his sorowes were so smerte,  
 And lay so colde upon his herte.

So through his sorowe' and holy thought  
 Made him that he ne herde me nought,  
 For he had welnye lost his minde,  
 Though Pan, that men clepe god of Kinde  
 Were for his sorowes ner so wrothe.

But at the last, to faine right sothe,  
 He was ware of me howe I stode  
 Before him and did of my hode,  
 And had gret him as I best coude  
 Debonairly and nothing loude;  
 He said, I pray the be not wrothe,  
 I herde the not, to faine the sothe,  
 Ne I sawe the not, Sir, truly.

Ah, gode Sir! tho no force (quod I)  
 I am right fory' if I have ought  
 Distroublid you out of your thought;

Forieve me if I have myffetake.

Yes, the amendes is light to make;  
 (Quod he) for there lithè non therto;  
 There is nothing missaide nor do.

Lo howe godely yspake this knight,  
 As it had be anothir wight,  
 And made it neithir tough ne queint!  
 And I sawe that, and gan me' aqueint  
 With him, and founde him so trefable,  
 Right wondir skylful and reso'nable,  
 As me thoughtin, for all his bale,  
 Anon right I gan finde a tale  
 To him, to loke where I might ought  
 Have more knowleging of his thought.

Sir, (quod I) this game is ydone,  
 I holde that this hart be ygone,  
 These huntis can him no where se.

I do no force therof, (quod he)  
 My thought is theron ner a dele.  
 By' our Lorde (quod I) I trowe you wele,  
 Right so me thinkith by your chere;  
 But, Sir, o thing wollin ye here?  
 Me thinketh in gret sorowe' I you se,  
 But certis, Sir, and if that ye  
 Wolde aught discovir me your wo  
 I wolde, as wise God helpe me so,  
 Amende it if I can or may,  
 Ye mowin prove it by assay,  
 For by my trouthe, to make you whole  
 I wol do al my powir whole;  
 And telleth me of your sorowes smert,  
 Paraunter it may ese your herte,  
 That semeth ful syke undir your side.

With that he loked on me aside,  
 As who saithe nay, that n'yl not be.

Graunt mercy, mygode frende! (quod he)  
 I thanke the that thou woldist so,  
 But it may ner the rather be do;  
 No man ne may my sorowe glade,  
 That maketh my hewe to fal and fade,  
 And hath myn understanding lorne,  
 That me is wo that I was borne:  
 May nought make my sorowis flyde,  
 Not all the rem'edies of Ovide,  
 Ne Orpheus, god of Melodie,  
 Ne Dædalus, with his playes flye,  
 Ne hele me may no physicien,  
 Nought Hippocrates ne Galen;  
 Me' is wo that I live houris twelve;  
 But whofo wol assaye him selve  
 Whether his hert can have pite  
 Of any sorowe let him se me,  
 I wretche, that deth hath made al naked  
 Of al the blisse that er was maked,  
 I wrothe, the werste of allè wightes,  
 That hate my dayis and my nightes;  
 My lyfe, my lustis, be me lothe,  
 For allè fare and I be wrothe;  
 The pure deth is so ful my foe  
 That I wolde die it wil not foe,  
 For whan I folowe' it it wil flye,  
 I wold have him it n'il not me;  
 And this is paine withoutin rede,  
 Alway dyinge and be not dede,

That Sisyphus that lyeth in hel  
 Nay may not of more sorowe tel;  
 And who so wiste al, by my trouthe,  
 Al my sorowe, but he hadde routhe  
 And pyte of my sorowes smerte  
 That man yhath a fendely herte,  
 For who so seeth me first on morowe  
 May sayne that he hath met with Sorowe,  
 For I am Sorowe, and Sorowe is I,  
 Alas! and I wyl tel the why,  
 My sorowe is tournid to playnyng,  
 And al my laughtir to weping,  
 My glad thoughtis to hevynesse,  
 In travaile is myn ydlenesse,  
 And eke my rest, my wele is we,  
 My gode is harme, and evirmo  
 In wrathe is tournid my playnyng,  
 And my delite in sorowing,  
 Myn hele is turned into sickenesse,  
 In drede is al my fyckernesse,  
 To derke is turnid al my lyght,  
 My wytte is foly, my day night,  
 My love is hate, my slepe wakyng,  
 My mirth and mehis is fasting,  
 My countinaunce is nicete,  
 And al abawed where so I be,  
 My pece is pleding, and in werre,  
 Alas, howe might I fare in werre!

My boldenesse is turnid to shame,  
 For false Fortune hath played a game  
 At chesse with me, alas the while!  
 The trayteresse false and ful of gyle,  
 That al behoteth and nothing halte,  
 She gothe upright and yet she halte,  
 That baggith foule and lokith fayre,  
 The dispitous and debonaire,  
 That scornith many a cature;  
 An ydole of false purtraiture  
 Is she, for she wol sonè wryen;  
 She is the monstri's hed ywryen,  
 As filthe, ovir ystrowed with floures,  
 Her mostè worship, and her floures,  
 To lyen, for that is her nature,  
 Withoutin faith, lawe, or mesure,  
 She false is, and evir laughing  
 With one eye, and that othir weping,  
 That is brought up she set al downe;  
 I likin her to the scorpiowne,  
 That is a false and flateryng best,  
 For with his hed he makith fest,  
 But al amynd his flatiringe  
 With his taile he wil forely styng,  
 And envenim, and so wil she;  
 She is the envious Charite,  
 That is aye false and semith wele,  
 So turnith she her falsè whele  
 About, for it is nothing stable,  
 Nowe by the fyre nowe at the table;  
 Ful many' one hath she thus yblent;  
 She is playe of enchauntement,  
 That semith one and is not so:  
 The falsè thefe what hath she do  
 Trowest thou? by' our Lorde I wil the say.

With her false draughtis ful divers  
 She stole on me, and toke my fers;  
 And whan I sawe my fers away,  
 Alas! I couth no lengir play,  
 But sayid, Farewel swete! ywis,  
 And farewell al that er there is;  
 Therwith Fortune ysayid Cheke here,  
 And mate in the myd poynt of the checkere  
 With a paund errant. Alas!  
 Ful craftyir to play she was  
 Than Athalus, that made the game  
 First of the chesse, so was his name;  
 But God wolde I had ones or twise  
 Iconde and knowe the jeoperdise  
 That coude the Greke Pythagores,  
 I shulde have plaide the bet at ches,  
 And kept my fers the bet therby;  
 And though wherto? for trewily  
 I holde that wishe not worthe a stre,  
 It had be ner the bet for me,  
 For Fortune can so many' a wyle  
 Ther be but fewe can her begile,  
 And eke she is the lasse to blame,  
 My selfe I wolde have do the same,  
 Before God, had I ben as she,  
 She ought the more excusid be;  
 For this I say yet more therto,  
 Had I be God, and might have do  
 My wyl, whan she my fers ycaught  
 I wolde have drawn the same draught,  
 For al so wise God gyve me reste  
 I dare wel swere she toke the beste,  
 But throughe that draught I have ylorne  
 My blyffe, alas that I was berne!  
 For evirmore I trowe trewly,  
 For al my wil, my luste wholly  
 Is turne, but wote ye what to done?  
 By' our Lorde it is to dyin sone,  
 For nothings I ne leve it nought  
 But lyve and dye right in this thought;  
 There n'ys planet in firmamente,  
 Ne' in ayre ne' in erthe none elemente,  
 That they ne yeve me' a yeste echone  
 Of wepyng whan I am alone,  
 For whan that I advise me wele,  
 And bethinke me everydele  
 How that there lieth in rekinige  
 In my sorowis for nothings,  
 And howe there livith no gladnesse  
 May gladdin me of my distresse,  
 And howe I have losse suffisaunce,  
 And therto I have no plesaunce,  
 Than may I say I have right nought;  
 And whan al this falleth in my thought,  
 Alas! than am I overcome,  
 For that is done this not to come:  
 I have more sorowe than Tantale.

And whan I herde him tel this tale  
 Thus pitously as I you tell,  
 Unnethis myght I lengir dwell,  
 It did myn herte so mochill wo.  
 A, gode Sir! (quod I) say nat so,  
 Have some pite on your nature,

Remembrith you of Socrates,  
For he ne countith not thre strenges  
Of nought that Fortune coude ydo.

No, (quod he) I ne can not so.  
Why, gode Sir, yes parde, (quod I)  
Ne fay not so, for truily  
Though ye had lost the feris twelve,  
And for sorowe murdrid your selve,  
Ye shulde be dampnid in this case,  
By as gode right as Medea was,  
That slough her childrin for Jason,  
And Phyllis for Demophoon,  
That hing her self, so welaway!  
For he had brokin his terme day  
To come to her. Anothir rage  
Had Dido, the Queene of Carthage,  
That slough her self for Aeneas  
Was false, for whiche a sole she was;  
And Echo dyed for Narcissus  
Ne wolde nat love her; and right thus  
Hath many' an othir foly done,  
And for Dalila died Sampson,  
That sloughed him selfe with a pilere;  
But there is no man alive here  
Wolde for ther feris make this wo.

Why so? (quod he) it is not so,  
Thou woteft ful lytil what thou meneft,  
For I have loste more than thou weneft.  
And howe may that ybe? (quod I)  
Gode Sir, tellith me al wholly  
In what wise, howe, why, and wherfore,  
That ye have thus your blisse ylore.

Blithely, (quod he;) come, sit the down;  
I tel the on condicioun  
Thou shalte wholly with all thy wit  
Do thyne entente to herkin it.

Yes, Sir. Than swere thy trouthe therto,  
Gladly to holdin the hereto.

I shal right blithe, so God me save,  
Wholly with all the witte I have  
Here you as wel as er I can.

A Godde's halfe, (quod he) and began.

Sir, (quod he) sithins firste I couthe  
Have any manir witte fro youthe,  
Or kindly understandinge  
To comprehende in any thinge  
What love was in mine owne wit,  
Dredileffe I have evir yet  
Be tributary and yeve rente  
To Love wholly, with gode entente,  
And through plesaunce become his thral  
With gode wil, body, herte, and al;  
Al this I put in his servage  
As to my lorde, and dyd homage;  
And full devoutly I praide hym tho  
He shulde beset myne herte so  
That it plesaunce unto him were  
And worship to my lady dere.

And this was long and many' a yere  
(Er that min hert was set o where)  
That I dyd thus, and ne wist why,  
I trowe it came me kindly;  
Paraunter I was thereto most able  
As a white wal or a table,

For it' is redy to catche and take  
Al that men wollin therin make,  
Whether men will portrey or painte  
Be the werkis nevir so quainte.

And thilke tyme I farid right so,  
I was able to have lernid tho,  
And to have conde as wel or better  
Paraunter eithir arte or lettir,  
But for love came first in my thought  
Therefore I ne forgate it nought;  
I chees love to be my first crafte,  
And therefore it is with me laste;  
For why? I toke it of so yonge age  
That malice ne had my corage,  
Not that time turnid to nothing  
Thorough to mokil knowleging,  
For that tyme Youth my maistresse  
Governid me in ydilnesse,  
For it was in my firste youth,  
And though ful litil gode I couthe,  
For al my werkis were flitting  
That time, and al my thought varying,  
Al thinges were to me yliche gode,  
That knewe I tho, but thus it stode:

It happed that I came on a day  
In to a place there that I sey  
Trewly the fairist companie  
Of ladies that er man with eye  
Had sene togithers in o place;  
Shal I clepe it happe eithir grace  
That brought me there? nought but Fortune,  
That is to lyin ful comune,  
The false traitresse perverse,  
God wolde that I coude clepe her werse,  
For now she worchith me ful wo,  
And I wol tel the sone why so.

Amonges these ladies thus echone,  
The sothe to sayin, I sawe one  
That ne was lyke none of the route,  
For I dare swere, withoutin doute,  
That as the sommer's sonne bright  
Is fairer, clerer, and hath more lyght,  
Than any other planet in heaven,  
The monè or the sterris seven,  
For al the worlde right so had she,  
Surmountin hem al of beaute,  
Of manir, and of comlynesse  
Of stature, and wel set gladnesse,  
Of godelyhede, and so wel besey,  
Shortly, what shal I more ysey?  
By God, and by his holowes twelve,  
It was my swete right al her selve;  
She had so stedfast countenaunce,  
So noble porte and maintenaunce,  
And Love, that wel yherde my bone,  
Yhad espyid me thus sone  
That she fill sonè in my thought;  
As helpe me God so was I cought  
So sodainly, that I ne toke  
No maner counsaile but at her loke  
And at min herte; for why? her eyen  
So gladly I trowe myn herte seyne,  
That purely tho min owne thought  
Said it were but serve her for nought



Than with anothir to be wele;  
 And it was sothe, for every dele  
 I wil anone right tel the why:  
 I sawe her daunce so comily,  
 Carol and sing so swetily,  
 And laugh and play so womanly,  
 And lokin so debonairly,  
 So godely speke and so frendely,  
 That certes I trowe that evirmore  
 N'as fene so blisful a trefore;  
 For ev'ry here on her hed,  
 The sothe to say, it was not red,  
 Ne neithir yelowne ne browne it n'as,  
 Me thought mooste like to golde it was;  
 And whiche eyin my lady had,  
 Debonaire, gode, and glad, and sad,  
 Simple, of gode mokil, not to wide;  
 Therto her loke n'as not aside,  
 Ne ovirthwart, but beset so wele  
 It drew and toke up everydele  
 Al whiche that on her gan beholde;  
 Her eyin semed anone she wolde  
 Have mercy, Folly wendin so,  
 But it was ner the rathir do;  
 It n'as no counterfetid thinge,  
 It was her owne pure lokin,  
 Whiche that the goddesse Dame Nature  
 Had made 'hem opin by mesure  
 And close, for were she ner so glad  
 Her lokin was not solishe sprad  
 Ne wildily though that she plaide,  
 But er me thought her eyin saide  
 By God my wrathe is al forieve;  
 Therwith her lifte so well to live  
 That Dulnesse was of her adrad;  
 She n'as to sobre ne to glad;  
 In alle thingis more mesure  
 Ne had nevir I trowe cature;  
 But many' one with her loke she herte,  
 And that sate her full lyte at herte,  
 For she knewe nothinge of ther thought;  
 But wher she knewe or knewe it nought  
 Algate she ne' rought of 'hem a fre;  
 To get her love no nere n'as he  
 That woned at home than he in Inde;  
 The formist was alway behinde;  
 But gode folke ovir al othir  
 She loved as man may his brothir,  
 Of whiche love she was wondir large  
 In skilful placis that bere charge;  
 But whiche a vilage had she therto!  
 Alas! my herte is wondir wo  
 That I ne can diserivin it,  
 Me lackith bothe Englishe and wit  
 For to undo it at the ful,  
 And eke my spiriten ben so dull  
 So gret a thinge for to devise;  
 I have no wyt that can suffyse  
 To comprehendin her beaute;  
 But thus moche I dare faine, that she  
 Was white, rody, freshe, lifely hewed,  
 And every day her beaute newed;  
 And nyghe her face was aldirbeste,  
 For certis Nature had sache lyste

To make that faire, that trewly she  
 Was her chefe patron of beaute,  
 And chefe ensample' of al her werke  
 And monstre, for be' it ner so derke  
 Me thinketh I se her evirmo;  
 And yet moreovir, though al tho  
 That ever lived were now a lyve  
 Ne wolde thei have sounde to diserive  
 In al her face a wickid signe,  
 For it was sad, simple, and benigne.  
 And soche a godely swete speche  
 Yhad that swete, my lyv'is leche  
 So frendely, and so well ygrounded,  
 Upon reson so wel ifounded,  
 And so trectable to al gode,  
 That I dare swere wel by the rode  
 Of eloquence was nevir fonde  
 So swete a fowning and faconde,  
 Ne trewir tonged, ne scornid lasse,  
 Ne bet coude hele, that by the masse  
 I durste swere, though the Pope it songe,  
 That ther was ner yet through her tonge  
 Man ne woman gretly harmid,  
 As for her was al harme ybid,  
 Ne lasse flatirng in her worde,  
 That purely her simple recorde  
 Was founde as trowe as any bonde  
 Or trouthe of any man's honde.

Ne chide she coude nevir a dele,  
 That knowith al the worlde ful wele.  
 But soche a fairenesse of a necke  
 Yhad that swete, that bone nor brecke  
 N'as there none sein that misselatte,  
 It was white, smothe, streight, and pure flatte;  
 Withoutin hole or canel bone,  
 And by seming she ne had none.

Her throte, as I have nowe memoire,  
 Semed as a rounde tour of yvoire,  
 Of gode gretnesse, and not to grete;  
 And Faire White ywas she hete,  
 That was my ladies name right,  
 And she was therto faire and bright;  
 She ne had not her name wronge:  
 Right faire sholdirs and body longe  
 She had, and armis evir lith,  
 Fattishe, fleshy, nat grete ther with;  
 Right white handis, and nailis rede;  
 Rounde brestis; and of a gode brede  
 Her hippis were; a streight flatte backe;  
 I knewe on her none othir lacke,  
 That al her limmis n'ere pure sewing,  
 In as ferre as I had knowing:  
 Therto she coude so wel yplaye  
 What that her lyst, that I dare saye  
 That she was lyke to torché bright,  
 That every man may take of light  
 Ynough, and it hath ner the lesse  
 Of manir and of comlynesse.

Right so farid my lady dere,  
 For every wight of her maners  
 Moght cathe ynough if that he wolde,  
 Yf he had eyen her to beholde,  
 For I dare swere wel if that she  
 Had amonge tenne thousande ybe

She woldin have be at the beste  
 A chese myroure of al the feste,  
 Though they had stondin in a rowe  
 To mennis eyen that coude have knowe;  
 For where so men had plaide or waked  
 Me thought the felowshippe as naked  
 Withoutin her that I sawe ones  
 As a corowne withoutin stoncs;  
 Trewily she was to min eye  
 The solein phoenix of Arabye,  
 For there livith nevir but one,  
 Ne fuche as she ne knowe I none;  
 To speke of godenesse, trewily she  
 Had as mochil debonaire  
 As er had Hester in the Bible,  
 And more, if more were possible;  
 And, sothe to sayin, therewithal  
 She hadde a witte so general,  
 So whole enclinid to al gode,  
 That al her witte was sette by the rode  
 Without malyce, upon gladnesse;  
 And therto I sawe ner yet a lesse  
 Harmful than she was in doing;  
 I say not that she n' hadde knowyng  
 What harme ywas, or ellis she  
 Had coude no gode, so thinkith me;  
 And trewily for to speke of trouthe,  
 But she had had it had be routhe,  
 Therof she had so moche her dele,  
 And I dare saine and swere it wele,  
 That Trouthe him selfe over al and al  
 Had chose his manor principal  
 In her, that was his resting place;  
 Therto she had the moste grace  
 To have stedfaste perseveraunce,  
 And esy' attempre govirnaunce,  
 That evir I knewe or wiste yet,  
 So pure sufferaunt was her wit;  
 And reson gladly she understode,  
 It folowid wel she coude gode;  
 She usid gladly to do wele;  
 These were her manirs every dele.

Therwith she lovid so wel right  
 She wronge do wouldin to no wight;  
 No wight ne might do her no shame,  
 She lovid so wel her owne name.

Her lust to holde no wight in honde,  
 Ne be thou sikir she wolde not fonde  
 To holdin no wight in balaunce  
 By halfe worde ne by countinaunce,  
 But if men wolde upon her lye,  
 Ne sende men into Walakye,  
 To Pruise and to Tartarie,  
 To Alisaundrie ne Turkye,  
 And bidde him fast anon that he  
 Go hodelesse into the drie se,  
 And come home by the Carrenare;

And, Sir, be ye now full ryght ware  
 That I may of you here men saine  
 Wurshippe or that ye come againe.

She ne used no soche knackis smale:  
 But therfore that I tel my tale,  
 Right on this fame, as I have saide,  
 Was wholly al my love ylaide,

For certis she was that swete wife,  
 My suffisaunce, my luste, my life,  
 Min hope, min hele, and al my blesse,  
 My worlde's wellfare and my goddesse,  
 And I wholly' hers, and every dele.

By' our Lorde! (quod I) I trowe you wele,  
 Hardly your love was wel beset,  
 I n'ot howe it might have do bet.

Bettir! ne not so wel (quod he.)

I trowe it, Sir, (quod I) parde.

Nay leve it wel. Sir, so do I;

I leve you wel that trewily

You thought that she ywas the best,

And to beholde the alderfairest,

Who so had loket her with your eyen.

With myn! nay, al whiche that her seyen

Sayid and swpre that it was so,

And though they ne had I wolde tho

Have lovid best my lady fre

Though I had had al the beaute

That er had Alcibiades,

And al the strength of Hercules,

And thereto had the worthinesse

Of Alisaundre', and al the' richesse

That evir was in Babyloine,

In Carthage or in Macedoine,

Or in Rome or in Nineve, ...

And therto al so hardy be

As was Hector, so have I joye,

That Achilles yslough at Troye,

And therefore was he slayne also

In a temple, for bothe two

Were slaine, he' and Antilegius,

And so saithe Darius Fregius,

For the love of Polyxena,

Or ben as wise as Minerva,

I wolde evir withoutin drede

Have lovid her, for I must nede.

Nede! nay, trewily I gabbè nowe;

Nought nede, and I wol tellin howe,

For of golde wil min herte it wolde,

And eke to love her I was holde,

As for the fairist and the beste;

She was as gode, so have I reste,

As was Penelope of Grece,

Or as the noble wife Lucrece,

That was the beste, he tellith thus

The Roman Titus Livius,

She was as gode, and nothing like,

Though ther stories be autentike,

Algate she was as trewe as she.

But wherfore that I tellin the,

Whan that I first my lady sey

I was right yonge, the sothe to sey,

And fulgrete nede I had to lerne,

Whan that myn hertè woldin yerne;

To love it was a gret emprise,

But as my wite wolde beste suffise;

Aftir my yonge and childely wit

Withoutin drede I beset it

To lovin her in my beste wife,

To do' her wurship and the servise,

Whiche that I coude tho, by my trouthe,

Withoutin faining eithir slouth,

# THE DREME OF CHAUCER.

For wondir faine I wolde her se;  
 So mokill it amendid me,  
 That whan I sawe her a morowe  
 I was warished of al my sorowe  
 Of al day astir tel' it were eve;  
 Me thoughtin nothings might me greve  
 Were my sorowes never so smerte,  
 And yet she fyt so in min herte  
 That by my trouthe I n'oldè nought  
 For al this worlde out of my thought  
 Yleve my lady; no trewly.  
 Now by my trouthe, Sir, (quod I)  
 Me thinkith you have soche a chaunce  
 As shrifte without in repentaunce.  
 Repentaunce, nay, nay; fye! (quod he)  
 Shuldin I nowe repentin me  
 To love? nay, certes, than were I wel  
 Worfe than ywas Achitophel  
 Or Antenor, so have I joye,  
 The traitour that betrayid Troye,  
 Or than the false Ganelion,  
 He that purchasid the traifon  
 Of Roulande and of Oliver:  
 Nay, while that I am alive here  
 I n'yl foriet her nevirmo.  
 Nowe, gode Sir, quod I to him tho,  
 Ye have wel tolde me here before,  
 It is no nede to reherse it more,  
 Howe that ye sawe her first, and where,  
 But wolde ye tel me the manere  
 To her whiche was your firste speche,  
 Therof I woldè you besече,  
 And howe that she knewe first your thought,  
 Whethir ye lovid her or nought,  
 And telleth me eke what ye have lore;  
 I herde you tellin here before,  
 Ye saide thou n'otist what thou menest,  
 For I have losse more than thou weneest?  
 And what losse is that? (quod I tho;)  
 N'il she not love you? is it so?  
 Or havin ye ought done amis,  
 That she hath left you? is it this?  
 For Godd's love telleth me al.  
 Before God (quod she) and I shal.  
 I say right as I have ysaide,  
 On her was al my love ylaide,  
 And yet she n'iste it ner a dele  
 Not longè tyme, levith it wele,  
 For be right fykir I durst nought  
 For al this worlde tel her my thought,  
 Ne' I wolde have wrathid her trewly;  
 For wost thou why? she was lady  
 Of the body that had the herte,  
 And whofo' hath that may not asterte,  
 But for to kepe me fro' ydlenesse  
 Trewly I dyd my businesse  
 To make songis as I best coude,  
 And oftin time I songe 'hem loude,  
 And made songis this a grete dele,  
 Although I coud nat make so wele  
 Songis, ne knewe the arte so al,  
 As coude Lamek's sone Tubal,  
 That founde out firste the arte of songe,  
 For as his brothir's hamirs reinge

Upon his anvelt up and downe  
 Therof he toke the firste sowne.  
 But Grekes faine of Pythagoras  
 That he the first findir ywas  
 Of the' arte, Aurora tellith so;  
 But therof no force of 'hem two;  
 Algatis songis thus I made  
 Of my felyng, min herte to glade,  
 And lo! this was the althir first,  
 I n'ot whethir it were the worst:  
 Lorde! it makith min hertè light  
 Whan that I thinkè on that swete wight  
 That is so semely on to se,  
 And wishe to God it might so be  
 That she wolde holde me for her knight,  
 My lady, that' is so faire and bright.  
 Nowe have I tolde the, soth to say,  
 My firste songe. Upon a day  
 I bethought me what mochil wo  
 And sorowe that I suffrid tho  
 For her, and yet she wiste it nought;  
 Ne tel her durst I not my thought:  
 Alas! thought I, I can no rede,  
 And but I tel her, I am but dede,  
 And if I tel her, to say sothe  
 I am adradde she wol be wrothe:  
 Alas! what shal I than ydo?  
 In this debate I was so wo  
 Me thought myne hertè braft atwaine,  
 So at the last, sothe for to saine,  
 I bethought me that Dame Nature  
 Ne formid never in creture  
 So mochil beauty trewily  
 And bountie withoutin mercy.  
 In hope of that my tale I tolde  
 With sorowe, as that I ner sholde  
 For nedis, and maugre myne hed  
 I must have tolde her or be ded.  
 I n'ot wel howe that I began,  
 Ful yvil reherse it I can,  
 And eke, as helpe me God withal,  
 I trowe it was in the dismal,  
 That was the ten woundes of Egypte.  
 For many a worde I ovirskipte  
 In telling my tale, for pure fere  
 Lest that my wordis mysselet were;  
 With sorowful hert and woundes dede,  
 Softely, and quaking for pure drede  
 And shame, and stinting in my tale  
 For ferde, and min hewe allè paie;  
 Ful ofte I wexte bothe pale and red,  
 Bowing to her I hinge the hed;  
 I durst not onis loke her on,  
 For wit, manir, and al, was gone;  
 I saide, Mercy, swete! and no more:  
 It n'as no game; it fate me fore.  
 So at the laste, the sothe to saine,  
 Whan that myne herte was come againe,  
 To tellin shortly al my speche,  
 With whole herte I gan her besече  
 That she wolde be my lady swete,  
 And swore and hertely gan her hete  
 Ewir to be stedfaste and trewe,  
 And love her alway freshly newe,



And nevir othir lady have,  
And al her worship for to save  
As I beste coude, I swere her this,  
For yours is al that er ther is,  
For evirmore, myne herte swete!  
And ner to false you but I mete  
I n'yl, as wise God helpe me so.

And whan I had my tale ydo  
God wote she' acomptid not a stre  
Of al my tale, so thoughtin me:  
To tel shortly, right as it is,  
Trewly her answere it was this;  
I can not now wel contrefete  
Her wordis, but this was the grete  
Of her answere: she sayid Nay  
All utterly. Alas that day  
The sorowe' I suffrid and the wo!  
That trewly Cassandra, that so  
Bewaylid the distruction  
Of Troye and of Ilion  
Had ner soche sorowe as I tho;  
I durstin no more say therto  
For pure fere, but ystale away,  
And thus I lyved ful many a day  
That trewily I had no nede  
Ferthir than at my bedd'is hede  
Nevir a day to sechin sorowe,  
I founde it redy every morowe;  
For why? I loved her in no gere.

So it befell an othir yere  
I thought onis I wouldin fonde  
To doe her knowe and undirstonde  
My wo; and she well undirstode  
That I ne wilnid thyng but gode  
And worship, and to kepe her name  
Ovir all thynges, and drede her shame,  
And was so busie her to serve,  
And pitie were I shouldin sterve,  
Sithe that I wilned none harme iwis.

So when my ladie knewe all this,  
My ladie yave me all whollie  
The noble yest of her mercie,  
Savyng her worship by al waies;  
Dredeclesse I mene none othir waies,  
And therewith she yave me a ryng,  
I trowe it was the firste thyng:  
But if myne herte was iwaxe  
Glad that it is no nede to axe.

As helpe me God I was as blive  
Yraisd as fro deth to live,  
Of all happis the aldirbest,  
The gladdist and the moeste at rest  
For truilie that swete wight,  
When I had wrong and she the right,  
She wouldin alwaie so godelie  
Foryeve me so debonairlie;  
In alle my youth, in alle chaunce,  
She toke me in her govirnaunce;  
Therewith she was alwaie so true,  
Our joye was evir iliche newe;  
Our hertis werne so even a paire,  
That nevir n'as that one contraire  
Unto that othir for no wo,  
For sothe iliche thei suffrid tho.

O blisse, and eke o sorowe bothe!  
Iliche thei were bothe glad and wrothe.  
All was us one withoutin were;  
And thus we lived full many' a yere  
So well I can not tellen how.

Sir, (quod I) and where is she now?  
N w! quod he, and ystinte anone,  
Therewith he woxe as dedde as stone,  
And saied, Alas that I was bore!  
That was the losse that here before  
I tolde the that I had ylorne.

Bethinke the how I saied before  
Thou woste ful lityl what thou menest,  
For I have losse more then thou weneest.

God wot, alas! right that was she.  
Alas, Sir! how? what maie that be?  
She is dedde! Naie! Yes, by my trouthe.

Is that your losse? by God it' is routhie.  
And with that word right anone  
Thei gan to strake forthe; all was done  
For that tyme the hart huntynge.

With that me thoughtin that this kyng  
Began homewardis for to ride  
Unto a place was there beside,  
Whiche that was from us but a lite,  
A long castill with wallis white,  
By Sainet John, on a riche hill,  
As me mette; but thus it befill:

Right thus me mette, as I you tell,  
That in the castell there was a bell,  
As it had smittin houris twelve,  
And therewith I awoke my selve,  
And found me lying in my bedde,  
And the boke whiche that I had redde  
Of Aleyone and Ceix the kyng,  
And of the goddis of Slepynge,  
I found it in myne hond ful evin;  
Thought I this is so queint a swevin  
That I would by processe of tyme  
Fonde to put this swevin in rime  
As I can best, and that anon:  
This was my swevin, now it' is doen.

*This seems an envoy to the Duke of Lancaster after his  
loss of Blanch.*

My master, &c. When of Christ our kyng  
Was askid, What is trothe or sothfastnesse,  
He not a worde answerde to that askynge,  
As who saith, no manne is all true I gesse;  
And therefore though I hight for to expresse  
The sorowe' and wo that is in mariage  
I darf not writen of it no wickidnesse,  
Lest I my self fall eft in soche dotage.

I svol not saie how that it is the chaine  
Of Sathanas on whiche he knawith ever,  
But I dare saie were he out of his paine  
As by his will he would be boundin never;  
But thilke dotid folc that eft hath lever  
Ichainid be than out of prisone crepe,  
God let hym nevir fro his woe discever,  
Ne no man hym bewailin though he wepe.

## THE DREME OF CHAUCER.

But yet lesse thou do worse takith a wife;  
*Bet is to wedde than brennin in worse wife;*  
But thou shalt have sorowe on thy fleshe thy life,  
And ben thy wiv'is thralle, as faine these wife;  
And if that holy writte maie not suffise,  
Experience shall the teche, so maie happe:  
Take the waie levir to be taken in Frise  
Then est to fall of weddyng in the trappe.

This lityl writte, proverbis or figure,  
I send you, takith kepe of it I rede;  
*Unwise is he that can no wele endure;*  
*If thou be skir put the not in drede.*  
The Wife of Bathe I praie you that ye rede  
Of this matter whiche that we have on honde;  
God grauntin you your life frely to lede  
In fredome, for foule is it to be bonde.

## THE ASSEMBLE OF FOULES.

*All Fowles are gathered before Nature on St. Valentine's Day to chuse their mates. A formal eagle being beloved of three terrels requireth a year's respite to make her choice, upon this triall, Qui bien aime tard oublie, he that loveth well is slow to forget.*

**T**HE life so short, the craft so long to lerne,  
The assaye so hard, so sharp the conquering,  
The dredefull joy, alwaie that flit so yerne,  
All this mene I by Love, that my felyng  
Astonieth with his wondirfull werkyng  
So fore iwis, that when I on him thinke  
Naught wete I well whether I flete or sink.

For all be that I knowe not Love in dede,  
Ne wot how that he quitith folke ther hire,  
Yet happith me full ofte in bokis rede  
Of his miraculis and his cruill ire,  
There rede I well he woul be lorde and sire :  
I dare not saie his strokis be so fore,  
But God save soche a lorde! I can no more.

Of usage, what for lust and what for lore,  
On bokis rede I off, as I you tolde,  
But wherfore that I speke all this, naught yore  
Agon it happid me for to beholde  
Upon a boke i writte with lettirs old,  
And thereupon a certain thing to lerne,  
The longè daie full fast I radde and yerne;

For out of the old feldis, as men saieth,  
Comith all this newe corne fro yere to yere,  
And out of oldè bokis, in gode saieth,  
Comith all this newe science that men lere :  
But now to purpose : as of this mattere  
To redin forthe, it gan me so delite  
That all the daie me thought it but a lite.

This boke of which I makin mencion  
Entitlid was dight thus, as I shall tell,  
Tullius of the Drame of Scipion ;  
Chapiters seven it had of heven and hell.  
And yerth, and soulis that therein do dwell,  
Of whiche, as shortly as I can it trecte,  
Of this sentence I woul you saine the grete.

First tellith it when Scipion was come  
In Affrike how he metith Massinisse,  
That hym for joie in armis hath inome ;  
Then tellith he her speche and all the blisse  
That was betwixt 'hem till the daie gan misse,  
And how his auncester Affrikan so dere  
Gan in his slepe that night till hym appere :

Then tellith it that from a starrie place  
How Affrikan hath hym Carthage yshewed,  
And warnid hym beforne of all his grace,  
And saied hym, What man, lerid eithir leude,  
That lovith common profite well itheude,  
He should into a blisfull place ywende,  
There as joye is that last withoutin ende :

Then askid he if folke that here ben dede  
Have life and dwellyng in an othir place ?  
And Affrikan saied Ye, withoutin drede,  
And how our present worly liv'is space  
N'is but a manir deth, what waie we trace,  
And rightfull folke shull gon aftir thei die  
To heven, and shewid hym the Galaxie :

Then shewed he him the little yerth that here is  
To regarde of the hev'n's quantite,  
And after shewid he hym the nine speris,  
And aftir that the melodie herd he  
That comith of thylke speris thryis thre,  
That welles of musike ben and melodie  
In this worlde here and cause of harmonie :

Then saied he him, Sens that yerth was so lite,  
And full of tourment and of hardè grace,  
That he ne shuld hym in this worlde delite ;  
Then told he him in certain yeris space  
That every sterre should come into his place  
There it was first, and all should out of mind  
That in this world is doen of all mankynd :



Then praied hym Scipion to tell hym all  
The waie to come into that hevin blisse;  
And he saied, First knowe thyself immortall,  
And loke aie busely that thou werche and wisse  
To common profite, and thou shalt not misse  
To come swiftly unto that place dere  
That full of blisse is and of soules clere.

And brekirs of the lawe, the sothe to saine,  
And likerous folke astir that thei ben dede,  
Shull whirle about the worlde alwaie in pain  
Till many a worlde be passid, out of drede,  
And then foryeve all ther wickid dede;  
Then shullin thei come to that blisfull place,  
To whiche to comin God sendin the grace.

The daie gan failin; and the darkè night,  
That revith bestis from their businesse,  
Berafte me my boke for lacke of light,  
And to my bedde I gan me for to dresse,  
Fulfilled of thought and busie hevinesse,  
For bothe I had thyng whiche that I ne wolde,  
And eke I ne had that thyng that I wolde.

But, finally, my spirite at the laste,  
For werie of my labour all that daie,  
Toke rest, that madin me to slepin faste,  
And in my slepe I met as that I laie  
How Affrikan, right in the self araie  
That Scipion hym sawe before that tide,  
Was come, and stode right at my bedd's side.

The werie huntir slepyng in his bedde  
The wodde ayen his minde goith anone,  
The judge ydremith how his plees be spedde,  
The cartir dremith how his cartis gone,  
The rich of gold, the knight fight with his sone,  
The sicke ymette he drinkith of the tonne,  
The lovir mette he hath his ladie wonne.

Can I not saine if that the cause ywere  
For I had radde of Affrican beforne  
That madin me to mete that he stode there,  
But thus saied he; Thou hast the so wel borne  
In lokyng of myne olde boke all to torne,  
Of which Macrobie ne raught not a lite,  
That somedele of thy labour would I quite.

Thou Citherea, blisfull ladie swete!  
That with thy fire brond dauntist when the lest,  
That madist me this swevin for to mete,  
Be thou my helpe in this, for thou maist best,  
As wisely as I seigh the north northwest  
When I began my swevin for to write,  
So yeve me might to rime it and endite.

This foresaid Affrikan me hent anone,  
And forthe with hym unto a gate ybrought  
Right of a parke ywallid with grene stone,  
And o'er the gate with lettirs large ywrought  
There werin versis writtin, as me thought,  
On eithir halfe, of full grete difference,  
On which I shall you saie the plain sentence.

Through me men gon into that blisful place  
Of hertis hele and dedly woundis cure,  
Through me men gone into the well of grace,  
There grene and lustie Maie shall er endure;  
This is the waie to all gode avinture:

Be glad, thou reader, and thy sorowe of cast,  
All open am I; passe in, and spede the fast.

Through me men gon, then spake that othir side,  
Unto the mortall strokis of the spere,  
Of whiche Disdain and Daungir is the gide,  
There nevir tre shall fruct ne levis here;  
This streme you ledith to the sorowfull were  
There as the fishe in prison is all drie;  
Th' eschewyng is onely the remedie.

These versis of gold and asure writte were,  
Of whiche I gan astonied to beholde,  
For with that one encrefid all my fere,  
And with that othir gan my herte to bolde;  
That one me het, that othir did me colde:  
No wit had I for errour for to chese  
To entre' or fle, or me to save or lese.

Right as betwixin adamantis two  
Of evin weight a pece of yron set  
Ne hath no might to movin to ne fro,  
For what that one maie hale that othir let;  
So fared I, that I n'ist where me was bet  
To entre' or leve, til Affrican my gide  
Me hent, and shove in at the gatis wide,

And saied, It standith writtin in thy face  
Thyne errorr, though thou tell it not to me,  
But dred the not to come into this place,  
For this writyng is nothyng mente by the,  
Ne by none but he Lov'is servaunt be,  
For thou of love hast lost thy tast I gesse,  
As sicke man hath of swete and bittirnesse.

But nathèles, although that thou be dull,  
That which thou canst not doe yet maiest thou se,  
For many a man that maie not stande a pull  
Yet liketh it hym at wrestlyng for to be,  
And demith whethir he doe bet or he;  
And if thou haddist connyng for t' endite  
I shall the shewin mattir of to write.

With that my hand in his he toke anon,  
Of whiche I comfort caught, and went in fast;  
But Lorde! so I was glad and well begon!  
For ovir all where I myne eyin cast  
Were treis clad with leves that aie shal last,  
Eche in his kinde, with colour freshe and grene  
As emeraude, that joie it was to sene.

The bildir oke, and eke the hardie ashe,  
The pillir elme, the coffir unto caraine,  
The boxe pipetre, the holme to whippis lashe,  
The sailing firre, the cypres deth to plaine,  
The shotir ewe, the aspe for shaftis plaine,  
The olive of pece, and eke the dronkin vine,  
The victor palme, the laurir to divine.

A gardein sawe I full of blosomed bowis  
Upon a rivir in a grenè mede  
There as swetenesse evirmore inough is,  
With flouris white and blewe, yelow and rede,  
And colde and clere wellestremis nothyng dede,  
That swommin full of smalt fishis light,  
With finnis rede and scalis silvir bright.

On every bough the birdis herd I syng  
With voice of angell in their harmonie,  
That busied hem ther birdis forthe to bryng,  
The little pretie conies to ther plaie gan hie,  
And furthir all about I gan espie  
The dredfull roe, the buck, the hart, and hind,  
Squirils, and bestis small of gentle kind.

Of instruments of stringis in ascorde  
 Herd I so plaie a ravishyng swetnesse  
 That God, that makir is of all and lorde,  
 Ne herd nevir a bettir, as I gesse,  
 Therewith a winde, unneth it might be lesse,  
 Made in the levis grene a noisè soft  
 Accordant to the Foulis song on lost.

The aire of the place so attempre was  
 That ner was ther grevaunce of hot ne cold,  
 There was eke every wholsome spice and gras,  
 Ne no man maie there waxin like ne old;  
 Yet was there more joie a thousande fold  
 Then I can tell, or evir could or might;  
 There is evir clere daie and nevir night.

Undir a tre beside a well I soye  
 Cupide our lorde his arrowes forge and file,  
 And at his fete his bowe all redie laye,  
 And well his doughtir temprid all the while  
 The heddis in the well, and with her wile  
 She couchid 'hem astir as thei should serve,  
 Some for to flea, and some to wound and carve.

Tho was I ware of Plesance anon right,  
 And of Arrai, Luste, Beaute', and Curtisie,  
 And of the craft that can yhave the might  
 To doen by force a wight to doen folie,  
 Disfigurid was she, I will not lie,  
 And by himself, undir an oak I gesse,  
 Sawe I delite, that stode with Gentilnesse:

Then sawe I Beautie with a nice atire,  
 And Youth, all full of game and jolite,  
 Fole Hardinesse, Flattirie, and Desire,  
 Messagerie, and Mede, and othir thre,  
 Ther namis shall not here be tolde for me,  
 And upon pillars grete of jaspir long  
 I sawe a temple' of brasse ifoundid strong:

And about the temple dauncid alwaie  
 Women inow, of which some there ywere  
 Faire of 'hemself, and some of 'hem were gaie;  
 In kirtils all disheveled went thei there,  
 That was ther office er fro yere to yere;  
 And on the temple sawe I white and faire  
 Of dovis sitting many' a thousande paire.

Before the temple dore full sobirlye  
 Dame Pece yfat, a curtaine in her honde;  
 And her besidis wondir discretlye  
 Dame Pacience yfityng there I fonde,  
 With face pale, upon an hille of fonde,  
 And althir nexte, within and eke without,  
 Behest and Arte, and of ther folke a rout.

Within the temple' of sighis hote as fire  
 I herd a swough that gan about to ren,  
 Whiche sighis were engendrid with desire  
 That madin every herte for to bren  
 Of newè flambe; and well espied I then  
 That all the cause of sorowes that thei drie  
 Come of the bittir goddis Jelousie.

The god Priapus sawe I as I went  
 Within the temple' in soveraine place yfonde  
 In soche arraie as when the assie hym shent  
 With crie by night, and with sceptre in honde;  
 Full busilie men ban assaie and fonde  
 Upon his hedde to set of fondrie hewe  
 Garlandis full of freshe flouris newe:

And in a privie corner in disport  
 Found I Venus and her portir Richeffe,  
 That was full noble' and hautin of her port;  
 Darke was that place, but astirwarde lightnesse  
 I sawe a lite, unnethes it might be lesse,  
 And on a bed of golde she laie to reste  
 Till that the hote sonne began to weste.

Her gildid heris with a goldin threde  
 Iboundin were, untressid as she laie,  
 And nakid from the brest unto the hede  
 Men might her se, and, sothly for to saie,  
 The remenaunt covired well to my paie  
 Right with a lityl kerchese of Valence;  
 There n'as no thickir clothe of no defence.

The place gave a thousande favours fote,  
 And Bacchus, god of Wine, fate her beside,  
 And Ceres next, that doeth of hunger bote,  
 And, as I saied, amiddis laie Cypride,  
 To whom on kneis the yong folkis cride  
 To be ther helpe: but thus I let her lie,  
 And fardir in the temple' I gan espie,

That in dispite of Diana the chaste  
 Full many a bowe ibroke hing on the wall  
 Of maidins, soche as gone ther tymis waste  
 In her service, and paintid ovir all -  
 Of many' a storie', of whiche I touchin shall  
 A fewe, as of Calisto' and Atalante'  
 And many' a maide of which the name I want.

Semeramis, Candace', and Hercules,  
 Biblis, Dido, Thisbe, and Pyramus,  
 Tristram, Ifoude, Paris, and Achilles,  
 Helaine, Cleopatra, and Troilus,  
 Scylla, and eke the mother of Romulus;  
 All these were paintid on that othir side,  
 And all ther love, and in what plite thei dide.

When I was comen ayen into the place  
 That I of spake, that was fote and grene,  
 Forthe walked I tho my selvin to solace,  
 Tho was I ware where there yfate a quene,  
 That as of light the sommir sonnè shene  
 Passith the sterre, right so ovir mesure  
 She fairir was then any other cature.

And in a launde, upon a hill of floures,  
 Was set this quene, this noble goddesse Nature;  
 Of braunchis were her hallis and her boures  
 Iwrought after her croft and her mesure;  
 Neither n'as Foule that cometh of engendrure  
 That there ne were yprest in her presence,  
 To take her dome and yeve her audience;

For this was on Sainct Valentin's daie,  
 When every Foule comith to chese her make  
 Of every kinde that men ythinkin maie,  
 And that so huge a noisè gan thei to make  
 The yerth, the se, and tre, and every lake,  
 So full was, that unnethis there was space  
 For me to stande, so full was all the place.

And right as Alaine in The Plaint of Kinde  
 Devisech Nature of soche araie and face,  
 In soche araie men mightin her there finde.  
 This noble empreffe, full of allè grace,  
 Bad every Foule takin her owne place  
 As thei were wont alwaie fro yere to yere  
 On Sainct Valentines daie to standin there:

That is to saie, the Foulis of ravine  
Were highist set, and then the Foulis smale,  
That etin as them Nature would encline,  
As worme or thing, of which I tell no tale,  
And watirfoule fate lowist in the dale,  
And Foules that liveth by fede sat on the grene,  
And that so fele that wondir was to sene.

There mightin : roiall egle finde,  
That with his persith the son,  
And othir eglis of a lowir kinde,  
Of whiche that clerkis well devisin con;  
There was the tirant with his fethirs don  
And grene, I mene the goshaue, that doth pine  
To birdes for his outrageous ravine;

The gentle faucon, that with his fete distreineth  
The kyng's hand, the hardie sperhauke eke,  
The qual is foe, the merlion, that peineth  
Hymself full oft, the lark for to seke,  
There was the dove, with her eyin so meke,  
The jelous swan, ayenst his deth that singeth,  
The oule eke, that of deth the bode ybringeth;

The crane, the geant, with his tromp's sonne,  
The thief the chough, and eke the chattering pie,  
The scornynge jaie, the ele's foe the heroune,  
The false lapwing, alle full of trechirie,  
The starling, that the counsaile can bewrie,  
The tame ruddocke, and the cowarde kite,  
The cocke, that horiloge is of thropes lite;

The sparrow, Venus son, the nightingale,  
That clepith forthe the freshe levis newe,  
The swalowe, murder of the beis smale,  
That maken honie of flouris freshe of hewe,  
The weddid turtell with his herte true,  
The pecko with his angell fethirs bright,  
The fesaunt, scornir of the cocke by night;

The waker gose, the cuckowe, er unkinde,  
The popingeie, full of delicacie,  
The drake, destroyir of his ownè kinde,  
The storke, the wrekir of advouterie,  
The hote cormeraunt, full of glotonie,  
The ravin wife, the crowe, with voice of care,  
The throstill olde, and frostie feldesare.

What should I saie? of Foules of every kind  
That in this world have fethirs and stature  
Men mightin in that place assemblid finde  
Before that noble goddess of nature,  
And eche of them ydid his busie cure  
Benignellie to chese or for to take  
By her accorde his formell or his make.

But to the point. Nature held on her bond  
A formell egle, of shape the gentillest  
That evir she among her workis fonde,  
The moste benigne and eke the godeliest;  
In her was every vertue at his rest  
So farforthe, that Nature her self had blisse  
To loke on her, and oft her becke to kisse.

Nature, the vicare of the almightie Lorde,  
That hote and colde, hevie, light, moiste, and drie,  
Hath knit by evin nombir of accorde,  
In esie voice began to speke and saie,  
Foulis, take hede of my sentence I praie,  
And for your ese, in fordring of your nede,  
As fast as I maie speke I will me spede.

Ye know well how on S. Valentine's daie,  
By my statute and through my govirnaunce,  
Ye chese your makes, and astir sie awaie  
With hem as I doe pricke you with plesaunce,  
But nathelless, as by rightfull ordinaunce,  
Maie I not let, for all this worlde to win,  
But he that moste worthiest is shall begin.

The tercell egle, as ye knowe full wele,  
The Foulle roiall, above you' all in degre,  
The wise and worthie, secret, true as stele,  
The whiche I have formid, as ye maie se,  
In every parte as it best likith me,  
It nedith not his shape you to devise,  
He shall first chese and spekin in his gise.

And after hym by ordir shall ye chese  
Aftir your kinde, everiche as you likith,  
And as your hap is shall ye win or lese,  
But which of you that love most entrikith  
God sende hym her that forest for hym sikith;  
And therwithall the tercell gan she call,  
And saied, My sonne, the choise is to the fall.

But nathelless in this condicion  
Muste be the choise of everiche that is here,  
That she agre to his eleccion,  
Who so he be, that should yben her fere;  
This is our usage aye fro yere to yere,  
And who so maie at this time have his grace  
In blisfull tyme he came into this place.

With hed enclined and with full humble chere  
This roiall tercell spake, and taried nought,  
Unto my soveraine ladie, and not my fere,  
I chose and chese with will, and hert, and thought,  
The formell on your hand so well iwrought,  
Whose I am all, and evir will her serve,  
Doe what her luste to doe me live or sterve;

Besechyng her of mercie and of grace,  
As she that is my ladie soverain,  
Or let me die here present in this place,  
For certis long maie I not live in pain,  
For in my herte is corvin every vain,  
Havyng regarde onily to my trouthe:  
My dere herte! havith on my wo some routhe.

And if that I be founde to her untrue,  
Disobeisaut, or wilfull negligent,  
Avauntour, or in procèss love anewe,  
I praie to you this be my judgement,  
That with these Foulis I be all to rent.  
That ilke daie that she me evir finde  
To her untrue or in my gilte unkinde.

And sith none lovith her so well as I,  
Although she nevir of love me behet,  
Then ought she to be mine through her mercie,  
For othir bonde can I none on her knet,  
For for wele nor wo nevir shall I let  
To servin her, how far so that she wende:  
Saie what you list, my tale is at an ende.

Full right as the softe and freshe redde rose newe  
Against the sommir sunne ycoloured is,  
Right so for shame all waxin gan the hewe  
Of this formell when that she herd all this;  
Neithir she answerde well ne saied amis,  
So fore abashed was she, till that Nature  
Saied, Doughtir, drede you not, I you assure,



And othir tercell egle spake anon  
Of lowir kind, and saied that should not be ;  
I love her bet then ye doe by Sainct John,  
Or at the lest I love as well as ye,  
And lengir have served her in my degre,  
And if she should have loved for long lovyng  
To me alone had be the guerdonyng.

I dare eke saie, if she me findin false,  
Unkinde, jangler, rebell, in any wise,  
Or jelous, doe me hangin by the halfe ;  
And but I berin me in her servise  
As well aye as my wit can me suffice  
Fro poinct to poinct, her honour for to save,  
Take she my life and all the gode I have.

The thirde tercell egle answerid tho,  
Now, Sirs, ye se the lityl lesir here,  
For every Foule crieth out to be ago  
Forth with his make or with his lady dere,  
And eke Nature her self ne will not here,  
For taryng her, not half that I would seie,  
And but I speke I must for sorowe deie.

Of longe service avaunt I me nothing,  
But as possible is me to die to day  
For wo as he that hath be languishing  
This twenty wintre, and wel it happin may  
A man may serve bettir and more to pay  
In halfe a yere, although it were no more,  
Than some man doth that hath servid ful yore.

I say not this by me, for I ne can  
Do no servise that may my lady plesse,  
But I dare say I am her trewist man,  
As to my dome, and fainist wolde her plesse :  
At shorte wordis, til that dethe me cese  
I wil be hers whethir I wake or winke,  
And trewe in al that herte may bethinke.

Of al my lyfe syth that day I was borne  
So gentle ple in love or othir thinge  
Ne herdin never no man me beforne,  
Who so that had right lesir and connyng  
For to reherse ther chere and ther spekyng,  
And from the morowe gan this speche laste  
Till downward went the sonne wondir faste.

The noyse of Foulis for to be deliverde  
So loudè range, Have don and let us wende,  
That wel wende I the wode had all to shivered :  
Come of, they cried ; alas ! ye wil us shende ;  
Whan shal your cursid pleding have an ende ?  
How shulde a judge on eithir partie leve  
For ye or nay withoutin any preve ?

The gose, the cuckowe, and the ducke also,  
So cryid Keke, keke, Cuckow, Queke, queke, hye,  
Thorough myne eris the noyse wente tho ;  
The gose sayd than, Al this n'ys worthe a flye,  
But I can shape herof a remedye,  
And wil yfay my verdite faire and fwithie  
For watir Foule, who so be wrothe or blithe.

And I for worme Foule, saied the sole cuckow,  
For I wil of min owne autorite,  
For common spece, take on me the charge now  
For to deliver us is grete charite,  
Ye may abydin a while yet perde.  
(Quod the turtel) If that it be your wil  
A wight may speke it were as gode be stil.

I am a fede Foule, one the unworthyest,  
That wot I wel, and the lest of connyng,  
But bettir is that a wight is tonge rest  
Than entremetin him of soche doynge  
Of whiche he neithir redin can nor singe,  
And who so it doth ful foule him self acheyeth,  
For *Office uncommittid ofte annoyeth.*

Nature, whiche that alway yhad an ere  
To murmure of the leudeneffe behinde,  
With faconde voice saied, Hold your tongis there,  
And I shal sone I hope a counsaile finde  
You to deliver and fro this noyse unbynde :  
I charge of every flocke ye shal one cal  
To say the verdite of you Foulis all.

Affentid were to this conclusyon  
The birdis al, and Foulis of ravine  
Have chosin first by plaine election,  
The tercelet of the faucon to define,  
Al ther sentence, and as him lust to termine,  
And to Nature him gan they to presente,  
And she acceptith him with glad entente.

The tercelet sayd than in this manere :  
Ful hard it were to preve it by reson  
Who lovith best this gentil formel here,  
For everiche hath soche replicacion  
That by skillis may non be brought adoun ;  
I cannot se that argumentes availe,  
Than semith it there must be a battaile.

Al redy, quod these eglès tercelles tho,  
Nay, Sirs, (quod he) if that I durst it say  
Ye do me wronge, my tale is not ydo ;  
For, Sirs, ne takith nat a grese I pray,  
It may not be as ye wolde in this way ;  
Ours is the voice that have the charge in hande,  
And to the judg'is dome ye must ystande ;

And therfore pece : I say as to my wit  
Me woldin thinke how that the worthiest  
Of knyghthode, and lengist had usid it,  
Most of estate, of blode the gentillest,  
Were fittingest for her, if that her lest,  
And of these thre she wote her selfe I trowe  
Whiche that he be, for it is light to knowe.

The watir Foulis have ther hedis laide  
Togidir, and of shorte avisement  
Whan everiche had his verdite ysaide,  
They saidin sothely al by one assent  
How that the gose, with the faconde gent,  
That so desirith to pronounce our nede,  
Shal tel our tale, and prayed to God her spece.

And for these watir Foulis tho began  
The gose to speke, and in her cakelynge  
She saied, Pece now, take kepe every man,  
And herken whiche reson I shal forth bring ;  
My witte is sharpe ; I love no taryng ;  
I say, I rede him, tho he were my brother,  
But she wil love him let him love another.

Lo here a parfite reson of a gose !  
Tho (quod the sperhauke) never mote she the ;  
Lo soche a thing it is to have a tonge lose !  
Nowe parde sole yet were it bet for the  
Have holde thy pece than shewde thy nicete ;  
It lyeth nat in his wit nor in his wil,  
But sothe is saide, *A sole can not be still.*

The laughtir arose of gentil Foulis al,  
And right anone the fede Foules chofin had  
The turtel trewe, and gan her to 'hem call,  
And prayid her to say the sothè sad  
Of this matir, and askid what she rad?  
And she answered that plainly her entent  
She woldè shewe, and sothly what she ment.

Nay, God forbede a lovur shuldè chaunge,  
The turtel said, and wexte for shame al rede;  
Though that his lady evirmore be straunge,  
Yet let him serve her ay tyl he be dede;  
Forsothe I ne praisè not the gos'is rede,  
For tho she dyed I wold none othir make;  
I wil be hers tyl that the dethe me take

Wel ybourdid (quod the ducke) by my hat;  
That men shouldin love alway causèlessè  
Who can a reson finde or wit in that?  
Dauncith he mery that is mirthèlessè?  
Who shuldin recke of that is rechèlessè?  
Ye queke yet (quod the ducke) ful wel and faire,  
*There be mo sterres in the skye than a paire.*

Nowe fye, churle! (quod the gentil tercèlet)  
Out of the donghil camè that word aright;  
Thou canst not se which thinge is wel beset;  
Thou farest by love as owlis do by light,  
The day 'hem blindeth, ful wel they se by night;  
Thy kinde is of so lowe a wretchidnesse  
That what love is thou canst not se nor gesse.

Tho gan the cuckow put him forthe in prece  
For Foule that etith worme, and sayid blyve,  
So I (quod he) may have my make in pece  
I ne retche nought howe longe that ye strive;  
Let eche of 'hem be soleine al ther lyve;  
This is my rede sens they may nat acorde;  
This shorte lesson nedith not recorde.

Ye have the glutton filde inow his paunche,  
Then are we wel, sayid the emeron,  
Thou murdrir of the heisugge, on the braunche,  
That brought the forth, thou most rufull glutton,  
Live thou solein, wormis corrupcion!  
For no force is of lacke of thy nature;  
Go, leude be thou while that the world may dure!

Nowe pece (quod Nature) I commandin here,  
For I have herde al your opinion,  
And in effectè yet be we ner the nere;  
But, finally, this is my conclusion,  
That she her selfe shal have her election  
Of whom her list, who so be wroth or blithe,  
Him that she cheseth he shal her have as swithe:

For sithe it may not here discuffid be  
Who loveth her best, as said the tercèlet,  
'Than wol I done this favour to' her, that she  
Shal have right him on whom her hert is set,  
And he her that his hert hath on her knet;  
'This judge I Nature, for I may not lye,  
'To none estate I have none othir eye.

But as for counsayle for to chose a make,  
Yf I were Reson, certis than woulde I  
Counsaillin you the royal tercèl take,  
As sayd the tercèlet ful skilfully,  
As for the gentilist and most worthy,

Which I have wrought so wel to my plesaunce  
That to you it ought ben a suffisaunce.

With dredfull voice the formell her answerde;  
My rightfull lady, goddesse of Nature,  
Soth is that I am er undir your yerde,  
As is als' evèriche othir cature,  
And must be yours while that my life may dure,  
And therfore grauntith me my firstè bone,  
And myne entent you wol I say right sone.

I graunt it you (quod she.) And right anone  
This formel egle spake in this degre;  
Almighty quene! unto this yere be done  
I aske respite for to avyfin me,  
And astir that to have my choyce all fre:  
This al and some that I wold speke and sey;  
Ye get no more although ye do me dey:

I wol not servin Venus ne Cupide  
Forsothe as yet by no manir of way.  
Nowe sens it may none othir wayes betide  
(Quod Dame Nature), here is no more to say;  
Than wolde I that these Foulis were away  
Eche with his make for tarying lengir here,  
And said 'hem thus, as ye shal astir here:

To you speke I, ye tercelets (quod Nature),  
Bethè of gode herte, and servith allè thre,  
A yere is not so longe for to endure,  
And eche of you paine him in his degre  
For to do wel, for God wote quit is she  
Fro you this yere, what astir so besal;  
This entremes is dressid for you all.

And whan this werk ybrought was to an ende  
To every Foule Nature yave his make  
By even acorde, and on ther way they wende,  
And Lordethe blisse and joye which that they make!  
For ech gan othir in his wingis take,  
And with ther neckis eche gan othir winde,  
Thankynge aye the noble goddesse of Kinde.

But first were chofin Foulis for to singe,  
As yere by yere was alway ther usaunce,  
To singe a roundel at ther departing,  
To do to Nature honour and plesaunce;  
The note I trowe ymakid was in Fraunce;  
The wordis were soche as ye may here find  
The nextè vers, as I nowe have in minde,

*Qui bien aime tard oublie.*

Now welcom somir! with thy sonnys soft,  
That haste this wintir wethirs ovirshake;  
Saint Valentine! thou arte full hye on lofte,  
Which drivist away the longe nightis blake,  
Thus singin smale Foulis for thy sake;  
Well havin they cause for to gladin ofte  
Sens eche of 'hem recovered hath his make,  
Ful blisful maie they sing when they awake.

And with the shouting when ther songe warde  
That the Foulis made at ther flight away  
I wote, and othir bokis toke me to  
To rede upon, and yet I rede alway;  
I hope ywis to redin so some day  
That I shal metin some thinge for to fare  
The bet, and thus to rede I n'il not spare.

O F T H E  
CUCKOWE AND THE NIGHTINGALE.

*Chaucer dreameth that he heareth the Cuckowe and the Nightingale contend for excellency  
in singing.*

THE god of Love, ah, *benedicite* !  
Howe mighty and howe gret a lorde is he !  
For he can makin of lowe hertis hie,  
And of hyt lowe and lykè for to die,  
And hardè hertis he can makin fre :

He can makin within a litil flounde  
Of sickè folkè whole, and freshe, and founde,  
And of the whole he can ymakè feke ;  
He can ybindin and unbindin eke  
That he wol have yboundin or unbounde.

To tel his might my wit may not suffise,  
For he can makin of wise folke ful nice,  
For he may do al that he wol device,  
And lithy folkè to distroyin vice,  
And proude hertis he can make agrise.

Shortly, al that evir he wol he may ;  
Against him there däre no wight say naye,  
For he can glad and greve whom him lykith,  
And who that he wol he loweth or likith,  
And most his might he shedith et in May ;

For evèry true gentle hertè fre,  
That with him is or thinkith for to be,  
Against May now shal have some sterenge,  
Or to joye or ellis to some mourning,  
Is no fesen so moche, as thinkith me :

For whan that they may here the birdis singe,  
And se the flouris and the levis springe,  
That bringith into ther remembèraunce  
A manir eke ymedlid with grevaunce,  
And lusty thoughtis ful of grete longing ;

And of that longing comith hevinesse,  
And therof growith oft grete sikènesse,  
And for the lacke of that that they desire ;  
And thus in May ben hertis set on fire,  
So that they brennin forth in gret distresse.

I speke this of feling trewily :  
What ! tho that I be olde and unlusty  
Yet I have felte of the sickenesse through May  
Bothe hote and cold, and axis every day,  
How fore iwis there wote no wight but I.

I am so shakin with the fevirs white  
Of al this May, ne slepe I but a lite ;  
And also it is not lyke unto me  
That any hertè shouldin slepy be  
In whom that Love his firy darte wol smite.

But as I lay this othir night waking  
I thought howe lovirs had a tokining,  
And amonge hem it was a commune tale  
That it were gode to here the Nightingale  
Moche rathir than the leude Cuckowe singe.



And than I thought anon as it was day  
I woldè faine go somewhere to assay  
If that I might a Nightingale yhere,  
~~For yet~~ had I none herde of al that yere,  
And it was tho the thirde night of May.

And right anon as I the day asyde  
No lengir would I in my bedde abide,  
But unto a wodde that was me fast by  
I went forthe my self alone boldily,  
And helde the way downe by a broke side.

Tyl I came to a launde of white and grene,  
So faire an one had I nevir in bene;  
The grounde was grene, ypoudrid with daifye,  
The flouris and the grevis alike hie,  
Al grene and white, was nothing ellis fene.

There fate I downe among the faire flouris,  
And sawe the birdes trippe out of ther bowris  
There as they restid 'hem had al the night;  
'They were so joyful of the day's lyght  
They began of Maye for to done honouris:

They coudin wel that service al by rote,  
And there was many a full lovely note;  
Some songin loudè as they had yplained,  
And some in othir manir voice yfained,  
And some songin al out with the ful throte.

They proynid 'hem and madin 'hem right gay,  
And daunfidin and leptin on the spray,  
And evirmore were two and two in fere,  
Right so as they had chofin 'hem to yere  
In Feverere on Saint Valentine's day.

And the rivir whiche that I sat upon  
It madin soche a noisè as it ron,  
Accordaunt with the birdis armory,  
Me thought that it was the best melody  
That mightin ben yherde of any mon.

And for delyte, I ne wotte nevir howe,  
I fel in soche a flombre and a fwowe,  
Nat al allepe ne fully awaking,  
And in that fwowé me thought I herdè finge  
The fory birde, I menc the leude Cuckowe,

And that was upon a tre right fast by;  
But who was than evil apaide but I?  
Now God (quod I) that dyid on the crois  
Yeve forowe on the and on thy leude vois!  
Ful litil joye have I now of thy crie.

And as I with the Cuckow thus gan chide,  
I herdin in the nextè bush beside  
A Nyghtingale so lustily yfinge,  
That with her clere voice she madin ringe,  
Echoing thorough al the grene wode wide.

Ah! gode swete Nightingale! (quod I) then,  
A litil hast thou ben to longè hen,  
For here hath ben the leude fory Cuckow,  
And songin songis rathir than hast thou;  
I pray to God that evil fire her bren!

But now I wol you tel a wondre thing;  
As longe as I ylay in that fwouning,  
Me thought I wist what that the birdis ment,  
And what they sayd, and what was ther entent,  
And of ther speche I had full gode knowing.

There herdin I the Nightingale ysay,  
Now, gode Cuckow! goith some where awaye,  
And let us that can singin dwellin here,  
For every wight eschevith the to here,  
Thy songis ben so elenge, in gode fay.

What! (quod she) what may the aylin as nowe?  
It thinkith me I finge as wel as thou,  
For my songè is both true and eke plaine,  
And though I can not crakil so in vaine  
As thou dost in thy throte, I wot ner how.

And every wight may undirstandin me;  
But, Nightingale, so may they not done the,  
For thou hast many a nice queintè crie;  
I have the herdè faine Ocy, ocy:  
Howe might I knowin what that should ybe?

Ah, sole! (quod she) wost thou not what it is?  
Whan that I say Ocy, ocy, ywys  
Than menin I that I would wondre faine  
That al they werin shamfully yflaine  
That menin ought againist love amis;

And also' I would that al tho had the dede  
That thinkin not in love ther life to lede,  
For who so wol not the god of Love serve  
I dare wel say he is worthy to sterve,  
And for that stil Ocy, ocy, I grede.

Eye! (quod the Cuckow) this is a queint lawe,  
That every wight shal love or be to draw;  
But I forsakin al soche company,  
For myne entent ne is not for to die,  
Ne ner while I live on Love's yoke to draw;

For lovirs ben the folke that ben on lyve  
That most disese yhave and most unthrive,  
And most endurin sorow, wo, and care,  
And that the left yfelin of welfare;  
What nedith it ayenist trouth to strive?

What! (quod she) thou art alle out of thy minde;  
How might thou in thy churlinesse yfynde  
To speke of Lov's servautes in this wise?  
For in this world is none so gode service  
To every wight that gentle is of kinde;

For therof truly comith al godenesse,  
 Therof al honour and al gentilnesse,  
 Thereof worship, ese, and al hert's lust,  
 And parfite joye and ful assurid trust,  
 And jolytie, and plesaunce, and freshenesse,

And lowlyhed, largesse, and curtisye,  
 And semelyhed, and trew company,  
 And drede of shame for to done amys,  
 For he that truily Lov'is servaunt is  
 Were lothir to be shamid than to die.

And that thys is the sothe whiche that I sey  
 In that beleve I wil bothe live and dey;  
 And, Cuckow, so I rede thou do ywys.  
 Than (quod he) let me nevir havin blisse  
 Yf evir I to that counsaile obey.

Nyghtingale, thou yspekist wondre faire,  
 But for al that is the soth contrayre,  
 For Love ne is in yongè folke but rage,  
 And is in oldè folke a grete dotage;  
 Who most it usith he most shal enpaire;

For therof commeth difese and hevinesse,  
 So sorow', and care, and many' a grete likenesse,  
 Despite, debate, and angre, and envy,  
 Depraving, shame, untrust, and jelousie,  
 Pride, mischese, povertie, and wodenesse.

Loving is aye an office of dispaire,  
 And one thing is therin that is not faire,  
 For who that getteth of Love a litil blisse,  
 But if he be alwaie therewith, iwis  
 He maie full sone of age yhave his haire:

And, Nightingale, therefore held the nie,  
 For leve me well, for all thy queintè crie,  
 If thou be ferre or longè fro thy make  
 Thou shalt be as othir that ben forsake,  
 And then thou shalt yhotin as do I.

Fie! (quod she) on thy namè and on the,  
 The god of Love ne let the nevir the,  
 For thou art worse a thousandfolde than wode,  
 For many' one is full worthie and full gode  
 That had be naught ne haddin Love ibee;

For evirmore Love his servauntes amendeth,  
 And from all evill tachis 'hem defendeth,  
 And makith 'hem to brenne right in a fire  
 In trouthe and in worshipfull desire,  
 And when him likith joy inough 'hem fendeth.

Thou, Nightingale, he sayid, be still,  
 For Love have no reson but it is will,  
 For oft tymis untrue folke he cith  
 And true folke so bittirly displeith  
 That for defaute of courage he let 'hem spill.

Then toke I of the Nightingale kepe  
 How that she cast a sigh out of her depe,  
 And saied, Alas that evir I was bore!  
 I can for tene not saie one wordè more;  
 And right with that worde she brast out to wepe.

Alas! (quod she) my hertè woll to breke,  
 To herin thus this leudè birdè speke  
 Of Love, and of his worshipfull service;  
 Now god of Love, thou helpe me in some wise  
 That I maie on this Cuckowe ben awreke.

Me thoughtin then that he sterte up anon,  
 And glad was I tho that he was agon,  
 And evirmore the Cuckowe as he saie  
 Ysayid, Farewell, farewell, poppingaie,  
 As though he had yscornid me alone.

And then ycame the Nightingale to me,  
 And sayid, Frende, forsoth I thankè the  
 That thou hast likid me for to rescowe,  
 And one avowe to Love ymake I now,  
 That all this Maie I woll thy fingir be.

I thankid her, and was right well apaied.  
 Ye, (quod she) and ne be thou not dismaied  
 Tho thou have herd the Cuckow erst than me,  
 For if I live it shall amendid be  
 The nextè Maie, if I be not affraied.

And one thing I woll redin the also,  
 Ne leve thou not the Cuckow ne' his loves so,  
 For all that he hath saied is strong lesyng.  
 Naie, (quod I) therto shall nothyng me bryng  
 For love, and it hath do me mochil wo.

Ye, hath it? Use (quod she) this medicine,  
 Every daie this Maie or that thou dine  
 Go lokin upon the freshe daisie,  
 And though thou be for wo in poinct to die  
 That shall full gretly lessen the of thy pine.

And loke alwaie that thou be gode and true,  
 And I woll sing one of the songis newe  
 For love of the, as loude as I maie crie;  
 And then she began this songè full hie,  
 I shrewe all 'hem that ben of love untrue.

And when she had ysong it to the ende,  
 Now farewell, (quod she) for I motè wende,  
 And god of Love, that can right well and may,  
 As mochil joyè sendè the this daie  
 As any yet lovir he ever sende.

Thus taketh the Nightingale her leve of me,  
 I praie to God alwaie with her to be,  
 And joye of love he sende her evirmore,  
 And shilde us fro the Cuckowe and his lore!  
 For there is not so falsc a birde as he.

Forthe she yflew the gentill Nightingale  
To all the birdis that were in that dale,  
And gate 'hem all into a place in fere,  
And besoughtin 'hem that they wouldin here  
Hic. disese; and thus she began her tale :

The Cuckowe, well it is not for to hide  
How the Cuckowe and I fast havin chide  
Evir sithin that it ywas daie light;  
I praie you all that ye doin me right  
Of that foule, and false, and unkindè bride.

Then speke o birde for all by one assent;  
This mattir askith gode avisement,  
For we ben allè birdis here in fere,  
And sothe it is the Cuckowe is not here,  
And therefore we woll have a parliment;

And thereat shall the egle be our lorde,  
And othir peris that ben of recorde,  
And the Cuckowe shall be aftir ysent,  
And there shall be yevin thè judgement,  
Or els we shall finally make accorde.

And this shall be ydone withoutin naie  
The morowe aftir Sainct Valentine's daie,  
Undir a maple that is faire and grene,  
Before the chambir windowe of the quene  
At Wodestocke upon the grenè laie.

She thankid 'hem, and then her levè toke,  
And flew into an hauthorne by that broke,  
And there she fate and song upon that tre,  
For terme of life love hath withholde me,  
So loude, that I with that song awoke.

O leudè boke ! with thy foule rudènessè,  
Sithe thou hast neithir beaute ne' eloquence  
Who hath the caused or yeve the hardinessè  
For to appere in my ladie's presence?  
I' am ful fikir thou knowist her benevo'lence,  
Full agreable to all her abiyng,  
For of all gode she is the best livyng.

Alas! that thou ne haddist worthinessè  
To shewin to her some plesant sentence,  
Sith that she hath thorough her gentillesse  
Acceptid the fervaunt to her digne reve'rence.  
O! me repentith that I ne' had science  
And lesir als to make the more florishyng,  
For of all gode she is the best livyng.

Beseche her mekely with all lowlinessè,  
Though that I be ferre from her in absence,  
To thinke on my trowth to' her and stedfastnessè,  
And to' abridge of my sorowes the violence  
Which caused is, wherof knowith your sapience,  
She like emong to notifie me' her likyng,  
For of all gode she is the best livyng.

L'ENNOY.

Aurore of gladnessè, daie of lustinessè,  
Lucerne anight with hevenlie influence  
Illumined, rote of beautilie and godenessè,  
Suspiris, whiche I effunde in silence,  
Of grace I beseche aledge let your writyng,  
Now of all gode sith ye best livyng.



## HEREAFTER FOLLOWETH

## HOW PYTE IS DEDE;

## AND BURIED IN GENTYLE HERTE.

PYTE, that I have fought so yore ago  
With herte sore, and full of besy paine,  
That in this worlde was nevyr wight so wo  
Withoutin dethe, and yf I shal nat faine  
My purpose was to Pitie to complaine  
Upon the crueltie and tyrannye  
Of Love, that for my trouth doth me to die.

And whan that I by length of certaine yeres  
Had evyr in one fought a tyme to speke,  
To Pite ran I all bespreint with teres  
To prayin her on Cruelte me' a-wreke;  
But or I might with any worde out breke,  
Or tel her any of my painis smerte,  
I found her ded and buried in an herte.

A downe I fel whan that I saw the herse  
Ded as a stone while that the swonne me laste,  
But up I rose with coloure ful diverse,  
And pitously on her myne eyen I cast,  
And nerir the corse I gan presyn fast,  
And for the soule I shope me for to pray;  
I was but lorne; there was no more to say.

Thus am I slaine sith that Pite is ded;  
Alas that day that evyr it shulde fal!  
What manir man dare nowe hold up his hed,  
To whom shal now any foro'wfull hert call,  
Nowe Cruelte hath cast to fle us al,  
In ydle hope folke reddelesse of paine,  
Sith she is ded, to whom shal we complaine?

But yet encrefith me this wondir newe,  
That no wight wote that she is ded but I,  
So many men as in her tyme her knewe,  
And yet she dyid all so sodainly,  
For I have fought her er full besily,  
Sithins that I had firste witte or mind,  
But she was ded er that I coude her find.

Aboute her herse there stodin lustily,  
Withoutin any mo as thoughtin me,  
Bountie, perfetely well armed and richely,  
And freshe Beaute, and Lust, and Jolite,  
Affurid Manir, Youthe, and Honeste,  
Wisdome, Estate, with Drede and Governauce,  
Confedrid both by bonde and aliaunce.

A complainte had I writin in my honde  
To have yput to Pyte as a byl,  
But I there al this company yfonde  
That rathir wouldin all my causè spill  
Then do me help, I held my plainte still,  
For to those folke withoutin any faile  
Without Pite there maie no bill availe.

Then leave all vertues save onely Pitie,  
Keping the corse, as ye have herd me faine,  
Confedrid by bonde unto Crueltie,  
And be assentid when I shall be slaine,  
And I have put my compleinte up againe,  
For to my foes my bill I dare not shewe  
The' effect, which sayith thus in wordis fewe:

Humblist of herte, hyist of reverence,  
Flowir benign, coroune of vertues alle!  
Shewith unto your roiall excellence  
Your servaunt, if I durstin me so call,  
His mortall harme in which he is ifall,  
And nought all onely for his wofull fare  
But for your renome, as he shall declare.

It standeth thus; that your contary' Crueltie  
Allyid is ayenst your regalie,  
Undir colour of womanly beautie,  
For men shouldin not knowe her tyrannie,  
With Bountie, Gentilleffe, and Curtesie,  
And hath deprivid you thus of your place,  
That is hie Beaute' apertenant to your grace.

For kindly by your heritage and right  
 Ye be annexid evir to Bountie,  
 And verily ye ought to doe your might  
 To helpin Trouthe in his adversitie;  
 Ye be also the coroune of Beautie,  
 And certis if that ye want in these twaine  
 The worlde is lore; there is no more to faine.

Eke what availeth manir and gentileſſe  
 Withoutin you, o moſt benigne cature!  
 Shall Crueltie ybe your governeſſe?  
 Alas! what herte maie it long endure?  
 Wherefore but ye rather ytakin cure  
 To brekin that perillous aliaunce  
 Ye fleeſt hem that ben in your obeiſaunce.

And furthir ovir, if ye fuſſir this  
 All your renome is fordoe in a throwe,  
 There ſhall no man ywete what pitie is;  
 Alas that your renome is fall ſo lowe!  
 Ye be' alſo fro your heritage ithrowe  
 By Crueltie, that occupieth your place,  
 And we diſpairid that ſekin your grace.

Have mercie on me, thou herenus quene,  
 That you have fought ſo tendirly and fore,  
 O let ſome ſtreame of light on me be ſene,  
 That love and drede you er longir the more!  
 For, ſothily to faine, I bere ſo fore;

And though I be not connyng for to plaine  
 For God's love have mercie on my paine.

My paine is this, that what ſo I deſire  
 That have I not, ne nothyng like thereto,  
 And evir ſetteth deſire mine herte on fire;  
 Eke on that othir ſide, where that I go  
 What manir thing that may encreſe my wo  
 That have I redy unfought every where;  
 Me lackith but my deth and then my bere.

What nedith to ſhewe percel of my paine,  
 Sith every wo that herte maie bethinke  
 I fuſſir, and yet dare not to you plaine?  
 For well I wote though that I wake or winke  
 Ye recke not whethir that I flete or ſinke;  
 And natheleſſe yet my trouth I ſhall ſuſteine  
 Unto my deth, and that ſhall well be ſene:

This is to faine, that I will be yours ever,  
 Though ye me flea by Crueltie your ſo,  
 Algate my ſpirite ſhall nevir diſcevir  
 Fro your ſervice for any paine or wo,  
 Sith ye be dedde, alas that it is ſo!  
 Thus for your deth I maie wepin and plain  
 With herte fore and full of beſie pain.

*These Verses next following were compiled by Geoff. Chaucer, and in the written copies folowe  
at the ende of The Complainte of Pite.*

**T**HE longe nyghtis, when every creature  
Shuld have ther rest in somewhat as by kind,  
Or ellis ne may ther life not long endure,  
It fallith moſte into my woſul minde  
How I ſo farre have brought my ſelf behind,  
That faſe the deth ther may nothing me liſſe,  
So diſpairid I am from alle bliſſe.

This ſame thought me laſtith til the morow,  
And from the morowe forth til it be eve;  
There nedith me no care for to borow.  
For both I have gode laiſir and gode leve;  
There is no wight that will my wo byreve,  
To wepe enough and wailin all my ſyll;  
The ſorè ſparke of peine now doth me ſpil.

This Love, that hath me ſet in ſoche a place  
That my deſire he wil nevir fulfyl,  
For neithir Pite, Mercy, neithir Grace.  
Can I not finde, and yet my woſull herte  
For to be dede I can it not arace,  
The more I love the more ſhe doth me ſmerte,  
Thorowe whiche I ſe withoute remedie  
That from the deth I may no wiſe aſterte.

Now ſothly what ſhe hight I wol reherſe;  
Her name is Bountie, ſet in womanhed,  
Sadnes in youth, and beantie pridèleſſe,  
And pleaſaunce undir govirnaunce and drede,  
And her ſurname is eke faire Ruthèleſſe,  
The wiſe knit unto gode avinture,  
That for I love her ſhe ſleth me gitleſſe;  
Her love I beſt, and ſhall while I may dure;

Bett than my ſelfe a hundrid thouſand dele,  
Than al this world's richis or creature;  
Now hath not Love me beſtowid wel,

To lovin there I nevir ſhal have parte?  
Alas, right thus is turnid me the whele!  
Thus am I flaine with Lov's furious darte?  
I can but love her beſt my ſwetè ſo,  
Love hath me taught no morè of his arte  
But ſervin alwaye and ſtint for no wo.

Within my trewè carefull herte ther is  
So mochil wo and eke ſo litil bliſſe  
That wo is me that evir I was bore!  
For al that thinge which I deſire I miſſe,  
And al that evir I wolde not iwis  
That finde I redy to me evirmore;  
And of all this I n'ot to whom me plaine,  
For ſhe that might me out of this ybring  
Ne rechith nought whethir I wepe or ſing,  
So litil routh hath ſhe upon my paine!

Alas! whan ſleepinge, tyme is then I wake,  
Whan I ſhuld daunce for fere lo than I quake;  
This hevy life I lede, lo! for your ſake,  
Though ye therof in no wiſe hedè take,  
Myn hert's lady and whole my live's quene  
For truly durſt I ſay as that I ſele  
Me ſemith that your ſwetè herte of ſtele  
Is whettid now againiſt me to kene.

My derè herte and beſt beloved ſo!  
Why lykith you to do me al this wo?  
What have I don that grevith you, or ſaide?  
But for I ſerve and love you and no mo,  
And whileſt I live I wil evir do ſo,  
And therefore, ſwetè! ne bethe not il apaide;  
For ſo gode and ſo faire as that ye be  
It wer a right gret wondir but ye had  
Of al ſervauntis both of gode and badde,  
And beſt worthy of al them I am he.



But nevir the leffe, my righte lady swete !  
 Though that I be unkonninge and unmete  
 To serve as I coud best aye your highnes,  
 Yet is ther none fainir, that would I hete,  
~~When~~ I to do you ese or ellis bete,  
 What so I wist that were to your highnes;  
 And had I might as gode as I have wil,  
 Than shold ye fele wher it were so or none,  
 For in this world livinge than is ther none  
 That fainir wolde your hert'is wil fulfil.

For both I love and drede you so sore,  
 And algates mote and have don you ful yore,  
 That bettir loved is none ne nevir shal,  
 And yet I would beseeche you of no more  
 But lovith wel, and be not wroth therfore,  
 And let me serve you forth, lo ! this is al;  
 For I am nought so hardy ne so wode  
 For to desire that ye should lovin me,  
 For wel I wotte, alas ! that may not be,  
 I am so litil worthy' and ye so gode,  
 For ye be one the worthyist on live,  
 And I the most unlikely for to thrive.

Yet for al this wetith ye ful righte wel  
 That ye ne shoud me from your servyce drive,  
 That I ne wil aye with my witis live

Serve you truly what wo so that I fele,  
 For I am set so hy upon your whele  
 That though ye nevir wil upon me rew  
 I must you love, and bene evir as trewe  
 As any man ycan or maye on live.

But the more that I love you, godely fre !  
 The lassè finde I that ye lovin me;  
 Alas ! whan shal that hardè wit amende ?  
 Wher is now al your womanly pite,  
 Your gentilnes and your debonaire ?  
 Wil ye nothings therof upon me spend,  
 And so whole, swete ! as I am youris all,  
 And so grete wil as I have to you serve ?  
 Now certis and ye let me thus ysterve  
 Yet have ye wonnin therupon but small,

For at my knowing I do nothing why :  
 And thus I wil beseeche you hertily,  
 That if evir ye finde whilis ye live  
 A truir servaunte to you than am I,  
 Levith than, and fleith me hardily,  
 And I my deth to you wil al forgive;  
 And yf ye finde no trewir verily,  
 Wollin ye suffir than that I thus spil,  
 And for no manir gilt, but my gode will ?  
 As gode were than untrue as true to be.

## GODE COUNSAILE OF CHAUCER.

**F**LIE fro the preef and dwell with sothfastnesse;  
 Suffise unto thy gode though it be small,  
 For horde hath hate, and climbyng tikilnesse,  
 Prece hath envie, and wele is blent oer all;  
 Savour no more than the behoven shall;  
 Rede well thy self, that othir folke canst rede;  
 And trouthe the shall delivir it' is no drede.

Paine the not eche crokid to redresse  
 In trust of her that tourneth as a halle;  
 Grete rest standith in litil businesse;  
 Beware also to spurne again a nalle;

Strive not as doith a crocke with a walle;  
 Demith thy self that demist othir's dede,  
 And trouthe the shall deliver it' is no drede.

That the is sent receve in buzomenesse;  
 The wraßtyng of this worlde askith a fall;  
 Here is no home, here is but wildirnesse;  
 Forthe pilgrim, forthe o best out of thy stall;  
 Loke up on high, and thanke thy God of all;  
 Weivith thy luste and let thy ghost the lede,  
 And trouthe the shall delivir it' is no drede.

## CHAUCER'S A, B, C.

## CALLED LA PRIERE DE NOSTRE DAME.

*Chaucer's A, B, C, called La Priere de nostre Dame, made, as some say, at the request of Blanch Duchesse of Lancaster, as a praier for her private use, being a woman in her religion very devout.*

## A.

ALMIGHTIE and allmerciabie Quene!  
To whom all this world fleith for soccour,  
To have relese of sinne, of sorow, of tene,  
Glorious Virgine! of all flouris flour,  
To the I fle, confoundid in errour;  
Helpe and releve, almightie debonaire!  
Have mercy of mine perillous langour,  
Venquist me hath my cruill adversaire.

## B.

Bountie so fixe hath in my hert his tent,  
Thar well I wote thou wilt my succour be;  
Thou canst not warnin that with gode entent  
Axith thyne helpe, thine hert is aye so fre,  
Thou art largesse of plaine felicite,  
Havin and refute of quiete and rest;  
Lo how that thevis sevin chasin me;  
Helpe, Ladie bright! or that mine ship to brest.

## C.

Comfort is none but in you, Lady dere!  
For lo! mine sinne and mine confusioun,  
Which ought not in thin presence for to apere,  
Han taken on me a grevous actioun,  
Of veray right and disperatioun,  
And as by right they mightin well sustene  
That I were worthy mine damnatioun,  
We were it of thy mercy, blisfull Quene!

## D.

Dout is there none, o Quene of mise'ricord!

God vouchidesafe through the with us to' accord;  
For certis, Christ'is blisfull modir dere!  
Were now the bow ybent in swiche manere  
As it was first of justice and of ire,  
The rightfull God would of no mercy here;  
But through the han we grace as we desire.

## E.

Ever' hath mine hope of refute in the be,  
For here beforne full oft in many' a wise  
Unto mercy hast thou recevid me,  
But mercy, Lady! at the gret affise,  
When we shall come before the High Justise,  
So litil frent shall then in me ben found  
That but thou or that day correctin me  
Of very right mine werke will me confound.

## F.

Flying I fle for succour to thine tent,  
Me for to hide fro tempest full of drede,  
Beseking you that ye you not absent,  
Though I be wicke: o help yet at this nede!  
All have I ben a best in wit and dede,  
Yet, Lady! thou me close with thine owne grace;  
Thine enemie and mine (Lady, take hede)  
Unto mine deth in point is me to chafe.

## G.

Gracious maid and modir! which that never  
Were bittir nor in erth nor in the se,  
But full of swetenesse and of mercy ever,



Speke thou, for I ne dare him not yse :  
So have I done in erth, alas the while !  
That certis but if thou mine succour be  
To sinke eterne he will mine ghost exile.

H.

He vouchidefate, tell him, as was his will,  
Become a man as for our alliaunce,  
And with his blode he wrote that blisful bill  
Upon the crosse as generall acquitaunce  
To every penitent in full cryaunce;  
And therefore, Lady bright ! thou for us prey,  
Then shalt thou stentin alle his grevaunce,  
And maken our foe to faylin of his prey.

I.

I wote well thou wilt ben our succour,  
Thou art so full of bountie in certaine,  
For when a soule fallith in errour  
Thine pitie goeth and halith him againe,  
Then makist thou his pete with his Soverain;  
And bringist him out of the crokid strete :  
Whoso the lovith shall not love in vaine,  
That shall he find as he the life shall lete.

K.

Kalendis enluminid ben they  
That in this world ben lightid with thine name,  
And who so goith with the the right wey  
Him dar not dredin in soule to ben lame :  
Now Quene of comfort ! sith thou art the same  
To whom I fechin for my medicine,  
Let not mine so no more mine wound entame,  
Mine hele into thine hond all I refine.

L.

Lady ! thine sorrow can I not portrey  
Undir the crosse, ne his grevous pennaunce ;  
But for your bothis peine I you do prey  
Let not our aldir so make his bostaunce  
That he hath in his lestis, with mischaunce !  
Convict that that ye both han bought so dere :  
As I said erst, thou ground of all substaunce !  
Continue' on us thin pitous eyin clere.

M.

Moyfes, that saw the bosh of flambis rede  
Brenning, of which then nevir a sticke brend,  
Was signe of thine unwemmid maidinhede ;  
Thou art the bosh on which there can descend  
The Holy Ghost, the which that Moyfes wend  
Had ben on fire ; and this was in figure ;  
Now Lady ! fro the fire us defend  
Which that in hell eternally shall dure.

N.

Noble Princeffe ! that nevir haddist pere,  
Certis if any comfort in us be  
That commith of the, Christis modir dere !  
We han none othir melodie ne gle  
Us to rejoyce in our adversite,  
Ne advocat that will and dare so prey  
For us, and that for as lite hire as ye,  
That helpin for an Ave'mary or twey.

O.

O very light of eyin tho ben blind !  
O very lust of labour and distresse !  
O treforere of bountie to mankind !  
The whom God chese to moder for humbleffe,  
From his ancille he made the maistresse

Of heven and erth, our bill up for to bede,  
This world awatith ay on thine godenes,  
For thou ne failed'est nevir wight at nede.

P.

Purpose I have sometime for to enquire .  
Wherefore and why the Holy Ghost the fought ;  
When Gabriel's voice come to thine ere  
He not to werre us swich a wondir wrought,  
But for to save us that he sithin bought ;  
Then nedith us no wepon us to save,  
But onely there we did not as we ought  
Do penitence, and mercy asse and have.

Q.

Quene of comfort ! right when I me bethinke  
That I agiltid have both him and the,  
And that mine soule is worthy for to sinke,  
Alas ! I caitife, whedir shall I fle ?  
Who shall unto thine sonne mine menè be ?  
Who but thine selfe, that art of pitie well ?  
Thou hast more routh on our adversite  
Than in this world might any tongue tell.

R.

Redresse me, modir ! and eke me chastise,  
For certainly my Fadir's chastising  
Ne dare I not abidin in no wise,  
So hidèous is his full reckining.  
Modir ! of whom our joy began to spring,  
Be ye mine judge and eke my soul's lech,  
For ay in you is pitie abounding  
To each that will of pity you besech.

S.

Soth is that he ne grauntith no pite  
Withoutin the, for God of his godenesse  
Forgivith none but it like unto the :  
He hath the made vicaire and maistresse  
Of all this world, and eke govirnereffe  
Of hevin, and repressith his justise  
Aftir thine will, and therefore in witnesse  
He hath the crownid in so royall wise.

T.

Temple devont ! ther God chese his wonning,  
Fro which these misbelevèd deprivid ben,  
To you mine soule penitent I bring ;  
Receve me, for I can no ferthir fleen.  
With thornis venomous, o hevin Quene !  
For which the erth accursid was full yore,  
I am so woundid, as ye may well sene,  
That I am lost almost, it smert so fore.

V.

Virgine ! that art so noble of appaile,  
That ledist us into the highè toure  
Of Paradise, thou me wise and counsaile  
How I may have thy grace and thy succour,  
All have I ben in filth and in errour :  
Lady ! on that countrey thou me adjourne  
That clepid is thine bench of freshe flour,  
There as that mercy evir shall sojourne.

X.

Xpen thine sonne, that in this world alight  
Upon a crosse to suffir his passioun,  
And suffred eke that Longeus his hert pight,  
And made his hert's blode renne adoun,  
And all this was for my salvatioun;  
And I to him am fals and eke unkind,

And yet he ~~will~~ not mine dampnatioun;  
This thanke I you, succour of all mankind!

Y.

Ysaac was figure of his deth certaine,  
That so ferreforth his fadir would obey  
That him ne rought nothing for to be flaine;  
Right so thy sonne list a lambe to dey:  
Now Lady full of mercy! I you prey,  
Sith he his mercy furid me so large,  
Be ye not ~~hent~~ for all we sing or say,  
That ye ben fro vengeance alway our targe.

Z.

Zacharie you clepith the opyn well  
That wisht his sinfull soule out of his guilt,  
Therefore this lessoun out I will to tell,  
That n'ere thine tendir hert we werin spilt.  
Now Lady bright! sith that thou canst and wilt,  
Ben to the fede of Adam merciabie;  
Bring us unto that paleis that is built  
To penitents, that ben to mercie able.

## O F Q U E N E

## ANNELIDA AND FALSE ARCITE.

*Arcite, a Theban knight, forsaketh Queen Annelida, who loved him entirely, and taketh a new lady, whereupon Annelida maketh this great complaint.*

O THOU fiers god of Armis, Mars the Rede,  
That in thy frostie countrey callid Thrace  
Within thy grisly templis full of drede  
Honourid art as patrone of that place,  
With the Bellona, Pallas full of grace,  
Be present, and my song continue' and gie;  
At my beginnyng thus to the I crie.

For it full depè is sonkin in mynde  
With pitous herte in Englishe to endite  
This olde storie, in Latine whiche I finde,  
Of Quene Annelida and false Arcite,  
That elde, whiche all thingis can frete and bite,  
And it hath fretin many' a noble storie,  
Hath nigh devourid out of our memorie.

Be favourable' eke thou Polymnia,  
On Parnassus that with thy sultirs glade  
By Helicon, and not ferre from Cirrha,  
Singist with voice memoriall in the shade,  
Undir the laurir, which that maie not fade,  
And doe that I my ship to havin winne:  
First followe' I Stace, and astir him Corinne.

*Jamque domos patrias, Scythica post aspera gentis  
Prælia, laurigero subeuntem Thesea curru  
Lætifici plausus, missusque ad sidera vulgi, &c.*

When Theseus with warris long and grete  
The aspre folke of Scythe hath ovircome,  
The laurir crounid, in his chaire golde bete  
Home to his countre housis is icome,  
For whiche the peple blisfull all and some  
So cridin that to the steris it went,  
And hym to honourin did all ther entent.

Before this duke in signe of victorie  
The trompis come, and in his banir large  
The' image of Mars; and in token' of glorie  
Men mightin se of trefure many' a charge,  
Many' a bright helme, and many' a spere and targe,  
Many' a freshe knight, and many' a blisfull rout  
On horse and fote, in all the field about.

Hyppolyta his wife, the hardie Quene  
Of Scythia, that he conquerid had,  
With Emelie her youngè sultir shene,  
Faire in a chare of golde he with him lad,  
That al the ground about her chare she sprad  
With brightnesse of the beautie in her face,  
Fulfillid all of largeffe and of grace.

With his triumph and laurir corouned thus  
In all the floure of Fortun'is yevyng  
Lete I this noble prince, this Theseus,  
Toward Athenis in his waie ridyng,  
And fonde I well in shortly for to bryng  
The slic waie of that I began to write  
Of Quene Annelida and false Arcite.

Mars, that through his furious course of ire,  
The oldè wrathe of Juno to fulfill,  
Hath set the peplis hertis bothe on fire  
Of Thebes and Grece everich othir to kill  
With blodie speris, restid nevir still,  
But throng now here now there emong 'hem bo  
That everiche othir slue, so were thei wroth;

For when Amphiorax and Tydeus,  
Hippomedon and Parthenope' also  
Were dedde, and slain was the proude Capaneus



And when the wretchid Thebans brethrin two  
Were slain, and Kyng Adrastus home ago,  
So desolate stode Thebis and so bare  
That no wight could remedie of his care.  
And when that the old Creon gan espie  
How that the blode roiall was brought adoun  
He helde the cite by his tyrannie,  
And did the gentils of that region  
To ben his frendis and dwell in the toun;  
So what for love of him, and what for awe  
The noble folke were to the toun idrawe.  
Among all these Annelida the Quene  
Of Ermonie was in that counne dwellyng,  
That fairir ferre was than the sonne shene;  
Throughout the worlde so gan her name to spryng,  
That her to se had every wight likyng,  
For as of trouthe ne is there none her liche  
Of all the womerl in this worlde riche.  
Yong was this quene, of twentie yeris olde,  
Of middle stature, and of soche fairenesse  
That Nature had a joye her to beholde;  
And for to spekin of her stedfastnesse,  
She passid hath Penelope and Lucrese;  
And, shortill, if she shall ben comprehended,  
In her there mightin nothyng ben amended.  
This Theban knight Arcite eke, sothe to faine,  
Was yong, and therewithal a lustic knight,  
But he was double in love and nothing plaine,  
And subtil in that crafte ovre any wight,  
And with his connyng wan this ladie bright,  
For so ferforth he gan her trouthe assure  
That she hym trustith o'er any cature.  
What should I faine? she lovith Arcite so  
That when that he was absent any throwe  
Anone her thought her herte brast a two,  
For in her sight to her he bare hym lowe,  
So that she wende have all his herte iknowe;  
But he was false, it n'as but fainid chere,  
As nedith not soche craftis men to lere.  
But nerthelesse full mikill businesse  
Had he er that he might his ladie winne,  
And swore that he would dyin for distresse  
Or from his witte he sayid he would twinne;  
Alas the while! for it was routhe and sinne  
That she upon his sorowis would rue;  
But *Nothing thinkith the false as doth the true.*  
Her fredome found Arcite in soche manere  
That al was his that she hath, moche or lite,  
Ne to no manir cature made she chere  
Furthir then as it likid to Arcite;  
Ther was no lack with which he might her wite;  
She was so ferforth yevin him to plete  
That al that likid hym did her to ese.  
There n'as to her no manir lettir sent,  
That touchid love, from any manir wight,  
That she ne shewid hym or it was brent,  
So plain she was, and dyd her fultre might  
That she n'ill hidin nothyng from her knight,  
Lest he of any untrouthe her upbreide;  
Withouthin bode his herte she obeide.  
And eke he made hym jelous ovir her,  
That what that any man had to her saied  
Anon he would yprayin her to swere

What was that worde, or make him ill apaied;  
Then wenid she out of her witte have braied;  
But all was nought but sleight and flattirie;  
Withouthin love he fainid jelousie.  
And all this toke she so debonairly  
That al his wil her thought it skilful thyng,  
And er the lengir loved hym tendirly,  
And did hym honour as he were a kyng;  
Her herte was to hym weddid with a ryng,  
For so ferforth on trouthe is her entent  
That where he goith her hert with him went.  
Whan she shal ete on him is so her thought  
That wel unnethis of mete toke she kepe,  
And whan that she was to her rest ybrought  
On him she thought alway tyl that she slepe,  
Whan he was absent prively dothe she wepe:  
Thus liveth faire Annelida the Quene  
For false Arcyte, that dyd her al this tene.  
This false Arcyte, of his newfauglenesse,  
For she to him so lowly was and trewe,  
Ytoke lesse deinite for her stedfastnesse,  
And sawe anothir lady proude and newe,  
And right anon he clad him in her hewe,  
Wote I not whethir in white, red, or grene,  
And falsid faire Annelida the Quene.  
But nerthelesse, grete wondir was it none  
Though he were false, for it is the kinde of man  
Sithe Lamech was, that is so longe agone,  
To be in love as false as er he can;  
He was the firste fathir that began  
To lovin two, and was in bigamie,  
And he founde tentis first but yf men lye:  
This false Arcite somewhat must he nede faine  
Whan he was false to coveren his traitourie,  
Right as an horse that can both bite and plaine,  
For he bare her in bonde of trechirie,  
And swore he coude her doublenesse espye,  
And al was falsenesse that she to him ment;  
Thus swore this thefe, and forth his way he went.  
Alas! what herte might endurin it  
For routhe or wo her sorowe for to tel,  
Or what man hath the conning or the wit,  
Or what man might within the chambre dwel,  
If I to him reherfin shall the hel  
That suffrith faire Annelida the Quene,  
For false Arcite, that did her al this tene?  
She wepith, wailith, iwounith, pitously;  
To grounde as ded she fallith as a stone;  
She crampisith her limmis crokidly;  
She spekith as her witte were al agone;  
Othir colour than ashin hath she none,  
Ne none othir worde spekith she moch or lite  
But *Mercy, cruil herte-min, Arcite!*  
And thus endureth til that she was so mate  
That she ne hath sote on which she may sustene,  
But forth languishing er in this estate,  
Of whiche Arcite hath neithir rothe ne tene;  
His herte was ellifwhere sette new and grene,  
That on her wo ne deinet him not to think;  
Him reckith ner whethir she flete or sinke.  
This newe lady holdith him so narowe  
Up by the bridil at the stav's ende,  
That every worde he dred it is as an arowe;  
Her daungir made him bothe bowe and bende,

And as her luste madin him turne or wende,  
 For she ne grauntid him in her living  
 No grace why that he hath thereof to finge,  
 But drove him forth; unneth list her to knowe  
 That he was servaunt to her ladyship,  
 But lest that he were proude she held him lowe;  
 Thus servith he withoutin mete or sip;  
 She sente him nowe to lande and nowe to ship,  
 And for she yave him daungir al his fil  
 Therefore she had him at her ownè wil.

Exsample of this, ye thristie women al,  
 Take hede of Annelida and false Arcite,  
 That for her list him her dere hertè call,  
 And was so meke, therefore he loyed her lite;  
 The kinde of mann'is herte is to delite  
 On thing that straunge is, al so God me save,  
 For what they may not get that wold they have.

Now turne we to Annelida ayen,  
 That pinith day by day in languishing;  
 But whan she sawe that her ne gate no geyn,  
 Upon a day ful sorowfully weping  
 She cast her for to make a complaining,  
 And with her ownè hande she gan it write,  
 And sente it to her Theban knight Arcyte.

*The Complaint of Annelida to false Arcite.*

So thirld with the point of remembraunce  
 The swerde of sorowe, whette with false plesaunce,  
 Myne hertè bare of blisse and black of hewe,  
 That turnid is to quaking all my daunce,  
 My fewertye in wapid countinaunce,  
 Sens it availith nothing to ben trewe,  
 For who so trewe is certes it shall her rewe  
 That servith Love, and dothe her observaunce  
 Alway to one, and chaungith for no newe.

I wote my selfe as well as any wight,  
 For I loved one with al min hert and might,  
 More than my self an hundred thousande sith,  
 And callid him my hert'is lyfe, my knight,  
 And was al his as ferre as it was right,  
 And whan that he was glad than was I blythe,  
 And his disese ywas my dethe as swithe,  
 And he ayen his trouthe hath to me plight  
 For evirmore his lady me to kith.

Now is he false. alas! and causèles,  
 And of my wo he is so routhèles  
 That with a worde him list not onis daine  
 To bring ayen my sorowful herte in pees,  
 For he is caught up in an othir lees;  
 Right as hym lyst he laughith at my paine,  
 And I ne can min hertè not restraine  
 For to love him yet alway nertheles,  
 And of all this I n'ot to whom to plaine.

And shulde I plain, alas the hardè stounde!  
 Unto my foe that yave myn herte a wounde,  
 And yet desirith that myne harme be more?  
 Now certis ferthir w'oll I nevyr founde  
 None othir helpe my foris for to founde,  
 My Destiny hath shapid so ful yore,  
 I woll none othir medecyne ne lore,  
 I woll ben aye there I was onis bounde,  
 That I have said be said for evirmore.

Alas! where is become your gentillnesse,  
 Your wordes full of plesaunce and humblenesse,  
 Your observaunce in so lowe a manere,  
 Your awaitinge, and eke your besinesse,  
 On me, that ye the callid your maistresse,  
 Your soveraine lady in this worlde here?  
 Alas! is there now neithir worde ne chere  
 Ye vouchsafin upon myn hevinesse?  
 Alas! your love I bye it al to dere!

Now certis, swete Arcitè! though that ye  
 Thus causèlesse the rusull cause ybe  
 Of all my pynè and dedly' adversite,  
 Your manly treasoun ought it to respite  
 To fle your sothefast frènde, and namely me,  
 Whiche that have nevyr yet in no degre  
 Offendid you in ought, as wisly he  
 That all thinges wote of wo my soulè quite.

But for I was so plain to the Arcite  
 In all my wordes and workis moche and lite,  
 And was so basty aye you to delite,  
 Myne honour only save, meke, kinde, and fre,  
 Therefore, Arcite, ye put in me this wite:  
 Alas! alas! ye rechin not a mite  
 Though that the percing swerde of sorow byte  
 My woful hert thorough your cruilte.

My swetè foe! why do ye so for shame?  
 And thinkin ye that furthered be your name  
 To lovin a newe and ben untrewè aye,  
 And putin you in flaundir nowè and blame,  
 And do to me adversyte and grame  
 That love you most, God thou wotist alwaye?  
 Yet turne ayen, and yet be plaine some daye,  
 And then shall this that now is mis ben game,  
 And al forgovin whilis I lyve maye.

Lo, hertè myne! al this is for to saine,  
 As whethir shal I praye or ellis plaine?  
 Which is the way to done you to be trewe?  
 For eithir mote I have you in my chaine  
 Or with the deth ye mote depart us twayne,  
 There beth none othir mene ne wayis newe,  
 For God so wysely on my soulè rewe  
 As verily ye slaine me with the paine,  
 That mowe ye se upfainid on mine hewe.

For thus serforth have I my deth ysought,  
 My selfe I murdir with my privie thought;  
 For sorowe and routhè of your unkindenesse  
 I wepe, I waile, I fast; al helpith naught;  
 I voide alle joy that is to speak of aught,  
 I voide alle company, I flye gladnesse;  
 Who may avaunt her bet of hevinesse  
 Than I? and to this plite have me ye brought  
 Withoutin gilte; me nedith no witnesse.

And shoulde I pray and weivin womanhede?  
 Nay, rathir deth than do so foule a dede;  
 And aske mercy and giltlesse? what nede?  
 And if that I complaine what life I lede  
 You reckith not, that know I out of drede;  
 And if I unto you mine othis bede  
 For mine excuse, a scorne shal be my mede;  
 Your chere yflourith but it woll not fede;  
 Ful longe agon I might have takin hede:

For though I had you to morowe againe  
 I might as well hold Aprilis from raine  
 As holdin you to makin you stedfast:

Almyghty God! of trouthe the soveraine,  
 Wher is the trouth of man? who hath it slaine?  
 She that 'hem lovith shall 'hem finde as fast  
 As in a tempest is a rottin mast.  
 Is that a tame best that is evir faine  
 To renne away when he is left agast?  
 Nowe mercy, swete Arcite! if I missay;  
 Whethir have I aught said out of the way  
 I n'ot; my witte is wastid al away:  
 I fare as doth the songe of chantepleure,  
 For nowe I plaine and nowe agen I pley;  
 I am so masid that I dey, I dey;  
 Arcite, Arcite, hath born away the key  
 Of al my wele and my gode avinture:  
 For in this world there ne is no creture  
 Walking, alas! in more discomfiture  
 Than I, ne that more sorowe doth endure,  
 For yf I slepe a furlonge way or twey  
 Than thinkith me anon that your figure  
 Suppliant before me stante clad in alure,  
 Redy este to profre a newe assure  
 For to ben trewe, and mercy me to prey.  
 The longe night this wondir fyght I drie,  
 That on the day for soche affray I dye;

VOL. I.

And of al this right naught iwys ye retche;  
 Ne nevirmore myne eyin two ben drye;  
 And to your routhe and to your trouthe I crye,  
 But wel away! to ferre ben they to fetchen:  
 Thus holdith me my Destiny a wretche;  
 But me to rede out of this drede or gye  
 Ne may my wit (so weke is 'it) not stretchen.  
 Than ende I thus, sithe I may do no more,  
 I yeve it up for nowe and evirmore,  
 For I shall nevir este putten in balance  
 My sikirness, ne lerne of love the lore,  
 But as the swan, I have herde say ful yore,  
 Ayenst his deth wol sing in his penance,  
 So singe I here the destinie and chaunce  
 Howe that Arcite Annelida so fore  
 Hath thrillid with the poynt of remembraunce.  
 Whan that Annelida, this woful Queene,  
 Hath of her hande ywrittin in this wise,  
 With face all dede, betwixin pale and grene,  
 She fel a swoune, and sithe she gan to rise,  
 And unto Mars avowith sacrifice  
 Within the temple, with a sorowfull chere,  
 That shapin was as ye may plainly here.

K k



## THE COMPLAINT

## OF THE BLACKE KNIGHT.

*The heavy Complaint of a knight for that he can not win his lady's grace.*

IN Maie, when Flora the freshe lustie quene  
The foile hath cladde in grene, and red, and whight,  
And Phœbus gan to shede his stremis shene  
Amidde the Bulle with al the bemis bright,  
And Lucifer to chace awaie the night,  
Ayen the morowe our orizont hath take  
To bid all lovirs out of slepe awake,

And hertis hevie for to recomforte  
From dremid of hevie night's sorowe,  
Nature bad 'hem rise, and 'hem disporte  
Ayen' the godelie and the glad greie morowe,  
And hope also, with Sainct Ihon to borowe,  
Bad in despite of daungir and dispaire  
For to takin the wholsome lustie aire;

And with a sigh I gan for to abreide  
Out of my slombre', and sodainly up sterte,  
As he (alas) that nigh for sorowe deide,  
My sikeneffe sate aye so nie my herte,  
But for to findin foccour of my smerte,  
Or at the lest some relese of my paine,  
That me so fore yhalte in every veine.

I rose anone, and thought I wouldè gone  
Into the wodde to here the birdis syng  
When that the mistie vapour was agone,  
And cleare and faire ywas the morownyng,  
The dewe also like silvir in shynyng  
Upon the levis, as any baume swete,  
Till firie Titan with his persaunt hete

Had dryid up the lustie licour newe  
Upon the herbis in the grenè mede,  
And that the floures of many divers hewe  
Upon ther stalkis gonin for to sprede,  
And for to splaie out ther levis in brede  
Againe the sonne, golde burnid in his spere,  
That down to 'hem ycast his bemis clere.

And by a rivir forthe I gan cosse  
Of watir clere as birell or cristall,  
Till at the last I founde a little weie  
Toward a parke, enclosed with a wall,  
In compace rounde, and by a gate small:  
Who so that would he frelie mightin gone,  
Into this parke, ywallid with grene stone:

And in I went to here the birdis song,  
Which on the braunchis both in plain and vale  
So loude yfang that all the wode yrong  
Like as it shoud shivir in pecis smale,  
And as methoughtin that the nightingale  
With so great might her voice began out wrest  
Right as her harte for love would all to brest.

The foile was plain and smoth, and wondir soft,  
All oversprad with tapettes that Nature  
Had made her self, covirid eke aloft  
With bowis grene, the flouris for to cure,  
That in their beaultie thei maie long endure  
From all assaulte of Phœbus fervent fere,  
Whiche in his sphere so hotte yshone and clere.

The aire attempre, and the smothè winde  
Of Zephyrus among the blofomes white  
So wholsome was and nourishing by kinde,  
That smale buddis and round blofomis lite  
In maner gan of her brethe to delite,  
To yeve us hope that there fruct shall ytake  
Ayenist autumpne redy for to shake.

I sawe the Daphne closid undir rinde,  
With the grene laurir and the wholsome pine,  
The Mirre also, that wepith ever' of kinde,  
The cedris hie, as upright as a line,  
The filbert eke, that lowe doith encline  
Her bowis grene unto the yerth adoun  
Unto her knight callid Demophoon.

There sawe I growing eke the freshe hauthorne  
 In white motley, that so fote doeth ysmell,  
 Ashe, firre, and oke, with many a yong acorn,  
 And many a tre mo then I can tell,  
 And me before I saw a little well,  
 That had his course, as I could wele beholde,  
 Undir an hill, with quicke strems and colde,  
 The gravill gold, the watir pure as glasse,  
 The bankis rounde the well invironing,  
 And soft as velvet was the yonge grasse  
 That thereupon lustilie came springyng,  
 The sute of trees aboutin compassyng  
 Ther shadowe cast, closyng the wel arounde,  
 And all the herbis growyng on the grounde.  
 The water was so wholsome and so vertuous  
 Through might of herbis growyng it beside,  
 Not liketo the welle where as Narcissus  
 Iliain was through the vengeaunce of Cupide,  
 Where so wondir covertly he did hide  
 The grain of deth upon eche fatal brinke  
 That deth mote folow who that ever drinke;  
 Ne like unto the pitte of the Pegace  
 Undir Parnassus, where poëtis slept,  
 Nor like to the welle of pure chastite  
 Which that Diana with her nymphis kept,  
 When she nakid into the watir lepte,  
 That slowe Actæon with her handis fell,  
 Onily for he came so nigh the well:  
 But this welle which that I now here reherse  
 So wholsome was that it wouldin aswage  
 Wighthes bollin hertis, and the venim perce  
 Of Pensifched, withall the cruill rage,  
 And ovir more refreshin the visage  
 Of them that were in any werinesse  
 Of grete labour, or fallin in distresse.  
 And I that had through daungir and disdaine  
 So drie a thirst, thought that I would assaie  
 To tastin a draught of this welle or twain,  
 My bittir langour if it might alaie,  
 And on the banke anone me doune I laie,  
 And with mine hed unto the welle I raught,  
 And of the watir dranke I a gode draught,  
 Whereof me thought I was refreshid wele  
 Of the brennyng that fate so nigh my herte,  
 That verily anone I gan to fele  
 An hugè parte relefid of my smerte,  
 And therewithall anone up I alterte,  
 And thought that I would walkin and se more  
 Forthe in the parke and in the holtis hore.  
 And thorough a launde as I yede apace,  
 And gan aboutin fast for to beholde,  
 I founde anone a delectable place  
 That was beset with treis young and olde,  
 Whose namis here for me shal not be tolde,  
 Amidde of whiche there stode an herbir grene  
 That benchid was with coloures new and clene.  
 This herbir was all full of flouris gende,  
 Into the whiche as I beholde began,  
 Betwixt an hullere and a wode bende,  
 As I was ware, I sawe where laie a man  
 In blacke, and of white colour pale and wan,  
 And wondir dedly also of his hewe,  
 Of hurtis grene and freshe woundis newe,

And ovir more distrainid with sicknesse  
 Beside all this he was full grevouffie,  
 For upon hym he had an hote accesse  
 That daie by daie hym shoke ful pitouffie,  
 So that for constraint of his maladie  
 And hertely wo, thus lying all alone,  
 It was a deth for ~~one~~ to here hym grone.  
 Whereof astained, my fote I gan withdrawe,  
 Full gretly wondiring what it might be  
 That he so laye and haddin no felawe,  
 Ne that I coude no wight with him yse,  
 Wherof I had gret routh and eke pite,  
 And gan anone, so softly as I coude,  
 Amonge the bushis prively me to throude,  
 If that I myght in any wise espie  
 What was the cause of this his dedly wo,  
 Or why that he so petouffly gan crie  
 On his fortune, and on his ure also;  
 With all my myght I layid an ere to  
 Every worde, to marke wel what he saide  
 Out of his swough anon as he abraide.  
 But first, if I shulde makin mencion  
 Of his persone, and plainly him discrive,  
 He was in sothe, without excepcion,  
 To speke of manhode one of the best on live,  
 There may no man ayen the trouth ystrive,  
 For of his time and of his age also  
 He provid was there men shuld have ado.  
 One of the best therto of brede and length,  
 So wel ymade by gode proporcion,  
 If he had be in his delivir strength,  
 But thought and sicknesse were occasyon  
 That he thus lay in lamentacyon  
 Grouffe on the grounde, in place so desolate,  
 Sole by him self, awhapid and amate.  
 And for me semith that it is fitting  
 His wordis al to put in remembraunce,  
 To me that herdin all his complaining,  
 And al the grounde of this his wofal chauce,  
 If there withall I maye you do plesaunce,  
 I wol to you so as I can anone,  
 Lyke as he saide, reherce everichone.  
 But who shal helpin me now to complaine,  
 Or who shal nowe my stile gie or lede?  
 O Niobe! let nowe thy teris rayne  
 Into my penne, and helpe me eke in nede  
 Thou woful Myre! that felist mine herte blede  
 Of pitous sorowe, and myne hande eke quake,  
 What that I writin for this mann's sake;  
 For unto wo accordith complaining,  
 And doleful chere unto hevinesse,  
 To sorowe also sighing and weping,  
 And pitous mourning unto drerinesse:  
 And whofo that shal writin of distresse  
 In party nedith to knowe felingly  
 The cause and rote of al soche malady.  
 But I, alas! that am of witte but dul,  
 And that have no knowing of soche matere,  
 For to discrive and writin at the ful  
 The woful Complainte which that ye shal here,  
 But even like as doth a skrivinere,  
 That can no more tell what that he shal write  
 But as his maistr beside dothe endite;

Ryght so fare I, that of no sentement  
Can sayin right naught in conclusioun,  
But as I herde whan that I was present  
This man complinin with a pitous soun,  
For even like without addicioun  
Or disencrese cythir of more or lesse  
For to reherse anone I wol me dresse.

And if that any now be in this place  
That felith in love breninge or fervence,  
Or hindirid were to his ladie's grace  
With falsè tongis, that with pestilence  
Sle trewe men, that nevir did offence  
In worde nor dede, ne yet in ther entent,  
If any soche there be here nowe present,

Let him of routhe lay him to audience  
With doleful chere and sobre countinaunce,  
To herin this man by ful hye sentence  
Hys mortal wo and his dire perturbaunce  
Complaining, and now lying in a traunce  
With lokis upcast and with ruful chere,  
'Th' effecte of which was as ye now shal here.

The thought oppressed with inward sighis sore,  
The painful lyfe, the body languishing,  
The woful gost, the herte rent and tore,  
The pitous chere, all pale in complaining  
The dedly face, like ashis in shining,  
The false teris that from min eyin fall,  
Parcel declare grounde of my painis al.

Whose herte is grounde to blede in hevinesse  
The thought receite of wo and of complainte,  
The brest is chest of dole and drerinesse,  
The body eke so feble and so fainte,  
With hote and colde mine axis is so mainte,  
'That nowe I chivir for defaute of hete,  
And hote as glede nowe sodainly I swete;

Nowe hote as fire, nowe cold as ashis ded,  
Now hote for colde, now cold for hete again,  
Now cold as yse, and now as colis red  
For hete I brenne; and thus betwixin twaine  
I possid am and al forcaste in paine,  
So that my hete ful plainly as I fele  
Of grevous colde is cause every dele.

This the colde of inward hie disdaine,  
Cold of dispite, and colde of cruil hate,  
'This is the colde that doth his besy payne  
Ayenist trouthe to fight and to debate,  
'This is the colde that doth the fyre abate  
Of trewe mening, alas the harde while!  
'This is the coldè that wol me begile:

For er the bettir that in trouth I mente  
With al my myght her fathfully to serve,  
With hert and al to be right diligent,  
The lesse thanke, alas! I can deserve;  
'Thus for my trouthe Daungir doth me sterre,  
For one that shuld my deth of mercy let  
Hath made Despite anew his swerde to whet

Against me, and his arowis to fyle,  
To take vengeance of wilful cruilte,  
And tongis false thorough ther slightly wyle  
Han gone a werre, that wil not stintid be,  
And false Envie, with Wrathe and Envyte,  
Have conspirid against al right and lawe  
Of ther malyce that Trouth shal be yllawe.

And Malèbouche gan first the tale tel,  
To sclaudir Trouth of indignacion,  
And False Reporte so laud yrange the bel  
That Misbylese and False Suspencion  
Have Trouthe ybrought to his dampnacion,  
So that, alas! wrongfully he dyith,  
And Falsenesse nowe his place occupyith,

And entirid is into Trouth's londe,  
And hath thereof the ful possession.  
O rightful God! that first the trouthe fonde,  
Howe maie thou suffre soche oppressioun,  
That Falsed shulde have jurisdiction  
In Troth's right to sle him giltles!  
In his fraunchise he may not live in pees.

Falsly accused, and of his sone forjuged,  
Withoutin answere, while he was absent,  
He damnid was, and maie not be excused,  
For Cruilte yfate in judgèment  
Of Hastinesse without advisement,  
And badde Disdaine do execute anone  
His judgèment in presence of his sone.

Attorney there maye none admittid ben  
To excuse Trouthe, ne a worde to speke;  
To faith or othe the judge ne liste not sene;  
There ne is no gaine but he will be wreke.  
O Lorde of Trouthe! to the I cal and clepe,  
Howe may thou sein thus in thy presence  
Withoutin mercy murdrid Innocence!

Nowe God, that art of trouthe souveraine,  
And seist how I lie for trouthe bounde,  
So sore yknitte in lov's fyrie chaine, (wounde,  
Even at the deth, through gyrtte with many' a  
That lykily are nevir for to founde,  
And for my trouthe am damnid to the deth,  
And not abyde, but drawe along the breth,

Considre' and se in thine eternal right  
Howe that min herte professid whilom was  
For to be trewe with al my ful myght  
Onily to one, the whiche nowe, alas!  
Of volunte without any trespas  
Myne accusours hath takin unto grace,  
And cherishith 'hem my deth to purchase.

What menith this? what is this wondir ure  
Of purveiaunce, yf so I shal it cal,  
Of god of Love, that false 'hem so assure,  
And trewe, alas! downe of the whele ben fal!  
And yet in sothe this is the worst of al,  
That falsed wrongfully' of troth hath name,  
And trouth ayenward of falsed the blame.

'This blindè chaunce, this stormy avinture,  
In love hath mostely his experience,  
For who that doth with trouthe most his cure  
Shal for his mede yfindin moste offence  
That servith Love with al his diligence,  
For who can fainin undir lowly hede  
Ne failith not to findin grace and spede:

For I lovid one ful longe fythe agone  
With all mine herte, and body, and ful might,  
And to be ded my herte can not gone  
From his behest, but hold that he hath hyght;  
Though I be banishid out of her fyght,  
And by her mouth damnid that I shal dey,  
To my behest yet I will er obey:



For evir fithins that the worlde began,  
Who so lyst lokin and in story rede,  
He shal aye findin that the trewe man  
Was put abacke there where as the falshe  
Yfurthered was; for Love takith none hede  
To sle the trew, and hath of 'hem no charge,  
Where as the false gothe frely at ther large.

I take recorde of true Palamedes,  
The gilltless man, the noble worthy knight,  
That evir lovid and had no reles,  
Notwithstanding his manhode and his might,  
Yet Love unto him dyd ful gret unright,  
For aye the bet he dyd in chivalrye  
The more he still was hindrid by envye;

And aye the bett he did in every place,  
Thorough his knighthode and his busy paine,  
The ferdir was he from his ladye's grace,  
For to her mercy might he ner attaine,  
And to his deth he coude it not refraine  
For no daungere, but aye obey and serve  
As he beste coude, plainly tyl that he sterve.

What was the fyne also of Hercules  
For al his conquest and his worthinesse,  
That was of manly strength alone percles?  
For lyke as bokis of him liste expresse  
He set pillers thorough his hye prowesse  
Away at Gades, for to sygnifie  
That no man might him passe in chivalrye;

The which pilliris ferre beyonde Inde  
Beset of golde for a remembraunce,  
And for al that yet was he set behinde  
With 'hem that love lyst feebly to avaunce;  
For him, alas! set last upon a daunce  
Against whom there helpe may no strife.  
And so for al his trowth he losse his life.

Phœbus also, for al his plesaunt lyght,  
Whan that he wonid here in yerthe belowe,  
Unto the verry herte with Venus sight  
Ywoundid was thorough Cupidis bowe,  
And yet his lady lyst him not to knowe:  
Though for the love of her his herte dy'd blede  
She let him go, and toke of him no hede.

What shal I sayin of yonge Pyramus,  
Of trewe Tristram, for al his hye renowne,  
Of Achilles or of Antonius,  
Of Arcyte, or of him Pelomowne?  
What was the ende of ther passhowne,  
But astir sorowe deth and than ther grave?  
Lo, here the guerdon that these lovirs have!

But false Jason with his doublenesse,  
That was untrue at Colchos to Medee,  
And Theseus, rote of unkindnesse,  
And with these two also the false Enee,  
Lo! thus the false evir in one degre  
Haddin in love ther lust and al ther wil,  
And save falshode there was none othir skil.

Of Thebis city eke the false Arcite,  
And falsir Demophon eke for his slouth,  
They had ther lust and al that myght delite  
For al ther falshode and ther gret untrouth;  
Thus evir Love, alas! and that is routhe,  
His false liegis forthirith what he may,  
And sleeth the trewe ungodely day by day:

For trewe Adonis was slayne with the bore  
Amidde the forest in the grené shade,  
For Venus love he feltin al the sore,  
But Vulcanus with her no mercy made,  
The soule chorle had many nightis glade,  
Where Mars Armipotent, her knight and man,  
To syndin mercy comforte none he can.

Also the yonge freshe Hippomenes,  
So lustly fre he was of his corage  
That for to serve with al his hert he ches  
Atalanta, so faire of her visage,  
But Love, alas! quite him so ill his wage,  
With cruil daungir plainly at the laste.  
That with the dethé guerdonlesse he paste.

Lo here, alas! the fine of Love's service!  
Lo howe that Love can his servauntis quite!  
Low how he can his faithful men dispise,  
To sle the trewe men and false to respite!  
Lo howe he dothe the swerde of sorowe byte  
In hert's soche as moste his luste obey,  
To save the false and do the trewe to dey!

For faith, nor othe nor worde, ne assuraunce,  
Trewe mening, nor awaite, nor busynesse,  
Neithir stil porte ne faithful attendance,  
Manhode, ne might in armis, worthinesse,  
Nor pursute of worship nor hie prowesse,  
Nor in straunge landis riding ne travaille,  
Ful lytil or nought in love dothe availe.

Peril of dethé neithir in se ne lande,  
Hungir ne thurst, sorowe ne syknesse,  
Ne gret emprisis for to take on hande,  
Sheding of blode, ne manful hardinesse,  
Ne ofte wounding at sautis by distresse,  
Nor in parting of life, nor deth also,  
Al is for nought; Love taketh no hede therto.

But lesingoures with ther base flattirie,  
Through ther falshe, and with ther doublenesse,  
With talis newe, and many fainid lie,  
By false semblaunt and counterfeit humblese,  
Undir colour depainte with stedfastnesse,  
With fraude covered under a pitous face,  
Acceptid be nowe rathist unto grace,

And can themselvin nowe best magnifie  
With fainid porte and ther presumption;  
They hauncin ther cause with false surquidrie,  
Undir menyng of double entencion,  
To thinkin one in ther opinion,  
And saye' anothir to set them self aloste,  
And hindir trowth, as it is sene ful ofte.

The which thinge I bye nowe al to dere,  
Thankid be Venus and the god Cupide,  
As it is sene by mine oppressid chere,  
And by his arowes that stycken in my side,  
That save my deth I nothings elles abide  
Fro day to day, alas the hardé while!  
Whenevir his darte that hym lyst to file,

My woful herté for to rive atwo,  
For faute of mercy and lack of pite  
Of her that causith al my paine and wo,  
And lyse not onis of grace for to se  
Unto my trowth thorough her cruelte;  
And most of al for this I me complaine,  
That she hath joy to laughin at my paine.



And wilfully she hath my deth yfworne  
 Al gyltlesse, and wote no cause why,  
 Save for the trouthe that I had aforne  
 To her alone to servin faithfully.  
 O god of Love! all unto the I crye,  
 And to thy bynde and double deite  
 Of this my gret wronge I complaine me,

And to thy stormy wilful variance,  
 Inwent with chaunge and gret unstablenessse,  
 Now up now doune, so renning is thy chaunce,  
 That the to trust may be no likirnesse,  
 I wite it nothings but thy doublenessse;  
 And who that is an archir and is blende  
 Markith nothings, but shotith ay by wende;

And for that he hath no discrecion  
 Without advise he let his arowe go;  
 For lacke of sight and also of reson,  
 In his shoting it happith oftin so  
 To hurte his frendist rathir than his fo:  
 So doith this blind god with his sharpe flone,  
 The trew he sleeth and lettith the false gone.

And of his wounding this is worst of al,  
 Whan he hurt doith to so cruil wretche,  
 And makith the fycke for to crie and cal  
 Unto his very foe to be his leche;  
 And harde it is, sothe, for a man to feche,  
 Upon the point of deth in jeopardye,  
 Unto his foe to findin remedie.

Right thus farith it nowe evin by me,  
 That to my foe that gave my herte a wounde  
 Mote askin grace, and mercy, and pite,  
 And namly there where none may be founde,  
 For nowe my fore my leche wil confounde,  
 And god of Kinde so ill hath set mine ure  
 My lyy's foe to have my wounde in cure.

Alas the while nowe that I was borne,  
 Or that I evir sawe the brighte sonne!  
 For nowe I se plaine that ful longe aforne  
 Or I was borne my destiny was sponne  
 By the Sisterne, to sle me yf they conne,  
 For they my deth had shopin or my sherte,  
 Onely for trouth I may it not asterte.

The mighty goddesse also of Nature,  
 That undir God hath the whole govirnaunce  
 Of worldely thinges committid to her cure,  
 Disposid have through her wise purveiaunce  
 To give my lady so moche suffisaunce  
 Of al vertues, and therewithal purvyde  
 To murdre Trouth hath take Daungir to gide:

For bounte, beaute, shap, and femelihede,  
 For prudence, wit, and passingly fairenesse,  
 For benigne porte, glad chere, with lowlyhede,  
 Of womanhede right plenteous largenesse,  
 Dame Nature dyd in her fully empresse  
 Whan she her wrought, and althir last Disdaine  
 To hindir Trouthe she made her chambirlaine;

Whan Mistrust eke and False Suspeccion,  
 With Misbeleve, the madin for to be  
 Chefe of counsaile, to this conclusion,  
 For to exilin Trouthe and eke Pite,  
 Out of her courte to makin Mercy fle,  
 So that Dispite now holdith forthe her reine  
 Through hasty bileve of tales that men feine.

And thus I' am, only for my trouth, alas!  
 Murdrid and slayn with wordis sharp and kene,  
 Although gyltlesse God wote of al trespas,  
 And lye and blede upon this coldè grene,  
 Nowe mercy, swete! mercy, my liv' is quene!  
 And to your grace of mercye yet I preye  
 In your service that your true man may deye.

But if so be that I shal die algate,  
 And that I shal none other mercy have,  
 Yet of my deth let this yben the date,  
 That by your wil I was brought to my grave,  
 Or hastily, if that you lyste me save,  
 My sharpe woundis, that akin so and blede,  
 Of mercy charme and also of womanhede:

For othir charme plainly ne is there none  
 But onely mercy to helpe in this case,  
 For though my woundis blede evir in one  
 My lyfe, my deth, ystandith in your grace;  
 And though my gilte ybe nothings, alas!  
 I aske mercy in all my best entente,  
 Redy to dyin if that ye assente:

For there againist shal I nevir strive  
 In worde ne werkè, plainly I ne may,  
 For levir I have then to be alyve  
 To dye sothly, and it be to her paye,  
 Ye, though it shulde be this same day,  
 Or whan that evir her lyste to devise;  
 Suffisith me to die in your servise. [wight]

Thou, God! that knowest the thought of every  
 Right as it is, in every thing maist se,  
 Yet er I dyd with al my ful myght  
 Lowly I pray to grauntin unto me  
 That ye, lady godely, faire, freshe, and fre!  
 Which onely sle me for defaute of routh,  
 Or that I dyin ye may knowe my trouthe:

For that in sothe inow suffisith me  
 And she it knowe in every circumstaunce,  
 And astir I am wel apaide that she,  
 If that her lyst of deth to do vengeance,  
 Unto me that am undir her lygeaunce;  
 It fit me not her dome to disobeye,  
 But at her luste fulle wilfully to deye.

Withoutin grutchinge or rebellion  
 In wil or wordis wholly I assente,  
 Or any manir contradiction,  
 Fully to be at her commaundment;  
 And if I dyin, in any testament  
 My herte I sende and my spirite also,  
 What so evir she lyste with hem to do.

And aldir last unto her womanhede  
 And to her mercy me I recommaunde,  
 That lye nowe here betwixin hope and drede,  
 Abidinge plainly what she list commaunde,  
 For uttirly this ne is no demaunde;  
 Welcome to me whilis me lastith breth,  
 Ryght at her choise, where it be lyfe or deth.

And in this matir more what might I faine,  
 Sithe in her hand and in her wil is al,  
 Bothe lyfe and deth, my joye and al my peine?  
 And, finally, my heste holdin I shall  
 Tyl my spirite by destinye fatal,  
 Whan that her lystith fro my body wende,  
 Have here my trouth; and thus I make an ende.



And with that worde he gan to fighe as fore,  
Like as his hert yryvin would atwaine,  
And helde his pece, and spake no wordè more;  
But for to se his wo and mortal paine  
The teris gonin fro mine eyin raine  
Ful piteously, for very inwarde rothe  
That I him sawè so long wishyng for troth.

And al this while my selfe I keptè close  
Amonge the bowis, and my selfe gonne hide,  
Tyl at the last the woful man arofe,  
And to a lodge ywent there close beside,  
Where al the May his custome was t'abyde,  
Sole to complainin of his painis kene  
From yere to yere undir the bowis grene.

And for bycause that it drewe to the night,  
And that the sonne his arke diurnal  
Ypassid was, so that his persaunt lyght,  
His brightè bemis and his firemis al,  
Were in the wayis of the watir fal  
Undir the bordure of our ocean,  
His chare of golde his course so swiftly ran;

And while the twilight and the rowis rede  
Of Phœbus light were deaurat alite  
A penne I toke, and gan me fast to spede  
The woful plaintis of this man to write  
All worde by worde right as he did endite;  
Like as I herde and coude him tho reporte  
I have here set, your hertis to disporte.

If ought be misse laye all the wite on me,  
For I am worthy for to bere the blame;  
If any thinge amyffe reportid be  
To make this ditte for to semè lame,  
Through myne unconning for to fain the same  
Like as this man his Complaint dyd expresse,  
I aske you mercy and forgivènesse.

And as I wrote me thought I sawe aserre,  
Aserre in the west, lustily appere  
Esperus, the so bright and godely sterre,  
So glade, so faire, so persaunte, eke of chere,  
I menè Venus, with her bemis clere,  
That hevvy hertis only to releve  
Is wonte of custome for to shewe at eve;

And I as fast fel adowne on my kne,  
And evin thus to her gan I to prey;  
O lady Venus, so feire on to se!  
Let not this sothfast man for his trouthe deye,  
For that joy which thou haddist whan thou leye  
With Mars thy knight when Vulcanus yfonde,  
And with a chaine unvisibile you bonde

Togidir bothè tway, in the same whyle  
That al the courte above celestial  
At your shamè began to laughe and smyle:  
Ah! fairist lady! willy fonde at al,  
Comforte to careful goddis immortal  
Be helping nowe, and do thy diligence  
To let the stremis of thine influence

Discendin downe in furthering of the trouh,  
Namely of 'hem that lye in sorowe bounde;  
Shew now thy might, and on ther wo have routh  
Er that false Daungir sle 'hem and confounde;  
And special let thy might in this be founde  
For to help and socour what that thou may  
The trewe man that in the herbir lay,

And al that trewe are forthir for his sake,  
O glade sterre! o lady Venus myne!  
And cause his lady him to grace to take;  
Her hert of stele to mercy so encline,  
Er that thy bemis go up to declyne,  
And er that thou nowe go fro us adowne,  
For that love which thou haddist to Adowne.

And whan that she wos gone unto her rest  
I rose anone, and home to bed ywente,  
For wery I was, me thought it for the best,  
Desiring thus in al my best entente  
That al trewe men that be with daungir shente  
With mercy may, in relese of ther paine,  
Recurid be er Maye come este againe.

And for that I ne may no lengir wake  
Farewel, ye lovirs al that be trewe,  
Praying to God, and thus my leve I take,  
That er the sonne to morowe be ryfen newe,  
And er he have ayen his rosin hewe,  
That eche of you may havin soche a grace  
His owne lady in armis to embrace;  
I mene thus only, in al honeste,  
Withoutin more, ye may togidir speke  
What so ye lystin at gode liberte,  
That eche may to othir ther herte ybreke,  
On Jelousie only to be awreke,  
That hath so long of malice and envy  
Ywerrid Trouthe with his tiranny.

## L'ENVOY.

Princesse! plesith it your benignite  
This lityl dyte for to have in minde  
Of your womanhede, also for to se  
That your trew man may of you mercy find  
And pite eke, that longe hath be behinde;  
Let him againe be provokid to grace,  
For by my trouthe it is against alle kinde  
That false Daungere should occupye his place.

Go, lityl quaire, unto my liv'is quene,  
And to my very hert'is soveraine,  
And be right glad for that she shal the sene;  
Soche is thy grace: but I, alas! in paine  
And left behinde, and n'ot to whom to plaine,  
For mercy, Ruthe, and Grace, and eke Pyte,  
Exilid be, that I may not attaine  
Recure to finde of mine adversite.

Kkiiij



T H E

## COMPLAINT OF MARS AND VENUS.

GLADITH ye lovirs in the morowe graie;  
Lo Venus risen among yon rowis rede!  
And flouris freshè honour ye this daie,  
For when the sonne uprist then would thei sprede;  
But ye lovirs that lie in any drede  
Flyith, lestè wickid tonguis you aspie:  
Lo, yonde the sonne, the candle of Jelousie!

With teris blewè and with a woundid hert  
Taketh your leve, and with Sainct Ihon to borowe  
Apefith somwhat of your painis smert,  
Time comith eft that cessin shall your sorow;  
The glad night is worthe an hevie morowe.  
Sainct Valentine, a foule thus herde I sing  
Upon thy daie or sonne gan up spring:

Yet sang this foule; I rede you all awake,  
And ye that have not chosen in humble wise,  
Without repenting, chesith now your make,  
Yet at the lest renoveleth your service,  
And ye that have full chosen, as I devise,  
Confermith it perpetually to dure,  
And patientlie takith your avinture.

And for the worship of this highè feste  
Yet woll I in my briddis wise ysing  
The sentence of the Complaint at the lestè  
That wofull Mars made at the departyng  
Fro freshe Venus in a morownyng,  
When Phœbus with his fire torchis rede  
Ransaked hath every lovir in his drede.

Whilome the thre hevenis lorde above,  
As well by hevenliche revelucion  
As by deserte, hath wonne Venus his love,  
And she hath take him in subjeccion,  
And as a maistresse taught him his lesson,  
Commaundyng hym nevir in her service  
He were so bolde no lovir to dispise:

For she forbade hym jelousie at all,  
And crueltie, and bolle, and tirannie;  
She made him at her luste so humble and thrall,  
That when she denied to cast on him her eye  
He toke in pacience to live or die;  
And thus she bridlith him in her manere  
With nothing but with scorning of her chere.

Who reignith nowè in blisse but faire Venus,  
That hath this worthi knight in govirnaunce?  
Who singith nowè but Mars, that servith thus  
The fayre Venus, the causir of plessaunce?  
He bint him to perpetuel obeissaunce,  
And she binte her to lovin him for ever,  
But so be that his trespase it discover.

Thus be they knitte, and reignin as in heven,  
By lokyng most, as it fel on a tide,  
That by ther bothe assent was set a steven  
That Mars shall entre as fast as he may glyde  
Into her nextè palays to abyde,  
Walking his courie til she had hym ytake,  
And he prayed her to haste her for his sake.

Than saide he thus; Myne hert is lady swete!  
Ye knowin wel my myschese in that place,  
For sikirly tyl that I with you mete  
My lyfe stante there in avinture and grace,  
But whan I se the beaute of your face  
There is no drede of deth may do me inserte,  
For al your luste is ese unto mine herte.

She hath so grete compassion of her knight,  
That dwellith in solitude til she come,  
For it stode so that ylike time no wight  
Counsaillid him, ne saide to him welcome,  
That nigh her wit for sorowe was oercome,  
Wherefore she spedd her as fast in her way  
Almoste in one daye as he did in tway.

The gret joye that ywas betwixe hem two  
Whan they be mette there may no tonge tel,  
There is no more but unto bedde they go,  
And thus in joye and blisse I lette hem dwel;  
This worthy Mars, that is of knighthode wel,  
The floure of fairnesse happith in his armes,  
And Venus kyssith Mars the god of Armes.

Sejournid hath this Mars, of which I rede,  
In chambre anydde the palais privily  
A certaine time, til that him fel a drede  
Through Phœbus, that was comin hastily  
Within the palais yatis sturdily  
With torch in honde, of which the stremis bright  
On Venus chambrè knockidin ful light.

# THE COMPLAINT OF MARS AND VENUS.

The chambre there as laye this freshe quene  
Depaintid was with white bolis grete,  
And by the light she knew that shon so shene  
That Phœbus came to bren 'hem with his hete;  
This silly Venus, ny dreint in teres wete,  
Eþbrafith Mars, and said, Alas I die!  
The torch is come that all this worlde wol wrie.

Up sterte tho Mars, him listid not to slepe  
Whan he his lady herdin so complaine,  
But for his nature was not for to wepe,  
In stede of teris from his eyin twaine  
The fire sparelis sprongin out for paine,  
And hente his hauberke that lay him beside;  
Fly wold he nought, ne might him selfin hide.

He throwith on his helme of hugē weight,  
And girt him with his swerde, and in his honde  
His mighty spere, as he was wont to feight,  
He shakith so that it almost to wonde;  
Ful hevy was he to walken ovir londe;  
He may not holde with Venus company,  
But badde her flye, leste Phœbus her espy.

O woful Mars, alas! what maist thou sain?  
That in the palace of thy disturbaunce  
Arte leste behind in paril to be flaine,  
And yet thereto is double thy penaunce,  
For she that hath thine hert in govirnaunce  
Is passid halfe the stremis of thine eyen;  
That you n'ere swift wel maist thou wepe and crien.

Nowe flyeth Venus into Ciclinius tour  
With voidē corse, for fere of Phœbus light;  
Alas! and there ne hath she no socour,  
For she ne fonde ne sey no manir wight,  
And eke as there she had but litil might,  
Wherefore her selvin for to hide and save  
Within the gate she fledde into a cave.

Darke was this cave, and smoking as the hel,  
Nat but two paas within the yate it stode;  
A naturel day in darke I let her dwel.  
Now wol I speke of Mars, furious and wode,  
For sorowe he wolde have seen his hert blode;  
Sith that he might done her no companie  
He ne rought not a mite for to die.

So feble he wext for hete and for his wo  
That nigh he swelt; he might unneth endure;  
He passith but a sterre in dayis two;  
But nertheles for al his hevy armure  
He foloweth her that is his liv'is cure,  
For whose departing he toke gretir yre  
Than he did for his brenning in the fire.

Aftir he walkith softly a paas,  
Complaining that it pite was to here;  
He saide, O lady bright, Venus! alas  
That er so wide a compas is my sphere!  
Alas, whan shal I mete you, herte dere!  
This twelve dayis of April I endure  
Through jelous Phœbus this misfavinture.

Now God helpe sely Venus all alone!  
But as God wolde it happid for to be  
That while that weping Venus made her mon  
Ciclinius riding in his chyvaunche  
Fro Venus, Valanus might this palais se,  
And Venus he salvish and makith chere,  
And her recevith as his frende ful dere.

Mars dwellith forth in his adversite,  
Complaining evir in her departing,  
And what his complaint was remembrith nat,  
And therefore in this lustie morowning,  
As I best can, I wol it saine and sing,  
And aftir that I wol my leve ytake,  
And God yeve every wight joy of his make!

## THE COMPLAINT OF MARS.

THE' ordir of Complaynt requireth skilfully  
That if a wight shall plainin pitously  
Ther mote be cause wherfore that men yplaine,  
Or men may deme he playnith folily  
And caufles : alas ! that am not I,  
Wherfore the grounde and cause of all my paine,  
So as my troublid witte may it attaine,  
I wol reherse, not for to have redresse,  
But to declare my grounde of hevynesse.

The first time, alas ! that I was ywrought,  
And for certain effectis hidir brought  
By him that lordith eche intelligence,  
I yave my trewe service and my thought  
For evirmo, how dere I have it bought !  
To her that is of so gret excellence  
That what wight that shewith first her offence,  
Whan she is wrothe and taketh of him no cure,  
He may not longe in joye of love endure.

This is no fainid matir that I tel;  
My lady is the very fours and wel  
Of beaute, luste, fredome, and gentilnesse,  
Of riche array howe dere so men it sel,  
Of al disporte in whiche men frendly dwel,  
Of love and play, and of beaigne humbleesse,  
Of sowne of instrumentes of al swetnesse,  
And thereto so wel fortunid and thewid  
That through the world her godenes is shewid :

What wondir is than though that I besette  
My service on soche one that may me knette  
To wele or wo, sithe it lithe in her might ?  
Therefore myne herte for er I to her hette,  
Ne trewly for my deth shall I not lette,  
To ben her trewist servant and her knight ;  
I flattir nat, that may wete every wight,  
For this day in her service shall I dye ;  
But grace be I se her nevir with eye.

To whom shal I plainin of my distresse ?  
Who may me help, who may my hert redresse ?  
Shal I complaine unto my lady fre ?  
Nay, certis, for she hath soche hevynesse  
For fere and eke for wo, that as I gesse

In litil time it would her bane ybe,  
But were she safe it were no force of me :  
Alas that evir lovirs mote endure  
For love so many per'ilous avinture !

For though so be that lovirs be as trewe  
As any metal that is forgid newe,  
In many' a case 'hem tidith oft sorowe ;  
Somtime ther ladies wol nat on 'hem rewe,  
Sometimis if that Jelousy it knewe  
They mightin lightly lay ther hed to borowe ;  
Somtime envious folke with tongis horowe  
Depravin' hem : alas ! whom may they plesse ?  
But he be false no lovir hath his ese.

But what availith soch a long sermoun  
Of avinturis of love up and down ?  
I wol retourne and spekin of my paine :  
The point is this, of my distructioun  
My right lady and my salvacioun  
Is in affray, and n'ot to whom to plaine :  
O herte swete ! o lady soverayne !  
For your disese I ought wel swoun and swelt,  
Though I none othir harme ne drede yfelt.

To what fine made the god that sytte so hi  
Beneth him othir love or companye,  
And strainith folke to love maugre ther hed ?  
And then ther joye for aught I can espie  
Ne lastith not the twinkeling of an eye,  
And some have nevir joye til they be ded ;  
What menith this, what is this mistihed ?  
Wherto constrainith he his folke so fast  
Thing to desirin but it should ylast ?

And though he made a lovir love a thing,  
And makith it seme stedfast and during,  
Yet putteth he in it soche misavinture  
That rest ne is ther none in his yeving ;  
And that is wondir that so juste a king  
Ydothe soche hardnesse unto his cature ;  
Thus whethir love breke or ellis dure  
Algatis he that hath with love to done  
Hath ofir wo than chaungid is the mone.



# THE COMPENINT POEMS.

It semeth he hath to lovirs enmyte,  
And lyke a fishe, as men may al day se,  
Baitith his anglehoke with some plesaunce,  
Till many a fishe is wode to that he be  
Cesid therwith, and then at erst hath he  
At his desire, and therwithal mischaunce,  
And though the line ybreke he hath penaunce,  
For ~~with that hoke he woundid is so fore~~  
That he his wagis hath for evirmore.

The broche of Thebis was of soche a kinde,  
So ful of rubyes and of stons of Inde  
That every wight that sette on it an eye  
He wende anone to worthy out of his mynde;  
So fore the beaute would his hert ybynde  
'Til it he had him thought he must ydie;  
And when that it was his than should he drie  
Soche wo for drede aye while that he it had  
That weinigh for the fere he should be mad;

And whan it was fro his possession  
Than had he double wo and passion  
That he so faire a jewil hath forgo;  
But yet this broche, as in conclusion,  
Was not the cause of his confusion,  
But he that wrought it enfortuned it so  
That every wight that had it should have wo,  
And therefore in the worchir was the vice,  
And in the coveitour, that was so nice.

So farith it by lovirs and by me,  
For though my lady have so grete beaute  
That I was mad to I had gette her grace  
She was not cause of mine adversite,  
But he that wroughtin her, as mote I the,

That put so gret a beaute in her face  
That made me coveitin and so purchase  
Myne owne deth; him wite I that I die,  
And mine unwit that er I clambe so hie.

But to you hardy knightis of renowne,  
Sithe that ye be of my devisyowne,  
Al be' I not worthy to so gret a name,  
~~Yet seine these clerks I am your patronne;~~  
Therefore ye ought have some compassion  
Of my disese, and take it nat agame,  
The proudest of you may be made ful tame,  
Wherefore I pray you of your gentillesse  
That ye complainin for mine hevinesse.

And ye, my ladyes, that ben trow and stable,  
~~By way of kinde ye oughtin to be stable~~  
To have pitie of folke that ben in paine;  
Nowe have ye cause to clothin you in fable;  
Sith that your empères the honorable  
Is desolate wel oughtin ye to plaine;  
Nowe shoude your holy teris fal and raine:  
Alas! your honour and your emperice  
Nigh ded for drede ne can her not chevice.

Complainith eke ye lovirs al in fere  
For her that with unfainid humble chere  
Was evir redy to do you socour,  
Complainith her that er hath be you dere,  
Complainith beaute, fredome, and manere,  
Complainith her that endith your labour,  
Complainith thilke ensample of al honour,  
That nevir yet dyd ought but gentillesse;  
Kythith therefore in her some kindenesse.

THE COMPLAINT OF VENUS.

THERE n'ys so high comfort to my plesaunce,  
Whan that I am in my hevynesse,  
As for to have leysir of remembraunce  
Upon the manhode and the worthynesse,  
Upon the trouthe and on the stedfastnes,  
Of him whose I am al while I maye dure;  
There ought to blamin me no creature,  
For every wight praisith his gentillesse.

In him is bonite, wisedome, govirnaunce,  
Well more than any mann's witte can gesse,  
For Grace hath wolde so ferforth him avaunce  
That of knighthod he is parfite richesse,  
Honour honourith him for his noblesse,  
Therto so wel hath fourmid him Nature  
That I am his for er I him ensure,  
For every wight praisith his gentillesse.

And natwithstanding all his suffisaunce  
His gentil herte is of so gret humbleesse  
To me in worde, in werke, and in countenaunce,  
And me to serve is al his besynesse,  
That I am sette in very sykynesse;  
Thus ought I to blisse wel mine avintour,  
Sith that him list me servin and honour,  
For every wight praisith his gentillesse.

Nowe certis, Love, it is right covenable  
That men ful dere aby thy noble thinges,  
As wake abedde and fastin at the table,  
Weping to laugh, and singe in complainynges,  
And downe to castin visage and lokynges,  
Oftin to chaunge visage and countinaunce  
Playe in slepyng, and dremin at the daunce,  
Al the revers of any gladd feling.

Jelousy he hangid by a cable,  
She wolde al knowin through her espiyng,  
There dothe no wight nothing so resonable  
That al n'is harme in her ymagining;  
Thus dere abought is Love in his yeving,  
Whiche ofte he yevith without ordinaunce,  
As sorowe' ynough and litil of plesaunce,  
Al the revers of any glade feling.

A litil tyme his yest is agreable,  
But ful accomberous is the usinge,  
For subtil Jelousy the discevable

Ful oftin tyme ycausith distourbinge;  
Thus ben we evir in drede and suffring:  
In no certaine we languishen in penaunce,  
And have wel ofte many an harde mischaunce,  
Al the revers of any gladd feling.

But certis, Love, I saye not in soche wise  
That for to scape out of your lace I ment,  
For I so longe have ben in your service  
That for to lete of wil I ner assent,  
No force though jelousye me doe tourment;  
Suffisith me to se him whan I may,  
And therefore certis to mine ending day  
To love him best shal me never repent.

And certis, Love, whan I me wel advise  
Of any' estate that man may represent  
Than have ye made me thorough your franchise  
Chesin the best that evir in erthe went;  
Nowe love well, hert, and loke thou never stent,  
And lette the jelous putte it in assaye  
That for no paine ne wol I not say nay;  
To love him best shall I never repent.

O herte! to the it ought ynoughe suffice  
That Love so high a grace hath to you sent  
To chose the worthyist in alle wise,  
And most agreable to mine entent;  
Sekith no ferthir neithir way ne went,  
Sith ye have suffisaunce unto my paye:  
Thus wol I ende this Complaint or this lay;  
To love him best shal I never repent.

L'ENVOYE.

Princes, receveth this complainyng in gre,  
Unto your excellent benigne  
Directe astir my litil suffisaunce,  
For elde, that in my spirite dullith me,  
Hath of epditing al the subtilte  
Weligh berafte out of my remembraunce;  
And eke to me it is a grete penaunce,  
Sith rime in Englishe hath soche scarcite,  
To' folowe worde by worde the curiosite  
Of Granson, flour of 'hem that make in Fraunce.

# THE LAMENTACION

OF MARIE MAGDALEINE.

*This treatise is taken out of St. Origen, wherein Mary Magdalen lamenteth the cruell death of her Saviour Christ.*

**P**LONGED in the wawe of mortall distresse,  
Alas for wo! to whom shal I complein?  
Or who shall devoide this grete heviness  
Fro me', woful Marie, wofull Magalein!  
My Lord is gon; alas! who wrought this tein?  
This sodain chaunce perfith my herte so depe  
That nothing can I do but waile and wepe.

My Lorde is gone that here in grave was laied  
Aftir his grete passion and deth cruell;  
Alas! who hath hym thus again betraied?  
Or what man here aboutin can me tell  
Where he' is become the Prince of Isracil,  
Jesus of Naz'areth, my ghostly succour,  
My parsite love, and hope of all honour!

What creture hath hym hennis caryid,  
Or how might this so sodainly befall?  
I would I had here with him taryid,  
And so should I have had my purpose all:  
I bought ointmentes ful precious and roial,  
Where with I hoped his corps to have anointed,  
But he thus gone my minde is disapointed.

While I therefore advertise and beholde  
This pitous chaunce here in my presence  
Full little marvaile though my hert be coldē,  
Confideryng, lo! my Lord's absence:  
Alas that I so full of negligence  
Should be foundin' because I come so late  
All men maie saie I am infortunate.

Cause of my sorowe you maie undirstonde,  
*Quia tulerunt Dominum meum,*  
An othir is that I ne maie him fonde,  
*Twote nere ubi posuerunt eum;*

Thus I muste bewaile *dolorem meum*  
With hertie wepyng I can no bet deserve  
Till Deth approche my herte for to kerve.

My herte opprest with sodain avinture  
By fervent anguyshe is bewrappid so  
That long this life I ne maie not endure,  
Soche is my pain, soch is my mortall wo;  
Nevirthelesse to what parte shall I go  
In hope to findin myne owne turtill true,  
My liv'is joye, my soverain Lorde Jesu!

Sith all my joye, that I call his presence,  
Is thus removed, now I am full of mone;  
Alas the while I made no providence  
For this mishap! wherefore I sigh and grone:  
Succour to finde to what place might I gone!  
Fain I would to some man my herte breke;  
I n'ot to whom I maie complain or speke.

Alone I stande full sorie and full sad,  
Which hopid to have seen my Lorde and Kyng;  
Small cause have I to be merie or glad  
Remembryng this bittirful departyng:  
In this worlde ne is no creture livyng  
That was to me so gode and gracious,  
His love also then golde more precious.

Full sore I sigh without comfort again,  
There is no cure to my salvacion,  
His brenning love my hert so doth constrain,  
Alas, here is a wofull permutacion!  
Wherof I finde no joye nor consolacion,  
Therefore my pain all onely to confesse  
With deth I fere woll ende my heviness.



This wo and anguish is intollerable;  
If I bide here, life can I not sustaine,  
If I go hence my paines be incurable;  
Where him to finde I knowe no place certain,  
And thus I ne wote of these thingis twain  
Whiche I maie take and which I maie refuse:  
My hert is wounded heron to thinke or muse,

A while I shall stande in this morowning  
In hope if any vision would appere  
That of my love might tell some gode tyding,  
Whiche into joy might chaunge my wepyng cher;  
I trust in his grace and his mercy dere;  
But at the last, though I therewith me kill,  
I shall not spare to waile and wepe my fill.

And if that I die in soche avinture  
I can no more but welcome as my chaunce;  
My bones shal rest here in this sepulture;  
My life, my deth, is at his ordinaunce;  
It shal be tolde in lasting remembraunce:  
Thus to departin is to me no shame,  
And also thereof I am nothing to blame.

Hope against me so hath her course itake  
That there is no more, but thus shall I die:  
I se right well my Lorde hath me forsake,  
But in my conceipt cause know I none why:  
Although he be farre hence and nothing nye  
Yet my wofull herte after hym doeth seke,  
And causeth teres to ren down by my cheke.

Thinking, alas! I have lost his presence,  
Which in this worlde was all my sustinaunce;  
I crie and call with hertic diligence,  
But there is no wight givith attendaunce,  
Me to certifie of myne enquirance,  
Wherefore I will to all this world bewraie  
How that my Lorde is slain and born awaie.

Though that I mourne it ne is no grete wonder,  
Sithe he is all my joye in speciall;  
And nowe I thinke we be so farre asonder  
That hym to se I fere nevyr I shall;  
It helpith no more after hym to call,  
Ne after hym to enquire in any coste:  
Alas! how is he thus ygone and lost?

The Jewis I thinke full of miserie,  
Yset in malice by ther busy cure  
With force and might of gilefull trecherie  
Hath entermind my Lord's sepulture,  
And borne awaie that precious figure,  
Levyng of it nothyng; if thei have doen so  
Marred I am; alas, what shall I do!

With ther vengeaunce infaciabie  
Now have thei hym giltyless entretid so  
That to reporte it is to lamentable,  
Thei bete his bodie from toppe to the toe,  
Nevyr man was yborne that felte soche woe;  
Thei woundid hym, alas! with all grevaunce,  
The blode down reilid in most habundaunce;

The blodie rowis stremed down ovir all,  
Thei him assailid so malicioussie  
With ther scourgis and strokis bestiall;  
Thei sparid not, but smote incessauntlic;  
To satisfie ther malice thei were busie:  
Thei spit in his face, thei smote here and there;  
He groned full sore, and swete many a tere.

Thei crounid hym with thornis sharpe and kene,  
The veinis rent, the blode ran down apace,  
With blode ovircome were bothe his eyen,  
And bolne with strokis was his blessid face;  
Thei hym entretid as men without grace,  
Thei knelid to hym, and made many a scorne;  
Like helhoundis they have hym all to torne:

Upon a mightie crosse in length and brede  
(These turmentours shewid ther cursidnesse)  
Thei nailid hym without pitie or drede,  
His precious blode brast out in largenesse,  
Thei strained hym along as men mercilesse;  
The verie jointes all to myne apparence  
Rived asondir for ther grete violence.

All this I beholding with mine eyen twain  
Stode there beside with rufull attendaunce,  
And er me thought he beyng in that pain  
Lokid on me with dedly countinaunce,  
As he had said in his speciall remembraunce  
Farwell Magdalen, depart must I nedes hens,  
My herte is *tanquam cera liquefens*.

Whiche rufull sight when that I gan beholde  
Out of my witte I almoste tho distraught,  
I tare my here, my handis wrang and folde,  
And of the sight my hert dranke soche a draught  
That many a fall swoounyng there I caught;  
I brusid my bodie fallyng on the grounde,  
Whereof I fele many a grevous wounde.

Then these wretchis, full of all frowardnesse,  
Gave hym to drinke eisell temprid with gall;  
Alas! that poison full of bittirnesse  
My lov'is chere causid them to appall,  
And yet thereof might he not drinke at all,  
But spake these wordis, as him thought it best,  
Fathir of hevin! *consummatus est*.

Then knelid I doune in pain'is outrage,  
Clipping the crosse within myne armis twain,  
His blode distillid doune on my visage,  
My clothis eke the droppis did distain;  
To have dyid for hym I would full fain,  
But what shoulde it availe if I did so  
Sith he' is *suspensus in patibulo*?

And thus my Lorde full dere was all disgised  
With blode, and pain, and woundis many one,  
His veinis brast, his jointis all to rived,  
Partying asondir the fleshe fro the bone;  
But I sawe that he was not there alone,  
For *cum iniquis deputatus est*,  
Not like a man but like a leprous best.

A blinde knight men ycallid Longias  
With a spere aproched to my Sovèrain,  
Lansying his side full pitoussie, alas!  
That his precious herte he clave in twain,  
The purple blode eke fro the hertis vain  
Dounc railid right fast in moste rufull wise,  
With cristal water brought fro Paradise.

When I behelde this wofull passion,  
I wote not how, by sodain avinture  
My hert was perfed with very compassion,  
That in me remained no life of nature,  
Strokis of dethe I felt without mesure,  
My deth'is wounde I caught with woe oppress,  
And brought to point as my hert shuld ybrest.

The wounde, the hert, and blode, of my darling  
Shal never slide fro my memorial,  
The byttir paines also of tourmenting  
Within my soule be gravin principal;  
The spere, alas! that was so sharpe withall  
So thrillid my herte, as to my feling,  
That body and soule were at departing.

Sone as I might I releved up againe,  
My brethe I coude not very wel restore,  
Feling my self drownid in so grete paine,  
Both body and soule me thought wer al to tore,  
Violent fallis grevid me right fore;  
I wept, I bledde, and with my selfe I fared  
As one that for his life nothing had cared.

I loking up unto that rufull rode  
Sawe first the visage pale of that figure,  
But so pitous a sight spottid with blode  
Sawe nevir yet no living creature;  
So it excedid the boundes of mesure,  
That mann's minde with al his wittis five  
Is nothing able that paine to discrive.

Than gan I there min armis to unbrace,  
Up lifting my handis ful mourningly  
I sighid and fore sobbid in that place,  
Both hevin and erthe might have herde me crie  
Weping, and said Alas! incessauntly,  
Ah, my swete herte, my gostly paramour!  
Alas, I may nat thy body socour!

O blessid Lorde! how sierce and how cruel  
These cursid wightis now hath the yslaine,  
Kerving, alas! thy body eviridel  
Wounde within wounde, full byttir is thy pain;  
Nowe wolde God that I might to the attaine  
To naile my body fast unto thy tre,  
So that of this paine thou mightist go fre!

I can nat reporte ne make reherfaile  
Of my demening with the circumstaunce,  
But wel I wote the spere with every naile  
Thirld my soule by inwarde ressemblaunce,  
Which nevir shall out of my remembraunce;  
During my life it woll cause me to waile  
As ofte as I remembre that bataile.

Ah, ye Jewes! worse than doggis rabiate,  
What moved you thus crailly him to' aray?  
He nevir displefed you, nor caused debate,  
Your love and true hertes he conveytid aye;  
He preched, he teched, he shewid the right way,  
Wherefore ye lyke tyrantes wode and way-warde,  
Nowe have him thus yslaine for his reward.

Ye ought to have remembrid one thing special,  
His favour, grace, and his magnificence;  
He was your prince borne, and lorde ovir all,  
Howe be it ye toke him in smal reverence;  
He was ful meke in suffring your offence,  
Nertheless ye devoured him with one assent,  
As hungry wolves doth the lambe innocent.

Where was your pite, 'o peple mercilesse!  
Arming your selfe with falsheid and trefon,  
On my Lorde ye have shewid your wodenesse,  
Like no men but bestis without reson;  
Your malyce he suffrid for the seson;  
Your paine wol come, ne thinke it nat to slacke;  
*Man without mercy of mercy shal lacke.*

O traitours and maintainirs of madnesse!  
Unto your foly' I ascribe al my paine,  
Ye have me deprived of joye and gladnesse  
So deling with my Lorde and sovaine;  
Nothing ne shulde I nede thus to complaine  
If he' had lived in pece and tranquillite  
Whom ye have slaine through your iniquite.

Farewel, your noblenesse that somtime did raine!  
Farewel your worship, your glory, and fame!  
Hereaftir to lyve in hate and disdaine  
Marvaile ye not; for your trespase and blame.  
Unto shame is tournid al your gode name;  
Upon you now wol wondir every nation  
As peple of a most vile reputation.

These wickid wretchis, these houndes of hel,  
As I have tolde plaine here in this sentence,  
Were not content my dere love thus to quel,  
But yet they must embesile his presence,  
As I perceive; by covert violence  
They have him conveyed to my displeasure,  
For here is laste but nakid sepulture:

Wherefore of trouth and rightfull judgement,  
That ther malice againe maye be acquitted,  
Aftir my verdite and avisement,  
Of false murdre they shullin be endited,  
Of theft also, which shal not be respited,  
And in al haste they shal be hanged and drawe;  
I wol my selfe plede this cause in the lawe.

Alas! yf I with a trewe attendaunce  
Had styl abiddin with my Lord's corse,  
And kept it stil with trewe perseveraunce,  
Than had nat befall this woful devorse;  
But as for my paine welcome, and no force;  
This shal be my songe where so er I go,  
Departing is the grounde of al my wo.

I se right wel now in my painis smerte  
There is no wounde of so grevous dolour  
As is the wounde of my careful herte;  
Sithin I have losse thus my paramour  
Al my swetnesse is tournid into sour;  
Mirthe to my herte nothing ne maie convey  
But he that bereth therof bothe locke and key.

The joye excellent of blissed Paradise  
Maye me, alas! in no wise re-comforte,  
Songe of angel nothing may me suffice,  
As in min herte nowe to make disporte;  
Al I refuse but that I might resorte  
Unto my love, the wel of godelihede;  
For whose longing I trowe I shal be ded.

Of painful labour and tourment corporall  
I ne make therof none exception,  
Painis of hel I wol passe ovir al  
My love to finde in myne affection;  
So grete to him is my delectacion,  
A thousande timis martrid wolde I be  
His blessid body ones if I might se.

About this worlde, so large in all compace,  
I shal not spare to renne my life during,  
My fete also shal not rest in one place  
Tyl of my love I may here some tiding,  
For whose absence my handis nowe I wring;  
To thinke on him cese shal nevir my minde;  
O gentill Jesa! where shal I the finde?



Jerusalem I wol ferche place fro place,  
 Sion, the Vale of Josaphath also,  
 And if I finde him not in al this space  
 By Mount Olivet to Beth'any woll I go;  
 These waies wol I wandir and many mo,  
 Nazareth, Bethleem, Mountana Jude;  
 No travaile shal me paine him for to fe.

His blissid face if I might se and finde  
 Serche I wolde every colte and countrey,  
 The fardist parte of Egypt or hote Inde  
 Shulde be to me but a litil journey.  
 Howe is he thus gone or takin away!  
 If I knewe the ful trouth and certenté  
 Yet from this care relefid might I be.

Into wildirnesse I thinke best to go,  
 Sith I can no more tidinges of him here,  
 There may I my lyfe ledin to and fro,  
 There may I dwel and to no man apere;  
 To towne ne village woll I not come nere;  
 Alone in wodes, in rockes, and in caves depe,  
 I may at mine owne will both waile and wepe.

Myn eyin twaine withoutin variaunce  
 Shal nevir cese, I promise faithfully,  
 There for to wepin with gret aboundaunce  
 Byttir teris renning incessantly,  
 The whiche teris medlid ful petously  
 With the very blode er shall renne also,  
 Expressing in mine hert the grevous wo.

Worldely fode and sustenaunce I desire none,  
 Soche living as I finde soch wol I take,  
 Rotis that growin on the craggy stone  
 Shal me suffice, with watir of the lake;  
 Than thus may I say for my Lord's sake,  
*Euerunt mihi lacryma mea*  
*In deserto panes, die ac nocte.*

My body to clothe it makith no force,  
 A mourning mantil shal be sufficient,  
 The grevous woundis of his pitous corse  
 Shal be to me a ful royal garnement,  
 He departid thus I am best content;  
 His crosse with nailis and scourgis withal  
 Shal be my thought and paine especial.

Thus wol I live, as I have here ytolde,  
 If I may any longe time endure,  
 But I fere Deth is ovir me so bolde  
 That of my purpose I can not be sure;  
 My painis encrefin without mesure,  
 For of longe lyfe who can lay any reson?  
 Al thing is mortal, and hath but a seson.

I sigh ful fore, and it is ferre yfet;  
 Myne hert I fele now bledith inwardly,  
 The bloody teres I may in no wise let;  
 Sith of my paine I finde no remedye:  
 I thank God of al if that I nowe dye;  
 His will perfourmid I holde me content;  
 My soule let him have that hath it me lent,

For lengir to endure it 'is intollerable,  
 My woful herte is inflamid so huge,  
 That no sorow to myne is comparable,  
 Sith of my minde I ne finde no refuge,  
 Yet I him require as a rightful juge  
 To devoide fro me the inwarde sorowe,  
 Lest that I live not to the nexte morowe.

Within mine hert is impressid ful fore  
 His royal forme, his shappe, his semelines,  
 His porte, his chere, his godenes evirmore,  
 His noble persone, with al gentilnes;  
 He is the welle of alle parfitnes,  
 The very Redemir of al mankind,  
 Him love I best with herte, and soule, and minde.

In his absence my painesful bittir be,  
 Right wel I may it fele nowe inwardely,  
 No wondir is though they hurte or fle me;  
 They causin me to crie so rusfully;  
 Myne herte oppressed is so wondirfully  
 Onely for him, which so is bright of ble,  
 Alas, I trowe I shal him nevir se!

My joye is translate full farre in exile,  
 My myrthe is chaungid into paynis colde;  
 My lyfe I think endurith but a while;  
 Anguyshe and paine is that that I beholde,  
 Wherfore my handis thus I wringe and folde;  
 Into this grave I loke, I cal, I pray,  
 Deth remainith and life is borne away.

Now must I walk and wandir here and there,  
 God wot to what partis I shal me dresse,  
 With quaking hert wepinge many a tere,  
 To seke out my love and all my swetnes;  
 I wolde he wyft what mortal hevines  
 About min herte renewith more and more,  
 Than wolde he nat kepe pite long in store.

Withoutin him I may not longe endure,  
 His love so fore workith within my brest,  
 And er I wepe before this sepulture  
 Sighing ful fore, as mine herte shal de ybrest;  
 During my lyfe I shal obtaine no rest,  
 But mourne and wepe where that evir I go,  
 Making complaint of al my mortal wo.

Fast I crie, but there is no audience,  
 My comming hidir was him for to plesse,  
 My soule opprest is here with his absence;  
 Alas, he list not set mine herte in esse!  
 Wherfore to paine my selfe with al disese  
 I shal not spare tyl he take me to grace,  
 Or ellis I shal sterve here in this place.

But onis if that I might with him speke  
 It were al my joy, with parfit plesaunce;  
 So that I might to him myne herte breke  
 I shulde anone devoide al my grevaunce,  
 For he' is the blisse of very recreaunce;  
 But now, alas! I can nothing do so,  
 For in stede of joy naught have I but wo.

His noble corse within min hert's rote  
 Depe is ygravid, whiche shal nevir flake;  
 Nowe is he gone, to what place I ne wote,  
 I mourne, I wepe, and al is for his sake;  
 Sithin he is paste here a vowe I make  
 With hertely promise, and therto me binde,  
 Nevir to cese til that I may him finde.

Unto his mothir I thinke for to go,  
 Of her haply some comforte may I take;  
 But one thinge yet me ferith and no mo,  
 Yf that I any mencion of him make  
 Of my wordis she wolde trimble and quake;  
 And who coude her blame, she having but one?  
 The sonne borne away the mothir wol mone.



# THE LAMENTACION OF MARIE MAGDALEINE.

Sorowes many hath she suffrid trewly  
Sith that she first conceivid him and bare,  
And seven thinges there be most specially  
That drownith her hert in sorowe and care,  
Yet lo! in no wise maye they not compare  
With this one now, the whiche if that she knew  
She wolde her painis everichone renewe.

Gret was her sorowe by mennis sayng  
Whan in the temple Simeon Justus  
Shewid to her these wordis, prophesieng,  
*Tuam animam pertransibit gladius;*  
Also whan Herode, that tyraunt furious,  
Her childe purtuid in evry place;  
For his life went neithir mercy ne grace.

She mouruid sore whan that she knewe him gone;  
Full longe she sought or she him founde ayen;  
Whan he went to deth his crosse him upon  
It was to her sight a full rewful paine;  
Whan he hong theron betwene thevis twaine,  
And the spere unto his herte thrust was right,  
She swoonid, and to the grounde there ypyght:

Whan ded and bloody in her lappè lay  
His blissed body, bothe handes and fete al tore,  
She cryid out and said, Now, welaway!  
Thus arayid was nevyr man before:  
Whan hast was made his body to be bore  
Unto sepulture here for to remaine  
Unnethis for wa she coude her sustaine.

The sorowes seven like swerdes every one  
His mothir's herte woundid fro syde to syde,  
But if she knewe her sonne thus ygone  
Out of this worlde she shuld with deth yride,  
For care she coude no lengir here abide,  
Having no more joy nor consolacioun  
Than I here standing in this stacioun:

Wherfore her to se I dare nat presume;  
Fro her presence I wol my selfe refraine;  
Yet had I levir to dye and consume  
Then his mothir shulde have any more paine,  
Nethèles her sonne I wolde se ful faine;  
His presence was very joye and swetnes,  
His absence is but sorowe and hevinesse.

There is no more, sith I may him nat mete  
Whom I desire above al othir thing;  
Nede I must take the with the swete,  
For of his noble corse I have no tiding;  
Ful oftyn I crie, and my handis wring.  
Myne herte, alas! relentith al in paine,  
Whiche wol ybrastin both sinewe and vaine.

Alas, howe' unhappy was this woful hour  
Wherin is thus mispendid my service!  
For min entent and eke my true labour  
To none effecte may come in any wise;  
Alas! I thinke if he do me dispise,  
And list not take my simple observaunce,  
There is no more, but deth is my finaunce.

I have him called, *sed non respondet mihi;*  
Wherfore my mirth is tournid to mourning;  
O, my dere Lord! *quid mali feci tibi,*  
That me to comforte I finde no' ertly thing?  
Alas! have compassion of my crying;  
Yf fro me *faciem tuam abscondis*  
There is no more but *consumere me vis.*

VOL. I.

Within myne hert is groundid thy figure,  
That al this world's horrible tourment  
May' it not awage, it' is so without mesure,  
It is so brenning, it is so fervent:  
Remembir, Lorde, I have ben diligent.  
Evir the to plesse onely and no mo;  
Myne herte is with the where so er I go.

Therefore, my dere darling! *trabe me post te;*  
And lette me not standin thus desolate;  
*Quia non est qui confoletur me,*  
Myne herte for the is so disconsolate,  
My paines also nothing me moderate;  
Nowe if it list the to speke with me' alyve  
Come in hast; my herte asondir will rive.

To the I profr, lo! my pore service,  
The for to plesse afir mine owne entent;  
I offre' here, as in devout sacrifice,  
My boxe replete with precious oyntment,  
Myne eyin twaine weping sufficient,  
Myne herte with anguisse fulfilled is, alas!  
My soule eke redy for love out to pas.

Naught ellis have I the to plesse or pay,  
For if min herte were golde or precious stone  
It shulde be thine without any delay,  
With hertely chere thou shulde have it anon;  
Why suffrist thou me than to stande alone?  
Thou hast I trowe my weping in disdain,  
Or els thou knowist nat what is my paine.

If thou withdrawe thy noble daliaunce  
For ought that evir I displeid the,  
Thou knowest right wel 'tis but ignorauce,  
And of no knowlege for a certainte;  
If I have offendid, Lorde, forgive it me;  
Gladde I am for to make ful repentaunce  
Of all thing that hath ben to thy grevaunce.

Myne herte, alas! swellith within my brest,  
So sore oppreit with anguisse and with payne,  
That al to pecis forsothe it wol brest  
But if I se thy blyssid corse againe;  
For lyfe ne deth I can nat me refraine:  
If that thou make delay thou maist be sure  
Myne hert wol lepe into this sepulture.

Alas, my Lorde, why farest thou thus with me!  
My tribulation yet have in minde;  
Where is thy mercy? where is thy pite?  
Whiche evir I trustid in the to finde:  
Sometime thou were to me both gode and kinde;  
Lette it plesse the my prayir to accept,  
Whiche with my teiris I have here bewept.

On me thou oughtist to have very routh,  
Sith for the onely is al this mourning,  
For sith I to the plightid firste my trouthe,  
I nevyr varyid with discording,  
And that knowist thou best my owne darling!  
Why constrainist thou me thus for to wayle?  
My wo forsothe can the nothing availe.

I have endurid without variaunce,  
Right as thou knowist, thy lovyr just and trew,  
With hert and thought aye at thyn ordinaunce,  
Lyke to the saphire, alwaye in one hewe;  
I nevyr woulde changin the for no newe:  
Why withdrawist thou the fro my presence,  
Sithins al my thought is for thine absence?

## THE LAMENTACION OF MARIE MAGDALEINE.

With hert intier, swete Lorde! I crie to the,  
 Incline thine eres to my peticioun,  
 And come *velociter exaudi me*;  
 Remembre mine hert's disposicioun,  
 It may not endure in this condicioun,  
 Therefore out of these paines libera me,  
 And where thou arte *pone me juxta te*.

Let me beholde, o Jesu! thy blisfed face,  
 Thy faire thy glorious angelike visage;  
 Bowe thine eris to my complaint, alas!  
 For to convey me out of this wode rage:  
 Alas, my Lorde! take fro me this damage;  
 To my desire for mercy condescende,  
 For non but thou may my grevaunce amende.

Now yet, gode Lorde! I the besech and pray,  
 As thou raised my brothir Lazarous  
 From deth to life, that upon the fourth day  
 Came ayen in body and soule precious,  
 As gret a thing maist thou shewe unto us  
 Of thy self by powir of thy godhed  
 As thou dyd of him lyinge in grave ded.

Myne hert is woundid with thy charite,  
 It brennith, it flamith, incessantly;  
 Come, my dere Lorde! *adjuvandum me*;  
 Nowe be not longe, my paine to multiplie,  
 Lest in the mene time I departe and die:  
 In thy grace I put hope and confidence  
 To do as plesith thy magnificence.

Floodis of dethe and tribulacioun  
 Into my soule I sele entrid ful depe,  
 Alas, that here' is no consolacioun!  
 Ewir I waile, ewir I mourne and wepe,  
 And sorow hath woundid myn hert ful depe:  
 O dere love! no marvaile though that I die,  
*Saritte tua infixæ sunt mihi.*

Wandringe in this place, as in wildirnesse,  
 Ne comferte have I ne yet assuraunce,  
 Desolate of joys, replete with saintnesse,  
 No' answere receving of mine enquirance,  
 Myne herte also grevid with displeaunce,  
 Wherefore I may saye, O Deus, Deus!  
*Non est dolor sicut dolor meus.*

Myne hert expressith *quod dilexi multum*,  
 I may nat endure although I wold faine,  
 For now *solum superest sepulchrum*,  
 I know it right wel by my huge paine,  
 And thus for love I may not life sustaine;  
 But, o my God! I muse what aylith the,  
*Quid sic repente precipitas me.*

Alas! I fe' it wil none othirwise be,  
 Nowe must I take my leve for evirmore,  
 'This fore paine hath almost discomfite me,  
 My love's corse I can in no wise restore;  
 Alas to this wo that er I was bore!  
 Here at this tombe nowe must I die and starve,  
 Deth is aboutin my hert for to carve.

My testament I wol begin to make;  
 To God the Fathir my soule I commende,  
 To Jesu my love, that died for my sake,  
 My herte and al both I gyve and ysende,  
 In whose dere love my lyfe ymakith ende,  
 My body also to this monument  
 I here bequeeth, bothe boxe and oyntment.

Of al my willes, lo! nowe I make the last;  
 Right in this place within this sepulture  
 I wold be buried whan I'm ded and past,  
 And on my grave I wol have this scripture,  
*Here within restith a gostly creature,  
 Christis true lovir, Mary Magdalaine,  
 Whose herte for love ybracke in pecis twaine.*

Ye vertuous women, tendir of nature,  
 Ful of pite and of compassion,  
 Resorte I pray you to my sepulture  
 To singe my dirge with grete devocion,  
 Shewe your charite' in this condicion;  
 Sing with pite and let your hertis wepe,  
 Remembring I am ded, and layd to slepe:

Than whan that ye begin to parte me fro,  
 And endid have your mourning observaunce,  
 Remembre where so evir that ye go  
 Alway to serche and make due enquirance  
 Aftir my love, mine hert's sustinauce,  
 In every towne and in every village,  
 If ye may here of his noble ymage;

And if it happe by any grace at laste  
 That ye my trew love finde in any cost,  
 Say that his Magdalaine is ded and paste,  
 For his pure love hath yeldid up the gost;  
 Say that of al thing I lovid him most,  
 And that I ne might not this deth eschewe,  
 My painis so fore dyd evir renewe.

And in token of love perpetual,  
 Whan I am buried in this place present,  
 Take out myne hert, the very rote and al,  
 And close it within this boxe of oyntment,  
 To my dere love make therof a present,  
 Kneling downe with wordis lamentable  
 Do your message, speke faire and trefable:

Say that to him my felfin I commende  
 A thousand timis, and with herte so fre  
 'This povir token say to him I sende,  
 Plesith his godenesse to take it in gre,  
 It is his owne of right, it is his fe,  
 Whiche he askid whan he said longe before  
 Gyve me thy hert and I desire no more.

Adue, my Lorde! my love so faire of face!  
 Adue, my turtle dove so fresh, so hue!  
 Adue, my mirth! adue, my solace!  
 Adue, alas! my Saviour Lorde Jesu!  
 Adue, the gentillist that er I knewe!  
 Adue, my most excellent paramour!  
 Fairir than rose, swetir than lylly flour!

Adue, my hope of plesure eternal!  
 My lyfe, my welth, and my prosperite!  
 Mine herte of golde, my perle oriental!  
 Myne adamant of parsite charite!  
 My chese refuge and my felycite!  
 My comferte and my recreacioun!  
 Farewel, my perpetual salvacioun!

Farewel, mine emperour celestial!  
 And most beautiful prince of al mankinde!  
 Adue, my Lord! of hert moste lyberal!  
 Farewel, my swetist bothè soule and minde!  
 So loving a spouse shal I nevir finde!  
 Adue, my soveraine, very gentilman!  
 Farewel, dere herte! as hertely as I can.

THE LAMENTACION OF MARIE MAGDALEINE.

Thy wordes eloquente flowinge in swetnesse  
Shal no more, alas! my minde recomforte,  
Wherefore my life must ende in bittirnesse,  
For in this worlde shal I nevir resorte  
To the, whiche was mine hevinly disporte;  
I se, alas! it wol none othir be:

Nowe farewell, the grounde of al dignite!

Aduc, the fairist that evir was bore!

Alas, I may nat se your blessid face!

Nowe welaway that I shal se no more

Thy blessid visage, so replete with grace,

Wherin is printid my parfite solace!

Aduc, mine hert'is rote and al for ever!

Nowe farith wel, I must from the discover!

My soule for anguishe is nowe ful thrusty;

I faint, I faint, right sore for hevines;

My Lorde, my spouse! *cur me dereliquisti?*

Sith I for the suffre al this distresse

What causith the to seme thus mercilesse?

Sith it the pleseth of me to make an ende

*In manus tuas* my spirite I commende.



# THE FLOURE AND THE LEAFE.

WRITTEN BY GEOFFERY CHAUCER.

## THE ARGUMENT.

A gentlewoman out of an arbour in a grove seeth a great company of knights and ladies in a dance upon the green grasse, the which being ended, they all kneel down and do honour to the daisie, some to the Flower, and some to the Leaf: afterward this gentlewoman learneth by one of these ladies the meaning hereof, which is this; they which honour the Flower, a thing fading with every blast, are such as look after beauty and worldly pleasure, but they that honour the Leaf, which abideth with the root notwithstanding the frosts and winter storms, are they which follow virtue and during qualities, without regard of worldly respects.

WHEN that Phœbus his chair of gold so hie  
Had whirlid up the sterrie sky aloft,  
And in the Boke was entrid certainly,  
When shouris fote of rain descendid soft,  
Causing the ground felè timis and oft  
Up for to give many an wholesome air,  
And every plain was yclothid faire

With newè grene, and makith smale flours  
To springin here and there in field and mede,  
So very gode and wholesome be the shours,  
That they renewin that was old and dede  
In wintir time, and out of every sède  
Springith the herbè, so that every wight  
Of this seson wexith richt glade and licht;

And I so glade of the seson swete,  
Was happid thus; upon a certain night  
As I lay in my bed slepe full unmete  
Was unto me, but why that I ne might  
Rest I ne wist, for there n'as erthly wight  
[As I suppose] had more of hertis ese  
Than I, for I n'ad sicknesse nor disese;

Wherefore I mervaile pretty of my self  
That I so long withoutin slepe lay,  
And up I rose thre houres aftir twelfe,  
About the springing of the gladfome day,  
And on I put my gear and nine aray,  
And to a plesaunt grove I gan to pas  
Long or the bright sonne uprisin was,

In which were okis grete, freight as a line,  
Undir the which the grasse so freshe of hew  
Was newly sprong, and an eight fote or nine  
Every tre well fro his fellow grew,  
With braunchis brode ladin with levis new,  
That sprongin out agen the sonne shene  
Some very rede, and some a glad light grene,

Which [as me thought] was a right plesaunt  
And eke the birdis songis for to here [sight;  
Would have rejoicid any erthly wight,  
And I, that couth not yet in no manere  
Herin the nightingale of all the yere,  
Full busily herk'nid with hert and ere  
If I her voice perceve could any where:

## THE FLOURE AND THE LEAF.

And at the last a path of litil brede  
I found, that gretly had not usid be,  
For it forgrowin was with grafs and wede,  
That well unnethis a wight might it se;  
Thought I, this path some whidir doth parde;  
And so I followid till it me brought  
To a right plesant herbir wel ywrought,  
Which that benchid was, and with turfis new  
Freshly turvid, whereof the grene grafs  
So small, so thick, so short, so fresh of hew,  
That most like to grene woll wot I it was;  
The hegge also, that yedin in compas,  
And closid in all the grene herbere,  
With sycamor was fet and eglatere

Within, in fere so well and cunningly,  
That every braunch and lese grew by mesure  
Plain as a bord, of an height by and by;  
I se never a thing [I you ensure]  
So well ydone, for he that toke the cure  
It for to make [I trowe] did all his peine  
To make it pas all tho that men have seine.

And shapin was this herber rose and all  
As is a pretty parlour, and also  
The hegge as thick as is a castil wall,  
That who that list without to stond or go,  
Thogh he wold all day pryin to and fro  
He should not se if there were any wight  
Within or no, but one within well might

Perceve all tho that ydin there without  
Into the field, that was on every side  
Cover'd with corn and grafs, that out of doubt  
Tho one would sekin all the world wide  
So rich a feld could not be espyde  
Upon no cost, as of the quantity,  
For of all gode thing there was plenty.

And I, that all these plesant sightis se,  
Thought suddainly I felt so swete an air  
Of the eglenterè, that certainly  
There is no hert [I deme] in such dispair,  
Ne yet with thoughtis froward and contraire  
He might be, but it should sone have bote  
If it had onis to this favour sote.

And as I stode and cast aside mine eye  
I was ware of the fairer medler tre  
That evir yet in all my life I se,  
As full of blossomis as it might be,  
Therein a goldfinch leping pretily  
From bough to bough, and as him list he ète  
Here and there of buddis and flouris swete.

And to the herbir side was adjoyning  
This fairist tre of which I have you told,  
And at the last the bird began to sing  
[Whan he had etin what he etin would]  
So passing swetely that by many fold  
It was more plesant than I couth devise;  
And whan his song was endid in this wise

The nightingale with so mery a note  
Answerid him, that alle the world yrong  
So suddainly, that as it were a sote  
I stode astonied, and was with the song  
Thorow ravishid, that till late and long  
I ne wist in what place I was ne where,  
Ayen methought the song e'en by mine ere :

Wherefore I waited about busily  
On every side if I her might se,  
And at the last I gan full well espy  
Where she sate in a fresh grene laury tre,  
On the furthir side evin right by me,  
That gave so passing a delicious smell,  
According to the eglantere full well;

Whereof I had so inly grete plesure,  
As methought I surely ravishid was  
Into Paradise, wherein my desire  
Was for to be, and no ferthir to pas  
As for that day, and on the sote grafs  
I sat me down, for as for mine entent  
The birdis song was more convenient

And more plesant to me by many fold  
Than mete or drink, or any othir thing,  
Thereto the herbir was so fresh and cold,  
The wholsome favours eke so comforting,  
That [as I demid] sith the beginning  
Of the world was never seen er than  
So plesant a ground of none erthly man.

And as I sat the birdis herkening thus,  
Methought that I herd voicis suddainly,  
The most swetist and most delicious  
That evir any wight I trow trewly  
Herdin in ther life, for the armony  
And swete accord was in so gode musike  
That the voicis to angels most were like.

At the last out of a grove evin by  
[That was right godely and plesant to sight]  
I se where there came singing lustily  
A world of ladies, but to tell aright  
Ther beauty grete lyith not in my might,  
Ne ther array; nevirthelès I shall  
Tell you a part, tho' I speke not of all :

The surcots white of velvet well fitting  
They werin clad, and the semis eche one,  
As it werin a mannir garnishing,  
Was set with emeraudis one and one  
By and by, but many a richè stone  
Was set on the purfils out of dout  
Of collours, sleeves, and trainis, round about ;

As of grete perlis round and orient,  
And diamondis fine and rubys red,  
And many othir stone of which I went  
The namis now; and everich on her hede  
A rich fret of gold, which withoutin drede  
Was full of stately rich stonys set,  
And every lady had a chapelet

On ther hedis of braunchis fresh and grene,  
So wele ywrought, and so marvelously,  
That it was a right noble sight to sene,  
Some of laurir, and some full plesantly  
Had chapèlets of wodebind, and sadly  
Some of agnus castus werin also,  
Chaplets fresh; but there were many of tho

That dauncid and eke song full sobirly,  
But all they yede in maner of compace;  
But one there yede in mid the company  
Sole by herself; but all follow'd the pace  
That she kept, whose hevinly figured face  
So plesant was, and her wele shape person,  
That of beauty she past them everichone

## THE FLOURE AND THE LEAF.

And more richly beseen by manyfold  
 he was also in every manir thing;  
 Upon her hede full plesaunt to behold  
 A coron of gold rich for any king,  
 A braunch of agnus castus eke bering  
 In her hand, and to my sight trewily  
 She lady was of all the company;

And she began a roundell lustily  
*That Sus le foye de vert moy men call*  
*Sine & mon joly cœur est endormy,*  
 And than the company answerid all,  
 With voicis swete entunid and so small,  
 That methought it the swetest melody  
 That evir I herd in my life sothly.

And thus they all came dauncing and singing  
 Into the middis of the mede echone  
 Before the herbe where I was sitting,  
 And God wot I thought I was well bigone,  
 For than I might avise them one by one  
 Who fairist was, who best could dance or sing,  
 Or who most womanly was in all thing.

They had not dauncid but a little throw  
 When that I herd not fer of sodainly  
 So grete a noise of thundering trumpis blow  
 As though it should have departid the skie,  
 And aftir that within a while I sie  
 From the same grove where the ladies came out  
 Of men of armis coming such a rout

As all men on erth had ben assemblid,  
 On that place well horrid for the nonis,  
 Stering so fast that all the erth tremblid;  
 But for to speke of richis and stonis,  
 And men and horse, I trow the large wonis  
 Of Pretir John, ne all his tresory,  
 Might not unneth have bought the tenth party.

Of their array whoso list to here more,  
 I shall reherse so as I can a lite,  
 Out of the grove that I speke of before  
 I se come first, all in their clokis white,  
 A company that wore for ther delite  
 Chapèlets fresh of okis serial;  
 But newly sprong, and trumpets were they all;

On every trump hanging a brode bannere  
 Of fine tartarium, full richly bete,  
 Every trumpet his lord's armis bere  
 About ther neckis, with grete perlis sete,  
 Collaris brode, for cost they wou'd not lete,  
 As it would seem, for ther scotchons echone  
 Were set about with many a precious stone;  
 Ther horsis harneis was all white also;

And aftir them next in one company  
 Camin kingis at armis and no mo,  
 In clokis of white cloth with gold richly,  
 Chaplets of grene on ther heds on hye,  
 The crownis that they on ther scotchons bere  
 Were set with perl, and ruby, and saphere,

And eke grete diamondis many one;  
 But all ther horsis harneis and other gere  
 Was in a sute according everichone,  
 As ye have herd the foresaid trumpets were,  
 And by seming they were nothing to lere,  
 And ther guiding they did so manirly;  
 And aftir them came a gret company

Of heraldeis and purservauntis eke,  
 Arrayid in clothis of white velvet,  
 And hardily they were nothing to seke  
 How they on them shouldin the harneis set,  
 And every man had on a chapèlet,  
 Scotchonis and eke horse harneis in dede  
 They had in sute of them that fore them yede.

Next after these appere in armour bright,  
 All save ther hedis, semely knightis nine,  
 And every clasp and nail, as to my sight,  
 Of ther harneis were of red gold so fine,  
 With cloth of gold, and furrid with ermine,  
 Were the tappouris of their stedis strong,  
 Both wide and large, that to the ground did hong;

And every boss of bridle and paitrel  
 That they had on was worth, as I would wene,  
 A thousand pound; and on ther hedis well  
 Dressid were crownis of the laurir grene,  
 The best ymade that evir I had sene;  
 And every knight had aftir him riding  
 Thre henchmen, still upon him awaiting;

Of which every (first) on a short trunchon  
 His lord's helmet bore so richly dight  
 That the worst of them was worth the ransoun  
 Of any king; the second a shield bright  
 Bare at his back; the thred barin upright  
 A mighty spere, full sharp yground and kene,  
 And every child ware of levis grene

A fresh chap'let upon his hairis bright;  
 And clokis white of fine velvet they were,  
 Ther stedis trappid and arayid right,  
 Without difference as ther lordis were;  
 And aftir them on many a fresh coursere  
 There came of armid knightis such a rout  
 That they besprad the large field about;  
 And all they werin, aftir ther degrees,  
 Chappèlets new, or made of laurir grene,  
 Or some of oke, or some of othir trees,  
 Some in ther hondis barin boughis shene,  
 Some of laurir, and some of okis bene,  
 Some of hawthorne, and some of the wod bind  
 And many mo which I have not in mind.

And so they came ther horse richly stirring  
 With bloudy fownis of ther trompis loud;  
 There se I many an unth disguising  
 In the array of thilk knightis proud;  
 And at the last as evenly as they coud  
 They toke ther place in middis of the mede,  
 And every knight turnid his horsis hede

To his felow, and lightly laid a spere  
 Into the rest, and so justis began  
 On ev'ry part aboutin here and there; [man,  
 Some brake his spere, some threw down horse and  
 About the felde astray the stedis ran;  
 And to behold their rule and govirnaunce  
 I you ensure it was a grete plesaunce.

And so the justis last an hour and more,  
 But tho that crownid were in laurir grene  
 Did win the prise; their dintis were so fore  
 That there was none agenst them might sustene,  
 And the justing allè was left off clene;  
 And fro ther horse the nine alight anon,  
 And so did all the remnaunt everichone,



## THE FLOURE AND THE LEAFE.

And forth they yede togidir twain and twain,  
 That to behold it was a worthy sight,  
 Toward the ladies on the grene plain,  
 That song and dauncid, as I said now right;  
 The ladies as sone as they godely might  
 They brakin off both the song and the daunce,  
 And yede to mete them with full glad semblaunce:  
 And every lady toke full womanly  
 By the hond a knight, and so forth they yede  
 To a faire laurir that stode fast by,  
 With levis laid, the boughis of grete brede,  
 And to my dome ther nevir was indede  
 A man that had sene half so faire a tre,  
 For undirneith it there might well have be  
 An hundrid persons at ther own plesaunce  
 Shadowid fro the hete of Phœbus bright,  
 So that they shouldin have felt no grevaunce  
 Neithir for rain, ne haile, that them hurt might;  
 The favour eke rejoice would any wight  
 To be sick or melancholious,  
 It was so very gode and vertuous.  
 And with grete rev'rence they enclinid low  
 Unto the tre so fete and fair of hew,  
 And astir that within a litil throw  
 They all began to sing and daunce of new;  
 Some song of love, some plaining of untrew,  
 Environing the tre that stode upright,  
 And evir yede a lady and a knight.  
 And at the last I cast mine eie aside,  
 And was ware of a lusty company  
 That came roming out of the feldë wide,  
 And hond in hond a knight and a lady,  
 The ladies all in surcotes, that richly  
 Purfilid were with many a rich stone,  
 And every knight of grene ware mantlis on,  
 Embroulid wele, so as the surcots were,  
 And everich had a chapelet on her hed,  
 [Which did right wele upon the shining here]  
 Makid of godely flouris white and red,  
 The knightis eke that they in hondë led  
 In fete of them ware chaplets everichone,  
 And betwix them went minstrels many one,  
 As harpis, pipes, lutes, and sautry,  
 Allë in grene, and on her hedis bare  
 Of diverse flouris made full craftily,  
 All in a fute, godely chalets they ware,  
 And so dauncing into the mede they fare,  
 In mid the which they found a tuff that was  
 All ovirsprad with flouris in compas,  
 Whereto they enclined everichone  
 With grete reverence, and that full humbly;  
 And at the last there tho began anon  
 A lady for to sing right womanly  
 A bargaret in praising the daisie,  
 For (as methought) among her notis swete  
 She said: *Si douce est la Margarete!*  
 Then they allë answerid her in fere  
 So passingly well and so plesauntly,  
 That it was a most blisfull noise to here;  
 But I not how it happid, sodainly  
 As about none the sonn so fervently  
 Waxe hote that the pretty tendir floures  
 Had lost the beauty of their fresh collours.

For shronke with hete the ladies eke to brent,  
 That they ne wist where they them might bestow.  
 The knightis swelt, for lack of shade nie shent,  
 And astir that within a litil throw  
 The wind began so sturdily to blow  
 That down goth all the flowris everichone,  
 So that in all the mede there last not one,  
 Save such as succoured were among the leves  
 Fro every storme that mightë them assaile,  
 Growing undir the beggis and thick greves;  
 And astir that there came a storme of haile  
 And rain in fere, so that withoutin faile  
 The ladies ne the knightis n'ade o' thred  
 Dry on them, so drooping wet was ther wede.  
 And when the storme was clene passid away  
 The in the white, that stode undir the tre,  
 They felt nothing of all the grete affray  
 That they in grene without had in ybe;  
 To them they yede for routh and for pite,  
 Them to comfort astir their grete difese,  
 So fain they were the helpless for to ese.  
 Than I was ware how one of them in grene  
 Had on a coron rich and well-fitting,  
 Wherefore I demid well she was a quene,  
 And tho in grene on her were awaiting;  
 The ladies then in white that were coming  
 Towardis them, and the knightis in fere,  
 Began to comfort them and make them chere.  
 The quene in white, that was of grete beauty,  
 Toke by the honde the quene that was in grene,  
 And seide, Sustir, I have grete pity  
 Of your annoy and of your troublous tene  
 Wherein ye and your company have been  
 So long, alas! and if that it you plesse  
 To go with me I shall do you the ese  
 In al the plesure that I can or may;  
 Whereof that othir, humbly as she might,  
 Thankid her, for in right evil array  
 She was with storme and hete I you behight;  
 And every lady then anon right  
 That were in white one of them toke in grene  
 By the hond, which when the knightis had sene  
 In like manir eche of them toke a knight  
 Clad in the grene, and forth with them they fare  
 To an hegge, where that they anon right  
 To makin these justis they would not spare  
 Boughis to hew down, and eke trees to squere,  
 Wherewith they made them stately firs grete  
 To dry ther clothis, that were wringing wet;  
 And astir that of herbis that there grew  
 They made for blisirs of the sonne brenning  
 Ointmentis very gode, wholsome and new,  
 Where that they yede the sick fast anointing;  
 And astir that they yede about gadring  
 Plesant saladis, which they made them ete  
 For to refreshe ther grete unkindely hete.  
 The lady of the Lefe then gan to pray  
 Her of the Floure [for so to my seming  
 They should be callid as by ther array]  
 To soupe with her, and eke for any thing  
 That she should with her all her pepill bringe,  
 And she ayen in right godely manere  
 Thankith her fast of her most frendly chere,

Saying plainly that she would obey  
With all her hert all her commandement;  
And then anon without lengir delay  
The lady of the Lefe hath one ysent  
To bring a palfrey after her intent,  
Arrayid wele in fair harnois of gold,  
For nothing lackid that to him long shold:

And after that to all her company  
She made to purvey horse and every thing  
That they nedid, and then full hastily  
Even by the herbir where I was sitting  
They passid all, so merrily finging  
That it would have comfortid any wight:  
But then I se a passing wondir sight,

For then the nightingale, that all the day  
Had in the laurir sete, and did her might  
The whole service to sing longing to May,  
All sodainly began to take her flight,  
And to the lady of the Lefe fordrighit  
She flew, and set her on her hand softly,  
Which was a thing I never saw at greetly.

The goldfinch eke, that fro the medlar tre  
Was fled for hete unto the bushis cold,  
Unto the lady of the Flowre gan fle,  
And on her hond he set him as he wold,  
And plesauntly his wingis gan to fold,  
And for to sing they peine them both as fore  
As they had do of all the day before.

And so these ladies rode forth a grete pace,  
And all the rout of knightis eke in fere;  
And I that had sene all this wondir case  
Thought that I would assay in some manere  
To know fully the trouth of this mattere,  
And what they were that rode so plesauntly:  
And when they were the herbir passid by

I drest me forth, and happid mete anon  
A right fair lady. I do you ensure,  
And she came riding by her self alone,  
Allè in white, with semblaunce full demure;  
I her salued, bad her gode avinture  
Mote her befall, as I coude most humbly,  
And she answered, My doughtir, gramercy!

Madame, quoth I, if that I durst enquire  
Of you, I wold fain of that company  
Wit what they be that passid by this harbere.  
And she ayen answerid right frendly,  
My doughtir, all tho that passid hereby  
In white clothing be servants everichone  
Unto the Lefe, and I my self am one.

Se ye not her that crownid is (quod she)  
Allè in white? Madame, then quod I, Yes.  
That is Dian, goddess of Chastity,  
And for bicause that she a maidin is  
Intò her hond the branch she berith this  
That agnus castus men call propirly;  
And all the ladies in her company

Which ye se of that herbe chaplets were  
Be such as han alwey kept maidinhede,  
And all they that of laurir chaplets bere  
Be such as hardy were in manly dede,  
Victorious, name which never may be dede  
And all they were so worthy of their honde  
In their time that no one might them withstonde;

And tho that were chaplets on ther hede  
Of fresh wodebind be such as never were  
To Love untrue in word, in thought, ne dede,  
But ay stedfast, ne for plesance, ne fere,  
Tho that they shulde ther hertis all to tere,  
Woud never flit, but ever were stedfast  
Till that ther livis there affundir brast.

Now, fair Madam! quod I, yet woud I pray  
Your ladyship [if that it mightin be]  
That I might knowe by some manir of wey  
Sithin that it hath likid your beaute  
The trouth of these ladies for to tell, she,  
What that these knightis be in rich armour,  
And what tho be in grene and were the Flour,

And why that some did rev'ence to the tre,  
And some unto the plot of flouris fair?  
With right gode wil, my doughtir fair! quod she,  
Sith your desire is gode and debonaire:  
The nine crownid be very exemplaire  
Of all honour longing to chivalry,  
And those certain be clept The Nine Worthies

Which that ye may se riding all before,  
That in ther time did many a noble dede,  
And for ther worthinels full oft have bore  
The crown of laurir levis on ther hede,  
As ye may in your oldè bokis rede,  
And how that he that was a conqueror  
Had by laurir alwey his most honour:

And tho that barin bowes in ther hond  
Of the precious laurir so notable  
Be such as were [I woll ye undirstond]  
Most noble Knightis of The Round Table,  
And eke the Douceperis honourable,  
Which they bere in the sign of victory,  
As witness of ther dedis mightily:

Eke ther be Knightis old of the Gartir,  
That in ther tynis did right worthily,  
And the honour they did to the laurir  
Is for by it they have ther laud wholly,  
Ther triumph eke and martial glory,  
Which unto them is more perfitte riches  
Than any wight imagin can or gesse:

For one Lefe givin of that noble tre  
To any wight that hath done worthily  
[An it be done so as it ought to be]  
Is more honour than any thing erthly,  
Witness of Rome, that foundir was truly  
Of all knighthode and dedis marvelous,  
Record I take of Titus Livius.

And as for her that crownid is in grene,  
It is Flora, of these flouris goddesse,  
And all that here on her awaiting bene  
It are such folk that lovid idleness,  
And not delite in no kind besinesse  
But for to hunt, and hawke, and pley in meys,  
And many othir such like idle dedes.

And for the grete delite and the plesaunce  
They have to the Flour, and so reverently  
They unto it doin such obeisaunce,  
As ye may se. Now, fair Madame! quod I,  
[If I durst ask] what is the cause and why  
That knightis have the ensigne of honour  
Rathir by the Lefe than by the Flour?

Sothly, doughtir, quod she, this is the trouth,  
 For knightes evir should be persevering  
 To seke honour without feintise or slouth,  
 For wele to bettir in all manir thing,  
 In sign of which with levis ay lasting  
 They be rewardid aftir ther degre,  
 Whose lusty grene may not appairid be,  
 But ay keping ther beauty fresh and grene,  
 For ther n'is no storme that may them deface,  
 Ne hail nor snowe, ne wind nor frostis kene;  
 Wherefore they have this propriety and grace;  
 And for the Flour within a litil space  
 Wollin be lost, so simple of nature  
 They be that they no grevaunce may endure:  
 And every storme woll blowe them sone away,  
 Ne they laste not but for a seson,  
 That is the cause [the very trouth to say]  
 That they may not by no way of reson  
 Be put to no such occupacion.  
 Madam, quod I, with all mine whole servise  
 I thank you in my most humble wise;  
 For now I am certain'd thoroughly  
 Of every thing I desirid to knowe.  
 I am right glad that I have said, sothly,  
 Ought to your plesure, (if ye will me trow.)

Quod she ayen. But to whom do ye owe  
 Your service, and which wollin ye honour  
 [Pray tell me] this year, the Lefe or the Flour?  
 Madam, quod I, although I lest worthy,  
 Unto the Lefe I ow mine observaunce.  
 That is, quod she, right well done certainly,  
 And I pray God to honour you advaunce,  
 And kepe you fro the wickid remembraunce  
 Of Malebouch and all his crueltie.  
 And all that gode and well-condition'd be;  
 For here I may no lengir now abide,  
 But I must follow the grete company  
 That ye may se yondir before you ride;  
 And forthwith as I couth most humily  
 I toke my leve of her, and she gan hic  
 Aftir them as fast as evir she might,  
 And I drow homeward, for it was nigh night,  
 And put all that I had sene in writing,  
 Undir support of them that lust it rede.  
 O little boke! thou art so unconning,  
 How darst thou put thy self in prees for drede?  
 It is wondir that thou wexist not rede,  
 Sith that thou wost full lite who shall behold  
 Thy rude langage full boytously unfold.



## THE COURT OF LOVE.\*

With timorous herte and trembling hand of drede,  
Of cunning nakid, bare of eloquence,  
Unto the flour of port in womanhede  
I write, as he that none intelligence  
Of metris hath ne flouris of sentence,  
Saufe that me list my writing to convey  
In that I can to plesse her high nobley.

The blofomes fresh of Iulius gardein fote  
Present thei not, my mattir for to borne,  
Poemes of Virgile takin here no rote,  
Ne crafte of Galfride may not here sojourne;  
Why n'am I cunning? 'o well maie I morne  
For lacke of science, that I can nat write  
Unto the princes of my lyfe aright!

No termes are digne unto her excellence,  
So is she spronge of noble stripe and high;  
A world of honour and of reverence  
There is in her, this will I testifie:  
Caliope, thou sistir wise and fly,  
And thou Minerva! guide me with thy grace,  
That langage rude my mattir not deface.

Thy sugir dropis swete of Helicon  
Distil in me, thou gentle Muse! I praye,  
And the Melpomene I cal anone  
Of ignoraunce the miste to chace awaye,  
And geve me grace so for to write and saie  
That she my lady of her worthinesse  
Accept in gre this litil short trefesse,

That is entituled thus, *The Courte of Love*;  
And ye that ben metrichiens me excuse,  
I you beseeche, for Venus sake above,  
For what I mene in this ye nede not muse;  
And if so be my lady it refuse  
For lake of ornate speche, I wolde be wo  
That I presume to her to writin so.

\* This book is an imitation of The Romaunt of the Rose, shewing that all are subject to love, what impediments soever to the contrary, containing also those 20 statutes that are to be observed in The Court of Love. Urry.

But my entente and all my busy cure  
Is for to write this trefesse as I can,  
Unto my lady stable, true, and sure,  
Faithful and kind, sith firste that she began  
Me to accept in service as her man;  
To her be al the plesure of this boke,  
That when her like she may it rede and loke,

When I was yong, at xviii yere of age,  
Lusty and light, desirous of plesaunce,  
Approching on full fad and ripe corage,  
Love artid me to do my observaunce  
To his estate, and done him obeisaunce,  
Commaunding me *The Court of Love* to se,  
A lite beside the Mounte of Cithere;

There Citherea goddesse was and quene,  
Honourid highly for her majeste,  
And eke her sonne, the mighty god I wene,  
Cupid the blind, that for his dignite  
A M. lovirs worshipp on her kne;  
There was I bid in palle of deth to pere  
By Mercury the wingid messingere:

So than I went by strange and ferre countrees,  
Enquiringe ay what coaste had to it drewe  
*The Court of Love*, and thidirward as bees  
At last I se the peple gan pursue;  
Anon me thought some wight was ther that knew  
Where that the Court was holdin ferre or nie.  
And astir than ful faste I ganne me hie.

Anon as I them ovirtoke I said,  
Heile, frendis! whethir purpose ye to end?  
For soth, (quod one) that answered, che a maid,  
To *Love's Courte* now go we, genti frend!  
Where is that place, (quod I) my felowe hend?  
At Citheron, Sir, saide he, without doute,  
The kinge of Love, and al his noble route,

Dwelling within a castil rially.  
So than apace I journid forth amonge;  
And as he saide so found I there truly,  
For I behelde the touris high and stronge.

And high pinacis large of hight and longe,  
With plate of gold bespred on every side,  
And precious stones, the stone werke for to hide.

No saphire of Inde, no rubie riche of price,  
There lackid then, nor emeraude so grene,  
Sulis Turkis, ne thing to my devise  
That may the castil makin for to shene,  
All was as bright as sterres in wintir bene,  
And Phœbus shone to make his pece ageine  
For tyme done to high estatis tweine :

Venus and Mars, the god and goddesse clere,  
When he them founde in armis cheinid faste,  
Venus was than fulled of herte and chere,  
But Phœbus bemis, streight as is the masse,  
Upon the castil ginnith he to cast  
To plesse the lady, princes of that place,  
In signe he lokith astir Lov's grace :

For ther n'is god in heaven or hel iwys  
But he hath ben right soget unto Love,  
Jove, Pluto, or what so ever he is,  
Ne creature in heh or yet above,  
Of this the revers may no wight approve;  
But furthirmore the castill to descrie  
Yet sawe I nevyr none so large and hie,

For unto heven it stretchith I suppose,  
Within and out depeintid wondirly,  
With many' a thousand daisy rede as rose,  
And white also, this sawe I verily,  
But what the deisis might do signifie  
Can I not tel, fause that the quen'is floure  
Alceste it was, that kept ther her sojoure

Which undir Venus lady was and quene,  
And Admete kyng and soverain of that place,  
To whom obeyed the ladies gode xix,  
With many' a thousand othir bright of face,  
And young men fele came forth with lusti pace,  
And agid eke, ther homage to dispose,  
But what they were I could not well disclose.

Yet nere and nere forth in I gan me dresse  
Into an halle of noble apparaile,  
With arras spred and cloth of gold I gesse,  
And othir filke of fyir availe;  
Undir the cloth of iber estate, sauns saile,  
The king and quene thare sit, as I beheld;  
It passid joye of Helise the fild.

There saintis have ther cominge and resorte  
To seen the kinge so rially beset.  
In purple clad, and eke the quene in sorte,  
And on ther heddis sawe I crounis tweine  
With stonis fret, so that it was no paine  
Withoutin mete and drinke to stand and se  
The king'is honor and the rialte.

And for to trete of statis with the king,  
That sen of counsell chefe, and with the quene;  
The king had Daungir nere to him standing,  
The quene of Love Disdain, and that was sene,  
For by the faith I shal to God I wene  
Was nevyr straungir none in her degre  
Than was the quene in castinge of her eye.

And as I stode perceving her aparte,  
And eke the bemis shininge of her eyen,  
Me thought they werein shapin lyche a darte,  
Sharpe and persinge, smale and streight as a line,

And al her here it shone as golde so fine,  
Disshivil, crispe, doune hanging at her backe  
A yard in length, and southely than I spake :  
O bright *Regina* ! who made the so faire ?  
Who made thy colour vermetet and white ?  
Wher wonneth the god, how far above the eyre ?  
Grete was his crafte, and grete was his delite;  
Now marvil I nothing that ye do hight  
The quene of Love, and occupie the place  
Of Cithare : now, swete lady ! thy grace.

In mewit spake I, so that nought asterte  
By no condicion word that might be hard,  
But in my inward thought I gan adverte,  
And oft I said My wit is dul and hard,  
For with her beantie thus God wot I ferde  
As doeth the man yravishid with sight,  
When I beheld her cristal eyen so bright,

No respecte havynge what was beste to done,  
Till right anone beholding here and there  
I spied a frend of myne, and that ful sone,  
A gentil woman, was the chambirere  
Unto the quene, that hote as ye shall here,  
Philobone, that lovid al her life;  
Whan she me sey she led me forth as blife,

And me demaundid how and in what wise  
I thair come, and what my erand was ?  
To sene the Courte (quod I) and al the guise,  
And eke to sue for pardon and for grace,  
And mercy aske for al my grete trespasse;  
That I none erste come to The Court of Love  
Foryeve me this, ye goddis al above.

That is well said (quod Philobone) in dede;  
But were ye not assomoned to appere  
By Mercurius, for that is al my drede ?  
Yes, gentill feire ! (quod I) now am I here.  
Ye, yet what tho though that be true, my dere ?  
Of your fre wil ye shuld have come unsente,  
For ye did not I deme ye will be shente :

For ye that reigne in youth and lustines,  
Pampired with ese, and jalous in your age,  
Your dutie is, as far as I can gesse,  
To Lov's Courte to dreslin your viage  
*Assone as Nature makith you so sage*

*That ye may know a woman from a swan.*  
*Or when your fote is growin halfe a span.*

But sithe that ye by wilful negligence  
This xviii yere hath kept your selfe at large  
The gretir is your trespas and offence,  
And in your neck you mote bere all the charge,  
For bettir were ye ben withoutin barge  
Amidde the se in tempest and in rayne  
Then bidin here receving wo and pain

That ordeined is for soche as them absente  
Fro Lov's Courte by yeris long and fele;  
I ley my life ye shal ful sone repente,  
For Love wil reive youre coloure, lust, and hele,  
Eke ye must baite on many' an hevvy mele :  
No force iwys, I stired you longe agon  
To drawe to Courte, quod litil Philobon;

Ye shal wel se how rough and angry face  
The king of Love will shewe when ye him se;  
By myn advise knele down and aske him grace,  
Forswewing peril and adverste,

For wel I wot it wolde none othir be :  
Comforte is none ne counsil to your ese,  
Why wil ye then the king of Love displese?

O mercie, God! (quod iche) I me repent,  
Caitife and wretche, in hert, in wil, and thought,  
And astir this shal be mine whole entent  
To serve and plesse, how dere that love be bought;  
Yet sith I have mine owne penaunce isought  
With humble spirite shal I it receive,  
Though that the king of Love my life bereve;

And though that fervent Lov's qualite  
In me did never worche truly, yet I  
With al obeisaunce and humilite,  
And benigne herte, shal serve him til I die;  
And he that lord of might is grete and hie  
Right as him list me chastice and correcte,  
And punishe me, with trespase thus enfecte.

These wordis said, she caught me by the lap,  
And led me furth in til a temple round,  
Bothe large and wide, and as my bleffid hap  
And gode avinture was right sone I founde  
A tabernacle reifid from the grounde  
Where Venus sat and Cupid by her side,  
Yet half for drede I can my visage hide;

And eft againe I lokid and behelde,  
Seing ful sundry peple in the place  
And mistir folke, and some that might not welde  
Ther limmis wele me thought a woundir case,  
The temple shone with windowes al of glasse  
Bright as the day, with manie a faire ymage,  
And there I se the freshe Quene of Carthage,

Dido, that brent her beaute for the love  
Of fals Aeneas, and the weimenting  
Of her Anchida, true as turtill dove  
To Arcite fals; and there was in peinting  
Of many a prince and many a doughty king  
Whose martirdom was shewed about the walles,  
And how that fele for love had suffrid falles.

But fore I was abashid and astonied  
Of al tho folke that there were in that tide,  
And than I askid where they haddin woned?  
In divers courtis, (quod she) here beside:  
In sondrie clothing mantilwise full wide  
They were arraied, and did ther sacrifice  
Unto the god and goddesse in ther guise.

Lo, yondir folke (quod she) that knele in blewe,  
They were the colour ay and evir shal,  
In signe they were and evir wil be true,  
Withoutin chaunge, and southely yondir all  
That ben in blak, with mourning crie and call  
Unto the goddes, for ther lovis bene  
Some ferre, som dede, som al to sherpe and kene.

Yea, than, (quod I) what done these prellis here,  
Nonnis, and hermites, freris, and all tho  
That sit in white, in russet, and in grene?  
Forsothe (quod she) they wailin of ther wo.  
O mercie, Lord! may they so come and go  
Frely to Court, and have soche libertie?  
Yea, men of eche condicion and degre.

And women eke, for truly there is none  
Excepcion made, ne never was ne may;  
This Courte is ope and fre for everichone;  
The king of Love he wil not say them nay;

He takith al in pore or riche array  
That mekely fewe unto his excellence  
With al ther herte and al ther revèrence.

And walking thus aboute with Philobone  
I se where come a messengere in hie [anone]  
Streight from the king, whiche let commaund  
Throughout the Courte to make an ho and cri,  
All new come folke abide; and wote ye why?  
The king's lust is for to seen you sone:  
Come nere; let se; his wil mote nedo be done.

Than gan I me present tofore the king  
Trembling for fere, with visage pale of hewe,  
And many a lovir with me was kneeling,  
Abashed fore, til unto the time they knewe  
The sentence yeve of his entent full trew;  
And at the last the king hath me behold  
With sterne visage, and seid, What doth this olde,

Thus ferre yllowe in yeris, com so late  
Unto the Courte? For sothe, my liege, (quod I)  
An hundrid tyme I have ben at the goce  
Afore this tyme, yet coude I never see  
Of myne acquaintance eny in mine eye,  
And *Shamefufines* away me gaine to chace,  
But now I me submitte unto your grace.

Wel, al is pardoned, with condicion  
That thou be trew from hensforth to thy might,  
And fervin Love in thine entencion;  
Swere this, and than as ferre as it is right  
Thou shalt have grace here in my quen's sight,  
Yes, by the faith I owe your crown I swere,  
Though Deth therfore me thirlith with his spere.

And whan the kinge had sene us everychone  
He let commaunde an officir in hie  
To take our faith, and shew us one by one  
The statutes of the Courte full besily:  
Anon the boke was leide before ther eye,  
To rede and se what thing we must observe  
In *Lov's Courte* till that we dye and serve.

And for that I was lettrid there I red  
The statutes whole of *Lov's Courte* and hall.  
The firste statute that on the boke was spred  
Was to be true in thought and dedis al  
Unto the king of Love, the lorde ryall,  
And to the quene as faithful and as kinde  
As I coude thinke with herte, and will, and minde.

The secõde statute secretly to kepe  
Council of Love, not blowing every where  
Al that I knowe, and let it sinke and flete;  
It may not sowne in every wight's ere,  
Exiling flaundir ay for dred and fere,  
And to my lady whiche I love and serve  
Be true and kinde, her grace for to deserve.

The thirde statute was clerely writ also  
Withoutin chaunge to live and die the same,  
None othir love to take for wele ne wo,  
For blinde delite, for earnest nor for game,  
Without repent, for laughing or for game,  
To bidin stil in ful perseveraunce;  
Al this was whole the king's ordinaunce.

The fourth statute to purchase er to here  
And stirin folke to love, and betin fire  
On Venus auter here aboute and there,



And preche to them of Love and hote desire,  
And tel how Love wil quitin wel ther hire;  
This must be kept; and loth me to displese  
If Love be wroth passe, for therby is ese.

The V. statute not to be daungirous  
If that a thought would reve me of my slepe,  
Nor of a sight to be ovir squemous,  
And so verely this statute was to kepe,  
To turne and wallowe in my bed and wepe  
When that my lady of her cruilte  
Would move her herte exilin al pite.

The VI. statute it was for me to use  
Alone to wandir vnde of company,  
And on my lad's beautie for to muse,  
And to thinkin no force to live or die,  
And sit again to thinke the remedy  
How to her grace I might anon attain,  
And tel my wo unto my soveraine.

The VII. statute was to be pacient  
Whethir my lady joyful were or wroth,  
For wordis glad or hevvy diligent,  
Whedir that she be heldin lese or loth,  
And hereupon I put was to mine othe  
Her for to serve and lowely to obey,  
And shewe my chere ye xx sith aday.

The VIII. statute, to my remembraunce,  
Was for to speke and pray my lady dere  
With hourelly labour and gret entendaunce  
Me for to love with al her herte entere,  
And me desire and make me joyful chere,  
Right as she is surmounting every faire,  
Of beautie wel, and gentil, debonaire.

The IX. statute, with lettris writ of golde,  
This was the sentence, how that I and al  
Shulde evir dred to be to ovirbolde  
Her to displese, and truly so I shal,  
But ben content for al thing that may fal,  
And mekely take her chastisement and yerde,  
And to offende her evir ben aserde.

The X. statute was egally to discern  
Betwene the lady's and thine abilitie,  
And thinke thy selfe arte nevyr like to yerne  
By right her mercy nor of equite,  
But of her grace and womanly pite,  
For though thy selfe be noble in thy strene  
A thousande folde more nobil is thy quene.

Thy liv'is lady and thy soveraine,  
That hath thin herte all whole in governaunce,  
Thou maiest no wise it takin to disdain  
To put the humble at her ordinaunce,  
And give her fre the reine of her plesaunce,  
For *Libertie is thing that women like,*  
And truly els the mattir is acroke.

The XI. statute thy signis for to knowe  
With eye and fingir, and with smilis softe,  
And lowe to couche, and alwaie for to shewe  
For drede of is for to winkin ofte,  
But secretly to bryng a sigh alofte,  
And ke beware of ovir moche resorte,  
For that para'venture spillith all thy sport.

The XII. statute remembir to observe,  
For all the paine thou hast for love and wo  
All is to lye her mercie to deserve;

Thou musten then thinke wher er thou ride or go,  
And mortall woundis suffre thou also,  
All for her sake, and thinke it well besette  
Upon thy love, for it maie not be bette.

The XIII. statute whilome is to thinke  
What thing maie best thy ladie like and plese,  
And in thine hert'is botome let it sinke;  
Some thing devise, and take for it thine ese,  
And fende it her, that maie her herte appese,  
Some herte or ryng, or lettir or devise,  
Or precious stone; but spare not for no price.

The XIV. statute eke thou shalt assaie  
Firmely to kepe the moste parte of thy life;  
Wische that thy ladie in thine armis laie,  
And nightly dreame thou hast thy night's herte's  
Sweetly in armis, straining her as blife, [wife  
And when thou seest it is but fantasie  
Se that thou sing not ovir merily;

For *To muche joye bath ofte a woofull ende;*  
It longith eke, this statute for to holde,  
To deme thy ladie evirmore thy frende,  
And thinke thy self in no wise a cocolde;  
In every thyng she doeth but as she should;  
Construe the best, beleve no talis newe,  
For *Many' a lye is tolde that semeth full true;*

But thinke that she, so bounteous and faire,  
Coud not be falle; imagine this algate;  
And think that tonges wickid would her appaire,  
Slanderyng her name and worshipfull estate,  
And lovirs true to settin at debate;  
And though thou seest a faute right at thine eye  
Excuse it blive, and glose it pretilie.

The XV. statute use to swere and stare,  
And counterfeite a lesyng hardily  
To save thy ladie's honour every whare,  
And put thy self to fightin boldily;  
Saie she is gode, vertuous, and ghostly,  
Clere of entent, and herte, and thought, and will;  
And argue not for reson ne for skill

Againe thy ladie's plesure ne entent,  
For Love will not be counterpleted in dede;  
Saie as she saith, then shalt thou not be shent,  
*The crowe is white.* Ye, truly so I rede.  
And aye what thing that she the will forbede  
Eschue al that, and give her soverainte;  
Her appetite folowe in all degre.

The XVI. statute kepe it if thou maie,  
Seven sith at night, thy ladie for to plese,  
And seven at midnight, se'ven at morow daie,  
And drinke a caudill erely for thine ese;  
Doe this, and kepe thine hedde from all disese,  
And winne the garlande here of lovirs all  
That evir came in Court or evir shall.

Full fewe think I this statute hold and kepe,  
But truly this my reson giveth me sele  
That some lovirs should rather fall aslepe  
Then take on hand to plese so oft and wele:  
There laie none othe to this statute adele,  
But kepe who might as gave him his corage;  
Now get this garlande lustie folke of age,

Now win who maie ye lustie folke of youth,  
This garlande fresh, of flouris red and white,  
Purple and blewes, and colours fell uncouth,

And I shall croune him kyng of all delite.  
In all the Courte there was not to my sight  
A lovyr true that he ne was adrede  
When he expresse hath herd the statute rede.

The XVII. statute, when age approacheth on,  
And lust is laied, and all the fire is queint,  
As freshly then thou shalt begin to sonne  
And dote in love, and all her image paint  
In thy remembraunce till thou gin to faint,  
As in the first seson thyne herte began,  
And her desire, though thou ne maie ne can

Performe thy livyng actuell and lust.  
Registir this in thyne remembraunce  
Eke, when thou maist not kepe thy thing from rust  
Yet speke and talke of plefaunt daliaunce,  
For that shall make thyne hert rejoyce and daunce;  
And when thou maiest no more the game assaie  
The statute bidde the praie for them that maie.

The XVIII. statute wholly to commende  
To plese thy ladie is, that thou eschewe  
With fluttishnesse thy self for to offende;  
Be joilife, fresh, and fete with thingis newe,  
Courtlic with manir, this is all thy due,  
Gentill of porte, and lovyng clenlinesse;  
This is the thing that likith thy maistresse;

And not to wandir liche a dullid assie,  
Raggid and torne, disguisid in araie,  
Ribaude in speche, or out of mesure passe,  
Thy bounde excedyng; thinke on this alwaie;  
*For Women ben of tendir bertis aye,  
And lightly set ther pleasure in a place;  
When they misthinke they lightly let it passe.*

The XIX. statute mete and drinke forgete;  
Eche othir daie se that thou fast for love,  
For in the Courte thei live withoutin mete,  
Save soche as cometh from Venus al above;  
Thei take none hede in pain of grete reprove  
Of mete and drinke, for that is all in vaine,  
Onely thei live by fight of ther soveraine.

The XX. statute, last of everichone,  
Enrolle it in thyne hert's privite,  
To wring and waile, to turne, and sigh, and grone,  
When that thy ladie absent is from the,  
And eke renewe the wordis all that she  
Betwene you twain had said, and all the chere  
That the hath made thy liv'is lady dere.

And se thyne herte in quiete ne in rest  
Sojourne to tyme thou seen thy ladie este,  
But where she won, by south, or est, or west,  
With all thy force now se it be not leste;  
Be diligent till tyme thy life be reft  
In that thou maiest thy ladie for to se;  
This statute was of old antiquite.

An officir of high authorite,  
Yclepid Rigour, made us swere anone;  
He n'as corrupt with parcialite,  
Favour, prayir, ne gold that clerely shone.  
Ye shall (quod he) now swerin her echone,  
Both young and old, to kepe in that thei maie  
The statutes trulynly affir this daie.

O God! thought I, hard is to make this othe,  
But to my powir shall I them observe;  
In all this worlde n'as mattir halfe so lothe

To swere for all, for though my body serve  
I have no might them wholly to observe.

But herkin now the cace how it befell;  
Affir my othe was made, the trouthe to tell,

I tournid levis, lokyng on this boke,  
Where othir statutes were of women shene,  
And right forthwith Rigour on me gan loke  
Full angirly, and saied unto the quene  
I traitour was, and chargid me let ben;  
There maie no man (quod he) the statute knowe  
That long to woman, his degre ne love.

In secrete wise thei kepin be, all close,  
Thei sounne echone to liberte by frende;  
Pleasant thei be, and to ther own purpose;  
There wote no wight of them but God and fende,  
Ne naught shall wit unto the world's ende;  
The quene hath yeve me charge, in pain to die,  
Nevir to rede ne seen them with myne eye:

For men shall not so nere of counsaill ben  
With womanhode, ne knowin of ther wise,  
Ne what thei think, ne of ther yeven engine;  
I me report to Salomon the wise,  
And mightie Sampson whiche begild thrise  
With Dalia was, he wot that in a throwe  
There maie no man statute of women knowe;

For it pera'venture maie right so befall  
That thei be bounde by Nature to disceve,  
And spinne and wepe, and sugre strew on gal,  
The herte of man to ravishe and to reve,  
And what ther tonge as sharpe as swerde or gleve;  
It maie betide this is ther ordinaunce,  
So must thei lowlie doon ther observaunce,

And kepe the statute yevin them of Kinde,  
Of soche as Love hath yeve 'hem in ther life;  
*Men maie not wete wby turnith every wind,*  
Nor waxin wise, nor ben inquisitive

To knowe secrete of maide, widowe, or wife,  
For thei ther statutes have to them reserved,  
And nevir man to knowe them hath deserved.

Now dresse you forth, the god of Love you guide,  
Quod Rigour then, and seke the temple bright  
Of Citherea, goddess here beside;  
Beseeche her by the influence and might  
Of all her vertue you to teche aright

How for to serve your ladies and to plese,  
Ye that ben sped, and set your herte in ese;

And ye that ben unpurveied, pray her eke  
Comforte you with grace and destinie,  
That ye may set your hert there ye maie like,  
In soche a place that it to Love maie be  
Honour, and worship, and felicitie,  
To you for aie. Now goeth by one assent.  
Graunt mercie, Sir: (quod we) and forth we went  
Devoutly, soft and esie pace, to se  
Verins the goddess image all of golde,  
And there we found a thousand on ther kne,  
Some freshe and faire, some dedly to beholde,  
In sondrie mantils new, and some wer olde,  
Some paintid were with flamis red as fire,  
Outward, to shewe ther inward hote desire.

With dolefull chere, full fele in ther complaint,  
Cried, "Ladie Venus! rewe upon our fore;  
"Receive our billes, with teris all bedreint,

"We maie not wepe, there is no more in store,  
 But wo and pain us frettith more and more;  
 "Thou blissefull planet! lovirs sterre so shene,  
 "Have routh on us that sigh, and careful ben;  
 "And pennishe, ladie, grevously, we praie,  
 "The false untrue with counterfeite plesaunce  
 "That made ther othe be true to live or deie;  
 "With chere assurid and with countinaunce,  
 "And falsly now thei fotin Lov's daunce  
 "Barren of routh, untrue of that thei saied,  
 "Now that ther lust and plesure is alaid.  
 "Yet este agayne a thousande milion,  
 "Rejoycing love, leaving ther life in blisse,  
 "Thei saied, Venus, redresse of all division,  
 "Goddess eternell, thy name heryed is,  
 "By lovirs bonde is knit all thing iwis,  
 "Best unto best, the yerth to watir wanne,  
 "Birde unto birde, and woman unto man.  
 "This is the life of joye that we ben in,  
 "Resemblyng life of heavenly paradise;  
 "Love is charyte of vice and sinne,  
 "Love makith hert's lustie to devise;  
 "Honour and grace have thei in every wise  
 "That ben to Lov's lawe obedient;  
 "Love makith folke benigne and diligent,  
 "Aie steryng them to dredin vice and shame;  
 "In ther degre it maketh them honourable,  
 "And swete it is of Love to bere the name,  
 "So that his love be faithfull, true, and stable;  
 "Love prunith hym to femin amiable,  
 "Love hath no faute there it is exercised,  
 "But sole with them that have all love dispised.  
 "Honour to the, celestiall and clere  
 "Goddess of Love, and to thy celsitude,  
 "That yevest us light so ferre doune from thy spere,  
 "Purifying our hertis with thy pulchritude;  
 "Comparison none of similitude  
 "Maie to thy grace be made in no degre,  
 "That hast us set with Love in unitie.  
 "Grete cause have we to praise thy name and the,  
 "For thorough the we live in joye and blisse;  
 "Blessid be thou, moste soveraine to se!  
 "Thy holy Courte of gladnesse maie not misse;  
 "A thousand sith we may rejoyce in this,  
 "That we ben thine with herte and all yfere,  
 "Enflamid with thy grace and heavenly fere."  
 Musyng of tho that spakin in this wise  
 I me bethought in my remembraunce  
 Myne orison right godely to devise,  
 And plesauntly with hert's obeisaunce  
 Beseeche the goddess voidin my grevaunce,  
 For I loved eke, saufe that I wist no where,  
 Yet down I set, and saied as ye shall here:  
 "Exist of all that evir were or be,  
 Licour and light to pensife creature,  
 Myne whole affiaunce and my ladie fre,  
 My goddess bright, my fortune, and my ure!  
 I yeve and yelde my herte to the full sure,  
 Humbly beseechyng, ladie, of thy grace  
 Me to bestow in some blessid place,  
 And here I vowe me faithfull, true, and kind,  
 Without offence of mutabilitie,  
 Humbly to serve while I have wit and mind,

Myne whole affiaunce and my ladie fre,  
 In thilke place there ye me signe to be;  
 And sith this thing of newe is yeve me, aie  
 To love and serve nedely must I obeie.  
 Be merciable with thy fire of grace,  
 And fixe mine herte there beautie is and routh,  
 For hote I love; determine in no place,  
 Saufe only this, by God and by my trowth  
 Troublid I was with slombir, slepe, and slouth,  
 This othir night, and in a visoun  
 I se a woman romin up and doun  
 Of mene stature, and semely to beholde,  
 Lustie and fresh, demure of countinaunce,  
 Yong and well shap, with here that shone as golde,  
 With eyen as cristall, fercid with plesaunce,  
 And she gan stirre mine herte a lite to daunce,  
 But sodainlie she vanishe gan right there;  
 Thus I maie saie I love and wote not where.  
 For what she is ne her dwellyng I n'ot,  
 And yet I fele that love distreynith me,  
 Might iche her knowe, that would I faine God wot,  
 Serve and obeye with all benignitie,  
 And if that othir be my destinie,  
 So that no wise I shall her nevir se,  
 Then graunt me her that best maie likin me,  
 With glad rejoyce to live in perfite hele,  
 Devoide of wrathe, repent, or variaunce,  
 And able me to doe that maie be wele  
 Unto my ladie with herte's hie plesaunce;  
 And, mightie goddess! through thy purviaunce  
 My wit, my thought, my lust, and love, so guide  
 That to thine honour I maie me provide  
 To set mine hert in place there I maie like,  
 And gladly serve with all affeccion;  
 Grete is the pain which at mine hert doth sticke  
 Till I be sped by thyne eleccion;  
 Helpe, ladie goddess! that possession  
 I might of her have that in all my life  
 I clepin shal my quene and hert's wise;  
 And in the *Courte of Love* to dwell for aie  
 My will is, and doin the sacrifice,  
 Daily with Diane eke to fight and fraie,  
 And holdin werre, as might will me suffice;  
 That goddess chaste I kepin in no wise  
 To serve; a figge for all her chastite!  
 Her lawe is for religiousite.  
 And thus gan finish prayir, laude, and preice,  
 Whiche that I yove to Venus on my kne,  
 And in myne herte to pondir and to peice  
 I gan anone her image freshe beautie;  
 Heile to that figure swete, and heile to the,  
 Cupide! (quod I) and rose and yede my weie;  
 And in the temple as I yede I seie  
 A shrine surmountyng all in stonis riche;  
 Of whiche the force was plesaunce to mine eye,  
 With diamonde or saphire nevir liche  
 I have none seen, ne wrought so wondirliche;  
 So when I met with Philobone in hie  
 I gan demaunde whose is this sepulture?  
 Forsothe, (quod she) a tendir creature  
 Is shrinid there, and Pitie is her name;  
 She sawe an egle wreke hym on a flie,  
 And plucke his wing, and eke him, in his game,



And tendir herte of that hath made her die;  
Eke she would wepe and mourne right pitoufly  
To seen a lovir suffre grete distresse;  
In all the Courte n'is none, as I do gesse

That coud a lovir half so well availe,  
Ne of his wo the torment or the rage  
Askin, for he was sure withoutin faile  
That of his grief she coud the hete awage;  
In stede of Pitie spedith hote Corage  
The mattirs all of Courte; now she is dedde  
I me reporte in this to womanhedde; [pray

Forweile, and wepe, and crie, and speke, and  
Women would not have pitie on thy plaint,  
Ne by that mene to ese thine herte convaie,  
But the recevin for ther owne talent,  
And saie that Pitie causith them consent  
Of reuth to take thy service and thy paine,  
In that thou maiest, to plesse thy soveraine.

But this is counsaill, kepe it secretly,  
(Quod she;) I n'olde for all the worlde about  
The quene of Love it wist, and wiste ye why?  
For if by me this mattir springin out  
In Courte no lengir should I out of doubt  
Dwellin, but shame in all my life endry:  
Now kepe it close (quod she) this hardily.

Well, all is well: now shall ye seen, she saied,  
The fairist ladie undir sonne that is:

Come on with me; demene you lich a maide  
With shamefast drede, for ye shall speke ywis  
With her that is the mirroure, joie, and blisse,  
But somewhat straunge and sad of her demene  
She is: beware your countinaunce be sene,

Not ovirlight, ne rechelesse, ne to holde,  
Ne malaperte, ne rennyng with your tong,  
For she will you obeisin and beholde,  
And you demaunde why ye wer hens so long  
Out of this Courte, without resort among;  
And Rosall her name is hote aright,  
Whose herte is yet yyevin to no wight.

And ye also ben, as I undirstonde,  
With Love but light avauncid by your worde;  
Might ye by hap your freedom makin bond,  
And fall in grace with her, and wele accorde,  
Well might ye thanke the god of Love and lord,  
For she that ye sawe in your dreame appere  
To love soche one what are thei then the nere?

Yet wote ye what? as my remembraunce  
Me yevith now, ye faine where that ye saie  
That ye with Love han nevir acquaintaunce  
Save in your dreame right late this othir daie;  
Why, yes parde, my life that durst I laie  
That ye were caught upon an hettin when I  
Sawe you complain and sigh full pitoufly;

Within an herbir and gardein faire,  
Where flowirs growe and herbis vertuons,  
Of whiche the favour swete was and the cire,  
There were your self full hote and amorous;  
Ywis ye ben to nice and daungirous;  
I would ye now repent and love some newe.  
Naie, by my trothe, I saied, I nevir knewe

The godely wight whose I shal be for aye,  
Guide me the Lorde, that love hath made and me:  
But forthe we went into a chambre gaie

There was Rosall, womanly to se,  
Whose stremis, sotill persyng of her eye,  
Mine hert gan thrill for beatie in the stonde;  
Alas (quod I) who hath me yeve this wounde!

And then I drede to speke till at the laste  
I grete the ladie reverently and wele,  
When that my sigh was gone and ovirpasse,  
And doune on knees full humbly gan I knele,  
Besechyng her my fervent wo to hele,  
For there I toke full purpose in my mynde:  
Unto her grace my painfull herte to ynde.

For if I shall all fully her discove,  
Her hed was rounde by comelyse of Nature,  
Her eere as gold, she pallid all on live,  
And lillie forehed had this creature,  
With livelilie browis, flawe of colour pure,  
Betwene the which was mene disseverance,  
From every browe to shewin a distaunce;

Her nose directed streght, and even as line,  
With forme and shape thereto convenient,  
In which the godis milkewhite peth doth shine,  
And eke her eyen ben bright and orient  
As is the finaragde, unto my judgement,  
Or yet these sterris hevenly small and bright,  
Her visage is of lovely rede and white;

Her mouthe is short, and shitt in litil space,  
Flamyng somdele, not ovir redde I mene.  
With prenaunt lips, and thicke to kisse percase,  
For lippis thinne, not fat, but evir lene,  
They serve of naught, they be not worth a bence,  
For if the baffe ben full there is delite;  
Maximian truely thus doeth he write.

But to my purpose; I saie white as snowe  
Ben all her tethe, and in ordir thei stonde  
Of one stature, and eke her breth i trowe  
Surmountith all odours that er I founde,  
In swetenesse, and her body, face, and honde,  
Ben sharply slendir so that from the hedde  
Unto the fote all is but womanhedde.

I holde my pece of othir thingis hidde;  
Here shal my soule and not my tong bewrie;  
But how she was arraied, if ye me hidde,  
That shall I well discovir you and saie;  
A bende of gold and silk full freshe and gaie,  
With her intreffe ybroudirid full wele,  
Right smothly kept; and shynyng every dele;

About her necke a flower of freshe devise,  
With rubies set that lustie were to sene,  
And she in gowne was light and sommir wise,  
Shapin full wele, the colour was of grene,  
With aureat sent aboute her sidis clene,  
With divers stonis precious and riche;  
Thus was she raied, yet sawe I ner her liche:

For if that Jove had this ladie yseine,  
Tho the faire Calisto ne Alcmene  
Thei nevir haddin in his armis leine,  
Ne he had lovid the faire Europa,  
Ye, ne yet Danae ne Antiopa.

For all ther beautie stode in Rosall;  
She semid lich a thyng celestiall,

In bountie, favour, porte, and finilinesse,  
Plesant of figure, mirroure of delite,  
Gracious to seen, rote of all gentilnesse,

With angell visage, lustie, redde, and white;  
There was not lack, fause Daungir had alite  
This godely freshe in rule and govirnaunce,  
And somdele straunge she was for her plessaunce.

And truly sone I toke my love and went  
When she had me enquired what I was,  
For more and more impressin gan the dent  
Of Lov's darte while I behelde her face,  
And este againe I come to sekin grace,  
And up I put my bill with sentance clere  
That sheweth astir; rede, and ye shall here:

O, ye my love! of beaultie the rote,  
That Nature hath formid so wele, and made  
Princes and quene, and ye that maie do bote  
Of all my langoure with your wordis glad;  
Ye woundid me, ye made me wo bestad;  
Of grace redresse my mortall grefe, as ye  
Of all my harme the very caucir be.

Now am I caught, and unware sodainly,  
With persaunt streamis of your eyin clere,  
Subject to ben and servin you mekely,  
And all your man, ywis, my ladie dere!  
Abidyng grace, of which I you requiere,  
That mercilesse ye cause me not to sterve,  
But guerdon me liche as I maie deserve;

For by my trothe the dayis of my breth  
I am and will be your in will and herte,  
Pacient and meke for you to suffir deth  
If it require; now rue upon my smerte  
And this I swere, I never shall out sterte  
From Lov's Courte for none adversite,  
So ye would rue on my distresse and me.

My destinie, my fate, and houre, I blisse,  
That have me set to ben obedient  
Onely to you, the floure of all ywis;  
I trust to Venus never to repent,  
For ever redy, glad, and diligent,  
Ye shall me finde in service to your grace  
Till deth my life out of my body rafe.

Humble unto your excellence so digne  
Enforcing aye my wittis and delite  
To serve and please with glad herte and benigne,  
And ben as Troilus, Troie's worthie knight,  
Or Antonie for Cleopatra bright,  
And never you me thinkis to renay;  
This shall I kepe unto myne endyng day.

Enprint my speche in your memoriall  
Sadly, my princes, salve of all my sore!  
And thinke that for I would become thrall,  
And ben your owne, as I have saied before,  
Ye must of pitie cherishe more and more  
Your man, and tendir astir his deserte,  
And give hym corage for to ben experte:

For where that one hath set his herte on fire,  
And findith neither refute ne plessaunce,  
Ne worde of comforte, Deth will quite his hire;  
Alas that there ne is none allegaunce  
Of all ther wo! alas the grete grevaunce  
To love unloved! but ye, my ladie dere!  
In other wise maie governe this matere.

Truly gramercie, frende! of your gode will,  
And of your profit in your humble wife,  
But for your service take and kepe it still:

VOL. I.

And wher ye saie I ought you well to cherishe,  
And of your grefe the remedie devise,  
I knowe not why; I n'am acquaintid well  
With you, ne wote not sothly where ye dwell.

In art of love I write and songis make,  
That maie be song in honour of the kyng  
And quene of Love, and then I undirtake  
He that is fadde shall then full mery syng,  
And dangirous not ben in every thyng:  
Beseeche I you but seen my will and rede,  
And let your answere put me out of drede.

What is your name? rehearse it here, I praye;  
Of whens and where, of what condicion,  
That ye ben of: let se; come of and saie;  
Faine would I knowe your disposicion:

Ye have put on your old entencion,  
But whate ye mene to serve me I ne wote,  
Saufe that ye saie ye love me woundir hote:

My name, alas my herte! why makes thou straunge?  
Philogenet I cal'd am ferre and nere,  
Of Cambrige clerke, that never thinke to change  
Ero you, that with your heavenly streamis clere  
Ravishe myne herte and ghost, and all in fere:  
Since at the first I write my bill for grace  
Me thinke I fe some mercie in your face.

And what I mene, by God that al hath wrought,  
My bilie now makith final mencion,  
That ye ben ladie in myne inward thought  
Of all myne herte withoutin offencion,  
That I beste love, and have sith I begon  
To drawe to Courte; lo then what might I saie?  
I yelde me here unto your high nobleye;

And if that I offende, or wilfully  
By pompe of herte your precept disobaye,  
Or doen againe your wille unskillfully,  
Or grevin you for earnest or for plaie,  
Correcte ye me right sharply then I praye,  
As it is seen unto your womanhede,  
And rewe on me, or els I n'am but dede.

Naie, God forbede to lesse you so with grace,  
And for a word of sugrid eloquence  
To have compassion in so lityl space!

Then were it tyme that some of us wer hens;  
Ye shall not finde in me soche insolence:  
Aye, what is this! maie ye not suffre sight?  
How maie ye loke upon the candill light,

That clere is and hottir then is myne eye?  
And yet ye saied the benis perse and frete,  
How shall ye then the candill light endrie?  
For well wotte ye that hath the sharpir herte:  
And there ye bidde me you correct and bete  
If ye offende; naie, that maie not be doen;  
There come but few that spedir here so sone,

Withdrawe your eye, withdrawe from presens  
Hurte not your self through foly with a loke; [eke;  
I would be fory so to make you sicke;  
A woman should beware eke whom she toket  
Ye beth a clerke; go ferchin wel my boke  
If any women ben so light to winne:

Naie; abide a while tho ye were all my kinne;  
So sone ye maie not win myne hert in truth;  
The guise of Court will seen your stedfastnesse,  
And as you doen to have upon you reuth;

M m



Your owne deserte and lowly gentilnesse  
That will reward you joye for hevinesse,  
And tho ye waxin pale, and grene, and dede,  
Ye muste it use a while withoutin drede,

And it accept, and grutchin in no wise:  
But wheras I me hastily desire

To bene to love, me thinke ye be not wise;  
Cese of your language, cese I you requere,  
For he that hath this xx yere bene here  
May nat optaine; than marvaile I that ye  
Be now so bold of love to trete with me.

A, mercy, hert! my lady and my love,  
My rightwise princeesse and my lyv'is guide!  
Nowe may I plein to Venus al above  
That routhles ye me gave this wounde so wide:  
What have I done? why may it not betide  
That for my trouthe I may receivid be?  
Alas than your daungir and crueltie!

In woful houre I gote was, welaway!  
In woful hour fostirid and yfedde,  
In woful hour yborne, that I ne may  
My suplication swetely have yspedde;  
The frosty grave and cold muste be my bedde  
Withoute ye list your grace and mercy shewe,  
Death with his axe so faste on me doth hewe.

So grete disese and in so litil while,  
So litil joy that felte I never yet,  
And at my wo Fortune ginnith to smyle,  
That never erst I felte so harde a fitte;  
Confoundid ben my spirites and my witte  
Til that my lady take me to her-cure  
Whiche I love beste of erthely creature.

But that I like that may I not come by,  
Of that I plain that have I habondaunce;  
Sorowe and thought they sit me wondir nye;  
Me is withhold that might be my plesaunce;  
Yet turne again my worldly fuffsaunce,  
O lady bright! and saufe your faithful true,  
And or I die yet ones upon me rewe.

With that I fell in sounde and dede as stone,  
With coloure flaine and wanne as ashè pale,  
And by the hande she caught me up anon;  
Arise! (quod she) what have ye dronkin dwale?  
Why slepin ye? it is no nitirtale.  
Now mercy, swete! (quod I) iwis affraied.  
What thing (quod she) hath made you so dismaied?

Now wote I wel that ye a lovir be,  
Your hew is witnesse in this thing, she said;  
Yf ye were secret ye might knowe. (quod she)  
Curteise and kinde all this shuld be aleide;  
And now, myne herte! al that I have misseid  
I shal amend, and set your herte in ese.  
That worde it is (quod I) that doth me plesse.

But this I charge, that ye the stentiskepe,  
And breke them not for sloth nor ignoraunce;  
With that she gan to smile and laughin depe.  
Ywis (quod I) I will do your plesaunce;  
The xvi statute doth me grete grevaunce,  
But ye must that releffe or modifie.  
I graunte, (quod she) and so I wil truly.

And softely than her coloure gan appeire  
As rose so red throughout her visage al,  
Wherfore me thinke that it is according here

That she of right be clepid Rosial.  
Thus have I wonne with wordis gret and smal.  
Some godely worde of her that I love best,  
And trust she shall yet sette mine herte in rest.

Goth on, she said to Philobone, and take  
This man with you, and lede him al aboute  
Within the Courte, and shewe him for my sake  
What lovirs dwel within, and al the route  
Of officirs, for he is oute of doute  
A straungir yet. Come on, (quod Philobone).  
Philogenet, with me now must ye go on.

And stalking softely with esy pace I sawe  
Aboute the king yftondin environ  
Attendaunce, Diligence, and ther fellow  
Forthir Asperaunce, and many one,  
Dred to offende there stode, and not alone,  
For there was eke the cruil adversarye,  
The lovirs so, that cleped is Displesure,  
Whiche unto me spake angrily and felle,  
And said, My lady me dissevin shall;  
Trowest thou (quod she) that al that she did tell  
Is true? nay, nay, but undir hon'ry gall  
Thy birth and hers thei be nothing egal;  
Caste of thine herte for all her wordis white,  
For gode faith she lovith the but alite;

And eke remembre thine habilitie  
May not compare with her, this wel thou wot.  
Ye, than come Hope, and said, My frende, let be,  
Beleve him not; Dispaire he ginnith dote.  
Alas, (quod I) here is both cold and hote!  
The tone me biddith love, the todir nay,  
Thus wote I not what me is best to say;

But wel wote I my lady grauntid me  
Truly to be my wound'is remedy;  
Her gentilnesse may not infectid be  
With doublenesse, thus trust I til I die;  
So cast I voide Dispairis company,  
And takin Hope to council and to frende.  
Yea, kepe that wel (quod Philabone) in minde.

And there beside, within a bay window,  
Stod one in grene ful large of bred and length,  
His berd as black as fethirs of the crow,  
His name was Lust, of woundir might and strength,  
And with Delite to argue there he thinkth,  
For this was alway his opinion  
That love was sinne, and so he hath begonne.

To reson faste, and ledge auctorite.  
Nay, (quod Delite) Love is a vertue clere,  
And from the soule his progresse holdith he;  
Blinde appetite of Lust doth oftin stere;  
And that is sinne, for reson lackith there,  
For thou doest think thy neighbour's wife to winne.  
Yet thinke it wel that love may not be sinne.

For God and seint they love right verily,  
Voide of al synne and vise, this know I well;  
Affeccion of fleshe is sinne truly,  
But verray love is vertue, as I seie,  
For verray love may freile desire ackeie,  
For love is love withoutin any sinne.

Nowe stint, (quod Luste) thou spekest not worth a  
And there I left them in ther arguing, [pinne].  
Roning ferthir into the castil wide,  
And in a cornir Lier stode talking.



Of lesings fast with Flattery there beside;  
He said that women were attire of pride,  
And men were founde of nature variaunte,  
And coulede be false and shewin beau semblaunt.

Than Flattery bespake, and said, I wis,  
Se, so she goth on patins faire and fete,  
It doth right well; what pretty man is this  
That romith here? now truly drink ne mete  
Nide I not have, mine herte for joye doth bete  
Him to beholde, so is he godely freshe,  
It semeth ~~or~~ love his herte is tendre and neshe.

This is the courte of lusty folke and glad,  
And wel become ther abite and arraye;  
O! why be som so fory and so sadde,  
Complaining thus in blak, and white, and gray?  
Freris they ben and monkis in gode fay:  
Alas for routh! gret dole it is to sene  
To se them thus bewaile and fory bene.

Se how they crie and wring ther handis whit  
For they so sone went to religion,  
And eke the nonnes with vail and wimple plight  
Ther thought that they ben in confusion:  
Alas! they sain we sain perfeccion  
In clothis wide and lacke our libertie,  
But al the flune mote on our frendis be:

For Venus wote we wold as faine as ye,  
That bene attirid here and wel besene,  
Desyrin man, and love in our degre  
Ferme and faithful, right as ywold the quene:  
Our frendis wicke, in tendir youth and grene,  
Ayenst our will made us religious,  
That is the cause we mourne and wailin thus.

Then saide the monke and freris in the tide,  
Wel may we curse our abbis and our place,  
Our statutes sharpe to sing in copis wide,  
Chastely to kepe us oute of Lov's grace,  
And nevir to sele comforte ne solace,  
Yet suffre we the hete of Lovis fire,  
And astir othir happily we desire.

O Fortune coursid! why nowe and wherfore  
Hast thou, they said, berafte us libertie,  
Sithe Nature yave us instrument in store,  
And appetite to love and lovirs be?  
Why mot we suffer soche adversite  
Diane to serve and Venus to refuse?  
Ful oftin sythe this matier doth us muse.

We serve and honour sore ayenst our will  
Of Chastite the goddess and the quene;  
Us lesir were with Venus bidin stil,  
And have reward for Love, and soget bene  
Unto these women courtely, freshe and shene.  
Fortune! we curse thy whele of variaunce,  
Ther we were wel thou revist our plesaunce.

Thus leve I them with voice of plaint and care  
In raging wo crierig ful pitously;  
And as I yede ful nakid and ful bare  
Some I beholde loking dispiteously,  
On Povirte that dedly cast ther eye,  
And Welaway they cried, and were not faine,  
For they ne might ther glad desire attaine,

For lacke of richesse worldly and of gode  
They banne, and curse, and wepe, and sain Alas!  
That povertie hath us hent that whilom stode

At hert's ese, and fre, and in gode case,  
But now we dare not shew our selfe in place,  
Ne us embolde to dwel in company  
There as our hert wold love right faithfully.

And yet againeward shrikid every nonne,  
The pange of love so strainith them to crie;  
Nowe wo the time (quod they) that we be boun!  
This hateful ordre nise wil doen us die,  
We sigh and sobbe, and bleding inwardly,  
Freting our selfe with thought and hard complaint,  
That nye for love we waxin wode and faint.

And as I stode beholding here and there  
I was ware of a sorte ful languishing,  
Savage and wilde of loking and of chere,  
Ther mantelles and ther clothis ey tering,  
And ofte they were of Nature complaining,  
For they ther membirs lackid fote and hand,  
With visage wry, and blinde I undirstand.

They lackid shap and beautie to preferre  
Them self in love, and said that God and Kind  
Hath forgid them to worshipping the sterre  
Venus the bright, and lestin al behinde.  
His othir werkis clene and oute of minde,  
For othir have ther full shappe and beautie,  
And we (quod they) ben in deformite.

And nye to them there was a company  
That have the Sustirs waried and missaide,  
I mene the thre of fatall Destine,  
That be our werdis; sodenly abraide  
Oute gan they crie as they had ben affraied,  
We curse (quod they) that evir hath Nature  
Yformid us this wofull life to endure.

And there he was contrite and gan repent,  
Confessing whole the wounde that Cithere  
Hath with the darte of hote desire him sent,  
And howe that he to Love muste subject be,  
Than held he al his skornis vapite,  
And said hat lovirs lede a blissid life,  
Yong men and olde, and widowe, maid, and wife,

Bereve me, goddesse, (quod he) of thy might  
My skornis al and skollis that I have,  
No powir for to mockin any wight  
That in thy service dwel, for I did rave,  
This knowe I wel right now, so God me save,  
And I shal be the chief post of thy faith,  
And love uphold, the revers who so faith.

Dissemble stode not ferre from him in trowth,  
With party mantil, party hode and hose,  
And said he had upon his lady routh,  
And thus he wound him in and gan to glose,  
Of his entent full double I suppose,  
And al the worlde he said he loved it wele,  
But ay me thought he loved her nere adele.

Eke Shamefastnesse was there, as I toke hede,  
That blushid rede, and darst nat ben aknowe  
She lovir was, for therof had she drede;  
She stode and hing her visage downe alowe,  
But soche a sight it was to sene I trowe  
As of these rosis rody on ther stalke,  
Ther coud no wight her spy to speke or talke.

In Lov's arte so gan she to abashe,  
Ne durst not uttir al her privite,  
Many a stripe and many a greivous lache

She gave to them that woldin lovirs be,  
 And hindered fore the simple comi'naltie,  
 That in no wise durst grace and mercie crave,  
 For were not she they nede but aske and have;  
 Where yf they now aprochin for to speke,  
 Than *Shamefastnesse* returnith them again,  
 They thinke if we our secret counsel breke  
 Our ladies wil have scorne on us certein,  
 And peravinture thinkin grete disdaine;  
 Thus *Shamefastnesse* may bringin in Dispeire;  
 When she is dede the todir will be heire.

Come forth Avauntir, now I ring thy bel;  
 I spied him sone to God I make a vowe;  
 He lokid black as fendis doth in hell.  
 The firste (quod he) that evir did I wowe  
 Within a worde she come, I wotte not how,  
 So that in attinis was my lady fre,  
 And so hath ben a thousande mo than she

In England, Britain, Spain, and Picardie,  
 Artois, and Fraunce, and up in Hie Holande,  
 In Burgoine, Naples, and in Italye,  
 Navarre, and Grece, and up in Hethin lond;  
 Was nevir woman yet that wolde withstond  
 To ben at commaundement whan I wolde;  
 I lackid neithir silver coigne ne gold:

And there I met with this estate and that,  
 And here I brochid her, and here, I trowe:  
 Lo! there goeth one of myn; and wotte ye what?  
 Yon freshe attirid have I leide ful lowe;  
 And soche one yondir eke right wel I knowe;  
 I kepte the statute whan we lay ifere,  
 And yet yon same hath made me right gode chere.

Thus hath Avauntir blowin every where  
 Al that he knoweth, and more a thousande fold;  
 His auncistris of kinne was to Lier,  
 For firste he makith promise for to hold  
 His ladis council, and it not unfolde,  
 Wherfore the secrete when he doth unshutte  
 Than lyith he that all the worlde maye witte.

For falsing so his promise and behest  
 I wondir fore he hath soche fantasie;  
 He lackith witte I trowe or is a beste,  
 That can no bette himselfe with reson gay;  
 By mine advice Love shall be contrarie  
 To his avail, and him eke dishonoure,  
 So that in Courte he shall no more sojoure.

Take hede (quod she this litil Philobone)  
 Where Envie rockith in the cornir yonde,  
 And sittith derke, and ye shal se anone  
 His tene bodie, his fading face and honde;  
 Him self he frettith, as I undirstonde,  
 Witnesse of Ovide Metamorphosofe;  
 The lovirs so he is, I will not glose:

For where a lovirs thinkith him promote  
 Envie wil grutche, repining at his wele;  
 It swellith fore about his hertis rote,  
 That in no wise he canne not live in hele;  
 And if the faithful to his lady stele  
 Envie will noyse and ringe it rounde aboute,  
 And sey moch worse than done is out of doute.

And Privie Thought, rejoyssing of him selfe,  
 Stode not ferre thens in abite mervilous;  
 Yon is, thought I, some spirite or some elfe,

His sotil image is so curious;  
 How is (quod I) that he is shadid thus  
 With yondir cloth, I n'ot of what coloure?  
 And nere I went, and gan to lere and pore,  
 And fainid him a question ful harde;  
 Whate is (quod I) the thing thou lovist beste,  
 Or what is bote unto thy painis harde?  
 Me thinke thou livist here in gret unrest,  
 Thou wandrist aye from south to est and west,  
 And est to northe: as ferre as I canne se  
 There is no place in Court may holdin me.

Whom folowest thou? wher is thy hert iset?  
 But my demaunde afoile I the require.  
 Me thought (quod he) no creature may let  
 Me to ben here and where as I desire,  
 For whare as Absence hath done out the fire  
 My mery thought it kindeleth yet againe,  
 That bodily me thinke with my soveraine

I stand, and speke, and laugh, and kisse, and halfe,  
 So that my thought comfortith me ful oft;  
 I think, God wote, though al the world be false  
 I wil be true; I thinke also howe softe  
 My lady is in speche, and this on lost  
 Bringith mine herte with joie and gret gladnesse,  
 This privy thought alaith mine hevinesse.

And whate I thinke or where to be no man  
 In al this erthe can tel ywis but I,  
 And eke there n'is no swalow swift ne swan  
 So wight of wing, ne halfe so yerne can fle,  
 For I canne ben, and that right sodenly,  
 In heven, in hell, in paradise, and here,  
 And with my lady whan I wil desire.

I am of counsel ferre and wide I wote  
 With lorde and lady, and ther privitie  
 I wotte it al, and be it hote or colde  
 They shall not speke without licence of me;  
 I myne in soche as sasonable be,  
 For firste the thing is thought within the hert  
 Er any worde oute from the mouth asterte.

And with that word Thought bad farewell and  
 Eke furthe went I to sene the Court's guise, [yede;  
 And at the dore came in, so God me spede,  
 Twenty courteours of age and of assise,  
 Liche high and brode, and as I me advise  
 The Goldin Love and Ledin Love they hight,  
 The tone was sad, the todir glad and light.

Yes, draw your hert with all your force and  
 To lustinesse, and ben as ye have seid. [might  
 And thinke that I no drope of favour hight,  
 Ne ner had unto your desire obeide,  
 Til sodenly me thought me was affraied  
 To sene you wake so dede of countinaunce,  
 And Pite bade me done you some plesaunce;

Oute of her shrine she rose from deth to live;  
 And in mine ere ful privily she spake,  
 Doth not your servaunt hens away to drive,  
 Rosial, (quod she) and than mine herte brake,  
 For tendiriche, and where I founde moch lacke  
 In your persone, then I my self bethought,  
 And saide This is the man myne herte hath sought.

Gramercy! Pite, might I not suffice  
 To yeve due laude unto thy shrine of golde?  
 God wotte I wold, for sith that ye did rise

# THE COURT OF LOVE.

From deth to live for me I am behold  
To thankin you a thousand tymis tolde,  
And eke my lady Rosial the shene,  
Whiche hath in comforte set mine herte I wene.

And here I make myne protestacion,  
And depely swere as mine powir to bene  
Faithful, devoide of variacion,  
And her forbere in angir or in tene,  
And serviceable to my world's quene  
With al my resoun and intelligence,  
To done her honour high and reverence.

I had not spake so fone the worde but she  
My soverain did thanke me hertily,  
And said, Abide, ye shal dwelle still with me  
Till seson come of May, for than truly  
The king of Love and al his company  
Shall holde his feste ful rially and welle;  
And there I bode til that the seson felle.

On May-day whan the lark-began to ryse  
To matins went the lusty nightingal  
Within a temple shapin hauthorn wife,  
He might not slepe in all the nyghtirtale,  
But *Dominus labia* gan he crie and gale;  
*My lippis opin, lord of Love, I crie,*  
*And let my mouth thy praising now bewrye.*

The egle sang *Venite* bodies al,  
And let us joye to Love, that is oure helth,  
And to the deske anon they gan to fall,  
And who came late he precid in by stelth,  
Then saied the faucon, our owen hertis welth,  
*Dominus Dominus noster, I wote*  
*Ye be the god that donne us brenne thus hote.*

*Calienarrant*, saied the poppingay,  
Your might is told in heaven and firmament,  
And then came in the goldfinche freshe and gay,  
And saied this psalme with hertely glad intent,  
*Domini est terra*, this Latin intent  
*The god of Love bath yertb in govirnaunce,*  
And than the wren gan scippin and to daunce;

*Jube Domine, O lord of Love! I pray*  
*Commaunde me wel this lesson for to rede,*  
This legende is of al that woldin dye  
Martirs for Love, God yef the foulis spede,  
And to the Venus singe we oute of drede,  
By influence of al thy vertue grete,  
Beseching the to kepe us in our herte.

The seconde lesson robin redebreste sang,  
Hail to the god and goddes of our lay!  
And to the lectorn amorily he sprang,  
Hail, (quod he) o thou freshe seson of May!  
Our monith glad that singin on the spray,  
Hail to the flouris rede, and white, and blewe,  
Whiche by ther vertue makith our lust new!

The thirde lesson the turtill dove toke up,  
And therat lough the mavis in a scorne,  
He said, O God! as mote I dine or suppe

This folishe dove wil gife us al an horne,  
There ben right here a M. bettir borne  
To rede this lesson, whiche as wel as he,  
And eke as hote, can love in al degre.

The turtill dove saied, Welcom, welcom May,  
Gladsom and light to lovirs that ben trewe,  
I thanke the lord of Love that doth purvey  
For me to rede this lesson al of dewe,  
For in gode soth of courage I pursue  
To serve my make tyll deth us must departe,  
And than *Tu autem* sang he al aparte.

*Te Deum amoris* sang the thrustil cocke,  
Tuball him self the firste musician  
With key of armony coude not onlocke  
So swete a tewne as that the thrustil can,  
*The lord of Love we praisin* (quod he) than,  
And so done al the foulis gret and lite,  
Honour we May in fals lovirs dispite.

*Dominus regnavit*, saied the pecocke there,  
*The lord of Love, that mighty prince inuis,*  
*He is recevid here and every where.*  
Nowe *Jubilate* sang, what menith this?  
Saied than the lynet, *Welcom lord of blisse.*  
Oute sterte the owle with *Benedicite!*  
What menith al this mery fare? (quod he.)  
• *Laudate* sang the larke with voice ful shril,  
And eke the kight *O admirabile!*

This quire wil throw min eris pers and thril,  
But what? welcom this May seson (quod he)  
And honoure to the lord of Love mote be,  
That hath this feste so solempne and so hie;  
*Amen* saied al, and so saied eke the pie.

And forth the cockowe gan procede anon  
With *Benedictus!* thanking God in hast  
That in this May wode visite them echon,  
And gladdin them al while the fest shal last.  
And therwithal a laughtir oute he brashe,  
I thanke it God that I shuld ende the song,  
And al the service whiche hath ben so long.  
Thus sang they al the service of the feste,  
And that was done right erly to my dome,  
And furth goth al the Courte both most and lest  
To fetch the flouris fresh, and braunch, and blom  
And namely hauthorn brought both page and grom  
With fresh garlantis, party blew and white,  
And than rejoyfin in ther grete delite.

Eke eche at othir threwe the flouris bright  
The prymerose, the violete, and the gold,  
So than as I beheld the roial sight  
My lady gan me sodenly behold,  
And with a trewe love plitid many a folde  
She smot me through the very herte as blive!  
And Venus yet I thanke I am alive.



## THE REMEDIE OF LOVE.

*This book, taken for the most part out of The Proverbs of Solomon, is a warning to take heed of the deceitful company of women.*

## THE PROLOGUE.

SAYNG the manyfolde inconvenience  
Falling by unbrydled prosperite,  
Whiche is not temprid with moral prudence,  
Nothing more welthie than in youth's frelte,  
Movid I am bothe of right and equite  
To youth's wele somewhat for to endite  
Whereby he may himselfin safecondite.

And firste I note as a thinge most noyous,  
And unto youth a grevous malady,  
Amongis us callid love encombrous,  
Vexyng alway yonge peple straungely,  
Ofun by force it causith 'hem to dye,  
And age is also turmentid by love,  
I mene bineth the girdle' and not above.

Wherefore this werke, whiche is right laborous,  
For age me nedith nat in honde to take,  
To youthe me owith to be' obsequious;  
Nowe I begin thus to worke for his sake,  
Whiche may the servente of love aslake,  
To the lovir as a mitigative,  
To him that is none a preservative.

That mighty lorde whiche that me govirneth,  
'Tis Youthe I mene, mesure if that I pace  
In every matir whiche that him concerneth:  
First, as is behoveful, I wol aske grace,  
And forthwithal now in this same place  
Er I begin I wol yknele and say  
These fewe wordis, and him of helpe praye:

Thou flouring Youth, whiche hast the avauntage  
In strength of body, in luste, and beaute,  
Also a precelling haile above Age  
In many' a singuler commodite,  
Howe be it one thing he hath beyonde the  
To thy most profite and gretist availe,  
Whiche shuld the conduit, I mene sad counsaile.

And yet, gode lorde, of a presumption  
I n'il deprave thy might and deite,  
I lyve but undir thy protection,  
I am thy subiecte, I were thy lyverie,  
For thou arte grounde of my prosperite,

And freshist flowir of al my garlande,  
My singuler aide, as I well undirstande.

But as he that oweth his lorde best service  
And entire faithe, his honour to supporte,  
Right so I speke, and in none othir wise;  
I knowlege my self one of the lest sorte  
Of thy servauntes, to our eldres comforte,  
Drawe sadde counsaile unto the if thou liste,  
The and thy powir who maie then resiste?

Fie on Age, I say, undir wordis fewe,  
And his erroneous opinion!  
What spekist of him whiche saieth moste untrue  
All youth to be of ill disposicion?  
Dampnith us all without excepcion,  
And for a colerable avauntage  
He saieth in hym restith all counsaill sage.

Well sothly maie sadde counsaile in him rest,  
But yet his dedis ben full ferre therefro;  
He maie wel sayin with our parishe prest,  
Doith as I saie and not as I do;  
For I my selfin know wele one or two  
Well strickin in age that for neighbourhedde  
Ywollin to ther neighbours wivis bedde.

He will in presence of the yonge man  
Her clippe and kisse, ye, and her doune ylaie,  
And to blere his eye thus he sayith than,  
O suffre yet olde Morell for to plaie,  
Now have I doin that I can or maie:  
Thus he sayith her husband for to queme,  
That he nor no man shouldin not misdeme.

In wordé nor dede nedith him not be coie,  
It is impossible that he doe amisse:  
If the yong man speke, anon he saieth, Boie,  
To rebuke age besemeth the not iwis:  
And thus his olde face aye his warrant is;  
All is in hym but sleight and subtilte,  
And ferre from right reson, I tellin the.

And, shortly, Age is not abovin me;  
Age is impotent, and of no resistance;  
Age unweldie ne maie not fight nor fle;

What werin Age withoutin my defence?  
Sad counsaile failest, Givith hym assistance;  
Right reson is freshist where that I ame,  
Wherefore in thy sayng thou art to blame.

Sith reson to me is rathir accompanied  
Then unto Age, whiche is the opinion  
Of every wise man not to be denied,  
And sith sad counsaile procedith of reson,  
Sad counsaile in me hath his chese mansion;  
This is no naie; but what then is the ende  
Of this thy suasion; what doest entende?

Age to compare unto thyne excellence  
I nill perswade hym so to dignifie,  
Ye be not egall, how be it Experience  
Hym avauntageth, for she moste certainly  
Hym techith what thing to hym is contrary,  
And ofte to fore se 'and warily eschewe  
Whiche thou nevir assaidist yet nor knewe.

Experience makith a man moste certain  
Of thing ertily, and of necessite  
Sad counsaile requirith certaintie plain,  
So ferre so movin thus whereto nede we?  
But to my purpose, as thou commaundest me;  
Shortly mine entent is thus, and none other,  
Under thy licence to counsaile my brother.

How shouldist give any counsaile so yong,  
Lacking experience? unto thine owne speche

I report me, I wote as for thy tong  
Will serve the right wel, but than for to tech  
I doubt me lest that thy wit woll not rech;  
Youth and Experience thou saist be not convert,  
How shouldist thou then teche well unexpert?

Scripture witniffith that God will oft shitte  
Fro the' hie wittid man and shew it the child,  
To hym I mene that of his owne witte  
Presumeth not, but is debonaire and milde;  
By counsaile I entend vertue to bilde,  
Whiche of myne elders part have I borrowed,  
And part of experience, which I have sorowed.

Well, than, if it be as thou lettist fare  
Shewe forth the thy doctrine, be not ought agaste;  
I woll the supporte; loke thou doe not spare  
Maugre Age, although that he frete or gnaste;  
To aske Age counsaile herein were but wast:  
Boldely begin; go forth to the processe;  
Fere not, sithins thou art of soche surenesse.

Graunt mercie, lorde! sithin it the doeth like  
To licence me, now I woll and dare boldly  
Assaile my purpose; with scriptures autentike  
My werke woll I ground, undirset, and fortifie  
Aspire my ginning, o thou wode Furie  
Alecto, with thy sustirs! and in speciall  
To the, mother of Jelousie, Juno, I call.

## THE REMEDIE OF LOVE.

This werkè who so shall se or yrede  
Of incongruite do me not impeche;  
Ordinatelie behoveth me first to procede  
In deduccion thereof, right as the leche  
His paciente's sicknes oweth first for to feche,  
The which known medicin he should aplice,  
And shortly as he can shape remedie.

Right so by counsaile, willing the to' exhort,  
O yong man prosperous! which doth abonde  
In thy floures of luste, belongeth on the fort,  
Me first to considir what 'is rote and ground  
Of thy mischefe, whiche is plainlie yfound  
Woman, yfarcid with fraud and disceipt,  
To thy confusion moste allective baite.

Flie the miswoman lest she the disceye,  
Thus saith Salomon, which taught was fullie  
The falsheid of women in his daies to' conceive;  
The lips of a strumpet ben swetir than honie,  
Her throte fouplid with oile of flatirie,  
How be it the ende and effecte of all  
Bitterer is then any wormwode or gall.

Flie the miswoman if thou love thy life:  
Beware of the straungir's blande eloquence;  
Straungir I call her that is not thy wife;

Of her beaultie have no concupiscence,  
Her countinaunce, pretendyng benevo'lence;  
Beware her signes and eye so amiable,  
Holde it for ferme thei ben disceivable.

Lo, here an ensample what women be  
In ther signis and continuance shortlie!  
I woll shewin the how loviris thre  
Ylovid one woman right entirelie;  
Eche of them knewe othir's maladie,  
Wherefore it was all ther daily labour  
Who coude approchin next in her favour.

At sondrie sasons, as fortune requireth,  
Severallie thei came to se her welfare,  
But ones it happinid Love them so fireth,  
To se ther ladie thei all would not spare;  
Of othir's comyng none of them were ware  
Till all thei mette whereas thei in o place  
Of ther ladie sawe the desirid face.

To suppir set, full smallie thei coude etc;  
Full sobir and demure in countinaunce,  
There taried none of 'hem for any mete,  
But on his ladie to give attendaunce,  
And in secrete wise some signifiante

Of love to have, the whiche perceyving she  
Fetelie' executid thus her properte.

In due selson, as she alwaie aspied  
Every thyng to' execute convenientlie,  
Her one lovir first frendelie she eyed,  
The second she offred the cuppe so curtislie,  
The thirde she gave a token secretlie,  
Undirneath the borde she trade on his fote,  
Through his entrailstiklid the herte rote.

By your leve, might I here aske a question  
Of you my maistirs that fewe lov'is trace,  
To you likely belongeth the solucion  
Whiche of these thre ystode now in her grace!  
Clerely to answere ye would aske long space,  
The mattir is doubtfull and opirable;  
To' ascertain you I woll my self enable.

Of the forelayid thre my self was one,  
No man can answere it bettir then I;  
Hertely of us bilovid was there none,  
But Watt'is packe we bare all by and by,  
Whiche at the last I my self gan aspie,  
And time as me thought then I left the daunce:  
O thoughtfull herte, gret is thy grevaunce!

Hence fro me! hence! that me for to endite  
Halpe aie here afore, o ye Musis Nine!  
Whilom ye were wont be mine aide and light,  
My penne to direct, my brain to' illumine;  
No lengir, alas! maie I fewe your doctrine,  
The freshe lussie metirs I wont to make  
Have ben here afore I' uttirlic forsake.

Come hither Erinnys, and ye Furies all  
Whiche fer ben undre' us nigh the nethir pole,  
Where Pluto reignith, o kyng Infernall!  
Sende out thine Arpies, send Anguise and Dole,  
Miserie and Wo, leve ye me not sole,  
Of right be present must Pain and Turment,  
The pale Deth besemeth not to be absent.

To me now I call all this lothsome sort  
My paines t' encrese, my sorowes to augment,  
For worthie! I am to' be bare of all comfort,  
Thas sith I have consumid and mispent  
Not onely my daies but fivesolde talent  
That my Lorde gave me, I can not recompence,  
I maie n'ot to derely' aby my negligence.

By the' path of penaunce yet woll I revert  
To the well of grace, mercie there to fetch;  
Despisist not God the meke contrite herte,  
Of the cocke crowe, alas! I would not retche,  
And yet it is not late in the' seconde wetcher:  
Mercie shall I purchase by incessaunt cryng,  
The mercies of our Lorde er shall I syng.

But well mayist thou waile, wicked woman,  
That thou shuldest disceve thus an innocent;  
In recompence of my sinne, so' as I can,  
To' al wol I make and leve this monument,  
In shewing part of thy falsshed is myne entent,  
For all were to moche, I cann'ot, well I wote,  
The cause shewith plainly he that thus wrote.

If al the yerth wer parchment scribable,  
Spedie for the hande, and all manir wode  
Wer hewed and proportioned to pennis able,  
All water yuke eithir in damme or flode,  
Every man being a parsite scribe and gode,  
The cursidnesse yet and desceipt of women  
Coud not be shewid by the mene of penne.

I flie all odious resemblaunces;  
The devil'is bronde call women I might,  
Whereby man is encensid to mischaunces,  
Or a stinkyng rose, that faire is in sight,  
Or dedly' empoison, like the fugir white,  
Whiche by his swetnesse causith man to tast,  
And sodainly sleeth and bringeth him to' his last.  
It 'is not my manir to use soche langage,  
But this my doctrine as I maie lawfullie  
I' woll wholly grounde with aucthoritie sage,  
Willing wisdome and vertue edefie:  
Wine and women into apostasie  
Cause wisemen to fall; what is that to saie?  
Of wisdome cause them to forget the waie:  
Wherefore the wisemen doith the advise,  
In whose wordis can be founde no lesyng,  
With the straungir to sittin in no wise  
Whiche is not thy wise; fall not in clippyng  
With her, but beware eke of her kiffyng,  
Kepe with her in wine no altercacion,  
Lest thyne herte fall by inclination.

Maie a man, thinkist, hide and safely laie  
Fire in his bosome without empairement  
And brenning of his clothes? or whider he may  
Walke on horte colis his fete not ybrente?  
As who saith naie, and whereby is mente  
This foresaied proverbe and similitude,  
But that thou ridde the plainly to denude  
From the flattirirs forgettyng her gide,  
The gide of her youth, I mene Shamfastines,  
Whiche should cause her maidinhed to abide,  
Her Godd'is behest eke she full rechelesse  
Not retching committeth to forgetfulnes,  
Neithir God ne shame in her havyn place;  
Nedis must soche a woman lacke grace.

And all that neighin her in waie of sin  
To tourne of grace shall lacke the influence,  
The pathis of life no more to come in,  
Wherefore first frende the with Sapience,  
Remembring God, and astir with Prudence,  
To thyne owne wele, that so thei may the kepe,  
Unto thyne herte lest her wordis crepe.

In his boke where I take my moste ground,  
And in his Proverbis, sage Salomon  
Tellith a tale which is plainly found  
In the fiveth chapter, whedir in dede don  
Or mekely feined to our instruccion  
Let clerkes determine, but this am I sure,  
Moche like thyng I my self have had in ure.

At my windowe, saith he, I lokid out,  
Faie yonge peple where I sawe many,  
Emong them all, as I lokid about,  
To a yong man fortunid I lent myne eye,  
Estraungid from his minde it was likely;  
By the' itrete at a cornir, nigh his own hous,  
He went about with eye right curious.

When that the daie his light began withdrawe,  
And the night approchid in the twilight,  
How a woman came aad met hym I sawe,  
Talking with him undir shade of the night;  
Now blessid be God (quod she) of his might,  
Whiche hath fulfillid myne hert'is desire,  
Aflaked my painis, which were hote as fire.

And yet myne aucthour, as it is gode skill,  
To folowe I must tell her araiment;



She was full nice fowles like to spill,  
As nice in countinaunce yet as in garmente,  
For janglyng she was of rest impaciente,  
Wandirynge still in no place she ystode,  
But restlesse now, and now out forthe she yode :

Now in the hous she was, now in the strete,  
Now at a cornir she standeth in awaite,  
Incessantly busie her praie to gete,  
To bring to the lure whom she doith laite.  
Now where I left unto my mattir strait  
I woll tournin again, how she hym met,  
Sweetly kissid, and frendly him grette.

With wordes of curtisie many and diverse,  
Right as in part I have before ytold,  
Now as I can I purpose to reherse  
How she flattiring saied with visage bolde,  
I have made vowes and offringes manifolde  
For thy sake, o myne herte! o my love dere!  
This daie I thanke God all performid were;

Therefore I came out and made thus asterte,  
Verie desirous your welfare to se;  
Now I have seen you plesid is myne herte;  
In faith shall none yhave my love but ye;  
As true as I am to you be to me:  
I praie you hertily, dere herte! come home,  
No man should be to me so much welcome.

And in gode faith, the sothe for to saie,  
Your comyng unto me ran in my thought:  
Harke in your ere; my bedde freshe and gaie  
I have behanged with tapettis new bought,  
From Egypte and from far countries ybrought,  
Steinid with many a lustie freshe hewe,  
Excedyng golde or jaspir in value:

My chambir is strowed with mirre and insense,  
With sote sav'oring aloes and finnamome,  
Brethyng an aromatike redolence,  
Surmountyng olibane in any man's dome;  
Ye shall bitwene my brestes rest if ye come;  
Let us now have our desirid halfyng,  
For we maie safe be till in the mornyng.

Myne husband is not at home, he is went  
Forthe in his journey a farre waie from hence,  
A bagge with money he hath with hym hent,  
As hym thought nedefull was for his expence;  
Unto my wordis give faith and credence;  
Now is the monè yong and of light dulle,  
Ere he come home it woll be at the fülle.

And thus craftily hath she hym besette  
With her lime rodia, and pantir, and snare,  
The felie soule ycaught hath in her nette,  
Of her sugrid mouthe, alas! nothyng ware;  
And thus is he left gracielesse and bare  
Of helpe, and comfort, and ghostly succour,  
And, furthirmore, as sayith myne authour,

As a best ledde to his deth doith pante.  
This yong man folowith her in that stounde,  
And as a wanton lambe full ignorante  
How he is pulled and drawin to be bounde  
Unto the tyme he hath his deth is wounde,  
And like a birde that hastith to the grin,  
Not knowyng the perill of his life therein.

Now, gentle sonne, saith Salomon, take hede,  
My wordis in thy brest kepe and make faste,

Many hath she woundid, many doune caste,  
Many strong men by her hath losse ther breth;  
Her waies are waies of hell ledyng to deth.

And in this lite narracion precedente  
The womanne's manifolde gilte I attende,  
The yongè man, alas, how she hath shent!  
Discevid her husbände her owne next frend;  
In these bothe her God she doith offende;  
To breke her spousail to her is of no weight.  
Furdirmore to shew woman's craft and sleight,

A woman at her dore fate on a stall  
To se folke passe by stretes of the cite,  
With eye and countinaunce eke she gan call,  
If there be any pretie one come to me,  
Come hithir ye piggis nye, ye little babe!  
At last she saied to a yong man hertlesse,  
Of her deceit unaware and defencelesse,

Moche swetir, she saith, and more acceptable,  
Is drinke when it is stollin privily  
Then when it is taken in form avowable;  
Bread hiddin and gottin jeoperdouslie  
Ymust nedis be swete and semblable;  
Venison stollin is aie the swetir,  
The ferthir the narowir fet the bettir.

And whom this woman, saith Salomon, festen  
The yong man wotigh not whom she doth fede;  
Of the darke depenesse of hell ben her gesses;  
Beware, o yong man! therefore I the rede,  
And how be it chiefly for thy gode spede  
This werke to compile I have take in charge  
I must of pitie my charitie enlarge;

With the felie man whiche is thus begiled,  
Her husband I mene, I wol wepe and waille  
His painfull infortune, whereby reviled  
Causelesse he is, nevir to convaile;  
Every man yong and olde woll him assaile  
With wordes of occasion with the loth name,  
And, alas, gode soule! he nothyng to blame:

But she whiche that coud so ill doe and wolde,  
Hers be the blame for her soule demerite,  
And leve that opprobrious name Cuckold  
To apropr to hym as in dispite;  
Ranfak yet we wouldin if that we might  
Of this wordè the true ortographie,  
The verie discent and etymologie.

The well and grounde of the firste invencion  
To knowe the ortographie we must derive,  
Whiche is Coke and Cold in composition,  
By reson as nigh as I contrive,  
Then how it is writtin we knowe belive;  
But yet, lo! by what reson and what grounde  
Ywas it of these two wordis compounde?

As of one cause to give very judgement,  
The etymology let us firste beholde;  
Eche lettir an whole worde doeth represent,  
As C put for Colde, and O put for Olde,  
K is for Knave; thus divers men don holde:  
The firste parte of this name we have yfounde,  
Let us ethimologise the secounde.

As the firste findir mente I am right sure  
C for Calot, for Of we havin O,  
And L for Leude, and D for Demeanure,  
The craft of the enventour ye maie se lo!

A Colde Olde Knave, Cokcold himself wenyng,  
And eke a Calot of Leude Demenyng.

The seconde cause of the' imposition  
Of this foresayd name was jelousie :

To be jelouse is gretist occasion  
To be cokcold that men can wel aspie,  
And though the passion be very fire,  
And of continuell fervence and hete,  
The patient eye sufferith colde on his fete.

And who that 'is jelous and aye in a drede  
Is full of melancolie and gallie ire;  
His wiv'is nose if she onis mistrede  
He woll cut off, ye, and he woll conspire  
His deth who evir that woll her desire,  
Whiche she percevyng brastith streight his gall;  
And anone his grete wodenesse doith fall.

As sone as she hath knit for him that knot  
Now is he tame that was so ramagious;  
Mekely sittith he doune and takith his lot;  
Layid ben now his lokes so furious,  
And he but late as a coke bataillous,  
Hote in his quarell, to avenge hym bolde,  
Now is he callid both Coke and Colde.

This saying, to' all curtise dissonant,  
Which ysemith that it of malice grewe,  
In this rude tretise I ne woll not plant  
As parcell thereof, but onely so shewe  
The opinion of the talcative shrewe,  
Whiche in ill sayng is ever merie  
No man as I thereof so warie.

But I as parcell of this my lite boke  
Woll graffin in some sadde counsaill wherby  
The weddid man, if that he daigne to loke  
In it, the bettir shall mowin hym gie,  
And provide for his saied infortunie,  
Whiche as I have sayid with him complaine  
I woll, as partinir of his grete paine.

As moste expedient unto his wele  
I woulde that all jelousie were abjecte,  
If he be jelous that he it concele,  
And in his labour be full circumspecte,  
To knowe her waies if thei femin suspecte,  
And not for to breke, for one worde brokin  
She woll not misse but she woll be brokin.

Forbid her not that thou n'oldist have don,  
For loke what thyng so e're she is forbod  
To that of all thyngis she is most prone,  
Namely if it be ill and no gode;  
Till it be executid she' is nigh wode:  
Soche is a woman, and soche is her fete;  
Her craft by craft than labour to defete.

If thou hereaftir, now a single man,  
Shouldist be jelous if thou haddest a wife,  
Wedde not but if thou can trust a woman,  
For els shouldist thou lede a carefull life;  
That thou moste lothist should ybe full rife;  
Yet I ne will gainsaie matrimonie,  
But *Atellus est mberis quam uri.*

That is to saie, Bettir is in wedlocke  
A wife to take, as the church doith kenne,  
Then for to ben undir the flesh'is yoke,  
In fleshlie lustis alwaie for to brenne;  
But, as I sayid, for all jelous menne,  
So thei livin chaste, I holde it lasse ill  
That thei ne wedde not than them selfin spill.

The single man whiche that is yet to wedde,  
And not the weddid man, thus I arede,  
To warne hym now he is to farre yspedde,  
It is all to late hym for to forbede,  
But let hym take as for his owne nede,  
Soche counsaile as is hym before ytolded,  
These wordis folowyng eke to beholde.

Thy watir to kepe the wiseman doth teche,  
That thou in no wise let it have issue,  
At a narowe riste waie it woll yseche;  
And semblablie the woman that 'is untrue  
To give her fre walke in all wise eschue;  
If she at large, not at thine hande, walke  
She woll the shamin, thou shalt it not balke.

Weddid or single thus saith the wiseman,  
Her which that both daie and night evirmore  
Lithe in thy bosome, wife or yet lemmen,  
Love not to hote, lest thou repent it fore,  
Lest she the bryngin into some ill lore:  
Thy wife not to love yet I n'ill support,  
But that thou doe not thus I the exhort.

Lo! if thou love her love thine honestie;  
Be she not idill for what woll betide;  
If she sit idle of very necessitie  
Her mind woll serchin ferre and eke wide,  
Namelie if she be not accompanide:  
How accompanied? not with yong men,  
But with maidinis I mene or women.

Maidin servauntes be right convenient  
In house to helpin to doe her service,  
In whom she maie use her commandement  
In the seson all at her owne device;  
To techin 'hem gode yeve her thine advice  
To make them huswifis: thus businesse  
Maie yet refrainin her from idlenesse.

But bid not her that thou wolt have her do,  
Of thine entent that might be a lettyng,  
But craftily encourage her therto  
By othir menis, as by commendying,  
And not to moche, but dailyng mengyng  
Bothe praise and blame, and in thy reson  
First raise wisely the place and seson.

Of faithfull will and herte full tender  
One thing I call into remembraunce  
Again, which though my wit be to slender  
Astir my powir and my suffisaunce  
I purpose to makin a purveiaunce,  
Sith women of nature ben chaungeable,  
Frele, and nor ware, also discevable.

Be it that thy wife be excellently gode,  
That none be bet of disposicion,  
In proesse of time she might turn her mode  
By some misse-liver's instigation;  
Divers men to thilke occupacion  
Aplyin daily ther mynde and eke herte,  
From ther godenesse frele women to perverte.

If thou aspie any suspect person,  
Drawe to thy wife, beware in alle wise;  
To hym nor her of thy suspeccion  
Brekenot one worde though that thine herte agrise;  
*Kindle no fire and no smoke woll arise:*  
Although he be of a corrupt entent  
She peraventure is not of assent.

---

A SAIYNG OF DAN JOHN.

THESE be the four thingis that maketh man a fole; | Women also bring men into dotage;  
Honour first puttith him into outrage, | And mighty wine in many divers wise  
And aldir next folitarie and fole; | Distemperin folke which ben yholdin wife.  
The second is unweldy crokid age;

---

YET OF THE SAME.

THESE ben four thingis causing grete folye; | Wherefore by counsell of philosophers sage  
Honour first; and second unwildy age; | In gret honour lernith this rule of me,  
Women and wine I dare eke specify | With thine estate havith humilite.  
Ymake wife men fallin into dotage;

---

MOTTO TO JACK UPLAND.

OF feris I have told before | And yet I could tell worse and more,  
Now in a making of a crede, | But men would werrien it to rede.



## THE HOUSE OF FAME.

IN THREE BOOKS,

*In this book is shewed how the deeds of all men and women, be they good or bad, are  
carry'd by report to posterity.*

## THE PROLOGUE.

GOD tourne us everie dreame to gode,  
For it is wondir thyng by the' rode,  
To my wite, what causith swevines  
On the morowe or on evines,  
And why the' effecte foloweth of some,  
And of some it shall never come,  
Why that is in avision,  
And this a revelacion,  
Why this dreame, why that a sweven,  
And not to every manliche even,  
Why this a fantome' why that oricles  
I n'ot; but whofo of these miracles  
The causies knowith bet than I  
Define he, for I certainly  
Ne can 'hem not, ne never thinke  
To busie my witte-for to swinke  
To knowe of ther significacions,  
The gendris ne the distincions  
Of the tymes of 'hem, ne the causis,  
Or why that this is more then that is,  
Or if folkis complexions  
Make 'hem dreame of reflexions;  
Or ellis thus, as other saine,  
For the' grete febleness of ther braine,  
By abstinence or by sicknesse,  
By prison, strief, or grete distresse;

Or ellis by disordinaunce,  
Or natural accustomaunce,  
That some men be to curious  
In studie or melancolious;  
Or thus, so inly full of drede  
That no man maie 'hem botẽ rede;  
Or ellis that devocion  
Of some and contemplacion  
Causin to them soche dremis ofte;  
Or that the cruil life unfeste  
Of 'hem that unkind lovis leden,  
That oftin hopin moche or dreden,  
That purely ther impressiõs  
Causin 'hem to have visiõs:  
Or if that spirites han the might  
To makin folke to dreame on night,  
Or if the soul of propir kinde  
Be so perfite as men yfinde,  
That it wele wote what is to come,  
And that he warnith all and some  
Of everiche of ther avintures  
By avisiõs or by figures,  
But that our flesh ne hath no might  
To understandin it aright,  
For it is warnid to derkely,  
But why the cause is not wote I;

## PROLOGUE TO THE HOUSE OF FAME.

15

Well wotin of this thyngē clerkes  
That tretē of that and othir werkes,  
For I of none opinion  
N'll as now makin mencion,  
But only that the holy rode  
Tournīng us every dreme to gode,  
For nevīr sithīn I was borne,  
Ne no man ellis me beforne,  
Ymette I trowe right stedfastly  
So wondirfull a dreme as I  
The tenthe daie now of December,  
The whiche, as I can remember,  
I woll you tellin every dele :  
But at beginnyng trustith wele  
I woll make invocacion  
With devoute speciall devocion  
Unto the god of Slepe anone,  
That dwellich in a cave of stone,  
Upon a streame that cometh fro Lete,  
That is a flode of hell unswete,  
Beside a fulke men clepe Cimerie  
There slepith aye this god unmerie,  
With his slepie thousande sonis ;  
That alwaie to slepe ther won is ;  
And to this god that I of rede  
Praie I that he wollin me spede  
My swevin for to tell aright,  
If every dreme stande in his might,

And he that movir is of all  
That is and was, and evir shall,  
So give 'hem joyē that it here  
Of all that thei dremin to yere,  
And for to standin all in grace  
Of ther lovis, or in what place  
That 'hem were levist for to stonde,  
And shalde 'hem from povertē and shonde,  
And from every unhappe and disese,  
And sende 'hem that which maie 'hem plese,  
That takith well and scornith nought,  
Ne it misdemin in ther thought  
Through malicious entencion ;  
And whofo through presumption,  
Or hate, or scorne, or though envie,  
Dispite, or jape, or felonie,  
Misdeme it, praie I Jesus gode,  
Dreme he barefote or dreme he shode,  
That every harme that any man  
Hath had sithīn the worlde began  
Besall hym thereof or he sterve,  
And graunt that he maie it deserve !  
Lo ! with right soche conclusion  
As had of his avision  
Crefus, that was the Kyng of Lyde,  
That high upon a gibet dyde,  
This prayir shall he have of me,  
I am no bette in charite,

## THE FIRST BOKE.

Now herkin, as I have you saied,  
What that I mette or I abraied.  
Of December the tenith daie  
When it was night to slepe I laie,  
Right as I was wonte for to doen,  
And fill aslepē wondir sone,  
As he that was werie forgo  
On pilgrimage milis two  
To the corps of Sainct Leonarde,  
To makin lithe that erst was harde.

But as me slept me mette I was  
Within a temple imade of glas,  
In whiche there werin no images  
Of golde standyng in sondrie stages,  
Sette in no riche tabirnaclis,  
And with perrē no pinnacles,

And mo curious portraitureis  
And queint manir of figuris  
Of golde worke then I sawe evir :

But certainly I n'ist nevīr  
Where that it was, but well wist I  
It was of Venus redily

This temple, for in purtreiture  
I sawe anone right her figure  
Nakid yfetyng in a se, *flecting in a sea.*  
And also on her hedde parde  
Her rosy garland white and redde,  
And her combe for to kembe her hedde,  
Her dovis, and Dan Cupido  
Her blindē sonne, and Vulcano,  
That in his face ywas full broune.

But as I romid up and doune

I founde that on the wall there was  
Thus writtin on a table of bras;

*I wold now sing, if that I can,  
The armies and also the man  
That first came through his destine  
Fugitive fro Troye the cowntre  
Into Italie, with full moche pine,  
Unto the foudis of Lavine:*

And tho began the storie anone  
As I shall tellin you echone.

First sawe I the distruccion  
Of Troie thorough the Greke Sinon  
With his false untrue forswerynges,  
And with his chere and his lesynges,  
That made a horse brought into Troye  
By whiche Trojans losse all ther joye.

And aftir this was graved, alas!  
How Ilion's castill assailed was  
And won, and Kyng Priamus slain,  
And Polites his sonne certain,  
Dispitously of Dan Pyrrhus.

And next that sawe I howe Venus,  
When that she sawe the castill brende,  
Doun from hevin she gan discende,  
And bade her sonne Æneas fle,  
And how he fled, and how that he  
Escap'd was from all the pres, *danger.*  
And toke his fathre, olde Anchises,  
And bare hym on his backe awaie,  
Crying Alas and Welawaie!  
The whiche Anchises in his hande  
Bare the goddis of the lande,  
I mene thilke that unbrennid were.

Then sawe I next that all in fere  
How Creusa, Dan Æneas wife,  
Whom that he lovid all his life,  
And her yong sonne clepid Julo,  
And eke Ascanius also,  
Fleddin eke with full drierie chere,  
That it was pite for to here,  
And in a forest as thei went  
How at a tournyng of a went  
Creusa was iloste, alas!  
That rede not I how that it was,  
How he her fought, and how her ghoſte  
Bad hym to fle the Grekis hoste,  
And saied he must into Itaile,  
As was his destinie fauns faile,  
That it was pitie for to here,  
When that her spirite gan appere,  
The wordis that she to hym saied,  
And for to kepe her sonne hym praied.

There sawe I gravin eke how he,  
His fathir eke and his meinè,  
With his shippis began to faile  
Toward the cowntrey of Italie  
As streight as ere thei mightin go.

There sawe I eke the cruill Juno,  
That art Dan Jupiter his wife.  
That hast ihatid all thy life  
Merciless all the Trojan blode,  
Rennin and crie as thou were wode  
On Æolus, the god of Windes,  
To blewin out of allè kindes

So loudè, that he should ydrenche  
Lord and ladie, and grome and wenche,  
Of all the Tojanis nacion  
Without any of ther salvacion.

There sawe I soche tempest arise  
That every herte might agrise  
To se it paintid on the wall.

There sawe I eke gravin withall  
Venus, how ye, my ladie dere!  
Ywepyng with full wofull chere,  
Yprayid Jupiter on hie  
To save and kepin that navie  
Of that dere Trojan Æneas,  
Sithins that he your some ywas.

There sawe I Jovis Venus kisse,  
And grauntid was of the tempest lisse.

There sawe I how the tempest stente,  
And how with allè pine he went,  
And privlie toke a rivage  
Into the cowntrey of Carthage,  
And on the morowe how that he  
And a knight that hight Achato  
Ymettin with Venus that daie  
Goyng in a full queinte araie,  
As she had be an huntireſſe,  
With winde blowing upon her tressc,  
And how Æneas gan to plaine,  
When that he knewe her, of his paine,  
And how his shippis dreint ywere  
Or els iloste, he n'iste not where,  
How she began hym comforte tho,  
And bade hym unto Carthage go.  
And there he should his folke yfinde  
That in the se were left behinde:  
And, shortly of this thyng to pace,  
She made Æneas so in grace  
Of Dido, Quene of that cowntre,  
That, shortly for to tellin, she  
Became his love, and let hym do  
All that weddyng ylongith to:  
What should I spekin it more quainte,  
Or pain me my wordis to painte?  
To speke of love it wold not be,  
I can not of that faculte,  
And eke to tellen of the manere  
How that thei first acquaintid were  
It were a long processe to tell,  
And ovir long for you to dwell

There sawe I grave howe Æneas  
Tolde to Dido every caas  
That hym was tidde upon the se.

And est gravin was how that she  
Made of hym, shortly at a worde,  
Her life, her love, her lust, her lorde,  
And did to hym all reverence,  
And laied on hym all the dispence  
That any woman might ydo,  
Wenyng that it had all be so  
As he her swore, and hereby demed  
That he was gode, for he soche semed:  
*Alas! what harme doth apparence  
When it is false in existence!*  
For he to her a traitour was,  
Wherefore she flows her self, alas!



Lo, how a woman doeth amis  
 To love him that unknowin is!  
 For by Christ lo thus it farith,  
*It is not all golde that glarith;*  
 For al so broke I well myne hedde  
*There maie be undir godelihedde*  
*Cosid many a freude vice;*  
 Therefore let no wight be so nice  
 To take a love only for chere,  
 Or speche, or for frendly manere,  
 For this shall every woman finde  
 That some man of his pure kinde  
 Woll shewin outward the fairist  
 Till he have caught that what hym list,  
 And then anon woll causis finde,  
 And swere how that she is unkinde,  
 Or false, or privie, or double was:  
 All this saie I by Æneas  
 And Dido, and her nice left,  
 That lovid all to sone a gest;  
 Wherefore I woll saie o proverbe,  
*That He that fullie knoweth the herbe*  
*Maie safely laie it to his eye;*  
 Withoutin drede this is no lie.  
 But let us speke of Æneas  
 How he betrayid her, alas!  
 And left her full unkindelic,  
 So when she sawe all uttirlic  
 That he would her of trouthe faille,  
 And wendin from her into talle,  
 She gan to wring her handis two.  
 Alas! (quod she) that me is wo!  
 Alas! is every man thus true,  
 That every yere woll have a newe,  
 If it so long tyme endure,  
 Or ellis thre peravinture?  
 And thus of one he woll have fame  
 In magnifying his owne name,  
 An othir for frendship saith he,  
 And yet there shall the thirde ybe,  
 That is ytakein for delite,  
 Lo! or els for singuler profite.  
 In soche wordis began complaine  
 This wofull Dido of her paine,  
 As me mette dremyng redily,  
 None other auctour aledge woll I,  
 Alas, (quod she) my swete herte!  
 Have pitie on my sorowes smerte,  
 And fle me not; go not awaie.  
 O wofull Dido! welawaie!  
 (Quod she) unto her selvin tho.  
 O Æneas! what woll ye do?  
 O that your love, neithir your bonde,  
 Which that yefwore with your right honde,  
 Ne yet my my cruill deth, (quod she)  
 Maie holdin you still here with me!  
 O! have ye of my deth no pite?  
 Iwis, myne own dere herte! that ye  
 Knowin full well that nevir yet,  
 As farre as evir I had wit.  
 Agilte you in thought ne in dede.  
 O! have ye men soche godelihede  
 In speche, and ner a dele of trouthe?  
 Alas, alas! that er had routh

Any woman on a false man!  
 Now I se well and tellin can  
 We wretchid women can no arte,  
 For certaine for the more parte  
 Thus we ben servid everichone,  
 How fore so that ye men can grone;  
 Anon as we have you received  
 Full certainlie we ben deceived,  
 For though your love last a ceson,  
 Waite upon the conclusion,  
 And loke eke how ye determine,  
 And for the more parte define;  
 O welawaie that I was born!  
 For thorough you my name is lorne,  
 And mine actis are redde and song  
 O'er all this lande in every tong.  
 O wickid Fame! for there n'is  
 Nothing so swifte, lo! as she is;  
 O sothe is, *Every thing is wiff*  
*Though it be coverde with the mist;*  
 Eke though that I might durin ever  
 That I have done recovre I never,  
 That it ne shall be saied, alas!  
 I shamid was through Æneas,  
 And that I shall thus judgid be,  
 Lo! right as she hath doen now she  
 Woll doen eftsonis hardily,  
 Thus saie the peple privily;  
 But that is doen n'is not done:  
 But all her complaint ne her mone  
 Certain availed her not a stre.  
 And when the wiff sothely that he  
 Was forthe into his ship agone  
 She into chambir went anone,  
 And callid on her sustir Anne,  
 And gan her to complain thanne,  
 And saied that she the cause ywas  
 That she first lovid him, alas!  
 And first counsaillid her thereto;  
 But what whan this was saied and do  
 She roste her selvin to the herte,  
 And deide thorough the woundis smerte;  
 But all the manir how she deide,  
 And all the wordis how she seide,  
 Who so to knowe it hath purpose,  
 Rede Virgile in Æneidos,  
 Or the Epistils of Ovide,  
 What that she wrote or that she dide;  
 And n'ere it to longe to endite  
 By God I would it here ywrite.  
 But welawaie! the harme and routh  
 That hath betide for soche untrouth,  
 As men maie oft in bokis rede,  
 And al daie seen it yet in dede,  
 That for to thinkin it tene is,  
 Lo! Demophon, Duke of Athenis,  
 How he forswore him falsly,  
 And trayid Phyllis wickidly,  
 That Kingis doughtir was of Trace,  
 And falsely gan his termè pace;  
 And whan she wiff that he was false  
 She hong herself right by the halfe,  
 For he had doen her such untrouth;  
 Lo! was not this a wo and routh?

Eke loke howe false and rechêles  
 Was to Briseida Achilles,  
 And Paris eke to Oenone,  
 And Jason to Hypsipile,  
 And este Jason to Medea,  
 And Hercules to Deianira,  
 For he left her for Iole;  
 That made hym take his deth parde.

How false was eke Duke Theseus,  
 That as the storie tellith us  
 How he betrayid Adriane?  
 The devill be his soul's bane!  
 For, had he laughid or iloured,  
 He must have ben anone devoured  
 If Ariadne ne had be;

And for she had of hym pite  
 She made hym fro the deth escape,  
 And he made her a full false jape;  
 For aftir this withint a while  
 He left her slepyng in an ile,  
 Desert alone right in the se,  
 And stalle awaie and let her be,  
 And toke her sustir Phædra tho  
 With hym, and gan to shippe ygo;  
 And yet he had ysworne to here,  
 On all that evir he could swere,  
 That so she savid hym his life  
 He would takin her to his wife,  
 For she desirid nothings elles  
 In certain, as the boke us telles.

But for to excuse this Æneas  
 Fulliche of all his grete trespas  
 The boke sayith withoutin faile  
 The goddes bad hym go to Itaile;  
 And levin Affriques region  
 And faire Dido and her faire toun.  
 Tho sawe I grave how to Itaile  
 Dan Æneas gan for to faile,  
 And how the tempest all began,  
 And howe he lost his sterisman,  
 Which that the sterne or he toke kepe  
 Smote ovir the borde as he slepe.

And also saugh I how Sibile  
 And Æneas beside an ile  
 To helle went yfere for to se  
 His father Anchises the fre,  
 And how he there founde Palinurus,  
 And also Dido and Deiphobus,  
 And everiche tourment eke in hell  
 Sawe he, whiche long is for to tell,  
 Whiche painis who so list to knowe  
 He must redin many a rowe  
 In Virgile or in Claudian,  
 Or Dantes, that it tellin can.

Tho sawe I alle the arivaile  
 That Æneas made in Itaile,

And with Kyng Latine his tret,  
 And all the battailis that he  
 Was at himselfin and his knightes  
 Or he had all iwonne his rightes,  
 And how he Turnus reſte his life,  
 And wan Lavinia to his wife,  
 And all the marveilous signals  
 Of the goddis Celestials,  
 How maugre Juno Æneas,  
 For all her sleighte and her compas,  
 Atchivid all his avinture,  
 For Jupiter toke on hym cure  
 At the praier of his modir Venus,  
 Whiche I praie alwaie savin us,  
 And us aie of our sorowes light.

When I had sein all this sight  
 Within this noble temple thus,  
 Hey! Lord, thought I, that madist us,  
 Yet sawe I never soche nobleſſe  
 Of imagis, nor soche richeſſe,  
 As I se gravin in this churchè;  
 But nought wote I who did 'hem worche,  
 Ne where I am, ne' in what countre,  
 But now will I out gone and se,  
 Right at the wickit, if I can  
 Seen oughtwhere steryng any man  
 That maie me tellen where I am.

When I out of the dorè cam  
 I faste aboutin me behelde,  
 Then sawe I but a large felde  
 As farre as evir I might se,  
 Withoutin toun, or house, or tre,  
 Or bushe or grasſe, or arid lande,  
 For all the felde was but of sande  
 As smal as men maye se at eye  
 In the desertis of Lybye;  
 Ne ferthir no manir cature  
 That is yformid by Nature  
 Ne sawe I, me to rede or wisse;  
 O Crist! thought I, that art in blisse,  
 From fanton and illusion  
 Me save, and with devocyon  
 Myne eyin to the heven I caste;  
 Tho was I ware, lo! at the laste,  
 That faste by the sonne on hie,  
 As kennin myght I with mine eye,  
 Me thought I sawe an egie fore.  
 But that it semid mochil more  
 Than I had anye egie yseine,  
 This is a sothe as deth certaine,  
 It was of golde, and shone so bright,  
 That never sawe men socke a sight,  
 But yf the hevin had ywonne  
 Al newe of God anothir sonne,  
 So shone the eg'lis fethirs bright,  
 And somewhat downward gan it lyght.

## THE SECOND BOKE.

Nowe herkin everye manir man  
That Englishe undirstandè can,  
And lystith of my dreame to here,  
For now at erst shallin ye lere  
So fely' and dredefull avysion,  
That I saye neithir Scipion  
Ne Kinge Nabugodnosore,  
Pharao, Turnus, ne Alcanore,  
Ne mettin soche a dreame as this.  
Nowe, o thou faire blisful Cipris!  
So be my favour at this time  
That ye me to endite and rime  
Helpith that in Parnassus dwel,  
Besyde Helicon the clere wel.

O Thought! that wrote al that I met,  
And in the tresorie it set  
Of my braine, now shal men yse  
If any vertue in the be;  
To tellin al my dreame aright  
Nowe kithe thy engin and thy might.

This egle', of whiche I have you tolde,  
That with fethirs shone al of golde,  
Whiche that so he began to fore,  
I gan beholdin more and more  
To sene her beaute and the wonder,  
But nevir was that dente of thonder,  
Ne that thinge that men callin foudre,  
That smite sometime a toure to poudre,  
And in his swifte comminge brende,  
That so swithe gan downwarde discende  
As this foule whan that it behelde  
That I arowne was in the felde,  
And with his grim pawis so stronge  
Within his sharpe nailis longe  
Me fleyng at a swappe he hent,  
And with his fours again up wente,  
Me carying in his clawis starke  
As lightly' as I had ben a lark,  
Howe hye I can not tellin yowe,  
For I came up I n'ist ner howe,  
For so astonied and awced  
Was everye vertue in me heved,  
What with his fours and with my dred,  
That al my felinge gan to ded;

VOL. I.

For why? it was a gret affraye.

Thus I longe in his clawis laye,  
Til at the last he to me spake  
In mann'is voice, and said, Awake,  
And be not agast so for shame,  
And callid me tho by my name;  
And for I shulde bettir abraide  
Me to awakin thus he saide,  
Right in the same voice and stevin  
That usith one I can nevin,  
And with that voice, the sothe to saing,  
My minde ycame to me againe,  
For it was godely saide to me,  
So n'as it nevir wonte to be;  
And herewithal I gan to stere  
As he me in his fete ybere,  
Til that he felte that I had herte,  
And felte eke tho mine herte ybete;  
And tho gan he me to disporte,  
And with gentil wordes me comforte,  
And sayid twife, by Saint Mary  
Thou arte a noyous thinge to cary,  
And nothings nedithe it parde,  
For all so wisly God helpe me  
As thou no harme shalt have of this,  
And this case that betidde the is  
Is for thy lore and for thy prow:   
Lette se; darist thou loke yet nowe?  
Be ful enfurid boidily  
I am thy frende: and therewith I  
Gan for to wondir in my minde.

O God! (quod I) that madist al kinde,  
Shal I none otherwise ydie?  
Whedir Jove wil me stellyfie,  
Or what thing may this signifie?  
I' am neithir Enocke ne Helye,  
Ne Romulus ne Ganimede,  
That werin bore up, as men rode,  
To hevin with Dan Jupiter,  
And made the goddis botiler;  
Lo! this was tho my fantasie.  
But he that bare me gan aspie  
That I so thought, and sayid this;  
Thou demist of thy selfe amis,

N n



For Jove ne is not thereabout,  
 I dare the put ful out of doute,  
 To makin of the yet a sterre;  
 But er I berin the moche ferre  
 I wil the tellin what I am,  
 And where thou shalte, and why I came  
 To doin this, so that thou take  
 Gode herte, and not fore fere yquake.  
 Gladly, (quod I.) Now wel. (quod he.)  
 First I, that in my fete have the,  
 Of whom thou hast grete fere and wonder,  
 And dwellinge with the god of Thonder,  
 Whiche men ycallin Jupiter,  
 That doth me flyin ful ofte fer  
 To do all his commaundment,  
 And for this cause he hath me sent  
 To the; herkin now by thy trouthe:  
 Certaine he hath of the grete routh,  
 For that thou hast so truily  
 So long servid ententily  
 His blind nephewe Cupido  
 And the faire quene Venus also  
 Withoutin guerden evir yet,  
 And natheles hast set thy wit,  
 Althoughe in thy hed ful lite is,  
 To make bokes, songis, and ditis,  
 In rime or ellis in cadence,  
 As thou best canst, in reverence  
 Of Love and of his servautes eke,  
 That have his service sought and seke,  
 And painist the to praise his arte,  
 Althoughe thou haddist never parte;  
 Wherefore, so willy God me blesse,  
 Jovis yhalte it grete humbleesse  
 And vertue eke that thou wilt make  
 Anight ful oft thine hed to ake  
 In thy studye, so thou ywritest,  
 And evirmore of love enditest,  
 In honour of him and praisinges,  
 And in his folkeis fourthinges,  
 And in ther matir al devisest,  
 And not him ne his folke dispoiest,  
 Althoughe thou maiste go in the daunce  
 Of them that him lyst not avaunce;  
 Wherefore, as I nowe saide, ywis  
 Jupiter considrieth wel this,  
 And als, beausire, of othir thinges,  
 That is, that thou haste no tidinges  
 Of Lov's folke if they be glade,  
 Ne of nothings els that God made,  
 And not onely fro ferre countre  
 That no tidinges comin to the,  
 Not of thy very neighbouris,  
 That dwellen almost at thy doris,  
 Thou herist neither that ne this,  
 For when thy labour al done is,  
 And haste made al thy reckinges,  
 In fiede of reite and of newe thinges  
 Thou goest home to thine house alone,  
 And al so dombe as any stone  
 Thou sittist at anothir boke  
 Tyll fully dafid is thy loka,  
 And lyvst thus as an hermite,  
 Although thine abstinence is lyte;

And therefore Jovis throughe his grace  
 Wil that I bere the to a place  
 Whiche that ylight The House of Fame,  
 And for to doe the sport and game,  
 In some recompensacion  
 Of thy labour and devocion  
 That thou haste hadde, lo! causeles,  
 To god Cupido the recheles,  
 And thus this god throughe his merite  
 Wil with some manir thing the quite,  
 So that thou wilt be of gode chere;  
 For trustith wel that thou shalte here,  
 When we ben comen there as I say,  
 Mo wondir thingis dare I lay,  
 And of Love's folke no tidingis,  
 Bothe sothfawis and lesingis,  
 And of mo lovis newe begon,  
 And longe servid tyl love is won,  
 And of mo lovirs casuelly  
 That ben betide, no man wote why,  
 But as a blinde man starteth an hare,  
 And more jolite and wellfare,  
 Whilis they findin love of stele,  
 As thinkin men, and o'r al wele  
 Mo discordes and mo jalousies,  
 Mo murnures and mo novilries,  
 And also mo dissimulacions,  
 And eke feind reperacions,  
 And mo berdis in two houres,  
 Withoutin raseur or sifoures  
 Ymade, than grainis be of sande,  
 And eke mo holdinge in mo hande,  
 And also mo renovelaunces,  
 Of olde forletin aqueintaunces,  
 Mo love dayis and mo accordes,  
 Than on instrumentis ben cordes,  
 And eke of love mo exchaungis  
 Than evir corne were in graungis;  
 Unnethis maist thou throwin this,  
 (Quod he.) No so, helpe me God as wis,  
 (Quod I.) No, why? (quod he.) For it  
 Were impossible to my wit,  
 Although that Fame had al the pyes  
 In al a relme and al aspies,  
 Howe that yet he shulde here al this  
 Or they espyin. O! yes, yes,  
 (Quod he to me) that can I preve  
 By reson worthy for to leve,  
 So that thou give thin advertence  
 To understandin my sentence.

First shalt thou here where she dwellith,  
 Right so as thine owne boke tellith:  
 Her palais standeth, as I shal say,  
 Right even amiddis of the way.  
 Bytwere hevyn, and yerthe, and se,  
 That what so er in al these thre  
 Is spoken in prive or apperte,  
 The way therto is so overte,  
 And stante eke in so juste a place,  
 That every sowne mote to it pace,  
 Or what so cometh from anie tongue,  
 Whethre it be rownid, redde, or songe,  
 Or spokin in suerte or drede,  
 Certaine it comin thidre nedde,

Nowe herkin wel; for why! I wil  
 Ytellen the a propir skil,  
 And worthy demonstracion  
 In mine imaginacion.  
 Geffray, thou wottist full wel this,  
 That every kindly thinge that is  
 Yhath a kyndely stede, there he  
 May best in it conservid be,  
 Unto whiche place every thinge,  
 Thorough his kyndely enclininge  
 Ymovith for to comin to  
 Whan that it is away therfro;  
 As thus, lo! thou maiste al day se,  
 Take any thinge that hevy be,  
 As stene, or led, or thinge of weight,  
 And bere it ner so hie on height,  
 Let go thine hande it fallith downe;  
 Right so say I by fire or sowne,  
 Or smoke, or othir thingis light,  
 Alway they seke upwarde on height,  
 Light thinges up and hevie down charge  
 While everiche of hem be at large;  
 And for this cause thou maist wel se  
 That every rivir to the se  
 Enclinid is to go by kynde,  
 And by these skillis as I finde  
 Have fishes dwellinge in flode and se,  
 And treis eke on the erthe be:  
 Thus every thinge by his reson  
 Hath his owne propir mancion,  
 To whiche he sekith to repaire  
 There as it shuldin nat appaire.  
 Lo! this sentence is knowin couthe  
 Of every philosophir's mouthe,  
 As Aristotell and Dan Platone,  
 And othir clerkis many one;  
 And to confirmin my resoun  
 Thou wottist wel that speche is sowne,  
 Or ellis no man might it here;  
 Nowe herkin what I wol the lere.  
 Sowne is not but eyre ybrokin,  
 And every speche that is spokin,  
 Where loude or prive, foule or faire,  
 In his substance ne is but eyre;  
 For as flame is but lightid smoke,  
 Right so is sowne but eyre ybroke:  
 But this may be in many wise,  
 Of the whiche I wil the devise,  
 As sowne comith of pype or harpe,  
 For whan a pype is blowin sharpe  
 The eyre is twist with violence  
 And rent; lo! this is my sentence:  
 Eke whan that men harpellringis smyte,  
 Whedir that it be moche or lyte,  
 Lo! with the stroke the eyre it braketh,  
 And right so braketh it whan men speketh;  
 Thus wolt thou wel what thing is speche:  
 Nowe hennisforthe I wil the teche  
 Howe everiche speche, voice, or sowne,  
 Throughe his multiplicaciowpe,  
 Thoughe it were pipid of a moute,  
 Mote nedis come to Fam's Houe:  
 I prove it thus; takith hede nowe  
 By experience, for if that thou

Threwe in a watir nowe a stene,  
 Wel wolt thou it wil make anone  
 A lityl roundil as a circle,  
 Para' venture as brode as a covircle,  
 And right anone thou shalt se wele  
 That circle cause anothis whele,  
 And that the thirde, and so forth, brother,  
 Every circle causinge other  
 Moch brodir than himselfin was,  
 And thus from roundil to compas  
 Eche aboutin othir goinge  
 Ycausith of othirs steringe  
 And multiplying evirmo,  
 Tyl that it be so far ygo  
 That it at bothe brinkis be,  
 Although thou mayist it not se  
 Above, yet gothe it alwaye under;  
 Although thou thinke it a grete wonder,  
 And whoso saithe of trouthe I vary,  
 Bydde him provin the contrary:  
 And right thus every worde ywis,  
 That loude or pryve' yspokin is,  
 Ymovith firste an eyre aboute,  
 And of his movinge out of doute  
 Anothis eyre anone is moved,  
 As I have of the watir proved,  
 That every circle causith other;  
 Right so of eyre, my leve brother,  
 Everiche eyre anothis sterith  
 More and more, and speche up berith,  
 Or voise or noyse, or worde or sowne,  
 Aye through multiplicaciowne,  
 Tyl it be at The House of Fame,  
 Take it in earnest or in game.  
 Nowe have I tolde, if thou have mind,  
 Howe speche or sowne of pure kinde  
 Enclinid is upward to meve,  
 This mayist thou sefe wel by preve,  
 And that same kindly stede ywis,  
 That every thinge enclined to is,  
 Yhath also his kyndelyche stede,  
 That shewith it withoutin drede,  
 That kindly the mancoun  
 Of everyche speche, of every sowne,  
 All be it either foule or faire,  
 Yhath his kindly place in eyre;  
 And sith that every thinge ywis  
 Out of his kindly place ywis  
 Ay movith thidir for to go,  
 Yf that it awaye be therfro,  
 As I have before provid the,  
 It shewith every sonne perde  
 Ymovith kindly to pace  
 As up into his kindly place;  
 And this place of whiche I the tel,  
 There as Fame doth yliste to dwell,  
 Is sette amiddis of these thre,  
 Hevin, and erthe, and eke the se,  
 As moche conservatife of soun;  
 Than is this the conclusion  
 That every speche of every manne,  
 As I the tellin firste beganne,  
 Ymovith up on height to pace  
 Kindely unto Fam's place.

Tellith me this ~~nowe~~ faithfully,  
 Have I not provid thus simply,  
 Withoutin any subtilte  
 Of speche, or grete prolixyte  
 Of termis of philosophie,  
 Of figuris of poetrie,  
 Or colouris of rhetorike?  
 Perde it oughtin the to like,  
 For harde langage and harde matere  
 Is incombrous for the to here  
 At onis, wost thou not wel this?  
 And I answerid and said, Yes.  
 Ah ha! (quod he) lo! so I can  
 Leudlye unto a leudē man  
 Yspeke, and shewin him soche skilles  
 That he maye shake 'hem by the bylles,  
 So palpable they shuldin be;  
 But tel me this nowe praye I the,  
 Howe thinketh the my conclusioun?  
 Parde a gode persuasioun  
 (Quod I) it is, and lyke to be,  
 Right so as thou haste provid me.  
 By God (quod he) and as I leve  
 Thou shalte have it or it be eve,  
 Of every worde of this sentence  
 A profe by thine experience,  
 And with thine cris herin wel  
 The toppe and taile, and every del,  
 That every worde that spokin is  
 Comith into Fame's House ywis  
 As I have saide; what wilt thou more?  
 And with this worde uppir to sore  
 He began, and saide, By sainte Jame  
 Nowe wyll we spekin al of game.  
 Howe farest thou now? quod he to me,  
 Right wel; (quod I.) Now se (quod he)  
 By thy trouthe yondir adowne,  
 Where that thou knowist any towne  
 Or house, or any othir thinge,  
 And whan thou haste of ought knowynge  
 Tho lokith that thou warnē me,  
 And I anone shal tellin the  
 How farre that thou arte nowe therfro,  
 And I adounē gan lokin tho,  
 And behelde the feldis and plainis,  
 Nowe hyllis and nowe mountainis,  
 Nowe valeys and nowe forestis,  
 And nowe unnethis grete bestis,  
 Nowe riveris nowe citeis,  
 Nowe townis and nowe grete treis,  
 Nowe shippis sailinge in the se;  
 But thus sone in a while he  
 Was flowin fro the grounde so hye  
 That al the worlde, as to myne eye,  
 No more ysemid than a pricke,  
 Or ellis was the eyre so thicke  
 That I ne might it not discerne;  
 With that he spake to me so yerne,  
 And said, Seist thou any token,  
 Or ought that in this worlde's of spoken?  
 I answered Naye, No wondir is,  
 (Quod he) for halfe so hye as this  
 N'as Alexandre', of Macedon  
 Kynge, ne of Rome Dan Scipion,

That sawe in dreme at pointe devise  
 Heven and erthe, hel and paradise,  
 Ne eke the bold wretche Dædalus,  
 Ne yet his childe, nice Icarus,  
 That flewe so hiē that the hete  
 Hys wingis molte, and he fel wete  
 In mydde the se, and there he dreinte,  
 For whom was made a grete complainte.  
 Nowe tourne upwarde (quod he) thy face,  
 And beholde here this large place,  
 This eyre, but loke that thou ne be  
 Adrad of hem that thou shalt se,  
 For in this regioun certaine  
 Dwellith many a citizeine,  
 Of whiche yspekith Dan Plato,  
 These bēn the eyrishe bestis, lo!  
 And tho sawe I al the menye  
 That bothe ygone and also flye.  
 Lo there! (quod he) cast up thine eye,  
 Se yondir, lo! the Galaxie,  
 The whiche men clepe The Milky Way,  
 For it is white, and some parfay  
 Ycallin it han Watlynge strete,  
 That onis was brente with the hete,  
 Whan that the sunn's sonne the rede,  
 Which that hite Phaëton, wolde lede  
 Algate his fathir's carte and gie.  
 The carte horsis gan wel asprie  
 That he ne coude no govirnaunce,  
 And gonin for to lepe and prauce,  
 And bere him now up and nowe downe  
 Tyl that he sawe the Scorpiowne,  
 Whiche that in heven a signe is yit,  
 And he for fere ylostē his wit  
 Of that, and let the reinis gone  
 Of his horsis, and they anone  
 Sone up to mounte and downe discende,  
 Tyl bothe the eyre and erthe ybrende,  
 Tyl Jupiter, lo! at the laste  
 Hym flewe, and fro the carte ycaste.  
 Lo! is it not a grete mischaunce  
 To let a sole have govirnaunce  
 Of thinges that he can not demaine?  
 And with this worde, sothe for to saine,  
 He gan alway uppir to sore,  
 And gladdid me than more and more,  
 So faithfully to me spake he.  
 Tho gan I to loke undir me,  
 And behelde the eyrishe bestis  
 Cloudis, mystis, and tempistis,  
 Snowis, hailis, rainis, and windes,  
 And the engendringe in ther kindes,  
 Al the way thoroughe whiche I came;  
 O God! (quod I) that made Adame,  
 Moche is thy myght and noblenes!  
 And tho thought I upon Boece,  
 That writeth a thought may flye so hie  
 With fethirs of philosophie  
 To passin everyche element;  
 And when he hath so farre ywent  
 Than may ben sene behinde his backe  
 Cloude, erthe, and al that I of spake.  
 Tho gan I wexin in a were,  
 And said, I wote wel I am here,



But whether in body or in gost  
 I n'ot ywis, but God thou wost,  
 For a more clere entendement  
 N'as to me nevir yet ysent.  
 And than thought I on Marcian,  
 And eke of Anticlaudian,  
 That sothe was ther discripcion  
 Of al the hevin's region,  
 As farre as that I sawe the preve,  
 And therefore I can 'hem beleve.  
 With that the egle gan to crie,  
 Let be (quod he) thy fantasie:  
 Wyte thou lernin of sterris ought?  
 Nay, certainly, (quod I) right nought.  
 And why? (quod he.) For I am olde.  
 Or ellis wolde I the have tolde  
 (Quod he) the starris namis, lo!  
 And al the hevin's signis to,  
 And whiche they be. No force (quod I.)  
 Yes perde, (quod he;) wost thou why?  
 For whan thou redist poëtry,  
 Howe the goddis can itellify  
 A birde, a fyshe, or him or her,  
 As of birdes the ravyn and other,  
 Or Arion's harpè fyne,  
 Or Castor Pollux, or Delphine,  
 Or Atlante's doughtirs seven,  
 How al these are yset in heven,  
 For though thou have 'hem ofte in hande  
 Yet n'ost thou nat where that they stande.  
 No force, (quod I;) it is no nede:  
 As wel I leve, so God me spede,  
 'Hem that writin of this matere  
 As though I knewe ther placis here,  
 And eke they semin here so bright  
 That it shulde shendin al my sight  
 To loke on 'hem. That may wel be,  
 (Quod he;) and so forth bare he me  
 A while, and tho began to crie,  
 That nevir herde I thinge so hie;  
 Holde up thine hed, for al is wel  
 Sainte Julian, lo! bonne hostel!  
 Se here The House of Fame, lo!  
 Mayist thou not here that I do?  
 Here what? (quod I.) The gretè fowne  
 (Quod he) that romblith up and downe  
 In Fam's House, ful of tidinges  
 Bothe of faire speche and of chidinges,  
 And of false and sothe compownid;  
 Herkin wel, it is not rownid.  
 Herist thou not the gretè fwough?  
 Yes, perde, (quod I) wel ynough.  
 And what fowne is it lyke? (quod he.)  
 Peter. lyke the beting of the se  
 (Quod I) against the rochis halowe,  
 Whan tempestes done ther shippis swalow,

And that a man stande out of doute  
 A myle off thens and here it route;  
 Or ellis lyke to the humblinge  
 Aftir the clappe of a thundringe,  
 Whan Jovis hath the eyre ybete,  
 But it doth me for fere to swete.  
 Nay, drede the not therof, (quod he)  
 It 'is nothing that will bytin the;  
 Thou shalte have no harme truly.  
 And with that worde both he and I  
 As nighe the place arrivid were  
 As men might castin with a spere:  
 I ne wist howe, but in a strete  
 He fet me faire upon my fete,  
 And sayid, Walkith forth a pace,  
 And tel thine advinture and case  
 That thou shalte finde in Fam's place.  
 Nowe (quod I) while that we have space  
 To speke, or that I go fro the,  
 For the love of God tellith me  
 In sothe that I will of the lere,  
 If this ilke noise which that I here  
 Be as I have herde the me tell,  
 Of folke that done in erthe ydwell,  
 And comith here in the same wise  
 As I the herde or this devise,  
 And that here liv'is body n'is  
 In all that House that yondir is  
 That makith al this loud fare.  
 No, (answerid he) by Sainte Clare,  
 And al so wissely God rede me:  
 But o thinge I will warnè the,  
 Of the whiche thou wilt have wondir.  
 Lo! to The House of Fame yondir.  
 Thou wost howe comith every  
 It nedith not the este to teche;  
 But understande now right wel  
 Whan any speche ycomin is  
 Up to the palais, anone right  
 It wexith like the samè wight  
 Whiche that the worde in erth yspake,  
 Be he clothid in red or blake,  
 And hath so very his likencesse  
 That spake the worde, that thou wilt gesse  
 That it the samè body be,  
 Wher man or woman, he or she.  
 And is not this a wondir thinge?  
 Yes, (quod I) tho by hevin kinge:  
 And with this worde Farewel, (quod he)  
 And here wil I abydin the,  
 And God of hevin sende the grace  
 Some gode to lernin in this place!  
 And I of him toke leve anone,  
 And gan forth to the palays gone.

## THE THIRD BOKE.

Thou, god of Science and of Light,  
 Apollo! thorough thy grete might  
 This litil last boke now thou gye,  
 Nowe that I will for maistérie  
 Here arte potencial be shewde,  
 But for the rime is lyght and lewde  
 Yet make it somewhat agreable,  
 Though some verse faile in a syllable,  
 And that I do no diligence  
 To shewin craft but sentence;  
 And if that divine virtue thou  
 Wilt helpe me to shewin nowe  
 That in \_\_\_\_\_ ymarkid is,  
 Lo! \_\_\_\_\_ to menin this,

Fame for to discrive,  
 Thou shalt yse me go as blive  
 Unto the next laurir I se,  
 And kyffe it for it is thy tre:  
 Nowe entre in my brest anone.

Whan I was from the egle gone,  
 I gan beholde upon this place,  
 And certaine or I furthir passe  
 I wol you al the shape devise  
 Of House and cite, and al the wise.  
 Howe I gan to this place approche,  
 That stode upon so hie a roche,  
 Hyir ystandyng none in Spaine;  
 But up I clambe with mochil paine,  
 And though to clime ygrevid me  
 Yet I ententise was to se,  
 And for to porin wondre lowe,  
 If I coude any wise yknowe  
 What manir stone this roche ywas,  
 For it was lyke a limed glas,  
 But that it shone ful more clere,  
 But of what congelid matere  
 It was I ne wiste redily;  
 But at the laste espyd I,  
 And founde that it was everydele  
 A roche of yse and not of fiele:

Thought I, by Saint Thomas of Kent  
 This were a feble foundement  
 To buildin on a place so hie;  
 He ought hym lite to glorie  
 That heron built, God so me save.

Tho sawe I all the hall igrave  
 With famous folkis namis sele  
 That haddin ben in mochil wele,  
 And ther famis full wide iblowe,  
 But well unnethis might I knowe  
 Any lettiris for to rede

Ther namis by, for out of drede  
 Thei werin almoſte of thawed so  
 That of the lettiris one or two  
 Were molte awaie of every name,  
 So unfamous was wexe ther fame;  
 But men saie, *What maie evir last?*

Tho gan I in myne hertè cast  
 That thei were molte awaie for hete,  
 And not awaie with stormis bte,  
 For on that othir side I sey  
 Of this hill, that northward yley,  
 How it was writin full of names  
 Of folke that had afore grete fames  
 Of oldè tynse, and yet thei were  
 As freshe as men had written hem there.  
 The self daie, or that verry houre,  
 That I on hem began to poure;  
 But well I wiste what it made,  
 It was conservid with the shade,  
 All the writyng which that I se,  
 Of a castill that stode on hie,  
 And stode eke in so cold a place  
 That hete ne might it not deface.

Tho gan I on this hill to gone,  
 And found upon the coppe a wone,  
 That all the men that ben on live  
 Ne han the connyng to discrive  
 The beaute of that ilke place,  
 Ne coudin castin no compase

Soche an othir for to ymake  
 That might of beautie be his make,  
 Ne one so wondirly iwrought,  
 That it astonieth yet my thought,  
 And makith all my witte to swinke,  
 Upon this castill for to thinke,  
 So that the wondir grete beautie,  
 Ofte, craft, and curiosities,  
 Ne can I not to you devise,  
 My witte ne maie me not suffice,  
 But nathelasse all the substance  
 I have yet in my remembraunce;  
 For why? me thoughtin, by Sainct Gile,  
 That it was stone of berile  
 Bothe the castill and the toure,  
 And eke the hall and every boure,  
 Withoutin pecis or joynnynges,  
 But many subtile compassynges,  
 As barbicans and pinnacles,  
 Imageries and tabernacles,  
 I sawe, and full eke of windowes,  
 As flakis fallin in grete snowes,  
 And eke in eche of the pinacles  
 Ywerin sondrie habitacles,  
 In whiche stodin all withoutin  
 Full the castill all aboutin  
 Of all manit of ministrals  
 And jestours, that tellin talis  
 Bothe of wepyng and eke of game,  
 And all that longith unto Fame:  
 There herde I playing on an harpe,  
 That yfounid bothe well and sharpe,  
 Hym Orpheus full craftily,  
 And on this othir side fast by  
 Yfatte the harpir Orion,  
 And Gacides Chirion,  
 And othir harpirs many one,  
 And the Briton Glaskirion,  
 And smale harpirs with ther glees  
 Satte undir 'hem in divers sees,  
 And gone on 'hem upwarde to gape,  
 And counterfaieted 'hem as an ape,  
 Or as Crafte counterfeitith Kinde.  
 Tho sawe I standin 'hem behinde,  
 Afarre from 'hem, al by 'hem selve,  
 Many a thousande tymis twelve,  
 That madin loud minstralles  
 In cornuse and eke in shalmyes,  
 And in many an othir pipe,  
 That craftily began to pipe,  
 Bothe in doucid and eke in redo,  
 That ben at festis with the brede,  
 And many a floite and litlyng horne,  
 And pipis made of grené corne,  
 As have these little herd gromes  
 That kepin bestis in the bromes.  
 There sawe I then Dan Citherus,  
 And of Athenes Dan Proferus,  
 And Mercia, that losse her ikinne  
 Bothe in the face, bodie, and chinne,  
 For that she would envyin, lo!  
 To pipin bette than Apollo.  
 There sawe I famous old and yong  
 Pipiris of all the Duche tong,

To lernin love dauncis springis,  
 Reyis, and the straunge thingis.

Tho sawe I in an othir place,  
 Ystandyng in a large space,  
 Of 'hem that makin blodie soun  
 In trumpe, beme, and clarioun,  
 For in fight and in blodeshed, nges  
 Is usid glad clarionynges.

There herde I trumpe Messenus,  
 Of whom that spekith Virgilius.

There herd I Joab trumpe also,  
 Theodomas, and othir mo,  
 And all that usid clarion  
 In Casteloigne and Aragon,  
 That in ther tymis famous were,  
 To lernin sawe I trumpin there.

There sawe I sit in othir sees,  
 Playing on othir sondrie glees,  
 Whiche that I can not now nevin,  
 Mo then iterris ben in hevin,  
 Of whiche I n'ill as now not rime  
 For ese of you and losse of time  
 For Tyme ilost, this knowen ys,  
 By no waie maie recovered be.

There sawe I playing jogelours,  
 Megiciens and tragetours,  
 And Phetonissis, charmeressis,  
 And olde witchis and forceressis,  
 That usen exorsifacions  
 And eke subfumigacions,  
 And clerkis eke which connin well  
 All this magike hight Naturell,  
 That craftily doe ther ententes  
 To maken in certain ascendentis  
 Imagis, lo! through whiche magike  
 To maken a man ben whole or like.

There sawe I the Quene Medea,  
 And Circe and Caliophia.

There sawe I Hermes Ballenas,  
 Limote, and eke Symon Magus.

There sawe I, and yknewe by name,  
 That by soche arte doen men have fame.

There sawe I eke Coll Tragetour  
 Upon a table of sicamour  
 Playin an uncouth thyng to tell;  
 I sawe hym cary a windemell  
 Undir a walnote shale.

What should I makin lengir tale,  
 Of all the peple that I sey  
 I could not tell till dom'isdey.

When I had all this folke beholde,  
 And founde me loce and not yholde,  
 And I amusid a longe while

Upon this wall all of berile,  
 That shone lightir than any glas,  
 And made well more then it ywas,  
 As it kindly thing of Fame is,  
 And then right anon afir this  
 I gan forth the romin till I fonde  
 The castill yate on my right honde,  
 Whiche all so well ycorvin was  
 That nevir soche an othir n'as,  
 And yet it was by avinture  
 Iwrought by grete and subtile cure;



It nedith not you more to tellen,  
To makin you to long to dwellen,  
Of these ilke yatis flourishynges,  
Ne of compacis ne karvynges,  
Ne the hackyng in masonries,  
As corbettis and imageries.

But Lorde, so faire it was to shewe!  
For it was all with golde behewe;  
But in I went, and that anone:  
There met I crying many one,  
A larges, larges! holde up well;  
God save the ladic of this pell,  
Our owne gentill Ladie Fame,  
And hem that willen to have a name  
Of us! Thus heard I cryin all,  
And fast comin out of the hall  
And shoke noblis and starlyngis,  
And corounid were as kyngis  
With crownis wrought full of losynges,  
And many ribans many fringes  
Were on ther clothis truilly.

Tho at the last espyd I  
That pursuivantes and heraudis,  
That cryin riche folkis laudis,  
It werin all; and every man  
Of hem, as I you tellin can,  
Had on him throwin a vesture  
Whiche men yclepe a cote armure,  
Embroudirid wondirly riche,  
As though thei werin not iliche:  
But nought will I, so mote I thrive,  
Be now aboutin to discrive  
All these armis that there yweren  
That thei thus on ther cotis weren,  
For to me were impossible,  
Men might make of hem a Bible  
Full twentie fote thicke as I throwe,  
For certain who so coud it knowe  
Ymight there all the armis sene  
Of famous folke that er had bene  
In Affrike, Europe, and Asie,  
Sithins first began chivalrie.

Lo! how should I now tell all this!  
Ne of the hall eke what nede is  
To tellin you? that every wall  
Of it, and rose, and flore withall,  
Was platid halfe a fore thicke  
Of golde, and that ne was not wicke,  
But for to provin in all wise  
As fine as ducket in Venise,  
Of whiche to lye all in my pouche is;  
And thei were fet as thicke of ouchis  
Fine, of the finist stonis faire  
That men reden in the lapidaire,  
Or as grassis growen in a mede;  
But it were all to long to rede  
The namis, and therefore I pace.  
But in this lustie and riche place,  
That Fam'is Hall yeallid was,  
Full mochil pres of folke there n'as,  
Ne crouding, for to mochil pres;  
But all on hie above a des  
Satte in a se imperiall  
That made was of rubie roiall

Whiche that a carbuncle is called,  
I sawe perpetually istalled  
A femine cature,  
That nevir formid by Nature  
Was soche an othir thyng I saie;  
For althirfirste, the soche to saie;  
Me thoughtin that she was so lite  
That the smale length of a cubite  
Was lengir than she semid be,  
But thus sone in a while she  
Her self tho' wondirly ystreight  
That with her fete she th' erthe yreight,  
And with her hedde she touchid heven,  
There as shinith the sterris seven;  
And thereto yet, as to my wit,  
I sawin a grete wondir yit,  
Upon her eyin to beholde,  
But certainly' I hem nevir tolde,  
For as sele eyin haddin she  
As sethirs upon foulis be,  
Or werin on the bestis foure  
That Godd'is trone can to honoure,  
As writeth then in the' Apocalyps,  
Her here, that was owndie and crips,  
As burnid golde it shone to se.

And, soche to tellin also, she  
Had also sele upstandyng eres,  
And tongis as on best ben heres,  
And on her fete woxin sawe I  
Partrich'is wingis redily.

But Lorde! the perrie' and the richesse  
I sawe sittyng on the goddesse,  
And the hevinly melodie  
Of songis full of armonie  
I herde about her troue isong,  
That all the palais wall yrong!  
So songe the mightie Muse, she  
That clepid is Caliope,  
And her sevin sustirin eke,  
That in ther facis semid meke,  
And evirmore eternally  
Thei songin of Fame; tho heard I,  
Yheried be thou and thy name,  
Goddesse of Renoun and of Fame!

Tho was I aware at the last,  
As I myne eyin gan upcast,  
That this ilke grete and noble quene  
Upon her shuldurs gan sustene  
Both the armis and the name  
Of tho that haddin large fame,  
Alisander and Hercules,  
That with a sherte his life did lese;  
And thus founde I sittyng this goddesse  
In noble honour and richesse,  
Of whiche I flinte a while now,  
Of othir thing to tellin you.

Tho sawe I stande on th' other side,  
Streight doune unto the doris wide,  
From the dees many a pillere  
Of metall that shone not full clere,  
But though thei were of no richesse  
Yet were thei made for grete nobleffe,  
And in hem was there grete sentence,  
And folke of hie and digne reverence,

Of which to tellin will I fonde.

Upon a pillir sawe I stonde,  
Alderfirst there yfie,  
Upon a pillir stonde on hie,  
That was of lede and iron fine,  
Hym of the secte Saturnine,  
The Ebraike Josephus the old,  
That of the Jewis gestis told,  
And he bare on his shuldurs hie  
All the fame up of the Jurie;  
And by hym stod in othir seven,  
Full wise and worthie for to neven,  
To helpe hym berin up the charge,  
It was so heve and so large;  
And for thei writtin of batailles  
As well as of othir marvailles,  
Therefore ywas, lo! this pillere,  
Of the whiche I you tellin here,  
Of lede and iron bothe iwis,  
For iron Mart's metall is,  
Whiche that the god is of Battaile,  
And eke the lede withoutin faile  
Is, lo! the metall of Saturne,  
That hath ful largè whele to turne,  
To standin forthe on eithir rowe  
Of 'hem whiche that I could yknowe,  
Though I by ordir 'hem not tell,  
To makin you to long to dwell.

These, of the whiche I gan to rede,  
These sawe I standin out of drede  
Upon an iron pillir strong,  
That painted was all endelong  
With tigr's blode in every place,  
The Tholason, with that height Stace,  
That bare of Thebis up the name  
Upon his sholdurs, and the fame  
Also of cruill Achilles;  
And by hym stode withoutin lese  
Full wondir hie on a piller  
Of iron he the grete Omer,  
And with him Dares and Titus  
Before, and eke he Lollius,  
And Guide eke de Columpnis,  
And English Gafride eke iwis;  
And eche of these, as I have joye,  
Was busie for to bere up Troye,  
So heve thereof was the fame,  
That for to bere it was no game;  
But yet I gan full well espie  
Betwene 'hem was a little' envie;  
One saied that Omer madè lies  
And feinyng in his poëtries,  
And was to the Grekes favourable,  
And therefore helde he it but fable.

Tho sawe I stande on a pillere  
That was of tinnid iron clere,  
Him the Latine poete Virgile,  
That hath bore up a longè while  
The fame of pius Æneas.

And next him on a pillir was  
Of coppir Venus clerke Ovide,  
That hoth yfowin wondirs wide  
The grete god of Lov's fame,  
And there he bare up well his name

Upon this piller al so hie,  
As might se it with myne eye;  
For why? this hall whereof I rede  
Was woxe on height, and length, and brede  
Well more by a thousande dele  
Than it was erst, that sawe I wele.

Tho sawe I on a pillir by  
Of iron, wrought full sternily,  
The grete poete, him Dan Lucan,  
That on his sholdurs bare up than,  
As hie as that I might it se,  
The fame of Julius and Pompe,  
And by hym stod in all these clerkes  
That write of Rom's mightie werkcs,  
That if I would ther namis tell  
Tho all to long ymust I dwell.

And nexte hym on a pillir stode  
Of sulphure, liche as he were wode,  
Dan Claudian, sothe for to tell,  
That bare up all the fame of hell,  
Of Pluto and of Proserpine,  
That quene is of the derke pine.  
What should I more tellin of this?  
The hall ywas all full iwis  
Of 'hem that writtin oldè jekes  
As ben on treis rokis nestes,  
But it a full confuse mattere  
Were all these jekis for to here  
That thei of write, and how thei height:  
But while that I beheld this sight  
I herde a noise approchin blive,  
That fareth as bees doen in an hive  
Ayenst ther tyme of out flying,  
Right soche a manir murmuring  
For all the worlde it semid me.

Tho gan I loke about, and se  
That there come entryng into the hall  
A right grete companie withall,  
And that of sondrie regions,  
Of all kind of condicions  
That dwell in yerthe undir the mone,  
Bothe pore and riche: and also sone  
As thei were come into the hall  
Thei gan on kneis doune to fall  
Before this ilke noble quene,  
And sayid, Graunt us, ladie shene!  
Eche of us of thy grace a bone.  
And some of 'hem she grauntid sone,  
And some she warnid well and faire,  
And some she grauntid the contrarie  
Of ther askyng all uttirlye;  
But this I saie you truilie,  
What that her grace was I ne wist,  
For of these folke full well I wist  
Thei haddin gode fame eche deserved,  
Although thei were diversly served,  
Right as her sistir Dame Fortune  
Is wont to servin in commune.

Now herkin how she gan to paie  
'Hem that gan her of grace to praie,  
And yet, lo! all this companie  
Yfaidin sothe, and not a lie.

Madame, (thus sayid thei) we be  
Folke whiche that here besechin the

That thou grauntin as now gode Fame,  
And let our workis have gode name;  
In full recompensacion  
Of gode worke give us gode renoun.

I warne it you (quod she anone)  
Ye gettin of me gode Fame none  
By God, and therefore go your waie.

Alas, (quod thei) and welawaie!  
Tellith us what your cause maie be.

For that me list it not, (quod she,)  
No wight shall speke of you iwis  
Ne gode ne harme ne that ne this.  
And with that worde she gan to call  
Her messengir that was in hall,  
And bad that he should fast ygone,  
Upon pain to be blinde anone,  
For Æolus, the god of Winde,  
In Thrace there ye shall hym yfnde,  
And bid hym bryng his clarioun  
That is full divers of his soun,  
And it is clepid Clerc Laude.  
With which he wont is to heraude  
'Hem that that me list ipraisid be;  
And also bid hym now that he  
Bryng eke his othir clarioun,  
That hight Schlaundir in every toun,  
With whiche he wont is to diffame  
'Hem that me list and doe 'hem shame.

This messengir gan fast to gone,  
And founde where in a cave of stone,  
In a countre which that hight Thrace,  
This Æolus with hardè grace  
Yhelde the windis in distresse,  
And gan 'hem undir hym to presse,  
That thei gone as the beris rore,  
He bounde and pressid 'hem so fore.

This messengir gan fast to crie,  
Rise up (quod he) and fast the hie  
Untill thou at my ladie be,  
And take thy clarions eke with the,  
And speke the fast: and he anone  
Toke to him one that hight Tritone,  
His clarions to berin tho,  
And let a certain winde ygo,  
That blewe so hidowly and hie  
That it ne lestè not a skie  
In all the welkin long and brode.

This Æolus no where abode  
Till he was come to Fam'is fete,  
And eke the man that Triton hete,  
And there he stode as still as stone:  
And here withall there came anone  
An othir hugè companie  
Of gode folke, and began to crie  
Ladie! grauntith us now gode Fame,  
And let our workis have that name,  
Now in honour of gentilnesse,  
And al so God your soule yblessè,  
For we han well deservid it,  
Therefore is right that we be quit.

As thrive I (quod she) ye shall faile,  
Gode workis shall you not availe  
To have of me gode Fame as now;  
But wote ye what? I grauntin yowe

That ye shall havin a shrewde name,  
And wickid loos worfè Fame,  
Though ye gode loos have well deserved;  
Now goeth your waie, for ye ben served.  
And thou Dan Æolus, (quod she)  
Take forthe thy trompe anone, let se,  
That is iclepid Schlaundir light,  
And blowe ther loos, that every wight  
Speke of 'hem harme and shreudinesse  
In stede of gode and worthinesse,  
For thou shalt trumpe all the contraire  
Of that thei have doen well and faire.

Alas! thought I, what avintures  
Yhavin these forie cretures,  
That thei emongis al the pres  
Should thus be shamid giltiles!  
But what? it must nedis ybe.  
What did this Æolus? but he  
Toke out his blackè trompe of bras,  
That foulir then the devill was.  
And gan this trompè for to blowe  
As all the worlde should ovirthrowe:  
Throughout evèry region  
Ywent this foulè trump'is soun  
As swift as pellit out of gonne  
When fire is in the poudir ronne,  
And soche a smokè gan out wende  
Out of the foulè trump'is ende,  
Blacke, blue, and grenishe, swartishe, rede  
As doith where that man meite lede,  
Lo! all on hie from the tewell;  
And thereto one thyng sawe I well,  
That ay the fethir that it ranne  
The gretir wexin it beganne,  
As doeth the rivir from a well,  
And it stanke as the pitte of hell:  
Alas! thus was ther shame irong,  
And gilleffe, on evèry tong,  
Tho-came the thirdè companie,  
And gone up to the dees to hie,  
And doune on knees thei fell anone,  
And saidin, We ben everichone  
Folke that yhan full truilie  
Deservid Famè rightfullie,  
And prayin you it might be knowe  
Right as it is, and forthe yblowe.

I graunte (quod she), for now me list  
That your gode workis shall be wist,  
And yet ye shall have bettir loos,  
Right in dispite of all your foos,  
Then worthie is, and that anone.  
Let now (quod she) thy trompè gone,  
Thou Æolus, that is so blacke,  
And out thyne othir trumpè take  
That hightin Laude, and blowe it so  
That through the worlde ther Fame may go  
All esily and not to fast,  
That it be knowin at the last.

Ful gladly, ladie myne! he saied;  
And out his trompe of golde he braied  
Anone, and set it to his mouthè,  
And blewe it est, and west, and southe,  
And northe, as loude as any thonder,  
That every wight hath of it wonder,



So brode it ran or that it flent;  
 And certis all the breth that went  
 Out of his trump's mouthe yfinelde  
 As men a potte full of baume helde  
 Among a baskit full of roses;  
 This favour did he to ther loses.

And right with this I gan esple  
 These came the fowirth companie,  
 But certaine thei were wondir fewe,  
 And gonne to standin on a rewe,  
 And saidin, Certis, ladie bright!  
 We have doen well with all our might,  
 But we ne kepe to havin Fame;  
 Hideth our workis and our name  
 For Godd's love, for certis we  
 Have surely doen it for bounte,  
 And for no manir othir thyng.

I grauntin you all your askyng,  
 (Quod she;) let your workis be dedde.

With that about I tourned my hedde,  
 And sawe anone the fivith rout,  
 That to this ladie gan to lout,  
 And doune on knees anone to fall,  
 And to her tho besoughtin all  
 To hidin ther gode workis eke,  
 And sayid, thei yeve not a leke  
 For no Fame, ne no soche renoun,  
 For thei for sonemplacioun  
 And Godd's love had it ywrought,  
 Ne of Fame wouldin thei have nought.

What! (quod she) and be ye so wode?  
 And wenin ye for to doe gode,  
 And for to have of that no Fame?  
 Have ye dispite to have my name?  
 Naie, ye shall lyin everichone.  
 Blowith thy trumpe, and that anone;  
 (Quod she) thou Æolus, I hote,  
 And ring these folkis workes by note,  
 That all the worlde maie of it here:  
 And he gan blowe ther leos so clere  
 Within his goldin clarioun,  
 That through the worlde ywent the soun  
 Al so kindly and eke so soft  
 That ther Fame was yblowe aloft.

And tho came the sixt companie,  
 And gonin fast to Fame to crie  
 Right verily in this manere;  
 Thei saidin, Mercie, ladie dere!  
 To tellin certain as it is  
 We have doen neithir that ne this,  
 But idill all our life hath be;  
 Bat nathellese yet prayin we  
 That we maie have as gode a Fame,  
 And grete renome and knowin name,  
 As thei that have doe noble jesses,  
 And have achevid all ther questes,  
 As wel of love as othir thyng,  
 All was us nevyr broche ne ryng,  
 Ne ellis what fro women sent,  
 Ne onis in ther herte iment,  
 To maken us onely frendly chere,  
 But mought ytemin us on here,  
 Yet let us zo the peple seme

That women lovin us for wode,  
 It shall do us as mochil gode,  
 And to our herte as moche availe  
 The countirpeise, ese, and travaile,  
 As we had womnin with labour,  
 For that is dere ybought honour,  
 At the regard of our grete ese;  
 And yet ye must us more yplese,  
 Let us befoldin eke thereto  
 Worthie, and wise, and gode also;  
 And riche, and happie unto love,  
 For Godd's love that sitreth above;  
 Though we may not the bodie have  
 Of women, yet, so God me save,  
 Let men yglewe on us the name;  
 Suffisith that we have the Fame.

I graunt it (quod she), by my trouth.  
 Now, Æolus, withoutin slouth  
 Take out thy trumpe of golde, (quod she)  
 And blowe as thei have askid me,  
 That every man wene 'hem at ese  
 Although thei go in full badde lesse.  
 This Æolus gan it so blowe  
 That through the worlde it was knowe.

Tho came the seventh route anone,  
 And fill on kneis everichone,  
 And sayid, Ladie, graunte us sone  
 The same thyng, the same bone,  
 Which that this nexte folke you have done.

Fie on you (quod she) everichone!  
 Ye nastie swine, ye idle wretches,  
 Fullfillid of rottin flowe tetches!  
 What! false thevis, where ye wolde  
 Ben samid gode, and nothyng n'olde  
 Deservin why, ne nevyr thought,  
 Men rathir you to hangin ought,  
 For ye be like the slepie cat,  
 That would have fishe, but wost thou what?  
 He wold nothyng were his clawis:  
 Evill thrifte come to your jawis,  
 And on myne, if I you it graunte,  
 Or doe favour you to avaunte.

Thou Æolus, thou Kyng of Thrace,  
 Go blowe this folke a sorie grace  
 (Quod she) anone; and wost thou how?  
 As I shall tellin the right nowe;  
 Say these ben they that wolde honour  
 Have, and do no kinde of labour,  
 Ne do no gode, and yet have laude,  
 And that men wende that belle I saunde  
 Ne coude 'hem not of love werne,  
 And yet she that ygrint at querne  
 Is all to gode to ese ther herte.  
 This Æolus anone up sterte,  
 And with his blacke clarioun  
 He gan to blasin out a soun  
 As loud as bellith winde in hel,  
 And eke therewith, the sothe to tel,  
 This sounne was so full of japes  
 As evir mowis were in apes,  
 And that went al the worlde aboute,  
 That every wight gan on 'hem shoute  
 And for to laugh as they were wode,

Tho came another compaigne  
That had ydone the trechery,  
The harme and the grete wickednesse,  
That any herte couidin ygesse,  
And prayid her to have gode Fame,  
And that she n'olde do 'hem no shame,  
But give 'hem loos and gode renoun,  
And do it blowe in clarioun.

Nay, wis, (quod she) it were a vyce;  
Al be there in me no justice  
Me lyst not for to do it nowe,  
Ne this I ne will graunt it you.

Tho came there lepinge in a route,  
And gan to clappin al aboute  
Every man upon the crowne,  
That al the hal began to sowne,  
And sayid, Lady lese and dere!  
We ben soche folkes, as ye may here,  
To tellin all the tale aright,  
We ben shrewis every wight,  
And have delite in wickidnesse,  
As gode folke havin in godenesse,  
And joye to ben yknowin shrewes,  
And ful of vice and wickid thewes,  
Wherefore we praye you on a rowe  
That our Fame be soche yknowe  
In al thingis right as it is.

I graunte it you, (quod she) ywis;  
But what arte thou that faicst this tale,  
That werist on thy hose a pale,  
And on thy tippet soche a bel?

Madame, (quod he) the sothe to tel,  
I am that ilke shrewe ywis  
That brent the temple of Idis  
In Athenis, lo! that cyte.  
And wherefore diddest thou so? (quod she.)  
By my trouthe, (answerid he) Madame,  
I wold faine have had a name,  
As othir folke had in the towne;  
Although they were of grete renowne  
For ther vertue and ther thewis,  
Thought I, as grete Fame have shrewis  
(Though it be nought) for shrewdenesse  
As gode folke havin for godenesse,  
And sithen I may not have that one  
That othir n'yl I not forgone,  
As for to gettin a Fame here,  
The temple set I al on fire.

Nowe done our loos be blowin swithe,  
As wisly be thou evir blythe.

Gladly (quod she.), Thou Æolus,  
Herist thou not what they prayen us?  
Madame, I here ful wel, (quod he)  
And I will trumpin it parde;  
And toke his blacke trumpe faste,  
And gan to puffin and to blaste  
Tyl it was at the world's ende.

With that I gan aboutin wende,  
For one that stode right at my bake  
Me thought ful godely to me spake,  
And sayid, Frende, what is thy name?  
Arte thou come hidir to have Fame?

Have Fame! nay, for sothe, frende, (quod I)  
I come nat hithir, grant mercy!

For no soche cause, by my hed,  
Suffisith me as I were ded  
That no wight have my name in honde;  
I wot my selfe best howe I stonde,  
For what I drie or what I thinke  
I wol my selfin al it drinke,  
Certainly for the more parte,  
As ferforth as I can mine arte.  
What doist thou here than? (quod he.)  
(Quod I) That wol I tellin the:  
The cause why I standin here  
Is some new tidinges for to lere,  
Some newe thing, I ne wot what,  
Tydingis eythir this or that,  
Of love, or of soche thingis glade,  
For certainly he that me made  
To comin hidir said to me  
I shuldin bothe yhere and fe  
In this place many wondir thinges,  
But these ne be no soche tidinges  
As I yment of. No? (quod he.)  
And I answerid, No, parde,  
For ful wel I wote evir yet,  
Sithinis that firste I had wit,  
That some folke han desirid Fame  
Diversly, and loos and gode names,  
But certainly I ne wist how  
Ne where that Fame dwellid or nowe,  
Ne eke of her discripcion,  
No also her condicion,  
Ne eke the ordir of her dome  
Knewe I not till I hithir come.

Why than be, lo! these tidingis  
Which that thou nowe hethir bringis,  
That thou hast herde? (quod he to me:)  
But nowe no force, for wel I se  
What thou desirist for to lere:  
Come forthe, and stande no lengir here,  
And I wol the, withoutin drede,  
In to soche another place lede  
There thou shalte herin many one.

Tho gan I forthe with him to gone  
Out of the castil, sothe to sey.

Tho sawe I stande in a valey,  
Undir the castil faste by,  
An house that *Domus Dædali*,  
That *Labyrinthus*, ycleped is,  
N'as made so wondirly ywis,  
Ne halfe so quently was ywrought;  
And evir mo as swifte as thought  
This queint House aboutin ywent,  
That nevirmo it still yrent,  
And there came out so gret a noise,  
That had it stondin upon Oyse  
Men might have herde it eslii  
To Rome, I trowin sikirly;  
And the noise whiche that I yherde  
For al the worlde right so it ferde  
As dothe the routing of the stone  
That fro th' engin is letyn gone.

And al this House of whiche I rede  
Was made of twyggis falowe, rede,  
And grene eke, and some werin white,  
Soche as men to the cagis twichte,

Or makin of these paniers,  
Or ellis hutchis or doffers,  
That for the swough and for the twigges  
This House was also full of gigges,  
And like of chirkinges,  
And of many othir wirkinges,  
And eke this House hath of entrees  
As many as levis ben on trees  
In Ioumair whan that they ben grene,  
And the rose yet men may sene  
A thousande bolis, and well mo,  
To lettin the sowne out ygo;  
And by day in every tyde  
Ben al the doris opin wide,  
And by night ~~one~~ one is unshette;  
Ne portir is there none to lette  
No manir tydinges in to pace,  
Ne nevir rest is in that place,  
That it n'is filled full of tidinges,  
Eythir loude or of whisperinges,  
And evir all the Housis angles  
Is full of rowninges and of jangles,  
Of werres, of pece, of mariages,  
Of restes, of labour, of viages,  
Of abode, of dethe, and of lyfe,  
Of love, of hate, accorde, of strife,  
Of losse, of lore, and of winniges,  
Of hele, of sickenesse, or lesinges,  
Of faire wethir and tempestis,  
Of qualme, of folke and of bestis,  
Of divers transmutacions  
Of estates and of regions,  
Of trust, of drede, of jaloufy,  
Of witte, of winning, of foly,  
Of plenty and of grete famine,  
Of chepe, of derthe, and of ruine,  
Of gode or of misgovernement,  
Of fyre, and divers accident.  
And lo! this House of whiche I write  
Sykir be ye it n'as no lite,  
For it was syxtie mile of length;  
Al was the tymbir of no strength,  
Yet it is foundid to endure  
While that it lyst to Avinture,  
That is the mothir of Tidinges,  
As the se of wellis and springes,  
And it was shapin lyke a cage.  
Certis, (quod I) in al mine age  
Ne sawe I soche an House as this.  
And as I wondrid me ywis  
Upon this House, tho ware was I  
How that myne egle faste by  
Was perchid hye upon a stone,  
And I gan streight to him to gone,  
And sayid him thus, I pray the  
That thou a while abidin me  
For Godd's love, and let me sene  
What wondirs in that place ybene,  
For yet parauntir I may lere  
Some gode therin, or somwhat here,  
That lese me were or that I went.  
Peter, that is nowe myne entent,  
(Quod he to me) therefore I dwel;  
But certaine one thinge I the tel,

That but I bringin the therin  
Ne shal thou nevir conne the gin  
To come in to it out of doute,  
So faste it whirlich, lo! aboute;  
But sithe that Jov'is of his grace,  
As I have said, wil the solace  
Finally with these ilke thinges,  
These uncouth sightis and tidinges,  
To passe away thine hevinesse,  
Soche routhe hath he of thy distresse  
That thou suffredest debonairly,  
And woste thy selvin uttirly  
Wholy desperate of al blisse,  
Sithe that Fortune hath made amisse  
The sote of al thine hert's rest  
Languishe, and eke in pointe to brest,  
But he through his mightie melite  
Wil do the ese, al be it lite,  
And gave in expresse commaundement,  
To whiche I am obedient,  
To forthir the with al my myght,  
And wishe and techin the aright  
Where thou maiste moste tidings here,  
Thou shalte here many one ylere.  
And with this worde he right anone  
Yhent me up bytwene his tone,  
And at a windowe in me brought  
That in this House was, as me thought,  
And therewithal me thought it stent,  
And nothings it aboutin wente,  
And me set in the flore adoun;  
But soche grete congregacioun  
Of folke as I sawe rome about,  
Some it within and some without,  
N'as nevir sene, ne shal be este,  
That certis in this worlde n'is leste  
So many formid by Nature,  
Ne ded so many a cature,  
That wel unnethis in that place  
Had I a fot'is brede of space;  
And every wight that I sawe there  
Rownid everiche in othir's ere  
A newe tidinge privily,  
Or els he tolde it opinly,  
Right thus, and said, Ne wost nat thou  
That is betiddin, lo! right nowe?  
No, certis, (quod he;) tel me what;  
And than he tolde him this and that,  
And swore therto that it was sothe,  
Thus hath he said, and thus he dothe,  
And this shal be, and thus herde I say,  
That shal be founde, and dare I lay;  
That al the folke that is on lyve  
Ne have the konninge to disctive  
Tho thingis that I herdin there,  
What aloude and what in the ere;  
But al the wondir moste was this,  
Whan one had herde a thinge ywis  
He came streight to anothir wight,  
And gan him tellin anone right  
The same tale that to him was tolde  
Or it a forlonge way was olde,  
And began somwhat for to eche  
Unto this tidinge in his speche



More than evir it spokin was,  
 And nat so sone departed n'as  
 Tho fro him that he ne ymette  
 With the thirde man, and er he lette  
 Any flounde he ytolde him alse;  
 Werin the tidinges sothe or false  
 Yet wolde he tel it nathelles,  
 And evirmore with mo encreas  
 That it was erst: thus northe and southe  
 Went every tidinge fro mouth to mouthe,  
 And that encrefinge evirmo,  
 As fire is wont to quicken and go,  
 From a sparcle sprongin amis,  
 Tyl al a cite brent up is.

And whan that that was ful up spronge,  
 And waxin more on every tonge  
 Than er it was, and went anone  
 Up to a windowe out to gone,  
 Or but it might out there ypassé  
 It gan out crepe at some crevasse,  
 And flewe forth the faste for the nones.

And somtyme I sawe there at ones  
 A lesinge and a fadde sothesawe,  
 That gounin of avinture drawe  
 Out at a windowe for to pace,  
 And whan thei meten in that place  
 They were acheckid bothé two,  
 And neithir of 'hem myght out go,  
 For eche othir they gonne so croude;  
 Tyl eche of 'hem gan cryin loude  
 Let me gone first; Nay, but let me,  
 And here I wol ensurin the  
 With vowis that thou wolt do so,  
 That I shal nevir fro the go,  
 But be alway thin owne fworne brother;  
 We wol meddle us eche in other,  
 That no man be he ner so wrothe  
 Shal have one of us two, but bothe  
 At onis, as beside his leve,  
 Come we amorowe or on eve,  
 Be we ycryde or styl yrowned:  
 Thus sawe I falso and sothe compowned  
 Togidir flye for o tidinge;  
 Thus out at holis gonne to wringe  
 Every tidinge streight to Fame,  
 And she gan yevin eche his name  
 Aftir her disposicion,  
 And yeve 'hem eke duracion,  
 Some to wexin and wanin sone,  
 As dothe the faire and whitè mone,  
 And let him gonne; there might I seip  
 Wingid wondirs full fast flyin

Twenty thousande all in a route,  
 As Æolus 'hem blewe aboute:  
 And, Lorde! this House in allè times  
 Was ful of shypmen and pilgrimes,  
 With scrippis bretteful of lesinges,  
 Entemedilid with tidinges;  
 And eke alonè by 'hem selve  
 A many thousande tymis twelve  
 Sawe I eke of these pardoners,  
 Currours, and eke of messaungers,  
 With boxis crommid ful of lyes  
 As evir vessil was with lies:  
 And as I althirfastist went  
 Aboute, and dyd al myne entent  
 Me for to playen and for to lere,  
 And eke a tiding for te here,  
 That I had herde of some countre,  
 That shal not now be tolde for me,  
 For it no nede is, redyly  
 Folke can yfinge it bet than I,  
 For al mote out or late or rathe  
 Allè the shevis in the fathe.

I herdin a grete noise withall  
 Within a cornir of the hal,  
 There men of love tydingis tolde,  
 And I gan thidirwarde beholde,  
 For I sawe renninge every wight  
 As faste as that they haddin might,  
 And everyche cride, What thinge is that?  
 And some said, Let'ot nevir what:  
 And whan they were al en an hepe  
 Tho thei behinde gonnin up lepe,  
 And clambin up on othir faste,  
 And up the noise on hyghin caste,  
 And tredin fast on othir's heles,  
 And stampe, as men done aftir eles:  
 But at the laste I sawe a man  
 Whiche that I nought discrive ne can,  
 But he yfamid for to be  
 A man of grete auctorite.

And therewithal I anon abraide  
 Out of my slepe halfe afraide,  
 Remembring wel what I had sene,  
 And howe hye and ferre I had bene,  
 In my gost, and had grete wonder  
 Of that the mighty god of Thonder  
 Had let me knowen, and gan to write  
 Lyke as ye have herde me endite,  
 Wherfore to study and rede alway  
 I purpose to do day by day.

And thus in dreminge and in game  
 Endith this litil Boke of Fame.

## CERTAINE BALADES, &c.

*Here foloweth a godely Balade of Chaucer,*

MOTHER of norture, best beloved of all,  
And freshe floure, to whom gode thrift God sende,  
Your childe, if it luste you me so to call,  
All be' I' unable my self so to pretende,  
To your discrecion I recomende  
Mine herte and all, with every circumstance,  
All wholly to be' undir your govirnaunce.

Moste desire I, and have, and evir shall,  
Thing which that might your hert'is ese amende;  
Have me excused, my powir is but small;  
Nathelesse of right ye ought for to commende  
My gode will, whiché fainé would entende  
To doe you service, for my suffisaunce  
Is wholly to be' undir your govirnaunce.

*Meulx'un* in herte, whiche never shall apall,  
Aie freshe and new, and right glad to dispende  
My time in your service, what so befall,  
Besekyng your excellence to defende  
My simplenesse, if ignorance offende  
In any wise, sith that myne assaunce  
Is whollie to be' undir your govirnaunce.

Daisie of light, very ground of comfort!  
The Sunn'is doughtir ye hight, as I rede,  
For when he westrith farwell your disport;  
By your nature anone right for pure drede  
Of the rude Night, that with his boistous wede  
Of derkenesse shadowith our hemisphere,  
Then closin ye, my liv'is ladie dere!

Daunying the daie unto his kinde resort,  
And Phœbus your fathir with his streames rede  
Adorneth the morowe, consuming the fort  
Of mistie cloudes, that wouldin overlede  
True humble hertis with ther mistie hede,  
Nere comfort adaies, when your eyin clere  
Disclose and sprede, my liv'is ladie dere!

*Je wouldray*, but the grete God disposeth  
And makith casuell by his providence  
Soche thing as mann'is frele wit purposeth,  
All for the best, if that your conscience  
Not gruthe it, but in humble pacience  
It receive, for God saith withouten a fable  
A faithfull herte evir is acceptable.

Cautelis whoso usith gladlie glofeth;  
To eschewe soche it is right high prudence;  
What ye saied onis mine herte opposeth,  
That my writyng japis in your absence  
Plesid you moche bettir than my presence,  
Yet can I more, ye be not excusable;  
A faithfull herte evir is acceptable.

Quakith my penne, my spirite supposeth  
That in my writing ye find woll offence;  
Min hert welknith thus sone, anon it riseth,  
Now hotte, now colde, and est in grete fervency  
That misse is causid of negligence,  
And not of nialice, therefore both ~~ther~~ *ther*  
A faithfull herte evir is acceptable.

*B. anoy*

Forthe complaint, forthe thou lacking eloquence,  
Forthe tith lertir, of ending lame,  
I have besought my ladie's sapience  
Of thy behalfe for to accept in game  
Thine inabilite, doe thou the same:  
Abide, have more yet; *Je serve Jove*;  
Now forth, I close the' in holy Venus name,  
The shall uncloze my hert'is govirneisse.

*A ballade in commendacion of our Ladie.*

A THOUSANDE stories coud I no reherce  
Of olde poetis touching this matere,  
How that Cupide the hertis gan so perce  
Of his servauntis, yettyng hem in fere.  
Lo here the fine of th' errour and the fere,  
Lo here of love the guerdone and grevaunce,  
That er what wo her servauntis do avaunce!

Wherefore now plainly I woll my stile dresse  
Of one to speke at nede that woll not faile;  
Alas! for dole I ne can ne maie' expresse  
Her passyng prife, and that is no mervaille.  
O winde of grace! now blowe unto my saile,  
O auriate licour of Clio! to write  
My penne enspire of that I woll endite.

Alas! unworthie I am and unable  
 To love soche one, all women surmountyng,  
 But she be benigne to me and merciabie,  
 That is of pitie the welle and the spryng;  
 Wherfore of her in laude and in praisyng,  
 So as I can, supportid by her grace,  
 Right thus I saie, knelyng before her face:  
 O sterre of sterres, with thy stremis clere,  
 Sterre of the se, to shipmen light and gide!  
 O lustie livyng, moste plesaunt to appere,  
 Whose bright bemis the cloudis maie not hide!  
 O waie of life to hem that go or ride,  
 Haven astir tempest, surist up to rive,  
 On me have mercie for thy joyis five!

O rightfull rule! o bote of holinesse!  
 And lightsome line of pitie for to plain,  
 Originall of grace and all godenesse,  
 And clenest conduct of vertue moste soverain!  
 Mothir of mercie, our trouble to restrain,  
 Chambir and closet clenest of chastitie,  
 And namid herbrough of the deitie!

O closet, gardin, voide of wedis wicke,  
 Cristallin welle, of clerenesse clere consigned,  
 Fructified olive of soiles faire and thicke,  
 And redo'lent cedre most dere worthy digned!  
 Remember on finnis that to the be' affined  
 Or wickid fendis ther wrathe on hem wreche;  
 Lanterne of light! thou art ther livis leche.

Paradise of plesaunce, gladsome to all gode,  
 O benigne braunchilet of the pine tre,  
 Vinarie' envermailed, refreshir of bode,  
 Licour ayen langour that passed maie not be,  
 Blisful blomie blosme, bidyng in bounte!  
 Thy mantell of mercie on our miserie sprede,  
 And er we' awaie wrappe us undir thy wede.

O rodie rosier, flouring without spine,  
 Fountain filthlesse, as birill currant clere!  
 Sum drop of gracefull dewe to us propine;  
 Light without nebule shynyng in thy sphere,  
 Medicine to mischeves, pucell without pere!  
 Flambe doun the full light of thin influence,  
 Remembring thy servantes for thy magnificence.

Of all Christin protectrice and tutele,  
 Retourne of exiled put in the proscriptioun,  
 To hem that erren in the' pathe of ther sequele,  
 To werie forwandrid tent and pavilion,  
 To faint and to freshe the paulacion,  
 To unrestie bothe rest and remedie,  
 Fructfull to all tho that in her assie:

To hem that rennin thou art itinerarie,  
 O blisfull bravie to knightes of thy werre!  
 To werie werkmen she 'is diourne denarie,  
 Mede unto mariners that have failed sette,  
 Laureate coroune stremyng as a sterre,  
 To hem putin palastre for thy sake  
 Tours of ther conquest white as any lake.

O mirthe of martyrs! swetir than sitole,  
 Of confessours also riche donatise,  
 Unto virgines eternall lauriolate,  
 Fore all woman havyng prerogative,  
 Mothir and maide, bothe widowe and eke wife!  
 Of all the worlde is none but thou alone,  
 Now sith thou maie be succour to my mone,

Trustie turtle, truefastist of all true,  
 Curteise columbe, replete of all mekenesse,  
 O nightingale with thy notis newe!  
 O popinjaie! purid with all clenness,  
 O laverocke of love! singyng with swetnesse,  
 Phœbus waityng till on thy brest he light,  
 Undir thy wing at domisdaie us dight.

O rubie! rubified in the passion  
 Of thy sonne, us have emongis in minde,  
 O stedfast diametre of duracioun!  
 That fewe feris any time might thou finde.  
 For none to hym was foundin halfe so kinde;  
 O hardie herte! o lovyng creature!

What was 'it but love that made the so endure?  
 Semely saphre, depe loupe, and blewe ewage!

Stable as the loupe ewage of pitie,  
 This is to saie, the freshist of visage,  
 Thou lovest unchaungid hem that servin the,  
 And if offence or varying in hem be  
 Thou art aie redie on ther wo to rue,  
 And hem receivist aye with herte full true.

O godelie gladdid! when that Gabriel  
 With joy the grette, that maie not be nombred,  
 Or halfe the blisse who coud ywrite or tell  
 When the' Holy Ghooste to the was cbumbrid,  
 Wherthrough fendes were bittirly encombrid?  
 O wemlesse maide! embelished in his birthe,  
 That man and angill therof haddin mirthe.

Lo here the blosme and the budde of glorie,  
 Of whiche the prophet so long spake before!  
 Lo here the same that was in memorie  
 Of Esaie, so long or she was yborne!  
 Lo here of David the delicious corne!  
 Lo here the grounde of life in to bilde,  
 Becomyng man our ransome for to yilde!

O glorious voile, vite inviolate!  
 O fire Titan! persyng with thy bemes,  
 Whose vertuous brightnes was in brest vibrat,  
 That al the world embelished with the lemes,  
 Conservatrice of kinges, dukes, and relmes,  
 Of Jesse his fede the swete Sunamite,  
 Mesure my mourning mine own Margarite!

O soverainist ysought out of Syon!  
 Cockle with golde-dewe from above berainid,  
 Dewe-bushe unbrent, firelesse fire set on,  
 Flaming with servence, not with hete painid,  
 Duryng daie that no wethir stainid,  
 Flece undefouled of gentilist Gidion,  
 And fructifyng fairist yerde of Aaron!

The mightie arche, the probatise piscine,  
 Laughyng Aurora, and of pece olive,  
 Columpne and base, up beryng from abime,  
 Why n'ere I connyng here for to discrive?  
 Chosin of Joseph, whom he toke to wive,  
 Unknowyng hym childyng by miracle,  
 And of our manly figure the tabernacle!

I have none Englishe convenient and digne,  
 Myne herte's hele lady! the with to honour,  
 Ivorie clene! therefore I woll resigne  
 Into thyne hande till that thou list succour,  
 To helpe my makyng both florisse and flour,  
 Then should I shewe in love how that I brende,  
 In songis makyng thy name to commende:



For if I coud before thyne excellence  
 Syngin in love I woldin what I fele,  
 And evir standin, ladie', I in thy presence,  
 To shewe in opin how I love you wele,  
 And sith although your heart be made of stele  
 To you withoutin any discev'eraunce  
*J'ay en vous toute ma fiance.*

Where might I love evir bettir beset  
 Then in this lilie likyng to beholde,  
 That lace of love, the bonde so well thou knit,  
 That I maie se the or myne herte colde,  
 And or I passe out of my dayis olde,  
 To fore syngyng evirmore uttirly,  
 Your eyin ~~two~~ well fle me sodainly.

For love I langour, blissed be soch sicknesse!  
 Sith it is for you, my heretely suffisaunce,  
 I can not ellis saie in my distresse,  
 So faire one hath myne hert in govirnaunce,  
 And astir I begin on esparaunce,  
 With feble entune, though it thine hert perce,  
 Yet ~~for the~~ sake this letter I reherse.

God wote on muslike I can not, but I gesse;  
 Alas why so! that I might saie or syng,  
 So love I you, my own soveraine maistresse,  
 And evir shall withoutin departyng,  
 Mirrour of beautie, for you' out should I ring,  
 In remembraunce eke of your eyin clere,  
 Thus ferre from you my soverain ladie dere!

So woldin God your love would me yflo,  
 Sith for your sake I singin daie by daie;  
 O herte! why ne nilt thou breke a two,  
 Sith with my ladie dwellin I ne maie?  
 Thus many' a roundell, many a virelaie,  
 In freshe Englishe, when I me leisir finde,  
 I doe recorde, on you to havin mynde.  
 Now, ladie mine! sith I you love and drede,  
 And you' unchaunged ever finde in o degre,  
 Whose grace ne maie fle fro your womanhede,  
 Disdainish not for to remembre' on me,  
 Myne herte bledith for I maie not you se;  
 And sith ye wotte my menyng desirous  
*Pleures pour moy s'il vous plaist amoureux.*

What marvaile is though I in pain ybe?  
 I' am departid from you my soverain;  
 Fortune alas! dont vient la desenie,  
 That in no wise I can ne maie attain  
 To se the beautie of your eyin twain,  
 Wherefore I saie, for tristesse doeth me grame,  
*Tant me fait mal departir de ma dame.*

Why n'ere my wissling brought to soche esplot  
 That I might saie for joye of your presence  
*Or amon cœur ce qui vouloit*  
*Or amon cœur?* the highest excellence  
 That er had wight, and sith mine advertence  
 Is in you rewith on my painis smerte,  
 I am so forso ywoundid to the herte.

To' live well merie two lovers were ifere,  
 So maie I saie withoutin any blame,  
 And if that any man to wilde were  
 I could hym techin for to be full tame,  
 Let hym go love and se where it be game,  
 For I am bridlid unto sobirnesse  
 For her that is of women chief princeesse.

But evir when thought my hert shuld embrace,  
 Then unto me it is best remedie

When I loke on your godely freshe face,  
 So merie a mirrour coud I ner espie,  
 And if I coud I would it magnifie,  
 For nevir none ywas so faire yfounde,  
 To reken hem all, and also Rosamounde.

And finally, with mouthe and will present,  
 Of double eye withoutin repentance,  
 Mine hert I yeve you, ladie', in this entent,  
 That ye shall thereof have the govirnaunce,  
 Taking my leve with hert is obeisaunce,  
 (*Salve Regina*) syngyng last of all  
 To be our helpe when that we to the call.

All our love is nought els but idlenesse;  
 Save your love alone, who might thereto attain;  
 Who so woll have a name of gentillesse  
 I counsaile hym in love that he not fain;  
 Thou swete ladie! refuse in every pain,  
 Whose mercie moste unto me availith,  
 To gie by grace when that Fortune failith.

Nought maie be told, withoutin any fable,  
 Your high renome, you womanly beaute,  
 Your govirnaunce, to all worship able,  
 Putteth every herte in ese in his degre;  
 O violet! o slowir desire!  
 Sithin I am for you so amorous  
*Espreignes moy de cœur joyeux.*

With fervent hert my brest hath brost on fire,  
*L'ardant espoer en mon cœur point est mort,*  
*D'avoir l'amour de celle que je desire,*  
 I menè you swete moste plesaunt of poste,  
*Et je scay bien que ce n'est pas mon tort,*  
 That for you syng so as I maie for more,  
 For your departyng alone I live alone.

Though that I might I would nothe other chese,  
 In your service I would ben foundin fadde,  
 Therefore I love no labour that ye lese,  
 When that in longyng forist ye be staddde;  
 Loke up you lovis and be right gladde,  
 Now ayeenist Sainct Valentin's daie,  
 For I have chese that ner forsake I maie:

*Balade de bon conseil.*

It befell that God the list visite  
 With any tourment or adversite  
 Thanke firste the Lorde, and tho thy selfe to quite  
 Upon sufferaunce and humilite  
 Founde thou thy quaril, what er that it be,  
 Make thy defence, and thou shalt have no losse,  
 The remembraunce of Christ and of his crosse.

SOMTYME the world so stedfast was and stable,  
 That mannes's worde was an obligacioun,  
 And now it is so false and discevable,  
 That worde and dede, as in conclusioun,  
 Is nothyng like, for tourned is up so down  
 All the worlde, thorough mede and skilnesse,  
 That all is losse for lacke of stedfastnesse.

What maketh the worlde to be so variable  
 But lust that men have in discension?  
 For among us a man is holde unable  
 But if he can by some collusion

Doe his neighbour wrong an oppression :  
What causith this but wilful wretchidnesse ?  
That all is losse for lacke of stedfastnesse.

Trouthe is put doune, reson is holde fable,  
Vertue hath now no dominacion,  
Pitie 'is exiled, no man is merciable,  
Through covetise is blente discrecion ;  
The worlde hath made a permutacion  
Fro right to wrong, fro trouthe to fikelnesse,  
That all is losse for lack of stedfastnesse.

*L'envoye.*

Prince, aye desire to be honourable,  
Cherishe thy folke, and hate extorcion ;  
Suffre nothyng that maie be reprovabie  
To thine estate doen in thy region ;  
Shewe forthe the yerde of castigacion ;  
Drede God, do law, love treuth and worthinesse,  
And wedde thy folke ayen to stedfastnesse.

*Balade of the village without paintyng.*

*Plaintife to Fortune.*

This wretched world 'is transmutacion,  
As wele and wo, nowe pore and now honour,  
Without ordir or due discrecion,  
Govirnid is by fortun 'is errour,  
But nathelless the lacke of her favour  
Ne maie not doe me syng though that I die,  
*J'ay tout perdu mon temps et mon labour,*  
For finally fortune I doe desie.

Yet is me left the sight of my resoun  
To knowin frende fro foe in thy mirrour,  
So moche hath yet thy tounring up and doun  
Itaughtin me to knowin in an hour,  
But truly no force of thy reddour  
To hym that ovir hymself hath maistrise ;  
My suffisaunce yshal be my succour,  
For finally fortune I do desie.

O Socrates ! thou stedfast champion,  
She ne might never be thy turmentour,  
Thou never dreddist her oppression,  
Ne in her chere foundin thou no favour ;  
Thou knewe wele the disceipt of her colour,  
And that her moste worship is for to lie ;  
I knowe her eke a false dissimulour,  
For finally fortune I do desie.

*The answere of Fortune.*

No man is wretchid but hymself it wene ;  
He that yhath hymself hath suffisaunce,  
Why saiest thou then I am to the so kene  
That hast thy self out of my govirnaunce ?  
Saie thus, graunt mercie of thin habundaunce,  
That thou hast lent or this, thou shalt not strive ;  
What wost thou yet how I the well avaunce ?  
And eke thou hast thy bestè frende alive.

I have the taught division betwene  
Frende of effecte and frende of countinaunce,  
The nedith not the gallè of an hine,  
That curith eyin derke for ther penaunce,  
Now seest thou clere that wer in ignorance ;  
Yet holt thine anker, and thou maiest arive  
There Bountie bereth the key of my substaunce,  
And eke thou haste thy bestè frende alive.

How many have I refused to sustene  
Sith I have the sostrid in thy plesaunce !  
Wolt thou then make a statute on thy quene,  
That I shall be aie at thine ordinaunce ?  
Thou born art in my reign of variaunce ;  
About the whele with othir must thou drive ;  
My lore is bet, then wicke is thy grevaunce,  
And eke thou hast thy bestè frende alive.

*The answere to Fortune.*

Thy lore I dampne, it is adversitie ;  
My frend maist thou not revin, blind goddesse :  
That I thy frendis knowe I thanke it the ;  
Take 'hem again, let 'hem go lie a presse ;  
The nigardis in kepyng ther richesse  
Pronostlike is thou wolt ther toure assaile ;  
Wicke appetite cometh aie before sickenesse ;  
In generall this rule ne maie not faile.

*Fortune.*

Thou pinchest at my mutabilitie,  
For I the lent a droppe of my richesse,  
And now me likith to withdrawin me  
Why shouldist thou my roialte oppresse ?  
The se maie ebbe and flowin more and lesse,  
The welkin hath might to shine, rain, and haile,  
Right so must I kithin my brotilnesse ;  
In generall this rule ne maie not faile.

*The Plaintiffe.*

Lo ! the execucion of thy majestie  
That all purveighith of his rightwisenesse,  
That samè thyng Fortune yclepin ye,  
Ye blindè bestis, full of leudeness !  
The hevin hath propriete of sikirness,  
This worldè hath evir restlesse travaile,  
The last daie is the ende of myne entresse ;  
In generall this rule ne maie not faile.

*Th' envoye of Fortune.*

Princes, I praie you of your gentilnesse,  
Let not this man and me thus crie and plain,  
And I shall quitin you this businesse ;  
And if ye liste releve hym of his pain  
Praie ye his best frende of his noblenesse  
That to some bettir state he maie attain.

*L'envoye.*

To brokin ben the statutes hie in heven  
That create were eternally t' endure,  
Sith that I se the brighte goddis seven  
Mowe wepe and waile and passion endure,  
As maie in yerth a mortall creature ;  
Alas ! fro whenis maie this thing procede,  
Of which errour I die almoste for drede ?

By words eterne whilom was it yshape  
That fro the fifth circle in no manere  
Ne might of teris nothing doune escape,  
But now so wepith Venus in her sphere  
That with her teris she woll drench us here :  
Alas, Scogan ! this is for thine offence ;  
Thou causist this deluge of pestilence.

Hast thou not saied in blasphemie of the goddis,  
Through pride or thorough thy gret rekilnes,  
Soche thinges as in the law of love forbode is,  
That for thy lide sawe not thy distresse  
Therefore thou yave her up at Mighelnesse ?

Alas, Scogan! of oldè folke ne yong  
 Was nevir erst Scogan blamed for his tong.  
 Thou drewe in scorne Cupide eke to recorde  
 Of thikke rebell worde that thou hast spoken,  
 For whiche he woll no lengir be thy lorde;  
 And, Scogan, though his bowe be not ybroken  
 He woll not with his arowes be iwroken  
 On thee ne me, ne none of our figure;  
 We shall of hym have neither hurte ne cure.  
 Now certis, frende, I drede of thine unhappe,  
 Lest for thy gilte the wreche of love procede  
 On all 'hem that ben here and round of shap,  
 That be so likely folkè for to spede,  
 Then we shall of our labour have our mede;  
 But well I wot thou wolt answere and saie,  
 Lo! oldè Grisill list to renne and plaie.

Naie. Scogan, saie not so, for I me' excuse,  
 God helpe me so, in no rime doutles,  
 Ne thinke I nevir of slepe wake my muse,  
 That rustith in my sheth still and in pese;  
 While I was yong I put her forthe in prese,  
 But I than passin that men prose or rime,  
 That every man his tourne as for his tyme.

Scogan, thou knelist at the strem'is hedde  
 Of grace, of honour, and of worthinesse,  
 In the ende of whiche I am dull as dedde,  
 Forgotten in solitarie wildirnesse;  
 Yet, Scogan, thinke on Tullius kindenesse,  
 Mynd thy frendè there it maie fructifie;  
 Farwell, and loke thou ner est love desie.

Go forthe, kyng, and rule the by sapience;  
 Bishophe, be able to minister doctrine;  
 Lorde, to true counsaile yeve thou audience;  
 Womanhode, to chastitie er encline;  
 Knight, let thy dedis worship determine;  
 Be righteous, judge, in savyng of thy name;  
 Rich, do almose, lest thou lese blisse with shame;

Peple, obei your kyng and eke the lawe;  
 Age, be rulid by gode religion;  
 True servaunt, be dredfull, kepe the' under awe;  
 And thou, povir, fie on presumcion;  
 Inobedience to youth is uttir destruccion;  
 Remembir you how God hath set you, lo!  
 And doe your parte as ye be ordained to.

*Chaucer to his emptie purse.*

To you my purse, and to none othir wight,  
 Complain I, for ye be my ladie dere;  
 I am forie now that ye be so light,  
 For certis ye now make me hevie chere;  
 Me were as lese be laide upon a bere,  
 For whiche unto your mercy thus I crie,  
 Be hevy againe, or els mote I die.

Now vouchsafin this day or it be night  
 That I of you the blisful sowne may here,  
 Or se your colour lyke the sonnè bright,  
 That of yelownesse ne had nevir pere;  
 Ye be my life, ye be my hert'is stere;  
 Quene of comfort and of gode companye,  
 Be hevy againe, or els mote I die.

Nowe purse, that art to me my liv'is light,  
 And sayvour, as downe in this worlde here,  
 Oute of this townè helpe me by your might,  
 Sithin that you wol not be my tresoure,  
 For I am shave as nighe as any frere,  
 But I prayin unto your curtisye  
 Be hevy againe, or els mote I die.

*Chaucer unto the Kinge.*

O Conquerour of Brut'is Albion!  
 Whiche that by lyne and fre eleccion  
 Ben very kinge, this unto you I sende,  
 And ye whiche that may al harmis amende  
 Have minde upon my supplication.

*A balade made by Chaucer, teching what is gentilnes, or  
 what is worthy to be caled gentil.*

THE firste stocke, father of gentilnes,  
 What man desirith gentill for to be,  
 Must solowe' his trace, and all his wittis dres  
 Vertue to love and vicis for to fle,  
 For unto vertue longith dignite,  
 And not the revers, safly dare I deme,  
 Al were he mitir, crowne, or diademe.

This firste stocke was full of rightwisnes,  
 Trewe of his worde, sobir, pitous, and fre,  
 Clene of his goste, and lovid besinesse,  
 Against the vice of flouth in honeste,  
 And but his eyre love vertue as did he  
 He is not gentyl though he riche seme,  
 Al were he mitir, crowne, or diademe.

Vicè may wel be eyre to olde Richesse,  
 But ther may no man, as men may well se,  
 Byquethe his eire his vertuous noblesse,  
 That is appropriated unto no degre  
 But to the first fathir in majeste,  
 That makith his eyre him that can him queme,  
 Al were he mitir, crowne, or diademe.

*A proverbe agaynst covetise and negligence.*

WHAT shal thes clothes thus manifolde  
 Lo, this hote somers daye!  
 Aftir grete herè comith colde;  
 No man caste his pilche awaye.

Of al this world the large compasse  
 Wil not in myne armes tweine,  
 Who so m-kil wol embrace  
 Lite therof shall distreine.

*A balade whiche Chaucer made agaynst women  
 unconstaunt.*

MADAME, ye have for your newfanglenesse  
 Many a servaunt put out of your grace;  
 I take my leve of your unstedfastnesse,  
 For well I wote while ye to live have space  
 Ye can not love full halfe yere in a place;



To newe thinges your luste is evere kene;  
In stede of blew thus may ye were al grene.

Ryght as a mirour that nothing may enpresse  
But lightli as it cometh so mote it passe,  
So fareth your love, your workis bereth witnes;  
Ther is no faithè may youre herte embrace,  
But as a wedircock, that turneth his face  
With every winde, ye fare, and that is sene;  
In sted of blew thus may ye were al grene.

Ye might be shrined for your brotilnesse  
Better than Dalila, Cresseide, or Candace,  
For evir in chaunging stondeth your sikirnesse,  
That tache may no wight from your heart arace;  
If ye lose one ye can wel tweine purchase,  
Al light for somar, ye' wot wel what I mene;  
In stede of blewe thus may ye were al grene.

*Here foloweth a balade whiche Chaunter made in the praise  
or rather dispreise of women for ther doublenes.*

THIS world is full of variaunce  
In evere thinge, who takith hede,  
That faithè and truste, and all consaunce,  
Exilid ben, this is no drede,  
And save only in womanhed  
I can yse no sikirnes;  
But for all that yet, as I rede,  
Beware alwaye of doublenes.

Al so that the freshe somir floures,  
The white and rede, the blewe and grene,  
Ben suddenly with wintir flours  
Made seinte and fade, withoutin wene,  
That trust is none, as ye may sene,  
In no thing, nor no stedfastnes,  
Except in women, thus I mene;  
Yet aye beware of doublenes.

The crokid mone, this is no tale,  
Some while is hene and bright of hewe,  
And aftir that ful derke and pale,  
And every monith chaungith newe,  
That who the veray sothè knew  
Al thinge is bilt on brotlenes,  
Save that women alwaye be trewe;  
Yet aye beware of doublenes.

The lusty freshe sommirs daye,  
And Phœbus with his bemis clere,  
Towardis night they drawe awaye,  
And non lengir list to appere,  
Thar in this presente life now here  
Nothinge abieth in his sairenes,  
Save women aye be found intere,  
And devoid of alle doublenes.

The se eke with his sternè waves  
Eche daye yflowith new againe,  
And by the concours of his lawes  
The ebbe yflowith in certeine;  
Aftir grete drought there cometh a raine;  
That farewell here al stablnes,  
Save that women be whole and pleine;  
Yet aye beware of doublenes.

Fortune's whele goith round aboute  
A thousand timis daye and nighte,  
Whose cours standith evir in doute

For to transmew, she is so lighte,  
For whiche advertith in your sight  
Th' untrust of worldely sikilnes,  
Save women, whiche of kindly right  
Ne hath no teche of doublenes.

What man ymay the wind restraine,  
Or holdin a snake by the taile?  
Who may a slipper ele constreine  
That it will voide withoutin faile?  
Or who can drivin so a naile  
To make suere newfongilnes,  
Save women, that can gie ther faile  
To row ther bote with doublenes?

At every haven they can arive  
Wher as they wote is gode passage;  
Of innocence they can not strive  
With wawis, nor no rockis rage;  
So happy is ther lodemanage  
With nedle and stene ther cours to dresse  
That Salomon was not so sage  
To find in them no doublenes:

Therefore who so doth them accuse  
Of any double entencion,  
To speke rowne, othir to muse,  
To pinch at ther condicion,  
All is but false collusion,  
I dare right wel the sothe expresse,  
They have no bettir protection,  
But shroud them undir doublenes.

So wel fortunid is ther chaunce,  
The dice to turnin uppe so doune,  
With sife and sincke they can avaunce,  
And than by revolucioun  
They set a fel conclusioun  
Of lombis, as in sothesastnes,  
Though clerkis makin mencionioun  
I her kinde is fret with doublenes.

Sampson yhad experience  
That women were ful trewe ifound  
Whan Dalila of innocence  
With shenis gan his here to round;  
To speke also of Rosamonde,  
And Cleopatri's feithfulnes,  
The stories plainly wil confounde  
Men that apeche ther doublenes.

Single thinge ne is not ypraised,  
Nor of olde is of no renoun,  
In balaunce whan they be ypeised,  
For lacke of waighte they be bore doune,  
And for this cause of juste resoun  
These women al of rightwisenes  
Of choice and fre electioun  
Most love eschaunge and doublenes.

*L'envoye.*

O ye women! whiche ben enclined  
By influence of your nature  
To ben as pure as golde yfined,  
And in your trouth for to endure,  
Armith your selfe in strong armure,  
Lett men assaile your sikirnes,  
Set on your brest, your self to assure,  
A mightie shelde of doublenes.

*This worke folowinge was compiled by Chaucer, and is  
called the Craft of Lovers.*

MORAL is a symylytude, who list ther balades fewe,  
The Craft of Lovers curious arguments,  
For som bin false and som ben foundin trewe,  
And som bin double of entendements;  
Thus lovirs with ther moral documents  
And eloquent langage can exemplifye  
The Craft of Love what it doth signifie.

Who list unto this balades have inspeccion  
Thinke that Lov'is lordshipis excellent  
Is remedy for disese and correccion  
To woful herte and body impotente,  
Suppose the maker that he be negligent  
In his compilinge, holde him excusable,  
Because his spi'rites be fory' and lamentable.

Soverain lady, surmounting your nobles,  
O' intenuate jenipre' and daisi delicious!  
My trust, mine helth, my cordial foundresse,  
Medicine sanative to sores lango'rous,  
Comfortable creture of lovirs amo'rous!  
O' excellent herbir of lovelie countinaunce!  
Registir my love in your remembrance.

Certis, Sir, your ypeinted eloquence,  
So gaye, so freshe, and eke so talcatise,  
It doth transcende the wit of Dame Prudence  
For to declare your thought or to discrive,  
So gloriously glad langage ye contrive  
Of your conscite, your thought, and your entente,  
I wil be ware, for drede or I be shent.

O rubicunde rose, and white as the lyly,  
Clarified cristal of worldly portraiture!  
O coursin figure, resplendent with glory,  
Geme of beaute'! o carbounce shining pure!  
Your fairnes exceedeth the craft of Nature,  
Most womanli your loveli countinaunce,  
Registir my love in your remembrance.

What availeth, Sir, your proclamacion  
Of curious talking, not touching sadnes?  
It is but winde, flatering and adulation,  
Imefurable thought of worldly wildnes,  
Whiche is chief cause of gostly feblenes;  
Your wil, your thought, your double entendement,  
I wil beware of drede or I be shent.

My witte, my thought, and myne entencion,  
Is for to plesse you, my lady soveraine,  
And for your love throw many a region  
I wold be' exiled, so ye wold not disdein  
To have pity on me when I compleine,  
In wele and wo to suffre perturbatione,  
So that ye wol have me in remembrance.

What is your wil plainly ye doe expresse  
That maketh this curious supplicacion;  
Seyon, Sir, on hertely tendirnesse,  
Beth well advised of veine delectacion,  
At beginning think on the termination;  
Passe not your boundes, be not to negligent,  
And er beware for dred or ye be shente.

Your behaving, beaute, and countinaunce,  
Maketh me encline to do you reverence,  
Your lovely loking, glorious govirnaunce,  
Overcometh my spirites, my wit, and prudence,

Some drop of grace of your magnificence  
Unto your servaunt ye shewe attendaunce.  
And register my love in your remembrance.  
O comberous thought of manne's fragilite!

O servente wil of lustis furious!  
O cruel corage causinge adversite!  
Of women corrupcion, and contrariouse,  
Remembir man that chaunge is perilous,  
To breke the' virginite of virgines innocente,  
Wherfore beware mankinde or thou be shent.

My peine is prevy' impossible to' deferne,  
My lamentabel thoughtes by casting mourninge,  
O general juge Jesu! sitting superne,  
Graciously converte the love of my swete thing;  
O' amiable lady, gracious and benigne!

I put me wholly in your govirnaunce,  
Exile me not out of your remembrance,  
Me semeth by langage ye be some potestate,  
Or els som curious glosir discevable;

What is your name mekely I make regrate,  
Or of what science or craft commendable?  
I'm a lady' excellent and honorable,  
He must be gay that should be to' mis-entente,  
Wherfore I wil be ware or I be shent.

Lorde God! this is a sharpe examinacion  
Of her that is most in my memorie,  
Unto you lady' I make certification,  
My name' is 'frew Love, of carnal desidery,  
Of manne's copulation the verye exemplary,  
Which am one of your servauntes of plessaunce,  
I must be chese callid to remembrance.

I have sought true love of yeres gret proces,  
Yet fond I nevir love but for a seson;  
Some men be diverse, know no gentilnesse,  
And some lackin both wisdom and reson;  
In som men is trust, in som men is treson,  
Wherfore I wil conclude by avysemente,  
And er beware for drede that I be shente.

The retour Tullius, gay of eloquence,  
And Ovide, that sheweth Craft of Love expresse,  
With habundaunce of Salomon's prudence,  
And pulcritude of Absalon's fairenesse,  
And I wer possels'd with Job's grete richeffe,  
Manly' as Sampson my persone to avaanee,  
Yet shuld I submit me' in your remembrance.

Now Sir, yf that it plesse your nobilnesse  
To gyve advertence to my question,  
What thinge is the plesure of swetnesse,  
And most bittir in final succession?  
Or what thing gevith man occasion  
In tender age to be concupiscent?  
Resolve this question or drede, Sir, ye' be shent.

My soveraigne lady', Ovide in his writinge  
Saith desire of worldly concupiscence  
As for a time is swete in his worchinge,  
And in his ende he causith grete offence;  
Notwithstandinge, my lady Dame Prudence,  
Grene flowring age and manly countinaunce  
Causith ladies to have' it in remembrance,

Your godely answir, so notable' in substantiaunce,  
Wold cause the hert of womanhede converte  
Unto delyte of natural plessaunce;  
But of one thing I wolde faine be experte,  
Why menne's langage wol procure and tr-

verte

The wil of women and virgines innocente,  
Wherfore I am aferd or I be shente.

Let nevir the love of true love be losed,  
My soveraine lady, in no manir wise;  
In your confidence my wordes I have closed,  
My amyable love to you I doe promise;  
So that ye knit the knot of exercyse  
Both locke and key ye have in govirnaunce,  
Emprint my love in your remembraunce.

Of very trust and I were certified,  
The plain entencion of your herte's cordial,  
Me semeth in blisse than were I glorified,  
Unto your plesure I would be at your call  
But er I sere of chauncis casual,  
Of fraude, disceipte, and langage insolent,  
Then were I sure maidinshed should be shent.

Ther was ner tresour of terrestial richesse,  
Nor precious stones rekened innumerabell,  
To be of comparison to your high godenes,  
Above al cretures to me most amiable;  
'Trust not the contrary', I was ner disceivabell;  
Kepe wel true love, forge no dissemblaunce,  
And graciously take me to your remembraunce.

Me semeth by seiture of manly properte  
Ye shuld be trusty and trewe of comprimis,  
I finde in you no false duplicite,  
Wherfore, True Love, ye have my hert I wis  
And ermore shal endure, so have I blis,  
The fede'rasy made with gode avisement,  
God graunt grace that nothir of us be shent!

Whan Phoebus freshe wes in his chare splen-  
dente,  
In the moneth of Maye, erly in a morninge,  
I herd two lovirs profir this argu'mente,  
In the yere of our Lorde a M. by rekening,  
CCCXL. and VII. yere folowing,  
O potent princeesse! conserve true lovirs al,  
Graunt them thy region and blisse celestial.

#### *A balade.*

Of ther nature they gretly them delite,  
With holy face yfeinid for the nones,  
In saintwarie ther frendis to visite,  
More for reliquis than for saintis bones,  
Though they be closid undir precious stons,  
To gete them pardon, lyke ther olde usages,  
Toke ille no shrines but lusty quike images.

Whan maidens ar wedded and houthold have  
take

All ther humility' is exiled awaye,  
And the' cruil hertes beginnith to awake,  
They do' al the besy cure they can or maye  
To vex ther houtholdes-maistirs, soth to saye,  
Wherfore, ye yong men, I rede you forthy  
Beware alwaye, *The blinde eteb many a flye.*

Of this matir I dare make no relation,  
In defaute of slepe my spirites wex seinte,  
In my studie I have had long habitacion,  
My body' and goft are grevously attaint,  
And therfore I make no lengir complaint;  
But whethir that the blind etc flesh or fish  
I pray God kepe the fly out of my dish!

Now' I make an ende, and laic me doun to  
rest,

For I knowe by experience veramente  
If maidinis and wivis knewe and wist /  
Who made the mattir he should sone be shent,  
Wherfore I praie that God omnipotente  
Hym save and kepin bothè night and daie.  
Writtin in the lustie seson of Maie.

#### *The X. Commaundements of Love.*

CERTIS ferre extendith yet my reson  
This matir as it should be to diserve,  
But I truste your grace will in this seson  
Confidir howe with conyng that I strive,  
For in his favour coud I ner arrive,  
Eloquence this balade hath in grete dispite,  
The makir lackith manir to endite.

Of Love's commaundementes x. is the number,  
As aftirward shal rudely be reherfed,  
And lovirs, in no wise departe asunder  
Where as thei be observid and redressed,  
Daungir and unkindnes yben oppressed,  
And he that is commaundid this to make  
Is your owne, all othir for to forsake.

#### *Faith.*

Faith is the first and principally to tell,  
And verie love requirith soche credence,  
That eche beleve othir true as the gospel,  
Without adulation or flatteryng audience,  
In true menyng and trustie confidence;  
Paint not your connyng with colour ne fable,  
For then your love must nedis be unstable.

#### *Entencion.*

In the seconde to trete of entencion,  
Your lovir to plesse doe your busie cure,  
For as myn auctor Romance maketh mencion,  
Without entent your love mai not endure,  
As women will thereof, I am right sure,  
Endevour with ther herte, will, and thought,  
To plesse hym onely that ther love hath sought.

#### *Discrecion.*

In your delyng evir ybe discrete,  
Set not your love there as it shall be losed,  
Advertise in your minde whether he be mete,  
That unto hym your herte maie be disclosed,  
And aftir as you finde hym then disposed  
Poinct by discrecion your hour, time, and place,  
Conveniently metyng with armes to embrace.

#### *Pacience.*

Of these commaundementes the iiii. is pacience  
Though by' irous corage your lovir be meved,  
With soft wordis and humble obedience  
His wrathe maie sone be swagid and releved,  
And thus his love obtainid and acheved  
Will in you rote with gretir diligence,  
Bicause of your meke womanly pacience.

#### *Secretnesse.*

Secretlie behave you in your werkis,  
In shewing countenance or mevyng your eye,  
Though soche behavior to some folk be derke,



He that hath lovid will it fone aspie,  
Thus you your self your counsaill maie descrie;  
Make privy to your delyng few' as ye maie,  
For *iii.* may kepe a counsel if twain be awaie.

*Prudence.*

Let prudence governe aye your bridil reine;  
Set not your love in so fervent a wise  
But that in godely hast ye may refreine,  
If that your lovirs list you to dispise:  
Romance min auctour wold you this advise,  
To slacke your love, for if ye doe not so  
That wanton list will tourne you into wo.

*Perseverance.*

Stablishe your love in so stedfast a wise,  
If that ye thinke your lovir will be true,  
As entirely as ere you can devise,  
Love hym onely and refuse alle newe,  
Then shall not your worship ychaunge his hew,  
For certis, maistris, then is he to blame  
But if ~~that~~ he will quite you with the same.

*Pitie.*

Be pitous to hym, as womanhod requireth,  
That for your love endurith painis smerte,  
Whom so forely your plesaunt loke ensfireth,  
That printid is your beautie in his herte,  
And woundid lyith without knife or darte;  
There let your pitie spred without restrainte,  
For lacke of it let not your servaunt feint.

*Mesure.*

Take mesure in your talkyng, be n'ot outrage  
For this reherfith Romance de la Rose,  
A man endued with plenteous langage  
Oft tymis is denyid his purpose;  
Take mesure in langage, wisdom ingrose,  
For mesure, as right well proved is by reson,  
Thyngis unreso'nable settith in feson.

*Mercie.*

Soche daungir exile hym all uttirly,  
Ovir all mercie to' occupie his place,  
To pitous complaintis your eres applie,  
And receive your true servaunte into grace;  
To him that boundin is in Lov's lace  
Shewe favour, ladie', and be not merciles,  
Lest ye be called a common murdires.

*L'envoye.*

When ye unto this balade have inspeccion  
In my makyng holde me excusable,  
It is submittid unto your correccion;  
Confidir that my connyng is disable  
To write to you the figure uniable,  
All devoide of connyng and experience,  
Maner of indityng, reson, and eloquence.

Trust it well the makir is all your owne,  
You to obeie while his life maie endure,  
To doe you service as a man unknowne,  
No guerdone desiryng of yerthly trefure,  
But if it might accorde with your plesure  
For his true service hym for to avaunce,  
And call hym into your remembraunce.

*The IX. Ladies Worthie**Queene Sinope.*

PROFULGENT in preciousness, O Sinope the Queene!  
Of all feminine berynge the sceptir and regalie,  
Subduyng the large cuntrye of Armenie', as it  
was sene,  
For mangre ther mightis thou ybrought them for  
to applie,  
Thin honour to encrefin and thy power to mag-  
nifie;  
O most renowned Hercules! with al thy pom-  
pous bolle  
This princes toke the prisonir and put to fighte  
thine host.

*Ladie Hippolyte.*

Yet Hercules waxed red for shame when I  
spake of Hippolyt,  
Chief patrones and captain of the peple of Sinope,  
Which with her amorous chere and with coragi-  
ous might  
She smote the unto the ground for all thy crueltie,  
Wherfore the dukeship of Diamedes and dignitie  
Unto her gretè laudè and glorie perpetuall  
Attributid by al with triumphè laureall.

*Lady Deiphile.*

The most noble triumphè of this ladie Deiphile,  
In releve and succor of the gret Duke of Athenis,  
She chastisid and brought into perpetual exile  
The aureat citizeinis of the mightie Thebis,  
The strongè brasin pilliris there haddin no reles,  
But she with her sistir Agrisè them did dounè cast,  
And with furious fire cite ybrent at last.

*Lady Teuca.*

O pulchrior sole in beautie and full ylucident,  
Of all feminine creturis the mostè formous flour!  
In Italy reigning with great chevairy right fervent,  
Chastisid the Romainis as maistris and conquè-  
rour,  
O lady Teuca! mochil was thy glorie and honour,  
Yet mochil more was to commende thy grete  
benignite  
In thy persite living and virginall chastitie.

*Queene Penthesilea.*

O ye Trojains! for this noble Queene Penthesilea  
Sorowe her mortalitie with dolorous compassion,  
Her lovè was towardsis you so pregnant and fer-  
tile,  
Which that against the proude Grekis made de-  
fension,  
With her victorious hand was al her affection  
To lashe the Grekis to ground, and with ther  
hert 'is joie [Troie.  
To revengin the coward deth of noble' Hector of

*Queen Thamyras.*

O thou most rigorous Queene Thamyras invin-  
cible!  
Upon the strong and hideous peple of citees rein-  
Whiche by thy grete powir and by wittis sensible  
[ing.  
O o iij

Ytokist in battaile captive Cyrus, the grete King  
Of Persia and of Media, his hed in blode lying;  
Thou baddist him to drinke of the blode he had  
thurstid,  
And xxii. M. of his hoste there were distressed.

*Ladie Lampedo.*

The famous loude trumpet made of gold yfor-  
gid so bright  
Hath blowin so up the fame and glory environ  
Of this lady Lampedo, with her sistr Masist,  
That al the land of Feminie, Europe, and Epheson,  
Be yeldin and applied lowly to her subjection;  
Many an high toure she raisid, and ybilt touris  
long,  
Perpetuelly to lastin, with hugè wallis strong.

*Queene Semiramis.*

Lo here Semiramis, the Queene of grete Babilon,  
The moste generous gem and the floure of lovely  
favor,  
Whose excellent powir from Mede unto Septen-  
Flourished in her regally as a mightie conqueror,  
Subdued al Barbary, and Zorast the King of honor,  
She slue Ethiop, and conquirid Armenie and Inde,  
In which non entrid but Alexander and she as I  
finde.

*Ladie Menalippe.*

Also the lady Menalippe, thy sistr so dere,  
Whose martial powir there was no man that could  
withstand,  
For thorough the wide worldè there was not  
yfound her pere,  
The famous Duke of Athenis, Theseus, she had  
in hande,  
And she sorely chastid him and conquirid his  
lande;  
The proude Grekis mightilie also she did assaile,  
And overcame and vanquishid them bravely in  
bataile.

Alone walkyng,  
In thought plainyng,  
And fore sighyng, } All desolate,

Me remembryng  
Of my livyng,  
My death wishyng } Both erly and late,

Infortunate  
Is so my fate,  
That wote ye what? } Out of mesure

My life I hate.  
Thus desperate  
In soche pore estate } Doe I endure.

Of othir cure  
Am I not sure.  
Thus to to endure } Is hard certain.

Suche is my ure  
I you endure:  
What creature } Maie have more pain?

My truthe so plain  
Is take in vain,  
And grete disdain } In remembrance;

Yet I full faine  
Would me complaine  
Me to abstaine } From this penaunce;

But in substaunce  
None allegaunce  
Of my grevaunce } Can I not finde:

Right so my chaunce  
With displeaunce  
Doeth me avaunce; } And thus an ende.

*A ballade.*

In Feverere, when that it was full colde,  
Froste, snowe, haile, raine, hath dominacion,  
With chaungable elementes and windes mani-  
folde,

Whiche bath of ground, flour, herbe, jurrisdicciou  
For to dispose aftir their correccion,  
And yet Aprilis with his plefaunt shourés  
Dissolveth the snow and bringith forth his  
floures,

Of whose invencion lovirs maie be glade,  
For thei bring in the kalendis of Maie,  
And thei with countinuaunce demure, meke, and  
fad,

Owe to worship the lustie floures alwaie,  
And in speciall one called se of the dai,  
The dailie, a flowir white and rede,  
And in French callid *La bel Margarete*.

O commendable floure, and moste in minde!  
O floure and gracious of excellence!  
O amiable Marga'rite! of natife kind,  
To whom I must resort with diligence,  
With hert, wil, thought, most lowly obedience,  
I to be your servaunt, ye my regent,  
For life ne deth nevir for to repent.

Of this processe now forth will I procede,  
Whiche happith unto me with grete disdain,  
As for the time thereof I take lest hede,  
For unto me was brought the fore paine,  
Therefore my cause was the more to complaine,  
Yet unto me my grevaunce was the lesse  
That I was so nigh my ladye and maistresse.

There where she was present in this same  
place,

I having in herte grete adversite,  
Except onely the fortune and gode grace  
Of her whole I am, the whiche releved me,  
And my grete dures unlasid hath she,  
And brought me out of the fearful grevaunce,  
If 'it were her ese it were to me plefaunce.

As for the wo whiche that I did endure  
It was to me a verie plefaunt pain,  
Seyng it was for that faire creature  
Whiche is my ladye and my soverain,  
In whose presence I would be passyng fain,  
So that I wist it wete in her plesure,  
For she is from all distaunce my protectour,

CERTAIN BALADES, &c.

Though unto me dreadfull ywere the chaunce,  
No maner of gentilnes oweth me to blame,  
For I had levir suffre' of deth the penaunce  
Than he should for me' have dishonor or shame,  
Or in any wise losin her gode name;  
So wisely God for his endlesse mercie  
Graunt every lovir joy of his lady!

*A ballade.*

O Merciful and o merciable  
Kyng of kyngis, and fathir of pite,  
Whose might and mercie is incomperable!  
O prince eterne, o mightie Lorde! saie we,  
To whom mercie is given of propertie,  
On thy servaunt that lieth in prison bounde  
Have thou mercie or that his herte wounde.  
And that thou wilt graunt to him thy prisoner  
Fre libertie, and lose hym out of pain,  
All his desires, and all his hevie chere  
To graunte thei were restored again,  
Thy high vengeance why should thou not re-  
frain,  
And shewe mercie, sith he is penitent?  
Now helpe hym Lorde, and let him not be shente.  
But sith it is so there is a trespas done,  
Unto Mercie let yelde the treipassour,  
It is her office to redresse it sone,  
For trespasse to Mercie is a mirrour,  
And like as the swete hath the price by soure,  
So by Trespasse Mercie hath all her might,  
Without Trespasse Mercie hath lacke of light.  
What should phisike doe but if sikenes were?  
What nedish salve but if there were a sore?  
What nedith drink wher thirst hath no power?  
What should Mercie do but 'Trespas go' afore?  
But I respas Mercie woll be litil store,  
Without Trespas ner execution  
Maie Mercie have ne chief perfeccion.  
The cause at this time of my writyng,  
And touchyng Mercie, to whom I make mone,  
Is for fere lest my soveraigne and swetyng,  
I menin her that lovelyr is none,  
With me' is displefed for causis more than one;  
What causis thei be that knoweth God and she,  
But to do n'ot I; alas, it forthinketh me!  
What se she' in me, what defeaute or offence?  
What have I doe that she on me disdaine?  
How might I doe come into her presence,  
To tell my complaint, whereof I were faine?  
To drede to loke, to speke, or to complaine,  
To her that hath my herte every dele;  
So help me God I would al thing wer wele:  
For in this case came I never or now  
In Lov's daunce so ferre in the trace,  
For with myne ese escapin I ne mow  
Out of this daungir, except her gode grace,  
For though my countenance be mery' in her  
face,  
As semith to her by worde or by chere,  
Yet her gode grace settith myne herte nere.  
And if my soveraigne have any marvaile  
Why I to her now and afore ywrote,  
She maie well think it is no grete travaile

To him that is in love brought so hote;  
*It is a simple tre that fallth with one stroke;*  
That mene I, though that my soveraigne to fonn  
Me hath denied yet grace may come to morn.  
Maistris, for the gode will I have you ought,  
And evir shall as long as life durith,  
Pitie your servant, kepe him in your thought,  
Give' him som comfort or medi'cin, and curith  
His ague, that encrefish, that renuith:  
So grievous ben his paines and sighis sore  
That without mercy his dais be forlore.  
Go, litil bill, go forth, and hie the fast,  
Recommende me', and excuse me as you can,  
For very feble am I at the last,  
My pen is worn, my hew is pale and wan,  
My eyen ben sonke, disfigured like no man,  
Till Deth his dart that causith for to smert  
My corps have consumed, then farewell swet herte.  
Doughtre' of Phoebus in vertuous apparence,  
My love elect in my remembraunce,  
My carefull herte distrained cause of absence,  
Till ye my' empresse me relese my grevaunce  
Upon you 'is set my life, myne attendaunce,  
Is sette without recure I wis untill  
Ye grauntin my true herte to have his will.  
Thus, my dere swetyng! in a traunce I lye,  
And shal, til drops of pitie from you spring,  
I mene your mercie, that lieth my herte nye,  
That me maii rejoyce, and cause for to syng  
These termes of love; lo I have won the ring,  
My godely maistris; thus of his gode grace  
God graunt her blisse in heven to have a place!

*Here followeth how Mercurie, with Pallas, Venus,  
and Juno, appered to Paris of Troie, by stopping by  
a fountain\*.*

*Pallas loquitur ad Paris.*

SONNE of Priam, gentill Paris of Troie,  
Wake of thy slepe, beholde us goddesse thre,  
We havin brought to the encrese of joye,  
To thy discrecion reportyng our beautie;  
Take here this appill, and well advise the  
Whiche of us is the fairist in thy sight,  
And give thou it, we praie the, gentil knight.

*Juno loquitur primo.*

If so be thou give it to me, Parise,  
This shal I give unto thy worthines,  
Honour and conquest, nobley, lofe and prise,  
Victorie, courage, force, and hardines,  
Gode avinture, and famous manlines;  
For that appil all this give I to the,  
Considir this Parise, and give it me.

*Venus loquitur ad Paris.*

Naie, give it me, and this I shall you give,  
A glad aspect with favour and fairnes,

\* The title in Speght and Urrey runs, How Mercury, with Pallas, Venus, and Minerva, &c. but as Pallas and Minerva is one and the same goddess, and as Juno was the third goddess at this interview with Paris, her name in the title, and as one of the appellants to the Trojan prince, is substituted for that of Minerva.



And love of ladies also while ye live,  
Famous stature and princely semelines,  
Accordyng to your natife gentilnes;  
Undirstand this gift well, I you advise,  
And give it unto me hardly Parise.

*Pallas loquitur ad Parin.*

Ye, ye, Parise, takith hede unto me;  
Thou art a prince yborne by thy discente,  
And for to rule thy royall dignite  
I shall the givin first intendemente,  
Discrecion, prudence in right judgemente,  
Whiche in a prince is thing most covenable:  
Give it to me; I am to have it able.

*A balade pleisante.*

I HAVE a ladie, where so that she be,  
That seldome is she loveraine of my thought,  
On whose beautie when I beholde and se,  
Remembryng me how well she is ywrought,  
I thanke Fortune, that to her grace me brought,  
So faire is she, but nothyng angelike,  
Her beautie is unto none othir like.

For hardily and she were made of brasse,  
Her fate and all, she hath enough fairnesse;  
Her eyen ben holow' and grene as any grasse,  
And ravenish yelow is her sountresse,  
Thereto she hath of every comelinesse,  
Soche quantitie givin her by Nature  
That with the lest she is of her stature.

And as a bolt her browis ben ibent,  
And betill browed she is also with all,  
And of her witte as simple' and innocent  
As is a childe that can no gode at all;  
She is not thicke, her stature is but small;  
Her fingers ben litil and nothyng long;  
Her skin is smothe as any ox'is tong:

Thereto she is so wise in daliaunce,  
And beset her wordis so womanly,  
That her to here it doeth me displeaunce,  
For that she saieth is saied so connyngly  
That when there be no mo then she and I  
I had levir she were of talkyng still  
Then that she should so godelic speche spill.

And slothe none shall ye have in her entresse,  
So diligent is she and vertuleffe,  
And so busie aie all gode to undresse,  
That as she ape she is harmlesse,  
And as an harnet meke and pitielesse,  
With that she is so wise and circumspecte  
That prudence none her folie can infecte.

Is it not joye that soche one of her age,  
Within the boundes of so grete tendirnesse,  
Should in her werke be so sadde and so sage,  
That of the weddyng sawe all the noblesse  
Of Quene Jane, and ywas tho as I gesse  
But of the age of yeris ten and five?  
I trowe there are not many soche alive.

For, as Jesu my sinfull soule save,  
There n'is cature in all this worlde livyng  
Like unto her that I would gladly have,  
So plesith mine hert that godely swete thyng,  
Whose soule in haste unto his blis ybring

That first her formid to be a cature,  
For were she well of me I did no cure.

*An other balade.*

O Mossie quince! yhangyng by your stalke,  
The whiche no man dare plucke awaie nor take  
Of all the folke that passe forthe by or walke,  
Your flouris freshe be fallen awaie and shake;  
I am right sorie, maistresse; for your sake;  
Ye seme a thyng that all men have forgotten;  
Ye be so ripe ye waxin almoste roten.

Your ugle cherè deinous and downward,  
Your grene eyin, frownyng and nothyng glad,  
Your chekes, enbolned like a melowe costard,  
Colour of orange, your brestes fatournad,  
Gilt on wara'ntise, the colour wil not fade,  
Bawlin buttockid, belied like a tonne,  
Men crie S. Barba'ry at the losyng of your  
gonne.

Lovely lende maistris, take consideracion  
I 'am so sorrowfull there as ye be' absent,  
Floure of the barkfate foulest of al the nacion,  
'To love you but a little' is myne entent;  
The swert hath sent you, the smoke hath you  
shent,

I trow y' have ben laid on some kill to drie,  
You do soch worship there as ye be present,  
Of al women I love you best a M. timis fie.

*A balade warnyng men to beware of deceitfull  
women,*

Look well aboute ye that loviris be,  
Let not your lustis lede you to dotage,  
Be not enamoured on all thynges ye se;  
Sampson the forte and Salomon the sage  
Decevid were for all ther grete courage;  
Men demin it right that thei se with eye,  
Beware therefore, *The blind eteth many' a flie.*

I mene of women; for all ther cheres queint,  
Trust them not to moch, ther truthe is but  
treson

The fairist outward wel can thei ypaint,  
Ther stedfastnesse endurith but a seson,  
For thei saihe frendlines and worchin treson,  
And for thei are chaungable natu'rally,  
Beware therefore, *The blind eteth many' a flie*

What wight on lyve ytrustith on ther cheres  
Shall have at last his guerdon and his mede;  
Thei can shave nerir than rasours or there.

*All is not gold that shinith*, men take hede,  
Their galle is hid undir a sugrid wede;  
It is but queint ther fantasie to' aspie,  
Beware therefore, *The blind eteth many' a flie.*

Though all the worldè doe his busie cure  
To make women standin in stablenesse  
It would not be; it is against nature;  
The worldè is doe when thei lacke doublenes,  
For thei laugh and love not, this is expresse;  
To trust on them it is but fantasie,  
Beware therefore, *The blind eteth many' a flie.*

Women of kindè hath condicions thre;  
The first is that thei be full of disseite,  
To spinnin also is ther propertie,  
And women have a wondirfull conseite,  
For thei can wepe oft, and all is a fleite,  
And when thei list the tere is in the eye,  
Beware therefore, *The blind eteb many' a flie.*

In soth to saie, though all the yerth so wanne  
Wer parchement smoth, white and scribabbell,  
And the gret se, that called is the' Ocean,  
Were tournid into ynke blacker than sabell,  
Eche sticke a pen, eche man a scrivener abel,  
Not coud thei writin woman's trechirie,  
Beware therefore, *The blind eteb many' a flie.*

*A balade declaring that womens chastite doeth moche  
excel all trefure worldly.*

In womanhede, as auctours al ywrite,  
Nest thing commendid is chaste honeste,  
Thing most flaund'rous ther nobles to atwite,  
As when women of hasty fraelte  
Exceden the bondes of wisely chastite,  
For what availeth lynage or rial blode  
When of ther lvyng the report 'is not gode?

The holy bed defoiled of marriage  
*For ones defoiled may not recovered be.*  
The vice goth forth and the froward langage  
By many' a relme and many' a grete cite;  
Slaundir hath a custome, and that' is grete pite,  
That true or fals, by a contrarious sounne,  
Onis areise it goth not lyghtly downe:

For when a lechour by force or mastery  
Defoulid hath of virgins the clennes,  
Widous oppressed, and ly in advoutry,  
Affailid wives that stode in stablenes,  
Who may then ther flaund'rous harme redresse  
When ther gode name is hurt by soch report?  
*For fame lost ones can ner have his resort.*

A thefe may robbe a man of his richeffe,  
And by some mens make restitution,  
And some man maye dysherit and oppresse  
A povir man from his possession,  
And aftir make him satisfaccion,  
But *No man may restore in no degre*  
*A maid robbid of her virginite,*

A man may also bete a castil doune,  
And bilde it aftir more freshe to the fight,  
Exile a man out of his regiounne,  
And him revoke whether it be wrong or right,  
But *No man hath the powir ne the might*  
*For to restore the palace virginal*  
*Of Chastite when brokin is the wal.*

Men may also put out of ther service,  
And officirs remeve out of ther place,  
And at a day, when Fortune list devise,  
They may again restorid be to grace,  
But *Ther n'is tyme nothir set ne space,*  
*Nor ner in story neitbir rad ne sain,*  
*That maydenhode lost recovered was again:*

For whiche men shouldin have a conscience,  
Rewe in ther hertis and repentin sore,  
And havin a remorse of gret offence  
To ravishe thing which they may not restore,  
For it is faide, and hath be said ful yore,  
*The emeraud grene of parfite chastite*  
*Stole ones away may not recovered be.*

And hard it is to ravishe a trefour  
Whiche of nature is not recuperable;  
Lordship may not of kinge nor emperour  
Reforme a thinge whiche is nat reformable;  
Rust of defame is inseparable,  
And *Maidinhode lost of never or yore*  
*No man in live may it again restore.*

The Romanes olde thorough ther patience  
Suffrid tyrauntes in ther tyranyes  
On ther cites to do grete violence,  
The peple to oppresse with ther roberies,  
But them to punishe they set gret espies  
On false avouterers, as it is wel couth,  
Which widowes ravish and maidens in ther  
youth.

*Chaucer's wordes unto his own scrivener.*

ADAM SCRIVENERE, yf ever it the befalle  
Boece or Troiles for to write new  
Under thy longe lockes thou maist have the  
scalle,  
But after my makynge thou write more true,  
So ofte adaye I mote thy werke renew  
It to correcte and eke to rabbe and scrape,  
And al is thorow thy negligence and rape.





THE  
POETICAL WORKS  
OF  
HENRY HOWARD, EARL OF SURREY,

Containing his

SONGS,  
SONNETS,

|

ELEGIES,  
TRANSLATIONS,

&c. &c. &c.

To which is prefixed

*THE LIFE OF THE AUTHOR.*

---

---

Here noble SURREY felt the sacred rage,  
SURREY, the GRANVILLE of a former age,  
Matchless his pen, victorious was his lance,  
Bold in the lists, and graceful in the dance :  
In the same shades the Cupids tun'd his lyre  
To the same notes, of love, and soft desire ;  
Fair GERALDINE, bright object of his vow,  
Then fill'd the groves as heavenly MIRA now.

POPE'S WINDSOR FOREST.

---

---

EDINBURGH:  
PRINTED BY MUNDELL AND SON, ROYAL BANK CLOSE.

Anno 1793.



---

## THE LIFE OF SURREY.

---

After the death of Chaucer, no considerable improvements were made in English poetry, till about the beginning of the sixteenth century. At that period, our intercourse with Italy, not only introduced the study of classical literature into England, but gave a new turn to our vernacular poetry. The language and the manners of Italy, were esteemed and studied. The sonnets of Petrarch, were the great models of composition. They entered into the genius of the fashionable manners; and in the boisterous, but polished court of Henry the Eighth, Petrarch of course became the popular poet.

Henry Howard, Earl of Surrey, the unrivalled ornament of that court, and of his age, led the way to great improvements in English poetry, by a happy imitation of Petrarch, and other Italian poets, who had been most successful in painting the anxieties of love with pathos and propriety.

He was the son and grandson of two Lord Treasurers, Dukes of Norfolk; and in his early childhood, discovered the most promising marks of lively parts, and an active mind.

While a boy, he was habituated to the modes of a court at Windsor Castle, where he resided, yet under the care of proper instructors, in the quality of a companion to Henry Fitzroy, Duke of Richmond, a natural son of King Henry, and of the highest expectations.

A friendship of the closest kind commencing between them, about 1530, they were both removed to Cardinal Wolsey's College at Oxford; which was one of the first seminaries of an English university that professed to explode the pedantries of the old barbarous philosophy, and to cultivate the graces of polite literature.

Two years afterwards, he accompanied his noble friend into France, where they received King Henry on his arrival at Calais, to visit Francis the First, with a most magnificent retinue.

The friendship of these two young noblemen, was soon strengthened by a new tie; for Richmond married Lady Mary Howard, Surrey's sister.—Richmond, however, appears to have died in 1536, about the age of seventeen, having never cohabited with his wife.

It was long before he forgot the untimely loss of this amiable youth, the friend and associate of his childhood, and who nearly resembled himself in genius, refinement of manners, and liberal acquisitions.

It is not known at what period he began his travels. They have the air of a romance. He made the tour of Europe in the true spirit of chivalry; proclaiming the unparalleled charms of Geraldine his mistress, and prepared to defend the cause of her beauty with the weapons of knight errantry.

In his way to Italy, he passed a few days at the Emperor's court, where he became acquainted with Cornelius Agrippa. This celebrated adept in natural magic, shewed him, in a mirror of glass, a living image of Geraldine, reclining on a couch, sick, and reading one of his most tender sonnets by a waxen taper. His imagination was heated anew by this interesting and affecting spectacle. Inflamed with every enthusiasm of the most romantic passion, he hastened to Florence, the original seat of the ancestors of his Geraldine; and on his arrival, immediately published a defiance against any person who should presume to dispute the superiority of her beauty. The grand Duke of Tuscany permitted this important trial to be decided. The challenge was accepted, and Surrey victorious.



His heroic vanities did not, however, so totally engross the time which he spent in Italy, as to alienate his mind from literature : he studied, with the greatest success, a critical knowledge of the Italian language, and attained a just taste for the peculiar graces of the Italian poetry.

He was recalled to England, for some idle reason, by the King, and appeared at court the most polite lover, the most learned nobleman, and the most accomplished gentleman of his age.

He shone in the tournaments of the court; and his name is renowned in the military achievements of that martial age.

In 1542, he marched into Scotland as a chief commander in his father's army, and was conspicuous for his conduct and bravery at the memorable battle of Flodden-field, where James the Fourth of Scotland was killed.

The year following, he was imprisoned in Windsor Castle, for eating flesh in Lent; a circumstance worthy of notice, only as it marks his character, impatient of any controul, and regardless of petty formalities, and as it gave occasion to one of his most sentimental and pathetic sonnets.

In 1544, he was field-marshal of the English army in the expedition to Boulogne, which he took; but being defeated, endeavouring to cut off a convoy of the enemy, a disgrace he repaired, he lost the King's favour, and was superseded by the Earl of Hertford.

Conscious of his high birth and capacity, he could not refrain, upon this occasion, from dropping some reproachful expressions against a measure which seemed to impeach his personal courage.

It was his misfortune to serve a monarch, whose resentments, which were easily provoked, could only be satisfied by the most severe revenge.

The brilliancy of his character was viewed by Henry with disgust and suspicion. His popularity was misconstrued into a dangerous ambition, and gave birth to accusations equally groundless and frivolous.

He was suspected of a design to marry the princess Mary; and it was insinuated that he conversed with foreigners, and corresponded with Cardinal Pole.

The addition of the arms of Edward the Confessor to his own, though justified by the usage of his family, and the authority of the heralds, was made a foundation for an impeachment of high-treason.

He was arraigned at Guildhall; and notwithstanding his eloquent and manly defence, he was condemned by the prepared suffrage of a servile and obsequious jury, and beheaded on Tower-hill, January 19th 1546-7.

The Duke of Norfolk, charged with allegations equally groundless, escaped the same unhappy fate; by the death of the tyrant, which happened nine days after the unmerited death of his son.

Surrey was buried in the church of All Hallows-Barking, Tower-street, but afterwards removed to Framlingham, Suffolk, where an honourable monument was erected to his memory, by his second son, Henry Earl of Northampton.

He married Frances, daughter of John Earl of Oxford; by whom he left several children. One of his daughters, Jane, Countess of Westmoreland, was among the learned ladies of that age, and became famous for her knowledge of the Greek and Latin languages.

History is silent as to the name of the *fair Geraldine*, the general object of his passionate sonnets, and as to the reasons why the gallantries he performed for her, did not end in a marriage.

The notices concerning her in his sonnets are obscure and indirect; but they have been illustrated with the most happy sagacity by the present Earl of Orford, and applied to Lady Elizabeth Fitzgerald, whose poetical name is almost her real one. She was second daughter of Gerald Fitzgerald, Earl of Kildare, second cousin to the Princesses Mary and Elizabeth, bred up with them, as it is conjectured, at Hunston-House, and afterwards the third wife of Edward Clinton, Earl of Lincoln.

His *Songes and Sonnettes*, as they have been styled, were first collected and printed at London, by Tottell, in 1557, together with the "Songes and Sonnettes" of his amiable and accomplished friend Sir Thomas Wyatt, the elder, and of uncertain authors. Another edition appeared 1565. Others in 1574, 1585, 1587. The last edition was printed in 1717. They are now, for the first time, received into a collection of classical English poetry.

They were in high reputation with his contemporaries, and for many years afterwards, though they are scarcely known at present. They have been praised by Leland, Sydney, Tuberville, Puttenham, Churchyard, and Drayton, and in more recent times by Dryden, Waller, Fenton, and Pope. They merit attention equally as compositions of real and intrinsic merit, and as objects of curiosity.

They are chiefly amatory and sentimental; but in elegance of sentiment, and in nature and sensibility, they are equal to the best love verses in our language; and in harmony of numbers, perspicuity of expression, and facility of phraseology, they approach so near the productions of the present age, that they will hardly be believed to have been produced in the reign of Henry the Eighth.

But Surrey was not merely the poet of idleness and gallantry. He was fitted, both from nature and study, for the more solid and laborious parts of literature. He translated the 2d and 4th books of the *Æneid* into blank verse, which are the first compositions extant, in that measure, in the English language. They were printed in 1557, 12mo; but the book is so extremely scarce, that a copy could not be procured for this edition of his works. He wrote many other poems, which were never published, and are now perhaps entirely lost. He translated the Ecclesiastes of Solomon into English verse. He also translated a few of the Psalms into metre. These versions of Scripture shew that he was a friend to the Reformation. Among his works are also mentioned a poem on the death of his friend the Duke of Richmond, an exhortation to the city of London, a translation of Boccace's epistle to Pinus, and several Latin epistles.

All his biographers, particularly the Earl of Orford and Mr. Warton, have been lavish, and very justly, in his praise; he merits the highest encomiums, as the first refiner of our language, and the unrivalled ornament of his age and country, and challenges the gratitude and esteem of every man of literature, for the generous assistance he afforded it in its infancy, and his ready and liberal assistance to all men of merit in his time.

His poetical character is so elegantly drawn by the happy pencil of Mr. Warton, as to render the bungling after-strokes of a casual hand unnecessary.

"In the sonnets of Surrey," says that judicious and classical critic, whose death is an irreparable loss to English literature, "we are surprised to find nothing of that metaphysical cast, which marks the Italian poets, his supposed masters, especially Petrarch. Surrey's sentiments are for the most part natural and unaffected; arising from his own feelings, and dictated by the present circumstances. His poetry is alike unembarrassed by learned allusions, or elaborate conceits. If he copies Petrarch, it is Petrarch's best manner, where he descends from his Platonic abstractions, his refinements of passion, his exaggerated compliments, and his play upon opposite sentiments, into a track of tenderness, simplicity, and nature.

"Surrey, for his justness of thought, correctness of style, and purity of expression, may justly be pronounced the first English classical poet. He unquestionably is the first polite writer of love verses in our language."

---

## THE ORIGINAL PREFACE.

---

**T**HAT to have well written in verse, yea and in small parcelles, deserveth great prayse. The workes of dyvers Latines, Italians and other, doe prove sufficiently, that our tong is able in that kinde to dooe as prayse worthely as the rest, the Honorable Style of the Noble Earl of Surrey, and the weightinesse of the deep witted Syr Thomas Wyat the Elders verse, with severall graces in sundry good English writers, doe shew abundantly. It resteth nowe (gentle reader) that thou thinke it not evil done, to publysh to the honour of the Englysh tong, and for the profit of the studious of Englysh Eloquence, those woorkes whiche the

ungentle horders up of such treasure, have heretofore envyed thee; and for this point (good reader) thyne owne profite and pleasure in these presently, and in mo hereafter shall aunswere for my defence. If perchappes some myslyke the statelynesse of style removed from the rude skyl of common cares: I ask helpe of the learned to defende thyre learned frend the authore of this woorkes, and I exhorte the unlearned by reading to learne to be more skylfull, and to purge that swinelike grossenesse that maketh the sweet maiestie not to smell to theyr delight.



# SONGES AND SONNETTES.

*Description of the restless state of a Lover, with Suite to his Lady, to rule on his dieng hart.*

THE Sunne hath twyse brought fourth his tender grene,  
Twyse cladde the earth in lyvely lustinesse;  
Ones have the wyndes the trees dyspoled clene,  
And once agayne begynnes theyr cruelnesse,  
Synce I have hyd under my brest the harme,  
That never shall recover healthfulnesse.  
The wynters hurt recovers with the warme,  
The parched grene restored is with shade:  
What warmth, alas! may serve for to dysarme  
The frosen hart that myne inflame hath made?  
What colde agayne is able to restore  
My fresh grene yeares, that wither thus and fade.  
Alas! I see nothing has hurt so fore  
But tyme, in tyme reduceth a returne:  
In tyme my harme encreaseth more and more  
And seemes to have my cure allwayes in scorne;  
Strange kindes of death, in lyfe that I doe trye  
At hand to melt, farre of in flame to burne:  
And lyke as tyme lyst to my cure applye,  
So doth eche place my comfort cleane refuse.  
All things alive, that seeth the heavens with eye,  
With cloke of night may cover and excuse  
Itself from travayle of the dayes unrest,  
Save I, alas! against all others use  
That then styrre up the tormentes of my breste;  
And curse eche starre as causer of my fate:  
And when the sun hath eke the darke opprest,  
And brought the day, it doth nothing abate  
The travayles of myne endless smarte and payne:  
For as one as hath the light in hate,  
I wish for night more covertly to playne  
And me withdrawe from every haunted place,  
Left by my chere my chaunce appeare to playne,  
To seeke the place where I my self had lost,  
And in my mynde I measure pace by pace.  
That day that I was tangled in the lace,  
In femyng flacke that knitted ever most;  
But never yet the travayll of my thought  
Of better state, could catche a cause to lost:  
For if I founde sometime that I have fought,  
Those steires by whom I trusted of the port,  
My sayles do fall, and I advaunce right nought,  
As ankred fast, my sprytes do all resort

To stand agazed, and sink in more and more:  
The deadly harme which he doth take in sport  
Lo! if I seeke, how I do find my fore!  
And if I flee, I cary with me still  
The venomd shaft which doth hys force restore  
By hast of flight, and I may plague my fill  
Unto my self, unless this carefull song  
Print in your hart, some parcell of my tene  
For I alas! in silence all too long  
Of myne olde hurt, yet feeles the wound but grene  
Rue on my lyfe, or else your cruel wronge  
Shall well appeare and by my death be sene.

*Description of Spring, wherein eche thing reviveth,  
save only the Lover.*

THE soote season that bud, and bloome fourth  
bringes,  
With grene hath cladde the hyll, and eke the vale;  
The nightingall with fethers new she singes;  
The turtle too her mate hath told her tale;  
Somer is come, for every spray now springes.  
The hart hath hung hys olde head on the pale;  
The hucke in brake his winter coate he flynges;  
The fishes flete with newe repayred scale:  
The adder all her slough away she flynges,  
The swift swallow pursueth the flies smalle,  
The busy bee her honey how she mynges;  
Winter is worne that was the floures ball.  
And thus I see among these pleasant thynges  
Eche care decayes, and yet my sorrow springes.

*Description of the restless state of a Lover.*

When youth had led me halfe the race,  
That Cupides scourge had made me runne;  
I looked back to meet the place,  
From whence my weary course begunne:  
And then I saw howe my desyre  
Misguiding me had led the waye,  
Myne eyne to greedy of theyre hyre,  
Had made me lose a better prey.  
For when in sighes I spent the day,  
And could not cloake my grief with gayne;

The boyling smoke dyd still bewray,  
 The present heate of secret flame :  
 And when salt teares do bayne my breast,  
 Where love his pleafent traynes hath sowne,  
 HET beauty hath the fruytes opprest,  
 Ere that the buddes were spronge and blowne.  
 And when myne eyen dyd still pursue,  
 The flying chafe of theyre request ;  
 Theyre greedy looks dyd oft renew,  
 The hydden wounde within my breste.  
 When every loke these cheekes might stayne,  
 From dedly pale to glowing red ;  
 By outward signes appeared playne,  
 To her for helpe my hart was fled.  
 But all to late love learneth me,  
 To paynt all kynd of colours new ;  
 To blynd theyre eyes that else should see  
 My speckled chekes with Cupids hew.  
 And now the covert brest I clame,  
 That worshitt Cupide secretly ;  
 And nourished hys sacred flame,  
 From whence no blairing sparkes do flye.

*Description of the fickle Affections, Pangs, and  
 Sleights of Love.*

SUCH wayward wayes hath Love, that most part  
 in discord  
 Our willes do stand, whereby our hartes but sel-  
 dom do accord :  
 Decyte is hys delighte, and to begyle and mocke  
 The simple hartes who he doth strike with froward  
 divers stroke.  
 He causeth th' one to rage with golden burning  
 darte, [harte.  
 And doth alay with leaden cold, again the others  
 Whose gleames of burning fyre and easy sparkes  
 of flame, [ame  
 In balance of unequal weyght he pondereth by  
 From easye ford where I myghte wade and pass  
 full well,  
 He me withdrawes and doth me drive, into a depe  
 dark hell :  
 And me witholdes where I am calde and offred  
 place,  
 And willes me that my mortal foe I do beseeke  
 of grace ;  
 He lettes me to pursue a conquest welnere wonne  
 To followe where my paynes were lost, ere that  
 my sute begunne. [turne  
 So by this means I know how soon a hart may  
 From warre to peace, from truce to stryfe, and so  
 agayne returne.  
 I know how to content my self in others lust,  
 Of little stufte unto my self to weave a webbe of  
 trust :  
 And how to hyde my harmes with sole dyssem-  
 blyng chere  
 Whan in my face the painted thoughtes wou'd  
 outwardly appeare. [dred,  
 I know how that the bloud forsakes the face for  
 And how by shame it staynes agayne the cheekes  
 with flamyng red ;

I know under the grene, the serpent how he lurkes :  
 The hammer of the restless forge I wote eke how  
 it workes.

I know, and can by roate the tale that I woulde tell  
 But ofte the woordes came fourth awrye of him  
 that loveth well.

I know in heate and colde the lover how he shakes,  
 In syngeing how he doth complayne, in sleeping  
 how he wakes

To languish without ache, sickelisse for to consume,  
 A thousand thynges for to devyse, resolvyng  
 his fume ;

And though he lyst to see his ladyes grace full  
 Such pleasures as delyght his eye, do not his helth  
 restore.

I know to feke the traecte of my defyred foe,  
 And fere to fynde that I do seek, but chief, this  
 I know, [loved,

That lovers must transfigure into the thyng be-  
 And live (alas ! who would believe ?) with sprite  
 from lyfe removed.

I knowe in hartie sighes and laughers of the spleene,  
 At once to chaunge my state, my will, and eke  
 my colour clene.

I know how to deceyve my self wythe others helpe,  
 And how the lyon chastised is, by beatyng of the  
 whelpe.

In standyng nere the fyre, I know how that I frease ;  
 Farre of I burne, in bothe I waste, and so my lyfe  
 I leese. [mynde,

I know how Love doth rage upon a yeylding  
 How smalle a nete may take and make a harte of  
 gentle kynde :

Or else with seldom swete to season kespes of gall,  
 Revived with a glympse of grace old sorrows to  
 let fall. [Love,

The hydden traynes I know, and secret snares of  
 How soone a loke will prynte a thoughte that ne-  
 ver may remove. [welke

The flypper state I knowe, the sodein turnes from  
 The doubtfull hope, the certaine wooc, and sure  
 despaired hethe.

*The Complainte of a Lover that defied Love, and was  
 by Love after the more tormented.*

WHEN somer tooke in hande the wynter to assayle  
 With force of myghte and vyrtue grete, his storm  
 blaits to quaille :

And when he clothed sayre the earthe about, the  
 grene,

And every tree new garmented, that pleasure was  
 to sene :

Mine hart gan new revive, and changed blood did  
 stir

Me to withdrawe my wynter woes, that kepte  
 wythyn the dur.

Abrode, quod my desyre, assay to set thy fote.  
 Where thou shalt fynde the favour sweete, for  
 sprong is every rote

And to try helthe if thou were sycke in any case  
 Nothing more good, than in the sprynge the ayre  
 to sele a place ;

There shalt thou heare and see al kynde of Byrdes,  
 ywrought  
 And tyme theyre voyce, with warble smal, as na-  
 ture hath them taught. [leave,  
 Thus pricked me my lust the sluggish house to  
 And for my helthe I thoughte it best, such coun-  
 sel to receave :  
 So on a morrow furth, unwist of any wyghte,  
 I went, to prove how well it woulde, my hevy  
 burden lyghte :  
 And when I felt the ayre, so pleasant round  
 aboute; [gotten out.  
 Lotte to my selfe how glad I was, that I had  
 Ther myght I see how Ver had every blossome  
 [they went ;  
 And eke the new betrothed byrdes y coupled how  
 And in thyre songe, me thought, they thanked  
 nature much.  
 That by her lycence al that yere, to Love theyre  
 hope was such :  
 Right as they could devise to chose them trees  
 throughout,  
 Wyth much rejoyng to theyr Lord, thus flew  
 they all about. [ceave,  
 Whyche when I gan resolve, and in my head con-  
 What pleasant lyfe, what heaps of joy, those little  
 birdes receave.  
 And saw in what estate I weary man was wroughte,  
 By want of that they had at will, and I resct at  
 nought :  
 Lord, how I gan in wrath ! unwisely me demeane !  
 I cursed Love, and hym defied, I thoughte to turne  
 the streame :  
 But when I well behelde, he had me under awe,  
 I asked mercy for my faulte, that so transgreyst his  
 lawe,  
 Thou blinded God (quod I) forgive me this offence,  
 Unwittingly I went about to malice thy pretence :  
 Wherewith he gave a becke, and thus methoughte  
 he swore,  
 Thy sorrow ought suffice to purge thy faulte if it  
 were more :  
 The virtue of which sound, mine hart did so revive,  
 That I methought was made as whoale, as any  
 man alive,  
 But here I may perceve, myne error and all and  
 some, [still undone :  
 For that I thought that so it was yet was it  
 And al that was no more but mine expressed mynde,  
 That fain wou'd have some good reliefe, of Cu-  
 pid well assigned.  
 I turned home forthwith, and might perceyve it  
 well, [rebel  
 That he agreved was right sore, with me for my  
 My harmes have ever since encreased more, and  
 more, [evermore.  
 And I remaind without his helpe, undone for  
 A mirror let me be unto ye lovers all ; [befall.  
 Serve not with Love, for if ye do, it will ye thus

*Complaint of a Lover Rebuked.*

Love that liveth, and raigneth in my thought,  
 That built his seat within my cative brest

Clad in the armes, wherein with me he fought,  
 Oft in my face he doth his banner rest.  
 She that methought to love, and suffer pain,  
 My doubtfull hope, and eke my hot desire,  
 With shamfast cloke to shadowe and restrain,  
 Her smiling grace converteth straight to ire,  
 And cowed Love then to the hart apace  
 Taketh his flight, whereas he lurkes and plaines,  
 His purpose lost, and dare not shewe his face,  
 For my Loves gilt thus faultless bide I paines,  
 Yet from my Love shall not my foote remove  
 Swete is his deth, that takes his end by Love.

*Complaint of the Lover Disdained.*

In Ciprus springes whereas dame Venus dwelt,  
 A well so hote, that who so tastes the same ;  
 Were he of stone, as chawed yse should melt,  
 And kindlede finde his brest with fired flame.  
 Whose moyst poison dissolved hath my hate,  
 This creping fire my cold lims so oppress,  
 That in the hart that harborde freedom late,  
 Endlesse despayre long thraldome hath impress.  
 An other so colde in frozen yse is founde,  
 Whose chilling venom of repugnant kinde ;  
 The ferve, heat doth quenche of Cupides wound  
 And with the spotted change infectes the minde  
 Whereof my dere hath tasted to my paine,  
 My service thus is grown into disdaine.

*Description and Praise of his Love GERALDINE.*

FROM Tuscan came my Ladies worthy race,  
 Faire Florence was sometime her auncient seate  
 The Western Yle whose pleasant shore doth face  
 Wild Cambers elifs, did geve her lyuely heate :  
 Fostered she was, with milke of Irishe brest :  
 Her fire, an erle, her dame, of princes blood ;  
 From tender yeres, in Britaine she doth rest,  
 With kinges childe, where she tasteth costly soode.  
 Honfou did first present her to myne yien :  
 Bright is her hewe, and Geraldine she hight,  
 Hampton me taught, to wishe her first for mine,  
 And Windior, alas, doth chafe me from her sight.  
 Her beauty of kinde, her verue from above,  
 Happy is he, that can obtain her Love.

*The frailtye, and burtfulnes of Beautie.*

BRITTLE beautie that nature made so fraile,  
 Whereof the gift is small, and short the season;  
 Flowring to day, to morowe apt to faile,  
 Tickled treasure, abhorred of reason :  
 Dangerous to deale with, vaine of none availe,  
 Costly in keeping, past not worthe two peason  
 Slipper in sliding, as is an eles taile;  
 Harde to attain, once gotten not geason.  
 Jewell of jeopardie, that peril doth assaile,  
 False and vntrewe, enticed oft to treason ;



Enemy to youth, that most may I bewaile;  
 Ah bitter sweete! infesting as the poyson,  
 Thou farest as frute, that with the frost is taken,  
 To day ready ripe, to morow al to shaken.

*A Complaint by night of the Lover not Beloved.*

ALAS! so al thinges now doe holde their peace,  
 Heaven and earth disturbed in nothing;  
 The beastes, the ayer, the birdes their songe doe  
 leave,

The nightes chare the stares aboute doth bringe;  
 Calme is the sea, the waues worke lesse and lesse.  
 So am not I, whome Love alas doth wring,  
 Bringing before my face the great encrease  
 Of my desires, whereas I wepe and sing,  
 In joy and wo, as in a doubtful case,  
 For my swete thoughts, some tyme doe pleasure  
 bring;

But by and by, the cause of my disease,  
 Geves me a pang, that inwardly doth sting;  
 When that I thinke what grief it is againe,  
 To live and lacke the thing should ridde my pain.

*How eche thing, save the Lover in Spring, Reinueth to  
 pleasure.*

WHEN Windsor walles susteined my wearied arme,  
 My hande, my chin, to ease my restless hed,  
 The pleasant plot reuested green with warme,  
 The blossomed bowes with lusty Ver yipred:  
 The floured meades, the wedded byrdes so late,  
 Myne eyes discover, and to my mynde resort  
 The ioly woes, the hatelesse short debate,  
 The rakehell lyfe, that longes to lones disporte,  
 Wherewith, alas, the heavy charge of care  
 Heapt in my brest, breakes fourth agaynst my wyll,  
 In smoky sightes that overcast the ayre,  
 My vapor'd eyes such drearily teares dystill.  
 The tender spring whiche quicken, where they fall,  
 And I halfe bent to throwe me downe withall.

*A Vow to love faithfully howsoever he be rewarded.*

Set me whereas the sonne doth parch the grene,  
 Or where his beams do not dissolve the yfe,  
 In temperate heat, where he is felt, and fene,  
 In presence prest of people, madde, or wife;  
 Set me in hye, or yet in lowe degree,  
 In longest night, or in the shortest day;  
 In clearest skye, or where cloudes thickest be,  
 In lusty youth, or when my heares are grave:  
 Set me in heayen, in earth, or else in hell,  
 In hyll or dale; or in the foaming flood;  
 Thrall, or at large, alyve where so I dwell,  
 Sicke, or in helthe, in evyll fame or good;  
 Hers will I be, and only with this thought,  
 Content my self, althoug my chaunce be nought.

*Complaint that bys Lady after she knew of bys Love,  
 kept her face always bydden from hym.*

I NEVER sawe my Lady laye apart,  
 Her cornet blacke, in colde nor yet in heate,  
 Sith fyrst she knew my grieve was growen so greate,  
 Whyche other fancies dryveth from my harte  
 That to my selfe I do the thought reserve,  
 The whyche unwares dyd wound my woeful brest,  
 But on her face myne eyes nought never rest:  
 Yet synce she knew I dyd her love and serve,  
 Her golden tresses claude allway with blacke;  
 Her smyleyng lookes that had this evermore  
 And that restraynes which I desir'd so sore:  
 So doth this cornet governe, me alaske.  
 In summer sun, in winters breghe, a froste,  
 Wherebye the lyghte of her sayre lookes I loske.

*Request to bys Love to ioyne Bountie with Beauty.*

The golden gyft that Nature dyd thee geve,  
 To fasten frendes and feed them at thy will;  
 With fourme and favour, taught me to believe,  
 How thou arte made to shewe her greatest skyle:  
 Whose hydden vertues are not so unknowen,  
 But lyvely daines myghte gather at the fyrste;  
 Where beauty so her perfecte seede hath sown,  
 Of all other graces follow nedes, there must.  
 Now certes Ladie, synce all thys is true,  
 That from above thy gyftes are thus elect;  
 Do not deface them than wyth fancies newe.  
 Nor chaunge of myndes let not the mynde infect:  
 But metcy hymne thy frende, that doth thee serve,  
 Who seekes always thynne honour to preserve.

*Prisoner in Windsor, he recounteth his pleasure there  
 passed.*

So cruell prison howe could betyde, alas!  
 As proude Windsor: Where I in lust and joy,  
 Wythe a kyngesonne, my chyldeyheres dyd passe,  
 In greater fealt, than Priams sonnes of Troye:  
 Where eche swete place returnes a tastfull sower:  
 The large grene where we were wont to trove,  
 Wyth eyes cast up into the Maydens tower,  
 And easy sightes, such as folkes draw in Love:  
 The statly feates, the ladies brighte of hewe;  
 The daunces short, long tales of greate delight  
 Wyth woordes and lookes, that tygers could but  
 sewe,  
 Where eche of us dyd picade the others ryghte.  
 The palme play, where despoyle for the game,  
 With dared eyes oft we by gleames of love  
 Have myst the ball, and gote sighte of our daine  
 To bayte her eyes, whyche kept the leads above  
 The gravel ground, wythe sleeves tyde on the  
 helme [hartes;  
 On fonyng horse, with swordes and french  
 Wythe chere as though one should another wille  
 Where we have fought, and chased oft wyth dartes.

SONGES AND SONETTES.

With silver droppes the meade yet spreade for  
ruthes,  
In actives games of nimbleness and strength,  
Where we did strayne trayned with swarmes of  
youth.

Our tender limmes, that yet shot up in lengthe.  
The secreete groves which oft we made resounde,  
Of pleasant playnte, and of our Ladies prayse,  
Recording oft what grace eche one had founde,  
What hope of speede, what drede of long delayes.

The wyldc forrest, the clothed holes with grene,  
With raynes availed and swiftly breathed horse;  
Wyth cry of houndes and merry blastes betwene,  
Where we did chase the feareful harte of force.  
The wyde yee, eke, that harborde us eche  
nyghte,

Wherewith, (alas!) reviveth in my breste;  
The swete accorde, such slepes as yet delyt,  
The pleasant dreame, the quyet bed of rest;  
The secret thoughtes imparted with such trust,  
The wanton talke, the dyvers chaunge of playe;  
The friendship sworne, eche promise kept so fast,  
Wherewith we past the winter nyghte away.  
And wyth thys thoughte, the bloud forsakes the  
face,

The teares berayne my chekes of deadly hewe,  
The whyche as soone as sobbyng sighes, (alas!)  
Upsupped have, thus, I my playnt renewe:  
O place of blisse! renewer of my woes!  
Give me accompt where is my noble fere,  
Whom in thy walles thou doest eche nyghte en-  
close,

To other use, but unto me most clere:  
Eccho (alas!) that doth my sorrow rewe,  
Returns thereto a hollowe sounde of playnt;  
Thus I alone, where all my freedome grewe,  
In pryson pyne, withe bondage and restraynt:  
And with remembrance of the greater grieve,  
To banish the lesse I fynd my chief reliefe.

*The Lower comforteth himselfe wyth the Worthynesse  
of his Love.*

When rageyng love wyth extreme payne,  
Most cruelly distraynes my harte;  
When that my teares as floudes of rayne,  
Bear witness of my wofull smarte:  
When sighes have wasted so my breathe  
That I lye at the poynt of deathe.  
I call to mynde the navy greate,  
That the Greekes brought to Troy towne,  
And how the boysterous wyndes dyde beate  
Theyre shippes, and rent thayre favles adowne;  
Tyll Agamemnons daughters bloode,  
Appeased the goddes that them withstood:  
And how that in those ten years warre,  
Full many a bloody dede was done;  
And many a Lorde that came full farre,  
There caughte his bane (alas!) too soone:  
And many a good knyghte overcome,  
Before the Greekes had Helenne wonne.  
Then think I thus with such repayre,  
So long tyme warre of valiant menne,

Was all to wyne a lady fayre,  
Shall I not learne to suffer then?  
And think my tyme well spent to be;  
Serving a woorthier wyghte than she?  
Therefore I never will repent,  
But paynes contented styll endure;  
For like as when rough winter spent,  
The pleasant sprynge straight draweth in use,  
So after raging stormes of care,  
Joyfull at length may be my fare.

*Complaint of the absence of her Lover being upon  
the seas.*

O Happy dames that may embrace,  
The fruite of your delyghte;  
Help to bewaile the woefull case,  
And eke the heavy plyghte  
Of me that wonted to reioyce,  
The fortune of my pleasant choice:  
Good ladies helpe to fill my mourning voyce.  
In shippe freghte wyth the remembrance  
Of thoughtes and pleasures past,  
He sayles that hath governaunce;  
My life while it will last.  
With scalding sighes for lacke of gale,  
Furderyng hys hope that is his fayle,  
Toward me, the swete port of hys avayle.  
Alas! how oft in dreams I see  
Those eyes that were my foode,  
Whych sometyme so delyted me  
That yet they do me goode:  
Wherewith I wak wyth his returne,  
Whose absent flame dyd make me burne,  
But when I fynde the lacke, Lord, how I mourne  
When other lovers in armes acrosse,  
Reioyce their encchyfe delyght;  
Drowned in teares to mourne my losse  
I stand the bytter nyghte  
In my window where I may see  
Before the wyndes how the cloudes flee  
Lo! what a mariner love hath made me.  
And in grene waves when the salt floode  
Doth rise by rage of wynde,  
A thousand fancies in that mood  
Assayle my restlesse mynde:  
Alas! how drencheth my swet so  
That wyth the spoyle of my hart did go,  
And left me, (but alas!) why did he so?  
And when the seas were calme agayne,  
To chace from me annoye,  
My doubtful hope doth cause my playne,  
So drede cuts of my loye.  
Thus in my weakth myngled with woe,  
And of eche thought a doubt doth growe  
Now he comes! will he come? alas! no!

*Complaint of a dying Lover refused upon bys Ladies  
Insult myslaking of hys wrytyng.*

In wynters iust returne, when Boreas gan his  
raygne,  
And every tree unclothed fast, as nature taught  
them playne.



In myſty morning darke, as ſhepe are then in  
holde,

I hyde me faſt, it ſat me on, my ſhepe for to un-  
fold.

And as it is a thyng that lovers have by ſyttes,  
Under a palme I heard one cry, as he had loſt hys  
wittes.

Whoſe voice did ringe ſo ſhrill in utteryng of  
hys playnt,

That I amazed was to heare, how love coule hym  
attaynt,

Ah! wretched man (quod he) come death and  
ryd thys woe;

A juſt reward, a happy end, if it may chaunce  
thee ſoe.

Thy pleaſures paſt, have wrought thy woe with-  
out redreſſe;

If thou haſt never felt no ioy, thy ſmart had been  
the leſſe.

And recheſſe of hys lyfe, he gan both ſigh and  
grone,

A ruefull thyng methought it was to here hym  
make ſuch mone

Thou curſed pen ſayd he, wo worthe the byrde  
ſhe bare,

The man, the knyfe, and all that made thee, wo  
be to thyre ſhare :

Wo worth the tyme and place, where could ſo  
endyte,

And wo be it yet once agayne, the pen that ſo  
can wryte.

Unhappy hand! it had been happy tyme for me,  
If when to wryte thou learned fyrſte, unjoynted  
haſt thou be.

Thus curſed he himſelf, and every other wyghte,  
Save her alone whom love him bound to ſerve  
both day and nyght.

Whyche when I heard and ſaw, how he himſelf  
foredyd

Against the ground with bloody ſtrokes, hymſelf  
even thereto rid;

Had been my hart of flynt it muſt have melted  
though,

For in my lyfe I never ſaw a man ſo full of wo,  
Wyth teares for hys redreſſe, I raſhly to him  
ran,

And in my armes I caught hym faſt, and thus I  
ſpake hym than :

What wofull wyght art thou that in ſuch heavy  
caſe,

Tormentes thy ſelfe wyth ſuch deſpyte here in  
thys deſert place?

Wherewith as all agayſte, fulfylde with ire and  
dread,

He caſt on me a ſtareing loke with colour pale  
and dead; [plyght,

Nay what art thou (quod he) that in thys heavy  
Doeſt fynde me here, moſt wofull wretch, that  
lyfe hath in deſpight?

I am (quod I) but poore and ſymple in degree,  
A ſhepherdes charge I have in hande, unworthy  
though I be :

Wyth that he gave a ſighe as though the ſkye  
ſhould fall, [he call :

And loud alas he ſhryked oft, and ſhepherd gan

Come hye thee faſt at ones, and prynt it in thy  
hart,

So thou ſhall know, and I ſhall tell, thy gyltleſſe  
how I ſmart.

Hys backe agaynſte the tree fore feebled all wyth  
faynte

Wyth weary ſprite, he ſtretcht hym up, and thus  
he told hys plaint :

Once in my harte (quod he) it chaunced me to  
love

Such one in whome hath nature wrought her  
cunning for to prove :

And ſure I cannot ſay but many yeres were ſpent,  
With ſuch good will ſo recompent, as both we  
were content.

Where to ſhew I me bounde, and he lykewiſe alſo,  
The ſunne ſhould rine hys comyle awry ere  
thys fayth foregoe.

Who joyed then but I? wh. hadde thys worldes  
blyſſe?

Who myghte compare a lyfe to myne that never  
thought on this?

But dwelling in thys truth, amid my greateſt joy,  
It me beſallied a greater loſſe then Priam had of  
Troy;

She is reverſed cleane and beareth me in hand,  
That my deſertes have geven cauſe to breke thys  
faythful band.

And for my juſt excuſe awayleth no defence :  
Now knoweſt thou all, I can no more, but ſhep-  
heard hye thee hence; [lyve,

And gave him leave to dye, that may no longer  
Whoſe record to I claime to have, my death I do  
forgeve;

And eke when I am gone, be bold to ſpeake it  
playne,

Thou haſt ſeen dye the trueſt man that ever love  
dyd payne.

Wherewith he turnde hym rounde, and gasping  
oft for breath,

Into his armes a tree he caught, and ſayd welcome  
my death

Welcome a thouſand fold, now dearer unto me  
Than ſhould without her love to live, an empe-  
rour to be.

Thus in this wofull ſtate he yelded up the goſt,  
And little knoweth his ladye, what a lover ſhe  
hath loſt. [right

Whoſe death when I beheld, no marvel was it  
For pitie though my heart dyd blede, to ſee ſo  
piteous ſight.

My bloud from heate to cold oft chaunged won-  
ders ſore, [before :

A thouſand troubles there I found I never knew  
Twene dreade and dolour, ſo my ſpretes were  
brought in feare,

That long it was ere I could call to minde, what  
I dyd there.

But as eche thing hath ende, ſo had theſe paynes  
of myne,

The furies paſt, and I my wittes reſtorde by  
length of tyme :

Then as I could devyſe, to ſeek I thought beſt,  
Where I might finde ſome worthy place for ſuch  
a corpe to reſt :



And in my mypde it came, from thence not farre  
away  
Where Cresfelds love, king Priams sone the wor-  
thy Trolus lay:  
By him made his tombe, in token he was true.  
And as to him belongeth well, I covered it with  
blewe; [soone,  
Whose soule by aungels power, departed not so  
But to the heavens, so it fled, for to receive his  
dome.

*Complaint of the absence of her lover beyng upon the sea.*

Good ladies, ye that have your pleasures in exile,  
Sit in your foote, come take a place, and morne  
with me a while:  
And such as by theyr lordes do fet but little pryce,  
Let them sit still, it skilles them not what chaunce  
come on the dice:  
But ye whom love hath bound by order of defyre,  
To love your lords, whose good deserts none  
other would require: [myne,  
Come ye yet once agayne, and fet your foote by  
Whose wofull plight, and sorrowes great, no tong  
can well define.  
My love and lord, alas! in whom consistes my  
welth,  
Hath fortune sent to passe the seas in hazard of  
his helth: [mynde,  
Whom I was wont to embrace with well contented  
Is now amyng the fomyng floods at pleasure of the  
wynde:  
Where God will him preserve, and soone him  
home me send,  
Without which hope my lyfe (alas) were shortly  
at an ende:  
Whose absence yet although my hope doth tell  
me payne  
With short returne he comes anone, yet ceaseth  
not my payne:  
The fearefull dreames I have, oft tymes doe grieve  
me so,  
That when I wake, I lye in doubte, where they  
be true or no:  
Sometimes the roaring seas, me seemes do grow  
so hye,  
That my deare Lord, ay me, alas! methinkes I  
see him dye.  
An other time the same doth tell me he is come,  
playing, where I shall hym finde with his  
faire little sonne.  
So fourth I goe apace to see that lefesome sight,  
And with a kyffe, methinke I say welcōme my  
lord my knight,  
Welcōme my swete, alas, the stay of my welfare,  
Thy presence bringeth forth a truce atwixt me  
and my care:  
Then lively doth he look, and salvēth me agayne,  
And sayth my dere how is it now that you have  
all this payne? [breft,  
Where with the heavy cares that heapt are in my  
breake fourth and me dischargen cleane of all my  
huge unrest.

But when I me awake, and find it but a dreame  
The anguish of my former wo beginneth more  
extreme

And me tormenteth so that uneath may I fynde,  
Some hidden peace wherein to slake the gnawing  
of my mynde. [burne,

Thus every way you see wythe absence how I  
And for my wound no cure I fynde but hoape  
of good returne;

Save when I thynke by sowre how swete is felt  
the more [fore:

It doth abate some of my paynes, that I abode be-  
And then unto myself I say, when we shall mete,  
But little while shall seme thys payne, the joy  
shall be so swete.

Ye wyndes I you conjure in cheifest of your rage,  
That ye my lord safely send my sorrowes to as-  
swage.

And that I may not long abyde in thys excessse,  
Do your good will to cure a wyght that liveth in  
distresse.

*A praise of his Love, wherein he reprooveth them that  
compare their ladies with his.*

Give place ye lovers here before,  
That spent your boastes and bragges in vain,  
My ladies beuty passeth more,  
The best of yours I dare well sayne,  
Then doth the sunne the caundle lyght,  
Or bryghtest day the darkest nyght,  
And thereto hath a troth as just,  
As had Penelope the sayre,  
For what she sayeth ye may it trust,  
As it by wrytyng sealed were:  
And virtues hath she many moe,  
Than I wyth pen have skill to shoe.  
I could reherse if that I would,  
The whole effecte of natures playnt,  
When she had lost the perfecte mould,  
The like to whome she could not paynte:  
With wringeing hands, how she did cry,  
And what she said, I know it, I.  
I knowe she swore with rageing mynde,  
Her kyngdome only fet apart;  
There was no losse by law of kynde.  
That could have gone so nere her hearte;  
And this was chiefly all her payne.  
She could not make the lyke agayne.  
Syth nature thus gave her the prayse,  
To be the chiefest worke she wroughte;  
In sayth me thynke some better ways,  
On your behalfe myghte well be soughte.  
Then to compare (as you have done)  
To matche the candle withe the sunne.

*To a Ladie that scorned her Lover.*

ALTHOUGH I have a checke,  
To geve the mate is harde;  
For I have found a necke,  
To keep my men in garde.

And you that hardy are,  
 To geve so great assaye  
 Unto a man of warre  
 To dryve hys men away :  
 I nede you take good hede,  
 And marke this foolyshe verse ;  
 For I wyll so provyde,  
 That I wyll have you ferce.  
 And when your ferce is had,  
 And all your warre is done,  
 Then shall yourself be glad,  
 To end that you begonne.  
 For if by chaunce I winne,  
 Your personne in the feilde,  
 To late then you come in  
 Your selfe to me to yelde.  
 For I will use my power,  
 As captayne full of myghte ;  
 And such I will devoure,  
 As use to shew my spyghte.  
 And for because you gave  
 Me cheke in your degree ;  
 This vantage lo I have,  
 Now check and garde to thee :  
 Defend it if thou may,  
 Stand styffe in thyne estate ;  
 For sure I will assay,  
 If I can geve the mate.

*A warning to the Lover, how he is abused by his Love.*

To dearly had I boughte my grene and youthful  
 yeres,  
 If in myne age I coulde not fynde, when craft for  
 love apperes. [rest,  
 And seldome though I come in Court among the  
 Yet can I iudge in colours dymme, as deep as can  
 the best.  
 Where grief tormentes the man that suffereth se-  
 cret smart,  
 To breake it fourth unto some frende, it easeth  
 well the heart :  
 So stand it now with me, (for my beloved frend)  
 This case is thine, for whom I feel such torments  
 of my mynde ;  
 And for thy sake, I burne so in my secret breste,  
 That tyll thou know my whole disease, my heart  
 can have no rest.  
 I see how thyne abuse hath wrested so thy wittes,  
 That all it yeldes to thy desire, and followes thee  
 by fittes.  
 Where thou hast loved so long, with heart and  
 all thy power, [devour ;  
 I see thee fed with fayned wordes, thy freedom to  
 I know, (though she say nay, and would it well  
 withstande,  
 When in her grace, thou yeldest thee most, she  
 bare thee but in hand ;  
 I see her pleasant chere, in chiefest of thy suite,  
 When thou art gone, I see him come, that ga-  
 \*thers up the fruite ;  
 And eke in thy respect, I see the base degree,  
 Of him to whom she gave the hart, that promised  
 was to thee.

I see (what woulde you more) stode never man so  
 sure,  
 On womans woord, but wisedome would instruct  
 it to endure.

*The forsaken Lover describeth, and forfeth Love.*

O Lothsome place where I,  
 Have seene and heard my dere ;  
 When in my hart her eye,  
 Hath made her thought appere.  
 By glinging with such grace,  
 As fortune it ne woulde  
 That lasten any space,  
 Between us longer shoulde.  
 As fortune did advance,  
 To further my desire,  
 Even so hath fortunes chaunce,  
 Thrownen all ammiddes the myre.  
 And that I have deserved,  
 With true and faithfull hart ;  
 As to his handes reserved,  
 That never felt the smart.  
 But happy is that man,  
 That scapeth hath the grieve,  
 That love will seek him can,  
 By wanting his reliefe.  
 A scourge to quiet myndes,  
 It is who taketh hede ;  
 A common plague that byndes,  
 A travell without mede.  
 This gift it hath also,  
 Who so enjoyes it most,  
 A thousand troubles grow,  
 Yo vex his wearied ghost.  
 And last it may not long,  
 The truest thyng of all ;  
 And sure the greatest wronge,  
 That is within thys thrall.  
 But since thou desert place,  
 Canst give me no accompte ;  
 Of my desyred grace,  
 That I to have was wont :  
 Farewell ! thou hast me taughte,  
 To thinke me not the fyrste,  
 That love hath set a loft,  
 And casten in the dust.

*The Lover describes his reflexse Estate.*

As oft-as I beholde and se,  
 The soveraigne beautie that me bounde,  
 The nier my comforte is to me,  
 Alas ! the fresher is my wound.  
 As flame doth quench by rage of fire,  
 And running stremes consumes by raine ;  
 So doth the sight that I desire,  
 Appease my grieve and deadly paine.  
 First when I saw those chrystal stremes,  
 Whose beauty made my mortall woundes,  
 I little thoughte within her beames,  
 So swete a venem to be founde,

But wilfull Will did pricke me forth,  
 And blinde Cupid did whippe and guyde;  
 Force made me take my grief in worth  
 My fittlesse hope my harme did hide.  
 As cruel waves full oft be founde,  
 Against the rockes do rore and cry,  
 So doth my hart full oft rebound,  
 Against my brest ful bitterly.  
 I fall and se mine own decay,  
 As one that beares flame in his brest;  
 Forgets in paine to put away,  
 The thinge that bredeth mine unrest.

*The Lover excuseth himself of suspected change.*

Though I regarded not  
 The promise made by me,  
 Or passed not to spot  
 My faith and honestie;  
 Yet were my fantasie strange,  
 And wilful will to wite;  
 If I soughte now to change  
 A falkon for a kite.  
 All men might well dispraise  
 My wit and enterprise,  
 If I esteemed a pefe  
 Above a pearle in price:  
 Or judged the owle in sight,  
 The sparhauke to excell;  
 Which flyeth but in the night  
 As all men know righte well.  
 Or if I soughte to saile,  
 Into the brittle porte;  
 Where anker hold doth faile,  
 To such as do resort;  
 And leave the haven sure,  
 Where blowes no blustering winde;  
 Nor sickeenesse in ure  
 So farforth as I finde.  
 No, think me not so lighte,  
 Nor of so churlish kinde,  
 Though it lay in my wighte,  
 My boundage to unbinde:  
 That I woulde leave the kinde  
 To hunt the ganders fo.  
 No, no, I have no minde  
 To make exchanges so;  
 Nor yet to change at all,  
 Nor thinke it may not be,  
 That I shoulde seke to fall  
 From my felicitie.  
 Desirous for to win,  
 And loth for to forgo,  
 Or new change to begin,  
 How may all this be so?  
 The fire it cannot frefe,  
 For it is not his kinde;  
 Nor true love cannot lese  
 The constancie of minde:  
 Yet as soon shall the fire,  
 Want heate to blase and burne,  
 As I in such desire  
 Have once a thought to turne.

*A Carelesse Man scorning and describing the fittle usage  
 of Women towards their Lovers.*

WRAPT in me carelesse cloke, as I walk to and  
 fro,  
 I see how love can shew what force there reign-  
 eth in his bow,  
 And how he shoteth eke a harty hart to wound;  
 And where he glaunceth by again, that little hart  
 is found.  
 For feldme is it fene he wounde the harts alike.  
 The tone may rage, when tothers love is often  
 farre to seke:  
 All this I see with more, and wonder thinketh me,  
 How he can strike the one so sore, and leave the  
 other free;  
 I see that wounded wight, that suffereth all this  
 wrong,  
 How he is fed with yeas and nays, and liveth al  
 to long  
 In silence, though I kepe such secretes to my self;  
 Yet do I see how she sometime doth yelde a litle  
 by steth,  
 As though it semde, ywis y will not lose the so.  
 When in her hart so swete a thought did never  
 truly grow;  
 Then say thus, alas, that man is farre from blisse  
 That doth receive for his relief none other game  
 but this;  
 And she that feedes him so, I sefe and find it plain,  
 Is but to glory in her power, that over such can  
 raigne;  
 Nor are such graces spent, but when she thinketh  
 that he  
 A wery man is fully bent such fantasies to let see,  
 Then to retaine him still, she wresteth new her  
 grace;  
 And smileth so as though she wouldo forthewith  
 the man embrace:  
 Bat when the prooffe is made to try such lokes  
 withall,  
 He findeth then the place alvoide, and frighted  
 full of Gall:  
 Lord what abuse is this! who can such women  
 praise?  
 That for their glory do devise to use such crafty  
 ways:  
 I that amonge the rest, do sit and marke the  
 Find that in her is greater crafts then is in  
 twenty moe,  
 Whose tender years, alas! with wiles so wel are  
 sped,  
 What will she do, when hory heares, are pow-  
 dered in her hed?

*An Answer in the behalf of a Woman of an uncer-  
 tain Author.*

GIRT in my gittles gowne, as I sit here and sow  
 I see that thinges are not in dede as to the out-  
 warde show. [what nere  
 And who so list to loke, and note thinges some.



Shal find wher plainesse seemes to haunt, nothing  
but craft appear:  
For with indifferent eyes my self can well discern,  
How ~~from~~ to guide a ship in stormes seke for to  
take the sterne;  
Whose practice it were proued in calme to stere a  
barge,  
Assuredly believ it well it were to great a charge:  
And some I se again sit still and say but small,  
That coule do ten times more then they that say  
they can do all;  
Whose goodly giftes are such, the more they  
understand,  
The more they seke to learne and know, and  
take lese charge in hand.  
And to declare more plain the time fleets not so  
fast,  
But I can bear full well in mind the song now  
song and past,  
The auctor whereof come wrapt in a crafty cloke,  
With will to force a flaming fire, where he could  
raise no smoke;  
If power and will had joined, as it appereth plain,  
The truth no right had tane no place their ver-  
ties had been vain,  
So that you may perceive, and I may falsly se  
The innocent that gilleffe is, condemned should  
have be.

*The Constant Lover Lament.*

Sins fortunes wrath envieth the welth  
Wherein I raigned by the sight  
Of that, that fed mine eyes by stelh,  
With sowre, swete, dread and delight.  
Let not my grieffe move you to mone,  
For I will wepe and waile alone.  
Spite drave me into Boreas raigne,  
Where hoary frostes the frutes do bite,  
When hills were spread, and every plaine  
With stormy winters mantle white,  
And yet my dere such was my heate,  
When others freaze then did I sweate.  
And now, though on the sunne I drive,  
Whose fervent flame all thinges decaies,  
His beames in brightnesse may not strive,  
With light of your swete golden rayes;  
Nor from my breste this heate remove,  
The frozen thoughtes graven by love.  
He may the waves of the salt floode  
Quench that your beautie set on fyre,  
For though myne eyes forbear the foode,  
That dyd relieve the hot desire:  
Such as I was, such will I be,  
Your owne, what woulde you more of me?

*A Song written by the Earle of SURREY, by a Lady  
that refused to Daunce with him.*

Eche beast can choose his fere according to his  
mynde,  
And eke can shewe a friendly chere lyke to their  
beastly kynde;

A lyon saw I late as whyte as any snowe,  
Which semed well to leade the race, his port the  
same did shewe:  
Upon the gentle beast to gaze it pleased me,  
For still me thoughte he seemed well of noble  
bloud to be.  
And as he prauuced before, still seeking for a make,  
As who would say, there is none here, I trowe  
will me forsake:  
I might perceive a wolfe as white as whales bone,  
A fairer beaste, of fresher hue beheld I never none,  
Save that her lookes were coy, and froward eke  
her grace,  
Unto the whiche this gentle beast gan him avaunce  
apace.  
And with a becke full lowe he bowed at her feete.  
In humble wise, as who woulde say, I am too  
farre unmeete.  
But such a scornfull chere wherewith she him  
rewarded,  
Was never seene I trowe the like to such as well  
deserved.  
With that she start asydewellneere a foot or twaine,  
And unto him thus gan she say with spyte and  
great disdaine,  
Lyon she saide, if thou hadest known my mind  
before,  
Thou hadst not spent thy travaile thus, nor all  
thy paine for lore. [me,  
Do way I lete thee, wete thou shalt not play with  
Go range about, where thou maist finde some  
meter fere for thee.  
With that he bet his tayle, his eyes began to flame,  
I might perceive his noble heart, much moved by  
the same.  
Yet saw I him refrayne, and eke his wrath asswage,  
And unto her thus gan he say, when he was past  
his rage.  
Cruel you do me wronge, to set me thus so lighte,  
Without desert for my good will, to shew me  
thus despyte;  
How can ye thus entreate a lyon of the race,  
That with his pawes, a crowned kynge devoured  
in the place.  
Whose nature is to prey upon no simple foode,  
As long as he may sucke the flesh, and drink of  
noble bloud.  
If you be sayre and fresh, am I not of your hue,  
And for my vaunt I dare well say, my bloud is  
not untrue.  
For you yourself have heard, it is not long agoe,  
Sith that for love, one of the race dyd end his  
life in wo.  
In tower strong, and hye for his assured truth,  
Whereas in tears he spent his breath, alas the  
more the ruth.  
Thys gentle beaste so dyed, whom nothing could  
remove, [love.  
But willingly to leese hys life for los of his true  
Other there be, whose lives do linger still in payne,  
Against their wills preserved are, that woulde  
have dyed fayne.  
But now I do perceive, that nought it moveth you,  
My good entent my gentle heart, nor yet my  
kinde so true.

But that your will is such, to lure me to the trade,  
And other some full many yeres to trace by craft  
    eye made.

And thus behold our kyndes how that we differ  
    fare,

I seek my foes, and you your frendes do threaten  
    still with warre.

I faune where I am fed, you slay, that seketh to you,  
I can devour no yelding prey, you kill where you  
    subduc.

My kind is to desire the honour of the feild,  
And you with bloud do flake your thyrste on such  
    as to you felde :

Wherefore I would you wiste, that for your coy-  
    ed lookes,

I am no man that will be trapt, nor tangled with  
    such hookes.

And though some lust to love, where blamefull well  
    they might,

And to such beastes of current fort, that would  
    have travail bright;

I will observe the lawe, that nature gave to me,  
To conquer such as will resist, and let the rest go  
    free :

And as a faulcon free, that foreth in the ayre,  
Which never fed on hand nor lure, nor for no stale  
    doth care.

While that I live and breathe, such shall my cus-  
    tome be,

In wildnes of the woodes, to seek my prey where  
    pleaseth me :

Where many one shall rue, that never made offence,  
Thus your refuse against my power, shall bote  
    them no defence.

And for revenge thereof, I vow and swear thereto,  
A thousand spoyle I shall commyt, I never thought  
    to doe.

And if to lyght on you my luck so good shall be,  
I shall be glad to feed on that, that would have  
    fed on me.

And thus farewell unkynd, to whom I bent and  
    bowe,

I would you wist, the ship is safe, that bare his  
    sayles so lowe.

Sith that a Lyons hart, is for a wolfe no preye,  
With bloody mouthe go flake your thirst on simple  
    shepe I say.

With more despyte and ire, than I can now ex-  
    presse,

Which to my payne, though I refrayn, the cause  
    you may well guess.

As loth because my self was auctour of the fame,  
It booteth me not that for my wrath, I shoulde  
    disturbe the fame.

*The faithfull Lover declareth his Paynes and his un-  
certaine Joys, and with only hope recomfort some-  
what his wofull heart.*

In care do cause men crye, why do not I com-  
    playne ?

If eche man do bewaile his wo, why shew I not  
    my payne ?

Synce that amongst them all, I dare well say is none,  
So farre from weal, so full of woe, or hath more  
    cause to mone.

For all thinges having life, sometime hath quiet  
    rest, [beast :

The bearing asse, the drawing oxe, and every other  
The peasant, and the post, that serves at all assayes,  
The ship boy, and the galley slave, have time to  
    take their ease.

Save I, alas ! whom care of force doth so constrain,  
To wale the day, and wake the night, continually  
    in payne.

From pensiveness to plaint, from plaint to bitter  
    teares,

From teares, to paynfull playnt againe, and thus  
    my life it weares.

Nothing under the sun, that I can heare or see,  
But moveth me for to bewaile my cruel destiny.  
For where men do rejoyce (since that I cannot so)  
I take no pleasure in that place, it doubleth but  
    my woe.

And when I hear the found of song or instrument,  
Methinke eche tune there dolefull is, and heere  
    me to lament ;

And if I see some have theyre most desired syghte,  
Alas ! thynke I, eche man hath weale save I most  
    wofull wyghte.

Then as the stricken deere, withdrawes himself  
    alone,

So do I seeke some secret place, where I may make  
    my moane.

There do my flowing eyes shew fourthe my melt-  
    ting hart,

So the streames of those two welles, right well de-  
    clare my smart.

And in those cares so could I force my self a heate,  
As sicke men in theyr shaking fittes procure them-  
    selve to sweate.

With thoughtes that for the tyme do much ap-  
    pease my payne,

But yet they cause a farther feare, and brede my  
    wo agayne. [appere

Methinke within my thought I see right playne  
My hartes delight, my sorowes lethe, myne earthly  
    goddesse here,

With every sundry grace that I have seene her have,  
Thus I within my wofull brest her picture paynt  
    and grave ;

And in my thought I role her beauties too and fro,  
Her laughing chere, her lively looke, my heart  
    that perced so.

Her strangenes when I sued her servaunt for to be,  
And what she sayde, and how she smayle, when  
    that she pitied me.

Then comes a sodyane feare that rueth all my rest,  
Lest absence cause forgetfulness to sinke within  
    her brest. [divyde,

For when I thinke how farre this earth doth us  
Alas, me semes love throws me downe, I fele how  
    that I slide :

But when I thinke agayne, why should I thus mis-  
    trust, [just.

So swete a wight, so sad and wise, that is so true and  
For loth she was to love, and wavering is she not,  
The farther off the more desyrde, thus lovers tye  
    theyr knot ;

So in dispayre and hoape plunged am I both up  
and downe,

As is the ship with wind and wave, when Nep-  
tune list to frowne.

But as the watery showers delay the raging wind,  
So doth good hoape cleane put away dispayre out  
of my mynde;

And byddes for to serve and suffer patiently,  
For what wot I the after weale that fortune wiles  
to me.

For those that care do knowe, and tasted have of  
trouble,

When passed is theyr wofull payne, eche joy shall  
seme them double:

And bytter sendes, she now to make me taste the  
better,

The pleasant swete when that it comes to make it  
seem the sweter.

And so determine I to serve until my breath,  
Yea rather dye a thousand times than once to false  
my fayth.

And if my coole corps through weight of wofull  
smart, [hart,

Do fayle or faint, my will it is that still she kepe my  
And when this carcas here to earth shall be refard,  
I do bequeath my weried ghost to serve her after-  
ward.

*The meanes to attayne happy Life.*

MARTIALLE the thinges that doe attayne  
The happy lyfe, be these I fynde,  
The riches left, not got with payne,  
The fruitfull ground, the quiet mynde,  
The egall frend no grudge no strife,  
No charge of rule nor governaunce;  
Without disease the healthful lyfe,  
The household of continuance,  
The meane dyet no delicate fare,  
True wisdom joyned with simplenesse;  
The night discharged of all care,  
Where wine the witte may not oppresse.  
The faithfull wyfe without debate,  
Such slepe as may beguile the night,  
Contented with thine owne estate,  
Ne wish for death, ne feare his might.

*Praise of meane and constant estate.*

Of thy lyfe Thomas, this compasse well marke  
Not aye with full sailes the hye seas to beate,  
Ne by coward dred, in shonning stormes darke,  
On shallowe shores thy keel in perill fret.  
Who so gladly halfeth the golden meane,  
Voide of daungers advisedly hath his home,  
Not with lothsome mucke as a den uncleane,  
Nor palace like, whereat disdayne may glome.  
The lofty pyne the great wind often rives,  
With violenter swey false turrets stepe,  
Lightnings assure the high mountaines and clives,  
A hart well stayde, in overthwartes depe,

Hoapeth amendes, in swete, doth feare the fower,  
God that sendeth, withdraweth winter sharpe,  
No will not aye thus, once Phebus to lowre,  
With bowe unbent, shall cesse and frame to harp,  
His voyce in straye estate appeare thou stoute  
And so wisely, when lucky gale of wynde  
All thy pult sayles shall fill, looke wel about,  
Take in a rift, halt is wast, proove of the finde.

*Praises of certain Psalmes of David translated by S  
T. W. the elder.*

THE great Macedon, that out of Persia chaced  
Darius, of whose huge powers all Asie rong,  
In the riche arke Dan Homers rimes he placed,  
Who feigned gestes of heathen princes song,  
What holy grave, what worthy sepulchre  
To Wyates psalms should Christians then purchase;  
Where he doth paint the lyvely faith and pure,  
The stedfast hope the sweete returne to grace.  
Of just David by perfite penitence,  
Where rulers may see in a myrrour clear,  
The bytter fruite of false concupiscence,  
How Jewry bought Urias death ful deare.  
In princes hartes Gods scourge emprinted depe,  
Ought them awake out of their sinfull slepe.

*Of the Death of the same Sir T. W.*

DIVERS thy death do dyversly bemoere,  
Some that in presence of thy livelighed  
Lurked, whose brestes envy with hate had swolne,  
Yield Ceasars feares upon Pompeus hed,  
Some that watched with the murderers knife,  
With eager thyrist to drinke thy giltlesse blood,  
Whose practise brake by happy end of lyfe,  
With envious teares to heare thy fame so good,  
But I, that knew what harbred in that hed  
What vertues rare were tempred in that brest,  
Honour the place that such a jewel tred,  
And kisse the ground wheras the corps doth rest,  
With vapour d eyes, from whence such streames  
avayle,  
As Pyramus did on Thisbes brest bewayle.

*Of the same.*

WYAT resteth here, that quicke could never rest,  
Whose heavenly gyftes encreaseth by disdayne,  
And vertue sanke the deper in his brest.  
Such profit he by envy could obtayn.

At hed, where wisdom misteries did frame,  
Whose hammers bet styll in that lively braine,  
As on a stythe, where that some worke of fame  
Was dayly wrought, to turn to Britaines gayne.

A vilage sterne, and milde, where both did  
growe,  
Vyce to contemne, in virtue to rejoyce:  
Amyd great stormes, whom grace assured so,  
To live upright, and smile at fortunes choyce.



A hand, that taught what might he sayd in ryme  
 That rest Chaucer the glory of his wit.  
 A marke, the which (unparfited, for time)  
 Some may approche, but never none shall hit.  
 A tong, that served in forein realmes his king,  
 Whose courtous talke to vertue did inflame,  
 Eche noble hart, a woorthy guyde to bring  
 Our English youth, by travayle unto fame.  
 An eye-whole judgment none affect could blind,  
 Friendes to allure and foes to reconcyle;  
 Whose piercing looke did represent a mynde  
 With vertue fraught, reposed voyde of guyle.  
 A hart, where dreade was never so imprest,  
 To hyde the thought, that might the trouth avaunce  
 In neyther fortune lost, nor yet repress,  
 To swell in welth, or yield unto mischaunce,  
 A valiant corps, where force and beauty met,  
 Happy, alas! too happy, but for foes,  
 Lived, and ran the race, that nature set,  
 Of manhodes shape, where she the mold did lose.  
 But when to the heavens that simple soule is fled  
 Which left with such, as covet Christ to knowe,  
 Witness of faith, that never shall be dead;  
 Sent for our health, but not received so.  
 Thus for our gilt, this jewel have we lost,  
 The earth his bones, the heavens possesse his ghost.

*Of the same.*

In the rude age when knowledge was not ryse,  
 If Jove in Crete and other were that taught,  
 Arts to convert to profite of our lyfe,  
 Wend after death to have theyr temples sought,  
 If vertue yet no voyde unthankfull tymes,  
 Fayled of some to blast her endless fame,  
 A goodly meane both to deterre from crime,  
 And to our steppes our sequele to enflame:  
 In dayes of truth if Wyates frendes them wayle,  
 The only det that dead or quick may clayme,  
 That rare wit spent, employed to our avayle,  
 Where Christ is taught we led to vertues trayne.  
 His lively face their breastes how did it treat,  
 Whose cyndres yet, with envy they do eate.

*Of Sardanapalus dishonorable life, and miserable death.*

THASSIRIAN king in peace, with soule desyre,  
 And filthy lustes, that staynde his regall hart.  
 In warre that should set princely heartes on fyre,  
 Did yeld, vanquisht for want of marcial arte,  
 The dynt of swordes from kisses semed strange,  
 And harder, than his ladies fyde, his targe,  
 From glutton feastes, to souldiers fare, a change,  
 His helmet, farre above a garlandes charge,  
 Who sease the name of manhood did retaine,  
 Drenched in slouth, and womannish delight,  
 Feble of sprite, impatient of payne,  
 When he had lost his honour, and his right  
 Proud time of wealth, in stormes appalled with  
 dread,  
 Murdered himselfe, to shewe some manfull dede.

*How no age is content with his owne estate, and how the  
 age of Children is the happiest if they had skill to  
 understand it.*

LARD in my quiet bed, in study as I were  
 I saw within my troubled head, a heap of thoughts  
 appear,  
 And every thought did shew so lyvely in myne  
 eyes,  
 That now I sight, and then I smilde, as cause of  
 thoughts did ryse.  
 I sawe the little boy, in thought how oft that he  
 Did wishe of God, to scape the rod, a tall young  
 man to be,  
 The young man eake that feles his bones with  
 paines opprest  
 How he would be a riche old man, to live and  
 lye at rest? [fore,  
 The riche olde man that sees his end draw on so  
 How he would be a boy againe to live so much  
 the more. [three,  
 Whereat full oft I smylde, to see how all those  
 From boy to man, from man to boy, would chop  
 and change degree.  
 And musing thus, I think, the case is very strange,  
 That man from wealth, to live in wo, doth ever  
 feke to change,  
 Thus thoughtfull as I lay, I sawe my withered skyn,  
 How it doth shew my dented chewes, the flesh  
 was worn so thin,  
 And eke my totheless chaps, the gates of my right  
 way,  
 That opes and shuttes, as I do speak, do thus unto  
 me say;  
 The white and horish heres, the messengers of age,  
 That shew like lines of true belief, that this life  
 doth assuage,  
 Biddes the lay hand, and feele them hanging on  
 thy chin.  
 The whiche doth write to ages past, the third now  
 coming is. [tyme,  
 Hang up therefore the bitte, of thy yong wanton  
 And thou that therein beaten art, the happiest life  
 desyne: [toye,  
 Whereat I sighed, and sayde, farewell my wonted  
 Trusse up thy packe, and trudge from me to every  
 little boy,  
 And tell them thus from me, their time most hap-  
 py is,  
 If to theyr time they reason had, to know the  
 truth of this.

*Bonum est mihi quod humiliasti me.*

THE stormes are past, these clouds are over blowne,  
 And humble chere, great vigour hath repress,  
 For the defaulte is set apayne for knowne,  
 And patience graft in a determed brest.  
 And in the heart where heapes of griefes were  
 growne  
 The swete revenge has planted mirth and rest,  
 No company so pleasant as mine owne,

Thraldom at large, hath made this prifon free,  
 Danger well past remembred workes delight,  
 Of lingering doubles fuche hope is sprong pardie,  
 That nought I finde displeafant in my fight,  
 But when my glaffe presented unto me,  
 The curelefs wound that bledith day and night,  
 To think (alas) fuch hap should graunted be;  
 Unto a wretch that hath fo oft been shed,  
 For Britannes fake (alas) and now is ded.

*Exhortation to learne by others trouble.*

My Ratclif, when thy recheleffe youth offendes,  
 Receive thy scourge by others chaftifement,  
 For fuch calling, when it woorkes none amendes  
 Then places are fent without advertifement;  
 Yet Salomon fayd, the wronged shall recure,  
 But Wyat faid true, the fcarre doth aye endure.

*The fanfie of a wearied Lover.*

The fanfy, which that I have served long,  
 That hath alway been enemy to myne cafe,  
 Semed of late to rue upon my wrong,  
 And badde me flye the caufe of my mifcace.  
 And I furthwith did preafe out of the throng,  
 That thought by flight my painfull heart to please  
 Some other way, till I faw faith more strong,  
 And to my felf I faid, alas, thofe dayes  
 In vain were spent, to runne the race fo long.  
 And with that thought, I met my guyde, that  
 plaine,  
 Out of the way wherein I wandered wrong,  
 Brought me amidde the hilles in bafe Bullayne,  
 Wherein I am now, as restless to remayn,  
 Against my will, full pleased with my payn.

# DIDO AND AENEAS GOING TO THE FIELD \*

TRANSLATED FROM THE FOURTH BOOK OF VIRGIL'S ENEIDE.

—AT the threshold of her chamber dore  
The Carthage lords did on the quene attend;  
The trampling steed, with gold and purple  
trapt,  
Chawing the foaming bit ther fiercely stood.  
Then issued she, awayted with great train,  
Clad in a cloke of Tyre embroider'd rich.  
Her quiver hung behind her back, her tresse  
Knotted in gold, her purple vesture eke  
Buttned with gold. The Trojans of her train  
Before her go, with gladfome Iulus,  
Æneas eke, the goodliest of the route,  
Makes one of them, and joyneth close the throng.  
Like when Apollo leaveth Lycia,  
His wintring place, and Xanthus' flood likewise  
To visit Delos, his mother's mansion,  
Repairing eft and furnishing her quire:  
The Candians and the folke of Driopes  
With painted Agathyrsies, shoute and crye,

Environing the altars round about;  
When that he walkes upon Mount Cynthus' top  
His sparkled tresse repress with garlandes soft,  
Of tender leaves, and trussed up in golde;  
His quivering darts clattering behind his backe,  
So fresh and lustie did Æneas seme—  
But to the hills and wild hales when they came,  
From the rockes top the driver savage rose,  
Loe from the hills above, on thother side,  
Through the wide lawns thy gan to take their  
course.  
The hartes likewise, in troops taking their flight,  
Raising the dust, the mountain fast forsake.  
The childe Iulus, blithe of his swift steede  
Amids the plain, now pricks by them, now  
these;  
And to encounter, wisheth oft in minde,  
The foming boar insteede of fearful beastes,  
Or lion browne, might from the hill descend.

# DIDO'S PASSION, AND ITS EFFECTES ON THE RYSINGE CITIE,

FROM THE SAME BOOK.

—AND when they all were gone,  
And the dimme moon doth ofte withhold her light;  
And sliding starres provoked unto slepe,  
Alone she mourns within her palace voide,  
And sits her downe on her forsaken bed:  
And absent him she heares, when he is gone,  
And seeth eke. Oft in her cuppe she holdes

Afcanius, trapped by his father's forme.  
So to begile the love cannot be told!  
The turrets now arize not, erst begonne:  
Neither the youth welde arms, nor they ayance  
The portes, nor other mete defence for warr.  
Broken there hang the workes, and myhty frame  
Of walles high raised, threatening the skie.

\* This and the two following pieces, are now printed, for the first time, among Surrey's Poems.



*Over the tomb of Thomas Clere, Esq., in Lambeth Church, was formerly a tablet with the following epitaph, written by the Earl of Surrey.*

**E**PITAPHIUM THOMÆ CLERE, qui fato functus est 1545, auctore Henrico Howard comite Surriensi, in cujus felicitis ingenii specimen & singularis facundiae argumentum appensa fuit, hæc tabula per W. Howard, filium Thomæ nuper Ducis Norf. filii ejusdem Henrici comitis Surriensis.

Norfolke sprung thee, Lambeth holds thee dead,  
Clere of the Count of Cleremont thou hight,  
Within the womb of Ormond's race thou bred,  
And sawest thy cosin crowned in thy fight;

Shelton for love, Surrey for Lord thou chafe,  
Aye me while life did last that league was tender  
Tracing whose steps thou sawest Kelfall blaze,  
Laudersey burnt and batter'd Bulleyn's render,  
At Muttrell gates hopeless of all recure  
Thine Earl half dead gave in thy hand his will,  
Which cause did thee this pining death procure  
Ere summers four times seven thou couldst fulfill  
Aye Clere, if love had bootéd care or cost  
Heaven had not wonne, nor earth so timely lost.

THE  
POETICAL WORKS  
OF  
SIR THOMAS WYAT.

Containing his

SONNETS,  
EPISTLES,

|

IMITATIONS,  
TRANSLATIONS,

U. S. S.

To which is prefixed

*THE LIFE OF THE AUTHOR.*

---

They with the Muses who conversed, were  
That princely SURREY, early in the time  
Of the Eight Henry, who was then the prime  
Of England's noble youth. With him there came  
WYAT, with reverence whom we still do name  
Amongst our poets: BRYAN had a share  
With the two former, which accounted are  
The time's best makers, and the authors were  
Of those small poems which the title bear  
Of *Songes and Sonnettes*, wherein oft they hit  
On many dainty passages of wit.

• DRAYTON'S ELEGY TO REYNOLDS.

---

EDINBURGH:

PRINTED BY MUNDELL AND SON, ROYAL BANK CLOSE.

Anno 1793.





---

# THE LIFE OF WYAT.

---

SIR THOMAS WYAT was the son of Henry Wyat, Esq. of Allington Castle, in Kent, where he was born, in the year 1503. He is commonly called the elder, to distinguish him from his son, of the same name, who raised a rebellion in the reign of Queen Mary.

He received the rudiments of his education at Cambridge, and afterwards went to Oxford, where he completed his studies: But his chief and most splendid accomplishments were derived from his travels into various parts of Europe, which he frequently visited in the quality of an envoy.

He was the contemporary and friend of the accomplished and high-spirited Earl of Surrey. A similarity, or rather sameness of taste and of pursuits, as it is a proof, so perhaps it was the chief cement of that inviolable friendship which subsisted between them.

His wit and popular accomplishments rendered him one of the brilliant ornaments of the court of King Henry the Eighth, which at least affected to be polite; and as Henry did not always act from cruelty and caprice, he was endeared to him, for his fidelity and success in the execution of public business, his skill in arms, literature, familiarity with languages, and lively conversation.

Wood, who degrades every thing by poverty of style, says, that "the king was in a high manner delighted with his witty jests." He is reported to have occasioned the Reformation by a joke, and to have planned the fall of Cardinal Wolsey by a seasonable story.

But he had almost lost his popularity, either from an intimacy with Queen Anne Boleyn, which was called a connection, or the gloomy cabals of Bishop Bonner, who could not bear his political superiority.

Yet his prudence and integrity, no less than the powers of his oratory, justified his innocence. He laments his severe and unjust imprisonment, on that occasion, in a sonnet addressed to the brave and accomplished Sir Francis Bryan; insinuating his solicitude, that although the wound would be healed, the scar would remain; and that to be acquitted of the accusation, would avail but little, while the thoughts of having been accused were still fresh in his remembrance.

He recovered his liberty and the king's favour, and was wise enough not to interrupt his pleasures, his convenience, or his ambition; but spent much of his time at Allington Castle, which he magnificently repaired "for the reception," says Jacob, "of one of his noble spirit and refined taste of life; which were more superior to his ancestors than his stately mansion, by the costly reparations, exceeded the ancient structure."

In one of his *epistles to Paines*, on the life of a courtier, his execration of flatterers and courtiers is contrasted with an entertaining picture of his own private life and rural enjoyments at Allington Castle.

This is the cause that I could never yet  
Hang on their sleeves, that weigh, as thou maist see,  
A chip of chaunce more than a pound of wit;  
This maketh me at home to hunt and hawke,  
And in fowle wether at my booke to sit;  
In frost and snowe then with my bow to stalke;  
No man doth marke whereso I ride or go;  
In lusty leas at liberty I walke:  
And of these newes I fele no weale nor wo,  
Save that a clogge doth hang yet at my hele;  
No forle for that, for it is ordered so,  
That I may leape both hedge and dike ful wale.

I am not now in Fraunce, to judge the wine, &c.  
 But I am here in Kent and Christendome,  
 Among the-muses, where I reade and rime.

The "clogge" he complains of, probably alludes to some office which he still held at court, and which sometimes recalled him, but not too frequently, from the country.

It is a common mistake of his biographers, that he died abroad of the plague, in an embassy to Charles the Fifth. Being sent to conduct that emperor's ambassador from Falmouth to London, from too eager and a needless desire of executing his commission with dispatch and punctuality, he caught a fever, by riding in a hot day; and in his return, died on the road at Sherborn, in the year 1541, in the 38th year of his age; and was buried in the great abbey church of that place.

The next year, Leland published a book of Latin verses on his death, intitled, *Nenia in mortem T. Wyati*, with a wooden print of his head, after a painting of Holbein, and the following elegant inscription under the head:

Holbenus nitida pingendi maximus arte,  
 Effigiem expressit graphice, sed nullus Apelles  
 Exprimet ingenium felix, animumque *Wyati*.

His poems were printed by Tottell, in his editions of Surrey's poems, of 1559 and 1565, under the title of *the Songes and Sonnettes of Sir Thomas Wyatt the elder*, and reprinted, with the poems of Surrey, by Dr. Sewel, in 1717; and are now admitted, for the first time, into a collection of classical English poetry.

The poetical pieces of Wyatt, and his friend Surrey, were in high reputation with their contemporaries, and for many years afterwards. They are thus characterised by Puttenham, the author of the old "Art of English Poetrie," whose opinion remained long as a rule of criticism: "In the latter end of the same kinge's (Henry's) raigne, spronge up a new company of wit makers, of whom Sir Thomas Wyatt the elder, and Henry Earle of Surrey, were the two *chieftaines*; who having tra-vailed into Italie, and there tasted the sweete and stately measures and style of the Italian poesie, as novises newly crept out of the schooles of Dante, Ariosto, and Petrarch, they greatly polished our rude and homely manner of vulgar poesie from that it had been before, and for that cause may justly be sayd the first reformers of our English meetre and style." And again, "Henry Earl of Surrey, and Sir Thomas Wyatt, between whom I find very little difference, I repute them (as before) for the two chief lanternes of light to all others that have since employed their pennes upon English poesie: Their conceits were lofty, their styles stately, their conveyance cleanly, their terms proper, their meetre sweet, and well proportioned; in all, imitating very naturally and studiously their maister, Francis Petrarch." P. 48—50. Edit. 1589.

Leland is lavish in his praise, and scruples not to compare him to Dante and Petrarch:

Let Florence fair her *Dante* justly boast,  
 And royal Rome her *Petrarch's* number'd feet;  
 In *English Wyatt*, both of them doth coast,  
 In whom all graceful eloquence doth meet.

In Surrey's elegy on the death of Wyatt, his character is delineated in the following nervous and manly quatrains:

A visage sterne and mild, where both did growe;  
 Vice to contemne, in vertue to rejoyce;  
 Amid great stormes, whom grace assured so  
 To live upright, and smile at fortune's choyce.

## THE LIFE OF WYAT.

A tounge that lerved in forein realmes his king;  
Whose courteous talk to vertue did enflame  
Eche noble heart; a worthy guide to bring  
Our English youth by travail unto fame;

An eye, whose judgment none affect could blind;  
Friend to allure, and foes to reconcile;  
Whose perling look did represent a minde  
With virtue fraught, reposed, void of gile.

A hart, where dreade was never so imprest  
To hide the thought that might the truth advance;  
In neither fortune lost, nor yet repress,  
To swell in welth, or yeld unto mischance.—

Thy fame, great Wyat, shall by all be read;  
What vertues rare were temper'd in thy breast!  
Honour that England such a jewel bred,  
And kisse the ground whereon thy corpe did rest.

It will be superfluous to transcribe the panegyrics of his contemporaries, after this encomium of Surrey, in which his amiable character owes more to truth than to the graces of poetry, or to the flattery of friendship.

It is mentioned, to his honour, by Puttenham, that he co-operated with Surrey in correcting the roughness of our poetic style. He certainly deserves equally of posterity with Surrey for the diligence with which he cultivated elegant literature. But in his poetical capacity, he seems to have wanted the judgment of his friend Surrey, who, in imitating Petrarch, resisted the contagion of his conceits. He has more imitations, and even translations from the Italian poets, than Surrey; and he seems to have been more fond of their conceits. He is confessedly inferior to him in harmony of numbers, perspicuity of expression, and facility of phraseology. Nor is he equal to him in elegance of sentiment, in nature and sensibility. His feelings are disguised by affectation, and obscured by fantastic incongruities. His declarations of passion are embarrassed by wit and fancy; and his style is not intelligible, in proportion as it is careless and unadorned.

His chief merit is of the moral and didactic kind. His poems abound more in good sense, satire, and observations on life, than in pathos and imagination. Yet there is a degree of lyric sweetness in the lines to his lute, in which *the lover complaineth the unkindness of his love*; and in the little ode, or rather epigram on his return from Spain into England, there is great simplicity and propriety, together with a strain of poetic allusion. In the satiric vein of his *epistles to Paines and Bryan*, there is much of the familiar elegance of Horace; a style of writing which Cowper has caught with great success, in his "Table Talk," &c. &c.

Among Wyat's poems, is an unfinished translation, in Alexandrian verse, of the song of Jopas, in the first book of Virgil's *Æneid*. Wyat's and Surrey's versions from Virgil, are the first regular translations in English of an ancient classical poet. A version of David's *Psalms*, by Wyat, is highly extolled by Surrey and Leland. But Wyat's version of the *Penitential Psalms*, seems to be a separate work from his translation of the whole psalter; and probably that which is praised by Surrey, is the ode, intituled, *Praise of certaine Psalmes of David, translated by Sir Thomas Wyat the elder*. They were printed in 1549. But this version, with that of Surrey, mentioned in his life, is now lost. The character of Wyat has received every possible illustration from Lord Orford and Mr. Warton; after whose discriminating touches, every stroke from a casual hand must serve rather to injure than improve the likeness.

"It was from the capricious and over-strained invention of the Italian poets," says Mr. Warton, "that Wyat was taught to torture the passion of love, by prolix and intricate comparisons, and unnatural allusions. I am of opinion, that he mistook his talents, when in compliance with the mode, he be-



came a sonneteer; and, if we may judge from a few instances, that he was likely to treat any other subject with more success than that of love. His abilities were seduced and misapplied, in fabricating fine speeches to an obdurate mistress. He appears a much more pleasing writer, when he moralises on the felicities of retirement, and attacks the vanities and vices of a court, with the honest indignation of an independent philosopher, and the freedom and pleasantry of Horace. Three of his epistles are professedly written in this strain; and we must regret, that he has not left more pieces in a style of composition for which he seems to have been eminently qualified."

To the poems of Surrey and Wyatt, are annexed, in Tottell's edition, those of *Uncertain Authors*. Many of these pieces are much in the manner of Surrey and Wyatt, which was the fashion of the times. They are all anonymous; but probably Sir Francis Bryan, George Boleyn Earl of Rochford, and Lord Vaux, contemporary rhymers and sonnetteers, were large contributors. Two of them, intituled, *The Aged Lover renounceth Love*, in which are three stanzas of the grave-digger's song in Shakespear's Hamlet, and *The Assaulte of Cupide*, &c. are the undoubted production of Lord Vaux; "a man of marvellous facility in vulgar making."

The merit of some of those pieces is so considerable, as to justify a selection; and the reader owes to the compiler of these narratives, whatever pleasure or disgust he may have in finding a specimen of the first printed poetical miscellany in the English language in this collection.

What has pleased himself, he has undertaken to recommend to others; and as sense and genius are not wanting in the pieces he has endeavoured to preserve, it will not be so much the fault of the writers, as of the language, if they are not read with pleasure.

The stanzas, intituled, *A Praise of his Ladie*, have that elegance which results from simplicity. The thoughts support themselves, without the affectations of language; and the compliments are such as would not disgrace the gallantry or the poetry of a polished age. Puttenham speaks highly of the "counterfait action" in Lord Vaux's *Assaulte of Cupide*; but there is more poetry in some of the old pageants, than in the contrivance of the allegory of this piece. In the little ode intituled *of his mistress M. B.* much pretty description and imagination is built on the circumstance of a lady being named Bayes. *Harpalus's complaint of Philtidae's love bestowed on Corin*, is perhaps the first example in our language now remaining of the pure unmixed pastoral; and for ease of numbers, elegance of rural allusion, and simplicity of imagery, excels every thing of the kind in Spenser, who is erroneously ranked as our earliest English bucolic. In the poem, intituled, *That all things sometime finde ease of their paine, save only the lover*, some of the stanzas deserve attention for their simple beauty and native force of expression. In the ode, in which *The lover in despair lamenteth his case*, there is more pathos and feeling than in any other piece of the whole collection. The epigram, *Of a new married student*, who was pursuing his studies successfully, but in the midst of his literary career, married unfortunately, contains a general joke on an unhappy match. It is, perhaps, the first pointed epigram in the English language; and may have fallen from the pen of Sir Thomas More, one of the best jesters of that age. In the elegant little ode, intituled, *The Lover that once disdained love*, &c. are the two lines said to be written by Mary Queen of Scots, in a window, at Fotheringay castle.

From the toppe of all my trust,

Mishap hath throwen me in the dust.

The unfortunate queen only quoted a distich applicable to her situation, which she remembered in a fashionable collection of poems, perhaps the amusement of her youth. With the *Songes and Sonnettes of Uncertain Authors*, the original editor has printed *Songes written by N. G.*, the initials of Nicholas Grimoald, who is the second English poet after Surrey that wrote in blank verse; to which he added new strength, elegance, and modulation. As a writer of verse in rhyme he yields to none of his contemporaries, for a masterly choice of chaste expression, and the concise elegancies of didactic versification. His poem in *Praise of Measure keeping* has all the smartness which belongs to the modern style of sententious poetry. The stanzas *on the Nine Muses* are more poetical, and not less correct. His poems *on the Death of Cicero*, and *the Death of Zoroas*, are impregnated almost throughout by a warmth of imagination, and the spirit of pathetic poetry.

It would be unpardonable to dismiss the poetical works of Wyatt unaccompanied by those admirable specimens of ancient genius, for which English literature is highly indebted to Richard Tottell, who, at a critical period, collected and preserved them from the general depredations of time, in a printed volume.

## SONGES AND SONETTES.

*The lover for soamefastnesse hideth his desire within his  
faithful heart.*

THE long love, that in my thought I harbor  
And in my heart doth kepe his residence,  
Into my face preaseth with bold pretence,  
And there campeth, displaying his banner;  
She that me learns to love, and to suffer,  
And willes that my trust and lustes negligence  
Be reyned by reason, shame, and reverence  
With his hardinesse takes displeasure,  
Wherewith love to the hartes forest he fleeth,  
Leaving his enterprise with paine and crye,  
And there him hideth and not appeareth,  
What may I do? when my maister feareth,  
But in the field with him to live and dye,  
For good is the lyfe, ending faithfully.

*The lover waxeth wyser, and will not dye for affec-  
tion.*

YET was I never of your love agreved,  
Nor never shall, whyle that my life doth last;  
But of hating my self, that date is past,  
And tears continuall sore hath me wried:  
I will not yet in my greave be buried,  
Nor on my tombe your name have fixed fast,  
As cruel cause, that did my sprite soon hast,  
From th' unhappie bones by great syghes styred;  
Then if an heart of amorous faith and will  
Content your mind withouten doing grief,  
Please it you so to this to do relief,  
If otherwyse you seke for to fulfyll  
Your wrath, you erre, and shal not as you wene,  
And you your self the cause thereof have bene.

*The abused lover seeth his folly, and intendeth to trust no  
more.*

WAS never fyle yet half so well yfyled,  
To fyle a fyle for any smithes entent,  
As I was made a fying instrument,  
To frame other, while that I was begyled,  
But reason loe, hath at my folly smyled,

And pardoned me, sins that I me repent,  
Of my last yeres, and of my tyme mispent.  
For youth led me, and falshod me misguyded,  
Yet, this trust I have of great appearance,  
Sins that deceyt is aye returnable,  
Of very force it is agreable,  
That therewithall be done the recompence,  
Then gyle begiled, plain'd should be never  
And the reward is little trust for ever.

*The lover describeth his being striken with sight of his  
love.*

THE lively sparkes, that issue from those eyes  
Against the which there vaileth no defence,  
Have perst my hart, and done it none offence,  
With quaking pleasure, more than once or twice  
Was never man could any thing devyse,  
Sunne beames to turne with so great vehemence  
To dase mans sight, as by their bright presence  
Dased am I, much lyke unto the gyle,  
Of one striken with dint of lightening,  
Blind with the stroke, and crying here and there;  
So call I for help, I not when or where,  
The payn of my fall patiently bearing;  
For streight after the blase (as is no wonder)  
Of deadly noyse heare I the fearfull thunder.

*The wavering lover willeth and dreads to move his  
desire.*

SUCH vayn thought, as wonted to mislead me  
In desert hope by well assured mone,  
Makes me from company to live alone,  
In following her, whom reason biddes me flee,  
And after her my heart would fain be gone,  
But armed sighes my way do stop anone,  
Twixt hope and dreade locking my libertie,  
So fleeth she by gentle crueltie,  
Yet as I geasse under disdainfull brow,  
One beam of truche is in her cloudy looke,  
Which comforts the mind, that earst for fear shooke  
That boldest strayght, the way then seeke I how  
To utter forth the smart I hyde within,  
But such it is, I not how to begin.

*The lover having dreamed enjoying of his love, complaineth that the dreame is not either longer or truer.*

UNSTABLE dreame according to the place,  
Be steadfast ones, or els at least be true,  
By tasted sweetnesse, make me not to rew,  
By good respect in such a dangerous case.  
Thou broughtest not her into these tossing seas,  
But madest my spirit to live, my care tencease,  
My body in tempest her delight tembrance,  
The body dead, the spryte had his desire,  
Painlesse was th' one, the other in delight,  
Why then, alas! did it not kepe it right,  
But thus returne to leape into the fyre.  
And where it was at with, could not remaine,  
Such mockes of dreames do turn to deadly payne,

*The lover unhappy, biddeth happy lovers rejoice in May, while he wayleth that month to him most unluckely.*

Ye that in love find lucke and swete abundance,  
And live in lust of joyfull jollitie,  
Aryse for shame, do way your sluggardy,  
Arise, I say, do May some observance,  
Let me in beds lye dreaming of mischaunce,  
Let me remember my mishappes unhappy,  
That me betide in May most commonly.  
As one whome love list little to advance.  
Stephan said true, that my nativitie  
Mischaunced was with the ruler of May:  
He gest (I prove) of that the veritie  
In May welth, and eke my wittes, I say,  
Have stand so oft in such perplexitie,  
Joy, let me dreame of your felicitie.

*The lover confesseth himself in love with Phillis.*

Is waker care, if sodayne pale colour,  
If many sighes with little speeche to plaine,  
Now joy, now we, if they my chere distaine,  
For hope of smal, if much to fear therefore,  
To hast or slacke, my pace to lesse or more  
Be sygne do love, then to I love againe:  
If thou aske whome, sure syngs I did refraine,  
Brunet that set my welth in such a tore;  
Th' unfained chere of Phillis hath the place  
That Brunet had, she hath and ever shall,  
She from my self now hath me in her grace,  
She hath in hand my wit, my will and all.  
My heart alone wel woorthy she doth gay,  
Without whose helpe skant do I live a day.

*Of others fained sorrow, and the lovers falsed mirth.*

CEZAR when that the traitour of Egypt  
With t' honourable head did him present  
Covering his heartes gladnesse, did represent  
Playne with his teares outward, as it is writ,

Eke Hanniball, when fortune him out thit  
Clene from his reigne, and all his entent,  
Laught to his folke, whom sorow did torment,  
His cruel dispite for to disgorge and quit,  
So chaunced me, that every passion  
The mynd hydeth by colour contrary,  
With fained visage, now sad, now wery,  
Whereby if that I laugh at any season,  
It is because I have none other way  
To cloake my care, but under sporte and play.

*Of change in minde.*

EENE man me tel'th, I change most my devise,  
And on my faith, methinke it good reason;  
To chaunge purpose, like after the season,  
For in eche case to kepe still one guise,  
Is mete for them, that would be taken wyse,  
And I am not of such maner condicion,  
But treated after a divers fashion,  
And thereupon my diversenesse doth ryse,  
But you this diversenesse that bliamen most,  
Change you no more, but still after one rare,  
Treate you me welle, and kepe you in that state.  
And while with me doth dwell this weried  
ghost,  
My woord nor I shall not be variable,  
But always one, your own both firm and stable.

*How the lover persisteth in his delight, as the flye in the fier.*

SOME fowles there be that have no persite sight,  
Against the sunne their eyes for to defend,  
And some because the light doth them offend,  
Never appere, but in the darke or night:  
Others rejoyce, to see the fire so bright,  
And wene to play in it, as they pretend,  
But fynd contrary of it, as they entende,  
Alas of that sort, may I be by right.  
For to withstand her looke I am not able,  
Yet can I not hyde me in no darke place,  
So followeth me remembrance of that face;  
That with my teary eyen, swolne, and mistable,  
My destiny to behold her doth me leade,  
And yet I know I runne into the glead.

*Against his tong that failed to utter his suites.*

BECAUSE I still kept thee fro lyes and blame,  
And to my power alwayes true honowred,  
Unkind tongue, to yll hast thou me rendred,  
For such desert to do me wreke and shame.  
In nede of succour most when that I am  
To ask he rewarde, thou standes lyke one afrayde,  
Alway most cold: and if one word be sayd,  
As in a dreame, unperfit is the same:  
And ye salt teares, against my will each night,  
That are with me when I would be alone,



Then are ye gone, when I should make my mone,  
And ye so ready fighes, to make me thrigh,  
Then are ye slacke, when that ye shoulde outstart,  
And only doth my loke declare my hart.

*Description of the contrarious passions in a lover.*

I **FIND** no peace, and all my warre is done,  
I feare and hope, I burne, and frese lyke yse,  
I flye aloft, yet can I not aryse,  
And nought I have, and all the world I season,  
That lockes nor loseth, holdeth me in prision,  
And holdes me not, yet can I scape no wyse,  
Nor lettes me live, nor dye, at my devyse,  
And yet of death it geveth me occasion,  
Without eye I see, without tongue I playne,  
I wish to perishe, yet I ask for health,  
I love another, and I hate my selfe,  
I fede me in sorow, and laugh in all my payne.  
Lo, thus displeaseth me, both death and life,  
And my delight is causer of this strife.

*The lover compareth his state to a shippe in perilous  
storme tossed on the sea.*

My gally charged with forgetfulnesse,  
Through sharpe seas, in winter nightes doth passe,  
Twene rocke, and rocke, and eke my foe (alas)  
That is my lord, stereth with cruelnesse.  
And every houre, a thought in readinesse,  
As though that death wer light in such a case,  
And endlesse wynde doth teare the sayle apace  
Of forced fighes and trusty fearfulnessse:  
A rayne of teares, a cloude of dark disdayne,  
Have done the weried coardes great hinderance;  
Wretched with errour, and with ignorance,  
The starres be hidde, that lead me to this payne.  
Drounde is reason that shoulde be my comforte,  
And I remayne, disparing of the porte.

*Of doubtful love.*

Avysing the bright beames of those fayre eyes,  
Where he abides that mine oft moystes and  
washeth  
The wearied mynde streight from the heart de-  
parteth,  
To rest within his worldly paradyse;  
And bitter findes the swete, under his gyf,  
What webbes there he hath wrought, well he  
perceiveth,  
Wherby then with hymselfe on love he playneth,  
That spurs with fyre, and brydlerh eke with yse:  
In such extremitie thus is he brought,  
Frozen now cold, and now he standes in flame,  
Twixt wo and wealth, betwixt earnest and gaine,  
With feldome glad, and many a divers thought;  
In tore repentance of his hardinesse,  
Of such a roote loe cometh frate frutelesse.

*The lover sheweth how he is forsaken of such as he  
sometime enjoyed.*

THEY flee from me, that sometime did me seke,  
With naked fote stalking within my chamber,  
Once have I sene them gentle, tame, and meke,  
That now are wyld, and do not once remember,  
That sometime they have put themselves in dan-  
ger,

To take bread at my hand, and now they range,  
Busely seeking in continual change.

Thanked be fortune, it hath been otherwyle,  
Twenty tymes better, but once especiall,  
In thine aray, after a pleasaunt gyfe,  
When her loose gowne did from her shouldera  
fall,

And she me caught in her armes long and small;  
And therewithall, so swetely did me kyffe,  
And softly sayd, dear hearte, how like you this?

It was no dreame, for I lay brode awaking.  
But all is turned now through my gentlenessse,  
Into a bitter fashon of forsaking,  
And I have leave to goe of her goodnesse;  
And she also to use new fanglenessse,  
But, syns that I unkendly so am served,  
How like you this, what hath she now deserved?

*The Lady to aunswere directly with yea or nay.*

MADAME, withouten many woordes,  
Once I am sure, you will, or no:  
And if you will, then leave your boordes,  
And use your wit, and shew it so.  
For with a beck you shall me call,  
And if of one, that burnes alwaye,  
Ye have pitie, or ruth at all,  
Aunswere him faire with ye or nay,  
If it be nay, frendes as before,  
You shall an other man obtayne,  
And I myne own, and yours no more.

*To his love whom he had kissed against her will.*

ALAS, madame, for stealing of a kisse,  
Have I so much your mind therein offended?  
Or have I done so grievously amisse,  
That by no meenes it may not be amended?  
Revenge you then, the readiest way is this,  
Another kisse my life it shall have ended,  
For, to my mouth the first my hart did sucke.  
The next shall cleane out of my brest it plucke.

*Of the jealous man that loved the same woman, and  
espied this other sitting with her.*

THE wandering gadling in the sommer tyde,  
That findes the adder with his rechles foote,  
Startes not dismayde so sodenly asyde,  
As jealous despite did, though ther wer no boote

When that he saw me sitting by her syde,  
That of my health is very crop and roote.  
It pleased me then to have so faire a grace,  
To sting the hart, that would have had my place.

*To his love from whom he had his gloves.*

WHAT nedes these threatning wordes, and wafted  
winde :

Al this cannot make me restore my pray,  
To robbe your good, ywis is not my mynde,  
Nor causelesse your fair hand did I display,  
Let love be judge, or els whom next we finde,  
That may both heare what you and I can say,  
She rest my hart, and I a glove from her,  
Let us see, then, if one be worth the other.

*Of the fayed friend.*

RYCHT true it is, and sayd full yore ago,  
Take hede of him that by the back thee claweth :  
For none is worse than is a frendly so,  
Though thee seme good, all thing that the de-  
liteth,  
Yet know it well, that in thy bosome crepeth,  
For many a man such fire oft times he kindleth,  
That with the blase his beard himself he singeth.

*The lover taught, mistrusteth allurements.*

It may be good, lyke it who list,  
But I do doubt who can me blame ?  
For oft assured, yer have I mist,  
And now again I fear the same :  
The woordes, that from your mouth last came,  
Of sodeyn change make me agast,  
For dread to fall, I stand not fast.  
Alas ! I tread an endless mase,  
That seke t' accord two contraries,  
And hope thus still, and nothing hase,  
Imprisoned in liberties,  
As one unheard, and still that cries,  
Always thirsty, and nought doth taste,  
For dread to fall I stand not fast.

Assured I doubt I be not sure,  
Should I then trust unto such surety,  
That oft hath put the profe in ure  
And never yet have found it truttie.  
Nay, for in sayth, it were great folly,  
And yet my life thus do I wast,  
For dread to fall I stand not fast.

*The lover complaineth that his love doth not pitie him.*

RESOUND my voyce ye woods, me heare me plain,  
Both hills and vales causing reflection,  
And rivers eke, record ye of my payne,

As judges lo to hear my exclamacion,  
Among whom ruth (I finde) ye doth remayne,  
Where I it seke, alas ! there is disdayne.

Oft ye rivers, to heare my wofull found,  
Have stopt your cours, and playnly to expresse,  
Many a teare by moysture of the ground,  
The earth hath wept to hear my heavinesse;  
Which causelesse I endure without redresses,  
The hugy okes have roared in the wynde,  
Eche thing me thought, complayning in their  
kind.

Why then alas ! doth not she on me rue,  
Or is her heart so hard, that no pittie;  
May in it sinke, my joy for to renew ;  
O stony hart, who hath thus framed thee  
So cruel, that art cloked with beauty,  
That from thee may no grace to me proceede,  
But as reward, death for to be my mede.

*The lover rejoyseth against fortune, that by hindering  
his suite had happely made him forsake his folly.*

In faith I wote not what to say,  
Thy chaunces been so wonderous,  
Thou fortune with thy divers play,  
That makest the joyfull dolorous.  
Yet though thy chaine hath me enwrapt,  
Spyte of thy hap, hap hath well hapt,  
Though thou hast set me for a wonder,  
And sekest by change to do me payne,  
Mens myndes yet mayst thou not so order,  
For honestie if it remayne,  
Shall shine for al thy cloudy rayne ;  
In vayne thou sekest to have me trapt,  
Spyte of thy hap, hap hath well hapt.

In hindering me, me didst thou furthur,  
And made a gap, where was a styck,  
Cruel wiles been oft put under,  
Wening to lower, then didst thou smyle.  
Lord, how thy self thou didst begyle,  
That in thy cares would have me wrapt,  
But spyte of hap, hap hath well hapt.

*A renouncing of hardelic escaped love.*

FAREWELL the hard of cruelty,  
Though that with pain my liberty,  
Dear have I bought, and wofully,  
Finisht my fearefull tragedy.  
Of force I must forsake such pleasure,  
A good cause just, firs I endure,  
Therby my wo, which be ye sure,  
Shall therwith go me to recure.

I fare as one escapt that fleeth,  
Glad he is gone, and yet styll feareth,  
Spied to be caught and so dredeth  
That he for nought his pain lesseth  
In joyfull payn, rejoyce my hart,  
Thus to sustayn of eche a part.  
Let not this song from thee astart,

*The lover to his bed, with describing of his unquiet state.*

THE restfull place, renuer of my smart,  
The labours salve encreasing my sorow,  
The bodies ease, and troubler of my hart,  
Quieter of minde, myne unquiet foe,  
Forgeatter of payne, rememberer of my woe,  
The place of slepe, wherein I do but wake,  
Besprent with teares, my bed, I thee forsake,  
The frosty snowes may not redress my heate,  
Nor, theate of funne abate my fervent cold,  
I know nothing to ease my paine so great  
Eche cure causeth encrease by twenty fold,  
Renewing cares upon my sorrows old,  
Such overthwart effectes in me they make,  
Besprent with teares, my bed for to forsake.  
But all for nought, I find no better ease,  
In bed or out, this most causeth my paine,  
Where do I seek how best that I may please,  
My lost labour (alas) is all in vayne,  
My heart once set, I cannot it refrayne,  
No place from me my grief away can take,  
Wherefore with teares, my bed I thee forsake.

*Comparison of love, to a streame falling from the Alps.*

FROM these hye hilles as when a spring doth fall,  
It trilleth downe with still and suttile course,  
Of this and that, it gathers aye and shall,  
Till it have just downe flowed to streame and  
force,  
Then at the foote it rageth over all:  
So fareth love, when he hath tane a course,  
Rage is his rayne, resistance vayneleth none,  
The first eschue is remedy alone.

*Wyates complaint upon love to reason, with loves  
answere.*

MYNE old dere enemy, my froward maister,  
A fore that quene, I causde to be acyted,  
Which holdeth the divine part of our nature,  
That like as golde, in fyre he mought be tryed.  
Charged with a dolour, there I me presented  
With horrible feare, as one that greatly dreadeth  
A wrongfull death, and justice alway seeketh.  
And thus I say'd: Once my left foote, madame,  
When I was yong, I set within his raigne;  
Whereby other then fyrely burning flame,  
I never felt, but many a grievous payne,  
Torment I suffred anger and disdayne:  
That mine oppressed patience was past,  
And I mine owne life hated at the last.  
Thus hitherto have I my tyme passed  
In paine and smart, what wayes is profitable,  
How many pleasant dayes have me escaped,  
In serving this false lyer so deceivable?  
What wit have wordes so prest and forceable,  
That may containe my great mishappinesse,  
And just complaintes of his ungentlenesse?

So small hony, much aloes, and gall,  
In bitternesse, my blinde life hath ytasted  
His false semblance, that turneth as a ball,  
With fair and amorous daunce, made me be traced,  
And where I had my thought and minde araced,  
From earthly fraynesse, and from vaine pleasure,  
Me from my rest he took and set in error.

God made he me regardlesse, than I ought,  
And to my selfe to take right little hede:  
And for a woman have I set at nought,  
Al other thoughtes, in this only to speede,  
And he was onely counseler of this dede.  
Whetting alwayes my youthly fraile desyre,  
On cruel whetstone, tempered with fyre.

But (oh alas!) where had I ever wit?  
Or other gift geven to me of nature?  
That sooner shal be changed my wried sprite,  
Then the obstinate will, that is my ruler,  
So robbeth he my fredome with displeasure,  
This wicked traytour, whom I thus accuse,  
That bitter life hath turned in pleasant use.  
He hath me hasted, through divers regions,  
Through desert woodes, and sharpe by mountaynes,  
Through froward people, and through bitter  
passions,

Through rocky seas, and over hilles and plaines:  
With wery travel, and with laborous paynes,  
Alwayes in trouble and in tediousnesse,  
All in error, and daungerous distresse.

But nother he, nor she, my tother foe,  
For all my flight did ever me forsake;  
That though my timely death hath been to slowe  
That me as yet, it hath not overtake:  
The heavenly gods of pitie doe it flake,  
And note they this his cruell tyranny,  
That feedes him, with my care, and misery.

Sins I was his, howe rested I never,  
Nor looke to doe, and eke the waky nightes,  
The banished slepe may in no wise recover.  
By guyle and force, over my thralld spites  
He is ruler, sins which bell never strikes,  
That I hear not as sounding to renue  
My plaintes. Himself he knoweth that I say  
true.

For never woormes old rotten stocke have eaten,  
As he my hart, where he is resident,  
And doth the same with death daily threaten,  
Thence come the teares, and thence the bitter  
torment,

The sighes, the woordes and eke the languish-  
That noy both me, and paraventure other,  
Judge thou that knowest the one and eke the other.

Mine adversarie with such grevous reproofe,  
Thus he began, Hear lady the other part:  
That the plain trouth, from which he draweth  
aloofe,

This unkind man may shew, ere that I part,  
In his yong age, I tooke him from that art,  
That selleth woordes, and make clattering knight,  
And of my wealth I gave him the delight.

Now shames he not on me for to complaine,  
That held him evermore in pleasant gayne,  
From his desire that night have been his payne,  
Yet therby alone I brought him to some frame,  
Which now as wretchednes, he doth so blame,



And toward honour quickned I his wit,  
Whereas a dastard els he mought have sit.  
He knewed how great Atride that made Troy  
freat,

And Hannibal to Rome so troubelous,  
Whom Homer honoured Achilles that great,  
And th' Affricane Scipion the famous,  
And many other, by much honour glorious,  
Whose fame and actes did lift them up above,  
I did let fall in base dishonest love.

And unto him, though he unworthy were,  
I chose the best of many a million,  
That under sunne yet never was her pere,  
Of wisdom womanhod, and of discrecion,  
And of my grace I gave her such a facion,  
And eke such way I taught her for to teache  
That never base thought his hart so hie might  
reache.

Ever more thus to content his maistresse  
That was his only frame of honestie,  
I stirred him still toward gentlenesse,  
And caused him to regard fidelitie;  
Pacience I taught him in adversitie;  
Such vertues learned he in my great schoole,  
Whereof repenteth now the ignorant foole.

These were the same decrites, and bitter gall,  
That I have used, the torment and the anger,  
Sweter than ever did to other fall,  
Of right good seed, ill fruite so thus I gather,  
And so shall he that the unkinde doth further;  
A serpent nourish I under my wing,  
And now of nature ginneth he to sting.

And for to tell at last, my great service,  
From thousandes dishonesties have I him drawn,  
That, by my meanes, him in no manner wyse,  
Never vyle pleasure once hath overthrowen,  
Wherin his dede, shame hath him alwayes gnawen,  
Doubting report that should come to her eare,  
Whom now he blames, her wonted he to feare;

What ever he hath of any honest custome,  
Of her, and me, that holds he every whit,  
But lo, yet never was there nightly fantome,  
So farre in error, as he is from his wit,  
To plain on us, he striveth with the bit;  
Which may rule him, and do him ease, and paine,  
And in one hower, make all his grieve his gaine.

But one thing yet there is above all other,  
I gave him winges, wherewith he might up flye,  
To honour and fame, and if he woulde to hygher,  
Then mortal things, above the starry skye;  
Considering the pleasure, that an eye  
Might geue in earth, by reason of the love,  
What should that be, that latteth still above?

And he the same himself hath said ere this,  
But now, forgotten is both that and I,  
That gave him her, his only wealth and blisse,  
And at this woode, with deadly shreke and crye:  
Thou gave her once (quod I) but by and by  
Thou took her ayen from me: that woworth the  
Not I, but price, more worth than thou (quod he.)

At last, eche other for himself, concluded,  
I trembling still, but he, with small reverence,  
Lo, thus, as we eche other have accused,  
Dare lady now we wayte thene only sentence;  
She smiling, at the whistled audience,

I liketh me, quod she, to have heard your question,  
But longer time doth aske a resolution.

*The lovers sorrowfull state maketh him write sorrowfull  
songes, but fouche, his love may change the same.*

MARILL no more altho,  
The songes, I sing do mone  
For other life then woe,  
I never proved none.

And in my heart also,  
Is graven with letters deepe,  
A thousand sighes and mo  
A flood of teares to weepe.

How many a man in smart,  
Find a matter to rejoyce!

How many a morning hart,  
Set forth a pleasant voyce:  
Play who so can that part,  
Nedes must in me appere,  
How fortune overthwart  
Doth cause my morning chere.

Perdy there is no man  
If he saw never fight,  
That perfitly tell can,  
The nature of the light.

Alas, how should I than,  
That never tast but sowre,  
But do as I began,  
Continually to lowre.

But yet perchance some chance,  
May chance to change my tune,  
And when (fouche) chance doth chance,  
Then shall I thanke fortune.

And if I have (fouche) chance,  
Purchance or it be long,  
For (fouche) a pleasant chance,  
To sing some pleasant song.

*The lover complaineth himself forsaken.*

WHERE shall I have at mine own wil,  
Teares to complaine, where shall I set  
Such sighes, that I may sigh my fill,  
And then again my plaintes repete?  
For though my plaint shall have none,  
My tares cannot suffice my woe lend,  
To mone harm, have I no friend,  
For fortunes frend is mishappes foe.  
Comfort (God wot) els have I none,  
But in the wind to waft my woordes,  
Nought moneth you my dedly mone,  
But still you turn it into boordes:  
I speak not now, to move your heart,  
That you should rue upon my pain,  
The sentence geven may not revert,  
I know such labour were but vain.  
But fens that I for you (my dere)  
Have lost that thing, that was my best,  
A right small loss it must appere,  
To lese these woordes, and all the rest.

But though they sparkle in the wind,  
Yet shall they shew your faithfull fayth,  
Which is returned to his kind,  
For lyke to lyke, the proverbe saith.  
Fortune and you did me avance,  
Me thought I swam, and could not drowne,  
Happiest of al, but my mischaunce  
Did lift me up to throw me downe.  
And you with her, of cruelness,  
Did set your foole upon my necke,  
Me, and my welfare to oppress.  
Without offence your heart to wreke.  
Where are your pleasant woordes (alas)  
Where is your faith, your stedfastness?  
There is no more but all doth pass,  
And I am left all comfortles.  
But sins so much it doth you greve,  
And also me my wretched lyfe,  
Have here my trowth nought shall relieve,  
But death alone, my wretched strife.  
Therefore farewell, my lyfe, my death,  
My gayne, my losse, my salve, my sore,  
Farewel also, with you my breath,  
For I am gone for evermore.

*Of his love that pricked her finger with a needle.*

She sate and sowed that hath done me the wrong,  
Whereof I plain, and have done many a day,  
And, whilst she heard my plaint, in piteous song,  
She wisht my heart the sampler, that it lay.  
The blind maister, whome I have served so long,  
Grudging to heare, that he did heare her say,  
Made her own weapon do her finger blede,  
To seele, if pricking were so good indede.

*Of the same.*

WHAT man hath hearde such crueltie before,  
That, when my plaint remembred her my wo,  
That caused it, she cruell more and more,  
Wished eche stich, as she did sit and sow,  
Had prickt my heart, for to encrease my sore;  
And as I thinke, she thought that had been so,  
For as she thought, this is heart in dede,  
She prickt hard, and made herself to blede.

*Request to Cupide for revenge of his unkind love.*

BEHOLD love, thy power how she despyseth  
My grievous payn, how little she regardeth  
The solemne othe whereof she takes no cure,  
Broken she hath, and yet she bydeth sure.  
Right at her ease, and little thee she dredeth,  
Weaponed thou art, and she unarmed sitteth;  
To the disdaine, all her lyfe she leadeth  
To me spitefule, without just cause or measure:  
Behold Love, how proudly she triumpheth,  
I am in hold, but if the pittie moveth,

Go, bend thy bow, that stony hartes breaketh,  
And with some stroke, revenge the great displea-  
sure;  
Of thee, and him that sorow doth endure,  
And as his lord the lowly her entreateth.

*Complaint for true love unrequited.*

WHAT vailleth trowth, or by it to take pain,  
To strive by stedfastness, for to attain;  
How to be just, and free from doubleness,  
Since all alike, where ruleth craftinesse.  
Rewarded is both crafty, false, and plain?  
Soonest he spides, that must can lye and faine.  
True meaning hart is had in hygge disdaine;  
Against deceit and cloked doubleness,  
What vailleth trowth, or perfect stedfastnesse.  
Deceived is he, by false and craftie train,  
That meanes no gile, and faithfull doth remaine.  
Within the trap, without help or redresse,  
But for to love, lo, such a stern maistrisse,  
Where crueltie dwelles, alas it were in vain.

*The lover that fled love, now folowes it with  
his harme.*

SOMETIME I fled the fire, that one so brent,  
By sea, by land, by water, and by winde,  
And now the coales I solow, that beguent,  
From Dover to Calles, with willing minde.  
Lo how desire is both sprong, and spent,  
And he may see, that whilome was so blind,  
And all this labour laughes he now to scorne,  
Meashed in the briers, that erst was onely torne.

*The lover hopeth of better chaunce.*

He is not dead, that sometime had a fal,  
The sun returnes, your hed was under clowde,  
And when fortune hath spit out all her gail,  
I trust, good luck to me shal be allowed.  
For I have seen a ship in haven fal,  
After that storme hath broke bothe maste and  
shroud,  
The wellow eke, that stoupeth with the winde,  
Doth rise again, and greater wood doth binde.

*The lover compareth his hart to the overcharged gonne.*

THE furious gonne, in his most ragyng yre,  
When that the boule is rammed into fore,  
And that the flame cannot part from the fier,  
Crackes in sunder, and in the ayer do rore  
The shevered peeces: so doth my desire,  
Whose flame encreaseth aye from more to more,  
Which to let out, I dare not loke, nor speke,  
So inwarde force my heart doth also breake.

*The lover suspected of change, praieth that it be not  
beleved against him.*

Accused though I be, without desert,  
Sith none can prove, believe it not for true;  
For never yet, since that you had my hart,  
Intended I to false, or be untrue.  
Sooner I would of death sustain the smart,  
Than breake one worde of that I promised you,  
Accept therefore my service in good part,  
None is alive, that can il tongue eschew,  
Hold them as false, and let not us depart,  
Our friendship old, in hope of any new.  
Put not thy trust in such as use to faine,  
Except thou minde to put thy frend to pain.

*The lover abused renounceth love.*

My love to scorn, my service to retain,  
Therein me thought you used crueltie,  
Since with good will I lost my libertie,  
Might never wo yet cause me to refraine.  
But only this, which is extremitie,  
To give me nought (alas) not to agree,  
That as I was your man, I might remaine,  
But since that thus ye list to order mee,  
That would have been your servant true and fast,  
Displease you not, my doting time is past;  
And with my losse to leave I must agree,  
For as there is a certaine time to rage,  
So is there time such madnes to assuage.

*The lover professeth himselfe constant.*

WITHIN my brest I never thought it gaine,  
Of gentle mindes the fredome for to lose,  
Nor in my hart sank never such disclaine,  
To be a forger, faultlesse for to disclose.  
Nor can not I endure the truth to glose,  
To set a glosse upon an earnest paine,  
Nor I am not in numbre one of those,  
That list to blow, retreat to every traine.

*The lover sendeth his complaints and teares to sue for  
grace.*

PASSE forth my wounted cryes,  
Those cruel eares to pearce,  
Which in most hatefull wise,  
Do still my plaintes reverse.  
Doe you, my teares also,  
So wot her barrein heart,  
That pitie there may growe,  
And crueltie depart.

For though hard rockes among  
She femes to have been bred,  
And of the tigre long  
Bene nourished and fed.

Yet shall not nature change,  
If pitie once win place,  
Whom as unknowne and strange,  
She now away doth chase.

And as the water soft,  
Without forcing or strength,  
Where that it falleth oft,  
Hard stones doth pierce at length,  
So in her stony heart,  
My plaintes at last shall grave,  
And rigour set apart,  
Winne graunt of that I crave.

Wherefore my playntes present  
Stil so to her my suit,  
As ye through her assent,  
May bring to me some frute.  
And as she shall me prove,  
So bid her me regarde,  
And render love for love,  
Which is a just reward.

*The lovers case cannot be hidden, however he dissemble.*

Your lokes so often cast,  
Your eyes so frendly rolde,  
Your sight fixed so fast,  
Alwaies one to beholde:  
Though hide it faine ye woulde,  
It plainly doth declare,  
Who hath your hart in hold,  
And where good will ye bare.

Faine would ye find a cloke,  
Your brenning fire to hide,  
Yet both the flame and smoke  
Breakes out on every side.

Ye cannot love so guide,  
That it no issue winne,  
Abrode nedes must it glide,  
That brennes so hotte within.

For cause your self do wink,  
Ye judge all other blinde,  
And secreet it you think,  
Which every man dothe finde.

In wast of spend ye winde,  
Your self in love to quit,  
For agues of that kinde,  
Wyll show, who hath the fit.

Your sighs you set from farre,  
And all to wry your wo,  
Yet are ye ner the narre,  
Men are not blinded so.

Depefly oft swere ye no,  
But all those othes are vaine,  
So well your eye doth shew,  
Who putts your hart to paine.

Thinke not therefore to hide,  
That still it self betraies,  
Nor seke meanes to provide,  
To dark the sunny dayes.

Forget those wonted wayes,  
Leave of such frowning chere,  
There will be found no staies,  
To stop a thing so clere.



*The lover praiseth not to be disdained, nor refused,  
mistrusted, nor forsaken.*

DISDAINE me not without desert,  
Nor leave me not so suddenly,  
Since well ye wot, that in my hert,  
I meane ye not but honestly.  
Refuse me not without cause why,  
Nor think me not to be unjust,  
Since that by lott of fantasie,  
This careful knot nedes knit I must.  
Mistrust me not, though some there be,  
That faine would spot my stedfastnesse;  
Beleve them not, firs that ye se,  
The profe is not, as they expresse.  
Forsake me not, till I deserve,  
Nor hate me not, till I offende,  
Destroy me not, till that I swerve,  
But firs ye know what I entende.  
Disdaine me not, that am your owne,  
Refuse me not, that am so true,  
Mistrust me not till all be knowen,  
Forsake me not, now for no new.

*The lover lamenteth his estate, with sute for grace.*

FOR want of will in wo I plaine,  
Under colour of soberness,  
Renewing with my sute my paine,  
My wan hope with your stedfastnesse.  
Awake therefore of gentlenesse,  
Regard at length, I you require,  
My swelting paines of my desire.  
Betimes who geveth willingly,  
Redoubled thanks aye doth deserve,  
And I that sue unfainedly,  
In fruitlesse hope alas do sterue.  
How great my cause is for to swerve,  
And yet how stedfast is my sute,  
Lo! here ye see, where is the frute.  
As hounde that hath his keper lost,  
Seke I your presence to obtaine,  
In which my hart deliteth most,  
And shall delight though I be slain.  
You may release my hand of paine,  
Lose then the care that makes me crie,  
For want of help or els I dye.  
I dye though not incontinent.  
By processe yet consumingly,  
Is wast of fire which doth relent  
If you as wilfull will deny.  
Wherefore cease of such cruelty,  
And take me wholly in your grace,  
Which lacketh will to change his place.

*The lover waileth his changed joyes.*

IF every man might him avaunt,  
Of fortunes friendly chere,  
VOL. I.

It was my self I must it graunt,  
For I have bought it dere,  
And derely have I held also  
The glory of her name,  
In yielding her such tribute lo,  
As did set forth her fame.  
Sometime I stood so in her grace,  
That as I would require,  
Ech joy I thought did me embrace  
That furdured my desire,  
And all these pleasures lo! had I,  
That fancy might support,  
And nothing she did me deny,  
That was unto my comfort.

I had (what would you more perdis)  
Ech grace that I did crave,  
Thus fortunes will was unto me,  
All thing that I would have,  
But all so rathe, alas! the while,  
She built on such a ground,  
In little space, to greete a guile,  
In her now have I found.

For she hath turned so her whele,  
That I, unhappy man,  
May waile the time that I did sele,  
Wherewith she sed me then,  
For broken now are her behestes,  
And pleasant lookes she gave,  
And therefore now all my requestes,  
From perill cannot save.

Yet would I well it might appere  
To her my cheife regard,  
Though my desertes have been to dere  
To merit such reward.  
Sins fortunes will is now so bent,  
To plague me thus pore man,  
I must my self therewith content,  
And bear it as I can.

*To his love that has given answer of refusal.*

THE aunswere that ye made to me my deare,  
When I did sue for my pore hartes redresse,  
Hath so appalde my countenance, and my chere,  
That in this case, I am all comfortlesse,  
Sins I of blame no cause can well expresse.

I have no wrong, where I can claim no right  
Nought tane me fro, where I have nothing had,  
Yet of my wo, I cannot so be quite,  
Namely firs that another may be glad  
With that, that thus in sorrow makes me sad.

Yet none can claime (I say) by former graunt  
That knoweth not of any graunt at all.  
And by desert, I dare well make a vaunt,  
Of faithfull will, there is no where that shall,  
Beare you more trueth, more ready at your call.

Now good then, call againe that bitter word,  
That toucht your frend to nere with plagues of  
paine,

And say my dere that it was said in bord,  
Late or to sone, let it not rule the gaine,  
Wherewith free will doth true desert repayne.

*To his ladie, cruel over her yelden lover.*

Such is the course that natures kind hath wrought,  
That snakes have time to cast away their stings,  
Against chain'd prisoners what nede defence be  
fought,

The fierce lyon will hurt no yielding things;  
Why should such spight be nursed then by thoughts,  
Sith all these powers are prest under thy wings,  
And eke thou seest, and reason thee hath taught,  
What mischief malice many wayes it brings,  
Consider eke, that spite awayleth nought,  
Therefore this song thy fault to thee it sings:  
Displease thee not, for saying thus (me thought)  
Nor hate thou him from whom no hate forth  
springs,

For furies that in hell be execrable,  
For that they hate, are made most miserable.

*The lover complaineth that deadly sickness cannot help his affection.*

THE enemy of lyfe, decayer of all kinde,  
That with his cold withers away the grene  
This other night me in my bed did fynde,  
And offer'd me to ryde me fever clene,  
And I did graunt so did dispaire me blinde,  
He drew his bowe with arrowes sharp and kene,  
And stroke the place where love had hyt before,  
And drave the fyrst dart deper more and more.

*The lover rejoiceth the enjoying of his love.*

Once as methought fortune me kist,  
And bade me ask what I thought best,  
And I should have it as me lyst,  
Therewith to set my hart at rest.

I asked but my ladyes hart,  
To have forevermore myne owne,  
Then at an end were all my smart,  
Then should I nede no more to moone.  
Yet for all that a stormy blast,  
Had overturn'd this goodly nay:  
And fortune seem'd at the last,  
That to her promise she said nay.  
But like as one out of dispaire,  
To sodeyne hoape revived I;  
Now fortune sheweth her selfe so fayre,  
That I content me wonderfly.

My most desyre my hand my reach,  
My will is alway at my hande,  
Me nede not long for to beseech,  
Her that hath power me to comande.

What earthly thing more can I crave,  
What would I wish more at my will;  
Nothing on earth more would I have,  
Save that I have, to have it still.

For fortune now hath kept her promesse,  
In graunting me my most desyre,  
Of my soveraigne I have redress,  
And I content me with my hyre.

*The lover complaineth the unkindness of his love.*

My lute awake perform the last  
Labour that thou and I shall wast:  
And ende that I have now begunne,  
And when this song is song and past,  
My lute be styll for I have done.

As to be heard where eare is none,  
As leade to grave in marble stone,  
My song may pearce her hart as soon,  
Should we then sigh, or sing, or moone,  
No, no, my lute, for I have done.

The rocks do not so cruelly,  
Repulse the waves continually,  
As she my suite and affection:  
So that I am past remedy,  
Whereby my lute and I have done.

Proude of the spoyle that thou hast gotte,  
Of simple hearts through loves shot,  
By whome unkind thou hast them wonne,  
Think not he hath his bow forgott,  
Although my lute and I have done.

Vengeance shall fall on thy disdain  
That makest but game on earnest payne,  
Think not alone under the sunn,  
Unquit to cause thy lovers playne,  
Although my lute and I have done.

May chanced thee lye withred and old,  
In winter nights that are so cold,  
Playing in vaine unto the moon,  
Thy wishes then dare not be told,  
Care then who list for I have done.

And then may chaunce thee to repent,  
The time that thou hast lost and spent,  
To cause thy lovers sighe and swone,  
Then shalt thou know beauty but lent,  
And wish and want as I have done.

Now cease my lute this is the last,  
Labour that thou and I shall wast,  
And ended is that we begonne,  
Now is this song both song and past.  
My lute be still for I have done.

*How by a kiss, he found both his life and death.*

NATURE that gave the bee so seate a grace,  
To finde honey of so wondrous fashion,  
Hath taught the spyder out of the same place,  
To fetch poyson by straunge alteration.  
Though this be strange, it is a stranger case,  
With one kiss by secret operation;  
Both these at once in thole your lips to finde,  
In change whereof, I leave my hart behinde.

*The lover describeth his being taken with sight of his love.*

UNWARELY so was never no man taught,  
With stedfast looke upon a goodly face,  
As I of late, for todaynly me thought,  
My hart was torne out of his place.

Therow mine eye the stroke from hers dyd slide;  
And down directly to my heart it ranne,  
In help whereof the blood thereto did glide,  
And left my face both pale and wanne.

Then was I like a man for wo amazed,  
Or like the fowle that flyeth into the fyre,  
So while that I upon her beauty gased,  
The more I burned in my desire.

Anon the blood start in my face agayne;  
Inflam'd with heat, that it had at my hart,  
And brought therewith throughout in every veine,  
A quakeing heat with pleasant smart.

Then was I like the straw, when that the flame  
Is driven therein, by force and rage of wynde.  
I can not tell, alas! what shall I blame,  
Nor what to feke, nor what to finde.

But well I wot the grief doth hold me sore,  
In heat and cold, betwixt both hope and dreade,  
That, but her help to health doe me restore,  
This restlessse lyfe I may not leade.

*To his lover to looke upon him.*

All in thy looke my life doth whole depend,  
Thou hydest thy self, and I must dye therefore,  
But since thou may'st so easely help thy frende,  
Why dost thou stick to salve that thou madest  
fore :

Why do I dye, since thou may'st me defend,  
And if I dye thy life may last noe more,  
For each by other doth live and have reliefe,  
I in thy look, and thou most in my griefe.

*The lover excuseth him of wordes, wherewith he was  
unjustly charged.*

PERDY I sayde it not,  
Nor never thought to doe,  
As well as I ye wot,  
I have no power thereto.  
And if I dyd, the lot  
That first dyd me exchange,  
May never slake the knot,  
But strait it to my payne.  
And if I did eche thing,  
That may do harme or wo,  
Continually may wring,  
My heart where so I goe.  
Report may always ring  
Of shame on me for aye,  
If in my heart did spryng,  
The words that you doe say.

And if I did, each starr,  
That is in heaven above,  
May frame on me to marre,  
The hope I have in love.  
And if I did such warr  
As they brought unto Troy,  
Bring all my life as farre  
From all this st and joye.

And if I did so faye,  
The beauty that me bounde,  
Encrease from day to day,  
More cruel to my wounde.  
With all the mone that may,  
To plaint my turne my song,  
My lyfe may soon decaye,  
Without redresse by wrong.  
If I be cleare from thought,  
Why do you then complayne,  
Then is this thing but sought,  
To turne my hart to payne.  
Then this that you have wrought,  
You must it now redresse,  
Of right therefore you ought,  
Such rigour to repress.  
And as I have deserved,  
So grant me now my hyre.  
You know I never swerved,  
You never found me lycr.  
For Rachel have I served,  
For Lea carde I never,  
And her I have reserved  
Within my hart for ever.

*Of such as had forsaken him.*

LURE my fair faulcon, and thy fellowes all,  
How well pleasant it were your libertie,  
Ye not forsake me, that fayre mought you fall,  
But they that sometime liked my company.  
Like lyce away from dead bodyes they craill,  
Lo what a proof in light adversitie,  
But ye my byrds I swear by all your belies,  
Ye be my friends and very fewe elles.

*A description of such a one as he would love.*

A FACE that should content me wonderous well,  
Should not be farr, but lovely to behold,  
Of lively look all griefe for to repell  
With right good grace so would I that it should.  
Speak without word, such words as none can tell,  
Her tress also should be of crisped gold,  
With wit and these, perchance I might be tryde  
And knit againe with knot that should not slide.

*How impossible it is to fynde quistnesse in love.*

EVER my hap is slack and slow in comeing  
Desire encreasing aye my hope uncertayne,  
With doubtful love that but encreaseth paine,  
For tigre like so swift it is in parting.  
Alas! the snow black, shall it bee and scalding,  
The sea waterles, and fish upon the mountaine,  
The Temnies shall backe returne in her fountaine,  
And where he rose, the sunn shall take her  
lodging.



Ere I in this finde peace or quietnes,  
Or that love, or my lady right wisely,  
Leave to conspire against me wrongfully,  
And if I have after such bitterness,  
One drop of swete, my mouth is out of taste,  
That all my trust and travell is but waste.

*Of love, fortune, and the lovers minde.*

Love, fortune, and my minde which doe remember  
Eke that is now, and that once hath bene,  
Torment my hart so sore that very often  
I hate and envy them beyond all measure.  
Love fleeth my hart, while fortune is depriver,  
Of all my comfort, the foolish minde than,  
Burneth and plaineth, as one that very seldome,  
Liveth in rest so still in displeasure:  
My pleasant dayes they flete and passe  
And dayly doth myne yll change to the worse,  
When more than halfe is runne now of my course.  
Alas! not of stele, but of brittle glasse,  
I see that from my hand falleth my trust,  
And all my thoughts are dashed into dust.

*The lover praiseth his offred hart to be received.*

How oft have I, my dere and cruel foe,  
With my great paine to get some peace or truce,  
Given you my hart but you do not use,  
In soe high things, to cast your mind so low.  
If any other looke for it as you trow,  
Their vaine, weake hope doth greatly them abuse,  
And that thus I disdaine, that you refuse,  
It was once mine, it can no more be so.  
If you it chafe that it in you can find  
In this exile no manner of confort,  
Nor live alone nor where he is cald resort,  
He may wander from his natural kinde.  
So shall it be great hurt unto us twaine,  
And yours the loss, and mine the deadly paine.

*The lovers life compared to the Alpes.*

Like unto these unmeasurable mountaines,  
So in my painfull life the burden of yre,  
For he be they, and he is my desire,  
And I of teares, and they be full of fountaines.  
Under craggy rocks they have barren plaines,  
Hard thoughts in me my wofull minde doth tire,  
Small fruite and many leaves their tops do attire,  
With small effect great trust in me remaines.  
The boisterous winds oft their high bowes do  
blast,

Hott sighes in me continually be shed,  
Wilde beasts in them, since love in me is fed,  
Unmoveable am I, and they steadfast.  
Of singing-birds, they have the tune and note,  
And I alwayes plaintes passing through my throte.

*Charging of his love as unpiteous and loving others.*

If amorous faith, or if an hart unfeined,  
I swete languor, a great lovely desire,  
If honest will kindled in gentle fire,  
If long error in a blind mase chained.  
If in my visage eche thought distained,  
Or my sparkling voice, lower or hier,  
Which feare and shame so wofully doth tire,  
If pale colour which love alas hath stained.  
If to have another, then my self more dere,  
If wailing or sighing continually.  
With sorrowful anger feeding busily  
If burned farr of and if frising nere.  
Are cause that I by love my self destroye.  
Yours is the fault, and mine the great annoy.

*A renouncing of love.*

FAREWELL love, and all thy lawes for ever,  
Thy bated hookes shall tangle me no more,  
Seneca, and Plato call me from thy lore,  
To parfit welth my witt for to endeavor.  
In blind error when I did persever.  
Thy sharp repulse, that pricketh aye so sore  
Taught me in trifles that I set noe store,  
But scape forth thence since libertie is lieffer.  
Therefore farewell go trouble younger harts,  
And in time claime noe more auctoritie,  
With idle youth goe use thy propertie,  
And thereon spend thy many brittle dates.  
For hitherto though I have lost my time,  
Me list no longer rotten bowes to clime.

*The lover forsaketh his unkind love.*

My hart I gave thee not to doe it paine,  
But to preserve lo it to thee was taken,  
I serve thee, thee not that I should be forsaken.  
But that I should receive reward againe.  
I was content, thy servant to remaine,  
And not to be repayed on this fashion,  
Now since in thee there is no other reason,  
Displeas thee not if that I do refraine.  
Unsayat of my wo and thy desire,  
Assured by craft for to excuse thy fault,  
But since it pleaseth thee to faine default,  
Farewell I say, departing from the fire.  
For he that doth believe bearing in hand,  
Floweth in the water and soweth in the sand.

*The lover describeth his f-fleesse state.*

The flameing sighes that boyle within my breast,  
Sometime break forth and they can well declare,  
The hartes unrest, and how that he doth fear,  
The paine thereof, the grieve, and all the rest.



The shattered eye from whence the teares do fall,  
Do feel some force or else they would be dry,  
The wasted flesh of colour ded can try,  
And sometime tell what sweetness in the gall.  
And he that lust to see, and to discearne,  
How care can force within a weried mind,  
Come he to me I am that place asinde,  
But for all this noe force, it doth noe harme,  
The wounde alas hap in some other place,  
From whence noe toole away the scar can race.

But you which of such like have had your part,  
Can best be judge wherefore my friend so dere,  
I thought it good my state should now appere,  
To you, and that there is no great defart.  
And whereas you in weighty matters great,  
Of fortune saw the shaddow that you know  
For trifling things I now am stricken foe.  
That though I feel my hart doth wound and beat,  
I sit alone save on the second day,  
My fever comes with whome I spend my time,  
In burning heat while that she list assigne,  
And who hath helth and liberty alway,  
Let him thank God, and let him not provoke,  
To have the like of this my painfull stroke.

*The lover laments the death of his love.*

The pillar perisht is whereto I lent,  
The strongest stay of mine unquiet minde;  
The like of it no man agayn can fynde,  
From east to west still seeking though he went,  
To myne unhappe forhappe away hath rent.  
Of all my joy the very bark and rinde,  
And I (alas!) by chaunce am thus affinde,  
Dayly to mourn, till death do it relent.  
But since that thus it is by destiny,  
What can I more but have a wofull hart,  
My penne in plaint my voice in carefull crye,  
My mynde in woe my body full of smart,  
And I my self, my self alwayes to hate,  
Tyll dreadfull death doe ease my dolefull state.

*The lover sendeth sighes to move his love.*

Goe burning sighes unto the frozen hart,  
Goe break the yce which pities painfull dart,  
Might never pierce, and if that mortall prayer,  
In heaven be heard at least yet I desyre,  
That death, or mercy, end my wofull smart.  
Take with thee paine whereof I have my part,  
And eke the flame from which I cannot start.  
And leave me then in rest I you require,  
Goe burning sighs fulfill that I desire.  
I must goe worke, and see my craft and arte,  
For truth and faith in her is laid apart,  
Alas I cannot therefore now assayle her,  
With pitifull complaint and scalding fire,  
That from my brest deceivebly doth start.

*Complaint of the absence of his love.*

Soe feeble is the thred that doth the burden stay,  
Of my poor life in heavy plight that falleth in de-  
cay, [cours,  
That but it have elsewhere some ayde or some suc-  
The running spindle of my fate anon shall end his  
course. [part,

For since the unhappy houre that dyd me to de-  
From my sweet weale one only hoape hath stayed  
my life apart,

Which doth perswade such words unto my sored  
mynde, [luck to find.

Maintaine thy selfe, O wofull wight, some better  
For though thou be deprived from thy desired  
sight,

Who can thee tell, if thy returne before thy more  
delight:

Or who can tell thy losse if thou mayst once recover,  
Some pleasant houres thy wo may wrap, and thee  
defend and cover.

Thus in this trust, as yet it hath my life sustained,  
But now (alas) I see it faint, and I by trust am  
trayned. [bende,

The tyme doth flete, and I see how the hours do  
So fast that I have scant the space to marke my  
comeing end. [his lite,

Westward the sunn from out the east scant shewd  
When in the west he hies him straite within the  
dark of night

And comes as fast, where he began his path awry,  
From east to west, from west to east, so doth his  
journey lye. [here,

Thy lyfe so short so frayle, that mortall men lyve  
Soe great a weight, so heavy charge the bodyes  
that we bere.

That when I think upon the distance and the space,  
That doth so farre divide me from thy dere desired  
face. [quire,

I know not how t' attaine the winges that I re-  
To lyft me up that I might fly to follow my de-  
syre. [sustyne,

Thus of that hope that doth my lyfe somethyng  
Alas I fear, and partly feel full little doth remaine.  
Eche place doth bring me grieve where I doe not  
behold,

Those lively eyes which of my thoughts, were wont  
the keys to hold.

Those thoughts were pleasant sweet whilst I en-  
joy'd that grace,

My pleasure past, my present pain, when I might  
well embrace.

And for because my want should more my woe  
increase,

In watch and sleep both day and night my will  
doth never cease.

That thing to wishe whereof synce I did lose the  
sight,

Was never thing that mought in ought my wofull  
hart delight.

Th' uneasy life I lead doth teach me for to mete,  
The floods, the seas, the land, the hills, that doth  
them intermete.



Twene me and those shene lights that wonted for  
to clere,  
My darked pangs of cloudy thoughts as bright as  
Phebus sphere;  
It teacheth me also, what was my pleasant state,  
The more to feele by such record how that my  
welth doth hate.  
If such record (alas) provoke the inflamed mynde,  
Which sprung that day that I dyd leave the best of  
me behynde.  
If love forgeat himsele by length of absence let,  
Who doth me guid (O wofull wretch) unto this  
baited net: [for me,  
Where doth encrease my care, much better were  
As dumm as stone all things forgott, still absent  
for to be.  
Alas the clear christall, the bright transplendant  
glasse, [it hase.  
Doth not bewray the colours hid which underneath  
As doth the accumbred spire the thoughtfull  
throwes discover, [we cover.  
Of teares delyte of fervent love that in our hartes  
Out by these eyes, it sheweth that evermore delight;  
In plaint and teares to seek redress, and eke both  
day and night.  
Those kindes of pleasures most wherein men see  
rejoice, [voice.  
To me they do redouble still of stormy sighes the  
For, I am one of them, whom plaint doth well  
content, [lament.  
It fits me well my absent wealth me semes for to  
And with my teares t' assy to charge myne eyes  
twayne,  
Like as my hart above the brink is fraughted full  
of payne.  
And for because thereto, that these fair eyes do  
treate, [repeate.  
Do me provoke, I will returne, my plaint thus to  
For there is nothing els, so toucheth me within,  
Where they rule all, and I alone, nought but the  
case or skin.  
Wherefore I shall returne to them as well or spring,  
From whom descends my mortall wo, above all  
other thing.  
So shall myne eyes in paine accompany my hart,  
That were the guides, that did it lead of love to  
feel the smart. [pride,  
The crisped gold that doth surmount Appolloes  
The lively streames of pleasant starrs that under  
it doth glyde.  
Wherein the beames of love doe still increase theire  
heate, [me sweet,  
Which yet so far touch me to near in cold to make  
The wise and pleasant take, for rare or else alone,  
That gave to me the curties gyft, that eack had  
never none.  
Be far from me alas, and every other thing,  
I might forbear with better will, then this that  
did me bring.  
With pleasand woord and cheer, redress of lingred  
payne, [trayne.  
And wonted oft in kindled will, to vertue me to  
Thus am I forc'd to hear and hearken after news,  
My comfort scant, my large desire in doubtful  
trust renews.

And yet with more delight to move my wofull case.  
I must complaine these hands, those armes, that  
firmly do embrace.  
Me from my self, and rule the sterne of my poor  
lyfe,  
The sweet disdaynes, the pleasant wrathes, and  
eke the holy strife.  
That wonted well to rime in temper just and mete,  
The rage, that oft did make me err by furou un-  
discrete. [hills,  
All this is hid from me with sharp and ragged.  
At others will my long abode, my depe dyspayr  
fulfills.  
And of my hope sometime ryse up by some redresse,  
It stumbleth straite for scable faint my fear hath  
such excesse.  
Such is the sort of hoape, the less for more desyre,  
And yet I trust ere that I dye, to see that I require.  
The resting place of love, where virtue dwells and  
and growes, [repose,  
There I desire my weary life sometime may take  
My song thou shalt attaine, to find the pleasant-  
place,  
Where she doth live by whom I live, may chance  
to have this grace.  
When she hath read and seen, the grieve wherein  
I serve,  
Between her breasts she shall the put, there shall  
she thee reserve.  
Then tell her, that I come, she shall me shortly see,  
And if for waight the body fayl, the soul shall to  
her flee.

---

*The lover blameth his love for renting of the letter he  
sent her.*

SURPRIS'D not (madame) that you did teare,  
My wofull hart, but this also to rent,  
The weeping paper that to you I sent,  
Whereof ech letter was written with a tear.  
Could not my present paynes (alas) suffice,  
Your greedy heart, and that my heart doth feel,  
Torments that prick more sharper than the steel,  
But new and new must to my hott aryse,  
Use then my death, for shall your cruchte,  
Spite of your spyte, rid me from all my smart,  
And I no more such torments of the hart,  
Feel as I doe this shall you gayne thereby.

---

*The lover curseth the tyme when fyrst he fell in love.*

WHEN fyrst myne eyes did view and mark,  
Thy fayr beaurty to behold,  
And when my ears lynd to hark,  
The pleasant woords that thou me tolde.  
I would as then I had been freg,  
From ears to hear, and eyes to see.  
And when my lipps gan fyrst to mone,  
Whereby my hart to thee was knowne,  
And when my tonge dyd talke of love,  
To thee that hast true love downe throwne.



I would my lipps and tongue alsoe,  
 Had then been damme, no deal to goe.  
 And when my hands have handled ought,  
 That thee hath kept in memory,  
 And when my feet have gone and fought,  
 To find and get the company.  
 I would each hand a foot had beene,  
 And I each foot a hand had seen.  
 And when in mind I dyd consent,  
 To follow this my fancies will,  
 And when my hart did first relent,  
 To tast such bait my life to spill.  
 I would my hart had been as thine,  
 Or els thy hart had been as myne.

*The lover determineth to serve faithfully.*

SINCE love will needs, that I shall love,  
 Of very force I must agree,  
 And since no chaunce may it remove,  
 In wealth and in adversitie.  
 I shall alway my selfe apply,  
 To serve and suffer patiently.

Though for good will I finde but hate,  
 And cruelly my life to wast,  
 And though that still a wretched state,  
 Should pyne my days unto the last:  
 Yet I profess it willingly,  
 To serve and suffer patiently.

For since my hart is bound to serve,  
 And I not ruler of myne owne,  
 What foe befall, tyll that I serve,  
 By prooffe full well it shall be knowne.  
 That I shall still my self apply,  
 To serve and suffer patiently.

Yet though my grieve finde noe redress,  
 But still encrease before myne eyes,  
 Though my reward be cruelnesse,  
 With all the harme, happs can devyse,  
 Yet I profess it willingly,  
 To serve and suffer patiently.

Yea though fortune her pleasant face,  
 Should shew, to set me up aloft,  
 And straight my wealth for to deface,  
 Should wrythe away, as she doth oft.  
 Yet would I still my self applye,  
 To serve and suffer patiently.

There is no grieve, no smart, no wo,  
 That yet I feel, or after shall,  
 That from this minde may make me goe,  
 And whatsoever me befall,  
 I do profess it willingly,  
 To serve and suffer patiently.

*The lover suspected, blameth ill tongues.*

MISTRUSTFULL minds be moved,  
 To have me in suspect,  
 The truth it shall be proved,  
 Which time shall once detect.

Though falslyd goe about,  
 Of ~~me~~ to me accuse,

At length I do not doubt,  
 But truth shall me excuse.  
 Such sauce, as they have served,  
 To me without desert,  
 Even as they have deserved,  
 Thereof God send them part,

*The lover complaineth, and his ladie comforteth.*

*Lover.* It burneth yet, alas, my heartes desire,  
*Lady.* What is the thing, that hath inflam'd thy heart?

*Lo.* A certaine point as fervent as the fyre.

*La.* The heat shall cease if that thou wilt convert,

*Lo.* I cannot stop the fervent raging yre,

*La.* What may I do, if thy self cause thy smart?

*Lo.* Heare my request, and rew my weeping chere

*La.* With right good will say on, lo, I thee here.

*Lo.* That thing would I, that maketh two content,

*La.* Thou seekest, perchance of me, that I may not.

*Lo.* Would God, thou wouldest, as thou mayst, well assent.

*La.* That I may not the grieve is myne, God wot,

*Lo.* But if I feele, whatso thy woordes have ment.

*La.* Suspect me not, my woordes be not forgett.

*Lo.* Then say, alas! shall I have help or no.

*La.* I see no time to answer, yea, but no.

*Lo.* Say yea, dere hart, and stand no more in doubt.

*La.* I may not grant a thing that is so dere.

*Lo.* Lo with delayes, thou dryves me still about.

*La.* Thou wouldest my death, it plainly doth appeare. [out.]

*Lo.* First may my heart his blood, and life blede

*La.* Then for my sake, alas! thy will forbear.

*Lo.* From day to day, thus waites my lyfe away.

*La.* Yet for the best, suffre some smale delay.

*Lo.* Now good, say yea, do once so good a dede,

*La.* If I sayd yea, what should thereof ensue?

*Lo.* An heart in payne of succour so should ipede.

Twixt yea, and nay, my dout shall still renew,

My twete, say yea, and do away this drede.

*La.* Thou wilt nudes so, be it so, but then be trew.

*Lo.* Nought would I else, nor other treasure none,  
 Thus hearts be wonne by love, request, and none.

*Why love is blinde.*

Or purpose, love chose first for to be blinde,  
 For he with sight of that, that I beholde,  
 Vanquish't had been, against all godly kynde,  
 His bow your hand, and trusse should have unfold.

And he with me to serve had been assinde,  
 But, for he blind, and reckles would him hold  
 And still, by chance, his deadly strokes bestow  
 With such, as see, I serve, and suffer wo.

*To his unkinde love*

WHAT rage is this, what furor of what kynde,  
What power, what plage, doth wery thus mye  
minde?

Within my bones to rankle is assynde,  
What poison pleasant swete.

Lo see myne eyes flow with continual teares,  
The body still away sleepleffe it weares,  
My foode nothing my fainting strength repayres  
Nor doth my lim mee sustayne. [turne,

In depe wyde wound, the deadly stroke doth  
To curcheffe skarre that never shall retorne,  
Go to, triumph, rejoyce thy goodly turne,  
Thy frend thou doest oppresse.

Oppresse thou doest, and hast of him no cure,  
Nor yet my plaint no pitie can procure,  
Fierce tygre, fell, hard rocke without recure  
Cruell rebell to love.

Once may thou love, never be loved again,  
So love thou still, and not thy love obtayne,  
So wrathfull love with spites of just disdaine,  
May thret thy cruell hart.

*The lover blameth his instant desyre.*

DESYRE, (alas!) my maister, and my foe,  
So sore altered thy selfe, how maist thou see,  
Some time thou seekest, and dryves me to and fro,  
Some time thou ledest, that ledest thee and me,  
What reason is to rule thy subjects so,  
By forced law and mutabilitie?  
For where by thee I doubted to have blame,  
Even now by hate agayne I doubt the same.

*The lover complaineth his estate.*

I SEE that chance hath chosen me,  
Thus secretly to live in payne,  
And to another given the free,  
Of all my losse to have the gayne,  
By chance assinde thus do I serve,  
And other have that I deserve.

Unto my self some time alone,  
I do lament my wofull case,  
But what availeth me to mone,  
Since truth and pitie hath no place,  
In them, to whom I sue and serve,  
And other have that I deserve.

To seke by meane to change this mind,  
Alas, I prove it will not be,  
For in my heart I cannot finde,  
Once to refrayne, but still agree  
As bound by force alway to serve,  
And other have that I deserve.

Such is the fortune that I have,  
To love them most, that love me lest,  
And to my payne to seek and crave  
The thing, that other have possesse,  
So thus in vaine alway I serve,  
And other have that I deserve,

And till I may appease the heate,  
If that my happe will happe so well  
To wayle my wo my heart shall create  
Whose penfif payne my tong can tell,  
Yet thus unhappy must I serve,  
And other have that I deserve.

*Of his love called Anna.*

WHAT woord is that, that changeth not,  
Though it be turnde and made in twayne,  
It is mynne, Anna, God it wote  
The only causer of my payne,  
My love that medeth with disdaine,  
Yet is it loved, what will you more,  
It is my salve, and eke my sore.

*That pleasure is mixed with every paine.*

VENEMOUS thornes that are so sharpe and kene,  
Beare flowers we see, full fresh and fayre of hue,  
Poyson is also put in medicine,  
And unto man his health doth oft renue,  
The fyre that all things eke consumeth clene,  
May hurt and heale: then if that this be true,  
I trust some time my harm may be my health,  
Sins every woe is joynd with some wealth.

*A riddle of a gyft given by a ladie.*

A LADY gave me a gift she had not,  
And I received her gift which I took not,  
She gave it me willingly, and yet she would not,  
And I received it albeit I could not.  
If she give it me I force not,  
And if she take it again she cares not,  
Conster what this is and tell not,  
For I am fast sworne, I may not.

*That speakyng or profering brings alway speding,*

SPEAKE thou and spede, where will or power  
ought helpeth, [by welth:  
Where power doth want, will must be wonne  
For nede will spede, where will workes not his  
kynde, [fynd.  
And gayne, thy foes thy frendes shall cause thee  
For sute and golde, what do not they obtayne,  
Of good and bad the tryers are these wayne.

*He ruleth not, though he reigne over realmes, that is  
subject to his owne lustes.*

Is thou wilt mighty be, flee from the rage,  
Of cruell will, and see thou kepe the free,

From the foul yoke of sensual bondage,  
 For though thine empire stretcht to Indian see,  
 And for thy fear trembleth the fardeth Thules,  
 If thy desyre have over thee the power,  
 Subject then art thou, and no governour.  
 If to be noble and high thy mind be moved,  
 Consider well thy grounde and thy beginning,  
 For he that hath eche starre in heaven fixed,  
 And gives the moone her hornes and her eclipsing.  
 A lyke hath made the noble in his working,  
 So that wretched no way may thou be,  
 Except foule lust and vyce doe conquer thee,  
 All wer that so thou had a flood of golde,  
 Unto thy thirst yet should it not suffice.  
 And though with Indian stones a thousand folde,  
 More precious then can thy self devise.  
 Ycharged were thy backe, thy covetise,  
 And busy byting yet should never let,  
 Thy wretched lyfe, nede do thy death profet.

*Whether libertie by losse of life, or life in prison and thraldome, be to be preferred.*

LYKE as the byrde within the cage inclosed,  
 The dore unparred, her foe the hawke without  
 Twixt death and prison pitiouly oppressed,  
 Whether for to choose standeth in dout.  
 Lo so do I, which seke to bring about,  
 Which should be best by determination  
 By losse of life, libertie, or lyfe by prison.  
 O mischief by mischief to be redressed,  
 Where payne is best there lyeth but little pleasure.  
 By short death better to be delivered,  
 Then byde in painfull lyfe, thraldome and dolour.  
 Small is the pleasure where much payne we suffer,  
 Rather therefore to chuse me thinketh wisdome,  
 By losse of lyfe libertie, then lyfe by prison.  
 And yett me thinkes although I live and suffer,  
 I do but wayte a time and fortunes chance,  
 Oft many thinges do happen in one hower,  
 That which oppress me now may me advance,  
 In time is trust which by deathes grevaunce  
 Is wholly lost. Then were it not reason  
 By death to chuse libertie, and not life by prison,  
 But death wer deliverance where life lengthens  
 paine,  
 Of these two illes let see now chuse the best.  
 This bird to deliver that here doth plaine;  
 What say ye lovers, which shal be the best?  
 In cage thraldome, or by the hawke oppress;  
 And which to chuse, make plain conclusion  
 By losse of lyfe libertie, or lyfe by prison,

*Against bouders of money.*

For shamefast harme of great and hatefull nede,  
 In depe dispayre, as did a wretch go,  
 With ready corde out of his life to spede,  
 His slumbering foot did synde an hoorde, lo,

Of gold, I say, where he preparte this dede  
 And in exchange, he left the corde tho'  
 He that hid the golde, and found it not,  
 Of that he found he shapt his kneck a knot.

*Description of a gonne*

VULCANE begat me, Minerva me taught,  
 Nature my mother, craft nourisht me yere by  
 yere [naught,  
 Three bodies are my foode; my strength is in  
 Anger, wrath, waste, and noyse, are my children  
 dere.  
 Gesse frende, what I am, and how I am wraught,  
 Monster of sea or of lande, or of els where  
 Know me, and use me, and I may thee defend,  
 And if I be thine enemy I may thy life ende,

*Wyat being in prison to Bryan.*

SIGNES are my foode, my drink are my teares,  
 Clinking of fetters would such musike crave,  
 Stink, and close ayre, away my life it weares,  
 Poor innocence is all the hope I have,  
 Rayne, wynde, or weather, judge I by myne ears,  
 Malice assautes that righteousnesse should have.  
 Sure am I, Bryan, this wound shall heale againe,  
 But yett, alas! the skarre shall still remaine.

*Of dissembling words.*

THROUGHOUT the world if it were fought,  
 Fayre words ynoughe a man shall fynde;  
 They be good chepe, they cost right nought,  
 Their substance is but only wynde:  
 But well to say, and so to meane,  
 That swete accorde is feldome sene.

*Of the mean and sure estate.*

STAND who so lis upon the slipper wheele,  
 Of high estate, and let me here rejoyce,  
 And use my life in quietnesse eche dele,  
 Unknowne in court that hath the wanton joyes,  
 In hidden place my time shall slowly passe,  
 And when my yeres be past without annoyse,  
 Let me dye old after the common trace,  
 For gypes of death do he too hardly pass;  
 That knowne is to all, but to himself, alas!  
 He dyeth unknown dased with dreadfull face.

*The courtiers life.*

In court to serve decked with freshe araye,  
 Of sugared meates seling the swete repast,



The lyfe in bankets and fundry kyndes of playe.  
 Amid the preſſe the worldly lookes to waſte.  
 Hath with it joined of times ſuch bitter taſte,  
 That who ſo joyes ſuch kinde of life to holde,  
 In priſon joyes fettered with chaines of golde,

*Of diſappointed purpoſe by negligence.*

Or Carthage he that worthy warriour,  
 Could overcome, but could not uſe his chance  
 And I likewyſe of all my long endeavour,  
 The ſharp conqueſt though fortune did advance,  
 Ne could I uſe, the hold that is given over.  
 I unpoſſeſſe, ſo hangeth now in balance.  
 Of warre, my peace, rewarde of all my payne,  
 At Mountzon thus I reſileſt reſt in Spaine.

*Of his returne from Spayne.*

TAGUS farewell that weſtward with thy ſtremes,  
 Turne up the graines of golde already tryde,  
 For I with ſpurre and ſaile go ſeke the Temmes,  
 Gayneward the ſunne that ſhoweth her welthy  
 pride;  
 And to the towne that Brutus fought by dreames,  
 Like banded moon that leaves her luſty ſyde,  
 My king, my country, I ſeke for whom I live,  
 O mighty Jove the wyndes for this me geve.

*Of ſedaine truſting.*

DRIVEN by deſyre I did this ded,  
 To danger my ſelf without cauſe why,  
 To truſt th' untrue not lyke to ſpede,  
 To ſpeake and promiſe faithfully.  
 But now the prooſe doth verity,  
 That who ſo truſteth ere he know,  
 Doth hurt himſelf and pleaſe his foe.

*Of the mother that eat her child at the ſiege of Je-  
 ruſalem.*

IN doubtfull breaſt whyles motherly pittie,  
 With furious famine ſtandeth at debate  
 The mother faith, O child unhappy,  
 Return thy blood where thou haſt milke of late.  
 Yeld me thoſe lymmes that I made unto thee,  
 And enter there where thou wer generate,  
 For of one body againſt all nature,  
 To another muſt I make ſepulture.

*Of the meane and ſure eſtate, written to John Poyneſ.*

My mothers maides wher they do ſow and ſpinne,  
 They ſing a ſong made of a fieldiſh mouſe,

That for becauſe her lived was but thinne,  
 Would needs go ſee her towniſh ſiſters houſe.  
 She taught her ſelf endure to grievous payne,  
 The ſtormy blaſtee her cave ſo fore did foule;  
 That when the furrous ſwimmed with the rayne,  
 She muſt lye cold and wet in ſory plight,  
 And worſe then that bare meate ther did remayne,  
 To comfort her, when ſhe her houſe had digged,  
 Some tyme a barley corne, ſome time a beare,  
 For which ſhe laboured hard both day and night.  
 In harveſt tyme, whyle ſhe might go and gleane,  
 And when her ſtore was ſtroyed with the floodes,  
 Then welaway for ſhe undone was clene,  
 Then was ſhe faine to take inſtede of foode,  
 Slepe if ſhe might, her hunger to begyle,  
 My ſiſter, quod ſhe, hath a living good,  
 And hence from me ſhe dwelleth not a myle;  
 In colde and ſtorme ſhe lyeth warm and drye  
 In bed of downe, the duſt doth not deſyle  
 Her tender foot, ſhe labours not as I.  
 Richely ſhe fedes and at the riche mannes coſt,  
 And for her meate ſhe nedes not crave nor cry,  
 By ſea, by land, of delicates the moſt  
 Her cater ſekes, and ſpareth for no perell,  
 She fedes on boyld meate, bake meate and on roſt,  
 And hath therefore no whit of charge nor travell  
 And when ſhe liſt, the licour of the grape  
 Doth glad her heart, till that her belly ſwell;  
 And at this journey makes the but a jape,  
 So forth ſhe goes, truſting of all this wealth,  
 With her ſiſter her part ſo far to ſcape,  
 That if ſhe might there kepe herſelf in health,  
 To live a lady while her life doth laſt,  
 And to the dore now is ſhe come by ſtealth,  
 And with her foote anone ſhe ſcrapeſ full faſt,  
 Th' other for feare durſt not well ſcarce appeare  
 Of every noile ſo was the wretch agaſt  
 At laſt, ſhe asked ſoftly who was there,  
 And in her language as well as ſhe could,  
 Pepe (quod the other) ſiſter I am here.  
 Peace (quod the towne mouſe) why ſpeakeſt  
 thou ſo loude,  
 And by the hand ſhe took her fayre and well,  
 Welcome, quod ſhe, my ſiſter by the roode,  
 She feaſted her, that joy it was to tell,  
 The fayre they had, they drank the wyne ſo clere,  
 And as to purpoſe now and then it fell  
 She chered her, with how ſiſter what chere?  
 Amid this joy befell a ſory chance,  
 That welaway, the ſtranger bought full dere,  
 The ſire ſhe had, for as ſhe lookte a ſkunce,  
 Under a ſtole ſhe ſpied two ſteming eyes  
 In a rounde heade with ſharp eares: In France  
 Was never mouſe ſo ferde, for the unwyſe  
 Had not yſene ſuch a beaſt before,  
 Yet had nature taught her after guyſe  
 To know her foe, and dread him evermore;  
 The towne mouſe fled, ſhe knew whither to go,  
 The other had no ſhift, but wonders fore,  
 Ferde of her life, at home ſhe wiſht her tho',  
 And to do, alas! as ſhe did ſkippe, [was ſo,  
 The heaven it would, lo! and eke her chaunce  
 At the theſholde her ſely foote did trippe,  
 And ere ſhe might recover it again,  
 The trayteur cat had caught her by the hippe,



And made her there against her will remayne,  
 That had forgot her poore suertie, and rest,  
 Forsaking welth, wherein she thought to raygne.  
 Alas! (my Poynes) how men do seke the best,  
 And finde the worse, by error as they staye;  
 And no marvell, when sight is so opprest,  
 And blindes the guyde, anone out of the way  
 Goe th guyde, and all in seking quiet life.  
 O wretched myndes! there is no golde that may,  
 Graunt. that you seek, no warre, no peace, no  
 strife,  
 No, no, although thy head were hoopte with gold,  
 Serjeant with mace, with hawbert, sword, nor  
 knife,  
 Can not repulse the care that folow should,  
 Eche kynde of lyfe hath with him his disease,  
 Live in delites, even as thy lust woulde,  
 And thou shalt finde when lust doth most thee  
 please,  
 It yrketh straight, and by itself doth fade.  
 A small thing is that, that may thy minde appease:  
 None of you all there is, that is so madde  
 To seke for grapes on brambles, or on briers,  
 For none I trow, that hath a witte so badde  
 To set his hay for conies over rivers,  
 Nor ye set not a dragge net for an hare;  
 And yet the thing that most is your desire,  
 You do mislike, with more travell and care  
 Make plaine thine heart that it be not knotted  
 With hope or dreade, and see thy will be bare  
 From all affectes, whom vyce hath never spotted;  
 Thyself content with that is thee assynde,  
 And use it well that is to thee allotted:  
 Then seke no more out of thy self to fynde  
 The thing that thou hast sought so long before;  
 For thou shalt feele it sticking in thy mynde  
 Made, if ye list to continue your fore,  
 Let present passe, and gape on time to come,  
 And depe thy self in travell more and more,  
 Henceforth (my Poynes) this shall be all and some,  
 Those wretched fooles shall have nought els of  
 me:  
 But, to the great God, and to his dome,  
 None other payne pray I for them to be,  
 But when the rage doth leade them from the right  
 That looking backward vertue they may see  
 Even as she is so goodly, sayre and bright;  
 And whylst they claspe theyr luses in armes  
 acrosse,  
 Graunt them, good Lord, as thou maist of thy  
 might,  
 To freat inward, for losing such a los.

*Of the courtiers life, written to John Poynes.*

MYNE own, John Poynes, sins ye delight to know  
 The causes why that homeward I me draw,  
 And flee the prease of courtes, whereso they goe,  
 Rather then to live thrall under the awe  
 Of lordly lookes, wrapped within my cloke,  
 To will and lust learning to set a law  
 It is not, that because I storme or mocke  
 The power of them whom fortune here hath lent

Charge over us, of right to strike the stroke;  
 But true it is, that I have always ment  
 Less to esteeme them, then the common sort,  
 Of outward thinges that judge in their intent:  
 Without regarde, what inward doth resort,  
 I graunt, some time of glory that the fyre,  
 Doth touch my heart, me list not to report.  
 Blame by honour and honour to desyre.  
 But how may I this honour now attaine,  
 That cannot dye the colour blacke a lyer?  
 My Poynes, I cannot frame my tune to sayn,  
 To cloke the truth, for praise without desert,  
 Of them that list all vice for to retayne,  
 I cannot bonour them that set theyr part  
 With Venus and Bacchus all their life long.  
 Nor hold my peace of them, although I smart,  
 I cannot crouche nor knele to such a wronge.  
 To worship them like God on earth alone,  
 That are as wolves these fely lambes among,  
 I cannot with my woordes complayne and mone.  
 And suffer nought nor smart without complaint,  
 Nor turne the word that from my mouth is gone,  
 I cannot speak and looke like a saint.  
 Use wyles for wit, and make descent a pleasure,  
 Call craft counsaile, for lucre still to paynt,  
 I can not wrest the law to fyll the coffer  
 With innocent blood to feed my self satte,  
 And do most hurt where that most helpe I offer.  
 I am not he that can allow the state,  
 Of hye Cæser, and damne Cato to dye,  
 That with his death could scape out of the gate,  
 From Cæser's hands, if Livy doth not lye.  
 And would not live where liberty was lost,  
 So did his heart the common wealth apply,  
 I am not he, such eloquence to boast,  
 To make the crow in singing, as the swanne;  
 Nor call the lyon of coward beastes the most,  
 That cannot take a mouse, as the cat can,  
 And he that dyeth for hunger of the golde,  
 Call him Alexander, and say that Pan  
 Passeth Apollo in musike many folde,  
 Praise Syr Copas for a noble tale,  
 And scorne the story that the knight tolde,  
 Praise him for counsell that is dronke of ale.  
 Grinne when he laughes, that beareth all the sway,  
 Frowne when he frownes, and grone when he is  
 pale;  
 On others lust, to hang both night and day,  
 None of these pointes would ever frame in me,  
 My wit is nought, I can not learn the way,  
 And much the less of things that greater be.  
 That asken helpe of colours to devise,  
 To joyne the meane with eche extremitie,  
 With neresst vertue ay to cloke the vyce,  
 And as to purpose likewise it shall fall,  
 To presse the vertue that it may not ryse.  
 As dronkenness good fellowship to call,  
 The frendly foe with his faire double face,  
 Say he is gentle, and curties therewithall,  
 Assirme that favill hath a goodly grace.  
 In eloquence, and cruelty to name,  
 Zeale of justice, and change in time and place,  
 And he that suffereth offence without blame,  
 Call him pitiefull, and him true and playne,  
 That rayleth rechless unto eche mans shame,



Say he is rude, that cannot lye and fayne.  
The lecher a lover and tyranny  
To be right of a princes raigne,  
I cannot, I, no, no, it will not be.  
This is the cause that I could never yet  
Hang on their sleeves the weigh (as thou maist see)  
A chippe of chaunce, more then a pound of wit;  
This makes me at home to hunt and hawke,  
And in foul weather at my booke to sit;  
In frost and snow, then with my bowe stalke;  
No man doth marke wherefo I ryde or goe;  
In lusty leas at libertie I walke.  
And of these newes I fele no weale no woe,  
Save that a clogge doth hang yett at my heele;  
No force for that, for that is ordred so,  
That I may leape both hedge and dyke full wele.  
I am not now in France to judge the wyne,  
With savery sauce those delicates to feel,  
Nor yet in Spayne, where one must him incline,  
Rather then to be, outwardly to seene,  
I meddle not with wittes that be so fyne,  
Nor Flanders chere lettes not my sight to deme,  
Of black and white nor taket my wittes away,  
With beahtlines, such doe those beastes esteeme,  
Nor I am not, where truth is geven in pray  
For money, pryson, and treason, of some  
A common practice used night and daye;  
But I am here in Kent and Christendome,  
Among the muses, where I reade and ryme,  
Where if thou list, mine own John Poynes to come,  
Thou shalt be judge, how I do spende my tyme.

*How to use the court and himself therein, written to Syr  
Fraunces Bryan.*

A SPENDING hend that alway powreth out,  
Had nede to have a bringer in as fast,  
And on the stone that still doth turne about,  
There groweth no mosse: These proverbes yet  
doe last.

Reason hath set them in so sure a place,  
That length of yeres their force can never waste:  
When I remember this, and eke the case  
Wherein thou standst, I thought forthwith to write  
(Bryan) to thee, who knowes how great a grace,  
In writing, is to counsaile man the right;  
To thee, therefore, that trottes styll up and downe,  
And never rests but running day and night,  
From realme to realme, from citie, strete, and  
towne;

Why dost thou weare thy body to the bones,  
And mightest at home slepe in thy bedde of downe,  
And drinke good ale so nappy for the nones,  
Fede thyself fatte and heape up pounde by pound,  
Lykest thou not this? no, why? for swine so  
groines

In styre, and chaw dung moulded on the ground,  
And drivell on pearles, with head still in the man-  
ger,

So of the harpe the assie doth heare the sound,  
So sackes of durt be filde. The neat courtier  
So serves for lesse, then do these fatted swine,  
Though I seme leane and drye without a moister,

Yet will I serve my prince, my ~~king~~ and thynke,  
And let them live to fede the paunch that list,  
So may I live to fede both me and myne,  
By God well sayd. But what and if thou wist  
How to bring in, as fast as thou doest spende  
That would I learne, and it shall not be mist  
To tell the how. Now harke what I intende  
Thou knowest well first, who so can seke to please,  
Shal purchase frendes, where trouth shall by of-  
fende,

Flee therefore truth, it is both welth and ease,  
For though that trouth of every man hath praise,  
Full neare that wynde goth trouth in great missease,  
Use vertue, as it goeth now a dayes,  
In woord alone to make thy language swete,  
And of the dede, yet doe not as thou sayes,  
Els be thou sure, thou shalt be farre unmete,  
To geat thy bread, eche thing is now so skant,  
Seke still thy profit upon thy bare fete,  
Lend in no wise for fear that thou do want;  
Unless it be, as to a calfe a chese,  
But if thou can be sure to win a cant  
Of half at least, it is not good to leese.

Learne at the ladde, that in a long white cote,  
From under the stall withouten landes or fee,  
Hath lept into the shoppe, who knowes by rote,  
This rule that I have tolde thee here before,  
Sometime also riche age begynnes to dote,  
Se thou when there thy gayne may be the more,  
Stray him by the arme where so he walk or goe,  
Be nere alway, and if he cough to fore,  
What he hath spyt treade out, and please him so  
A diligent knave that pykes his maisters purse  
May please him so, that he withouten mo,  
Executour is, and what is he the worse,  
But if so chance, thou get nought of the man,  
The widow may for all thy payne disburse  
A riveled skinne, a stinking breath, what than?  
A toothelesse mouth shall doe thy lippes no harme;  
The gold is good, and though the curse or banne,  
Yet where thee list, thou mayst lye good and  
warne;

Let the old mule hyte upon the brydle,  
Whilst there do lye a sweter in thine arme,  
In this also see that thou be not ydle,  
Thy nece, thy cosin, sister, or thy daughter,  
If she be fayre, if handsome be her middle,  
If thy better hath her love beought her,  
Avaunce ~~his~~ cause and he shall helpe thy nede  
It is but love, turne thou it to a laughter.  
But ware I say, so gold the helpe and spede,  
That in this case thou be not so unwyse,  
As pander was in such a lyke dede,  
For he the foole of conscience was so nyce,  
That he no gayne would have for all his payne;  
Be next thy selfe, for friendship bears no pryce.  
Laughst thou at me? why, do I speak in vayne?  
No, not at thee, but at thy thyrsty jest;  
Wouldest thou, I shoulde for any losse or gayne  
Change that for golde that I have tane for best?  
Next godly thinges, to have an honest name,  
Should I leave that then take me for a beast.  
Nay then farewell, and if thou care for shame  
Content the with honest povertie,  
With free tong, what thee mislikes, to blame



And for thy trouth some time aduersitie,  
And therewithall this gyft I shall thee give,  
In this world now little prosperitie,  
And quoyne to kepe, as water in a fyve.

*The song of Jopas unfinished.*

When Dido feasted furst the wandring Trojan  
knight,  
Whom Junos wrath with stormes did force in Li-  
bik sands to light.  
That mighty Atlas taught the supper lasting long,  
With crisped lockes, in golden harpe Jopas sang  
in song: [and name.  
That same (quod he) that we the world do call  
Of heaven and earth with all contentes, it is the  
very frame:  
Of thus, of heavenly powers by more powre  
kept in one,  
Repugnant kindes, in middes of whom the earth  
hath place alone. [and nourse,  
Firme, rounde, of living things the mother place  
Without the which in egall weight this heaven  
doth hold his course. [ven;  
And it is calde by name, the first and moving hea-  
The firmament is placed next, containg other seven.  
Of heavenly powers that same is planted full and  
thicke,  
As shining lights, which we call starres, that there-  
in cleave and sticke.  
With great swift sway the fyrst, and with his rest-  
less fours, [nual cours.  
Carieth itself, and all those eyght in even conti-  
And of this world so round within that rolling case,  
Two points there be that never move, but firmly  
kepe their place.  
The tone we see alway, the tother stands object,  
Against the same divyding just, the ground by line  
direct. [th' other,  
Which by ymagination, drawne from the one to  
Toucheth the centre of the earth, for way there is  
none other, [not bright,  
And these becalde the poles, descride by starres  
Artike the one northward we see, Antartike tho-  
ther hight  
The lyne, that we deyse from thone to thother so,  
As axell is, upon which the heavens about do go,  
Which of water nor earth, of ayre nor fyre have  
kinde;  
Therefore the substance of those same were hard  
for man to find;  
But they been uncorrupt, simple and pure unmixt;  
And so we say been all those starres, that in the  
same be fixt;  
And eke those erring seven, in cyrcle as they stray,  
So calde, because against that fyrst they have re-  
pugnant way,  
And smaller by ways too, scant sensible to man,  
To busy woorke for my poor harpe, let sing then  
he that can,  
The wydest save the fyrst of all these nyne above,  
One hundred yere doth aske of space for one de-  
gree to move:

Of which decrees we make in the fyrst moving  
heaven,  
Three hundred and threescore in partes, justly  
divided even;  
And yet there is another between those heavens  
two, [for now.  
Whose moving is so flye so slacke, I name it not  
The seventh heaven, or the shell next to the starry  
skye, [so flie,  
All those degrees that gathered up with aged pace,  
And doth perourme the same, as elders count  
hath bene,  
In nine and twenty yeres complete, and days al-  
most sixteen,  
Do carye in his bought the starre of Saturne olde,  
A threaner of all living things with drought, and  
with his cold, [pase,  
The sixt whom this conteins, doth stalke with yonger  
And in twelve yere doth some what more then  
thothers vyage was, [nigne,  
And thys in it doth beare the starre of Jove be-  
Twene Saturnes malice, and us men, friendly de-  
fending signe; [dayes,  
The fifth beares bloudy Mars, that in three hundred  
And twise eleven with one full yere hath finish't  
all those wayes. [sixe,  
A yere doth aske the fourth, and howers therto  
And in the same the dayes eye, the sunne therein  
he sticke: [me,  
The thyrd that governde is by that, that governs  
And love for love, and for no love provokes, as  
oft we see. [the tother,  
In like space doth perourme that course, that dyd  
So doth the next, the next unto the same, that  
second is in order.  
But it doth beare the starre, that calde is Mercury,  
That many a crafty secret steppe doth tread, as  
Calcars trye, [gone  
That skye is last, and sixt next us those wayes hath  
In seven and twenty common days, and eke the  
third one; [about.  
And beareth with his sway the dyvers moone  
Now bright, now brown, now bent, now full, and  
now her light is out:  
Thus have they of their owne two movinges all  
these seven,  
One, wherein they be carried still, eche in his  
several heaven: [layde  
Another of themselves, where theyr bodies be  
In by waies, and in lesser roundes, as I afore have  
sayde, [the streight,  
Save of them all the sunne doth stray least from  
The starry skye hath but one course, that we have  
calde the eight.  
And all these movinges eyght are ment from west  
to east, [east to west;  
Although they seeme to clyme aloft, I say from  
But that is but by force of theyr first moving skye,  
In twise twelve howres from east to east that car-  
rieth them by and by.  
But marke me well also, the moving of these  
seven, [heaven;  
Be not about the axletree of the fyrst moving  
For they have theyr two poles directly tione to  
the tother.

---

# UNCERTAIN E AUCTORS.

---

## SONGES AND SONETTES.

### *A praise of his ladie.*

GEVE place you ladies and be gone,  
Boast not your selves at all,  
For here at hande approacheth one,  
Whose face will stayne you all.

The vertue of her lively lookes  
Excels the precious stone,  
I wishe to have none other bookes  
To reade or look upon.

In eche of her two cristall eyes,  
Smyleth a naked boy;  
It would you all in heart suffice  
To see that lampe of joye.

I think nature hath lost the mould,  
Where she her shape did take;  
Or else I doubt if nature could  
So fayre a creature make.

She may be well comparde  
Unto the Phenix kinde,  
Whose like was never seene nor heard,  
That any man can fynde.

In lyfe she is Diana chaste  
In trouthe Penelopey,  
In woord and eke in dede stedfast;  
What will you more we say:

If all the world were sought so farre,  
Who could finde such a wight,  
Her beauty twinkleth lyke a starre  
Within the frosty night.

Her roseall coulour comes and goes,  
With such a comely grace,  
More ruddier too, then doth the rose,  
Within her lively face.

At Bacchus feast none shall her mete,  
Ne at no wanton playe,  
Nor gasing in an open strete,  
Nor gadding as astray.

The modest myrth that she doth use,  
Is mixt with shamefastnesse,  
All vyce she doth wholly refuse,  
And hateth ydlenesse.

O lord it is a world to see,  
How vertue can repayre,

And decke in her such modestie,  
Whome nature made so fayre.

Truely she doth as farre excede,  
Our women now adayes,  
As doth the jelifloure, a wede,  
And more a thousand wayes

How might I doe to get a grasse  
Of this unspotted tree:  
For all the rest are playne but chaffe  
Which seme good come to bee.

This gyft alone I shall her geve,  
When death doth what he can,  
Her honest fame shall ever live,  
Within the mouth of man.

---

### *They of the meane estate are happie.*

It right be raft and overronne,  
And power take part with open wronge,  
If feare by force do yeld to sone,  
The lacke is like to last to long.

If God for goodes shal be unplaced,  
If right for riches loses hys shape,  
If world for wisedome be embraced,  
The gesse is great much hurt may hap.

Among good things I prove and finde,  
The quiet lyfe doth most abound,  
And sure to the contented mynde  
There is no riches may be founde.

For riches hates to be content,  
Rule is enemy to quietnesse,  
Power is most part impacient,  
And seldome lyketh to live in peace.  
I heard a heardman once compare,  
That quiet nights he had mo slept  
And had no merydayes to spare,  
Then he which ought the beast he kept.

I would not have it thought hereby,  
The dolphin swimme I mean to teach,  
Nor yet to learne the fawlcen flye  
I rowe not so farre past my reache.

But as my part above the rest,  
Is well to wish and well to will,  
So tyll my breath shall sayle my brest,  
I will not cease to wish you still.

*Upon consideration of the state of this life he wished death.*

THE longer life the more offence  
The more offence the greater paine,  
The greater paine the lesse defence,  
The lesse defence the lesser gaine:  
The loss of gaine long yll doth trye,  
Wherefore come death and let me dye.  
The shorter life, lesse count I finde,  
The less account the sooner made,  
The account soon made, the merier mind,  
The merier mynd doth thought evade;  
Short life in truth this thing doth trye,  
Wherefore come death and let me dye.  
Com gentle death, the ebbe of care,  
The ebbe of care, the flood of life,  
The flood of life, the joyful fare,  
The joyful fare, the end of strife,  
The end of strife, that thing wish I.  
Wherefore come death and let me dye.

*The lover that once disdained love, is now become subject being caught in his snare.*

To this my song give eare who list  
And mine entent judge as ye will,  
The time is come that I have mist  
The thing whereon I hoped styl,  
And from the toppe of all my trust  
Myshap hath throwen me in the dust.  
The time hath been and that of late,  
My hart and I might leap at large;  
And was not shut within the gate  
Of love's desire, nor took no charge  
Of any thing that did pertaine,  
As touching love in any paine.  
My thought was free my hart was lyght  
I marked not who lost, who saught,  
I plaide by day, I slept by night,  
I forced not, who wept, who laught,  
My thought from all such things was free,  
And I my self at libertie.  
I toke no hede to tauntes nor toys  
As leef to see them frowne as smyle,  
Where fortune laught I scornde their joyes  
I found their fraudes and every wyle,  
And to my self oft tymes I smyled.  
To see how love had them begiled.  
Thus in the net of my conceit,  
I masked still among the sort  
Of such as fed upon the bayte  
That Cupide laide for his disport,  
And ever as I saw them caught  
I them beheld and thereat laught.

'Till at the length when Cupide spied,  
My scornful wyll and spiteful use,  
And how I past not who was tyed  
So that my self myght still live lose,  
He set himself to lye in waite  
And in my way he threw a baite.

Such one as nature never made  
I dare well say save she alone,  
Such one she was as would invade  
A hart more hard then marble stone,  
Such one she is, I know it right,  
Her nature made to shew her might.

Then as a man in a mase  
When use of reason is away,  
So I began to stare and gase  
And fodeinly, without delay  
Or ever I had the wit to loke  
I swallowed up both bait and hooke.

Which daily grieves me more and more  
By sundry sortes of careful wo,  
And none alive may salve the fore  
But only she that hurt me so,  
In whom my lyfe dothe now consist  
To save or slay me as she lyst.

But seeyng now that I am caught  
And bounde so fast, I cannot flee.  
Be ye by myne ensample taught  
That in your fantasies fele you free  
Despyse not them that lovers are  
Lest you be caught within his snare.

*Harpalus complaint of Philliades love bestowed on Corin, who loved her not, and denied him that loved her.*

PHILLIDA was a fayre mayde  
As fresh as any flowre  
Whom Harpalus the heardman prayde  
To be his paramour.

Harpalus and eke Corin  
Were herdmen both yfere:  
And Phillida could twist and spinne,  
And thereto sing full clere

But Phillida was all to coy  
For Harpalus to winne,  
For Corin was her only joy  
Who forst her not a pinne.

How often would she flowers twine,  
How often garlandes make  
Of couflips and of columbine,  
And all for Corins sake.

But Corin he had hawkes to lure  
And forced more the field,  
Of lovers law he took no cure  
For once he was begyde.

If Harpalus prevayled mought,  
His labour all was lost,  
For he was farthest from her thought,  
And yet he loved her most.

Therefore waxt he both pale and leane  
And drye as clod of clay,  
His flesh it was consumed cleane,  
His colour gone away.



His beard it had not long be shave,  
His heare hong all unkempt,  
A man most fit even for the grave  
Whom spitefull love had spent.

His eyes were read, and all forewatched,  
His face besprent with teares,  
It semde unhap had him long hatched,  
In middes of hys dispayres.

His cloaths were black and also bare,  
As one forlorne was he,  
Upon his head he alwaies ware  
A wreathe of willowe tree,

His beastes he kept upon a hill,  
And he fate in the dale,  
And thus with sighs and sorrows shrill  
He gan to tell his tale.

Oh Harpalus (thus would he say)  
Unhappiest under sonn,  
The cause of thine unhappy day  
By love was fyrst begonne.

For thou wentst first by fute to seeke  
A tygre to make tame,  
That fettes not by thy love a leeke  
But makes thy grieve her game.

As easy it were for to convert  
The frost into the flame,  
As for to turne a froward hart,  
Whom thou so feign wouldest frame.

Corin he liveth carelesse,  
He leapes among the leaves,  
He eates the fruites of thy redresse.  
Thou reapes, he takes the sheaves.

My beastes awhile your foode refraine,  
And harke your heardeisman's founde;  
Whome spightful love alas! hath slayne,  
Through gyrt with many a wounde.

O happily be ye beastes wild,  
That here your pastures takes;  
I see that ye be not begyde,  
Of these your faithful mates.

The hart he feedeth by the hinde,  
The buck hard by the do;  
The turtle dove is not unkinde.  
To him that loves her so.

The ewe she hath by her the ramme,  
The young cow hath the bull;  
The calfe with many a lusty lambe,  
Doe feed their hunger full.

But well away that nature wrought  
Thee Phillida soe faire;  
For I may say that I have bought  
Thy beauty all to deare.

What reason is that crueltie,  
With beauty should have part:  
Or else that such great tyranny,  
Should dwell in woman's hart.

I see therefore to shappe my death  
She cruelly is prest.  
To th' ende that I may want my breath,  
My days been at the best.

O Cupide, graunt this my request,  
And do not stoppe thine eares;  
That she may feel within her brest,  
The paynes of my despayres.

Of Corin that is carelesse  
That she may crave her fee,

As I have done in great distresse  
That loved her faithfully.

But since that I shall dye her slave,  
Her slave and eke her thrall;  
Write you my friendes upon my grave,  
This chaunce that is befall.

Here lyeth unhappy Harpalus,  
By cruell love now slaine;  
Whom Phillida unjustly thus,  
Hath muredred with disdaine.

*Of the death of Philips.*

BEWAILE with me all ye that have profest  
Of musicke th' arte, by touch of coarde or wind,  
Lay down your lutes and let your gyterns rest  
Philips is dead whose like you cannot fynde,  
Of musicke much exceeding all the rest;  
Muses therefore of force now must ye wrest  
Your pleasant notes into another founde,  
The string is broke, the lute is dispossessed,  
The hande is colde, the body in the ground,  
The lowring lute lamenteth now therefore,  
Philips her frende, that can her touche no more.

*That all things sometime finde ease of thyr payne, save  
only the lover.*

I SEE there is no sort  
Of things that live in grieve,  
Which at sometime may not resort  
Whereas they have reliefe,

The stricken dere by kinde  
Of death that stands in awe,  
For his recure an herb can fynde,  
The arrowe to withdrawe.

The chased dere hath soyle,  
To coole him in his heate;  
The asse after his wery toyle,  
In stable is up fet.

The cony hath his cave,  
The little Myrd his nest,  
From heate and colde themselves to save,  
At all times as they list

The owle with feble sight,  
Lyes lurking in the leaves,  
The sparrow in the frosty night  
May shroude her in the eaves.

But wq to me, alas,  
In sunne nor yet in shade,  
I cannot find a resting place,  
My burden to unlade.

But day by day still beares  
The burden on my backe,  
With weeping eyen and watry teares,  
To holde my hope aback.

All things I see have place,  
Wherein they bowe or bende,  
Save this, alas, my woful case,  
Which no where fyndeth ende.

*Th' assault of Cupide upon the fort where the lovers hart  
lay wounded, and how he was taken.*

WHEN Cupide scaled fyrst the fort,  
Wherein my heart lay wounded fore,  
The batry was of such a fort  
That I must yelde or dye therefore.  
There saw I love upon the wall,  
How he his banner dyd dysplay,  
Alarme, alarme, he 'gan to call,  
And bade his souldiours kepe aray.  
The armes the which that Cupide bare,  
Were pearced heartes with tears besprent,  
In silver and sable to declare  
The stedfast love he always ment.  
There myght you see his hand all drest,  
In colours like to whyte and blacke,  
With powder and with pellets preft,  
To bring the forte, to spoyle and sacke.  
Good while the maister of the shot,  
Stoode in the rampyre brave and proude,  
For spence of powder he spared not,  
Assaulte, assaulte, to cry aloude.  
There myght you heare the cannons rore,  
Eche peece dyscharged a lover's louke,  
Which had the power to rent, and tore  
In any place whereas they tooke.  
And even with the trumpets sowne,  
The scaling ladders were up set,  
And beauty walked up and downe,  
With bow in hand and arrowes whet.  
Then fyrst desyre began to scale  
And throwed him under his targe,  
As one the worthiest of them all,  
And aptest for to give the charge.  
Then pushed souldiours with theyr pykes,  
And holbarders with handy strokes,  
The hargabushe in fleshe it lightes,  
And dims the ayre with misty smokes.  
And as it is now souldiers use,  
When shot and powder gins to want,  
I hanged up my flag of truce,  
And pleaded for my lyves graunt.  
When fancy thus had made her breache,  
And beauty entred with her bande,  
With bag and baggage sely wretch,  
I yelded into beauties hand.  
Then beauty bad to blow retyre,  
And every souldiour to retyre,  
And mercy mylde with spede to fet  
Me captive bound as prisoner.  
Madame (quoth I) sith that this day  
Hath served you at all assayes,  
I yelde to you without delay,  
Here of the fortresse all the kayes.  
And sith that I have been the marke,  
At whom you shot at with your eye,  
Nedes must you with your handy warke,  
Or save my fore, or let me dye.

*The aged lover renounceth love.*

I LOTHE that I dyd love,  
In youth that I thought swete,  
VOL. I.

As time requires for my belove,  
Methinks they are not mete.

My lustes they do me leave,  
My fancies all are fled,  
And tract of time begynnes to weave  
Gray heares upon my hed.

For age with stealing steppes  
Hath clowde me with his crouche,  
And lusty lyfe away she leapes  
As there had been none such.

My muse doth not delight  
Me as she dyd before,  
My hand and pen are not in plight,  
As they have been of yore.

For reason me denyes  
This youthly ydle ryme.  
And day by day to me cryes,  
Leave of these toyes in tyme.

The wrinkles in my browe,  
The furrows in my face,  
Say lymping age will lodge hym now,  
Where youth must geve him place.

The harbinger of death,  
To me I see him ride,  
The cough, the cold, the gasping breath  
Doth byd me to provyde.

A pickax and a spade,  
And eke a shrowding shete,  
A house of clay for to be made,  
For such a geast most mete.

Methinkes I hear the clarke  
That knoles the carefull knell,  
And byddes me leave my woful warke,  
Ere nature me compell.

My keepers knit the knot,  
That youth did laugh to skorne,  
Of me that cleane shall be forgot,  
As I had not been borne.

Thus must I youth geve up,  
Whose badge I long dyd weare,  
To them I yelde the wanton cup,  
That better may it beare.

Lo, here the bare hed skull,  
By whose balde signe I know,  
That stonping age away shall pull,  
Which youthful yeres did sowe.

For beauty with her band  
These croked cares hath wrought,  
And shipped me into the land,  
From whence I fyrst was brought.

And ye that byde behinde,  
Have ye none other trust  
As ye of clay were cast by kynd,  
So shall ye waste to dust.

*Of the death of Sir Thomas Wyat the Elder.*

Lo, dead! he lives, that whilome lived here,  
Among the dead, that quick goes on the ground,  
Though he be dead, yet quick he doth appeare  
By lively name, that death cannot confound,  
His lyfe for ay of fame the trump shall found,  
Though he be dead, yet lives he here alive,  
Thus can no death from Wyat life deprive.

*Of a new married student that plaid fast or lose.*

A STUDIENT, at his boke so plait,  
That welth he might have wonne,  
From boke to wife did flete in hast,  
From welth to wo to runne,  
Now, who hath plaid a feater cast,  
Since jugling first begonne?  
In knitting of himself so fast,  
Himself he hath undonne.

*The lover in despaire, lamenteth his case.*

ADIEU, desert, how art thou spent?  
Ah! dropping tears, how do ye wash?  
Ah! scalding sighes, how be yee spent.  
To pricke them forth that will not haste?  
Ah! pained hart, thou gapst for grace,  
Even then where pitie hath no place.  
As easy it is the stony rocke  
From place to place for to remove,  
As by thy plaint for to provoke  
A frozen hart from hate to love:  
What should I say? Such is thy lott,  
To fawne on them that force thee not.  
Thus mayst thou safely say and sweare,  
That rigour raigneth and ruth doth faile,  
In thanklesse thoughts my thoughts do weare;  
Thy truth, thy faith may nought availe;  
For thy good will, why should thou so;  
Still graist where grace it will not grow.  
Alas! poor hart, thus hast thou spent  
Thy flowring time, thy pleasant yeres,  
With sighing voice wepe and lament;  
For of thy hope no fruite apperes:  
Thy true meaning is paid with scorne,  
That ever soweth and reapeth no corne.  
And where thou seekest a quiet port,  
Thou dost but weigh against the winde;  
For where thou gladdest wouldst resort,  
There is no place for thee assinde:  
Thy destiny hath sett it so,  
That thy true hart should cause thy wo.

*Of his maiestresse, M. B.*

IN bayes I boast, whose branche I beare,  
Such joy therein I finde,  
That to the death I shall it weare,  
To ease my carelesse minde.  
In heat, in cold, both night and day,  
Her virtue may be sene,  
When other fruits and flowers decay,  
The bay yett grows full green;  
Her beries fede the birdes full oft;  
Her leues swete water make,  
Her bowes be set in every loft.  
For their swete favours sake:  
The birdes do shroud them from the cold,  
In her we daily see;  
And men made arbers as they would.

It doth me good when I repaire  
There, as these bayes do grow,  
Where oft I walk to take the air,  
It doth delight me so.  
But lo I stand, as I were dumme,  
Her beauty for to blase,  
Wherewith my sprites be overcome,  
So long thereon I gase.  
At last I turne unto my walke,  
In passing to and fro,  
And to my false I smile and talk,  
And then away I go,  
Why smilest thou? say lookers on,  
What pleasure hast thou found?  
With that I am as cold as stone,  
And ready for to founde,  
Fie, fie for shame, sayth fanfie than,  
Pluck up thy fainted hart,  
And speak thou boldly like a man.  
Shrink not for little smart,  
Wherewith I blush and change my cheare  
My senses wax so weak,  
O God, think I, what make I here,  
That never a word may speake:  
I dare not sigh, lest I be heard,  
My lokes I flyly cast,  
And still I stand, as out were scard,  
Untill my stormes be past.  
Then happy hap doth me revive,  
The blood comes to my face;  
A merrier man is not alive,  
Then I am in that case  
Thus after sorow seke I rest;  
When fled is fancies fitt:  
And though I be a homely gest,  
Before the bays I sit;  
Where I do watch till leaves do fall:  
When winde the tree doth shake,  
Then, though my branche be very small,  
My lease away I take,  
And then I go and clap my handes,  
My heart doth leap for joy.  
These bayes do ease me from my bands,  
That long did me annoy;  
For when I do behold the same,  
Which makes so fair a show,  
I find therein my maiestress name,  
And see her virtues grow.

*A praise of Maiestresse R.*

I HEARD when fame with thundring voice did  
summon to appear  
The chief of nature's children all, that kind hath  
placed here.  
To view what brute by virtue got their lives could  
justly crave;  
And bad them shew what praise by truth they  
worthy were to have:  
Wherewith I saw how Venus came and put her self  
in place,  
And gave her ladies leave at large to stand and



Each one was called by name & row, in that assembly there,  
 That hence are gone or here remains, in court or other where :  
 A solemn silence was proclaim'd, the judges sat and heard  
 What truth could tell, or craft could faine, and who should be prefer'd :  
 Then beauty slept before the bar, whose brest and neck was bare,  
 With hair trust up, and on her head a caul of gold she ware.  
 Thus Cupids thralls began the flock, whose hungry eyes did say,  
 That she had stained all the dames, that present were that day.  
 For ere she spake with whispering words, the praise was filld throughout,  
 And fancy forced common voice, thereat to give a shout.  
 Which cried to fame take forth thy trump, and sound her praise on hy,  
 That glads the heart of every wight, that her beholds with eye.  
 What fit and rule (quod order than) do these rude people make ?  
 We hold her best that shall deserve a praise for virtues sake.  
 This sentence was no sooner said, but beauty therewith blusht,  
 The noise did cease, the hal was still and every thing was hushd.  
 Then fineness thought by training talk to win that beauty lost,  
 And whet her tongue with jolly words, and sparred for no cost ;  
 Yet wantoness could not abide, but broke her tale in hast,  
 And peevish pride for peacocks plumes would needs be hiest plast.  
 And therewithal came curiousnesse and carped out of frame,  
 The audience laught to hear the strife, as they beheld the same.  
 Yet reason soon appeas'd the brute, her reverence made and done,  
 She purchased favour for to speak, and thus her tale begun.  
 Since bounty shall the garland wear, and crowned be by fame,  
 O happy judges call for her, for she deserves the same.  
 Where temperance governs beauties flowers, and glory is not sought,  
 And shamefaced meeknesse mastreth pride, and virtue dwells in thought :  
 Bid her come forth, and shew her face, or else assent each one,  
 That true report shall grave her name in gold or marble-stone.  
 For all the world to read at will what worthy-nesse doth rest,  
 In perfect pure unspotted life, which she hath here possesst.

Then skill rose up and fought the praise, to find that if he might,  
 A person of such honest name, that men should praise of right :  
 This one I saw full sadly sit, and shrink her selfe a side,  
 Whose sober looks did shew gifts her wively grace did hide.  
 Lo here (quoth skill, good people all) is lucre left alive,  
 And she shall most accepted be, that least for praise did strive.  
 No longer fame could hold her peace, but blew a blaste so highe,  
 That made an echo in the air; and sounding through the skie;  
 The voice was loud, and thus it said, come R. with happy days,  
 Thy honest life hath won the fame, and crowned thee with praise.  
 And when I heard my maistres named, I thrust amids the throng,  
 And clapt my hands and wisht of God, that she might prosper long.

*Songes written by N. G. of the Nine Muses.*

Imes of kyng Jove, and queen remembraunce to  
 The sisters nine, the poets pleasant feres.  
 Caliope doth stately style bestowe,  
 And worthy praises payntes of princely peres :  
 Clion in soleinn songes reneweth all day,  
 With present yeres conjoyning age by past,  
 Delightful talke loves comical Thaley,  
 In fresh grene youth, who doth lyke lawrel last :  
 With voices tragicall, foundes Melpomen  
 And as with cheynes thallured care she byndes.  
 Her stringes, when Terpescor doth touch, even then  
 She toucheth hartes, and raigneth in mens myndes :  
 Fyne Erato, whose looke a lyvely chere  
 Presents in dancing, kepes a comely grace,  
 With semely gesture doth Polomyne fiere,  
 Whose woordes whole routes of rankes do rule in place.  
 Urany her globes to view all bent,  
 The ninefold heaven observes with fixed face ;  
 The blastes Eutrepic tunes of instrument,  
 With solace sweet, hence my heavy dumpes to chase.  
 Lord Phæbus, in the myddes, (whose heavenly sprite  
 These ladies doth inspire) embraceth all  
 The graces in the mules weed delyte,  
 To lead them fourth, that men in maze they fall.

*Musonius the philosophers saying.*

In woorking well, if travel you sustaine,  
 Into the winde shall lightly passe the payne;

But of the dede the glory shall remayne,  
And cause your name with worthy wights to  
raigne.

In working wrong, if pleasure you attaine,  
The pleasure soon shall vade, and void as vaine.  
But of the dede throughout the lyfe the shame  
Endures, defacing you with foul defame,  
And still torments the minde both night and day;  
Scant length of time the spot can washe away.  
Flee then ill suading pleasures, baies untrue,  
And noble vertues fayre renowne pursue.

---

*Description of virtue.*

WHAT one art thou, thus in torn wedey clad?  
Vertue in price, whom auncient sages had.  
Why poorly rayde? for fading goodes peast care.  
Why double faced? I marke eche fortunes fare.  
This bridle what? Myndes rages to restraine.  
Foolles why beare you? I love to take great  
payne.  
Why winges? I teach above the starres to flye.  
Why treade you death? I onely cannot dye.

---

*Praise of measure-keeping.*

THE ancient time commended not for nought;  
The meane what better thinge there be sought.  
In meane is vertue placed on eyther side,  
Both right and left amisse a man shall fyde.  
Icar, with fire hadst thou the midway flowne,  
Icarian beck by name had no man knowne.  
If myddle path kept had proud Phaeton  
No burning brand this earth had faine upon:  
Ne cruel power, ne none so soft can raigne,  
That kepes a meane, the same shall still remayne.  
The Iulius once dyed, to much mercy spill;  
The Nero stern, rigor extreme dyd kill.  
How could August so many yeres well passe,  
Nor over meke nor over fierce he was:  
Worship not Iove with curious fancies vaine,  
Nor him despise; hold right atwene these twaine:  
No wastfull wight, no gredy gutt is prazed,  
Stand largesse just in egall ballance payde:  
So Catoes meal surmountes Antonius chere,  
And better same his sober fare hath here  
To slender building bad as bad to grosse?  
One an eye fore, the tother falles to losse.  
As medicines helpe in measure, so (God wot)  
By overmuch the sicke their bane have got.  
Unmete me semes to utter this no waies;  
Measure forbiddes unmeasurable praise.

---

*Man's life, after Possidonius or Crates.*

WHAT pathe list you to treade? what trade will  
you assay?  
The courts of plea by braule and bate drive geeie  
peace away.

In house for wife and childe there is but carke  
and care,  
With travel and with toyle enough in fields we  
use to fare.  
Upon the seas lyeth dread; the riche in foreign  
lande,  
Do feare the losse, and there the poore like my-  
fers poorly stand.  
Stryfe with a wife, without your thriftfull harde  
to see:  
Yong brats a troble, none at all a mayme it semes  
to be.  
Youth fonde, age hath no hart, and pincheth all  
to nye;  
Chooose then the leiser of these two, ay life, or  
soon to dye.

---

*Metrodorius's mynde to the contrary.*

WHAT race of lyfe ronne you? what trade will  
you assay?  
In courts is glory got, and witt increased day  
by day.  
At home wee take our ease, and beake our selves  
in rest:  
The fieldes our nature do refreshe with pleasures  
of the best.  
On seas is gain to geat; the stranger he shall be  
Esteem'd, having much, if not, none knoweth his  
lack but he.  
A wyfe will trimme thy house, no wyle then art  
thou free;  
Brood is a lovely thing, without thy lyfe is loose  
to thee.  
Yong bloodes be stronge, olde fyres in double ho-  
nour dwell,  
Doway that choyse, no lyfe or soon to dye, for all  
is well.

---

*Of friendship.*

Or all the heavenly gifts that mortal men com-  
mend,  
What trusty treasure in the world can counter-  
vaile a frende.  
Our health is soon decayed; goodes casual, light,  
and vaine;  
Broke have we seen the force of power and ho-  
nour suffer staine.  
In bodies lust man doth resemble but base brute,  
True vertue geates and keeps a frende: good  
guyde of our pursute, [case:  
Whose hearty zeale with ours accordes in every  
No terme of time, no space of place, no storme can  
it deface.  
When fickle fortune failes, this knot endureth still.  
The kin out of their kind may fwerve, when  
frendes owe thee good will:  
When sweter solace shall befall, then one to finde,  
Upon whose brest thou mayst repose the secrets of  
thy minde?

He waileth at thy wo; his tears with thine be shed;  
With thee doth he joys, so lefe a lyfe is led.  
Behold thy frende, and of thy self the paterne see,  
One soul a wonder shall it seeme in bodies twaine  
to be;

In absence present rich in want, in sicknesse sound,  
Ye after death alive, maist thou by thy sure frende  
be founde.

Eche house, eche towne, each realme by stedfast  
love doth stande;

Where foule debate bredes bitter bale in eche di-  
vided lande,

O friendship, flower of flowers! O lively sprite  
of lyfe!

O sacred bond of blisful peace, the stalworth  
franche of strife:

Scipio with Lelius didst thou conjoyne in care;  
At home in warres for weale and wo, with equal  
faith to fare

Gisippus eke with Tyte, Damon with Pythias;  
And with Menethus' sonne Achill by the combyn-  
ed was:

Eurialus and Nifus gave Virgil cause to sing  
Of Pylades do many rymes and of Orestes ring:  
Downe Theieus went to hell, Pirith his frende to  
finde;

O that the wyves in these our daies wer to their  
mates so kynd!

Cicero the frendly man, to Atticus, his frende,  
Of friendship wrote, such couples, lo! doth lot, but  
seldom lend,

Recount thy race now ronne, how few shalt thou  
there see, [mee:]

O! Whom to say this same is he that never failed  
So rare a jewell then must nedes be holden dere,  
And as thou wilt esteem thy selfe, so take thy  
chosen fere:

The tyrant in dispaire no lacke of gold bewayles,  
But out, I am undone (saith he) for all my friend-  
ships failes:

Wherefore since nothing is more kyndly for our  
kynde,

Next wisdom thus that teacheth us, love wee the  
frendly minde.

*The death of Zorcas, an Egyptian astronomer, in the  
first fight that Alexander had with the Persians*

Now clattring armes, now raging broyles of warre,  
Can passe the noys of dredfull trumpetts clang,  
Shrowded with shafts, the heaven with cloude of  
dartes,

Covered the ayre against full fatted bulles.  
As forceth kyndled yre the lyons keene,  
Whose greedy gutts the gnawing hunger prickes:  
So Macedons against the Persians fair,  
Now corpses hyde the purpurde soyle with blood;  
Large slaughter on eche side, but Perses more,  
Moyst fieldes he bled, theyr heartes and numbers  
bate,

Fainted while they gave backe, and fall to flighte:  
The litening Macedon by swordes, by gleaves,  
By bandes and troupes of footemen, with his garde,

Speedes to dary, but hym his merest kyn,  
Oxate preserves with horsemen on a plump  
Before his carr, that none his charge should give:  
Here grunts, here groans, eche where strong youth  
is spent:

Shaking her bloudy hands, Bellone among  
The Perses soweth all kind of cruel death:  
With throte ycut he roares, he lyeth along,  
His entrailes with a launce through gyrded quyte,  
Hym smytes the club, hym woundes farre tryk-  
ing bowe,

And him the sling, and him the shining sword:

He dyeth, he is all dead, he pantes, he restes.

Right over stode in snow white armor brave,

The Memphite Zoroas, a cunning clarke,

To whom the heaven lay open as his booke;

And in celestiaall bodies he could tell

The moving meeting light aspect eclips,

And influence, and constellations all;

What earthly chaunces would betyde, what yere

Of plenty storde, what signe forewarned death,

How winter gendreth snow, what temperature

In the primetyde doth season well the soyle,

Why summer burnes, why autumnie hath ripe  
grapes,

Whither the circle quadrate may become,

Whether our tunes heaven's harmony can yelde,

Of four begyns among themselves howe great

Proportion is; what sway the erryng lightes

Doth send in course gayne that fyrst movyng hea-  
ven;

What grees one from another distant be,

What starr doth let the hurtfull fyre to rage,

Or him more mylde what opposition makes,

What fyre doth qualifye Mavorse's fyre,

What house eche one doth seeke, what planett  
raignes

Within this heaven sphere, or that small thynges,  
I speake, whole heaven he closeth in his brest.

This sage then in the starres hath spyed the fates

Threatned him death without delay, and sith

He saw he could not fatall order chaunge,

Foreward he prest in battayle, that he might

Mete with the rulers of the Macedons,

Of his right hand desirous to be slain,

The bouldest bourne, and worthiest in the feilde;

And as a wight, now wery of his lyfe,

And seking death in fyrst front of his rage,

Comes desperately to Alexander's face,

At him with dartes one after other throwes,

With recklesse words and clamour him provokes,

And sayth, Nectanak's bastard shamefull stayne

Of mothers bed, why lovest thou thy strokes,

Cowards among, turne thee to me, in case

Manhood there be so much left in thy heart:

Come fight with me, that on my helmet weare

Apollo's laurell both for learninges laude,

And eke for martiaall praise, that in my shielde

The seven-fold sophie of Minerve contain,

A match more mete fyr king then any here.

The noble prince amoved takes ruth upon

The wilfull wight, and with soft words ayen,

O monstrous man (quoth he) what so thou art,

I pray thee live, ne do not with thy death

This lodge of lore, the muse's mansion marre;



That treasure house this hand shall never spoyle,  
My sword shall never bruise that skillfull brayne,  
Long gather'd heapes of science some to spill;  
O how fayre fruites may you to mortall men  
From wisdom's garden give; how many may  
By you the wiser and the better prove:  
What error, what mad moode, what frenzy thee,  
Perfwades to be downe, sent to kepe Auerne,  
Where no artes flourish, nor no knowledge vailes  
For all these sawes. When thus the Ioveraign  
said,

Alighted Zoroas with sword unsheathed,  
The careless king there smote above the greve,  
At th' opening of his quishes wounded him,  
So that the blood down traile on the ground:  
The Macedon perceiving hurt, gan gashe,  
But yet his mynde he bent in any wise,  
Hym to forbear, sett spurrs unto his stede,  
And turnde away, lest anger of his smarte  
Should cause revenger hand deale balefull blowes.  
But of the Macedonians chieftaines knights,  
One Meleager could not bear this sight,  
But ran upon the said Egyptian reuk,  
And cutt him in both knees: He fell to ground,  
Wherewith a whole rout came of fouldiours  
sterne.

And all in pieces hewed the fely seg,  
But happely the foule fled to the starres,  
Where, under him, he hath full sight of all,  
Whereat he gazed here with reaching looke:  
The Persians waild such sapience to forgoe,  
The very sone the Macedonians wisht  
He would have lived, King Alexander selfe  
Demde him a man unmete to dye at all;  
Who wonne like praise for conquest of his yre,  
As for stoute men in fiede that day subdued,  
Who princes taught how to discerne a man,  
That in his head so rare a jewel beares,  
But over all those same Camenes, those same,  
Divine Camenes, whose honour be procurde,  
As tender parent doth hys daughters weale,  
Lamented, and for thankes all that they can,  
Do cherish hym deceast, and sett him free,  
From dark oblivion of devouring death.

*Marcus Tullius Cicero's death.*

THEREFORE when restless rage of wynde and  
wave,  
He saw by fates, alas, calde for, (quoth he)  
Is haples Cicero, sayle on, shapc course  
To the next shore, and bring me to my death.  
Perdy these thankes rescued from evill sword,  
Wilt thou my country pay? I see myne end:  
So powers divine to bid the gods above,  
In citie saved that consul Marcus shend,  
Speaking no more, but drawing from diep hart  
Great grones, even at the name of Rome rehearst,  
His eyes and cheekes with showers of tears he washt;  
And (though a route in daily dangers worne)  
With forced face the shipmen held their teares,  
And driving long, the seas rough flood to passe,  
In angry windes and stormy showers made way.

And at the last safe entered in the rode,  
Came heavy Cicero a land, with payne,  
His saynted lymmes the aged fyre doth drawe,  
And round about their master stood his band:  
Nor greatly with their own hard hap dismayde,  
Nor plighted faith prove in sharpe tyme to break,  
Some swordes, prepare some theyr dere Lord at-  
tist:

In littour laid, they lead him unkouth wayes.  
If so deceave Antonius cruell gleaves;  
They might, and threats of following routs escape:  
Thus lo, that Tullie, went that Tullius,  
Of royal robe and sacred senate prince,  
When he a farre the men approache espyeth;  
And of his sone the ensign doth acknow,  
And with drawn sword, Popilius threatning  
death,

Whose life and whole estate, in hazard once  
He had preserved, when Rome, as yett to free,  
Heard him, and at his thundring voice amazed:  
Herennius eke more tyger than the rest,  
Present inflam'd with fury, him pursues.  
What might he do, should he use in defence  
Dysarmed handes, or pardon ask for Mede?  
Should he with wordes to turne the wrath  
Of th' armed knight, whose safeguard he had  
wrought:

No age forbids, and fixt within diepe brest  
His countrys love, and falling Romes ymage;  
The charret turn, sayth he, let lose the raines,  
Runne to the undeserved death mee, lo,  
Hath Phœbus foule, as messenger forewarnde,  
And Jove desires a new heavens man to make.  
Brutus and Cassius soules, live you in blifs?  
In case, yet all the fates gain strive us not,  
Neither shall wee, perchaunce, dye unrevenge.  
Now have I lived, O Rome! ynough for me;  
My passed life nought suffreth me to doubt:  
Noylome oblivion of the loathsome death.  
Slea me: Yett all the offspring to come shall  
know,

And this decease shall bring eternal life;  
Yea, and (unlesse I fall, and all in vaine:  
Rome, I sometime thy augur chosen was)  
Not evermore shall friendly fortune thee  
Favour, Antonius, once the day shall come,  
When her dear wights, by cruell spight thus  
slaine;

Victorious Rome shall at thy hands require:  
Me likes ther while, go see the hoaped heaven.  
Speche had he left, and therewith, he, good man,  
His throat prepar'd, and held his head unmov'd.  
His hasting to those fates the very knights  
Be loth to see, and rage rebated, when  
They his bare necke beheld, and his hoare heares;  
Scant could they hold the teares that fourth gan  
burst,  
And almost fell from bloody hands the swordes;  
Only the sterne Herennius, with grim looke,  
Dastards, why stand you still? he sayeth, and  
straight

Swaps of the head with his presumptuous yron.  
Ne with that slaughter yet he is not filde:  
Foul shame on shame to heape, is his delight,  
Wherefore the handes also doth he of smyte,

Which durst Antonius life so lyfely paint.  
 Him yelding, strained ghost, from welkin hye,  
 With lothy chere lord Phœbus gan behold,  
 And in black cloud, they fay, long hid his head.  
 The Latine muses and the graces they wept,  
 And for his fall eternally shall pepe :  
 And lo, here piercing Pitho, (strange to tell)  
 Who had to him suffisde both sence and wordes.  
 When so he spake, and drest with nectar foode  
 That flowing tong, when his wind pipe dis-  
     clofd,  
 Fled with her fleeing frend, and (out alas)  
 Hath left ther earth, ne will no more returne :  
 Popilious flieth ther while, and leaving there

The senseless stock, a griezely sight doth bear,  
 Unto Antonius boord with mischief fed,

Of M. T. Cicero.

For Tullie late a tombe I gan prepare,  
 When Cynthie, thus, bad me my labour spare :  
 Such manner thinges become the dead, quoth  
     he,  
 But Tully lives, and still alyve shall be.

N. G.

S f iij





THE  
POETICAL WORKS  
OF  
THOMAS SACKVILLE,  
LORD BUCKHURST.

Containing his

INDUCTION TO THE MIRROR FOR  
MAGISTRATES.

COMPLAINT OF HENRY DUKE OF  
BUCKINGHAM.

To which is prefixed

*THE LIFE OF THE AUTHOR.*

---

In vain I think, right honourable lord,  
By this rude rime to memorize thy name,  
Whose learned muse hath writ her owne record  
In golden verse, worthy immortal fame.  
Thou much more fit, were leifure for the fame,  
Thy gracious soveraigne's prayers to compile,  
And her imperiall majestie to frame  
In loftie numbers, and heroick stile.

SPENSER'S SONNET TO LORD BUCKHURST.

---

EDINBURGH:

PRINTED BY MUNDELL AND SON, ROYAL BANK CLOSE,

Anno 1793.



---

## THE LIFE OF SACKVILLE.

---

IN the turbulent and sanguinary reign of Queen Mary, when the fires of persecution were kindled in Smithfield, and every part of England was polluted with murders, more atrocious than the slaughter of the most bloody civil war; the cultivation of polite literature was neglected amidst the calamities of the state, and only one poetical production, of prominent excellence, intitled, *A Mirror for Magistrates*, illuminates that interval of darkness between Surrey and Spenser.

More writers than one were concerned in the composition of that popular poem, which originated in the reign of Mary, and was not finally completed till the beginning of the seventeenth century; but its inventor, and most distinguished contributor was THOMAS SACKVILLE, the first Lord Buckhurst, and Earl of Dorset, Lord High Treasurer of England, Chancellor of the University of Oxford, author of the first genuine English tragedy, and "the Patriarch of a race of genius and wit."

This distinguished statesman and poet, was the son of Richard Sackville, Esq. of Buckhurst, in the parish of Withiam, in Suffex, where he was born in the year 1527. His mother was a daughter of Sir John Pruges, Lord Mayor of London, and afterwards wife of John Powlet, Marquis of Winchester.

He discovered, from his childhood, a lively wit and vigorous understanding, and was removed from a domestic tuition, to Hart-hall in Oxford, where he resided some time; but took no degree. He afterwards removed to Cambridge, where he did not reside long; but had the degree of Master of Arts conferred on him.

At both universities he became celebrated as a Latin and English poet. Wood mentions him as "having been in his younger years poetically inclined; and wrote, while he continued in Oxon, several Latin and English poems: though published, either by themselves, or mixed among other men's poems, yet I presume they are lost or forgotten, as having no name to them, or that the copies are worn out."

He afterwards entered himself a student in the Inner Temple, and at an early period of life was called to the bar.

He carried his love of poetry, which he seems to have almost solely cultivated, to the Inner Temple, where, in conjunction with Thomas Norton, a fellow-labourer of Hopkins and Sternhold, he wrote a tragedy, intitled, *Ferrex and Porrex*, which was acted before Queen Elizabeth, at Whitehall, by the students of the Inner Temple, in 1561. It was printed incorrectly and surreptitiously in 1565; more accurately in 1570; in 1590, by the title of *Gorboduc*; and reprinted by Doddsley in 1736, with a preface by Mr. Spence, by the procurement of Pope, "who wondered that the propriety and natural ease of it had not been better imitated by the dramatic authors of the succeeding age."

About the year 1557, he formed the plan of the *Mirror for Magistrates*, in which all the illustrious but unfortunate characters of the English history, from the Conquest to the end of the fourteenth century, were to pass in review before the poet, who descends, like Dante, into hell, and is conducted by *Sorrow*. Every personage was to recite his own misfortunes in a soliloquy. But he had leisure only to finish a poetical preface, called an *Induction*, and one legend, which is the *Life of Henry Stafford Duke of Buckingham*.



Relinquishing, therefore, the design abruptly, and hastily adapting the close of his *Induction* to the appearance of Buckingham, whose story was to have been the last in his series, he recommended the completion of the whole to Richard Baldwyne and George Ferrers, men of the greatest wit in that age.

Deterred, perhaps, by the greatness of the attempt, they invited to their assistance Churchyard, Phayer, and other men of wit and genius, who chose such lives from the chronicles of Fabian and Hall, as seemed to display the most affecting catastrophes, and which were probably pointed out by Sackville.

This collection was printed in 4to, 1559, with the following title, *A Myrroure for Magistrates, wherein may be seen, by example of others, with how grevous plagues vices are punished, and how frail and unstable worldly prosperitie is founde, even of those whom fortune seemeth most highly to favour.* “*Felix quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum.*” Anno 1559, *Ædibus Thomæ Marshe.*

As he early quitted the study of the law for the flowery paths of poetry; so the poet was soon lost in the statesman; and negotiations and embassies extinguished the milder ambitions of the ingenious muse.

In the fourth and fifth years of Queen Mary, his name appears in the parliamentary lists; and in the fifth of Queen Elizabeth, 1564, when his father was elected knight of the shire for Sussex, he was returned one of the members for Buckinghamshire.

Not long after this, he travelled into France and Italy, and was detained some time a prisoner at Rome, in consequence of some pecuniary inconvenience.

On his father's death in 1566, his liberty was procured, and he returned to England, to take possession of an ample patrimony.

His eminent accomplishments and abilities having acquired the confidence and esteem of Queen Elizabeth, he was knighted in 1567, in her presence, by the Duke of Norfolk, and at the same time promoted to the peerage, by the title of *Baron Buckhurst.*

In consequence of the Queen's frequent admonitions, he is said to have corrected his taste for magnificence and expence, which had some times subjected him to considerable inconveniencies.

In 1573, he went ambassador to France. In 1574, he sat on the trial of the Duke of Norfolk; at which time he was also in the Privy Council.

He was nominated one of the commissioners for the trial of Mary Queen of Scots; but it does not appear that he was present at her condemnation at Fotheringay Castle; yet after the confirmation of the sentence, he was appointed to bear the unhappy tidings to her, and to see the sentence put in execution.

In 1587, he went ambassador to the States-General; but, having incurred the displeasure of the Earl of Leicester and Lord Burleigh, he was recalled, and confined to his house nine months.

On the death of Leicester, he recovered the Queen's favour, and was made Knight of the Garter, one of the peers who sat on the trial of Lord Arundel, and joined with Burleigh, in negotiating a peace with Spain and Holland.

In 1591, he was, by the Queen's recommendation, elected Chancellor of the University of Oxford, in opposition to Essex, the object of her capricious passion, and incorporated Master of Arts.

On Burleigh's death, he was appointed Lord High Treasurer, and soon after joined in commission with Essex and Sir Thomas Egerton for negotiating an alliance with Denmark; and when that unfortunate nobleman was brought to his trial, with his friend Southampton, he was constituted Lord High Steward on the occasion.

At the accession of King James, his patent of Lord High Treasurer was renewed for life; and in 1603, he was created *Earl of Dorset*, and appointed one of the commissioners for executing the office of Lord Marshal.

He died suddenly at the council-table, Whitehall, April 19th 1608, in the 81st year of his age, and was buried in Westminster Abbey.

His funeral sermon was preached by Dr. Abbot, his chaplain, afterwards Archbishop of Canterbury, in which he is very lavish in his praise.

The character of Sackville, as a statesman, is to be sought elsewhere. It is sufficient to say, that few first ministers have left so fair a character. Amidst the intrigues of an artful court, he preserv-

ed the integrity of a private man. His family disdained the offer of an apology for him, against some little cavils of a rival party. In the exercise of his political functions, the brilliancy of his imagination grew more correct, not less abundant. Naunton relates, that his "secretaries had difficulty to please him, he was so *facete* and choice in his style." Even in the decisions of that rigid tribunal, the Star Chamber, which was never esteemed the school of eloquence, "so strong," says Lloyd, "was his invention, that he was called the *Star Chamber Bell*." Amidst the business of an envoy at Paris, he found time to prefix a *Latin Epistle* to Clerke's Latin translation of Castiglion's "Courtier," which is not an unworthy recommendation of a treatise remarkable for its polite Latinity. Himself a poet, he encouraged the art which he improved, by his liberality; and left his wit and patronage of polite literature to his descendants, of whom was Charles Sackville, Earl of Dorset, the well known patron of Dryden and Prior;

— Whose great forefathers every grace,  
Reflecting and reflected in his race;  
Where other *Buckbursts*, other *Dorsets* shine,  
And poets still, or patriots deck the line.

He was more courted and complimented by poets than any nobleman of his time, except Essex, whose love of literature, heroism, integrity, and generosity, made him the favourite of the nation, and the subject of innumerable sonnets and ballads, from Spenser to the lowest rhymers: And if panegyric were any where justifiable, it must be when paid to the man, who endeavoured to save Spenser from starving in the streets of Dublin, and who buried him in Westminster Abbey, with becoming solemnity.

As a poet, Sackville has pretensions to the gratitude of posterity, which have not hitherto been fully considered or allowed. He is entitled to rank with Spenser, Shakspeare, and Marlowe, the most eminent poets of his age; by the first of whom he is only surpassed in the perfection of *imagery*, by having had the disadvantage of writing before him; and, by the second, in his magic power of moving the passions, and the unrivalled excellence of his dramatic dialogue.

His tragedy of *Gorboduc* has the merit of being the first specimen in our language of a heroic tale written in blank verse, divided into acts and scenes, and clothed in all the formalities of a regular drama. It is praised by Sidney for its *notable moralitie*; but it was never popular, owing to the uninteresting nature of the plot, the tedious length of the speeches, the want of a discrimination of character, and almost a total absence of pathetic incidents. The dialogue, however, contains much dignity, strength of reflection, and good sense; and the language has great purity and perspicuity, and is entirely free from that tumid phraseology, and those exaggerated imageries and pedantic metaphors, which are the chief blemishes of the scenes of Shakspeare.

The assistance of Norton, to whom the three first acts are given by Wood, may be justly doubted. Every scene of *Gorboduc* is marked by Sackville's characteristic manner, which consists in a perspicuity of style, and a command of numbers, superior to the tone of his age.

In the *Mirror for Magistrates* he has two poems of considerable length, the *Induction*, and *Legend of Buckingham*, which are the chief foundation of his fame.

The collection, of which they make a conspicuous part, was reprinted in 1563, 1571, 1574, and in 1587, with an *Induction*, and the additions of many new lives, by John Higgins. At length the whole was digested anew, with additions by Richard Niccols, an ingenious poet, and printed in 1610, under the following title: *A Mirrour for Magistrates, being a true chronicle historie of the untimely fall of such unfortunate princes, and men of note, as have happened since the first entrance of Brute into this island, until this our age, newly enlarged, with a last part, called, A Winter's Night Vision, being an addition of such tragedies, especially famous, as are exempted in the former historie, with a poem annexed, called, England's Eliza*. At London, imprinted by Felix Kyngston, 1610.

Sackville's share in it is illustrated in the preface. "I purpose only to follow the intended scope of that most honorable patronage, who, by how much he did surpass the rest in the eminence of his noble condition, by so much he hath exceeded them all in the excellence of his heroical stile,

which, with golden pen, he hath limmed out to posteritie in that worthy object of his minde, THE TRAGEDIE OF THE DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM, and in his preface, then intituled MASTER SACKVILL'S INDUCTION." This edition, which contains 86 lives and 875 pages, has never been reprinted, and is extremely scarce. That it was in high esteem throughout the reign of Queen Elizabeth, appears not only from its numerous editions, but from the testimonies of Sidney, Heywod, Webbe, Bolton, and other contemporary writers. It is reasonable to suppose, that it enriched the stores, and extended the limits of our drama. Shakspeare is indebted to it for many scenes in his plays. Much of it might bear republication, and make good its claim to public notice; particularly the legends written by Churchyard and Niccols, which have considerable merit, and often shew a command of language and versification. But the *Induction* and *Legend* of Sackville, afford the most favourable specimen of those popular legends, and deserve being revived equally as compositions of real and intrinsic merit, and as objects of curiosity. They are now received, for the first time, into a collection of classical English poetry.

The Earl of Orford and Mr. Warton have characterised the poetry of Sackville with such elegance and minuteness, that it will be sufficient to add their testimonies as a justification of the revival of his writings, and as unquestionable authorities in his favour.

"Our historic plays," says Lord Orford, "are allowed to have been founded on the heroic narratives in the *Mirror for Magistrates*; to that plan, and to the boldness of Lord Buckhurst's new scenes, perhaps we owe Shakspeare."

"Sackville's *Induction*," says Mr. Warton, "loses much of its dignity and propriety, by being prefixed to a single life, and that of no great historical importance; the plan is confessedly copied from Boccaccio's *De Casibus virorum illustrium*, translated by Lydgate; the descent into hell, from Dante's *Commedia*," and the sixth book of Virgil. The shadowy inhabitants of hell-gate are his own, and conceived with the vigour of a creative imagination, and described with great force of expression; they are delineated with that fullness of proportion, that invention of picturesque attributes, distinctness, animation, and amplitude, of which Spenser is commonly supposed to have given the first specimens in our language, and which are characteristic of his poetry. The readers of the "*Fairy Queene*" will easily point out many particular passages, which Sackville's *Induction* suggested to Spenser."

"The *Complaynt of Henrye Duke of Buckingham*, is written with a force and even elegance of expression, a copiousness of phraseology, and an exactness of versification, not to be found in any other parts of the collection. On the whole, it may be thought tedious and languid; but that objection unavoidably results from the general plan of these pieces. It is impossible that soliloquies of such prolixity, and designed to include much historical, and even biographical matter, should every where sustain a proper degree of spirit, pathos, and interest."



---

# THE INDUCTION

TO A

## MIRROUR FOR MAGISTRATES.

---

THE wrathfull winter proching on a pace,  
With blustering blastes had al ybared the treen,  
And olde Saturnus with his frosty face  
With chilling colde had pearst the tender green :  
The mantels rent, wherein enwrapped been  
The gladfom groves that nowe laye overthrowen,  
The tapets torne, and every blome downe blowen.

The foyle that erst so seemly was to seen,  
Was all despoyled of her beauties hewe :  
And foot freshe flowers (where with the sommers  
queen [blewe  
Had clad the earth) now Boreas blastes downe  
And small fowles flocking, in their song did rewe  
The winters wrath, wher with eche thing defaste  
In woful wise bewayled the sommer past.

Hawthorne had lost his motley lyverye,  
The naked twigges were shivering all for colde :  
And dropping downe the teares abundantly,  
Eche thing (me thought) with weping eye me  
tolde  
The cruell season, bidding me withholde  
My selfe within, for I was gotten out  
Into the felde whereas I walke about.

When loe the night with mistie mantels spred,  
Can darke the daye, and dim the azure tkyes,  
And Venus in her message Hermes sped  
To bluddy Mars, to wyl him not to ryse,  
While she her selfe approcht in speedy wife :  
And Virgo hiding her disdainful brest  
With Thetis now had layd her downe to rest.

Whiles Scorpio dreading Sagittarius dart,  
Whose bowe prest bent in fight, the string had  
flypt,  
Downe fliyd into the ocean flud aparte,  
The Beare that in the Iryshe seas had dipt  
His grieved feete, with speede from thence he  
whypt :  
For Thetis hasting from the Virgines bed  
Pursued the Bear, that ear she came was fled.

And Phaeton nowe neare reaching to his race  
With glistering beames, gold streamynge where  
they bent  
Was prest to enter in his resting place.  
Crythius that in the carte fyrste went  
Had even now attaynde his journeys stent  
And fast declining hid away his head,  
While Titan couched him in his purple bed.

And pale Cinthea with her borrowed light  
Beginning to supply her brothers place,  
Was past the noonsteepe fyre degrees in sight,  
When sparkling starres amynd the heavens face  
With twinkling light shene on the earth apace,  
That while they brought about the nightes  
chare  
The darke had dimmed the day ear I was ware.

And forowing I to see the sommer flowers  
The livly greene, the lusty leas forlorne,  
The sturdy trees so shattered with the showers,  
The fields so fade that floorisht so beforne  
It taught me wel all earthly thinges be borne  
To dye the death, for nought long time may last :  
The sommers beauty yeeldes to winters blast.

Then looking upward to the heavens leames  
With nightes starres thicke powdred every where,  
Which erst so glistered with the golden streames  
That chearefull Phebus spred downe from his  
sphere,  
Beholding darke oppressing day so neare :  
The sodayne sight reduced to my minde  
The fundry chaunges that in earth we fynde.

That musing on this worldly wealth in thought,  
Which comes and goes more faster than we see  
The flyckering flame that with the fyre is wrought,  
My busie minde presented unto me  
Such fall of pieres as in this realme had be :  
That ofte I wisht, some would their woes de-  
cryve.  
To warne the rest whom fortune left alive

And strait forth stalking with redoubled pace  
 For that I sawe the night drewe on so fast,  
 In blacke all clad there fell before my face  
 A piteous wight, whom woe had al forwaste,  
 Furth from her iyen the cristall teares outbrast,  
 And syghing fore her handes she wrong and  
 folde,  
 Tare al her heare, that ruth was to beholde.

Her body small forwithered and forespent,  
 As is the stalk that sommers drought opprest;  
 Her wealked face with woful teares besprent,  
 Her colour pale, and (as it seemd her best)  
 In woe and playnt reposed was her rest.  
 And as the stone that droppes of water weares;  
 So dented wer cher cheekes with fall of teares.

Her iyes swollen with flowing streames affote,  
 Wherewith her lookes throwen up full piteouslie,  
 Her forceles handes together ofte she smote,  
 With doleful shrikes, that echoed in the skye:  
 Whose playnt such sighes dyd strait accompany,  
 That in my doome was never man did see  
 A wight but halfe so woe begon as she.

I stode agast beholding all her plight,  
 Twene dread and dolour so distreynd in hart,  
 That while my heares upstart with the sight,  
 The teares out streamde for sorowe of her smart:  
 But when I sawe no ende that could aparte  
 The deadly dewle, which she so sore dyd make,  
 With dolefull voice then thus to her I spake.

Unwrap thy woes what ever wight thou be,  
 And stint betime to spill thy selfe wyth playnt;  
 Tell what thou art, and whence, for well I see  
 Thou canst not dure with sorowe thus attaynt.  
 And with that worde of sorowe all forsaynt  
 She looked up, and prostrate as she laye  
 With piteous sound loe thus she gan to saye.

Alas! I wretche whom thus thou seeest distreynd  
 With wasting woes that never shall aske,  
*Sorrowe* I am, in endles tormentes payned,  
 Among the furies in the infernall lake:  
 Where Pluto god of hel so griesly blacke  
 Doth hold his throne, and *Letheus* deadly taste  
 Doth rieve remembrance of eche thyng forepast.

Whence come I am, the drery destinie  
 And luckeles lot for to bemone of those,  
 Whom fortune in this maze of miserie  
 Of wretched chaunce most wofull myrrours chose  
 That when thou seeest how lightly they did lose  
 Theyr poe, theyr power, and that they thought  
 most sure  
 Thou mayest soone deeme no earthly joy may dure

Whose rufull voyce no sooner had out brayed  
 These woful woordes, wherewith she sorrowed so,  
 Thout alas! she shryght and never stayed,  
 But downe, and all to dasht her selfe for woe.  
 Fell cold pale dread my lymes gan overgo  
 The I so sorrowed at her sorowes est, [rest.  
 And what with grieve and feare my wittes were  
 That

I trecht my selfe, and strait my heart revives,  
 That dread and dolour erst did so appale;  
 Lyke him that with the fervent fever stryves  
 When sicknes seekes his castell health to skale:  
 With gathered spirites so forst I feare to availe:  
 And rearing her with anguiste all fordone,  
 My spirites return'd, and then I thus begonne.

O Sorrowe alas! fith sorrowe is thy name,  
 And that to thee this dreere doth well pertayne,  
 In vayne it were to seeke to ceas the fame:  
 But as a man maym seife with sorrowe slayne,  
 So I, alas! do comfort thee in payne,  
 That here in sorrowe art forlonke to depe  
 That at thy sight I can but sigh and wepe.

I had no sooner spoken of a stike,  
 But that the storm so rumbled in her brest,  
 As Eolus could never roare the like,  
 And showers downe rayned from her iyen so fast,  
 That all bedreynt the place, till at the last  
 Well eased they the dolour of her minde,  
 As rage of rayne doth swage the stormy wynde.

For furth she placed in her fearfull talg:  
 Cum, cum, (quod she) and see what I shall shewe,  
 Cum heare the playning, and the bytter bale  
 Of worthy men, by fortune overthrowe.  
 Cum thou and see them rewing all in rowe.  
 They were but shades that erst in minde thou rolde.  
 Cum, cum with me, thine eyes shall them beholde.

What could these wordes but make me more agast:  
 To heare her tell whereon I musde while care:  
 So was I mazed therewyth, tyll at the last,  
 Musing upon her wurdes, and what they were,  
 All sodaynly well lessoned was my feare:  
 For to my minde returned howe she telde  
 Both what she was, and where her wun she helde.

Whereby I knewe that she a goddesse was,  
 And therewithall resorted to my minde  
 My thought that late presented me the glas  
 Of brittle state, of cares that here we finde,  
 Of thousand woes to silly men assynde:  
 And howe she nowe byd me come and beholde,  
 To see with iye that erst in thought I rolde.

That downe I fell, and with al reverence  
 Adored her, perceyving nowe that she  
 A goddesse sent by godly providence,  
 In earthly shape thus showed herself to me,  
 To wayle and rue this worldes uncertayntye:  
 And while I honoured thus her godheds might,  
 With playning voyce these wurdes to me she  
 shryght:

I shall the guyde first to the griesly lake,  
 And thence unto the blisful place of rest,  
 Where thou shalt see and heare the playnt they  
 make,  
 That whilom here bare swinge among the best.  
 This shalt thou see, but great is the unrest  
 That thou must byde before thou canst attayne  
 Unto the dreadfull place where these remayne.

And with these wurdcs as I uprayed stood,  
And gan to folowe her that strayght furth paced,  
Eare I was ware, into a desert wood  
We nowe were cum : where hand in hand im-  
braced,  
She led the way, and through the thicke so traced  
As but I had beene guided by her might,  
It was no way for any mortall wight.

But loe, while thus amid the desert darke,  
We passed on with steppes and pace unmette :  
A rumbling roar confusde with howle and bark  
Of dogs, shoke all the ground under our feete,  
And stroke the din within our eares so deepe  
As halfe distraught unto the ground I fell,  
Besought retourne, and not to visite hell.

But she forthwith uplifting me apace  
Removed my dread, and with a stedfast minde  
Bad me come on, for here was now the place,  
The place where we our travayle ende should finde.  
Wherewith I arose, and to the place assynde  
Astoynde I stalke, when strayt we approached nere  
The dreadfull place, that you wil dread to here.

An hydeous hole al vaste, withouten shape,  
Of endless depth, orewhelnde with ragged stone,  
Wyth ougly mouth, and grisly jawes doth gape,  
And to our sight confounds it selfe in one.  
Here entred we, and yeding forth, anone  
An horrible lothly lake we might discerne  
As blacke as pitche, that cleped is Avene.

A deadly gulfe where nought but rubbishe grows,  
With fowle blacke swelth in thickned lumpes  
lyes,

Which up in the ayer such stinking vapors throwes  
That over there, may flye no fowle but dyes,  
Choakt with the pestilent favours that aryse.  
Hither we cum, whence forth we still dyd pace,  
In dreadful feare amid the dreadfull place.

And first within the portche and jawes of hell  
Sate deepe Remorse of Conscience, al besprent  
With teares : and to her selfe oft would she tell  
Her wretchednes, and cursing never stent  
To sob and sigh : but ever thus lament,  
With thoughtful care, as she that all in vayne  
Would weare and waste continually in payne.

Her eyes unstedfast rolling here and there,  
Whirld on eche place, as place that vengeauns  
brought,  
So was her minde continually in feare,  
Tossed and tormented with the tedious thought  
Of those detested crymes which she had wrought :  
With dreadful cheare and lookes thrown to the  
skye,  
Wyshyng for death, and yet she could not dye.

Next sawe we Dread al tremblyng how he shooke,  
With foot uncertayne proferd here and there :  
Benumde of speache, and with a gasply looke  
Searcht evry place al pale and dead for feare,  
His cap borne up with starting of his heare,

VOL. I.

Stoynde and amazde at his owne shade for deed,  
And fearing greater daungers than was nede.

And next within the entry of this lake  
Sate fell Revenge gnashing her teeth for yre,  
Devising means howe she may vengeaunce take,  
Never to rest tyll she have her desire :  
But frets within so far forth with the fyer  
Of wreaking flames, that now determines she,  
To dye by death, or vengde by death to be.

When fell Revenge with bloudy foule pretence  
Had showed her selfe as next in order set,  
With trembling limmes we softly parted thence,  
Tyll in our iyes another fight we met :  
When fro my hart a sigh forthwith I fet,  
Rewing alas upon the wofull plight  
Of Miserie, that next appeared in sight.

His face was leane, and sumdeale pyned away,  
And eke his handes consumed to the bone,  
But what his body was I can not say,  
For on his carkas rayment had he none,  
Save cloutes and patches pieced one ~~one~~ <sup>one</sup>.  
With staffe in hande, and skrip on shoulders cast,  
His chiefe defence agaynst the winters blast.

His foode for most, was wylde fruytes of the tree,  
Unles sumtimes sum crummes fell to his share :  
Which in his wallet long, Ged wote, kept he,  
As on the which full dayntlye would he fare.  
His drinke the running streame : his cup the bare  
Of his palme closed : his bed the hard colde  
grounde.

To this poore life was Miserie ybound.

Whose wretched state when we had well behelde  
With tender ruth on him and on his feres,  
In thoughtful cares, furth then our pace we helde ;  
And by and by, an other shape apperes,  
Of greedy Care, stil brushing up the breres,  
His knuckles knob'd, his fleshe depe dented in,  
With tawed handes, and hard ytanned skyn.

The morrowe graye ne sooner had begunne  
To sprede his light ev n peping in our iyes,  
When he is up and to his worke yrunne :  
But let the nightes blacke mistye mantels rise,  
And with fowle darke never so much disguyse  
The fayre bright day, yet ceasseth he no whyle,  
But hath his candels to prolong his toyle.

By him lay heavy Slepe the cosin of death  
Flat on the ground, and still as any stone,  
A very corps, save yelding forth a breath.  
Small kepe took he whom Fortune frowned on,  
Or whom she lifted up into the trone  
Of high renowne, but as a living death,  
So dead alyve, of lyef he drewe the breath.

The bodyes rest, the quyet of the hart,  
The travayles ease, the still nightes feer was he.  
And of our life in earth the better parte,  
Reuen of sight, and yet in whom we see  
Thingcs of that tide, and ofte that never bee.

T t



Without respect esteeming equally  
Kyng Crefus pompe, and Irus povertie.

And next in order sad Old Age we found  
His beard all hoare, his eyes hollow and blynde,  
With drouping chere still poring on the ground,  
As on the place where nature him assinde  
To rest, when that the sisters had untwynde  
His vitall threde, and ended with theyr knyfe  
The fleeting course of fast declining life.

There heard we him with broken and hollow  
    playn,  
Rewe with him selfe his ende approaching fast,  
And all for nought his wretched minde torment  
With swete remembraunce of his pleasures past,  
And freshe delites of lusty youth forwaste.  
Recounting which, how would he sob and shrike:  
And to be yong againe of Jove beskeke.

But and the cruell fates so fixed be  
That time forpast can not retourne agayne,  
This one request of Jove yet prayed he:  
That in such withered plight, and wretched paine,  
As elde (accompanied with his lothsom trayne)  
Had brought on him, all were it woe and grieve.  
He might a while yet linger forth his lief;

And not so soone descend into the pit,  
Where death, when he the mortall corps hath  
    flayne,  
With retchles hande in grave doth cover it,  
Thereafter never to enjoye agayne  
The gladfome light, but in the ground ylayne  
In depth of darknes waste and weare to nought,  
As he had never into the world been brought.

But who had seene him sobbing, howe he stoode  
Unto himselfe, and howe he would bemone  
His youth forepast, as though it wrought hym good  
To talke of youth, al wer his youth foregone,  
He would have muled, and mervayled muche  
    whereon

This wretched age should life desyre so sayne,  
And knowes ful wel life doth but length his payne.

Crookebackt he was, tooth shaken, and blere eyed,  
Went on three fecte, and sometime crept on sower,  
With olde lame bones, that ratled by his syde,  
His skalpe all pilde, and he with elde forlore:  
His withered fist stil knocking at deatnes dore,  
Tumbling and driveling as he drawes his breth;  
For brieft, the shape and messenger of death.

And fast by him pale Maladie was plaste,  
Sore sicke in bed, her colour all forgone,  
Bereft of stomake, favor, and of taste,  
Ne could she brooke no meat but brothes alone.  
Her breath corrupt, her keepers every one  
Abhorring her, her sicknes past recure,  
Detesting phisicke, and all phisickes cure.

But oh the doleful sight that then we see.  
We turnde our looke, and on the other side  
A grisly shape of Famine mought we see,

With greedy lookes, and gaping mouth that  
    cryed,  
And roard for meat as she should there have dyed,  
Her body thin and bare as any bone,  
Wharto was left nought but the case alone;

And that alas was knawen on every where  
All full of holes, that I ne mought refrayne  
From teares, to see how she her armes could feare,  
And with her teeth gnash on the bones in vayne:  
When all for nought she sayne would so sustayne  
Her starven corps, that rather seemde a shade,  
Then any substaunce of a creature made.

Great was her force whom stonewall could not  
    flay,  
Her tearyng nayles scratching at all she sawe:  
With gaping jawes that by no means ymay  
Be satisfyed from hunger of her mawe,  
But eates her selfe as she that hath no lawe:  
Gnawing alas her carkas all in vayne, [vayne.  
Where you may count eche sinow, bone, and

On her while we thus firmly fixt our eyes,  
That bled for ruth of such a dreery sight,  
Loe sodaynelye she shryght in so huge wyse,  
As made hell gates to shyver with the myght.  
Wherewith a dart we sawe howe it did lyght  
Ryght on her breast, and therewithal pale death.  
Enthryling it to rave her of her breath.

And by and by a dum dead corps we sawe,  
Heavy and colde, the shape of death aryght,  
That dauntes all earthly creatures to his lawe:  
Agaynst whose force in vayne it is to fyght  
Ne pieres, ne princes, nor no mortall wyght,  
No townes, ne realmes, cities, ne strongest tower,  
But al perforce must yeeld unto his power.

His dart anon out of the corps he tooke,  
And in his hand (a dreadful sight to see)  
With great triumphe estones the same he shooke,  
That most of all my feares affrayed me:  
His bodie dight with nought but bones perdyed,  
The naked shape of man there sawe I playne,  
All save the fleshe, the synowe, and the vayne.

Lastly stoode Warre in glitteryng armes yclad.  
With visage grym, sterne lookes, and blackely  
    hewed:  
In his right hand a naked sworde he had,  
That to the hiltes was al with bloud embrewed:  
And in his left (that kinges and kingdoms rewed)  
Famine and fyer he held, and therewithall  
He razed townes, and threwe downe towers and  
    all.

Cities he fakte, and realmes that whilom flowered,  
In honour, glory, and rule above the best,  
He overwhelmed, and all theyr fame devowred,  
Consumed, destroyed, wasted, and never ceast,  
Tyll he theyr wealth, their name, and all opprest.  
His face forhewed with woundes, and by his  
    side  
There hung his terge with gashes depe and wyde.

In mids of which, depaynted there we founde  
Deadly Debate, al ful of feaky heare,  
That with a bloody fillet was ybound,  
Out breathing nought but discord every where.  
And round about were portrayed here and there  
The hugie hostes, Darius and his power,  
His kynges, prynces, his pieres, and all his flower;

Whom great Macedo vanquisht there in fight,  
With diepe slaughter, dispoyling all his pryde,  
Pearst through his realmes, and daunted all his  
night.

Duke Hanniball beheld I there beside,  
In Cannas field, victor howe he did ride,  
And woful Romaynes that in vayne withstoode,  
And Consul Paulus covered all in bloode.

Yet sawe I more, the fight at Trafimene,  
And Trebery fyeld, and eke when Hannibal  
And worthy Scipio last in armes were seene  
Before Carthago gate, to trye for all  
The worldes empyre, to whom it should befall.  
There sawe I Pompeye, and Cesar clad in armes,  
Theyr hostes alyed, and al theyr civil harmes.

With conquerours hands forbathe in their owne  
blood,

And Cesar weeping over Pompeyes head.  
Yet sawe I Scilla and Darius where they stoode,  
Theyr great crueltie, and the diepe bludshed  
Of frendes: Cyrus I sawe and his host dead,  
And howe the queene with great despyte hath  
flonge  
His head in bloud of them she overcome.

Xerxes the Percian kyng yet sawe I there,  
With his huge host that dranke the rivers drye,  
Dismounted hilles, and made the vales uprere,  
His hoste and all yet sawe I slayne perdye.  
Thebes I sawe all razde howe it dyd lye  
In heapes of stones, and Tyrus put to spoyle, [spoyle.  
With walles and towers flat evened with the

But Troy, alas! (me thought) above them all,  
It made mine eyes in very teares consume,  
When I beheld the wofull werd befall,  
That by the wrathful wyl of Gods was come:  
And Jove's unmooved sentence and foredome  
On Priam kyng, and on his towne so bent.  
I could not lyn, but I must there lament.

And that the more sith Destinie was so sterne  
As force perforce, there might no force awayle,  
But she must fall: and by her fall we learne,  
That cities, towres, wealth, world, and al shall  
quayle. [vayle,  
No manhoode, might, nor nothing mought pre-  
Al wer there prest, ful many a prynce and piere,  
And many a knight that sold his death full deere.

Not wurthy Hector wurthyest of them all,  
Her hope, her joye; his force is now for nought.  
O Troy, Troy, there is no boote but hale;  
The hugie horse within thy walles is brought:  
Thy turrets fall, thy knightes that whilom fought

In armes amynd the fyeld, are slayne in bed,  
Thy Gods defylde, and all thy honour dead.

The flames upspring, and cruelly they crepe  
From wall to rooffe, til all to cindres waite;  
Some fyre the houses where the wretches slepe,  
Sum rushe in here, some run in there as fast.  
In every where or sword or fyre they taste.  
The walles are torne, the towers whurld to the  
ground;  
There is no mischiefe but may there be found.

Cassandra yet there sawe I howe they haled  
From Pallas' house, with spercled tresse undone,  
Her wristles fast bound, and with Grecks rout em-  
paled:

And Priam eke in vayne howe he did runne  
To armes, when Pyrrhus with despite hath done  
To cruel death, and bathed him in the bayne  
Of his sonnes blud before the altare slayne.

But howe can I descryve the doleful fight,  
That in the shyld so livlike layer did shyne!  
Sith in this world I think was never wyght  
Could have set furth the halfe, nor halfe so fyne.  
I can no more but tell howe there is scene  
Fayer Ilium fall in burning red gledes downe,  
And from the soyle great Troy Neptunus towne.

[drawe,  
Herefrom when scarce I could mine eyes with-  
That fylde with teares as doth the spryngyng well,  
We passed on so far furth tyl we sawe  
Rude Acheron, a lothsome lake to tell,  
That boyles and bubs up swelth as blacke as hell,  
Where grisly Charon at theyr fixed tide  
Still ferries ghostes unto the farder side.

The aged god no sooner Sorowe spyed,  
But halting strayt unto the banke apace  
With hollow call unto the rout he cryed,  
To swarve apart, and geve the godesse place.  
Strayt it was done, when to the shoar we pace,  
Where hand in hand as we then linked faste,  
Within the boate we are together plaste.

And furth we launch full fraughted to the brink,  
Whan with the unwonted weght, the rustye keele  
Began to cracke as if the same should sinke.  
We hoysed up mast and sayle, that in a whyle  
We fet the shore, where scarcely we had while  
For to arryve, but that we heard anone  
A thre sound barke confounded al in one.

We had not long furth past, but that we sawe,  
Blacke Cerberus the hydeous hound of hell,  
With bristles reard, and with a thre mouthed jawe,  
Foredinning the ayr with his horrible yel.  
Out of the diepe dark cave where he did dwell,  
The goddesse strayt he knewe, and by and by  
He peaste and couched, while that we passed by.

Thence cum we to the horror and the hel,  
The large great kyngdomes, and the dreadful  
raygne  
Of Pluto in his trone where he dyd dwell,

The wyde waste places, and the hugye playne :  
The waylinges, shrykes, and fundry sortes of  
payne,

The fyghes, the fobbes, the diep and deadly groane,  
Earth, ayer, and all resounding playnt and moane.

Here pewled the babes, and here the maydes un-  
wed

With folded handes theyr sory chaunce bewayled;  
Here wept the gyltes slayne, and lovers dead,  
That slewe them selves when nothing else awayled :  
A thousand sortes of sorrowes here that wayled  
With fighes and teares, fobs, shrykes, and all yfere,  
That (oh, alas !) it was a hel to heare.

We stayed us strait, and wyth a rufull feare,  
Beheld this heavy sight, while from mine eyes  
The vaped teares downstilled here and there,  
And Sorowe eke in far more woful wyse,  
Looke on with playnt, up heaving to the skyes  
Her wretched handes, that with her crye the rout  
Gan all in heapes to swarme us round about.

Loe here (said Sorowe) prynces of renowne,  
That whilom sat on top of Fortune's wheele  
Now layd ful lowe, like wretches whurled downe,  
Even with one frowne, that stayed but with a  
smyle,

And now beholde the thing that thou erewhile,

Saw only in thought, and what thou now shalt  
heare

Recompt the same to Kesar, King, and Pier.

Then first came Henry Duke of Buckingham,  
His cloke of blacke al pilde and quite forworne,  
Wringing his handes, and Fortune ofte doth  
blame,

Which of a duke hath made him now her skorne,  
With ghastly lookes as one in manner lorne,  
Oft spred his armes, stretcht handes he joynes a  
fast,

With ruful chere, and vaped eyes upcast.

His cloke he rent, his manly breast he beat,  
His heare al torne about the place it laye,  
My hart so molte to see his grieve so great,  
As felingly me thought it dropt awaye :  
His eyes they whurled about withouten staye,  
With stormy fyghes the place dyd so complayne,  
As if his hart at eche had burst in twayne.

Thryse he began to tell his doleful tale,  
And thryse the fighes did swallowe up his voyce,  
At eche of which he shryked so wythal  
As though the heavens vied with the noyse :  
Tyll at the last recovering his voyce,  
Supping the teares that all his brest beraynde,  
On cruel Fortune weeping thus he playnde.



---

# THE COMPLAINT

OF

## HENRYE DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM.

---

Who trustes to much in honour's highest throne  
And warily watche not flye dame Fortune's snare :  
Or who in courte will beare the fwayne alone,  
And wysely weygh not how to wyeld the care,  
Beholde he me, and by my death beware :  
Whom flattering Fortune falsely so begylde,  
That loe The slewe, where erst ful smooth she  
    smylde.

And Sackeville sith in purpose nowe thou hast  
The woful fal of prynces to discryve,  
Whom Fortune both uplyft, and gayn downe cast,  
To shewe thereby the unsurety in this life,  
Mark wel my fal, which I shall shewe belyve,  
And paynt it furth that all estates may knowe :  
Have they the warning, and be mine the woe.

For noble bloud made me both prince and pier,  
Yea pieries too, had reason purchast place,  
And God with giftes endowed me largely here.  
But what avayles his giftes, where fayles his  
    grace :

My mothers syer sprong of a kyngly race  
And calde was Edmund Duke of Somerset,  
Bereft of lyfe ere tyme by nature set.

Whose faythful hart to Henry syst so wrought,  
That never he hym in weale or woe forfooke,  
Tyl lastly he at Tewxbury fyeld was caught  
Wherewith an axe his violent death he toke :  
He never could Kyng Edwardes party brooke,  
Tyll by his death, he vouchte that quarell good,  
In which his syer and graundfyer spylt theyr  
    bloud.

And such was erst my fathers cruell chaunce,  
Of Stafford Earle, by name that Humfrey hyght,

Who ever prest dyd Henries parte avaunce,  
And never ceast tyl at Saynt Albones fight  
He lost his lyfe, as than did many a knyght :  
Where eke my graundfyer Duke of Buckingham  
Was wounded fore, and hardly skapte untane.

But what may boote to stay the sisters three ?  
When Atropos perforce wil cut the threde :  
The doleful day was come when you might see  
Northampton fyeld with armed men orespred,  
Where fate would algates have my graundfyer dead :  
So rushing furth amyds the fyercest fight,  
He lived and dyed there in his masters ryght.

In place of whom, as it befel my lot,  
Like on a stage, so slept I in strait waye,  
Enjoying there but wofully, God wot,  
As he that had a slender part to playe :  
To teache therby, in earth no state may stay,  
But as our partes abridge, or length our age,  
So passe we all, while others fyll the stage.

For of my selfe, the dreery fate to playne,  
I was sometime a prince withouten pier,  
When Edward Fift began his rusul raygne,  
Ay me, then I began that hatefull ycare,  
To cumpas that which I have bought so deare :  
I bare the iwyng, I and that wretched wyght,  
The Duke of Glocester that Rychard hyght.

For when the fates had rest that royal prince  
Edward the Fourth, chiefe myrrour of that name,  
The Duke and I fast joyned ever since,  
In saythfull love, our secrete driftes to frame :  
What he thought best to me so seemde the same,  
My selfe not bent so much for to aspyer,  
As to fulfyl that greedy Dukes desyre ;

Whose restless minde fore thyrsting after rule,  
 When that he sawe his nephewes both to ben  
 Through tender yeares as yet unfit to rule,  
 And rather ruled by theyr mothers kyn,  
 There fought he first his mischyeffe to begyn,  
 To plucke from them theyr mothers frendes af-  
 fynde,  
 For wel he wist they would withstand his mynde.

To folowe which, he ran so headlong swyft,  
 With eygr thyrst of his desired draught,  
 To seeke theyr deathes that fought to dashe his  
 dryft,  
 Of whom the chiefe the queenes allyes he thought,  
 That bent thereto with mountes of mischief  
 fraught,  
 He knewe theyr lyves would be so fore his let,  
 That in theyr deathes his only helpe he set.

And I most cursed caytief that I was,  
 Seeing the state unstedfast howe it stood,  
 His chief complyce to bryng the same to passe,  
 Unhappy wretche, consented to theyr blood:  
 Ye kinges and piers that swim in worldly good,  
 In seeking blud the ende advert you playne,  
 And see if bloud ey aske not blud agayne.

Consyder Cyrus in your cruell thought,  
 A makeles prynce in ryches and in myght,  
 And weygh in minde the bloody dedes he  
 wrought,  
 In sheading which he set his whole delyght:  
 But see the guerdon lotted to this wyght,  
 He whose huge power no man might overthrowe,  
 Tomyris queen with great despite hath flowe.

His head dismembred from his mangled corps,  
 Her selfe she cast into a vessel fraught  
 With clotted blood of them that felt her force.  
 And with these wordes a just reward she taught:  
 Drynke nowe thy fyll of thy desired draught.  
 Loe marke the fine that did this prynce besall:  
 Marke not this one, but marke the ende of all.

Behold Cambyses and his fatal daye,  
 Where murders mischief myrrour like is left:  
 While he his brother Mergus cast to slaye,  
 A dreadful thing, his wittes were him bereft.  
 A sword he caught, wherewith he perced est  
 His body gored, which he of lise benooms:  
 So just is God in all his dreadfull doomes.

O bluddy Brutus, rightly didst thou rew,  
 And thou Cassius justly came thy fall,  
 That with the sword wherewith thou Cesar slewe  
 Murdest thy selfe, and rest thy life withall.  
 A myrrour let him be unto you all  
 That murderers be, of murder to your meede:  
 For murder crieth out vengeance on your seede.

Loe Bessus, he that armed with murderers knyfe,  
 And traytrous hart agaynst his royall king,  
 With bluddy handes bereft his maysters life,  
 Advert the fine his fowle offence dyd bryng:  
 And loching murder as most lothly thing,

Beholde in him the just deserved fall,  
 That ever hath, and shall betide them all.

What booteth him his false usurped raygne,  
 Whereto by murder he did so ascende?  
 When like a wretche, led in an yron chayne  
 He was presented by his chiefest frende  
 Unto the foes of him whom he had slayne:  
 That even they should venge so fowle a gylt,  
 That rather fought to have his bloud spyt.

Take hede ye princes and ye prelates all  
 Of this outrage, which though it sleepe a while,  
 And not disclofde, as it doth seeld befall,  
 Yet God that suffreth silence to beguyle  
 Such gyltes, wherewith both earth and ayre ye  
 file,  
 At last discryes them to your fowle deface,  
 You see the examples set before your face.

And deeply grave within your stony hartes,  
 The drery dewle that myghty Macedo,  
 With teares unfolded wrapt in deadly smartes,  
 When he the death of Clitus sorowed so,  
 Whom erst he murdered wyth the deadly blowe,  
 Raught in his rage upon his frende so deare,  
 For which beholde loe how his panges appere.

The launced spear he writhes out of the wound,  
 From which the purple blud spins on his face:  
 His heynous gylt when he returned found,  
 He throwes him selfe upon the corpses alas.  
 And in his armes howe ofte doth he inbrace  
 His murdered frende? and kyssyng him in vayne,  
 Furth flowe the fluds of false repentant rayne.

His frendes amaze at such a murder doen,  
 In fearful flockes begyn to shrynke away.  
 And he thereat with heapes of grief forenoct,  
 Hateth him selfe, wishing his latter daye.  
 Nowe he him selfe perceyved in lyke staye,  
 As is the wilde beast in the desert bred,  
 Both dreading others, and him selfe adred.

He calles for death, and loathing lenger lyfe,  
 Bent to his bane, refuseth kyndely foode:  
 And ploungde in depth of death and dolours stryfe,  
 Had quelde him selfe, had not his frendes wyth  
 stoode.  
 Loe he that thus had shed the gylteles blud,  
 Though he were kyng and Cesar over all,  
 Yet chose he death to guerdon death withall.

This prynce whose pyer was never under sonne,  
 Whose glyttering fame the earth did overglyde,  
 Whych with his power welnye the world had  
 wonne,  
 His bluddy handes him selfe could not abyde,  
 But fully bent with famine to have dyed:  
 The wurthy prynce deemed in his regarde  
 That death for death could be but just rewarde.

Yet we that were so drowned in the depth  
 Of deep desyre to drinke the gylteles blud,  
 Lyke to the wolfe, with greedy lookes that lepth

Into the snare, to feede on deadly foode,  
So we deliyghted in the state we floode,  
Blinded so farre in all our blynded trayne,  
That blind, we sawe not our destruction playne.

We spared none whose life could ought forlet  
Our wycked purpose to his pas to cum.  
Power wurthy knyghtes we headed at Pomfret,  
Gyltles (God wot) withouten lawe or doome.  
My heart even bleedes to tell you al and some,  
And howe Lord Hastings when he feared least,  
Dispitously was murdered and opprest.

These rockes upcraught, that threatned most our  
wreck,

We seemde to sayle much surer in the streame:  
And fortune sayring as she were at becke,  
Layed in our lap the rule of all the realme.  
The nephewes strait deposde were by the game;  
And we advaunst to that we bought full deare,  
He crowned king, and I his chyefest pyer.

Thus having wonne our long desirid pray,  
To make him king that he might make me chiefe,  
Dowthrow we strait his sellie nephews twaye  
From princes pompe, to woful prisoners lyfe:  
In hope that nowe stynt was all furder stryfe.  
Sith he was king, and I chief stroke did beare,  
Who joyed but we, yet who more cause to feare?

The gyltles bloud which we unjustly shed,  
The royal babes dearest from theyr trone,  
And we like traytours raygning in theyr sted,  
These heavy burdens pressed us upon,  
Tormenting us so by our selves alone,  
Much like the felon that pursued by night,  
Starts at eche bushe as his foe were in sight.

Nowe doubting state, nowe dreading losse of life,  
In fear of wrecke at every blast of wynde,  
Now start in dreames through dread of murderers  
knyfe,

As though even then revengement were assynde.  
With restless thought so is the gylty minde  
Turmoyled, and never seeleth ease or stay,  
But lives in feare of that which followes aye.

Well gave that judge his doome upon the death  
Of Titus Clelius that in bed was slayne:  
Whan every wight the cruell murder leyeth  
To his two sonnes that in his chamber layen,  
The judge, that by the prooffe perceyveth playne,  
That they were found fast sleeping in theyr bed,  
Hath deemde them gyltles of this blud yshed.

He thought it could not be, that they which brake  
The lawes of God and man in such outrage,  
Could so forthwith them selves to slepe betake:  
He rather thought the horror and the rage  
Of such an haynous gylt, could never swage,  
Nor never suffer them to slepe or rest,  
Or dreadles breath one breath out of theyr brest.

So gnawes the grieve of consyence evermore,  
And in the hart it is so deepe ygravd,  
That they may neyther slepe nor rest therefore,

Ne thynke one thought but on the dread they  
have.

Styl to the death fortossed with the wave  
Of restless woe, in terror and dispeyre,  
They lead a lyf continually in feare.

Like to the dere that stryken with the dart,  
Withdrawes him selfe into some secrete place,  
And feeling green the wound about his hart,  
Startles with panges tyl he fall on the grasse,  
And in great feare lyes gasping there a space,  
Furth braying sighes as though eche pange had  
brought

The present death which he doeth dread so oft.

So we deepe wounded with the bluddy thought,  
And gnawing wurme that grieved our conscience so,  
Never took ease, but as our hart furth brought  
The strayned syghes in wytnes of our woe,  
Such restless cares our fault did well beknowe:  
Wherewith of our deserved fall the feares,  
In every place rang death within our eares.

And as yll grayne is never well ykept,  
So fared it by us within a while:  
That which so long wyth such unrest we reapt,  
In dread and daunger by all wyt and wyle,  
Loe see the fine, when once it felt the whele  
Of slipper fortune, stay it mought no stowne,  
The whele whurles up, but strait it whurleth  
downe.

For having rule and riches in our hand,  
Who durst gaynsay the thing that we averde?  
Wyl was wysedome, our lust for lawe dyd stand,  
In sorte so straunge, that who was not asfearde  
When he the found but of Kyng Rychard heard?  
So hatefull wart the hearyng of his name,  
That you may deeme the residewe by the same.

But what awaylde the terror and the fear,  
Wherewyth he kept his lieges under awe?  
It rather wan him hatred every where,  
And saynted faces forst by feare of lawe:  
That but while fortune doth with favour blaw  
Flatter through fear: for in their hart lurkes aye  
A secrete hate that hopeth for a daye.

Recordeth Dionisius the kyng,  
That with his rigor so his realme opprest,  
As that he thought by cruell feare to bryng  
His subjects under, as him lyked best:  
But loe the dread wherewyth him selfe was farest,  
And you shall see the fine of forced feare,  
Most myrrour like in this proud prynce appeare.

All were his head with crowne of golde ysprad,  
And in his hand the royal scepter set,  
And he with pryncely purple rychely clad,  
Yet was his hart wyth wretched cares orefret:  
And inwardly with deadly fear beset,  
Of those whom he by rygour kept in awe,  
And sore opprest with might of tyrants lawe.

Agaynst whose feare, no heapes of golde and glie,  
No strength of garde, nor all his lured power,



Ne prowde hyghe towers that preaced to the skye,  
His cruel hart of safetic could assure :  
But dreading them whom he should deeme most  
sure, [cear,  
Hym selfe his beard wyth burning brand would  
Of death deservde so vexed him the feare.

This might suffice to represent the fine  
Of tyrantes force, theyr feares, and theyr unrest.  
But hear this one, although my hart repyne  
To let the found once synk wythin my brest;  
Of fell Phereus, that above the rest,  
Such lothsum crueltie on his people wrought,  
As (oh alas) I tremble wyth the thought.

Sum he encased in the coates of beares,  
Among wylde beastes devoured so to be :  
And sum for preye unto the hunters speares,  
Lyke savage beastes withouten ruth to dye.  
Sumtime to encrease his horrible crueltie,  
The quicke with face to face engraved hee,  
Eche others death, that eche mought living see.

Loe what more cruell horror mought be found,  
To purchase feare, if feare could stave his raygne ?  
It booted not, it rather strake the wounde  
Of feare in him, to feare the lyke agayne.  
And so he dyd full ofte and not in vayne :  
As in his life his cares could wytness well  
But moſte of all his wretched ende doth tell.

His owne dere wyfe whom as his life he loved,  
He durst not trust, nor proche unto her bed,  
But causing fyrst his slave with naked sworde  
To go before, him selfe with tremblyng dread  
Strayt foloweth fast, and whorling in his head  
His rolling iyen, he searcheth here and there  
The diepe daunger that he so fore did feare.

For not in vayne it ranst yll in his brest,  
Sum wretched hap should hale him to his ende.  
And therefore alwaye by his pillowe prest  
Had he a sworde, and with that sworde he wende,  
In vayne (God wote) all peryls to defende :  
For loe his wife foreyrked of his rayne,  
Sleeping in bed this cruell wretche hath slayne.

What should I more now seeke to say in this ?  
Or one jot farder linger furth my tale ?  
With cruel Nero, or with Phalaris,  
Caligula, Domician, and all  
The cruell route ? or of theyr wretched fall ?  
I can no more, but in my name advert  
Al earthly powers beware of tyrants hart.

And as our state endured but a throwe;  
So best in us the slaye of such a state  
May best appeare to hang an overthrowe,  
And better teache tyrantes deserved hate  
Than any tyrantes death to fore or late.  
So cruell seemde this Rychard Thyrd to me,  
That loe my selfe now loathde his crueltie.

For when, alas ! I saw the tyrant kyng  
Content not only from his sieghewes twayne  
To ryve worldes byſſe, but also al worldes beyng,

Saunce earthly gylt ycausing both he slayne,  
My hart agreyved that such a wretch should  
raygne,  
Whose bluddy brest so salvaged out of kynde;  
That Phalaris had never so bluddy a minde.

Ne could I brooke him once wythin my brest,  
But wyth the thought my teeth would gnashe  
wythal :

For though I earst wer his by sworne behest ;  
Yet when I sawe mischiefe on mischiefe fall,  
So diepe in blud, to murder prynce and all,  
Ay then thought I, alas, and wealaway,  
And to my selfe thus mourning would I say.

If neyther love, kynred, ne knot of bloud,  
His own alegeaunce to his prynce of due,  
Nor yet the state of trust wherein he stoode,  
The worldes defame, nor nought could turn him  
true. [rue ?  
Those gyltleles babes, could they not make him-  
Nor could theyr youth, nor innocence withal  
Move him from reving them theyr lyfe and all ?

Alas, it could not move him any jote,  
Ne make him once to rue or wet his iye,  
Sturde him no more than that that styrreth not :  
But as the rocke or stone that wyl not pleye,  
So was his hart made hard to crueltie,  
To murder them; alas I weepe in thought,  
To thinke on that which this fell wretche hath  
wrought.

That nowe when he had done the thing he sought,  
And as he would, complyht and cumpst all,  
And sawe and knewe the treason he had wrought  
To God and man, to slaye his prynce and all,  
Then seemde he fyrst to doubte and dreade us all,  
And me in chiefe, whoes death all meanes he  
myght,  
He sought to wurke by malice and by night.

Such heapes of harmes upharbard in his brest,  
With envyous hart my honour to deface,  
As knowing he that I whych woted best  
His wretched drystes, and all his curfed case,  
If ever sprang within me sparke of grace,  
Must nedes abhorre him and his hatefull race :  
Now more and more can cast me out of grace.

Which sodayne chaunge, when I by secrete  
chaunce,  
Had well perceyved by prooffe of envyous frowne,  
And sawe the lot that did me to advaunce  
Hym to a kyng that sought to cast me downe,  
To late it was to linger any stowne :  
Syth present choyse lay cast before myne iye,  
To wurke his death, or I my selfe to dye.

And as the knyght in fyeld among his foes,  
Beset wyth swurdes, must slay of there be slayne :  
So I, alas, lapt in a thousand woer,  
Beholding death in every syde so playne,  
I rather chose by sum ilye secrete trayne  
To wurke his death, and I to lyve thereby,  
Than he to lyve, and I of force to dye.

Which heavy choise so hastened me to chose,  
That I in parte agryeved at his disdayne,  
In part to wreke the dolesull death of those  
Two tender babes, his fillye nephewes twayne,  
By him alas commaunded to be slayne,  
With paynted chere humbly before his face,  
Strayght tooke my leave, and rode to Brecknocke  
place.

And there as close and covert as I myght.  
My purposed practise to his passe to bryng,  
In secreete dryftes, I linged day and night :  
All howe I might depote this cruell kyng,  
That seemd to all so much desyred a thyng,  
As thereto trusting I empyrde the same;  
But to much trusting brought me to my bane.

For while I nowe had fortune at my becke,  
Mistrusting I no earthly thing at all,  
Unwares, alas, least looking for a checke,  
She mated me in turning of a ball :  
When least I fearde, then norest was my fall,  
And when whole hostes wer prest to stroy my  
foen,  
She chaunged her chere, and left me post alone.

I had uprayde a mighty band of men,  
And marched furth in order of array,  
Leading my power amyd the forest Dene,  
Agaynst that tyrant banner to dispaye :  
But loe my souldiers cowardly shranke away.  
For such is fortune when she lyst to frowne;  
Who seemes most sure, him soonest whurles she  
downe

O let no prynce put trust in commontie,  
Nor hope in fayth of gyddy peoples mynde,  
But let all noble men take hede by me,  
That by the prooffe to well the payne do fynde :  
Loe, where is truth or trust? or what could bynde  
The wayne people, but they will swarve and swaye,  
As chaunce bryngs chaunge, to dryve and draw  
that way?

Rome, thou that once advaunced up so hye,  
Thy staye, patron, and flower of excellence,  
Hast nowe throwen him to depth of miserye,  
Exiled him that was thy whole defence,  
He comptest it not an horryble offence :  
To reven him of honour and of fame,  
That wan it thee, when thou hadst lost the same.

Beholde Camillus, he that erst revyved  
The state of Rome, that dyeng he dyd fynde,  
Of his own state is nowe alas depryved,  
Banisht by them whom he dyd thus det bynde :  
That cruel folke, unthankful and unkynde,  
Declared wel theyr false inconstancye,  
And fortune eke her mutability.

And thou Scipio, a myrrour mayst thou be  
To all nobles, that they learn not too late,  
Howe they once trust the unstable commontye,  
Thou that recuredst the torne dismembred state,  
Even when the conquerour was at the gate,

Art now expide, as though thou not deserved  
To rest in her, whom thou hadst so preserved.

Ingrateful Rome hast shewed thy crueltye,  
On hym, by whom thou lyvest yet in fame,  
But nor thy dede, nor his desert shall dye,  
But his owne wurdcs shal witnes aye the same :  
For loe hys grave doth thee most justly blame.  
And with disdayne in marble sayes to thee :  
Unkynde cuntrye, my bones shalt thou not see.

What more unworthy than this his cryle :  
More just than this the wofull playnt he wrote :  
Or who could shewe a playner prooffe the while,  
Of mooste false fayth, than they that thus forgot  
His great desertes : that so deserved not :  
His cindres yet loe, doth he them denye,  
That him denyed amongst them for to dye.

Milciades, O happy hast thou be,  
And well rewarded of thy cuntrye men.  
If in the fyeld when thou hadst forst to flye  
By thy prowes, thre hundred thousand men,  
Content they had bene to cryle thee then :  
And not to cast thee in depth prision so,  
Laden wyth gyves to ende thy lyfe in woe.

Alas howe harde and steely hartes had they,  
That not contented there to have thee dye,  
With settred gyves in pryson where thou laye,  
Increast so far in hateful crueltye,  
That buryall to thy corps, they eke denye  
He wyl they graunt the same tyll thy sonne have  
Put on thy gyves to purchase thee a grave.

Loe Hanniball as long as fired fate,  
And bryttle fortune had ordayned so,  
Who ever more advauntst his cuntrye state  
Then thou, that lyvedst for her and for no moe :  
But when the stormy waves began to grow,  
Without respect of thy desertes erwhile,  
Art by thy cuntrye throwen into exyle.

Unfrendly Fortune, shall I thee now blame :  
Or shal I faulte the fates that so ordayne?  
Or art thou Jove the causer of the same?  
Or crueltie her selfe, doth she constrayne?  
Or on whom els alas shal I complayne?  
O trustles world I can accusen none,  
But fyckle fayth of commontye alone.

The polipus nor the chameleon straunge,  
That turne them selves to every hewe they see,  
Are not so full of bayne and fickle chaunge  
As is this false unstedfast commontye.  
Loe I alas with mine adversitie  
Have tryed it true, for they are fled and gone,  
And of an host there is not left me one.

That I alas in this calamitie  
Alone was left, and to my selfe mought playne  
This treason, and this wretched cowardye,  
And eke with teares bewepen and complayne  
My hateful hap, styll looking to be slayne.  
Wandryng in woe, and to the gods on hye  
Cleapyng for vengeance of this treacherye.

And as the turtle that hath lost her make,  
Whom grypyng sorowe doth so fore attaynt,  
With doleful voyce and sound whych she doth  
make

Mourning her losse, fylles all the grove with playnt;  
So I, alas! forsaken, and forsaynt,  
With restles foote the wud come up and downe,  
Which of my dole al shyvering doth resowne.

And beyng thus alone, and all forsake,  
Amyd the thycke, forwandred in despayre,  
As one dismayed ne wyft what waye to take,  
Untyll at last gan to my mynde repayer,  
A man of mine called Humfrey Banastar :  
Wherewith me feeling much recomforted.  
In hope of succour to his house I fled.

Who beyng one whom earst I had upbrought  
Even from his youth, and loved and lyked best,  
To gentrye state avauncing him from nought;  
And had in secrete trust above the rest,  
Of specyal trust now being thus dystrest  
Full secretly to him I me conveyed  
Not doubting there but I should fynde some ayde.

But out alas on cruell trecherye,  
When that this caytief once an ynklyng hard,  
How that Kyng Rychard had proclaymde, that he  
Which me descryed should have for his rewarde  
A thousand poundes, and farther he prefarde,  
His truthe so turnde to treason, all distaynde,  
That sayth quyte fled, and I by trust was traynde.

For by this wretch I beyng strait betrayed,  
To one John Mitton, shiriffe of Shropshire then,  
All sodaynely was taken, and convayed  
To Salisbury, wyth rout of harnest men,  
Unto Kyng Rychard there encamped then :  
Fast by the cite with a myghtye hoste  
Withouten doome where head and lyfe I lost.

And with these wordes, as if the are even there  
Dismembred had his head and corps aparte,  
Dead fel he downe : and we in woful feare  
Stoode mazed when he would to lyf revert :  
But deadly griefes still grewe about his hart,  
That styll he laye, sumtyme revived wyth payne,  
And wyth a sygh becoming dead agayne.

Mydnyght was cum, and every vitall thing  
With swete sound slepe theyr weary lymys did rest,  
The beastes were still, the lytle hyrdes that syng,  
Nowe sweetely slept besides theyr mothers brest :  
The olde and all were shrowded in theyr nest.  
The waters calme, the cruel seas did ceas,  
The wuds, the fyeldes, and all thinges held theyr  
peace.

The golden sters wer whyrde amyde theyr race,  
And on the earth did laugh with twinkling lyght,  
When eche thing nestled in his resting place,  
Forgat dayes payne with pleasure of the nyght :  
The hare had not the greedy houndes in sight,  
The fearfull deere of death stood not in doubt,  
The partrydge drept not of the falcons foot.

The ougly beare nowe myndeth not the stake,  
Nor how the cruell mastives do hym tear;  
The stag lay still unroused from the brake,  
The fomy boar feared not the hunters spear.  
All thing was still in desert, bush, and brear.  
With quyet heart now from their travailes rest,  
Soundly they slept in midst of all their rest.

When Buckyngham amidst his plaint opprest,  
With furgyng sorowes and with pincking paynes  
In sort thus sowned, and with a sigh he ceast.  
To tellen furth the treachery and the traynes,  
Of Banastar, which him so fore distrayned.  
That from a sigh he falles into a founde,  
And from a founde lyeth ragyng on the ground.

So twiching wer the panges that he assayed,  
And he so fore with rufull rage distraught,  
To thinke upon the wretch that hym betrayed,  
Whom earst he made a gentylman of naught,  
That more and more agreved with this thought,  
He stormes out sighes, and with redoubled fore,  
Stroke with the furies, rageth more and more.

Who so hath seene the bull chased with dartes,  
And with dyepe woundes forgald and gored so,  
Tyl he oppressed with the deadlye smartes,  
Fall in a rage, and runne upon his foe,  
Let him I saye, beholde the ragyng woe  
Of Buckyngham, that in these grypes of gryefe  
Rageth gaynst him that hath betrayed his lyf.

With blud red iyen he stareth here and there,  
Frothing at mouth, with face as pale as cloute :  
When loe my lymmes were trembling all for feare,  
And I amazde stoode styll in dread and doubt,  
While I mought see him throwe his armes about :  
And gaynst the ground him selfe plounge with  
such force,  
As if the lyfe forth wyth should leave the corps.

With smoke of fyghes sumtyme I myght beholde  
The place al dymde, like to the mornyng myst :  
And strait agayne the teares how they downrolde  
Alongst his cheekes, as if the ryvers hyst :  
Whoes flowing streemes ne wer no sooner whist,  
But to the sters such dreadfull shoutes he sent,  
As if the trone of mighty Jove should rent.

And I the while with spirites wel nye bereft,  
Beheld the plyght and panges that dyd him strayne,  
And howe the blud his deadly colour left,  
And strait returnde with flamyng red agayne :  
When sodaynly amid his ragyng payne,  
He gave a sygh, and with that sygh he sayed :  
O! Banastar, and strait agayne he stayed.

Dead laye his corps as dead as any stone,  
Tyll swellung fyghes stormyng within his brest  
Uprayde his head, that downe yward fell anone,  
With lookes upcast, and fyghes that never ceast :  
Furth streamde the teares, recordes of his unrest,  
When he wyth shrykes thus groveling on the  
ground,  
Ybrayed these wordes with shryll and doleful sound.



Heaven and earth, and ye eternal lampes  
 That in the heavens wrapt, wyl us to rest,  
 Thou bryght Phebe, that clearest the nightes dampes,  
 Witnes the playntes that in these panges opprest  
 I woful wretche unlade out of my breist.  
 And let me yeald my last wordes ere I part,  
 You, you, I call to record of my smart.

And thou, Alecto, feede me wyth thy foode,  
 Let fals thy serpentes from thy shaky heare,  
 For such relyefe wel fittes me in this moode,  
 To feede my playnt with horror and wyth feare,  
 While rage afflicthe thy venomd worme arear.  
 And thou Sibilla, when thou seest me saynte,  
 Addres thy selfe the gyde of my complaynt.

And thou, O Jove, that with thy depe fordoome  
 Dost rule the earth, and raygne above the skyes,  
 That wrekest wronges, and gevest the dreadful  
 doome

Agaynst the wretche that doth thy trone despyfe,  
 Receyve these wurdes, and wreake them in such  
 wyfe,

As heaven and earth may witnesse and beholde,  
 Thy heapes of wrath upon this wretche unfolde.

Thou, Banaster, gaynst thee I clepe and call  
 Unto the gods, that they just vengeance take  
 On thee, thy bloud, thy stayned stocke and all :  
 O Jove, to thee, above the rest I make  
 My humble playnt, guyde me that what I speake  
 May be thy wyll upon this wretche to fall,  
 On thee, Banaster, wretche of wretches all.

O would to God, that cruel dismal daye,  
 That gave me lyght fyrst to behold thy face,  
 With fowle eclipse had rest my syght away :  
 The unhappy hower, the tyme, and eke the place,  
 The sunne and moone, the sters, and all that was  
 In theyr aspectes helping in ought to thee,  
 The earth, and ayer, and all accursed bee.

And thou, caytief, that like a monstar swarved,  
 From kynde and kyndenes, hast thy mayster lorne,  
 Whom neyther truth, nor trust wherein thou ser-  
 ved,

Ne his desertes, could move, nor thy fayth sworne  
 Howe shall I curse, but wyth that thou unborne  
 Had bene, or that the earth had rent in twaye,  
 And swallowed thee in cradle as thou laye.

To this did I even from thy tender youth  
 Witfave to bryng thee up : dyd I therefore  
 Beleve the oath of thy undoubted trowth ?  
 Advauce thee up, and trust thee evermore ?  
 By trussing thee that I should dye therefore ?  
 O wretche, and worse than wretche, what shal I  
 say,

But cleap and curse gaynst thee and thyne for aye ?

Hated be thou, dislaynd of every wyght,  
 And poynted at where ever that thou goe,  
 A trayterous wretche, unworthy of the light,  
 Be thou eslemed : and to encrease thy woe,  
 The sound be hatefull of thy name also :

And in this sort with shame and sharpe reproche,  
 Leade thou thy life till greater grief approach.

Dole and despayr, let those be thy delight,  
 Wrapped in woes that can not be unfold,  
 To wayle the day, and wepe the weary night,  
 With rayny iyen and fyghes can not be tolde,  
 And let no wyght thy woe seeke to withholde :  
 But coumpt thee wurthy (wretche) of sorrowes  
 store,  
 That suffryng much, oughtest still to suffer more.

Deserve thou death, yea be thou demed to dye  
 A shamefull death, to ende thy shamefull lyfe :  
 A syght longed for, joyfull to everye iye,  
 Whan thou shalt be arrayned as a thief,  
 Standing at bar, and pleading for thy lyfe,  
 With trembling tounge in dread and dolours rage,  
 Lade with white lockes, and fowerkore yeres of  
 age.

Yet shall not death delyver thee so soone  
 Out of thy woes, so happye shalt thou not bee  
 But to the eternal Jove this is my boone,  
 That thou may live thine eldest sonne to see  
 Rest of his wits, and in a fowle bores styte  
 To ende his dayes in rage and death distrest,  
 A wurthy tumber where one of thyne should rest.

And after this, yet pray I more, thou may  
 Thy second sonne see drowned in a dyke,  
 And in such sorte to close his latter daye,  
 As heard or seen earst hath not bene the lyke :  
 Ystrangled in a puddle not so deepe  
 As halfe a foote, that such hard losse of lyfe,  
 So cruelly chaunst, may be thy greater gryefe.

And not yet shall thy hugie sorrowes cease ;  
 Jove shal not so withholde his wrath fro thee,  
 But that thy plagues may more and more increas,  
 Thou shalt still lyve, that thou thy selfe mayst see  
 Thy deare doughter stroken with leprosyte :  
 That she that earst was all thy hole delyght,  
 Thou now mayst loath to have her cum in sight.

And after that, let shame and sorrowes gryefe  
 Feede furth thy yeares continually in wo,  
 That thou mayest live in death, and dye in lyfe,  
 And in this sorte forewayld and wearyed so,  
 At length thy ghost to parte thy body fro :  
 This pray I Jove, and wyth this latter breath,  
 Vengeance I aske upon my cruell death.

This sayd, he floung his retchles armes abroad,  
 And groveling flat upon the ground he lay,  
 Which with his teeth he al to gnast and gnawed :  
 Depe groanes he set, as he that would awaye.  
 But loe in vayne he dyd the death assay :  
 Although I thinke was never man that knewe,  
 Such deadly paynes where death dyd not enswe.

So strove he thus a while as with the death,  
 Nowe pale as lead, and colde as any stone.  
 Nowe styl as calme, nowe storming forth a breath  
 Of smoaky fyghes, as breath and al were gone :  
 But every thing hath ende : so he anone

Came to him selfe, when wyth a sygh outbrayed,  
With woful cheare these woful wurdcs he sayd.

Ah where am I, what thing, or whence is this?  
Who rest my wyts? or howe do I thus lye?  
My lims do quake, my thought agasted is,  
Why syghe I so? or whereunto do I  
Thus grovel on the ground: and by and by  
Upraysde he stoode, and wyth a sygh hath stayd,  
When to him selfe returned, thus he sayd.

Suffiseth nowe this playnt and this regrete,  
Whereof my hart his bottome hath unfraught:  
And of my death let pieres and princes wete  
The wolves untrust, that they thereby be taught.  
And in her wealth, sith that such chaunge is  
wrought,

Hope not to much, but in the myds of all  
Thinke on my death, and what may them befall.

So long as fortune would permyt the same,  
I lyved in rule and ryches wyth the best:  
And past my time in honour and in fame;  
That of mishap no feare was in my brest:  
But false fortune whan I suspected least,  
Dyd turne the wheele, and wyth a dolefull fall  
Hath me bereft of honour, life, and all.

Loe what avayles in ryches fluds that flowes:  
Though she so smyle as all the world wer his:

Even kinges and kefars byden fortunes throwes,  
And simple sorte must bear it as it is.  
Take hede by me that blithd in balefull blisse:  
My rule, my riches, royall blud and all,  
Whan fortune frounde, the feller made my fall.

For hard mishaps that happens unto such,  
Whocs wretched state earst never fell no chaunge,  
Agryve them not in any part so much,  
As theyr distres to whome it is so stfaunge,  
That all theyr lyves nay passed pleasures raunge:  
Theyr sodayne wo that ay wield welth at will,  
Algates their hartes more pearcingly must thrill.

For of my byrth, my blud was of the best,  
Fyrst borne an Earle, than Duke by due discent:  
To swinge the sway in court amonge the rest,  
Dame Fortune me her rule most largely lent:  
And kynd with corage so my corps had blent,  
That loe on whom but me dyd she most smyle:  
And whom but me lo, dyd she most begyle?

Now hast thou heard the whole of my unhap,  
My chaunce, my chaunge, the cause of all my  
care:

In wealth and wo, how fortune dyd me wrap,  
With world at will to win me to her snare.  
Byd kynges, byd kefars, byd all states beware,  
And tell them this from me that tryed it true:  
Who reckles rules, right soone may hap to rue:

# A GLOSSARY.

**A**, which is commonly called the indefinite article, is really nothing more than a corruption of the Saxon adjective *ane* or *un*, before a substantive beginning with a consonant.—It is sometimes prefixed to another adjective, the substantive to which both belong being understood, *e. g.* A Frere there was, a wanton and a mery.—It is also joined to nouns plural taken collectively, as, an hundred frankes, a thousand frankes,—and to such as are not used in the singular number, as a liftes. So the Latins said *Una littera*, Cic. ad Att. v. 9, and the French formerly *unes lices, unes lettres, unes tréves*. *Froissart*, v. i. c. 153, 237, v. ii. c. 78

**A**, *prep.* before a gerund, is a corruption of *on*. To go a begging, *i. e.* on begging. The *prep.* is often expressed at length; on hunting ben they ridden; To ride on hawking.—In the same manner, before a noun it is generally a corruption of *on* or *in*; *e. g.* a'bed; a'fire; a'God-des name; a'morwe; a'night; a'werke; though in some of these instances perhaps it may as well be supposed to be a corruption of *at*.—**A**, in composition, in words of Saxon original, is an abbreviation of *af* or *of*, of *at*, of *on* or *in*, and often only a corruption of the prepositive particle *ge* or *y*. In words of French original it is generally to be deduced from the Latin *ab*, *ad*, and sometimes *ex*

**A**, *interj.* ah!

**Abacke**, *adv. Sax.* backwards

**Abaisht**, *part. pa. Fr.* abashed, ashamed

**Abate**, *v. Fr.* to beat down

**Abawed**, *part. pa. Fr.* *esbai*, astonished; I was abawed for *marveille*. *Orig.* *Moult m'esbahy de la merveille*

**Abegge**, *abeye*, *abie*, *v. Sax.* to suffer for

**Abet**, *n. Sax.* help

**Abide**, *v. Sax.* to stay

**Abidden** } *part. pa*

**Abiden** }

**Abit** *for* *abideth*

**Able**, *adj. Fr.* fit, proper

**Abote**, *part. pa.* of *abate*

**Aboutht**, *part. pa.* of *abegge*

**Abouten**, *prep. Sax. on-bucan*, about

**Abraide**, *v. Sax.* to awake, to start. See **Braide**

**Abraide**, *pa. t.* awaked, started.

**Abrede**, *adv. Sax.* abroad

**Abrege**, *v. Fr.* to shorten, to abridge

**Abroche**, *v. Fr.* to tap, to set abroach; spoken of a vessel of liquor

**Abusion**, *n. Fr.* abuse, impropriety

**Accesse**, *n. Fr.* properly the approach of a fever, a fever

**Accidie**, *n. Fr.* from *Aandia*, *Gr.* negligence; arising from discontent, melancholy, &c.

**Accord**, *n. Fr.* agreement

**Accord**, *v. Fr.* to agree

**Accordeden**, *pa. t. pl.*

**Accordant**, } *part. pr.*

**According**, }

**Accuse**, *v. Fr.* to discover

**Achate**, *n. Fr.* purchase

**Achatour**, *n. Fr.* a purchaser, a caterer

**Acheked**, *part. pa. Sax.* choked

**Acheve**, *v. Fr.* to accomplish

**Ackele**, (*akele*) *v. Sam.* to cool

**Acloye**, *v.* may perhaps mean to cloy, to embarrass with superfluity

**Acoie**, *v. Fr.* to make quiet

**Acomberd**, *part. pa. Fr.* encombered

**Acroke**, *adj. Fr.* crooked, awkward.

**Adawe**, *v. Sam.* to awake

**Ado**, *v. Sax.* to do; it is used to express the *Fr.* *à faire*, to have ado; to have to do; and don all that they han ado. *Et facent ce qu'ils doivent faire.*

**Adon**, (corruption of *of-don*) *part. pa. Sax.* done away

**Adon**, *pr. n.* Adonis

**Adoun**, *adv. Sax.* downward

**Adrad**, *adrade*, *part. pa.* of *adrede*, *v. Sam.* afraid

**Adriane** for *Ariadne*, *pr. n.*

**Advertence**, *n. Fr.* attention

**Advocacies**, *n. pl. Fr.* law-suits

**Advocas**, *n. pl. Fr.* lawyers, advocates

**Afered**, *aferde*, *part. pa. Sax.* afraid, frightened

**Affecte**, *n. Lat.* affection

**Affermed**, *part. pa. Fr.* confirmed

**Affie**, *v. Fr.* to trust

**Affray**, *v. Fr.* to affright

**Affray**, *n. Fr.* disturbance, fear

**Affriken**, *pr. n.* the elder Scipio Africanus

**Afile**, *v. Fr.* to file, polish

**Aforen**, *afore*, *adv. prep. Sax.* *et-foran*, before.



Again, *prep. Sax.* against, toward, *adv.*

Agaste, *v. Sax.* to terrify

Agast, for agasted, *part. pa.* terrified

Agathon, *pr. n.* I have nothing to say concerning this writer, except that one of the same name is quoted in the prol. to the tragedie of Cambrics, by Thomas Preston. There is no ground for supposing, with Gloss. Ur. that a philosopher of Samos is meant, or any of the Agathoes of antiquity

Ageins, *prep.* against

Agen, *adv.* again

Agilte, *v. Sax.* to offend, to sin against

Agilte, for agilted, *pa. t.* sinned

Ago, agon, for ygon, *part. pa. Sax.* gone, past

Agree, *Fr. à gré*, in good part

Agrese, (a'grese) in grief

Agrege, *v. Fr.* to aggravate

Agreved, *part. pa. Fr.* injured, agrieved

Agrise, *v. Sax.* to shudder, to make to shudder

Agrose, *pa. t.* shuddered, trembled

Agroted, *part. pa.* cloyed, surfeited; agrotone with mete or drinke. *Ingurgito.* Prompt. parv.

Aguiler, *n. Fr.* a needle-case

Ajust, *v. Fr.* to apply

Akehorns, *n. pl. Sax.* acorns

Aknowe, *part. pa. Sax.* to ben aknowe; I am aknowe; I acknowledge

Al, alle, *adj. Sax.* all; al and som, the whole thing, at al, in the whole; over all, through the whole; in alle manere wise, by every kind of means; at alle rightes, with every thing requisite

Alain, *pr. n.* a poet and divine of the 12th century. Beside his *Planctus Naturæ*, or *Plaint of Kinde*, which is here quoted, he wrote another poem in Latin verse, called *Anticlaudianus*. For the rest of his works see *Fabric. Bibl. Med. Æt.* in v. *Alanus de Insulis*

Alder, aller, *gen. ca. pl.* of all; it is frequently joined in composition with adjectives of the superl. deg. e. g. alderfirst; alderlast; alderlewest; first, last, dearest of all

Al, all, *adv. Sax.* generally answers to the Lat. *omnino*; al alone, quite alone; al hol, entire; al holly, entirely; all in one, at the same time; all newe, anew; al only, solely, singly. It is sometimes used elliptically for although, or all be it that; all tell I not now as now his observances; all be ye not of o complexion

Alarged, *part. pa. Fr.* estargi, given largely

Alauns, *n. pl.* a species of dog. They were much esteemed in Italy in the 14th century. *Gualv. de la flamma*, [ap. Murator. *Antiq. Med. Æt.* t. II. p. 394,] commends the governors of Milan, "quod equos emissarios equabus magnis commiscuerunt, et procreati sunt in nostro territorio Destrarii nobiles, qui in magno pretio habentur. Item Canes Alanos altæ staturæ et mirabilis fortitudinis nutrire studuerunt"

Alayne, *n. Fr.* alloy, a mixture of base metal

Albification, *n. Lat.* a chemical term for making white [salt

Alcally, *n. Arab.* a chemical term for a species of

Alchymist, *n. Fr.* alchymist

Aldrian, *pr. n.* a star on the neck of the lion, Sp.

Ale and bred. This oath of Sire Thopas on ale and bred was perhaps intended to ridicule the solemn vows which were frequently made in the days of chivalry to a peacock, a pheasant, or some other noble bird. See *M. de Sainte Palaye, Sur l'anc. cheval. Mem. IIIme.* I will add here, from our own history, a most remarkable instance of this strange practice. When Edward I. was setting out upon his last expedition to Scotland in 1306, he knighted his eldest son and several other young noblemen with great solemnity. At the close of the whole, (says Matthew of Westminster, p. 454,) "Allati sunt in pompaticâ gloria duo cygni vel olores ante regem, phalerati retibus aureis vel fistulis deauratis, desiderabile spectaculum intuentibus. Quibus visis, Rex votum vovit Deo cali et cygnis se proficisci in Scotiam, mortem Johannis Comyn et fidem læsam Scotorum vivus five mortuus vindicaturus," &c. This practice is alluded to in Dunbar's wish, *that the king were Johne Thomfsonis man*, ms. Maitland, ft. 5;

I wold gif all that ever I have

To that condition, so God me saif,

That ye had vorwis to the swan

Ane yeir to be Johne Thomfsonis man.

And so in the Prol. to the Contin. of The Cant. T. the Hosteler says—I make a vowe to the peacock ther shall wake a foule mist

Alege, *n. Fr.* to alleviate

Alegeance, *n. Fr.* alleviation

Aleis, *n. Fr.* alife, the lote tree

Alembikes, *n. pl. Fr.* vessels for distilling, stills

Ale-stake, *n. Sax.* a stake set up before an alehouse by way of sign

Aleye, *n. Fr.* an alley

Algates, Algate, *adv. Sax.* always; toutesfois

Algezir, *pr. n.* a city of Spain

Alight, *v. Sax.* to descend; alight, *pa. t.* for alighted

Alisandre, *pr. n.* Alexandria, a city in Egypt

Allege, *v. Fr.* to alledge

Almagest, *pr. n.* the Arabs, called the *Μαγιστη Συναξίς* of Ptolomee Almagesthi or Almegisthi, a corruption of *Μαγιστ*. See D'Herbelot, in v.

Almandres, *n. pl. Fr.* almond trees

Almesse, *n. Sax.* from the Lat. Gr. *eleemosyna*, alms, Almesses, *pl.*

Alnath, *pr. n.* the first star in the horns of Aries, whence the first mansion of the moon takes its name, Sp.

Alonde, (a'londe) on land

Along, *prep. Sax.* whereon it was along, by what it was occasioned; on me is nought along thine evil fare, thy ill fare is not occasioned by me

Alosed, *part. pa. Fr.* praised

Aloue, *v. Fr.* to allow, to approve, his dedes are to alowe for his hardynesse, therefore lords allow him litle, or lyften to his reason

Alowe, *adv. Sax.* low

Alpes, *n. pl.* bullfinches

Als, *conj. Sax.* also, as

- Amalgaming, a chemical term for mixing of quicksilver with any metal
- Ambassatric, *n. Fr.* embassy
- Ambes as, two aces at dice, *Fr.*
- Ambling, *part. pr. Fr.*
- Amende, *v. Fr.* to mend
- Amenuse, *v. Fr.* to lessen
- Amoved, *part. pa. Fr.* moved
- Amias, *pr. n.* the city of Amien
- Amiddes, *prep. Sax.* at, or in the middle
- Amis, *adv. Sax.* ill, badly. See Mis
- Amoneste, *v. Fr.* to admonish, to advise
- Among, *adv. Sax.* together, at the same time, at the same place, *Du.* 298, ever among, ever at the same time, *Conf. Am.* 114, b.
- Amonges, *prep. Sax.* among
- Amorette, *n. Fr.* an amorous woman.—And eke as well by [*r. be*] amorettes.—*Car aussi bien font amourettes*, orig.
- Amorily, is perhaps put by mistake for merrily.
- Amortised, *part. pa. Fr.* killed
- Amorwe, on the morrow [sions]
- Amphibologies, *n. pl. Fr. Gr.* ambiguous expressions
- An, for on, *prep.*
- Ancille, *n. Lat.* a maid-servant
- Ancre, *n. Fr.* anchor
- And, *conj. Sax.* if
- Anelace, *n.* a kind of knife or dagger, usually worn at the girdle. See *Gloss. to M. Paris*, in v. *Anacutus*
- Anes, *adv.* for ones, once
- Anhang, *v. Sax.* to hang up
- Anientified, *part. pa. Fr.* reduced to nothing
- Anight, in the night
- Anker, *n. Sax.* an anchorite or hermit
- Annuelier, *n.* a priest employed solely in singing annuals, or anniversary masses for the dead
- Annunciat, *part. pa. Lat.* foretold
- Anoie, *n. Fr.* hurt, trouble
- Anoie, *v.* to hurt, to trouble
- Anoiful, *adj.* hurtful, unpleasant
- Antem, *n. Sax.* an anthem
- Anticlaudian, the title of a Latin poem by Alanus de Insulis. See *Alain*
- Antilegius, *pr. n.* Antiochus, *Du.* 1064. [anthems]
- Antiphonere, *n. Lat.* Gr. a book of antiphones or Anvelt, *n. Sax.* an anvil, *Du.* 1165.
- Any, *adj. Sax.* either, one of two. It usually signifies one of many
- Apaid, *part. pa. Fr.* paid, satisfied
- Apaire, *v. Fr.* See Apeire
- Ape, *n. Sax.* metaphorically a fool, the monk put in the mannes hode an ape, and in his wife's eke, the monk made a fool of the man and of his wife too—Win of ape.
- Apeire, *v. Fr.* to impair, to detract from; our state it apeires—to be impaired, to go to ruin.
- Apert, *adj. Fr.* open, prive and apert, in private and in public
- Apies, for opies, *n. pl. Fr.* opiates
- Appalled, *part. pa. Fr.* made pale
- Apparaile, *v. Fr.* to prepare
- Apparence, *n. Fr.* an appearance
- Apperceive, *v. Fr.* to perceive
- Apperceivings, *n. pl.* perceptions
- Appetite, *v. Fr.* to desire, to covet
- Appose, *v. Fr.* to object to, to question. It seems to be a corruption of oppose
- Approver, *n. Fr.* an informer
- Apprentise, *n. pl. Fr.* apprentices, novices
- Aqueintable, *adj. Fr.* easy to be acquainted with
- Aquite, *v. Fr.* to pay for
- Arace, *v. Fr.* to draw away by force
- Arande, *n. Sax.* a message
- Araye, *n. Fr.* order, situation, clothing, equipage
- Araye, *v. Fr.* to dress, to dispose.
- Arblasters, *n. pl. Fr.* arbalestres, engines to cast darts, &c
- Archangel, *n.* the herb so called; a dead nettle, *Gloss. Ur.*—In the orig. it is *mefange*, the bird which we call a titmouse
- Archebishop, *n. Sax. Lat.* an archbishop
- Archedecken, *n. Sax. Lat.* an archdeacon
- Archediace, *n. Fr.* Archdeacon
- Archewives, wives of a superior order
- Ardure, *n. Fr.* burning
- Arede, *v. Sax.* to interpret, *Du.* 289. See Rede
- Areise, *v. Sax.* to raise
- Arerage, *n. Fr.* arrear
- Arefone, *v. Fr.* arraisonner, to reason with
- Areste, *n. Fr.* arrest, constraint, delay
- Areste, *v. Fr.* to stop
- Arëtte, *v. Fr.* to impute to
- Argoil, *n. Fr.* potters clay
- Ariete, *pr. n.* Aries, one of the signs in the zodiac
- Aristotle, *pr. n.* a treatise on perspective under his name is mentioned by Vincent of Beauvais in the 13th century, *Spec. Hist.* l. iii. c. 84; *Extas etiam liber, qui dicitur, Perspectiva Aristotelis*
- Arivage, *n. Fr.* as arivaile
- Arivaile, *n. Fr.* arrival
- Ark, *n. Lat.* a part of the circumference of a circle
- Arme, *n.* may perhaps be put for defence, security
- Arm-grete, *adj. Sax.* as thick as a man's arm
- Armipotent, *adj. Lat.* mighty in arms
- Armales, *adj. Sax.* without an arm
- Armorike, *pr. n.* Basse Bretagne in France, called anciently Britannia Armorica
- Armure, *n. Fr.* armour
- Arn, *pl. n.* of am, *v. Sax.* are
- Arnolde of the newe town, *pr. n.* of a physician and chemist of the 13th century. See *Roll.* *Bibl. Med. Æt.* in v. *Arnaldus Villanovanus*
- Aroume, seems to signify at large; ~~arroume~~, or more utter, remote. *deprope. seordum. Prompt. Parv.* [cellivety]
- A'row, in a row, probably from the *Fr. rue*, *file*
- Arismetrike, *n. Lat.* arithmetic
- Arte, *v. Lat.* to constrain
- Artelries, *n. pl. Fr.* artillery
- As, *adv. Sax.* also; *omnino sic.* As fast, very fast; as swift, very quickly, immediately [say]
- Ascaunce, askow, aside, sideways;—as if, as if to
- Ashen, *n. pl. Sax.* ashes
- Aslake, *v. Sax.* to slacken, to abate
- Aspe, *n. Sax.* a sort of poplar
- Aspen, *adj.* of an asp
- Aspie, *v. Fr.* to espy
- Aspre, *adj. Fr.* rough, sharp
- Asprenesse, *n.* sharpness
- Assaut, *n. Fr.* assault



**Afflege**, *n. Fr.* siege  
**Affeth**, *n. Fr.* sufficient, enough  
**Affise**, *n. Fr.* situation  
**Affoile**, *v. Fr.* to absolve, to answer, *affoileth*, imp. m. 2d perf. pl.  
**Affomoned**, *part. pa.* summoned  
**Affure**, *v. Fr.* to confide  
**Aferte**, *v. Sax.* to escape, to release; *aferte* for *asterted*, *part. pa.*  
**Afioned**, *astonied*, *part. pa. Fr.* confounded, astonished  
**Afrelabre**, *n. Fr.* astrolabe  
**Astrologien**, *n. Fr.* astrologer  
**Afweved**, *part. pa. Sax.* stupified, as in a dream  
**Afwone**, in a swoon  
**At**, *prep. Sax.* at after supper, as soon as supper was finished; at day, at break of day; at on, of one mind  
**Atake**, *v. Sax.* to overtake—for ataken, *part. pa.*  
**A'thre**, in three parts  
**Attamed**, *part. pa. Fr.* *entamé*, opened, begun, tasted, felt, disgraced  
**Attempre**, *adj. Fr.* temperate  
**Attemprely**, *adv. Fr.* temperately  
**Attour**, *n. Fr.* head-dress  
**Attry**, *atferly*, *adj. Sax.* poisonous, pernicious  
**A'twinne**, a'two; in two, asunder  
**Avale**, *v. Fr.* to lower, to let down, to fall down  
**Avance**, *v. Fr.* to advance, to profit  
**Avant**, *n. Fr.* boast  
**Avantage**, *n. Fr.* advantage  
**Avante**, *v. Fr.* to boast  
**Avaunt**, *adv. Fr.* forward  
**Auctoritee**, *n. Lat.* a text of Scripture or of some respectable writer  
**Auctour**, *n. Lat.* a writer of credit  
**Avenaunt**, *adj. Fr.* becoming  
**Aventaile**, *n. Fr.* the fore part of the armour *St.* the aperture for breathing in a helmet  
**Aventure**, *n. Fr.* adventure  
**Averrois**, *pr. n.* Ebn Roschd, an Arabian physician of the 12th century. See *D'Herbelot* in v. *Roschd.*  
**Avicen**, *pr. n.* Ebn Sina, an Arabian physician of the 10th century. See *D'Herbelot* in v. *Sina*  
**Aught**, *n. Sax.* any thing. It is sometimes used as an adverb; if that the childes mother were aught she, can he ought tell a merry tale or twee?  
**Aught**, *pa. t.* of owe, as ought  
**Aught where**, *adv. Sax.* any where  
**Augrim**, a corruption of Algorithm  
**Augrim stones**, the pebbles or counters which were anciently used in numeration  
**Avis**, *n. Fr.* advise  
**Avifand**, *part. pr.* observing  
**Avise**, *v. Fr.* to observe; *avise*th you, imp. m. 2d perf. pl.; look to yourselves, take care of yourselves  
**Avision**, *n. Fr.* vision  
**Aumble**, *n. Fr.* an ambling pace  
**Aumener**, *n. Fr.* aumniere, a purse  
**Aumere**, *n.* aumere of silke, bourse de foy, orig. It seems to be a corruption of aumener. [ture  
**Auntre**, *v. Fr.* corruption of aventure, to adven-

**Auntrous**, *adj.* adventurous  
**Aurora**, the title of a Latin metrical version of several parts of the Bible by Petrus de Riga, Canon of Rheims, in the 12th century. Leyser, in his *Hist. Poet. Med. Ævi.* p. 692—736, has given large extracts from this work, and among others the passage which Chaucer seems to have had in his eye

Aure jebal varios ferramenti notat istos.  
 Pondera l'brat in his. Con sona quæque facit.  
 Hoc inventa modo prius est ars musica, quam  
 vis  
 Pythagoram dicant hanc docuisse prius.

**Avouterer**, *avouter*, *n. Fr.* an adulterer  
**Avouterie**, *avoutrie*, *n.* adultery  
**Avow**, *n. Fr.* vow  
**Auter**, *n. Fr.* altar  
**Awaite**, *n. Fr.* watch  
**Awaiting**, *part. pr.* keeping watch  
**Awaped**, *part. pa. Sax.* confounded, stupified  
**Awayward**, *adv. Sax.* away  
**Awreke**, *v. Sax.* to revenge  
**Axe**, *v. Sax.* to ask  
**Axing**, *n.* request  
**Ay**, *adv. Sax.* ever  
**Ayel**, *n. Fr.* grandfather  
**Ayen**, *adv.* and *prep.* again  
**Ayenst**, *prep.* against  
**Ayenward**, *adv. Sax.* back

## B

**Ba**, *v.* seems to be formed from *basse*, *v. Fr.* to kiss  
**Bachelor**, *n. Fr.* an unmarried man, a knight, one who has taken his first degree in an university  
**Bachelerie**, *n. Fr.* knighthood, the bachelerie, the knight  
**Bade**, *pa. t.* of bede  
**Badder**, *comp. d.* of bad, *adj. Sax.* worse  
**Bagge**, *v.* to swell, to disgain, *St.*; rather perhaps to quint  
**Baggingly**, *adv.* seems to be the translation of *en lorgnoyant*, squinting  
**Baillie**, *n. Fr.* custody, government  
**Baite**, *v. Sax.* to feed, to stop to feed  
**Balance**, *n. Fr.* doubt, suspense, I dare lay in balance all that I have, I dare wager all that I have  
**Bale**, *n. Sax.* mischief, sorrow  
**Bales**, *r. balais*, *pr. n. Fr.* a sort of bastard ruby  
**Balkes**, *n. pl. Sax.* the timbers of the roof  
**Balled**, *adj.* smooth as a ball, bald  
**Bandon**, *n. Fr.* See *Du Cange* in v. *Abandons*. To her bandon, to her disposal; a son bandon, orig.  
**Bane**, *n. Sax.* destruction  
**Barbe**, *n.* a hood or muffler which covered the lower part of the face and the shoulders. See *Du Cange* in v. *Barbuta*  
**Baren**, *pa. t. pl.* of bere, *v. Sax.* bore  
**Bargaine**, *n. Fr.* contention  
**Bargaret**, *n. Fr.* bergerette, a sort of song

he lap  
 apron  
 ar of a door, a stripe  
 barren  
 basilisk  
 its  
 sewing slightly  
 Fr. embattled  
 ve should rather say to bask  
 oyous  
 e, *n.* pimping, keeping a bawdy-  
 y, with bawdy cote, *Lydg. Tra. b.*  
 Fr. originally a bay horse; a horse  
 large window, probably so called, upied a whole bay, *i. e.* the space crossbeams  
 Y  
 rt. *pa. Sax.*  
 Fr. fair appearance  
 air Sir, a mode of address  
 n. Sax. covered with blood  
 to stain  
 nod  
 e. to catch  
 a, *Sax.* made a fool of. See *Dasse*  
 order, to bid, to offer, to pray; to e, to offer his neck for execution to make to dote, to deceive. See

ix. confined to bed

**Benched**, *part.*  
**Bende**, *n. Fr.*  
**Bending**, *n. Fr.*  
**Bene**, *n. Sax.*  
**Benedicite**!  
 blest us! it  
 Bencite!  
**Benigne**, *adj.*  
**Benime**, *v. Sax.*  
**Benison**, *n. Fr.*  
**Benomen**, *part.*  
**Bent**, *n. Sax.*  
**Berained**, *part.*  
**Berde**, *n. Sax.*  
 ch at him.  
**Bere**, *n. Sax.*  
**Bere**, *v. Sax.*  
 hand, to a  
 bere the be  
**Bere**, *n. Sax.*  
**Bering**, *n. Sax.*  
**Berne**, *n. Sax.*  
**Bernard**, *pr.*  
 Clairvaux i  
 ludes to a  
 Bernardus  
 in v.  
**Bernard**, *pr.*  
 13th centur  
**Berne**, *n. Sax.*  
**Besant**, *n. Fr.*  
 coined at E  
**Beseke**, *v. Sax.*  
**Beser**, besette  
**Besey**, *part. pr.*  
 sey, ill-bese  
 of a rich ap  
**Beshet**, *part. pr.*  
**Beshrewe**, *v.*  
**Beside**, *prep.*  
**Besmotred**, *part.*  
**Bespert**, *part. pr.*  
**Bestadde**, bes  
 sometimes  
**Beste**, *n. Fr.*  
**Besty**, *adj. sup.*  
**Besy**, *adj. Sax.*  
**Bet**, bette, *ad.*  
**Betake**, *v. Sax.*  
**Betaught**, *pa.*  
**Bete**, *v. Sax.*  
 fires, to m  
 nettes, to  
 sorrow  
**Bete**, *v. Fr.*  
**Beteche**, *v.*  
**Beth**, *imp. m.*  
**Betid**, betidde  
 pened  
**Betoke**, *pa. t.*  
**Betraised**, *pa.*  
 traisted the  
**Betwix**, betw  
**Bewepe**, *v. Sax.*  
**Bewrey**, bew



- Barne, *n. Sax.* the lap  
 Barne cloth, an apron  
 Barre, *n. Fr.* a bar of a door, a stripe  
 Baireine, *adj. Sax.* barren  
 Basilicok, *n. a.* a basilisk  
 Basse, *n. Fr.* a kiss  
 Basting, *part. pr.* sewing slightly  
 Batailed, *part. pa. Fr.* embattled  
 Barbe, for Bothe  
 Bathe, *v. Sax.* we should rather say to balk  
 Baude, *adj. Fr.* joyous  
 Bauderie, baudrie, *n.* pimping, keeping a bawdy-house  
 Baudy, *adj.* dirty, with baudy cote, *Lydg. Tra. b. ix. f. 26. b.*  
 Bayard, *pr. n. Fr.* originally a bay horse; a horse in general  
 Bay-window, a large window, probably so called, because it occupied a whole bay, *i. e.* the space between two crossbeams  
 Be, *prep. Sax.* by  
 Be, for been, *part. pa. Sax.*  
 Beau Semblant, *Fr.* fair appearance  
 Beau Sire, *Fr.* fair Sir, a mode of address  
 Behleddē, *part. pa. Sax.* covered with blood  
 Behlotte, *v. Sax.* to stain  
 Becke, *v. Fr.* to nod  
 Beclappe, *v. Sax.* to catch  
 Bedaffed, *part. pa. Sax.* made a fool of. See Daffe  
 Bede, *v. Sax.* to order, to bid, to offer, to pray; to bede his necke, to offer his neck for execution  
 Bedote, *v. Sax.* to make to dote, to deceive. See Dote  
 Dedrede, *adj. Sax.* confined to bed  
 Bedreinte, *part. pa.* drenched, thoroughly wetted  
 Been, *n. pl. Sax.* bees  
 Befill, for befall, *pa. t. of befall, v. Sax.*  
 Beforen, beforene, *adv. and prep. Sax.* before  
 Begiled, *part. pa. Fr.* beguiled  
 Begon, *part. pa. of bego, v. Sax.* gone; wel begon, in a good way; wo begon, far gone in wo; worfe begon, in a worfe way; with gold begon, painted over with gold, *à or peintes, orig.*  
 Begonne, *part. pa. of beginne, v. Sax.* begun  
 Behalve, *n. Sax.* half, side or part  
 Beheste, *n. Sax.* to promise  
 Behete, *v. Sax.* to promise  
 Behewe, *part. pa. Sax.* coloured. See Hewe  
 Behighte, *v. Sax.* promise  
 Behighte, *part. pa.* promised  
 Behigheten, *pa. t. pl. promised*  
 Behove, *n. Sax.* behoof, advantage  
 Bejaped, *part. pa. Sax.* tricked, laughed at  
 Beknowne, *v. Sax.* to confess  
 Bellamy, *Fr.* good friend  
 Beleve, *n. Sax.* belief; his beleve, his creed  
 Belle, *adj. fem. Fr.* fair  
 Belle, *v. Sax.* to roar  
 Belle chere, *Fr.* good cheer  
 Belle Ifaude, *F. iii. 707,* the fair Ifaude, the mistress of Tristan; she is called Ifaude  
 Belous, *n. Sax.* bellows  
 Benies, *n. pl. Sax.* trumpets  
 Ben, *inf. m. Sax.* to be, *pr. t. pl. are, part. pa. been*  
 Benched, *part. pa.* furnished with benches  
 Bende, *n. Fr.* a band or horizontal stripe  
 Bending, *n.* striping, making of bands or stripes  
 Bene, *n. Sax.* a bean. and al n'as wurth a bene  
 Benedicite! *Lat.* an exclamation, answering to our blefs us! it was often pronounced as a trisyllable, Bencite!  
 Benigne, *adj. Fr.* kind  
 Benime, *v. Sax.* to take away  
 Benison, *n. Fr.* benediction  
 Benomen, *part. pa. of benime,* taken away  
 Bent, *n. Sax.* the bending or declivity of a hill  
 Berained, *part. pa. Sax.* rained upon  
 Berde, *n. Sax.* beard; to make any one's berde, to chat him.  
 Bere, *n. Sax.* a bear  
 Bere, *v. Sax.* to bear, to carry; to bere in or on hand, to accuse falsely, to persuade falsely; to bere the belle, to carry the prize  
 Bere, *n. Sax.* a bier, a pillowbear  
 Bering, *n. Sax.* behaviour  
 Berme, *n. Sax.* yest  
 Bernard, *pr. n. L. W. 16. St. Bernard, Abbot of Clairvaux in the 12th century. Our author alludes to a proverbial saying concerning him, Bernardus ipse non vidit omnia. See Hoffman in v.*  
 Bernard, *pr. n.* a physician of Montpellier in the 13th century  
 Berne, *n. Sax.* a barm  
 Befant, *n. Fr.* a piece of gold, so called because first coined at Byzantium, now Constantinople, *St.*  
 Befeke, *v. Sax.* to beseech  
 Befet, besette, *part. pa. Sax.* placed, employed  
 Befey, *part. pa. of besee, v. Sax.* beseen; evil besey, ill-beseech, of a bad appearance; richly besey, of a rich appearance  
 Beshet, *part. pa. Sax.* shut up.  
 Beshrewe, *v. Sax.* to curse  
 Beside, *prep. Sax.* by the side of  
 Besmotred, *part. pa. Sax.* smutted  
 Beshpet, *part. pa. Sax.* spit upon  
 Bestadde, bestad, *part. pa. Sax.* situated; it is sometimes used in an ill sense for distressed  
 Beste, *n. Fr.* a beast  
 Besty, *adj. sup. Sax.* best  
 Besy, *adj. Sax.* busy  
 Bet, bette, *adv. comp.* for better  
 Betake, *v. Sax.* to give, to recommend to  
 Betaught, *pa. t.* recommended to  
 Bete, *v. Sax.* to prepare, make ready; to bete fires, to make fires—to mend, to heal; to bete nettes, to mend nets; to bete sorwe, to heal sorrow  
 Bete, *v. Fr.* to beat  
 Beteche, *v.* as betake  
 Beth, *imp. m. 2d pers. pl. Sax.* be ye  
 Betid, betidde, *pa. t. et part. of betide, v. Sax.* happened  
 Betoke, *pa. t. of betake,* recommended  
 Betraided, *part. pa. Fr.* betrayed; thei have betraided thei  
 Betwix, betwixen, *prep. Sax.* between  
 Bewepe, *v. Sax.* to weep over  
 Bewrey, bewric, *v. Sax.* to discover



Beye, *v. Sax.* to buy. See Abeye  
 Beyete, *part. pa. Sax.* begotten  
 Bialacoil, *pr. n. Fr.* Bel-accueil, courteous reception  
 Bibbed, *part. pa. Lat.* drunk  
 Bible, *n. r.* any great book  
 Bicchel bones, used in playing a particular kind of game of hazard  
 Bidde, *v.* as bede  
 Bie, *v. Sax.* to suffer. See Abeye  
 Bigine, *pr. n. r.* Beguine, a nun of a certain order. See *Du Cange* in *v. Beguina*  
 Biker, *n. Sax.* a quarrel  
 Bildir, *n. Sax.* a builder; the bilder oke, the oak used in building  
 Bill, *n.* a letter  
 Bimene, *v. Sax.* to bemoan  
 Bint, for bindeth  
 Birde for bride, *n. Sax.*—hir chere was simple as birde in bour, *i. e.* as bride in chamber—*simple fut comme une espousee*, orig.  
 Bismare, *n. Sax.* abusive speech; and bold, and abiding, bismares to suffer  
 Bit, for biddeth  
 Bitore, *n. r.* a bittern  
 Bitrent, *part. pa.* twisted, carried round; perhaps from the *Sax. circumdare*  
 Biwopen, *part. pa.* of bewepe, drowned in tears.  
 Blancmanger, *n. Fr.* seems to have been a very different dish in the time of Chaucer, from that which is now called by the same name. There is a receipt for making it in *ms. Harl.* one of the ingredients is the brawne of a capon teased small  
 Blandise, *v. Fr.* to flatter  
 Blanche fevere. See *Cotgrave* in *v. Fieures blanches*; the agues wherewith maidens that have the greenickness are troubled; and hence *il a les fieures blanches*, either he is in love or sick of wantonness  
 Ble, *n. Sax.* colour  
 Blee, *pr. n.* a forest in Kent. *Ur.*  
 Bleine, *n. Sax.* a pustule  
 Blend, *v. Sax.* to blind, to deceive  
 Blend, *pa. t.* of blend  
 Blent, *pa. t.* of blenche, *v. Sax.* shrunked, started, aside  
 Blered, *part. pa. Sax.* in its literal sense is used to describe a particular disorder of the eye, attended with soreness and dimness of sight; but more commonly, in Chaucer, a man's eye is said to be blered, metaphorically, when he is any way imposed upon  
 Bleve, *v. Sax.* to stay  
 Blin, *v. Sax.* to cease  
 Blisse, *n. Sax.* to bleis  
 Blive, believe, *adv. Sax.* quickly  
 Blofme, *n. Sax.* blossom, *v.* to blossom  
 Blofmy, *adj.* full of blossoms  
 Bob-up-and-down, *pr. n.* of a town in the road to Canterbury: it is not marked in the common maps  
 Bobance, *n. Fr.* boasting  
 Boche, *n. Fr.* boffe, a swelling, a wen or boil  
 Bode, bodeu, *part. pa.* of bede, *v. Sax.* bidden, commanded

Bode, *pa. t.* of bide, *v. Sax.* remained  
 Bode, *n. Sax.* a stay or delay, an omen  
 Bodekin, *n. Sax.* a dagger  
 Boece, *pr. n.* Boethius. His most popular work, *De Consolatione Philosophiæ*, was translated by Chaucer certainly before 1381, and probably much earlier; the reflections on predestination (of which there is no trace in the *Filotrato*) are almost entirely taken from *Bo. v. pr. 3. e*  
 Boiste, *n. Fr.* a box  
 Boistous, *adj. ax.* boisterous, rough,  
 Boistously, *adv.* roughly  
 Bokeler, *n. Fr.* a buckler  
 Bokeling, *part. pr. Fr.* buckling  
 Boket, *n. Sax.* a bucket  
 Bolas, *n.* bullace, a sort of plumb or floe  
 Bole armoniac, Armenian earth. *Fr. Gr.*  
 Bollen, *part. pa.* of bodge, *v. Sax.* swollen  
 Bolt, *n. Sax.* an arrow, bolt-upright, straight as an arrow  
 Bone, *n. Sax.* a boon petition, he bade hem all a bone, he made a request to them all.  
 Boras, *n. Fr.* borax  
 Bord, *n. Fr.* a border; the side of a ship; over bord  
 Borde, *n. Sax.* a table  
 Bordel, *n. Fr.* a brothel—bordel-women, whores  
 Bordellers, *n. pl.* keepers of bawdyhouses  
 Borel, *n. Fr.* bureau, coarse cloth of a brown colour. See *Du Cange* in *v. Burellus*  
 Borel, *adj.* made of plain coarse stuff—borel folk, borel men, laymen.  
 Borwe, *n. Sax.* a pledge; hath laid to borwe; hath pledged; have here my feith to borwe; have here my faith for a pledge; Seint John to borwe; St. John being my security.  
 Bosard, *n. Fr.* a buzzard, a species of hawk unfit for sporting  
 Boffe, *n. Fr.* a protuberance  
 Bost, *n. Sax.* pride, boasting  
 Bost, *adv.* aloud; he cracked bost  
 Bote, *n. Sax.* remedy, help, profit  
 Bote, *v. Sax.* to help  
 Bote, *pa. t.* of bite, *v. Sax.* bit  
 Boteles, *adj. ax.* bootless, remediless  
 Botel, bottelle, *n. Fr.* bottle  
 Boterflie, *n. Sax.* a butterfly  
 Bothe, *adj. Sax.* two together; our bothe labour, the labour of us two together; *nostrum amborum labor*  
 Bothe, *conj.* is generally used to copulate two members of a sentence, but sometimes more.

And rent adoun bothe wall, and rafter—  
 To whom bothe heven, and erthe, and see,  
 is sene.

So the Greeks sometimes used *Ἀμφότερον*. *Od. O. 78.*

*Ἀμφότερον κούδος τε καὶ ἀγλαῖα καὶ οὐρανός.*

Bothum, *n. r.* bouton, a bud, particularly of a rose  
 Bougeron, *n. Fr.* a Sodomite  
 Boughton-under-blee, *pr. n.* of a town in Kent  
 Bouke, *n. Sax.* the body  
 Boulre, *v. Sax.* to sift, to separate the flour of wheat from the bran



**Boun**, *adj. Sax.* ready; and bade hem all to be bowne

**Bountee**, *n. Fr.* goodness

**Bourde**, *n. Fr.* a jest,

**Bourde**, *v. Fr.* to jest.

**Bourdon**, *n. Fr.* a staff,

**Boure**, *n. Sax.* a house, a chamber

**Bowe**, *n. Sax.* a bow; a dogge for the bowe; a dog used in shooting.

**Boxe**, *n.* a blow

**Bracer**, *n. Fr.* armour for the arm

**Bradwardin**, *pr. n.* Thomas Bradwardine, Archbishop of Canterbury in 1349. His book *De Causa Dei*, to which our author alludes, is in print. See Tanner in *v. Bradwardinus*

**Braide**, *n. Sax.* a start

**Braide**, *v. Sax.* to awake, to start. See *Abraide*. Out of his wit he braide, he ran out of his senses; to take off

**Braket**, *n. Brit.* bragod, a sweet drink made of the wort of ale, honey, and spice: it is still in use in Wales. Richards in *v. Bragod*

**Brasil**, *n.* a wood used in dying to give a red colour. See Huetiana, p. 268. In the inventory of the effects of Henry V. Rot. Parl. H. VI. m. 20, is the following article, *II Graundes peces du Brasile, pris vis. vii. d.*

**Bratt**, *n. Sax.* a coarse mantle

**Brech**, *n. Sax.* breeches

**Brede**, *n. Sax.* breadth; in brede, abroad

**Breme**, *adj. Sax.* furious

**Brenne**, *v. Sax.* to burn—*Brent*, *pa. t. & part.* burnt

**Brenningly**, *adv. Sax.* hotly

**Breres**, *n. pl. Fr.* briars

**Breste**, *v. Sax.* to burst

**Bret-ful**, *adj.* the sense is much more clear than the etymology.

**Bribe**, *n. Fr.* properly what is given to a beggar; what is given to an extortioner or cheat,

**Briben**, *inf. m. Fr.* to beg, or perhaps to steal.—See Rot. Parl. 22 E. IV. n. 30, have stolen and bribed signetts, (cygnets.) And so in P. P. 115, b. a bribour seems to signify a thief, as bribors, pilors, and pikeharneis, are classed together; and still more plainly in Lydg. Tra. 152;

Who saveth a thefe whan the rope is knet—  
With some safe turne the bribour will him quite.

See also ancient Scottish Poems, p. 171, st. vii. l. 3  
**Briboures**. Upon second thoughts I believe that I was wrong in adopting this word from ms. C. 1, and that we should rather read, with other mss.;

Certaine he knew of briberies mo.

**Bridale**, *n. Sax.* a marriage feast

**Briddes**, *n. pl. Sax.* birds

**Brige**, *n. Fr.* contention

**Brike**, *n. Sax.* breach, ruin

**Brimme**, *adj.* See *Breme*

**Brocage**, *n.* a treaty by a broker or agent

**Broche**, originally the tongue of a buckle or clasp; and from thence the buckle or clasp itself.

**Broided**, *part. pa. Fr.* braided, woven

**Brokking**, *part. pr.* throbbing, quavering

**Bromeholme**, *pr. n.* a priory in Norfolk

**Bronde**, *n. Fr.* a torch

**Broster**, *part. pa.* of breste

**Brotel**, *adj. Sax.* bristle

**Brotelnesse**, *n.* brittlenesse

**Brotherhed**, *n. Sax.* brotherly affection

**Brouded**, *part. pa. Fr.* brodé embroidered

**Brouken**, *inf. m. Sax.* to brook, enjoy, use

**Buckes horne**, a buck's horn; to blow the buckes horne is put for any useless employment.

**Buffette**, *n. Fr.* a blow

**Bugle-horn**, *n.* a drinking vessel made of horn.—

Gloss. *Ur.* derives it from *bucula cornu*; the gloss. to Anc. Scott. Po. explains bowgle to mean a buffalo. I have been told that in some parts of the north a bull is now called a boogle.

**Bumble**, *v. Sax.* to make a humming noise; it is used to describe the noise made by a bittern

**Burdoun**, *n. Fr. bourdon*, a humming noise, the bass in music

**Buriels**, *n. pl. Sax.* burying places

**Burned**, *part. pa. Fr.* burnished

**Burnel the asse**. The story supposes that the priest's son, when he was to be ordained, directed his servant to call him at cockcrowing, and that the cock whose leg he had formerly broken having overheard this, purposely refrained from crowing at his usual time, by which artifice the young man was suffered to sleep till the ordination was over.

**Burnette**, *n. Fr. brunette*, cloth dyed of a brown colour. See *Du Gange* in *v. Burnetum*.

**Busk**, a bush

**Butte**, but, *adv. & conj. Sax.* but, fed—unless, *nisi*, I ne'ere but lost, *non esse nisi perditam*—only, which that am but lorne.

**But**, *prep. Sax.* without, gloss. *Ur.* I cannot say that I have myself observed this preposition in Chaucer, but I may have overlooked it. The Saxons used it very frequently, and how long the Scottish writers have laid it aside I am doubtful. It occurs repeatedly in Bp. Douglas; but spot or fault, p. 3 l. 33; poete but pere, p. 9 l. 19; but and ben, p. 123, l. 40, without and within; *but an and binnan*, originally, I suppose, *bi utan and bi innan*. By and with are often synonymous.

**Buxome**, *adj. Sax.* obedient, civil

**Buzumly**, *adv. Sax.* obediently

**By**, *prep. Sax.* has sometimes the signification of in; by the morwe, in the morning or daytime; by his life, in his lifetime. It is sometimes used adverbially; by and by, near hand by.—By and by, *sigillatim*, *Prompt. Parv.* these were his wordes by and by, *i. e.* severally, distinctly; and so perhaps this phrase should be understood in the passages above quoted.

**Byforne**. See *Beforene*

**Bylere**, *v. Sax.* to stay



Byraft, *part. pa.* of byreve, *v. Sax.* bereeved, taken away  
Byword, *n. Sax.* a proverb

## C.

Cacche, *v.* to catch  
Cadence, *n. Fr.* a species of poetical composition  
Cairrud, *pr. n.* of a city in Bretagne  
Caitif, *n. & adj. Fr.* *chetif*, a wretch, wretched  
Calcination, *n. Fr.* a chemical process by which bodies are reduced to a calx  
Calculated, *part. t. Fr.* calculated  
Caleweis, probably miswritten; the original has *la poire du caillonel*. Cotgrave says that *caillonet* is the name of a very sweet pear  
Calidone, *pr. n.* it should be Lacedonie  
Caliopha, *pr. n.* We should rather read Calypsa, with the two Bodl. mss. for Calypso.  
Calle, *n. Fr.* a species of cap  
Canaille, *n. Fr.* a camel  
Cameline, *n. Fr.* a stuff made of camel's hair  
Camuse, *adj. Fr.* flat  
Can, *v. Sax.* to know. See Conne  
Cananee, *adj. Fr.* Cananean  
Cane, *pr. n.* Cana in Galilee  
Canel, *n. Fr.* canal, channel  
Canelle, *n. Fr.* cinnamon  
Canevas, *n. Fr.* canvas  
Canon, the title of Avicenne's great work. See *D'Herbelot* in *v. Canon*  
Cantel, *n. Sax.* a fragment  
Capel, *n. Lat.* a horse  
Capitaine, *n. Fr.* a captain  
Capitolie, *n. Lat.* the Capitol at Rome  
Cappe, *n. Lat.* a carp or hood; to set a man's cap, to make a fool of him.  
Captif, *adj. Fr.* captive  
Cardiack, *n. Fr. Gr.* a pain about the heart  
Caractes, *n. pl. Lat. Gr.* characters  
Carfe, *part. t. of carve, v. Sax.* cut  
Carle, *n. Sax.* a churl, a hardy country fellow  
Carmes, *n. pl. Fr.* Carmelite friars  
Carole, *n. Fr.* a sort of dance  
Carole, *v. Fr.* to dance, in caroling, in dancing  
Carpe, *v.* to talk; by carping of tongue, by speech  
Carraine, *n. Fr.* a carrion, dead or putrified flesh  
Carrike, *n. Fr.* a large ship  
Carte, *n. Sax.* a chariot  
Carter, *n. Sax.* a charioteer  
Cas, *n. Fr. cas*, chance, upon *cas*, by chance  
Cas, *n. Fr. casse*, a case, quiver  
Cassiodore, *pr. n.* Cassiodorus, a Roman senator and consul, several of his works are extant. See *Fabric. Bibl. Lat. and Bibl. Med. Aet.*  
Cast, *n. Sax.* a contrivance  
Caste, *v.* to throw, to contrive  
Casteloigne, *pr. n.* Catalonia in Spain  
Casuel, *adj. Fr.* accidental  
Catapuce, *n. Fr.* a species of spurge  
Catel, *n. Fr.* goods, valuable things of all sorts  
Caterwawed. To gon a caterwawed seems to signify the same as to go a caterwawing, or caterwawling, as it has been called by later writers.

Caught, *part. t. & part. of catch*  
Cavilatioun, *n. Fr.* cavil  
Cecile, Cecilie, *pr. n.* Cecilia  
Ceise, cese, are misprinted for seise, *v. Fr.* to seize, to lay hold of.  
Celerer, *n. Lat. Celerarius*, the officer in a monastery who had the care of the provisions  
Celle, *n. Lat.* a religious house, it seems to be put for a man's head  
Cellitude, *n. Fr.* highness  
Censer, *n. Fr.* an incense pot  
Censing, *part. pr. Fr.* fumigating with incense  
Centaurie, *pr. n.* of an herb  
Cercle, *v. Fr.* to surround  
Cercles, *n. pl. Fr.* circles  
Cerial, *adj. Fr.* belonging to the species of oak called *cerrus*, *Lat. cerra*, *Ital. cerre*  
Certain, *adj. Fr.* is used sometimes as a substantive; of unces a certain, a certain of gold, *i. e.* a certain number of ounces, a certain quantity of gold  
Certain, certes, *adv.* certainly  
Ceruse, *n. Fr.* whitelead  
Cesed, *part. pa.* for seised, is used in a legal sense; to that he be cesed therewith, till that he be possessed thereof, till he have seisin thereof  
Cesse, *v. Fr.* to cease  
Chace, *v. Fr.* to chase, to pursue,  
Chafe, *v. Fr.* to grow warm or angry  
Chaffare, *n. Sax.* merchandise  
Chaffare, *v. Sax.* to merchandise  
Chaire, *n. Fr.* a chair; the chair or pulpit of a professor or preacher.  
Chalons, blankets, or coverlets, probably so called from being made at Chalons  
Chamberere, *n. Fr.* a chambermaid  
Champartie, *n. Fr.* a share of land, a partnership in power. Lydgate has the same expression, *Tra. 139, b. viii. 17.*  
Clantepleure, *n. Fr.* a sort of proverbial expression for singing and weeping successively. See *Lydg. Tra. stan. the last*, where he says that his book is  
  
Lyke chantepleur, now singing now weping.  
  
In ms. Harl. 4333, is a ballad which turns upon this expression: it begins *Moult vaut mieux pleure chante que ne fait chante pleure*  
Chanterie, *n. Fr.* an endowment for the payment of a priest to sing mass agreeably to the appointment of the founder. There were thirty-five of these chanteries established at St. Paul's, which were served by fifty-four priests, *Dugd. Hist. pref. p. 41.*  
Chapman, *n. Sax.* a merchant or trader  
Chapmanbede, *n. Sax.* the condition of a chapman or tradesman  
Char, *n. Fr.* a chariot  
Charboucle, *n. Fr.* a carbuncle  
Charge, *n. Fr.* a load, burthen, business of weight; it n're no charge; it were no harm: of which there is no charge, from which there is no consequence to be expected; of that no charge, no matter for that  
Charge, *v. Fr.* to weigh, to incline on account of

- weight—which chargeeth not to say, which it is of no importance to say
- Chargeant, *part. pr.* burthenfome
- Charmereffe, *n. Fr.* an enchantress
- Chastelaine, *n. Fr.* the wife of a chastelain or lord of a castle
- Chastie, *v. Fr.* to chastise
- Chaunteclere, *pr. n.* of a cock
- Checkere, *n. Fr.* a chessboard
- Chess, *pa. 3.* of chese, *v. Sax.* chose
- Cheffis, we should read cheses. The orig. has fromages.
- Cheke, a term at ches, to give notice to the opposite party that his king, if not removed or guarded by the interposition of some other piece, will be made prisoner: it is derived originally from the Persian *shâh*, *i. e.* king, and means, take care of your king. See Hyde, Hist. Shahilud, p. 3, 4.
- Chekelatoun, a robe of state
- Chekemate, or simply mate, is a term used at ches when the king is actually made prisoner, and the game consequently finished. The Persian phrase is *shâh mât*, *i. e.* the king is conquered. See Hyde, Hist. Shahilud, p. 152
- Chelaundre, *n. Fr.* a goldfinch
- Chepe, *v. Sax.* to cheapen, to buy
- Chepe, *n.* cheapness
- Chepe, *pr. n.* Cheapside in London
- Cherche, *n. Sax.* a church
- Chere, *n. Fr.* countenance, appearance, entertainment, good cheer
- Cherice, *v. Fr.* to cherish
- Cherifance, *n. Fr.* comfort
- Cherl, *n. Sax.* a man of mean birth and condition
- Cherisk, *adj.* illiberal
- Ches, *n. Fr.* the game of ches
- Chese, *v. Sax.* to choose
- Chese, for cheseth
- Cheste, *n. Lat.* a coffin
- Cheste, *n.* debate
- Chesteine, *n. Fr.* the chestnut tree, the chestnut fruit
- Chevachie, *n. Fr.* an expedition
- Chevalrie, *n. Fr.* knighthood, the manners, exercises, and valiant exploits, of a knight
- Chevalrous, *adj.* valiant
- Cheve, *v. Fr.* to come to an agreement or conclusion; yvel mote he cheve, ill may he end
- Chevesaille, *n. Fr.* a necklace
- Chevetain, *n. Fr.* chieftain
- Chevisance, *n. Fr.* an agreement for borrowing of money
- Chiche, *adj. Fr.* niggardly, sparing
- Chidereffe, *n. Sax.* a female scold
- Chidester, *n. Sax.* a female scold
- Chiertee, *n. Fr.* tenderness, affection
- Chike, *n. Sax.* a chicken
- Chimbe, *n. Sax.* the prominent part of the staves beyond the head of a barrel
- Chimbe, *v.* to sound in consonance like bells
- Chimeny, *n. Fr.* a chimney
- Chinche, *adj.* as chiche
- Chincheric, *n.* niggardliness
- Chirche, *n. Sax.* a church
- Chirchereve, *n. Sax.* a churchwarden
- Chirchhawe, *n. Sax.* a churchyard
- Chirk, *v. Sax.* to chirp as a sparrow
- Chirking, *n.* a disagreeable sound
- Chit, for chideth
- Chivachee, *n.* as chevachie
- Chiver, *v. Sax.* to shiver
- Cierges, *n. pl. Fr.* wax tapers
- Cipioun, *pr. n.* Scipio
- Cipris, *pr. n.* Venus
- Circes, *pr. n.* for Circe
- Citee, *n. Fr.* a city
- Citole, *n. Fr.* a musical instrument. Sir John Hawkins, in his very curious Hist. of Musick, v. ii. p. 106, n. supposes it to have been a sort of dulcimer, and that the name is a corruption of the *Lat. cithella*. Beside the passage which he has quoted from Gower, Conf. Am. 178, it is mentioned again in fol. 189, among the instruments which fowned lowe. See also Du Cange in v. *Citola*, and *M. de la Ravaliere*, *Poësies du Roy de Navarre*, t. i. p. 248.
- Citrin, *adj. Fr.* of a pale yellow or citron colour
- Citrination, *n.* a chymical term. *Arnoldus in Rosario*, mss. l. i. c. 5; "*Citrinacio nihil aliud est quam completa albedinis digestio, nec albedo est aliud quam nigredinis ablatio.*" Gloss. Carpent. in v.
- Clamben, *pa. t. pl.* of climb, *v. Sax.*
- Clapers, *n. pl. Fr.* rabbit-burrows
- Clappe, *v. Sax.* to knock repeatedly, to talk fast
- Clapping, *n.* noisy talking
- Clapsed, clapsed
- Clarré, *n. Fr.* wine mixed with honey and spices, and afterwards strained till it is clear; it was otherwise called piment, as appears from the title of the following receipt in the *Medulla Chirurgie Rolandi*, mss. Bodl. 761, fol. 86; "*Clarré retum bonum, sive pigmentum.—Accipe nucem meschatani, cariosilos, gingebas, macis, cinamomum, galangum; quæ omnia in pulverem redacta distempera cum bono cum tertiâ parte mellis; post cola per facculum, et da ad bibendum. Et nota, quod illud item potest fieri de cerevisiâ.*"
- Clatternden, *pa. t. pl.* of clatter, *v. Sax.*
- Clause, *n. Fr.* an end or conclusion
- Claw, *v. Sax.* to stroke, he clawed him on the back, he stroked him on the back to encourage him; to claw on the gall, signifies the same as to rub on a sore place
- Cled, for clad
- Clenesse, *n. Sax.* purity
- Clepe, *v. Sax.* to call, to name
- Clergie, *n. Fr.* the clerical profession
- Clergial, *adj.* learned
- Clergion, *n.* a young clerk
- Clerk, *n. Fr.* a person in holy orders, a man of learning, a student at the university
- Cleves, *n. pl. Sax.* rocks. See Cliffe
- Cliffe, *n. Sax.* a rock
- Clifte, *n. Sax.* a cleft
- Cliket, *n. Fr.* a key
- Clinke, *v. Fr.* to ring, *neut.* to tinkle



- Cippe, *v. Sax.* to cut hair, to embrace  
 Cliply, *adj.* as if eclipsed  
 Clobbered, *adj. Sax.* like a club  
 Cloistre, *n. Fr.* a cloister, an enclosure  
 Clomben, *pa. t. pl.* of climb, *v. Sax.*  
 Clofer, *n. Fr.* an enclosure  
 Clote-lefe, a leaf of the burdock, or clotebur  
 Clotered, *part. pa. Sax.* clotted  
 Cloue-gilofre, *fr.* a clove-tree or the fruit of it  
 Cloutes, *n. pl. Sax.* small pieces  
 Clum. This word seems to be formed from the *Sax.*  
*v. cluraian, muffitare murmurare*, to express the  
 mumbling noise which is made by a congrega-  
 tion in accompanying prayers which they can-  
 not perfectly repeat  
 Coagulat, *part. pa. Lat.* curdled  
 Cokes bones, a corruption of a familiar oath  
 Cod, *n. Sax.* a bag  
 Coffre, *n. Fr.* a chest  
 Cogge, *n. Sax.* a cockboat. See *Du Gange* in *v.*  
*1 Gogo*  
 Coilons, *n. pl. Fr.* testicles  
 Coine, *n. Fr.* a piece of money, a quince  
 Coint, *adj. Fr.* neat, trim  
 Coke, *n. Lat.* a cook  
 Cokeney, *n. & cook*  
 Cokewold, *n.* a cuckold. How this word has been  
 formed is difficult to say, but probably it has  
 some relation to the *Fr. cocu*. In the best mss. of  
 The Canterbury Tales, it is constantly spelled as  
 above, and is always, I believe, to be pronoun-  
 ced as a trisyllable. The author of The Re-  
 medy of Love, ver. 288, *seq.* pretends that the  
 true orthography of this word is cockold, accord-  
 ing to a most absurd etymology which he has  
 there given of it; an additional proof (if any  
 were wanted) that The Remedy of Love was  
 not written by Chaucer  
 Col, *n. a.* a common name for a dog  
 Cold, *v. Sax.* to grow cold  
 Coler, *n. Fr.* a collar  
 Colered, *part. pa.* collared, wearing collars  
 Collation, *n. Fr.* a conference  
 Collinges, *n. pl. Fr.* embraces round the neck  
 Coltish, *adj. Sax.* playful as a colt  
 Columbine, *adj. Lat.* belonging to a dove, dove-  
 like  
 Combre-world, *n.* an incumbrance to the world  
 Combust, *adj. Lat.* burnt, a term in astrology when  
 a planet is not more than 8° 30' distant from  
 the sun.  
 Come, for cometh  
 Commensal, *n. Fr.* a companion at table  
 Commune, *n. Fr.* commonalty  
 Communes, *n. pl.* commoners, common people  
 Compaignable, *adj. Fr.* sociable  
 Compame, for compagne  
 Compas, *n. Fr.* a compass a circle; the Trine  
 compas, the Trinity; an appellation borrowed,  
 as it seems, from the common emblem of that  
 mystery, a circle circumscribing a triangle—con-  
 trivance  
 Compainment, *n.* } contrivance  
 Compasing, *n.* }
- Compass, *v.* to contrive, he compassed his thoughts  
 he contrived in his thought  
 Compenable, *adj.* as compaignable  
 Compere, *n. Fr.* a gossip, a near friend  
 Complin, *n. Fr.* complie, even-song, the last ser-  
 vice of the day, singing in general  
 Compowned, *part. pa.* composed, put together  
 Compte, *n. Fr.* account  
 Concete, *n. Fr.* conception, apprehension  
 Condescende, *v. Fr.* to yield  
 Condise, *n. pl. Fr.* conduits  
 Confecture, *n. Fr.* composition  
 Confuse, *adj. Fr.* confounded, he became so con-  
 fuse, he conneth not loke  
 Conjecte, *v. Fr.* to project  
 Conifaunce, *n. Fr.* understanding  
 Conjure, *v. Fr.* to adjure  
 Conne, *v. Sax.* to know, to be able; I shal not conne  
 answere; I shall not know how—or be able, to  
 answer; thou shalt never—Con, knowen, thou  
 shalt be never able to know—to conne thank,  
 to be pleased or obliged, *scavoir gre, Fr.* to conne  
 maugre, to be displeased, *scavoir mal gré, orig.*  
 Conseil, *n. Fr.* counsel  
 Consentant, *part. pr. Fr.* consentant of this cursed-  
 nesse, consenting to *t. c.*  
 Conserve, *v. Fr.* to preserve  
 Consistory, *n. Fr.* signifies usually an ecclesiasti-  
 cal court, pontus, any court of justice  
 Constablerie, *n. Fr.* a ward or division of a castle  
 under the care of a constable. *Du Gange* in *v.*  
*Constabularius castri*  
 Conteke, *n. Sax.* contention  
 Contenance, *n. Fr.* appearance, pretence  
 Contract, *part. pa. Lat.* contracted  
 Contrariautes, *part. pr.* is used in the plural num-  
 ber, according to the French custom, opposing,  
 contradicting  
 Contrarie, *v. Fr.* to contradict  
 Contrarious, *adj. Fr.* opposite, perverse  
 Contrary, *n. Fr.* adversary  
 Contrefete, *v. Fr.* to counterfeit, imitate  
 Controve, *v. Fr.* to invent  
 Contubernial, *adj. Lat.* familiar  
 Contune, for continue. This is one of those li-  
 cences, for the sake of rhyme, which universal  
 custom can alone justify. Our Author seems  
 to have been ashamed of it, as I do not recollect  
 to have met with it in The Canterbury Tales.  
 Lydgate has been less scrupulous. See *Trag. 2.*  
*b. 14. b. 24. b.*  
 Cope, *n. Fr.* cape, a cloak  
 Coppe, *n. Sax.* the top of any thing  
 Corage, *a. Fr.* heart, inclination, spirit, courage  
 Corbettes, *n. pl. Fr.* niches for statues  
 Cordeth, for accordeth  
 Cordewane, *n. Fr.* cordouan, Spanish leather so cal-  
 led from Corduba  
 Cordileres, *n. pl. Fr.* Cordeliers, an order of friars  
 so called from their wearing a Cord instead of a  
 Coriune, *pr. n.* [girdle  
 Cornewalle, *pr. n.* Cornouaille in Bretagne  
 Corniculere, *n. Lat.* an officer in the Roman go-  
 vernment. See *Pit. sc. Lat. Ant. Rom.* in *v. Cor-*  
*nicularius*



**Cornmuse**, *n. Fr.* a bagpipe  
**Corny**, *adj. Sax.* strong of the corn or malt  
**Coroune**, *n. Fr.* a crown or garland  
**Corps**, *n. Fr.* body  
**Corpus**, *n. Lat.* body, *corpus Domini*, God's body;  
*corpus Madrian*  
**Corrige**, *v. Fr.* to correct  
**Corrumpable**, *adj. Fr.* corruptible  
**Corrumpe**, *v. Fr.* to corrupt  
**Corse**, *v. Sax.* to curse  
**Corseint**, *n. Fr.* a holy body, a saint, the corseynt  
 and the kirke  
**Corven**, *part. pa.* of carve, *v. Sax.* cut  
**Cofin**, *n. Fr.* a cousin or kinsman: it is sometimes  
 used adjectively, allied, related  
**Cofinage**, *n. Fr.* kindred  
**Coftage**, *n. Fr.* cost, expence  
**Coftie**, *v. Fr.* to go by the coast  
**Coftlewe**, *adj.* costly  
**Coftrell**, *n.* a drinking vessel. See *Du Cange*, in *v.*  
*Cafirellus*  
**Cote**, *n. Sax.* a cottage  
**Cote**, *n. Fr.* a coat, cote-armure, a coat worn over  
 armour, upon which the armorial ensigns of the  
 wearer were usually embroidered  
**Cotidien**, *n. Fr.* daily; it is used as a substantive  
 for a quotidian ague  
**Couche**, *v. Fr.* to lay  
**Couched**, *part. pa.* laid, couched with perles, laid  
 or trimmed with pearls  
**Coud**, *coude*, *pa. t.* of *conne*, knew, was able  
**Coveite**, *v. Fr.* to covet  
**Covenable**, *adj. Fr.* convenient, fuitable  
**Coverchiefs**, *n. pl. Fr.* headclothes  
**Covercle**, *n. Fr.* a potlid  
**Covert**, *adj. Fr.* secret, covered  
**Covine**, *n. Fr.* secret contrivances  
**Coulpe**, *n. Fr.* a fault  
**Count**, *v. Fr.* to account, to esteem  
**Counterpeife**, *n. Fr.* a counterpoife, a weight which  
 balances another  
**Counterpeife**, *v. Fr.* to counterpoife  
**Counterplete**, *v. Fr.* to plead against  
**Counterwaite**, *v. Fr.* to watch against  
**Countour**, *n. Fr. comptoir.* a countinghouse *compteur*,  
 an arithmetician, *Du. 435.*  
**Countretaille**, *n. Fr.* a tally answering exactly to  
 another, hence Echo is said to answer at the coun-  
 tretaille  
**Coure**, *v. Fr.* to sit crouching like a brooding  
 hen  
**Courtepy**, a short cloke of coarse cloth  
**Court-man**, a courtier, *homme de cour, Fr.*  
**Couth**, *couthe*, *pa. t.* of *conne*, knew, was able  
*part. pa.* known  
**Cowardise**, *n. Fr.* want of courage. As to the ety-  
 mology of the *adj.* from which this word has  
 been formed, I think the opinion of Twyſden  
 and Somner [*Gloss. ad. X. Script. v. Fridwite*]  
 much the most probable, who derive it from the  
 barb. *Lat. culum vertere*, to turn tail, to run a-  
 way. See *Du Cange* in *v. Culverta* and *Culver-*  
*tagium*, who rejects the opinion above mention-  
 ed, but without suggesting any thing so plausi-  
 ble. Culvert (as it is written in the oldest and

best French mss. that I have seen) might easily  
 be corrupted, according to the French mode of  
 pronunciation, into *couart* and *couard*—I have  
 somewhere seen the French language seriously  
 charged with indelicacy for its frequent and  
 wanton use of the word *cul* in composition; nor  
 can the charge be said to be groundless. Beside  
 the numerous instances which will occur to eve-  
 ry body, I suspect that this monosyllable makes  
 part of a common and solemn term in our law,  
 imported originally from France. *Culprist* seems to  
 have been a vulgar name for a prisoner, a per-  
 son taken by that part which is most exposed in  
 running away. Holinshed has expressed the  
 same idea more delicately, vol. iii. p. 842: "The  
 "prentises were caught by the backs, and had  
 "to prison." And so it is expressed in Ancient  
 Scottish Poems, p. 182, ver. 15—Yet Deid  
 [Death] ſal tak him be the bak  
**Coye**, *v. Fr.* to quiet, to soothe  
**Crafterman**, *n. Sax.* a man of skill  
**Crake**, *v. Fr.* to crack [ing  
**Crake**, *crakel*, *v. Sax.* to quaver hoarsely in ling-  
**Crampish**, *v. Fr.* to contract violently, as the cramp  
 does, *An. 170.*  
**Cratching**, *n. ax.* scratching  
**Craſed**, *part. pa. Fr. ecrasé*, broken  
**Creance**, *n. Fr.* faith, belief  
**Creance**, *v. Fr.* to borrow money  
**Create**, *part. pa. Lat.* crinckled, circularly formed,  
 perhaps from the Island, *kringe, cirino, gyro*  
**Crepil**, *n. ax.* a cripple  
**Crevasse**, *n. Fr.* a chink or crevice  
**Criande**, *part. pr. of crie, v. Fr.* crying  
**Crips**, *F. iii.* as *crispe*  
**Criſlippus**, *pr. n.* I find the title of a work in Mont-  
 faucon, *Bibl. Bibl.* p. 513. to which Chaucer  
 may poſſibly allude; *Chryſippi diſcipuli Euthymii*,  
*in Joannem encomium*—and again, p. 1314. *Chry-*  
*ſippi Preſbyteri laudatio, S. Joannis Baptiſte.* It is  
 not unlikely that a panygeriſt on the Baptiſt  
 might be led by his rage againſt Herodias to ſay  
 ſome harſh things of women in general  
**Criſpe**, *adj. Lat.* curled  
**Croce**, *n. Sax.* a croſs  
**Crois**, *n. Fr.* a croſs  
**Cromes**, *n. pl. Sax.* crumbs  
**Crommed**, *part. pa. Sax.* ſtuffed, crammed [Killian  
**Crone**, *n. Sax.* an old woman; *kronie, ovis vetula.*  
**Crope** *copen*, *part. pa.* of *crepe*, *v. Sax.* crept  
**Croppes**, *n. pl. Sax.* the extremities of the ſhoots  
 of vegetables; now in the crop, now at the  
 top: *crope* and *rote*, root and branch; the  
 whole of a thing  
**Croſſelet**, *n. Fr.* a crucible  
**Crouche**, *v. Sax.* to ſign with the croſs,  
**Croude**, *v. Sax.* to ſhove together  
**Crouke**, *n. Sax.* an earthen pitcher  
**Croun**, *n. Fr.* ſignifies head  
**Croupe**, *n. Fr.* the ridge of the back  
**Crowes feet**, the wrinkles which ſpread from the  
 outer corner of the eyes: Spenser deſcribes this  
 mark of old age in the ſame manner, *ecl. 12*;  
 And by mine eie the crow his claw doth wright.  
 U u iiiij



Crowned, *part. pa.* wearing a crown; crowned malice, sovereign malice.  
 Crull, *adj. Sax.* curled  
 Cucurbite, *n. Lat.* a gourd, a vessel shaped like a gourd, used in distillation  
 Culpons, *n. pl. Fr.* shreds, logs  
 Culver, *n. Sax.* a dove  
 Cuppe, *n. Fr.* a cup; withouten cuppe he drank all his penance, he took large draughts of grief; he made no use of a cup, but drank out of the pot  
 Curacion, *n. Fr.* cure, healing  
 Cure, *n. Fr.* care; I do no cure, I take no care  
 Curfew-time, according to the Conqueror's edict, is said to have been 8 h. p. m. Walsingham, speaking of an event on the 2d of September 1311, mentions 9 h. as the *hora igniteii*. It probably varied with the seasons of the year  
 Curious, *adj. Fr.* careful  
 Curteis, *adj. Fr.* courteous  
 Customer, *adj. Fr.* accustomed

## D.

Daffe, *n. Sax.* a fool; thou doteest, daffe, quod she, dull are thy wittes  
 Dagge, *n.* a slip or shred, pierce plough, 6. b.  
 Dagged, *part. pa.* cut into slips  
 Dagging, *n.* flitting, cutting into slips  
 Dagon, *n.* a slip or piece  
 Damascene, *pr. n.* the country about Damascus  
 Damascene, *pr. n.* Joannes Mesae Damascenus, an Arabian physician in the 8th and 9th century. See *Fabric. Bibl. Gr.* t. xiii. p. 256.  
 Dame, *n. Fr. Lat.* domina, mistress, lady, mother  
 Dampne, *v. Fr.* to condemn  
 Dan, *n. Fr. Lat.* dominus, lord, was a title commonly given to monks. It is also prefixed by Chaucer to the names of other persons of all sorts; Dan Arcite, Dan Burrell, Dan Caton  
 Dance, *n. Fr.* the old dance, the old game. The French have the same phrase, *elle seait assez de la vieille Danse*. Colgrave  
 Danger, *n. Fr.* a dangerous situation: in danger, coyness, sparingness, with danger, sparingly.  
 Dangerous, *adj.* difficult, sparingly  
 Dante, *pr. n.* See Gloss. in v. Lavender.  
 Dapple-gray, the colour which is called in Fr. *pommele*  
 Dare, *v. Sax.* to stare  
 Dares, *pr. n.* of a supposed historian of the Trojan war, *Du* 1070  
 Darreine, *v. Fr.* defrener, *Lat.* derationare, to contest  
 Dart, *n. Sax.* a spear or javelin; the dart is sette up for virginitee. There is an allusion to the same custom in *Lydg. Tr.* 26;

And oft it happeneth he that hath best ron  
 Doth not the spere like his desert possede.

Dafen, *pr. t. pl.* of dase, *v. Sax.* grow dim-sighted  
 Daunt, *v. Fr.* to conquer, that ne with love may daunted be, orig. *qui par amours ne soit domptez*

Dawe, *v. Sax.* to dawn  
 Dawning, *n. Sax.* daybreak  
 Dawes, *n. pl.* for dayes  
 Daye, *n. Sax.* day, time, at my day, at the day appointed to me; to graunt him dayes of the remenant, to permit him to pay the remainder at certain days by instalments  
 Deaurat, *part. pa. Lat.* gilded  
 Debate, *v. Fr.* to fight  
 Debonaire, *adj. Fr.* courteous, gentle  
 Decoped, *part. pa. Fr.* cut down  
 Decorate, *pr. n.* Decoratus  
 Dede, *v. Sax.* to grow dead; *part. pa.* dead  
 Dedly, *adj. Sax.* devoted to death  
 Deduit, *n. Fr.* pleasure  
 Defait, defaited, *part. pa. Fr.* wasted  
 Defame, *n. Fr.* infamy  
 Defame, *v. Fr.* to make infamous  
 Defaute, *n. Fr.* want defautes, *pl.* defects  
 Defende, *v. Fr.* to forbid, to ransom  
 Defence, *n. Fr.* prohibition  
 Definishe, *v. Fr.* to define, to make a definition of,  
 Degree, *n. Fr.* a stair, or set of steps, rank in life  
 Deiden, *part. t. pl.* of deye, *v. Sax.* died  
 Döine, for deien, *inf. m.* of deye, *v. Sax.* to die  
 Deinous, *adj. Fr.* disdainful  
 Deintee, *n. Fr.* value, a thing of value; hath deintee, values highly; told no deintee of, set no value upon; it was deintee, it was a valuable thing  
 Deinteous, *adj.* choice, valuable  
 Deis, *n. Fr.* a wooden floor  
 Del, *n. Sax.* a part; never a del, not a bit; every del, every part  
 Dele, *v. Sax.* to divide  
 Delibere, *v. Fr.* to deliberate  
 Delicacie, *n. Fr.* pleasure  
 Delices, *n. pl. Fr.* delights  
 Delie, *adj. Fr.* delié, thin, slender  
 Delit, *n. Fr.* delight  
 Delitable, *adj. Fr.* delectable  
 Deliver, *adj. Fr.* nimble, *Conf. Am.* 177, b.  
 Deliverly, *adv.* quickly  
 Deliverness, *n. Fr.* agility  
 Delve, *v. Sax.* to dig  
 Delavy, *n. Lat.* deluge  
 Demaine, *v. Fr.* to manage  
 Demaine, *n. Fr.* management  
 Deme, *v. Sax.* to judge  
 Demoniak, *n. Fr.* one possessed by a devil  
 Dent, *n. Sax.* a stroke. See Dint  
 Denwere, *n.* doubt, *Sk.* This interpretation suits well enough with the only passage in which I have found this word; but I should be glad to see some other instance of the use of it.  
 De par dieux jeo assente, in God's name I agree.  
 Depart, *v. Fr.* to part, to distribute  
 Depeint, *part. pa. Fr.* painted  
 Dequace, *v.* to shake down, q?  
 Dere, *v. Sax.* to hurt  
 Dere, *adj. Sax.* dear  
 Dereling, *n. Sax.* darling  
 Dereworth, *adj. Sax.* precious, valued at a high rate



- Derne, *adj. Sax.* secret  
 Derre, *comp.* of dere  
 Des, *F. iii.* 270, as deis  
 Descensorie, *n. Fr.* a vessel used in chemistry for the extraction of oils *per descensam*  
 Descriven, *inf. m. Fr.* to describe  
 Desirous, *adj. Fr.* eager  
 Desolat, *part. pa. Lat.* abandoned, distressed  
 Despite, *n. Fr.* malicious anger  
 Despicious, *adj.* angry to excess  
 Despitously, *adv.* angrily  
 Despoile, *v. Fr.* to undress  
 Desreine, *v. Fr.* to vex, to constrain  
 Destrier, *n. Fr.* a war horse, *Lat.* dextrarius  
 Destrie, destruire, *v. Fr.* to destroy  
 Determinat, *part. pa. Lat.* fixed, determined  
 Detteles, *adj.* free from debt  
 Deve, *adj. Sax.* deaf  
 Devining, *n. Fr.* divination  
 Devise, *n. Fr.* direction  
 Devise, *v. Fr.* to direct, to order, to relate; at point devise; a point devisé, *Fr.* with the greatest exactness  
 Devoir, *n. Fr.* duty; wele thei stode and did ther devere  
 Dey, *n.* probably originally meant a day-labourer in general, though it may since have been used to denote particularly a superintendent of a dayerie. See *Du Gange*, in *v. Daeria, Dayeria, Dagascali*  
 Deye, *v. Sax.* to dye  
 Deyer, *n. Sax.* a dyer  
 Diapry, *part. pa. Fr.* diversified with flourishes, &c.  
 Diche, *v. Sax.* to dig, to surround with a ditch  
 Dide, for diid  
 Dide, *pa. t. of do, v. Sax.* diden, *pa. t. pl.*  
 Die, *v. Sax.* to tinge  
 Diete, *n. Fr.* daily food  
 Diffame, *n. Fr.* bad reputation. See Defame  
 Digestible, *adj. Lat.* easy to be digested  
 Digestives, *n. pl. Fr.* things to help digestion  
 Dight, *v. Sax.* to dispose, to dress  
 Digne, *adj. Fr.* worthy, proud, disdainful  
 Dike, *v. Sax.* to dig, to make ditches  
 Dilatation, *n. Fr.* enlargement [thunder  
 Dint, *n. Sax.* as dent; thonder-dint, a stroke of  
 Dioscorides, *pr. n. of a Greek writer on plants,* whose work is extant  
 Difarray, *n. Fr.* disorder  
 Disavaunce, *v. Fr.* to drive back  
 Disaventure, *n. Fr.* misfortune  
 Disblame, *v. Fr.* to clear from blame  
 Discomfiture, *n. Fr.* defeat  
 Discomfort, *n. Fr.* displeasure  
 Discomforten, *v. Fr.* to discourage  
 Discoverte, *adj. Fr.* at discoverte, uncovered; a descouvert  
 Disdeinous, *adj. Fr.* disdainful  
 Disencrese, *n. Fr.* diminution  
 Disencrese, *v. neut. Fr.* to decrease  
 Disfigure, *n. Fr.* deformity  
 Disherited, *part. pa. Fr.* disinherited, stripped of possessions  
 Dishevele, *part. pa. Fr.* with hair hanging loose, *deshevelé*  
 Disjoin, *n. Fr.* a difficult situation  
 Disobediant, *part. pr. Fr.* disobedient  
 Disordermed, *part. pa. Fr.* disorderly  
 Disordinate, *adj. Lat.* disorderly  
 Disordinaunce, *n. Fr.* irregularity  
 Disparage, *n. Fr.* a disparagement  
 Dispence, *n. Fr.* expense  
 Disperance, *n. Fr.* despair  
 Dispitous, *adj.* angry to excess. See Despitous  
 Displeasance, *n. Fr.* displeasure  
 Dispene, *v. Lat.* to dispose  
 Disport, *n. Fr.* deport, sport, diversion  
 Disport, *v.* to divert  
 Dispreising, *part. pa. Fr.* undervaluing  
 Disputison, *n. Fr.* dispute; the clergie of the south made a disputefoun  
 Disrully, *adv.* irregularly  
 Dissimule, *v. Fr.* to dissemble  
 Dissimulings, *n. pl. Fr.* dissemblings  
 Dissoned, *part. pa. Fr.* dissonant  
 Distaine, *v. Fr.* to discolour, to take away the colour  
 Distinct, *v. Lat.* to distinguish  
 Distingued, *part. pa. Fr.* distinguished  
 Distourbied, *p. t. Fr.* disturbed  
 Distreyne, *v. Fr.* to constrain. See Desreine  
 Distrouble, *v. Fr.* to disturb  
 Disturne, *v. Fr.* to turn aside  
 Dite, *v. Fr.* to dictate, to write  
 Dites, *n. pl. Fr.* sayings, ditties  
 Ditus, *pr. n. Dictys Cretensis*  
 Diverse, *adj. Fr.* different  
 Diverse, *v.* to diversify  
 Divine, *n.* for divinity  
 Divinistre, *n. Fr.* a divine  
 Do, *v. do, for don, part. p.*  
 Doand, *part. pr.* doing  
 Dogerel, *adj.* derived, I suppose, from dog, so that rime-dogerel may be understood to mean what in French may be called *rime de chien*. See *Cotgrave* in *v. Chien*; *chose de chien*, a paltry thing, a trifle, trash, trumpery  
 Dogge for the bowe, a dog used in shooting  
 Doke, *n. Sax.* a duck  
 Dole, *n. Sax.* as del  
 Dole, *n. Fr.* grief, mourning  
 Dolven, *part. pa. of delve, v. Sax.* buried  
 Dombe, *adj. Sax.* dumb  
 Dome, *n. Sax.* judgment, opinion  
 Domesman, *n. Sax.* a judge  
 Donet, *n.* a grammar, the elements of any art. from Ælius Donatus, a Roman grammarian, whose introduction to the Latin language [*inter Gramm. Vet. Putsch* p. 1735.] was commonly read in schools; then drave I me among drapers my donet to lerne, *Pie. ce Plough*, 13. b.  
 Donnaw, *pr. n.* See *Pierce Plough*, 44. b.  
 Donne, *don, adj. Sax.* of a brown or dun colour  
 Dormant, *part. pr. Fr.* fixed, ready—*Les vaisseaux qui là dorment à l'ancre, Froissart*, v. iii. c. 52  
 Dortour, *n. Fr.* a dormitory, or common sleeping-room  
 Dosein, *n. Fr.* a dozen  
 Desser, *n. Fr.* a basket to be carried on the back



**Dote**, *v. Sax.* to be foolish through age or other-wife

**Doth**, *imp. m. 2d per. pl.* of do, do ye

**Douced**, may perhaps be a corruption of doucete, which is the name of a musical instrument in a poem of Lydgate's, ms. Bodl. fairf. 16.

Ther were trumpes and trumpetes,  
Lowde shallys and doucetes.

**Doughtren**, *n. pl. Sax.* daughters

**Doutance**, *n. Fr.* doubt

**Doute**, *v. Fr.* to fear

**Douteles doteles**, *adv.* without doubt

**Doutous**, *adj.* doubtful

**D'outre mere**, *fr.* from beyond sea, *Du.* 253.

**Dowaire**, *n. Fr.* dower

**Dradde**, *drad*, *p. t.* & *part.* of drede, *v. Sax.* feared

**Draf**, *n. Sax.* things thrown away as unfit for man's food

**Draf-sack**, a sack full of draff

**Draffy**, *adj. Sax.* of no more value than draff

**Dragges**, *n. pl. Fr.* drugs

**Drede**, *n. Sax.* fear, doubt; withouten drede, without doubt; out of drede, out of doubt

**Drede**, *v. Sax.* to fear, *drad*, *pa. t.* for *drad*

**Dredeful**, *adj.* timorous

**Dredeles**, *adv.* without doubt

**Dreint**, *pa. t.* & *part.* of drenche, drowned

**Drenche**, *v. Sax.* to drown

**Drenche**, *v. neut. Sax.* to be drowned

**Drerineffe**, *n. Sax.* sorrow

**Drery**, *adj. Sax.* sorrowful

**Dresse**, *v. Fr.* to address, apply

**Dretche**, *v. act. Sax.* to vex, to trouble

**Dretched**, *part. pa.* oppressed, troubled, *Conf.*

*Am.* 79

**Dretche**, *v. neut. Sax.* to delay, *Conf.* *Am.* 178

**Dretching**, *n.* delay

**Drie**, *v. Sax.* to suffer

**Drife**, *v. Sax.* to drive

**Drinkeles**, *adj. Sax.* without drink

**Dronkelew**, *adj. Sax.* given to drink, *Pierce Plough* 41

**Dronken**, *part. pa.* of drink, *v. Sax.* drunk

**Drough**, *pa. t.* of draw, *v. Sax.* drew

**Drovy**, *adj. Sax.* dirty

**Druerie**, *n. Fr.* courtship, gallantry, a mistress. See *Du Cange* in *v. Drudaria*.—The reader may perhaps be not displeased to see the following description of a drut or lover, by Guillem Aymar, a Provençal poet, ms. Crofts, fol. 219.

Ben paoc ama drut, qi non es gelos,

Et paoc ama, qi non est aios,

Et paoc ama, qi non es folettis,

Et paoc ama, qi non fa tracios;

Mais vaut d'amor qi ben est enveios

Un dolz plorar non fait qatorze ris.

Quant eu li quier merce en genoillos,

E la mi colpa et mi met ochaïos,

Et l'aigua m'cur avel per mer lo vis,

Et ela m'fai un regard amores,

Et eu li bais la bucha els els aindos,

Adonc mi par un ior de paradis.

**Drugge**, *v. Sax.* to drag

**Dubbed**, *part. pa. Sax.* created a knight; the phrase is derived from the stroke (with a sword or otherwise), which was always a principal ceremony at the creation of a knight; at dubban, Island, signifies to strike: this stroke in French was called *la colée*. See *L'Ordene de Chevalerie par Hue de Tabarie*, ver. 244. *seq.* published by M. Barbazan and *Du Cange* in *v. Alapa Militaris*

**Duetee**, *n. Fr.* duty, what is due to any one

**Dulle**, *v. act. Sax.* to make dull

**Dulle**, *v. neut. Sax.* to grow dull

**Dun** is in the mire. See Ray's Proverbial Similes, p. 319, as dull as Dun in the mire. I suppose Dun was a nickname given to the ass from his colour, as well as Burnell

**Dure**, *n. Fr.* to endure

**Dureffe**, *n. Fr.* hardship, severity

**Dusked**, *pa. t. Sax.* grew dark or dim

**Dutee**, as duetee

**Dwale**, *n. Sax.* a sleeping potion

**Dwellings**, *n. pl. Sax.* delays; moras, orig.

**Dwined**, *part. pa. Sax.* waited

## E.

**Eared**, *part. pa.* ploughed. See *Ere*

**Ebraike**, *adj.* ebrew

**Ecclesiast**, *n.* an ecclesiastical person, the book of Ecclesiastes or Ecclesiasticus

**Eche**, *adj. Sax.* ælce, each one, every one, of any number

**Eche**, *v. Sax.* to add, to add to, to encrease

**Edippe**, *pr. n.* Oedipus

**Effect**, *n. Fr.* substance

**Eft**, *adv. Sax.* again

**Eftfone**, *eftfones*, *adv. Sax.* soon after, presently

**Egalitee**, *n. Fr.* equality

**Eger**, *egre*, *adj. Fr.* sharp

**Egge**, *v. Sax.* to incite

**Eggement**, *n. Sax.* incitement

**Egging**, *n.* as eggement

**Egremoine**, *n. Fr.* agrimony

**Eire**, for air

**Eisel**, *n. Sax.* vinegar

**Elat**, *part. pa. Lat.* elated

**Elde**, *n. Sax.* old age

**Elde**, *v. Sax.* to make old, *v. neut.* to grow old

**Elenge**, *adj.* strange, *Ur.* It sometimes seems to signify dull, cheerless, as in *Pierce Plough*, 111, b, heavy-chered & yede, and elenge in herte.

**Elengeneffe**, *n.* in the orig. soucy, care, trouble

**Elte**, *n. Sax.* a witch, a faery

**Elf-queng**, *n.* queen of elves or faeries

**Eli**, *pr. n.* seems to be put for Elie. See *1 Kings*, chap. 19

**Elie**, *pr. n.* Elijah. The Carmelites pretend that Elijah was the founder of their order

**Elisee**, *pr. n.* Elisha, the disciple of Elijah

**Elles**, *adv. Sax.* else; elles what, any thing else; elles wher, elsewhere

**Elvish**, *adj. Sax.* faery-like, fantastick; it sometimes seems to signify shy, reserved

**Embelise**, *v. Fr.* to beautify

- Embolde, *v. Fr.* to make bold  
 Emboyssement, *n. Fr.* ambush  
 Embroided, *part. pa. Fr.* embroidered  
 Eme, *n. Sax.* uncle  
 Emforth, *prep. Sax.* even with; emforth my might, even with my might, with all my power; emforth my wit, to the utmost of my understanding: it is a corruption of evenforth, which occurs at length in *Pierce Plough*, 66, b. evenforth with thyselfe  
 Empeire, *v. Fr.* to impair, hurt  
 Emperice, *n. Fr.* emperess  
 Emplastre, *v. Fr.* to plaster over  
 Emplie, *v.* to infold, to involve; implicat, orig.  
 Empoisoner, *n. Fr.* a poisoner  
 Empreffe, *v. neut. Fr.* to crowd  
 Emprise, *n. Fr.* undertaking  
 Empte, *v. Sax.* to empty  
 Embattelled, *part. pa. Fr.* indented like a battlement  
 Enbibing, *part. pr. Lat.* imbibing  
 Enbosé, *part. pa. Fr.* embosqué, sheltered in a wood, *Du.* 353  
 Enbossed, *part. pa. Fr.* embossé, raised  
 Enbrace, *v. Fr.* to take hold of  
 Enbraude, *v. Fr.* to embroider  
 Encense, *n. Fr.* incense  
 Encense, *v. Fr.* to burn incense, to burn incense to  
 Enchaufing, *n. Fr.* heat  
 Enchelson, *n. Fr.* cause, occasion  
 Encorporing, *part. pr. Fr.* incorporating  
 Endelong, *prep. Sax.* along, *adv.* lengthways  
 Endetté, *part. pa. Fr.* indebted  
 Endite, *v. Fr.* to dictate, relate  
 Endoute, *v. Fr.* to doubt, to fear  
 Endrie, *v. Sax.* to suffer  
 Enee, *pr. n. Æneas*  
 Eneidos, *pr. n. Virgil's Æneis*  
 Enfamined, *part. pa. Fr.* hungry  
 Enfeble, *v. Fr.* to infect, *part. pa.* infected  
 Enforce, *v. Fr.* to strengthen  
 Enforced, *part. pa.* constrained by force  
 Enfortune, *v. Fr.* to endow with a certain fortune  
 Engendrure, *n. Fr.* generation  
 Engined, *part. pa. Fr.* racked, tortured  
 Engluting, rather enluting, stopping with clay  
 Engregge, *v. Fr.* to aggravate  
 Engreve, *v. Fr.* to hurt  
 Enhaunse, *v. Fr.* to raise  
 Enhaunfed, *part. pa.* raised  
 Enhort, *v. Fr.* to exhort  
 Enlaced, *part. pa. Fr.* entangled  
 Enlangoured, *part. pa. Fr.* faded with langour  
 Enleven, *num. Sax.* eleven  
 Enlumine, *v. Fr.* to illuminate  
 Enoint, *part. pa. Fr.* anointed  
 Enseled, *part. pa. Fr.* sealed up, kept secret  
 Enspire, *v. Fr.* to inspire  
 Ensure, *v. Fr.* to assure  
 Entaille, *n. Fr.* shape  
 Entailed, *part. pa. Fr.* carved  
 Entalente, *v. Fr.* to excite  
 Entend, *v. Fr.* to attend  
 Entendement, *n. Fr.* understanding  
 Entente, *n. Fr.* intention  
 Ententif, *adj. Fr.* attentive  
 Enterchangen, *pa. t. pl. Fr.* exchanged  
 Entermied, *part. pa. Fr.* intermixed  
 Entermete, *v. Fr.* to interpose  
 Enterpart, *v. Fr.* to share  
 Entetched, *part. pa. Fr.* entaché; it is applied indifferently to things and persons marked or endowed with good or bad qualities: entetched and defouled with yvel, stained and defiled with evil; the best entetched, endowed with the best qualities  
 Entree, *n. Fr.* entry  
 Entremees, *n. pl. Fr.* choice dishes served in between the courses at a feast, *Cotg.*  
 Entrike, *v. Fr.* to deceive, to entangle  
 Entuned, *part. pa. Fr.* tuned  
 Entunes, *n. pl. Fr.* songs, tunes, *Du.* 309.  
 Envenime, *v. Fr.* to poison  
 Enveniming, *n.* poisoning  
 Envie, *v. Fr.* to vie, to contend, *Du.* 406  
 Environ, *adv. Fr.* about, *Conf. Am.* 237, b.  
 Environ, *v. Fr.* to surround  
 Envoluped, *part. pa. Fr.* wrapt up  
 Envyrred, stored with wine  
 Epistolis, *Lat.* epistles  
 Equipolences, *n. pl. Fr.* equivalents  
 Er, *adv. Sax.* before, before that  
 Erande, *n. Sax.* a message, an errand, *Du.* 134.  
 Ere, *v. Fr.* to plough  
 Ercos, for Eros, *pr. n. Gr.* Love  
 Erke, *adj. Sax.* weary, sick,  
 Erly, *adv. Sax.* early  
 Erme, *v. Sax.* to grieve  
 Ermin, *adj.* Armenian  
 Ernest, *n. Sax.* zeal, studious pursuit of any thing  
 Ernestful, *adj.* serious  
 Erratike, *adj. Fr.* wandering, applied to the planets  
 Erraunt, *part. pr. Fr.* strolling, applied to a thief  
 Ers, erse, *n. Sax.* the fundament  
 Erst, *adv. superl.* of er, first, at erst, at first, for the first time; it is sometimes redundant, long erst or, long before  
 Ertheles, *adj. Sax.* without earth  
 Eschaunge, *n. Fr.* exchange  
 Escheve, eschué, *v. Fr.* to shun, to decline  
 Esculapius, *pr. n.* a book of medicine under his name is mentioned by *Fabric. Bibl. Gr. t. i p.* 56, n.  
 Ese, *n. Fr.* pleasure  
 Ese, *v.* to accommodate  
 Esement, *n.* relief  
 Esie, *adj.* gentle, light; esie fighes, which passage Lord Surrey has copied, *Songes, &c. p. 12*, "and easy fighes, such as folkes draw in love."  
 Esier, *comp. d.* lighter; of elier avail; of lighter or less value  
 Esilich, *adv.* gently [nus  
 Esperus, *pr. n.* Hesperus, a name of the planet *Ves-*  
 Espiaille, *n. Fr.* spying, private watching  
 Espirituell, *adj. Fr.* spiritual, heavenly  
 Esoine, *n. Fr.* a legal excuse  
 Estat, estate, *n. Fr.* state, condition, administration of government

**Eftatlich**, *adj.* stately  
**Eftres**, *n. pl. Fr.* the inward parts of a building  
**Eterne**, *adv. Lat.* everlasting  
**Ethe**, *adj. Sax.* easy  
**Evangiles**, *n. pl. Fr.* gospels  
**Even**, *adj. Sax.* equal; an even Cristen, a fellow Christian  
**Evenlike**, *adj. Sax.* equal  
**Evenlike**, *adv.* equally  
**Ever**, *adv. Sax.* always; ever in on, continually in the same manner; ever longer the more, where this elliptical phrase is expressed at length.  
**Everich**, *adj. Sax.* every one of many, each of two  
**Ew**, *n. Sax.* yew  
**Exaltat**, *part. pa. Lat.* exalted  
**Exametron**, is explained by the context to signify a verse of six feet; it usually signifies the heroic verse, but here, I suppose, must be understood to mean the iambic, in which the ancient tragedies were commonly verified.  
**Executour**, *n. Fr.* executioner  
**Excutrice**, *n. Fr.* a female executioner  
**Exorcisations**, *n. pl. Fr.* exorcisms, conjurations  
**Expans yerres**, "In this and the following verses the poet describes the Alphonsine astronomical tables by the several parts of them, wherein some technical terms occur which were used by the old astronomers, and continued by the compilers of those tables. Collect years are certain sums of years, with the motions of the heavenly bodies corresponding to them, as of 20, 40, 60, &c. disposed into tables; and expans years are the single years, with the motions of the heavenly bodies answering to them, beginning at 1, and continued on to the smallest collect sum, as 20, &c. A root or radix is any certain time taken at pleasure, from which as an era the celestial motions are to be computed. By proportionel convenientes are meant the tables of proportional parts." *Gloss. Ur.*  
 "Argument in astronomy is an arch whereby we seek another unknown arch proportional to the first." *Chambers*  
**Expectant**, *part. pa. Fr.* waiting  
**Expleite**, *v. Fr.* to perform  
**Ey**, *n. Sax.* an egg; but as it were a grypes eye, *Conf. Am.* 22  
**Ey**, *interj.*  
**Eyen**, *n. pl. Sax.* eyes  
**Eyre**, *for* air  
**Eyrish**, *adj.* aerial, belonging to the air

## F.

**Fable**, *n. Fr.* idle discourse  
**Faconde**, *n. Fr.* eloquence  
**Faconde**, *adj.* eloquent *Du.* 926.  
**Faerie**, *n. Fr.* the nation of Faeries. Enchantment, the work of faeries; king of Faerie; quene of Faerie; contree of Faerie  
**Fain**, *adj. Sax.* glad; than was I as fayne as foule of fayre morowe, *Pierce Plough,* 47, b.  
**Fain**, *adv.* gladly

**Faine**, *v. Fr.* to feign, to dissemble; to swinke and travail he not faineth, he does not feign or pretend only to labour, *i. e.* he labours seriously.  
**Fairehede**, *n. Sax.* beauty  
**Faitour**, *n. Fr.* a lazy idle fellow, *Pierce Plough,* 32 b. 33 b. faitard, faiseur, un paresseux, *piger. Lacombe*  
**Falding**, a kind of coarse cloth, *Sk.* He derives it from the A. S. feald, plica: however that may be Helmoldus [*Cbron. Slav.* l. i. c. 1.] speaks of *indumenta lanea* (probably coarse enough) *qua nos appellamus faldnes*; and *fullin* in Irish, according to Lhuyd, signifies a mantle. Giraldus *Cambr.* [*Topog. Hibern.* dist. 3. c. 10.] describes the Irish as clothed in *phalingis laneis, vice palliorum*. Faldyng cloth, *Amphibalus Birrus-Prompt.* Parvi Row cloth, as faldyng and other like. *Endromis Amphibalus* *ibid.* See *Du Cange*, in *v. Amphibalus*  
**Fall**, *for* fallen, *part. pa.*  
**Fallen**, *v. Fr.* to falsify, to deceive  
**Falwe**, *adj. Sax.* yellow  
**Falwes**, *n. pl. Sax.* harrowed lands  
**Famuler**, *adj. Lat.* domestic  
**Fan**, *n.* the quintaine, which is called a fan or van, from its turning round like a weathercock. See *Du Cange* in *v. Vana*, *Menestrier sur les turnois*, *Dict. Etymol.* in *v. Quintaine*, and *Kennel's Paroch.*  
**Fande**, *part. t. of finde, v. Sax.* found  
**Fane**, *n.* a weathercock  
**Fantasia**, *n. Fr.* fancy  
**Fantome**, *n. Fr.* any false imagination; *et disent plusieurs qu'ils avoient ete en fantome*, *Froissart*, *v.* i. c. 63  
**Farce**, *v. Fr.* farder, to paint  
**Fardel**, *n. Fr.* a burthen  
**Fare**, *v. Sax.* to go; to fare wel, to speed, to be happy  
**Fare**, *n.* seems to have been derived from the French *v. faire*, whenever it can be interpreted by the word *ado*; this hote fare; for which the wardein chidde and made fare; what amounteth all this fare? betwixt us two nedeth no strange fare; and leve this nice fare. In other instances it follows the sense of the Saxon *v. fare*, as in the compound words welfare, thoroughfare, &c.  
**Faren**, *fare, part. pa.*  
**Fares**, *for* fareth  
**Faring**, *part. pr.*  
**Farne**, *n. Sax.* food, a meal. See *Spelman* in *v. Firma*  
**Farle**, *v. Fr.* farcir, to stuff  
**Fathe**, *n.* See *Lathe*  
**Faute**, *n. Fr.* want  
**Fawe**, *adj. Sax.* glad; as fain  
**Fay**, *n. Fr.* faith  
**Fayre**, *adj. Sax.* fair  
**Fayre**, *adv.* fairly, gracefully  
**Feblesse**, *n. Fr.* weakness  
**Fecche**, *v. Sax.* to fetch  
**Fee**, *n. Sax.* money. It seems to signify inheritable possessions, in contradistinction to money or moveables



- Fesse, *v. Fr.* to infeof, to present  
 Feine, *v. Fr.* to feign  
 Fel, *adv. Sax.* cruel, destructive  
 Felaw, *n. Sax.* fellow, companion  
 Felawship, *n. Sax.* company  
 Felawshipe, *v.* to accompany  
 Felde, *n. Sax.* a field  
 Felde, *pa. t. pl. of felle, v. Sax.* felled, made to fall  
 Fele, *adj. Sax.* many  
 Fele, *v. Sax.* to feel, to have sense, to perceive  
 Fell, *n. Sax.* skin  
 Felonie, *n. Fr.* all sorts of criminal violence  
 Feloun, *adj. Fr.* cruel  
 Feminie, *pr. n.* the country of Amazons  
 Femininitee, *n. Fr.* womanhood  
 Fend, *n. Sax.* an enemy, the devil  
 Fendliche, *adj.* devilish  
 Fenne, *n.* the name of the sections of Avicenne's great work intituled *Canon*. See *Canon*  
 Feoffed, *part. pa. Fr.* infeoffed  
 Fer, *adv. Sax.* far  
 Ferre, *comp.* further  
 Ferrest, *superl.* furthest  
 Ferd, *fered, part. pa. of fere, terrified*  
 Ferd, *ferde, pa. t. of fare*  
 Ferden, *pa. t. pl.*  
 Fere, *n. Sax.* a companion, a wife, in fere, together, in company  
 Fere, *for fire*  
 Fere, *n. Sax.* fear  
 Fere, *v. Sax.* to terrify  
 Ferforth, *ferforthly, adv. Sax.* far forth  
 Ferly, *adj. Sax.* strange  
 Fermacie, *for pharmacie, n. Fr.* a medicine  
 Ferme, *n. Fr.* a farm  
 Fermerere, *n. Lat. infirmarius*, the officer in a religious house who had the care of the infirmary, *Du Cange* in *v.*  
 Ferne, *adv. Sax.* before  
 Fers, *adj. Fr.* fierce  
 Fers, *n. Du 654, seq.* the piece at chess next to the king, which we and other European nations call the queen, though very improperly, as Hyde has observed. *Pberz* or *Pberzan*, which is the Persian name for the same piece, signifies the king's chief counsellor or general. *Hist. Shabilud.* p. 88, 9  
 Ferthing, *n. Sax.* a farthing, any very small thing; no ferthing—of grese, not the smallest spot of grease  
 Fest, *n. Sax.* fist  
 Feste, *n. Fr.* feast  
 Festeying, *part. pr. Fr.* feasting  
 Festlich, *adj.* used to feasts  
 Fetcche, *n. Sax.* a vetch  
 Fete, *n. Fr.* work  
 Fetise, *adj.* well made, neat  
 Fetisely, *adv.* neatly, properly  
 Fette, *set, part. pa. of fecche*  
 Fey, *n. Fr.* faith  
 Feyre, *n. Fr.* a fair or market  
 Fiaunce, *n. Fr.* trust  
 Fidel, *n. Sax.* a fiddle  
 Fill, *for fell, pa. t. of fall*  
 Finch, *n. Sax.* a small bird; to pull a finch, was a proverbial expression, signifying to strip a man by fraud of his money, &c.  
 If I may gripe a riche man  
 I shall so pulle him, if I can,  
 That he shall in a fewe stoundes  
 Lese all his markes and his poundes.—  
 Our maidens shall eke plucke him so  
 That him shall neden fethers mo.  
 Withoute scalding they hem pulle.  
 Find, *v. Sax.* to find, to supply. *Find, for findeth*  
 Fine, *fin, n. Fr.* end  
 Fine, *v. Fr.* to cease  
 Fine, *adj. Fr.* of fine force, of very necessity  
 Fit, *n. Sax.* a division or short portion of a poem.  
 See *Gloss. Percy* in *v.*  
 Fittingest, *adj. sup. Sax.* most fitting  
 Fixe, *adj. Fr.* fixed  
 Flaic, *for fley, pa. t. of flee, flew*  
 Flaic, *part. pa. of flaic, v. Sax.* flaid or flead  
 Flambe, *n. Fr.* flame  
 Flatour, *n. Fr.* a flatterer. *Conf. Am.* 154, b.  
 Flawe, *adj.* yellow, from the *Lat. flavus*. *Gloss. Ur*  
 Flecked, *adj.* spotted  
 Fleckering, *part. pr.* See *Flicker*  
 Flee, *v. neut. Sax.* to fly  
 Fleen, *n. pl. Sax.* fleas  
 Fleme, *v. Sax.* to banish  
 Flemed, *part. pa.*  
 Flemer, *n.* banisher  
 Flete, *v. Sax.* to float, to swim  
 Flete, *for fleteth*  
 Fleting, *part. pr.*  
 Flicker, *v. neut. Sax.* to flutter  
 Flit, *v. neut. Sax.* to fly; *elle suit*, orig.  
 Flit, *v. act. R.* to remove  
 Flitering, *part. pr.* floating, *fluitantus* orig.  
 Flitted, *part. pr.* removed, shifted  
 Flo, *n. Sax.* an arrow, *Flont, pl.*  
 Flockmel, *adv. Sax.* in a flock  
 Florein, *pr. n.* a species of gold coin  
 Flotery, *adj. Sax.* floating  
 Flotte, *v. Fr.* to float,  
 Flotte, *v.* as flete  
 Floures, *adj.* without flower  
 Flourette, *n. Fr.* a small flower  
 Floyting, *playing on the flute*  
 Foine, *v. Fr.* to make a pass in fencing, to push  
 Foison, *n. Fr.* abundance  
 Foled, *part. pa. Sax.* foaled  
 Folchardines, *n. Fr.* rafhness,  
 Fole-large, *adj. penult.* foolishly liberal  
 Folic, *n. Fr.* folly  
 Folily, *adv.* foolishly  
 Folwe, *v. Sax.* to follow  
 Foly, *adj.* foolish  
 Fond, *adj. Sax.* foolish  
 Fond, *pa. t. of find*  
 Fonde, *v. Sax.* to try  
 Fong, *v. Sax.* to take  
 Fonne, *n. Sax.* a fool

**Foune, v.** to be foolish

**Font-stone, n.** *Sax.* a font for baptizing

**For, prep.** *Sax. pro. Lat. pour. Fr.*; it is frequently prefixed to verbs in the infinitive mood in the French manner; for to tellen; for to don; *pour dire, pour faire*; for to han ben, *pour avoir été*.

It sometimes signifies against; for percing of his herte, against, or to prevent, piercing; for steling of the wose; against stealing. See *Pierce Plough*; 31. some shall sowe the sacke for shedding of the wheate, *i.e.* to prevent shedding

**For, conj.** *Sax. quia, Lat. pour ce que, Fr.* because that; for him luste to ride so; for she wolde virtue please; for I teche

**For, in composition,** has various powers; it is most commonly intensive of the signification of the word with which it is joined, as in *fordronken, fordry, forfered, &c.*; sometimes privative, as in *forboden, foryete*; and sometimes only communicative of an ill sense, as in *forfaite, forfare, forjuged, &c.*

**For, Fr. and ver, Belg.** have similar powers in composition

**Forbere, v.** *Sax.* to abstain

**Forboden, part. pa.** of *forbede, v.* *Sax.* forbidden

**Forbrake, pa. t.** broke off; abruptly, orig.

**Forbrused, part. pa.** *Fr.* sorely bruised

**Force, n.** *Fr.* no force; no matter; I do no force, I care not; I do no force of your divinitee, I care not for your divinity; no force of deth, no matter for death; they yeve no force, they care not; *de fruit avoir ne fait force, orig.*

**Forcutte, v.** *Sax.* to cut through

**Fordo, v.** *Sax.* to do away, to ruin

**Fordon, fordo, part. pa.** undone

**Fordrive, (fordriven) part. pa.** *Sax.* driven away

**Fordronken, part. pa.** *Sax.* very drunken

**Fordry, adj.** *Sax.* very dry

**Fordwined, part. pa.** *Sax.* wasted away

**Fore, (foren) part. pa.** of *fare, v.* *Sax.* gone

**Fore, prep.** *Sax.* is seldom used by itself; in composition it has the power of before.

**Forein, n.** a jakes, *Gloss. Ur* from *Sk.*; the context seems rather to require that it should signify an outward court or garden

**Foreweting, n.** *Sax.* foreknowledge

**Forewote, forewete, v.** *Sax.* to foreknow

**Forfaite, v.** *Fr.* to misdo

**Forfare, v.** *Sax.* to fare ill

**Forfered, part. pa.** *Sax.* much afraid

**Forgifte, n.** *Sax.* forgiveness

**Forgon, inf. v.** *Sax.* to omit, to lose

**Forgrowen, part. pa.** *Sax.* overgrown

**Forjuged, part. pa.** *Fr.* wrongfully judged

**Forkerve, v.** *Sax.* to carve or cut through

**Forlast, part. pa.** *Sax.* left off entirely

**Forlese, v.** *Sax.* to lose entirely

**Forlete, v.** *Sax.* to give over, to quit

**Forlore, (forloren) part. pa.** *Sax.* utterly lost

**Forloyne, n.** *Fr.* forlonge, a term of the chase, which signifies that the game is far off, *Du.* 386

**Forme, adj.** *Sax.* first, Adam our forme father

**Formest, adj. sup.** *Sax.* first, *Du.* 830

**Forasell, A. F.** 371, is put for the female of any fowl, more frequently for a female eagle

**Forpined, part. pa.** *Sax.* wasted a way, tormented

**Forfake, v.** *Sax.* to deny

**Forshapen, part. pa.** *Sax.* transformed

**Folshrouke, (forshionken) part. pa.** *Sax.* shrunk up

**Forfleuthe, forflouthe, forflugge, v.** *Sax.* to lose through sloth

**Forsongen, part. pa.** *Sax.* tired with singing

**Forster, n.** *Fr.* a forester

**Foretraught, part. pa.** *Sax.* distracted

**Forthby, adv.** *Sax.* forward by

**Forther, v.** *Sax.* to further, to advance

**Forthinke, v.** *Sax.* to grieve, to vex

**Forthought, pa. t.** of *forthinke*

**Forthren, inf. m.** of *forther*

**Forthy, conj.** *Sax.* therefore

**Fortroden, part. pa.** of *fortread, v.* *Sax.* troden down

**Fortuit, adj.** *Fr.* accidental

**Fortune, v.** *Fr.* to make fortunate, to give good or bad fortune

**Fortunous, adj.** proceeding from fortune

**Forwaked, part. pa.** *Sax.* having waked long

**Forwandred, part. pa.** *Sax.* having wandred long

**Forwelked, part. pa.** *Sax.* much wrinkled

**Forwept, part. pa.** *Sax.* having much wept

**Forwered, part. pa.** *Sax.* worn out

**Forewerie, adj.** *Sax.* very weary

**Forword, (foreword) n.** *Sax.* a promise or covenant

**Forwounded, part. pa.** *Sax.* much wounded

**Forwrapped, part. pa.** wrapped up

**Foryelde, v.** *Sax.* to repay

**Foryete, v.** *Sax.* to forget

**Foryetten, part. pa.**

**Foster, n.** *Fr.* as foster

**Fostred, part. pa.** of *foster, v.* *Sax.* nourished

**Fostring, n.** nutriment

**Fote-hot, immediately**

**Fote-mantel, means, I suppose, a sort of riding-peticoat, such as is now used by market-women**

**Fother, n.** *Sax.* a carriage-load; an indefinite large quantity

**Foudre, n.** *Fr.* lightning

**Foule, v.** *Sax.* a bird

**Found, pa. t.** of *find, supplied*

**Founde, v.** as *fonde*

**Foundred, pa. t.** of *founder, v.* *Fr.* fell down

**Fowertie, num.** *Sax.* forty

**Foxerie, n.** foxish manners

**Fra, for fro, prep.** *Sax.* from; it is sometimes used adverbially, till and fra, to and fro

**Fraine, v.** *Sax.* to ask

**Franknet, n. pl.** *Sax.* spots, freckles

**Franchise, n.** *Fr.* frankness, generosity

**Frank, n.** a denomination of French money; answering at present to the *livre Tournois*

**Franklein, pr. n.**

**Fraught, v.** *Sax.* to freight, load a ship

**Fre, adj.** *Sax.* willing, unconstrained, at liberty, liberal, bountiful

**Fredom, n.** *Sax.* as *franchise*

**Freelee, n.** *Fr.* frailty

**Fregius, for Phrygius**



Bremde, fremed, *adj.* *Sax.* strange, to frend he to fremed, *Pierce Plough*, 79  
 Frenetike *adj.* *Fr.* frantick  
 Frenseie, *n.* *r.* a frenzy  
 Freere, *n.* *Fr.* a frier, *Pierce Plough*, 12. a. b.  
 Frefhe, *v.* *Fr.* to refresh  
 Fret, *n.* *r.* a band  
 Fret, frette, *part. pa.* *Fr.* fraught, filled, or perhaps wrought in a kind of fretwork a sort of blazon is called *frette*; and through the fret full of falthede—we should read—a trouthe fret full of falthede  
 Frete, *v.* *Sax.* to eat, devour  
 Fretting, *part. pr.*  
 Frette, (*freted*) *part. pa.*  
 Freyne, *v.* *Sax.* as fraine  
 Frie, *pr. n.* Friezland  
 Frote, *v.* *Fr.* to rub  
 Frounceles, *adj.* *r.* without wrinkle  
 Froward *adj.* *a.* averse  
 Fro ye, from you; ye is put for you, that fro ye may rhyme, in appearance at least, with joye and Troye  
 Fructuous, *adj.* *Fr.* fruitful  
 Fruitestere, *n.* *Sax.* a female seller of fruit  
 Ful-drive, *part. pa.* fully driven, completed  
 Fulke, (*Fr.* folke) *n.* *Sax.* people  
 Fulsumnesse, *n.* *Sax.* satiety  
 Fumetere, *pr. n.* of a plant, fumitory, *fumaria*—*purgat bilem et humores adustos. Ray's Synops.*  
 Fumofitee, *n.* *Fr.* fumes arising from excessive drinking  
 Fundament, *n.* *Fr.* foundation  
 Furial, *adj.* *Fr.* raging  
 Fusible, *adj.* *Fr.* capable of being melted  
 Fy, *interj.* *Fr.* I say fy, I cry shame

## G.

Gabbe, *v.* *Fr.* to talk idly, to lie; gabbe I of this? *num id mentior?*  
 Gacides, is probably a misprint for *Æacides*, though I do not know what Chiron had any right to that title  
 Gadling, *n.* *Sax.* an idle vagabond  
 Gadred, *part. pa.* *Sax.* gathered  
 Gailer, *n.* *Fr.* gaoler  
 Gaillard, *adj.* *Fr.* brisk, gay  
 Gaitre-beries, berries of the dog-wood tree, *cornus femina*  
 Galaxie, *pr. n.* the Milky Way, a track in the heavens so called  
 Gale, *v.* *Sax.* Galan Lax, signifies *canere*.  
 Galfride, *pr. n.* Geoffrey of Monmouth, Geoffrey Vinsauf. See *Gaufride*  
 Galice, *pr. n.* a province of Spain, the famous shrine of St. James at Compostella was in Galicia  
 Galingale, *pr. n.* sweet cypress  
 Gallien, Galian, *pr. n.* Galen  
 Galoche, *n.* *Fr.* a shoe  
 Galpē, *v.* *Sax.* to gape, to yawn  
 Galping, *part. pr.* gaping, yawning  
 Galwes, *n. pl.* *Sax.* the gallows

Gan, *pa. t.* of ginne, *v.* *Sax.* began  
 Gannen, *pl.*  
 Gar, *v.* *Sax.* to make  
 Gardebrace, *n.* *Fr.* armour for the arm  
 Gargate, *n.* *Fr.* the throat  
 Garifoun, seems to be used as a *v.* to heal; the orig. has garison, *a. n.* healing, recovery  
 Garnement, *n.* *Fr.* a garment  
 Garner, *n.* *Fr.* a granary or storehouse  
 Garnison, *n.* *Fr.* a guard or garrison  
 Gastnefs, *n.* *Sax.* gastlinefs  
 Gate, gatte, *pa. t.* of get, *v.* *Sax.* gat, begat  
 Gate, *n.* *Sax.* a way; went her gate, went her way  
 Gatifden, *pr. n.* John Gatifden, author of a medical work, entitled *Rosa Anglicana*, in the 14th century. See *Tanner* in v.  
 Gaude, *n.* *Fr.* jest, gaudes, *pl.* ridiculous tricks  
 Gaufride, *pr. n.*  
 Gaure, *v.* to stare, for them that gaured and cast on me their sight *Lyd. Gra. b. ix. f. 22. b.*  
 Gawain, *pr. n.* nephew to King Arthur by his sister, married to King Lot: so says the Brit. Hist. which goes under the name of Geoffrey of Monmouth, and I believe it will be in vain to look for any more authentick genealogist of all that family; he is there called Walganus. The *Fr.* romancers, who have built upon Geoffrey's foundations, agree in describing Gawain as a model of knightly courtesy: to this his established character our author alludes  
 Gayler, *n.* *Fr.* as gailer  
 Geant, *n.* *Fr.* giant; the crane the geant  
 Gear, *n.* See gere  
 Gende, for gent  
 Genelon, *pr. n.* of one of Charlemagne's officers, who by his treachery was the cause of the defeat at Roncevaux, the death of Roland, &c. for which he was torn to pieces by horses. This at least is the account of the author who calls himself Archbishop Turpin, and of the romancers who followed him, upon whose credit the name of Genelon or Ganelon was for several centuries centuries a synonymous expression for the worst of traitors. Our Author alludes to his treachery, and to his punishment. See also *Du. 1121.*  
 Gent, *adj.* *Fr.* neat, pretty  
 Genterie, *n.* *Fr.* gentility  
 Gentil, *adj.* *Fr.* in its original sense means welborn, of a noble family, "Il y avoit un Chevalier, Capitaine de la ville:—point gentilhomme n'estoit:—et l'avoit fait, pour sa vaillance, le Roy Edouard Chevalier," *Froissart*, v. ii. c. 77. It is commonly put for civil, liberal, gentlemanlike  
 Gentileffe, *n.* *Fr.* follows the significations of gentil  
 Geomancie, *n.* *Fr.* divinations by figures made on the earth  
 Gere, *n.* *Sax.* all sorts of instruments; of cookery, of war, of apparel, of chemistry; in hir quainte geres, in their strange fashions  
 Gerie, gerful, changeable, probably from the *Fr.* girer, to turn round; gierful  
 Gerlond, *n.* *Fr.* a garland, the name of a dog



**Gesse**, *v. Sax.* to guess  
**Gest**, *n. Sax.* a guest  
**Gestes**, *n. pl. Lat.* actions, adventures  
**Gestour**, *n.* a relater of jests  
**Get**, *n. Fr.* geste, fashion, behaviour; with that false get, with that cheating contrivance  
**Gethe**, for goeth  
**Gie**, *v. Sax.* to guide  
**Gigges**, *n. pl.* irregular sounds produced by the wind, &c. **Gigue**, *Fr.* signified a musical instrument like a fiddle, and from thence a sort of light tune, *Menage* in *v.* It is probably a word of Teutonic original. See Junius  
**Gilbertin**, *pr. n.* an English physician of the 13th century. See *Pulbricius, Bibl. Med. Æt.* in *v.* *Gilbertus de Aquila*  
**Gilt**, *part. pa. Sax.* gilded, of the colour of gold  
**Gilt**, *n. Sax.* guilt  
**Gilour**, *n. Fr.* a deceiver  
**Gilte-les**, *adj. Sax.* free from guilt  
**Giltif**, *adj. Sax.* guilty, *Conf. Am.* 62, b.  
**Gir**, *n. Fr.* engine, contrivance  
**Gingiber**, *n. Fr.* ginger  
**Ginne**, *v. Sax.* to begin  
**Gipcieron**, *n. Fr.* a pouch or purse  
**Gipe**, *n. Fr.* an upper frock or cassock  
**Gipon**, *n. Fr.* a short cassock  
**Girde**, *v. Sax.* to strike, to smite; this word is perhaps the original of gride in Spenser. See *Obf.* on Spens. *v. ii.* p. 62  
**Girdelstede**, *n. Sax.* the waist, the place of the girdle  
**Girles**, *n. pl. Sax.* young persons either male or female  
**Girt**, *part. pa. of girde*; thurgh girt, smitten through  
**Gisarme**, *n. Fr.* a battleax. See *Du Cange* in *Gisarma*  
**Gise**, *n. Fr.* guise, fashion; at his owen gise, in his own manner, as he would wish  
**Gite**, *n. Fr.* a gown  
**Giterne**, *n. Fr.* a guitar  
**Gitering**, *n.* playing on a giterne  
**Glade**, *v. Sax.* to make glad  
**Glader**, *n.* one that maketh glad  
**Gladsom**, *adj. Sax.* pleasant  
**Glase**, for glose  
**Glase**, *v. Sax.* to put glass into windows, *Du.* 323  
**Glasinge**, *n.* glasswork, *Du.* 327  
**Gle**, *n. Sax.* mirth, music; glees, *pl.* musical instruments  
**Glede**, *n. Sax.* a burning coal; gledes, *pl.* sparks of fire  
**Gleire**, *n. Fr.* the white of an egg  
**Glent**, *part. t.* glanced  
**Gleve**, *n. Fr.* glaive, a lance  
**Glimsing**, *n.* glimmering  
**Gliteren**, *part. t. pl. of gliter*, *v. Sax.*  
**Glode**, *part. t. of glide*, *v. Sax.* she glode forth as an adder doth, *Conf. Am.* 105  
**Glombe**, *v. Sax.* to look gloomy  
**Glose**, *n. Fr.* a comment or interpretation  
**Glose**, *v.* to comment or interpret, to speak tenderly, to flatter  
**Gloton**, *n. Fr.* a glutton

**Gloweden**, *part. t. pl. of glow*, *v. Sax.*  
**Gnarre**, *n.* a hard knot in a tree  
**Gnat**, *n. Sax.* is put for any little worthless thing  
**Gniding**, *part. pr. Sax.* rubbing  
**Gnoffe**, *n.* an old cuff, a miser, *Gloss. Ur.* I know not upon what authority  
**Gnowe**, *part. t. of gnawe*, *v. Sax.*  
**Go**, *v. Sax.* means sometimes to walk, in contradistinction to riding  
**Go**, (*gon*) *part. pa.*  
**Gobbet**, *n. Fr.* a morsel, a bit  
**God**, *n. Sax.* God toforne, God going before; *Deo savente*, Goddes armes two; Goddes bones, vulgar oaths. A' Goddes half. See *Halfe*  
**Gode**, good, *n. Sax.* wealth, goods  
**Gode-les**, *adj.* without money or goods  
**Godelyhede**, *n. Sax.* goodness  
**Godenefs**, *n. Sax.* at godenefs, at advantage; and so we should read where the edit. have at gode mes, the orig. has *en bon point*  
**Godsib**, *n. Sax.* a gossip, a godfather  
**Gofish**, *adj.* foolish, from the *Fr.* goffe, dull stupid  
**Gold**, *n.* a flower commonly called a turnsole  
**Gower** says that *Leucothea* was changed

Into a floure was named golde,  
 Whiche stont governed of the sonne.

*Conf. Am.* 121. b.

**Gold-hewen**, *adj. Sax.* of a golden hue or colour  
**Goldsmithrie**, *n. Sax.* goldsmiths work  
**Golet**, *n. Fr.* the throat or guilet  
**Goliardeis**, *Fr.* This jovial sect seems to have been so called from Goliath, the real or assumed name of a man of wit toward the end of the 12th century. He wrote the *Apocalypsis Goliae*, and other pieces, in burlesque Latin rhymes, some of which have been falsely attributed to Walter Map. See *Tanner's Bibl. Brit.* in *v.* *Goliardes*. In several authors of the 12th century, quoted by *Du Cange*, the *Goliardi* are classed with the *juculares et buffones*  
**Gomme**, *n. Fr.* gum  
**Gon**, *inf. m. Sax.* to go; so mote I gon, so may I fare well; so mote I ride or go, so may I fare well riding or walking, *i. e.* in all my proceedings. See *Go*.—*Gon*, *part. t. pl. part. pa.* gone,  
**Gonfanon**, *n. Fr.* a banner or standard  
**Gong**, *n. Sax.* a littlehouse, a jakes  
**Gonne**, *n.* a gun  
**Gonnen**, *gonne*, *part. t. pl. of ginne*  
**Gore**, *n.* It has been suggested to me by a learned person, whom I have not the honour to know, that gore is a common name for a slip of cloth or linen, which is inserted in order to widen a garment in any particular place. *Gore* of a cloth, *lacinia*, *Prompt. Parv.* See also the glossary to Kennet's *Paroch. Antiq.* in *v.* *Gore*. This sense will suit very well with the context, unless we suppose that gore is there put for shirt, because shirts have usually gores in them; the expression would certainly be very awkward, and unlike Chaucer's general manner, but in this place (*The Rime of Sire Thopas*) he may be

supposed to have taken it purposely from one of those old romances which are the objects of his ridicule.

Gose, for goes, goeth

Gospellere, *n. Sax.* evangelist

Gossomer, *n.* a thin cobweb-like substance which flies about in the air

Gost, *n. Sax.* spirit, mind

Goth, *imp. d. perf. pl.* go ye

Gouvernaille, *n. Fr.* government, steerage

Gounne-cloth, cloth enough to make a gown

Gourd, *n.* a vessel to carry liquor, perhaps so called from its shape

Gower, *pr. n.* an eminent English poet, to whom Chaucer directs his *Troilus* and *Cresseide*

Grace, *n. Fr.* favour; fory grace, harde grace, misfortune

So full of forowe am I, sothe to sayne,  
That certainly no more hard grace  
May sit on me, for why? there is no space.

So Hercules, ap. Eurip. *Hē.*

Γρηὺς κακῶν ἐστὶν, καὶ οὐκ ἔστιν ὁδὸς ὁπρὸς αὐτῆς.

The criticism of Longinus, sect. xl. is perhaps equally applicable to both passages.—With *harde grace*, is to be understood as spoken in a parenthesis of the cherl, misfortune attend him! See *With*. Save your grace, with your favour, *sauvez votre grace*

Gracious, *adj. Fr.* agreeable, graceful

Grame, *n. Sax.* grief, anger; felle it to gode or grame

Gramme, *n. Fr.* grammar

Grand mercie, *Fr.* great thanks

Grane, *n. Fr.* a grain, a single seed

Grange, *n. Fr.* a farm-house

Grapinel, *n. Fr.* a grappling-iron

Gratche, is perhaps the same with *graithe*, if not mistaken for it. *Gloss. Ur.* See *Greithe*. The orig. ha.—*f'aourne comme beguine*.

Graunson, *pr. n.*

Grave, *v. Sax.* to carve, to engrave

Grave, (graven) *part. pa.* buried

Gre, *n. Fr.* pleasure, satisfaction, from *gratus*, *Lat.* to receive in gre, to take kindly; the gre, the prize.—From *gradus*, *Lat.* it signifies a step or degree

Grede, *n. Sax.* a greedy person

Grede, *v. barb. Lat.* to cry

Greint, *n. Fr.* *grein de Paris, de Paradis*, orig. grains of Paradise, a sort of spice; grain of Portingale, a sort of scarlet dye called kermes or vermilion

Greithe, *v. Sax.* to prepare, make ready

Grenehed, *n. Sax.* childishness

Grese, *n. Fr.* grease

Grete, for grede

Grette, *pa. of grete, v. Sax.* greeted, saluted

Greves, *n. pl. Sax.* groves

Grille, *adj. Fr.* horrible, grymm, gryl, and hor-ryble; *horridus*, *Prompt. Parv.*

Grint, for grindeth

Grinte, *pa. t. of grind, v. Sax.* ground; grint with his teeth, gnashed with his teeth

Grinting, *n.* grinding, gnashing

Vol. I.

Gris, *n. Fr.* a species of fur

Grifly, *adj. Sax.* dreadful

Groche, *n. Sax.* to grutch, to murmur

Groff, *adj. Sax.* flat on the ground

Groine, *n. Fr.* the snout of a swine, a hanging lip

Groine, *v.* to hang the lip in discontent

Grone, *v. Fr.* to groan, to grunt

Gront, *pa. t.* groaned

Grope, *v. Sax.* to search, to examine by feeling

Grot, *n.* a coin worth fourpence

Grounden, *part. pa.* of grind

Groyning, *n.* discontent. See *Groine*

Guerdon, *n. Fr.* reward, recompense

Guerdon, *v.* to reward

Guerdonles, *adj.* without reward

Guido, *pr. n.* Guido de Columpnis, Guido dalle

Colonne, of Messina in Sicily, a lawyer and a poet, died about 1290. *Quadrio*, vol. li. p. 165.

His history of the Trojan war, to which our Author refers, was written in Latin, and finished in 1287. I have there intimated my

suspicion that he translated it, for the most part, from a French romance of Benoit de Sainte More. However that may have been,

Guido's work is certainly the original from which the later writers of the middle ages

have generally taken their accounts of Trojan affairs. It was translated into Italian in 1324

by Filippo Cessi, a Florentine, [*Quadrio*, vol. vi. p. 475.] A French translation is also ex-

tant, in which it is said to be "translatée, en François, premierement du commandement

"du Maire de la cité de Beauvais, en nom et en honneur de Karles le Roy de France, l'an

"mil. ecc. quatre vingtz," [*ms. Reg. 16 F. ix.*] This is probably the French translation men-

tioned by Lydgate in the Prologue to his *Boke of Troye*, which is a mere paraphrase in verse

of Guido's history, with some digressions and

additions of his own. Lydgate's work was fi-

nished (as he tells us himself at the end) in

1420.

## H.

Habergeon, *n. Fr.* a diminutive of *hauberg*, a coat of mail

Habilitée, *n. Fr.* ability

Habitacles, *n. pl. Fr.* places of habitation

Habite, *v. Fr.* to dwell

Habundant, *part. pr. Fr.* abundant

Hackenaie, *n. Fr.* an ambling horse or pad

Hacking, *n. Fr.* cutting in pieces

Hadden, *pa. t. pl.* of have

Haf, *pa. t. of heve, v. Sax.* heaved, raised

Haie, hay, *n. Fr.* a hedge

Haile, *n. Sax.* health, welfare

Hailes, *pr. n.* of an abbey in Gloucestershire

Haire, *n. Fr.* a haircloth

Hakeney, *n. Fr.* as *hackenaie*

Haketon, *n. Fr.* a short cassock without sleeves

Halden, for holden, *part. pa.* of hold

Halfe, *n. Sax.* a side, a part; a' Goddes half, *Du.* 370, on God's part, with God's favour; a' this halfe God, on this side of God; four halves, four sides

Hali, *pr. n.* an Arabian physician, *Fabric. Bibl.* Gr. t. xiii. p. 17.

**Halke**, *n. Sax.* a corner  
**Halpe**, *pa. t. of help, v. Sax.*  
**Hals**, *n. Sax.* the neck  
**Halfe**, *v. Sax.* to kiss round the neck—to conjure  
**Halt**, *pa. t. of hold, v. Sax.* held or kept  
**Halt**, for Holt, *i. c. holdeth, Du. 621.*  
**Hake**, *v. Fr.* to go lamely, *Du. 622.*  
**Hame**, for home, *n. Sax.*  
**Hamele**, *v. Sax.* to hamstring, to cut off  
**Hamers**, *n. pl. Sax.* hammers, *Du. 1164.*  
**Han**, *inf. m. of have, v. Sax.*  
**Hanselins**, appears from the context to mean a sort of breeches  
**Happe**, *n. Sax.* chance  
**Happe**, *v.* to happen  
**Hard**, *adj. Sax.* hard; harde grace, misfortune. See Grace. It is used adverbially  
**Harde**, *v. Sax.* to make hard  
**Hardely**, (hardily) *adv. Fr.* boldly, *adv. Sax.* certainly  
**Harding**, *n. Sax.* hardening  
**Harie**, *v. Fr.* to hurry; to harie and drawe  
**Haried**, *part. pa. hurried; ils feroient hariez en grand manere. Froissart, v. i. c. 225.*  
**Harlot**, *n.* was anciently applied to men as well as women  
**Harlotries**, *n. pl. ribaldries*  
**Harneis**, *n. Fr.* armour, furniture  
**Harneise**, *v. Fr.* to dress  
**Harow**, *interj.*  
**Harpour**, *n. Fr.* a harpour. In the act of resumption, 28 H. VI. there is a proviso in favour of John Turges, harpour with the queen, for the reversion of an annuity of 10 marks, after the death of William Langton minstrel  
**Harwed**, *p. t. of harwe, v. Sax.* harrassed, subdued  
**Hazardour**, *n. Fr.* a player at hazard, a gamester  
**Hazardrie**, *n. Fr.* gaming in general  
**Häselwode**. All the passages in which this word occurs, plainly allude to the same proverbial saying, which appears to have been used in scorn or derision of any improbable hope or expectation; why it was so used is beyond my reach to discover: it may be proper, however, to mention that in T. iii. 892, *ms. Harl. 3943*, reads—Häselwode is shaken—and that the passage, T. v. 1174, is an imitation of the following in the *Filoftrato*.

Ma Pandero seco tacitamente  
 Ride di cio che Troylo dicea—  
 Chel si fusse semblante faccia  
 Di crederlo, e dicia, di mungibelo  
 Aspetta il vento questo tapinello.

**Hastif**, *adj. Fr.* hasty  
**Hastily**, *adv.* hastily  
**Hate**, *v. Sax.* to be named  
**Hauberk**, *n. Fr.* a coat of mail  
**Haunce**, *v. Fr.* to raise, to enhance  
**Haunt**, *n. Fr.* custom, practice  
**Haunte**, *v. Fr.* to practise  
**Haunteden**, *pa. t. pl. practised, frequented*  
**Hautein**, *adj. Fr.* haughty, loud, a hautein faucon, a highflying hawk, faucon haultain, *Fr.*  
**Haven**, *inf. m. of have, v. Sax.*; it is more commonly abbreviated into han

**Havoir**, for avoir, *n. Fr.* wealth  
**Hawe**, *n. Sax.* a hawthorn berry, a farmyard—a churchyard  
**He**, *pron. Sax.* is often prefixed in all its cases to proper names emphatically, according to the Saxon usage; he Moses, he Tityus. *He* is also frequently used for *it* in all cases  
**Hed**, *n. Sax.* head; on his hed, on pain of losing his head  
**Hedde**, for hidde, (hidden)  
**Hegges**, *n. pl. Sax.* hedges  
**Heifugge**, carruca, a little bird which is supposed to hatch the cuckoo's egg, and to be destroyed by the young cuckoos, *Sp.*  
**Hele**, *v. Sax.* helan, to hide  
**Hele**, *v. Sax.* hælæn, to heal, to help  
**Hele**, *n. Sax.* health  
**Heleles**, *adj.* helpless  
**Helise**, *pr. n. Elysium*  
**Helmed**, *part. pa. Fr.* armed with an helmet  
**Helöwis**, *pr. n. Eloisa* the mistress of Abelard.— See a summary of their history in *Rom. de la Rose*  
**Hem**, *obl. c. pl. of he, them.* See Him  
**Hemself**, hemselfe, hemselven. See Self  
**Henchmen**, *n. pl. pages.* See a note on the *Midsummer Night's Dream* of Shakespeare, act. ii. sc. 2. last edit.  
**Hende**, hendy, *adj. Sax.* civil, courteous  
**Henen**, henne, hennes, hens, *adv. Sax.* hence  
**Heng**, *pa. t. and part. of hang*  
**Hennesforth**, *adv. Sax.* henceforth  
**Hente**, *v. Sax.* to take hold of, to catch  
**Hent**, *pa. t. & part.*  
**Hepe**, *n. Sax.* a heap; to hepe; together, in a heap—the fruit of the dogrose  
**Heraud**, *n. Fr.* a herald  
**Herbergage**, *n. Fr.* lodging  
**Herbergeours**, *n. pl. Fr.* providers of lodgings, harbingers  
**Herberwe**, *n. Sax.* an inn, a lodging—the place of the sun: it rather means, I think, a harbour—herber, an arbour  
**Herberwe**, *v. Sax.* to lodge  
**Herd**, hierde, *n. Sax.* a keeper—herdegromes, shepherd-boys  
**Herdes**, *n. pl. coarse flax; herde, fibra lini, Kilian*

That not of hemepe ne heerdis was.

So this ver. is written in *ms. Hunter*; the orig. has only—*elle ne fut de bourras*  
**Here**, for hire, *pron.*  
**Here**, *adv. Sax.* in this place  
**Here**, in composition, signifies this, without including any idea of place; hereagains, against this; herebeforn, before this  
**Here**, *v. Sax.* to hear—Herd, herde, *pa. t. & part.*  
**Herden**, *pa. t. pl.*  
**Here**, *n. Sax.* hair  
**Heren**, *adj.* made of hair  
**Herking**, *part. pr. of herke, v. Sax.* hearkening  
**Hermes**, *pr. n.* a chymical treatise—under his name is extant in the *Theat. Chemic. t. iv.* See *Fabr. Bibl. Gr. l. i. c. 10.* *Hermes Ballenus*, whether a different person from him just mentioned, I cannot tell  
**Hérne**, *n. Sax.* a corner



- Heronere, *n. Fr.* a hawk made to fly only at the heron
- Heronsfews, *n. pl. Fr.* young herons
- Herte, for hirt, *v. Sax. Du.* 883
- Herte, *n. Sax.* heart; herteblood, heart's blood; herte-spone
- Herteles, *adj.* without courage
- Hertly, *adj.* hearty
- Hery, *v. Sax.* to praise
- Herying, *n.* praise
- Heste, *n. Sax.* command—promise
- Het, hette, *part. t. of hete, v. Sax.* heated
- Hete, *v. Sax.* to promise, to be called, *Du.* 200  
See Highte
- Hetheneste, *n. Sax.* country of heathens
- Hething, *n. Sax.* contempt, all is thy hething fallen upon thee
- Heve, *v. Sax.* to heave, to raise—*v. neut.* to labour
- Heved, *n. Sax.* head; every virtue in my heved; so I apprehend this line should be read, instead of in me heved
- Heven-queene, *n. Sax.* the queen of heaven, the Virgin Mary
- Hew of Lincoln, *pr. n.*
- Hewe, *v. Sax.* to cut—*v. neut.* he that heweth to hie, with chippes he may lese his sight; so in the *Conf. Am.*
- Full ofte he heweth up so hye,  
That chypes fallen in his eye.
- Hewe, *n. Sax.* colour, appearance
- Hewed, *part. pa.* coloured
- Hext, *adj. superl. Sax.* highest; hegh, heghest heghst, hext. In the same manner next is formed from neoh
- Hidous, *adj. Fr.* dreadful
- Hidoussly, *adv.* terribly
- Hie, *v. Sax.* to hasten
- Hie, *n.* haste, diligence; in or on hie, in haste
- Hie, highe, *adj. Sax.* high
- Hierdeste, *n. Sax.* a shepherdess. See Herde
- Highen is perhaps miswritten for highe
- Hight, *n. Sax.* height, on hight seems to signify—loud, in a high voice; *en haut, Fr.*
- Highte, *v. Sax.* called
- Him, *obl. c. of he*, is often used alone in that reciprocal sense, which is generally expressed by the addition of the *adj. self*; than hath he don his frend ne him no shame, *i. e.* nor himself; as he him laid; and clad him; and bare him.—It is also frequently put without the usual preposition; him to greve shame; to great shame of him; she falleth him to fete, she falleth at the feet of him; she swore him, she swore to him: hem and hire are used in the same manner
- Himself, himselfe, himselfen. See Self
- Hinderest, *superl. d. of hind, adv. Sax.* hindmost
- Hine, *n. Sax.* a servant in husbandry, a hind
- Hine, *n. Ital. Fil.* 35, should probably be hiene: the gall of an hyega was used to cure a certain disorder of the eye, *Plin. N. H. l. xxix. c. 38.*
- Hippocras, *pr. n.* Hippocrates
- Hir, *pron. poss. Sax.* their
- Hirzebl, *c. of she, pron. Sax.* is often put for herself, and without the usual preposition. See Him
- Hire, *pron. poss. Sax.* her
- Hireself, hireselfe, hireselfen. See Self
- Hirs, *pron. poss. Sax.* theirs
- Historial, *adj. Fr.* historical
- Ho, *interj. Fr.* commanding a cessation of any action
- Hochepot, *a. Fr.* a mixture of various things shaken together in the same pot
- Hoker, *n. Sax.* frowardness
- Hokerly, *adv.* frowardly
- Hold, *n. Sax.* a fort or castle
- Hold, *v. Sax.* to keep; to hold in honde, to keep in suspense; to amuse in order to deceive
- Hold, holden, *part. pa.* obliged
- Hole, hol, *adj. Sax.* entire, whole, sound
- Holly, *adv.* entirely, wholly
- Holour, *n. Sax.* a whoremonger
- Holt, *n. Sax.* a grove or forest
- Holt, for holdeth
- Homly, *adj. Sax.* domestic—plain, simple
- Homlineste, *n. Sax.* domestic management, familiarity
- Honde, *n. Sax.* a hand; an honde-brede, an hand's breadth; withouten honde, without being pulled by any hand—Honden, *pl.*
- Honest, *adj. Fr.* means generally, according to the French usage, creditable, honourable, becoming a person of rank
- Honestete, honestee, *n. Fr.* virtue, decency—good manners
- Hong, *v. Sax.* to hang
- Hont, *n. Sax. Du.* 385, as hunt
- Hony-swete, *adj. Sax.* sweet as honey
- Hope, *v. Sax.* to expect
- Hoppesteres, *n. pl. Sax.* dancers
- Hord, *n. Sax.* treasure—a private place fit for the keeping of treasure
- Hore, hoor, *adj. Sax.* hoary, gray
- Horowe, *adj. Sax.* foul
- Horriblete, *n. Fr.* horribleness
- Hors, *n. pl. Sax.* horses
- Horse, *adj. Sax.* hoarse, *Du.* 347.
- Horlly, *adj.* is applied to a horse as manly is to a man
- Hospitalers, *n. pl. Lat.* religious persons of both sexes who attended the sick in hospitals—knights Hospitalers of different orders. See *Du Cange* in *v. Hospitalarius*
- Host, *n. Fr.* an army
- Hostelere, *n. Fr.* an innkeeper
- Hostelrie, *n. Fr.* an inn or lodging-house
- Hothilements, *n. pl.* household furniture
- Hote, *adj. Sax.* hot
- Hote, hoten, *part. pa. of hete, called*
- Hove, *v. Sax.* to hover
- Hound-fish, *n. Sax.* the dog-fish
- Houne, *n.* for hound, thus said both here and houne, *i. e.* hare and hound, all sorts of people
- Houped, *part. t. Fr.* hooped or hollowed
- Houfel, *n. Sax.* the eucharist
- Houfel, *v.* to administer the sacrament—to ben-houseled, to receive the sacrament
- Howve, *n. Sax.* a cap or hood
- Hulfere, *n. Sax.* holly
- Huldred, *part. pa. Sax.* hidden
- Humbledede, *n. Sax.* humble state

Humbleſſe, *n. Fr.* humility  
 Humbling, *n. a* humming; *bommelen bombilari*,  
*bombum edere*, *Kilian*; hence our humble-bee  
 Hunt, *n. Sax.* a huntsman  
 Hurtle, *v. Fr.* to push  
 Huſbandrie, *n. Sax.* thrift, economical manage-  
 ment  
 Huſbond-man, *n. Sax.* the maſter of the family  
 Huſt, *adj. Sax.* ſilent, whiſt  
 Hylde, *v. Sax.* to pour  
 Hylled, *part. pa. Sax.* hidden. See Hele

## I.

I, at the beginning of a word, in the common  
 edit. and even the *mf.* of Chaucer, is often uſed  
 to expreſs a corruption of the Saxon prepoſi-  
 tive particle Ge, which in this edit. of *The*  
*Canterbury Tales*, is always expreſſed by y;  
 all ſuch words therefore occurring in the Works  
 of Chaucer not contained in this edition, ſhould  
 be looked for either under y or under their ſe-  
 cond letters

Jacobin, *pr. n.* a gray frier

Jatke Straw, *pr. n.* the noiſe made by the follow-  
 ers of this rebel, to which our Author alludes,  
 he had probably heard himſelf; it is called by  
 Walsingham, p. 251; "Clamor horrendiſſimus,  
 "non ſimilis clamoribus quos edere ſolent ho-  
 "mines, ſed qui ultra omnem æſtimationem  
 "ſuperaret omnes clamores humanos, et maxi-  
 "me poſſet aſſimulari ululatus infernalium  
 "incolarum." Many Flemings (*Flandrenſes*)  
 were beheaded by the rebels *cum clamore conſue-  
 to*. *Walsingham*, *ibid.*

Jambeaux, *n. pl. Fr.* boots, armour for the legs

Jane, *n.* a coin of (*Janua*) Genoa; it is put for  
 any ſmall coin

Jangle, *v. Fr.* to prate, to talk much or faſt

Jangle, *n.* prate, babble

Jangler, janglour, *n.* a prater

Janglerelle, *n.* a female prater

Jape, *n. Sax.* a trick, a jeſt

Jape, *v.* to jeſt—to cheat, to laugh at

Japer, *n.* a common jeſter or buffoon

Japerie, *n.* buffoonery

Jape-worthy, *adj.* ridiculous

Ich, iche, *pron. Sax.* I. ſo the ich, ſo the iche, ſo  
 may I proſper

Idel, *adj. Sax.* idle, fruitleſs; in idel, in vain

Idolaſtre, *n. Fr.* an idolater

Jeopard, *v.* to hazard, to put in danger

Jeopardie, *n.* danger

Jeopardiſe, *Du.* 666.

Jeremie, *pr. n.* Jeremiah

Jerome, *pr. n.* Our Author has made much uſe  
 of a treatiſe of St. Jerome *contra Jovinianum*

Jeſtes, *n. pl.* as geſtes

Jewerie, *n. Fr.* a diſtrict inhabited by Jews

Jewiſe, *n.* judgment, puniſhment; it may have  
 been formed by corruption either of the Lat.  
*judicium* or the Fr *juſtice*

Ik, *pron. Sax.* I. See Ich

Ilion, *pr. n.* the citadel of Troy

Ike, *adj. Sax.* ſame

Imaginatif, *adj. Fr.* ſuſpicious

Imped, *part. pa. Sax.* planted

Impes, *n. pl. Sax.* ſhoots of trees

Impetren, *pr. t. pl. Fr.* obtain by prayer

Importable, *adj. Fr.* intolerable—impoſſible

Importune, *adj. Fr.* troubleſome

Impoſſible, *adj. Fr.* uſed as a ſubſtantive

In, *prep. Sax.* upon, in with, within

Incombrous, *adj. Fr.* cumbersome

Inconſtance, *n. Fr.* inconſtancy

Inde, *adj. Fr.* azure-coloured

Indigne, *adj. Fr.* unworthy

Inched, *part. pa. Sax.* infered

Inequal, *adj. Fr.* unequal

Infortunat, *adj. Lat.* unfortunate

Infortune, *n. Fr.* miſfortune

Ingot, *n.* a mould for caſting ingots

Inhabit, *part. pa. Fr.* inhabited

Inhilde, *v. Sax.* to pour in. See Hylde

Injure, *n. Fr.* injury

Inly, *adv. Sax.* inwardly, deeply, thoroughly

Inne, *prep. Sax.* in

Inne, in, *n. Sax.* a houſe, habitation, lodging

Inned, *part. pa. Sax.* lodged

Innerelte, *adj. ſup. Sax.* inmoſt

Innocent, *adj. Fr.* ignorant

Inſecl, *part. pa. Fr.* atteſted under ſeal

Inſet, *part. pa. Sax.* implanted

Interminable, *adj. Fr.* infinite

Inwitte, *n. Sax.* underſtanding

Joce, *pr. n.* or Joſſe—Sanctus Judocus was a ſaint  
 of Ponthieu. *Vocab. Hagiol.* prefixed to Me-  
 nage, *Etymol. Fr.*

Joconde, *adj. Fr.* joyous, pleaſant

Jogelour, *n. Fr.* a juggler

Joinant, *part. pr. Fr.* joining

Joine, *v. Fr.* to enjoin

Jolie Robin, the name of a dance, *de la danſe le*  
*Beau Robin*, orig.

Joliſ, *adj. Fr.* jolly, joyful

Jombre, *v.* to jumble

Jonglerie, *n.* ſhould rather be janglerie, idle talk;  
 See Jangle

Joſſa, *interj.* ſeems to be partly formed from the  
*Fr. ca*, come hither

Jovis, *pr. n.* Jupiter

Journee, *n. Fr.* a day's journey, a day's work

Jouſtes, *n. pl. Fr.* juſts

Joweles, *n. pl. Fr.* jewels

Joye, *v. Fr.* to enjoy

Ipocras, *n. Fr.* wine mixed with ſpices and other  
 ingredients, ſo named, becauſe it is ſtrained  
 through a woollen cloth called the ſieve of Hip-  
 pocrates. See Clarre

Ire, *n. Fr.* anger

Irous, *adj.* paſſionate

Iſaude, *pr. n.* See Belle Iſaude—She is called  
*Yſeut* by Bernard da Ventador, *mf. Croſts*,  
 fol. 67;

Tant trag pena d'amor,  
 Q'anc Trifan l'amador  
 Non ſofret maior dolor,  
 Per Yſeut la blonda.

And ſo in *Fabliaux*, &c. t. i. p. 242; *Yſeut la*  
*blonde*. Petrarch calls her *Iſetta*, *Trifano d'*  
*Amore*, iii. 82. A late French writer, in who  
 he has been pleaſed to ſtyle *Hiſtoire Littéraire*.

*Troubadours*, [t. ii. p. 323.] having quoted a passage celebrating the love of Tristan à Isault, adds very coolly—*C'est une allusion à quelque Roman*; which is just as if a commentator upon Ovid should say of the epistle from Paris to Helen, that it alludes to some Greek story  
*It*, *pron. 3d pers. neut. gend. Sax.* is used instead of *he* and *she*  
*Itaille*, *pr. n.* Italy  
*Jubaltare*, *pr. n.* Gibraltar  
*Jubbe*, *n.* a vessel for holding ale or wine  
*Judicum*, the book of Judges; so *Metamorphoseas* is put for the *Metamorphosis* of Ovid, and *Eneidos* for the *Æneis* of Virgil  
*Juge*, *n. Fr.* a judge  
*Juil*, *pr. n.* the month of July  
*Julian*, *pr. n.*  
*Jupardie*, *n.* as *jeopardie*  
*Jupartie*, *n. Fr.* *jeopardy*  
*Justice*, *n. Fr.* a judge  
*Justinian*, *pr. n.* The law referred to is in the Code, l. xi. tit. 25, *De medicantibus validis*  
*Juvenal*, *pr. n.* the Roman satirist

## K.

*Kalender*, *n. Lat.* a calendar, a guide or director  
*Kalendes*, *n. pl. Lat.* the first day of the month, the beginning of any thing  
*Kaynard*, *n.* a term of reproach  
*Kele*, *v. Sax.* too cool  
*Kembed*, *kemped*, *part. pa. Sax.* combed  
*Kemelin*, *n. Sax.* a tub  
*Kenelm*, *pr. n.* See his life in all the edit. of the English Golden Legend  
*Kepe*, *n. Sax.* care, attention  
*Kepe*, *v.* to take care  
*Kerchef*, *n.* a corruption of coverchief  
*Kernels*, *n. pl. Fr.* battlements  
*Kers*, *n. Sax.* watercresses; of paramours ne raught he not a kers, he cared not a rush for love: cresse is used in the same sense  
*Kerver*, *n. Sax.* a carver  
*Kesse*, *v. Sax.* to kiss  
*Keste*, *pa. t.* kissed  
*Ketche*, *v. T. iii.* as *cacche*  
*Kevere*, *v. Fr.* to cover, it signifies to cover  
*Kichel*, *n. Sax.* a little cake  
*Kid*, *kidde*, *pa. t. & part.* of *kithe*, made known, discovered  
*Kike*, *v. Sax.* to kick  
*Kin*, *n. Sax.* kindred; by my fader kin, by my father's kindred  
*Kin*, *adj.* of the same nature  
*Kind*, *n. Sax.* nature  
*Kindly*, *adv.* naturally  
*Kinrede*, *n.* kindred  
*Kirtel*, *n. Sax.* a tunic or waistcoat, in kirtels and none other wede; *qui estoient en pure cottes*, orig.  
*Kithe*, *v. Sax.* to shew, to make known, ne kithe hire jalousie, nor shew to her any jealousy  
*Kithed*, *part. pa.* See *Kid*  
*Kitte*, *pa. t. Sax.* cut  
*Knakkes*, *n. pl. Sax.* trifling tricks: the word seems to have been formed from the knocking or snapping of the fingers used by jugglers. See

*Cotg.* in *v. Mataffiner des mains* and *Niquet*—trifling words, p. 215  
*Knappe*, *n.* a short sleep, a nap  
*Knarry*, *adj. Sax.* full of gnarres or knots  
*Knave*, *n. Sax.* a servant, properly a boy-servant—a knave-child, a male child—this boie knave, *ce garçon*, orig.  
*Knedde*, *part. pa.* of *kneide*, *v. Sax.* kneaded  
*Kneen*, *knene*, *n. pl. Sax.* knees  
*Knet*, *part. pa.* as *knit*  
*Knight*, *n. Sax.* a servant, generally a servant in war, a soldier—a dubbed knight  
*Knighthode*, *n.* valour  
*Knit*, *part. pa. Sax.* joined, bound—agreed  
*Knobbles*, *n. pl. Sax.* excrescencies in the shape of buds or buttons. See *Knoppe*  
*Knoppe*, *n. Sax.* a button—a rosebud  
*Knopped*, *part. pa.* buttoned, fastened  
*Knotte*, *n. Sax.* a knot: in some instances it is used in the sense of *noeud*, *Fr.* for the chief point or head of a matter  
*Knotteles*, *adj. Sax.* without a knot, without any thing to obstruct or retard the passage  
*Knowe*, for *knee*  
*Knowleche*, *v. Sax.* to acknowledge  
*Knowleching*, *n.* knowledge  
*Konning*, *n.* as *conning*, *cunning*  
*Kyke*, *v. Sax.* to look steadfastly; *kijcken*, *Teng. spectare*; *Kilian*

## L.

*Labbe*, *n.* a blab, a great talker  
*Labbing*, *part. pr.* blabbing  
*Laced*, *part. pa. Fr.* tied, bound  
*Lacert*, *n. Fr.* a fleshy musele, so termed from its having a tail like a lizard  
*Lache*, *adj. Fr.* sluggish  
*Lacheffe*, *n. Fr.* slackness, negligence  
*Lad*, *ladde*, *pa. t.* of *lede*, *v. Sax.* led, carried  
*Last*, *pa. t. & part.* of *leve*, *v. Sax.* left  
*Lsie*, *n. T. i.* as *lay*  
*Laid*, *part. pa.* of *lay*, *v. Sax.*; with *orfreys* laid, i. e. trimmed: so this word is frequently used by *Hollinshed*, vol. iii. p. 1317; laid with gold lace—laid on with red silke and gold lace—laid about with silver lace. See *Couched*  
*Laine*, *inf. v. Sax.* to lay  
*Lainers*, *n. pl. Fr.* straps or thongs  
*Lake*, *n.* it is difficult to say what sort of cloth is meant; *laeken*, *Belg.* signifies both linen and woollen cloth, *Kilian*  
*Lakke*, *n. Sax.* a fault, a disgraceful action, want  
*Lakke*, *v.* to find fault, to blame  
*Lamben*, *n. pl. Sax.* lambs  
*Langure*, *v. Fr.* to languish  
*Lapidaire*, a treatise on precious stones so entitled; probably a French translation of the Latin poem of *Marbodius De Gemmis*, which is frequently cited by the name of *Lapidarius*, *Fabric. Bibl. Med. Æt.* in *v. Marbodius*  
*Lappe*, *n. Sax.* a skirt or lappet of a garment  
*Large*, *adj. Fr.* spacious, free, prodigal; at large, at liberty; til that was prime large, till prime was far spent  
*Largely*, *adv.* fully  
*Las*, *v. Fr.* a lacc—a snare  
X x üj



Lasse, las, *adj. comp. Sax.* less

Latche, *n.* as las

Latered, *part. pa. Sax.* delayed

Lathe, *n.* a barn; it is still used in Lincolnshire, *St. In. F. iii.* where the edit. have rathe and fathe, the mss. give the true reading—lathe

Laton, *n. Fr.* a kind of mixed metal of the colour of brass

Laude, *n. Lat.* praise

Laudes, the service performed in the fourth or last watch of the night; "dicuntur autem laudes, quod illud officium laudem præcipue sonat divinum," &c. *Du Cange in v. Laus 2.* The same service was often called Matins. *Idem in v. Matutini*

Laved, *part. pa. Fr.* drawn; spoken of water taken out of a well

Lavender, *n. Fr.* a washerwoman or laundress. In the passage of *Dante* which is here quoted, Envy is called

*La meretrice, che mai dall' ospizio  
Di Cesare non torse gli occhi putti,  
Morte commune, e delle corte vizio.*

*Inf. xiii. 64.*

Laverock, *n. Sax.* a lark

Launcegay, *n.* a sort of lance

Launcelot du Lake, an eminent knight of the Round Table, whose adventures were the subject of a romance begun by Chrestien de Troyes, one of the oldest of the romance poets, and finished by Godefroid de Leigni. See *Fauchet*, l. ii. c. 10, 11. They have been repeatedly printed in French prose, and make a considerable part of the compilation called *Mort d'Arthur*: his accomplishments as a courtier and a man of gallantry have been alluded to before. Signor Volpi, in his notes upon *Dante*, *Inf. v. 128*, has most unaccountably represented Launcelotto as *inamorato di Ginevra, moglie del Re Marco*. If there be any faith in history, Ginevra was the wife of King Arthur. The story in *Dante*, which is the occasion of Signor Volpi's note, is a curious one; it is alluded to by Petrarch, *Trionfo d'Amore*, iii. 82;

*Vedi Ginevra, Isotta, e l'altre amanti,  
E la coppia d'Arimino.*

Launde, *n. Fr.* a plain not ploughed

Lavoures, *n. pl. Fr.* lavers

Laureat, *adj. Lat.* crowned with laurel

Laureole, *n. Fr.* spurge-laurel

Laurer, *n.* laurel

Laus, *adj. Sax.* loose; laus, *Island. solutus*. This is the true original of that termination of adjectives so frequent in our language in les or less. *Consuetud. de Beverly*, ms. *Hart. 560*. "Hujus sacrilegii emenda non erat determinata, sed dicebatur ab Anglis Botalaus, i. e. sine emenda." So Chaucer uses boteles, and other words of the same form, as detteles, drinkeles, gilteles, &c.

Lawe, *adj.* for low

Laxatif, *n. Fr.* a purging medicine

Lay, *n. Sax.* law, religious profession

Lay, *n. Fr.* a species of poem

Lay, *part. t. of lie*, or ligge layen, *pl.*

Lazar, *n. Fr.* a leper

Leche, *n. Sax.* a physician; leche-craft, the skill of a physician

Leche, *v.* to heal

Lecherous, *adj.* provoking lechery

Lechour, *n. Fr.* a lecher

Leetorne, *n. Lat.* a reading-desk

Leden, *n. Sax.* language

Ledge, *v.* as allege

Lees, *n. Fr.* a leash by which dogs are held

Lees, *adj. Sax.* false; withouten lees, without lying, truly

Lese, *adj. Sax.* pleasing, agreeable; al be him lothe or lese, though it be unpleasing to him or pleasing—for lese ne lothe, for friend nor enemy; he turned not—for leve ne for lothe. It sometimes signifies pleased; I n'am not lese to gabbe, I am not pleased to prate, I take no pleasure in prating

Lechull, *adj.* lawful

Legge, *v. Sax.* to lay

Legge, *v. Fr.* to eat, as alege

Leie, *v. Sax.* to lay

Leiser, *n. Fr.* leisure, opportunity

Leite, *n. Sax.* light; thonder-leite, lightning

Leke, *n. Sax.* a leak; it is put for any thing of very small value

Lemes, *n. pl. Sax.* flames

Lemman, *n. Sax.* a lover or gallant, a mistress

Lendes, *n. pl. Sax.* the loins

Lene, *adj. Sax.* lean

Lene, *v. Sax.* to lend, to grant

Lenger, *adv. comp. Sax.* longer

Lente, *part. t. of lene*

Lenton, *n. Sax.* the season of Lent

L'envoy, *Fr.* was a sort of postscript sent with poetical compositions, and serving either to recommend them to the attention of some particular person, or to enforce what we call the moral of them. The six last stanzas of *The Clerk's Tale* are in many mss. entitled *L'envoy de Chaucer à les maris de notre temps*. See also the stanzas at the end of *The Complaint of the Black Knight*, and of *Chaucer's Dreame*

Leon, *n. Lat.* a lion

Leonne, *adj.* belonging to a lion

Leopart, lepart, *n. Fr.* a leopard

Leos, *n. Gr.* people

Lepande, *part. fr. of lepe*, *v. Sax.* leaping

Lepe, lep, for lepeþ, *3d pers. sing.*

— for leped, *part. t.*

Lape, *pr. n.* a town in Spain

Lere, lerne, *v. Sax.* to learn, to teach—Lered, *part. t. & part.*

Lere, *n. Sax.* the skin

Lese, *n. Fr.* as lees; in lustie lese, in love's leash

Lese, *adj. Sax.* as lees

Lese, *v. Sax.* to lose

Leseþ, *2d pers. pl. imp. m.* lose ye

Lesing, *n. Sax.* a lie, a falsity

Lesinges, *pl.*

Lest, list, lust, *n. Sax.* pleasure

Leste, liste, luste, *v.* to please; it is generally used as an impersonal, in the third person only, for it pleaseth or it pleased; him luste to ride so, it pleased him to ride so; wel to drink us leste, it pleased us well to drink; if you lest, if it please you; me list not play, it pleaseth me not to play

*Lette, adj. Sax. superl. d. least, at the lette way, at the lette, at least*  
*Lette, for last*  
*Let, v. Sax. to leave, to omit; to leave, to permit; let thy japes be; let the Sompnour be, to cause, to hinder*  
*Lete, pr. n. the river Lethe*  
*Letgane, n. Sax. a hinderer of pleasure*  
*Lette, n. delay, hinderance*  
*Lettowe, pr. n. Lithuania*  
*Lettréd, adj. Fr. learned*  
*Lettrure, letterure, n. Fr. literature*  
*Lettuarie, n. Fr. an electuary*  
*Leve, v. for live*  
*Leve, n. Sax. desire, inclination*  
*Lave, adj. dear. See Lefe*  
*Leve, v. Sax. to believe—Leveth, imp. m. 2d pers. pl.; leveth me, believeth me; leveth is misprinted for lefeth*

He lefeth more than ye may doe.

So this verse should be written :

Plus y pert-il que vous ne faictes. Orig.

*Leve is also misprinted for lene*  
*Leveles, adj. Sax. without leave*  
*Leven, n. Sax. lightning*  
*Lever, comp. d. of lefe, more agreeable; it were me lever, I hadde lever, hire hadde lever*  
*Levesell, n. a leafy seat, an arbour. I am by no means satisfied with the explanation here given of this word, the interpretation of it in the Prompt, Parv. will not help us much; "Leve" cel before a windowe or other place, umbra-culum.*  
*Lewed, lewde, adj. Sax. ignorant, unlearned, lascivious*  
*Leye, v. Sax. as legge, to lay, to lay a wager*  
*Leyes, pr. n. Layas in Armenia*  
*Leyte, n. Sax. flame. See Leite*  
*Liard, pr. n. belonged originally to a horse of a gray colour*  
*Licenciat, n. Lat. seems to signify that he was licensed by the Pope to hear confessions, &c. in all places, independently of the local ordinaries*  
*Liche-wake, n. the custom of watching with dead bodies*  
*Lide, pr. n. Lydia*  
*Lieges, n. pl. Fr. subjects*  
*Lien, pr. t. pl. of lie or ligge*  
*Lien, part. pa. of lie or ligge, lain*  
*Lies, n. pl. Fr. lees of wine, &c.*  
*Lieth is misprinted for leyeth*  
*Lifly, adv. Sax. like the life*  
*Ligeance, n. Fr. allegiance*  
*Ligge, lie, v. neut. Sax. to lie down*  
*Ligging, part. pr. lying*  
*Light, v. Sax. to enlighten—to make light or pleasant—v. neut. to descend, to alight*  
*Ligne, n. Fr. lineage, lineal descent; ligine should probably be lignee, to rhyme to compagnee*  
*Ligne aloes, lignum aloes, a very bitter drug*  
*Like, liken, v. Sax. to compare*  
*Like, v. Sax. to please; if you liketh, if it pleaseth you; it liketh hem, it pleaseth them*  
*Likorous, adj. Sax. gluttonous, lascivious*

*Liking, part. pr. pleasing*  
*Liking, n. pleasure*  
*Limaile, n. Fr. filings of any metal*  
*Lime, v. Sax. to smear as with birdlime*  
*Limed, part. pa. caught as with birdlime*  
*Limed, part. pa. Fr. polished as with a file*  
*Limer, n. Fr. limier, a bloodhound, Du. 362, 5.*  
*Lime-rod, a twig with birdlime*  
*Limitation, n. Lat. a certain precinct allowed to a limitour*  
*Limitour, n. a friar licensed to beg within a certain district*  
*Limmes, n. pl. Sax. limbs*  
*Linage, n. Fr. family*  
*Linde, n. Sax. the limetree*  
*Lisse, n. Sax. remission, abatement*  
*Lisse, v. neut. Sax. to grow easy*  
*Lissed, part. pa. of lisse, v. Sax. eased, relieved*  
*Liste, v. See Leste*  
*Listeneth, imp. m. 3d pers. pl. of listen, v. Sax. hearken ye*  
*Listes, n. pl. Fr. lists, a place enclosed for combats, &c.*  
*Litargo, n. Fr. white lead*  
*Lite, adj. Sax. little*  
*Lith, n. Sax. a limb*  
*Lith, for lieth*  
*Lithe, adj. Sax. soft, flexible, Du. 953*  
*Lithe, v. Sax. to soften*  
*Lither, adj. Sax. wicked; [in the edit. it is lithy,] luther and quede. See Quade*  
*Litherly, adv. Sax. very ill*  
*Litling, Sax. very little*  
*Livand, part. pr. Sax. living*  
*Live, n. Sax. life; on live, in life, alive; live creature, living creature, lives body, living body*  
*Lodemanage, { See the Statute 3 Geo. I. c. 11, where lodemanage is used repeatedly in the sense of pilorage*  
*Lodesterre, {*  
*Lodesmen, n. pl. Sax. pilots*  
*Loft, adv. Sax. on loft, on high, aloft*  
*Loge, n. Fr. a lodge, habitation*  
*Logged, part. pa. Fr. lodged*  
*Logging, n. lodging*  
*Loke, v. Sax. to see, to look upon*  
*Loken, Loke, part. pa. of loke, v. Sax. locked, shut close, Conf. Am. 29, his one eye anon was loke*  
*Loller, n. a lollard*  
*Lollius, pr. n. a writer from whom Chaucer professes to have translated his poem of Troilus and Creseide*  
*Londe, n. Sax. land*  
*Londenoy, a Londoner, one born in London*  
*Lone, n. Sax. a loan, any thing lent*  
*Long, v. Sax. to belong; longing for his art, belonging to his art, to desire*  
*Long. See Along*  
*Loos, los, n. Fr. praise; lofes, pl.*  
*Lord, n. Sax. a title of honour given to monks, as well as to other persons of superiour rank; lordes is used in the sense of lordings*  
*Lordings, n. pl. sirs, masters, a diminutive of lords*  
*Lordship, n. Sax. supreme power*  
*Lore, n. Sax. knowledge, doctrine, advice*  
*Lozel, n. Sax. a good-for-nothing fellow. Skinner supposes it to be derived from the Lat.*

*lurco*; and in the *Promptorium Parvulorum* *lofel*, or *lorel*, or *lurden*, is rendered *lurco*; but *lurco*, I apprehend, signifies only a glutton, which falls very short of our idea of a *lorel*: and besides, I do not believe that the word was ever sufficiently common in Latin to give rise to a derivative in English. One of Skinner's friends deduces it with much more probability from the Belg. [rather Sax.] *loren*, lost, *perditus*

**Lorne**, *part. pa.* of *lese*, *v. Sax.* lost, undone

**Los**, *n. Sax.* loss

**Loſed**, *part. pa. Sax.* loosed

**Loſed**, *part. pa. Fr.* praised

**Loſenge**, *n. Fr.* a quadrilateral figure of equal sides but unequal angles, in which the arms of women are usually painted; *loſynges* seems to signify small figures of the same form in the fret-work of a crown

**Loſengeour**, *n. Fr.* a flatterer

**Loteby**, *n.* in the orig. *compaigne*, a private companion or bedfellow; the concubines of priests are called their *lotebies*; perhaps it may be derived from the Sax. *loute*, to lurk

**Loth**, *adj. Sax.* disagreeable, odious

**Lothor**, *comp. d.* more hateful

**Lotheſt**, *superl. d.* most unwilling

**Lothly**, *adj.* loathsome

**Love-dayes**, *n. pl.* a day appointed for the amicable settlement of differences, was called a love-day

**Love-drinke**, *n. Sax.* a drink to excite love

**Love-longing**, *n. Sax.* desire of love

**Lovesome**, *adj. Sax.* lovely

**Lough**, *part. t.* of laugh, *v. Sax.* laughed

**Louke**. In *Pierce Plough.* 20, wrong is called a wicked *luke*, and I learn from Cotgrave, that *luke* is a synonymous word to *lowt*, *lorel*, &c.; so that perhaps *louke* may be still another term for an idle good-for-nothing fellow. See Cotg. in *v. Luſke*, Eng. and in *v. Loricard*, *Falourdin*, Fr.

**Loure**, *v. neut. Sax.* to look discontented

**Louring**, *part. pr.*

**Loute**, *v. Sax.* to bow, to lurk

**Low**, *n.* for law

**Lowlyhede**, *n. Sax.* humility

**Lutan**, *pr. n.* the Roman poet

**Luce**, *n. Lat.* the fish called a pike

**Lucina**, *pr. n.* the moon

**Lulled**, *part. t.* of lull, *v. Sax.* invited to sleep

**Lumbardes**, *n. pl.* bankers, remitters of money

**Lunarie**, *pr. n.* of a herb, moonwort

**Lure**, *n. Fr.* a device used by falconers for calling their hawks

**Lure**, *v. Fr.* to bring to the lure

**Lusheburghes**, base coins, probably first imported, as Skinner thinks, from Luxembourg. They are mentioned in the Stat. 25. E. III. c. 2. "La monnoie appellé Lucynbourg," and in *Pierce Plough.* fol. 82. b.

As in Lusheburgh is a luther alay, yet loketh like Sterling.

**Lust**, *n.* See Left

**Luste**, *v.* See Leste

**Lustyhede**, *n. Sax.* pleasure, mirth

**Luxurie**, *n. Fr.* lechery

**Lycian**, *pr. n.* a learned correspondent, to whom I am obliged for other useful hints, has suggested

to me that Fabricius, upon the authority of Ghilini, has placed the death of Joannes Lignanus in 1383, *Bibl. Med. Æt.* in v. This furnishes an additional reason for believing that The Canterbury Tales were composed, or at least collected into a body, after that period

## M.

**Mace**, *n. Fr.* a club

**Machabé**, *pr. n.* the books of the Maccabees

**Macrobes**, *pr. n.* Macrobius, *Du.* 284; the author of the commentary on the *Somnium Scipionis* of Cicero

**Madde**, *v. Sax.* to be mad

**Madrian**. I have found that the French have a saint called *Materne*—but Mr. Steevens, with much more probability, supposes that the precious body by which the Host swears was that of St. Mathurin. See his story in *The Golden Legende*, edit. 1527, by Winkin de Worde, 151, b.: "Than toke they the precious body, and enoynted it with moche reverence; and when they had laid it in the erth, on the morowe they came to the sepulture and found the body above the erth nigh unto the same sepulture, and than were they all abashed, and wyſt not what to do." It seems the knights who had brought him out of France had promised that if he died on his journey he should be sent back and buried "where as they had taken him," and therefore his body would not stay in the ground till it was deposited, according to promise, in France, where it afterwards worked many miracles

**Mafeie**, *Fr. ma foy*, by my faith

**Magicien**, *n. Fr.* a magician

**Magike**, *n. Fr.* magic; *magike*, natural

**Mahownd**, *pr. n.* Mahomet. See *Du Gange* in v.

**Maille**, *n. Fr.* a coat of mail

**Mainte**, *part. pa.* as maint

**Maintenance**, *n. Fr.* behaviour, *Du.* 834.

**Maifondewe**, *Fr. maifondieu*, an hospital

**Maister**, *n. Fr.* a skilful artist, a maister; *maister-strete*, the chief street; *maister-temple*, the chief temple; *maister-tour*, the principal tower

**Maisterful**, *adj.* imperious

**Maisterie**, *maistrise*, *n. Fr.* skill, skilful management, power, superiority

Love wol not be constrained by maistrise.  
Whan maistrise cometh the god of love anon  
Beteth his winges, and farewell he is gon.

I cite these elegant lines as I omitted to observe before that Spenser has inserted them in the *Faery Queen*, b. ii. c. 1, st. 25, with very little alteration, and certainly without any improvement:

Ne may love be compell'd by mastery,  
For soon as mastery comes sweet love anon  
Taketh his nimble wings, and soon away is gone.

A *maistrise*, a masterly operation; *un coup de maitre*, for the maistrise

**Maistresse**, *n. Fr.* mistress, governess



*Maistrise*, *n. Fr.* masterly workmanship  
*Make*, *n. Sax.* a fellow, a mate, a husband, a wife; make or metche, compar. *Prompt. Parv.*  
*Make*, *v. Sax.* to compose or make verses, to solace him sometimes as I do when I make, *Pierce Plough.* 60. to make a man's berde, to cheat him  
*Make*, why make ye your hackes! we should read—*nake*, *i. e.* make naked; *cur inertes terga nudatis?* orig.  
*Maked*, *part. pa.* made  
*Makeless*, *adj. Sax.* peerless, without a fellow  
*Making*, *n.* poetry; makinges, *pl.* poetical compositions; and thou medlest with makings, *Pierce Plough.* 60.  
*Malapert*, *adj.* pert, forward; the word seems to be evidently of French original, though I do not recollect to have seen it used by any French writer. *Appert*, *adj. Fr.* signifies expert, &c. *Cotgrave*  
*Male*, *n. Fr.* a budget or portmanteau  
*Malefice*, *n. Fr.* enchantment  
*Male-talent*, *n. Fr.* ill-will  
*Malison* *n. Fr.* malediction, curse; I gyve it my malifoun  
*Malt*, *pa. t.* of melt, *v. Sax.* melted  
*Malvesie*, *pr. n.* Malmsey wine  
*Malure*, *n. Fr.* misfortune  
*Manace*, *n. Fr.* a threat  
*Manace*, *v.* to threaten  
*Manacing*, *n.* threatening  
*Manciple*, *n.* an officer who has the care of purchasing victuals for an inn of court. The name is probably derived from the Lat. *manceps*, which signified particularly the superintendant of a public bakehouse, and from thence a baker in general. See *Du Cange* in *v. Maneps* 2. The office still subsists in several colleges as well as inns of court.  
*Mandement*, *n. Fr.* mandate  
*Manere*, *n. Fr.* carriage, behaviour, kind or sort; a *manere* Latin, a kind of Latin; swiche a manner love-drinke, such a sort of love-potion; swiche maner rime  
*Mangonel*, *n. Fr.* an engine used to batter walls  
*Manie*, *n. Fr. Gr.* madness  
*Mannish*, *adj. Sax.* human, proper to the human species—masculine, proper to man as distinguished from woman; in this last sense when applied to a woman it is a strong term of reproach  
*Manor*, *n. Fr.* dwelling, *Du.* 1004.  
*Manfuede*, *adj. Fr.* gentle  
*Mantelet*, *n. Fr.* a short mantle  
*Marcian*, *pr. n.* Martianus Capella  
*Marcian*, *adj.* martial, under the influence of Mars  
*Mareis*, *n. Fr.* a marsh  
*Margarite*, *n. Fr.* a pearl  
*Marie*, *mary*, *n. Sax.* marrow; marie-bones, marrowbones  
*Market-beter*, I am enclined to believe that this word is to be understood in a sense similar to that in which the *Fr.* phrases *Batre les rues*—and *Bateur de pavez*, are used; *Batre les rues*, to revel, jet, or swagger, up and down the streets at night; *Bateur de pavez*, a jetter abroad in the streets—a pavement-beater. See *Cot-*

*grave* in *v. Bateur*, *Batre*, *Pavé*; so that he was a market-beter attē full, may mean perhaps—he was used to swagger up and down the market when it was fullest—a circumstance which suits very well with the rest of his character:—*Market-dachur*, *circumforaneus*, *Prompt. Parv.*

*Markis*, *n. Fr.* a marquis

*Markis*, for markises, *gen. ea. sing.*; in the same manner *Peneus* is put for *Peneuses*; *Theseus* for *Theseuses*; *Venus* for *Venuses*; *Ceres* for *Cereses*; *Melibœus* for *Melibœuses*: Perhaps it might have been proper to add a mark of apocope to the words so abbreviated. As to the present method of expressing the genitive cases of nouns ending in *s* by adding another *s* with a mark of syncope, as *Peneus's*, *Theseus's*, *Venus's*, &c. it seems absurd, whether the addition be intended to be pronounced or not. In the first case the *e* should not be cut out; in the second the *s* is quite superfluous. But the absurdity of this practice is most striking when the genitives of monosyllable nouns are thus written, an ox's horns, an ass's ears, a fish's tail, St. James's park; notwithstanding that the *e*, which is thus directed to be cut out, is constantly and necessarily to be pronounced, as if the several words were written at length, oxes, asses, fishes, Jameses

*Markiseffe*, *n. Fr.* the wife of a marquis

*Marte*, *pr. n.* Mars

*Martire*, *n. Fr.* martyrdom, torment

*Martire*, *v. Fr.* to torment

*Mary*, *Marie*, *pr. n.* a vulgar oath; by *Mary*

*Mase*, *n.* a wild fancy

*Mase*, *v. neut.* to doubt, to be confounded

*Masednesse*, *n.* astonishment, confusion

*Maselin*, *n.* rather mazerin, a drinking-cup. See *Du Cange* in *v. Mazer*

*Mate*, *part. pa.* of *mate*, *v. Fr.* dejected, struck dead; so feble and mate, *Conf. Am.* 127, b.

*Matire*, for *matere*, *n. Fr.* matter

*Maugre*, *malgre*, *Fr.* in spite of; *maugre* all thy might; *maugre* thin eyen; *maugre* hire hed—The original of this expression appears more plainly in the following passages, I drede thou canst me grete *maugre*

Car je cuide, que me scavez

*Malgré.*

Orig.

*Malgre* his, with his ill will, against his will; *malgré lui.*

*Mavis*, *n. Sax.* a thrush

*Mavis* is probably a mistake for *muis*, *n. pl. Fr.* the orig. has *cent moys de froment*; the Paris mud contains something more than five quarters English

*Maumet*, *n.* an idol

*Manmetrie*, *n.* the religion of Mahomet; idolatry

*Mawe*, *n. Sax.* the stomach

*Maximian*, *pr. n.* the author of six elegies which have been frequently printed under the name of Gallus: he is said by Fabricius [*Bibl. Lat.* t. i. p. 297, ed. *Patav.*] to have lived under the Emperor Anastasius, q. I. or II.? A translation or rather abridgment of these elegies in English verse is in ms. *Harl.* 2253.

**May**, *v. Sax.* to be able, physically, morally. See Mowe  
**May**, *n. Sax.* a virgin; of Mary, moder and may, a young woman  
**Maydenhed**, *n. Sax.* virginity  
**Meaneliche**, *adj. Sax.* moderate; *mediocribus*, orig.  
**Mebles**, *n. pl. Fr.* moveable goods  
**Mede**, *n. Sax.* reward, a meadow  
**Mede**, *aneth, meth, n. barb. Lat.* mead, a liquor made of honey  
**Medle**, *v. Fr.* to mix  
**Medlee**, *adj.* of a mixed stuff or colour  
**Meinie**, *n. Fr.* household attendants, an army—*Harlewaynes meyne*. This obscure phrase, I think, may be understood to relate to a particular set of ghostly apparitions which were used to run about the country at night, and were called in French *La mesnie de Hellequin* or *Hellequin*. The fullest account that I have seen of them is in *L'histoire de Richard sans pasur, Duc de Normandie, qui fut fils de Robert le Diable*. In one of his rides he meets with three black knights whom he engages: "Et quand les Chevaliers veirent le ju mal party pour eux ils monterent a cheval et s'enfuyrent;—et Richard—chevaucha apres eux; et ainsi qu'il chevauchoit il appercent une dance de gens noirs qui s'entretenoyent." Adonc luy souvint de la mesnie de Hellequin, dont il avoit autres foys ouy parler." The title of the next chapter (4.) is *Cy devise de la mesnie de Hellequin et qui il estoit*. He is there said to have been a knight who, having spent all his substance in the wars of Charles Martel against the Saracens, lived afterwards by pillage. "Adonc il avint qu'il mourut et fut en danger d'estre damne, mais Dieu luy fit pardon, pource que il avoit bataille contre les Sarrazins et exaulce la foy. Si fut condamne de Dieu que pour un tems de termine luy et ceux de son lignage feroient penitence et yroient toute la nuit parmy la terre, pour leurs penitences faire et endurer plusieurs maux et calamitez." The belief of such apparitions was certainly of great antiquity in Normandy, as they are mentioned by Ordericus Vitalis under the title of *familia Herlechini*, in a most extraordinary story related by him, l. viii. p. 695, and 1091; and I suspect that in a passage quoted by *Du Cange* in *v. Herlinini*, from *Petr. Blesens*, ep. 14, we should read *Herlikini* instead of *Herlinini*.—Gervase of Tilbury, who wrote in 1211, mentions another set of apparitions which were called *familia Arturi*. *Of Imper. Dec. ii. c. 12*; "In sylvis Britannie majoris aut minoris consimilia contigisse referuntur, narrantibus nemorum custodibus, quos forestarios—vulgus nominat, se alternis diebus circa horam meridianam, et in primo noctium conticinio sub plenilunio luna lucente, sapissime videre militum copiam ventantium et canum et cornuum strepitum, qui scissitantibus se de societate et familia Arturi esse affirmant." He had just said that Arthur, not long before, had been seen in a palace, *miro opere constructo*, in a most delicious valley in the neighbourhood of Mount Ætna,

where he had resided ever since the time of his supposed death, *vulneribus quotannis recrudescentibus*.

**Meint**, *part. pa. of minge, v. Sax.* mixed, mingled

**Meke**, *adj. Sax.* meek, humble

**Meke**, *v.* to become meek

**Meles**, *n. pl. Sax.* meals, dinners, &c. *Du.* 612.

**Mele-tide**, *n. Sax.* dinner-time

**Melle**, *v. Fr.* to meddle

**Melle**, *n.* for mille

**Memorie**, *n. Fr.* remembrance; to be drawn to memorie; to be recorded;

And for to drawe into memorye .

Her names bothe and her historye.

*Conf. Am. f. 96.*

**Memorie**, *v.* to remember

**Mendians**, *n. pl. Fr.* friars of the begging orders

**Mene**, *v. Sax.* to mean, to intend

**Mene**, *n. Fr.* moyen, a mean or instrument; where the orig. has *mezzano*, a procurer. *Menes*, *pl.*

**Mene**, *adj.* middle

**Menivere**, *n. Fr.* a sort of fur

**Mercenrike**, *pr. n.* the kingdom of Mercia

**Mercia**, *pr. n.* Marfayas is probably meant, but our poet, I know not upon what authority, has turned him into a female

**Merciabile**, *adj. Fr.* merciful

**Meritorie**, *adj. Fr.* meritorious

**Merke**, *n. Sax.* a mark, an image; all the merke of Adam, all the images of Adam, all mankind

**Merke**, *adj. Sax.* dark

**Merlion**, *n. Fr.* *emerillon*, a merlin, a sort of hawk

**Mervaille**, *n. Fr.* wonder, marvel

**Mery**, *adj. Sax.* merry, pleasant

**Mes**, at gode mes, should probably be at gode-ness; the orig. has *en bon point*. See *Gode-ness*

**Mese**, *n.* for messe

**Mesel**, *n. Fr.* a leper

**Meserie**, *n. Fr.* leprosy

**Message**, *n. Fr.* a messenger

**Messagerie**, *pr. n.* a fictitious attendant in the temple of Venus; Boccace calls her *Ruffiana*, *Thesida*, b. vii.

**Messe**, *n. Fr.* the service of the mass

**Meste**, *adj. Sax. superl. d.* as moste

**Mesurable**, *adj. Fr.* moderate

**Mesure**, *n. Fr.* moderation

**Metamorphoseos**, *Metamorphose*, Ovid's *Metamorphosis*. See *Judicum*

**Mete**, *adj. Sax.* fitting, convenient

**Mete**, *n. Sax.* meat; during the metes space, during the time of eating

**Mete-borde**, *n. Sax.* an eating-table

**Metely**, *adj.* proportionable

**Mete**, *v. Sax.* to meet, to dream

**Mette**, *met, pr. t.* dreamed; I mette, me mette, I dreamed

**Meticiens**, *n. pl.* writers in verse

**Mevable**, *adj. Fr.* moveable

**Mewe**, *n. Fr.* a cage for hawks While they mew or change their feathers, a cage in general, or any sort of confinement; in mew, in secret

**Mewet**, *adj. Fr.* mute; in mewet, dumbly, speaking inwardly

- Micher, *n.* a thief, *liertes* orig. *mychin* or *pryve-*  
*ly stelyn* small things; *surripio*, *Prompt. Parv.*  
 Might, *pa. t.* of *may*, *v. Sax.* was able, mighten,  
*pl.*  
 Might, *part. pa.* if godely had he might, if he had  
 been able with propriety  
 Might, *n. Sax.* power, strength  
 Milkfop, *n.* an effeminate fellow  
 Milne-stones, *v. pl. Sax.* millstones  
 Minde, *n. Sax.* remembrance, *Conf. Am.* 148, as  
 the bookes' maken minde  
 Mine, *v. Fr.* to penetrate  
 Minstrolles, *n. pl. Fr.* minstrels  
 Ministres, *n. pl. Fr.* officers of justice, ministers,  
 minstrels  
 Minorette, *n.* a nun under the rule of St. Clare,  
*Du Gange* in *v. Minoriffa*. It is not clear, how-  
 ever, why Chaucer has likened Hate to a sister  
 of this order; his original gave him no autho-  
 rity  
 Minour, *n. Fr.* a miner  
 Minstralcie, *n. Fr.* music, musical instruments  
 Mirrour, *n. Fr.* a lookingglass  
 Mirtheles, *adj. Sax.* without mirth  
 Mis, *adv. ill*, amifs; it is often to be supplied to  
 a second verb having been expressed in com-  
 position with the former; if that I mispeke or  
 say; that hire misdoth or faith; there is no-  
 thing misfaide nor do, *Du.* 528  
 Mis, *n.* a wrong  
 Mis-accompted, *part. pa.* misreckoned  
 Mis-aventure, *n.* misfortune  
 Mis-avise, *v.* to advise wrongly  
 Mis-boden, *part. pa.* of mis-bede, injured  
 Mis-borre, *part. pa.* of mis-bere, misbehaved  
 Mischance, *n. Fr.* misfortune; with mischance.  
 See With  
 Mischese, *n. Fr.* misfortune  
 Miscoveting, *n.* should probably be miscompting;  
 mescompter, orig.  
 Mis-departe, *v.* to distribute, wrongly  
 Misericorde, *n. Fr.* mercy, pity  
 Mis-ese, *n.* uneasiness  
 Mis-foryave, *pa. t.* of mis-foryave, misgave  
 Mis-gied, *part. pa.* of mis-gie, misguided  
 Mis-gon, Mis-go, *part. pa.* of mis-go, gone  
 wrong  
 Mis-happing, *part. pr.* falling amifs  
 Mis-iede, *v.* to conduct amifs  
 Mis-lived, *part. pa.* having lived to a bad pur-  
 pose  
 Mis-metre, *v.* to spoil the metre of verses by writ-  
 ing or reading them ill  
 Mis-sate, *pa. t.* of mis-sit, misbecame  
 Mis-sayde, *part. pa.* of mis-saye, ill-spoken of  
 Mis-sayer, *n.* an evil speaker  
 Misse, *v. Sax.* to fail  
 Misse-metre, *v.* See Mis-metre  
 Mistake, *v.* to take a wrong part, to transgress;  
 mesprendre, orig.  
 Mistere, *n. Fr.* trade, occupation—condition of  
 life; what mistere men ye ben, what kind of  
 men ye are—need  
 Mistihede, *n. Sax.* darkness  
 Mistily, *adv. Sax.* darkly  
 Mistrit, *v.* for mistrust  
 Mis-wale, *n.* a wrong way  
 Mis-went, *part. pa.* of mis-wende, gone amifs  
 Mis-write, *v.* to write wrong  
 Mitaine, *n. Fr.* a glove  
 Mitche, *n. Fr.* a manchet, a loaf of fine bread  
 Mite, *n. Sax.* a small worm  
 Mixen, *n. Sax.* a dunghill  
 Mo, for me  
 Mo, for more, *adj. comp. adv. comp.*  
 Mochel, moche, *adj. Sax.* great in quantity, in  
 number, in degree—*adv. much, greatly*  
 Moder, modre, *n. Sax.* mother—the matrix or  
 principal plate of the astrolabe, *Apr.*  
 Moison, *n. Fr.* harvest, growth  
 Moist, moisty, *adj. Fr.* new  
 Moke, *n.* may perhaps signify size, magnitude, *pl.*  
 michel seems to be used in that sense in *Pierre*  
*Plough.* 89, b. of one michel and might  
 Molestie, *n. Fr.* trouble  
 Molte, *pa. t.* of melte, *v. Sax.* melted, *part. pa.*  
 Monche, *v.* to chew  
 Mone, *n. Sax.* the moon—lamentation  
 Moneste, *v. Fr.* to admonish  
 Moniours, *n. pl. Fr.* coiners: in the orig. it is  
*faulx monnoyeurs*  
 Monstre, *n. Fr.* a monster or prodigy—a por-  
 tern  
 Mood, *n. Sax.* anger  
 Morcels, *n. pl. Fr.* morsels  
 More, *adj. comp. Sax.* greater in quantity, in num-  
 ber and degree—*adv. comp.* it is usually joined  
 to adjectives and adverbs to express the *comp. deg.*  
 Mormal, *n.* a cancer or gangrene  
 Morter, *n. Fr.* a sort of waxlight  
 Mirtific, *v. Fr.* to kill, (speaking of quicksilver)  
 Mortrewes, *n.* Lord Bacon, in his *Nat. Hist.* t.  
 48, speaks of a mortrels made with the brawn  
 of capons stamped and strained. He joins it with  
 the cullice (*coulis*) of cocks. It seems to have  
 been a rich broth or soup, in the preparation of  
 which the flesh was stamped or beat in a mor-  
 tar, from whence it probably derived its name,  
*une mortreuse*, though I cannot say that I have  
 ever met with the French word  
 Morwe, *n. Sax.* the morning; in the morning of  
 the following day—To-morwe, I believe, al-  
 ways means the following day, and it includes  
 the whole day; to-morwe at night  
 Morwening, *n. Sax.* the morning, morweninges, *pl.*  
 Mosel, *n. Fr.* the muzzle, mouth of a beast  
 Moste, *adj. superl. Sax.* greatest in quantity, in  
 number, in degree—*adv. superl.* it is usually  
 joined to adjectives and adverbs to express the  
 superlative degree  
 Most, *v. Sax.* must; Mosten, *pl.*  
 Mote, *v. Sax.* must, may; Moten, *pl.*  
 More, *n. Sax.* an atom  
 Mothes, *n. pl. Sax.* moths  
 Motif, *n. Fr.* a motive, incitement  
 Mought, *pa. t.* of mowe, *v. Sax.* might  
 Moule, *v. Sax.* to grow mouldy  
 Mouled, *part. pa.*  
 Moun, for mowen, *pr. t. pl.* of mowe, *v. Sax.*  
 may  
 Mountance, *n. Fr.* amount in value; in quantity;  
 not full the mountance of a mile, *Conf. Am.*  
 187.  
 Mourdant, *n. Fr.* the tongue of a buckle  
 Mowe, *v. Sax.* may, to be able. Mowen, *pl.*—  
 it is sometimes used in the *inf. m.* which thou



shalt not mowe suffre, which thou shalt not be able to endure—to mowen suche a knight done live or die, to be able to make such a knight to live or die—he should not con ne mow attaine, she should not know nor be able to attain

Mowe, *n. Fr.* a distortion of the mouth; what do I than but laugh and make a mowe? *Lydg. Tra.* 137.

Mowing, *n. ability.* In the following passage it seems to be used as a *gerund*; that shrewes weren dispoiled of mowing to don yvel

Much, muchel. See Miche

Muckre, *v. Sax.* to heap

Mue, *v. Fr.* to change

Muet, *adj. Fr.* dumb, mute

Mullok, *n. Sax.* dung, rubbish

Multiplication, *n. Fr.* the art of making gold and silver

Multiplie, *v. Fr.* to make gold and silver

Musard, *n. Fr.* a muser or dreamer

Muse, *v. Fr.* to gaze

Myself, myselve, myselven. See Self

## N.

Na, for ne

N'adde, for ne hadde, had not

Naile, *n. Sax.* a nail; by nailes, by Goddes nailes, an eath

Nakere, *n.* a kind of brazen drum used in the cavalry. See *Da Gange* in *v. Nacara*

Nale, *n. Sax.* an alehouse. But I am the less inclined to adopt Skinner's explanation of this word, because I observe that ale alone is commonly put for an alehouse, and I cannot find that nale is ever used, except where it follows the preposition atte. In the passage in *Pierce Plough.* 32, b. the *Cotton* ms. *Vesp. B.* xvi. has at the ale; and so in *Pierce Plough.* 26, b. with idle tales at the ale.—Robert of Brunne's translation of *Manuel des Pechees*, ms. *Bodl.* 2313, fol. 1;

In gaymes, in festys, and at the ale.

fol. 38. Or yf thou leddest any man to the ale. I suspect therefore that nale, in those few passages in which it is found, should be considered as merely a corruption which has arisen from the mispronunciation and consequent miswriting of atte nale for atten ale. A similar corruption seems to have taken place in the name of that celebrated personage in our law Mr. John A-Noke, whose original appellation, I believe, was John Atten Oke, as that of his constant antagonist was John Atte Stile *sm.* Atte Stile is a name in *Pierce Plough.* 23, b. and there are many others of the same form, as Atte-cliff, Atte-ley, Atte-well, Atte-wood, &c. That the letter *n* is apt to pass from the end of one word to the beginning of another, we have an instance in newt, which has certainly been formed, by corruption, from an ewt or eft; and perhaps nedder, *n. Sax.* may have been formed in the same way from an adder: the word in the Teutonic is adder, as we write it now, without the initial *n*. The same corrup-

tions have happened in other languages. See the notes of Signor Redi upon his *Barco in Toscana*, p. 133, 4, 5, 182, 3.

N'am, for ne am, am not

Name, *pa. t. of nime, v. Sax.* took

Nappe, *v. Sax.* to sleep. See Knap

Narcotickes, *n. pl. Fr. Gr.* drugs causing sleep

Narwe, *adj. Sax.* close, narrow; whan they hem narwe avise, when they closely consider their conduct

Nas, for ne was, was not

Naso, *pr. n. P.* Ovidius Naso. See Ovid

Nat, *adv. Sax.* not

Natal, *adj. Lat.* presiding over nativity

Nat leffe, natheles, *adv. Sax.* not the less, nevertheless

Nation, *n. Fr.* nation—family

Naught, nought, *n. Sax.* nothing

——, *adv.* not, not at all, it may more properly perhaps be considered as a noun used adverbially. See Nothing

Nay, *adj. Sax.* it seems to be used sometimes as a noun; it is no nay, it cannot be denied

Nay, *v.* to deny

Ne, *adv. Sax.* not; ne had he ben holpen, had he not been helped

Ne, *conj. Sax.* nor

Nece, *n. Fr.* a niece—a cousin

Necessaire, *adj. Fr.* necessary

Nede, *n. Sax.* need, necessity

Nede, *v.* is generally used as an impersonal; it nedeth thee nought teche; nedeth him no dwale; neded no more to hem to go ne rid

Nedeful, *adj.* distressed, indigent

Nedely, *adv.* necessarily

Nedes, nede, *adv.* necessarily; it is usually joined with must

Nedder, *n. Sax.* an adder; Neders, *pl.*

Neighe, *adj. Sax.* nigh

Neighe, *v.* to approach, to come near

Nekke, *n. Sax.* the neck; nekke-bone

Nempne, *v. Sax.* to name

Ner, *adv. Sax.* near

Nere, *comp. d.* nigher; never the nere, never the nigher; nere and nere, nigher and nigher; ferre ne nere, later nor earlier

N'ere, for ne were, were not; n'ere it, were it not; n'ere the friendship

Nerfe, *n. Fr.* nerve, sinew

Neshe, *adj. Sax.* soft, tender; Nesch and hard

Nete, *n. Sax.* neat cattle

Nether, *adj. comp. Sax.* lower

Nettle in dock out. See Raket

Neven, *v. Sax.* to name

Nevev, *n. Fr.* a nephew—a grandson

Newe, *adj. Sax.* new, fresh

Newe, *adv.* newly; newe and newe, again and again; all newe; of newe, newly, lately; all new, anew, afresh

Newe, *v.* to renew

Newed, *part. pa.* renewed

Newefangel, *adj.* desirous of new things

Newefangelnesse, *n.* inconstancy

Nexste, *superl. d.* nighest; it generally signifies the nighest, following, but sometimes the nighest preceding

N'hath, for ne hath, hath not

Nice, *adj. Fr.* foolish

- Nicetee, *n.* folly; do his nicetee; so the French use *faire folie*  
 Niffes, *n. pl.* trifles  
 Nigard, *n.* a stingy fellow  
 Nigardie, *n.* stinginess  
 Nightertale, night-time  
 Night-spel, *n. Sax.* a night-charm  
 N'll, for ne will, will not  
 N'is, for ne is, is not  
 N'iste, for ne wiste, knew not, *sing.*; n'isten, for ne wisten, knew not, *pl.*  
 Nobledest, *pa. t. 2nd pers. sing.* of noble, *v. Fr.* ennobled  
 Noblesse, *n. Fr.* dignity, splendour  
 Nobley, *n.* as noblesse  
 Nocked, *part. pa.* notched  
 Noie, *n. Fr.* hurt, trouble  
 Naie, *v.* to hurt, to trouble  
 Noife, *v. Fr.* to make a noise  
 N'olde, for ne wolde, would not  
 Nombre, *n. Fr.* number  
 Nomen, nome, *part. pa.* of nime, *v. Sax.* taken  
 Nompere, *n.* an arbitrator. See the passage quoted above in *v. Lovedaie*. The sense of this word is established by the *Prompt. Parv.* nowmper or swimper, Arbiter, Sequester. If the etymology of it were as clear, we might be able to determine which of the two methods of writing it is the best; custom has long declared for the latter. The modern word is umpire; and in *Pierce Plough*, 25, b. the edit. read—an umper, but the *Cotton ms. Vesp. B. xvi.* has—a numper. I cannot find that any such word is used, in the same sense, in any other of the Gothic or romance languages: it has been supposed by some to be a corruption of *un perc*, *Fr.* which I can hardly believe; and perhaps the reader will be as backward to admit of a derivation of it from the *Fr. nonpai*, an odd or third person, which an arbitrator generally is. This however is the most probable etymology that has occurred to me, and I see that the compiler of the statutes for the University of Oxford (whoever he was) had the same idea, for he expresses the word umpire in his Latin by *impar*, tit. xv. § 14. *Index, impar, aut arbitrator, in quacunque causâ electus*  
 Non, *adj. Sax.* not one, none  
 Non, *adv. Fr.* not; absent or non; whether ye wol or non  
 Nour, *n. Fr.* the ninth hour of the natural day, nine o'clock in the morning; the hour of dinner  
 Nones, for the nones  
 Nonne, *n. Fr.* a nun  
 Norice, *n. Fr.* a nurse; in other passages, it is printed by mistake for norie, *n.* a foster-child, *alumnus*  
 Nortelrie, *n.* nurture, education  
 Nofethirles, *n. pl. Sax.* nostrils  
 Not, for ne wot, know not  
 Notabilitee, *n. Eg.* a thing worthy of observation  
 Note, *n. Sax.* need, business  
 Note, *n. Fr.* a musical note; to cry by note, to cry aloud, in a high tone  
 Notemuge, *n.* nutmeg  
 Note, *n. pl. Sax.* nuts
- Not-hed, a head like a nut  
 Nother, *conj. Sax.* nor, neither  
 N'other, *adj. Sax.* for ne other; neither n'other, nor one nor other; he n'is in neither n'other habite; *neutro est habitu*, orig.  
 Nothing, *adv. Sax.* not, not at all  
 Nouches, *n. pl.* It is probable, I think, that *nouche* is the true word, and that *ouch* has been introduced by a corruption the reverse of that which has been taken notice of in *Nale*. See *Du Cange* in *v. Nochia* and *Nusea*, and *Schibler*, *Gloss. Teut.* in *v. Nufci*, from whence it appears that *nufchin*, *Teut.* signifies *fibula*, a clasp or buckle. As these were some of the most useful instruments of dress they were probably some of the first that were ornamented with jewels, by which means the name by degrees may have been extended so as to include several other sorts of jewels; the same thing may have happened in the case of the word *broche*, [see above] which indeed seems originally to have been a French expression for *nouche*  
 Nought, *n. & adv. Sax.* See Naught  
 Nouth, *adv. Sax.* now  
 Novelries, *n. pl. Fr.* novelties  
 Now, *adv. Sax.* now and now, once and again; now adays, in these days  
 Nowel, *n. Fr.* Christmas  
 Noyfaunce, *n. Fr.* offence, trespass
- O
- O, for ho. See Ho  
 O, *adj.* for on, one; in the curious old ballad on the battle of Lewes, [*Anc. Poet.* v. ii. p. 4. l. 10.] oferling should be written, I believe, o ferling, i. e. one farthing  
 Obeysance, *n. Fr.* obedience; obeying  
 Obeysant, *part. pr. Fr.* obedient; obeying  
 Obsequies, *n. pl. Fr.* funeral rites  
 Observance, *n. Fr.* respect  
 Observe, *v. Fr.* to respect, to pay regard to  
 Occident, *n. Fr.* the west  
 Octavien, *pr. n.* I do not suppose that Augustus is meant, but rather the fabulous emperor who is the subject of a romance entitled *Octavian Imperator*, *ms. Cotton, Calig. ii.* See *Percy's Catalogue*, n. 18. The same Octavian, I apprehend, was celebrated in a piece of Arras hangings which made part of the furniture of Henry V. and is thus described in the inventory, *Rot. Parl.* 2. Hen. VI. Item 1 autre pece d'arras D'or q comence en l'estorie, Le Octavien Roy de Rome  
 Ocy, ocy, the nightingale's note  
 Overthrow, for overthrow, *part. pa. Sax.* overthrown  
 Oetus, *pr. n. Æetes*  
 Ot, *adv. Sax.* off  
 Offended, *part. pa. Fr.* hurt  
 Offensioun, *n.* offence, damage  
 Offertorie, *n. Fr.* a part of the mass  
 Offring, *n. Fr.* offering at mass  
 Oft, ofte, *adv. Sax.* often; often-ſith, often-times  
 Oinment, *n. Fr.* ointment  
 Olifaunt, *n. Fr.* elephant

Oliveres, *n. pl. Fr.* olive-trees

Omer, *pr. n.* Homer

On, *prep. Sax.* in; on live, in life, alive; on twelve, in twelve; on hunting; on hawking. See A, *prep.*—upon; on to see, to look upon. Licurgus daughter, fairer on to fene—so this line is written in *ms. Bodl.*

On, *adj. Sax.* one; after on, alike; they were at on, they were agreed; ever in on, continually; I mine on, I single, I by myself; and thus I went widewher walking mine one; non saw but he one; all him one

Onde, *n. Sax.* zeal, malice; ny the and onde

Oned, *part. pa. Sax.* made one, united

Ones, *pl. of on*; we three ben alle ones, we three are all one

Ones, *adv. Sax.* once; at ones, at once, at the same time

Onhed, *n. Sax.* unity

Only, *adv. Sax.* al only, solely

Ony, *adj. Sax.* any

Open-ers, *n. Sax.* the fruit of the medlar tree

Open-heded, *adj.* bareheaded

Opie, *n. Fr.* opium

Oppresse, *v. Fr.* to ravish

Oppressed, *part. pa.*

Oppression, *n.* rape

Or, *adv. Sax.* er, before

Oratorie, *n. Fr.* a chapel, a closet

Ordal, *n. Sax.* judicial trial. See *Kilian in v. Oordeel*, and *Hickes Differt. Epist.* p. 149. It is possible however that Chaucer may have used this word in its more confined sense, for a trial by fire or water, without considering whether such trials were practised at Troy.

Orde, *n. Sax.* a point

Ordered, *part. pa.* ordained in holy orders

Orders four, the four orders of mendicant friars

Ordinance, *n. Fr.* orderly, disposition

Ordinat, *part. pa.* orderly, regular

Ore, *n. Sax.* grace, favour

Orrwell, *pr. n.* a seaport in Essex

Orfrays, *n. Fr.* gold embroidery. See *Du Cange in v. Aurifrigia*

Orient, *n. Fr.* the east

Origenes, *pr. n.* In the list of Chaucer's Works he says of himself, that

He made also, gon is a grete while,  
Origenes upon the Maudelaine—

meaning, I suppose, a translation into prose or verse of the homily *de Mariâ Magdalena*, which has been commonly, though falsely, attributed to Origen. V. *Opp. Origenis*, t. ii. p. 291, ed. Paris, 1604. I cannot believe that the poem entitled *The Lamentation of Marie Magdalene*, which is in all the editions of Chaucer, is really that work of his; it can hardly be considered as a translation or even imitation of the homily, and the composition, in every respect, is infinitely meaner than the worst of his genuine pieces

Orisont, *n. Fr.* the horizon

Orloge, *n. Fr.* a clock or dial

Orpiment, *pr. n.* a mineral so called

Other, *adj. Sax.* alter, *Lat.* the other of two; others, *gen. ea.*

Other, *adj. Sax.* alius, *Lat.*

Other, *conj. Sax.* or either

Ouche. See Nouche

Over, *prep. Sax.* above; over all, in every case, on every side

Over, *adj. Sax.* upper

Overest, *superl. d.* uppermost

Over-gret, *adj. Sax.* too great

Over-ladde, *part. pa.* overborn; do not the people oppress nor overlede, *Lydg. Tra.*

Over-live, *v. Sax.* to outlive

Over-merily, *adv. Sax.* too merrily

Over-moche, *adj. Sax.* too great

Over-nome, *part. pa.* of over-time; *v. Sax.* overtaken

Over-spradde, *part. t. Sax.* overspread

Overtc, *adj. Fr.* open

Overthrew, *part. t. of overthrow, v. neut. Sax.* fell down

Overthrowing, *part. pr. Sax.* falling headlong; by overthrowing way, *præcipiti viâ*, orig.; and therefore clepeth Cassiodore poverté the moder of ruine, that is to say, the moder of overthrowing or falling down

Over-thwart, *adv. Sax.* across, over against

Over-timeliche, *adv. Sax.* too early

Ovide, *pr. n.* Our Author seems to have been well acquainted with the best part of Ovid's works; most of the histories in his *Legende of Good Women* are taken from the *Epistolæ Heroidum* or the *Metamorphoses*; that of *Lucrece* shews that he had read the *Fasti*

Ought, *n. Sax.* any thing, *adv.* See Aught. The difference has arisen merely from the different usages of writing *a* or *o* for *one*

Ought, *part. t. of owe*

Oughten, oughte. From hence, as it seems, has been formed a new verb ought, which is very commonly used in the present tense for owe in both numbers. Ought is also used as an *imperf.* in the *pr.* and *part. t.*; wel ought us werke, well behoveth it us to work; hem oughte have gret repentance, it behoved them to have great repentance

Ounding, *n. Fr.* waving, imitating waves

Oures, *pr. poss. Sax.* ours

Out, *interj. Sax.* away

Out, *adv. Sax.* out and out, throughout

Outhees, *n. Lat. barb.* outcry; and born to London brigge full hie with outhays

Outrage, *n. Fr.* violence

Outraie, *v. Fr.* to fly out, to be outrageous

Out-rede, *v. Sax.* to surpass in counsel

Outrely, *adv. Fr.* utterly

Out-renne, *v. Sax.* to outrun

Outstraught, *part. t. of outstretch, v. Sax.* stretched out

Out-taken, *part. pa.* taken out, excepted; out-taken Crist en loft, Christ in heaven being excepted; out-take Carleon that was in Arthure tyme

Owe, *v. Sax.* debere; owen, *pl. e.*

Owen, owne, *part. pa.*

Owhere, *adv. Sax.* any where

Owndie, *adj. Fr.* waving

Oxenforde, *pr. n.* Oxford

Oyle, *pr. n.* a river in Picardy



## P.

- Pace, *v. Fr.* to pass away, to surpass  
 Page, *n. Fr.* a boy-child, a boy servant  
 Paie, *n. Fr.* liking, satisfaction  
 Paie, *v. Fr.* to please, to satisfy, to pay; paide, *part. pa.* pleased, payed  
 Paillet, *n. Fr.* a couch, (properly of straw)  
 Paindemaine, *n. Fr.* a sort of bread  
 Paire, *v. Fr.* to impair; if I speke ought to paire her loos, *i. e.* to impair their credit or reputation; so this line is written in edit. 1542, and *ms. Hunter*  
 Palamedes, *pr. n.* not the son of Nauplius, one of the Grecian commanders at the war of Troy, but a knight of the Round Table, called Palomides in *Mort d'Arthur*, the unsuccessful rival of Tristan, for the love of *la Belle Isoude*. See *Mort d'Arthur*, b. ii. which seems to be compiled chiefly from the *Roman de Tristan*  
 Palasins, *n. pl. Fr.* ladies palasins, ladies of the court; in the orig. *palatines*. See *Du Cange* in *v. Palatini*  
 Palatie, *pr. n. Palatia* in *Anatolia. Sp.*  
 Pale, *n.* a perpendicular stripe in heraldry  
 Pale, *v. Fr.* to make pale  
 Paleis, *n. Fr.* a palace  
 Palfreis, *n. pl. Fr.* horses for the road, where stedes are horses for battle; ne large palfrey esy for the nones  
 Paling, *n. Fr.* imitating pales  
 Palladion, *n. Gr.* the image of Pallas at Troy  
 Palled, *part. pa. Fr.* made pale  
 Palmeres, *n. pl.* pilgrims to foreign parts  
 Palmerie, *pr. n.* Palmyra in Syria  
 Pamphilus, *pr. n.*  
 Pampred, *part. pa.* pampered, made plump. See *Jun. Etymol.* who derives it from the *Fr. pampre*, a vine branch full of leaves  
 Pan, *pr. n.* the Heathen deity  
 Pan, *n. Sax.* the skull, the head  
 Panter, *n. Fr.* a net  
 Papelard, *n. Fr.* a hypocrite  
 Papelardie, *n. Fr.* hypocrisy  
 Paper-white, *adj.* white as paper  
 Par, *prep. Fr.* par amour, with love; par compagne, for company; par chance, by chance; par cuere, by heart, *memoriter*  
 Paraboles, *n. pl. Fr.* parables, the Proverbs of Solomon  
 Parage, *n. Fr.* kindred  
 Paraille, *n. Fr.* apparel  
 Paramour, paramours, *n. Fr.* love, gallantry, a lover of either sex  
 Paraventure, *adv. Fr.* haply, by chance  
 Paraunter, corruption of paraventure  
 Paræx, *n. pl. Lat.* the Fates  
 Parcel-mele, *adv.* by parcels or parts  
 Parde, pardiaux, a common French oath, which most of the personages in Chaucer expresses very frequently in English, with as little ceremony as the Greeks used their *en Δία*, and with as little meaning too  
 Pardoner, *n. Fr.* a seller of pardons or indulgences  
 Parements, *n. pl. Fr.* ornamental furniture & clothes  
 Parèntele, *n. Fr.* kindred  
 Parfay, *Fr. par foy*, by my faith  
 Parfei, as parfay  
 Parfit, *adj. Fr.* perfect  
 Parfitly, *adv.* perfectly  
 Parfourme, *v. Fr.* to perform  
 Parishens, *n. pl. Fr.* parishioners  
 Paritorie, *n. Fr. Lat.* the herb *parietaria*, or pellitory of the wall  
 Parlement, *n. Fr.* an assembly for consultation, a consultation  
 Parten, *inf. m. Fr.* to take part  
 Partie, *n. Fr.* a part, a party in a dispute  
 Parvis, *n. Fr.* a portico before a church, *Du Cange* in *v. Paradisus* 1. It appears that books were commonly sold *au Parvis devant Notre Dame* at Paris. At London the *Parvis* was frequented by Serjeants at Law. See *Fortescue de Laud. leg. Angl. c. li.* "Post meridiem curiæ non tenentur; sed placitantes tunc se divertunt ad Perivium et alibi, consulentes cum Servientibus ad Legem et aliis consiliariis suis." There is a difference of opinion where the *parvis* at London, to which the lawyers resorted, was situated; Somner supposes it to have been in Old-Palace-yard, before Westminster-hall, *Gloss. in X Script. v. Triforium*; but others, with more probability, think it was what Dugdale calls The Perivise of Pawles. When the Serjeants had dined in any of the inns of court, St. Paul's lay much more conveniently for an afternoon consultation than Westminster-hall  
 Pas, *n. Fr.* a footpace; his horse—on which he rode a pas ful softly  
 Pass, *v. Fr.* to surpass, to excel, to judge, to pass  
 Passant, passing, *part. pr.* excelling  
 Patren, *inf. m.* to pray, properly to repeat the *Patrenoster*  
 Pavade, *n.* a weapon of offence  
 Paumes, *n. pl. Fr.* the palms of the hands  
 Pax, to kiss the pax; for an account of this ceremony, see *Du Cange* in *v.*  
 Payen, *adj. Fr.* Pagan  
 Paynes, *n. pl.* Heathens  
 Paysaunce, *n.* pausing or stopping, *Gloss. Ur. q. 2*  
 Pecunial, *adj.* pecuniary, paid in money  
 Pees, *n. Fr.* peace; when used as an interjection, it signifies the same as hold thy pees, be silent  
 Peine, *n. Fr.* penalty; up peine of deth. See *Up.*—Grief, torment, labour  
 Peine, *v. Fr.* to torture, to put to pain; she peined hire, she took great pains  
 Peise, *v. Fr.* to poise, to weigh  
 Pell, *n.* a house, a cell, *Sp.* and *St. f.* a palace, *Gloss. Ur. q. 2*  
 Pellet, *n. Fr.* pelotte, a ball  
 Penance, *n. Fr.* repentance, pains to be undergone by way of satisfaction for sin, pain, sorrow  
 Penant, *n. Fr.* a person doing penance  
 Pencell, *n. Fr.* pennoncel, a small streamer  
 Penible, *adj.* industrious, pains taking  
 Penitencer, *n. Fr.* a priest who enjoins penance in extraordinary cases  
 Penmark, *pr. n.* a place in Bretagne

**Penner**, *n.* a pencase. In the inventory of the goods of Henry V. *Rot. Parl.* 2 H. VI. n. 15, m. 13, is the following article, *Un penner et 1 ynkborn d'arg. dorrez*; and again, m. 20, *1 pennere et 1 corne covert du velvet bloy*

**Penon**, *n.* *Fr.* a streamer or ensign

**Pens**, *n. pl.* *Sax.* pennies

**Pensell**, *n.* as pence

**Pensifched**, *n.* pensiveness

**Peper**, *n.* *Lat.* pepper; to brew pepper, seems to be an expression for the preparation of a hot pungent liquor which should burn the throats of the drinkers; in the orig. it is—*damus la brassent tel poivre*

**Peple**, *n.* *Fr.* people

**Peplish**, *adj.* vulgar

**Perche**, *n.* *Fr.* a perch for birds

**Percel**, *adv.* parcel

**Perda**, as *pardé*

**Pere**, *v.* to appear

**Pere**, *n.* *Fr.* a peer, an equal

**Peregai**, *adj.* equal

**Peregrine**, *adj.* *Fr.* wandering

**Pereles**, *adj.* without an equal

**Perjenete**, *n.* a young pear

**Pernasa**, *pr. n.* Mount Parnassus

**Perrie**, *n.* *Fr.* jewels, precious stones

**Perfaunt**, *part. pa.* *Fr.* piercing

**Perse**, *pr. n.* Persia

**Perse**, *adj.* *Fr.* sky coloured, of a bluish gray

**Perselee**, *n.* *Sax. Lat.* parsley

**Perfene**, *n.* *barb. Lat.* a man, generally a man of dignity, a parson or rector of a church

**Pertelote**, *pr. n.* of a hen

**Perturbe**, *v.* *Fr.* to trouble

**Perturbing**, *n.* disturbance

**Pervinke**, *n.* *Sax. Lat.* the herb periwinkle

**Pery**, *n.* *Fr.* a pear tree

**Pese**, *n.* *Fr.* as peas

**Peson**, *n. pl.* *Sax.* peas

**Pesible**, *adj.* peaceable

**Peter Alfonse**, Piers Alfonse

**Petrark**, *pr. n.* Our author has inserted a translation of the 104th sonnet of Petrarch into his *Troilus and Creseide*; it is not in the *Filosofo*: there seems to be no sufficient reason for believing that Chaucer had ever seen Petrarch.

**Peytre**, *n.* *Fr.* the breastplate of a horse

**Phisike**, *n.* *Fr.* medicine

**Phisiologus**, *pr. n.* There was a larger work with the same title in prose, which is frequently quoted by Vincent of Beauvais

**Phiton**, *pr. n.* the serpent Python

**Phitonesse**, *n.* *barb. Lat.* a witch

**Pie**, *n.* *Fr.* a magpie, a prating gossip or tell-tale

**Pierrie**, *n.* *Fr.* jewels, precious stones

**Piggesnie**. The Romans used *oculus* as a term of endearment; and perhaps *Piggesnie*, in vulgar language, only means *oculus*, the eyes of that animal being remarkably small

**Pight**, *pa. t.* of pike, *v.* *Sax.* pitched

**Pike**, *v.* *Sax.* to pitch, to pick, as a hawk does his feathers, to steal, to peep

**Pike**, *n.* *Sax.* a fish so called

**Pikerel**, *n.* *Sax.* a young pike

**Pilche**, *n.* *Sax.* a coat or cloak of skins, *Prov.* 4; *toga pellicea*, *Junius* in v.

**Piler**, *n.* *Fr.* a pillar

**Pille**, *v.* *Fr.* piller, to rob, to plunder

**Pilled**, rather piled, *part. pa.* *Fr.* *pilé*, bald

**Pillours**, *n. pl.* *Fr.* plunderers

**Pilwe**, *n.* *Sax.* a pillow

**Pilwe-bere**, *n.* *Sax.* the covering of a pillow

**Piment**, *n.* *barb. Lat.* spiced wine, wine mixed with honey

**Pinche**, *v.* *Fr.* to squeeze; ther conde no wight pinche at his writing, no one could lay hold of any flaw in his writings

**Pine**, *n.* *Sax.* pain, grief

**Pine**, *v.* *Sax.* to torment

**Pined**, *part. pa.* tortured

**Pipe**, *v.* *Sax.* to play on a pipe; to pipe in an ivy lefe, is put for any useless employment, as is now said of a disappointed man, He may go whistle. See Buckes horn

**Pistell**, *n.* *Sax. Lat.* an epistle, a short lesson

**Pitance**, *n.* *Fr.* a mess of victuals; it properly means an extraordinary allowance of victuals given to monasticks, in addition to their usual commons. See *Du Cange* in v. *Picantia*

**Pith**, *n.* *Sax.* marrow, strength

**Pitous**, *adj.* *Fr.* merciful, compassionate, exciting compassion

**Pitously**, *adv.* pitifully

**Plage**, *n.* *Lat.* the plague

**Plages**, *n. pl.* *Lat.* the divisions of the globe; the plagies of the north, the northern regions

**Plain**, *n.* *Fr.* a plain

**Plain**, *adj.* simple, clear; it is often used as an adverb

**Plain**, *v.* to make plain

**Plaine**, *v.* *Fr.* to complain

**Plainliche**, *adv.* plainly

**Plat**, *platte*, *adj.* *Fr.* flat, plain, the flat of a sword; it is often used as an adverb; all plat, *i. e.* flatly; full plat and eke ful plain

**Plate**, *n.* a flat piece of metal; a breast-plate, armour for the breast; a pair of plates, armour for the breast and back

**Play**, *n.* *Sax.* sport, pleasure

**Play**, *v.* to sport, to take pleasure, to act upon a stage, to play upon musical instruments, to lead a pilgrimage, to withdraw upon pretence of going on a pilgrimage

**Ple**, *n.* *Fr.* an argument or pleading

**Plein**, *adj.* *Fr.* full, perfect

**Plenere**, *adj.* *Fr.* complete

**Plefance**, *n.* *Fr.* pleasure

**Plesinges**, *n. pl.* pleasures

**Plete**, *v.* *Fr.* to plead

**Pleting**, *n.* pleading

**Plie**, *v.* *Fr.* to bend or mold

**Plight**, *n.* condition

**Plight**, *pa. t.* & *part.* of pluck, *v.* *Sax.* pulled, plucked

**Plighte**, *v.* *Sax.* to engage, to promise

**Plighte**, *pa. t.* plighen, *pl.*

**Plite**, *v.* to plait or fold. See *Plie*

**Plite**, *n.* condition, form. See *plight*

**Plungy**, *adj.* *Fr.* wet, rainy

Poileis, *adj. Fr.* of Apulia, anciently called Poile.  
*William's dogter Converse in Poyle to wyve be*  
*name*

Point, *n. Fr.* the principal business, a stop or full point; in good point, in good case or condition; at point devise, with the greatest exactness; at point to brest, in point for to brest, ready to burst

Pointel, *n. Fr.* a style or pencil for writing

Poirren, *inf. m. v. Fr.* to prick with any thing pointed

Poke, *n. Fr.* a pocket, a bag. See Pouche

Poke, *v. Fr.* to thrust

Polive, *n.* a pulley

Pollax, *n. Sax.* a halberd, *bipennis. Prompt. Parv.*

Pomel, *n. Fr.* any ball or round thing, the top of the head

Pomeleê, *adj. Fr.* spotted with round spots like apples, dappled; pomelee gris, of a dapple-gray colour

Popelot, *n.* This word may either be considered as a diminutive from pouple, a puppet, or as a corruption of papellot, a butterfly

Popet, *n. Fr.* a puppet

Popingay, *n.* a parrot; *papegaut, Fr. papegaye, Belg. papagallo, Ital.*

Popped, *adj. Fr.* nicely dressed

Popper, *n.* jolly poper, a bodkin, according to *Sp.* and *Sk.* who however produce no authority for such interpretation. The name seems to be fitter for a pistol

Pore, *v.* to look earnestly, *poren, pr. t. pl.*

Pore, *adj.* for poure

Porisme, *n. Gr.* is used in the sense of—a coronary, a theorem deduced from another

Porphurie, *pr. n.* of a species of marble, porphyry

Port, *n. Fr.* carriage, behaviour

Portecolise, *n. Fr.* a falling gate, a portcullis

Portor, *n.* a breviary, *Du Cange in v. Portiforium*

Pose, *n.* a rheum or defluxion obstructing the voice, *catarris, corisa, Prompt. Parv.*

Pose, *v. Fr.* to suppose; I pose I had sinned so

Posse, *v. Fr.* to push

Polled, *part. pa.*

Possessioners, *n. pl. Lat.* an invidious name for such religious communities as were endowed with lands, &c. the mendicant orders professed to live entirely upon alms

Post, *n. Sax.* a prop or support

Possé, *n. Fr.* power

Potecary, *n. Fr.* an apothecary

Potent, *n. Fr.* a crutch, a walking-stick

Potential, *adj. Fr.* strong, powerful

Potestat, *n. Fr.* a principal magistrate

Pouche, *n. Fr.* pocket, pouch

Poudre, *n. Fr.* powder, *poudres, pl.*

Poverté, *n. Fr.* poverty; it is to be pronounced po-verte, the final *e* being considered as an *e* feminine

Poulce, *n. Fr.* the poulse

Poule, *pr. n.* St. Paul

Pounsoned, *part. pa.* punched with a bodkin

Poupe, *v.* to make a noise with a horn

Pourchace, *n. Fr.* to buy, to provide

Pourchas, *n. Fr.* acquisition, purchase

Poure, *v.* as pore

Poure, *adj. Fr.* poor

Pourtraie, *v. Fr.* to draw a picture

Pourtraieur, *n.* a drawer of pictures

Pourtaiture, a picture or drawing

Practike, *n. Fr.* practice

Preamble, *n. Fr.* preface

Preambulatioun, *n.* preamble

Precious, *adj. Fr.* over nice

Predestiné, *n. Fr.* predestination

Predication, *n. Fr.* preaching, a sermon

Prees, *n. Fr.* a press or crowd

Prese, preve, *n. Fr.* proof, trial; at preve, on trial; with evil prese, evil may it prove. See [trate

Prefect, *n. Fr. Lat.* a governor or principal magis-

Preise, *n. Fr.* commendation

Preise, *v. Fr.* to commend, to value

Prenis, *n. Fr.* an apprentice

Prentishode, *n.* apprenticeship

Preparat, *part. pa. Lat.* prepared

Prés, *adv. Fr.* near, so I suspect this word is to be understood; of prés, *i. e.* at hand, close; *de prés, Fr.* or perhaps of prés may be put for in a press. See Prees

Prese, *v. Fr.* to press or crowd

Present, *v. Fr.* to offer, to make a present of; and with the wine she gan hem to present; and smote his head of, his fader to present

Presentarie, *adj. Lat.* present

Prest, *adj. Fr.* ready

Pretend, *v. Fr.* to lay claim to

Preterit, *adj. Fr.* passed

Preve, *v. Fr.* to try, to demonstrate by trial

Preve, *v. neut.* to turn out upon trial

Prick, *n. Sax.* a point, a pointed weapon

Prick, prike, *v. Sax.* to wound, to spur a horse, to ride hard

Prickasour, *n.* a hard rider

Pricking, *n.* hard riding

Prideles, *adj. Sax.* without pride

Prie, *v.* to look curiously

Prikkè, *n.* See Prick

Prime, *adj. Fr. Lat.* first; at prime temps, at the first time; at prime face, at first appearance

Prime, *n.* the first quarter of the artificial day; half way prime, prime half spent; prime large, prime far advanced

Primerole, *n. Fr.* a primrose, *Conf. Am. 148. b.*

Primetemps, *n. Fr.* spring

Pris, *n. Fr.* price, praise; it be prys, or it be blame, *Conf. Am. 165*

Privé, *adj. Fr.* private; privé and apert, private and public; privé man, a man entrusted with private business

Prively, *adv.* privately

Privetee, *n.* private business

Proesse, *n. Lat.* progress

Proessioun, *n. Fr.* the monastic profession

Proheme, *n. Fr. Gr.* a preface

Proine, *v. Fr.* provigner; it seems to have signified originally to take cuttings from vines, in order to plant them out; from hence it has been used for the cutting away of the superfluous shoots of all trees, which we now call pruning,



and for that operation which birds, and particularly hawks, perform upon themselves, of picking out their superfluous or damaged feathers. In allusion to this last sense, Damian is said to proine and pike himself. Gower, speaking of an eagle, says,

For there he pruneth him and piketh,  
As doth an hauke, whan him wel liketh.

*Conf. Am. 139.*

Prolle, *v.* to go about in search of a thing  
Provable, *adj. Fr.* capable of being demonstrated  
Provende, *n. Fr. præbenda, Lat.* a prebend, a daily or annual allowance or stipend. See *Du Cange* in *v. Præbenda*  
Provendre, *n.* a prebendary  
Proverbe, *n. Fr. Lat.* a prudential maxim  
Proverbe, *v.* to speak proverbially  
Provostry, *n. Fr.* the office of provost or prefect; *præfectura*  
Prow, *n. Fr.* profit, advantage  
Prowle, *n. Fr.* integrity  
Pruce, *pr. n.* Prussia  
Pruce, *adj.* Prussian  
Pruned, *pa. t.* as proined  
Ptholomee, *pr. n.*  
Puella and Rubeus, the names of two figures in geomancy, representing two constellations in heaven: Puella signifieth Mars retrograde, and Rubeus Mars direct, *Sp.*  
Pulchritude, *n. Lat.* beauty  
Pullaile, *n. Fr.* poultry  
Pulled hen, I have been told since that a hen, whose feathers are pulled or plucked off, will not lay any eggs; if that be true, there is more force in the epithet than I apprehended  
Punice, *v. Fr.* to punish  
Pure, *adj. Fr.* mere, very  
Pured, *part. pa.* purified  
Purfiled, *part. pa. Fr.* worked upon the edge  
Purpos, *n. Fr.* purpose, design, proposition in discourse  
Purprise, *n. Fr.* an enclosure  
Purveyance, *n. Fr.* foresight, providence, provision  
Purveye, *v.* to foresee, to provide  
Puterie, *n. Fr.* whoredom  
Putours, *n. pl.* whoremongers  
Pythagoras, *pr. n.*

Q.

Quad, quade, *adj. Teut.* bad; none quad, nothing evil  
Quaile-pipe, *n.* a pipe used to call quails  
Quaire, *n. Fr.* a quire of paper, a book  
Quakke, *n.* seems to be put for an inarticulate noise occasioned by any obstruction in the throat  
Qualme, *n. Sax.* sickness, the noise made by a raven  
Quappe, *v.* to tremble, to quake  
Quarels, *n. pl. Fr.* square arrows  
Queint, *n.* See *Junii Etymolog.* in *v.*  
Queinte, *adj. Fr.* strange; I made of that lefe full

queint, he made it strange, cunning, artful, trift, neat  
Queinte, *pa. t.* and *part.* of quench, *v. Sax.* quenched  
Queintise, *n.* trimness, neatness, excessive trimness, cunning  
Quelle, *v. Sax.* to kill, to destroy  
Queme, *v. Sax.* to please; wel me quemeth, *Conf. Am. 63*  
Quene, *n. Sax.* a queen, a harlot  
Querne, *n. Sax.* a handmill  
Querrou, *n. Fr.* one that works in a stone quarry  
Queste, *n. Fr.* a prayer or demand  
Quest-mongers, *n. pl.* packers of inquests or juries  
Quethe, *v. Sax.* to say, to declare; I quethe him quite, is a translation of an old technical term in the law *Glamo illi quietum*; the original *Fr.* has only *Je quite*  
Quik, *adj. Sax.* alive  
Quikkeft, *superl. d.* speediest; the quikkeft firete, the molt expeditious way  
Quiken, *v. Sax.* to make alive  
Quiked, *part. pa.* made alive  
Quiked, *pa. t.* of the same *v.* used in a neutral sense, became alive  
Quinible, *n.* is the instrument, I suppose, which is called in barb. *Lat. quinterna* and *quintaria*. See *Du Cange* and *Carpentier* in *v. Quinternizare*, and *Mebus, Vita d' Ambr. Camald. lyrâ, limbusâ, quintaria, ribebâ, avenâ, tibisique*  
Quishin, *n. Fr.* a cushion  
Quisron, *n.* a beggar, *Gloss Ur.* I rather believe it signifies a scullion, *un garçon de cuisine*  
Quite, *adj. Fr.* free, quiet  
Quite, *v. Fr.* to requite, to pay for, to acquit  
Quitte, *part. pa.* requitted  
Quitely, *adv.* freely, at liberty  
Quod, *pa. t.* of quethe, said  
Quoke, *pa. t.* of quake, *v. Sax.* trembled, shook

R.

Ra, *n. Sax.* a roe deer  
Racine, *n. Fr.* a root  
Rad, radde, *pa. t.* of rede, *v. Sax.* advised, explained, *Du. 281*  
Radevore, tapestry; *ras*, in *Fr.* signifies any stuff, as *ras de Châlons, ras de Gennes, ras de Vore* or *Vaur*, may be a stuff made at such a place, *Gloss Ur.* There is a town in Languedoc called *La Vaur*, but I know not that it was ever famous for tapestry  
Raffles, *n. pl. Fr.* plays with dice  
Rafte, *pa. t.* of reve, *v. Sax.* took away  
Rage, *v. Fr.* to toy wantonly  
Ragerie, *n.* wantonness  
Ragounes, should probably be jagonces, as in the orig. *Fr.* the precious stones called jacinths or hyacinths  
Rames, *pr. n.* the city of Rennes in Bretagne  
Rake-stele, *n. Sax.* the handle of a rake  
Rakel, *adj.* hasty, rash  
Rakelness, *n.* rashness  
Raket, to play racket, nettle in dock out, seems to be used as a proverbial expression, signifying to



- be inconstant; what the original of the phrase may have been, is not so clear
- Ramage, *adj. Fr.* wild
- Rammith, *adj. Sax.* rank like a ram
- Rampe, *v. Fr.* to climb; she rampeth in my face, the rifs against me, flies in my face
- Ran, *pa. t. of renne, rannen, pl.*
- Rape, *adv.* quickly, speedily
- Rape, *v. haste*
- Rape, *v. Sax.* to take captive; to rape and renne, to seize and plunder. See Renne
- Rasis, *pa. n.* an Arabian physician of the 10th century. See *Fabric. Bibl. Gr. t. xiii. p. 46, in v. Al-bubacir*
- Raskaile, *n.* a pack of rascals
- Rated, *part. pa.* chidden
- Rathe, *adv. Sax.* soon, early, speedily
- Rather, *comp. d.* sooner
- Ratheft, *superl. d.* soonest
- Rather, *adj. Sax. comp. d.* former
- Ratouns, *n. pl. Fr.* rats
- Raught, *pa. t. of ræcan, v. Sax.* reached; on his way he raught, he sprang forth on his way
- Raught, *pa. t. of reccan, v. Sax.* cared, recked
- Raveners, (ravinours) *n. pl.* plunderers
- Ravine, *n. Fr.* rapine; fowles of raven, birds of prey
- Ravifable, *adj. Fr.* ravenous
- Ravishing, *part. pr. Fr.* rapid; with a ravishing swiegh; *rafido turbine*, orig. See Swegh
- Raunson, *n.* ransom
- Rayed, *part. 57.* streaked or striped, *Du. 252*
- Real, *adj. Fr.* royal
- Realler, *comp. d.* more royal
- Reallich, *adv.* royally
- Realtee, *n.* royalty
- Rebekke, *pr. n.* Rebecca
- Rebekke, *n. Fr.* a musical instrument
- Rechafed, *pa. t. Fr.* a term in hunting, *Du. 579*
- Recche, rekke, *v. Sax.* to care
- Reccheles, *adj.* careless
- Recchelesnesse, *n.* carelessness
- Reclaime, *v. Fr.* a term in falconry for bringing the hawk to the fist by a certain call
- Reclaiming, *n.* calling, in the sense of reclaime
- Recomfort, *v. Fr.* to comfort
- Record, *n. Fr.* witness, testimony
- Recorde, *v. Fr.* to remember; it sometimes seems to be used in a technical legal sense, for what is called to enter upon record in judicial proceedings
- Recreandise, *n. Fr.* signifies fear, cowardice, desertion of principle
- Recreant, *adj.* one who yields himself to his adversary in single combat; for the full import of these two words, see *Du Gange* in *v. Recre-dentia*
- Recure, *n. Fr.* recovery
- Recured, *part. pa. Fr.* recovered
- Redde, red, *pa. t. of rede, v. Sax.*
- Reddour, *n. Fr.* strength, violence
- Rede, *n. Sax.* advice, counsel, a reed
- Rede, *v. Sax.* to advise, to read, to explain, *Du. 279*
- Rede, *adj. Sax.* red
- Redoute, *v. Fr.* to fear
- Redouting, *n.* reverence
- Redresse, *v. Fr.* to recover, to make amends for
- Refect, *part. pa. Lat.* recovered
- Religuring, *part. pa. Fr.* figuring again
- Refrain, *n. Fr.* the burden of a song
- Refraining, *n.* the singing of the burden of a song
- Refreide, *v. Fr.* to cool
- Refrete, *n.* the same as refrain, in *Ber.* it is printed corruptly *frefreit*
- Reste, riste, *n. Sax.* a chink or crevice
- Refute, *n. Fr.* refuge
- Regals, *n. pl. Fr.* royalties
- Regard, *n. Fr.* at regard of, with respect to, in comparison of
- Regne, *n. Fr.* a kingdom
- Rehete, *v. Fr.* rehaite, to revive, to cheer
- Reheting, *n.* according to several miss. and all the reheting of his likes fore; some miss. and most of the printed editions read *richesse* instead of reheting. *Gloss. Ur.* *Richesse*, though almost as awkward an expression as the other, is more agreeable to the corresponding passage in the *Filoftrato*—
- E fufpir che gli avea a gran doxia.—
- and one can hardly conceive that it could come from any hand but that of the author. I can make no sense of reheting; but at the same time I must allow, that it is not likely to have been inserted by way of a gloss [orig.]
- Reile, *v. neut.* to roll; reileth diversely; vogatur,
- Reines. See Raines
- Rejoie, *v. Fr.* to rejoice
- Reke, *v. Sax.* to exhale
- Reken, *v. Sax.* to reckon, to come to a reckoning
- Rekes, *n. pl. Sax.* ricks (of corn)
- Relaies, *n. pl. Fr.* fresh sets of hounds, *Du. 362*
- Relese, *n. Sax.* what is left
- Relces, *n. Fr.* release
- Religiousite, *n. Fr.* persons of a religious profession, the clergy
- Relike, *n. Fr.* a relic, relikes, *pl.*
- Remenant, *n. Fr.* a remnant, a remaining part
- Remes, *n. pl. Fr.* realms
- Remissails, *n. pl. Fr.* orts, leavings
- Remorde, *v. Fr.* to cause remorse, to afflict
- Remuable, *adj. Fr.* moveable, inconstant
- Remue, remewe, remeve, *v. Fr.* to remove, *Conf. Am. 164. b.*
- Remued, *pa. t.*
- Renably, *adv. Fr.* reasonably
- Renegate, *n. Fr.* an apostate from Christianity
- Renec, *v. Fr.* to renounce, to abjure
- Renges, *n. pl. Fr.* ranks, the steps of a ladder
- Renne, *v. Sax.* to run, to rend
- Renomee, *n. Fr.* renown
- Renovelance, *n. Fr.* a renewing
- Renovelle, *v. Fr.* to renew
- Rent, *v. Sax.* to tear or rend
- Repaire, *n. Fr.* resort
- Repaire, *v. Fr.* to return
- Repentant, *part. pr. Fr.* repenting
- Represe, repreve, *n. Fr.* reproof [sing]
- Repreffion, *n.* seems to be put for power of repress
- Y y ij

**Requere**, *v. Fr.* to require  
**Rere**, *v. Sax.* to raise  
**Rescous**, *n. Fr.* rescue  
**Rescove**, *v. Fr.* to rescue  
**Reson**, *n. Fr.* reason, proportion  
**Resons**, *n. pl. Fr.* discourses  
**Respite**, *n.* may perhaps be put for respect  
**Respiten**, *inf. m. Fr.* to grant a respite, to excuse  
**Resport**, *n.* is probably put for respect  
**Reste**, *n. Sax.* repose  
**Reste**, *v. Sax.* to repose, to cease from labour  
**Retenue**, *n. Fr.* retinue; at his retenue retained by him  
**Rethor**, *n. Fr. Lat.* an orator or rhetorician  
**Reve**, *n. Sax.* a steward or bailif  
**Reve**, *v. Sax.* to take away  
**Revel**, *n. Fr.* entertainment, properly during the night, sport, festivity  
**Revelour**, *n.* a reveller  
**Revelrie**, *n.* pleasure  
**Revers**, *adj. Fr.* contrary  
**Reverse**, *v. Fr.* to overturn  
**Revert**, *v. Fr.* to turn back  
**Revest**, *v. Fr.* to clothe again  
**Rew**, *n.* a row or line; on a rew, in a line; all by rew. See *A'row*  
**Rewake**, *v. Sax.* to waken again  
**Reward**, *n. Fr.* regard, respect; take reward of thine own value, have regard to thine own value; in reward of, in comparison with. See *Regard*  
**Rewe**, *v. Sax.* to have compassion, to suffer, to have cause to repent  
**Reyes**, *n. pl.* dances in use among the Dutch. *Reye*, Belg. *Chorea celerior, chorea in longam seriem*, Kilian  
**Reysed**, "Les Gandois firent une *rese* sur les marches de Haynault, et dedans le pays pille-  
 "rent, bruslerent, et firent moult de maux."  
*Mem. de la March.* p. 384, where a note in the margin says, "*Reyse* en bas Alemand," signify "un voyage ou course."  
**Ribaninges**, *n. pl.* seems to signify borders  
**Ribaude**, *n.* a poor labourer; but the word generally implies profligacy of manners, as well as meanness of condition. See *Du Gange* in *v. Ribaldus*  
**Ribaudrie**, *n.* ribaldry, indecent words or actions  
**Ribibe**, *n.* a sort of musical instrument  
**Ribible**, *n.* a small ribibe  
**Richard**, *pr.* I have vindicated the character of this heroic prince from an aspersion which was first cast upon him, I find, by Mr. Rymer, in consequence of a mistaken construction of a passage in Hoveden; I am tempted to add here the beginning of a poem which, having been composed after his death, by Anselm Faydit, must stand clear of all suspicion of having been either begged or bought

For chaufaes et tot lo maior dan,  
 El maior dol, las! q eu anc mais agues,  
 Et zo, don dei toz temps plaigner ploran,  
 M aven a dir en chantar et retraire,  
 De cel q era de valorz caps et paire.  
 Li reis valenz *Rizard*, reis des Engles,

Es morz; ai Deus! cals perda et cals danz es!  
 Can esiraing moz et qan greu per audir!  
 Ben a dur cor toz hom co po sofrir.

Morz es li reis, et son passat milan  
 Qanc tan pros hom no fo ne nol vit res,  
 Ne ia mais hom non et del sen senblant,  
 Tan lars, tan pros, tan ardiz, tals donaire;  
 Q Alixandres lo reis, qe venqi Daire,  
 No cuit qe tan dones ni tan messes,  
 Ni an Charles ni Artus tan valgues,  
 Q a tot lo mon sen fez, q n vol ver dir,  
 Als us doptar et als altres grazir.

*Ms. Crofts, fol. 111.*

**Richesse**, *n. Fr.* wealth, riches, *pl.* riches  
**Riddeled**, *part. pa.* plaited, *Gloss. Ur.*  
**Ridden**, *part. pa.* of ride; he is ridden, they be ridden, he had ridden  
**Ride**, *v. Sax.* he rideth him  
**Riding**, *n.* probably a procession  
**Rife**, *rive*, *v. Sax.* to thrust through  
**Right**, *n. Sax.* a right or due; at alle rightes; at all points  
**Right**, *adj.* good, true  
**Right**, *adv.* truly, rightly, exactly, completely; it is frequently joined to adjectives, as the adverbs well and full are, to augment their force  
**Rime**, *n. Fr.* a composition in rhyme; hence the title of The rime of Sire Thopas. *Rime-doggerel.* See *Doggerel*  
**Rimeyed**, *part. pa. Fr.* composed in rhyme or verse  
**Rimpled**, *part. pa. Sax.* wrinkled  
**Ring**, *v. Sax.* to make to sound, *v. neut.* to sound  
**Rife**, *n. Sax.* small twigs of trees or bushes  
**Rishe**, *n. Sax.* a rush  
**Rift**, for riseth  
**Rit**, for rideth  
**Rivage**. See *Arivage*  
**Rive**, *v. neut. Sax.* to split, to fall asunder  
**Riveling**, *part. pr. Sax.* wrinkling; *ruyffelen*, Belg. *rugare*, Kilian  
**Roche**, *n. Fr.* a rock; *roches*, *pl.*  
**Rode**, *n. Sax.* the cross; rode-beem; it is also called the rode-tree, from its being made of wood  
**Rode**, *n. Sax.* complexion  
**Rody**, *adj. Sax.* ruddy  
**Rose**, *pa. t.* of rife; *roste* should probably be *rose*  
**Rogge**, *v. Sax.* to shake; *roggyn* or *mevyn*, *agito*, *Prompt. Parv.*  
**Roigne**, *n. Fr.* a scab, mange  
**Roignous**, *adj. Fr.* scabby, rough  
**Rokette**, *n. Fr.* a loose upper garment  
**Roking**, *part. pr.* of *rokke* or *rogge*, *v. neut. Sax.* shaking, trembling; *roggyn* or *waveryn*, *vacillo*, *Prompt. Parv.*  
**Rombel**, *n.* a rumbling noise, rumour  
**Rome**, *v. Sax.* to walk about  
**Rondel**, *n. Fr.* a rhyme or sonnet which ends as it begins, *Cotgrave*  
**Rone**, *pr. n.* Rouen in Normandy  
**Rone**, *pa. t.* of rain, *v. Sax.* rained  
**Ropen**, *part. pa.* of *repe*, *v. Sax.* reaped  
**Rosalgar**, red arsenic, a preparation of orpiment  
*Chambers* in *v. Realgar*. It should rather per-



haps have been written Ryfalgzr, with mss. c. i., as the Latin name is *rifigallum*  
 Rosen, *adj.* rosy  
 Roser, *n.* Fr. a rosebush  
 Rose-red, *adj.* red as a rose  
 Rote, *n.* Sax. a root  
 Rote, a root in astrology  
 Rote, *n.* a musical instrument. See *Du Cange* in v. *Rotta*. Notker, who lived in the 10th century, says that it was the ancient *psalterium*, but altered in its shape, with an additional number of strings, *Schiller*, in v. *Rotta*  
 Rote, *n.* Fr. practice; by rote, by heart, *par ratine*, *Cotg.*  
 Rote, *v.* Sax. to rot  
 Roten, *part. pa.*  
 Rother, *n.* Sav. the rudder of a ship  
 Rought, for raught, *part. t.* of recche  
 Rouke *v.* Sax. to lie close; but now they rucken in her nest *Comf. Am.* 72.  
 Roule, *v.* neut. Sax. to roll, to run easily; where some copies have royle. See *Reile*  
 Roume, *n.* Sax. room, space  
 Roume, *adj.* wide, spacious  
 Roumer, *comp. d.* wider  
 Rouncevall, *pr. n.*  
 Rouncie, *n.* barb. Lat. a common hackney horse. See *Du Cange* in v. *Runcinus*  
 Roundel, *n.* Fr. a sort of song. See *Rondel*—a circular figure  
 Route, *n.* Fr. a company  
 Route, *v.* to assemble in a company  
 Route, *v.* Fr. to snore, to rear,  
 Routhe, *n.* Sax. compassion, the object of compassion  
 Routheles, *adj.* without compassion  
 Row, *n.* a line of writing. See *Rew*  
 Row, *adj.* Sax. rough,—he looked wel rowe  
 Rowne, *v.* Sax. to whisper  
 Rubeus. See *Puella*  
 Rubins, *n.* pl. Fr. rubies  
 Rucking, *part. pr.* of rucke, or rouke, *v.* Sax. lying close  
 Rudde, *n.* Sax. complexion. See *Rode*  
 Ruddock, *n.* Sax. a bird called robin red-breast  
 Rufus, *pr.* — a Greek physician, of whose works some are extant. See *Fabric. Bibl. Gr.* l. iv. c. 3.  
 Ruggy, *adj.* rough  
 Russel, *pr. n.* the fox is called Dan Russel, from his red colour, I suppose

## S.

Sachelles, *n.* pl. Fr. small sacks  
 Sacked freres, friars wearing a coarse upper garment, called *saccus*, *Mat. Paris*, ed. an. 1257;  
 "Eodem tempore novus ordo apparuit Londini  
 "de quibusdam fratribus ignotis et non praevis,  
 "lis, qui, quia *saccis* incedebant induti, *fratres*  
 "Saccati vocabentur."  
 Sacre, *n.* Fr. a sacred solemnity  
 Sade, *adj.* Sax. grave, steady, sorrowful, repentant.

Sadly, *adv.* steadily, carefully; this messenger drank sadly ale and wine; this messenger applied himself to drink, ale and wine  
 Sadness, *n.* gravity, steadiness  
 Saffron, *v.* Fr. to tinge with saffron  
 Saie for seie, *part. t.* of se *v.* Sax. saw  
 Saile, *v.* Fr. to assail  
 Sailours, *n.* pl. may mean dancers, from the *Lat. Fr.*; so in *Pierce Plough*, 68, for I can—neither sayien, ne faute, ne syng, to the gyterne: the lines which Chaucer has here translated are not in the best edit. of the *Rom. de la Rose*, Paris, 1735, but they are quoted by Junius, *Etym. Ling. Angl.* in v. *Timbessere*, from an edit. of 1529;

Après y eut farces joyeuses,  
 Et batelleurs et batelleuses,  
 Qui de passe passe jouoyent.  
 Et en l'air ung bassin ruoyent,  
 Puis le scavoyent bien recueillir  
 Sur ung doy, sans point y faillir.

where it is plain that the author is speaking of jugglers rather than dancers

Saine, for seine, *part. pa.* of se, *v.* Sax. seen  
 Saine, *pr. n.* the river Seine  
 Salade, *n.* Fr. a sort of armour for the breast  
 Salades, *n.* pl. Fr. fallads of herbs  
 Salewe, *salue*, *v.* Fr. to salute  
 Salued, *part. pa.*  
 Saluings, *n.* pl. salutations  
 Samite, *n.* Fr. Gr. a rich silk. See *Du Cange* in v. *Exanitus*  
 Sanguin, *adj.* Fr. of a blood-red colour  
 Sarlinishe, should perhaps be sarlinishe, from the *Fr. sarrafinois*, a sort of fine silk used for veils. See *Du Cange* in v. *Saracenicum* and *Saracenum*. It is still called *sarcenet*  
 Sarpleres, *n.* pl. packages of a larger size than sacks. See *Du Cange* in v. *Sarplerium*. *Surpil-lere*, *Fr.* a piece of canvas, &c. to wrap or pack up wares in. *Cotgrave*  
 Saten, *part. t.* pl. of sit, *v.* Sax.  
 Satalie, *pr. n.* the ancient Attalia  
 Save, *n.* Lat. the herb sage  
 Sauf, *adj.* Fr. safe. See *Vouche*—saved or excepted  
 Saveté, *n.* Fr. safety  
 Saule, for foule  
 Savour, *v.* neut. Fr. to taste, to relish  
 Savouring, *n.* Fr. the sense of tasting  
 Savourous, *adj.* sweet, pleasant  
 Saufelleme, a composition, of which two of the ingredients are brimstone and quicksilver  
 Sautes, *n.* pl. Fr. assault  
 Sautrie, *n.* Fr. Gr. a musical string instrument. See *Rote*  
 Sawe, *n.* Sax. speech, discourse,—a proverb or wise saying  
 Say, for sey, *part. t.* of se, *v.* Sax. saw  
 Scall, *n.* Sav. a scale or scab  
 Scalled, *adj.* scabby, scurfy  
 Scantilone, *n.* Fr. a pattern, a scantling  
 Scarce, *adj.* Fr. sparing, stingy  
 Scariot, *pr. n.* Judas Iscariot



Scarmishe, *n. Fr.* a skirmish, a battle  
 Scathe, *n. Sax.* harm, damage  
 Scatheful, scatheliche, *adj.* pernicious  
 Scatheles, *adj.* without harm  
 Schlaundre, *n. Fr.* slander  
 Slendre, *adj.* slender  
 Stochons, *n. pl. Fr.* scutcheons of arms  
 Stolaie, *v. Fr.* to attend school, to study  
 Script, *n. Fr.* a writing  
 Scriptures, *n. pl. Fr.* writings, books  
 Scriven-like, like a scrivener or writing-master;

*comme une scrivain*

Seames, *n. pl. Sax.* seams, sutures

Secree, *adj. Fr.* secret

Secreneffe, *n.* privacy

Seculer, *adj. Fr.* of the laity, in opposition, to clerical,

Sede, *v. Sax.* to produce seed

See, *n. Fr.* a seat, sees, *pl.*

See, *v. Sax.* to see; God you see; God him see; may God keep you or him in his sight; God you save and see; to look; on to see—to look on—that ye wolden sometime friendly on me see; that ye would sometimes look friendly on me

See, *n. Sax.* the see; the grete see. A learned friend has suggested to me, that the sea on the coast of Palestine is called The Great Sea in the Bible, [See *Numb.* xxxiv. 6, 7, *Job.* xv. 12,] which puts the meaning of the appellation in this passage out of all doubt

Sege, *n. Fr.* a siege

Seie, *sey, pa. t. of see, v. Sax.* saw, *part. pa.* seen

Seignorie *n. Fr.* power

Sein, *part. pa. of see, v. Sax.* seen

Seinde, *part. pa. of senge, v. Sax.* singled

Seint, *n. Fr.* ceint, a girdle

Seintuarie, *n. Fr.* sanctuary

Seke, *v. Sax.* to seek

Seke, *adj. Sax.* sick

Selden, *adv. Sax.* seldom, seldom time

Sele, *n. Fr.* a seal, seles, *pl.*

Self, selve, *adj. Sax.* answering to the *Belg.* self, the *Fr.* *même*, the *Lat.* *ipse*, and the *Gr.* *αυτός*. With the article prefixed, it answers to the *Lat.* *idem* and the *Goth.* *sumo*, from whence our same; in the selve moment, in the same moment; in the selve place, in the same place.—These two usages of the *adj.* self, when joined to a substantive, might be confirmed by the uniform practice of all our writers from the earliest times down to SHAKESPEARE, but as they are both now obsolete, I choose rather to take this opportunity of adding a few words, upon the usage of the *adj.* self, when joined to a pronoun, in which light only it appears to have been considered by Wallis, when he pronounced it a substantive, answering nearly to the Latin *persona*.—Dr. Johnson, in his Dictionary, has very rightly established the primary signification of self to be that of an adjective; but in its connexions with pronouns he seems rather inclined to suppose it a substantive; first, because it is joined to possessive or adjective pronouns, as my, thy, her, &c.; and, secondly, because it has a plural number, selves, contrary to the nature of the English adjective.—The latter reason, I think, cannot have much

weight, when it is remembered that the use of selves, as the plural number of self, has been introduced into our language since the time of Chaucer. Selven, which was originally the accusative *ca. sing.* of self, is used by him indifferently in both numbers; I myselven; ye yourselven; he himselven. The former reason also will lose its force, if this shall be admitted, that in their combinations with self, the pronouns my, thy, her, our, your, are not to be considered as possessive or adjective, but as the old oblique cases of the personal pronouns, I, thou, she, we, ye. According to this hypothesis the use of these combinations, with respect to the pronouns, is almost always solecistical, but not more so than that of himself in the nominative case, which has long been authorized by constant custom; and it is remarkable that a solecism of the same sort has prevailed in the French language, in which *moi* and *toi*, the *abl.* cases of *je* and *tu*, when combined with *même*, are used as ungrammatically as our my and thy have just been supposed to be when combined with self, *Je l'ai vu moi-même*, I have seen it myself; *tu le verras toi-même*, thou shalt see it thyself; and so in the accusative case, *moi-même* is added emphatically to me, and *toi-même* to te.—It is probable, I think, that these departures from grammar in both languages have been made for the sake of fuller and more agreeable sounds. *Je-même*, *me-même*, *tu-même*, and *te-même*, would certainly sound much thinner and more languid than *moi-même* and *toi-même*; and myself, thyself, &c. are as clearly preferable, in point of pronunciation, to itself, myself, thyself, theefself, &c. though not all, perhaps, in an equal degree. It should be observed that itself, where a change of case in the pronoun would not have improved the sound, has never undergone any alteration

Selle, *n. Fr.* celle, cell

Selle, for sille, *n. Sax.* a door-sill or threshold

Selve, *adj.* See Self

Sely, *adj. Sax.* silly, simple, harmless

Selyneffe, *n. Sax.* happiness

Semblable, *adj. Fr.* like

Semblaunt, *n. Fr.* seeming, appearance

Semeliche, semely, *adj. Sax.* seemly, comely

Semelieffe, *superl. d.*

Semelyhede, *n.* seemliness, comeliness

Semisoun, *n. Lat.* a low or broken tone

Semicope, *n.* a half or short cloak

Sen, sene, *inf. m. of se, part. pa.*

Send, for sendeth

Sendall, *n.* a thin silk. See *Du Gange* in *v. Cenda-*

Senek, *pr. n.* Seneca the philosopher

Senge, *v. Sax.* to finge

Senior, *pr. n.*

Sentence, *n. Fr.* sense, meaning, judgment

Septe, *pr. n.* Ceuta, formerly Septa, in Africa, over-against Gibraltar

Sepulture, *n. Fr.* grave

Serapion, *pr. n.* Joannes Serapion, an Arabian physician of the 11th century, *Fabric. Bibl. Gr.* t. xiii. p. 299



- Sere, adj. Sax. dry*  
*Sergeant, n. Fr.* a squire attendant upon a prince or nobleman, a sergent of the lawe. His name is derived from his having been originally a servant of the king in his law business, *serviens ad legem*, just as *serviens ad arma*. The king had formerly a sergent in every country. *Spelman* in *v. Serviens*  
*Seri, n. Fr.* series  
*Sermoning, n. Fr.* preaching  
*Servage, n. Fr.* servitude, slavery  
*Servand, part. pr.* of serve, serving  
*Serve, v. Fr.* to serve, to behave to  
*Set, for setteth; for sette, pa. t.*  
*Setewale, n. Sax.* the herb valerian  
*Sethe, v.* to boil  
*Sethe, for sethed, pa. t.*  
*Sette, v. Sax.* to place, to put; setteth him down, placeth himself on a seat; yet sette I cas, yet I put the case, or suppose—to put a value on a thing, to rate; I n'olde sette his sorrow at a myte, I would not value his sorrow—to sette a man's cappe, to make a fool of him. *Sette, pa. t.*  
*Seurement, n. Fr.* security, in a legal sense  
*Seuretege, n. Fr.* certainty, surety, in a legal sense  
*Sewe, v. Fr.* to follow  
*Sewes, n. pl. Fr.* dishes  
*Seye.* See Seie  
*Shadde, part. t. of shede, v. Sax.* fell in drops  
*Shadde, pa. t. of shade, v. Sax.* shaded, covered with shade  
*Shadowy, adj. Sax.* unsubstantial  
*Shaft, n. Sax.* an arrow  
*Shal, auxil. v. Sax.* is used sometimes with an ellipsis of the infinitive mood, which ought to follow it, both swiche as I have ben to you and shal, i. e. shall be; first tell me whither I shal, i. e. shall go; yet all is don or shal, i. e. shall be done  
*Shale, n. Sax.* a shell or husk; but all n'is worthe a nutte shale  
*Shalmes, n. pl.* shalms, musical string instruments, otherwise called psalteries or sautries. See Rote  
*Shame, n. Sax.* shames dethe, a death of shame, a shameful death; to York he did him lede, schames dede to deie  
*Shamefast, adj. Sax.* modest  
*Shape, n. Sax.* form, figure  
*Shapelich, adj. Sax.* fit, likely  
*Shapen, shape, part. pa. of shape, v. Sax.* formed, figured, prepared  
*Shawe, n. Sax.* a shade of trees, a grove  
*Shefe, n. Sax.* a bundle; a sheaf of arrows; sheves, *pl.* of corn  
*Shelfeld, pr. n.* Sheffield in Yorkshire  
*Sheld, n. Sax.* a shield; sheldes, *pl.* French crowns, called in *Fr. ecus*, from their having on one side the figure of a shield  
*Shemering, n. Sax.* a glimmering  
*Shend, v. Sax.* to ruin  
*Shendship, n.* ruin, punishment  
*Shene, adj. Sax.* bright, shining  
*Shent, part. pa. of shend*  
*Shepen, n. Sax.* a staple  
*Shere, v. Sax.* to cut—to shave  
*Sherte, n. Sax.* a shirt. I hadde never than my sherte; I would give my shirt, i. e. all that I have—it seems to mean the linen in which a new-born child is wrapped; that shapen was my dethe erlt than my sherte.  
  
*O fatal fustren, whiche or any clothe*  
*Me shapen was, my destinee me sponne—*  
  
*Sens first that day that shapen was my sherte.*  
*Or by the fatal fuller had my dome.—*  
  
*Alas! that I ne had brought her in my shert! it seems to be put for skirt, (or lap) which perhaps was the original word.*  
*Shete, v. Sax.* to shoot  
*Shetes, n. pl. Sax.* sheets  
*Shette, shet, v. Sax.* to close or shut. *Shette, shet, pa. t. and part.* so was hire herte shette in hire distresse, so was her heart overwhelmed with her distress  
*Shift, v. Sax.* to divide  
*Shilde, shelde, v. Sax.* to shield; God shilde! God shield or forbid  
*Shipman, n. Sax.* a mariner, the master of a barge  
*Shiver, n. Sax.* a small slice  
*Shode, n. Sax.* the hair of a man's head  
*Shode, part. pa. of shoe, v. Sax.* shod, having shoes on  
*Shove, pa. t. of shove, v. Sax.* pushed  
*Shonde, n. Sax.* harm  
*Shope, pa. t. of shape*  
*Shore, part. pa. of there*  
*Short, v. Sax.* to make short  
*Shot, part. pa. of shette, shut*  
*Shoter, n. Sax.* a shooter. The yew tree is called shoter, because bows are usually made of it  
*Shottes, n. pl. Sax.* arrows, darts, any thing that is shot  
*Shove, showve, v. Sax.* to push; shove, *part. pa.*  
*Shrewe, v. Sax.* to curse  
*Shrewe, n. Sax.* an ill tempered curst man or woman; shrewes, *pl.*  
*Shrewed, adj. Sax.* wicked; shreude folk  
*Shrewednesse, n. Sax.* ill-nature  
*Shrift, n. Sax.* confession  
*Shrifte-faders, n. pl. Sax.* father confessors  
*Shright, for shricheth, shrieketh*  
*Shright, pa. t. of shrich, v. Sax.* shrieked  
*Shrive, v. Sax.* to make confession  
*Shriven, part. pa.* I have ben shriven this day of my curat; I have made my confession this day to my curate  
*Shroude, v. Sax.* to hide  
*Shulde, pa. t. of shal, should; shulden, pl.*  
*Shullen, shula, shul, ind. m. pr. t. pl. of shal*  
*Sibbe, adj. Sax.* related, allied  
*Sie, for seie, saw*  
*Sift, v. Sax.* to shake in a sieve  
*Sigh, for seie, saw*  
*Sight, pa. t. of sike, sighed*  
*Signe, v. Fr.* to appoint  
*Signifer, n. Lat.* the zodiac  
*Signifaunce, n. Fr.* signification  
*Sike, adj. Sax.* sick: it sometimes seems to be used as a noun, for sickness  
*Sike, v. Sax.* to sigh



Sike, *n.* *Sax.* a sigh, *sikes*, *pl.*  
 Siker, *adj.* *Sax.* sure  
 Sikerde, *part. pa.* of *siker*, *v.* *Sax.* assured  
 Sikernesse, *n.* security  
 Sikerly, *adv.* surely  
 Simpleffe, *n.* *Fr.* simplicity  
 Sin, *adv.* *Sax.* abbrev. of *sithen*, since  
 Sinamone, *n.* *Fr.* cinnamon  
 Sip, *n.* *Sax.* drink  
 Sipher, *n.* a cypher or figure of 0 in arithmetic; although a sipher in augrim have no might in signification of itselfe, yet he yeveth power in signification to other. There is another passage in *Du. ver.* 435—40, which seems to imply that in Chaucer's time the numerals commonly called Arabian, had not been long in use in this country  
 Sire, *n.* *Fr.* *Sieur*, *Seigneur*, a respectful title given formerly to men of various descriptions, as well as to knights; Sire knight, Sire clerk, Sire monk, Sire man of lawe. It was so usually given to priests that it has crept even into acts of parliament; *Rot. Parl.* 12 and 13 E. IV. n. 14. Sir James Thekenes preste; 1. H. VII. p. 11. Sir Oliver Langton preste; Sir Robert Naylorp preste. Hence a Sir John came to be a nickname for a priest. Sire is sometimes put for personage; and melancholy that angry Sire.—Our Sire, our husband, our goodman, as the French in their old familiar language use *notre Sire*  
 Sis, *n.* *Fr.* the cast of six, the highest cast upon a die  
 Sit, for sitteth, it sit me not to lie, it doth not become me to lie; it syt a kynge well to be chaste, *Conf. Am.* 168. b.  
 Sithe, for sithes, *n. pl.* *Sax.* times  
 Sithen, *sith*, *adv.* *Sax.* since  
 Sithes, *n. pl.* *Sax.* sithes  
 Sitte, *v.* *Sax.* to sit—to become, to suit with. See Sit  
 Sittand, *part. pr.*  
 Sitten, *part. pa.*  
 Staffaut, *n.* *Fr.* a scaffold, a wooden tower  
 Skaffold, *n.* a scaffold or stage  
 Skie, *n.* *Sax.* a cloud  
 Skill, *n.* *Sax.* reason; *skilles*, *pl.*  
 Skilful, *adj.* reasonable  
 Skunke, *v.* *Sax.* to pour out, to serve with drink  
 Skipte, *part. t.* of *skippe*, *v.* *Sax.* leaped  
 Skogan, *pr. n.*  
 Skorcle, *v.* *Sax.* to scorch  
 Skrippe, *n.* *Fr.* *eschärpe*, a scrip  
 Slacke, *adj.* *Sax.* slow  
 Slain, *part. pa.* of *slie*  
 Slake, *v.* *Sax.* to appease, to make slack  
 Slake, *v. neut.* to fail; to desist  
 Slawe, *part. pa.* of *slie*  
 Sle, *v.* *Sax.* to kill, to slay  
 Sleer, *n.* *Sax.* a killer  
 Sleightly, *adv.* *Sax.* cunningly  
 Sleight, *n.* *Sax.* contrivance  
 Sleightes, *pl.* *suche sleightes as I shall you never—*  
 so this line should probably be written  
 Slen, *fr. i. pl.* of *slie*, *inf. m.*  
 Slep, slepe, *part. t.* of *sliepe*, *v.* *Sax.* slept  
 Slete, *n.* *Sax.* sleet, a mixture of rain and snow

Sleveteffe, *adj.* seems to signify idle, unprofitable; as it does still in vulgar language  
 Slider, *adj.* *Sax.* slippery  
 Sliding, *part. pr.* uncertain, *Lydg. Tra.* 99. b.  
 sliding fortune, *lubrica fortuna*, orig.  
 Slie, *sligh*, *adj.* *Sax.* cunning  
 Slike, for *swilke*, *adj.* *Sax.* such  
 Slit, for *slideth*  
 Slit, *v.* *Sax.* to cut through, to cleave  
 Sliver, *n.* *Sax.* a small slice or piece  
 Slo, *v.* *Sax.* to slay  
 Slogardie, *n.* *Ir.* sloth  
 Slomberinges, *n. pl.* *Sax.* slumberings  
 Sloppe, *n.* *Sax.* a sort of breeches  
 Slow, *part. t.* of *slie*, *slew*  
 Slowe, *n.* *Sax.* a moth. In the orig. *Fr.* *taigne*.  
 Sluggy, *adj.* *Sax.* sluggish  
 Smalish, *adj.* *Sax.* diminutive of *smale* or *small*  
 Smerte, *v.* *Sax.* to smart, to suffer pain  
 Smerte, seems to be used as an *adv.* smartly, *Gloss.*  
 v. *Forthought*  
 Smit, for *smiteth*, *ind. m. 3d pers. sing.*  
 Smiteth, *imp. m. 2d pers. pl.* smite ye  
 Smithe, *v.* *Sax.* to forge as a smith  
 Snitted, for *smitten*, *part. pa.* of *smite*  
 Smokles, *adj.* *Sax.* without a smock  
 Smoterlich, *adj.* means, I suppose, smutty, dirty; but the whole passage is obscure  
 Snewe, *v.* *Sax.* to snow, to be in as great abundance as snow  
 Snibbe, *v.* *Sax.* to snub, to reprove  
 Snow-white, *adj.* *Sax.* white as snow  
 Soden, *adj.* *Sax.* sudden  
 Soget, *n.* *Fr.* subject  
 Soigne, *n.* *Fr.* care  
 Sojour, *n.* *Fr.* stay, abode  
 Soken, *n.* *Sax.* toll  
 Sokingly, *adv.* suckingly, gently. See Souke.  
 Solas, *n.* *Fr.* mirth, sport  
 Solein, *adj.* *Fr.* one, single, fullen  
 Solempne, *adj.* *Fr.* solemn  
 Solempnely, *adv.* solemnly  
 Soler hall, a solere window is used for the window of a loft or garret  
 Som, *adj.* *Sax.* some; this is all and som, this is the whole; all and some, one and all  
 Somdel, *adv.* *Sax.* somewhat, in some measure  
 Somer, *pr. n.* In the treatise on the *Astrolabe*. Ch. professes to make use of the kalenders of the reverent clerkes frere John Somer and frere Nicholas Lenne. The kalender of John Somer is extant in *ms. Cotton, Vesp. E. vii.*; it is calculated for 140 years from 1367, the year of the birth of Richard II., and is said in the introduction to have been published in 1380, at the instance of Joan mother to the king. The kalender of Nicholas Lenne or Lyne, was calculated for 76 years from 1387. *Tanner* in *v. Nicolaus Linensis*. The story there quoted from Hakluyt, of a voyage made by this Nicholas in 1360, *ad insulas septentrionales antehac Europæis incognitas*, and of a book written by him to describe those countries *a gradu 54 usque ad polum*, is a mere fable, as appears from the very authorities which Hakluyt has produced in support of it.

Somme, lo! Troilus—came riding with his tenth  
 somme ifere; so this line stands in the edit., but  
 a ms. quoted in Gloss. Ur. instead of tenth has  
 X: and ms. l. tenth; perhaps the original  
 reading was XX. With his twentysome ifere,  
 according to the Saxon mode of expression,  
 would signify together with some twenty of his  
 attendants. See *Hickes Gramm. A. S.* p. 32, 3.

Somme, *n. Fr.* a sum

Sommer, *n. Sax.* summer; a sommer game

Somone, sompne, *v. Lat.* to summon

Sompnour, *n.* an officer employed to summon delinquents to appear in ecclesiastical courts, now called an Apparitor

Sond, *n. Sax.* sand [Fr. *sonde*

Sond, *n.* seems to signify a sounding line, from the

Sonde, *n. Sax.* a message, Goddees sonde, what God has sent, God's gift

Sone, *adv. Sax.* soon

Sone, *n. Sax.* a son; sones, *pl.*

Sonken, *part. pa.* of sink, *v. Sax.* sunk

Sonne, *n. Sax.* the sun

Sonnish, *adj. Sax.* like the sun

Sooty, *adj. Sax.* foul with foot

Sop, *n. Fr.* a piece of bread dipped in any sort of liquor; he took a soppe *Conf. Am.* 104

Sophism, *n. Fr. Gr.* a sophism, a subtle fallacy

Sore, *v. Fr.* efforer, to soar

Sort, *n. Fr.* chance, destiny

Sorted, *pa. t.* of fort, *v. Fr.* allotted

Sorwe, *n. Sax.* sorrow

Sory, *adj. Sax.* sorrowful; sory grace, misfortune.

See Grace and With

Sote, *n. Sax.* foot

Sote, *swote, adj. Sax.* sweet

Sote, *n. Fr.* a fool

Soted, *part. pa. Fr.* fooled, befotted

Sotel, *adj. Fr.* subtle, artfully contrived

Soth, *adj. Sax.* true, certain; sother, *comp. d.*

Soth, sothly, *adv.* truly

Sothe, *n. Sax.* truth

Sothfastnesse, *n. Sax.* truth

Sotherræ, *adj. Sax.* southern

Sothness, *n. Sax.* truth, reality

Soth-saw, *n.* veracity, true saying

Soudan, *n.* a sultan, any Mahometan sovereign.

See *D'Herbelot* in *v. Sothan*.

Soudaness, *n.* the wife of a sultan

Souded, *part. pa.* consolidated, fastened together.

Sowde-metal, *consolidum. Prompt. Parv.*

Soveraine, *adj. Fr.* excellent in a high degree

Soverainly, *adv.* above all

Souke, *v. Fr.* to lack

Souked, *part. pa.*

Souled, *part. pa. Sax.* endued with a soul

Soun, *n. Fr.* sound, noise

Sounde, *v. Sax.* to make sound, to heal, *v. neut.* to grow sound

Soune, *v. Fr.* to found; as fer as souneth into honestee, as far as is consonant to honesty; that souneth unto gentillesse of love, that is consonant to gentleness of love

Souning, *part. pr.*

Soupe, *v. Fr.* to sup, to take the evening meal, soup, *pl.*

Souper, *n.* supper, the evening meal

Souple, *adj. Fr.* supple, pliant

Sourde, *v. Fr.* to rise

Sours, *n.* a rise, a rapid ascent, the source of a stream of water

Souter, *n. Lat.* a cobbler

Sowe, *v. Lat.* to sew; it was usual; and indeed necessary, formerly to sew letters when they were written upon parchment; but the practice continued long after the invention of paper

Sowe, *v. Sax.* to sow [409]

Sowers, *n. pl.* fores, bucks in their fourth year, *Du*

Span-newe, *adj.* seems to signify quite new, but why it does so I cannot pretend to say

Spannishing, *n. Fr. espanouissement*, the full blow of a flower

Spare, *v. Sax.* to refrain

Spareth, *imp. m. 2d pers. pl.*

Sparande, *part. pr.* sparing, niggardly

Sparhawk, *n. Sax.* a sparrowhawk

Sparre, *n. Sax.* a wooden bar

Sparred, *part. pa.* barred, bolted

Sparthe, *n. Sax.* an ax or halberd. See *Du Cange* in *v. Sparth, Securis, Danica*

Speeces, *n. pl. Fr.* sorts or kinds

Spede, *v. Fr.* to dispatch

Spedeful, *adj.* effectual

Spektakel, *n. Fr. Lat.* a spying-glass

Spell, *n. Sax.* sport, play, tale, or history

Spence, *n. Fr.* despence, a store-room for wine or victuals

Spere, *n. Fr.* a sphere

Spere, *n. Sax.* a speat

Spered, sperred, as sparred

Sperme, *n. Fr. Gr.* seed

Spiced. I have since met with a passage in which spiced, applied to conscience, seems to signify nice, scrupulous. Beaumont and Fletcher, *Mad Lover*, act iii. when Cleante offers a purse the priestess says,

Fy! no corruption—

Cle. Take it; it is yours:

Be not so spiced: it is good gold,

And goodness is no gall to the conscience.

Spices, as Speeces

Spille, *v. Sax.* to waste, to throw away, to destroy, *v. n.* to perish

Spire, *n.* a stake; a corruption probably of *spere, Sax.*

Spired, *Sax.* enquired

Spitous, *adj. Fr. dispiteux*, angry, spiteful

Spitously, *adv.* angrily

Splaig, *v. Fr. despoiler*, to unfold

Spone, *n. Sax.* a spoon

Sponne, *pa. t.* of spinne, *v. Sax.* spun

Spore, *n. Sax.* a spur

Spornie, *v. Sax.* to strike the foot against any thing

Spousale, *n. Fr.* marriage

Spray, *n. Sax.* a twig or sprig

Spreint, *part. pa.* of spreng, *v. Sax.* sprinkled

Springolds, *n. pl. Fr. espringalle*, machines for casting stones and arrows. See *Du Cange* in *v. Muschetta*

Squames, *n. pl. Lat.* scales

Squamous, *squamish*

Squier, *n. fr.* a squire

Squier, *v.* to attend as a squire

Squierie, *n.* a number of squires: and alle ther squierie; and of his squierie gentillemen auhtene

Stace, *pr. n.* Satus the Roman poet

Stacke, *n. Sax.* a stack of wood, &c.

Stacke, *pa. t. of stick, v. Sax.* stuck

Staff-sling, means, I suppose, a sling fastened to a staff. *Lyd. Tra.* 39, b. describes David as armed

With a *staffe syage*, voyde of plate and mayle.

Staker, *v. Sax.* to stagger

Stalke, *v. Sax.* to step slowly; full thesely gan he stalke; and to the bedde he stalketh styllle, *Conf. m.* 32

Stalkes, *n. pl. Sax.* the upright pieces of a ladder

Stamen, *stamin, n. fr. estamine*, a sort of woollen cloth

Stant, for standeth

Starke, *pa. t. of sterve*, died

Stark, *adj. Sax.* stiff, stout

Starlinges, *n. pl.* pence of sterling money

Staunche, *v. fr.* to stop, to satisfy

Stele, *n. Sax.* a handle

Stellifie, *v. Lat.* to make a star

Stente, *v. Sax.* to cease, to desist

Stenten, *part. pa.*

Stepe, *adj.* seems to be used in the sense of deep, so that eyen stepe may signify eyes sunk deep in the head

Stere, *v. Sax.* to stir

Stere, *n. Sax.* a young bullock; a rudder

Stereles, *adj. Sax.* without a rudder

Sterefspan, *n. Sax.* a pilot

Sterne, *n. Sax.* a rudder

Sterne, *adj. Sax.* fierce, cruel

Sterre, *n. Sax.* a star

Stert, *n. Sax.* a leap; at a stert, immediately

Sterte, *pa. t. of sterte, v. Sax.* leaped, escaped, ran away

Sterting, *part. pr.* leaping, nimbly

Sterting, as sterting

Sterve, *v. Sax.* to die, to perish

Steven, *n. Sax.* voice, sound; a time of performing any action previously fixed by a message, order, summons, &c.; at unset steven, without any previous appointment; they setten steven, they appointed a time

Stewe, *n. fr.* a small pond for fish, a small closet, stews, *pl.* stews, bawdyhouses

Steye, *v. Sax.* to ascend

Steyers, *n. pl. Sax.* stairs

Stibborne, *adj.* stubborn

Stike, *v. Sax.* to stick, pierce

Stile, *n. Sax.* a set of steps to pass from one field to another; by stile and eke by strate, every where in town and country

Stillatorie, *n. fr.* a still

Stille, *adj. Sax.* quiet

Stithe, *n. Sax.* an anvil

Stives, as Stewes

Stoble goos, a goose fed on stubble grounds

Stocked, *part. pa.* confined

Stole, *n. fr. Lat.* part of the ecclesiastical habit, worn about the neck. See *Du Cange* in v. *Stola* 2.

Stole, *n. Sax.* a stool

Stonden, *part. pa.* of stonde or stande, *v. Sax.* stood

Stont, for stondeth

Stopen, *part. pa.* of stepe, *v. Sax.* stepped, advanced

Store, *n. fr.* to stock or furnish

Store, *n.* any thing laid up for use; hence the phrase to tell no store of a thing, means to consider it as of no use or importance

Storial, *adj. fr.* historical, true

Storven, *pa. t. pl.* of sterve

Stot, *n. Sax.* probably for stod, a stallion

Stote, *n.* a species of weasel, a polecat

Stound, *n. Sax.* a moment, a short space of time, in a stound, on a sudden; in stound, should probably be in a stound: the orig. *fr.* has *tantost*.

Stoundes, *pl.* times, seasons

Stoundemele, *adv.* momentarily, every moment

Stoupen, should probably be stopen.

Stoure, *n. Sax.* fight, battle

Strake, *v. Sax.* to proceed directly; stracken, stricken; tendere, *Kilian*

Strange, *adj. fr.* foreign, uncommon; he made it strange, he made it a matter of difficulty or nicety

Straughte, *pa. t. of streche, v. Sax.* stretched, *Conf. Am.* 184

Stre, *n. La.* straw

Streight, *part. pa.* of Strecche, *v. Sax.* stretched

Streine, *v. fr.* to constrain, to press closely

Streite, *adj. fr.* straight; streite swerd

Stremeden, *pa. t. pl.* of streme, *v. Sax.* streamed, flowed

Stremes, *n. pl.* the rays of the sun

Strene, *n. Sax.* flock, race, progeny

Strengest-faithed, *adj.* endowed with the strongest faith

Strepe, *v. fr.* to strip

Strete, *n. Sax.* a street

Strike, *n. Sax.* a line, a streak; a strike of flax

Stripe, *v. Lat.* stirps, race, kindred

Stripe, *v.* as Strophe

Strode, *pr. n.* the philosophical Strode, to whom, jointly with the moral Gower, Chaucer directs his *Troilus*, was probably Ralph Strode, of Merton-college, Oxford. A. Wood, who had made the antiquities of that college a particular object of his inquiries, says only of him, "*Radulphus Strode, de quo sic vetus noster catalogus. Poeta fuit et versificavit librum elegiacum vocat. Phantasma Rodulphi. Claruit 1370.*" Some of his logical works are said to be extant in print, *Venet* 1517, 4to. *Tanner* in v. *St. Jans.*

Strof, *pa. t. of strive, v. fr.* strove, contended

Stronde, *n. Sax.* a shore

Strother, *pr. n.* a town in the north

Stroute, *v.* to strut

Subarbes, *n. pl. Lat.* suburbs

Subfumigation, *n. Lat.* a species of charm by smoke

Subget, *adj. fr. Lat.* subject

Sublimatorie, *n. fr. Lat.* a vessel used by chemists in sublimation, i. e. separating certain parts of a body, and driving them to the top of the vessel in the form of a very fine powder



Substance, *n. Fr.* the material part of a thing  
 Suckiny, *n. Fr. fouquenie*, a loose frock worn over  
 their other clothes by carters, &c.  
 Sue, *v. Fr.* to follow  
 Sueton, *pr. n.* Suetonius the Roman historian  
 Suffisance, *n. Fr.* sufficiency, satisfaction  
 Suffisant, *adj. Fr.* sufficient  
 Sugred, *part. pa.* sweetened as with sugar  
 Supplie, *v. Fr.* to supplicate  
 Surcote, *n. Fr.* an upper coat or kirtle  
 Surplis, *n. Fr.* a surplice  
 Surquedrie, *n. Fr.* presumption, an over-weening  
 conceit  
 Surrie, *pr. n.* Syria  
 Surfanure, *n. Fr.* a wound healed outwardly on-  
 ly  
 Surveance, *n. Fr.* superintendence  
 Suspect, *adj. Fr.* suspected,  
 Suspect, *n.* suspicion  
 Suspicion, *n.* suspicion  
 Suster, *n. Sax.* sister; sustren, *pl.*  
 Swa, *adv. Sax.* so  
 Swale, *pa. t. of swell, v. Sax.* swelled  
 Swappe, *v. Sax.* to throw down—to strike off—  
*v. neut.* to fall down  
 Swart, *adj. Sax.* black, of a dark colour  
 Swatte, *pa. t. of swete, v. Sax.* sweated  
 Swegli, *n. Sax.* a violent motion  
 Swelt, *pa. t.*  
 Swelte, *v. Sax.* to die, to faint  
 Swerne, for sworn, *pl. n. of swere, v. Sax.* swear  
 Sweven, *n. Sax.* a dream; swevenes, *pl.* it is  
 written swevenis, for the sake of the rhyme  
 Swiche, *adj. Sax.* corruption of swilke, such  
 Swipke, *n. Sax.* labour  
 Swinke, *v.* to labour  
 Swire, *n. Sax.* the neck; it is more commonly  
 written swere  
 Swithe, *adv. Sax.* quickly, immediately  
 Swive, *v. Sax.* to perform the act of generation.  
 See *Junii Etymolog.* in *v.*  
 Swoloue, *n. Sax.* a whirlpool  
 Swonken, *part. pa.* of swinkie  
 Swough, *n. Sax.* sound, noise—a swoon

## T.

Tabard. See the quotation from Speght's *Gl.*  
*Discourse* &c. n. 6.  
 Tables, *n. pl. Fr.* a game so called—Tables Tole-  
 rantes, the astronomical tables composed by or-  
 der of Alphonso, X. King of Castile, about the  
 middle of the 13th century, were called some-  
 times *Tabulae Tolatane*, from their being adapted  
 to the city of Toledo  
 Taboure, *v. Fr.* to drum  
 Tache, *n. Fr.* a spot or blemish  
 Tailager, *n. Fr.* a collector of taxes  
 Taille, *n. Fr.* a tally, an account scored on a piece  
 of wood  
 Take, *v. Sax.* to deliver a thing to another per-  
 son  
 Take, for taken, *part. pa.*  
 Taked, *n. Sax.* an arrow

Tale, *v. Sax.* to tell stories; and namely when  
 they taken longe *Conf. Am.* 27, b.  
 Tale, *n.* speech, discourse—reckoning, account;  
 litel tale hath he told of any dreame; he made  
 little account of any dream  
 Talent, *n. Fr.* desire, affection  
 Taling, *n.* story-telling  
 Tane, for taken  
 Tapes, *n. pl. Sax.* bands of linen  
 Tapinage, *n. Fr. en tapinois*, lurking, sculking  
 about  
 Tapiser, *n. Fr.* a maker of tapestry  
 Tapite, *v. Fr.* to cover with tapestry  
 Tappe, *n. Sax.* a tap or spigot, which closes that  
 orifice through which the liquor is drawn out  
 of a vessel  
 Tapstere, *n. Sax.* a woman who has the care of  
 the tap in a public house; that office formerly  
 was usually executed by women. See *The Ad-  
 venture of the Pardoner, and the Tapstere*, in the  
*Continuation of The Cant. Tales*  
 Tare, *pa. t. of tear, v. Sax.* tore  
 Targe, *n. Fr.* a sort of shield  
 Tars, *n.* cloth of Tars, Tartarium, a sort of silk.  
 See *Du. Cange* in *v. Tarsicus, Tartaricus*  
 Tas, *n. Fr.* a heap  
 Tasseled, *part. pa.* adorned with tassels  
 Tasse, *v. Fr.* to feel—to examine  
 Tatarwagges, *n. pl.* the orig. is—*toutes fretelées de  
 crotes*, all bedagged with dirt  
 Taverner, *n. Fr.* the keeper of a tavern  
 Taure, *pr. n.* the constellation Taurus  
 Tawe, *n. Sax.* tow  
 Teche, *v. Sax.* teach  
 Tein, *n.* seems to signify a narrow thin plate of  
 metal, perhaps from the *Lat. Gr. tania*.  
 Temps, *n. Fr.* time  
 Tene, *n. Sax.* grief, *Conf. Am.* 140  
 Tene, *v.* to grieve, to afflict  
 Tercelet, tercell, *n. Fr.* the male hawk, the male eagle  
 Terins, *n. pl.* a sort of singing bird called in *Fr.*  
*tarin*. See *Cotgrave* in *v.*  
 Termagaunt, *pr. n.*  
 Terrestre, *n. Fr.* earthly  
 Tery, *adj. Sax.* full of tears  
 Testeres, *n. pl. Fr.* headpieces  
 Testes, *n. pl. Lat.* vessels for assaying metals  
 Testif, *adj. Fr.* headstrong  
 Tetch, *n.* as Tache  
 Tewel, *n. Fr.* a pipe or funnel  
 Textuel, *adj. Fr.* ready at citing texts  
 Thacke, *n. Sax.* thatch  
 Thacke, *v.* to thump, to thwack  
 Than, *adv. Sax. quam, Lat.*  
 Thank, *n. Sax.* thankfulness, good will; in  
 thanke—is taken more—

*En plus grant gré, sont receus orig.*

So the phrases his thankes, hir thankes, answer to  
 the French *son gré, leur gré*  
 Thanne, than, *adv. Sax.* then  
 Thar, *v. Sax. imperf.* behoveth  
 Thatte, that, *pron. dem. Sax.* used as a relative;  
 thatte Saint Peter had; so this verse should be

written—that he mighte, as much as he was able, *quod potuit*.—It is sometimes put, not inelegantly, for the same, with *gris*, and that the finest of the lond, of fish and flesh, and that so plenteous; shall fall a rain, and that so wild wood

Thatte, that, *conj. Sax. quod, Lat.*

The *prep. art. Sax.* The, when prefixed to adjectives or adverbs, in the *compar. deg.* is generally to be considered as a corruption of the *ablative sa. sing.* of the Saxon *art.* used as a pronoun. The *mesier, eo latius*; the more mery, *eo latiores*. Of the same construction are the phrases—yet fare they the werse, yet fare I never the bet. When the is repeated with a second *comparative*, either *adj.* or *adv.* the first the is to be understood in the sense of the *Lat. quo*.—The more it brenneth the more it hath desire—to consume every thing—*quo magis—eo magis*—

And ay the further that she was in age  
The more trewe (if that it were possible)  
She was to him in love, and more penible,

Sometimes the first the is omitted, as in the phrases ever lenger the werse; ever lenger the more; for certes if a man hadde a dedly wound, ever the lenger that he taried to warishe himself the more wold it corrupt—and also the wound wold be the werse for to hele

The *v. Sax.* to thrive

Theodome, *n. Sax.* thrift, success

Thefely, *adj. Sax.* like a thief

Thennes, thenne, *adv. Sax.* thence

Thennesforth, *adv. Sax.* from thennesforth, from that time forward

Theodomas, *pr. n.*

Theophrast, *pr. n.*

Ther, *adv. Sax.* there, in that place, is frequently used in the sense of where

Ther, in composition, signifies that, without including any idea of place. See Here. Ther abouten, thereagain, therbefore, therby, therfore, therfro, thergaine, therof, theron, therto, therwith, therwithall

Thewes, *n. pl. Sax.* manners, qualities

Thider, *adv. Sax.* thither, to that place

Thiderward, *adv. Sax.* toward that place

Thilke, *adj. Sax.* this same, that same

Thinke, *v. Sax.* to consider; it is very frequently used as an impersonal in the *pr.* and *pa. t.* in the sense of seemeth or seemed; me thinketh, him thinketh, him thoughte, hir thoughte, how thinketh you? hem thoughte

Thinne, *adj. Sax.* slender, small; a thinne imagination, *tenui imagine*; a thinne suspicion, *tenui suspicione*

Thirle, *v. Sax.* to pierce through

This, *pron. demonstr. Sax.* is sometimes put for the prepositive article

Thise, *pl.*

Tho, *prep. art. pl. da. Sax.* used as a demonstrative pronoun, those

Thoe, *adv. Sax.* then

Thole, *v. Sax.* to suffer, and what mischefe and male ease Christ for man tholed

Thore, is put for there, for the sake of the rhyme

Thorpe, *n. Sax.* a village

Thoughten, *pa. t. pl.* of thinke, *v. Sax.*

Thrall, *n. Sax.* a slave or villain

Thralle, *v.* to enslave

Thraffe, *pa. t.* of threste

Thred bare, *adj. Sax.* having the threads bare, the nap being worn away

Thremote, should be written in two words, thre mote, as in the *Bodl. mss. Mot. n. Fr.* is explained by Cotgrave to signify, among other things, the note winded by a huntsman on his horn

Threpe, *v. Sax.* to call

Threste, *v. Sax.* to thrust

Threswold, *n. Sax.* a threshold

Threte, *v. Sax.* to threaten

Threttene, *num. Sax.* thirteen

Thridde, *adj. Sax.* third

Thrie, thries, *adv. Sax.* thrice

Thrilled, for thirled, *pa. t.* of thirle

Thringe, *v. Sax.* to thrust

Thriste, *pa. t.* of threste

Thronge, *pa. t.* of thringe

Thropes, for thorpes

Throstel, *n. Sax.* a thrush

Throw, *n. Sax.* time; but a throw; but a little while; any throw, any space of time; many a throw, many times

Thrust, for thurst, *n. Sax.* thirst

Thrusty, for thursty, *adj. Sax.* thirsty

Thurgh, *prep. Sax.* through, by means of

Thurghfare, *n. Sax.* a passage

Thurghout, *prep. Sax.* throughout, quite through

Thurrock, *n. Sax.* the hold of a ship

Thwitel, *n. Sax.* a whittle, *cultellus*

Thwitten, *part. pa.* chipped with a knife, whittled, *bien dolé, orig.*

Tidde, *part. pa.* of tide, *v. Sax.* happened; thee shulde never have tidde so faire a grace, so fair a fortune should never have happened to thee

Tidife, *n.* the tidife is mentioned as an inconstant bird in the *Leg. of G. W.* ver. 154; as doth the tidife for newfanglenesse. Skinner supposes it to be the titmouse

Tickel, *adj. Sax.* uncertain

Til, *prep. Sax.* to, hire till, to her.

Timbestere, *n.* is supposed by Lye, [*Etym. Ling. Angl.* in v.] to mean the same with tombestere. The orig. French has been quoted above in v. *Sailours*, which Chaucer has thus imitated;

There was many a timbestere  
And sailours, that I dare well swere  
Ycouthe hir craft full parfitly.  
The timbres up full subtilly  
Thei casten, and hent hem full oft  
Upon a finger faire and soft,  
That thei ne failed never mo.

According to this description it should rather seem that a timbestere was a woman, who plaid tricks with timbres, (bafons of some sort

- or other) by throwing them up into the air and catching them upon a single finger; a kind of balance-mistress.
- Timbres, *n. pl. Fr.* basons. See *Timbestere*
- Tipet, *n. Sax.* a tippet
- Tipped, *part. pa.* headed, covered at the tip or top
- Tiptoon, *n. pl. Sax.* tiptoes, the extremities of the toes
- Tire, *v. Fr.* to pluck, to feed upon in the manner of birds of prey; for loke how that a goshaue tyreth
- Tissue, *n. Fr.* a riband
- Tite, for tideth happeneth
- Titering, *n. Sax.* courtship
- Titeles, *adj. Sax.* without title
- Titus Livius, *pr. n.* the Roman historian
- To, *adv. Sax.* too
- To, *prep. Sax.* to day, on this day; to morwe, on the morrow, the following day; to yere, in this year.—To, in composition with verbs, is generally augmentative, the helmes they to-hewen and to-shrede, *i. e.* hewe and cut to pieces; the bones they to-breste, *i. e.* break in pieces; to-brosten, to-dashed, much bruised; to-rent, rent in pieces; to-swinke, labour greatly—Sometimes the *adv.* all is added; all-to-rent; all-to-share; entirely cut to pieces; all-to-shent; entirely ruined.
- Tofore, toforen, *prep. Sax.* before
- Togithers, *adv. Sax.* together
- Told, *pa. t.* of tell, *v. Sax.* accounted
- Tombestere, *n. Sax.* a dancing woman
- Tombesteres, *pl.*
- Tomedes, should be written as two words; to mede or to medes, according to the Saxon usage, signifies for reward, in return
- Tone, *n. pl. Sax.* toes
- Tonne-gret, *adj.* of the circumference of a tun
- Toos, *n. pl.* as Tone
- Torettes, *n. pl. Fr.* rings
- Torne, *v. Fr.* to turn, the devil out of his skinne him torne! may the devil turn him inside out!
- Torned, *part. pa.*
- Tortous, *adj. Fr.* oblique, winding
- Toteler, *n.* a whisperer, *totelar, susurro, Prompt. Paro.*
- Totty, *adj. Sax.* dizzy
- Tough, *adj. Sax.* difficult; and maketh it full tough, and takes a great deal of pains; or make it tough, or take pains about it; and made it neither tough ne queint; made no difficulty, or strangeness;
- Al be it ye make it never sa tewche,  
To me your labour is in vane.  
Ms. Maitland, *The Mourning Maiden.*
- Will. Swane makis wonder tewche  
*Ibid. Prolis to the play. ft. 21.*
- Tought, *adj. Sax.* tight
- Tour, *n. Fr.* a tower
- Tourret, *n.* should be written tourette, as in ms.  
Hunter, a turret or small tower
- Tout, *n.* the backside
- Towail, *n. Fr.* a towel
- Towards, *prep. Sax.* toward
- Towel, *n.* is perhaps put for tewel, a pipe, the fundament
- Trace, *n. Fr.* a track or path—a train
- Trade, *pa. t.* of tread, *v. Sax.* trod
- Tragetour, *n.* as Tragetour
- Traie, *v. Fr.* to betray [draw
- Trais, *n. pl. Fr.* traits, the traces by which horses
- Tramissene, *pr. n.* a kingdom in Africa
- Transmewe, *v. Fr.* to transform
- Trappures, *n. pl. barb. Lat.* the clothes with which horses were covered for parade. See *Du Cange* in *v. Trappatura*
- Trashed, *part. pa.* betrayed
- Trate, *n.* Bp. Douglas frequently uses trat for an old woman, *Rn. vii. 416, invultus sese transformat aniles*—he renders—and hir in schapp transformyt of ane trat
- Trave, *n. Fr.* travail, a frame in which farriers put unruly horses
- Tre, *n. Sax.* a tree, wood, Cristes tre, the cross
- Trechour, *n. Fr.* a cheat
- Trede-foule, *n.* a treader of hens, a cock
- Tregetour, *n.* a juggler
- Trenchant, *part. pr. Fr.* cutting
- Trental, *n. Fr.* was a service of 30 masses, which were usually celebrated upon as many different days, for the dead. *Du Cange* in *v. Trentale*
- Trepeget, *n. Fr.* a military engine. See *Du Cange* in *v. Trebuchetum*
- Tresse, *n. Fr.* an artificial lock or gathering of hair. See *Du Cange*, in *v. Trica, Tricia*
- Tressed, *part. pa.* gathered in a tress or tresses
- Tressour, *n.* an instrument used in tressing the hair, or an ornament of it when tressed. See *Du Cange* in *v. Tressorium*
- Tretable, *adj. Fr.* tractable
- Trete, *v. Fr.* to treat, to discourse
- Tretee, *n.* treaty
- Tretis, *n.* treaty
- Tretis, *adj. Fr.* long and well proportioned
- Trewe, *n. Fr.* a truce
- Trewe, *adj. Sax.* true faithful
- True-love, *n.* Mr. Steevens has very obligingly suggested to me that there is a herb called true-love, according to Gerard, in his *Herbal*, edit. 1597, p. 328, *Herba Paris*; "One herrie or herbe truelove—at the very top whereof come forth fower leaves directly set one against another, in manner of a Burgunnion cross, or a true love knot, for which cause among the auncients it hath been called herbe true-love" This herb, however, to the best of my remembrance, is rather too large to be carried conveniently under the tongue. A trew-love of the same or another sort is mentioned in the concluding stanza of *The Court of Love*:
- Eke eche at other threw the floures bright,  
The primrose, the violete, and the gold;  
So than as I beheld the royal sight  
My lady gan me sodenly behold,  
And with a trewlove plited many a fold;



She smote me through the very heart as blive,  
And Venus yet I thanke I am alive.

**Triacle**, *n. Fr.* corruption of *theriaque*, a remedy in general

**Trice**, *v. Sax.* to thrust

**Trie**, *adj.* tried or refined, *Gloss. Ur.*

**Trill**, *v. Sax.* to twirl, to turn round

— *v. neut.* to roll, to trickle

**Trine**, *adj. Fr.* triple; *trine compas*, the Trinity. See *Compas*.

**Trippe**, *n.* evidently means a small piece of cheese; *les tripes d'un fagot*, in *Fr.* are the smallest sticks in a fagot, *Cotgrave*

**Triste**, *v.* for *triste*

**Triste**, *n.* a post or station in hunting, *Cotwell*.— This seems to be the true meaning of the word, though the etymology is not so clear

**Trumpe**, *n. Fr.* a trumpet

**Trompou**, *n.* a trumpeter

**Tronchoun**, *n. Fr.* a spear without a head

**Tron**, *n. Fr.* a throne

**Trophec**, *pr. n.* it occurred to me that the reference might possibly be to the original of the *Troilus* and *Creseide*, which according to *Lydgate* was called *Trophc*, but I cannot find any such passage as is here quoted in the *Filistrato*.

**Trotula**, *pr. n.*

**Trouble**, *adj. Fr.* dark, gloomy

**Troubler**, *comp. d.*

**Trowandise**, for *Truandise*

**Trowe**, *v. Sax.* to believe

**Truandise**, *n. Fr.* begging, truandising

**Tulle**, *v. Sax.* to allure

**Tullius**, *pr. n.* M. Tullius Cicero

**Turkeis**, *n. Fr.* a sort of precious stone

**Turkeis**, *adj. Fr.* Turkish

**Turmentise**, *n. Fr.* torment

**Turves**, *pl.* of turf, *n. Sax.*

**Twaine**, *tway*, *twey*, *tweine*, *numer. Sax.* two

**Tweifold**, *adj. Sax.* double

**Twies**, *adv. Sax.* twice

**Twight**, *pa. t. & part.* of twitch, *v. Sax.* pulled, plucked

**Twinne**, *v. Sax.* to depart from a place or thing

**Twinned**, *part. pa.* separated

**Twire**, *v.* twireth seems to be the translation of *sufurrat*, spoken of a bird

**Twist**, *n. Sax.* a twig

**Twiste**, *v. Sax.* to twitch, to pull hard

**Twiste**, *pa. t.* twitched

## V.

**Valence**, *pr. n.* Valencia in Spain, *Gloss. Ur.*

**Valerie**, *pr. n.*

**Valerie**, *Valerius*, *pr. n.* Valerius Maximus

**Valure**, *n. Fr.* value

**Varien**, *inf. m. v. Fr.* to change, to alter

**Varien**, *variaunt*, *part. pr.* changeable

**Vassalage**, *n. Fr.* valour, courage

**Vavasour**, *n.* probably a meddling landlord

**Vauntour**, *n. Fr.* a boaster

**Vecke**, *n. Ital.* an old woman

**Veine-blode**, *n.* blood drawn from a vein

**Vendable**, *n. Fr.* to be sold

**Venerie**, *n. Fr.* hunting

**Venge**, *v. Fr.* to revenge

**Venime**, *n. Fr.* poison, venom

**Ventouling**, *n. Fr.* cupping

**Ver**, *n. Lat.* the spring

**Verament**, *adv. Fr.* truly

**Veray**, *adj. Fr.* true

**Verdegrese**, *n. Fr.* *verd de gris*, the rust of brass, so called from its colour, a gray green

**Verdite**, *n. Fr.* judgment, sentence

**Verger**, *n. Fr.* a garden

**Vermeile**, *adj. Fr.* of a vermilion colour

**Vermelet**, *adj.* as *Vermeile*

**Vernage**, a kind of wine

**Vernicle**, *n.* diminutive of *Veronike*, *Fr.* a copy in miniature of the picture of Christ, which is supposed to have been miraculously imprinted upon a handkerchief preserved in the church of St. Peter at Rome, *Du Cange* in *v. Veronica*. *Madox*, *Form. Angl.* p. 428. *Tessam.* *Joh. de Nevill*, an. 1386. "Item Domino Archiepiscopo Eborum fratri meo, i. vestimentum rubeum de velvet cum le *Verouike* [*r. Veronike*] in granis tosarum desuper *broudata*, [*r. broudata*."] It was used for persons returning from pilgrimages to bring with them certain tokens of the several places which they had visited, and therefore the Pardoner, who is just arrived from Rome, is represented with a vernicle sewed upon his cappe. See *Pierce Plough*, 28, b.—

An hundred amples on hys hatte sette,  
Synges of Sinay and shelles of Calice\*,  
And many a crouch on his cloke and kayes  
of Rome,

The *Vernicle* before, for men should knowe  
And se by hys signes whom he sought hadde.

**Vernish**, *v. Fr.* to varnish

**Verre**, *n. Fr.* glass

**Verfithour**, *n. Fr.* a maker of verses, a poet

**Vertules**, *adj.* without efficacy

**Vertuous**, *adj. Fr.* active, efficacious

**Vestell**, *n. Fr.* *vaisselle*, plate

**Ugly**, *adj. Sax.* horrid, frightful

**Viage**, *n. Fr.* a journey by sea or land

**Vicary**, *n. Lat.* a vicar

**Vice**, *n. Fr.* the newel or upright centre of a winding staircase

**Vigile**, *n. Fr.* the eve of a festival, the wake or watching of a dead body

**Vigilie**, *n. Lat.* as *Vigile*

**Vilanie**, *n. Fr.* any thing unbecoming a gentleman

**Vinolent**, *adj. Lat.* full of wine

**Virelaye**, *n. Fr.* a round freeman's song, *Cotgrave*.

There is a particular description of a *virelay* in the *Jardin de Plaisance*, fol. 12. where it makes the *decima sexta species rhetorice Gallicane*

**Virgile**, *pr. n.*

**Village**, *v. Fr.* to front, to face a thing

**Vise**, *n. Du ms. A. veze*; perhaps we should read

\* *Mss. Cales.* Perhaps it should be *Calice*.

- refe*, a Saxon word signifying violence, impetuosity
- Vitaillé, *n. Fr.* victuals
- Vitellon, *pr. n.*
- Unbetide, *v. Sax.* to fail to happen
- Unbodie, *v. Sax.* to leave the body
- Unboked, *v. Fr.* to unbuckle, to open
- Unce, *n. Fr. Lat.* ounce
- Uncommitted, *part. pa.* office uncommitted of attorney
- Uncoming, *part. pr.* ignorant
- Unconning, *n.* ignorance
- Uncovenable, *adj.* inconvenient
- Uncouple, *v.* to go loose, metaphor from hounds
- Uncouplinge, *n.* letting loose, *Du.* 377
- Uncouth, *part. pa.* unknown. See Couth—uncommon, not vulgar, elegant
- Uncouthly, *adv.* uncommonly
- Undepartable, *adj.* not capable of departing
- Underfong, *v. Sax.* to undertake
- Undergrowe, *part. pa.* undergrown, of a low stature
- Underling, *n. Sax.* an inferior
- Undermele, *n. Sax.* I am rather inclined to believe, that undermele signifies the time after the meal of dinner, the afternoon; *undermele postmeridies*, *Prompt. Parv.*
- Undern, *n. Sax.* the third hour of the artificial day, nine of the clock, till it was underne hygh and more, *Conf. Am.* 103, b.
- Undernome, *part. pa.* of undermine, *v. Sax.* took up, received
- Underpight, *part. t.* See Pight; he dranke and wel his girded underpight, he drank and stuffed his girdle well
- Underspare, *v. Sax.* to raise a thing by putting a spear or pole under it
- Understonde, *part. pa.* understood
- Undo, *v. Sax.* to unfold
- Undoubted, *adj.* undoubted; *indubitata*, orig. See Doubtous
- Uneschable, *adj. Sax.* unavoidable; *inevitabili*, orig.
- Unease, *n.* uneasiness
- Un-eth, un-ethes, *adv. Sax.* scarcely, not easily
- Unfamous, *adj.* unknown
- Unfestliche, *adj.* not suitable to a feast
- Ungodely, *adj.* uncivil, ungenteel; that I n'olde holde hire ungodely; orig. *que je ne tenisse à vilaine*
- Ungraceable, *adj.* unpleasant, disagreeable, *ingratus*, orig.
- Unhele, *n. Sax.* misfortune
- Unhide, *v.* to discover
- Unjoine, *v.* to separate, to disjoin
- Unkindely, *adv.* unnaturally
- Unknowable, *adj.* incapable of being known; *ignorabiles*, orig.
- Unletted, *part. pa.* undisturbed
- Unloven, *v.* to cease loving
- Unlust, *n.* dislike
- Unmanhode, *n.* cowardice
- Unmighty, *adj.* unable
- Unperegal, *adj.* unequal, *impar*, orig.
- Unpin, *v. Sax.* to unlock
- Unpitous, *adj.* cruel; *impia*
- Unplite, *v.* to unfold
- Unrest, *n.* want of rest, uneasiness, trouble
- Unrestly, *adj.* unquiet
- Unright, *n.* wrong
- Unsad, *adj.* unsteady
- Unscience, *n.* not science
- Unselly, *adj.* unhappy
- Unset, *part. pa.* not appointed
- Unshette, *part. t.* opened
- Unskilfully, *adv. Sax.* without reason; *injurid*, orig.
- Unslacked, *part. pa.* unslack
- Unsleep, *part. pa.* having had no sleep
- Unsoft, *adj.* hard
- Unsolempne, *adj.* uncelebrated; *incelebris*, orig.
- Unsperde, *part. pa.* unbolted
- Unstanchable, *adj.* inexhaustible; *inexhausta*, orig.
- Unstanchd, *part. pa.* unsatisfied; *inexpletam*, orig.
- Unsuccessful, *adj.* insufficient
- Unswell, *v.* to fall after swelling
- Unthank, *n.* no thanks, ill will
- Until, *prep. Sax.* to, unto
- Untime, *n.* an unreasonable time
- Unto, *adv. Sax.* until
- Untretable, *adj.* not admitting any treaty, *bellum inexorabile*, orig. *Πολέμος ἀνρηκτός*
- Untressed, *part. pa.* not tied in a tress or tresses
- Untriste, for untruste, *v.* to mistrust
- Untrust, *n.* distrust
- Unusage, *n.* want of usage; *insolentia*, orig.
- Unware, *part. pa.* unforeseen
- Unweld, *adj.* unwieldy
- Unwemmed, *part. pa.* unspotted
- Unweting, *part. pr.* not knowing; unweting of this Dorigen, Dorigen not knowing of this
- Unwetingly, *adv.* ignorantly
- Unwist, *part. pa.* unknown; unwist of him, it being unknown to him, not knowing
- Unwit, *n.* want of wit
- Unwote, *v. Sax.* to be ignorant
- Unwrie, *v.* to uncover
- Unyolden, *part. pa.* not having yielded
- Voide, *v. Fr.* to remove, to quit, to make empty
- Voide, *v. neut.* to depart, to go away
- Voided, *part. pa.* removed
- Volage, *adj. Fr.* light, giddy
- Volatile, *n. Fr.* wild fowls, game
- Volunie, *n. Fr.* will
- Volupere, *n.* a woman's cap, a nightcap, *volypete*, *kercher*, *teristrum*, *Prompt. Parv.* but *theristrum* signifies, properly, a veil. See *Du Gange* in v.
- Vouche, *v. Fr.* vouchen fauf, to vouchsafe; voucheth fauf, vouchsafe ye; as ye have made present the king vouches it save
- Up, *prep. Sax.* upon; ther lieth on up my wombe and up my hed; there lieth one upon my belly and upon my head; up paine, upon pain; up peril, upon peril
- Up, *adv. Sax.* up on lond, up in the country; up so down, upside down; the londe was tourned up so doun, *Conf. Am.* 37, 159 — But Pandare up, an elliptical expression, of which it is not easy to give the precise meaning
- Upper, *comp. d.* higher
- Uphaf, *part. t.* of upheve, *v. Sax.* heaved up
- Upheping, *n. Sax.* accumulation; *cumulum*, orig.

Upon, *adv.* he had upon a courtepy of grene, he had on a courtepy, &c. or perhaps it is an elliptical expression for he had upon him

Upperest, *adj. superl.* highest

Upright, *adj. Sax.* straight; upright as a bolt, straight as an arrow: it is applied indifferently to persons lying as well as standing

Urchon, *n.* a hedgehog

Ure, *n. Fr.* fortune, destiny

Ured, *adj.* fortunate; well ured

Ufage, *n. Fr.* experience, practice

Ufant, *part. pr. Fr.* using, accustomed

Utter, *comp. d. of out, adv. Sax.* outward, more out

Uttereste, *superl. d.* uttermost

Utterly, *adv. Fr. oultrément,* thoroughly, entirely

Uttren, *inf. m. of utter, v. Sax.* to publish

Uttren, *pr. t. pl.* give out, sell

## W.

Wade, *pr. n.*

Wade, *v. Sax. Lat.* to pass through water without swimming, to pass generally

Wafers, *n. pl.* sellers of wafers, a sort of cakes

Wafoures, *n. pl.* wafers, a sort of cakes

Waget. Upon the whole, I believe that a light waget should be understood to mean a light blue colour

Waimenting, *n. Sax.* lamentation

Waine, *n. Sax.* a wagon

Watte, *v. Fr.* to watch

Wake, *v. Sax.* to watch

Walachie, *pn. n.* Walachia

Wala wa! or wa la wa! *interj. Sax.* wo! alas! wa-la wa the while! alas the time!

Walnete, *n. Sax.* a walnut, *i. e.* a French or foreign nut

Walwe, *v. Sax.* to tumble about, to wallow

Walwing, *part. pr.*

Wan, *pa. t. of win, v. Sax.* gained

Wane, *v. Sax.* to decrease

Wang, *n. Sax.* a cheek-tooth

Wanger, *n. Sax.* a support for the cheek, a pillow

Wanhope, *n. Sax.* despair

Wantrist, *n. Sax.* distrust

Waped, *part. pa. Sax.* stupified

Wardcorps, *n. Fr.* body-guard

Wardein, *n. Fr.* a warden of a college, a guard, a keeper of a gate; wardeins, *pl.* guard, watchmen

Warderere, perhaps a corruption of the French *garde arriere*

Wardrope, *n. Fr. garde-robe,* a house of office

Wariangles. See *Cotgrave* in *v. Pie* and *Engonée*, where he explains the wariangle to be a small woodpecker, black and white of colour, and but half as big as the ordinary green one

Warice, warish, *v. Fr.* to heal; *v. neut.* to recover from sickness

Warison, *n.* seems to be put for reward; *son merite*, orig. *warison*, *donativum*, *Prompt. Parv.*

Warne, *v. Sax.* to caution, to apprise, to refuse

Warnestore, *v.* to furnish, to store

Warrie, *v. Sax.* to abuse, to speak evil of

Washen, *part. pa. of wassa, v. Sax.*

Wastel-brede, cake-bread, bread made of the finest flour, from the French *gaufre*, a cake

Wastour, *n. Fr.* a spoiler

Wate, *v. Sax.* to know

Watering of Seint Thomas, a place for watering horse, I suppose, a little out of the borough of Southwark, in the road to Canterbury. The same place, I apprehend, was afterwards called St. Thomas a Waterings, probably from some chapel dedicated to that saint. It was a place of execution in Queen Elizabeth's time. *Wood, Ath. Oxon. i. 229*

Watlynge-strete, an old street in London

Wave, *pa. t. of weave, v. Sax.* wove

Wawe, *n. Sax.* a wave

Way, *n. Sax.* is often put for the time in which a certain space can be passed through; a furlong way, mile way, any short time—at the least way, seems to signify no more than at the least, at least—a devil way, a twenty devil way

Way, *adv. away*; do way, do away, put away

Waye, *v. Sax.* to weigh, to press, with weight

Webbe, *n. Sax.* a weaver

Wedde, *n. Sax.* a pawn or pledge; to wedde for a pawn; and leyde to wedde Normandie

Wede, *n. Sax.* clothing, apparel; under wede seems to signify, simply, in my clothing

Wede, *n. Sax.* a weed, an useless herb

Wehee, a word to express the neighing of a horse

Weive, *v. Sax.* to forsake, to decline, to refuse

Weive, *v. neut.* to depart

Weived, *part. pa.* departed

Weke, *v. Sax.* to grow weak

Weke, *adj. Sax.* weak

Wel, *adv. Sax.* well, in a good condition; wel was the wenche with him mighte mete; wel were they that thider might twin: it is joined to other adverbs and adjectives, as full and right are, and still more frequently to verbs, in the sense of the French *bien*

Welde, *v. Sax.* to govern, to wield

Weldy, *adj. Sax.* active

Wele, *adv.* for well

Wele, *n. Sax.* wealth, prosperity

Welesful, *adj.* productive of happiness

Welesfulness, *n. Sax.* happiness

Welke, *pa. t. of walk, v. Sax.* walked

Welked, *part. pa. of weike, v. Sax.* withered, mouldy

Welkin, *n. Sax.* the sky

Well, *n. Sax.* a spring

Welle, *v. Sax.* to flow as from a spring

Welmeth, seems to be put for welleth, springeth

Welte, *pa. t. of welde, governed* wielded

Wel-thewed, *adj. Sax.* endowed with good qualities

Welwilly, *adj. Sax.* favourable, propitious

Wemre, *n. Sax.* a spot, a fault

Wenche, *n. Sax.* a young woman

Wend, for wened *pa. t. of wene, thought, intended*

Wende, *v. Sax.* to go

Wende, *n. Sax.* guess, conjecture, perhaps for wene



Wene, *n. Sax.* guess, supposition; withouten wene, not by supposition, certainly  
 Wene, *v. Sax.* to think, to suppose  
 Went, *part. pa.* of wende, gone  
 Wente, went, *pa. t.* of wende; went at borde, lived as a boarder  
 Went, *n.* a way, a passage, turn in walking; in bed  
 Went, *for want*  
 Wep, *pa. t.* of wepe, *v. Sax.* wept  
 Wepely, *adj. Sax.* causing tears  
 Wepen, *n. Sax.* a weapon  
 Werche, *n. & v.* as Werke  
 Were, *for weren, ind. m. pa. t. pl.* of am, *v. Sax.* it is sometimes used for had, according to the *Fr.* custom, with reflected verbs, *thise riatours*—were set hem in a tavern for to drinke—*s'étoient mis, s'étoient assis*  
 Were, *subj. m. pa. t. sing. e. g.* as it were, if on of hem were; whether she were; were it; it were a game  
 Were, *v. Sax.* to wear, to defend  
 Were, *n. Fr. guerre*, confusion; his herte in such a were is set, *son cuer a m'en tel guerre*; and in a were gan I wexe and with myself to dispute  
 Were, *n. Sax.* for catching fish  
 Weren, *pa. t. pl.* of am, *v. Sax.* were  
 Werke, *n. Sax.* work; werkes *pl.*  
 Werke, *v. Sax.* to work  
 Werne, *v.* as Warne  
 Werre, *n. Fr.* war  
 Werrie, *v. Fr.* to make war against  
 Werse, *comp. d.* of ill, *adv. Sax.* worse  
 Werse, *comp. d.* of bad, *adj. Sax.* worse  
 Werste, *superl. d.* of bad, worst  
 Wery, *adj. Sax.* weary  
 Wesh, *pa. t.* of wash, *v. Sax.* washed  
 Westren, *inf. m. v. Sax.* to tend toward the west  
 Wete, *adj. Sax.* wet  
 Wete, *v. Sax.* to wet  
 Wete, *v. Sax.* to know  
 Wether, *n. Sax.* the weather—a castrated ram  
 Weting, *n. Sax.* knowledge  
 Weve, *v. Sax.* to weave  
 Weve, *v. Sax.* to put off, to prevent. See Weive  
 Wex, *pa. t.* of waxe or wexe, *v. Sax.* waxed, grew  
 Wexing, *part. pr.* increasing  
 Weyeden, *pa. t. pl.* weighed. See Waye  
 What, *pron. interrog. Sax.* is often used by itself as a sort of interjection; what!  
 What, *pron. indef.* something, a little; what for love and for distrefs, partly for love and partly for distrefs; wete ye what? do ye know something? ne elles what? nor any thing else—What, when joined to a *n. subst.* (either expressed or understood) is a mere *adj.* answering to *qualis*, *Lat. quel*, *Fr.* what they weren, what men they were; what so, what that, whatsoever  
 Wheder, *conj. Sax.* whether  
 Whelm, *v. Sax.* to sink, to depress  
 Whennes, *adv. Sax.* whence  
 Wher, *conj. Sax.* whether  
 Wher, *adv. Sax.* where  
 Wher, in composition, signifies which. See Here

and Ther—Wherefore, wherein, wherthrough, wherwith, when used interrogatively, wherof, wherwith  
 Whether, *adj. Sax.* which of two  
 Whette, *part. pa.* of whet, *v. Sax.* sharpened  
 Whiche, *pron. rel. Sax.* who, whom, *adj. what*, what sort of  
 While, *n. Sax.* time; in this mene while, in the mean time; how he might quite hire while, how he might requite her time, pains, &c. God can ful wel your while quite  
 Whilere, *adv. Sax.* sometime before  
 Whilke, *adj. Sax.* which  
 Whilom, *adv. Sax.* once, on a time  
 Whine, *v. Sax.* to utter a plaintive cry  
 White, *adj. Sax.* fair, specious  
 White, *v.* to grow white  
 Who, *pron. interrog. Sax.*  
 Whos, *gen. ca. sing.*  
 Who, *pron. rel. Sax.* it is generally expressed by that  
 Whos, *gen. ca. sing.*  
 Who, *pron. indef.*

For wel thou wost the name as yet of her  
 Amonges the people, as who saygh halowed

where as who sayth seems to be equivalent to as one should say: the same phrase is sometimes used to introduce a fuller explanation of a passage, as we might use—that is to say—who so, who that, whosoever  
 Wide-where, *adv. Sax.* widely, far and near  
 Wierdes, *n. pl. Sax.* the Fates or Destinies  
 Wif, *n. Sax.* a wife, a woman  
 Wifhood, *n. Sax.* the state of a wife  
 Wifles, *adj. Sax.* unmarried  
 Wifly, *adj. Sax.* becoming a wife  
 Wight, *n. Sax.* a person, male or female, a small space of time, weight, a witch; wytych clyped nyght mare  
 Wight, *adj. Sax.* active, swift; of l. m. thar ben deliver and wight, *Conf. Am. 177, b.*  
 Wightes, *n. pl.* witches  
 Wike, *n.* for weke  
 Wicket, *n. Fr.* a wicket  
 Wikke, *adj. Sax.* wicked  
 William St. Amour, a doctor of the Sorbonne in the 13th century, who took a principal part in the dispute between the university of Paris and the Dominican friars  
 Willy, *adj. Sax.* favourable  
 Wiln, for willen, *pl. n.* of wille, *v. Sax.*  
 Wilne, *v. Sax.* to desire  
 Wimple, *n. Fr.* a covering for the neck; it is distinguished from a veil, which covered the head also  
 Wering a vaile instede of wimple,  
 As nonnes don in hir abbey.

Windas, *n. Fr. guindal*, an engine to raise stones, &c.  
 Winde, *v. Sax.* to turn round  
 Winde, as Wende, to go  
 Winne, *v. Sax.* to gain, to attain

**Wirry, v. Sax.** to worry  
**Wis, adv. Sax.** certainly. See **Y-wis**  
**Wise, n. Sax.** manner  
**Willy, adv. Sax.** certainly  
**Wisse, v. Sax.** to teach, to direct; so God me wisse, so may God direct me  
**Wiste, pa. t. of wiste, v. Sax.** knew  
**Wite, v. Sax.** to know, to blame, to impute to  
 wite it the ale of Southwark, impute it to the ale of Southwark; or blame the ale of Southwark for it  
**Wite, n. Sax.** blame  
**With, prep. Sax.** is used in the sense of by; ~~was~~  
 with the leon frette, was devoured by the lion;  
 in with his thought, in with hire bosom, within his thought, within her bosom; with meschance, with melchance and with misaventure, with sorwe and with melfchance; with sorwe, are phrases of the same import as God yeve him meschance, God yeve me sorwe: they are all to be considered as parenthetical curses, used with more or less seriousness; and so are the following phrases, with evil prese, with harde grace, with sory grace  
**Withholde, v. Sax.** to stop  
**Withholden, withhold, part. pa.** retained, detained  
**Withsain, inf. m. of withsay, v. Sax.**  
**Withsaye, withseye, v.** to contradict, to deny  
**Witness, n. Sax.** testimony, a witness  
**Witnessfully, adj. Sax.** evidently  
**Witte, n. Sax.** understanding, capacity—to my witte; in my judgment  
**Wittes, n. pl. Sax.** the senses of man  
**Wive, n.** for wif  
**Wivere, n. Sax.** a serpent  
**Wlatsom, adj. Sax.** loathsome  
**Wo, n. Sax.** wo, sorrow—wo were us; wher me were wo, are expressions derived from the Saxon language, in which us and me were equivalent to *nobis* and *mibi*, without the addition of the *prep.* to  
**Wo, adj. Sax.** sorrowful  
**Wo-begon, far gone in wo.** See **begon**  
**Wode, wood, adj. Sax.** mad, violent; for **wode**, like any thing mad  
**Wode, v. Sax.** to grow mad  
**Wodewale, pr. n. of a bird**  
**Wol, v. auxili. Sax.** to will; it is used sometimes by itself, the *inf. v.* being understood, as she to water wolde, *i. e.* would dissolve into water; and to the wood he wol, *i. e.* will go, ful many a man hath he begiled er this, and wol, *i. e.* will beguile  
**Wolde, pa. t. would, wolden, pa. t. subj. m. wolde**  
 God! God wolde! so that God were willing! ne wolde God! God forbid!  
**Wold, part. pa.** willed, been willing [man  
**Womanhede, n.** womanhood, the virtue of a woman  
**Wonde, v. Sax.** wandian, to desist through fear  
**Wonde, pa. t.** may perhaps be deduced from winde, to turn, to bend,

**Wone, v. Sax.** to dwell  
**Woneden, pa. t. pl. dwelled**  
**Woned, part. pa.** wont, accustomed  
**Woning, n. Sax.** a dwelling  
**Wonne, part. pa. of winne, v. Sax.** won, conquered, begotten  
**Wont, part. pa. of wone, accustomed**  
**Wood, adj.** as wode  
**Woodness, n.** madness  
**Wordles, adj. Sax.** speechless  
**Worldes, gen. ca. of world, n. Sax.** is used in the sense of the *adj.* worldly; every worldes fore; my worldes blis  
**Wort, n. Sax.** a cabbage, new beer in a state of fermentation  
**Worth, v. Sax.** to be, to go, wo worthe! unhappy be, or wo be to! to climb, to mount  
**Wost, for wotest, knowest**  
**Wote, wot, v. Sax.** to know, wot, *pa. t.* knew  
**Wowe, (rather woe) v. Sax.** to woo  
**Wowe, pa. t. of waxe, or wexe, v. Sax.** grew  
**Woxen, part. pa.** grown  
**Wraie, v. Sax.** to betray, discover  
**Wrathen, inf. m. v. Sax.** to make angry  
**Wrawe, adj. Sax.** peevish, angry; wrawe, froward, ungoodly  
**Wrawnness, n.** peevishness  
**Wray, as wraie**  
**Wreche, n. Sax.** revenge  
**Wrenches, n. pl. Sax.** frauds, stratagems  
**Wrest, v. Sax.** to twist; the nightingale with so great might hire voice began out wrest—to turn forcibly  
**Wrethen, part. pa. of writhe—wrethen in fere,** twisted together; in Urry's edit. it is printed —within in fere  
**Wreye, v. as wraie**  
**Wrie, v. Sax.** to cover, to turn, to incline  
**Wright, n. Sax.** a workman  
**Wrine, for wrien, inf. m. of wrie** [ture  
**Wring, v. Sax.** to squeeze so as to express moisture  
**Writhe, v. Sax.** to twist, to turn aside,  
**Writhing, n.** a turning  
**Wronge, part. pa. of wring; his hondes wronge:** later writers have used the same expression of distress  
**Wrote, v. Sax.** to dig with the snout as swine do; or like a worm that wroteth in a tree  
**Wrought, part. pa. of worke, v. Sax.** made

## Y.

**Y, at the beginning of many words, especially verbs and participles, is merely a corruption of the Saxon ge, which has remained uncorrupted in the other collateral branches of the Gothic language; what the power of it may have been originally, it is impossible, perhaps, now to determine: in Chaucer it does not appear to have any effect upon the sense of a word, so that there seems to be no necessity for inserting in a glossary such words as yblest, ygranted, &c. which differ not in signification from blest, granted, &c. Some, however, of this sort are**

The yerde is bet that bowen wol and winde  
 Than that that brest.

**Wonde, pa. t. of wone, dwelled**  
**Wonder, adj. Sax.** custom, usage, habitation, a heap, an assembly

inserted, which may serve at least to shew more clearly the extent of this practice in Chaucer's time. Several other words are shortly explained under this letter, of which a more full explanation may be found under their respective second letters

Ya, *adv. Sax.* yea; it is used emphatically with both; ya bothe yonge and olde; ye both faire and good

Yaf, *pa. t. of yave, v. Sax.* gave

Yalte, for yelte; yalte him, yieldeth himself

Yare, *adj. Sax.* ready

Yate, *n. Sax.* a gate

Yave, *pa. t. of yeve, v.* gave

Y-be, *part. pa.* been

Y-beried, *part. pa.* buried

Y-bete, *v. a.* to beat, stamp, imprint

Y-blent, *part. pa.* of blend, blinded

Y-blent, *part. pa.* of blenche, shrunk, started aside

Y-blint, *part. pa.* blinded

Y-bore, *part. pa.* of bere, born, carried

Y-bourded, *part. pa.* jested

Y-brent, *part. pa.* of brenne, burned

Y-chaped, *part. pa.* furnished with chapes, from *chappe, Fr.*

Y-clouted, *part. pa.* wrapped in clouts or rags

Y-corven, *part. pa.* cut. See Corven

Y-coupled, *part. pa.*

Y-crafed, *part. pa.* broken

Y-deled, *part. pa.* distributed

Y-dight, *part. pa.* adorned

Y-do, *part. pa.* done, finished

Y-drawe, *part. pa.* drawn

Ye, *adv. Sax.* as Ya; ye wis, yea certainly

Yeddinges, would seem to mean story-telling

Yede, *part. pa.* of yede, *v. Sax.* went

Yelte, *n. Sax.* a gift; yestes, *pl.*

Yelde, *v. Sax.* to yield, to give, to pay; God yelde you! God reward you!

Yelleder, *pa. t. pl. of yelle, v. Sax.*

Yelpe, *v. Sax.* to prate, to boast

Yelte, for yeldeth

Yemman, *n. Sax.* a servant of middling rank; a bailiff—Yemen, *pl.*

Yemanrie, *n.* the rank of yemman

Yerde, *n. Sax.* a rod or staff, sod, earth

Yere, for yeres, *n. pl. Sax.* years

Yerne, *adj. Sax.* brisk, eager

Yerne, *adv.* briskly, eagerly, early, soon, immediately

Yerne, *v.* to desire, to seek eagerly

Yerning, *n.* activity, diligence

Yeten, *part. pa.* gotten

Yeve, *v. Sax.* to give

Yeven, yeve, *part. pa.* given

Y-falle, *part. pa.* fallen

Y-feined, *part. pa.* lordes heles may not ben y-feined, the commands of sovereigns may not be executed with a feigned pretended zeal, they must be executed strictly and fully

Y-fette, *part. pa.* fetched

Y-fonden, *part. pa.* found

Y-fostered, *part. pa.* educated

Y-freten, *part. pa.* devoured

Y-geten, *part. pa.* gotten

Y-glofed, *part. pa.* flattered

Y-glued, *part. pa.* glewed, fastened with glew

Y-go, *part. pa.* gone

Y-grave, *part. pa.* buried

Y-halowed, *part. pa.* kept holy

Y-herd, *part. pa.* covered with hair

Y-hold, *part. pa.* beholden

Y-japed, *part. pa.* tricked, deceived

Y-lesfed, *part. pa.* relieved. See Liffed

Y-liche, y-like, *adj. Sax.* resembling, equal

Y-liche, y-like, *adv. Sax.* equally, alike

Y-limed, *part. pa.* limed, caught as with birdlime

Y-logged, *part. pa.* lodged

Y-masked, *part. pa.* masked or meshed; *maske, Belg. macula reits, Kilian.*

Y-meint, *part. pa.* mingled

Y-mell, *prep. Sax.* among

Ymeneus, *pr. n.* Hymenæus

Ynough, ynow, *adv. Sax.* enough

Yolden, *part. pa.* of yelde, given, yielded, repaid

Yonghede, *n. Sax.* youth

Yore, *adv. Sax.* of a long time, a little before; yore agon, long ago; in olde times yore, of time yore

Yove, *pa. t. of yeve, v.* gave

Youre, *pron. pass. Sax.* is used for *yours*

Youres, *pron. pass. Sax.* used generally when the noun to which it belongs is understood or placed before it; he was an old felaw of *yours*, he was an old companion of *yours*, i. e. of one among your companions

Youthhede, *n. Sax.* youth

Yoxe, *v. Sax.* to hiccough

Y-piked, *part. pa.* picked, spruce

Y-queint, *part. pa.* quenched

Y-reight, *pa. t.* reached

Y-reen, seems to be put for the old *part. pa.* *y-rekend, reeking*

Yren, *n. Sax.* iron

Y-rent, *part. pa.* torn

Y-ronne, y-ronnen, *part. pa.* run

Y-sateled, *part. pa.* settled, established

Yse, *n. Sax.* ice

Y-serve, *part. pa.* treated

Y-sette, *part. pa.* set, placed, appointed

Y-shent, *part. pa.* damaged

Y-shove, *part. pa.* pushed forwards

Y-slawe, *part. pa.* slain

Y-sope, *pr. n.* So the name of the fabulist was commonly written, notwithstanding the distinction pointed out by the following technical verse:

Ysopus est herba, sed Æsopus dat bona  
verba

In this and many other passages which are quoted from Æsop, by writers of the middle ages, it is not easy to say what author they mean: the Greek collections of fables which are now current under the name of Æsop were unknown, I apprehend, in this part of the world at the time that Melibee was written: Phædrus too had disappeared: Avienus indeed was very generally read. He is quoted as Æsop by John of Salisbury, *Polygraph. l. vii. Ut Æsopo, vel Avieno, credas.*—But the name of Æsop was chiefly appropriated to



the anonymous \* author of sixty fables in elegiac metre, which are printed in Nevelet's collection under the title of *Anonymi Fabula Aesopica*. I have seen an edition of them in 1503 by Wynkyn de Worde, in which they are entitled simply *Aesopi Fabulae*: the subjects are, for the most part plainly taken from Phædrus, but it may be doubted whether the author copied from the orig. work of Phædrus or from some version of it into Latin prose. Several versions of this kind are still extant in ms.; one of very considerable antiquity has been published by Nilant, *Lugd. Bat.* 1709, under the title of *Fabula Antiqua*, together with another of a later date, which is pretended to have been made from the Greek by an emperor Romulus, for the use of his son Tiberinus. They all shew evident marks of being derived from one common origin, like what has been observed of the several Greek collections of Aesopian fables in prose; [*Dissert. de Babrio*. Lond. 1776,] like them too they differ very much from one another in style, order of fables, and many little particulars; and, what is most material, each of them generally contains a few fables, either invented or stolen by its respective compiler, which are not to be found in the other collections, so that it is often impracticable to verify a quotation from Aesop in the writers of Chaucer's time, unless we happen to light upon the identical book of fables which the writer who quotes had before him.—I have printed in the *Discourse*, &c. n. 29, a fable of The Cock and the Fox, from the Fr. Aesop of Marie, which is not to be found in any other collection that I have seen, and which I suppose furnished Chaucer with the subject of his Nonnes Preestes Tale. In the same Fr. Aesop, and in a Lat. ms. *Bibl. Reg.* 15. A. vii. there is a fable which I think might have given the hint for Prior's Ladle. A country fellow one day laid hold of a foery, (*un folet*, Fr.) who in order to be set at liberty gave him three wishes.

The man goes home and gives two of them to his wife. Soon after, as they are dining upon a chine of mutton, the wife feels a longing for the marrow, and not being able to get at it, she wishes that her husband had an iron beak (*long com li wittecoes*, Fr. long as the woodcock) to extract this marrow for her: an excrescence being immediately formed accordingly; the husband angrily wishes it off from his own face upon his wife's.—And here the story is unluckily defective in both copies; but it is easy to suppose that the third and last remaining wish was employed by the wife for her own relief.—A fable upon a similar idea, in Fr. verse, may be seen in ms. *Bodl.* 1687, the same, as I apprehend, with one in the king's library at Paris, [ms. n. 7989, fol. 189,] which is entitled *Les quatre souhaits d'un Martin*. See *Fabliaux*, &c. t. iii. p. 311. The vanity of human wishes is there exposed with more pleasantty than in the story just cited, but, as it often happens, with much less decency.

Y-sowe, *part. pa.* sown  
Y-spreint, *part. pa.* sprinkled  
Y-sticked, *part. pa.* stucked, thrust  
Y-storven, *part. pa.* dead  
Y-take, *part. pa.* taken  
Y-teyed, *part. pa.* tied  
Y-trespased, *part. pa.* trespassed  
Y-vanished, *part. pa.*  
Yvel, *adj. Sax.* bad, unfortunate  
Yvel, *adv. Sax.* ill  
Yvoire, *n. Fr.* ivory  
Y-wimpled, *part. pa.* covered with a wimple  
Y-wis, *adv. Sax.* certainly  
Y-wrake, *pa. t.* wreaked, revenged  
Y-wrie, *part. pa.* covered

## Z

Zeuxis, *pr. n.* a Grecian painter

\* Several improbable conjectures, which have been made with respect to the real name and age of this writer, may be seen in the *Menagiana*, vol. i. p. 174, and in *Fabrie. Bibl. Lat.* vol. i. p. 376, ed. Patav. In the edition of these fables in 1503 the commentator (of no great authority I confess) mentions an opinion of some people that *Galerus Anglicus fecit hunc librum sub nomine Aesopi*. I suppose the person meant was Guaherus Anglicus, who had been tutor to William II. King of Sicily, and was Archbishop of Palermo about the year 1170. I cannot believe that they were much older than his time, and in the beginning of the next century they seem to be mentioned under the name of Aesopus, among the books commonly read in schools, by Eberhardus Bethuniensis in his *Labyrinthus*, tract. iii. de *Verificatione*, v. 11. See *Leyser, Hist. Poet. Med. Aevi.* p. 826. About the middle of the same century (the 13th) Vincent of Beauvais, in his *Speculum Histor.* l. iii. c. 2. gives an account of Aesop, and a large specimen of his fables, *quas Romulus quidam de Graeco in Latinum transtulit, et ad plium suum Tiberinum dirigit*; they are all, as I remember, in the printed Romulus.—Soon after the invention of printing, a larger collection of the fables of Aesop was made and published in Germany; it is divided into six books, to which is prefixed a life of Aesop *e Graeco Latina per Rimicium facta*. The three first are composed of the sixty elegiac fables of the metrical Aesopus, with a few trifling variations, and to each of them is subjoined a fable on the same subject in prose from Ro-

mulus: book iv. contains the remaining fables of Romulus in prose only. The fifth book has not more than one or two fables which had ever appeared before under the name of Aesop; the rest are taken from the *Gesta Romanorum*, the *Calilabu Damab*, and other obscurer authors. The sixth and last book contains seventeen fables with the following title, *Sequuntur fabule nove Aesopi ex translatione Remicii*. There has been a great diversity of opinion among learned men concerning this Remicius or Rimicius, (See *Praef. Nilant*.) while some have confounded him with the fictitious Romulus, and others have considered him as the editor of this collection. I have no doubt that the person meant is that Rimicius who translated the life of Aesop by Planudes and ninety-six of his fables from the Greek into Latin, about the middle of the 15th century. (See *Fabric. Bibl. Med. Aet.* in v. Rimicius. In his translation of the epistles of Hippocrates, ms. *Harl.* 3527, he is styled in one place *Verdensis*, and in another *Castilionensis*.) All the fables from Remicius which compose this sixth book, as well as the life of Aesop, which is professedly taken from Rimicius, are to be found in this translation by Rimicius. There is an edition of it printed at Milan about 1480, but it might very possibly have come into the hands of the German collector in ms. some years sooner, as the first translations of Greek authors were eagerly sought after and circulated through Europe at that time, when very few persons were capable of reading the originals,

# C O N T E N T S.

## WORKS OF CHAUCER.

	Page		Page
THE AUTHOR'S LIFE, - - -	iii	The Plowman's Prologue, - - -	213
THE CANTERBURY TALES.		The First part of the Tale, - - -	219
The Prologue, - - -	1	The Second Part of the Tale, - - -	222
The Knightes Tale, - - -	9	The Prologue; or, The mery adventure	
The Milleres Tale, - - -	28	of the Pardonere and Tapstere at the Inn	
The Reves Prologue, - - -	34	at Canterbury, - - -	230
The Reves Tale, - - -	35	The Merchant's Second Tale; or, The	
The Cokes Prologue, - - -	39	History of Beryn, - - -	239
The Cokes Tale, - - -	ib.	MISCELLANIES.	
The Man of Lawes Prologue, - - -	41	The Romaunt of the Rose, - - -	274
The Man of Lawes Tale, - - -	42	Troilus and Creseide, in Five Books,	
The Wif of Bathes Prologue, - - -	53	Book I. - - -	337
The Wif of Bathes Tale, - - -	58	Proœmium Libri Secundi - - -	347
The Freres Prologue, - - -	62	Liber Secundus, - - -	348
The Freres Tale, - - -	63	Proœmium Libri Tertii, - - -	362
The Sompnours Prologue, - - -	66	Incipit Liber Tertius, - - -	363
The Sompnours Tale, - - -	ib.	Proœmium Libri Quarti, - - -	378
The Clerkes Prologue, - - -	72	Incipit Liber Quartus, - - -	379
The Clerkes Tale, - - -	73	Incipit Liber Quintus, - - -	393
The Marchantes Prologue, - - -	83	Testament of Fair Creseide, - - -	409
The Marchantes Tale, - - -	ib.	The Legende of Good Women, - - -	413
The Squieres Prologue, - - -	93	The Legende of Cleopatra, Queen of E-	
The Squieres Tale, - - -	ib.	gypt, - - -	422
The Frankeleines Prologue, - - -	99	The Legende of Thisbe of Babylone, - - -	425
The Frankeleines Tale, - - -	ib.	The Legende of Dido Queene of Carthage, - - -	429
The Doctoures Prologue, - - -	107	The Legende of Hypsipyle and Medea, - - -	433
The Doctoures Tale, - - -	ib.	The Legende of Lucrece of Rome, - - -	434
The Pardoneres Prologue, - - -	110	The Legende of Ariadne of Athens, - - -	438
The Pardoneres Tale, - - -	ib.	The Legende of Philomela, - - -	440
The Shipmannes Prologue, - - -	116	The Legende of Phyllis, - - -	442
The Shipmannes Tale, - - -	ib.	The Legende of Hypermetra, - - -	444
The Prioresse Prologue, - - -	121	A Praise of Women, - - -	446
The Prioresse Tale, - - -	ib.	La Belle Dame Sans Mercy.—A Dia-	
Prologue to Sire Thopas, - - -	124	logue - - -	455
The Rime of Sire Thopas, - - -	ib.	The Assemble of Ladies, - - -	466
Prologue to Melibeus, - - -	127	Chaucer's Dreame, - - -	492
Tale of Melibeus, - - -	128	The Assemble of Foules, - - -	498
The Monkes Prologue, - - -	144	Of the Cuckowe and the Nightingale, - - -	502
The Monkes Tale, - - -	145	How Pyte is dede, and buried in gentyle	
The Nonnes Preestes Prologue, - - -	152	herte, - - -	504
The Nonnes Preestes Tale, - - -	ib.	Verfes, - - -	506
The Second Nonnes Tale, - - -	158	Gode Counsaile of Chaucer, - - -	507
The Chanones Yemannes Prologue, - - -	163	Chaucer's A, B, C,—called la Praere de	
The Chanones Yemannes Tale, - - -	164	Nostre Dame, - - -	510
The Manciples Prologue, - - -	171	Of Queene Annelida and false Arcite, - - -	514
The Manciples Tale, - - -	172	The Complaint of the Blacke Knight, - - -	520
The Perfonas Prologue, - - -	175	The Complaint of Mars and Venus, - - -	522
The Perfonas Tale, - - -	176	The Complaint of Mars, - - -	524
The Coke's Tale of Gamelyn, - - -	203	The Complaint of Venus, - - -	

## CONTENTS.

	Page		Page
The Lamentacion of Marie Magdaleine,	525	A proverbe agaynst covetise and negli-	
The Floure and the Leafe,	532	gence,	579
The Court of Love,	538	A balade which Chaucer made against wo-	
Prologue to the Remedy of Love,	550	men unconstant,	ib.
The Remedy of Love,	551	A balade which Chaucer made in the praise	
A Saiying of Dan John,	555	or rather dispreise of women for ther	
Yet of the Same,	ib.	doubleness,	580
Motto to Jack Upland,	ib.	The Craft of Lovers,	581
The House of Fame,	556	A Balade,	582
The Prologue,	ib.	The Ten Commandments of Love,	ib.
The First Boke,	557	The Nine Ladies Worthie,	583
The Second Boke,	561	A Ballade,	584
The Third Boke,	566	Another,	585
CERTAIN BALADES, &c.		How Mercurie, Pallas, Venus, and Juno,	
A godely Balade,	575	appeared to Paris of Troie, he slepying	
A Balade in commendacion of our Ladie,	ib.	by a fountain,	ib.
Blade de bon confall,	577	A balade pleasaunte,	586
Blade of the Village without paintyng,	578	Another Balade,	ib.
Chaucer to his emptie purse,	579	A balade warnyng men to beware of deceit-	
Chaucer unto the Kinge,	ib.	ful women,	ib.
A balade made by Chaucer, teching what		A balade declaring that womens hastie	
is gentleness, or who is worthy to be cal-		doeth moche excel all trefure worldly,	587
led gentil,	ib.	Chaucer's wordes unto his own scrivenere,	ib.

## WORKS OF SURREY.

	Page		Page
The Author's Life,	591	Prisoner in Windsor, he recounteth his	
The Original Preface,	594	pleasure there passed,	598
SONGES AND SONNETTES.		The lover comforteth himself with the wor-	
Description of the restless state of a lover		thyneffe of hys love,	599
with suite to his lady, to rue on his dieng		Complaint of the absence of her lover being	
hart,	595	upon the seas,	ib.
Description of spring, wherein ech thing		Complaint of a dying lover refused upon	
renewes, save only the lover,	ib.	his ladyes insult mystaking of his wryting,	ib.
Description of the restless state of a lover,	ib.	Complaint of the absence of her lover beyng	
Description of the sickle affections, pangs,		upon the sea,	601
and sleights of love,	596	A praise of his love, wherein he reprov-	
The complainte of a lover that defied love,		eth them that compare their ladies with	
and was by love after the more tor-		his,	ib.
mented,	ib.	To a lady that scorned her lover,	ib.
Complaint of a lover rebuked,	597	A warning to the lover how he is abused by	
Complaint of a lover disdained,	ib.	his love,	602
Description and praise of his love Geral-		The forsaken lover describeth, and forsaketh	
dine,	ib.	love,	ib.
The frailtye and hurtfulness of beauty,	ib.	The lover describes his restless estate,	ib.
The complaint by night of the lover not		The lover excuseth himself of suspected	
beloved,	598	change,	603
How eche thing, save the lover, in spring		The careless man scorning and describing	
reinueth to pleasure,	ib.	the futtle usage of women towards their	
A vowe to love faithfully, howsoever he		lovers	ib.
be rewarded,	ib.	An aunswere in the behalf of a woman of	
Complaint that his lady after she knew of		an uncertaine auctor,	ib.
his love, kept her face always hydden		The constant lover lamenteth,	604
from him,	ib.	A song writen by the Earle of Surrey,	
Request to his love to join bountie with	ib.	to a lady that refused to daunce with	
		him,	ib.
		The faithfull lover declareth his paynes, and	



# CONTENTS.

	Page		Page
his uncertaine joyes, and with only hope recomfort somewhat his woful heart, -	605	happiest, if they had skill to understand it, -	ib.
The meanes to attayne happy life, -	606	Bonum est mihi quod humiliasti me, -	ib.
Prayse of meane and constant estate, -	ib.	Exhortation to learne by others trouble, -	608
Prayses of certain Psalmes of David, tran- slated by Sir T. W. the elder, -	ib.	The fanst of a wearied lover, -	ib.
Of the death of the same Sir T. W. -	ib.	Dido and Æneas going to the field; trans- lated from the Fourth Book of Virgil's Eneide, -	609
Of the same, -	ib.	Dido's passion, and its effectes on the ryfinge citie, from the same, -	ib.
Of the same, -	ib.	Over the tomb of Thomas Clere, Esq. in Lambeth Church, was formerly a tablet with the following Epitaph, written by the Earl of Surrey, -	610
Of Sardanapalus dishonourable life and miser- able death, -	ib.		
How no age is content with his own estate, and how the age of children is the			

## WORKS OF WYAT.

	Page		Page
THE Author's Life, -	613	man, and espied this other sitting with her, -	619
SONGES AND SONNETTES.		To his love from whom he had his gloves, -	620
The lover for shamefastnesse hideth his de- sire within his faithful heart, -	617	Of the sayned frend, -	ib.
The lover waxeth wyser, and will not dye for affection, -	ib.	The lover taught, mistrusteth allurements, -	ib.
The abused lover seeth his folly, and intend- eth to trust no more, -	ib.	The lover complaineth that his love doeth not pitie him, -	ib.
The lover describeth his being stricken with sight of his love, -	ib.	The lover rejoyseth against fortune, that by hindering his suite had happily made him forsake his folly, -	ib.
The wavering lover willeth and dreadeth to move his desire, -	ib.	A renouncing of hardily escaped love, -	ib.
The lover having dreamed enjoying of his love, complaineth that the dreame is not either longer or truer, -	618	The lover to his bed, with describing of his unquiet state, -	621
The lover unhappy, biddeth happy lovers rejoice in May, while he wayleth that month to him most unluckely, -	ib.	Comparison of love, to a streame falling from the Alps, -	ib.
The lover confelleth himself in love with Phillis, -	ib.	Wyates complaint upon love to reason, with loves aunswere, -	ib.
Of others fained sorrow, and the lovers fained mirth, -	ib.	The lovers sorrowfull state maketh him write sorrowfull songes, but fouché, his love may change the same, -	622
Of chaunge in minde, -	ib.	The lover complaineth himself forsaken, -	ib.
How the lover perisheth in his delight, as they flye in the fier, -	ib.	Of his love that pricked her finger with a needle, -	623
Against his tong that failed to utter his suites, -	ib.	Of the same, -	ib.
Description of the contrarious passions in a lover, -	ib.	Request to Cupide for revenge of his un- kind love, -	ib.
The lover compareth his state to a shippe in perilous storme tossed on the sea, -	619	Complaint for true love unrequited, -	ib.
Of doubtful love, -	ib.	The lover that fled love, now folowes it with his harme, -	ib.
The lover sheweth how he is forsaken of such as he sometime enjoyed, -	ib.	The lover hopeth of better chaunce, -	ib.
The lady to aunswere directly with yea or nay, -	ib.	The lover compareth his hart to the over- charged gonne, -	ib.
To his love whom he had kissed against her will, -	ib.	The lover suspected of change, praieth that it be not beleved against him, -	ib.
Of the jealous man that loved the same wo-		The lover abused renounceth love, -	ib.
		The lover professeth himself constant, -	624
		The lover sendeth his complaints and teares to sue for grace, -	ib.
		The lovers case cannot be hidden, however he dissemble, -	ib.



	Page		Page
The lover praieth not to be disdained, nor refused, mistrusted, nor forsaken,	625	Description of a genne,	63
The lover lamenteth his estate, with sute for grace,	ib.	Wyat being in prison to Bryan,	ib.
The lover waileth his changed joyes,	ib.	Of dissembling woords,	ib.
To his love that has given answere of refusal,	ib.	Of the mean and sure estate,	ib.
To his ladie, cruel over her yelden lover,	626	The courtier's life,	ib.
The lover complaineth that deadly sickness cannot help his affection,	ib.	Of disappointed purpose by negligence,	634
The lover rejoyceth the enjoying of his love,	ib.	Of his returne from Spayne,	ib.
The lover complaineth the unkindness of his love,	ib.	Of sodaine trusting,	ib.
How by a kisse, he found both his life and death,	ib.	Of the mother that eat her child at the siege of Jerusalem,	ib.
The lover describeth his being taken with fight of his love,	ib.	Of the meane and sure estate, written to John Poynes,	ib.
To his lover to look upon him,	627	Of the courtier's life, written to John Poynes,	635
The lover excuseth him of woordes, where-with he was unjustly charged,	ib.	How to use the court, and himself therein, written to Syr Fraunces Bryan,	636
Of such as had forsaken him,	ib.	The song of Jopas, unfinished,	637
A description of such a one as he would love,	ib.		
How impossible it is to fynde quietnesse in love,	ib.		
Of love, fortune, and the lover's mind,	628		
The lover praiseth his offered hart to be received,	ib.		
The lover's life compared to the Alpes,	ib.		
Charging of his love as unpituous and loving other,	ib.		
A renouncing of love,	ib.		
The lover foreseeth his unkind love,	ib.		
The lover describeth his restless state,	ib.		
The lover lamenteth the death of his love,	629		
The lover sendeth sighes to move his suite,	ib.		
Complainte of the absence of his love,	ib.		
The lover blameth his love for renting of the letter he sent her,	630		
The lover curseth the time when fyrst he fell in love,	ib.		
The lover determineth to serve faithfully,	631		
The lover suspected, blameth ill tongues,	ib.		
The lover complaineth, and his ladie comforteth,	ib.		
Why love is blinde,	ib.		
To his unkinde love,	632		
The lover blameth his instant desyre,	ib.		
The lover complaineth his estate,	ib.		
Of his love called Anna,	ib.		
That pleasure is mixed with every paine,	ib.		
A riddle of a gyft given by a ladie,	ib.		
That speaking or profering brings alway speding,	ib.		
He ruleth not, though he reigne over realmes, that is subject to his own lustes,	ib.		
Whether libertie by losse of life, or life in prison and thraldome, be to be preferred,	633		
Against houlder of money,	ib.		

## UNCERTAIN AUCTORES.

## SONGES AND SONEETS.

A PRAISE of his ladie,	638
They of the meane estate, are happiest,	ib.
Upon consideration of the state of this life, he wished death,	639
The lover that once disdained love, is now become subject, being caught in his snare,	ib.
Harpalus complaint of Philliades love bestowed on Corin, who loved her not, and denied him that loved her,	ib.
Of the death of Phillips,	640
That all things sometime finde ease of theyr payne, save only the lover,	ib.
Th' assault of Cupide upon the fort where the lover's hart lay wounded, and how he was taken,	641
The aged lover renounceth love,	ib.
Of the death of Sir Thomas Wyat the Elder,	ib.
Of a new married student that played fast or lose,	642
The lover in despare, lamenteth his case	ib.
Of his Maistresse, M. B.	ib.
A praise of Maistresse R.	ib.
Songes written by G. N. of the Nine Muses,	643
Mufonius, the philosopher's, saying,	ib.
Description of virtue,	644
Praise of measure keeping,	ib.
Man's life, after Possidonius or Crates,	ib.
Metrodorus's mynde to the contrary,	ib.
Of friendship,	ib.
The death of Zoroas, an Egyptian astronomer, in the first fight that Alexander had with the Persians,	645
Marcus Tullius Cicero's death,	646
Of M. T. Cicero,	647

## WORKS OF SACKVILLE.

The Author's Life,	651	The Complaynt of Henry Duke of Buckingham,	661
The Induction to a Mirrour for Magistrates,	655		

## GLOSSARY,

